

1

Environment and Theoretical Structure of Financial Accounting

OVERVIEW

The primary function of financial accounting is to provide useful financial information to users who are external to the business enterprise, particularly investors and creditors. These users make critical resource allocation decisions that affect the global economy. The primary means of conveying financial information to external users is through financial statements and related notes.

In this chapter you explore such important topics as the reason why financial accounting is useful, the process by which accounting standards are produced, and the conceptual framework that underlies financial accounting. The perspective you gain in this chapter serves as a foundation for more detailed study of financial accounting.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO1-1** Describe the function and primary focus of financial accounting. (p. 3)
- **LO1-2** Explain the difference between cash and accrual accounting. (p. 7)
- **LO1-3** Define generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) and discuss the historical development of accounting standards, including convergence between U.S. and international standards. (p. 9)
- **LO1-4** Explain why establishing accounting standards is characterized as a political process. (p. 13)
- **LO1-5** Explain factors that encourage high-quality financial reporting. (p. 15)
- **LO1-6** Explain the purpose of the conceptual framework. (p. 19)
- **LO1-7** Identify the objective and qualitative characteristics of financial reporting information and the elements of financial statements. (p. 21)
- **LO1-8** Describe the four basic assumptions underlying GAAP. (p. 24)
- **LO1-9** Describe the recognition, measurement, and disclosure concepts that guide accounting practice. (p. 26)
- **LO1-10** Contrast a revenue/expense approach and an asset/liability approach to accounting standard setting. (p. 33)
- **LO1-11** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to the development of accounting standards and the conceptual framework underlying accounting standards. (p. 14 and 20)



© Lev Dolgachov/Syda Productions/age fotostock

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Misguided Marketing Major

During a class break in your investments class, a marketing major tells the following story to you and some friends:

The chief financial officer (CFO) of a large company is interviewing three candidates for the top accounting position with his firm. He asks each the same question:

<i>CFO:</i>	What is two plus two?
<i>First candidate:</i>	Four.
<i>CFO:</i>	What is two plus two?
<i>Second candidate:</i>	Four.
<i>CFO:</i>	What is two plus two?
<i>Third candidate:</i>	What would you like it to be?
<i>CFO:</i>	You're hired.

After you take some good-natured ribbing from the non-accounting majors, your friend says, "Seriously, though, there must be ways the accounting profession prevents that kind of behavior. Aren't there some laws, or rules, or something? Is accounting based on some sort of theory, or is it just arbitrary?"

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. What should you tell your friend about the presence of accounting standards in the United States and the rest of the world? Who has the authority for standard setting? Who has the responsibility? (p. 8)
2. What is the economic and political environment in which standard setting occurs? (p. 13)
3. What is the relationship among management, auditors, investors, and creditors that tends to preclude the "What would you like it to be?" attitude? (p. 15)
4. In general, what is the conceptual framework that underlies accounting principles? (p. 20)

QUESTIONS

Financial Accounting Environment

In 1902, George Dayton took ownership of the Dayton Dry Goods Company, the fourth largest department store in Minneapolis, Minnesota. Successive generations of Daytons were innovative managers, flying in inventory to prevent shortages (1920), committing to giving five percent of profits back to the community (1946), and creating the nation's first enclosed shopping mall (1956). In 1962, George's grandchildren transformed Dayton's, by then a regional department store chain, into the **Target Corporation**, promising "a quality store with quality merchandise at discount prices".¹ Today Target has grown to be the second largest general merchandise retailer in America, with over 1,800 stores, almost 350,000 employees, and www.target.com reaching the online market. However, Target still stands by its "Expect More, Pay Less" motto, and still donates five percent of profits back to the community (giving more than \$4 million per week, mostly in support of education).

• LO1-1

PART A

¹"Target Through the Years" at <https://corporate.target.com/about/history/Target-through-the-years>.

Many factors contributed to Target's success. The Daytons were visionary in their move into the upscale discount retail market. The company's commitment to quality products, customer service, and community support also played an important role. But the ability to raise money from investors and lenders at various times also was critical to Target's evolution. Target used proceeds from its 1967 initial public stock offering to expand nationally. Creditors (lenders) also supplied needed capital at various times. In fact, without access to capital, the Target Corporation we know today likely would not exist.

Investors and creditors use many different kinds of information before supplying capital to businesses like Target. They use the information to predict the future risk and potential return of their prospective investments or loans.² For example, information about the enterprise's products and its management is key to this assessment. Investors and creditors also rely on various kinds of accounting information.

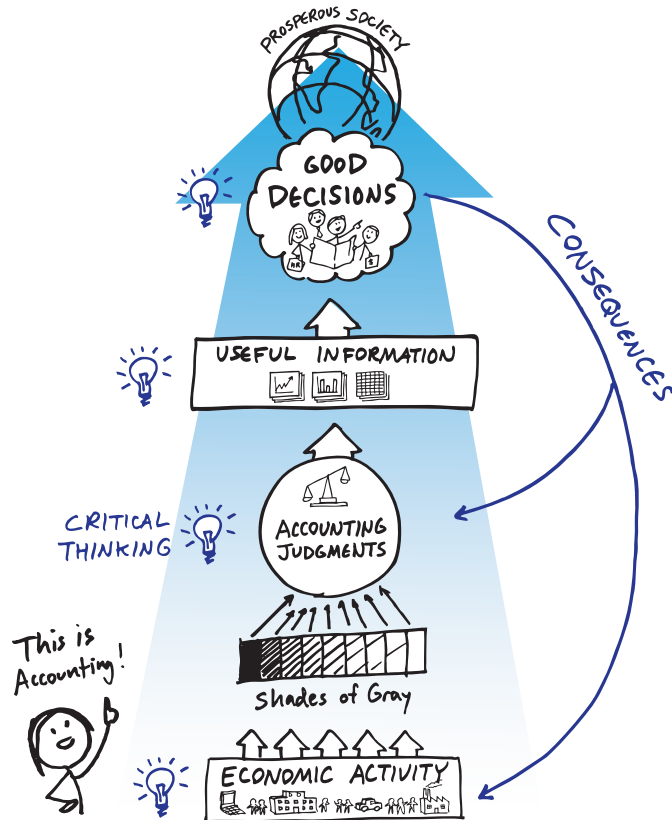
Think of accounting as a special "language" that companies like Target use to communicate financial information to help people inside and outside of the business to make decisions. The Pathways Commission of the American Accounting Association developed an illustration to help visualize this important role of accounting.³ As shown in Illustration 1-1, accounting provides useful information about economic activity to help produce good decisions and foster a prosperous society. Economic activity is complex, and decisions have real consequences, so critical thinking and many judgments are needed to produce the most useful accounting information possible.

This book focuses on **financial accounting**, which is chiefly concerned with providing financial information to various *external* users.⁴ The chart in Illustration 1-2 lists a number of groups that provide financial information as well as several external user groups.

The primary focus of financial accounting is on the information needs of investors and creditors.

Illustration 1-1

Pathways Commission visualization: "THIS is accounting!"

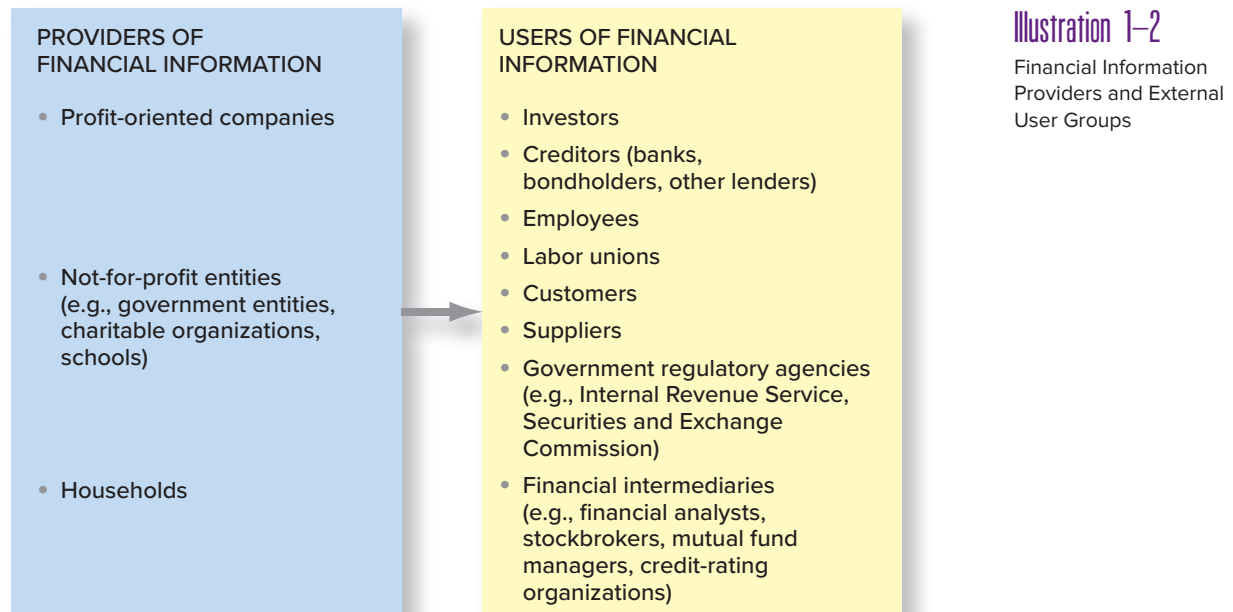


This work is by The Pathways Commission and is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NoDerivs 3.0 Unported License.

²Risk refers to the variability of possible outcomes from an investment. Return is the amount received over and above the investment.

³Reprinted with permission from the American Accounting Association. This work is by The Pathways Commission and is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NoDerivs 3.0 Unported License.

⁴In contrast, *managerial* accounting deals with the concepts and methods used to provide information to an organization's *internal* users, that is, its managers. You study managerial accounting elsewhere in your curriculum.



For these groups, the primary focus of financial accounting is on the financial information provided by *profit-oriented companies to their present and potential investors and creditors*. One external user group, often referred to as *financial intermediaries*, includes financial analysts, stockbrokers, mutual fund managers, and credit rating organizations. These users provide advice to investors and creditors and/or make investment-credit decisions on their behalf.

The primary means of conveying financial information to investors, creditors, and other external users is through financial statements and related disclosure notes. The financial statements most frequently provided are (1) the balance sheet, also called the statement of financial position, (2) the income statement, also called the statement of operations, (3) the statement of cash flows, and (4) the statement of shareholders' equity. Also, companies must either provide a statement of other comprehensive income immediately following the income statement, or present a combined statement of comprehensive income that includes the information normally contained in both the income statement and the statement of other comprehensive income.⁵ As you progress through this book, you will review and expand your knowledge of the information in these financial statements, the way the elements in these statements are measured, and the concepts underlying these measurements and related disclosures. We use the term **financial reporting** to refer to the process of providing this information to external users. Keep in mind, though, that external users receive important financial information in a variety of other formats as well, including news releases and management forecasts, prospectuses, and reports filed with regulatory agencies.

Target's financial statements for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016, and related disclosure notes are provided in Connect. You also can access these statements and notes under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (**Target.com**). A Target case is included among the Real-World Cases that accompany each chapter, so you can see how each chapter's topics relate to a single familiar company.

The Economic Environment and Financial Reporting

In the United States, we have a highly developed free-enterprise economy with the majority of productive resources privately owned rather than government owned. For the economy to operate efficiently, these resources should be allocated to private enterprises that will use

⁵FASB ASC 220-45: Comprehensive Income-Other Presentation Matters (originally "Presentation of Comprehensive Income," *Accounting Standards Update No. 2011-05* (Norwalk, CT: FASB, June 2011)).

The **capital markets** provide a mechanism to help our economy allocate resources efficiently.

Corporations acquire capital from investors in exchange for ownership interest and from creditors by borrowing.

Initial market transactions involve issuance of stocks and bonds by the corporation.

Secondary market transactions involve the transfer of stocks and bonds between individuals and institutions.

The expected rate of return and the uncertainty, or risk, of that return are key variables in the investment decision.

A company will be able to provide a positive return to investors and creditors only if it can generate a profit from selling its products or services.

them best to provide the goods and services desired by society, and not to enterprises that will waste them. The mechanisms that foster this efficient allocation of resources are the **capital markets**. We can think of the capital markets simply as a composite of all investors and creditors.

Businesses go to the capital markets to get the cash necessary for them to function. The three primary forms of business organization are the sole proprietorship, the partnership, and the corporation. In the United States, sole proprietorships and partnerships outnumber corporations. However, the dominant form of business organization, in terms of the ownership of productive resources, is the **corporation**. Investors provide resources, usually cash, to a corporation in exchange for an ownership interest, that is, shares of stock. Creditors lend cash to the corporation, either by making individual loans or by purchasing publicly traded debt such as bonds.

Stocks and bonds usually are traded on organized security markets such as the New York Stock Exchange and the NASDAQ. New cash is provided by **initial market transactions** in which the corporation sells shares of stock or bonds to individuals or other entities that want to invest in it. For example, **Target** first “went public” in 1967, selling shares to finance its expansion. Subsequent transfers of these stocks and bonds between investors and creditors are referred to as **secondary market transactions**. Corporations receive no new cash from secondary market transactions. Nevertheless, secondary market transactions are very important to the efficient allocation of resources in our economy. These transactions help establish market prices for additional shares and for bonds that corporations may wish to issue in the future to acquire additional capital. Also, many investors and creditors might be unwilling to buy stocks and bonds if they thought they couldn’t eventually sell those securities to others in the future.

What information do investors and creditors need when determining which companies will receive capital? We explore that question next.

The Investment-Credit Decision—A Cash Flow Perspective

While the decisions made by investors and by creditors are somewhat different, they are similar in at least one important way. Investors and creditors are willing to provide capital to a corporation (buy stocks or bonds) only if they expect to receive more cash in return at some time in the future. A corporation’s shareholders will receive cash from their investment through the ultimate sale of the ownership shares of stock. In addition, many corporations distribute cash to their shareholders in the form of periodic dividends. For example, if an investor provides a company with \$10,000 cash by purchasing stock at the end of 2017, receives \$400 in dividends from the company during 2018, and sells the ownership interest (shares) at the end of 2018 for \$10,600, the investment would have generated a **rate of return** of 10% for 2018, calculated as follows:

$$\frac{\$400 \text{ dividends} + \$600 \text{ share price appreciation}}{\$10,000 \text{ initial investment}} = 10\%$$

All else equal, investors and creditors would like to invest in stocks or bonds that provide the highest expected rate of return. However, there are many variables to consider before making an investment decision. For example, the *uncertainty*, or *risk*, of that expected return also is important. To illustrate, consider the following two investment options:

1. Invest \$10,000 in a savings account insured by the U.S. government that will generate a 5% rate of return.
2. Invest \$10,000 in a profit-oriented company.

While the rate of return from option 1 is known with virtual certainty, the return from option 2 is uncertain. The amount and timing of the cash to be received in the future from option 2 are unknown. The company in option 2 will be able to provide investors with a return only if it can generate a profit. That is, it must be able to use the resources provided by investors and creditors to generate cash receipts from selling a product or service that exceed the cash disbursements necessary to provide that product or service. Therefore, potential investors require

information about the company that will help them estimate the potential for future profits, as well as the return they can expect on their investment and the risk that is associated with it. If the potential return is high enough, investors will prefer to invest in the profit-oriented company, even if that return has more risk associated with it.

In summary, the primary objective of financial accounting is to provide investors and creditors with information that will help them make investment and credit decisions. That information should help investors and creditors evaluate the *amounts, timing, and uncertainty* of the enterprise's future cash receipts and disbursements. The better this information is, the more efficient will be investor and creditor resource allocation decisions. But financial accounting doesn't only benefit companies and their investors and creditors. By providing key information to capital market participants, financial accounting plays a vital role that helps direct society's resources to the companies that will utilize those resources most effectively.

The objective of financial accounting is to provide investors and creditors with useful information for decision making.

Cash versus Accrual Accounting

● LO1–2

Even though predicting future cash flows is the primary goal of many users of financial reporting, the model best able to achieve that goal is the **accrual accounting** model. A competing model is **cash basis accounting**. Each model produces a periodic measure of performance that could be used by investors and creditors for predicting future cash flows.

CASH BASIS ACCOUNTING. Cash basis accounting produces a measure called **net operating cash flow**. This measure is the difference between cash receipts and cash payments from transactions related to providing goods and services to customers during a reporting period.

Net operating cash flow is the difference between cash receipts and cash disbursements from providing goods and services.

Over the life of a company, net operating cash flow definitely is the measure of concern. However, over short periods of time, operating cash flows may not be indicative of the company's long-run cash-generating ability. Sometimes a company pays or receives cash in one period that relates to performance in multiple periods. For example, in one period a company receives cash that relates to prior period sales, or makes advance payments for costs related to future periods.

To see this more clearly, consider Carter Company's net operating cash flows during its first three years of operations, shown in Illustration 1–3. Carter's operations for these three years included the following:

1. Credit sales to customers were \$100,000 each year (\$300,000 total), while cash collections were \$50,000, \$125,000 and \$125,000. Carter's customers owe Carter nothing at the end of Year 3.
2. At the beginning of Year 1, Carter prepaid \$60,000 for three years' rent (\$20,000 per year).
3. Employee salaries of \$50,000 were paid in full each year.
4. Utilities cost was \$10,000 each year, but \$5,000 of the cost in Year 1 was not paid until Year 2.
5. In total, Carter generated positive net operating cash flow of **\$60,000**.

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Total
Sales (on credit)	<u>\$100,000</u>	<u>\$100,000</u>	<u>\$100,000</u>	<u>\$300,000</u>
Net Operating Cash Flows				
Cash receipts from customers	\$ 50,000	\$125,000	\$125,000	\$300,000
Cash disbursements:				
Prepayment of three years' rent	(60,000)	—0—	—0—	(60,000)
Salaries to employees	(50,000)	(50,000)	(50,000)	(150,000)
Utilities	<u>(5,000)</u>	<u>(15,000)</u>	<u>(10,000)</u>	<u>(30,000)</u>
Net operating cash flow	<u>\$ (65,000)</u>	<u>\$ 60,000</u>	<u>\$ 65,000</u>	<u>\$ 60,000</u>

Illustration 1–3

Cash Basis Accounting

Over short periods of time, operating cash flow may not be an accurate predictor of future operating cash flows.

Net income is the difference between revenues and expenses.

Net income is considered a better indicator of future operating cash flows than is current net operating cash flow.

Is the three-year pattern of net operating cash flows indicative of the company's year-by-year performance? No. Sales to customers and costs of operating the company (rent, salaries, and utilities) occurred evenly over the three years, but net operating cash flows occurred at an uneven rate. Net operating cash flows varied each year because Carter (a) didn't collect cash from customers in the same pattern that sales occurred and (b) didn't pay for rent and utilities in the same years in which those resources were actually consumed. This illustration also shows why operating cash flows may not predict the company's long-run cash-generating ability. Net operating cash flow in Year 1 (negative **\$65,000**)⁶ is not an accurate predictor of Carter's future cash-generating ability in Year 2 (positive \$60,000) or Year 3 (positive \$65,000).

ACCUAL ACCOUNTING. If we measure Carter's activities by the accrual accounting model, we get a more accurate prediction of future operating cash flows and a more reasonable portrayal of the periodic operating performance of the company. The accrual accounting model doesn't focus only on cash flows. Instead, it also reflects other resources provided and consumed by operations during a period. The accrual accounting model's measure of resources provided by business operations is called *revenues*, and the measure of resources sacrificed to produce revenues is called *expenses*. The difference between revenues and expenses is **net income**, or net loss if expenses are greater than revenues.⁷

Illustration 1–4 shows how we would measure revenues and expenses in this very simple situation.

Revenue for year 1 is the \$100,000 sales. Given that sales eventually are collected in cash, the year 1 revenue of \$100,000 is a better measure of the inflow of resources from company operations than is the \$50,000 cash collected from customers. Also, net income of **\$20,000** for year 1 appears to be a reasonable predictor of the company's cash-generating ability, as total net operating cash flow for the three-year period is a positive **\$60,000**. Comparing the three-year pattern of net operating cash flows in Illustration 1–3 to the three-year pattern of net income in Illustration 1–4, the net income pattern is more representative of Carter Company's steady operating performance over the three-year period.⁸

While this example is somewhat simplistic, it allows us to see the motivation for using the accrual accounting model. Accrual income attempts to measure the resource inflows and outflows generated by operations during the reporting period, which may not correspond to cash inflows and outflows. Does this mean that information about cash flows from operating activities is not useful? No. Indeed, one of the basic financial statements—the statement of cash flows—reports information about cash flows from operating, investing and financing activities, and provides important information to investors and creditors.⁹ Focusing on

Illustration 1–4

Accrual Accounting

CARTER COMPANY				
Income Statements				
	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Total
Revenues	\$100,000	\$100,000	\$100,000	\$300,000
Expenses:				
Rent	20,000	20,000	20,000	60,000
Salaries	50,000	50,000	50,000	150,000
Utilities	10,000	10,000	10,000	30,000
Total expenses	80,000	80,000	80,000	240,000
Net Income	\$ 20,000	\$ 20,000	\$ 20,000	\$ 60,000

⁶If cash flow from operating the company is negative, the company can continue to operate by using cash obtained from investors or creditors to make up the difference.

⁷Net income also includes gains and losses, which are discussed later in the chapter.

⁸Empirical evidence that accrual accounting provides a better measure of short-term performance than cash flows is provided by Patricia Dechow, "Accounting Earnings and Cash Flows as Measures of Firm Performance: The Role of Accrual Accounting," *Journal of Accounting and Economics* 18 (1994), pp. 3–42.

⁹The statement of cash flows is discussed in detail in Chapters 4 and 21.

accrual accounting as well as cash flows provides a more complete view of a company and its operations.

The Development of Financial Accounting and Reporting Standards

● LO1–3

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 3

Accrual accounting is the financial reporting model used by the majority of profit-oriented companies and by many not-for-profit companies. The fact that companies use the same model is important to investors and creditors, allowing them to *compare* financial information among companies. To facilitate these comparisons, financial accounting employs a body of standards known as **generally accepted accounting principles**, often abbreviated as **GAAP** (and pronounced *gap*). GAAP is a dynamic set of both broad and specific guidelines that companies should follow when measuring and reporting the information in their financial statements and related notes. The more important concepts underlying GAAP are discussed in a subsequent section of this chapter and revisited throughout this book in the context of particular accounting topics.

Historical Perspective and Standards

Pressures on the accounting profession to establish uniform accounting standards began after the stock market crash of 1929. Some felt that insufficient and misleading financial statement information led to inflated stock prices and that this contributed to the stock market crash and the subsequent depression.

The 1933 Securities Act and the 1934 Securities Exchange Act were designed to restore investor confidence. The 1933 Act sets forth accounting and disclosure requirements for initial offerings of securities (stocks and bonds). The 1934 Act applies to secondary market transactions and mandates reporting requirements for companies whose securities are publicly traded on either organized stock exchanges or in over-the-counter markets.¹⁰

The 1934 Act also created the **Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)**. Congress gave the SEC the authority to set accounting and reporting standards for companies whose securities are publicly traded. However, the SEC, a government appointed body, has *delegated* the task of setting accounting standards to the private sector. It is important to understand that the power still lies with the SEC. If the SEC does not agree with a particular standard issued by the private sector, it can force a change in the standard. In fact, it has done so in the past.¹¹

The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) has the authority to set accounting standards for companies, but it relies on the private sector to do so.

EARLY U.S. STANDARD SETTING. The first private sector body to assume the task of setting accounting standards was the **Committee on Accounting Procedure (CAP)**. The CAP was a committee of the **American Institute of Accountants (AIA)**. The AIA was renamed the **American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA)** in 1957, which is the national professional organization for certified professional public accountants.

From 1938 to 1959, the CAP issued 51 *Accounting Research Bulletins (ARBs)* which dealt with specific accounting and reporting problems. No theoretical framework for financial accounting was established. This piecemeal approach of dealing with individual issues without a framework led to criticism.

In 1959 the **Accounting Principles Board (APB)** replaced the CAP. The APB operated from 1959 through 1973 and issued 31 *Accounting Principles Board Opinions (APBOs)*, various *Interpretations*, and four *Statements*. The *Opinions* also dealt with specific accounting and reporting problems. Many *ARBs* and *APBOs* still represent authoritative GAAP.

The APB suffered from a variety of problems. It was never able to establish a conceptual framework for financial accounting and reporting that was broadly accepted. Also, members

¹⁰Reporting requirements for SEC registrants include Form 10-K, the annual report form, and Form 10-Q, the report that must be filed for the first three quarters of each fiscal year.

¹¹The SEC issues *Financial Reporting Releases (FRRs)*, which regulate what information companies must report to it. The SEC staff also issues *Staff Accounting Bulletins* that provide the SEC's interpretation of standards previously issued by the private sector. To learn more about the SEC, consult its Internet site at www.sec.gov.

served on the APB on a voluntary, part-time basis, so the APB was not able to act quickly enough to keep up with financial reporting issues as they developed. Perhaps the most important flaw of the APB was a perceived lack of independence. Because the APB was composed almost entirely of certified public accountants and supported by the AICPA, critics charged that the clients of the represented public accounting firms exerted self-interested pressure on the board and inappropriately influenced decisions. A related complaint was that other interest groups lacked an ability to provide input to the standard-setting process.

The **FASB** was established to set U.S. accounting standards.

THE FASB. Criticism of the APB led to the creation in 1973 of the **Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB)** and its supporting structure. There are seven full-time members of the FASB. FASB members represent various constituencies concerned with accounting standards, and have included representatives from the auditing profession, profit-oriented companies, accounting educators, financial analysts, and government. The FASB is supported by its parent organization, the **Financial Accounting Foundation (FAF)**, which is responsible for selecting the members of the FASB and its Financial Accounting Standards Advisory Council (FASAC), ensuring adequate funding of FASB activities and exercising general oversight of the FASB's activities.^{12,13}

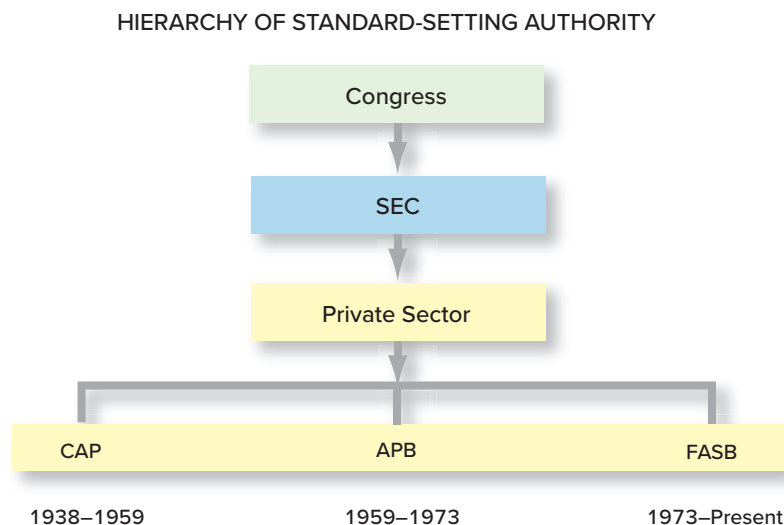
In 1984, the FASB's **Emerging Issues Task Force (EITF)** was formed to improve financial reporting by resolving narrowly defined financial accounting issues within the framework of existing GAAP. The EITF primarily addresses implementation issues, thereby speeding up the standard-setting process and allowing the FASB to focus on pervasive long-term problems. EITF rulings are ratified by the FASB and are considered part of GAAP.

Illustration 1–5 summarizes this discussion on accounting standards. The graphic shows the hierarchy of accounting standard setting in order of authority.

CODIFICATION. Present-day GAAP includes a huge amount of guidance. The FASB has developed a **conceptual framework** (discussed in Part B of this chapter) that is not authoritative GAAP but provides an underlying structure for the development of accounting standards. The FASB also has issued many accounting standards, currently called *Accounting*

Illustration 1–5

Accounting Standard Setting



¹²The FAF's primary sources of funding are fees assessed against issuers of securities under the *Public Company Accounting Reform and Investor Protection Act of 2002*, commonly referred to as the *Sarbanes-Oxley Act*. The FAF is governed by trustees, the majority of whom are appointed from the membership of eight sponsoring organizations. These organizations represent important constituencies involved with the financial reporting process. For example, one of the founding organizations is the CFA Institute which represents financial information users, and another is the Financial Executives International which represents financial information preparers. The FAF also raises funds to support the activities of the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB).

¹³The major responsibility of the FASAC is to advise the FASB on the priorities of its projects, including the suitability of new projects that might be added to its agenda. FASAC includes approximately 35 representatives from auditing firms, private companies, various user groups, and academia.

Standards Updates (ASUs) and previously called *Statements of Financial Accounting Standards (SFASs)*, as well as numerous FASB *Interpretations*, *Staff Positions*, *Technical Bulletins*, and *EITF Issue Consensuses*. The SEC also has issued various important pronouncements. Determining the appropriate accounting treatment for a particular event or transaction might require an accountant to research several of these sources.

To simplify the task of researching an accounting topic, in 2009 the FASB implemented its *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*. The Codification integrates and topically organizes all relevant accounting pronouncements comprising GAAP in a searchable, online database. It represents the single source of authoritative nongovernmental U.S. GAAP, and also includes portions of SEC accounting guidance that are relevant to financial reports filed with the SEC. When the FASB issues a new ASU, it becomes authoritative when it is entered into the Codification. The Codification is organized into nine main topics and approximately 90 subtopics. The main topics and related numbering system are presented in Illustration 1–6.¹⁴ The Codification can be located at www.fasb.org.

Throughout this book, we use the Accounting Standards Codification System (ASC) in footnotes when referencing generally accepted accounting principles (FASB ASC followed by the appropriate number). Each footnote also includes a reference to the original accounting standard that is codified in the ASC.

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD SETTING. Most industrialized countries have organizations responsible for determining accounting and reporting standards. In some countries, the United Kingdom, for instance, the responsible organization is a private sector body similar to the FASB in the United States. In other countries, the organization is a governmental body. Historically, these different organizations often produced different accounting

The FASB Accounting Standards Codification is the only source of authoritative U.S. GAAP, other than rules and interpretive releases of the SEC.

FASB Accounting Standards Codification Topics

Topic	Numbered
General Principles	100–199
Presentation	200–299
Assets	300–399
Liabilities	400–499
Equity	500–599
Revenues	600–699
Expenses	700–799
Broad Transactions	800–899
Industry	900–999

Illustration 1–6

FASB Accounting Standards Codification Topics

Additional Consideration

Accounting standards and the standard-setting process discussed above relate to profit-oriented organizations and nongovernmental not-for-profit entities. In 1984, the **Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB)** was created to develop accounting standards for governmental units such as states and cities. The FAF oversees and funds the GASB, and the Governmental Accounting Standards Advisory Council (GASAC) provides input to it.

¹⁴FASB ASC 105–10: Generally Accepted Accounting Principles—Overall (previously “The FASB Accounting Standards Codification® and the Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles—a replacement of FASB Statement No. 162,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 168* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB: 2009)).

The *International Accounting Standards Board (IASB)* is dedicated to developing a single set of global accounting standards.

International Financial Reporting Standards are issued by the IASB.

standards, which complicated accounting by multinational companies, reduced comparability between companies using different standards, and potentially made it harder for companies to raise capital in international markets.

In response to these problems, the **International Accounting Standards Committee (IASC)** was formed in 1973 to develop global accounting standards. The IASC reorganized itself in 2001 and created a new standard-setting body called the **International Accounting Standards Board (IASB)**. The IASB's main objective is to develop a single set of high-quality, understandable, and enforceable global accounting standards to help participants in the world's capital markets and other users make economic decisions.¹⁵

As shown in Illustration 1–7, the way international standard setting is structured is similar in many respects to the way standard setting is structured in the U.S.

The IASC issued 41 International Accounting Standards (IASs), and the IASB endorsed these standards when it was formed in 2001. Since then, the IASB has revised many IASs and has issued new standards of its own, called **International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS)**. More and more countries are basing their national accounting standards on IFRS. By 2016, approximately 120 jurisdictions, including Hong Kong, Egypt, Canada, Australia, and the countries in the European Union (EU), require or permit the use of IFRS or a local variant of IFRS.¹⁶

EFFORTS TO CONVERGE U.S. AND INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS. Should the U.S. also adopt IFRS? Many argue that a single set of global standards will improve comparability of financial reporting and facilitate access to capital. However, others argue that U.S. standards should remain customized to fit the stringent legal and regulatory requirements of the U.S. business environment. There also is concern that differences in implementation and enforcement from country to country will make accounting under IFRS appear more uniform and comparable than actually is the case. Another argument is that competition between alternative standard-setting regimes is healthy and can lead to improved standards.¹⁷

The FASB and IASB have been working for many years to converge to one global set of accounting standards. Here are some important steps along the way:

- **October 2002:** The FASB and IASB sign the Norwalk Agreement, pledging to remove existing differences between their standards and to coordinate their future standard-setting agendas so that major issues are worked on together.

Illustration 1–7

Comparison of Organizations of U.S. and International Standard Setters

	U.S. GAAP	IFRS
Regulatory oversight provided by:	Securities Exchange Commission (SEC)	Monitoring Board
Foundation providing oversight, appointing members, raising funds:	Financial Accounting Foundation (FAF): 20 trustees	IFRS Foundation: 22 trustees
Standard-setting board:	Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB): 7 members	International Accounting Standards Board (IASB): 14 members
Advisory council providing input on agenda and projects:	Financial Accounting Standards Advisory Council (FASAC): 30–40 members	IFRS Advisory Council: 30–40 members
Group to deal with emerging issues:	Emerging Issues Task Force (EITF): 15 members	IFRS Interpretations Committee: 14 members

¹⁵www.ifrs.org.

¹⁶See http://www.ifrs.com/ifrs_faqs.html.

¹⁷For a comprehensive analysis of the pros and cons of U.S. adoption of IFRS, see L. Hail, C. Leuz and P. Wysocki, "Global Accounting Convergence and the Potential Adoption of IFRS in the US (Part 1): An Analysis of Economic and Policy Factors," *Accounting Horizons* 24 (No. 3.), September 2010, pp. 355–394, and "... (Part 2): Political Factors and Future Scenarios for U.S. Accounting Standards," *Accounting Horizons* 24 (No. 4), December 2010, pp. 567–588.

- **November 2007:** The SEC signals its view that IFRS are of high quality by eliminating the requirement for foreign companies that issue stock in the United States to include in their financial statements a reconciliation of IFRS to U.S. GAAP. As a consequence, hundreds of foreign companies have access to U.S. capital markets with IFRS-based financial statements.
- **April 2008:** The FASB and IASB agrees to accelerate the convergence process and focus on a subset of key convergence projects. Already-converged standards that you will encounter later in this book deal with such topics as revenue recognition, earnings per share, share-based compensation, nonmonetary exchanges, inventory costs, and the calculation of fair value. **Where We're Headed** boxes throughout the book describe additional projects that are ongoing.
- **November 2008:** The SEC issues a *Roadmap* that listed necessary conditions (called “milestones”) that must be achieved before the U.S. will shift to requiring use of IFRS by public companies. Milestones include completion of key convergence projects, improving the structure and funding of the IASB, and updating the education and licensing of U.S. accountants.
- **November 2011:** The SEC issues two studies comparing U.S. GAAP and IFRS and analyzing how IFRS are applied globally. In these studies, the SEC identifies key differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS, and notes that U.S. GAAP provides significantly more guidance about particular transactions or industries. The SEC also notes some diversity in the application of IFRS that suggests the potential for non-comparability of financial statements across countries and industries.
- **July 2012:** The SEC staff issues its Final Staff Report in which it concludes that it is not feasible for the U.S. to simply adopt IFRS, given (1) a need for the U.S. to have strong influence on the standard-setting process and ensure that standards meet U.S. needs, (2) the high costs to companies of converting to IFRS, and (3) the fact that many laws, regulations, and private contracts reference U.S. GAAP.¹⁸

At the time this book is being written, recent events suggest that full convergence will not be achieved in the foreseeable future. For example, as discussed further in Chapter 12, the FASB and IASB eventually concluded that full convergence was not possible with respect to accounting for financial instruments. While it appears likely that the FASB and IASB will continue to work together to converge where possible, some differences between IFRS and U.S. GAAP will remain.

Nonetheless, you should be aware of important differences that exist between U.S. GAAP and IFRS. Therefore, **International Financial Reporting Standards** boxes are included throughout the book to highlight circumstances in which IFRS differs from U.S. GAAP. Throughout this book, and also in the end-of-chapter questions, exercises, problems, and cases, IFRS-related material is marked with the globe icon that you see beside this paragraph. And, similar to the **Target** case, an **Air France–KLM (AF)** case is included among the Real-World Cases that accompany each chapter, so you can see how each chapter's IFRS material relates to a single, familiar company.



The Standard-Setting Process

DUE PROCESS. When developing accounting standards, a standard setter must understand the nuances of the economic transactions the standards address and the views of key constituents concerning how accounting would best capture that economic reality. Therefore, the FASB undertakes a series of elaborate information-gathering steps before issuing an Accounting Standards Update. These steps include open hearings, deliberations, and requests for written comments from interested parties. Illustration 1–8 outlines the FASB's standard-setting process.¹⁹

• LO1–4

**FINANCIAL
Reporting Case**

Q2, p. 3

¹⁸“Work Plan for the Consideration of Incorporating International Financial Reporting Standards into the Financial Reporting System for U.S. Issuers: Final Staff Report,” Office of the Chief Accountant, United States Securities and Exchange Commission, July 13, 2012, available at www.sec.gov.

¹⁹www.FASB.org.

Illustration 1-8

The FASB's Standard-Setting Process

The FASB undertakes a series of information gathering steps before issuing an Accounting Standards Update.

Step	Explanation
1.	The Board identifies financial reporting issues based on requests/recommendations from stakeholders or through other means.
2.	The Board decides whether to add a project to the technical agenda based on a staff-prepared analysis of the issues.
3.	The Board deliberates at one or more public meetings the various issues identified and analyzed by the staff.
4.	The Board issues an Exposure Draft. (In some projects, a Discussion Paper may be issued to obtain input at an early stage that is used to develop an Exposure Draft.)
5.	The Board holds a public roundtable meeting on the Exposure Draft, if necessary.
6.	The staff analyzes comment letters, public roundtable discussion, and any other information. The Board redeliberates the proposed provisions at public meetings.
7.	The Board issues an Accounting Standards Update describing amendments to the Accounting Standards Codification.

These steps help the FASB acquire information to determine the preferred method of accounting. However, as a practical matter this information gathering also exposes the FASB to much political pressure by various interest groups who want an accounting treatment that serves their economic best interest. As you will see later in this chapter, the FASB's concepts statements indicate that standards should present information in a neutral manner, rather than being designed to favor particular economic consequences, but sometimes politics intrudes on the standard-setting process.

POLITICS IN STANDARD SETTING. A change in accounting standards can result in a substantial redistribution of wealth within our economy. Therefore, it is no surprise that the FASB has had to deal with intense political pressure over controversial accounting standards, and sometimes has changed standards in response to that pressure.

One example of the effect of politics on standard setting occurred in the mid-1990's with respect to accounting for employee stock options. The accounting standards in place at that time typically did not recognize compensation expense if a company paid their employees with stock options rather than cash. Yet, the company was sacrificing something of value to compensate its employees. Therefore, the FASB proposed that companies recognize compensation expense in an amount equal to the fair value of the options, with some of the expense recognized in each of the periods in which the employee earned the options. Numerous companies (particularly in California's Silicon Valley, where high-tech companies had been compensating employees with stock options to a great extent) applied intense political pressure against this proposal, and eventually the FASB backed down and required only disclosure of options-related compensation expense in the notes to the financial statements. Nearly a decade later, this contentious issue resurfaced in a more amenable political climate, and the FASB issued a standard requiring expense recognition as originally proposed. This issue is discussed at greater length in Chapter 19.

- **LO1-11** Another example of the political process at work in standard setting is the controversy surrounding the implementation of the fair value accounting standard issued in 2007. Many financial assets and liabilities are reported at fair value in the balance sheet, and many types of fair value changes are included in net income. Some have argued that fair values were estimated in a manner that exacerbated the financial crisis of 2008–2009 by forcing financial institutions to take larger than necessary write-downs of financial assets in the illiquid markets that existed at that time. As discussed further in Chapter 12, pressure from lobbyists and politicians influenced the FASB to revise its guidance on recognizing investment losses in these situations, and ongoing pressure remains to reduce the extent to which fair value changes are included in the determination of net income.

International Financial Reporting Standards



Politics in International Standard Setting. Political pressures on the IASB's standard-setting process are severe. Politicians from countries that use IFRS lobby for the standards they prefer. The European Union (EU) is a particularly important adopter of IFRS and utilizes a formal evaluation process for determining whether an IFRS standard will be endorsed for use in EU countries. Economic consequences for EU member nations are an important consideration in that process.

For example, in 2003 and 2004 French banks lobbied against some aspects of accounting for financial instruments stridently enough that the EU eventually "carved out" two key provisions before endorsing the relevant accounting standard (IAS 39).²⁰ Similarly, in 2008 the EU successfully pressured the IASB to suspend its due process and immediately allow reclassification of investments so that EU banks could avoid recognizing huge losses during a financial crisis.²¹ Commenting on standards setting at that time, Charlie McCreevy, European Commissioner for Internal Markets and Service, stated that "Accounting is now far too important to be left to . . . accountants!"²²

Additional Consideration

Private Company Council (PCC). Are the complex, comprehensive standards that are necessary to reflect the activities of a huge multinational conglomerate like **General Electric** also appropriate for a private company that, say, just needs to provide financial statements to its bank to get a loan? Private companies might be able to avoid much of that complexity. They don't sell securities like stocks and bonds to the general public, and they usually can identify the information needs of the specific users who rely on their financial statements and provide direct access to management to answer questions. Private companies typically also have a smaller accounting staff than do public companies. For those reasons, private companies have long sought a version of GAAP that is less costly to apply and better meets the information needs of the users of their financial statements.

In 2012, the Financial Accounting Foundation responded to this concern by establishing the Private Company Council (PCC). The ten-member PCC determines whether changes to existing GAAP are necessary to meet the needs of users of private company financial statements. But, a proposed exception or modification for private companies must be endorsed by the FASB before being issued as an Accounting Standards Update and added to the Codification. The PCC also advises the FASB about its current projects that affect private companies.

Encouraging High-Quality Financial Reporting

Numerous factors affect the quality of financial reporting. In this section, we discuss the role of the auditor, recent reforms in financial reporting, and the debate about whether accounting standards should emphasize rules or underlying principles.

The Role of the Auditor

It is the responsibility of management to apply GAAP appropriately. Another group, **auditors**, serves as an independent intermediary to help ensure that management has in fact appropriately applied GAAP in preparing the company's financial statements. Auditors

• LO1–5

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 3

Auditors express an opinion on the compliance of financial statements with GAAP.

²⁰Stephen A. Zeff, "IFRS Developments in the USA and EU, and Some Implications for Australia," *Australian Accounting Review* 18 (2008), pp. 275–282.

²¹Sarah Deans and Dane Mott, "Lowering Standards," www.morganmarkets.com, 10/14/2008.

²²Charlie McCreevy, Keynote Address, "Financial Reporting in a Changing World" Conference, Brussels, 5/7/2009.

examine (audit) financial statements to express a professional, independent opinion about whether the statements fairly present the company's financial position, its results of operations, and its cash flows in compliance with GAAP. Audits add credibility to the financial statements, increasing the confidence of those who rely on the information. Auditors, therefore, play an important role in the capital markets.

Most companies receive what's called an unmodified audit report. For example, **Apple Inc.**'s 2015 audit report by **Ernst & Young LLP** states, "In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the consolidated financial position of Apple Inc. at September 26, 2015 and September 27, 2014, and the consolidated results of its operations and its cash flow for each of the three years in the period ended September 26, 2015, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles." This is known as a clean opinion. Had there been any material departures from GAAP or other problems that caused the auditors to question the fairness of the statements, the report would have been modified to inform readers. Normally, companies correct any material misstatements that auditors identify in the course of an audit, so companies usually receive clean opinions. The audit report for public companies also provides the auditors' opinion on the effectiveness of the company's internal control over financial reporting.

Certified public accountants (CPAs) are licensed by states to provide audit services.

In most states, only individuals licensed as **certified public accountants (CPAs)** can represent that the financial statements have been audited in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Requirements to be licensed as a CPA vary from state to state, but all states specify education, testing, and experience requirements. The testing requirement is to pass the Uniform CPA Examination.

Financial Reporting Reform

The dramatic collapse of **Enron** in 2001 and the dismantling of the international public accounting firm of **Arthur Andersen** in 2002 severely shook U.S. capital markets. The credibility of the accounting profession itself as well as of corporate America was called into question. Public outrage over accounting scandals at high-profile companies like **WorldCom**, **Xerox**, **Merck**, **Adelphia Communications**, and others increased the pressure on lawmakers to pass measures that would restore credibility and investor confidence in the financial reporting process.

Driven by these pressures, Congress acted swiftly and passed the *Public Company Accounting Reform and Investor Protection Act of 2002*, commonly referred to as the *Sarbanes-Oxley Act* or *SOX* for the two congressmen who sponsored the bill. SOX applies to public securities-issuing entities. It provides for the regulation of auditors and the types of services they furnish to clients, increases accountability of corporate executives, addresses conflicts of interest for securities analysts, and provides for stiff criminal penalties for violators. Illustration 1–9 outlines key provisions of the Act.

Section 404 is perhaps the most controversial provision of SOX. It requires that company management document internal controls and report on their adequacy. Auditors also must express an opinion on whether the company has maintained effective control over financial reporting.

No one argues the importance of adequate internal controls, but many argued that the benefits of Section 404 did not justify the costs of complying with it. Research provides evidence that 404 reports affect investors' risk assessments and companies' stock prices, indicating these reports are seen as useful by investors.²³ Unfortunately, it is not possible to quantify the more important benefit of potentially avoiding business failures like Enron by focusing attention on the implementation and maintenance of adequate internal controls.

The costs of 404 compliance initially were quite steep. For example, one survey of Fortune 1,000 companies estimated that large companies spent, on average, approximately \$8.5 million and \$4.8 million (including internal costs and auditor fees) during the first two years of the act to comply with 404 reporting requirements.²⁴ As expected, the costs dropped

²³Hollis Ashbaugh Skaife, Daniel W. Collins, William R. Kinney, Jr., and Ryan LaFond, "The Effect of SOX Internal Control Deficiencies on Firm Risk and Cost of Equity," *Journal of Accounting Research* 47 (2009), pp. 1–43.

²⁴"Sarbanes-Oxley 404 Costs and Implementation Issues: Spring 2006 Survey Update," CRA International (April 17, 2006).

Key Provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act:

- **Oversight board.** The five-member (two accountants) Public Company Accounting Oversight Board has the authority to establish standards dealing with auditing, quality control, ethics, independence and other activities relating to the preparation of audit reports, or can choose to delegate these responsibilities to the AICPA. Prior to the act, the AICPA set auditing standards. The SEC has oversight and enforcement authority.
- **Corporate executive accountability.** Corporate executives must personally certify the financial statements and company disclosures with severe financial penalties and the possibility of imprisonment for fraudulent misstatement.
- **Nonaudit services.** The law makes it unlawful for the auditors of public companies to perform a variety of nonaudit services for audit clients. Prohibited services include bookkeeping, internal audit outsourcing, appraisal or valuation services, and various other consulting services. Other nonaudit services, including tax services, require pre-approval by the audit committee of the company being audited.
- **Retention of work papers.** Auditors of public companies must retain all audit or review work papers for seven years or face the threat of a prison term for willful violations.
- **Auditor rotation.** Lead audit partners are required to rotate every five years. Mandatory rotation of audit firms came under consideration.
- **Conflicts of interest.** Audit firms are not allowed to audit public companies whose chief executives worked for the audit firm and participated in that company's audit during the preceding year.
- **Hiring of auditor.** Audit firms are hired by the audit committee of the board of directors of the company, not by company management.
- **Internal control.** Section 404 of the act requires that company management document and assess the effectiveness of all internal control processes that could affect financial reporting. The PCAOB's *Auditing Standard No. 2* (since replaced by *Auditing Standard No. 5*) requires that the company auditors express an opinion on whether the company has maintained effective internal control over financial reporting.

Illustration 1-9

Public Company Accounting Reform and Investor Protection Act of 2002 (Sarbanes-Oxley)

significantly in the second year, and continued to drop as the efficiency of internal control audits increased. Many companies now perceive that the benefits of these internal control reports exceed their costs.²⁵

We revisit Section 404 in Chapter 7 in the context of an introduction to internal controls.

A Move Away from Rules-Based Standards?

The accounting scandals at Enron and other companies involved managers using elaborately structured transactions to try to circumvent specific rules in accounting standards. One consequence of those scandals was a rekindled debate over **principles-based**, or more recently termed **objectives-oriented**, versus **rules-based accounting standards**. In fact, a provision of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act required the SEC to study the issue and provide a report to Congress on its findings. That report, issued in July 2003, recommended that accounting standards be developed using an objectives-oriented approach.²⁶

An objectives-oriented approach to standard setting emphasizes using professional judgment, as opposed to following a list of rules, when choosing how to account for a transaction. Proponents of an objectives-oriented approach argue that a focus on professional judgment means that there are few rules to sidestep, and we are more likely to arrive at an appropriate accounting treatment. Detractors, on the other hand, argue that the absence of detailed rules opens the door to even more abuse, because management can use the latitude provided by objectives to justify their preferred accounting approach. Even in the absence

A principles-based, or objectives-oriented, approach to standard-setting stresses professional judgment, as opposed to following a list of rules.

²⁵Protiviti, Inc., *2011 Sarbanes-Oxley Compliance Survey* (June, 2011).

²⁶"Study Pursuant to Section 108 (d) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 on the Adoption by the United States Financial Reporting System of a Principles-Based Accounting System," Securities and Exchange Commission (July 2003).

of intentional misuse, reliance on professional judgment might result in different interpretations for similar transactions, raising concerns about comparability. Also, detailed rules help auditors withstand pressure from clients who want a more favorable accounting treatment, and help companies ensure that they are complying with GAAP and avoid litigation or SEC inquiry. For these reasons, it's challenging to avoid providing detailed rules in the U.S. reporting environment.

Regardless of whether accounting standards are based more on rules or on objectives, prior research highlights that there is some potential for abuse, either by structuring transactions around precise rules or opportunistically interpreting underlying principles.²⁷ The key is whether management is dedicated to high-quality financial reporting. It appears that poor ethical values on the part of management are at the heart of accounting abuses and scandals, so we now turn to a discussion of ethics in the accounting profession.

Ethics in Accounting

Ethics deals with the ability to distinguish right from wrong.

Ethics is a term that refers to a code or moral system that provides criteria for evaluating right and wrong. An ethical dilemma is a situation in which an individual or group is faced with a decision that tests this code. Many of these dilemmas are simple to recognize and resolve. For example, have you ever been tempted to call your professor and ask for an extension on the due date of an assignment by claiming a pretended illness? Temptation like this will test your personal ethics.

Accountants, like others in the business world, are faced with many ethical dilemmas, some of which are complex and difficult to resolve. For instance, the capital markets' focus on near-term profits may tempt a company's management to bend or even break accounting rules to inflate reported net income. In these situations, technical competence is not enough to resolve the dilemma.

ETHICS AND PROFESSIONALISM. One characteristic that distinguishes a profession from other occupations is the acceptance by its members of a responsibility for the interests of those it serves. Ethical behavior is expected of those engaged in a profession. That expectation often is articulated in a code of ethics. For example, law and medicine are professions that have their own codes of professional ethics. These codes provide guidance and rules to members in the performance of their professional responsibilities.

Public accounting has achieved widespread recognition as a profession. The AICPA, the national organization of certified public accountants, has its own Code of Professional Conduct that prescribes the ethical conduct members should strive to achieve. Similarly, the **Institute of Management Accountants (IMA)**—the primary national organization of accountants working in industry and government—has its own code of ethics, as does the **Institute of Internal Auditors**—the national organization of accountants providing internal auditing services for their own organizations.

ANALYTICAL MODEL FOR ETHICAL DECISIONS. Ethical codes are informative and helpful, but the motivation to behave ethically must come from within oneself and not just from the fear of penalties for violating professional codes. Presented below is a sequence of steps that provide a framework for analyzing ethical issues. These steps can help you apply your own sense of right and wrong to ethical dilemmas:²⁸

- Step 1.** Determine the facts of the situation. This involves determining the who, what, where, when, and how.
- Step 2.** Identify the ethical issue and the stakeholders. Stakeholders may include shareholders, creditors, management, employees, and the community.

²⁷Mark W. Nelson, John A. Elliott, and Robin L. Tarpley, "Evidence From Auditors About Manager' and Auditors Earnings Management Decisions," *The Accounting Review* 77 (2002), pp. 175–202.

²⁸Adapted from Harold Q. Langenderfer and Joanne W. Rockness, "Integrating Ethics into the Accounting Curriculum: Issues, Problems, and Solutions," *Issues in Accounting Education* (Spring 1989). These steps are consistent with those provided by the American Accounting Association's Advisory Committee on Professionalism and Ethics in their publication *Ethics in the Accounting Curriculum: Cases and Readings*, 1990.

Ethical Dilemma



You recently have been employed by a large retail chain that sells sporting goods. One of your tasks is to help prepare periodic financial statements for external distribution. The chain's largest creditor, National Savings & Loan, requires quarterly financial statements, and you are currently working on the statements for the three-month period ending June 30, 2018.

During the months of May and June, the company spent \$1,200,000 on a hefty radio and TV advertising campaign. The \$1,200,000 included the costs of producing the commercials as well as the radio and TV time purchased to air the commercials. All of the costs were charged to advertising expense. The company's chief financial officer (CFO) has asked you to prepare a June 30 adjusting entry to remove the costs from advertising expense and to set up an asset called *prepaid advertising* that will be expensed in July. The CFO explained that "This advertising campaign has led to significant sales in May and June and I think it will continue to bring in customers through the month of July. By recording the ad costs as an asset, we can match the cost of the advertising with the additional July sales. Besides, if we expense the advertising in May and June, we will show an operating loss on our income statement for the quarter. The bank requires that we continue to show quarterly profits in order to maintain our loan in good standing."

- Step 3.** Identify the values related to the situation. For example, in some situations confidentiality may be an important value that might conflict with the right to know.
- Step 4.** Specify the alternative courses of action.
- Step 5.** Evaluate the courses of action specified in step 4 in terms of their consistency with the values identified in step 3. This step may or may not lead to a suggested course of action.
- Step 6.** Identify the consequences of each possible course of action. If step 5 does not provide a course of action, assess the consequences of each possible course of action for all of the stakeholders involved.
- Step 7.** Make your decision and take any indicated action.

Ethical dilemmas are presented throughout this book. The analytical steps outlined above provide a framework you can use to evaluate these situations.

The Conceptual Framework

Sturdy buildings are built on sound foundations. The U.S. Constitution is the foundation for the laws of our land. The **conceptual framework** has been described as an "Accounting Constitution" because it provides the underlying foundation for U.S. accounting standards. The conceptual framework provides structure and direction to financial accounting and reporting but does not directly prescribe GAAP. It is a coherent system of interrelated objectives and fundamentals that is intended to lead to consistent standards and that prescribes the nature, function, and limits of financial accounting and reporting. The fundamentals are the underlying concepts of accounting that guide the selection of events to be accounted for, the measurement of those events, and the means of summarizing and communicating them to interested parties.²⁹

The FASB disseminates this framework through *Statements of Financial Accounting Concepts* (SFACs). SFAC 8 discusses the objective of financial reporting and the qualitative characteristics of useful financial information. SFAC 7 describes how cash flows and present values are used when making accounting measurements. SFAC 6 defines the accounts

PART B

• LO1–6

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

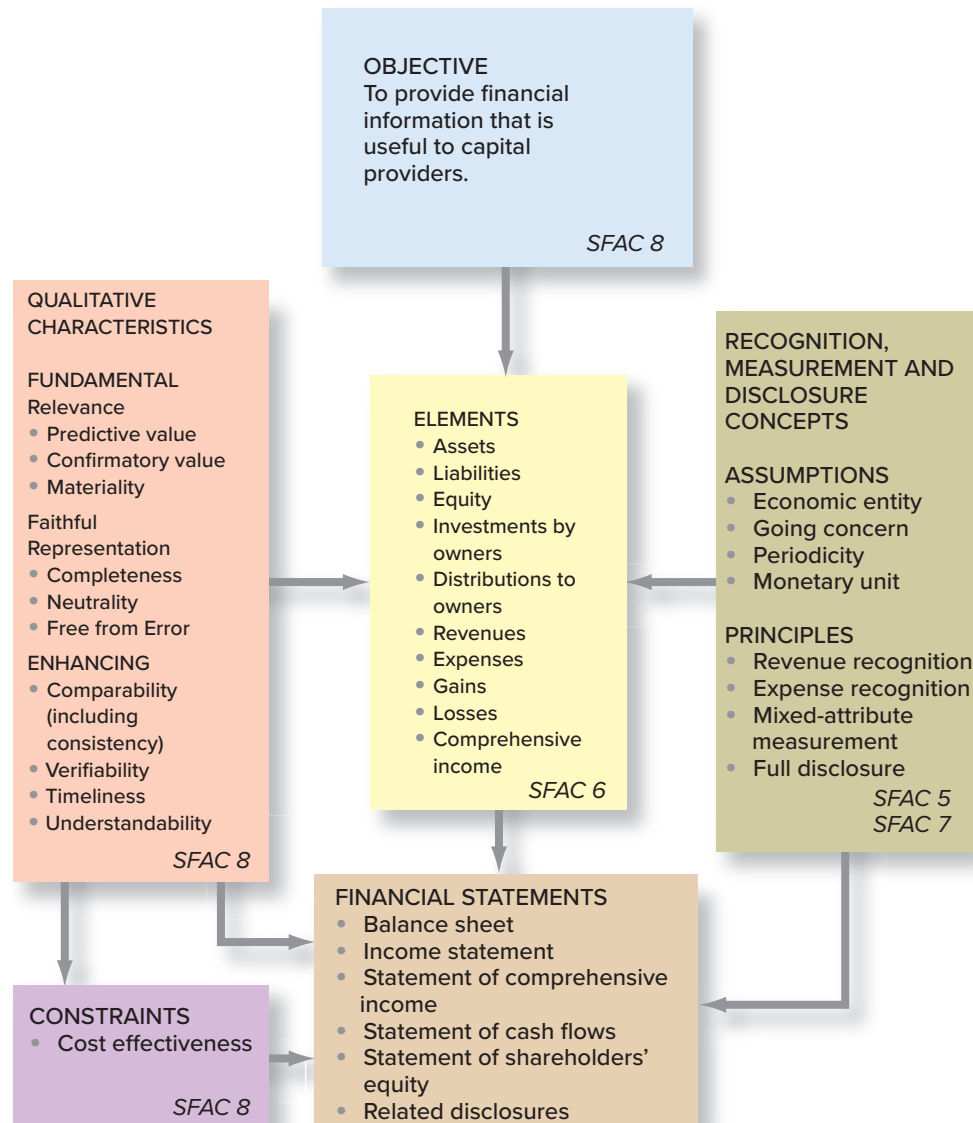
Q4, p. 3

The conceptual framework does not prescribe GAAP. It provides an underlying foundation for accounting standards.

²⁹"Conceptual Framework for Financial Accounting and Reporting: Elements of Financial Statements and Their Measurement," *Discussion Memorandum* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1976), p. 2.

Illustration 1-10

The Conceptual Framework



and accrual accounting concepts that appear in financial statements, and *SFAC 5* discusses recognition and measurement concepts. Earlier *SFACs* either have been superseded or involve nonbusiness organizations that aren't considered in this book.

In the remainder of this section we discuss the components of the conceptual framework, as depicted in Illustration 1-10.



International Financial Reporting Standards

• LO1-11

Role of the conceptual framework. The conceptual frameworks in U.S. GAAP and IFRS are very similar, and are converging even more with ongoing efforts by the FASB and IASB. However, in U.S. GAAP, the conceptual framework primarily provides guidance to standard setters to help them develop high-quality standards. In IFRS the conceptual framework guides standard setting, but in addition it provides a basis for practitioners to make accounting judgments when another IFRS standard does not apply. Also, IFRS emphasizes the overarching concept of the financial statements providing a “fair presentation” of the company. U.S. GAAP does not include a similar requirement, but U.S. auditing standards require this consideration.

Objective of Financial Reporting

● LO1-7

As indicated in Part A of this chapter, the objective of general purpose financial reporting is to provide financial information about companies that is useful to capital providers in making decisions. For example, investors decide whether to buy, sell, or hold equity or debt securities, and creditors decide whether to provide or settle loans. Information that is useful to capital providers may also be useful to other users of financial reporting information, such as regulators or taxing authorities.

Investors and creditors are interested in the amount, timing, and uncertainty of a company's future cash flows. Information about a company's economic resources (assets) and claims against resources (liabilities) also is useful. Not only does this information about resources and claims provide insight into future cash flows, it also helps decision makers identify the company's financial strengths and weaknesses and assess liquidity and solvency.

Qualitative Characteristics of Financial Reporting Information

What characteristics should information have to best meet the objective of financial reporting? Illustration 1-11 indicates the desirable qualitative characteristics of financial reporting information, presented in the form of a hierarchy of their perceived importance. Notice that these characteristics are intended to enhance the **decision usefulness** of information.

Fundamental Qualitative Characteristics

For financial information to be useful, it should possess the fundamental decision-specific qualities of **relevance** and **faithful representation**. Both are critical. Information is of little value if it's not relevant. And even if information is relevant, it is not as useful if it doesn't faithfully represent the economic phenomenon it purports to represent. Let's look closer at each of these two qualitative characteristics, including the components that make those characteristics desirable. We also consider other characteristics that enhance usefulness.

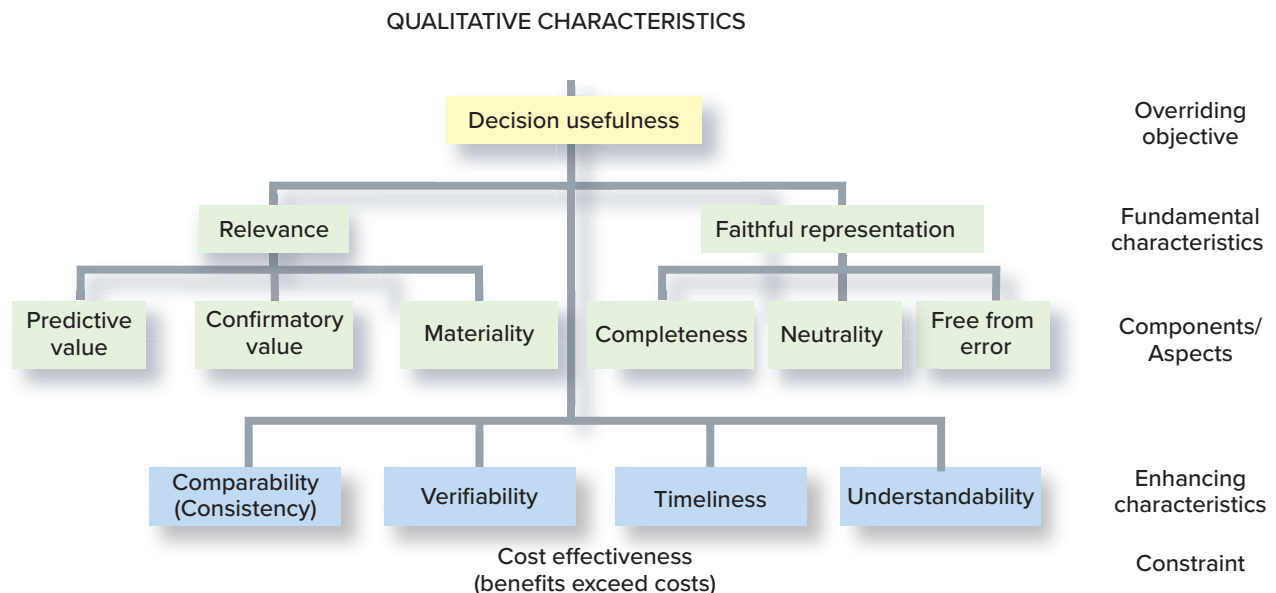
Decision usefulness requires that information possess the qualities of **relevance** and **faithful representation**.

Relevance requires that information have **predictive** and **confirmatory** value.

RELEVANCE. Obviously, to make a difference in the decision process, information must be relevant to the decision. Relevance in the context of financial reporting means that information must possess **predictive value** and/or **confirmatory value**, typically both.

Illustration 1-11

Hierarchy of Qualitative Characteristics of Financial Information



For example, current-period net income has predictive value if it helps users predict a company's future cash flows, and it has confirmatory value if it helps investors confirm or change their prior assessments regarding a company's cash-flow generating ability. Predictive and confirmatory value are central to the concept of "earnings quality," the ability of reported earnings (income) to predict a company's future earnings.

Information is *material* if it has an effect on decisions.

Financial information is **material** if omitting it or misstating it could affect users' decisions. Materiality is an aspect of relevance that depends on a company's particular situation and is based on the nature or magnitude of the item that is being reported. Recall that **Apple Inc.**'s audit report discussed earlier only expressed an opinion about material items. If information is immaterial, it's not relevant.

The threshold for materiality often depends on the *relative* dollar amount of the transaction. For example, \$10,000 in total anticipated bad debts for a multibillion dollar company would not be considered material. This same \$10,000 amount, however, might easily be material for a neighborhood pizza parlor. Because of the context-specific nature of materiality, the FASB has been reluctant to establish any quantitative materiality guidelines. The threshold for materiality has been left to the subjective judgment of the company preparing the financial statements and its auditors.

Professional judgment determines what amount is material in each situation.

Materiality often relates to the nature of the item as well. It depends on qualitative as well as quantitative considerations. For example, an illegal payment of a \$10,000 bribe to an official of a foreign government to secure a valuable contract probably would be considered material qualitatively even if the amount is small relative to the size of the company. Similarly, a small dollar amount that changes a net loss to a net income for the reporting period could be viewed as material to financial statement users for qualitative reasons.

Faithful representation means agreement between a measure and a real-world phenomenon that the measure is supposed to represent.

A depiction is *complete* if it includes all information necessary for faithful representation.

Neutral implies freedom from bias.

FAITHFUL REPRESENTATION. **Faithful representation** exists when there is agreement between a measure or description and the phenomenon it purports to represent. For example, the term *inventory* in the balance sheet of a retail company is understood by external users to represent items that are intended for sale in the ordinary course of business. If inventory includes, say, accounts receivable, it lacks faithful representation.

To break it down further, faithful representation requires that information be *complete*, *neutral*, and *free from error*. A depiction of an economic phenomenon is **complete** if it includes all the information necessary for faithful representation of the economic phenomenon that it purports to represent. Omitting a portion of that information can cause it to be false or misleading.

A financial accounting standard, and the standard-setting process, is **neutral** if it is free from bias. You learned earlier that changes in accounting standards can lead to adverse economic consequences for certain companies and that political pressure is sometimes brought to bear on the standard-setting process in hopes of achieving particular outcomes. Accounting standards should be established with the goal of providing high-quality information, and should try not to achieve particular social outcomes or favor particular groups or companies.

Where We're Headed



A concern with existing materiality guidance is that many companies include unnecessary disclosures because they worry that their materiality judgments will be second guessed. As part of its ongoing disclosure framework project, the FASB has issued an exposure draft, titled "Assessing Whether Disclosures are Material" that is intended to clarify the concept of materiality. The exposure draft indicates that materiality is a legal concept that is applied to quantitative and qualitative disclosures individually and in combination in the context of the company's financial statements. It also clarifies that omitting immaterial information is not an accounting error. The changes proposed in the exposure draft are controversial because they could reduce the amount of information that companies disclose. The FASB has committed to seek more input before moving forward with this proposal.

The FASB faces a difficult task in maintaining neutrality in the face of economic consequences and resulting political pressures.

Representational faithfulness also is enhanced if information is **free from error**, meaning that there are no errors or omissions in the description of the amount or the process used to report the amount. Uncertainty is a fact of life when we measure many items of financial information included in financial statements. Estimates are common, and some inaccuracy is likely. An estimate is represented faithfully if it is described clearly and accurately as being an estimate, and financial statement users are given enough information to understand the potential for inaccuracy that exists.

Many accountants have recommended that we deal with the potential for error by employing **conservatism**. Conservatism means that accountants require greater verification before recognizing good news than bad news. The result is that losses are reflected in net income more quickly than are gains, and net assets tend to be biased downwards.

SFAC 8 explicitly rejects conservatism as a desirable characteristic of accounting information, stating that conservatism undermines representational faithfulness by being inconsistent with neutrality. Nevertheless, some accounting practices appear to be generated by a desire to be conservative. For example, companies are required to recognize losses for declines in the value of inventory, buildings and equipment, but aren't allowed to recognize gains for increases in those values. One justification for these practices is that investors and creditors who lose money on their investments are less likely to sue the company if bad news has been exaggerated and good news underestimated. Another justification is that conservative accounting can trigger debt covenants that allow creditors to protect themselves from bad management. So, despite the lack of support for conservatism in the conceptual framework, it is likely to persist as an important consideration in accounting practice and in the application of some accounting standards.

Information is **free from error** if it contains no errors or omissions.

Conservatism requires greater verification for good news than for bad news.

Enhancing Qualitative Characteristics

Illustration 1–11 identifies four *enhancing* qualitative characteristics, *comparability* (including *consistency*), *verifiability*, *timeliness*, and *understandability*.

Comparability helps users see similarities and differences between events and conditions. We already have discussed the importance of investors and creditors being able to compare information *among companies* to make their resource allocation decisions. Closely related to comparability is the notion that **consistency** of accounting practices over time permits valid comparisons *among different reporting periods*. The predictive and confirmatory value of information is enhanced if users can compare the performance of a company over time.³⁰ Companies typically include as Note 1 to the financial statements a Summary of significant accounting policies, and provide full disclosure of any changes in those policies to alert users to the potential for diminished consistency.

Verifiability implies that different knowledgeable and independent measurers would reach consensus regarding whether information is a faithful representation of what it is intended to depict. Direct verification involves observing the item being depicted. For example, the historical cost of a parcel of land to be reported in a company's balance sheet usually is highly verifiable. The cost can be traced to an exchange transaction, the purchase of the land. On the other hand, the fair value of that land is much more difficult to verify. Appraisers could differ in their assessment of fair value. Verification of their estimates would be indirect, involving examination of their valuation models and assessments of the reasonableness of model inputs. The term *objectivity* often is linked to verifiability. The historical cost of the land is objective and easy to verify, but the land's fair value is subjective, and may be influenced by the measurer's past experience and biases. A measurement that is subjective is more difficult to verify, which may make users doubt its representational faithfulness.

Timeliness also is important for information to be useful. Information is timely when it's available to users early enough to allow them to use it in their decision process. To enhance

Information is **comparable** if similar items are treated the same way and different items are treated differently.

Information is **consistent** if it is measured and reported the same way in each time period.

Information is **verifiable** if different measurers would reach consensus about whether it is representationally faithful.

Information is **timely** if it is available to users before a decision is made.

³⁰Companies occasionally do change their accounting practices, which makes it difficult for users to make comparisons among different reporting periods. Chapter 4 and Chapter 20 describe the disclosures that a company makes in this situation to restore consistency among periods.

Information is **understandable** if users can comprehend it.

Information is **cost effective** if the benefit of increased **decision usefulness** exceeds the costs of providing that information.

The costs of providing financial information include any possible adverse economic consequences of accounting standards.

The 10 elements of financial statements defined in **SFAC 6** describe financial position and periodic performance.

The **economic entity assumption** presumes that economic events can be identified with a particular economic entity.

timeliness, the SEC requires its registrants to submit financial statement information on a quarterly as well as on an annual basis for each fiscal year.

Understandability means that users must be able to comprehend the information within the context of the decision being made. This is a user-specific quality because users will differ in their ability to comprehend any set of information. The overriding objective of financial reporting is to provide comprehensible information to those who have a *reasonable understanding* of business and economic activities and are diligent in studying the information.

Key Constraint: Cost Effectiveness

Most of us learn early in life that we can't get everything we want. The latest electronic gadget may have all the qualitative characteristics that current technology can provide, but limited resources may lead us to buy a model with fewer bells and whistles. **Cost effectiveness** constrains the accounting choices we make. The benefits of endowing financial information with all the qualitative characteristics we've discussed must exceed the costs of doing so.

The costs of providing financial information include those of gathering, processing, and disseminating information. There also are costs to users when interpreting information. In addition, costs include possible adverse economic consequences of implementing accounting standards. For example, consider the requirement that companies having more than one operating segment must disclose certain disaggregated financial information.³¹ In addition to the costs of information gathering, processing, and communicating that information, many companies feel that this reporting requirement imposes what could be called *competitive disadvantage costs*. These companies are concerned that their competitors will gain some advantage from having access to the disaggregated data.

The perceived benefit from this or any accounting standard is increased *decision usefulness* of the information provided, which, ideally, improves the resource allocation process. It is inherently impossible to quantify this benefit. The elaborate information-gathering process undertaken by the FASB in setting accounting standards is an attempt to assess both costs and benefits of a proposed accounting standard, even if in a subjective, nonquantifiable manner.

Elements of Financial Statements

SFAC 6 defines 10 elements of financial statements. These elements are "the building blocks with which financial statements are constructed—the classes of items that financial statements comprise."³² They focus directly on items related to reporting financial position and measuring performance. The *accrual accounting* model is embodied in the element definitions. For now, we list and define the elements in Illustration 1–12. You will learn much more about these elements in subsequent chapters.

Underlying Assumptions

Though not emphasized in the FASB's concepts statements, four basic assumptions underlie GAAP: (1) the economic entity assumption, (2) the going concern assumption, (3) the periodicity assumption, and (4) the monetary unit assumption. These assumptions identify the entity that is being reported on, the assumption that the entity will continue to exist, and the frequency and denomination in which reports occur.

Illustration 1–13 summarizes the four assumptions underlying GAAP.

Economic Entity Assumption

The **economic entity assumption** presumes that all economic events can be identified with a particular **economic entity**. Investors desire information about an economic entity that

³¹FASB ASC 280: Segment Reporting (previously "Disclosures about Segments of an Enterprise and Related Information," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 131* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1997)).

³²"Elements of Financial Statements," *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 6* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1985), par. 5.

Illustration 1-12

Elements of Financial Statements

Elements of Financial Statements	
Assets	Probable future economic benefits obtained or controlled by a particular entity as a result of past transactions or events.
Liabilities	Probable future sacrifices of economic benefits arising from present obligations of a particular entity to transfer assets or provide services to other entities in the future as a result of past transactions or events.
Equity (or net assets)	Called shareholders' equity or stockholders' equity for a corporation, it is the residual interest in the assets of an entity that remains after deducting its liabilities.
Investments by owners	Increases in equity of a particular business enterprise resulting from transfers to it from other entities of something of value to obtain or increase ownership interests in it.
Distributions to owners	Decreases in equity of a particular enterprise resulting from transfers to owners.
Comprehensive income	The change in equity of a business enterprise during a period from transactions and other events and circumstances from nonowner sources. It includes all changes in equity during a period except those resulting from investments by owners and distributions to owners.
Revenues	Inflows or other enhancements of assets of an entity or settlements of its liabilities during a period from delivering or producing goods, rendering services, or other activities that constitute the entity's ongoing major or central operations.
Expenses	Outflows or other using up of assets or incurrences of liabilities during a period from delivering or producing goods, rendering services, or other activities that constitute the entity's ongoing major or central operations.
Gains	Increases in equity from peripheral or incidental transactions of an entity.
Losses	Represent decreases in equity arising from peripheral or incidental transactions of an entity.

Assumptions	Description
Economic entity	All economic events can be identified with a particular economic entity.
Going concern	In the absence of information to the contrary, it is anticipated that a business entity will continue to operate indefinitely.
Periodicity	The life of a company can be divided into artificial time periods to provide timely information to external users.
Monetary unit	In the United States, financial statement elements should be measured in terms of the U.S. dollar.

Illustration 1-13

Summary of Assumptions Underlying GAAP

corresponds to their ownership interest. For example, if you were considering buying some ownership stock in **Google**, you would want information on the various operating units that constitute Google. You would need information not only about its United States operations but also about its European and other international operations. The financial information for the various companies (subsidiaries) in which Google owns a controlling interest (greater than 50% ownership of voting stock) should be combined with that of Google (the parent) to provide a complete picture. The parent and its subsidiaries are separate *legal* entities but one *accounting* entity.

Another key aspect of this assumption is the distinction between the economic activities of owners and those of the company. For example, the economic activities of a sole proprietorship, Uncle Jim's Restaurant, should be separated from the activities of its owner, Uncle Jim. Uncle Jim's personal residence, for instance, is not an asset of the business.

The *going concern* assumption presumes that a business will operate indefinitely.

Going Concern Assumption

Another necessary assumption is that, in the absence of information to the contrary, we anticipate that a business entity will continue to operate indefinitely. Accountants realize that the **going concern assumption** does not always hold since there certainly are many business failures. However, this assumption is critical to many broad and specific accounting principles. For example, the assumption provides justification for measuring many assets based on their historical costs. If it were known that an enterprise would cease operations in the near future, assets and liabilities would be measured at their current liquidation values. Similarly, when we depreciate a building over an estimated life of 40 years, we assume the business will operate that long.

The *periodicity assumption* allows the life of a company to be divided into artificial time periods to provide timely information.

Periodicity Assumption

The **periodicity assumption** relates to the qualitative characteristic of *timeliness*. External users need *periodic* information to make decisions. This need for periodic information requires that the economic life of a company (presumed to be indefinite) be divided into artificial time periods for financial reporting. Corporations whose securities are publicly traded are required to provide financial information to the SEC on a quarterly and annual basis.³³ Financial statements often are prepared on a monthly basis for banks and others that might need more timely information.

For many companies, the annual time period (the fiscal year) is the calendar year. However, other companies have chosen a fiscal year that does not correspond to the calendar year. The accounting profession and the SEC advocate that companies adopt a fiscal year that corresponds to their natural business year. A natural business year is the 12-month period that ends when the business activities of a company reach their lowest point in the annual cycle. For example, many retailers, **Walmart** for example, have adopted a fiscal year ending on January 31. Business activity in January generally is quite slow following the very busy Christmas period. The **Campbell Soup Company**'s fiscal year ends in July; **Clorox**'s in June; and **Monsanto**'s in August.

The *monetary unit assumption* states that financial statement elements should be measured in a particular monetary unit (in the United States, the U.S. dollar).

Monetary Unit Assumption

The **monetary unit assumption** requires that financial statement elements be measured in nominal units of money, without any adjustment for changes in purchasing power. In the United States, the U.S. dollar is the monetary unit used in financial statements. In the EU, the euro is the monetary unit. Other countries use other currencies as their monetary units.

One problem with use of a monetary unit like the dollar or the euro is that it is presumed to be stable over time. That is, the value of the dollar, in terms of its ability to purchase certain goods and services, is assumed to be constant over time. This assumption obviously does not strictly hold. The U.S. economy has experienced periods of rapidly changing prices. To the extent that prices are unstable, and machines, trucks, and buildings were purchased at different times, the monetary unit used to measure them is not the same. The effect of changing prices on financial information generally is discussed elsewhere in your accounting curriculum, often in an advanced accounting course.

Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure Concepts

LO1-9

Now that we have identified the various elements and underlying assumptions of the financial statements, we discuss *when* the elements should be recognized (recorded) and how they should be *measured* and *disclosed*. For example, an asset was previously defined as a probable future economic benefit obtained or controlled by a company as a result of past transactions or events. But *when* should the asset be recorded, at *what* amount, and what other important information about the asset should be provided in the financial statements? *SFAC 5* addresses these issues. **Recognition** refers to the process of admitting information into the financial statements. **Measurement** is the process of associating numerical amounts

³³The report that must be filed for the first three quarters of each fiscal year is Form 10-Q and the annual report is Form 10-K.

with the elements. **Disclosure** refers to including pertinent information in the financial statements and accompanying notes.

Recognition

GENERAL RECOGNITION CRITERIA. According to *SFAC 5*, an item should be recognized in the basic financial statements when it meets the following four criteria, subject to a cost effectiveness constraint and materiality threshold:

Recognition criteria determine whether items should be included in the financial statements.

1. *Definition.* The item meets the definition of an element of financial statements.
2. *Measurability.* The item has a relevant attribute measurable with sufficient reliability.
3. *Relevance.* The information about it is capable of making a difference in user decisions.
4. *Reliability.* The information is representationally faithful, verifiable, and neutral.³⁴

SFAC 5 provides further guidance with respect to revenue and expense recognition, and you will learn about more specific guidelines throughout this book.

REVENUE RECOGNITION. **Revenues** are inflows of assets or settlements of liabilities resulting from providing a product or service to a customer. An income statement should report the results of these activities only for the time period specified in the financial statements. Therefore, the *timing* of revenue recognition is a key element of earnings measurement. Not adhering to revenue recognition criteria could result in overstating revenue and hence net income in one reporting period and, consequently, understating revenue and net income in another period.

Revenues are inflows of assets or settlements of liabilities as a result of providing goods or services to customers.

Until recently, revenue recognition was guided by the *realization principle*, which requires that two criteria be satisfied before revenue can be recognized:

1. The earnings process is judged to be complete or virtually complete.
2. There is reasonable certainty as to the collectibility of the asset to be received (usually cash).

As discussed further in Chapter 5, the FASB recently issued *ASU No. 2014-09*, which changes how we determine the timing and measurement of revenue.³⁵ That standard requires that companies recognize revenue when goods or services are transferred to customers for the amount the company expects to be entitled to receive in exchange for those goods or services. Revenue is recognized at a point in time or over a period of time, depending on when goods or services are transferred to customers. For example, revenue for the sale of most goods is recognized upon delivery, but revenue for services like renting apartments or lending money is recognized over time as those services are provided. No revenue is recognized if it isn't probable that the seller will collect the amounts it's entitled to receive. While that standard doesn't rely on the realization principle, you can see that aspects of the realization principle remain—we still focus on the seller fulfilling its obligations to its customers, and before revenue can be recognized we still require a relatively high likelihood that the seller will be paid.

Notice that these criteria help implement the accrual accounting model. Revenue is recognized when the seller transfers goods or services to a customer, which isn't necessarily at the same time the seller is paid by the customer.

The timing of revenue recognition also affects the timing of asset recognition. When revenue is recognized by crediting a revenue account, the corresponding debit typically increases some asset, usually cash or an account receivable.

EXPENSE RECOGNITION. **Expenses** are outflows or other using up of assets or incurrences of liabilities from providing goods or services. When are expenses recognized? In practice, expense recognition often matches revenues and expenses that arise from the same

Expenses are outflows or other using up of assets or incurrences of liabilities from providing goods and services.

³⁴“Recognition and Measurement in Financial Statements,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 5* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1984), par. 63. *SFAC 8* has replaced reliability with faithful representation as the second primary qualitative characteristic of financial information.

³⁵“Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606),” *Accounting Standards Update 2014–09* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2014).

transactions or other events.³⁶ There is a cause-and-effect relationship between revenue and expense recognition implicit in this approach. The net result is a measure—net income—that identifies the amount of profit or loss for the period provided by operations.

Although these concepts are straightforward, their implementation can be difficult, because many expenses are not incurred *directly* to produce a particular amount of revenue. Instead, the association between revenue and many expenses is indirect. Therefore, expense recognition is implemented by one of four different approaches, depending on the nature of the specific expense.³⁷

- **Based on an exact cause-and-effect relationship.** This approach is appropriate for *cost of goods sold*, as one example. There is a definite cause-and-effect relationship between **PetSmart**'s revenue from selling dog food and its costs to purchase that dog food from suppliers. Commissions paid to salespersons for obtaining revenues also is an example of an expense recognized based on this approach.
- **By associating an expense with the revenues recognized in a specific time period.** Many expenses can be related only to periods of time during which revenue is earned. For example, the monthly salary paid to an office worker is not directly related to any specific revenue event. Instead, the employee provides benefits to the company for that one month that *indirectly* relate to the revenue recognized in that same period.
- **By a systematic and rational allocation to specific time periods.** Some costs are incurred to acquire assets that provide benefits to the company for more than one reporting period, so we recognize expenses over those time periods. For example, straight-line depreciation is a "systematical and rational" way to allocate the cost of equipment to the periods in which that equipment is used to produce revenue.
- **In the period incurred, without regard to related revenues.** Sometimes costs are incurred, but it is impossible to determine in which period or periods, if any, related revenues will occur. For example, let's say **Google** spends \$1 million for a series of television commercials. It's difficult to determine when, how much, or even whether additional revenues occur as a result of that particular series of ads. As a result, we recognize advertising expenditures as expenses in the period incurred.

The timing of expense recognition also affects the timing of asset and liability recognition and de-recognition. When we debit an expense, the corresponding credit usually either decreases an asset (for example, decreasing cash because it was used to pay an employee's salary) or increases a liability (for example, increasing salaries payable to accrue wages that will be paid at a later date).

Measurement

If an amount is to be recognized, it also must be measured. As indicated in *SFAC 5*, GAAP currently employs a "mixed attribute" measurement model. If you look at a balance sheet, for instance, you might see land measured at historical cost, accounts receivable at net realizable value, a liability at the present value of future cash payments, and an investment at fair value. The attribute chosen to measure a particular item should be the one that maximizes the combination of relevance and representational faithfulness. *SFAC 5* lists five measurement attributes employed in GAAP:

1. Historical cost
2. Net realizable value
3. Current cost

³⁶The term *matching principle* is sometimes used to refer to the practice of first recognizing revenue and then recognizing all expenses that were incurred to generate that revenue. However, the conceptual framework does not include that term. Rather, *SFACs 5* and *6* discuss matching as a result of recognizing expenses and revenues that arise from the same underlying transactions or events. Standard setters are reluctant to apply matching more broadly, because they are concerned that doing so could result in inappropriately recognizing as assets some amounts that do not provide "probable future economic benefits," and therefore don't meet the definition of an asset. We discuss this topic more in the "Evolving GAAP" section at the end of this chapter.

³⁷"Elements of Financial Statements—a replacement of FASB Concepts Statement No. 3 (incorporating an amendment of FASB Concepts Statement No. 2)," *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 6* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1985).

4. Present (or discounted) value of future cash flows
5. Fair value

These different measurement attributes often indicate the same amount, particularly when the amount is initially recognized. However, sometimes they differ in important ways.

HISTORICAL COST. We often measure assets and liabilities based on their *original transaction value*, that is, their **historical cost**. Some accountants refer to this practice as applying the *historical cost principle*. For an asset, historical cost equals the value of what is given in exchange (usually cash) for the asset at its initial acquisition. For liabilities, it is the current cash equivalent received in exchange for assuming the liability. Historical cost for long-lived, revenue-producing assets such as equipment typically is adjusted subsequent to its initial measurement by recognizing depreciation or amortization.

Why base measurement on historical costs? First, historical cost provides important cash flow information as it represents the cash or cash equivalent paid for an asset or received in exchange for the assumption of a liability. Second, because historical cost valuation is the result of an exchange transaction between two independent parties, the agreed-upon exchange value is objective and highly verifiable.

NET REALIZABLE VALUE. Some assets are measured at their **net realizable value**, which is defined by the FASB as the estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business, less reasonably predictable costs of completion, disposal, and transportation. Intuitively, net realizable value is the amount of cash into which an asset is expected to be converted in the ordinary course of business. For example, if inventory could be sold for \$10,000, and the company would incur additional costs of \$2,000 to complete it and transport it to a customer, the inventory's net realizable value is \$8,000. Departures from historical cost measurement such as this provide useful information to aid in the prediction of future cash flows.

CURRENT COST. Companies sometimes report **current costs**, particularly if they operate in inflationary economies. The current cost of an asset is the cost that would be incurred to purchase or reproduce the asset.

PRESENT VALUE. Because of its importance to many accounting measurements, **present value** is the focus of a FASB concept statement, *SFAC 7*, which provides a framework for using future cash flows as the basis for accounting measurement and also indicates that the objective in valuing an asset or liability using present value is to approximate its fair value.³⁸ We explore the topic of present value in depth in Chapter 6 and the application of present value in accounting measurement in subsequent chapters.

FAIR VALUE. We measure many financial assets and liabilities at **fair value** (called *current market value* originally in *SFAC 5*). Also, we use fair values when determining whether the value of nonfinancial assets like property, plant, equipment and intangible assets has been impaired. Given the complexity and growing importance of this measurement attribute, we discuss it in some detail.

Fair value is defined as the price that would be received to sell assets or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. A key aspect of this definition is its focus on the perspective of *market participants*. For instance, if a company buys a competitor's patent, not intending to use it but merely to keep the competitor from using it, the company still will have to assign a value to the asset because a market participant would find value in using the patent.

The FASB has provided a framework for measuring fair value whenever fair value is called for in applying generally accepted accounting principles.³⁹ The IASB recently

Historical cost bases measurements on the amount given or received in the original exchange transaction.

Net realizable value bases measurements on the amount of cash into which the asset or liability will be converted in the ordinary course of business.

Current cost is the cost that would be incurred to purchase or reproduce an asset.

Present value bases measurement on future cash flows discounted for the time value of money.

Fair value bases measurements on the price that would be received to sell assets or transfer liabilities in an orderly market transaction.

³⁸“Using Cash Flow Information and Present Value in Accounting Measurements,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 7* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2000).

³⁹FASB ASC 820: Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures (previously “Fair Value Measurements,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 157* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2006)).

Fair value can be measured using:

1. Market approaches.
2. Income approaches.
3. Cost approaches.

converged to use the same framework.⁴⁰ In the framework, three types of valuation techniques can be used to measure fair value. *Market approaches* base valuation on market information. For example, the value of a share of a company's stock that's not traded actively could be estimated by multiplying the earnings of that company by the P/E (price of shares/ earnings) multiples of similar companies. *Income approaches* estimate fair value by first estimating future amounts (for example, earnings or cash flows) and then mathematically converting those amounts to a single present value. You will see how to apply such techniques in Chapter 6 when we discuss time value of money concepts. *Cost approaches* determine value by estimating the amount that would be required to buy or construct an asset of similar quality and condition. A firm can use one or more of these valuation approaches, depending on availability of information, and should try to use them consistently unless changes in circumstances require a change in approach.

To increase consistency and comparability in applying this definition, the framework provides a "hierarchy" that prioritizes the inputs companies should use when determining fair value. The priority is based on three broad preference levels. The higher the level (Level 1 is the highest), the more preferable the input. The framework encourages companies to strive to obtain the highest level input available for each situation. Illustration 1–14 describes the type of inputs and provides an example for each level.

Companies also must provide detailed disclosures about their use of fair value measurements. The disclosures include a description of the inputs used to measure fair value. For recurring fair value measurements that rely on significant *unobservable* inputs (within Level 3 of the fair value hierarchy), companies should disclose the effect of the measurements on earnings (or changes in net assets) for the period.

Illustration 1–14

Fair Value Hierarchy

Fair Value Hierarchy		
Level	Inputs	Example
1 Most Desirable	Quoted market prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.	In Chapter 12 you will learn that certain investments in marketable securities are reported at their <i>fair values</i> . Fair value in this case would be measured using the quoted market price from the NYSE, NASDAQ, or other exchange on which the security is traded.
2	Inputs other than quoted prices that are <i>observable</i> for the asset or liability. These inputs include quoted prices for <i>similar</i> assets or liabilities in active or inactive markets and inputs that are derived principally from or corroborated by observable related market data.	In Chapter 10 we discuss how companies sometimes acquire assets with consideration other than cash. In any noncash transaction, each element of the transaction is recorded at its <i>fair value</i> . If one of the assets in the exchange is a building, for instance, then quoted market prices for similar buildings recently sold could be used to value the building or, if there were no similar buildings recently exchanged from which to obtain a comparable market price, valuation could be based on the price per square foot derived from observable market data.
3 Least Desirable	<i>Unobservable</i> inputs that reflect the entity's own assumptions about the assumptions market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability developed based on the best information available in the circumstances.	Asset retirement obligations (AROs), discussed in Chapter 10, are measured at <i>fair value</i> . Neither Level 1 nor Level 2 inputs would be possible in most ARO valuation situations. Fair value would be estimated using Level 3 inputs to include the present value of expected cash flows estimated using the entity's own data if there is no information indicating that market participants would use different assumptions.

⁴⁰"Fair Value Measurement," *International Financial Reporting Standard No. 13* (London, UK: IASCF, 2011).

The use of the fair value measurement attribute is increasing, both under U.S. GAAP and IFRS. This trend, though, is controversial. Proponents of fair value cite its relevance and are convinced that historical cost information may not be useful for many types of decisions. Opponents of fair value counter that estimates of fair value may lack representational faithfulness, particularly when based on inputs from Level 3 in the fair value hierarchy, and that managers might be tempted to exploit the unverifiability of such inputs to manipulate earnings. They argue that accounting should emphasize verifiability by recognizing only those gains and other increases in fair value that actually have been realized in transactions or are virtually certain to exist.

FAIR VALUE OPTION. Usually the measurement attribute we use for a particular financial statement item is not subject to choice. However, GAAP allows a **fair value option** in some circumstances which permits companies to choose whether to report *financial* assets and liabilities at fair value.⁴¹ For example, in Chapter 14 you will learn that a company normally would report bonds payable at historical cost (adjusted for unamortized premium or discount), but the fair value option allows that company to choose instead to report the bonds payable at fair value. If a company chooses the fair value option, future changes in fair value are reported as gains and losses in the income statement.

Why allow the fair value option for financial assets and liabilities, and not for, say, buildings or land? Financial assets and liabilities are cash and other assets and liabilities that convert directly into known amounts of cash. These include investments in stocks and bonds of other entities, notes receivable and payable, bonds payable, and derivative securities.⁴² Some of these financial assets and liabilities currently are *required* under GAAP to be reported at fair value, and others are not, leading to some potential inconsistencies in how similar or related items are treated. The fair value option provides companies a way to reduce volatility in reported earnings without having to comply with complex hedge accounting standards. It also helps in the convergence with international accounting standards we discussed earlier in the chapter as the IASB also has adopted a fair value option for financial instruments.

The **fair value option** lets companies choose whether to value some financial assets and liabilities at fair value.



Disclosure

Remember, the purpose of accounting is to provide information that is useful to decision makers. So, naturally, if there is accounting information not included in the primary financial statements that would benefit users, that information should be provided too. The **full-disclosure principle** means that the financial reports should include any information that could affect the decisions made by external users. Of course, the benefits of that information should exceed the costs of providing the information. Such information is disclosed in a variety of ways, including:

1. **Parenthetical comments** or **modifying comments** placed on the face of the financial statements.
2. **Disclosure notes** conveying additional insights about company operations, accounting principles, contractual agreements, and pending litigation.
3. **Supplemental schedules and tables** that report more detailed information than is shown in the primary financial statements.

We discuss and illustrate disclosure requirements as they relate to specific financial statement elements in later chapters as those elements are discussed.

Illustration 1–15 provides an overview of key recognition, measurement and disclosure concepts.

The **full-disclosure principle** requires that any information useful to decision makers be provided in the financial statements, subject to the cost effectiveness constraint.

⁴¹FASB ASC 825–10–25–1: Financial Instruments—Overall—Recognition—Fair Value Option (previously “The Fair Value Option for Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 159* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2007)).

⁴²The fair value option does not apply to certain specified financial instruments, including pension obligations and assets or liabilities arising from leases.

Illustration 1-15

Summary of Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure Concepts

Concept	Description
Recognition	<p>General criteria:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Meets the definition of an element 2. Has a measurement attribute 3. Is relevant 4. Is reliable (representationally faithful) <p>Examples of recognition timing:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Revenues 2. Expenses
Measurement	<p>Mixed attribute model in which the attribute used to measure an item is chosen to maximize relevance and representational faithfulness. These attributes include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Historical cost 2. Net realizable value 3. Current cost 4. Present (or discounted) value of future cash flows 5. Fair value
Disclosure	<p>Financial reports should include all information that could affect the decisions made by external users.</p> <p>Examples of disclosures:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Parenthetical amounts 2. Notes to the financial statements 3. Supplemental schedules and tables

Where We're Headed



"Disclosure overload" is a frequent complaint by companies and investors alike. The notes to the financial statements can be very useful, but they are costly for companies to prepare and difficult for many users to sift through and understand. In response to that concern, the FASB has been developing a framework intended to make disclosures more effective and less redundant.

As part of that project, in March 2014 the FASB issued an exposure draft of a proposed addition to Concepts Statement No. 8, titled *Chapter 8: Notes to Financial Statements*.⁴³ The exposure draft describes three types of information that should be included in the notes to financial statements:

1. General information about the nature of the company, its activities, and any special advantages it enjoys or restrictions it faces.
2. Additional information that explains or amplifies financial statement line items.
3. Information about past events and current circumstances that might affect the company's future cash flows but don't yet appear in the financial statements.

The exposure draft also suggests a series of questions that the FASB and its staff should consider when determining what notes should be required by new standards. A separate part of the project will develop further guidance to help companies apply judgment when meeting disclosure requirements. The next step is for the FASB to deliberate on the comments received in response to its exposure draft.

⁴³ *Proposed Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts: Chapter 8: Notes to Financial Statements* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, March 4, 2014).

Evolving GAAP

● LO1–10

Earlier in this chapter you learned that the convergence of accounting standards with international standards is having a profound effect on financial reporting in the United States. More broadly, U.S. and international GAAP have been evolving over time from an emphasis on revenues and expenses to an emphasis on assets and liabilities. Of course, you know from introductory accounting that the balance sheet and income statement are intertwined and must reconcile with each other. For example, the revenues reported in the income statement depict inflows of assets whose balances at a particular point in time are reported in the balance sheet. But which comes first, identifying revenues and expenses, or identifying assets and liabilities? That emphasis can affect accounting standards in important ways. To help you understand the changes taking place, we start by discussing the revenue/expense approach and then discuss the asset/liability approach.

Under the **revenue/expense approach**, we emphasize principles for recognizing revenues and expenses, with some assets and liabilities recognized as necessary to make the balance sheet reconcile with the income statement. For example, when accounting for a sales transaction our focus would be on whether revenue has been earned, and if we determine that to be the case, we would record an asset (usually cash or accounts receivable) that is associated with the revenue.⁴⁴ We would identify the expenses necessary to earn that revenue, and then would adjust assets and liabilities accordingly.

With the revenue/expense approach, recognition and measurement of revenues and expenses are emphasized.

Under the **asset/liability approach**, on the other hand, we first recognize and measure the assets and liabilities that exist at a balance sheet date and, secondly, recognize and measure the revenues, expenses, gains and losses needed to account for the changes in these assets and liabilities from the previous measurement date. Proponents of this approach point out that, since revenues and expenses are defined in terms of inflows and outflows of assets and liabilities, the fundamental concepts underlying accounting are assets and liabilities. Therefore, we should try to recognize and measure assets and liabilities appropriately, and as a result will also capture their inflows and outflows in a manner that provides relevant and representationally faithful information about revenues and expenses.

With the asset/liability approach, recognition and measurement of assets and liabilities drives revenue and expense recognition.

For example, when accounting for a sales transaction, our focus would be on whether a potential accounts receivable meets the definition of an asset (a probable future economic benefit). We would consider such factors as whether the receivable is supported by an enforceable contract and whether the seller has performed its obligations enough to be able to expect receipt of cash flows. The key would be determining if the seller has an asset, and then recognizing whatever amount of revenue is implied by the inflow of that asset. Also, we would not attempt to match expenses to revenues. Rather, we would determine those net assets that had decreased as part of operations during the period, and recognize those decreases as expenses.

In subsequent chapters you will see that recent standards involving accounting for revenue, investments, and income taxes follow this asset/liability approach. These changes are controversial. It may seem like it shouldn't matter whether standard setters use the revenue/expense or asset/liability approach, given that both approaches affect both the income statement and balance sheet, and it is true that these approaches often will result in the same accounting outcomes. For example, whether matching is a principle used to determine when expenses are recognized, or a result of recognizing that assets were consumed as part of the economic activity that occurred in a particular period in which revenue was also recognized, we typically still will see expenses recognized in the periods in which they are incurred to produce revenues. However, the particular approach used by a standard setter can affect recognition and measurement in important ways. In particular, the asset/liability approach encourages us to focus on accurately measuring assets and liabilities. It perhaps is not surprising, then, that a focus on assets and liabilities has led standard setters to lean more and more toward fair value measurement. The future changes to the conceptual framework discussed in the following Where We're Headed box are likely to continue this emphasis on the asset/liability approach.

⁴⁴Some assets and liabilities aren't related to revenue or expense. For example, issuance of shares of stock increases cash as well as shareholders' equity. The treatment of these sorts of transactions is not affected by whether GAAP emphasizes revenues and expenses or assets and liabilities.

Where We're Headed



Since 2010, the FASB and IASB worked separately on their conceptual frameworks. The FASB has worked on relatively narrow projects, such as the definition of materiality and a more general disclosure framework. The IASB, in contrast, has moved forward with a more comprehensive overhaul of its conceptual framework. The IASB's 2015 exposure draft of its concepts statement addressed a range of issues, including the objective and qualitative characteristics of financial reporting, the definitions of key financial-statement elements, when to recognize and de-recognize assets and liabilities, when to use various measurement approaches, the distinction between net income and other comprehensive income, and what constitutes a reporting entity. The IASB anticipates issuing a concepts statement sometime in 2016.

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© Lev Dolgachov/Syda Productions/
age fotostock

1. **What should you tell your friend about the presence of accounting standards in the United States? Who has the authority for standard setting? Who has the responsibility?** (p. 8) In the United States we have a set of standards known as generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). GAAP is a dynamic set of both broad and specific guidelines that companies should follow when measuring and reporting the information in their financial statements and related notes. The Securities and Exchange Commission has the authority to set accounting standards for companies whose securities are publicly traded but it relies on the private sector to accomplish that task. At present, the Financial Accounting Standards Board is the private sector body responsible for standard setting.
2. **What is the economic and political environment in which standard setting occurs?** (p. 13) The setting of accounting and reporting standards often has been characterized as a *political process*. Standards, particularly changes in standards, can have significant differential effects on companies, investors and creditors, and other interest groups. A change in an accounting standard or the introduction of a new standard can result in a substantial redistribution of wealth within our economy. The FASB's due process is designed to obtain information from all interested parties to help determine the appropriate accounting approach, but standards are supposed to be neutral with respect to the interests of various parties. Nonetheless, both the FASB and IASB sometimes come under political pressure that sways the results of the standard-setting process.
3. **What is the relationship among management, auditors, investors, and creditors that tends to preclude the "What would you like it to be?" attitude?** (p. 15) It is the responsibility of management to apply accounting standards when communicating with investors and creditors through financial statements. Auditors serve as independent intermediaries to help ensure that the management-prepared statements are presented fairly in accordance with GAAP. In providing this assurance, the auditor precludes the "What would you like it to be?" attitude.
4. **In general, what is the conceptual framework that underlies accounting principles?** (p. 20) The conceptual framework is a coherent system of interrelated objectives and fundamentals that can lead to consistent standards and that prescribe the nature, function, and limits of financial accounting and reporting. The fundamentals are the underlying concepts of accounting, concepts that guide the selection of events to be accounted for, the measurement of those events, and the means of summarizing and communicating them to interested parties. ●

The Bottom Line

- LO1-1 Financial accounting is concerned with providing relevant financial information to various external users. However, the primary focus is on the financial information provided by profit-oriented companies to their present and potential investors and creditors. (p. 3)
- LO1-2 Cash basis accounting provides a measure of periodic performance called *net operating cash flow*, which is the difference between cash receipts and cash disbursements from transactions related to providing goods and services to customers. Accrual accounting provides a measure of performance called *net income*, which is the difference between revenues and expenses. Periodic net income is considered a better indicator of future operating cash flows than is current net operating cash flows. (p. 7)
- LO1-3 Generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) comprise a dynamic set of both broad and specific guidelines that companies follow when measuring and reporting the information in their financial statements and related notes. The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) has the authority to set accounting standards in the United States. However, the SEC has always delegated the task to a private sector body, at this time the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB). The International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) sets global accounting standards and works with national accounting standard setters to achieve convergence in accounting standards around the world. (p. 9)
- LO1-4 Accounting standards can have significant differential effects on companies, investors, creditors, and other interest groups. Various interested parties sometimes lobby standard setters for their preferred outcomes. For this reason, the setting of accounting standards often has been characterized as a political process. (p. 13)
- LO1-5 Factors encouraging high-quality financial reporting include conceptually based financial accounting standards, external auditors, financial reporting reforms (such as the Sarbanes-Oxley Act), ethical management, and professional accounting organizations that prescribe ethical conduct and license practitioners. (p. 15)
- LO1-6 The FASB's conceptual framework is a set of cohesive objectives and fundamental concepts on which financial accounting and reporting standards can be based. (p. 19)
- LO1-7 The objective of financial reporting is to provide useful financial information to capital providers. The primary decision-specific qualities that make financial information useful are relevance and faithful representation. To be relevant, information must possess predictive value and/or confirmatory value, and all material information should be included. Completeness, neutrality, and freedom from error enhance faithful representation. The 10 elements of financial statements are assets, liabilities, equity, investments by owners, distributions to owners, revenues, expenses, gains, losses, and comprehensive income. (p. 21)
- LO1-8 The four basic assumptions underlying GAAP are (1) the economic entity assumption, (2) the going concern assumption, (3) the periodicity assumption, and (4) the monetary unit assumption. (p. 24)
- LO1-9 Recognition determines whether an item is reflected in the financial statements, and measurement determines the amount of the item. Measurement involves choice of a monetary unit and choice of a measurement attribute. In the United States, the monetary unit is the dollar. Various measurement attributes are used in GAAP, including historical cost, net realizable value, current cost, present value, and fair value. (p. 26)
- LO1-10 A revenue/expense approach to financial reporting emphasizes recognition and measurement of revenues and expenses, while an asset/liability approach emphasizes recognition and measurement of assets and liabilities. (p. 33)
- LO1-11 IFRS and U.S. GAAP are similar in the organizations that support standard setting and in the presence of ongoing political pressures on the standard-setting process. U.S. GAAP and IFRS also have similar conceptual frameworks, although the role of the conceptual framework in IFRS is to provide guidance to preparers as well as to standard setters, while the role of the conceptual framework in U.S. GAAP is more to provide guidance to standard setters. (pp. 14 and 20) ●

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 1-1** What is the function and primary focus of financial accounting?
- Q 1-2** What is meant by the phrase *efficient allocation of resources*? What mechanism fosters the efficient allocation of resources in the United States?
- Q 1-3** Identify two important variables to be considered when making an investment decision.
- Q 1-4** What must a company do in the long run to be able to provide a return to investors and creditors?
- Q 1-5** What is the primary objective of financial accounting?
- Q 1-6** Define net operating cash flows. Briefly explain why periodic net operating cash flows may not be a good indicator of future operating cash flows.
- Q 1-7** What is meant by GAAP? Why should all companies follow GAAP in reporting to external users?
- Q 1-8** Explain the roles of the SEC and the FASB in the setting of accounting standards.
- Q 1-9** Explain the role of the auditor in the financial reporting process.
- Q 1-10** List three key provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002. Order your list from most important to least important in terms of the likely long-term impact on the accounting profession and financial reporting.
- Q 1-11** Explain what is meant by *adverse economic consequences* of new or changed accounting standards.
- Q 1-12** Why does the FASB undertake a series of elaborate information-gathering steps before issuing a substantive accounting standard?
- Q 1-13** What is the purpose of the FASB's conceptual framework?
- Q 1-14** Discuss the terms *relevance* and *faithful representation* as they relate to financial accounting information.
- Q 1-15** What are the components of relevant information? What are the components of faithful representation?
- Q 1-16** Explain what is meant by: The benefits of accounting information must exceed the costs.
- Q 1-17** What is meant by the term *materiality* in financial reporting?
- Q 1-18** Briefly define the financial accounting elements: (1) assets, (2) liabilities, (3) equity, (4) investments by owners, (5) distributions to owners, (6) revenues, (7) expenses, (8) gains, (9) losses, and (10) comprehensive income.
- Q 1-19** What are the four basic assumptions underlying GAAP?
- Q 1-20** What is the going concern assumption?
- Q 1-21** Explain the periodicity assumption.
- Q 1-22** What are four key accounting practices that often are referred to as principles in current GAAP?
- Q 1-23** What are two advantages to basing the valuation of assets and liabilities on their historical cost?
- Q 1-24** Describe how revenue recognition relates to transferring goods or services.
- Q 1-25** What are the four different approaches to implementing expense recognition? Give an example of an expense that is recognized under each approach.
- Q 1-26** In addition to the financial statement elements arrayed in the basic financial statements, what are some other ways to disclose financial information to external users?
- Q 1-27** Briefly describe the inputs that companies should use when determining fair value. Organize your answer according to preference levels, from highest to lowest priority.
- Q 1-28** What measurement attributes are commonly used in financial reporting?
- Q 1-29** Distinguish between the revenue/expense and the asset/liability approaches to setting financial reporting standards.
-  **IFRS Q 1-30** What are the functions of the conceptual framework under IFRS?
-  **IFRS Q 1-31** What is the standard-setting body responsible for determining IFRS? How does it obtain its funding?
-  **IFRS Q 1-32** In its Final Staff Report (issued in 2012), what type of convergence between U.S. GAAP and IFRS did the SEC staff argue was not feasible? What reasons did the SEC staff give for that conclusion?

Brief Exercises



BE 1-1

Accrual
accounting

LO1-2

Cash flows during the first year of operations for the Harman-Kardon Consulting Company were as follows: Cash collected from customers, \$340,000; Cash paid for rent, \$40,000; Cash paid to employees for services rendered during the year, \$120,000; Cash paid for utilities, \$50,000.

In addition, you determine that customers owed the company \$60,000 at the end of the year and no bad debts were anticipated. Also, the company owed the gas and electric company \$2,000 at year-end, and the rent payment was for a two-year period. Calculate accrual net income for the year.

BE 1-2

Financial statement elements

• LO1-7

For each of the following items, identify the appropriate financial statement element or elements: (1) probable future sacrifices of economic benefits; (2) probable future economic benefits owned by the company; (3) inflows of assets from ongoing, major activities; (4) decrease in equity from peripheral or incidental transactions.

BE 1-3

Basic assumptions and principles

• LO1-7 through LO1-9

Listed below are several statements that relate to financial accounting and reporting. Identify the accounting concept that applies to each statement.

1. **SiriusXM Radio Inc.** files its annual and quarterly financial statements with the SEC.
2. The president of **Applebee's International, Inc.**, travels on the corporate jet for business purposes only and does not use the jet for personal use.
3. Jackson Manufacturing does not recognize revenue for unshipped merchandise even though the merchandise has been manufactured according to customer specifications.
4. Lady Jane Cosmetics depreciates the cost of equipment over their useful lives.

BE 1-4

Basic assumptions and principles

• LO1-7 through LO1-9

Identify the accounting concept that was violated in each of the following situations.

1. Astro Turf Company recognizes an expense, cost of goods sold, in the period the product is manufactured.
2. McCloud Drug Company owns a patent that it purchased three years ago for \$2 million. The controller recently revalued the patent to its approximate market value of \$8 million.
3. Philips Company pays the monthly mortgage on the home of its president, Larry Crosswhite, and charges the expenditure to miscellaneous expense.

BE 1-5

Basic assumptions and principles

• LO1-7 through LO1-9

For each of the following situations, (1) indicate whether you agree or disagree with the financial reporting practice employed and (2) state the accounting concept that is applied (if you agree), or violated (if you disagree).

1. Winderl Corporation did not disclose that it was the defendant in a material lawsuit because the trial was still in progress.
2. Alliant Semiconductor Corporation files quarterly and annual financial statements with the SEC.
3. Reliant Pharmaceutical paid rent on its office building for the next two years and charged the entire expenditure to rent expense.
4. Rockville Engineering records revenue only after products have been shipped, even though customers pay Rockville 50% of the sales price in advance.

BE 1-6

IFRS

• LO1-11



Indicate the organization related to IFRS that performs each of the following functions:

1. Obtains funding for the IFRS standard-setting process.
2. Determines IFRS.
3. Oversees the IFRS Foundation.
4. Provides input about the standard-setting agenda.
5. Provides implementation guidance about relatively narrow issues.

Exercises

**E 1-1**

Accrual accounting

• LO1-2

Listed below are several transactions that took place during the first two years of operations for the law firm of Pete, Pete, and Roy.

	Year 1	Year 2
Amounts billed to clients for services rendered	\$170,000	\$220,000
Cash collected from clients	160,000	190,000
Cash disbursements		
Salaries paid to employees for services rendered during the year	90,000	100,000
Utilities	30,000	40,000
Purchase of insurance policy	60,000	—0—

In addition, you learn that the firm incurred utility costs of \$35,000 in year 1, that there were no liabilities at the end of year 2, no anticipated bad debts on receivables, and that the insurance policy covers a three-year period.

Required:

1. Calculate the net operating cash flow for years 1 and 2.
2. Prepare an income statement for each year similar to Illustration 1–4 according to the accrual accounting model.
3. Determine the amount of receivables from clients that the firm would show in its year 1 and year 2 balance sheets prepared according to the accrual accounting model.

E 1–2

Accrual
accounting

• LO1–2

Listed below are several transactions that took place during the second and third years of operations for the RPG Company.

	Year 2	Year 3
Amounts billed to customers for services rendered	\$350,000	\$450,000
Cash collected from credit customers	260,000	400,000
Cash disbursements:		
Payment of rent	80,000	–0–
Salaries paid to employees for services rendered during the year	140,000	160,000
Travel and entertainment	30,000	40,000
Advertising	15,000	35,000

In addition, you learn that the company incurred advertising costs of \$25,000 in year 2, owed the advertising agency \$5,000 at the end of year 1, and there were no liabilities at the end of year 3. Also, there were no anticipated bad debts on receivables, and the rent payment was for a two-year period, year 2 and year 3.

Required:

1. Calculate accrual net income for both years.
2. Determine the amount due the advertising agency that would be shown as a liability on RPG's balance sheet at the end of year 2.

E 1–3

FASB codification
research

• LO1–3



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).

Required:

1. Identify the Codification topic number that provides guidance on fair value measurements.
2. What is the specific citation that lists the disclosures required in the notes to the financial statements for each major category of assets and liabilities measured at fair value?
3. List the disclosure requirements.

E 1–4

FASB codification
research

• LO1–3



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for each of the following items:

1. The topic number for business combinations
2. The topic number for related party disclosures
3. The topic, subtopic, and section number for the initial measurement of internal-use software
4. The topic, subtopic, and section number for the subsequent measurement of asset retirement obligations
5. The topic, subtopic, and section number for the recognition of stock compensation

E 1–5

Participants in
establishing
GAAP

• LO1–3

Three groups that participate in the process of establishing GAAP are users, preparers, and auditors. These groups are represented by various organizations. For each organization listed below, indicate which of these groups it primarily represents.

1. Securities and Exchange Commission
2. Financial Executives International
3. American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
4. Institute of Management Accountants
5. Association of Investment Management and Research

E 1–6

Financial
statement
elements

• LO1–7

For each of the items listed below, identify the appropriate financial statement element or elements.

1. Obligation to transfer cash or other resources as a result of a past transaction
2. Dividends paid by a corporation to its shareholders
3. Inflow of an asset from providing a good or service
4. The financial position of a company
5. Increase in equity during a period from nonowner transactions
6. Increase in equity from peripheral or incidental transaction
7. Sale of an asset used in the operations of a business for less than the asset's book value

8. The owners' residual interest in the assets of a company
9. An item owned by the company representing probable future benefits
10. Revenues plus gains less expenses and losses
11. An owner's contribution of cash to a corporation in exchange for ownership shares of stock
12. Outflow of an asset related to the production of revenue

E 1-7

Concepts;
terminology;
conceptual
framework

● LO1-7

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with the FASB's conceptual framework. Pair each item from List A (by letter) with the item from List B that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. Predictive value	a. Decreases in equity resulting from transfers to owners.
_____ 2. Relevance	b. Requires consideration of the costs and value of information.
_____ 3. Timeliness	c. Important for making interfirm comparisons.
_____ 4. Distribution to owners	d. Applying the same accounting practices over time.
_____ 5. Confirmatory value	e. Users understand the information in the context of the decision being made.
_____ 6. Understandability	f. Agreement between a measure and the phenomenon it purports to represent.
_____ 7. Gain	g. Information is available prior to the decision.
_____ 8. Faithful representation	h. Pertinent to the decision at hand.
_____ 9. Comprehensive income	i. Implies consensus among different measurers.
_____ 10. Materiality	j. Information confirms expectations.
_____ 11. Comparability	k. The change in equity from nonowner transactions.
_____ 12. Neutrality	l. The process of admitting information into financial statements.
_____ 13. Recognition	m. The absence of bias.
_____ 14. Consistency	n. Increases in equity from peripheral or incidental transactions of an entity.
_____ 15. Cost effectiveness	o. Information is useful in predicting the future.
_____ 16. Verifiability	p. Concerns the relative size of an item and its effect on decisions.

E 1-8

Qualitative
characteristics

● LO1-7

The conceptual framework indicates the desired fundamental and enhancing qualitative characteristics of accounting information. Several constraints impede achieving these desired characteristics. Answer each of the following questions related to these characteristics and constraints.

1. Which component would allow a large company to record the purchase of a \$120 printer as an expense rather than capitalizing the printer as an asset?
2. Donald Kirk, former chairman of the FASB, once noted that "... there must be public confidence that the standard-setting system is credible, that selection of board members is based on merit and not the influence of special interests" Which characteristic is implicit in Mr. Kirk's statement?
3. Allied Appliances, Inc., changed its revenue recognition policies. Which characteristic is jeopardized by this change?
4. National Bancorp, a publicly traded company, files quarterly and annual financial statements with the SEC. Which characteristic is relevant to the timing of these periodic filings?
5. In general, relevant information possesses which qualities?
6. When there is agreement between a measure or description and the phenomenon it purports to represent, information possesses which characteristic?
7. Jeff Brown is evaluating two companies for future investment potential. Jeff's task is made easier because both companies use the same accounting methods when preparing their financial statements. Which characteristic does the information Jeff will be using possess?
8. A company should disclose information only if the perceived benefits of the disclosure exceed the costs of providing the information. Which constraint does this statement describe?

E 1-9

Basic
assumptions,
principles, and
constraints

● LO1-7 through
LO1-9

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with the accounting concepts. Pair each item from List A (by letter) with the item from List B that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. Expense recognition	a. The enterprise is separate from its owners and other entities.
_____ 2. Periodicity	b. A common denominator is the dollar.
_____ 3. Historical cost principle	c. The entity will continue indefinitely.
_____ 4. Materiality	d. Record expenses in the period the related revenue is recognized.
_____ 5. Revenue recognition	e. The original transaction value upon acquisition.
_____ 6. Going concern assumption	f. All information that could affect decisions should be reported.
_____ 7. Monetary unit assumption	g. The life of an enterprise can be divided into artificial time periods.
_____ 8. Economic entity assumption	h. Criteria usually satisfied for products at point of sale.
_____ 9. Full-disclosure principle	i. Concerns the relative size of an item and its effect on decisions.

E 1-10

Basic assumptions and principles

● LO1-7 through LO1-9

Listed below are several statements that relate to financial accounting and reporting. Identify the accounting concept that applies to each statement.

1. Jim Marley is the sole owner of Marley's Appliances. Jim borrowed \$100,000 to buy a new home to be used as his personal residence. This liability was not recorded in the records of Marley's Appliances.
2. **Apple Inc.** distributes an annual report to its shareholders.
3. **Hewlett-Packard Corporation** depreciates machinery and equipment over their useful lives.
4. Crosby Company lists land on its balance sheet at \$120,000, its original purchase price, even though the land has a current fair value of \$200,000.
5. **Honeywell International Inc.** records revenue when products are delivered to customers, even though the cash has not yet been received.
6. Liquidation values are not normally reported in financial statements even though many companies do go out of business.
7. **IBM Corporation**, a multibillion dollar company, purchased some small tools at a cost of \$800. Even though the tools will be used for a number of years, the company recorded the purchase as an expense.

E 1-11

Basic assumptions and principles

● LO1-8, LO1-9

Identify the accounting concept that was violated in each of the following situations.

1. Pastel Paint Company purchased land two years ago at a price of \$250,000. Because the value of the land has appreciated to \$400,000, the company has valued the land at \$400,000 in its most recent balance sheet.
2. Atwell Corporation has not prepared financial statements for external users for over three years.
3. The Klingon Company sells farm machinery. Revenue from a large order of machinery from a new buyer was recorded the day the order was received.
4. Don Smith is the sole owner of a company called Hardware City. The company recently paid a \$150 utility bill for Smith's personal residence and recorded a \$150 expense.
5. Golden Book Company purchased a large printing machine for \$1,000,000 (a material amount) and recorded the purchase as an expense.
6. Ace Appliance Company is involved in a major lawsuit involving injuries sustained by some of its employees in the manufacturing plant. The company is being sued for \$2,000,000, a material amount, and is not insured. The suit was not disclosed in the most recent financial statements because no settlement had been reached.

E 1-12

Basic assumptions and principles

● LO1-7 through LO1-9

For each of the following situations, indicate whether you agree or disagree with the financial reporting practice employed and state the accounting concept that is applied (if you agree) or violated (if you disagree).

1. Wagner Corporation adjusted the valuation of all assets and liabilities to reflect changes in the purchasing power of the dollar.
2. Spooner Oil Company changed its method of accounting for oil and gas exploration costs from successful efforts to full cost. No mention of the change was included in the financial statements. The change had a material effect on Spooner's financial statements.
3. Cypress Manufacturing Company purchased machinery having a five-year life. The cost of the machinery is being expensed over the life of the machinery.
4. Rudeen Corporation purchased equipment for \$180,000 at a liquidation sale of a competitor. Because the equipment was worth \$230,000, Rudeen valued the equipment in its subsequent balance sheet at \$230,000.
5. Davis Bicycle Company received a large order for the sale of 1,000 bicycles at \$100 each. The customer paid Davis the entire amount of \$100,000 on March 15. However, Davis did not record any revenue until April 17, the date the bicycles were delivered to the customer.
6. Gigantic Corporation purchased two small calculators at a cost of \$32.00. The cost of the calculators was expensed even though they had a three-year estimated useful life.
7. Esquire Company provides financial statements to external users every three years.

E 1-13

Basic assumptions and principles

● LO1-7 through LO1-9

For each of the following situations, state whether you agree or disagree with the financial reporting practice employed, and briefly explain the reason for your answer.

1. The controller of the Dumars Corporation increased the carrying value of land from its original cost of \$2 million to its recently appraised value of \$3.5 million.
2. The president of Vosburgh Industries asked the company controller to charge miscellaneous expense for the purchase of an automobile to be used solely for personal use.
3. At the end of its 2018 fiscal year, Dower, Inc., received an order from a customer for \$45,350. The merchandise will ship early in 2019. Because the sale was made to a long-time customer, the controller recorded the sale in 2018.
4. At the beginning of its 2018 fiscal year, Rossi Imports paid \$48,000 for a two-year lease on warehouse space. Rossi recorded the expenditure as an asset to be expensed equally over the two-year period of the lease.

5. The Reliable Tire Company included a note in its financial statements that described a pending lawsuit against the company.
6. The Hughes Corporation, a company whose securities are publicly traded, prepares monthly, quarterly, and annual financial statements for internal use but disseminates to external users only the annual financial statements.

E 1-14

Basic
assumptions and
principles

- LO1-7 through
LO1-9

Listed below are accounting concepts discussed in this chapter.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a. Economic entity assumption | f. Conservatism |
| b. Going concern assumption | g. Matching |
| c. Periodicity assumption | h. Full-disclosure principle |
| d. Monetary unit assumption | i. Cost effectiveness |
| e. Historical cost principle | j. Materiality |

Identify by letter the accounting concept that relates to each statement or phrase below.

- _____ 1. Inflation causes a violation of this assumption.
- _____ 2. Information that could affect decision making should be reported.
- _____ 3. Recognizing expenses in the period they were incurred to produce revenue.
- _____ 4. The basis for measurement of many assets and liabilities.
- _____ 5. Relates to the qualitative characteristic of timeliness.
- _____ 6. All economic events can be identified with a particular entity.
- _____ 7. The benefits of providing accounting information should exceed the cost of doing so.
- _____ 8. A consequence is that GAAP need not be followed in all situations.
- _____ 9. Not a qualitative characteristic, but a practical justification for some accounting choices.
- _____ 10. Assumes the entity will continue indefinitely.

E 1-15

Multiple choice;
concept
statements, basic
assumptions,
principles

- LO1-6 through
LO1-9

Determine the response that best completes the following statements or questions.

1. The primary objective of financial reporting is to provide information
 - a. About a firm's management team
 - b. Useful to capital providers
 - c. Concerning the changes in financial position resulting from the income-producing efforts of the entity
 - d. About a firm's financing and investing activities
2. *Statements of Financial Accounting Concepts* issued by the FASB
 - a. Represent GAAP
 - b. Have been superseded by *SFASs*
 - c. Are subject to approval of the SEC
 - d. Identify the conceptual framework within which accounting standards are developed
3. In general, revenue is recognized when
 - a. The sales price has been collected
 - b. A purchase order has been received
 - c. A good or service has been delivered to a customer
 - d. A contract has been signed
4. In depreciating the cost of an asset, accountants are most concerned with
 - a. Conservatism
 - b. Recognizing revenue in the appropriate period
 - c. Full disclosure
 - d. Recognizing expense in the appropriate period
5. The primary objective of the matching principle is to
 - a. Provide full disclosure
 - b. Record expenses in the period that related revenues are recognized
 - c. Provide timely information to decision makers
 - d. Promote comparability between financial statements of different periods
6. The separate entity assumption states that, in the absence of contrary evidence, all entities will survive indefinitely.
 - a. True
 - b. False

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You will also work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Judgment

Case 1-1

The development of accounting standards

● LO1-3

In 1934, Congress created the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) and gave the commission both the power and responsibility for setting accounting and reporting standards in the United States.

Required:

1. Explain the relationship between the SEC and the various private sector standard-setting bodies that have, over time, been relied upon to set accounting standards.
2. Can you think of any reasons why the SEC relies on private sector bodies to set accounting standards, rather than undertaking the task itself?

Research

Case 1-2

Accessing SEC information through the Internet

● LO1-3

Internet access to the World Wide Web has provided a wealth of information accessible with our personal computers. Many chapters in this book contain Real World Cases that require you to access the web to research an accounting issue. The purpose of this case is to introduce you to the Internet home page of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) and its EDGAR database.

Required:

1. Access the SEC home page on the Internet. The web address is www.sec.gov.
2. Choose the subaddress "About the SEC." What are the two basic objectives of the 1933 Securities Act?
3. Return to the SEC home page and access EDGAR. Describe the contents of the database.

Research

Case 1-3

Accessing FASB information through the Internet

● LO1-4

The purpose of this case is to introduce you to the information available on the website of the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB).

Required:

Access the FASB home page on the Internet. The web address is www.fasb.org. Answer the following questions.

1. Describe the mission of the FASB.
2. Who are the current Board members of the FASB? Briefly describe their backgrounds.
3. How are topics added to the FASB's technical agenda?

Research

Case 1-4

Accessing IASB information through the Internet

● LO1-3

The purpose of this case is to introduce you to the information available on the website of the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB).

Required:

Access the IASB home page on the Internet. The web address is www.iasb.org. Answer the following questions.

1. Describe the mission of the IASB.
2. The IASB has how many board members?
3. Who is the current chairman of the IASB?
4. Where is the IASB located?

Research

Case 1-5

Accounting standards in China

● LO1-3, LO1-4

Economic reforms in the People's Republic of China are moving that nation toward a market-driven economy. China's accounting practices must also change to accommodate the needs of potential investors. In an article entitled "Institutional Factors Influencing China's Accounting Reforms and Standards," Professor Bing Xiang analyzes the changes in the accounting environment of China during the recent economic reforms and their implications for the development of accounting reforms.

Required:

1. In your library or from some other source, locate the indicated article in *Accounting Horizons*, June 1998.
2. Briefly describe the economic reforms that led to the need for increased external financial reporting in China.
3. Conformity with International Accounting Standards was specified as an overriding objective in formulating China's accounting standards. What is the author's opinion of this objective?

Communication

Case 1-6

Relevance and reliability

● LO1-7

Some theorists contend that companies that create pollution should report the social cost of that pollution in income statements. They argue that such companies are indirectly subsidized as the cost of pollution is borne by society while only production costs (and perhaps minimal pollution fines) are shown in the income statement. Thus, the product sells for less than would be necessary if all costs were included.

Assume that the FASB is considering a standard to include the social costs of pollution in the income statement. The process would require considering both relevance and faithful representation of the information produced by the new standard. Your instructor will divide the class into two to six groups depending on the size of

the class. The mission of your group is to explain how the concepts of relevance and faithful representation relate to this issue.

Required:

Each group member should consider the question independently and draft a tentative answer prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.

In class, each group will meet for 10 to 15 minutes in different areas of the classroom. During that meeting, group members will take turns sharing their suggestions for the purpose of arriving at a single group treatment.

After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each group (selected during the group meetings) will share the group's solution with the class. The goal of the class is to incorporate the views of each group into a consensus answer to the question.

**Communication
Case 1-7**

Accounting
standard setting

● LO1-4

One of your friends is a financial analyst for a major stock brokerage firm. Recently she indicated to you that she had read an article in a weekly business magazine that alluded to the political process of establishing accounting standards. She had always assumed that accounting standards were established by determining the approach that conceptually best reflected the economics of a transaction.

Required:

Write a one to two-page article for a business journal explaining what is meant by the political process for establishing accounting standards. Be sure to include in your article a discussion of the need for the FASB to balance accounting considerations and economic consequences.

Ethics Case 1-8

The auditors'
responsibility

● LO1-4

It is the responsibility of management to apply accounting standards when communicating with investors and creditors through financial statements. Another group, auditors, serves as an independent intermediary to help ensure that management has in fact appropriately applied GAAP in preparing the company's financial statements. Auditors examine (audit) financial statements to express a professional, independent opinion. The opinion reflects the auditors' assessment of the statements' fairness, which is determined by the extent to which they are prepared in compliance with GAAP.

Some feel that it is impossible for an auditor to give an independent opinion on a company's financial statements because the auditors' fees for performing the audit are paid by the company. In addition to the audit fee, quite often the auditor performs other services for the company such as preparing the company's income tax returns.

Required:

How might an auditor's ethics be challenged while performing an audit?

**Judgment
Case 1-9**

Qualitative
characteristics

● LO1-7

Generally accepted accounting principles do not require companies to disclose forecasts of any financial variables to external users. A friend, who is a finance major, is puzzled by this and asks you to explain why such relevant information is not provided to investors and creditors to help them predict future cash flows.

Required:

Explain to your friend why this information is not routinely provided to investors and creditors.

**Judgment
Case 1-10**

GAAP,
comparability,
and the role of
the auditor

● LO1-4, LO1-7

Mary McQuire is trying to decide how to invest her money. A friend recommended that she buy the stock of one of two corporations and suggested that she should compare the financial statements of the two companies before making a decision.

Required:

1. Do you agree that Mary will be able to compare the financial statements of the two companies?
2. What role does the auditor play in ensuring comparability of financial statements between companies?

Concepts Statement 8 includes a discussion of the cost effectiveness constraint. Assume that the FASB is considering revising an important accounting standard.

Required:

1. What is the desired benefit from revising an accounting standard?
2. What are some of the possible costs that could result from a revision of an accounting standard?
3. What does the FASB do in order to assess possible benefits and costs of a proposed revision of an accounting standard?

**Judgment
Case 1-12**

Revenue
recognition

● LO1-9

A new client, the Wolf Company, asks your advice concerning the point in time that the company should recognize revenue from the rental of its office buildings. Renters usually pay rent on a quarterly basis at the beginning of the quarter. The owners contend that the critical event that motivates revenue recognition should be the date the cash is received from renters. After all, the money is in hand and is very seldom returned.

Required:

Do you agree or disagree with the position of the owners of Wolf Company? Support your answer.

Analysis**Case 1–13**

Expense recognition

● LO1–9

Revenues measure the accomplishments of a company during the period. Expenses are then matched with revenues to produce a periodic measure of performance called *net income*.

Required:

1. Explain what is meant by the phrase *matched with revenues*.
2. Describe the four approaches used to implement expense recognition and label them 1 through 4.
3. For each of the following, identify which expense recognition approach should be used to recognize the cost as expense.
 - a. The cost of producing a product
 - b. The cost of advertising
 - c. The cost of monthly rent on the office building
 - d. The salary of an office employee
 - e. Depreciation on an office building

Judgment**Case 1–14**

Capitalize or expense?

● LO1–9

When a company makes an expenditure that is neither a payment to a creditor nor a distribution to an owner, management must decide if the expenditure should be capitalized (recorded as an increase in an asset) or expensed (recorded as an expense thereby decreasing owners' equity).

Required:

1. Which factor or factors should the company consider when making this decision?
2. Are there any constraints that could cause the company to alter its decision?

Real World**Case 1–15**

Elements; disclosures; The Gap, Inc.

● LO1–7, LO1–9

Access the financial statements for the year ended January 30, 2016 for **The Gap, Inc.** by downloading them from www.gapinc.com, and use them to answer the following questions.

Required:

1. What amounts did The Gap report for the following items for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016?
 - a. Total net revenues
 - b. Total operating expenses
 - c. Net income (earnings)
 - d. Total assets
 - e. Total stockholders' equity
2. How many shares of common stock did The Gap have issued on January 30, 2016?
3. Why do you think The Gap reports more than one year of data in its financial statements?

Judgment**Case 1–16**

Convergence

● LO1–11

**IFRS**

Consider the question of whether the United States should converge accounting standards with IFRS.

Required:

1. Make a list of arguments that favor convergence.
2. Make a list of arguments that favor nonconvergence.
3. Indicate your own conclusion regarding whether the United States should converge with IFRS, and indicate the primary considerations that determined your conclusion.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

● LO1–9

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in the Connect. This material also is available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. What amounts did Target report for the following items for the year ended January 30, 2016?
 - a. Total Revenues
 - b. Income from current operations
 - c. Net income or net loss
 - d. Total assets
 - e. Total equity
2. What was Target's basic earnings per share for the year ended January 30, 2016?
3. Why do you think Target has chosen to have its fiscal year end on January 30, as opposed to December 31?
4. Regarding Target's audit report:
 - a. Who is Target's auditor?
 - b. Did Target receive a "clean" (unmodified) audit opinion?

**Air France–KLM
Case**

● LO1-11



Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. What amounts did AF report for the following items for the year ended December 31, 2015?
 - a. Total revenues
 - b. Income from current operations
 - c. Net income or net loss (AF equity holders)
 - d. Total assets
 - e. Total equity
2. What was AF's basic earnings or loss per share for the year ended December 31, 2015?
3. Examine Note 4.1.1 of AF's annual report. What accounting principles were used to prepare AF's financial statements? Under those accounting principles, could AF's financial information differ from that of a company that exactly followed IFRS as published by the IASB? Explain.

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

2

Review of the Accounting Process

OVERVIEW

Chapter 1 explained that the primary means of conveying financial information to investors, creditors, and other external users is through financial statements and related notes. The purpose of this chapter is to review the fundamental accounting process used to produce the financial statements. This review establishes a framework for the study of the concepts covered in intermediate accounting.

Actual accounting systems differ significantly from company to company. This chapter focuses on the many features that tend to be common to any accounting system.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO2-1** Analyze routine economic events—transactions—and record their effects on a company's financial position using the accounting equation format. (p. 48)
- **LO2-2** Record transactions using the general journal format. (p. 52)
- **LO2-3** Post the effects of journal entries to general ledger accounts and prepare an unadjusted trial balance. (p. 59)
- **LO2-4** Identify and describe the different types of adjusting journal entries. (p. 62)
- **LO2-5** Record adjusting journal entries in general journal format, post entries, and prepare an adjusted trial balance. (p. 63)
- **LO2-6** Describe the four basic financial statements. (p. 71)
- **LO2-7** Explain the closing process. (p. 75)
- **LO2-8** Convert from cash basis net income to accrual basis net income. (p. 79)



© goodluz/123RF

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Engineering Profits

After graduating from college last year, two of your engineering-major friends started an Internet consulting practice. They began operations on July 1 and felt they did quite well during their first year. Now they would like to borrow \$20,000 from a local bank to buy new computing equipment and office furniture. To support their loan application, the friends presented the bank with the following income statement for their first year of operations ending June 30:

Consulting revenue		\$96,000
Operating expenses:		
Salaries	\$32,000	
Rent	9,000	
Supplies	4,800	
Utilities	3,000	
Advertising	1,200	(50,000)
Net income		<u>\$46,000</u>

The bank officer noticed that there was no depreciation expense in the income statement and has asked your friends to revise the statement after making year-end adjustments. After agreeing to help, you discover the following information:

- The friends paid \$80,000 for equipment when they began operations. They think the equipment will be useful for five years.
- They pay \$500 a month to rent office space. In January, they paid a full year's rent in advance. This is included in the \$9,000 rent expense.
- Included in consulting revenue is \$13,000 they received from a customer in June as a deposit for work to be performed in August.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

- What purpose do adjusting entries serve? (p. 63)
- What year-end adjustments are needed to revise the income statement? Did your friends do as well their first year as they thought? (p. 63)

QUESTIONS

A solid foundation is vital to a sound understanding of intermediate accounting. So, we review the fundamental accounting process here to serve as a framework for the new concepts you will learn in this course.

Chapter 1 introduced the theoretical structure of financial accounting and the environment within which it operates. The primary function of financial accounting—to provide financial information to external users that possesses the fundamental decision-specific qualities of relevance and faithful representation—is accomplished by periodically disseminating financial statements and related notes. In this chapter we review the process used to identify, analyze, record, summarize, and then report the economic events affecting a company's financial position.

Computers are used to process accounting information. In this chapter we provide an overview of the basic model that underlies computer software programs.

Keep in mind as you study this chapter that the accounting information systems businesses actually use are quite different from company to company. Larger companies generally use more complex systems than smaller companies use. The types of economic events affecting companies also cause differences in systems. We focus on the many features that tend to be common to all accounting systems.

It's important to understand that this chapter and its appendices are not intended to describe actual accounting systems. In most business enterprises, the sheer volume of data that must be processed precludes a manual accounting system. Fortunately, the computer provides a solution. *We describe and illustrate a manual accounting information system to provide an overview of the basic model that underlies the computer software programs actually used to process accounting information.*

Electronic data processing is fast, accurate, and affordable. Many large and medium-sized companies own or rent their own mainframe computers and company-specific data processing systems. Smaller companies can take advantage of technology with relatively inexpensive desktop and laptop computers and generalized data software packages such as QuickBooks and Peachtree Accounting Software. Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems are now being installed in companies of all sizes. The objective of ERP is to create a customized software program that integrates all departments and functions across a company onto a single computer system that can serve the information needs of those different departments, including the accounting department.

The Basic Model

Economic events cause changes in the financial position of the company.

The first objective of any accounting system is to identify the **economic events** that can be expressed in financial terms by the system.¹ An economic event for accounting purposes is any event that *directly* affects the financial position of the company. Recall from Chapter 1 that financial position comprises assets, liabilities, and owners' equity. Broad and specific accounting principles determine which events should be recorded, when the events should be recorded, and the dollar amount at which they should be measured.

External events involve an exchange between the company and another entity.

Economic events can be classified as either external events or internal events. **External events** involve an exchange between the company and a separate economic entity. Examples are purchasing merchandise inventory for cash, borrowing cash from a bank, and paying salaries to employees. In each instance, the company receives something (merchandise, cash, and services) in exchange for something else (cash, assumption of a liability, or both).

Internal events do not involve an exchange transaction but do affect the company's financial position.

On the other hand, **internal events** directly affect the financial position of the company but don't involve an exchange transaction with another entity. Examples are the depreciation of equipment and the use of supplies. As we will see later in the chapter, these events must be recorded to properly reflect a company's financial position and results of operations in accordance with the accrual accounting model.

● LO2–1 The Accounting Equation

The **accounting equation** underlies the process used to capture the effect of economic events.

$$\text{Assets} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Owners' Equity}$$

This general expression portrays the equality between the total economic resources of an entity (its assets)—shown on the left side of the equation—and the total claims against the entity (liabilities and equity)—shown on the right side. In other words, the resources of an enterprise are provided by creditors and owners.

The equation also implies that each economic event affecting this equation will have a dual effect because resources always must equal claims. For illustration, consider the events (we refer to these throughout the text as **transactions**) in Illustration 2–1.

Each event, or transaction, has a dual effect on the accounting equation.

¹There are many economic events that affect a company *indirectly* and are not recorded. For example, when the Federal Reserve changes its discount rate, it is an important economic event that can affect the company in many ways, but it is not recorded by the company.

Illustration 2-1

Transaction analysis

1. An attorney invested \$50,000 to open a law office.

An investment by the owner causes both assets and owners' equity to increase.

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Owners' Equity
+\$50,000 (cash)				+\$50,000 (investment by owner)

2. \$40,000 was borrowed from a bank and a note payable was signed.

This transaction causes assets and liabilities to increase. A bank loan increases cash and creates an obligation to repay it.

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Owners' Equity
+\$40,000 (cash)		+\$40,000 (note payable)		

3. Supplies costing \$3,000 were purchased on account.

Buying supplies on credit also increases both assets and liabilities.

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Owners' Equity
+\$3,000 (supplies)		+\$3,000 (accounts payable)		

Transactions 4, 5, and 6 are revenue and expense transactions. Revenues and expenses (and gains and losses) are events that cause owners' equity to change. Revenues and gains describe inflows of assets, causing owners' equity to increase. Expenses and losses describe outflows of assets (or increases in liabilities), causing owners' equity to decrease.

4. Services were performed on account for \$10,000.

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Owners' Equity
+\$10,000 (accounts receivable)				+\$10,000 (revenue)

5. Salaries of \$5,000 were paid to employees.

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Owners' Equity
-\$5,000 (cash)				-\$5,000 (expense)

6. \$500 of supplies were used.

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Owners' Equity
-\$500 (supplies)				-\$500 (expense)

7. \$1,000 was paid on account to the supplies vendor.

This transaction causes assets and liabilities to decrease.

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Owners' Equity
-\$1,000 (cash)		-\$1,000 (accounts payable)		

Each transaction is analyzed to determine its effect on the equation and on the specific financial position elements.

The accounting equation can be expanded to include a column for each type of asset and liability and for each type of change in owners' equity.

As discussed in Chapter 1, owners of a corporation are its shareholders, so owners' equity for a corporation is referred to as shareholders' equity. Shareholders' equity for a corporation arises primarily from two sources: (1) amounts *invested* by shareholders in the corporation and (2) amounts *earned* by the corporation (on behalf of its shareholders). These are reported as (1) **paid-in capital** and (2) **retained earnings**. Retained earnings equals net income less distributions to shareholders (primarily dividends) since the inception of the corporation. Illustration 2-2 shows the basic accounting equation for a corporation with shareholders' equity expanded to highlight its composition. We use the corporate format throughout the remainder of the chapter.

Owners' equity for a corporation, called **shareholders' equity**, is classified by source as either **paid-in capital** or **retained earnings**.

The **double-entry system** is used to process transactions.

Illustration 2-2

Accounting Equation for a Corporation

$$A = L + SE$$

+ Paid-In Capital		+ Retained Earnings	
+ Revenues	– Expenses		
+ Gains	– Losses	– Dividends	

Account Relationships

All transactions could be recorded in columnar fashion as increases or decreases to elements of the accounting equation. However, even for a very small company with few transactions, this would become cumbersome. So, most companies use a process called the **double-entry system**. The term *double-entry* refers to the dual effect that each transaction has on the accounting equation.

A general ledger is a collection of storage areas, called *accounts*, used to keep track of increases and decreases in financial position elements.

In the double-entry system, *debit* means left side of an account and *credit* means right side of an account.

Asset increases are entered on the *debit* side of accounts and decreases are entered on the *credit* side. Liability and equity account increases are *credits* and decreases are *debits*.

Elements of the accounting equation are represented by **accounts** which are contained in a **general ledger**. Increases and decreases in each element of a company’s financial position are recorded in these accounts. A separate account is maintained for individual assets and liabilities, retained earnings, and paid-in capital. Also, to accumulate information needed for the income statement, we use separate accounts to keep track of the changes in retained earnings caused by revenues, expenses, gains, and losses. The number of accounts depends on the complexity of the company’s operations.

An account includes the account title, an account number to aid the processing task, and columns or fields for increases, decreases, the cumulative balance, and the date. For instructional purposes we use **T-accounts** instead of formal ledger accounts. A T-account has space at the top for the account title and two sides for recording increases and decreases.

Account Title	

For centuries, accountants have effectively used a system of **debits** and **credits** to increase and decrease account balances in the ledger. Debits merely represent the *left* side of the account and credits the *right* side, as shown below.

Account Title	
Debit side	Credit side

Whether a debit or a credit represents an increase or a decrease depends on the type of account. Accounts on the left side of the accounting equation (assets) are *increased* (+) by *debit* entries and *decreased* (–) by *credit* entries. Accounts on the right side of the accounting equation (liabilities and shareholders’ equity) are *increased* (+) by *credit* entries and *decreased* (–) by *debit* entries. This arbitrary, but effective, procedure ensures that for each transaction the net impact on the left sides of accounts always equals the net impact on the right sides of accounts.

For example, consider the bank loan in our earlier illustration. An asset, cash, increased by **\$40,000**. Increases in assets are *debits*. Liabilities also increased by **\$40,000**. Increases in liabilities are *credits*.

Assets		=	Liabilities		+	Owners' Equity
Cash			Note Payable			
Debit	Credit		Debit	Credit		
+ 40,000				40,000 +		

The debits equal the credits in every transaction (dual effect), so both before and after a transaction the accounting equation is in balance.

Prior exposure to the terms debit and credit probably comes from your experience with a bank account. For example, when a bank debits your checking account for service charges, it decreases your account balance. When you make a deposit, the bank credits your account, increasing your account balance. You must remember that from the bank’s perspective, your bank account balance is a liability—it represents the amount that the bank owes you. Therefore, when the bank debits your account, it is decreasing its liability. When the bank credits your account, its liability increases.

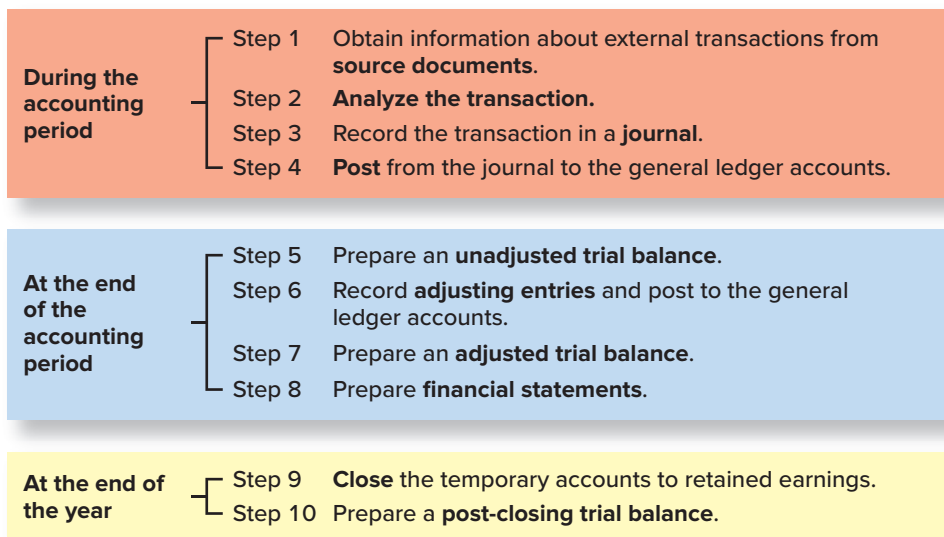
Illustration 2–3 demonstrates the relationship among the accounting equation, debits and credits, and the increases and decreases in financial position elements.

Notice that increases and decreases in retained earnings are recorded *indirectly*. For example, an expense represents a decrease in retained earnings, which requires a debit. That debit, however, is recorded in an appropriate expense account rather than in retained earnings itself. This allows the company to maintain a separate record of expenses incurred during an accounting period. The debit to retained earnings for the expense is recorded in a closing entry (reviewed later) at the end of the period, only after the expense total is reflected in the income statement. Similarly, an increase in retained earnings due to revenue

Illustration 2-4

The Accounting Processing Cycle

The Steps of the Accounting Processing Cycle



This process is summarized in Illustration 2-5 for the seven transactions described previously in Illustration 2-1. The item in each T-account is numbered to show the related transaction. We don't use dollar signs next to numbers in the accounting records (journal entries, journals, ledgers, trial balances)—only in the actual financial statements.

The third step in the process is to record the transaction in a **journal**. A journal provides a chronological record of all economic events affecting a firm. Each journal entry is expressed in terms of equal debits and credits to accounts affected by the transaction being recorded. Debits and credits represent increases or decreases to specific accounts, depending on the type of account, as explained earlier. For example, for credit sales, we record a debit to accounts receivable and a credit to sales revenue in a sales journal.

A sales journal is an example of a **special journal** used to record a repetitive type of transaction. In Appendix 2C we discuss the use of special journals in more depth. In this chapter and throughout the text, we use the **general journal** format to record all transactions.

Any type of transaction can be recorded in a general journal. It has a place for the date of the transaction, a place for account titles, account numbers, and supporting explanations, as well as a place for debit entries, and a place for credit entries. A simplified journal entry is used throughout the text that lists the account titles to be debited and credited and the dollar amounts. A common convention is to list the debited accounts first, indent the credited accounts, and use the first of two columns for the debit amounts and the second column for the credit amounts. An explanation is entered for each journal entry (for ease in this example the explanation is located in the margin). For example, the **journal entry** for the bank loan in Illustration 2-1, which requires a debit to cash and a credit to note payable, is recorded as follows:

Cash.....	40,000	
Note payable		40,000

To record the borrowing of cash and the signing of a note payable.

STEP 4

Post from the journal to the general ledger accounts.

Step 4 is to periodically transfer or *post* the debit and credit information from the journal to individual ledger accounts. Recall that a ledger is simply a collection of all of the company's various accounts. Each account provides a summary of the effects of all events and transactions on that individual account. This process is called **posting**. Posting involves transferring debits and credits recorded in individual journal entries to the specific accounts affected. As discussed earlier in the chapter, most accounting systems today are computerized. For these systems, the journal input information creates a stored journal and simultaneously posts each entry to the ledger accounts.

• LO2-2

Illustration 2-5

Transaction Analysis, the Accounting Equation, and Debits and Credits

Accounting Equation

Transaction	Transaction Analysis	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Owners' Equity	Account Entry			
1. An attorney invested \$50,000 to open a law office.	Assets (cash) and owners' equity each increased by \$50,000.	<u>+50,000</u>				<u>+50,000</u>	<u>Cash</u>		<u>Owners' Equity</u>	
	<i>Cumulative balances</i>	50,000	=			50,000	1. 50,000		50,000	1.
2. \$40,000 was borrowed from a bank and a note payable was signed.	Assets (cash) and liabilities (note payable) each increased by \$40,000.	<u>+40,000</u>		<u>+40,000</u>			<u>Cash</u>		<u>Note Payable</u>	
	<i>Cumulative balances</i>	90,000	=	40,000	+	50,000	1. 50,000		40,000	2.
							2. 40,000			
3. Supplies costing \$3,000 were purchased on account.	Assets (supplies) and liabilities (accounts payable) each increased by \$3,000.	<u>+3,000</u>		<u>+3,000</u>			<u>Supplies</u>		<u>Accounts Payable</u>	
	<i>Cumulative balances</i>	93,000	=	43,000	+	50,000	3. 3,000		3,000	3.
4. Services were performed on account for \$10,000.	Assets (accounts receivable) and owners' equity (revenue) each increased by \$10,000.	<u>+10,000</u>				<u>+10,000</u>	<u>Accounts Receivable</u>		<u>Owners' Equity (Revenue)</u>	
	<i>Cumulative balances</i>	103,000	=	43,000	+	60,000	4. 10,000		10,000	4.
5. Salaries of \$5,000 were paid to employees.	Assets (cash) decreased and owners' equity decreased (salaries expense increased) by \$5,000.	<u>-5,000</u>				<u>-5,000</u>	<u>Cash</u>		<u>Owners' Equity (Salaries Expense)</u>	
	<i>Cumulative balances</i>	98,000	=	43,000	+	55,000	1. 50,000	5,000	5.	5. 5,000
							2. 40,000			
6. \$500 of supplies were used.	Assets (supplies) decreased and owners' equity decreased (supplies expense increased) by \$500.	<u>-500</u>				<u>-500</u>	<u>Supplies</u>		<u>Owners' Equity (Supplies Expense)</u>	
	<i>Cumulative balances</i>	97,500	=	43,000	+	54,500	3. 3,000	500	6.	6. 500
7. \$1,000 was paid on account to the supplies vendor.	Assets (cash) and liabilities (accounts payable) each decreased by \$1,000.	<u>-1,000</u>				<u>-1,000</u>	<u>Cash</u>		<u>Accounts Payable</u>	
	<i>Cumulative balances</i>	96,500	=	42,000	+	54,500	1. 50,000	5,000	5.	7. 1,000
							2. 40,000	1,000	7.	3.

These first four steps in the processing cycle are illustrated using the external transactions in Illustration 2–6 which occurred during the month of July 2018, the first month of operations for Dress Right Clothing Corporation. The company operates a retail store that sells men's and women's clothing. Dress Right is organized as a corporation so owners' equity is classified by source as either paid-in capital or retained earnings.

Illustration 2–6

External Transactions for
July 2018

July	1	Two individuals each invested \$30,000 in the corporation. Each investor was issued 3,000 shares of common stock.
	1	Borrowed \$40,000 from a local bank and signed two notes. The first note for \$10,000 requires payment of principal and 10% interest in six months. The second note for \$30,000 requires the payment of principal in two years. Interest at 10% is payable each year on July 1, 2019, and July 1, 2020.
	1	Paid \$24,000 in advance for one year's rent on the store building.
	1	Purchased office equipment from eTronics for \$12,000 cash.
	3	Purchased \$60,000 of clothing inventory on account from the Birdwell Wholesale Clothing Company.
	6	Purchased \$2,000 of supplies for cash.
	4–31	During the month, sold merchandise costing \$20,000 for \$35,000 cash.
	9	Sold clothing on account to Briarfield School for Girls for \$3,500. The clothing cost \$2,000.
	16	Subleased a portion of the building to a jewelry store. Received \$1,000 in advance for the first two months' rent beginning on July 16.
	20	Paid Birdwell Wholesale Clothing \$25,000 on account.
	20	Paid salaries to employees for the first half of the month, \$5,000.
	25	Received \$1,500 on account from Briarfield.
	30	The corporation paid its shareholders a cash dividend of \$1,000.

The local bank requires that Dress Right furnish financial statements on a monthly basis. The transactions listed in the illustration are used to demonstrate the accounting processing cycle for the month of July 2018.

For each transaction, a source document provides the necessary information to complete steps two and three in the processing cycle: transaction analysis and recording the appropriate journal entry. Each transaction listed in Illustration 2–6 is analyzed below, preceded by the necessary journal entry.

To record the issuance of
common stock.

July 1		
Cash	60,000	
Common stock		60,000

This first transaction is an investment by owners that increases an asset, cash, and also increases shareholders' equity. Increases in assets are recorded as debits and increases in shareholders' equity are recorded as credits. We use the paid-in capital account called common stock because stock was issued in exchange for cash paid in.²

To record the borrowing of
cash and the signing of a
notes payable.

July 1		
Cash	40,000	
Notes payable		40,000

This transaction causes increases in both cash and the liability, notes payable. Increases in assets are debits and increases in liabilities are credits. The notes require payment of

²The different types of stock are discussed in Chapter 18.

\$40,000 in principal and \$6,500 [$(\$10,000 \times 10\% \times \frac{6}{12} = \$500) + (\$30,000 \times 10\% \times 2 \text{ years} = \$6,000)$] in interest. However, at this point we are concerned only with the external transaction that occurs when the cash is borrowed and the notes are signed. Later we discuss how the interest is recorded.

July 1

Prepaid rent	24,000	
Cash		24,000

To record the payment of one year's rent in advance.

This transaction increased an asset called prepaid rent, which is debited, and decreased the asset cash (a credit). Dress Right acquired the right to use the building for one full year. This is an asset because it represents a future benefit to the company. As we will see later, this asset expires over the one-year rental period.

July 1

Office equipment.....	12,000	
Cash		12,000

To record the purchase of office equipment.

This transaction increases one asset, office equipment, and decreases another, cash.

July 3

Inventory	60,000	
Accounts payable.....		60,000

To record the purchase of merchandise inventory.

This purchase of merchandise on account is recorded by a debit to inventory, an asset, and a credit to accounts payable, a liability. Increases in assets are debits. Increases in liabilities are credits.

The Dress Right Clothing Company uses the *perpetual inventory system* to keep track of its merchandise inventory. This system requires that the cost of merchandise purchased be recorded in inventory, an asset account. When inventory is sold, the inventory account is decreased by the cost of the item sold. An alternative method, the *periodic system*, is briefly discussed later in this chapter. We explore the topic of inventory in depth in Chapters 8 and 9.

July 6

Supplies	2,000	
Cash		2,000

To record the purchase of supplies.

We record the acquisition of supplies as a debit to the asset account supplies (an increase) and as a credit to the asset cash (a decrease). Supplies are an asset because they represent future benefits.

July 4–31

Cash	35,000	
Sales revenue.....		35,000
Cost of goods sold (expense)	20,000	
Inventory		20,000

To record the month's cash sales and the cost of those sales.

During the month of July, cash sales to customers totaled \$35,000. The company's assets (cash) increase by this amount as does shareholders' equity. This increase in equity is recorded by a credit to the temporary account sales revenue.

At the same time, an asset, inventory, decreases and retained earnings decreases. Recall that expenses are outflows or using up of assets from providing goods and services. Dress Right incurred an expense equal to the cost of the inventory sold. The temporary account

cost of goods sold increases. However, this increase in an expense represents a *decrease* in shareholders' equity—retained earnings—and accordingly the account is debited. Both of these transactions are *summary* transactions. Normally each sale made during the month requires a separate and similar entry in a special journal, which we discuss in Appendix 2C.

To record a credit sale and the cost of that sale.

July 9

Accounts receivable	3,500	
Sales revenue		3,500
Cost of goods sold	2,000	
Inventory		2,000

This transaction is similar to the cash sale shown earlier. The only difference is that the asset acquired in exchange for merchandise is accounts receivable rather than cash.

Additional Consideration

Periodic Inventory System

The principal alternative to the perpetual inventory system is the periodic system. By this approach, we record the cost of merchandise purchased in a temporary account called *purchases*. When inventory is sold, the inventory account is not decreased and cost of goods sold is not recorded. Instead, we determine the balance in the inventory account only at the end of a reporting period (periodically), and then we can determine the cost of good sold for the period.

For example, the purchase of \$60,000 of merchandise on account by Dress Right Clothing is recorded as follows:

Purchases	60,000	
Accounts payable		60,000

No cost of goods sold entry is recorded when sales are made in the periodic system.

At the end of July, the amount of ending inventory is determined (either by means of a physical count of goods on hand or by estimation) to be \$38,000 and cost of goods sold for the month is determined as follows:

Beginning inventory	\$ -0-
Plus: Purchases	60,000
Less: Ending inventory	<u>(38,000)</u>
Cost of goods sold	<u>\$22,000</u>

We record the cost of goods sold for the period and adjust the inventory account to the actual amount on hand (in this case from zero to \$38,000) this way:

Cost of goods sold	22,000	
Inventory	38,000	
Purchases		60,000

We discuss inventory in depth in Chapters 8 and 9.

To record the receipt of rent in advance.

July 16

Cash	1,000	
Deferred rent revenue (liability)		1,000

Cash increases by \$1,000 so we debit the cash account. At this point, Dress Right does not recognize revenue yet even though cash has been received. Instead, revenue is recorded only after Dress Right has provided the jewelry store with the use of facilities; that is, as

the rental period expires. On receipt of the cash, a liability called *deferred rent revenue* increases and is credited. This liability represents Dress Right's obligation to provide the use of facilities to the jewelry store.

July 20

Accounts payable.....	25,000	
Cash		25,000

To record the payment of accounts payable.

This transaction decreases both an asset (cash) and a liability (accounts payable). A debit decreases the liability, and a credit decreases the asset.

July 20

Salaries expense	5,000	
Cash		5,000

To record the payment of salaries for the first half of the month.

Employees were paid for services rendered during the first half of the month. The cash expenditure did not create an asset since no future benefits resulted. Cash decreases and is credited; shareholders' equity decreases and is debited. The reduction in shareholders' equity is recorded in the temporary account, salaries expense.

July 25

Cash	1,500	
Accounts receivable		1,500

To record receipt of cash on account.

This transaction is an exchange of one asset, accounts receivable, for another asset, cash.

July 30

Retained earnings	1,000	
Cash		1,000

To record the payment of a cash dividend.

The payment of a cash dividend is a distribution to owners that reduces both cash and retained earnings.

Additional Consideration

An alternative method of recording a cash dividend is to debit a temporary account called dividends. In that case, the dividends account is later closed (transferred) to retained earnings along with the other temporary accounts at the end of the fiscal year. The journal entry to record the dividend using this approach is as follows:

Dividends.....	1,000	
Cash		1,000

We discuss and illustrate the closing process later in the chapter.

Illustration 2–7 summarizes each of the transactions we just discussed as they would appear in a general journal. In addition to the date, account titles, and debit and credit columns, the journal also has a column titled Post Ref. (Posting Reference). In this column we enter the number assigned to the general ledger account that is being debited or credited. For purposes of this illustration, all asset accounts have been assigned numbers in the 100s, all liabilities are 200s, permanent shareholders' equity accounts are 300s, revenues are 400s, and expenses are 500s.

Illustration 2-7

The General Journal

General Journal				Page 1
Date 2018	Account Title and Explanation	Post Ref.	Debit	Credit
July 1	Cash	100	60,000	
	Common stock	300		60,000
	<i>To record the issuance of common stock.</i>			
1	Cash	100	40,000	
	Notes payable	220		40,000
	<i>To record the borrowing of cash and the signing of notes payable.</i>			
1	Prepaid rent	130	24,000	
	Cash	100		24,000
	<i>To record the payment of one year's rent in advance.</i>			
1	Office equipment	150	12,000	
	Cash	100		12,000
	<i>To record the purchase of office equipment.</i>			
3	Inventory	140	60,000	
	Accounts payable	210		60,000
	<i>To record the purchase of merchandise inventory.</i>			
6	Supplies	125	2,000	
	Cash	100		2,000
	<i>To record the purchase of supplies.</i>			
4-31	Cash	100	35,000	
	Sales revenue	400		35,000
	<i>To record cash sales for the month.</i>			
4-31	Cost of goods sold	500	20,000	
	Inventory	140		20,000
	<i>To record the cost of cash sales.</i>			
9	Accounts receivable	110	3,500	
	Sales revenue	400		3,500
	<i>To record credit sale.</i>			
9	Cost of goods sold	500	2,000	
	Inventory	140		2,000
	<i>To record the cost of a credit sale.</i>			
16	Cash	100	1,000	
	Deferred rent revenue	230		1,000
	<i>To record the receipt of rent in advance.</i>			
20	Accounts payable	210	25,000	
	Cash	100		25,000
	<i>To record the payment of accounts payable.</i>			
20	Salaries expense	510	5,000	
	Cash	100		5,000
	<i>To record the payment of salaries for the first half of the month.</i>			
25	Cash	100	1,500	
	Accounts receivable	110		1,500
	<i>To record the receipt of cash on account.</i>			
30	Retained earnings	310	1,000	
	Cash	100		1,000
	<i>To record the payment of a cash dividend.</i>			

The ledger accounts also contain a posting reference, usually the page number of the journal in which the journal entry was recorded. This allows for easy cross-referencing between the journal and the ledger.

Step 4 in the processing cycle is to transfer (post) the debit/credit information from the journal to the general ledger accounts. Illustration 2–8 contains the ledger accounts (in T-account form) for Dress Right *after* all the general journal transactions have been posted. The reference GJ1 next to each of the posted amounts indicates that the source of the entry is page 1 of the general journal. An alternative is to number each of the entries in chronological order and reference them by number. Note that each account shows the balance that we call a *normal balance*—that is, the balance is the debit or credit side used to increase the account.

• LO2–3

Illustration 2–8

General Ledger Accounts

Balance Sheet Accounts					
Cash 100			Prepaid Rent 130		
July 1 GJ1	60,000	24,000	July 1 GJ1	24,000	
1 GJ1	40,000	12,000	1 GJ1		
4–31 GJ1	35,000	2,000	6 GJ1		
16 GJ1	1,000	25,000	20 GJ1		
25 GJ1	1,500	5,000	20 GJ1		
		1,000	30 GJ1		
July 31 Bal.	68,500		July 31 Bal.	24,000	
Accounts Receivable 110			Inventory 140		
July 9 GJ1	3,500	1,500	July 25 GJ1	60,000	20,000
					2,000
July 31 Bal.	2,000		July 31 Bal.	38,000	
Supplies 125			Office equipment 150		
July 6 GJ1	2,000		July 1 GJ1	12,000	
July 31 Bal.	2,000		July 31 Bal.	12,000	
Accounts Payable 210			Notes Payable 220		
July 20 GJ1	25,000	60,000		40,000	July 1 GJ1
		35,000		40,000	July 31 Bal.
July 31 Bal.					
Deferred Rent Revenue 230			Common Stock 300		
		1,000	July 16 GJ1	60,000	July 1 GJ1
		1,000	July 31 Bal.	60,000	July 31 Bal.
Retained Earnings 310			Cost of Goods Sold 500		
July 30 GJ1	1,000		July 4–31 GJ1	20,000	
July 31 Bal.	1,000		9 GJ1	2,000	
			July 31 Bal.	22,000	
Income Statement Accounts					
Sales Revenue 400			Salaries Expense 510		
	35,000	July 4–31 GJ1	July 20 GJ1	5,000	
	3,500	9 GJ1	July 31 Bal.	5,000	
	38,500	July 31 Bal.			

STEP 5

Prepare an *unadjusted trial balance*.

Before preparing financial statements and adjusting entries (internal transactions) at the end of an accounting period, we prepare an **unadjusted trial balance**—Step 5. A trial balance is simply a list of the general ledger accounts along with their balances at a particular date, listed in the order that they appear in the ledger. The purpose of the trial balance is to allow us to check for completeness and to verify that the sum of the accounts with debit balances equals the sum of the accounts with credit balances. The fact that the debits and credits are equal, though, does not necessarily ensure that the equal balances are correct. The trial balance could contain offsetting errors. As we will see later in the chapter, this trial balance also helps with preparing adjusting entries.

The unadjusted trial balance at July 31, 2018, for Dress Right appears in Illustration 2–9. Notice that retained earnings has a debit balance of \$1,000. This reflects the payment of the cash dividend to shareholders. We record increases and decreases in retained earnings from revenue, expense, gain and loss transactions *indirectly* in temporary accounts. Before the start of the next year, we transfer these increases and decreases to the retained earnings account.

Illustration 2–9

Unadjusted Trial Balance

DRESS RIGHT CLOTHING CORPORATION**Unadjusted Trial Balance**

July 31, 2018

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	68,500	
Accounts receivable	2,000	
Supplies	2,000	
Prepaid rent	24,000	
Inventory	38,000	
Office equipment	12,000	
Accounts payable		35,000
Notes payable		40,000
Deferred rent revenue		1,000
Common stock		60,000
Retained earnings	1,000	
Sales revenue		38,500
Cost of goods sold	22,000	
Salaries expense	5,000	
Totals	174,500	174,500

At any time, the total of all debit balances should equal the total of all credit balances.

Concept Review Exercise**JOURNAL ENTRIES
FOR EXTERNAL
TRANSACTIONS**

The Wyndham Wholesale Company began operations on August 1, 2018. The following transactions occur during the month of August.

- Owners invest \$50,000 cash in the corporation in exchange for 5,000 shares of common stock.
- Equipment is purchased for \$20,000 cash.
- On the first day of August, \$6,000 rent on a building is paid for the months of August and September.
- Merchandise inventory costing \$38,000 is purchased on account. The company uses the perpetual inventory system.
- \$30,000 is borrowed from a local bank, and a note payable is signed.
- Credit sales for the month are \$40,000. The cost of merchandise sold is \$22,000.
- \$15,000 is collected on account from customers.
- \$20,000 is paid on account to suppliers of merchandise.
- Salaries of \$7,000 are paid to employees for August.

- j. A bill for \$2,000 is received from the local utility company for the month of August.
- k. \$20,000 cash is loaned to another company, evidenced by a note receivable.
- l. The corporation pays its shareholders a cash dividend of \$1,000.

Required:

- 1. Prepare a journal entry for each transaction.
- 2. Prepare an unadjusted trial balance as of August 31, 2018.

Solution:

- 1. Prepare a journal entry for each transaction.

- a. The issuance of common stock for cash increases both cash and shareholders' equity (common stock).

Cash	50,000	
Common stock		50,000

- b. The purchase of equipment increases equipment and decreases cash.

Equipment	20,000	
Cash		20,000

- c. The payment of rent in advance increases prepaid rent and decreases cash.

Prepaid rent	6,000	
Cash		6,000

- d. The purchase of merchandise on account increases both inventory and accounts payable.

Inventory	38,000	
Accounts payable		38,000

- e. Borrowing cash and signing a note increases both cash and note payable.

Cash	30,000	
Note payable		30,000

- f. The sale of merchandise on account increases both accounts receivable and sales revenue. Also, cost of goods sold increases and inventory decreases.

Accounts receivable	40,000	
Sales revenue		40,000
Cost of goods sold	22,000	
Inventory		22,000

- g. The collection of cash on account increases cash and decreases accounts receivable.

Cash	15,000	
Accounts receivable		15,000

- h. The payment to suppliers on account decreases both accounts payable and cash.

Accounts payable	20,000	
Cash		20,000

- i. The payment of salaries for the period increases salaries expense (decreases retained earnings) and decreases cash.

Salaries expense	7,000	
Cash		7,000

- j. The receipt of a bill for services rendered increases both an expense (utilities expense) and accounts payable. The expense decreases retained earnings.

Utilities expense	2,000	
Accounts payable		2,000

- k. The lending of cash to another entity and the signing of a note increases note receivable and decreases cash.

Note receivable	20,000	
Cash		20,000

- l. Cash dividends paid to shareholders reduce both retained earnings and cash.

Retained earnings ³	1,000	
Cash		1,000

2. Prepare an unadjusted trial balance as of August 31, 2018.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	21,000	
Accounts receivable	25,000	
Prepaid rent	6,000	
Inventory	16,000	
Note receivable	20,000	
Equipment	20,000	
Accounts payable		20,000
Note payable		30,000
Common stock		50,000
Retained earnings	1,000	
Sales revenue		40,000
Cost of goods sold	22,000	
Salaries expense	7,000	
Utilities expense	2,000	
Totals	<u>140,000</u>	<u>140,000</u>

• LO2-4

STEP 6

Record *adjusting entries* and post to the ledger accounts.

Adjusting Entries

Step 6 in the processing cycle is to record in the general journal and post to the ledger accounts the effect of *internal events* on the accounting equation. These transactions do not involve an exchange transaction with another entity and, therefore, are not initiated by a source document. They are recorded *at the end of any period when financial statements are prepared*. These transactions are commonly referred to as **adjusting entries**.

Even when all transactions and events are analyzed, corrected, journalized, and posted to appropriate ledger accounts, some account balances will require updating. Adjusting entries

³An alternative is to debit a temporary account—dividends—that is closed to retained earnings at the end of the fiscal year along with the other temporary accounts.

are required to implement the *accrual accounting model*. More specifically, these entries help ensure that all revenues are recognized in the period goods or services are transferred to customers, regardless of when the cash is received. Also, they enable a company to recognize all expenses incurred during a period, regardless of when cash payment is made. As a result, a period's income statement provides a more complete measure of a company's operating performance and a better measure for predicting future operating cash flows. The balance sheet also provides a more complete assessment of assets and liabilities as sources of future cash receipts and disbursements. You might think of adjusting entries as a method of bringing the company's financial information up to date before preparing the financial statements.

Adjusting entries are necessary for three situations:

1. **Prepayments**, sometimes referred to as *deferrals*
2. **Accruals**
3. **Estimates**

Prepayments

Prepayments occur when the cash flow *precedes* either expense or revenue recognition. For example, a company may buy supplies in one period but use them in a later period. The cash outflow creates an asset (supplies) which then must be expensed in a future period as the asset is used up. Similarly, a company may receive cash from a customer in one period but provide the customer with a good or service in a future period. For instance, magazine publishers usually receive cash in advance for magazine subscriptions. The cash inflow creates a liability (deferred revenue) that is recognized as revenue in a future period when the goods or services are transferred to customers.

PREPAID EXPENSES. **Prepaid expenses** are the costs of assets acquired in one period and expensed in a future period. Whenever cash is paid, and it is not to (1) satisfy a liability or (2) pay a dividend or return capital to owners, it must be determined whether or not the payment creates future benefits or whether the payment benefits only the current period. The purchase of buildings, equipment, or supplies or the payment of rent in advance are examples of payments that create future benefits and should be recorded as assets. The benefits provided by these assets expire in future periods and their cost is expensed in future periods as related revenues are recognized.

To illustrate this concept, assume that a company paid a radio station \$2,000 in July for advertising. If that \$2,000 were for advertising provided by the radio station during the month of July, the entire \$2,000 would be expensed in the same period as the cash disbursement. If, however, the \$2,000 was a payment for advertising to be provided in a future period, say the month of August, then the cash disbursement creates an asset called *prepaid advertising*. Then, an adjusting entry is required at the end of August to increase advertising expense (decrease shareholders' equity) and to decrease the asset, prepaid advertising, by \$2,000. So, the adjusting entry for a prepaid expense is a *debit to an expense* and a *credit to an asset*.

The unadjusted trial balance can provide a starting point for determining which adjusting entries are required for a period, particularly for prepayments. Review the July 31, 2018, unadjusted trial balance for the Dress Right Clothing Corporation in Illustration 2–9 and try to anticipate the required adjusting entries for prepaid expenses.

The first asset that requires adjustment is supplies, \$2,000 of which were purchased during July. This transaction created an asset as the supplies will be used in future periods. The company could either track the supplies used or simply count the supplies at the end of the period and determine the dollar amount of supplies remaining. Assume that Dress Right determines that at the end of July, \$1,200 of supplies remain. The following adjusting journal entry is required.

July 31

Supplies expense.....	800	
Supplies.....		800

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 47

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 47

Prepayments are transactions in which the cash flow precedes expense or revenue recognition.

Prepaid expenses represent assets recorded when a cash disbursement creates benefits beyond the current reporting period.

The adjusting entry required for a prepaid expense is a debit to an expense and a credit to an asset.

LO2–5

Supplies		
Beg. bal.	0	
	2,000	800
End bal.	1,200	
Supplies Expense		
Beg. bal.	0	
	800	
End bal.	800	

To record the cost of supplies used during the month of July.

The next prepaid expense requiring adjustment is rent. Recall that at the beginning of July, the company paid \$24,000 to its landlord representing one year's rent in advance. As it is reasonable to assume that the rent services provided each period are equal, the monthly rent is \$2,000. At the end of July 2018, one month's prepaid rent has expired and must be recognized as expense.

To record the cost of expired rent for the month of July.

Rent Expense	
Beg. bal.	0
	2,000
End bal.	2,000

Prepaid Rent	
Beg. bal.	0
	24,000
	2,000
End bal.	22,000

July 31

Rent expense (\$24,000 ÷ 12).....	2,000	
Prepaid rent		2,000

After this entry is recorded and posted to the ledger accounts, the prepaid rent account will have a debit balance of \$22,000, representing 11 remaining months at \$2,000 per month, and the rent expense account will have a \$2,000 debit balance.

The final prepayment involves the asset represented by office equipment that was purchased for \$12,000. This asset has a long life but nevertheless will expire over time. For the previous two adjusting entries, it was fairly straightforward to determine the amount of the asset that expired during the period.

However, it is difficult, if not impossible, to determine how much of the benefits from using the office equipment expired during any particular period. Recall from Chapter 1 that one approach is to recognize an expense "by a systematic and rational allocation to specific time periods."

Assume that the office equipment has a useful life of five years (60 months) and will be worthless at the end of that period, and that we choose to allocate the cost equally over the period of use. The amount of monthly expense, called *depreciation expense*, is \$200 (\$12,000 ÷ 60 months = \$200), and the following adjusting entry is recorded.

To record depreciation of office equipment for the month of July.

July 31

Depreciation expense.....	200	
Accumulated depreciation—office equipment		200

The entry reduces an asset, office equipment, by \$200. However, the asset account is not reduced directly. Instead, the credit is to an account called *accumulated depreciation*. This is a contra account to office equipment. The normal balance in a contra asset account will be a credit, that is, "contra," or opposite, to the normal debit balance in an asset account. The purpose of the contra account is to keep the original cost of the asset intact while reducing it indirectly. In the balance sheet, office equipment is reported net of accumulated depreciation. This topic is covered in depth in Chapter 11.

After this entry is recorded and posted to the ledger accounts, the accumulated depreciation account will have a credit balance of \$200 and the depreciation expense account will have a \$200 debit balance. If a required adjusting entry for a prepaid expense is not recorded, net income, assets, and shareholders' equity (retained earnings) will be overstated.

Deferred revenues represent liabilities recorded when cash is received from customers in advance of providing a good or service.

DEFERRED REVENUES. **Deferred revenues** are created when a company receives cash from a customer in one period for goods or services that are to be provided in a future period. The cash receipt, an external transaction, is recorded as a debit to cash and a credit to a liability. This liability reflects the company's obligation to provide goods or services in the future.

To illustrate a deferred revenue transaction, assume that during the month of June a magazine publisher received \$24 in cash for a 24-month subscription to a monthly magazine. The subscription begins in July. On receipt of the cash, the publisher records a liability, deferred subscription revenue, of \$24. Subsequently, revenue of \$1 is recognized as each monthly magazine is published and mailed to the customer. An adjusting entry is required each month to increase shareholders' equity (revenue) to recognize the \$1 in revenue and to decrease the liability. Assuming that the cash receipt entry included a credit to a liability, the

adjusting entry for deferred revenues, therefore, is a *debit to a liability*, in this case deferred subscription revenue, and a *credit to revenue*.

Once again, the unadjusted trial balance provides information concerning deferred revenues. For Dress Right Clothing Corporation, the only deferred revenue in the trial balance is deferred rent revenue. Recall that the company subleased a portion of its building to a jewelry store for \$500 per month. On July 16, the jewelry store paid Dress Right \$1,000 in advance for the first two months' rent. The transaction was recorded as a debit to cash and a credit to deferred rent revenue.

At the end of July, how much of the \$1,000 must be recognized? Approximately one-half of one month's rent service has been provided, or \$250, requiring the following adjusting entry.

July 31

Deferred rent revenue	250	
Rent revenue		250

After this entry is recorded and posted to the ledger accounts, the deferred rent revenue account is reduced to a credit balance of \$750 for the remaining one and one-half months' rent, and the rent revenue account will have a \$250 credit balance. If this entry is not recorded, net income and shareholders' equity (retained earnings) will be understated, and liabilities will be overstated.

ALTERNATIVE APPROACH TO RECORD PREPAYMENTS. The same end result can be achieved for prepayments by recording the external transaction directly into an expense or revenue account. In fact, many companies prefer this approach. For simplicity, bookkeeping instructions might require all cash payments for expenses to be debited to the appropriate expense accounts and all cash payments for revenues to be credited to the appropriate revenue accounts. In the adjusting entry, then, the *unexpired* prepaid expense (asset) or *deferred* revenue (liability) as of the end of the period are recorded.

For example, on July 1, 2018, Dress Right paid \$24,000 in cash for one year's rent on its building. The entry included a debit to prepaid rent. The company could have debited rent expense instead of prepaid rent.

Alternative Approach

July 1

Rent expense.....	24,000	
Cash		24,000

The adjusting entry then records the amount of prepaid rent as of the end of July, \$22,000, and reduces rent expense to \$2,000, the cost of rent for the month of July.

Alternative Approach

July 31

Prepaid rent	22,000	
Rent expense.....		22,000

The net effect of handling the transactions in this manner is the same as the previous treatment. Either way, the prepaid rent account will have a debit balance at the end of July of \$22,000 to represent 11 months remaining prepaid rent, and the rent expense account will have a debit balance of \$2,000 to represent the one month of rent used in the period of this income statement being prepared. What's important is that an adjusting entry is recorded to ensure the appropriate amounts are reflected in both the expense and asset *before financial statements are prepared*.

The adjusting entry required when deferred revenues are recognized is a *debit to a liability* and a *credit to revenue*.

To record previously deferred rent revenue recognized during July.

Deferred Rent Revenue	
	0 Beg. bal.
250	1,000
	750 End bal.
Rent Revenue	
	0 Beg. bal.
	250
	250 End bal.

Rent Expense	
Beg. bal.	0
	24,000
End bal.	2,000

Prepaid Rent	
Beg. bal.	0
	22,000
End bal.	22,000

Similarly, the July 16 cash receipt from the jewelry store representing an advance for two months' rent initially could have been recorded by Dress Right as a credit to rent revenue instead of deferred rent revenue (a liability).

Rent Revenue	
	0 Beg. bal.
750	1,000
	250 End bal.

Alternative Approach

July 16

Cash	1,000	
Rent revenue		1,000

If Dress Right records the entire \$1,000 as rent revenue in this way, it would then use the adjusting entry to record the amount of deferred revenue as of the end of July, \$750 to represent the one and one-half month of rent revenue remaining as collected in advance, and the rent revenue account will have a credit balance of \$250, which is for the one-half month of July that has passed in the current period.

Deferred Rent Revenue	
	0 Beg. bal.
750	
	750 End bal.

Alternative Approach

July 31

Rent revenue	750	
Deferred rent revenue		750

Accruals involve transactions where the cash outflow or inflow takes place in a period subsequent to expense or revenue recognition.

Accruals

Accruals occur when the cash flow comes *after* either expense or revenue recognition. For example, a company often uses the services of another entity in one period and pays for them in a subsequent period. An expense must be recognized in the period incurred and an accrued liability recorded. Also, goods and services often are provided to customers on credit. In such instances, a revenue is recognized in the period goods or services are transferred to customers and an asset, a receivable, is recorded.

Many accruals involve external transactions that automatically are recorded from a source document. For example, a sales invoice for a credit sale provides all the information necessary to record the debit to accounts receivable and the credit to sales revenue. However, there are some accruals that involve internal transactions and thus require adjusting entries. Because accruals involve recognition of expense or revenue before cash flow, the unadjusted trial balance will not be as helpful in identifying required adjusting entries as with prepayments.

Accrued liabilities represent liabilities recorded when an expense has been incurred prior to cash payment.

The adjusting entry required to record an accrued liability is a debit to an expense and a credit to a liability.

To record accrued salaries at the end of July.

Salaries Payable	
	0 Beg. bal.
5,500	
	5,500 End bal.

Salaries Expense	
Beg. bal.	0
July 20	5,000
	5,500
End bal.	10,500

ACCRUED LIABILITIES. For **accrued liabilities**, we are concerned with expenses incurred but not yet paid. Dress Right Clothing Corporation requires two adjusting entries for accrued liabilities at July 31, 2018.

The first entry is for employee salaries for the second half of July. Recall that on July 20 the company paid employees \$5,000 for salaries for the first half of the month. Salaries for the second half of July probably will be paid in early August. Nevertheless, an expense is incurred in July for services rendered to the company by its employees. The accrual income statement for July must reflect these services for the entire month regardless of when the cash payment is made.

Therefore, an obligation exists at the end of July to pay the salaries earned by employees for the last half of that month. An adjusting entry is required to increase salaries expense (decrease shareholders' equity) and to increase liabilities for the salaries payable. The adjusting entry for an accrued liability always includes a *debit to an expense*, and a *credit to a liability*. Assuming that salaries for the second half of July are \$5,500, the following adjusting entry is recorded.

July 31

Salaries expense	5,500	
Salaries payable		5,500

After this entry is recorded and posted to the general ledger, the salaries expense account will have a debit balance of \$10,500 (\$5,000 + 5,500), and the salaries payable account will have a credit balance of \$5,500.

The unadjusted trial balance does provide information about the second required accrued liability entry. In the trial balance we can see a balance in the notes payable account of \$40,000. The company borrowed this amount on July 1, 2018, evidenced by two notes, each requiring the payment of 10% interest. Whenever the trial balance reveals interest-bearing debt, and interest is not paid on the last day of the period, an adjusting entry is required for the amount of interest that has built up (accrued) since the last payment date or the last date interest was accrued. In this case, we calculate interest as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Principal} \times \text{Interest rate} \times \text{Time} &= \text{Interest} \\ \$40,000 \times 10\% \times \frac{1}{12} &= \$333 \text{ (rounded)} \end{aligned}$$

Interest rates always are stated as the annual rate. Therefore, the above calculation uses this annual rate multiplied by the principal amount multiplied by the amount of time outstanding, in this case one month or one-twelfth of a year.

July 31

Interest expense	333	
Interest payable		333

To accrue interest expense for July on notes payable.

After this entry is recorded and posted to the ledger accounts, the interest expense account will have a debit balance of \$333, and the interest payable account will have a credit balance of \$333. Failure to record a required adjusting entry for an accrued liability will cause net income and shareholders' equity (retained earnings) to be overstated, and liabilities to be understated.⁴

ACCRUED RECEIVABLES. **Accrued receivables** involve the recognition of revenue for goods or services transferred to customers *before* cash is received. An example of an internal accrued revenue event is the recognition of interest earned on a loan to another entity. For example, assume that Dress Right loaned another corporation \$30,000 at the beginning of August, evidenced by a note receivable. Terms of the note call for the payment of principal, \$30,000, and interest at 8% in three months. An external transaction records the cash disbursement—a debit to note receivable and a credit to cash of \$30,000.

Accrued receivables involve situations when the revenue is recognized in a period prior to the cash receipt.

What adjusting entry would be required at the end of August? Dress Right needs to record the interest revenue earned but not yet received along with the corresponding receivable. Interest receivable increases and interest revenue (shareholders' equity) also increases. The adjusting entry for accrued receivables always includes a *debit to an asset*, a receivable, and a *credit to revenue*. In this case, at the end of August Dress Right recognizes \$200 in interest revenue ($\$30,000 \times 8\% \times 1/12$) and makes the following adjusting entry. If this entry is not recorded, net income, assets, and shareholders' equity (retained earnings) will be understated.

The adjusting entry required to record an accrued revenue is a debit to an asset, a receivable, and a credit to revenue.

August 31

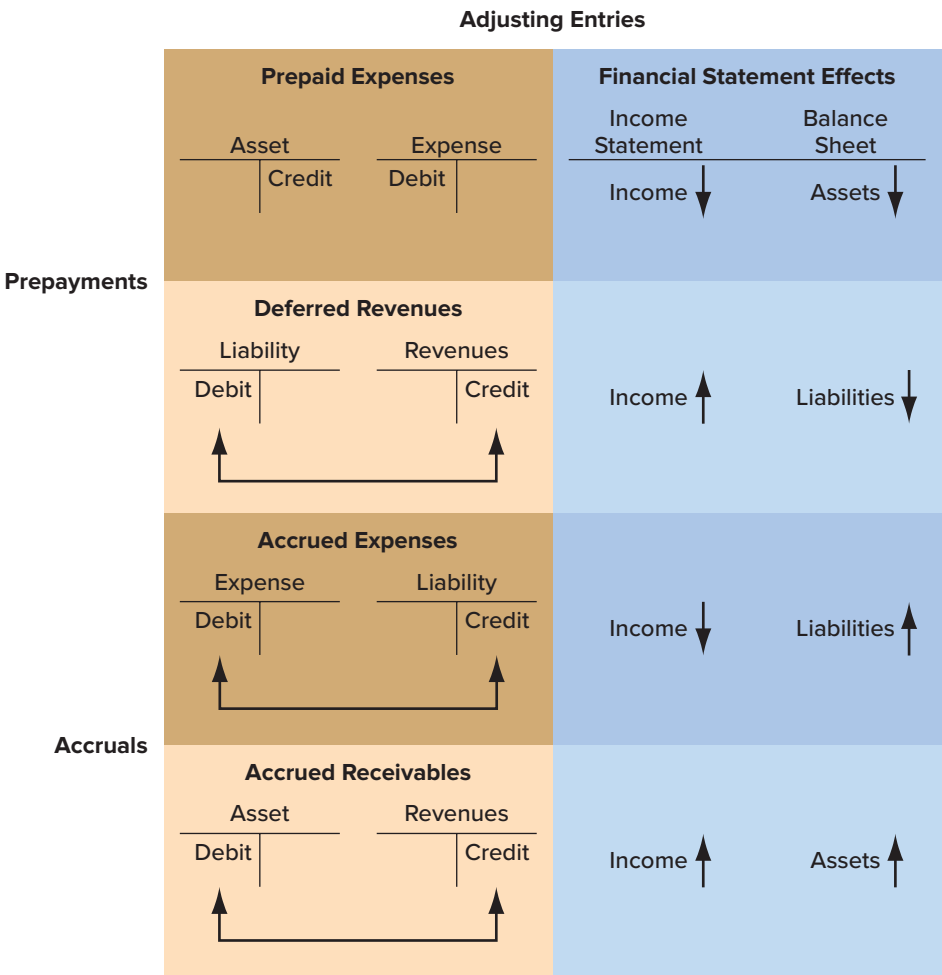
Interest receivable	200	
Interest revenue		200

To accrue interest revenue earned in August on note receivable.

There are no accrued revenue adjusting entries required for Dress Right at the end of July. The required adjusting entries for prepayments and accruals are recapped with the aid of T-accounts in Illustration 2–10. In each case an expense or revenue is recognized in a period that differs from the period in which cash was paid or received. These adjusting entries are necessary to properly measure operating performance and financial position on an accrual basis.

⁴Dress Right Clothing is a corporation. Corporations are income-tax-paying entities. Income taxes—federal, state, and local—are assessed on an annual basis and payments are made throughout the year. An additional adjusting entry would be required for Dress Right to accrue the amount of estimated income taxes payable that are applicable to the month of July. Accounting for income taxes is introduced in Chapter 4 and covered in depth in Chapter 16.

Illustration 2-10
Adjusting Entries



Accountants often must make *estimates* in order to comply with the accrual accounting model.

Estimates

A third classification of adjusting entries is **estimates**. Accountants often must make estimates of future events to comply with the accrual accounting model. For example, the calculation of depreciation expense requires an estimate of expected useful life of the asset being depreciated as well as its expected residual value. We discussed the adjusting entries for depreciation expense in the context of its being a prepayment, but it also could be thought of as an estimate.

One adjusting-entry situation involving an estimate that does not fit neatly into either the prepayment or accrual classification is bad debts. Accounting for bad debts requires a company to estimate the amount of accounts receivable that ultimately will prove to be uncollectible and to reduce accounts receivable by that estimated amount. This is neither a prepayment nor an accrual because it does not involve the payment of cash either before or after income is reduced. We explore accounts receivable and bad debts in depth in Chapter 7.

Illustration 2-11 recaps the July 31, 2018, adjusting entries for Dress Right Clothing Corporation as they would appear in a general journal. The journal entries are numbered (1) to (6) corresponding to the number used in the worksheet illustrated in Appendix 2A.

After the adjusting entries are posted to the general ledger accounts, the next step—Step 7—in the processing cycle is to prepare an **adjusted trial balance**. The term adjusted refers to the fact that adjusting entries have now been posted to the accounts. Recall that the column titled Post. Ref. (Posting Reference) is the number assigned to the general ledger account that is being debited or credited. Illustration 2-12 shows the July 31, 2018, adjusted trial balance for Dress Right Clothing Corporation.

DRESS RIGHT CLOTHING CORPORATION
General Journal

Page 2

Date 2018		Account Title and Explanation	Post. Ref.	Debit	Credit
July	31	Supplies expense	520	800	
(1)		Supplies	125		800
		<i>To record the cost of supplies used during the month of July.</i>			
(2)	31	Rent expense	530	2,000	
		Prepaid rent	130		2,000
		<i>To record the cost of expired rent for the month of July.</i>			
(3)	31	Depreciation expense	540	200	
		Accumulated depreciation—office equipment	155		200
		<i>To record depreciation of office equipment for the month of July.</i>			
(4)	31	Deferred rent revenue	230	250	
		Rent revenue	410		250
		<i>To record previously deferred rent revenue recognized during July.</i>			
(5)	31	Salaries expense	510	5,500	
		Salaries payable	230		5,500
		<i>To record accrued salaries at the end of July.</i>			
(6)	31	Interest expense	550	333	
		Interest payable	240		333
		<i>To accrue interest expense for July on notes payable.</i>			

Illustration 2-11

The General Journal—
Adjusting Entries

DRESS RIGHT CLOTHING CORPORATION
Adjusted Trial Balance
July 31, 2018

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	68,500	
Accounts receivable	2,000	
Supplies	1,200	
Prepaid rent	22,000	
Inventory	38,000	
Office equipment	12,000	
Accumulated depreciation—office equipment		200
Accounts payable		35,000
Notes payable		40,000
Deferred rent revenue		750
Salaries payable		5,500
Interest payable		333
Common stock		60,000
Retained earnings	1,000	
Sales revenue		38,500
Rent revenue		250
Cost of goods sold	22,000	
Salaries expense	10,500	
Supplies expense	800	
Rent expense	2,000	
Depreciation expense	200	
Interest expense	333	
Totals	<u>180,533</u>	<u>180,533</u>

Illustration 2-12

Adjusted Trial Balance

STEP 7

Prepare an *adjusted trial balance*.

Concept Review Exercise

ADJUSTING ENTRIES

The Wyndham Wholesale Company needs to prepare financial statements at the end of August 2018 for presentation to its bank. An unadjusted trial balance as of August 31, 2018, was presented in a previous concept review exercise.

The following information also is available:

- The note payable requires the entire \$30,000 in principal plus interest at 10% to be paid on July 31, 2019. The date of the loan is August 1, 2018.
- Depreciation on the equipment for the month of August is \$500.
- The note receivable is dated August 16, 2018. The note requires the entire \$20,000 in principal plus interest at 12% to be repaid in four months (the loan was outstanding for one-half month during August).
- The prepaid rent of \$6,000 represents rent for the months of August and September.

Required:

- Prepare any necessary adjusting entries at August 31, 2018.
- Prepare an adjusted trial balance as of August 31, 2018.
- What is the total net effect on income (overstated or understated) if the adjusting entries are not recorded?

Solution:

- Prepare any necessary adjusting entries at August 31, 2018.

- An adjusting entry is required to accrue the interest expense on the note payable for the month of August. Accrued interest is calculated as follows:

$$\$30,000 \times 10\% \times \frac{1}{12} = \$250$$

Interest expense.....	250	
Interest payable		250

- Depreciation expense on the equipment must be recorded.

Depreciation expense.....	500	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment.....		500

- An adjusting entry is required for the one-half month of accrued interest revenue earned on the note receivable. Accrued interest is calculated as follows:

$$\$20,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{1}{12} \times \frac{1}{2} = \$100$$

Interest receivable	100	
Interest revenue.....		100

- An adjusting entry is required to recognize the amount of prepaid rent that expired during August.

Rent expense.....	3,000	
Prepaid rent		3,000

- Prepare an adjusted trial balance as of August 31, 2018.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	21,000	
Accounts receivable	25,000	
Prepaid rent	3,000	
Inventory	16,000	
Interest receivable	100	
Note receivable	20,000	
Equipment	20,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		500
Accounts payable		20,000
Interest payable		250
Note payable		30,000
Common stock		50,000
Retained earnings	1,000	
Sales revenue		40,000
Interest revenue		100
Cost of goods sold	22,000	
Salaries expense	7,000	
Utilities expense	2,000	
Interest expense	250	
Depreciation expense	500	
Rent expense	3,000	
Totals	140,850	140,850

3. What is the effect on income (overstated or understated), if the adjusting entries are not recorded?

Adjusting Entry	Income overstated (understated)
Interest expense	\$ 250
Depreciation expense	500
Interest revenue	(100)
Rent expense	3,000
Net effect, income overstated by	\$3,650

We now turn our attention to the preparation of financial statements.

Preparing the Financial Statements

The purpose of each of the steps in the processing cycle to this point is to provide information for Step 8—preparation of the **financial statements**. The adjusted trial balance contains the necessary information. After all, the financial statements are the primary means of communicating financial information to external parties.

● LO2–6

STEP 8

Preparation of financial statements.

The Income Statement and the Statement of Comprehensive Income

The purpose of the **income statement** is to summarize the profit-generating activities of a company that occurred during a particular period of time. It is a *change* statement in that it reports the changes in shareholders' equity (retained earnings) that occurred during the period as a result of revenues, expenses, gains, and losses. Illustration 2–13 shows the income statement for Dress Right Clothing Corporation for the month of July 2018.

The income statement indicates a profit for the month of July of **\$2,917**. During the month, the company was able to increase its net assets (equity) from activities related to selling its product. Dress Right is a corporation and subject to the payment of income tax on its profits. We ignore this required accrual here and address income taxes in a later chapter.

The components of the income statement usually are classified, that is, grouped according to common characteristics. A common classification scheme is to separate operating items from nonoperating items, as we do in Dress Right's income statement. Operating items

The income statement is a *change* statement that summarizes the profit-generating transactions that caused shareholders' equity (retained earnings) to change during the period.

Illustration 2-13

Income Statement

DRESS RIGHT CLOTHING CORPORATION			
Income Statement			
For the Month of July 2018			
Sales revenue			\$38,500
Cost of goods sold			22,000
			<u>16,500</u>
Gross profit			
Operating expenses:			
Salaries	\$10,500		
Supplies	800		
Rent	2,000		
Depreciation	200		
			<u>13,500</u>
Total operating expenses			
Operating income			3,000
Other income (expense):			
Rent revenue	250		
Interest expense	(333)		(83)
			<u>(83)</u>
Net income			<u><u>\$ 2,917</u></u>

include revenues and expenses directly related to the principal revenue-generating activities of the company. For example, operating items for a manufacturing company include sales revenues from the sale of products and all expenses related to this activity. Companies that sell products like Dress Right often report a subtotal within operating income, sales less cost of goods sold, called *gross profit*. Nonoperating items include certain gains and losses and revenues and expenses from peripheral activities. For Dress Right Clothing, rent revenue and interest expense are nonoperating items because they do not relate to the principal revenue-generating activity of the company, selling clothes. In Chapter 4 we discuss the format and content of the income statement in more depth.

The **statement of comprehensive income** extends the income statement by reporting all changes in shareholders' equity during the period that were not a result of transactions with owners. A few types of gains and losses, called **other comprehensive income (OCI) or loss** items, are excluded from the determination of net income and the income statement, but are included in the broader concept of **comprehensive income**. Comprehensive income can be reported in one of two ways: (1) in a single, continuous statement of comprehensive income, or (2) in two separate, but consecutive statements.⁵

In the single statement approach, net income is a subtotal within the statement followed by these OCI items, culminating in a final total of comprehensive income. In the two statement approach, a company presents an income statement immediately followed by a statement of comprehensive income. The statement of comprehensive income begins with net income as the first component followed by OCI items to arrive at comprehensive income. Obviously, the approaches are quite similar; in the separate statement approach, we separate the continuous statement into two parts, but the content is the same.

Dress Right Clothing has no OCI items so the company presents only an income statement in Illustration 2-13. An entity that has no OCI items is not required to report OCI or comprehensive income. We discuss comprehensive income and the alternative approaches to its presentation in more depth in Chapter 4.

The Balance Sheet

The purpose of the **balance sheet** is to present the financial position of the company on a particular date. Unlike the income statement, which is a change statement reporting events that occurred *during a period of time*, the balance sheet is a statement that presents an

The **balance sheet** presents an organized list of assets, liabilities and equity at a particular point in time.

⁵FASB ASC 220-10-45-1: Comprehensive Income—Overall—Other Presentation Matters (*Accounting Standards Update No. 2011-05* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, June 2011)).

organized list of assets, liabilities, and shareholders' equity *at a point in time*. To provide a quick overview, Illustration 2–14 shows the balance sheet for Dress Right at July 31, 2018.

DRESS RIGHT CLOTHING CORPORATION			
Balance Sheet			
At July 31, 2018			
Assets			
Current assets:			
Cash		\$	68,500
Accounts receivable			2,000
Supplies			1,200
Inventory			38,000
Prepaid rent			22,000
Total current assets			131,700
Property and equipment:			
Office equipment	\$12,000		
Less: Accumulated depreciation	200		11,800
Total assets			\$143,500
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity			
Current liabilities:			
Accounts payable		\$	35,000
Salaries payable			5,500
Deferred rent revenue			750
Interest payable			333
Note payable			10,000
Total current liabilities			51,583
Long-term liabilities:			
Note payable			30,000
Shareholders' equity:			
Common stock, 6,000 shares issued and outstanding	\$60,000		
Retained earnings	1,917*		
Total shareholders' equity			61,917
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity			\$143,500
*Beginning retained earnings + Net income – Dividends			
	\$0	+	2,917
		–	1,000
			= \$1,917

Illustration 2–14

Balance Sheet

As we do in the income statement, we group the balance sheet elements into meaningful categories. For example, most balance sheets include the classifications of **current assets** and **current liabilities**. Current assets are those assets that are cash, will be converted into cash, or will be used up within one year or the operating cycle, whichever is longer. Current liabilities are those liabilities that will be satisfied within one year or the operating cycle, whichever is longer. For a manufacturing company, the operating cycle refers to the period of time necessary to convert cash to raw materials, raw materials to a finished product, the finished product to receivables, and then finally receivables back to cash. For most companies, this period is less than a year.

Examples of assets not classified as current include property and equipment and long-term receivables and investments. The only noncurrent asset that Dress Right has at July 31, 2018, is office equipment, which is classified under the property and equipment category.

All liabilities not classified as current are listed as long term. Dress Right's liabilities at July 31, 2018, include the \$30,000 note payable due to be paid in 23 months. This liability is classified as long term.

Balance sheet items usually are classified (grouped) according to common characteristics.

Shareholders' equity lists the *paid-in capital* portion of equity—common stock—and *retained earnings*. Notice that the income statement we looked at in Illustration 2–13 ties in to the balance sheet through retained earnings. Specifically, the revenue, expense, gain, and loss transactions that make up net income in the income statement (\$2,917) become the major components of retained earnings. Later in the chapter we discuss the closing process we use to transfer, or close, these *temporary* income statement accounts to the *permanent* retained earnings account.

During the month, retained earnings, which increased by the amount of net income, also decreased by the amount of the cash dividend paid to shareholders, \$1,000. The net effect of these two changes is an increase in retained earnings from zero at the beginning of the period to **\$1,917** (\$2,917 – 1,000) at the end of the period and also is reported in the statement of shareholders' equity in Illustration 2–16.

The Statement of Cash Flows

The purpose of the *statement of cash flows* is to report the events that caused cash to change during the period.

Similar to the income statement, the **statement of cash flows** also is a change statement. The purpose of the statement is to report the events that caused cash to change during the period. The statement classifies all transactions affecting cash into one of three categories: (1) **operating activities**, (2) **investing activities**, and (3) **financing activities**. Operating activities are inflows and outflows of cash related to transactions entering into the determination of net income. Investing activities involve the acquisition and sale of (1) long-term assets used in the business and (2) nonoperating investment assets. Financing activities involve cash inflows and outflows from transactions with creditors and owners.

The statement of cash flows for Dress Right for the month of July 2018 is shown in Illustration 2–15. As this is the first period of operations for Dress Right, the cash balance at the beginning of the period is zero. The net increase in cash of \$68,500, therefore, equals the ending balance of cash disclosed in the balance sheet.

Illustration 2–15

Statement of Cash Flows

DRESS RIGHT CLOTHING CORPORATION			
Statement of Cash Flows			
For the Month of July 2018			
Cash Flows from Operating Activities			
Cash inflows:			
From customers		\$36,500	
From rent		1,000	
Cash outflows:			
For rent		(24,000)	
For supplies		(2,000)	
To suppliers of merchandise		(25,000)	
To employees		(5,000)	
Net cash flows from operating activities			\$(18,500)
Cash Flows from Investing Activities			
Purchase of office equipment			(12,000)
Cash Flows from Financing Activities			
Issue of common stock		\$60,000	
Increase in notes payable		40,000	
Payment of cash dividend		(1,000)	
Net cash flows from financing activities			99,000
Net increase in cash			\$ 68,500

There are two generally accepted formats that can be used to report operating activities, the direct method and the indirect method. In Illustration 2–15 we use the direct method. These two methods are discussed and illustrated in subsequent chapters.

The Statement of Shareholders' Equity

The final statement, the **statement of shareholders' equity**, also is a change statement. Its purpose is to disclose the sources of the changes in the various permanent shareholders' equity accounts that occurred during the period from investments by owners, distributions to owners, net income, and other comprehensive income. Illustration 2–16 shows the statement of shareholders' equity for Dress Right for the month of July 2018.⁶

The statement of shareholders' equity discloses the sources of changes in the permanent shareholders' equity accounts.

DRESS RIGHT CLOTHING CORPORATION Statement of Shareholders' Equity For the Month of July 2018

	Common Stock	Retained Earnings	Total Shareholders' Equity
Balance at July 1, 2018	\$ —0—	\$ —0—	\$ —0—
Issue of common stock	60,000		60,000
Net income for July 2018		2,917	2,917
Less: Dividends		(1,000)	(1,000)
Balance at July 31, 2018	<u>\$60,000</u>	<u>\$1,917</u>	<u>\$61,917</u>

Illustration 2–16

Statement of Shareholders' Equity

The individual profit-generating transactions causing retained earnings to change are summarized in the income statement. Therefore, the statement of shareholders' equity only shows the net effect of these transactions on retained earnings, in this case an increase of **\$2,917**. In addition, the company paid its shareholders a cash dividend that reduced retained earnings.

The Closing Process

At the end of any interim reporting period, the accounting processing cycle is now complete. An interim reporting period is any period when financial statements are produced other than at the end of the fiscal year. However, at the end of the fiscal year, two final steps are necessary, closing the temporary accounts—Step 9—and preparing a post-closing trial balance—Step 10.

The **closing process** serves a *dual purpose*: (1) the temporary accounts (revenues, expenses, gains and losses) are reduced to *zero balances*, ready to measure activity in the upcoming accounting period, and (2) these temporary account balances are *closed (transferred) to retained earnings* to reflect the changes that have occurred in that account during the period. Often, an intermediate step is to close revenues and expenses to **income summary**, and then income summary is closed to retained earnings. The use of the income summary account is just a bookkeeping convenience that provides a check that all temporary accounts have been properly closed (that is, the balance equals net income or loss).

To illustrate the closing process, assume that the fiscal year-end for Dress Right Clothing Corporation is July 31. Using the adjusted trial balance in Illustration 2–12, we can prepare the following closing entries.

STEP 9

Close the temporary accounts to retained earnings (at year-end only).

LO2–7

July 31

Sales revenue.....	38,500	
Rent revenue	250	
Income summary		38,750

To close the revenue accounts to income summary.

⁶Some companies choose to disclose the changes in the retained earnings component of shareholders' equity in a separate statement or in a combined statement of income and retained earnings.

The first closing entry transfers the revenue account balances to income summary. Because revenue accounts have credit balances, they are debited to bring them to zero. After this entry is posted to the accounts, both revenue accounts have a zero balance.

To close the expense accounts to income summary.

July 31

Income summary	35,833	
Cost of goods sold		22,000
Salaries expense		10,500
Supplies expense		800
Rent expense		2,000
Depreciation expense		200
Interest expense		333

The second closing entry transfers the expense account balances to income summary. As expense accounts have debit balances, they are credited to bring them to zero. After this entry is posted to the accounts, the expense accounts have a zero balance and the income summary account has a credit balance equal to net income for the period, in this case \$2,917.

Income Summary			
Expenses	35,833	38,750	Revenues
		2,917	Net income

The third entry closes the income summary account to retained earnings.

To close the income summary account to retained earnings.

July 31

Income summary	2,917	
Retained earnings		2,917

After this entry is posted to the accounts, the temporary accounts have zero balances and retained earnings has increased by the amount of the net income. It is important to remember that the temporary accounts are closed only at year-end and not at the end of any interim period. Closing the temporary accounts during the year would make it difficult to prepare the annual income statement.

Additional Consideration

A previous additional consideration indicated that an alternative method of recording a cash dividend is to debit a temporary account called dividends, rather than debiting retained earnings. If this approach is used, an additional closing entry is required to close the dividend account to retained earnings, as follows:

Retained earnings	1,000	
Dividends		1,000

As you can see, the net result of a cash dividend is the same—a reduction in retained earnings and a reduction in cash.

STEP 10

Prepare a *post-closing trial balance* (at year-end only).

After the closing entries are posted to the ledger accounts, a **post-closing trial balance** is prepared. The purpose of this trial balance is to verify that the closing entries were prepared and posted correctly and that the accounts are now ready for next year's transactions. Illustration 2-17 shows the post-closing trial balance for Dress Right at July 31, 2018, assuming a July 31 fiscal year-end.

DRESS RIGHT CLOTHING CORPORATION
Post-Closing Trial Balance
July 31, 2018

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	68,500	
Accounts receivable	2,000	
Supplies	1,200	
Prepaid rent	22,000	
Inventory	38,000	
Office equipment	12,000	
Accumulated depreciation—office equipment		200
Accounts payable		35,000
Notes payable		40,000
Deferred rent revenue		750
Salaries payable		5,500
Interest payable		333
Common stock		60,000
Retained earnings		1,917
Totals	143,700	143,700

Illustration 2-17

Post-Closing Trial Balance

Concept Review Exercise

Refer to the August 31, 2018, adjusted trial balance of the Wyndham Wholesale Company presented in a previous concept review exercise.

Required:

1. Prepare an income statement and a statement of shareholders' equity for the month ended August 31, 2018, and a classified balance sheet as of August 31, 2018.
2. Assume that August 31 is the company's fiscal year-end. Prepare the necessary closing entries and a post-closing trial balance.

Solution:

1. Prepare an income statement and a statement of shareholders' equity for the month ended August 31, 2018, and a classified balance sheet as of August 31, 2018.

**FINANCIAL
STATEMENT
PREPARATION AND
CLOSING**

WYNDHAM WHOLESALE COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Month of August 2018

Sales revenue		\$40,000
Cost of goods sold		22,000
Gross profit		18,000
Operating expenses:		
Salaries	\$7,000	
Utilities	2,000	
Depreciation	500	
Rent	3,000	
Total operating expenses		12,500
Operating income		5,500
Other income (expense):		
Interest revenue	100	
Interest expense	(250)	(150)
Net income		\$ 5,350

WYNDHAM WHOLESALE COMPANY
Statement of Shareholders' Equity
For the Month of August 2018

	Common Stock	Retained Earnings	Total Shareholders' Equity
Balance at August 1, 2018	\$ —0—	\$ —0—	\$ —0—
Issue of common stock	50,000		50,000
Net income for August 2018		5,350	5,350
Less: Dividends		(1,000)	(1,000)
Balance at August 31, 2018	<u>\$50,000</u>	<u>\$4,350</u>	<u>\$54,350</u>

WYNDHAM WHOLESALE COMPANY
Balance Sheet
At August 31, 2018
Assets

Current assets:		
Cash		\$ 21,000
Accounts receivable		25,000
Inventory		16,000
Interest receivable		100
Note receivable		20,000
Prepaid rent		3,000
Total current assets		<u>85,100</u>
Property and equipment:		
Equipment	\$20,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation	500	19,500
Total assets		<u>\$104,600</u>

Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity

Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable		\$ 20,000
Interest payable		250
Note payable		30,000
Total current liabilities		<u>50,250</u>
Shareholders' equity:		
Common stock, 5,000 shares issued and outstanding	\$50,000	
Retained earnings	4,350	
Total shareholders' equity		<u>54,350</u>
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity		<u>\$104,600</u>

2. Assume that August 31 is the company's fiscal year-end. Prepare the necessary closing entries and a post-closing trial balance.

To close the revenue accounts to income summary.

August 31		
Sales revenue.....	40,000	
Interest revenue.....	100	
Income summary		40,100

To close the expense accounts to income summary.

August 31		
Income summary	34,750	
Cost of goods sold		22,000
Salaries expense		7,000
Utilities expense		2,000
Depreciation expense		500
Rent expense.....		3,000
Interest expense		250

To close the income summary account to retained earnings.

August 31		
Income summary	5,350	
Retained earnings		5,350

Post-Closing Trial Balance

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	21,000	
Accounts receivable	25,000	
Prepaid rent	3,000	
Inventory	16,000	
Interest receivable	100	
Note receivable	20,000	
Equipment	20,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		500
Accounts payable		20,000
Interest payable		250
Note payable		30,000
Common stock		50,000
Retained earnings		4,350
Totals	105,100	105,100

Conversion from Cash Basis to Accrual Basis

In Chapter 1, we discussed and illustrated the differences between cash and accrual accounting. Cash basis accounting produces a measure called *net operating cash flow*. This measure is the difference between cash receipts and cash disbursements during a reporting period from transactions related to providing goods and services to customers. On the other hand, the accrual accounting model measures an entity's accomplishments and resource sacrifices during the period, regardless of when cash is received or paid. At this point, you might wish to review the material in Chapter 1 to reinforce your understanding of the motivation for using the accrual accounting model.

• LO2-8

Adjusting entries, for the most part, are conversions from cash basis to accrual basis. Prepayments and accruals occur when cash flow precedes or follows expense or revenue recognition.

Accountants sometimes are called upon to convert cash basis financial statements to accrual basis financial statements, particularly for small businesses. You now have all of the tools you need to make this conversion. For example, if a company paid \$20,000 cash for insurance during the fiscal year and you determine that there was \$5,000 in prepaid insurance at the beginning of the year and \$3,000 at the end of the year, then you can determine (accrual basis) *insurance expense* for the year. Prepaid insurance decreased by \$2,000 during the year, so insurance expense must be \$22,000 (\$20,000 in cash paid *plus* the decrease in prepaid insurance). You can visualize as follows:

Prepaid Insurance	
Balance, beginning of year	\$ 5,000
Plus: Cash paid	20,000
Less: Insurance expense	?
Balance, end of year	<u>\$ 3,000</u>

Insurance expense of \$22,000 completes the explanation of the change in the balance of prepaid insurance. Prepaid insurance of \$3,000 is reported as an asset in an accrual basis balance sheet.

Suppose a company paid \$150,000 for salaries to employees during the year and you determine that there were \$12,000 and \$18,000 in salaries payable at the beginning and end of the year, respectively. What was salaries expense for the year?

Salaries Payable	
Balance, beginning of year	\$ 12,000
Plus: Salaries expense	?
Less: Cash paid	150,000
Balance, end of year	<u>\$ 18,000</u>

Salaries payable increased by \$6,000 during the year, so *salaries expense* must be \$156,000 (\$150,000 in cash paid *plus* the increase in salaries payable). Salaries payable of \$18,000 is reported as a liability in an accrual basis balance sheet.

Using T-accounts is a convenient approach for converting from cash to accrual accounting.

Salaries Payable		Salaries Expense	
	12,000 Beg. balance		
Cash paid 150,000	?	?	Salaries expense
	18,000 End. balance		

The debit to salaries expense and credit to salaries payable must have been \$156,000 to balance the salaries payable account.

For another example using T-accounts, assume that the amount of cash collected from customers during the year was \$220,000, and you know that accounts receivable at the beginning of the year was \$45,000 and \$33,000 at the end of the year. You can use T-accounts to determine that *sales revenue* for the year must have been \$208,000, the necessary debit to accounts receivable and credit to sales revenue to balance the accounts receivable account.

Accounts Receivable		Sales Revenue	
Beg. balance 45,000			
Credit sales ?	220,000 Cash collections	?	Credit sales
End. balance 33,000			

Now suppose that, on occasion, customers pay in advance of receiving a product or service. Recall from our previous discussion of adjusting entries that this event creates a liability called deferred revenue. Assume the same facts in the previous example except you also determine that deferred revenues were \$10,000 and \$7,000 at the beginning and end of the year, respectively. A \$3,000 decrease in deferred revenues means that the company recognized an additional \$3,000 in sales revenue for which the cash had been collected in a previous year. So, *sales revenue* for the year must have been \$211,000, the \$208,000 determined in the previous example *plus* the \$3,000 decrease in deferred revenue.

Illustration 2–18 provides another example of converting from cash basis net income to accrual basis net income.

Notice a pattern in the adjustments to cash net income. When converting from cash to accrual income, we add increases and deduct decreases in assets. For example, an increase in accounts receivable means that the company recognized more revenue than cash collected, requiring the addition to cash basis income. Conversely, we add decreases and deduct increases in accrued liabilities. For example, a decrease in interest payable means that the company incurred less interest expense than the cash interest it paid, requiring the addition to cash basis income. These adjustments are summarized in Illustration 2–19.

Most companies keep their books on an accrual basis.⁷ A more important conversion for these companies is from the accrual basis to the cash basis. This conversion, essential for the preparation of the statement of cash flows, is discussed and illustrated in Chapters 4

Most companies must convert from an accrual basis to a cash basis when preparing the statement of cash flows.

⁷Generally accepted accounting principles require the use of the accrual basis. Some small, nonpublic companies might use the cash basis in preparing their financial statements as another comprehensive basis of accounting.

The Krinard Cleaning Services Company maintains its records on the cash basis, with one exception. The company reports equipment as an asset and records depreciation expense on the equipment. During 2018, Krinard collected \$165,000 from customers, paid \$92,000 in operating expenses, and recorded \$10,000 in depreciation expense, resulting in net income of **\$63,000**. The owner has asked you to convert this \$63,000 in net income to full accrual net income. You are able to determine the following information about accounts receivable, prepaid expenses, accrued liabilities, and deferred revenues:

	January 1, 2018	December 31, 2018
Accounts receivable	\$16,000	\$25,000
Prepaid expenses	7,000	4,000
Accrued liabilities (for operating expenses)	2,100	1,400
Deferred revenues	3,000	4,200

Accrual net income is \$68,500, determined as follows:

Cash basis net income	\$63,000
Add: Increase in accounts receivable	9,000
Deduct: Decrease in prepaid expenses	(3,000)
Add: Decrease in accrued liabilities	700
Deduct: Increase in deferred revenues	(1,200)
Accrual basis net income	<u><u>\$68,500</u></u>

Illustration 2-18

Cash to Accrual

Converting Cash Basis Income to Accrual Basis Income

	Increases	Decreases
Assets	Add	Deduct
Liabilities	Deduct	Add

Illustration 2-19

Converting Cash Basis to Accrual Basis Income

and 21. The lessons learned here, though, will help you with that conversion. For example, if sales revenue for the period is \$120,000 and beginning and ending accounts receivable are \$20,000 and \$24,000, respectively, how much cash did the company collect from its customers during the period? The answer is \$116,000. An increase in accounts receivable of \$4,000 means that the company collected \$4,000 less from customers than accrual sales revenue, and cash basis income is \$4,000 less than accrual basis income.

Financial Reporting Case Solution

1. **What purpose do adjusting entries serve?** (p. 63) Adjusting entries help ensure that all revenues are recognized in the period goods or services are transferred to customers, regardless of when cash is received. In this instance, for example, \$13,000 cash has been received for services that haven't yet been performed. Also, adjusting entries enable a company to recognize all expenses incurred during a period, regardless of when cash is paid. Without depreciation, the friends' cost of using the equipment is not taken into account. Conversely, without adjustment, the cost of rent is overstated by \$3,000 paid in advance for part of next year's rent.

With adjustments, we get an accrual income statement that provides a more complete measure of a company's operating performance and a better measure for predicting future operating cash flows. Similarly, the balance sheet provides a more complete assessment of assets and liabilities as sources of future cash receipts and disbursements.



© goodluz/123RF

2. **What year-end adjustments are needed to revise the income statement? Did your friends do as well their first year as they thought?** (p. 63) Three year-end adjusting entries are needed:

1. Depreciation expense (\$80,000 ÷ 5 years)	16,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		16,000
2. Prepaid rent [\$500 × 6 months (July–Dec.)]	3,000	
Rent expense		3,000
3. Consulting revenue	13,000	
Deferred consulting revenue		13,000

No, your friends did not fare as well as their cash based statement would have indicated. With appropriate adjustments, their net income is actually only \$20,000:

Consulting revenue (\$96,000 – 13,000)		\$83,000
Operating expenses:		
Salaries	\$32,000	
Rent (\$9,000 – 3,000)	6,000	
Supplies	4,800	
Utilities	3,000	
Advertising	1,200	
Depreciation	16,000	
		<u>63,000</u>
Net income		<u>\$20,000</u>

The Bottom Line

- **LO2-1** The accounting equation underlies the process used to capture the effect of economic events. The equation (Assets = Liabilities + Owners' Equity) implies an equality between the total economic resources of an entity (its assets) and the total claims against the entity (liabilities and equity). It also implies that each economic event affecting this equation will have a dual effect because resources always must equal claims. (p. 48)
- **LO2-2** After determining the dual effect of external events on the accounting equation, the transaction is recorded in a journal. A journal is a chronological list of transactions in debit/credit form. (p. 52)
- **LO2-3** The next step in the processing cycle is to periodically transfer, or *post*, the debit and credit information from the journal to individual general ledger accounts. A general ledger is simply a collection of all of the company's various accounts. Each account provides a summary of the effects of all events and transactions on that individual account. The process of entering items from the journal to the general ledger is called *posting*. An unadjusted trial balance is then prepared. (p. 59)
- **LO2-4** The next step in the processing cycle is to record the effect of *internal events* on the accounting equation. These transactions are commonly referred to as *adjusting entries*. Adjusting entries can be classified into three types: (1) prepayments, (2) accruals, and (3) estimates. Prepayments are transactions in which the cash flow *precedes* expense or revenue recognition. Accruals involve transactions where the cash outflow or inflow takes place in a period *subsequent* to expense or revenue recognition. Estimates for items such as future bad debts on receivables often are required to comply with the accrual accounting model. (p. 62)
- **LO2-5** Adjusting entries are recorded in the general journal and posted to the ledger accounts at the end of any period when financial statements must be prepared for external use. After these entries are posted to the general ledger accounts, an adjusted trial balance is prepared. (p. 63)
- **LO2-6** The adjusted trial balance is used to prepare the financial statements. The basic financial statements are: (1) the income statement, (2) the statement of comprehensive income, (3) the balance sheet, (4) the statement of cash flows, and (5) the statement of shareholders' equity. The purpose of the income statement is to summarize the profit-generating activities of the company that occurred during a particular period of time. A company also must report its other comprehensive income (OCI) or loss items either in a single, continuous statement or in a separate statement of comprehensive income. In the single statement approach, net income is a subtotal within the statement followed by these OCI items, culminating in a final total of comprehensive income. In the two statement approach, a company presents an income statement

immediately followed by a statement of comprehensive income. The statement of comprehensive income begins with net income as the first component followed by OCI items to arrive at comprehensive income. The balance sheet presents the financial position of the company on a particular date. The statement of cash flows discloses the events that caused cash to change during the reporting period. The statement of shareholders' equity discloses the sources of the changes in the various permanent shareholders' equity accounts that occurred during the period. (p. 71)

- LO2-7 At the end of the fiscal year, a final step in the accounting processing cycle, closing, is required. The closing process serves a *dual purpose*: (1) the temporary accounts (revenues and expenses) are reduced to *zero balances*, ready to measure activity in the upcoming accounting period, and (2) these temporary account balances are *closed (transferred) to retained earnings* to reflect the changes that have occurred in that account during the period. Often, an intermediate step is to close revenues and expenses to *income summary*; then *income summary* is closed to *retained earnings*. (p. 75)
- LO2-8 Cash basis accounting produces a measure called *net operating cash flow*. This measure is the difference between cash receipts and cash disbursements during a reporting period from transactions related to providing goods and services to customers. On the other hand, the accrual accounting model measures an entity's accomplishments and resource sacrifices during the period, regardless of when cash is received or paid. Accountants sometimes are called upon to convert cash basis financial statements to accrual basis financial statements, particularly for small businesses. (p. 79) ●

Use of a Worksheet

A **worksheet** often is used to organize the accounting information needed to prepare adjusting and closing entries and the financial statements. It is an informal tool only and is not part of the accounting system. There are many different ways to design and use worksheets. We will illustrate a representative method using the financial information for the Dress Right Clothing Corporation presented in the chapter. Software such Excel facilitates the use of worksheets.

Illustration 2A-1 presents the completed worksheet. The worksheet is utilized in conjunction with Step 5 in the processing cycle, preparation of an unadjusted trial balance.

APPENDIX 2A

A **worksheet** can be used as a tool to facilitate the preparation of adjusting and closing entries and the financial statements.

Illustration 2A-1 Worksheet, Dress Right Clothing Corporation, July 31, 2018

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
1	Worksheet, Dress Right Clothing Corporation, July 31, 2018												
2		Unadjusted Trial Balance		Adjusting Entries		Adjusted Trial Balance		Income Statement		Balance Sheet			
3	Account Title	Dr.	Cr.		Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.	
4													
5	Cash	68,500					68,500						68,500
6	Accounts receivable	2,000					2,000						2,000
7	Supplies	2,000			(1)	800	1,200						1,200
8	Prepaid rent	24,000			(2)	2,000	22,000						22,000
9	Inventory	38,000					38,000						38,000
10	office equipment	12,000					12,000						12,000
11	Accumulated depreciation -												
12	office equipment		0		(3)	200		200					200
13	Accounts payable		35,000					35,000					35,000
14	Note payable		40,000					40,000					40,000
15	Deferred rent revenue		1,000	(4)	250			750					750
16	Salaries payable		0		(5)	5,500		5,500					5,500
17	Interest payable		0		(6)	333		333					333
18	Common stock		60,000					60,000					60,000
19	Retained earnings	1,000						1,000					1,000
20	Sales revenue		38,500					38,500			38,500		
21	Rent revenue		0		(4)	250		250			250		
22	Cost of goods sold	22,000					22,000			22,000			
23	Salaries expense	5,000		(5)	5,500		10,500			10,500			
24	Supplies expense	0		(1)	800		800			800			
25	Rent expense	0		(2)	2,000		2,000			2,000			
26	Depreciation expense	0		(3)	200		200			200			
27	Interest expense	0		(6)	333		333			333			
28	Totals	174,500	174,500		9,083	9,083	180,533	180,533					
29													
30	Net income									2,917			2,917
31	Totals									38,750	38,750	144,700	144,700
32													

The first step is to enter account titles in column A and the unadjusted account balances in columns B and C.

The second step is to determine end-of-period adjusting entries and enter them in columns E and G.

The third step adds or deducts the effects of the adjusting entries on the account balances.

The fourth step is to transfer the temporary retained earnings account balances to columns J and K.

The fifth step is to transfer the balances in the permanent accounts to columns L and M.

Step 1. The account titles as they appear in the general ledger are entered in column A and the balances of these accounts are copied onto columns B and C, entitled Unadjusted Trial Balance. The accounts are copied in the same order as they appear in the general ledger, which usually is assets, liabilities, shareholders' equity permanent accounts, revenues, and expenses. The debit and credit columns are totaled to make sure that they balance. This procedure is repeated for each set of columns in the worksheet to check for accuracy.

Step 2. The end-of-period adjusting entries are determined and entered directly on the worksheet in columns E and G, entitled Adjusting Entries. The adjusting entries for Dress Right Clothing Corporation were discussed in detail in the chapter and exhibited in general journal form in Illustration 2–11. You should refer back to this illustration and trace each of the entries to the worksheet. For worksheet purposes, the entries have been numbered from (1) to (6) for easy referencing.

For example, entry (1) records the cost of supplies used during the month of July with a debit to supplies expense and a credit to supplies for \$800. A (1) is placed next to the \$800 in the debit column in the supplies expense row as well as next to the \$800 in the credit column in the supplies row. This allows us to more easily reconstruct the entry for general journal purposes and locate errors if the debit and credit columns do not balance.

Step 3. The effects of the adjusting entries are added to or deducted from the account balances listed in the Unadjusted Trial Balance columns and copied across to columns H and I, entitled Adjusted Trial Balance. For example, supplies had an unadjusted balance of \$2,000. Adjusting entry (1) credited this account by \$800, reducing the balance to \$1,200.

Step 4. The balances in the temporary retained earnings accounts, revenues and expenses, are transferred to columns J and K, entitled Income Statement. The difference between the total debits and credits in these columns is equal to net income or net loss. In this case, because credits (revenues) exceed debits (expenses), a net income of \$2,917 results. To balance the debits and credits in this set of columns, a \$2,917 debit entry is made in the line labeled Net income.

Step 5. The balances in the permanent accounts are transferred to columns L and M, entitled Balance Sheet. To keep the debits and credits equal in the worksheet, a \$2,917 credit must be recorded to offset the \$2,917 debit recorded in Step 4 and labeled as net income. This credit represents the fact that when the temporary accounts are closed out to retained earnings, a \$2,917 credit to retained earnings will result. The credit in column M, therefore, represents an increase in retained earnings for the period, that is, net income.

After the worksheet is completed, the financial statements can be prepared directly from columns J–M. The financial statements for Dress Right Clothing Corporation are shown in Illustrations 2–13 through 2–16. The accountant must remember to then record the adjusting entries in the general journal and post them to the general ledger accounts. An adjusted trial balance should then be prepared, which should be identical to the one in the worksheet. At fiscal year-end, the income statement columns can then be used to prepare closing entries. ●

APPENDIX 2B

Reversing Entries

Accountants sometimes use **reversing entries** at the beginning of a reporting period. These optional entries remove the effects of some of the adjusting entries recorded at the end of the previous reporting period for the sole purpose of simplifying journal entries recorded during the new period. If the accountant does use reversing entries, these entries are recorded in the general journal and posted to the general ledger accounts on the first day of the new period.

Reversing entries are used most often with accruals. For example, the following adjusting entry for accrued salaries was recorded at the end of July 2018 for the Dress Right Clothing Corporation in the chapter:

To record accrued salaries at the end of July.

July 31

Salaries expense	5,500	
Salaries payable		5,500

If reversing entries are not used, when the salaries actually are paid in August, the accountant needs to remember to debit salaries payable and not salaries expense.

The account balances before and after salary payment can be seen below with the use of T-accounts.

Salaries Expense		Salaries Payable	
Bal. July 31	10,500	5,500	Bal. July 31
		(Cash Payment) 5,500	
		—0—	Balance

If the accountant for Dress Right employs reversing entries, the following entry is recorded on August 1, 2018:

August 1

Salaries payable	5,500	
Salaries expense		5,500

To reverse accrued salaries expense recorded at the end of July.

This entry reduces the salaries payable account to zero and reduces the salary expense account by \$5,500. When salaries actually are paid in August, the debit is to salaries expense, thus increasing the account by \$5,500.

Salaries Expense		Salaries Payable	
Bal. July 31	10,500	5,500	Bal. July 31
	5,500	(Reversing entry) 5,500	
(Cash payment) 5,500			
Balance	10,500	—0—	Balance

We can see that balances in the accounts after cash payment is made are identical. The use of reversing entries for accruals, which is optional, simply allows cash payments or cash receipts to be entered directly into the temporary expense or revenue accounts without regard to the accruals recorded at the end of the previous period.

Reversing entries also can be used with prepayments and deferred revenues. For example, earlier in the chapter Dress Right Clothing Corporation used the following entry to record the purchase of supplies on July 6:

July 6

Supplies	2,000	
Cash		2,000

To record the purchase of supplies.

If reversing entries are not used, an adjusting entry is needed at the end of July to record the amount of supplies consumed during the period. In the illustration, Dress Right recorded this adjusting entry at the end of July:

July 31

Supplies expense	800	
Supplies		800

To record the cost of supplies used during the month of July.

T-accounts help us visualize the account balances before and after the adjusting entry.

Supplies		Supplies Expense	
(Cash payment) 2,000	800	(Adjusting entry) 800	
Bal. July 31	1,200	Bal. July 31	800

If the accountant for Dress Right employs *reversing entries*, the purchase of supplies is recorded as follows:

To record the purchase of supplies.

July 6		
Supplies expense.....	2,000	
Cash.....		2,000

The adjusting entry then is used to establish the balance in the supplies account at \$1,200 (amount of supplies still on hand at the end of the month) and reduce the supplies expense account from the amount purchased to the amount used.

To record the cost of supplies on hand at the end of July.

July 31		
Supplies (balance on hand)	1,200	
Supplies expense (\$2,000 – 800).....		1,200

T-accounts make the process easier to see before and after the adjusting entry.

Supplies		Supplies Expense	
		(Cash payment) 2,000	
1,200	(Adjusting entry)		1,200
Bal. July 31 1,200		Bal. July 31 800	

Notice that the ending balances in both accounts are the same as when reversing entries are not used. Up to this point, this approach is the alternate approach to recording prepayments discussed in a previous section of this chapter. The next step is an optional expediency.

On August 1, the following reversing entry can be recorded:

To reverse the July adjusting entry for supplies on hand.

August 1		
Supplies expense.....	1,200	
Supplies		1,200

This entry reduces the supplies account to zero and increases the supplies expense account to \$2,000. Subsequent purchases would then be entered into the supplies expense account and future adjusting entries would record the amount of supplies still on hand at the end of the period. At the end of the fiscal year, the supplies expense account, along with all other temporary accounts, is closed to retained earnings.

Using reversing entries for prepayments, which is optional, simply allows cash payments to be entered directly into the temporary expense accounts without regard to whether only the current, or both the current and future periods, are benefitted by the expenditure. Adjustments are then recorded at the end of the period to reflect the amount of the unexpired benefit (asset). ●

APPENDIX 2C

Subsidiary Ledgers and Special Journals

Subsidiary Ledgers

Accounting systems employ a *subsidiary ledger*, which contains a group of subsidiary accounts associated with particular general ledger control accounts.

The general ledger contains what are referred to as *control accounts*. In addition to the general ledger, a **subsidiary ledger** contains a group of subsidiary accounts associated with a particular general ledger control account. For example, there will be a subsidiary ledger for accounts receivable that keeps track of the increases and decreases in the account receivable balance for each of the company's customers purchasing goods or services on credit. After all of the postings are made from the appropriate journals, the balance in the accounts receivable control account should equal the sum of the balances in the accounts receivable subsidiary ledger accounts. Subsidiary ledgers also are used for accounts payable, property and equipment, investments, and other accounts.

Special Journals

An actual accounting system employs many different types of journals. The purpose of each journal is to record, in chronological order, the dual effect of a transaction in debit/credit form. The chapter used the general journal format to record each transaction. However, even for small companies with relatively few transactions, the general journal is used to record only a few types of transactions.⁸

The majority of transactions are recorded in **special journals**. These journals capture the dual effect of *repetitive* types of transactions. For example, cash receipts are recorded in a **cash receipts journal**, cash disbursements in a **cash disbursements journal**, credit sales in a **sales journal**, and the purchase of merchandise on account in a **purchases journal**.

Special journals simplify the recording process in the following ways:

1. Journalizing the effects of a particular transaction is made more efficient through the use of specifically designed formats.
2. Individual transactions are not posted to the general ledger accounts but are accumulated in the special journals and a summary posting is made on a periodic basis.
3. The responsibility for recording journal entries for the repetitive types of transactions is placed on individuals who have specialized training in handling them.

The concepts of subsidiary ledgers and special journals are illustrated using the *sales journal* and the *cash receipts journal*.

Sales Journal

The purpose of the **sales journal** is to record all credit sales. Cash sales are recorded in the cash receipts journal. Every entry in the sales journal has exactly the same effect on the accounts; the sales revenue account is credited and the accounts receivable control account is debited. Therefore, there is only one column needed to record the debit/credit effect of these transactions. Other columns are needed to capture information for updating the accounts receivable subsidiary ledger. Illustration 2C-1 presents the sales journal for Dress Right Clothing Corporation for the month of August 2018.

For most external transactions, **special journals** are used to capture the dual effect of the transaction in debit/credit form.

All credit sales are recorded in the **sales journal**.

Page 1				
Date	Accounts Receivable Subsidiary Account No.	Customer Name	Sales Invoice No.	Cr. Sales Revenue (400) Dr. Accounts Receivable (110)
2018				
Aug. 5	801	Leland High School	10-221	1,500
9	812	Mr. John Smith	10-222	200
18	813	Greystone School	10-223	825
22	803	Ms. Barbara Jones	10-224	120
29	805	Hart Middle School	10-225	650
				3,295

Illustration 2C-1

Sales Journal, Dress Right Clothing Corporation, August 2018

During the month of August, the company made five credit sales, totaling \$3,295. This amount is posted as a debit to the accounts receivable control account, account number 110, and a credit to the sales revenue account, account number 400. The T-accounts for accounts receivable and sales revenue appear below. The reference SJ1 refers to page 1 of the sales journal.

Accounts Receivable		110	Sales Revenue		400
July 31 Balance	2,000				
Aug. 31 SJ1	3,295			3,295	Aug. 31 SJ1

⁸For example, end-of-period adjusting entries would be recorded in the general journal.

In a computerized accounting system, as each transaction is recorded in the sales journal, the subsidiary ledger accounts for the customer involved will automatically be updated. For example, the first credit sale of the month is to Leland High School for **\$1,500**. The sales invoice number for this sale is **10-221** and the customer's subsidiary account number is **801**. As this transaction is entered, the subsidiary account **801** for Leland High School is debited for **\$1,500**

Accounts Receivable Subsidiary Ledger

Leland High School		801
August 5 SJ1	1,500	

As cash is collected from this customer, the cash receipts journal records the transaction with a credit to the accounts receivable control account and a debit to cash. At the same time, the accounts receivable subsidiary ledger account number **801** also is credited. After the postings are made from the special journals, the balance in the accounts receivable control account should equal the sum of the balances in the accounts receivable subsidiary ledger accounts.

Cash Receipts Journal

The purpose of the **cash receipts journal** is to record all cash receipts, regardless of the source. Every transaction recorded in this journal produces a debit entry to the cash account with the credit to various other accounts. Illustration 2C-2 shows a cash receipts journal using transactions of the Dress Right Clothing Corporation for the month of August 2018.

All cash receipts are recorded in the **cash receipts journal**.

Illustration 2C-2

Cash Receipts Journal,
Dress Right Clothing
Corporation, August 2018

Page 1						
Date	Explanation or Account Name	Dr. Cash (100)	Cr. Accounts Receivable (110)	Cr. Sales Revenue (400)	Cr. Other	Other Accounts
2018						
Aug. 7	Cash sale	500		500		
11	Borrowed cash	10,000			10,000	Note payable (220)
17	Leland High School	750	750			
20	Cash sale	300		300		
25	Mr. John Smith	200	200			
		<u>11,750</u>	<u>950</u>	<u>800</u>	<u>10,000</u>	

Because every transaction results in a debit to the cash account, No. 100, a column is provided for that account. At the end of August, an \$11,750 debit is posted to the general ledger cash account with the source labeled CR1, cash receipts journal, page 1.

Because cash and credit sales are common, separate columns are provided for these accounts. At the end of August, a **\$950** credit is posted to the accounts receivable general ledger account, No. 110, and an **\$800** credit is posted to the sales revenue account, No. 400. Two additional credit columns are provided for uncommon cash receipt transactions, one for the credit amount and one for the account being credited. We can see that in August, Dress Right borrowed **\$10,000** requiring a credit to the note payable account, No. 220.

In addition to the postings to the general ledger control accounts, each time an entry is recorded in the accounts receivable column, a credit is posted to the accounts receivable subsidiary ledger account for the customer making the payment. For example, on August 17, Leland High School paid \$750 on account. The subsidiary ledger account for Leland High School is credited for **\$750**.

Accounts Receivable Subsidiary Ledger

Leland High School		801
August 5 SJ1	1,500	
	750	August 17 CR1 ●

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 2-1** Explain the difference between external events and internal events. Give an example of each type of event.
- Q 2-2** Each economic event or transaction will have a dual effect on financial position. Explain what is meant by this dual effect.
- Q 2-3** What is the purpose of a journal? What is the purpose of a general ledger?
- Q 2-4** Explain the difference between permanent accounts and temporary accounts. Why does an accounting system include both types of accounts?
- Q 2-5** Describe how debits and credits affect assets, liabilities, and permanent owners' equity accounts.
- Q 2-6** Describe how debits and credits affect temporary owners' equity accounts.
- Q 2-7** What is the first step in the accounting processing cycle? What role do source documents fulfill in this step?
- Q 2-8** Describe what is meant by transaction analysis.
- Q 2-9** Describe what is meant by posting, the fourth step in the processing cycle.
- Q 2-10** Describe the events that correspond to the following two journal entries:

1. Inventory	20,000	
Accounts payable		20,000
2. Accounts receivable	30,000	
Sales revenue		30,000
Cost of goods sold	18,000	
Inventory		18,000

- Q 2-11** What is an unadjusted trial balance? An adjusted trial balance?
- Q 2-12** Define adjusting entries and discuss their purpose.
- Q 2-13** Define closing entries and their purpose.
- Q 2-14** Define prepaid expenses and provide at least two examples.
- Q 2-15** Deferred revenues represent liabilities recorded when cash is received from customers in advance of providing a good or service. What adjusting journal entry is required at the end of a period to recognize the amount of deferred revenues that were recognized during the period?
- Q 2-16** Define accrued liabilities. What adjusting journal entry is required to record accrued liabilities?
- Q 2-17** Describe the purpose of each of the five primary financial statements.
- Q 2-18** [Based on Appendix A] What is the purpose of a worksheet? In a columnar worksheet similar to Illustration 2A-1, what would be the result of incorrectly transferring the balance in a liability account to column K, the credit column under income statement?
- Q 2-19** [Based on Appendix B] Define reversing entries and discuss their purpose.
- Q 2-20** [Based on Appendix C] What is the purpose of special journals? In what ways do they simplify the recording process?
- Q 2-21** [Based on Appendix C] Explain the difference between the general ledger and a subsidiary ledger.

Brief Exercises



BE 2-1

Transaction analysis

• LO2-1

The Marchetti Soup Company entered into the following transactions during the month of June: (1) purchased inventory on account for \$165,000 (assume Marchetti uses a perpetual inventory system); (2) paid \$40,000 in salaries to employees for work performed during the month; (3) sold merchandise that cost \$120,000 to credit customers for \$200,000; (4) collected \$180,000 in cash from credit customers; and (5) paid suppliers of inventory \$145,000. Analyze each transaction and show the effect of each on the accounting equation for a corporation.

BE 2-2

Journal entries

• LO2-2

Prepare journal entries for each of the transactions listed in BE 2-1.

BE 2-3

T-accounts

• LO2-3

Post the journal entries prepared in BE 2-2 to T-accounts. Assume that the opening balances in each of the accounts is zero except for cash, accounts receivable, and accounts payable that had opening balances of \$65,000, \$43,000, and \$22,000, respectively.

BE 2-4

Journal entries

● LO2-2

Prepare journal entries for each of the following transactions for a company that has a fiscal year-end of December 31: (1) on October 1, \$12,000 was paid for a one-year fire insurance policy; (2) on June 30 the company lent its chief financial officer \$10,000; principal and interest at 6% are due in one year; and (3) equipment costing \$60,000 was purchased at the beginning of the year for cash.

BE 2-5

Adjusting entries

● LO2-5

Prepare the necessary adjusting entries at December 31 for each of the items listed in BE 2-4. Depreciation on the equipment is \$12,000 per year.

BE 2-6

Adjusting entries; income determination

● LO2-4, LO2-5

If the adjusting entries prepared in BE 2-5 were not recorded, would net income be higher or lower and by how much?

BE 2-7

Adjusting entries

● LO2-5

Prepare the necessary adjusting entries at its year-end of December 31, 2018, for the Jamesway Corporation for each of the following situations. No adjusting entries were recorded during the year.

1. On December 20, 2018, Jamesway received a \$4,000 payment from a customer for services to be rendered early in 2019. Service revenue was credited.
2. On December 1, 2018, the company paid a local radio station \$2,000 for 40 radio ads that were to be aired, 20 per month, throughout December and January. Prepaid advertising was debited.
3. Employee salaries for the month of December totaling \$16,000 will be paid on January 7, 2019.
4. On August 31, 2018, Jamesway borrowed \$60,000 from a local bank. A note was signed with principal and 8% interest to be paid on August 31, 2019.

BE 2-8

Income determination

● LO2-4

If none of the adjusting journal entries prepared in BE 2-7 were recorded, would assets, liabilities, and shareholders' equity on the 12/31/18 balance sheet be higher or lower and by how much?

BE 2-9

Adjusting entries

● LO2-5

Prepare the necessary adjusting entries for Johnstone Controls at the end of its December 31, 2018, fiscal year-end for each of the following situations. No adjusting entries were recorded during the year.

1. On March 31, 2018, the company lent \$50,000 to another company. A note was signed with principal and interest at 6% payable on March 31, 2019.
2. On September 30, 2018, the company paid its landlord \$12,000 representing rent for the period September 30, 2018, to September 30, 2019.
3. Supplies on hand at the end of 2017 totaled \$3,000. Additional supplies costing \$5,000 were purchased during 2018 and debited to the supplies account. At the end of 2018, supplies costing \$4,200 remain on hand.
4. Vacation pay of \$6,000 for the year that had been earned by employees was not paid or recorded. The company records vacation pay as salaries and wages expense.

BE 2-10

Financial statements

● LO2-6

The following account balances were taken from the 2018 adjusted trial balance of the Bowler Corporation: sales revenue, \$325,000; cost of goods sold, \$168,000; salaries expense, \$45,000; rent expense, \$20,000; depreciation expense, \$30,000; and miscellaneous expense, \$12,000. Prepare an income statement for 2018.

BE 2-11

Financial statements

● LO2-6

The following account balances were taken from the 2018 post-closing trial balance of the Bowler Corporation: cash, \$5,000; accounts receivable, \$10,000; inventory, \$16,000; equipment, \$100,000; accumulated depreciation—equipment, \$40,000; accounts payable, \$20,000; salaries payable, \$12,000; retained earnings, \$9,000; and common stock, \$50,000. Prepare a 12/31/18 balance sheet.

BE 2-12

Closing entries

● LO2-7

The year-end adjusted trial balance of the Timmons Tool and Die Corporation included the following account balances: retained earnings, \$220,000; sales revenue, \$850,000; cost of goods sold, \$580,000; salaries expense, \$180,000; rent expense, \$40,000; and interest expense, \$15,000. Prepare the necessary closing entries.

BE 2-13

Cash versus accrual accounting

● LO2-8

Newman Consulting Company maintains its records on a cash basis. During 2018 the following cash flows were recorded: cash received from customers, \$420,000; and cash paid for salaries, utilities, and advertising, \$240,000, \$35,000, and \$12,000, respectively. You also determine that customers owed the company \$52,000 and \$60,000 at the beginning and end of the year, respectively, and that the company owed the utility company \$6,000 and \$4,000 at the beginning and end of the year, respectively. Determine accrual net income for the year.

Exercises



E 2-1

Transaction analysis

● LO2-1

The following transactions occurred during March 2018 for the Wainwright Corporation. The company owns and operates a wholesale warehouse.

1. Issued 30,000 shares of common stock in exchange for \$300,000 in cash.
2. Purchased equipment at a cost of \$40,000. \$10,000 cash was paid and a note payable was signed for the balance owed.
3. Purchased inventory on account at a cost of \$90,000. The company uses the perpetual inventory system.
4. Credit sales for the month totaled \$120,000. The cost of the goods sold was \$70,000.
5. Paid \$5,000 in rent on the warehouse building for the month of March.
6. Paid \$6,000 to an insurance company for fire and liability insurance for a one-year period beginning April 1, 2018.
7. Paid \$70,000 on account for the merchandise purchased in 3.
8. Collected \$55,000 from customers on account.
9. Recorded depreciation expense of \$1,000 for the month on the equipment.

Required:

Analyze each transaction and show the effect of each on the accounting equation for a corporation.

Example:

	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Paid-In Capital	+	Retained Earnings
1.	+ 300,000 (cash)				+ 300,000 (common stock)		

E 2-2

Journal entries

● LO2-2

Prepare journal entries to record each of the transactions listed in E 2-1.

E 2-3

T-accounts and trial balance

● LO2-3

Post the journal entries prepared in E 2-2 to T-accounts. Assume that the opening balances in each of the accounts is zero. Prepare a trial balance from the ending account balances.

E 2-4

Journal entries

● LO2-2

The following transactions occurred during the month of June 2018 for the Stridewell Corporation. The company owns and operates a retail shoe store.

1. Issued 100,000 shares of common stock in exchange for \$500,000 cash.
2. Purchased office equipment at a cost of \$100,000. \$40,000 was paid in cash and a note payable was signed for the balance owed.
3. Purchased inventory on account at a cost of \$200,000. The company uses the perpetual inventory system.
4. Credit sales for the month totaled \$280,000. The cost of the goods sold was \$140,000.
5. Paid \$6,000 in rent on the store building for the month of June.
6. Paid \$3,000 to an insurance company for fire and liability insurance for a one-year period beginning June 1, 2018.
7. Paid \$120,000 on account for the merchandise purchased in 3.
8. Collected \$55,000 from customers on account.
9. Paid shareholders a cash dividend of \$5,000.
10. Recorded depreciation expense of \$2,000 for the month on the office equipment.
11. Recorded the amount of prepaid insurance that expired for the month.

Required:

Prepare journal entries to record each of the transactions and events listed above.

E 2-5

The accounting processing cycle

● LO2-2 through LO2-7

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with the accounting processing cycle. Pair each item from List A (by letter) with the item from List B that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
____ 1. Source documents	Record of the dual effect of a transaction in debit/credit form.
____ 2. Transaction analysis	Internal events recorded at the end of a reporting period.
____ 3. Journal	Primary means of disseminating information to external decision makers.

(continued)

(concluded)

List A	List B
_____ 4. Posting	To zero out the owners' equity temporary accounts.
_____ 5. Unadjusted trial balance	Determine the dual effect on the accounting equation.
_____ 6. Adjusting entries	List of accounts and their balances before recording adjusting entries.
_____ 7. Adjusted trial balance	List of accounts and their balances after recording closing entries.
_____ 8. Financial statements	List of accounts and their balances after recording adjusting entries.
_____ 9. Closing entries	A means of organizing information: not part of the formal accounting system.
_____ 10. Post-closing trial balance	Transferring balances from the journal to the ledger.
_____ 11. Worksheet	Used to identify and process external transactions.

E 2-6

Debits and credits

● LO2-2

Indicate whether a *debit* will increase (I) or decrease (D) each of the following accounts listed in items 1 through 16

Increase (I) or Decrease (D)	Account
1. _____	Inventory
2. _____	Depreciation expense
3. _____	Accounts payable
4. _____	Prepaid rent
5. _____	Sales revenue
6. _____	Common stock
7. _____	Salaries and wages payable
8. _____	Cost of goods sold
9. _____	Utility expense
10. _____	Equipment
11. _____	Accounts receivable
12. _____	Utilities payable
13. _____	Rent expense
14. _____	Interest expense
15. _____	Interest revenue

E 2-7Transaction
analysis; debits
and credits

● LO2-2

Some of the ledger accounts for the Sanderson Hardware Company are numbered and listed below. For each of the October 2018 transactions numbered 1 through 12 below, indicate by account number which accounts should be debited and which should be credited. The company uses the perpetual inventory system. Assume that appropriate adjusting entries were recorded at the end of September.

(1) Accounts payable	(2) Equipment	(3) Inventory
(4) Accounts receivable	(5) Cash	(6) Supplies
(7) Supplies expense	(8) Prepaid rent	(9) Sales revenue
(10) Retained earnings	(11) Note payable	(12) Common stock
(13) Deferred revenue	(14) Rent expense	(15) Salaries and wages payable
(16) Cost of goods sold	(17) Salaries and wages expense	(18) Interest expense

	Account(s) Debited	Account(s) Credited
<i>Example:</i> Purchased inventory for cash	3	5

1. Paid a cash dividend.
2. Paid rent for the next three months.
3. Sold goods to customers on account.
4. Purchased inventory on account.
5. Purchased supplies for cash.
6. Paid employee salaries and wages for September.
7. Issued common stock in exchange for cash.
8. Collected cash from customers for goods sold in 3.
9. Borrowed cash from a bank and signed a note.
10. At the end of October, recorded the amount of supplies that had been used during the month.
11. Received cash for advance payment from customer.
12. Accrued employee salaries and wages for October.

E 2-8

Adjusting entries

● LO2-5

Prepare the necessary adjusting entries at December 31, 2018, for the Falwell Company for each of the following situations. Assume that no financial statements were prepared during the year and no adjusting entries were recorded.

1. A three-year fire insurance policy was purchased on July 1, 2018, for \$12,000. The company debited insurance expense for the entire amount.
2. Depreciation on equipment totaled \$15,000 for the year.
3. Employee salaries of \$18,000 for the month of December will be paid in early January 2019.
4. On November 1, 2018, the company borrowed \$200,000 from a bank. The note requires principal and interest at 12% to be paid on April 30, 2019.
5. On December 1, 2018, the company received \$3,000 in cash from another company that is renting office space in Falwell's building. The payment, representing rent for December and January, was credited to deferred rent revenue.

E 2-9

Adjusting entries

● LO2-5

Prepare the necessary adjusting entries at December 31, 2018, for the Microchip Company for each of the following situations. Assume that no financial statements were prepared during the year and no adjusting entries were recorded.

1. On October 1, 2018, Microchip lent \$90,000 to another company. A note was signed with principal and 8% interest to be paid on September 30, 2019.
2. On November 1, 2018, the company paid its landlord \$6,000 representing rent for the months of November through January. Prepaid rent was debited.
3. On August 1, 2018, collected \$12,000 in advance rent from another company that is renting a portion of Microchip's factory. The \$12,000 represents one year's rent and the entire amount was credited to rent revenue.
4. Depreciation on office equipment is \$4,500 for the year.
5. Vacation pay for the year that had been earned by employees but not paid to them or recorded is \$8,000. The company records vacation pay as salaries expense.
6. Microchip began the year with \$2,000 in its asset account, supplies. During the year, \$6,500 in supplies were purchased and debited to supplies. At year-end, supplies costing \$3,250 remain on hand.

E 2-10

Adjusting entries;
solving for
unknowns

● LO2-4, LO2-5

The Eldorado Corporation's controller prepares adjusting entries only at the end of the fiscal year. The following adjusting entries were prepared on December 31, 2018:

	Debit	Credit
Interest expense	7,200	
Interest payable		7,200
Rent expense	35,000	
Prepaid rent		35,000
Interest receivable	500	
Interest revenue		500

Additional information:

1. The company borrowed \$120,000 on March 31, 2018. Principal and interest are due on March 31, 2019. This note is the company's only interest-bearing debt.
2. Rent for the year on the company's office space is \$60,000. The rent is paid in advance.
3. On October 31, 2018, Eldorado lent money to a customer. The customer signed a note with principal and interest at 6% due in one year.

Required:

Determine the following:

1. What is the interest rate on the company's note payable?
2. The 2018 rent payment was made at the beginning of which month?
3. How much did Eldorado lend its customer on October 31?

E 2-11

Adjusting entries

● LO2-5

The Mazzanti Wholesale Food Company's fiscal year-end is June 30. The company issues quarterly financial statements requiring the company to prepare adjusting entries at the end of each quarter. Assuming all quarterly adjusting entries were properly recorded, prepare the necessary year-end adjusting entries at the end of June 30, 2018, for the following situations.

1. On December 1, 2017, the company paid its annual fire insurance premium of \$6,000 for the year beginning December 1.

- On August 31, 2017, the company borrowed \$80,000 from a local bank. The note requires principal and interest at 8% to be paid on August 31, 2018.
- Mazzanti owns a warehouse that it rents to another company. On January 1, 2018, Mazzanti collected \$24,000 representing rent for the 2018 calendar year.
- Depreciation on the office building is \$20,000 for the fiscal year.
- Employee salaries and wages for the month of June 2018 of \$16,000 will be paid on July 20, 2018.

E 2-12

Financial statements and closing entries
 • LO2-6, LO2-7

The December 31, 2018, adjusted trial balance for the Blueboy Cheese Corporation is presented below.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	21,000	
Accounts receivable	300,000	
Prepaid rent	10,000	
Inventory	50,000	
Office equipment	600,000	
Accumulated depreciation—office equipment		250,000
Accounts payable		60,000
Note payable (due in six months)		60,000
Salaries payable		8,000
Interest payable		2,000
Common stock		400,000
Retained earnings		100,000
Sales revenue		800,000
Cost of goods sold	480,000	
Salaries expense	120,000	
Rent expense	30,000	
Depreciation expense	60,000	
Interest expense	4,000	
Advertising expense	5,000	
Totals	<u>1,680,000</u>	<u>1,680,000</u>

Required:

- Prepare an income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018, and a classified balance sheet as of December 31, 2018.
- Prepare the necessary closing entries at December 31, 2018.

E 2-13

Closing entries
 • LO2-7

American Chip Corporation's fiscal year-end is December 31. The following is a partial adjusted trial balance as of December 31, 2018.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Retained earnings		80,000
Sales revenue		750,000
Interest revenue		3,000
Cost of goods sold	420,000	
Salaries expense	100,000	
Rent expense	15,000	
Depreciation expense	30,000	
Interest expense	5,000	
Insurance expense	6,000	

Required:

Prepare the necessary closing entries at December 31, 2018.

E 2-14

Closing entries
 • LO2-7

Presented below is income statement information of the Schefter Corporation for the year ended December 31, 2018.

Sales revenue	\$492,000	Cost of goods sold	284,000
Salaries expense	80,000	Insurance expense	12,000
Interest revenue	6,000	Interest expense	4,000
Advertising expense	10,000	Income tax expense	30,000
Gain on sale of investments	8,000	Depreciation expense	20,000

Required:

Prepare the necessary closing entries at December 31, 2018.

E 2-15

Cash versus
accrual
accounting;
adjusting entries

- LO2-4, LO2-5,
LO2-8

The Righter Shoe Store Company prepares monthly financial statements for its bank. The November 30 and December 31, 2018, trial balances contained the following account information:

	Nov. 30		Dec. 31	
	Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.
Supplies	1,500		3,000	
Prepaid insurance	6,000		4,500	
Salaries and wages payable		10,000		15,000
Deferred rent revenue		2,000		1,000

The following information also is known:

- The December income statement reported \$2,000 in supplies expense.
- No insurance payments were made in December.
- \$10,000 was paid to employees during December for salaries and wages.
- On November 1, 2018, a tenant paid Righter \$3,000 in advance rent for the period November through January. Deferred rent revenue was credited.

Required:

- What was the cost of supplies purchased during December?
- What was the adjusting entry recorded at the end of December for prepaid insurance?
- What was the adjusting entry recorded at the end of December for accrued salaries and wages?
- What was the amount of rent revenue recognized in December? What adjusting entry was recorded at the end of December for deferred rent revenue?

E 2-16

External
transactions and
adjusting entries

- LO2-2, LO2-5

The following transactions occurred during 2018 for the Beehive Honey Corporation:

Feb. 1	Borrowed \$12,000 from a bank and signed a note. Principal and interest at 10% will be paid on January 31, 2019.
Apr. 1	Paid \$3,600 to an insurance company for a two-year fire insurance policy.
July 17	Purchased supplies costing \$2,800 on account. The company records supplies purchased in an asset account. At the year-end on December 31, 2018, supplies costing \$1,250 remained on hand.
Nov. 1	A customer borrowed \$6,000 and signed a note requiring the customer to pay principal and 8% interest on April 30, 2019.

Required:

- Record each transaction in general journal form. Omit explanations.
- Prepare any necessary adjusting entries at the year-end on December 31, 2018. No adjusting entries were recorded during the year for any item.

E 2-17

Accrual
accounting
income
determination

- LO2-4, LO2-8

During the course of your examination of the financial statements of the Hales Corporation for the year ended December 31, 2018, you discover the following:

- An insurance policy covering three years was purchased on January 1, 2018, for \$6,000. The entire amount was debited to insurance expense and no adjusting entry was recorded for this item.
- During 2018, the company received a \$1,000 cash advance from a customer for merchandise to be manufactured and shipped in 2019. The \$1,000 was credited to sales revenue. No entry was recorded for the cost of merchandise.
- There were no supplies listed in the balance sheet under assets. However, you discover that supplies costing \$750 were on hand at December 31.
- Hales borrowed \$20,000 from a local bank on October 1, 2018. Principal and interest at 12% will be paid on September 30, 2019. No accrual was recorded for interest.
- Net income reported in the 2018 income statement is \$30,000 before reflecting any of the above items.

Required:

Determine the proper amount of net income for 2018.

E 2-18

Cash versus
accrual
accounting

• LO2-8

Stanley and Jones Lawn Service Company (S&J) maintains its books on a cash basis. However, the company recently borrowed \$100,000 from a local bank and the bank requires S&J to provide annual financial statements prepared on an accrual basis. During 2018, the following cash flows were recorded:

Cash collected from customers		\$320,000
Cash paid for:		
Salaries	\$180,000	
Supplies	25,000	
Rent	12,000	
Insurance	6,000	
Miscellaneous	20,000	243,000
Net operating cash flow		\$ 77,000

You are able to determine the following information about accounts receivable, prepaid expenses, and accrued liabilities:

	January 1, 2018	December 31, 2018
Accounts receivable	\$32,000	\$27,000
Prepaid insurance	—0—	2,000
Supplies	1,000	1,500
Accrued liabilities (for miscellaneous expenses)	2,400	3,400

In addition, you learn that the bank loan was dated September 30, 2018, with principal and interest at 6% due in one year. Depreciation on the company's equipment is \$10,000 for the year.

Required:

Prepare an accrual basis income statement for 2018. (Ignore income taxes.)

E 2-19

Cash versus
accrual
accounting

• LO2-8

Haskins and Jones, Attorneys-at-Law, maintain its books on a cash basis. During 2018, the company collected \$545,000 in fees from its clients and paid out \$412,000 in expenses. You are able to determine the following information about accounts receivable, prepaid expenses, deferred fee revenue, and accrued liabilities:

	January 1, 2018	December 31, 2018
Accounts receivable	\$62,000	\$55,000
Prepaid insurance	4,500	6,000
Prepaid rent	9,200	8,200
Deferred fee revenue	9,200	11,000
Accrued liabilities (for various expenses)	12,200	15,600

In addition, 2018 depreciation expense on office equipment is \$22,000.

Required:

Determine accrual basis net income for 2018.

E 2-20

Worksheet

• Appendix 2A

The December 31, 2018, unadjusted trial balance for the Wolkstein Drug Company is presented below. December 31 is the company's fiscal year-end.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	20,000	
Accounts receivable	35,000	
Prepaid rent	5,000	
Inventory	50,000	
Equipment	100,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		30,000
Accounts payable		25,000
Salaries and wages payable		—0—
Common stock		100,000
Retained earnings		29,000
Sales revenue		323,000
Cost of goods sold	180,000	
Salaries and wages expense	71,000	
Rent expense	30,000	
Depreciation expense	—0—	
Utility expense	12,000	
Advertising expense	4,000	
Totals	507,000	507,000

The following year-end adjusting entries are required:

- Depreciation expense for the year on the equipment is \$10,000.
- Accrued salaries and wages payable at year-end should be \$4,000.

Required:

- Prepare and complete a worksheet similar to Illustration 2A–1.
- Prepare an income statement for 2018 and a balance sheet as of December 31, 2018.

E 2–21

Reversing entries

● Appendix 2B

The employees of Xitrex, Inc., are paid each Friday. The company's fiscal year-end is June 30, which falls on a Wednesday for the current year. Salaries and wages are earned evenly throughout the five-day work week, and \$10,000 will be paid on Friday, July 2.

Required:

- Prepare an adjusting entry to record the accrued salaries and wages as of June 30, a reversing entry on July 1, and an entry to record the payment of salaries and wages on July 2.
- Prepare journal entries to record the accrued salaries and wages as of June 30 and the payment of salaries and wages on July 2 assuming a reversing entry is not recorded.

E 2–22

Reversing entries

● Appendix 2B

Refer to E 2–9 and respond to the following requirements.

Required:

- If Microchip's accountant employed reversing entries for accruals, which adjusting entries would she likely reverse at the beginning of the following year?
- Prepare the adjusting entries at the end of 2018 for the adjustments you identified in requirement 1.
- Prepare the appropriate reversing entries at the beginning of 2019.

E 2–23

Reversing entries

● Appendix 2B

Refer to E 2–9 and respond to the following requirements.

Required:

- If Microchip's accountant employed reversing entries for prepaid expenses, which transactions would be affected?
- Prepare the original transactions creating the prepaid expenses and the adjusting entries at the end of 2018 for the transactions you identified in requirement 1.
- Prepare the appropriate reversing entries at the beginning of 2019.

E 2–24

Special journals

● Appendix 2C

The White Company's accounting system consists of a general journal (GJ), a cash receipts journal (CR), a cash disbursements journal (CD), a sales journal (SJ), and a purchases journal (PJ). For each of the following, indicate which journal should be used to record the transaction.

Transaction	Journal
1. Purchased merchandise on account.	_____
2. Collected an account receivable.	_____
3. Borrowed \$20,000 and signed a note.	_____
4. Recorded depreciation expense.	_____
5. Purchased equipment for cash.	_____
6. Sold merchandise for cash (the sale only, not the cost of the merchandise).	_____
7. Sold merchandise on credit (the sale only, not the cost of the merchandise).	_____
8. Recorded accrued salaries and wages payable.	_____
9. Paid employee salaries and wages.	_____
10. Sold equipment for cash.	_____
11. Sold equipment on credit.	_____
12. Paid a cash dividend to shareholders.	_____
13. Issued common stock in exchange for cash.	_____
14. Paid accounts payable.	_____

E 2–25

Special journals

● Appendix 2C

The accounting system of K and M Manufacturing consists of a general journal (GJ), a cash receipts journal (CR), a cash disbursements journal (CD), a sales journal (SJ), and a purchases journal (PJ). For each of the following, indicate which journal should be used to record the transaction.

Transaction	Journal
1. Paid interest on a loan.	_____
2. Recorded depreciation expense.	_____
3. Purchased furniture for cash.	_____

(continued)

(concluded)

Transaction	Journal
4. Purchased merchandise on account.	_____
5. Sold merchandise on credit (the sale only, not the cost of the merchandise).	_____
6. Sold merchandise for cash (the sale only, not the cost of the merchandise).	_____
7. Paid rent.	_____
8. Recorded accrued interest payable.	_____
9. Paid advertising bill.	_____
10. Sold equipment on credit.	_____
11. Collected cash from customers on account.	_____
12. Paid employee salaries and wages.	_____
13. Collected interest on a note receivable.	_____

Problems



P 2-1

Accounting
cycle through
unadjusted trial
balance

• LO2-2, LO2-3

Halogen Laminated Products Company began business on January 1, 2018. During January, the following transactions occurred:

Jan. 1	Issued common stock in exchange for \$100,000 cash.
2	Purchased inventory on account for \$35,000 (the perpetual inventory system is used).
4	Paid an insurance company \$2,400 for a one-year insurance policy.
10	Sold merchandise on account for \$12,000. The cost of the merchandise was \$7,000.
15	Borrowed \$30,000 from a local bank and signed a note. Principal and interest at 10% is to be repaid in six months.
20	Paid employees \$6,000 salaries and wages for the first half of the month.
22	Sold merchandise for \$10,000 cash. The cost of the merchandise was \$6,000.
24	Paid \$15,000 to suppliers for the merchandise purchased on January 2.
26	Collected \$6,000 on account from customers.
28	Paid \$1,000 to the local utility company for January gas and electricity.
30	Paid \$4,000 rent for the building. \$2,000 was for January rent, and \$2,000 for February rent.

Required:

1. Prepare general journal entries to record each transaction. Omit explanations.
2. Post the entries to T-accounts.
3. Prepare an unadjusted trial balance as of January 30, 2018.

P 2-2

Accounting
cycle through
unadjusted trial
balance

• LO2-2, LO2-3

The following is the post-closing trial balance for the Whitlow Manufacturing Corporation as of December 31, 2017.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	5,000	
Accounts receivable	2,000	
Inventory	5,000	
Equipment	11,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		3,500
Accounts payable		3,000
Common stock		10,000
Retained earnings		6,500
Sales revenue		—0—
Cost of goods sold	—0—	
Salaries and wages expense	—0—	
Rent expense	—0—	
Advertising expense	—0—	
Totals	<u>23,000</u>	<u>23,000</u>

The following transactions occurred during January 2018:

Jan. 1	Sold merchandise for cash, \$3,500. The cost of the merchandise was \$2,000. The company uses the perpetual inventory system.
2	Purchased equipment on account for \$5,500 from the Strong Company.
4	Received a \$150 bill from the local newspaper for an advertisement that appeared in the paper on January 2.
8	Sold merchandise on account for \$5,000. The cost of the merchandise was \$2,800.
10	Purchased merchandise on account for \$9,500.

(continued)

(concluded)

- 13 Purchased equipment for cash, \$800.
- 16 Paid the entire amount due to the Strong Company.
- 18 Received \$4,000 from customers on account.
- 20 Paid \$800 to the owner of the building for January's rent.
- 30 Paid employees \$3,000 for salaries and wages for the month of January.
- 31 Paid a cash dividend of \$1,000 to shareholders.

Required:

- Set up T-accounts and enter the beginning balances as of January 1, 2018.
- Prepare general journal entries to record each transaction. Omit explanations.
- Post the entries to T-accounts.
- Prepare an unadjusted trial balance as of January 31, 2018.

P 2-3

Adjusting entries

● LO2-5

Pastina Company sells various types of pasta to grocery chains as private label brands. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31. The unadjusted trial balance as of December 31, 2018, appears below.



Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	30,000	
Accounts receivable	40,000	
Supplies	1,500	
Inventory	60,000	
Note receivable	20,000	
Interest receivable	—0—	
Prepaid rent	2,000	
Prepaid insurance	—0—	
Office equipment	80,000	
Accumulated depreciation—office equipment		30,000
Accounts payable		31,000
Salaries and wages payable		—0—
Note payable		50,000
Interest payable		—0—
Deferred revenue		—0—
Common stock		60,000
Retained earnings		24,500
Sales revenue		148,000
Interest revenue		—0—
Cost of goods sold	70,000	
Salaries and wages expense	18,900	
Rent expense	11,000	
Depreciation expense	—0—	
Interest expense	—0—	
Supplies expense	1,100	
Insurance expense	6,000	
Advertising expense	3,000	
Totals	<u>343,500</u>	<u>343,500</u>

Information necessary to prepare the year-end adjusting entries appears below.

- Depreciation on the office equipment for the year is \$10,000.
- Employee salaries and wages are paid twice a month, on the 22nd for salaries and wages earned from the 1st through the 15th, and on the 7th of the following month for salaries and wages earned from the 16th through the end of the month. Salaries and wages earned from December 16 through December 31, 2018, were \$1,500.
- On October 1, 2018, Pastina borrowed \$50,000 from a local bank and signed a note. The note requires interest to be paid annually on September 30 at 12%. The principal is due in 10 years.
- On March 1, 2018, the company lent a supplier \$20,000 and a note was signed requiring principal and interest at 8% to be paid on February 28, 2019.
- On April 1, 2018, the company paid an insurance company \$6,000 for a two-year fire insurance policy. The entire \$6,000 was debited to insurance expense.
- \$800 of supplies remained on hand at December 31, 2018.
- A customer paid Pastina \$2,000 in December for 1,500 pounds of spaghetti to be delivered in January 2019. Pastina credited sales revenue.
- On December 1, 2018, \$2,000 rent was paid to the owner of the building. The payment represented rent for December 2018 and January 2019 at \$1,000 per month.

Required:

Prepare the necessary December 31, 2018, adjusting journal entries.

P 2-4

Accounting cycle; adjusting entries through post-closing trial balance

- LO2-3, LO2-5 through LO2-7



Refer to P 2-3 and complete the following steps:

1. Enter the unadjusted balances from the trial balance into T-accounts.
2. Post the adjusting entries prepared in P 2-3 to the accounts.
3. Prepare an adjusted trial balance.
4. Prepare an income statement and a statement of shareholders' equity for the year ended December 31, 2018, and a classified balance sheet as of December 31, 2018. Assume that no common stock was issued during the year and that \$4,000 in cash dividends were paid to shareholders during the year. The \$4,000 reduction in cash and in retained earnings is reflected in the unadjusted trial balance amounts. That is, the retained earnings balance at the beginning of the year was \$28,500.
5. Prepare closing entries and post to the accounts.
6. Prepare a post-closing trial balance.

P 2-5

Adjusting entries

- LO2-5

Howarth Company's fiscal year-end is December 31. Below are the unadjusted and adjusted trial balances for December 31, 2018.

Account Title	Unadjusted		Adjusted	
	Debits	Credits	Debits	Credits
Cash	50,000		50,000	
Accounts receivable	35,000		35,000	
Prepaid rent	2,000		1,200	
Supplies	1,500		800	
Inventory	60,000		60,000	
Note receivable	30,000		30,000	
Interest receivable	—0—		1,500	
Office equipment	45,000		45,000	
Accumulated depreciation		15,000		21,500
Accounts payable		34,000		34,000
Salaries and wages payable		—0—		6,200
Note payable		50,000		50,000
Interest payable		—0—		2,500
Deferred rent revenue		—0—		2,000
Common stock		46,000		46,000
Retained earnings		20,000		20,000
Sales revenue		244,000		244,000
Rent revenue		6,000		4,000
Interest revenue		—0—		1,500
Cost of goods sold	126,000		126,000	
Salaries and wages expense	45,000		51,200	
Rent expense	11,000		11,800	
Depreciation expense	—0—		6,500	
Supplies expense	1,100		1,800	
Interest expense	5,400		7,900	
Advertising expense	3,000		3,000	
Totals	415,000	415,000	431,700	431,700

Required:

Prepare the adjusting journal entries that were recorded at December 31, 2018.

P 2-6

Accounting cycle

- LO2-2 through LO2-7



The general ledger of the Karlin Company, a consulting company, at January 1, 2018, contained the following account balances:

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	30,000	
Accounts receivable	15,000	
Equipment	20,000	
Accumulated depreciation		6,000
Salaries payable		9,000
Common stock		40,500
Retained earnings		9,500
Total	65,000	65,000

The following is a summary of the transactions for the year:

- a. Sales of services, \$100,000, of which \$30,000 was on credit.
- b. Collected on accounts receivable, \$27,300.
- c. Issued shares of common stock in exchange for \$10,000 in cash.
- d. Paid salaries, \$50,000 (of which \$9,000 was for salaries payable).
- e. Paid miscellaneous expenses, \$24,000.
- f. Purchased equipment for \$15,000 in cash.
- g. Paid \$2,500 in cash dividends to shareholders.

Required:

1. Set up the necessary T-accounts and enter the beginning balances from the trial balance.
2. Prepare a general journal entry for each of the summary transactions listed above.
3. Post the journal entries to the accounts.
4. Prepare an unadjusted trial balance.
5. Prepare and post adjusting journal entries. Accrued salaries at year-end amounted to \$1,000. Depreciation for the year on the equipment is \$2,000.
6. Prepare an adjusted trial balance.
7. Prepare an income statement for 2018 and a balance sheet as of December 31, 2018.
8. Prepare and post closing entries.
9. Prepare a post-closing trial balance.

P 2-7

Adjusting entries
and income
effects

● LO2-2, LO2-5

The information necessary for preparing the 2018 year-end adjusting entries for Vito's Pizza Parlor appears below. Vito's fiscal year-end is December 31.

- a. On July 1, 2018, purchased \$10,000 of **IBM Corporation** bonds at face value. The bonds pay interest twice a year on January 1 and July 1. The annual interest rate is 12%.
- b. Vito's depreciable equipment has a cost of \$30,000, a five-year life, and no salvage value. The equipment was purchased in 2016. The straight-line depreciation method is used.
- c. On November 1, 2018, the bar area was leased to Jack Donaldson for one year. Vito's received \$6,000 representing the first six months' rent and credited deferred rent revenue.
- d. On April 1, 2018, the company paid \$2,400 for a two-year fire and liability insurance policy and debited insurance expense.
- e. On October 1, 2018, the company borrowed \$20,000 from a local bank and signed a note. Principal and interest at 12% will be paid on September 30, 2019.
- f. At year-end, there is a \$1,800 debit balance in the supplies (asset) account. Only \$700 of supplies remain on hand.

Required:

1. Prepare the necessary adjusting journal entries at December 31, 2018.
2. Determine the amount by which net income would be misstated if Vito's failed to record these adjusting entries. (Ignore income tax expense.)

P 2-8

Adjusting entries

● LO2-5

Excalibur Corporation sells video games for personal computers. The unadjusted trial balance as of December 31, 2018, appears below. December 31 is the company's fiscal year-end. The company uses the perpetual inventory system.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	23,300	
Accounts receivable	32,500	
Supplies	—0—	
Prepaid rent	—0—	
Inventory	65,000	
Office equipment	75,000	
Accumulated depreciation—office equipment		10,000
Accounts payable		26,100
Salaries and wages payable		3,000
Note payable		30,000
Common stock		80,000
Retained earnings		16,050
Sales revenue		180,000

(continued)

(concluded)

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cost of goods sold	95,000	
Interest expense	—0—	
Salaries and wages expense	32,350	
Rent expense	14,000	
Supplies expense	2,000	
Utility expense	6,000	
Totals	<u>345,150</u>	<u>345,150</u>

Information necessary to prepare the year-end adjusting entries appears below.

1. The office equipment was purchased in 2016 and is being depreciated using the straight-line method over an eight-year useful life with no salvage value.
2. Accrued salaries and wages at year-end should be \$4,500.
3. The company borrowed \$30,000 on September 1, 2018. The principal is due to be repaid in 10 years. Interest is payable twice a year on each August 31 and February 28 at an annual rate of 10%.
4. The company debits supplies expense when supplies are purchased. Supplies on hand at year-end cost \$500.
5. Prepaid rent at year-end should be \$1,000.

Required:

Prepare the necessary December 31, 2018, adjusting entries.

P 2–9

Accounting cycle;
unadjusted trial
balance through
closing

- LO2–3, LO2–5,
LO2–7



The unadjusted trial balance as of December 31, 2018, for the Bagley Consulting Company appears below. December 31 is the company's fiscal year-end.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	8,000	
Accounts receivable	9,000	
Prepaid insurance	3,000	
Land	200,000	
Buildings	50,000	
Accumulated depreciation—buildings		20,000
Office equipment	100,000	
Accumulated depreciation—office equipment		40,000
Accounts payable		35,050
Salaries and wages payable		—0—
Deferred rent revenue		—0—
Common stock		200,000
Retained earnings		56,450
Sales revenue		90,000
Interest revenue		3,000
Rent revenue		7,500
Salaries and wages expense	37,000	
Depreciation expense	—0—	
Insurance expense	—0—	
Utility expense	30,000	
Maintenance expense	15,000	
Totals	<u>452,000</u>	<u>452,000</u>

Required:

1. Enter the account balances in T-accounts.
2. From the trial balance and information given, prepare adjusting entries and post to the accounts.
 - a. The buildings have an estimated useful life of 50 years with no salvage value. The company uses the straight-line depreciation method.
 - b. The office equipment is depreciated at 10 percent of original cost per year.
 - c. Prepaid insurance expired during the year, \$1,500.
 - d. Accrued salaries and wages at year-end, \$1,500.
 - e. Deferred rent revenue at year-end should be \$1,200.
3. Prepare an adjusted trial balance.
4. Prepare closing entries.
5. Prepare a post-closing trial balance.

P 2-10

Accrual
accounting;
financial
statements

- LO2-4, LO2-6,
LO2-8



McGuire Corporation began operations in 2018. The company purchases computer equipment from manufacturers and then sells to retail stores. During 2018, the bookkeeper used a check register to record all cash receipts and cash disbursements. No other journals were used. The following is a recap of the cash receipts and disbursements made during the year.

Cash receipts:

Sale of common stock	\$ 50,000
Collections from customers	320,000
Borrowed from local bank on April 1, note signed requiring principal and interest at 12% to be paid on March 31, 2019	40,000
Total cash receipts	\$ 410,000

Cash disbursements:

Purchase of merchandise	\$ 220,000
Payment of salaries and wages	80,000
Purchase of office equipment	30,000
Payment of rent on building	14,000
Miscellaneous expenses	10,000
Total cash disbursements	\$ 354,000

You are called in to prepare financial statements at December 31, 2018. The following additional information was provided to you:

- Customers owed the company \$22,000 at year-end.
- At year-end, \$30,000 was still due to suppliers of merchandise purchased on credit.
- At year-end, merchandise inventory costing \$50,000 still remained on hand.
- Salaries and wages owed to employees at year-end amounted to \$5,000.
- On December 1, \$3,000 in rent was paid to the owner of the building used by McGuire. This represented rent for the months of December through February.
- The office equipment, which has a 10-year life and no salvage value, was purchased on January 1, 2018. Straight-line depreciation is used.

Required:

Prepare an income statement for 2018 and a balance sheet as of December 31, 2018.

P 2-11

Cash versus
accrual
accounting

- LO2-8

Selected balance sheet information for the Wolf Company at November 30, and December 31, 2018, is presented below. The company uses the perpetual inventory system and all sales to customers are made on credit.

	Nov. 30		Dec. 31	
	Debits	Credits	Debits	Credits
Accounts receivable	10,000		3,000	
Prepaid insurance	5,000		7,500	
Inventory	7,000		6,000	
Accounts payable		12,000		15,000
Salaries and wages payable		5,000		3,000

The following cash flow information also is available:

- Cash collected from credit customers, \$80,000
- Cash paid for insurance, \$5,000
- Cash paid to suppliers of inventory, \$60,000 (the entire accounts payable amounts relate to inventory purchases)
- Cash paid to employees for salaries and wages, \$10,000

Required:

- Determine the following for the month of December:
 - Sales revenue
 - Cost of goods sold
 - Insurance expense
 - Salaries and wages expense
- Prepare summary journal entries to record the month's sales and cost of those sales.

P 2-12

Cash versus
accrual
accounting

● LO2-8



Zambrano Wholesale Corporation maintains its records on a cash basis. At the end of each year the company's accountant obtains the necessary information to prepare accrual basis financial statements. The following cash flows occurred during the year ended December 31, 2018:

Cash receipts:	
From customers	\$675,000
Interest on note	4,000
Loan from a local bank	100,000
Total cash receipts	<u>\$779,000</u>
Cash disbursements:	
Purchase of merchandise	\$390,000
Annual insurance payment	6,000
Payment of salaries and wages	210,000
Dividends paid to shareholders	10,000
Annual rent payment	24,000
Total cash disbursements	<u>\$640,000</u>

Selected balance sheet information:

	12/31/17	12/31/18
Cash	\$ 25,000	\$164,000
Accounts receivable	62,000	92,000
Inventory	80,000	62,000
Prepaid insurance	2,500	?
Prepaid rent	11,000	?
Interest receivable	3,000	?
Note receivable	50,000	50,000
Equipment	100,000	100,000
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	(40,000)	(50,000)
Accounts payable (for merchandise)	110,000	122,000
Salaries and wages payable	20,000	24,000
Note payable	—0—	100,000
Interest payable	—0—	?

Additional information:

- On March 31, 2017, Zambrano lent a customer \$50,000. Interest at 8% is payable annually on each March 31. Principal is due in 2021.
- The annual insurance payment is paid in advance on April 30. The policy period begins on May 1.
- On October 31, 2018, Zambrano borrowed \$100,000 from a local bank. Principal and interest at 6% are due on October 31, 2019.
- Annual rent on the company's facilities is paid in advance on June 30. The rental period begins on July 1.

Required:

- Prepare an accrual basis income statement for 2018 (ignore income taxes).
- Determine the following balance sheet amounts on December 31, 2018:
 - Prepaid insurance
 - Prepaid rent
 - Interest receivable
 - Interest payable

P 2-13

Worksheet

● Appendix 2A

Using the information from P 2-8, prepare and complete a worksheet similar to Illustration 2A-1. Use the information in the worksheet to prepare an income statement and a statement of shareholders' equity for 2018 and a balance sheet as of December 31, 2018. Cash dividends paid to shareholders during the year amounted to \$6,000. Also prepare the necessary closing entries assuming that adjusting entries have been correctly posted to the accounts.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Judgment Case 2-1

Cash versus accrual accounting; adjusting entries; Chapters 1 and 2

● LO2-4, LO2-8

You have recently been hired by Davis & Company, a small public accounting firm. One of the firm's partners, Alice Davis, has asked you to deal with a disgruntled client, Mr. Sean Pitt, owner of the city's largest hardware store. Mr. Pitt is applying to a local bank for a substantial loan to remodel his store. The bank requires accrual based financial statements but Mr. Pitt has always kept the company's records on a cash basis. He doesn't see the purpose of accrual based statements. His most recent outburst went something like this: "After all, I collect cash from customers, pay my bills in cash, and I am going to pay the bank loan with cash. And, I already show my building and equipment as assets and depreciate them. I just don't understand the problem."

Required:

1. Explain the difference between a cash basis and an accrual basis measure of performance.
2. Why, in most cases, does accrual basis net income provide a better measure of performance than net operating cash flow?
3. Explain the purpose of adjusting entries as they relate to the difference between cash and accrual accounting.

Judgment Case 2-2

Cash versus accrual accounting

● LO2-8

Refer to Case 2-1 above. Mr. Pitt has relented and agrees to provide you with the information necessary to convert his cash basis financial statements to accrual basis statements. He provides you with the following transaction information for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2018:

1. A new comprehensive insurance policy requires an annual payment of \$12,000 for the upcoming year. Coverage began on September 1, 2018, at which time the first payment was made.
2. Mr. Pitt allows customers to pay using a credit card. At the end of the current year, various credit card companies owed Mr. Pitt \$6,500. At the end of last year, customer credit card charges outstanding were \$5,000.
3. Employees are paid once a month, on the 10th of the month following the work period. Cash disbursements to employees were \$8,200 and \$7,200 for January 10, 2019, and January 10, 2018, respectively.
4. Utility bills outstanding totaled \$1,200 at the end of 2018 and \$900 at the end of 2017.
5. A physical count of inventory is always taken at the end of the fiscal year. The merchandise on hand at the end of 2018 cost \$35,000. At the end of 2017, inventory on hand cost \$32,000.
6. At the end of 2017, Mr. Pitt did not have any bills outstanding to suppliers of merchandise. However, at the end of 2018, he owed suppliers \$4,000.

Required:

1. Mr. Pitt's 2018 cash basis net income (including depreciation expense) is \$26,000. Determine net income applying the accrual accounting model.
2. Explain the effect on Mr. Pitt's balance sheet of converting from cash to accrual. That is, would assets, liabilities, and owner's equity be higher or lower and by what amounts?

Communication Case 2-3

Adjusting entries

● LO2-4

"I don't understand," complained Chris, who responded to your bulletin board posting for tutoring in introductory accounting. The complaint was in response to your statements that recording adjusting entries is a critical step in the accounting processing cycle, and the two major classifications of adjusting entries are prepayments and accruals.

Required:

Respond to Chris.

1. When do prepayments occur? Accruals?
2. Describe the appropriate adjusting entry for prepaid expenses and for deferred revenues. What is the effect on net income, assets, liabilities, and shareholders' equity of not recording a required adjusting entry for prepayments?
3. Describe the required adjusting entry for accrued liabilities and for accrued receivables. What is the effect on net income, assets, liabilities, and shareholders' equity of not recording a required adjusting entry for accruals?

Continuing Cases

Target Case

• LO2–4, LO2–8

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. Refer to Target's balance sheet for the years ended January 30, 2016 and January 31, 2015. Based on the amounts reported for accumulated depreciation, and assuming no depreciable assets were sold during the year, prepare an adjusting entry to record Target's depreciation for the year.
2. Refer to Target's statement of cash flows for the year ended January 30, 2016. Assuming your answer to Requirement 1 includes all depreciation expense recognized during the year, how much amortization expense was recognized during the year?
3. Note 13 provides information on Target's current assets. Assume all prepaid expenses are for prepaid insurance and that insurance expense comprises \$50 million of the \$14,665 million of Selling, general and administrative expenses reported in the income statement for the year ended January 30, 2016. How much cash did Target pay for insurance coverage during the year? Prepare the adjusting entry Target would make to record all insurance expense for the year. What would be the effect on the income statement and balance sheet if Target didn't record an adjusting entry for prepaid expenses?

Air France–KLM Case

• LO2–4



IFRS

Air France-KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are provided in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. Refer to AF's balance sheet and compare it to the balance sheet presentation in Illustration 2–14. What differences do you see in the format of the two balance sheets?
2. What differences do you see in the terminology used in the two balance sheets?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



ROGER
CPA Review

Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

3

The Balance Sheet and Financial Disclosures

OVERVIEW

Chapter 1 stressed the importance of the financial statements to investors and creditors, and Chapter 2 reviewed the preparation of those financial statements. In this chapter, we'll take a closer look at the balance sheet, along with accompanying disclosures. The balance sheet provides relevant information useful in helping investors and creditors not only to predict future cash flows, but also to make the related assessments of liquidity and long-term solvency. In Chapter 4 we'll continue our conversation about the financial statements with discussion of the income statement, statement of comprehensive income, and statement of cash flows.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO3-1** Describe the purpose of the balance sheet and understand its usefulness and limitations. (p. 110)
- **LO3-2** Identify and describe the various asset classifications. (p. 112)
- **LO3-3** Identify and describe the various liability and shareholders' equity classifications. (p. 116)
- **LO3-4** Explain the purpose of financial statement disclosures. (p. 120)
- **LO3-5** Describe disclosures related to management's discussion and analysis, responsibilities, and compensation. (p. 123)
- **LO3-6** Explain the purpose of an audit and describe the content of the audit report. (p. 126)
- **LO3-7** Describe the techniques used by financial analysts to transform financial information into forms more useful for analysis. (p. 128)
- **LO3-8** Identify and calculate the common liquidity and solvency ratios used to assess risk. (p. 129)
- **LO3-9** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to the balance sheet, financial disclosures, and segment reporting. (pp. 118 and 136)



© G Fiume/Maryland Terrapins/Getty Images

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

What's It Worth?

"I can't believe it. Why don't you accountants prepare financial statements that are relevant?" Your friend Jerry is a finance major and is constantly badgering you about what he perceives to be a lack of relevance of financial statements prepared according to generally accepted accounting principles. "For example, take a look at this balance sheet for **Under Armour** that I just downloaded off the Internet. The equity (or book value) of the company according to the 2015 balance sheet was nearly \$1.7 billion. But if you multiply the number of outstanding shares by the stock price per share at the same point in time, the company's market value was about \$9 billion. I thought equity was supposed to represent the value of the company,

but those two numbers aren't close." You decide to look at the company's balance sheet and try to set Jerry straight.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. Respond to Jerry's criticism that shareholders' equity does not represent the market value of the company. What information does the balance sheet provide? (p. 111)
2. The usefulness of the balance sheet is enhanced by classifying assets and liabilities according to common characteristics. What are the classifications used in Under Armour's balance sheet and what elements do those categories include? (p. 111)

QUESTIONS

Most companies provide their financial statements and accompanying disclosures on their website in an "Investor Relations" link, but this information also can be found at the SEC's website (www.sec.gov) through its electronic filing system known as EDGAR (Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system). Companies are required to file their financial information in a timely manner using the EDGAR system. As stated by the SEC, "Its (EDGAR system's) primary purpose is to increase the efficiency and fairness of the securities market for the benefit of investors, corporations, and the economy by accelerating the receipt, acceptance, dissemination, and analysis of time-sensitive corporate information filed with the agency."

The first part of this chapter begins our discussion of the financial statements by providing an overview of the balance sheet. The balance sheet reports a company's assets, liabilities, and shareholders' equity. You can see an example of **Under Armour** on the next page. In the second part of this chapter, we discuss additional disclosures that companies are required to provide beyond the basic financial statements. These disclosures are critical to understanding the financial statements and to evaluating a firm's performance and financial health. In the third part of this chapter, we discuss how information in the financial statements can be used by decision makers to assess business risk (liquidity and long-term solvency).

The SEC's EDGAR system improves the efficiency with which company information is collected and disseminated.

Real World Financials

UNDER ARMOUR INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES Consolidated Balance Sheet December 31, 2015 (\$ in thousands)			
Assets			
Current assets:			
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 129,852		
Accounts receivable, net	433,638		
Inventories	783,031		
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	152,242		
Total current assets			\$1,498,763
Property and equipment, net	538,531		
Goodwill	585,181		
Intangible assets, net	75,686		
Deferred income taxes	92,157		
Other long-term assets	78,582		
Total long-term assets			1,370,137
Total assets			<u>\$2,868,900</u>
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity			
Current liabilities:			
Accounts payable	\$ 200,460		
Accrued expenses	192,935		
Current maturities of long-term debt	42,000		
Other current liabilities	43,415		
Total current liabilities			478,810
Long-term debt, net of current maturities	352,000		
Revolving credit facility, long-term	275,000		
Other long-term liabilities	94,868		
Total long-term liabilities			721,868
Total liabilities			\$1,200,678
Stockholders' equity:			
Common stock	72		
Additional paid-in capital	636,630		
Retained earnings	1,076,533		
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(45,013)		
Total stockholders' equity			1,668,222
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity			<u>\$2,868,900</u>

PART A

The Balance Sheet

● LO3-1

The purpose of the **balance sheet**, sometimes referred to as the **statement of financial position**, is to report a company's financial position on a particular date. The balance sheet presents an organized array of assets, liabilities, and shareholders' equity *at a point in time*. It is a freeze frame or snapshot of financial position at the end of a particular day marking the end of an accounting period.

Usefulness

The balance sheet provides information useful for assessing future cash flows, liquidity, and long-term solvency.

The balance sheet provides a list of assets and liabilities that are classified (grouped) according to common characteristics. These classifications, which we explore in the next section, along with related disclosure notes, help the balance sheet to provide useful information about liquidity and long-term solvency. **Liquidity** most often refers to the ability of a company to convert its assets to cash to pay its *current* obligations. **Long-term solvency** refers

to an assessment of whether a company will be able to pay its long-term debts. Other things being equal, the risk that a company will not be able to pay its debt increases as its liabilities, relative to equity, increases.

Solvency also provides information about *financial flexibility*—the ability of a company to alter cash flows in order to take advantage of unexpected investment opportunities and needs. For example, the higher the percentage of a company's liabilities to its equity, the more difficult it typically will be to borrow additional funds either to take advantage of a promising investment opportunity or to meet obligations. In general, the less financial flexibility, the more risk there is that an enterprise will fail. In Part C of this chapter, we introduce some common ratios used to assess liquidity and long-term solvency.¹

Limitations

Despite its usefulness, the balance sheet has limitations. One important limitation is that a company's **book value**, its reported assets minus liabilities as shown in the balance sheet, usually *will not directly measure the company's market value*. Market value is the amount someone would be willing to pay to own the company. For a company with publicly traded stock, market value can easily be computed as the current stock price times the number of shares outstanding.

The two primary reasons that the balance sheet does not portray the company's market value are:

1. Many assets, like land and buildings, are measured at their historical costs rather than their fair values. For example, if a company owns land and the value of that land increases, the increase in value is not reported in the balance sheet but it would be reflected in market value.
2. Many aspects of a company may represent valuable resources (such as trained employees, experienced management team, loyal customer relationships, and product knowledge), but these items are not recorded as assets in the balance sheet.

As an example of the second item, in 2015 **Facebook** spent almost \$5 billion on research and development to design new products and improve existing services. While these costs likely improve the company's ability to generate future profits (and therefore increase the market value of the company to shareholders), these items are expensed when incurred and not reported in the balance sheet as an asset. As a result of this and other items, Facebook's ratio of market value to book value at the end of 2015 was 7.1. The average ratio of market value to book value for companies in the S&P 500 index was about 2.8.

Another limitation of the balance sheet is that many items in the balance sheet are heavily reliant on *estimates and judgments rather than determinable amounts*. For example, companies estimate: (a) the amount of receivables they will be able to actually collect, (b) the amount of warranty costs they will eventually incur for products already sold, (c) the residual values and useful lives of their long-term assets, and (d) amounts used to calculate employee pension obligations. Each of these estimates affects amounts reported in the balance sheet.

In summary, even though the balance sheet *does not directly measure* the market value of the entity, it provides valuable information that can be used to *help judge* market value.

Classification of Elements

The usefulness of the balance sheet is enhanced when assets and liabilities are grouped according to common characteristics. *The broad distinction made in the balance sheet is the current versus long-term (noncurrent) classification of both assets and liabilities*. The remainder of Part A provides an overview of the balance sheet. We discuss each of the three primary elements of the balance sheet (assets, liabilities, and shareholders' equity) in the

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 109

Assets minus liabilities, measured according to GAAP, is not likely to be representative of the market value of the entity.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 109

The key classification of assets and liabilities in the balance sheet is the current versus long-term distinction.

¹Another way the balance sheet is useful is in combination with income statement items. We explore some of these relationships in Chapter 4.

order they are reported in the statement as well as the classifications typically made within the elements. The balance sheet elements were defined in Chapter 1 as follows:

Assets are probable future economic benefits obtained or controlled by a particular entity as a result of past transactions or events. Simply, these are the economic resources of a company.

Liabilities are probable future sacrifices of economic benefits arising from present obligations of a particular entity to transfer assets or provide services to other entities in the future as a result of past transactions or events. Simply, these are the obligations of a company.

Equity (or net assets), called **shareholders' equity** or **stockholders' equity** for a corporation, is the residual interest in the assets of an entity that remains after deducting liabilities. Stated another way, equity equals total assets minus total liabilities.

Illustration 3–1 shows the relationship among assets, liabilities, and shareholders' equity, often referred to as the **accounting equation**. Included in the illustration are the subclassifications of each element. We will discuss each of these subclassifications next.

Illustration 3–1

Classification of Elements within a Balance Sheet

<u>Assets</u>	=	<u>Liabilities</u>	+	<u>Shareholders' Equity</u>
1. Current assets		1. Current liabilities		1. Paid-in capital
2. Long-term assets		2. Long-term liabilities		2. Retained earnings

Assets

LO3–2

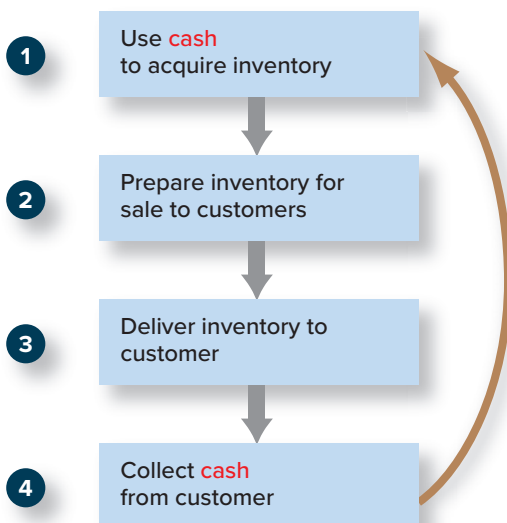
Current assets include cash and all other assets expected to become cash or be consumed within one year or the operating cycle, whichever is longer.

CURRENT ASSETS. Current assets include cash and other assets that are reasonably expected to be converted to cash or consumed within the coming year, or within the normal operating cycle of the business if that's longer than one year. The **operating cycle** for a typical merchandising or manufacturing company refers to the period of time from the initial outlay of cash for the purchase of inventory until the time the company collects cash from a customer from the sale of inventory.

For a merchandising company, the initial purchase of inventory often is for a finished good, although some preparation may be necessary to get the inventory ready for sale (such as packaging or distribution). For a manufacturing company, the initial outlay of cash often involves the purchase of raw materials, which are then converted into a finished product through the manufacturing process. The concept of an operating cycle is shown in Illustration 3–2.

Illustration 3–2

Operating Cycle of a Typical Merchandising or Manufacturing Company



In some businesses, such as shipbuilding or distilleries, the operating cycle extends far beyond one year. For example, if it takes two years to build an oil-carrying supertanker, then the shipbuilder will classify as current those assets that will be converted to cash or consumed within two years. But for most businesses the operating cycle will be shorter than one year. In these situations the one-year convention is used to classify both assets and liabilities. Where a company has no clearly defined operating cycle, the one-year convention is used.

Illustration 3–3 presents the current asset sections of **Nike's** balance sheets for the years ended May 31, 2015, and May 31, 2014. In keeping with common practice, the individual current assets are listed in the order of their liquidity (the ability to convert the asset to cash).

Cash and Cash Equivalents. The most liquid asset, cash, is listed first. Cash includes cash on hand and in banks that is available for use in the operations of the business and such items as bank drafts, cashier's checks, and money orders. **Cash equivalents** frequently include certain negotiable items such as commercial paper, money market funds, and U.S. treasury bills. These are highly liquid investments that can be quickly

	May 31, 2015	May 31, 2014
	(\$ in millions)	
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 3,852	\$ 2,220
Short-term investments	2,072	2,922
Accounts receivable, net	3,358	3,434
Inventories	4,337	3,947
Deferred income taxes	389	355
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	1,968	818
Total current assets	<u>\$15,976</u>	<u>\$13,696</u>

Illustration 3-3

Current Assets—Nike, Inc.

Real World Financials

converted into cash. Most companies draw a distinction between investments classified as cash equivalents and the next category of current assets, short-term investments, according to the scheduled maturity of the investment. *It is common practice to classify investments that have a maturity date of three months or less from the date of purchase as cash equivalents.* Nike's policy follows this practice and is disclosed in the summary of significant accounting policies disclosure note. The portion of the note from the company's financial statements is shown in Illustration 3-4.

Cash and equivalents represent cash and short-term, highly liquid investments, including commercial paper, U.S. Treasury, U.S. Agency, money market funds, time deposits and corporate debt securities with maturities of 90 days or less at the date of purchase.

Illustration 3-4

Disclosure of Cash Equivalents—Nike, Inc.

Real World Financials

Cash that is restricted for a special purpose and not available for current operations should not be included in the primary balance of cash and cash equivalents. These restrictions could include future plans to repay debt, purchase equipment, or make investments. Restricted cash is classified as a current asset if it is expected to be used within one year. Otherwise, restricted cash is classified as a long-term asset.

Short-Term Investments. Liquid investments not classified as cash equivalents are reported as **short-term investments**, sometimes called *temporary investments* or *short-term marketable securities*. Investments in stock and debt securities of other corporations are included as short-term investments *if* the company has the ability and intent to sell those securities within the next 12 months or operating cycle, whichever is longer. We discuss accounting for debt and equity investments in Chapter 12.

Accounts Receivable. **Accounts receivable** result from the sale of goods or services on credit (discussed in Chapter 7). Accounts receivable often are referred to as *trade receivables* because they arise in the course of a company's normal trade. *Nontrade receivables* result from loans or advances by the company to individuals and other entities. When receivables are supported by a formal agreement or note that specifies payment terms they are called **notes receivable**.

Accounts receivable usually are due in 30 to 60 days, depending on the terms offered to customers and are, therefore, classified as current assets. Any receivable, regardless of the source, not expected to be collected within one year or the operating cycle, whichever is longer, is classified as a long-term asset, investments. In addition, receivables are typically reported at the net amount expected to be collected. The net amount is calculated as total receivables less an allowance for the estimate of uncollectible accounts.

Inventories. **Inventories** for a wholesale or retail company consist of finished goods for sale to customers. For example, you buy finished goods such as shoes and athletic wear from Nike, potato chips at Costco, school supplies at Staples, and a new shirt at Gap.

Inventories consist of assets that a retail or wholesale company acquires for resale or goods that manufacturers produce for sale.

However, the inventory of a manufacturer will include not only finished goods, but also goods in the course of production (work in process) and goods to be consumed directly or indirectly in production (raw materials). Manufacturers typically report all three types of inventory either directly in the balance sheet or in a disclosure note. Illustration 3–5 demonstrates how **Intel Corp.**, a semiconductor chip manufacturer, discloses its components of inventory.

Illustration 3–5

Inventories Disclosure—
Intel Corp.

Real World Financials

	December 26, 2015	December 27, 2014
	(\$ in millions)	
Raw materials	\$ 532	\$ 462
Work in process	2,893	2,375
Finished goods	1,742	1,436
Total inventories	<u>\$ 5,167</u>	<u>\$4,273</u>

Inventories are reported as current assets because they normally are sold within the operating cycle.

Prepaid Expenses. Recall from Chapter 2 that a **prepaid expense** represents an asset recorded when an expense is paid in advance, creating benefits beyond the current period. Examples are prepaid rent and prepaid insurance. Even though these assets are not converted to cash, they would involve an outlay of cash if not prepaid.

Whether a prepaid expense is current or noncurrent depends on when its benefits will be realized. For example, if rent on an office building were prepaid for one year, then the prepayment is classified as a current asset. However, if rent were prepaid for a period extending beyond the coming year, a portion of the prepayment is classified as an other asset, a long-term asset.² Nike includes prepaid expenses along with other current assets. Other current assets also could include assets such as nontrade receivables, that, because their amounts are not material, did not warrant separate disclosure.

LONG-TERM ASSETS. When assets are expected to provide economic benefits beyond the next year, or operating cycle, they are reported as *long-term* (or *noncurrent*) *assets*. Typical classifications of long-term assets are as follows:

1. Investments
2. Property, plant, and equipment
3. Intangible assets
4. Other long-term assets

Next, we'll discuss each of these categories of long-term assets.

Investments are assets not used directly in operations.

Investments. Most companies occasionally acquire assets that are not used directly in the operations of the business. These assets include investments in equity and debt securities of other corporations, land held for speculation, long-term receivables, and cash set aside for special purposes (such as for future plant expansion). These assets are classified as long-term because management does not intend to convert the assets into cash in the next year (or the operating cycle if that's longer).

Tangible, long-lived assets used in the operations of the business are classified as property, plant, and equipment.

Property, Plant, and Equipment. Virtually all companies own assets classified as **property, plant, and equipment**. The common characteristics these assets share are that they are *tangible*, *long-lived*, and *used in the operations of the business*. Property, plant, and equipment often are the primary revenue-generating assets of the business.

²Companies often include prepayments for benefits extending beyond one year as current assets when the amounts are not material.

Property, plant, and equipment includes land, buildings, equipment, machinery, furniture, and vehicles, as well as natural resources, such as mineral mines, timber tracts, and oil wells. These various assets usually are reported as a single amount in the balance sheet, with details provided in a note. They are reported at original cost less accumulated depreciation (or depletion for natural resources) to date. Quite often, a company will present only the net amount of property, plant, and equipment in the balance sheet and provide details in a disclosure note. Land often is listed as a separate item in this classification because it has an unlimited useful life and thus is not depreciated.

Intangible Assets. Some assets used in the operations of a business have no physical substance. These assets are appropriately called **intangible assets**. Many intangible assets grant an exclusive right to a company to provide a product or service. This right can be a valuable resource in generating future revenues. Patents, copyrights, franchises, and trademarks are examples. Intangible assets generally are reported in the balance sheet at their purchase price less accumulated *amortization* (similar to how we account for property, plant, and equipment at their purchase price less accumulated *depreciation*).

Intangible assets generally represent exclusive rights that a company can use to generate future revenues.

Not all intangible assets are purchased; some are developed internally. For example, instead of purchasing a patent granting the exclusive right to manufacture a certain drug, a pharmaceutical company may spend significant amounts in research and development to discover the drug and obtain a patent on its own. For internally developed intangibles, none of the research and development costs incurred in developing the intangible asset are included in reported cost. Instead, research and development costs are expensed as incurred. **Pfizer**, one of the world's largest pharmaceutical companies, spent \$7.7 billion on researching and developing new medicines, vaccines, medical devices, and other health care products in 2015. These costs may help to generate future profits, but none of them were reported as an asset.

Another common type of intangible asset is *goodwill*. Goodwill isn't associated with any specific identifiable right, but instead arises when one company acquires another company. The amount reported for goodwill equals the acquisition price above the fair value of the identifiable net assets acquired. We'll discuss goodwill and other intangible assets in more detail in Chapter 10.

Illustration 3–6 shows the long-term asset section of **Nike**'s balance sheets, including its disclosure of goodwill and identifiable intangible assets.

	May 31, 2015	May 31, 2014
	(\$ in millions)	
Long-term assets:		
Property, plant, and equipment, net	\$3,011	\$2,834
Identifiable intangible assets	281	282
Goodwill	131	131
Deferred income taxes and other assets	2,201	1,651
Total long-term assets	<u>\$5,624</u>	<u>\$4,898</u>

Illustration 3–6

Long-term Assets—Nike, Inc.

Real World Financials

Other Long-Term Assets. This category of long-term assets (reported by most companies) represents a catch-all classification of long-term assets that were not reported separately in one of the other long-term classifications. This amount most often includes long-term prepaid expenses, called *deferred charges*. For instance, **Nike** includes promotional expenditures related to long-term endorsement contracts and long-term advertising in this category. Nike also includes deferred charges related to income taxes.

This category might also include any long-term investments that are not material in amount and that were not reported separately in the long-term investments category discussed earlier. In the disclosure notes to its financial statements, Nike revealed that it did have a small amount of long-term investments as well as long-term receivables that were combined with deferred charges and reported in this category (instead of being reported separately in a long-term investments category).

Asset classification is affected by management intent.

A key to understanding which category an asset is reported is *management intent*. For example, in which category will land be reported? It depends on management intent. Management may intend to use land for long-term operating purposes (property, plant, and equipment), hold it for future resale (investment), or sell it in its ordinary course of business (inventory for a real estate company).

LO3-3 Liabilities

Liabilities represent obligations to other entities. The information value of reporting these amounts is enhanced by classifying them as current liabilities and long-term liabilities. Illustration 3-7 shows the liability section of Nike's balance sheets.

Illustration 3-7

Liabilities—Nike, Inc.

Real World Financials

	May 31, 2015	May 31, 2014
	(\$ in millions)	
Current liabilities:		
Current portion of long-term debt	\$ 107	\$ 7
Notes payable	74	167
Accounts payable	2,131	1,930
Accrued liabilities	3,951	2,491
Income tax payable	71	432
Total current liabilities	6,334	5,027
Long-term debt	1,079	1,199
Deferred income taxes and other liabilities	1,480	1,544
Total liabilities	<u>\$8,893</u>	<u>\$7,770</u>

Current liabilities are expected to be satisfied within one year or the operating cycle, whichever is longer.

CURRENT LIABILITIES. Current liabilities are those obligations that are expected to be satisfied through the use of current assets or the creation of other current liabilities. So, this classification includes all liabilities that are expected to be satisfied within one year or the operating cycle, whichever is longer. As of May 31, 2015, Nike had current liabilities of \$6,334 million that it planned to pay in the next 12 months.

The most common current liabilities are accounts payable, notes payable (short-term borrowings), deferred revenues, accrued liabilities, and the currently maturing portion of long-term debt.

Accounts payable are obligations to suppliers of merchandise or of services purchased on open account, with payment usually due in 30 to 60 days.

Notes payable are written promises to pay cash at some future date (I.O.U.s). Unlike accounts payable, notes usually require the payment of explicit interest in addition to the original obligation amount. Notes maturing in the next year or operating cycle, whichever is longer, will be classified as current liabilities.

Deferred revenues, sometimes called *unearned revenues*, represent cash received from a customer for goods or services to be provided in a future period. For example, a company records deferred revenue when it sells gift cards and then waits to record the (actual) revenue until the cards are redeemed or expire.

Accrued liabilities represent obligations created when expenses have been incurred but amounts owed will not be paid until a subsequent reporting period. For example, a company might owe salaries at the end of the fiscal year to be paid some time in the following year. In this case, the company would report *salaries payable* as an accrued liability in the current year's balance sheet (as well as the related salaries expense in the income statement). Other common examples of accrued liabilities include interest payable, taxes payable, utilities payable, and legal fees payable. In most financial statements these items are reported in the balance sheet as accrued liabilities and the categories may be found listed in the disclosure notes.

Current maturities of long-term debt refer to the portion of long-term notes, loans, mortgages, and bonds payable that is payable within the next year (or operating cycle if that's longer).³ For example, a \$1,000,000 note payable requiring \$100,000 in principal payments to be made in each of the next 10 years is classified as a \$100,000 current liability and a \$900,000 long-term liability. Nike classifies the current portion of its long-term debt as a current liability.

An exception for the current liability classification is a liability that management intends to refinance on a long-term basis. For example, if management intends to refinance a six-month note payable by substituting a two-year note payable and has the ability to do so, then the liability would not be classified as current even though it's due within the coming year. This exception and issues related to current liabilities are discussed in more detail in Chapter 13.

LONG-TERM LIABILITIES. Long-term liabilities are obligations that will *not* be satisfied in the next year or operating cycle, whichever is longer. They do not require the use of current assets or the creation of current liabilities for payment. Examples are long-term notes, bonds, pension obligations, and lease obligations.

But simply classifying a liability as long-term doesn't provide complete information to external users. For instance, long-term could mean anything from 2 to 20, 30, or 40 years. Payment terms, interest rates, and other details needed to assess the impact of these obligations on future cash flows and long-term solvency are reported in a disclosure note. Nike reports long-term liabilities related to corporate bonds and promissory notes.

Noncurrent, or long-term liabilities, usually are those payable beyond the current year.

Shareholders' Equity

Recall from our discussions in Chapters 1 and 2 that owners' equity is simply a residual amount derived by subtracting liabilities from assets. For that reason, it's sometimes referred to as *net assets* or *book value*. Also recall that owners of a corporation are its shareholders, so owners' equity for a corporation is referred to as *shareholders' equity* or *stockholders' equity*. Here's a simple way to think of equity. If someone buys a house for \$200,000 by making an initial \$50,000 payment and borrowing the remaining \$150,000, then the house's owner has an asset of \$200,000, a liability of \$150,000, and equity of \$50,000.

Shareholders' equity for a corporation arises primarily from:

1. Paid-in capital
2. Retained earnings

Paid-in capital is the amount that shareholders have invested in the company. It most often arises when the company issues stock. As shown in Illustration 3–8, the shareholders' equity section of **Nike's** balance sheets reports the full amount of paid-in capital in two accounts—common stock and additional paid-in capital. Information about the number of shares the company has authorized and how many shares have been issued and are outstanding also must be disclosed either directly in the balance sheet or in a note.

	May 31, 2015	May 31, 2014
	(\$ in millions)	
Stockholders' equity:		
Common stock, 679 and 692 shares outstanding	\$ 3	\$ 3
Additional paid-in capital	6,773	5,865
Retained earnings	4,685	4,871
Accumulated other comprehensive income	1,246	85
Total stockholders' equity	<u>\$12,707</u>	<u>\$10,824</u>

Illustration 3–8

Shareholders' Equity—
Nike, Inc.

Real World Financials

³Payment can be with current assets or the creation of other current liabilities.

Retained earnings represents the accumulated net income reported by a company since its inception minus all dividends paid to shareholders. In other words, it's the accumulated lifetime profits a company has earned for its shareholders but has not yet distributed to those shareholders. The fact that a company does not pay all of its profits each year as dividends is not necessarily a bad thing from the shareholders' perspective. Instead of paying additional cash dividends, Nike's management can put those undistributed profits to productive use, such as buying additional inventory or equipment or paying liabilities as they come due.

Nike also reports a *third component of stockholders' equity*—**accumulated other comprehensive income (AOCI)**. Comprehensive income refers to the total change in stockholders' equity other than transactions with owners. While most of this change is reported in the income statement as net income, there are some items of other comprehensive income not reported in the income statement. We accumulate these items in the *accumulated other comprehensive income* account, just like we accumulate each year's net income (that hasn't been distributed as dividends) in the *retained earnings* account.

While accumulated other comprehensive income typically is much smaller than the amount of paid-in capital or retained earnings, it is reported by many companies. We will discuss specific examples of items included in other comprehensive income in Chapters 4, 12, and 18.

We also will discuss other transactions affecting equity, such as a company's purchase of its own stock that is not retired (*treasury stock*) in Chapter 18. Reacquired shares are essentially the same as shares that never were issued at all. A company may decide to re-issue those shares in the future, but until then, they are reported as negative (or contra) shareholders' equity. Nike does not report any treasury stock but many companies do.



• LO3–9

International Financial Reporting Standards

Balance Sheet Presentation. There are more similarities than differences in balance sheets prepared according to U.S. GAAP and those prepared applying IFRS. Some of the differences are:

- International standards specify a minimum list of items to be presented in the balance sheet. U.S. GAAP has no minimum requirements.
- *IAS No. 1, revised*,⁴ changed the title of the balance sheet to *statement of financial position*, although companies are not required to use that title. Some U.S. companies use the statement of financial position title as well.
- Under U.S. GAAP, we present current assets and liabilities before noncurrent assets and liabilities. *IAS No. 1* doesn't prescribe the format of the balance sheet, but balance sheets prepared using IFRS often report noncurrent items first. A recent survey of large companies that prepare their financial statements according to IFRS reports that 73% of the surveyed companies list noncurrent items first.⁵ For example, **H&M**, a Swedish-based clothing company, reported assets, liabilities, and shareholders' equity in its balance sheet in the following order:

	(SEK in millions)
Noncurrent assets (including property, plant, and equipment)	26,488
Current assets	39,188
Total assets	<u>65,676</u>
Shareholders' equity	45,248
Long-term liabilities	3,031
Current liabilities	17,397
Total liabilities and equity	<u>65,676</u>

⁴“Financial Statement Presentation,” *International Accounting Standard No. 1* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

⁵*IFRS Accounting Trends and Techniques—2011* (New York, AICPA, 2011), p.133.

Where We're Headed



In 2004, the FASB and IASB began working together on a project, Financial Statement Presentation, to establish a common standard for presenting information in the financial statements, including classifying and displaying line items and aggregating line items into subtotals and totals. This project could have a dramatic impact on the format of financial statements. An important part of the proposal involves the organization of elements of the balance sheet (statement of financial position), statement of comprehensive income (including the income statement), and statement of cash flows into a common set of classifications.

Progress was slow, and in 2011 both Boards suspended activity on the project to concentrate on other convergence projects. In 2014, the project was moved back on the FASB's agenda. It is not known if the project will retain its original scope of encompassing all of the financial statements or if it will focus on one or two statements. In August 2016, the FASB issued an Exposure Draft to propose adding "Chapter 7: Presentation" to *Concepts Statement 8—Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. The Exposure Draft proposes a framework for the Board to consider in developing standards related to the presentation of information in the financial statements.

Concept Review Exercise

The following is a post-closing trial balance for the Sepia Paint Corporation at December 31, 2018, the end of the company's fiscal year:

BALANCE SHEET CLASSIFICATION

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	\$ 80,000	
Accounts receivable	200,000	
Allowance for uncollectible accounts		\$ 20,000
Inventories	300,000	
Prepaid expenses	30,000	
Note receivable (due in one month)	60,000	
Investments	50,000	
Land	120,000	
Buildings	550,000	
Machinery	500,000	
Accumulated depreciation—buildings and machinery		450,000
Patent (net of amortization)	50,000	
Accounts payable		170,000
Salaries payable		40,000
Interest payable		10,000
Note payable		100,000
Bonds payable (due in 10 years)		500,000
Common stock, no par		400,000
Retained earnings		250,000
Totals	<u>\$ 1,940,000</u>	<u>\$ 1,940,000</u>

The \$50,000 balance in the investment account consists of marketable equity securities of other corporations. The company's intention is to hold the securities for at least three years. The \$100,000 note payable is an installment loan. \$10,000 of the principal, plus interest, is due on each July 1 for the next 10 years. At the end of the year, 100,000 shares of common stock were issued and outstanding. The company has 500,000 shares of common stock authorized.

Required:

Prepare a classified balance sheet for the Sepia Paint Corporation at December 31, 2018.

Solution:

SEPIA PAINT CORPORATION			
Balance Sheet			
At December 31, 2018			
Assets			
Current assets:			
Cash			\$ 80,000
Accounts receivable	\$ 200,000		
Less: Allowance for uncollectible accounts	(20,000)		180,000
Note receivable			60,000
Inventories			300,000
Prepaid expenses			30,000
Total current assets			650,000
Investments			50,000
Property, plant, and equipment:			
Land	120,000		
Buildings	550,000		
Machinery	500,000		
	1,170,000		
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(450,000)		
Net property, plant, and equipment			720,000
Intangible assets:			
Patent			50,000
Total assets			<u>\$1,470,000</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity			
Current liabilities:			
Accounts payable		\$ 170,000	
Salaries payable		40,000	
Interest payable		10,000	
Current maturities of long-term debt		10,000	
Total current liabilities			230,000
Long-term liabilities:			
Note payable	\$ 90,000		
Bonds payable	500,000		
Total long-term liabilities			590,000
Shareholders' equity:			
Common stock, no par, 500,000 shares authorized, 100,000 shares issued and outstanding	400,000		
Retained earnings	250,000		
Total shareholders' equity			650,000
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity			<u>\$1,470,000</u>

The usefulness of the balance sheet, as well as the other financial statements, is significantly enhanced by financial statement disclosures. We now turn our attention to these disclosures.

PART B

LO3-4

Financial disclosures make up a significant portion of the information reported to shareholders.

Financial Disclosures

At the end of each fiscal year, companies with public securities are required to provide shareholders with an *annual report*. The annual report includes financial statements such as the balance sheet. Financial statements, though, are only part of the information provided in the annual report. Critical to understanding the financial statements and to evaluating a firm's performance and financial health are additional disclosures included as part of the financial statements.

The amount of information provided by financial disclosures can be significant. For example, Nike's 2015 annual report included five pages of financial statements followed by 32 pages of related disclosures. Nike's full Form 10-K (annual report filed with the SEC)

included another 50 pages of disclosures related to business conditions, risk factors, legal proceedings, the company's stock performance, management's discussion and analysis, and internal control procedures. We will discuss some of these disclosures in the next section.

Disclosure Notes

Some financial statement disclosures are provided by including additional information, often parenthetically, on the face of the statement. Common examples of disclosures included on the face of the balance sheet are the allowance for uncollectible accounts and information about common stock. Other disclosures include supporting discussion, calculations, and schedules in notes following the financial statements. These notes are the most common means of providing additional disclosure. For instance, the fair values of financial instruments and "off-balance-sheet" risk associated with financial instruments are disclosed in notes. Information providing details of many financial statement items is provided using disclosure notes. Some examples include:

- Pension plans
- Leases
- Long-term debt
- Investments
- Income taxes
- Property, plant, and equipment
- Employee benefit plans

Disclosure notes must include certain specific notes such as a summary of significant accounting policies, descriptions of subsequent events, and related third-party transactions, but many notes are fashioned to suit the disclosure needs of the particular reporting enterprise. Actually, any explanation that contributes to investors' and creditors' understanding of the results of operations, financial position, and cash flows of the company should be included. Let's take a look at just a few disclosure notes.

Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

There are many areas where management chooses from among equally acceptable alternative accounting methods. For example, management chooses whether to use accelerated or straight-line depreciation, whether to use FIFO, LIFO, or average cost to measure inventories, and whether to measure certain financial investments at fair value or cost. The company also defines which securities it considers to be cash equivalents and its policies regarding the timing of recognizing revenues. Typically, the first disclosure note consists of a summary of significant accounting policies that discloses the choices the company makes.⁶ Illustration 3–9 shows a portion of a typical summary note from a recent annual report of the **Starbucks Corporation**.

Studying this note is an essential step in analyzing financial statements. Obviously, knowing which methods were used to derive certain accounting numbers is critical to assessing the adequacy of those amounts.

Subsequent Events

When an event that has a material effect on the company's financial position occurs after the fiscal year-end but before the financial statements are issued or "available to be issued," the event is described in a **subsequent event** disclosure note.⁷ Examples include the issuance of

The full-disclosure principle requires that financial statements provide all material relevant information concerning the reporting entity.

The summary of significant accounting policies conveys valuable information about the company's choices from among various alternative accounting methods.

A subsequent event is a significant development that occurs after a company's fiscal year-end but before the financial statements are issued or available to be issued.

⁶FASB ASC 235–10–50: Notes to Financial Statements—Overall—Disclosure (previously "Disclosure of Accounting Policies," *Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 22* (New York: AICPA, 1972)).

⁷Financial statements are viewed as issued if they have been widely distributed to financial statement users in a format consistent with GAAP. Some entities (for example, private companies) don't widely distribute their financial statements to users. For those entities, the key date for subsequent events is not the date of issuance but rather the date upon which the financial statements are "available to be issued," which occurs when the financial statements are complete, in a format consistent with GAAP, and have obtained the necessary approvals for issuance. Companies must disclose the date through which subsequent events have been evaluated. FASB ASC 855: Subsequent Events (previously "Subsequent Events," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 165* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 2009)).

Illustration 3-9 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies—Starbucks Corporation

Real World Financials

Note 1: Summary of Accounting Policies (in part)

Principles of Consolidation

The consolidated financial statements reflect the financial position and operating results of Starbucks, including wholly owned subsidiaries and investees that we control.

Cash and Cash Equivalents

We consider all highly liquid instruments with a maturity of three months or less at the time of purchase to be cash equivalents.

Inventories

Inventories are stated at the lower of cost (primarily moving average cost) or market. We record inventory reserves for obsolete and slow-moving inventory and for estimated shrinkage between physical inventory counts.

Property, Plant, and Equipment

Property, plant, and equipment are carried at cost less accumulated depreciation. Cost includes all direct costs

necessary to acquire and prepare assets for use, including internal labor and overhead in some cases. Depreciation of property, plant, and equipment, which includes assets under capital leases, is provided on the straight-line method over estimated useful lives, generally ranging from 2 to 15 years for equipment and 30 to 40 years for buildings. Leasehold improvements are amortized over the shorter of their estimated useful lives or the related lease life, generally 10 years.

Revenue Recognition

Company-operated stores' revenues are recognized when payment is tendered at the point of sale. Revenues from our stored value cards, primarily Starbucks Cards, are recognized when redeemed or when the likelihood of redemption, based on historical experience, is deemed to be remote. Outstanding customer balances are included in deferred revenue on the consolidated balance sheets.

debt or equity securities, a business combination or the sale of a business, the sale of assets, an event that sheds light on the outcome of a loss contingency, or any other event having a material effect on operations. Illustration 3-10 illustrates an event that **Target Corporation** disclosed in its annual report for the year ending January 31, 2015, but before the release of those financial statements. We cover subsequent events in more depth in Chapter 13.

Illustration 3-10

Subsequent Event—Target Corp.

Real World Financials

29. Subsequent Events

In March 2015, we announced a headquarters workforce reduction. As a result, we expect to record approximately \$100 million of severance and other benefits-related charges within SG&A in the first quarter of 2015, the vast majority of which are expected to require cash expenditures.

Noteworthy Events and Transactions

Some transactions and events occur only occasionally but, when they do occur, they are potentially important to evaluating a company's financial statements. In this category are related-party transactions, errors and fraud, and illegal acts. The more frequent of these is related-party transactions.

Sometimes a company will engage in transactions with owners, management, families of owners or management, affiliated companies, and other parties that can significantly influence or be influenced by the company. The potential problem with **related-party transactions** is that their economic substance may differ from their legal form. For instance, borrowing or lending money at an interest rate that differs significantly from the market interest rate is an example of a transaction that could result from a related-party involvement. As a result of the potential for misrepresentation, financial statement users are particularly interested in more details about these transactions.

When related-party transactions occur, companies must disclose the nature of the relationship, provide a description of the transactions, and report the dollar amounts of transactions and any amounts due from or to related parties.⁸ Illustration 3-11 shows a disclosure note from a recent annual report of **Champions Oncology, Inc.** The note describes payments for consulting services to a member of its Board of Directors.

The economic substance of related-party transactions should be disclosed, including dollar amounts involved.

⁸FASB ASC 850-10-50: Related Party Disclosures—Overall—Disclosure (previously "Related Party Disclosures," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 57* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1982)).

Note 4. Related-Party Transactions

Related party transactions include transactions between the Company and its shareholders, management, or affiliates. The following transactions were in the normal course of operations and were measured and recorded at the exchange amount, which is the amount of consideration established and agreed to by the parties.

Consulting Services

During the three months ended July 31, 2015 and 2014, the Company paid a member of its Board of Directors \$18,000 and \$37,500, respectively, for consulting services unrelated to his duties as a board member. During the three months ended July 31, 2015 and 2014, the Company paid a board member's company \$5,900 and nil, respectively, for consulting services. All of the amounts paid to these related parties have been recognized and expensed in the period the services were performed.

Illustration 3-11

Related-Party Transactions Disclosure—Champions Oncology, Inc.

Real World Financials

Less frequent events are errors and **fraud**. The distinction between these two terms is that errors are unintentional while fraud is intentional misappropriation of assets or fraudulent financial reporting.⁹ Errors and fraud may require disclosure (e.g., of assets lost through either errors or fraud). Obviously, the existence of fraud involving management might cause a user to approach financial analysis from an entirely different and more cautious viewpoint.

Closely related to fraud are **illegal acts** such as bribes, kickbacks, illegal contributions to political candidates, and other violations of the law. Accounting for illegal practices has been influenced by the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act passed by Congress in 1977. The Act is intended to discourage illegal business practices through tighter controls and also encourage better disclosure of those practices when encountered. The nature of such disclosures should be influenced by the materiality of the impact of illegal acts on amounts disclosed in the financial statements.¹⁰ However, the SEC issued guidance expressing its view that exclusive reliance on quantitative benchmarks to assess materiality in preparing financial statements is inappropriate.¹¹ A number of other factors, including whether the item in question involves an unlawful transaction, should also be considered when determining materiality.

As you might expect, any disclosures of related-party transactions, fraud, and illegal acts can be quite sensitive. Although auditors must be considerate of the privacy of the parties involved, that consideration cannot be subordinate to users' needs for full disclosure.

We've discussed only a few of the disclosure notes most frequently included in annual reports. Other common disclosures include details concerning earnings per share calculations, income taxes, property and equipment, contingencies, long-term debt, leases, pensions, stock options, changes in accounting methods, fair values of financial instruments, and exposure to market risk and credit risk. We discuss and illustrate these in later chapters in the context of related financial statement elements.

Disclosure notes for some financial statement elements are required. Others are provided when required by specific situations in the interest of full disclosure.

Management's Discussion and Analysis

In addition to the financial statements and accompanying disclosure notes, each annual report of a public company requires a fairly lengthy discussion and analysis provided by the company's management. In this section, which precedes the financial statements and the auditor's report, management provides its views on significant events, trends, and uncertainties pertaining to the company's (a) operations, (b) liquidity, and (c) capital resources. Although the **management's discussion and analysis (MD&A)** section may embody management's biased perspective, it can offer an informed insight that might not be available elsewhere. As an example, Illustration 3-12 contains a portion of **GameStop Corporation's** MD&A regarding liquidity and capital resources that is in its annual report.

● LO3-5

Management's discussion and analysis provides a biased but informed perspective of a company's (a) operations, (b) liquidity, and (c) capital resources.

⁹"Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit," *AICPA Professional Standards AU 240* (New York: AICPA, 2012).

¹⁰"Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements," *AICPA Professional Standards AU 250* (New York: AICPA, 2012).

¹¹FASB ASC 250-10-S99-1, SAB Topic 1.M: Assessing Materiality (originally "Materiality," *Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 99* (Washington, D.C.: SEC, August 1999)).

Illustration 3-12

Management's Discussion and Analysis—GameStop Corp.

Real World Financials

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations (In part: Liquidity and Capital Resources)

Overview

Based on our current operating plans, we believe that available cash balances, cash generated from our operating activities, funds available under our \$400.0 million asset-based revolving credit facility (the "Revolver") and the proceeds from our recently issued 2021 Senior Notes together will provide sufficient liquidity to fund our operations, store openings and remodeling activities and corporate capital allocation programs, including acquisitions, share repurchases and the payment of dividends declared by the Board of Directors, for at least the next 12 months.

Cash Flow

During fiscal 2015, cash provided by operations was \$656.8 million, compared to cash provided by operations of \$480.5 million in fiscal 2014. The increase in cash provided by operations of \$176.3 million from fiscal 2014 to fiscal 2015 was primarily due to an increase in cash provided by working capital of \$167.7 million, due primarily to the timing of payments for income taxes as well as accounts payable and accrued liabilities when compared to fiscal 2014.

Use of Capital

We opened 85 Video Game Brands stores and opened or acquired 568 Technology Brands stores in fiscal 2015, and we expect to open 140 stores in fiscal 2016, as well as make significant investments in our Technology Brands businesses through acquisitions. Capital expenditures for fiscal 2016 are projected to be approximately \$160-170 million.

We used cash to expand our operations through acquisitions. During fiscal 2015, fiscal 2014 and fiscal 2013, we used \$267.5 million, \$89.7 million and \$77.4 million, respectively, for acquisitions, primarily related to the growth of our Technology Brands business and ThinkGeek.

Since January 2010, our Board of Directors has authorized several share repurchase programs authorizing our management to repurchase our Class A Common Stock. For fiscal 2015, we repurchased 5.2 million shares for an average price per share of \$38.68 and a total of \$202.0 million.

In fiscal 2015, we paid dividends of \$1.44 per share of Class A Common Stock, totaling \$154.1 million for the year.

Management acknowledges responsibility and certifies accuracy of financial statements.

Management's Responsibilities

Management prepares and is responsible for the financial statements and other information in the annual report. To enhance the awareness of the users of financial statements concerning the relative roles of management and the auditor, annual reports of public companies include a management's responsibilities section that asserts the responsibility of management for the information contained in the annual report as well as an assessment of the company's internal control procedures.

Illustration 3-13 contains Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting for **Nike**, included with the company's financial statements for the year ended May 31, 2015. Recall from our discussion of financial reporting reform in Chapter 1, that the *Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002* requires corporate executives to personally certify the financial statements. Submission of false statements carries a penalty of up to 20 years in jail. Mark G. Parker, Nike's president and chief executive officer, and Donald W. Blair, the chief financial officer, signed the required certifications.

Compensation of Directors and Top Executives

The compensation large U.S. corporations pay their top executives is an issue of considerable public debate and controversy. Shareholders, employees, politicians, and the public in general sometimes question the huge pay packages received by company officials at the

Management's Responsibility for Financial Statements (in part)

Management of NIKE, Inc. is responsible for the information and representations contained in this report. The financial statements have been prepared in conformity with the generally accepted accounting principles we considered appropriate in the circumstances and include some amounts based on our best estimates and judgments.

The Audit Committee is responsible for the appointment of the independent registered public accounting firm and reviews, with the independent registered public accounting firm, management and the internal audit staff, the scope and the results of the annual examination, the effectiveness of the accounting control system and other matters relating to the financial affairs of NIKE as the Audit Committee deems appropriate. The independent registered public accounting firm and the internal auditors have full access to the Committee, with and without the presence of management, to discuss any appropriate matters.

Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting (in part)

Management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting, as such term is defined in Rule 13(a)-15(f) and Rule 15(d)-15(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. Internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of the financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America.

While "reasonable assurance" is a high level of assurance, it does not mean absolute assurance. Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect every misstatement and instance of fraud. Controls are susceptible to manipulation, especially in instances of fraud caused by the collusion of two or more people, including our senior management.

Under the supervision and with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, our management conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting based upon the framework in Internal Control — Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). Based on the results of our evaluation, our management concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was effective as of May 31, 2015.

Mark G. Parker
President & Chief Executive Officer

Donald W. Blair
Chief Financial Officer

Illustration 3-13

Management's
Responsibilities and
Certification—Nike, Inc.

Real World Financials

same time that more and more rank-and-file employees are being laid off as a result of company cutbacks. Contributing to the debate is the realization that the compensation gap between executives and lower-level employees is much wider in the United States than in most other industrialized countries.

Historically, disclosures related to executive compensation were not clear. In addition, a substantial portion of executive pay often is in the form of stock options, further confusing the total compensation paid to executives. Executive stock options give their holders the right to buy stock at a specified price, usually equal to the market price when the options are granted. When stock prices rise, executives can exercise their options and realize a profit. In some cases, options have made executive compensation extremely high. Stock options are discussed in depth in Chapter 19.

To help shareholders and others sort out the content of executive pay packages and better understand the commitments of the company in this regard, SEC requirements provide for disclosures on compensation to directors and executives, and in particular, concerning stock options. The proxy statement must be reported each year to all shareholders, usually along with the annual report. The statement invites shareholders to the annual meeting to elect board members and to vote on issues before the shareholders, or to vote by proxy. The **proxy statement** also includes compensation and stock option information for directors and top executives. Illustration 3-14 shows a portion of **Best Buy's** summary compensation table included in a recent proxy statement.

The proxy statement
contains disclosures on
compensation to directors
and executives.

Illustration 3-14

Summary Compensation Table—Best Buy Co., Inc.

Real World Financials

Summary Compensation Table (in part)

Name and Principal Position	Salary	Stock Awards	Option Awards	Short-Term Incentive Plan Payout	All Other Compensation	Total
Hubert July Chairman and Chief Executive Officer	\$1,175,000	\$8,011,688	\$1,842,715	\$3,814,050	\$29,028	\$14,872,481
Sharon L. McCollam Chief Administrative and Chief Financial Officer	925,000	3,039,724	1,397,391	2,251,913	9,669	7,623,697
Shari L. Ballard President, U S Retail	790,385	2,672,270	1,228,476	1,927,311	24,641	6,643,083
R. Michael Mohan Chief Merchandising Officer	790,385	1,336,135	614,238	1,927,311	10,323	4,678,392
Keith Nelsen General Counsel and Secretary	640,385	1,102,314	506,742	1,027,899	10,482	3,287,822

Auditors' Report

• LO3-6

Auditors examine financial statements and the internal control procedures designed to support the content of those statements. Their role is to attest to the fairness of the financial statements based on that examination. The auditors' attest function for public business entities results in an opinion stated in the **auditors' report**.

There are four basic types of auditors' reports:

1. Unqualified
2. Unqualified with an explanatory paragraph
3. Qualified
4. Adverse or disclaimer

An auditor issues an *unqualified* (or "clean") opinion when the auditor has undertaken professional care to ensure that the financial statements are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). Professional care would include sufficient planning of the audit, understanding the company's internal control procedures, and gather evidence to attest to the accuracy of the amounts reported in the financial statements.

The abbreviated unqualified auditors' report prepared by **PricewaterhouseCoopers (PwC)** for the financial statements of **Nike** is shown in Illustration 3-15.

In most cases, including the report for Nike, the auditors will be satisfied that the financial statements "present fairly" the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows and are "in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles." These situations prompt an unqualified opinion. Notice that the report also references the auditors' opinion on the effectiveness of the company's internal control over financial reporting.¹²

¹² The auditors' reports of public companies must be in compliance with the specifications of the PCAOB as specified in AS 2201: An Audit of Internal Control over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated with An Audit of Financial Statements.

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm (in part)**To the Board of Directors and Shareholders of Nike, Inc.:**

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of NIKE, Inc. and its subsidiaries at May 31, 2015 and 2014, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended May 31, 2015 in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Also in our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of May 31, 2015, based on criteria established in Internal Control—Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).

The Company's management is responsible for these financial statements and financial statement schedule, for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in Management's Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting.

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements, on the financial statement schedule and on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our integrated audits.

PRICEWATERHOUSECOOPERS LLP
Portland, Oregon
July 23, 2015

Illustration 3-15

Auditors' Report—Nike, Inc.

Real World Financials

Sometimes circumstances cause the auditor to issue an opinion that is *unqualified with an explanatory paragraph*. In these circumstances, the auditor believes the financial statements are in conformity with GAAP (unqualified), but the auditor feels that other important information needs to be emphasized to financial statement users. Most notably, these situations include:

- *Lack of consistency* due to a change in accounting principle such that comparability is affected even though the auditor concurs with the desirability of the change.
- *Going concern* when the auditor determines there is significant doubt as to whether the company will be able to pay its debts as they come due. Indicators of a going concern include significant operating losses, loss of a major customer, or legal proceedings that might jeopardize the company's ability to continue operations.¹³
- *Emphasis of a matter* concerning the financial statements that does not affect the existence of an unqualified opinion but relates to a significant event such as a related-party transaction.

An example of a going concern paragraph in the 2015 auditors' report of **Timberline Resources** is shown in Illustration 3-16.

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 2 to the financial statements, the Company has incurred substantial losses, has no recurring source of revenue and has an accumulated deficit. These factors raise substantial doubt about its ability to continue as a going concern. Management's plans in regards to these matters are also described in Note 2. The consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

Illustration 3-16

Going Concern Paragraph—Timberline Resources Corp.

Real World Financials

Some audits result in the need to issue other than an unqualified opinion due to exceptions such as (a) nonconformity with generally accepted accounting principles, (b) inadequate

¹³“The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern (Redrafted),” *Statement on Auditing Standards No. 126, AICPA Professional Standards AU 570* (New York: AICPA, 2012). Management is also required to assess the company's ability to continue as a going concern and provide certain disclosures when substantial doubt exists (ASC 205-40).

The auditors' report calls attention to problems that might exist in the financial statements.

disclosures, and (c) a limitation or restriction of the scope of the examination. In these situations the auditor will issue a (an):

- *Qualified opinion* when either the audit process has been limited (scope limitation) or there has been a departure from GAAP, but neither is of sufficient seriousness to invalidate the financial statements as a whole.
- *Adverse opinion* when the auditor has specific knowledge that financial statements or disclosures are seriously misstated or misleading. Adverse opinions are rare because auditors usually are able to persuade management to rectify problems to avoid this undesirable report.
- *Disclaimer* when the auditor is not able to gather sufficient information that financial statements are in conformity with GAAP.

Obviously, the auditors' report is most informative when any of these deviations from the standard unqualified opinion are present. These departures from the norm should raise a red flag to a financial analyst and prompt additional search for information.

PART C

Risk Analysis

Using Financial Statement Information

• LO3–7

Investors and others use information that companies provide in corporate financial reports to make decisions. Although the financial reports focus primarily on the past performance and the present financial condition of the reporting company, users are most interested in information about the future. Investors want to know a company's **default risk**. This is the risk that a company won't be able to pay its obligations when they come due. Another aspect of risk is **operational risk**, which relates more to how adept a company is at withstanding various events and circumstances that might impair its ability to earn profits.

Trying to gain a glimpse of the future from past and present data entails using various tools and techniques to formulate predictions. This is the goal of financial statement analysis. Common methods for analyzing financial statements include:

1. **Comparative financial statements**. Financial statements that are accompanied by the corresponding financial statement of the preceding year, and often the previous two years.
2. **Horizontal analysis**. Each item in a financial statement is expressed as a percentage of that same item in the financial statements of another year (base amount). For example, comparing inventory this year to inventory last year would provide the percentage change in inventory.
3. **Vertical analysis**. Each item in the financial statements is expressed as a percentage of an appropriate corresponding total, or base amount, but within the same year. For example, cash, receivables, and inventory in the current year can be restated as a percentage of total assets in the current year.
4. **Ratio analysis**. Financial statement items are converted to ratios for evaluating the performance and risk of a company.

As an example, we presented the current asset section of **Nike's** comparative balance sheets in Illustration 3–3. From this, we could easily calculate the current year's percentage change in cash (horizontal analysis) or cash as a percentage of total current assets (vertical analysis). Understanding Nike's cash position, either relative to the previous year or relative to other current assets, provides some information for assessing the cash available to pay debt or to respond to other operating concerns.

However, the most common way to analyze financial statements is ratio analysis. Next, we'll analyze Nike's risk by using ratio analysis to investigate **liquidity** and **long-term solvency**. In Chapter 4, we introduce ratios related to profitability analysis. You will also employ ratios in Decision Makers' Perspective sections of many of the chapters in this text.

Analysis cases that benefit from ratio analysis are included in many of these chapters as well.

We use ratios every day. Batting averages indicate how well our favorite baseball players are performing. We evaluate basketball players by field goal percentage and rebounds per game. Speedometers measure the speed of our cars in terms of miles per hour. We compare grocery costs on the basis of price per pound or ounce. In each of these cases, the ratio is more meaningful than a single number by itself. Do 45 hits indicate satisfactory performance? It depends on the number of at-bats. Is \$2 a good price for cheese? It depends on how many ounces the \$2 buys. Ratios make these measurements meaningful.

Likewise, we can use ratios to help evaluate a firm's performance and financial position. Is net income of \$4 million a cause for shareholders to celebrate? Probably not if shareholders' equity is \$10 billion. But if shareholders equity is \$10 million, that's a 40% return on equity! Although ratios provide more meaningful information than absolute numbers alone, the ratios are most useful when analyzed relative to some standard of comparison. That standard of comparison may be previous performance of the same company, the performance of a competitor company, or an industry average for the particular ratio.

Evaluating information in ratio form allows analysts to control for size differences over time and among firms.

Liquidity Ratios

Liquidity most often refers to the ability of a company to convert its assets to cash to pay its *current* obligations. By examining a company's liquidity, we can obtain a general idea of the firm's ability to pay its short-term debts as they come due.

Current assets usually are thought of as the most liquid of a company's assets, because these assets are easier to convert to cash than are long-term assets. Obviously, though, some current assets are more liquid than others, so it's important also to evaluate the specific makeup of current assets.

Two common measures of liquidity are (1) the current ratio and (2) the acid-test ratio (or quick ratio) calculated as follows:

$$\text{Current ratio} = \frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

$$\text{Acid-test (or quick ratio)} = \frac{\text{Quick assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

• LO3-8

CURRENT RATIO. Implicit in the definition of a current liability is the relationship between current assets and current liabilities. The difference between current assets and current liabilities is called **working capital**. By comparing a company's obligations that will shortly become due with the company's cash and other assets that, by definition, are expected to shortly be converted to cash, the analysis offers some indication of an ability to pay those debts. Although used in a variety of decisions, it is particularly useful to those considering whether to extend short-term credit. **Nike's** working capital (in millions) at the end of its May 31, 2015, fiscal year is \$9,642. This amount is computed as Nike's current assets of \$15,976 (Illustration 3-3) minus its current liabilities of \$6,334 (Illustration 3-7).

Working capital, the difference between current assets and current liabilities, is a popular measure of a company's ability to satisfy its short-term obligations.

The **current ratio** is computed by dividing current assets by current liabilities. Nike's current ratio of 2.52 indicates that the company has \$2.52 of current assets for each \$1 of current liabilities.

$$\text{Current ratio} = \frac{\$15,976}{\$6,334} = 2.52$$

Care should be taken, however, in assessing liquidity based solely on working capital. Liabilities usually are paid with cash, not other components of working capital. A company could have difficulty paying its liabilities even with a current ratio significantly greater than 1.0. For example, if a significant portion of current assets consisted of inventories, and inventories usually are not converted to cash for several months, there could be a problem in paying accounts payable due in 30 days. On the other hand, a current ratio of less than 1.0 doesn't necessarily mean the company will have difficulty meeting its current obligations. A line of credit, for instance, which the company can use to borrow funds, provides financial flexibility. That also must be considered in assessing liquidity.

The *acid-test ratio* provides a more stringent indication of a company's ability to pay its current obligations.

ACID-TEST RATIO (OR QUICK RATIO). Some analysts like to modify the current ratio to consider only current assets that are readily available to pay current liabilities. One such variation in common use is the **acid-test ratio**. This ratio excludes inventories, prepaid items, restricted cash, and deferred taxes from current assets before dividing by current liabilities. The numerator, then, consists of (unrestricted) cash, short-term investments, and accounts receivable, the “quick assets.” By eliminating current assets that are less readily convertible into cash, the acid-test ratio provides a more rigorous indication of liquidity than does the current ratio.

Illustration 3–3 shows that **Nike**’s quick assets (in millions) total \$9,282 (\$3,852 + 2,072 + 3,358). The acid-test ratio can be computed as follows:

$$\text{Acid-test ratio} = \frac{\$9,282}{\$6,334} = 1.47$$

Are these liquidity ratios adequate? It’s generally difficult to say without some point of comparison. As indicated previously, common standards for such comparisons are industry averages for similar ratios or ratios of the same company in prior years. Industry averages for the above two ratios are as follows:

Industry Average

Current ratio = 1.41

Acid-test ratio = 1.12

Nike’s ratios are higher than the industry average, so Nike’s liquidity appears to be in good shape. What if the ratios were lower? Would that indicate a liquidity problem? Not necessarily, but it would raise a red flag that calls for caution in analyzing other areas. Remember that each ratio is but one piece of the entire puzzle. For instance, profitability is perhaps the best indication of liquidity in the long run. We discuss ratios that measure profitability in Chapter 4.

Also, management may be very efficient in managing current assets so that, let’s say, receivables are collected faster than normal or inventory is sold faster than normal, making those assets more liquid than they otherwise would be. Higher turnover ratios, relative to those of a competitor or the industry, generally indicate a more liquid position for a given level of the current ratio. We discuss these turnover ratios in Chapter 4.

Liquidity ratios should be assessed in the context of both profitability and efficiency of managing assets.

Solvency Ratios

Investors and creditors, particularly long-term creditors, are vitally interested in long-term solvency, a company’s ability to pay its long-term debts. Two common solvency ratios are (1) the debt to equity ratio and (2) the times interest earned ratio:

$$\text{Debt to equity ratio} = \frac{\text{Total liabilities}}{\text{Shareholders' equity}}$$

$$\text{Times interest earned ratio} = \frac{\text{Net income} + \text{Interest expense} + \text{Income taxes}}{\text{Interest expense}}$$

Ethical Dilemma



The Raintree Cosmetic Company has several loans outstanding with a local bank. The debt agreements all contain a covenant stipulating that Raintree must maintain a current ratio of at least 0.9. Jackson Phillips, company controller, estimates that the 2018 year-end current assets and current liabilities will be \$2,100,000 and \$2,400,000, respectively. These estimates provide a current ratio of only 0.875. Violation of the debt agreement will increase Raintree’s borrowing costs as the loans are renegotiated at higher rates.

Jackson proposes to the company president that Raintree purchase inventory of \$600,000 on credit before year-end. This will cause both current assets and current liabilities to increase by the same amount, but the current ratio will increase to 0.9. The extra \$600,000 in inventory will be used over the later part of 2019. However, the purchase will cause warehousing costs and financing costs to increase.

Jackson is concerned about the ethics of his proposal. What do you think?

DEBT TO EQUITY RATIO. The **debt to equity ratio** compares resources provided by creditors with resources provided by owners. It is calculated by dividing total liabilities (current and long-term) by total shareholders' equity (including retained earnings).¹⁴

Other things being equal, the higher the ratio, the higher the risk. The higher the ratio, the greater the creditor claims on assets, so the higher the likelihood an individual creditor would not be paid in full if the company is unable to meet its obligations.

Nike's liabilities (in millions) are \$8,893 (Illustration 3–7), and stockholders' equity is \$12,707 (Illustration 3–8). The debt to equity ratio can be computed as follows:

$$\text{Debt to equity ratio} = \frac{\$8,893}{\$12,707} = 0.70$$

As with all ratios, the debt to equity ratio is more meaningful if compared to some standard such as an industry average or a competitor. For example, an industry average debt to equity ratio of 0.95 would indicate that Nike has a lower portion of liabilities in its capital structure than does the average firm in its industry. Does this mean that Nike's default risk is lower? Other things equal—yes. Is that good? Not necessarily. As discussed in the next section, it may be that debt is being underutilized by Nike. More debt might increase the potential for return to shareholders, but with higher debt comes higher risk. This is a fundamental trade-off faced by virtually all firms when trying to settle on the optimal amount of debt versus equity in its capital structure.

The makeup of liabilities also is important. For example, liabilities could include deferred services revenue. Recall that deferred revenues are liabilities recorded when cash is received from customers in advance of providing a good or service. Companies satisfy these liabilities not by paying cash, but by providing a service to their customers.

TIMES INTEREST EARNED RATIO. A ratio that is commonly used in conjunction with the debt to equity ratio is the **times interest earned ratio**. This ratio is calculated as income before subtracting interest expense and income taxes, divided by interest expense. To remain solvent or to take on more debt if needed, a company needs to have funds available in the current year to pay interest charges. The ability of a company to “cover” its interest charges commonly is measured by the extent to which income exceeds interest charges in the current period.

If income is many times greater than interest expense, creditors' interests are more protected than if income just barely covers this expense. For this purpose, income should be the amount available to pay interest, which is income before subtracting interest and income taxes, calculated by adding back to net income the interest and income taxes that were deducted.

As an example, **Nike** reports the following:

	(\$ in millions)
Net income	\$3,273
Interest expense	+ 34
Income taxes	+ 932
Income before interest and taxes	\$4,239

The times interest earned ratio can be computed as follows:

$$\text{Times interest earned ratio} = \frac{\$4,239}{\$34} = 124.68$$

The ratio of 124.68 times indicates a considerable margin of safety for creditors. Income could decrease many times and the company would still be able to meet its interest payment obligations.¹⁵ Nike is a highly profitable company with little interest-bearing debt. In comparison, the average times interest earned ratio for its industry is approximately 36.4 times.

The debt to equity ratio indicates the extent of reliance on creditors, rather than owners, in providing resources.

The times interest earned ratio indicates the margin of safety provided to creditors.

¹⁴ A commonly used variation of the debt to equity ratio is found by dividing total liabilities by *total assets*, rather than by shareholders' equity only. Of course, in this configuration the ratio measures precisely the same attribute of the firm's capital structure but can be interpreted as the percentage of a company's total assets provided by funds from creditors, rather than by owners.

¹⁵ Of course, interest is paid with cash, not with “income.” The times interest earned ratio often is calculated by using cash flow from operations before subtracting either interest payments or tax payments as the numerator and interest payments as the denominator.

Relationship Between Risk and Profitability. Now that we've assessed a company's liquidity and solvency, let's look at why a company might want to borrow money. While there are default risks associated with borrowing, a company can use those borrowed funds to provide greater returns to its shareholders. This is referred to as favorable **financial leverage** and is a very common (but risky) business activity.

To see how financial leverage works, consider a newly formed corporation attempting to determine the appropriate mix of debt and equity. The initial capitalization goal is \$50 million. The capitalization mix alternatives have been narrowed to two: (1) \$10 million in debt and \$40 million in equity and (2) \$30 million in debt and \$20 million in equity.

Also assume that regardless of the capitalization mix chosen, the corporation will be able to generate a 16% annual return, *before payment of interest and income taxes*, on the \$50 million in assets acquired. In other words, income before interest and taxes will be \$8 million ($16\% \times \50 million). If the interest rate on debt is 8% and the income tax rate is 40%, comparative net income for the first year of operations for the two capitalization alternatives can be calculated as follows:

	Alternative 1 Debt = \$10 million Equity = \$40 million	Alternative 2 Debt = \$30 million Equity = \$20 million
Income before interest and income taxes	\$ 8,000,000	\$ 8,000,000
Less: Interest expense	(800,000)*	(2,400,000)*
Income before income taxes	\$ 7,200,000	\$ 5,600,000
Less: Income tax expense (40%)	(2,880,000)	(2,240,000)
Net income	\$4,320,000	\$3,360,000
*8% × \$10,000,000		
*8% × \$30,000,000		

Favorable financial leverage means earning a return on borrowed funds that exceeds the cost of borrowing the funds.

Would shareholders be in favor of alternative 1? Probably not. Although alternative 1 provides a higher net income, the return on the shareholders' equity (net income divided by shareholders' equity) is higher for alternative 2. Under alternative 1, shareholders had to invest \$40 million to earn \$4.32 million. Under alternative 2, shareholders had to invest only \$20 million to earn \$3.36 million.

	Alternative 1	Alternative 2
Return on shareholders' equity ¹⁶ =	\$4,320,000 \$40,000,000	\$3,360,000 \$20,000,000
=	10.8%	16.8%

Alternative 2 generated a higher return for each dollar invested by shareholders. This is because the company leveraged its \$20 million equity investment with additional debt. *Any time the cost of the additional debt (8%) is less than the return on assets invested (16%), the return to shareholders is higher with borrowing.* This is the essence of favorable financial leverage.

Be aware, though, leverage is risky and not always favorable; the cost of borrowing the funds might exceed the returns they provide. If the return on assets invested turned out to be less than expected, the additional debt could result in a lower return on equity for alternative 2. If, for example, the return on assets invested (before interest and income taxes) had been 6% of \$50,000,000 (or \$3,000,000), rather than 16%, alternative 1 would have provided the better return on equity:

¹⁶If return is calculated on *average* shareholders' equity, we're technically assuming that all income is paid to shareholders in cash dividends, so that beginning, ending, and average shareholders' equity are the same. If we assume *no* dividends are paid, rates of return would be

	Alternative 1	Alternative 2
Return on shareholders' equity =	\$4,320,000 (\$44,320,000 + 40,000,000)/2	\$3,360,000 (\$20,000,000 + 23,360,000)/2
=	10.25%	15.50%

In any case our conclusions are the same.

	Alternative 1 Debt = \$10 million Equity = \$40 million	Alternative 2 Debt = \$30 million Equity = \$20 million
Income before interest and income taxes	\$ 3,000,000	\$3,000,000
Less: Interest expense	(800,000)*	(2,400,000) [†]
Income before income taxes	\$ 2,200,000	\$ 600,000
Less: Income tax expense (40%)	(880,000)	(240,000)
Net income	\$1,320,000	\$ 360,000
*8% × \$10,000,000		
†8% × \$30,000,000		
Return on shareholders' equity ¹⁷	=	
	\$1,320,000	\$360,000
	\$40,000,000	\$20,000,000
	=	
	3.3%	1.8%

If the return on assets are too low and the company has become too leveraged, it faces the risk of not being able to make its interest and debt payments. So, shareholders typically are faced with a trade-off between the risk that high debt denotes and the potential for a higher return from having the higher debt. Liquidity and solvency ratios can help with that decision.

Financial Reporting Case Solution

1. **Respond to Jerry's criticism that shareholders' equity does not represent the market value of the company. What information does the balance sheet provide? (p. 111)** Jerry is correct. The financial statements are supposed to help investors and creditors value a company. However, the balance sheet is not intended to portray the market value of the entity. The assets of a company minus its liabilities as shown in the balance sheet (shareholders' equity) usually will not equal the company's market value for several reasons. For example, many assets are measured at their historical costs rather than their fair values. Also, many company resources, including its trained employees, its experienced management team, and its reputation are not recorded as assets at all. The balance sheet must be used in conjunction with other financial statements, disclosure notes, and other publicly available information.

The balance sheet does, however, provide valuable information that can be used by investors and creditors to help determine market value. After all, it is the balance sheet that describes many of the resources a company has available for generating future cash flows. The balance sheet also provides important information about liquidity and long-term solvency.

2. **The usefulness of the balance sheet is enhanced by classifying assets and liabilities according to common characteristics. What are the classifications used in Under Armour's balance sheet and what elements do those categories include? (p. 111)** Under Armour's balance sheet contains the following classifications:

Assets:

- *Current assets* include cash and several other assets that are reasonably expected to be converted to cash or consumed within the coming year, or within the normal operating cycle of the business if that's longer than one year.
- *Property and equipment* are the tangible long-lived assets used in the operations of the business. This category includes land, buildings, equipment, machinery, and furniture, as well as natural resources.

(continued)

¹⁷If we assume *no* dividends are paid, rates of return would be

	Alternative 1	Alternative 2
Return on shareholders' equity =	\$1,320,000	\$360,000
	(\$41,320,000 + 40,000,000)/2	(\$20,000,000 + 20,360,000)/2
=	3.25%	1.78%

In any case our conclusions are the same.



© G Fiume/Maryland Terrapins/Getty Images

(concluded)

- *Goodwill* is a unique intangible asset in that its cost can't be directly associated with any specifically identifiable right and is not separable from the company as a whole. It represents the unique value of the company as a whole over and above all identifiable tangible and intangible assets.
- *Intangible assets* are assets that represent exclusive rights to something such as a product, a process, or a name. Patents, copyrights, and franchises are examples.
- *Deferred income taxes* result from temporary differences between taxable income and accounting income.
- *Other long-term assets* is a "catch-all" classification of long-term (noncurrent) assets and could include long-term prepaid expenses and any long-term asset not included in one of the other categories.

Liabilities:

- *Current liabilities* are those obligations that are expected to be satisfied through the use of current assets or the creation of other current liabilities. Usually, this means liabilities that are expected to be paid within one year, or the operating cycle if that's longer than one year.
- *Long-term liabilities* are payable further in the future and include bonds, deferred income taxes, and pension obligations. Under Armour lists *long-term debt*, *revolving credit facilities*, and *other long-term liabilities* as its long-term liabilities.

Shareholders' equity:

- *Common stock* and *additional paid-in capital* collectively equal the amounts invested by shareholders in the corporation.
- *Retained earnings* represents the accumulated net income or net loss reported since inception of the corporation less dividends paid out to shareholders. If this amount is negative, it is called *accumulated deficit*.
- *Accumulated other comprehensive loss* is the cumulative amount of other comprehensive income/loss items. This topic is addressed in subsequent chapters. ●

The Bottom Line

- LO3-1 The balance sheet is a position statement that presents an organized array of assets, liabilities, and shareholders' equity at a particular point in time. The statement does not portray the market value of the entity. However, the information in the statement can be useful in assessing market value, as well as in providing important information about liquidity and long-term solvency. (p. 110)
- LO3-2 Current assets include cash and other assets that are reasonably expected to be converted to cash or consumed during one year or within the normal operating cycle of the business if the operating cycle is longer than one year. All other assets are classified as various types of noncurrent assets. In addition to cash and cash equivalents, current assets include short-term investments, accounts receivable, inventories, and prepaid expenses. Other asset classifications include investments; property, plant, and equipment; intangible assets; and other assets. (p. 112)
- LO3-3 Current liabilities are those obligations that are expected to be satisfied through the use of current assets or the creation of other current liabilities. All other liabilities are classified as long term. Current liabilities include notes and accounts payable, deferred revenues, accrued liabilities, and the current maturities of long-term debt. Long-term liabilities include long-term notes, loans, mortgages, bonds, pension and lease obligations, as well as deferred income taxes. Shareholders' equity for a corporation arises primarily from two sources: (1) paid-in capital—amounts invested by shareholders in the corporation, and (2) retained earnings—accumulated net income reported by a company since its inception minus all dividends paid to shareholders. (p. 116)
- LO3-4 Financial statement disclosures are used to convey additional information about the account balances in the basic financial statements as well as to provide supplemental information. This information is disclosed, often parenthetically in the basic financial statements, or in disclosure notes that often include supporting schedules. (p. 120)

- LO3-5 Annual reports of public companies will include management's discussion and analysis of key aspects of the company's business. The purpose of this disclosure is to provide external parties with management's insight into certain transactions, events, and circumstances that affect the enterprise, including their financial impact. (p. 123)
- LO3-6 The purpose of an audit is to provide a professional, independent opinion as to whether or not the financial statements are prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The standard audit report of a public company contains four paragraphs; the first two deal with the scope of the audit and the third paragraph states the auditors' opinion regarding the financial statements. The fourth paragraph provides the auditors' opinion on the effectiveness of the company's internal control. (p. 126)
- LO3-7 Financial analysts use various techniques to transform financial information into forms more useful for analysis. Horizontal analysis and vertical analysis provide a useful way of analyzing year-to-year changes. Ratio analysis allows analysts to control for size differences over time and among firms while investigating important relationships among financial variables. (p. 128)
- LO3-8 The balance sheet provides information that can be useful in assessing risk. A key element of risk analysis is investigating a company's ability to pay its obligations when they come due. Liquidity ratios and solvency ratios provide information about a company's ability to pay its obligations. (p. 129)
- LO3-9 There are more similarities than differences in balance sheets and financial disclosures prepared according to U.S. GAAP and those prepared applying IFRS. Balance sheet presentation is one important difference. Under U.S. GAAP, we present current assets and liabilities before long-term assets and liabilities. IFRS doesn't prescribe the format of the balance sheet, but balance sheets prepared using IFRS often report long-term items first. Reportable segment disclosures also are similar. However, IFRS requires an additional disclosure, the amount of segment liabilities (Appendix 3). (pp. 118 and 136) ●

Reporting Segment Information

Financial analysis of diversified companies is especially difficult. Consider, for example, a company that operates in several distinct business segments including computer peripherals, home health care systems, textiles, and consumer food products. The results of these distinctly different activities will be aggregated into a single set of financial statements, making difficult an informed projection of future performance. It may well be that the five-year outlook differs greatly among the areas of the economy represented by the different segments. To make matters worse for an analyst, the integrated financial statements do not reveal the relative investments in each of the business segments nor the success the company has had within each area. Given the fact that so many companies these days have chosen to balance their operating risks through diversification, aggregated financial statements pose a widespread problem for analysts, lending and credit officers, and other financial forecasters.

APPENDIX 3

Many companies operate in several business segments as a strategy to achieve growth and to reduce operating risk through diversification.

Reporting by Operating Segment

To address the problem, the accounting profession requires companies engaged in more than one significant business to provide supplemental information concerning individual operating segments. The supplemental disaggregated data do not include complete financial statements for each reportable segment, only certain specified items.

Segment reporting facilitates the financial statement analysis of diversified companies.

WHAT IS A REPORTABLE OPERATING SEGMENT? According to U.S. GAAP guidelines, a *management approach* is used in determining which segments of a company are reportable. This approach is based on the way that management organizes the segments within the enterprise for making operating decisions and assessing performance. The segments are, therefore, evident from the structure of the enterprise's internal organization.

More formally, the following characteristics define an **operating segment**¹⁸ as a component of an enterprise:

- That engages in business activities from which it may recognize revenues and incur expenses (including revenues and expenses relating to transactions with other components of the same enterprise)

¹⁸FASB ASC 280-10-50-1: Segment Reporting—Overall—Disclosure (previously “Disclosures about Segments of an Enterprise and Related Information,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 131* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1997), par. 10).

- Whose operating results are regularly reviewed by the enterprise's chief operating decision maker to make decisions about resources to be allocated to the segment and assess its performance
- For which discrete financial information is available

The FASB hopes that this approach provides insights into the risk and opportunities management sees in the various areas of company operations. Also, reporting information based on the enterprise's internal organization should reduce the incremental cost to companies of providing the data. In addition, there are quantitative thresholds for the definition of an operating segment to limit the number of reportable segments. Only segments of material size (10% or more of total company revenues, assets, or net income) must be disclosed. However, a company must account for at least 75% of consolidated revenue through segment disclosures.

WHAT AMOUNTS ARE REPORTED BY AN OPERATING SEGMENT? For areas determined to be reportable operating segments, the following disclosures are required:

- General information about the operating segment
- Information about reported segment profit or loss, including certain revenues and expenses included in reported segment profit or loss, segment assets, and the basis of measurement
- Reconciliations of the totals of segment revenues, reported profit or loss, assets, and other significant items to corresponding enterprise amounts
- Interim period information¹⁹

Illustration 3A-1 shows the business segment information reported by **Abbott Laboratories**, in its 2015 annual report.

Illustration 3A-1

Business Segment
Information Disclosure—
Abbott Laboratories, Inc.

Real World Financials

Business Segment Information (\$ in millions)					
Segments	Net Sales	Operating Earnings	Total Assets	Depr. and Amort.	Capital Expenditures
Established Pharmaceuticals	\$ 3,720	\$ 658	\$ 2,210	\$ 83	\$ 112
Nutritionals	6,975	1,741	3,187	157	142
Diagnostics	4,646	1,171	2,844	310	321
Vascular	2,792	1,061	1,536	74	32
Other	2,272	(1,448)	31,470*	247	747
Total	\$20,405	\$3,183	\$41,247	\$ 871	\$1,354

*This amount includes items such as cash and investments, assets of non-reportable segments, goodwill and other intangible assets, and deferred income taxes.



• LO3-9

International Financial Reporting Standards

Segment Reporting. U.S. GAAP requires companies to report information about reported segment profit or loss, including certain revenues and expenses included in reported segment profit or loss, segment assets, and the basis of measurement. The international standard on segment reporting, *IFRS No. 8*,²⁰ requires that companies also disclose total *liabilities* of its reportable segments.

¹⁹FASB ASC 280-10-50-20 through 26 and 280-10-50-32: Segment Reporting—Overall—Disclosure (previously “Disclosures about Segments of an Enterprise and Related Information,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 131* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1997), par. 25).

²⁰“Operating Segments,” *International Financial Reporting Standard No. 8* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

REPORTING BY GEOGRAPHIC AREA. In today's global economy it is sometimes difficult to distinguish domestic and foreign companies. Most large U.S. firms conduct significant operations in other countries in addition to having substantial export sales from this country. Differing political and economic environments from country to country means risks and associated rewards sometimes vary greatly among the various operations of a single company. For instance, manufacturing facilities in a South American country embroiled in political unrest pose different risks from having a plant in Vermont, or even Canada. Without disaggregated financial information, these differences cause problems for analysts.

U.S. GAAP requires an enterprise to report certain geographic information unless it is impracticable to do so. This information includes:

- a. Revenues from external customers (1) attributed to the enterprise's country of domicile and (2) attributed to all foreign countries in total from which the enterprise derives revenues, and
- b. Long-lived assets other than financial instruments, long-term customer relationships of a financial institution, mortgage and other servicing rights, deferred policy acquisition costs, and deferred tax assets (1) located in the enterprise's country of domicile and (2) located in all foreign countries in total in which the enterprise holds material assets.²¹

Abbott Laboratories reports its geographic sales by separate countries in 2015, as shown in Illustration 3A–2. Notice that both the business segment (Illustration 3A–1) and geographic information disclosures include a reconciliation to company totals. In both illustrations, net sales of both the business segments and the geographic areas are reconciled to the company's total net sales of **\$20,405 million**.

Geographic Areas (\$ in millions)		Net Sales	
U.S.	\$6,270	U.K.	430
China	1,796	Canada	428
India	1,053	Colombia	388
Germany	1,004	Italy	383
Japan	895	Brazil	381
Netherlands	855	France	375
Switzerland	784	All Others	4,880
Russia	483	Total	\$20,405

Illustration 3A–2

Geographic Area Sales
Disclosure—Abbott
Laboratories, Inc.

Real World Financials



INFORMATION ABOUT MAJOR CUSTOMERS. Financial analysts are extremely interested in information concerning the extent to which a company's prosperity depends on one or more major customers. For this reason, if 10% or more of the revenue of an enterprise is derived from transactions with a single customer, the enterprise must disclose that fact, the total amount of revenue from each such customer, and the identity of the operating segment or segments reporting the revenue. The identity of the major customer or customers need not be disclosed, although companies routinely provide that information. In its 2015 annual report, Abbott Laboratories did not report any major customer information.

However, in its 2015 segment disclosures, **Lockheed Martin Corporation** reports that the U.S. government accounts for 78% of its revenues. Many companies in the defense industry derive substantial portions of their revenues from contracts with the Defense Department. When cutbacks occur in national defense or in specific defense systems, the impact on a company's operations can be considerable. ●

Revenues from major
customers must be
disclosed.

²¹FASB ASC 280–10–50–41: Segment Reporting—Overall—Disclosure (previously “Disclosures about Segments of an Enterprise and Related Information,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 131* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1997), par. 38).

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 3-1** Describe the purpose of the balance sheet.
- Q 3-2** Explain why the balance sheet does not portray the market value of the entity.
- Q 3-3** Define current assets and list the typical asset categories included in this classification.
- Q 3-4** Define current liabilities and list the typical liability categories included in this classification.
- Q 3-5** Describe what is meant by an operating cycle for a typical manufacturing company.
- Q 3-6** Explain the difference(s) between investments in equity securities classified as current assets versus those classified as long-term (noncurrent) assets.
- Q 3-7** Describe the common characteristics of assets classified as property, plant, and equipment and identify some assets included in this classification.
- Q 3-8** Distinguish between property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets.
- Q 3-9** Explain how each of the following liabilities would be classified in the balance sheet:
- A note payable of \$100,000 due in five years
 - A note payable of \$100,000 payable in annual installments of \$20,000 each, with the first installment due next year
- Q 3-10** Define the terms *paid-in-capital* and *retained earnings*.
- Q 3-11** Disclosure notes are an integral part of the information provided in financial statements. In what ways are the notes critical to understanding the financial statements and to evaluating the firm's performance and financial health?
- Q 3-12** A summary of the company's significant accounting policies is a required disclosure. Why is this disclosure important to external financial statement users?
- Q 3-13** Define a subsequent event.
- Q 3-14** Every annual report of a public company includes an extensive discussion and analysis provided by the company's management. Specifically, which aspects of the company must this discussion address? Isn't management's perspective too biased to be of use to investors and creditors?
- Q 3-15** What is a proxy statement? What information does it provide?
- Q 3-16** The auditors' report provides the analyst with an independent and professional opinion about the fairness of the representations in the financial statements. What are the four main types of opinion an auditor of a public company might issue? Describe each.
- Q 3-17** Define the terms *working capital*, *current ratio*, and *acid-test ratio* (or *quick ratio*).
- Q 3-18** Show the calculation of the following solvency ratios: (1) the debt to equity ratio, and (2) the times interest earned ratio.
-  **IFRS Q 3-19** Where can we find authoritative guidance for balance sheet presentation under IFRS?
-  **IFRS Q 3-20** Describe at least two differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS in balance sheet presentation.
- Q 3-21** (Based on Appendix 3) Segment reporting facilitates the financial statement analysis of diversified companies. What determines whether an operating segment is a reportable segment for this purpose?
- Q 3-22** (Based on Appendix 3) For segment reporting purposes, what amounts are reported by each operating segment?
-  **IFRS Q 3-23** (Based on Appendix 3) Describe any differences in segment disclosure requirements between U.S. GAAP and IFRS.

Brief Exercises



BE 3-1

Current versus long-term classification

- LO3-2, LO3-3

Indicate whether each of the following assets and liabilities should be classified as current or long-term: (a) accounts receivable; (b) prepaid rent for the next six months; (c) note receivable due in two years; (d) note payable due in 90 days; (e) note payable due in five years; and (f) patent.

BE 3-2

Balance sheet classification

- LO3-2, LO3-3

The trial balance for K and J Nursery, Inc., listed the following account balances at December 31, 2018, the end of its fiscal year: cash, \$16,000; accounts receivable, \$11,000; inventories, \$25,000; equipment (net), \$80,000; accounts payable, \$14,000; wages payable, \$9,000; interest payable, \$1,000; note payable (due in 18 months), \$30,000; common stock, \$50,000. Calculate total current assets and total current liabilities that would appear in the company's year-end balance sheet.

BE 3-3

Balance sheet
classification

● LO3-2, LO3-3

Refer to the situation described in BE 3-2. Determine the year-end balance in retained earnings for K and J Nursery, Inc.

BE 3-4

Balance sheet
classification

● LO3-2, LO3-3

Refer to the situation described in BE 3-2. Prepare a classified balance sheet for K and J Nursery, Inc. The equipment originally cost \$140,000.

BE 3-5

Balance sheet
classification

● LO3-2, LO3-3

The following is a December 31, 2018, post-closing trial balance for Culver City Lighting, Inc. Prepare a classified balance sheet for the company.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	\$ 55,000	
Accounts receivable	39,000	
Inventories	45,000	
Prepaid insurance	15,000	
Equipment	100,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		\$ 34,000
Patent, net	40,000	
Accounts payable		12,000
Interest payable		2,000
Note payable (due in 10, equal annual installments)		100,000
Common stock		70,000
Retained earnings		76,000
Totals	\$294,000	\$294,000

BE 3-6

Balance sheet
classification

● LO3-2, LO3-3

You have been asked to review the December 31, 2018, balance sheet for Champion Cleaning. After completing your review, you list the following three items for discussion with your superior:

1. An investment of \$30,000 is included in current assets. Management has indicated that it has no intention of liquidating the investment in 2019.
2. A \$100,000 note payable is listed as a long-term liability, but you have determined that the note is due in 10, equal annual installments with the first installment due on March 31, 2019.
3. Deferred revenue of \$60,000 is included as a current liability even though only two-thirds will be recognized as revenue in 2019, and the other one-third in 2020.

Determine the appropriate classification of each of these items.

BE 3-7

Balance sheet
preparation;
missing elements

● LO3-2, LO3-3

The following information is taken from the balance sheet of Raineer Plumbing: cash and cash equivalents, \$40,000; accounts receivable, \$120,000; inventories, ?; total current assets, \$235,000; property, plant, and equipment (net), ?; total assets, \$400,000; accounts payable, \$32,000; note payable (due in two years), \$50,000; common stock, \$100,000; and retained earnings, ?. Determine the missing amounts.

BE 3-8

Financial
statement
disclosures

● LO3-4

For each of the following note disclosures, indicate whether the disclosure would likely appear in (A) the summary of significant accounts policies or (B) a separate note: (1) depreciation method; (2) contingency information; (3) significant issuance of common stock after the fiscal year-end; (4) cash equivalent designation; (5) long-term debt information; and (6) inventory costing method.

BE 3-9

Calculating ratios

● LO3-8

Refer to the trial balance information in BE 3-5. Calculate the (a) current ratio, (b) acid-test ratio, and (c) debt to equity ratio.

BE 3-10

Effect of decisions
on ratios

● LO3-8

At the end of 2018, Barker Corporation's preliminary trial balance indicated a current ratio of 1.2. Management is contemplating paying some of its accounts payable balance before the end of the fiscal year. Explain the effect this transaction would have on the current ratio. Would your answer be the same if the preliminary trial balance indicated a current ratio of 0.8?

BE 3-11

Calculating
ratios; solving for
unknowns

● LO3-8

The current asset section of Stibbe Pharmaceutical Company's balance sheet included cash of \$20,000 and accounts receivable of \$40,000. The only other current asset is inventories. The company's current ratio is 2.0 and its acid-test ratio is 1.5. Determine the ending balance in inventories and total current liabilities.

Exercises

**E 3-1**

Balance sheet;
missing elements

- LO3-2, LO3-3,
LO3-8

The following December 31, 2018, fiscal year-end account balance information is available for the Stonebridge Corporation:

Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 5,000
Accounts receivable (net)	20,000
Inventories	60,000
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	120,000
Accounts payable	44,000
Wages payable	15,000
Paid-in-capital	100,000

The only asset not listed is short-term investments. The only liabilities not listed are a \$30,000 note payable due in two years and related accrued interest of \$1,000 due in four months. The current ratio at year-end is 1.5:1.

Required:

Determine the following at December 31, 2018:

- Total current assets
- Short-term investments
- Retained earnings

E 3-2

Balance sheet
classification

- LO3-2, LO3-3

The following are the typical classifications used in a balance sheet:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. Current assets | f. Current liabilities |
| b. Investments and funds | g. Long-term liabilities |
| c. Property, plant, and equipment | h. Paid-in-capital |
| d. Intangible assets | i. Retained earnings |
| e. Other assets | |

Required:

For each of the following balance sheet items, use the letters above to indicate the appropriate classification category. If the item is a contra account, place a minus sign before the chosen letter.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. ____ Equipment | 10. ____ Inventories |
| 2. ____ Accounts payable | 11. ____ Patent |
| 3. ____ Allowance for uncollectible accounts | 12. ____ Land, in use |
| 4. ____ Land, held for investment | 13. ____ Accrued liabilities |
| 5. ____ Note payable, due in 5 years | 14. ____ Prepaid rent for the next 9 months |
| 6. ____ Deferred rent revenue for the next 12 months | 15. ____ Common stock |
| 7. ____ Note payable, due in 6 months | 16. ____ Building, in use |
| 8. ____ Income less dividends, accumulated | 17. ____ Cash |
| 9. ____ Investment in XYZ Corp., long-term | 18. ____ Taxes payable |

E 3-3

Balance sheet
classification

- LO3-2, LO3-3

The following are the typical classifications used in a balance sheet:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. Current assets | f. Current liabilities |
| b. Investments and funds | g. Long-term liabilities |
| c. Property, plant, and equipment | h. Paid-in-capital |
| d. Intangible assets | i. Retained earnings |
| e. Other assets | |

Required:

For each of the following 2018 balance sheet items, use the letters above to indicate the appropriate classification category. If the item is a contra account, place a minus sign before the chosen letter.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. ____ Accrued interest payable | 10. ____ Supplies |
| 2. ____ Franchise | 11. ____ Machinery |
| 3. ____ Accumulated depreciation | 12. ____ Land, in use |
| 4. ____ Prepaid insurance, for 2019 | 13. ____ Deferred revenue, for 2019 |
| 5. ____ Bonds payable, due in 10 years | 14. ____ Copyrights |
| 6. ____ Current maturities of long-term debt | 15. ____ Preferred stock |
| 7. ____ Note payable, due in three months | 16. ____ Land, held for speculation |
| 8. ____ Long-term receivables | 17. ____ Cash equivalents |
| 9. ____ Restricted cash, will be used to retire bonds in 10 years | 18. ____ Wages payable |

E 3-4

Balance sheet
preparation

● LO3-2, LO3-3

The following is a December 31, 2018, post-closing trial balance for the Jackson Corporation.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	\$ 40,000	
Accounts receivable	34,000	
Inventories	75,000	
Prepaid rent for the next 8 months	16,000	
Marketable securities (short term)	10,000	
Machinery	145,000	
Accumulated depreciation—machinery		\$ 11,000
Patent (net of amortization)	83,000	
Accounts payable		8,000
Wages payable		4,000
Taxes payable		32,000
Bonds payable (due in 10 years)		200,000
Common stock		100,000
Retained earnings		48,000
Totals	\$403,000	\$403,000

Required:

Prepare a classified balance sheet for Jackson Corporation at December 31, 2018.

E 3-5

Balance sheet
preparation

● LO3-2, LO3-3

The following are the ending balances of accounts at December 31, 2018, for the Valley Pump Corporation.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	\$ 25,000	
Accounts receivable	56,000	
Inventories	81,000	
Interest payable		\$ 10,000
Marketable securities	44,000	
Land	120,000	
Buildings	300,000	
Accumulated depreciation—buildings		100,000
Equipment	75,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		25,000
Copyright (net of amortization)	12,000	
Prepaid expenses (next 12 months)	32,000	
Accounts payable		65,000
Deferred revenues (next 12 months)		20,000
Notes payable		250,000
Allowance for uncollectible accounts		5,000
Common stock		200,000
Retained earnings		70,000
Totals	\$745,000	\$745,000

Additional Information:

1. The \$120,000 balance in the land account consists of \$100,000 for the cost of land where the plant and office buildings are located. The remaining \$20,000 represents the cost of land being held for speculation.
2. The \$44,000 in the marketable securities account represents an investment in the common stock of another corporation. Valley intends to sell one-half of the stock within the next year.
3. The notes payable account consists of a \$100,000 note due in six months and a \$150,000 note due in three annual installments of \$50,000 each, with the first payment due in August of 2019.

Required:

Prepare a classified balance sheet for the Valley Pump Corporation at December 31, 2018.

E 3-6

Balance sheet;
Current versus
long-term
classification

● LO3-2, LO3-3

Presented next are the ending balances of accounts for the Kansas Instruments Corporation at December 31, 2018.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	\$ 20,000	
Accounts receivable	130,000	
Raw materials	24,000	
Note receivable	100,000	
Interest receivable	3,000	
Interest payable		\$ 5,000
Marketable securities	32,000	
Land	50,000	
Buildings	1,300,000	
Accumulated depreciation—buildings		620,000
Work in process	42,000	
Finished goods	89,000	
Equipment	300,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		130,000
Patent (net of amortization)	120,000	
Prepaid rent (for the next two years)	60,000	
Deferred revenue (next 12 months)		36,000
Accounts payable		180,000
Note payable		400,000
Cash restricted for payment of note payable	80,000	
Allowance for uncollectible accounts		13,000
Sales revenue		800,000
Cost of goods sold	450,000	
Rent expense	28,000	

Additional Information:

1. The note receivable, along with any accrued interest, is due on November 22, 2019.
2. The note payable is due in 2022. Interest is payable annually.
3. The marketable securities consist of treasury bills, all of which mature in the next year.
4. Deferred revenue will be recognized as revenue equally over the next two years.

Required:

Determine the company's working capital (current assets minus current liabilities) at December 31, 2018.

E 3-7

Balance sheet preparation; errors

● LO3-2, LO3-3

The following balance sheet for the Los Gatos Corporation was prepared by a recently hired accountant. In reviewing the statement you notice several errors.

LOS GATOS CORPORATION**Balance Sheet****At December 31, 2018**

Assets	
Cash	\$ 40,000
Accounts receivable	80,000
Inventories	55,000
Machinery (net)	120,000
Franchise (net)	30,000
Total assets	<u>\$325,000</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity	
Accounts payable	\$ 50,000
Allowance for uncollectible accounts	5,000
Note payable	55,000
Bonds payable	110,000
Shareholders' equity	105,000
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$325,000</u>

Additional Information:

1. Cash includes a \$20,000 restricted amount to be used for repayment of the bonds payable in 2022.
2. The cost of the machinery is \$190,000.
3. Accounts receivable includes a \$20,000 note receivable from a customer due in 2021.

4. The note payable includes accrued interest of \$5,000. Principal and interest are both due on February 1, 2019.
5. The company began operations in 2013. Income less dividends since inception of the company totals \$35,000.
6. 50,000 shares of no par common stock were issued in 2013. 100,000 shares are authorized.

Required:

Prepare a corrected, classified balance sheet.

E 3-8

Balance sheet;
current versus
long-term
classification

● LO3-2, LO3-3

Cone Corporation is in the process of preparing its December 31, 2018, balance sheet. There are some questions as to the proper classification of the following items:

- a. \$50,000 in cash restricted in a savings account to pay bonds payable. The bonds mature in 2022.
- b. Prepaid rent of \$24,000, covering the period January 1, 2019, through December 31, 2020.
- c. Note payable of \$200,000. The note is payable in annual installments of \$20,000 each, with the first installment payable on March 1, 2019.
- d. Accrued interest payable of \$12,000 related to the note payable.
- e. Investment in marketable securities of other corporations, \$80,000. Cone intends to sell one-half of the securities in 2019.

Required:

Prepare a partial classified balance sheet to show how each of the above items should be reported.

E 3-9

Balance sheet
preparation

● LO3-2, LO3-3

The following is the balance sheet of Korver Supply Company at December 31, 2017.

KORVER SUPPLY COMPANY	
Balance Sheet	
At December 31, 2017	
Assets	
Cash	\$120,000
Accounts receivable	300,000
Inventories	200,000
Furniture and fixtures, net	150,000
Total assets	\$770,000
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity	
Accounts payable (for merchandise)	\$190,000
Note payable	200,000
Interest payable	6,000
Common stock	100,000
Retained earnings	274,000
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$770,000

Transactions during 2018 were as follows:

1. Sales to customers on account	\$800,000
2. Cash collected from customers	780,000
3. Purchase of merchandise on account	550,000
4. Cash payment to suppliers	560,000
5. Cost of merchandise sold	500,000
6. Cash paid for operating expenses	160,000
7. Cash paid for interest on note	12,000

The note payable is dated June 30, 2017 and is due on June 30, 2019. Interest at 6% is payable annually on June 30. Depreciation on the furniture and fixtures for the year is \$20,000. The furniture and fixtures originally cost \$300,000.

Required:

Prepare a classified balance sheet at December 31, 2018 (ignore income taxes).

E 3-10

Financial
statement
disclosures

● LO3-4

The following are typical disclosures that would appear in the notes accompanying financial statements. For each of the items listed, indicate where the disclosure would likely appear—either in (A) the significant accounting policies note or (B) a separate note.

1. Inventory costing method	A
2. Information on related party transactions	_____
3. Composition of property, plant, and equipment	_____
4. Depreciation method	_____
5. Subsequent event information	_____
6. Measurement basis for certain financial instruments	_____
7. Important merger occurring after year-end	_____
8. Composition of receivables	_____

E 3-11

Disclosure notes

● LO3-4

Hallergan Company produces car and truck batteries that it sells primarily to auto manufacturers. Dorothy Hawkins, the company's controller, is preparing the financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2018. Hawkins asks for your advice concerning the following information that has not yet been included in the statements. The statements will be issued on February 28, 2019.

1. Hallergan leases its facilities from the brother of the chief executive officer.
2. On January 8, 2019, Hallergan entered into an agreement to sell a tract of land that it had been holding as an investment. The sale, which resulted in a material gain, was completed on February 2, 2019.
3. Hallergan uses the straight-line method to determine depreciation on all of the company's depreciable assets.
4. On February 8, 2019, Hallergan completed negotiations with its bank for a \$10,000,000 line of credit.
5. Hallergan uses the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method to value inventory.

Required:

For each of the above items, discuss any additional disclosures that Hawkins should include in Hallergan's financial statements.

E 3-12

Financial statement disclosures

● LO3-4

Parkman Sporting Goods is preparing its annual report for its 2018 fiscal year. The company's controller has asked for your help in determining how best to disclose information about the following items:

1. A related-party transaction
2. Depreciation method
3. Allowance for uncollectible accounts
4. Composition of investments
5. Composition of long-term debt
6. Inventory costing method
7. Number of shares of common stock authorized, issued, and outstanding
8. Employee benefit plans

Required:

Indicate whether the above items should be disclosed (A) in the summary of significant accounting policies note, (B) in a separate disclosure note, or (C) on the face of the balance sheet.

E 3-13

FASB codification research

● LO3-4

The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on the disclosure of accounting policies using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Identify the topic number that provides guidance on information contained in the notes to the financial statements.
2. What is the specific citation that requires a company to identify and describe in the notes to the financial statements the accounting principles and methods used to prepare the financial statements?
3. Describe the disclosure requirements.

**E 3-14**

FASB codification research

● LO3-2, LO3-4

Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for each of the following items:

1. What is the balance sheet classification for a note payable due in six months that was used to purchase a building?
2. Which assets may be excluded from current assets?
3. Should a note receivable from a related party be included in the balance sheet with notes receivable or accounts receivable from customers?
4. What items are nonrecognized subsequent events that require a disclosure in the notes to the financial statements?



E 3-15

Concepts;
terminology

- LO3-2 through LO3-4, LO3-6

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with the balance sheet and financial disclosures. Pair each item from List A (by letter) with the item from List B that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. Balance sheet	a. Will be satisfied through the use of current assets
_____ 2. Liquidity	b. Items expected to be converted to cash or consumed within one year or the operating cycle, whichever is longer
_____ 3. Current assets	c. The statements are presented fairly in conformity with GAAP
_____ 4. Operating cycle	d. An organized array of assets, liabilities, and equity
_____ 5. Current liabilities	e. Important to a user in comparing financial information across companies
_____ 6. Cash equivalent	f. Scope limitation or a departure from GAAP
_____ 7. Intangible asset	g. Recorded when an expense is incurred but not yet paid
_____ 8. Working capital	h. Refers to the ability of a company to convert its assets to cash to pay its current obligations
_____ 9. Accrued liabilities	i. Occurs after the fiscal year-end but before the statements are issued
_____ 10. Summary of significant accounting policies	j. Period of time from payment of cash to collection of cash
_____ 11. Subsequent events	k. One-month U.S. Treasury bill
_____ 12. Unqualified opinion	l. Current assets minus current liabilities
_____ 13. Qualified opinion	m. Lacks physical substance

E 3-16

Calculating ratios

- LO3-8

The 2018 balance sheet for Hallbrook Industries, Inc., is shown below.

HALLBROOK INDUSTRIES, INC.	
Balance Sheet	
December 31, 2018	
(\$ in thousands)	
Assets	
Cash	\$ 200
Short-term investments	150
Accounts receivable	200
Inventories	350
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	1,000
Total assets	<u>\$1,900</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity	
Current liabilities	\$ 400
Long-term liabilities	350
Paid-in capital	750
Retained earnings	400
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$1,900</u>

The company's 2018 income statement reported the following amounts (\$ in thousands):

Net sales	\$4,600
Interest expense	40
Income tax expense	100
Net income	160

Required:

Determine the following ratios for 2018:

- Current ratio
- Acid-test ratio
- Debt to equity ratio
- Times interest earned ratio

E 3-17

Calculating ratios;
Best Buy

- LO3-8

Best Buy Co, Inc., is a leading retailer specializing in consumer electronics. A condensed income statement and balance sheet for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016, are shown next.

Real World Financials

Best Buy Co., Inc.
Balance Sheet
At January 30, 2016
(\$ in millions)
Assets

Current assets:	
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 1,976
Short-term investments	1,305
Accounts receivable, net	1,162
Merchandise inventories	5,051
Other current assets	392
Total current assets	9,886
Long-term assets	3,633
Total assets	<u>\$13,519</u>

Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity

Current liabilities:	
Accounts payable	\$ 4,450
Other current liabilities	2,475
Total current liabilities	6,925
Long-term liabilities	2,216
Shareholders' equity	4,378
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$13,519</u>

Best Buy Co., Inc.
Income Statement
For the Year Ended January 30, 2016
(\$ in millions)

Revenues	\$ 39,528
Costs and expenses	38,153
Operating income	1,375
Other income (expense)*	(65)
Income before income taxes	1,310
Income tax expense	503
Net income	<u>\$ 807</u>

*Includes \$80 of interest expense.

Liquidity and solvency ratios for the industry are as follows:

	Industry Average
Current ratio	1.23
Acid-test ratio	0.60
Debt to equity	0.70
Times interest earned	5.66 times

Required:

- Determine the following ratios for Best Buy for its fiscal year ended January 30, 2016.
 - Current ratio
 - Acid-test ratio
 - Debt to equity ratio
 - Times interest earned ratio
- Using the ratios from requirement 1, assess Best Buy's liquidity and solvency relative to its industry.

E 3-18

Calculating ratios; solve for unknowns

• LO3-8

The current asset section of the Excalibur Tire Company's balance sheet consists of cash, marketable securities, accounts receivable, and inventories. The December 31, 2018, balance sheet revealed the following:

Inventories	\$ 840,000
Total assets	\$ 2,800,000
Current ratio	2.25
Acid-test ratio	1.2
Debt to equity ratio	1.8

Required:

Determine the following 2018 balance sheet items:

1. Current assets
2. Shareholders' equity
3. Long-term assets
4. Long-term liabilities

E 3-19

Calculating ratios; solve for unknowns

● LO3-8

The current asset section of Guardian Consultant's balance sheet consists of cash, accounts receivable, and prepaid expenses. The 2018 balance sheet reported the following: cash, \$1,300,000; prepaid expenses, \$360,000; long-term assets, \$2,400,000; and shareholders' equity, \$2,500,000. The current ratio at the end of the year was 2.0 and the debt to equity ratio was 1.4.

Required:

Determine the following 2018 amounts and ratios:

1. Current liabilities
2. Long-term liabilities
3. Accounts receivable
4. The acid-test ratio

E 3-20

Effect of management decisions on ratios

● LO3-8

Most decisions made by management impact the ratios analysts use to evaluate performance. Indicate (by letter) whether each of the actions listed below will immediately increase (I), decrease (D), or have no effect (N) on the ratios shown. Assume each ratio is less than 1.0 before the action is taken.

Action	Current Ratio	Acid-Test Ratio	Debt to Equity Ratio
1. Issuance of long-term bonds	_____	_____	_____
2. Issuance of short-term notes	_____	_____	_____
3. Payment of accounts payable	_____	_____	_____
4. Purchase of inventory on account	_____	_____	_____
5. Purchase of inventory for cash	_____	_____	_____
6. Purchase of equipment with a 4-year note	_____	_____	_____
7. Retirement of bonds	_____	_____	_____
8. Sale of common stock	_____	_____	_____
9. Write-off of obsolete inventory	_____	_____	_____
10. Purchase of short-term investment for cash	_____	_____	_____
11. Decision to refinance on a long-term basis some currently maturing debt	_____	_____	_____

E 3-21

Segment reporting

● Appendix 3

The Canton Corporation operates in four distinct business segments. The segments, along with 2018 information on revenues, assets, and net income, are listed below (\$ in thousands):

Segment	Revenues	Assets	Net Income
Pharmaceuticals	\$2,000	\$1,000	\$200
Plastics	3,000	1,500	270
Farm equipment	2,500	1,250	320
Electronics	500	250	40
Total company	<u>\$8,000</u>	<u>\$4,000</u>	<u>\$830</u>

Required:

1. For which segments must Canton report supplementary information according to U.S. GAAP?
2. What amounts must be reported for the segments you identified in requirement 1?

E 3-22

Segment reporting

● Appendix 3
LO3-9

Refer to E 3-21.

Required:

How might your answers differ if Canton Corporation prepares its segment disclosure according to International Financial Reporting Standards?



Problems



P 3-1

Balance sheet preparation

• LO3-2, LO3-3

Presented below is a list of balance sheet accounts.

Accounts payable	Cash
Accounts receivable	Common stock
Accumulated depreciation—buildings	Copyright
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	Equipment
Allowance for uncollectible accounts	Interest receivable (due in three months)
Restricted cash (to be used in 10 years)	Inventories
Bonds payable (due in 10 years)	Land (in use)
Buildings	Long-term investments
Notes payable (due in 6 months)	Rent payable (current)
Notes receivable (due in 2 years)	Retained earnings
Patent	Short-term investments
Preferred stock	Taxes payable
Prepaid expenses	Wages payable

Required:

Prepare a classified balance sheet ignoring monetary amounts.

P 3-2

Balance sheet preparation; missing elements

• LO3-2, LO3-3

The data listed below are taken from a balance sheet of Trident Corporation at December 31, 2018. Some amounts, indicated by question marks, have been intentionally omitted.

	(\$ in thousands)
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 239,186
Short-term investments	353,700
Accounts receivable (net of allowance)	504,944
Inventories	?
Prepaid expenses (current)	83,259
Total current assets	1,594,927
Long-term receivables	110,800
Property and equipment (net)	?
Total assets	?
Notes payable and short-term debt	31,116
Accounts payable	?
Accrued liabilities	421,772
Other current liabilities	181,604
Total current liabilities	693,564
Long-term debt and deferred taxes	?
Total liabilities	956,140
Shareholders' equity	1,370,627

Required:

- Determine the missing amounts.
- Prepare Trident's classified balance sheet.

P 3-3

Balance sheet preparation

• LO3-2, LO3-3



The following is a December 31, 2018, post-closing trial balance for Almway Corporation.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	\$ 45,000	
Investments	110,000	
Accounts receivable	60,000	
Inventories	200,000	
Prepaid insurance (for the next 9 months)	9,000	
Land	90,000	
Buildings	420,000	
Accumulated depreciation—buildings		\$100,000
Equipment	110,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		60,000
Patents (net of amortization)	10,000	
Accounts payable		75,000

(continued)

(concluded)

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Notes payable		130,000
Interest payable		20,000
Bonds payable		240,000
Common stock		300,000
Retained earnings		129,000
Totals	<u>\$1,054,000</u>	<u>\$1,054,000</u>

Additional Information:

- The investment account includes an investment in common stock of another corporation of \$30,000 which management intends to hold for at least three years. The balance of these investments is intended to be sold in the coming year.
- The land account includes land which cost \$25,000 that the company has not used and is currently listed for sale.
- The cash account includes \$15,000 restricted in a fund to pay bonds payable that mature in 2021 and \$23,000 restricted in a three-month Treasury bill.
- The notes payable account consists of the following:
 - a \$30,000 note due in six months
 - a \$50,000 note due in six years
 - a \$50,000 note due in five annual installments of \$10,000 each, with the next installment due February 15, 2019
- The \$60,000 balance in accounts receivable is net of an allowance for uncollectible accounts of \$8,000.
- The common stock account represents 100,000 shares of no par value common stock issued and outstanding. The corporation has 500,000 shares authorized.

Required:

Prepare a classified balance sheet for the Almway Corporation at December 31, 2018.

P 3-4

Balance sheet
preparation

• LO3-2, LO3-3



The following is the ending balances of accounts at December 31, 2018, for the Weismuller Publishing Company.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	\$ 65,000	
Accounts receivable	160,000	
Inventories	285,000	
Prepaid expenses	148,000	
Machinery and equipment	320,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		\$ 110,000
Investments	140,000	
Accounts payable		60,000
Interest payable		20,000
Deferred revenue		80,000
Taxes payable		30,000
Notes payable		200,000
Allowance for uncollectible accounts		16,000
Common stock		400,000
Retained earnings		202,000
Totals	<u>\$1,118,000</u>	<u>\$1,118,000</u>

Additional Information:

- Prepaid expenses include \$120,000 paid on December 31, 2018, for a two-year lease on the building that houses both the administrative offices and the manufacturing facility.
- Investments include \$30,000 in Treasury bills purchased on November 30, 2018. The bills mature on January 30, 2019. The remaining \$110,000 includes investments in marketable equity securities that the company intends to sell in the next year.
- Deferred revenue represents customer prepayments for magazine subscriptions. Subscriptions are for periods of one year or less.
- The notes payable account consists of the following:
 - a \$40,000 note due in six months
 - a \$100,000 note due in six years

- c. a \$60,000 note due in three annual installments of \$20,000 each, with the next installment due August 31, 2019
5. The common stock account represents 400,000 shares of no par value common stock issued and outstanding. The corporation has 800,000 shares authorized.

Required:

Prepare a classified balanced sheet for the Weismuller Publishing Company at December 31, 2018.

P 3-5

Balance sheet
preparation

• LO3-2, LO3-3



The following is the ending balances of accounts at June 30, 2018 for Excell Company.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	\$ 83,000	
Short-term investments	65,000	
Accounts receivable	280,000	
Prepaid expenses (for the next 12 months)	32,000	
Land	75,000	
Buildings	320,000	
Accumulated depreciation—buildings		\$ 160,000
Equipment	265,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		120,000
Accounts payable		173,000
Accrued expenses		45,000
Notes payable		100,000
Mortgage payable		250,000
Common stock		100,000
Retained earnings		172,000
Totals	\$1,120,000	\$1,120,000

Additional Information:

- The short-term investments account includes \$18,000 in U.S. treasury bills purchased in May. The bills mature in July.
- The accounts receivable account consists of the following:

a. Amounts owed by customers	\$225,000
b. Allowance for uncollectible accounts—trade customers	(15,000)
c. Nontrade note receivable (due in three years)	65,000
d. Interest receivable on note (due in four months)	5,000
Total	\$280,000
- The notes payable account consists of two notes of \$50,000 each. One note is due on September 30, 2018, and the other is due on November 30, 2019.
- The mortgage payable is payable in *semiannual* installments of \$5,000 each plus interest. The next payment is due on October 31, 2018. Interest has been properly accrued and is included in accrued expenses.
- Five hundred thousand shares of no par common stock are authorized, of which 200,000 shares have been issued and are outstanding.
- The land account includes \$50,000 representing the cost of the land on which the company's office building resides. The remaining \$25,000 is the cost of land that the company is holding for investment purposes.

Required:

Prepare a classified balance sheet for the Excell Company at June 30, 2018.

P 3-6

Balance sheet
preparation;
disclosures

• LO3-2 through
LO3-4



The following is the ending balances of accounts at December 31, 2018 for the Vosburgh Electronics Corporation.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Cash	\$ 67,000	
Short-term investments	182,000	
Accounts receivable	123,000	
Long-term investments	35,000	
Inventories	215,000	
Loans to employees	40,000	
Prepaid expenses (for 2019)	16,000	
Land	280,000	
Building	1,550,000	

(continued)

(concluded)

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Machinery and equipment	637,000	
Patent	152,000	
Franchise	40,000	
Note receivable	250,000	
Interest receivable	12,000	
Accumulated depreciation—building		\$ 620,000
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		210,000
Accounts payable		189,000
Dividends payable (payable on 1/16/2019)		10,000
Interest payable		16,000
Taxes payable		40,000
Deferred revenue		60,000
Notes payable		300,000
Allowance for uncollectible accounts		8,000
Common stock		2,000,000
Retained earnings		146,000
Totals	<u>\$3,599,000</u>	<u>\$3,599,000</u>

Additional Information:

1. The common stock represents 1 million shares of no par stock authorized, 500,000 shares issued and outstanding.
2. The loans to employees are due on June 30, 2019.
3. The note receivable is due in installments of \$50,000, payable on each September 30. Interest is payable annually.
4. Short-term investments consist of marketable equity securities that the company plans to sell in 2019 and \$50,000 in treasury bills purchased on December 15 of the current year that mature on February 15, 2019. Long-term investments consist of marketable equity securities that the company does not plan to sell in the next year.
5. Deferred revenue represents customer payments for extended service contracts. Eighty percent of these contracts expire in 2019, the remainder in 2020.
6. Notes payable consists of two notes, one for \$100,000 due on January 15, 2020, and another for \$200,000 due on June 30, 2021.

Required:

1. Prepare a classified balance sheet for Vosburgh at December 31, 2018.
2. Identify the items that would require additional disclosure, either on the face of the balance sheet or in a disclosure note.

P 3-7

Balance sheet
preparation;
errors

● LO3-2, LO3-3

The following balance sheet for the Hubbard Corporation was prepared by the company:

HUBBARD CORPORATION**Balance Sheet****At December 31, 2018**

Assets	
Buildings	\$ 750,000
Land	250,000
Cash	60,000
Accounts receivable (net)	120,000
Inventories	240,000
Machinery	280,000
Patent (net)	100,000
Investment in marketable equity securities	60,000
Total assets	<u>\$1,860,000</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity	
Accounts payable	\$ 215,000
Accumulated depreciation	255,000
Notes payable	500,000
Appreciation of inventories	80,000
Common stock, authorized and issued 100,000 shares of no par stock	430,000
Retained earnings	380,000
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$1,860,000</u>

Additional Information:

1. The buildings, land, and machinery are all stated at cost except for a parcel of land that the company is holding for future sale. The land originally cost \$50,000 but, due to a significant increase in market value, is listed at \$120,000. The increase in the land account was credited to retained earnings.
2. Marketable equity securities consist of stocks of other corporations and are recorded at cost, \$20,000 of which will be sold in the coming year. The remainder will be held indefinitely.
3. Notes payable are all long-term. However, a \$100,000 note requires an installment payment of \$25,000 due in the coming year.
4. Inventories are recorded at current resale value. The original cost of the inventories is \$160,000.

Required:

Prepare a corrected classified balance sheet for the Hubbard Corporation at December 31, 2018.

P 3–8

Balance sheet;
errors; missing
amounts

● LO3–2, LO3–3



Sanderson Manufacturing Company
Balance Sheet
At December 31, 2018
(\$ in thousands)
Assets

Current assets:		
Cash		\$ 1,250
Accounts receivable		3,500
Allowance for uncollectible accounts		(400)
Finished goods inventory		6,000
Prepaid expenses		1,200
Total current assets		11,550
Long-term assets:		
Investments		3,000
Raw materials and work in process inventory		2,250
Equipment		15,000
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		(4,200)
Patent		?
Total assets		\$?
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable		\$ 5,200
Note payable		4,000
Interest payable—note		100
Deferred revenue		3,000
Total current liabilities		12,300
Long-term liabilities:		
Bonds payable		5,500
Interest payable—bonds		200
Shareholders' equity:		
Common stock	\$?	
Retained earnings	?	?
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity		?

Additional Information (\$ in thousands):

1. Certain records that included the account balances for the patent and shareholders' equity items were lost. However, the controller told you that a complete, preliminary balance sheet prepared before the records were lost showed a debt to equity ratio of 1.2. That is, total liabilities are 120% of total shareholders' equity. Retained earnings at the beginning of the year was \$4,000. Net income for 2018 was \$1,560 and \$560 in cash dividends were declared and paid to shareholders.
2. Management intends to sell the investments in the next six months.
3. Interest on both the note and the bonds is payable annually.
4. The note payable is due in annual installments of \$1,000 each.
5. Deferred revenue will be recognized as revenue equally over the next two fiscal years.
6. The common stock represents 400,000 shares of no par stock authorized, 250,000 shares issued and outstanding.

Required:

Prepare a complete, corrected, classified balance sheet.

P 3-9

Balance sheet
preparation

• LO3-2, LO3-3

Presented below is the balance sheet for HHD, Inc., at December 31, 2018.

Current assets	\$ 600,000	Current liabilities	\$ 400,000
Investments	500,000	Long-term liabilities	1,100,000
Property, plant, and equipment	2,000,000	Shareholders' equity	1,800,000
Intangible assets	200,000		
Total assets	<u>\$3,300,000</u>	Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$3,300,000</u>

The captions shown in the summarized statement above include the following:

- Current assets: cash, \$150,000; accounts receivable, \$200,000; inventories, \$225,000; and prepaid insurance, \$25,000.
- Investments: investments in common stock, short term, \$90,000, and long term, \$160,000; and restricted cash, long term, \$250,000.
- Property, plant, and equipment: buildings, \$1,500,000 less accumulated depreciation, \$600,000; equipment, \$500,000 less accumulated depreciation, \$200,000; and land, \$800,000.
- Intangible assets: patent, \$110,000; and copyright, \$90,000.
- Current liabilities: accounts payable, \$100,000; notes payable, short term, \$150,000, and long term, \$90,000; and taxes payable, \$60,000.
- Long-term liabilities: bonds payable due 2023.
- Shareholders' equity: common stock, \$1,000,000; retained earnings, \$800,000. Five hundred thousand shares of no par common stock are authorized, of which 200,000 shares were issued and are outstanding.

Required:

Prepare a corrected classified balance sheet for HHD, Inc., at December 31, 2018.

P 3-10

Balance sheet
preparation

• LO3-2, LO3-3



Melody Lane Music Company was started by John Ross early in 2018. Initial capital was acquired by issuing shares of common stock to various investors and by obtaining a bank loan. The company operates a retail store that sells records, tapes, and compact discs. Business was so good during the first year of operations that John is considering opening a second store on the other side of town. The funds necessary for expansion will come from a new bank loan. In order to approve the loan, the bank requires financial statements.

John asks for your help in preparing the balance sheet and presents you with the following information for the year ending December 31, 2018:

- a. Cash receipts consisted of the following:

From customers	\$360,000
From issue of common stock	100,000
From bank loan	100,000

- b. Cash disbursements were as follows:

Purchase of inventory	\$300,000
Rent	15,000
Salaries	30,000
Utilities	5,000
Insurance	3,000
Purchase of equipment and furniture	40,000

- The bank loan was made on March 31, 2018. A note was signed requiring payment of interest and principal on March 31, 2019. The interest rate is 12%.
- The equipment and furniture were purchased on January 3, 2018, and have an estimated useful life of 10 years with no anticipated salvage value. Depreciation per year is \$4,000.
- Inventories on hand at the end of the year cost \$100,000.
- Amounts owed at December 31, 2018, were as follows:

To suppliers of inventory	\$20,000
To the utility company	1,000

- Rent on the store building is \$1,000 per month. On December 1, 2018, four months' rent was paid in advance.
- Net income for the year was \$76,000. Assume that the company is not subject to federal, state, or local income tax.
- One hundred thousand shares of no par common stock are authorized, of which 20,000 shares were issued and are outstanding.

Required:

Prepare a balance sheet at December 31, 2018.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Communication

Case 3-1

Current versus long-term classification

● LO3-2

A first-year accounting student is confused by a statement made in a recent class. Her instructor stated that the assets listed in the balance sheet of the **IBM Corporation** include computers that are classified as current assets as well as computers that are classified as long-term (noncurrent) assets. In addition, the instructor stated that investments in marketable securities of other corporations could be classified in the balance sheet as either current or long-term assets.

Required:

Explain to the student the distinction between current and long-term assets pertaining to the IBM computers and the investments in marketable securities.

Analysis

Case 3-2

Current versus long-term classification

● LO3-2, LO3-3

The usefulness of the balance sheet is enhanced when assets and liabilities are grouped according to common characteristics. The broad distinction made in the balance sheet is the current versus long-term classification of both assets and liabilities.

Required:

1. Discuss the factors that determine whether an asset or liability should be classified as current or long-term in a balance sheet.
2. Identify six items that under different circumstances could be classified as either current or long-term. Indicate the factors that would determine the correct classification.

Communication

Case 3-3

FASB codification research; inventory or property, plant, and equipment

● LO3-2

The Red Hen Company produces, processes, and sells fresh eggs. The company is in the process of preparing financial statements at the end of its first year of operations and has asked for your help in determining the appropriate treatment of the cost of its egg-laying flock. The estimated life of a laying hen is approximately two years, after which they are sold to soup companies.

The controller considers the company's operating cycle to be two years and wants to present the cost of the egg-producing flock as inventory in the current asset section of the balance sheet. He feels that the hens are "goods awaiting sale." The chief financial officer does not agree with this treatment. He thinks that the cost of the flock should be classified as property, plant, and equipment because the hens are used in the production of product—the eggs.

The focus of this case is the balance sheet presentation of the cost of the egg-producing flock. Your instructor will divide the class into two to six groups depending on the size of the class. The mission of your group is to reach consensus on the appropriate presentation.

Required:

1. Each group member should deliberate the situation independently and draft a tentative argument prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.
2. In class, each group will meet for 10 to 15 minutes in different areas of the classroom. During that meeting, group members will take turns sharing their suggestions for the purpose of arriving at a single group treatment.
3. After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each group (selected during the group meetings) will share the group's solution with the class. The goal of the class is to incorporate the views of each group into a consensus approach to the situation.



IFRS Case 3-4

Balance sheet presentation; Vodafone Group, Plc.

● LO3-2, LO3-3, LO3-9

Vodafone Group, Plc., a U.K. company, is the largest mobile telecommunications network company in the world. The company prepares its financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards. Below are partial company balance sheets (statements of financial position) included in a recent annual report:

Vodafone Group, Plc. Consolidated Statements of Financial Position At March 31

	2015	2014
	£m	£m
Long-term assets:		
Goodwill	22,537	23,315
Other intangible assets	20,953	23,373
Property, plant, and equipment	26,603	22,851

(continued)



IFRS

Real World Financials

(concluded)	2015	2014
	£m	£m
Investments in associates and joint ventures	(3)	114
Other investments	3,757	3,553
Deferred tax assets	23,845	20,607
Post employment benefits	169	35
Trade and other receivables	4,865	3,270
	<u>102,726</u>	<u>97,118</u>
Current assets:		
Inventory	482	441
Taxation recoverable	575	808
Trade and other receivables	8,053	8,886
Other investments	3,855	4,419
Cash and cash equivalents	6,882	10,134
Assets held for sale	—	34
	<u>19,847</u>	<u>24,722</u>
Total assets	<u>122,573</u>	<u>121,840</u>
Equity (details provided in complete statements)	67,733	71,781
Long-term liabilities:		
Long-term borrowings	22,435	21,454
Taxation liabilities	—	50
Deferred tax liabilities	595	747
Post employment benefits	567	584
Provisions	1,082	846
Trade and other payables	1,264	1,339
	<u>25,943</u>	<u>25,020</u>
Current liabilities:		
Short-term borrowings	12,623	7,747
Taxation liabilities	599	873
Provisions	767	963
Trade and other payables	14,908	15,456
	<u>28,897</u>	<u>25,039</u>
Total equity and liabilities	<u>122,573</u>	<u>121,840</u>

Required:

- Describe the differences between Vodafone's balance sheets and a typical U.S. company balance sheet.
- What type of liabilities do you think are included in the *provisions* category in Vodafone's balance sheets?

**Judgment
Case 3–5**

Balance sheet;
errors

- LO3–2 through
LO3–4

You recently joined the internal auditing department of Marcus Clothing Corporation. As one of your first assignments, you are examining a balance sheet prepared by a staff accountant.

MARCUS CLOTHING CORPORATION	
Balance Sheet	
At December 31, 2018	
Assets	
Current assets:	
Cash	\$ 137,000
Accounts receivable, net	80,000
Note receivable	53,000
Inventories	240,000
Investments	66,000
Total current assets	<u>576,000</u>
Other assets:	
Land	\$ 200,000
Equipment, net	320,000
Prepaid expenses (for the next 12 months)	27,000
Patent	22,000
Total other assets	<u>569,000</u>
Total assets	<u><u>\$1,145,000</u></u>

(continued)

(concluded)		Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity	
Current liabilities:			
Accounts payable		\$	125,000
Salaries payable			32,000
Total current liabilities			<u>157,000</u>
Long-term liabilities:			
Note payable	\$ 100,000		
Bonds payable (due in 5 years)	300,000		
Interest payable	20,000		
Total long-term liabilities			<u>420,000</u>
Shareholders' equity:			
Common stock	500,000		
Retained earnings	68,000		
Total shareholders' equity			<u>568,000</u>
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity			<u><u>\$1,145,000</u></u>

In the course of your examination you uncover the following information pertaining to the balance sheet:

1. The company rents its facilities. The land that appears in the statement is being held for future sale.
2. The note receivable is due in 2020. The balance of \$53,000 includes \$3,000 of accrued interest. The next interest payment is due in July 2019.
3. The note payable is due in installments of \$20,000 per year. Interest on both the notes and bonds is payable annually.
4. The company's investments consist of marketable equity securities of other corporations. Management does not intend to liquidate any investments in the coming year.

Required:

Identify and explain the deficiencies in the statement prepared by the company's accountant. Include in your answer items that require additional disclosure, either on the face of the statement or in a note.

**Judgment
Case 3–6**

Financial
disclosures

● LO3–4

You recently joined the auditing staff of Best, Best, and Krug, CPAs. You have been assigned to the audit of Clearview, Inc., and have been asked by the audit senior to examine the balance sheet prepared by Clearview's accountant.

CLEARVIEW, INC.		Balance Sheet	
		At December 31, 2018	
		(\$ in millions)	
Assets			
Current assets:			
Cash		\$	10.5
Accounts receivable			112.1
Inventories			220.6
Prepaid expenses			5.5
Total current assets			<u>348.7</u>
Investments			22.0
Property, plant, and equipment, net			486.9
Total assets			<u><u>\$857.6</u></u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity			
Current liabilities:			
Accounts payable		\$	83.5
Accrued taxes and interest			25.5
Current maturities of long-term debt			20.0
Total current liabilities			<u>129.0</u>
Long-term liabilities:			<u>420.0</u>
Total liabilities			549.0
Shareholders' equity:			
Common stock	\$100.0		
Retained earnings	208.6		
Total shareholders' equity			<u>308.6</u>
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity			<u><u>\$857.6</u></u>

Required:

Identify the items in the statement that most likely would require further disclosure either on the face of the statement or in a note. Further identify those items that would require disclosure in the significant accounting policies note.

**Real World
Case 3–7**

Balance sheet
and significant
accounting
policies
disclosure;
Walmart

- LO3–2 through
LO3–4, LO3–8

Real World Financials

The balance sheet and disclosure of significant accounting policies taken from the 2016 annual report of **Wal-Mart Stores, Inc.**, appear below. Use this information to answer the following questions:

1. What are the asset classifications contained in Walmart's balance sheet?
2. What amounts did Walmart report for the following items for 2016:
 - a. Total assets
 - b. Current assets
 - c. Current liabilities
 - d. Total equity
 - e. Retained earnings
 - f. Inventories
3. What is Walmart's largest current asset? What is its largest current liability?
4. Compute Walmart's current ratio for 2016.
5. Identify the following items:
 - a. The company's inventory valuation method
 - b. The definition of cash equivalents

WAL-MART STORES, INC. Consolidated Balance Sheets (\$ in millions except per share data)		
	As of January 31,	
	2016	2015
Assets		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 8,705	\$ 9,135
Receivables, net	5,624	6,778
Inventories	44,469	45,141
Prepaid expenses and other	1,441	2,224
Total current assets	60,239	63,278
Property and equipment:		
Property and equipment	176,958	177,395
Less accumulated depreciation	(66,787)	(63,115)
Property and equipment, net	110,171	114,280
Property under capital leases:		
Property under capital lease and financing obligations	11,096	5,239
Less accumulated amortization	(4,751)	(2,864)
Property under capital leases and financing obligations, net	6,345	2,375
Goodwill	16,695	18,102
Other assets and deferred charges	6,131	5,455
Total assets	\$199,581	\$203,490
Liabilities, Redeemable Noncontrolling Interest and Equity		
Current liabilities:		
Short-term borrowings	\$ 2,708	\$ 1,592
Accounts payable	38,487	38,410
Accrued liabilities	19,607	19,152
Accrued income taxes	521	1,021
Long-term debt due within one year	2,745	4,791
Capital lease and financing obligations due within one year	551	287
Total current liabilities	64,619	65,253
Long-term debt	38,214	40,889
Long-term capital lease and financing obligations	5,816	2,606
Deferred income taxes and other	7,321	8,805
Commitments and contingencies Equity:		
Common stock	317	323
Capital in excess of par value	1,805	2,462
Retained earnings	90,021	85,777
Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	(11,597)	(7,168)
Total Walmart shareholders' equity	80,546	81,394
Nonredeemable noncontrolling interest	3,065	4,543
Total equity	83,611	85,937
Total liabilities, redeemable noncontrolling interest and equity	\$199,581	\$203,490

NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
WAL-MART STORES, INC.

1 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (in part)

Cash and Cash Equivalents

The Company considers investments with a maturity of three months or less when purchased to be cash equivalents.

Inventories

The Company values inventories at the lower of cost or market as determined primarily by the retail method of accounting, using the last-in, first-out ("LIFO") method for substantially all of the Walmart U.S. segment's merchandise inventories. Inventories for the Walmart International operations are primarily valued by the retail method of accounting, using the first-in, first-out ("FIFO") method. At January 31, 2016 and 2015, our inventories valued at LIFO approximate those inventories as if they were valued at FIFO.

Revenue Recognition

The Company recognizes sales revenue net of sales taxes and estimated sales returns at the time it sells merchandise to the customer. Customer purchases of shopping cards are not recognized as revenue until the card is redeemed and the customer purchases merchandise by using the shopping card. The Company also recognizes revenue from service transactions at the time the service is performed. Generally, revenue from services is classified as a component of net sales on our consolidated statements of income.

Judgment

Case 3–8

Post fiscal year-end events

• LO3–4

The fiscal year-end for the Northwest Distribution Corporation is December 31. The company's 2018 financial statements were issued on March 15, 2019. The following events occurred between December 31, 2018, and March 15, 2019.

1. On January 22, 2019, the company negotiated a major merger with Blandon Industries. The merger will be completed by the middle of 2019.
2. On February 3, 2019, Northwest negotiated a \$10 million long-term note with the Credit Bank of Ohio. The amount of the note is material.
3. On February 25, 2019, a flood destroyed one of the company's manufacturing plants causing \$600,000 of uninsured damage.

Required:

Determine the appropriate treatment of each of these events in the 2018 financial statements of Northwest Distribution Corporation.

Research

Case 3–9

FASB codification; locate and extract relevant information and cite authoritative support for a financial reporting issue; related-party disclosures; Enron Corporation

• LO3–4

Enron Corporation was a darling in the energy-provider arena, and in January 2001 its stock price rose above \$100 per share. A collapse of investor confidence in 2001 and revelations of accounting fraud led to one of the largest bankruptcies in U.S. history. By the end of the year, Enron's stock price had plummeted to less than \$1 per share. Investigations and lawsuits followed. One problem area concerned transactions with related parties that were not adequately disclosed in the company's financial statements. Critics stated that the lack of information about these transactions made it difficult for analysts following Enron to identify problems the company was experiencing.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on related-party transactions using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). What is the specific citation that outlines the required information on related-party disclosures that must be included in the notes to the financial statements?
2. Describe the disclosures required for related-party transactions.
3. Use EDGAR (www.sec.gov) or another method to locate the December 31, 2000, financial statements of Enron. Search for the related-party disclosure. Briefly describe the relationship central to the various transactions described.
4. Why is it important that companies disclose related-party transactions? Use the Enron disclosure of the sale of dark fiber inventory in your answer.

EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, performs automated collection, validation, indexing, and forwarding of submissions by companies and others who are required by law to file forms with the SEC. All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR to make the majority of their filings. (Some foreign companies file voluntarily.) Form 10-K, which includes the annual report, is required to be filed on EDGAR. The SEC makes this information available on the Internet.

Real World Financials



Real World

Case 3–10

Disclosures; proxy statement; Coca-Cola

• LO3–4, LO3–5

Real World Financials

**Required:**

1. Access EDGAR on the Internet. The web address is www.sec.gov.
2. Search for **The Coca-Cola Company**. Access the 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2015. Search or scroll to find the disclosure notes and audit report.
3. Answer the following questions:
 - a. Describe the subsequent events disclosed by the company.
 - b. Which firm is the company's auditor? What type of audit opinion did the auditor render?
4. Access the proxy statement filed with the SEC on March 10, 2016 (the proxy statement designation is Def 14A), locate the executive officers summary compensation table and answer the following questions:
 - a. What is the principal position of Muhtar Kent?
 - b. What was the salary paid to Mr. Kent during the year ended December 31, 2015?

Judgment
Case 3-11

 Debt versus
 equity

● LO3-7

A common problem facing any business entity is the debt versus equity decision. When funds are required to obtain assets, should debt or equity financing be used? This decision also is faced when a company is initially formed. What will be the mix of debt versus equity in the initial capital structure? The characteristics of debt are very different from those of equity as are the financial implications of using one method of financing as opposed to the other.

Cherokee Plastics Corporation is formed by a group of investors to manufacture household plastic products. Their initial capitalization goal is \$50,000,000. That is, the incorporators have decided to raise \$50,000,000 to acquire the initial assets of the company. They have narrowed down the financing mix alternatives to two:

1. All equity financing
2. \$20,000,000 in debt financing and \$30,000,000 in equity financing

No matter which financing alternative is chosen, the corporation expects to be able to generate a 10% annual return, before payment of interest and income taxes, on the \$50,000,000 in assets acquired. The interest rate on debt would be 8%. The effective income tax rate will be approximately 50%.

Alternative 2 will require specified interest and principal payments to be made to the creditors at specific dates. The interest portion of these payments (interest expense) will reduce the taxable income of the corporation and hence the amount of income tax the corporation will pay. The all-equity alternative requires no specified payments to be made to suppliers of capital. The corporation is not legally liable to make distributions to its owners. If the board of directors does decide to make a distribution, it is not an expense of the corporation and does not reduce taxable income and hence the taxes the corporation pays.

Required:

1. Prepare abbreviated income statements that compare first-year profitability for each of the two alternatives.
2. Which alternative would be expected to achieve the highest first-year profits? Why?
3. Which alternative would provide the highest rate of return on shareholders' equity? Why?
4. What other related implications of the decision should be considered?

Analysis
Case 3-12

 Obtain and
 critically evaluate
 an actual annual
 report

 ● LO3-4, LO3-6
 through LO3-8

Financial reports are the primary means by which corporations report their performance and financial condition. Financial statements are one component of the annual report mailed to their shareholders and to interested others.

Required:

Obtain an annual report from a corporation with which you are familiar. Using techniques you learned in this chapter and any analysis you consider useful, respond to the following questions:

1. Do the firm's auditors provide a clean opinion on the financial statements?
2. Has the company made changes in any accounting methods it uses?
3. Have there been any subsequent events, errors and fraud, illegal acts, or related-party transactions that have a material effect on the company's financial position?
4. What are two trends in the company's operations or capital resources that management considers significant to the company's future?
5. Is the company engaged in more than one significant line of business? If so, compare the relative profitability of the different segments.
6. How stable are the company's operations?
7. Has the company's situation deteriorated or improved with respect to liquidity, solvency, asset management, and profitability?

Note: You can obtain a copy of an annual report from a local company, from a friend who is a shareholder, from the investor relations department of the corporation, from a friendly stockbroker, or from EDGAR (Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval) on the Internet (www.sec.gov).

Real World Financials

Analysis**Case 3–13**

Obtain and compare annual reports from companies in the same industry

- LO3–4, LO3–7, LO3–8

Real World Financials

Insight concerning the performance and financial condition of a company often comes from evaluating its financial data in comparison with other firms in the same industry.

Required:

Obtain annual reports from three corporations in the same primary industry. Using techniques you learned in this chapter and any analysis you consider useful, respond to the following questions:

1. Are there differences in accounting methods that should be taken into account when making comparisons?
2. How do earnings trends compare in terms of both the direction and stability of income?
3. Which of the three firms had the greatest earnings relative to resources available?
4. Which corporation has made most effective use of financial leverage?
5. Of the three firms, which seems riskiest in terms of its ability to pay short-term obligations? Long-term obligations?

Note: You can obtain copies of annual reports from friends who are shareholders, from the investor relations department of the corporations, from a friendly stockbroker, or from EDGAR (Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval) on the Internet (www.sec.gov).

Analysis**Case 3–14**

Balance sheet information

- LO3–2 through LO3–4

Real World Financials

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in the Connect library. This material also is available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. What categories does the company use to classify its assets? Its liabilities?
2. Why are investments shown as a current asset?
3. Explain the current liability "Accrued and other current liabilities."
4. What purpose do the disclosure notes serve?
5. What method does the company use to depreciate its property and equipment?

Analysis**Case 3–15**

Segment reporting concepts

- Appendix 3, LO3–9



Levens Co. operates in several distinct business segments. The company does not have any reportable foreign operations or major customers.

Required:

1. What is the purpose of operating segment disclosures?
2. Define an operating segment.
3. List the amounts to be reported by operating segment.
4. How would your answer to requirement 3 differ if Levens Co. prepares its segment disclosure according to International Financial Reporting Standards?

Ethics Case 3–16

Segment reporting

- Appendix 3

You are in your third year as an accountant with McCarver-Lynn Industries, a multidivisional company involved in the manufacturing, marketing, and sales of surgical prosthetic devices. After the fiscal year-end, you are working with the controller of the firm to prepare geographic area disclosures. Yesterday you presented her with the following summary information:

	(\$ in millions)					
	Domestic	Libya	Egypt	France	Cayman Islands	Total
Revenues	\$ 845	\$222	\$265	\$343	\$2,311	\$3,986
Operating income	145	76	88	21	642	972
Assets	1,005	301	290	38	285	1,919

Upon returning to your office after lunch, you find the following memo:

Nice work. Let's combine the data this way:

	(\$ in millions)			
	Domestic	Africa	Europe and Other Foreign	Total
Revenues	\$ 845	\$487	\$2,654	\$3,986
Capital expenditures	145	164	663	972
Assets	1,005	591	323	1,919

Because of political instability in North Africa, let's not disclose specific countries. In addition, we restructured most of our French sales and some of our U.S. sales to occur through our offices in the Cayman Islands. This allows us to avoid paying higher taxes in those countries. The Cayman Islands has a 0% corporate income tax rate. We don't want to highlight our ability to shift profits to avoid taxes.

Required:

Do you perceive an ethical dilemma? What would be the likely impact of following the controller's suggestions? Who would benefit? Who would be injured?

Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO3-2, LO3-3, LO3-8

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are provided in available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

- By what name does Target label its balance sheet?
- What amounts did Target report for the following items on January 30, 2016?
 - Current assets
 - Long-term assets
 - Total assets
 - Current liabilities
 - Long-term liabilities
 - Total liabilities
 - Total shareholders' equity
- What was Target's largest current asset? What was its largest current liability?
- Compute Target's current ratio and debt to equity ratio in 2016?
- Assuming Target's industry had an average current ratio of 1.0 and an average debt to equity ratio of 2.5, comment on Target's liquidity and long-term solvency.

Air France-KLM Case

- LO3-9



IFRS

Air France-KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are provided in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

Describe the apparent differences in the order of presentation of the components of the balance sheet between IFRS as applied by Air France-KLM (AF) and a typical balance sheet prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP.

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

4

The Income Statement, Comprehensive Income, and the Statement of Cash Flows

OVERVIEW

This chapter has three purposes: (1) to consider important issues dealing with the content, presentation, and disclosure of net income and other components of comprehensive income, (2) to provide an *overview* of the statement of cash flows, which is covered in depth in Chapter 21, and (3) to examine common ratios used in profitability analysis.

The income statement summarizes the profit-generating activities that occurred during a particular reporting period. Comprehensive income includes net income as well as other gains and losses that are not part of net income.

The statement of cash flows provides information about the cash receipts and cash disbursements of an enterprise's operating, investing, and financing activities that occurred during the period.

Profitability ratios measure how well a company manages its operations and utilizes resources to generate a profit. Profitability is a key metric in understanding the company's ability to generate cash in the future.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO4-1** Discuss the importance of income from continuing operations and describe its components. (p. 164)
- **LO4-2** Describe earnings quality and how it is impacted by management practices to alter reported earnings. (p. 168)
- **LO4-3** Discuss the components of operating and nonoperating income and their relationship to earnings quality. (p. 169)
- **LO4-4** Define what constitutes discontinued operations and describe the appropriate income statement presentation for these transactions. (p. 173)
- **LO4-5** Discuss additional reporting issues related to accounting changes, error corrections, and earnings per share (EPS). (p. 178)
- **LO4-6** Explain the difference between net income and comprehensive income and how we report components of the difference. (p. 181)
- **LO4-7** Describe the purpose of the statement of cash flows. (p. 185)
- **LO4-8** Identify and describe the various classifications of cash flows presented in a statement of cash flows. (p. 186)
- **LO4-9** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to the income statement, statement of comprehensive income, and statement of cash flows. (pp. 168, 182, 191, and 202)
- **LO4-10** Identify and calculate the common ratios used to assess profitability. (p. 193)



© Onoky/SuperStock

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Abbott Laboratories

Your friend, Becky Morgan, just received a generous gift from her grandfather. Accompanying a warm letter were 200 shares of stock of **Abbott Laboratories**, a global health care company, along with the most recent annual financial statements of the company. Becky knows that you are an accounting major and pleads with you to explain some items in the company's income statement. "I remember studying the income statement in my introductory accounting course," says Becky, "but I am still confused. What is this item *discontinued operations*? I also read in the annual report the company has *restructuring costs*? These don't sound good. Are they something I should worry about? We studied earnings per share

briefly, but what does *earnings per common share—diluted* mean?" You agree to try to help.

ABBOTT LABORATORIES AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES Statements of Earnings For the Year Ended December 31 (\$ in millions, except per share data)

	2015	2014
Net sales	\$20,405	\$20,247
Costs and expenses:		
Cost of products sold	8,747	9,218
Amortization of intangible assets	601	555
Research and development expenses	1,405	1,345
Selling, general and administrative	6,785	6,530
Operating income	2,867	2,599
Other income (deductions)	316	(81)
Income from continuing operations before income taxes	3,183	2,518
Provision for taxes on income	577	797
Income from continuing operations	2,606	1,721
Income from discontinued operations, net of tax	1,817	563
Net income	<u>\$ 4,423</u>	<u>\$ 2,284</u>
Earnings per common share—basic:		
Continuing operations	\$ 1.73	\$ 1.13
Discontinued operations	1.21	0.37
Net income	<u>\$ 2.94</u>	<u>\$ 1.50</u>
Earnings per common share—diluted:		
Continuing operations	\$ 1.72	\$ 1.12
Discontinued operations	1.20	0.37
Net income	<u>\$ 2.92</u>	<u>\$ 1.49</u>

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. How would you explain restructuring costs to Becky? Are restructuring costs something Becky should worry about? (p. 170)
2. Explain to Becky what is meant by discontinued operations and describe to her how that item is reported in an income statement. (p. 173)
3. Describe to Becky the difference between basic and diluted earnings per share. (p. 180)

QUESTIONS

In Chapter 1, we discussed the critical role of financial accounting information in allocating resources within our economy. Ideally, resources should be allocated to private enterprises that will (1) provide the goods and services our society desires and (2) at the same time provide a fair rate of return to those who supply the resources. A company will be able to achieve these goals only if it can generate enough cash to stay in business. A company's ability to generate cash relates to its ability to sell products and services for amounts greater than the costs of providing those products and services (that is, generate a profit).

Two financial statements that are critical for understanding the company's ability to earn profits and generate cash in the future are as follows:

1. **Income statement** (also called *statement of operations* or *statement of earnings*).
2. **Statement of cash flows.**

The **income statement** reports a company's profit during a particular reporting period. Profit equals revenues and gains minus expenses and losses. A few types of gains and losses are excluded from the income statement but are included in the broader concept of **comprehensive income**. We refer to these other gains and losses as **other comprehensive income (OCI)**.

The **statement of cash flows** provides information about the cash receipts and cash payments of a company during a particular reporting period. The difference between cash receipts and cash payments represents the change in cash for the period. To help investors and creditors better understand the sources and uses of cash during the period, the statement of cash flows distinguishes among operating, investing, and financing activities.

PART A

The Income Statement and Comprehensive Income

Before we discuss the specific components of an income statement in much depth, let's take a quick look at the general makeup of the statement. Illustration 4–1 offers an income statement for McAllister's Manufacturing, a hypothetical company, that you can refer to as we proceed through the chapter. At this point, our objective is only to gain a general perspective on the items reported and classifications contained in corporate income statements. In addition, each income statement should include in the heading the name of the company, the title of the statement, and the date or time period. McAllister's income statement is for the year ended December 31. This means that amounts in the income statement are the result of transactions from January 1 to December 31 of that year. In reality, many companies have reporting periods (often referred to as *fiscal years*) that end in months other than December, as you'll see demonstrated later in this chapter. Illustration 4–1 shows comparative income statements for two consecutive years.

Let's first look closer at the components of net income. At the end of this part, we'll see how net income fits within the concept of comprehensive income and how comprehensive income is reported.

Income from Continuing Operations

Revenues, Expenses, Gains, and Losses

● LO4–1

Income from continuing operations includes the revenues, expenses, gains and losses from operations that are more likely to continue into the future.

Unlike the balance sheet, which is a position statement *at a point in time*, the income statement measures activity *over a period of time*. The income statement reports the revenues, expenses, gains, and losses that have occurred during the reporting period. For example, if a company reports revenues of \$100 million in its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018, this means that the company had revenue transactions from January 1, 2018, to December 31, 2018, equal to \$100 million. Next, we will formally define each of the elements of the income statement.

Revenues are inflows of resources resulting from providing goods or services to customers. For merchandising companies like **Walmart**, the main source of revenue is sales

Illustration 4-1

Income Statement

**McAllister's Manufacturing
Income Statement**

(\$ in millions, except per share data)

		Year Ended December 31	
		2018	2017
Income from Continuing Operations	Sales revenue	\$1,450.6	\$1,380.0
	Cost of goods sold	832.6	800.4
	Gross profit	618.0	579.6
	Operating expenses:		
	Selling	123.5	110.5
	General and administrative	147.8	139.1
	Research and development	55.0	65.0
	Restructuring costs	125.0	—
	Total operating expenses	451.3	314.6
	Operating income	166.7	265.0
	Other income (expense):		
	Interest income	12.4	11.1
	Interest expense	(25.9)	(24.8)
	Gain on sale of investments	18.0	19.0
Discontinued Operations	Income from continuing operations before income taxes	171.2	270.3
	Income tax expense	59.9	94.6
	Income from continuing operations	111.3	175.7
	Discontinued operations:		
Earnings per Share	Loss from operations of discontinued component (including gain on disposal in 2018 of \$47)	(7.6)	(45.7)
	Income tax benefit	2.0	13.0
	Loss on discontinued operations	(5.6)	(32.7)
	Net income	\$ 105.7	\$ 143.0
Earnings per Share	Earnings per common share—basic:		
	Income from continuing operations	\$ 2.14	\$ 3.38
	Discontinued operations	(0.11)	(0.63)
	Net income	\$ 2.03	\$ 2.75
	Earnings per common share—diluted:		
	Income from continuing operations	\$ 2.06	\$ 3.25
Earnings per Share	Discontinued operations	(0.10)	(0.61)
	Net income	\$ 1.96	\$ 2.64

revenue derived from selling merchandise. Service firms such as **FedEx** and **State Farm Insurance** generate revenue by providing services.

Expenses are outflows of resources incurred while generating revenue. They represent the costs of providing goods and services. When recognizing expenses, we attempt to establish a causal relationship between revenues and expenses. If causality can be determined, expenses are reported in the same period that the related revenue is recognized. If a causal relationship cannot be established, we relate the expense to a particular period, allocate it over several periods, or expense it as incurred.

Gains and **losses** are increases or decreases in equity from peripheral or incidental transactions of an entity. In general, these gains and losses result from changes in equity that do not result directly from operations but nonetheless are related to those activities. For example, the sale of equipment, buildings, or other operating assets for an amount that differs from their recorded amount results in a gain or loss.

To understand a company's ability to generate cash in the future, investors and creditors assess which components of net income are likely to continue into the future. **Income from continuing operations** includes revenues, expenses (including income taxes), gains, and

losses arising from operations that are more likely to continue. In contrast, income from *discontinued operations* will not continue into the future.¹

The three major components of income from continuing operations include:

1. Operating income
2. Nonoperating income
3. Income tax expense

Operating income versus Nonoperating Income

Operating income includes revenues and expenses directly related to the *primary revenue-generating activities* of the company. For example, operating income for a manufacturing company includes sales revenue from selling the products it manufactures as well as all expenses related to this activity.² As shown in Illustration 4–1, operating income is often presented as gross profit (sales revenue minus cost of goods sold) minus other operating expenses.

Nonoperating income relates to *peripheral or incidental activities* of the company. For example, a manufacturer would include interest and dividend revenue, gains and losses from selling investments, and interest expense in nonoperating income. These items are not directly related to the primary revenue-generating activities of a manufacturing company. On the other hand, a financial institution like a bank would consider those items to be a part of operating income because they relate to the primary revenue-generating activities for that type of business. As shown in Illustration 4–1, nonoperating items often are included in the income statement under the heading *Other income (expense)*.

Income Tax Expense

Income tax expense is reported in a separate line in the income statement.

Income taxes are levied on taxpayers in proportion to the amount of taxable income that is reported to taxing authorities. Like individuals, corporations are income-tax-paying entities.³ Because of the importance and size of income tax expense (sometimes called *provision for income taxes*), it always is reported in a separate line in corporate income statements. When tax rules and GAAP differ regarding the timing of revenue or expense recognition, the actual payment of taxes may occur in a period different from when income tax expense is reported in the income statement. We discuss this and other issues related to accounting for income taxes in Chapter 16. At this point, consider income tax expense to be simply a percentage of income before taxes.

Illustration 4–2 presents the 2015 income statement for **Sherwin Williams Company**, a company that manufactures paint. Notice that Sherwin Williams distinguishes between operating income, nonoperating income, and income tax expense. Operating income includes revenues and expenses from primary business activities related to producing and selling paint. After operating income is determined, nonoperating items are added or subtracted to arrive at income before income taxes. For a paint manufacturer like Sherwin Williams, activities related to interest and investments are not primary operations and therefore are listed as nonoperating items. Finally, income tax expense is subtracted to arrive at net income.

Now let's consider the formats used to report the components of net income.

Income Statement Formats

No specific standards dictate how income from continuing operations must be displayed, so companies have considerable latitude in how they present the components of income from continuing operations. This flexibility has resulted in a variety of income statement

¹Discontinued operations are addressed in a subsequent section.

²In certain situations, operating income might also include gains and losses from selling equipment and other assets used in the manufacturing process. FASB ASC 360-10-45-5: Property, plant, and equipment—Overall—Other Presentation Matters (previously “Accounting for the Impairment of Long-Lived Assets and for Long-Lived Assets to Be Disposed Of,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 144* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2001)).

³Partnerships are not tax-paying entities. Their taxable income or loss is included in the taxable income of the individual partners.

Statement of Consolidated Income
(\$ in thousands, except per share data)

	Year ended December 31, 2015
Net sales	\$ 11,339,304
Cost of goods sold	5,780,078
Gross profit	5,559,226
Selling, general, and administrative expenses	3,943,786
Operating income	1,615,440
Interest expense	(61,791)
Interest and investment income	1,399
Other expenses	(6,082)
Income before income taxes	1,548,966
Income tax expense	495,117
Net income	\$ 1,053,849

Illustration 4-2

Income Statement—
Sherwin Williams Company

Real World Financials

presentations. However, we can identify two general approaches, the single-step and the multiple-step formats, that might be considered the two extremes, with the income statements of most companies falling somewhere in between.

The **single-step** format first lists all the revenues and gains included in income from continuing operations. Then, expenses and losses are grouped, subtotaled, and subtracted—in a single step—from revenues and gains to derive income from continuing operations. In a departure from that, though, companies usually report income tax expense in a separate line in the statement. Operating and nonoperating items are not separately classified. Illustration 4-3 shows an example of a single-step income statement for a hypothetical manufacturing company, Maxwell Gear Corporation.

A **single-step income statement format groups all revenues and gains together and all expenses and losses together.**

MAXWELL GEAR CORPORATION

Income Statement

For the Year Ended December 31, 2018

Revenues and gains:		
Sales	\$573,522	
Interest and dividends	26,400	
Gain on sale of investments	5,500	
Total revenues and gains		\$605,422
Expenses and losses:		
Cost of goods sold	\$302,371	
Selling	47,341	
General and administrative	24,888	
Research and development	16,300	
Interest	14,522	
Total expenses and losses		405,422
Income before income taxes		200,000
Income tax expense		80,000
Net income		\$120,000

Illustration 4-3

Single-Step Income
Statement

The **multiple-step** format reports a series of intermediate subtotals such as gross profit, operating income, and income before taxes. Most of the real-world income statements are in this format. Illustration 4-4 presents a multiple-step income statement for the Maxwell Gear Corporation.

A primary advantage of the multiple-step format is that, by separately classifying operating and nonoperating items, it provides information that might be useful in analyzing trends. Similarly, the classification of expenses by function also provides useful information. For example,

A **multiple-step income statement format includes a number of intermediate subtotals before arriving at income from continuing operations.**

Illustration 4-4

Multiple-Step Income Statement

MAXWELL GEAR CORPORATION			
Income Statement			
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018			
Sales revenue			\$573,522
Cost of goods sold			302,371
Gross profit			<u>271,151</u>
Operating expenses:			
Selling	\$47,341		
General and administrative	24,888		
Research and development	16,300		
Total operating expenses			<u>88,529</u>
Operating income			<u>182,622</u>
Other income (expense):			
Interest and dividend revenue	26,400		
Gain on sale of investments	5,500		
Interest expense	(14,522)		
Total other income, net			<u>17,378</u>
Income before income taxes			<u>200,000</u>
Income tax expense			<u>80,000</u>
Net income			<u><u>\$120,000</u></u>

reporting *gross profit* for merchandising companies highlights the important relationship between sales revenue and cost of goods sold. *Operating income* provides a measure of profitability for core (or normal) operations, a key performance measure for predicting the future profit-generating ability of the company. *Income before taxes* could be useful for comparing the performance of companies in different tax jurisdictions or comparing corporations (tax-paying entities) with sole proprietorships or partnerships (typically non-tax-paying entities).

It is important to note that the difference between the single-step and multiple-step income statement is one of presentation. The bottom line, *net income*, is the same regardless of the format used. Most companies use the multiple-step format. We use the multiple-step format for illustration purposes throughout the remainder of this chapter.



International Financial Reporting Standards

LO4-9

Income Statement Presentation. There are more similarities than differences between income statements prepared according to U.S. GAAP and those prepared applying international standards. Some of the differences are as follows:

- International standards require certain minimum information to be reported on the face of the income statement. U.S. GAAP has no minimum requirements.
- International standards allow expenses to be classified either by function (e.g., cost of goods sold, general and administrative, etc.), or by natural description (e.g., salaries, rent, etc.). SEC regulations require that expenses be classified by function.
- In the United States, the “bottom line” of the income statement usually is called either *net income* or *net loss*. The descriptive term for the bottom line of the income statement prepared according to international standards is either *profit* or *loss*.

Earnings Quality

LO4-2

Investors, creditors, and financial analysts are concerned with more than just the bottom line of the income statement—net income. The presentation of the components of net income and the related supplemental disclosures provide clues to the user of the statement in an assessment of *earnings quality*. Earnings quality is used as a framework for more in-depth discussions of operating and nonoperating income.

One meaning of **earnings quality** is the ability of reported earnings (income) to predict a company's future earnings. The relevance of any historical-based financial statement hinges on its predictive value. To enhance predictive value, analysts try to separate a company's *temporary earnings* from its *permanent earnings*. Temporary earnings effects result from transactions or events that are not likely to occur again in the foreseeable future or that are likely to have a different impact on earnings in the future. In contrast, permanent earnings relate to operations that are expected to generate similar profits in the future. Analysts begin their assessment of permanent earnings with income before discontinued operations, that is, income from continuing operations. Later in the chapter we address discontinued operations that, because of their nature, are required to be reported separately at the bottom of the income statement.

It would be a mistake, though, to assume that all items included in income from continuing operations reflect permanent earnings. Some income items that fall under this category may be temporary. In a sense, the label *continuing* may be misleading.

Earnings quality refers to the ability of reported earnings (income) to predict a company's future earnings.

Income Smoothing and Classification Shifting

An often-debated contention is that, within GAAP, managers have the power to change reported income by altering assumptions and estimates. And these alternatives are not always in the direction of higher income. Survey evidence suggests that managers often alter income upwards in one year but downward in other years.⁴ For example, in a year when income is high, managers may create reserves by overestimating certain expenses (such as future bad debts or warranties). These reserves reduce reported income in the current year. Then, in later years, they can use those reserves by underestimating expenses, which will increase reported income. By shifting income in this manner, managers effectively smooth the pattern in reported income over time, portraying a steadier income stream to investors, creditors, and other financial statement users.⁵

Management's *income smoothing* behavior is controversial. While some believe that a smoother income pattern helps investors and creditors to better predict future performance, others believe that managers are doing this to hide the true risk (volatility) of operations. By hiding this underlying volatility through manipulation of the income pattern over time, managers may be "fooling" investors and creditors into believing that the company's operations are lower-risk than they really are.

Income smoothing may help investors to predict future performance but it could also hide underlying risk.

Another way that managers affect reported income is through *classification shifting* in the income statement.⁶ The most common example of this involves misclassifying operating expenses as nonoperating expenses. By shifting operating expenses to a nonoperating expense classification (often referred to as "special charges" or "special items"), managers report fewer operating expenses and therefore higher operating income. This type of manipulation creates the appearance of stronger performance for core operations. While bottom-line net income remains unaffected, investors and creditors may believe the core business is stronger than it really is.

Classification shifting inflates core performance.

Operating Income and Earnings Quality

Should all items of revenue and expense included in operating income be considered indicative of a company's permanent earnings? No, not necessarily. Sometimes a company will have an unusual or infrequent event. Even though these events may be unlikely to occur again in the near future, we report them as part of operating income because they are so closely related to the company's core business.⁷

● LO4-3

⁴See, for example, Dichev, I., J. Graham, H. Campbell, and S. Rajgopal. 2013. "Earnings quality: Evidence from the field," *Journal of Accounting and Economics* 56, pp. 1–33.

⁵Graham, J., H. Campbell, and S. Rajgopal, 2005, "The economic implications of corporate financial reporting," *Journal of Accounting and Economics* 40, pp. 3–73.

⁶McVay, S., 2006, "Earnings Management Using Classification Shifting: An Examination of Core Earnings and Special Items," *The Accounting Review* 81, pp. 501–531.

⁷Until recently, GAAP required events that were both unusual and infrequent to be classified as "extraordinary items" and reported net of tax after income from continuing operations. As part of the FASB's Simplification Initiative, Accounting Standards Update No. 2015-01 eliminated the extraordinary classification. International accounting standards also do not recognize the extraordinary classification.

What kind of items might be included in this category? Look closely at the partial income statements of **The Hershey Company**, the largest producer of chocolate in North America, presented in Illustration 4–5. Which items appear unusual? Certainly not net sales, cost of sales, or selling, marketing and administrative expenses. But what about “Goodwill and other intangible asset impairment charges” and “Business realignment charges”? Let’s consider both.

Illustration 4–5

Partial Income Statement—
The Hershey Company

Real World Financials

Income Statements (in part) (\$ in thousands)

	Year Ended	
	December 31, 2015	December 31, 2014
Net sales	\$7,386,626	\$7,421,768
Cost of sales	4,003,951	4,085,602
Selling, marketing and administrative expenses	1,969,308	1,898,284
Goodwill and other intangible asset impairment charges	280,802	15,900
Business realignment charges	94,806	29,721
Operating profit	<u>\$1,037,759</u>	<u>\$1,392,261</u>

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 163

Restructuring costs include costs associated with shutdown or relocation of facilities or downsizing of operations.

GAAP requires that restructuring costs be recognized only in the period incurred.

Should restructuring costs be considered part of a company’s permanent earnings stream?

RESTRUCTURING COSTS. It’s not unusual for a company to reorganize its operations to attain greater efficiency. When this happens, the company often incurs significant associated **restructuring costs** (sometimes referred to as *reorganization costs* or *realignment costs*). Restructuring costs are associated with management’s plans to materially change the scope of business operations or the manner in which they are conducted.⁸ For example, facility closings and related employee layoffs translate into costs incurred for severance pay and relocation costs. **The Hershey Company** had restructuring costs related to reorganization of operations in Brazil to enhance distribution of the company’s products, as well as employee severance costs related to eliminating several positions as part of the company’s Productivity Initiative.

Restructuring costs are recognized in the period the exit or disposal cost obligation actually is incurred. Suppose, as part of a restructuring plan, employees to be terminated are offered various benefits but only if they complete a certain period of work for the company. In that case, a liability for termination benefits, and corresponding expense, should be accrued in the required period(s) of work. On the other hand, if future work by the employee is not required to receive the termination benefits, the liability and corresponding expense for benefits are recognized at the time the company communicates the arrangement to employees. Similarly, costs associated with closing facilities and relocating employees are recognized when goods or services associated with those activities are received.

Because it usually takes considerable time to sell or terminate a line of business, or to close a location or facility, many restructuring costs represent long-term liabilities. GAAP requires initial measurement of these liabilities to be at fair value, which often is determined as the present value of future estimated cash outflows. Companies also are required to provide many disclosures in the notes, including the years over which the restructuring is expected to take place.

Now that we understand the nature of restructuring costs, we can address the important question: Should financial statement users attempting to forecast future earnings consider these costs to be part of a company’s permanent earnings stream, or are they unlikely to occur again? There is no easy answer. For example, Hershey has reported some amount of restructuring costs in each year from 2005–2015. Will the company incur these costs again in the near future? Probably. A recent survey reports that of the 500 companies surveyed, 40% included restructuring costs in their income statements.⁹ The inference: a financial statement user must interpret restructuring charges in light of a company’s past history and financial statement note disclosures which outline the plan and the period over which it will

⁸FASB ASC 420-10-20: Exit or Disposal Cost Obligations—Overall-Glossary (previously “Accounting for Costs Associated with Exit or Disposal Activities,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 146* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2002)).

⁹U.S. GAAP *Financial Statements—Best Practices in Presentation and Disclosure*–2013 (New York: AICPA, 2013).

take place. In general, the more frequently these sorts of unusual charges occur, the more appropriate it is that financial statement users include them in their estimation of the company's permanent earnings stream.¹⁰

OTHER UNUSUAL ITEMS. Two other expenses in Hershey's income statements that warrant additional scrutiny are *goodwill impairments* and *asset impairments*. Any long-lived asset, whether tangible or intangible, should have its balance reduced if there has been a significant impairment of value. We explore property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets in Chapters 10 and 11. After discussing this topic in more depth in those chapters, we revisit the concept of earnings quality as it relates to asset impairment.

These aren't the only components of operating expenses that call into question this issue of earnings quality. For example, in Chapter 9 we discuss the write-down of inventory that can occur with obsolete or damaged inventory. Other possibilities include losses from natural disasters such as earthquakes and floods and gains and losses from litigation settlements. Earnings quality also is influenced by the way a company records income from investments (Chapter 12) and accounts for its pension plans (Chapter 17).

Earnings quality is affected by revenue issues as well. As an example, suppose that toward the end of its fiscal year, a company loses a major customer that can't be replaced. That would mean the current year's revenue number includes a component that will not occur again next year. Of course, in addition to its effect on revenues, losing the customer would have implications for certain related expenses and net income.

Another issue affecting earnings quality is the intentional misstatement of revenue. In 2014, the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) charged **AgFeed Industries** with reporting nonexistent revenues. The allegations include executives faking the sale of hogs that didn't really exist. These executives tried to hide their actions by saying the fake hogs died. Also, because larger hogs can be sold for higher prices, the executives inflated the weights of actual hogs sold, inflating sales revenues.

Companies also misstate revenue by accelerating the timing of its recognition. This happens when companies record revenue before actually performing its obligation to the customer. In 2014, the SEC alleged that **Saba Software** accelerated the timing of revenue by recognizing consulting revenue prior to actually providing those services to its clients. This manipulation was done to help the company achieve quarterly revenue targets. We explore additional issues of revenue recognition in Chapter 5. Now, though, let's discuss earnings quality issues related to *nonoperating* items.

Nonoperating Income and Earnings Quality

Most of the components of earnings in an income statement relate directly to the ordinary, continuing operations of the company. Some, though, such as interest and gains or losses on the sale of investments or property and equipment relate only tangentially to normal operations. We refer to these as nonoperating items. How should these items be interpreted in terms of their relationship to future earnings? Are these expenses likely to occur again next year? Investors need to understand that some of these items may recur, such as interest expense, while others are less likely to recur, such as gains and losses.

Home Depot's partial income statement is shown in Illustration 4–6. There are two nonoperating amounts reported after operating income. The first one is "Interest and investment income" that primarily includes gains on the sale of investments in another company's stock. Because Home Depot's primary business includes selling home improvement products, sales of investments are not considered normal operations. Therefore, Home Depot reports these amounts as nonoperating items. Home Depot disclosed in the notes of its 2016 and 2015 reports that gains on the sale of investments were \$144 million and \$323 million, respectively. Once these investments are sold, their gains are not expected to continue into future profitability, so investors would not consider these gains to be a permanent component of profit. The remaining relatively minor amount in this nonoperating category comes from interest income.

Unusual items included in operating income require investigation to determine their permanent or temporary nature.

Gains and losses from the sale of assets typically relate only tangentially to normal operations.

¹⁰ Arthur Levitt, Jr. "The Numbers Game," *The CPA Journal*, December 1998, p. 16.

Illustration 4-6

Income Statements (in part)—The Home Depot, Inc.

Real World Financials

Income Statements (in part)

(\$ in millions)

	Year Ended	
	January 31, 2016	February 1, 2015
Operating income	\$11,774	\$10,469
Interest and investment income	166	337
Interest expense	(919)	(830)
Income before taxes	<u>\$11,021</u>	<u>\$ 9,976</u>

Another large nonoperating item reported by most companies is interest expense. In its 2016 report, Home Depot reported \$919 million in interest expense. The company also reported long-term debt of nearly \$21 billion in the balance sheet. Because this long-term debt will not be repaid for several years, the company will have to pay interest for several years. Therefore, interest expense represents a type of nonoperating item that is expected by investors to be a more permanent component of future profitability.

Non-GAAP Earnings

Companies are required to report earnings based on Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP). This number includes *all revenues and expenses*. Most companies, however, also voluntarily provide **non-GAAP earnings** when they announce annual or quarterly earnings. Non-GAAP earnings *exclude certain expenses* and sometimes certain revenues. Common expenses excluded are restructuring costs, acquisition costs, write-downs of impaired assets, and stock-based compensation. Supposedly, non-GAAP earnings are management's view of "permanent earnings," in the sense of being a better long-run measure of its company's performance.

Nearly all major companies report non-GAAP earnings. For example, **Hewlett-Packard Company** reported GAAP earnings in 2015 of \$4.6 billion or \$2.48 per share. At the same time, the company announced that its non-GAAP earnings for the year were \$6.6 billion or \$3.59 per share (nearly 50% higher than GAAP earnings). The difference in earnings numbers relates primarily to management excluding certain restructuring charges, amortization of intangible assets, and employee separation costs in the calculation of non-GAAP earnings.

Non-GAAP earnings are controversial because determining which expenses to exclude is at the discretion of management. By removing certain expenses from reported GAAP earnings, management has the potential to report misleadingly higher profits. In 2015, companies in the S&P 500 reported non-GAAP earnings that were 33% *higher* than GAAP earnings.¹¹ Some companies that reported non-GAAP profits actually had GAAP losses. The issue is: Do non-GAAP earnings represent management's true belief of core, long-term performance (so excluding certain temporary expenses is helpful to investors), or do non-GAAP earnings represent management's attempt to mislead investors into believing the company is more profitable than it actually is (and therefore harming investors)? Many are concerned that the latter is more likely.

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act addressed non-GAAP earnings in its Section 401. One of the act's important provisions requires that if non-GAAP earnings are included in any periodic or other report filed with the SEC or in any public disclosure or press release, the company also must provide a reconciliation with earnings determined according to GAAP.¹²

We now turn our attention to discontinued operations, an item that is not part of a company's permanent earnings and, appropriately, is excluded from continuing operations.

Many companies voluntarily provide non-GAAP earnings—management's assessment of permanent earnings.

Non-GAAP earnings are controversial.

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires reconciliation between non-GAAP earnings and earnings determined according to GAAP.

¹¹"S&P 500 Earnings: Far Worse Than Advertised," *Wall Street Journal* (February 24, 2016).

¹²The Congress of the United States of America, *The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002*, Section 401 (b) (2), Washington, D.C., 2004.

Discontinued Operations

Sometimes a company decides to discontinue (or sell) part of its business. For example, in 2015 **Abbott Laboratories** decided to sell its businesses related to developed markets branded generic pharmaceuticals and animal health. Obviously, profits from these discontinued operations *will not continue*. Because profits from these operations are considered to have a material effect¹³ on the income statement, Abbott Laboratories reported them separately to allow statement users to focus on continuing operations. We saw in the introduction of this chapter how Abbott Laboratories reported discontinued operations separately, below income from continuing operations.

Although a company has considerable flexibility in reporting income from *continuing operations*, the presentation of **discontinued operations** is mandated as follows (using simple numbers to demonstrate the reporting):¹⁴

Income from continuing operations before income taxes	\$1,000
Income tax expense (assuming 40%)	400
Income from continuing operations	600
Income from discontinued operations, \$100 net of \$40 tax expense	60
Net income	<u>\$ 660</u>

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 163

The objective of this format is to inform financial statements users of which components of net income are continuing. We do this by separately reporting income from continuing operations (**\$600**) and income from discontinued operations (**\$60**). All else the same, investors should not expect next year's net income to be \$660, because only \$600 of profits from this year are part of continuing operations.

Separate reporting includes taxes as well. The income tax expense associated with continuing operations (\$400) is reported separately from the income tax of discontinued operations (\$40). Also, in the case that there is a loss from discontinued operations, there would be an *income tax benefit* (instead of income tax expense); losses from discontinued operations are tax deductible and would reduce overall taxes owed, thereby providing a benefit. The process of associating income tax effects with the income statement components that create those effects is referred to as *intrapersonal tax allocation*, something we discuss in depth in Chapter 16.

What are some examples of discontinued operations? **Pfizer Inc.** is a global biopharmaceutical company. In addition to its drug and consumer healthcare divisions, the company also operated a nutrition business prior to 2013 focusing primarily on infants. Late in 2012 the nutrition business was sold to **Nestlé** for \$11.85 billion. In 2013 **Campbell Soup Company** sold its European simple meals business to **Soppa Investments**. **Google** sold its Motorola Mobility smartphone subsidiary to **Lenovo** for \$2.9 billion in 2013. Pfizer's sale of its nutrition business, Campbell Soup's sale of its European simple meals business, and Google's sale of its smartphone subsidiary are examples of discontinued operations.

Income from discontinued operations (and its tax effect) are reported separately.

What Constitutes a Discontinued Operation?

Discontinued operations are reported when:

1. A *component of an entity* or group of components has been sold or disposed of, or is considered held for sale,
2. If the disposal represents a *strategic shift* that has, or will have, a major effect on a company's operations and financial results.¹⁵

¹³We discussed the concept of materiality in Chapter 1.

¹⁴The presentation of discontinued operations is the same for single-step and multiple-step income statement formats. The single-step versus multiple-step distinction applies to items included in income from continuing operations.

¹⁵A discontinued operation is also defined as business or nonprofit activity that is considered held for sale *when acquired* (FASB ASC 205-20-15-2). A business is a set of activities and assets that is managed for purposes of providing economic benefits to the company. A nonprofit activity is similar to a business but is not intended to provide goods and services to customers at a profit.



For the first item, a *component of an entity* includes activities and cash flows that can be clearly distinguished, operationally and for financial reporting purposes, from the rest of the company. A component could include an operating segment, a reporting unit, a subsidiary, or an asset group.¹⁶

For the second item, whether the disposal represents a *strategic shift* requires the judgment of company management. Examples of possible strategic shifts include the disposal of operations in a major geographical area, a major line of business, a major equity method investment,¹⁷ or other major parts of the company.

As part of the continuing process to converge U.S. GAAP and international standards, the FASB and IASB have developed a common definition and a common set of disclosures for discontinued operations.¹⁸

Reporting Discontinued Operations

By definition, the income or loss stream from a discontinued operation no longer will continue. A financial statement user is more interested in the results of their operations that will continue. It is informative, then, for companies to separate the effects of the discontinued operations from the results of operations that will continue. For this reason, the revenues, expenses, gains, losses, and income tax related to a *discontinued* operation must be removed from *continuing* operations and reported separately *for all years presented*.

For example, even though Abbott Laboratories did not sell its generic pharmaceuticals and animal health businesses until 2015, it's important for comparative purposes to separate the effects for any prior years presented. This allows an apples-to-apples comparison of income from *continuing* operations. So, in its 2015 three-year comparative income statements, the 2014 and 2013 income statements reclassified income from generic pharmaceuticals and animal health businesses to income from discontinued operations. In addition, there was a disclosure note to inform readers that prior years were reclassified.¹⁹

Sometimes a discontinued component actually has been sold by the end of a reporting period. Often, though, the disposal transaction has not yet been completed as of the end of the reporting period. We consider these two possibilities next.

WHEN THE COMPONENT HAS BEEN SOLD. When the discontinued component is sold before the end of the reporting period, the reported income effects of a discontinued operation will include two elements.

1. Income or loss from operations (revenues, expenses, gains, and losses) of the component from the beginning of the reporting period *to the disposal date*
2. Gain or loss on disposal of the component's assets

The first element would consist primarily of income from daily operations of this discontinued component of the company. This would include typical revenues from sales to customers and ordinary expenses such as cost of goods sold, salaries, rent, and insurance. The second element includes gains and losses on the sale of assets, such as selling a building or office equipment of this discontinued component.

These two elements can be combined or reported separately, net of their tax effects. If combined, the gain or loss component must be indicated. In our illustrations to follow, we combine the income effects. Illustration 4–7 describes a situation in which the discontinued component is sold before the end of the reporting period.

Notice that an *income tax benefit* occurs because a *loss* reduces taxable income, saving the company \$800,000 in taxes.

On the other hand, suppose Duluth's discontinued division had a pretax loss from operations of only \$1,000,000 (and still had a gain on disposal of \$3,000,000). In this case, the

¹⁶FASB ASC 205-20-20: Presentation of Financial Statements-Discontinued Operations-Glossary.

¹⁷Equity method investments are discussed in Chapter 12.

¹⁸"Noncurrent Assets Held for Sale and Discontinued Operations," *International Financial Reporting Standard No. 5* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

¹⁹The presentation of discontinued operations in comparative income statements enhances the qualitative characteristics of comparability and consistency. We discussed the concepts of comparability and consistency in Chapter 1.

Illustration 4-7

Discontinued Operations—Loss

In October 2018, management of Duluth Holding Company decided to sell one of its divisions that qualifies as a separate component according to generally accepted accounting principles. The division was sold on December 18, 2018. Consider the following facts related to the division:

1. From January 1 through disposal, the division had a pretax loss from operations of \$5,000,000.
2. The assets of the division had a net selling price of \$15,000,000 and book value of \$12,000,000.

Duluth's income statement for 2018, beginning with after-tax income from continuing operations of \$20,000,000, would be reported as follows (assuming a 40% tax rate):

Income from continuing operations		\$ 20,000,000
Discontinued operations:		
Loss from operations of discontinued component (including gain on disposal of \$3,000,000*)	\$(2,000,000)[†]	
Income tax benefit	800,000[‡]	
Loss on discontinued operations		(1,200,000)
Net income		\$18,800,000

*Net selling price of \$15 million less book value of \$12 million

[†]Loss from operations of \$5 million less gain on disposal of \$3 million

[‡]\$2,000,000 × 40%

combined amount of \$2,000,000 represents *income* from operations of the discontinued component, and the company would have an additional *income tax expense* of \$800,000, as demonstrated below.

Income from continuing operations		\$20,000,000
Discontinued operations:		
Income from operations of discontinued component (including gain on disposal of \$3,000,000*)	\$2,000,000[†]	
Income tax expense	(800,000)[‡]	
Income on discontinued operations		1,200,000
Net income		\$21,200,000

*Net selling price of \$15 million less book value of \$12 million

[†]Loss from operations of \$1 million plus gain on disposal of \$3 million

[‡]\$2,000,000 × 40%

Additional Consideration

For reporting discontinued operations in the income statement, some companies separate the income/loss from operations and the gain/loss on disposal. For example, in Illustration 4-7, Duluth Holding Company could have reported the \$5,000,000 loss from operations separately from the \$3,000,000 gain on disposal, with each shown net of their tax effects.

Income from continuing operations		\$20,000,000
Discontinued operations:		
Loss from operations (net of tax benefit)	\$(3,000,000)[†]	
Gain on disposal (net of tax expense)	1,800,000[‡]	
Loss on discontinued operations		(1,200,000)
Net income		\$18,800,000

[†]\$5,000,000 − (\$5,000,000 × 40%)

[‡]\$15,000,000 − \$12,000,000 = \$3,000,000; \$3,000,000 − (\$3,000,000 × 40%) = \$1,800,000

(continued)

(concluded)

The amount of the loss on discontinued operations of **\$1,200,000** is the same with either presentation. In practice, most companies report on the face of the income statement a single net amount for discontinued operations, with a note disclosure providing details of the calculation.

Income from continuing operations	\$20,000,000
Loss on discontinued operations, net of tax	(1,200,000)
Net income	<u>\$18,800,000</u>

If a component to be discontinued has not yet been sold, its income effects, including any impairment loss, usually still are reported separately as discontinued operations.

WHEN THE COMPONENT IS CONSIDERED HELD FOR SALE. What if a company has decided to discontinue a component but, when the reporting period ends, the component has not yet been sold? If the situation indicates that the component is likely to be sold within a year, the component is considered “held for sale.”²⁰ In that case, the income effects of the discontinued operation still are reported, but the two components of the reported amount are modified as follows:

1. Income or loss from operations (revenues, expenses, gains and losses) of the component from the beginning of the reporting period *to the end of the reporting period*
2. An impairment loss if the book value (sometimes called carrying value or carrying amount) of the assets of the component is more than fair value minus cost to sell

The two income elements can be combined or reported separately, net of their tax effects. In addition, if the amounts are combined and there is an impairment loss, the loss must be disclosed, either parenthetically on the face of the statement or in a disclosure note. Consider the example in Illustration 4–8.

Illustration 4–8

Discontinued Operations—
Impairment Loss

In October 2018, management of Duluth Holding Company decided to sell one of its divisions that qualifies as a separate component according to generally accepted accounting principles. On December 31, 2018, the end of the company’s fiscal year, **the division had not yet been sold**. Consider the following facts related to the division:

1. For the year, the division reported a pretax loss from operations of \$5,000,000.
2. On December 31, assets of the division had a book value of \$12,000,000 and a fair value, minus anticipated cost to sell, of \$9,000,000.

Duluth’s income statement for 2018, beginning with after-tax income from continuing operations of \$20,000,000, would be reported as follows (assuming a 40% tax rate):

Income from continuing operations	\$20,000,000
Discontinued operations:	
Loss from operations of discontinued component	\$(8,000,000)[†]
(including impairment loss of \$3,000,000[‡])	
Income tax benefit	<u>3,200,000[‡]</u>
Loss on discontinued operations	(4,800,000)
Net income	<u><u>\$15,200,000</u></u>

*Book value of \$12 million less fair value net of cost to sell of \$9 million

[†]Loss from operations of \$5 million plus impairment loss of \$3 million

[‡]\$8,000,000 × 40%

Also, the net-of-tax income or loss from operations of the component being discontinued is reported separately from continuing operations for any prior year that is presented for comparison purposes along with the 2018 income statement. Then, in the year of actual

²⁰Six criteria are used to determine whether the component is likely to be sold and therefore considered “held for sale.” You can find these criteria in FASB ASC 360-10-45-9: Property, Plant, and Equipment—Overall—Other Presentation Matters—Long-Lived Assets Classified as Held for Sale (previously “Accounting for the Impairment or Disposal of Long-Lived Assets,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 144* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2001), par. 30).

disposal, the discontinued operations section of the income statement will include the final gain or loss on the sale of the discontinued segment's assets. The gain or loss is determined relative to the revised book values of the assets after the impairment write-down.

Important information about discontinued operations, whether sold or held for sale, is reported in a disclosure note. The note provides additional details about the discontinued component, including its identity, its major classes of assets and liabilities, the major revenues and expenses constituting pretax income or loss from operations, the reason for the discontinuance, and the expected manner of disposition if held for sale.²¹

In Illustration 4–8, if the fair value of the division's assets minus cost to sell exceeded the book value of \$12,000,000, there is no impairment loss and the income effects of the discontinued operation would include only the loss from operations of \$5,000,000, less the income tax benefit.

The balance sheet is affected, too. The assets and liabilities of the component considered held for sale are reported at the lower of their book value or fair value minus cost to sell. And, because it's not in use, an asset classified as held for sale is no longer reported as part of property, plant, and equipment or intangible assets and is not depreciated or amortized.²²

The sales of discontinued operations by **Abbott Laboratories** were completed by the end of 2015, but some assets and liabilities of the sold businesses had not yet been transferred. The 2015 year-end balance sheet reported **\$107** million in "Current assets held for disposition," and **\$373** million in "Current liabilities held for disposition." Information about the discontinued operations was included in the disclosure note shown in Illustration 4–9.

NOTE 3—DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS (in part)

The following is a summary of the assets and liabilities held for disposition:

(\$ in millions)	December 31, 2015
Cash and Trade receivables, net	\$ 54
Total inventories	43
Prepaid expenses and other receivables	8
Other assets	2
Current assets held for disposition	\$107
Trade accounts payable	\$359
Salaries, wages, commissions and other accrued liabilities	14
Current liabilities held for disposition	\$373

Illustration 4–9

Discontinued Operations
Disclosure—Abbott
Laboratories.

Real World Financials

Notice that the assets and liabilities held for sale are classified as *current* because the company expects to complete the transfer of these assets and liabilities in the next fiscal year.

INTERIM REPORTING. Remember that companies whose ownership shares are publicly traded in the United States must file quarterly reports with the Securities and Exchange Commission. If a component of an entity is considered held for sale at the end of a quarter, the income effects of the discontinued component must be separately reported in the quarterly income statement. These effects would include the income or loss from operations for the quarter as well as an impairment loss if the component's assets have a book value more than fair value minus cost to sell. If the assets are impaired and written down, any gain or loss on disposal in a subsequent quarter is determined relative to the new, written-down book value.

²¹For a complete list of disclosure requirements, see FASB ASC 205-20-50: Presentation of Financial Statements-Discontinued Operations-Disclosure.

²²The assets and liabilities held for sale are not offset and presented as a single net amount, but instead are listed separately (ASC 205-20-45-10).

Accounting Changes

● LO4–5

Accounting changes fall into one of three categories: (1) a change in an accounting principle, (2) a change in estimate, or (3) a change in reporting entity. The correction of an error is another adjustment that is accounted for in the same way as certain accounting changes. A brief overview of a change in accounting principle, a change in estimate, and correction of errors is provided here. We cover accounting changes, including changes in reporting entities, and accounting errors in detail in subsequent chapters, principally in Chapter 20.

Change in Accounting Principle

A change in accounting principle refers to a change from one acceptable accounting method to another. There are many situations that allow alternative treatments for similar transactions. Common examples of these situations include the choice among FIFO, LIFO, and average cost for the measurement of inventory and among alternative revenue recognition methods. New accounting standard updates issued by the FASB also may require companies to change their accounting methods.

MANDATED CHANGES IN ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES. Sometimes the FASB requires a change in accounting principle. These changes in accounting principles potentially hamper the ability of external users to compare financial information among reporting periods because information lacks consistency. The board considers factors such as this, as well as the cost and complexity of adopting new standards, and chooses among various approaches to require implementation by companies.

1. **Retrospective approach.** The new standard is applied to all periods presented in the financial statements. That is, we restate prior period financial statements as if the new accounting method had been used in those prior periods. We revise the balance of each account affected to make those statements appear as if the newly adopted accounting method had been applied all along.
2. **Modified retrospective approach.** The new standard is applied to the adoption period only. Prior period financial statements are not restated. The cumulative effect of the change on prior periods' net income is shown as an adjustment to the beginning balance of retained earnings in the adoption period.
3. **Prospective approach.** This approach requires neither a modification of prior period financial statements nor an adjustment to account balances. Instead, the change is simply implemented in the current period and all future periods.

VOLUNTARY CHANGES IN ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES. Occasionally, without being required by the FASB, a company will change from one generally accepted accounting principle to another. For example, a company may decide to change its inventory method from LIFO to FIFO. When this occurs, inventory and cost of goods sold are measured in one reporting period using LIFO, but then are measured using FIFO in a subsequent period. Inventory and cost of goods sold, and hence net income, for the two periods are not comparable. To improve comparability and consistency, GAAP typically requires that voluntary accounting changes be accounted for retrospectively.^{23,24}

We will see these aspects of accounting for the change in accounting principle demonstrated in Chapter 9 in the context of our discussion of inventory methods. We'll also discuss changes in accounting principles in depth in Chapter 20.

²³FASB ASC 250-10-45-5: Accounting Changes and Error Corrections-Overall-Other Presentation Matters (previously "Accounting Changes and Error Corrections-a replacement of APB Opinion No. 20 and FASB Statement No. 3," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standard No. 154* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2005)).

²⁴Sometimes a lack of information makes it impracticable to report a change retrospectively so the new method is simply applied prospectively, that is, we simply use the new method from now on. Also, if a new standard specifically requires prospective accounting, that requirement is followed.

Change in Depreciation, Amortization, or Depletion Method

A change in depreciation, amortization, or depletion method is considered to be a change in accounting estimate that is achieved by a change in accounting principle. We account for this change prospectively, almost exactly as we would any other change in estimate. One difference is that most changes in estimate don't require a company to justify the change. However, this change in estimate is a result of changing an accounting principle and therefore requires a clear justification as to why the new method is preferable. Chapter 11 provides an illustration of a change in depreciation method.

Changes in depreciation, amortization, or depletion methods are accounted for the same way as a change in an accounting estimate.

Change in Accounting Estimate

Estimates are a necessary aspect of accounting. A few of the more common accounting estimates are the amount of future bad debts on existing accounts receivable, the useful life and residual value of a depreciable asset, and future warranty expenses.

Because estimates require the prediction of future events, it's not unusual for them to turn out to be wrong. When an estimate is modified as new information comes to light, accounting for the change in estimate is quite straightforward. We do not revise prior years' financial statements to reflect the new estimate. Instead, we merely incorporate the new estimate in any related accounting determinations from that point on, that is, we account for a change in accounting estimate prospectively.²⁵ If the effect of the change is material, a disclosure note is needed to describe the change and its effect on both net income and earnings per share. Chapters 11 and 20 provide illustrations of changes in accounting estimates.

A change in accounting estimate is reflected in the financial statements of the current period and future periods.

Correction of Accounting Errors

Errors occur when transactions are either recorded incorrectly or not recorded at all. We briefly discuss the correction of errors here as an overview and in later chapters in the context of the effect of errors on specific chapter topics. In addition, Chapter 20 provides comprehensive coverage of the correction of errors.

Accountants employ various control mechanisms to ensure that transactions are accounted for correctly. In spite of this, errors occur. When errors do occur, they can affect any one or several of the financial statement elements on any of the financial statements a company prepares. In fact, many kinds of errors simultaneously affect more than one financial statement. When errors are discovered, they should be corrected.

Most errors are discovered in the same year that they are made. These errors are simple to correct. The original erroneous journal entry is reversed and the appropriate entry is recorded. If an error is discovered in a year subsequent to the year the error is made, the accounting treatment depends on whether or not the error is material with respect to its effect on the financial statements. In practice, the vast majority of errors are not material and are, therefore, simply corrected in the year discovered. However, material errors that are discovered in subsequent periods require a prior period adjustment.

Prior Period Adjustments

Assume that after its financial statements are published and distributed to shareholders, Roush Distribution Company discovers a material error in the statements. What does it do? Roush must make a **prior period adjustment**.²⁶ Roush would record a journal entry that adjusts any balance sheet accounts to their appropriate levels and would account for the income effects of the error by increasing or decreasing the beginning retained earnings balance in a statement of shareholders' equity. Remember, net income in prior periods was closed to retained earnings so, by adjusting retained earnings, the prior period adjustment accounts for the error's effect on prior periods' net income.

²⁵If the original estimate had been based on erroneous information or calculations or had not been made in good faith, the revision of that estimate would constitute the correction of an error (discussed in the next section).

²⁶FASB ASC 250-10-45-23: Accounting Changes and Error Corrections-Overall-Other Presentation Matters (previously "Prior Period Adjustments," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 16* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1977)).

Simply reporting a corrected retained earnings amount might cause misunderstanding for someone familiar with the previously reported amount. Explicitly reporting a prior period adjustment in the statement of shareholders' equity (or statement of retained earnings if that's presented instead) highlights the adjustment and avoids this confusion.

In addition to reporting the prior period adjustment to retained earnings, previous years' financial statements that are incorrect as a result of the error are retrospectively restated to reflect the correction. Also, a disclosure note communicates the impact of the error on prior periods' net income.

Earnings per Share

We've discussed that the income statement reports a company's net income for the period. Net income is reported in total dollars (total dollars of revenues minus total dollars of expenses) and represents the total profits that the company has generated for *all shareholders* during the period. However, for individual decision making, investors want to know how much profit has been generated for *each shareholder*. To know this, we calculate **earnings per share (EPS)** to relate the amount of net income a company generates to the number of common shares outstanding.

EPS provides a convenient way for investors to link the company's profitability to the value of an individual share of ownership. The ratio of stock price per share to earnings per share (the PE ratio) is one of the most widely used financial metrics in the investment world. EPS also makes it easier to compare the performance of the company over time or with other companies. Larger companies may naturally have larger dollar amounts of net income, but they do not always generate more profit for each shareholder.

U.S. GAAP requires that public companies report two specific calculations of EPS: (1) basic EPS and (2) diluted EPS. **Basic EPS** equals total net income (less any dividends to preferred shareholders) divided by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding. Dividends to preferred shareholders are subtracted from net income in the numerator because those dividends are distributions of the company not available to common shareholders. The denominator is the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding, rather than the number of shares outstanding at the beginning or end of the period, because the goal is to relate performance for the period to the shares that were in place throughout that period. The number of common shares may change over the year from additional issuances or company buybacks, so a weighted average better reflects the number of shares outstanding for the period. The resulting EPS provides a measure of net income generated for each share of common stock during the period.

For example, suppose the Fetzer Corporation reported net income of \$600,000 for its fiscal year ended December 31, 2018. Preferred stock dividends of \$75,000 were declared during the year. Fetzer had one million shares of common stock outstanding at the beginning of the year and issued an additional one million shares on March 31, 2018. Basic EPS of \$0.30 per share for 2018 is computed as follows:

$$\frac{\$600,000 - \$75,000}{\begin{array}{l} 1,000,000 + 1,000,000 (9/12) \\ \text{Shares} \quad \quad \text{New shares} \\ \text{at Jan. 1} \end{array}} = \frac{\$525,000}{1,750,000} = \$0.30$$

Diluted EPS incorporates the dilutive effect of all *potential* common shares in the calculation of EPS. Dilution refers to the reduction in EPS that occurs as the number of common shares outstanding increases. Companies may have certain securities outstanding that could be converted into common shares, or they could have stock options outstanding that create additional common shares if the options were exercised. Because these items could cause the number of shares in the denominator to increase, they potentially decrease EPS. We devote a substantial portion of Chapter 19 to understanding these two measures of EPS. Here, we provide only an overview.

When the income statement includes discontinued operations, we report per-share amounts for both income (loss) from continuing operations and for net income (loss), as

All corporations whose common stock is publicly traded must disclose EPS.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 163

well as for the discontinued operations. We see this demonstrated for **Abbott Laboratories** in Illustration 4–10.

Abbott Laboratories		
Statements of Earnings For the Year Ended December 31 (in part)		
(\$ in millions, except per share amounts)	2015	2014
Income from continuing operations	\$2,606	\$1,721
Income from discontinued operations, net of tax	1,817	563
Net income	<u>\$4,423</u>	<u>\$2,284</u>
Earnings per common share—basic:		
Continuing operations	\$ 1.73	\$ 1.13
Discontinued operations	1.21	0.37
Net income	<u>\$ 2.94</u>	<u>\$ 1.50</u>
Earnings per common share—diluted:		
Continuing operations	\$ 1.72	\$ 1.12
Discontinued operations	1.20	0.37
Net income	<u>\$ 2.92</u>	<u>\$ 1.49</u>

Illustration 4–10

EPS Disclosures—Abbott Laboratories.

Real World Financials

Comprehensive Income

Net income, as we have already discussed, includes all revenues, expenses, gains, and losses reported in the income statement. **Comprehensive income** provides a broader perspective of income and includes *all* revenues, expenses, gains, and losses for the period. In other words, comprehensive income includes net income plus other changes in shareholders' equity that do not represent transactions with owners. The relation between comprehensive income and net income is shown below:

$$\text{Comprehensive income} = \text{Net income} + \text{Other comprehensive income}$$

Accounting professionals have engaged in an ongoing debate concerning whether certain gains and losses should be included as components of net income or as part of other comprehensive income. As we discuss below and in later chapters, current standards allow some items initially to be recorded as other comprehensive income and then later reclassified into net income. However, there is *no conceptual basis* for determining which items qualify for net income versus other comprehensive income. The FASB addresses this distinction by requiring presentation of net income in the income statement and also the expanded concept of comprehensive income.

Other Comprehensive Income

The calculation of net income omits certain types of gains, losses, and other adjustments that are instead included in **other comprehensive income (OCI)**. As one example, in Chapter 12 you will learn that certain investments are reported in the balance sheet at their fair values, but that the gains and losses resulting from adjusting those investments to fair value might not be included in net income. Instead, they are reported as other comprehensive income (loss).

Companies must report both net income and comprehensive income and reconcile the difference between the two.²⁷ *Be sure to remember that net income actually is a part of comprehensive income.* The reconciliation simply extends net income to include other comprehensive income items, reported net of tax, as shown in Illustration 4–11.

Flexibility in Reporting

The information in the income statement and other comprehensive income items shown in Illustration 4–11 can be presented either (1) in a single, continuous statement of

LO4–6

Comprehensive income is the total change in equity for a reporting period other than from transactions with owners.

Comprehensive income includes net income as well as other gains and losses that change shareholders' equity but are not included in traditional net income.

Reporting comprehensive income can be accomplished with a single, continuous statement or in two separate, but consecutive statements.

²⁷FASB ASC 220-10-45-1A and 1B: Comprehensive Income—Overall—Other Presentation Matters (previously “Reporting Comprehensive Income,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 130* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1997)).

Illustration 4-11

Comprehensive Income

	(\$ in millions)	
Net income		\$xxx
Other comprehensive income:		
Net unrealized holding gains (losses) on investments (net of tax)*	\$x	
Gains (losses) from and amendments to postretirement benefit plans (net of tax) [†]	(x)	
Deferred gains (losses) from derivatives (net of tax) [‡]	(x)	
Foreign currency translation adjustment (net of tax) [§]	x	xx
Comprehensive income		<u><u>\$xxx</u></u>

*Changes in the market value of certain investments (described in Chapter 12)

[†]Gains and losses due to revising assumptions or market returns differing from expectations and prior service cost from amending the plan (described in Chapter 17).[‡]When a derivative designated as a cash flow hedge is adjusted to fair value, the gain or loss is deferred as a component of comprehensive income and included in earnings later, at the same time as earnings are affected by the hedged transaction (described in the Derivatives Appendix to the text).[§]The amount could be an addition to or reduction in shareholders' equity. (This item is discussed elsewhere in your accounting curriculum.)

comprehensive income or (2) in two separate, but consecutive statements, an income statement and a statement of comprehensive income. Each component of other comprehensive income can be displayed net of tax, as in Illustration 4-11, or alternatively, before tax with one amount shown for the aggregate income tax expense (or benefit).²⁸

Some companies choose to present comprehensive income in a single statement. On the other hand, in its financial statements, **AstroNova, Inc.**, a manufacturer of a broad range of specialty technology products, chose to use the separate statement approach, as shown in Illustration 4-12.

Illustration 4-12

Comprehensive Income Presented as a Separate Statement—AstroNova, Inc.

Real World Financials

ASTRONOVA, INC. Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income For the Years Ended January 31		
(\$ in thousands)	2015	2014
Net income	\$4,662	\$3,212
Other comprehensive income (loss), net of taxes		
Foreign currency translation adjustments	(866)	(14)
Unrealized gain (loss) on securities available for sale	(9)	17
Other comprehensive income	(875)	3
Comprehensive income	<u><u>\$3,787</u></u>	<u><u>\$3,215</u></u>



International Financial Reporting Standards

Comprehensive Income. Both U.S. GAAP and IFRS allow companies to report comprehensive income in either a single statement of comprehensive income or in two separate statements.

Other comprehensive income items are similar under the two sets of standards. However, an additional OCI item, *changes in revaluation surplus*, is possible under IFRS. In Chapter 11 you will learn that *IAS No. 16*²⁹ permits companies to value property, plant, and equipment at (1) cost less accumulated depreciation or (2) fair value (revaluation). *IAS No. 38*³⁰ provides a similar option for the valuation of intangible assets. U.S. GAAP prohibits revaluation.

If the revaluation option is chosen and fair value is higher than book value, the difference, changes in revaluation surplus, is reported as *other comprehensive income* and then accumulates in a revaluation surplus account in equity.

²⁸GAAP does not require the reporting of comprehensive earnings per share.²⁹"Property, Plant and Equipment," *International Accounting Standard No. 16* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.³⁰"Intangible Assets," *International Accounting Standard No. 38* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income

In addition to reporting OCI that occurs in the current reporting period, we must also report these amounts on a cumulative basis in the balance sheet. This is consistent with the way we report net income for the period in the income statement and also report accumulated net income (that hasn't been distributed as dividends) in the balance sheet as retained earnings. Similarly, we report OCI for the period in the statement of comprehensive income and also report **accumulated other comprehensive income (AOCI)** in the balance sheet. This is demonstrated in Illustration 4–13 for AstroNova, Inc.

The cumulative total of OCI (or comprehensive loss) is reported as accumulated other comprehensive income (AOCI), an additional component of shareholders' equity that is displayed separately.

Illustration 4–13

Shareholders' Equity—
AstroNova, Inc.

Real World Financials

ASTRONOVA, INC. Consolidated Balance Sheets (in part) For the Years ended January 31		
(\$ in thousands)	2015	2014
Shareholders' equity:		
Common stock	477	465
Additional paid-in capital	43,589	41,235
Retained earnings	39,735	37,201
Treasury stock, at cost	(19,591)	(12,463)
Accumulated other comprehensive income	(699)	176
Total shareholders' equity	<u>\$ 63,511</u>	<u>\$ 66,614</u>

Supplementing information in Illustration 4–13 with numbers reported in Illustration 4–12 along with dividends declared by AstroNova, we can reconcile the changes in both retained earnings and AOCI:

(\$ in thousands)	Retained Earnings	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income
Balance, 1/31/2014	\$37,201	\$ 176
Add: Net income	4,662	
Deduct: Dividends	(2,128)	
Other comprehensive income		(875)
Balance, 1/31/2015	<u>\$39,735</u>	<u>\$(699)</u>

To further understand the relationship between net income and other comprehensive income, consider the following example. Philips Corporation began the year with retained earnings of \$700 million and accumulated other comprehensive income of \$30 million. Let's also assume that net income for the year, before considering the gain discussed below, is \$100 million, of which \$40 million was distributed to shareholders as dividends. Now assume that Philips had a \$10 million net-of-tax gain that was also reported in one of two ways:

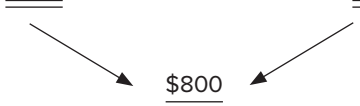
1. As a gain in net income, or
2. As a gain in other comprehensive income.

Under the first alternative, the gain will be included in shareholders' equity through retained earnings.

(\$ in millions)	Retained Earnings	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income
Beginning Balance	\$700	\$30
Net income (\$100 + 10)	110	
Dividends	(40)	
Other comprehensive income		—0—
Ending Balance	<u>\$770</u>	<u>\$30</u>

\$800

Under the second alternative, the net-of-tax gain of \$10 million is reported as a component of *other comprehensive income (loss)*. The gain will be included in shareholders' equity through *accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)*, rather than retained earnings, as demonstrated below. The total of retained earnings and accumulated other comprehensive income is \$800 million either way.

(\$ in millions)	Retained Earnings	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income
Beginning Balance	\$700	\$30
Net income	100	
Dividends	(40)	
Other comprehensive income		10
Ending Balance	<u>\$760</u>	<u>\$40</u>
		
	<u>\$800</u>	

Net income and comprehensive income are identical for an enterprise that has no other comprehensive income items. When this occurs for all years presented, a statement of comprehensive income is not required. Components of other comprehensive income are described in subsequent chapters.

Concept Review Exercise

INCOME STATEMENT PRESENTATION; COMPREHENSIVE INCOME

The Barrington Construction Company builds office buildings. It also owns and operates a chain of motels throughout the Northwest. On September 30, 2018, the company decided to sell the entire motel business for \$40 million. The sale was completed on December 15, 2018. Income statement information for 2018 is provided below for the two components of the company.

	(\$ in millions)	
	Construction Component	Motel Component
Sales revenue	\$450.0	\$200.0
Operating expenses	226.0	210.0
Operating income	224.0	(10.0)
Other income (loss)*	16.0	(30.0)
Income (loss) before income taxes	240.0	(40.0)
Income tax expense (benefit) [†]	96.0	(16.0)
Net income (loss)	<u>\$144.0</u>	<u>\$ (24.0)</u>

*For the motel component, the entire Other income (loss) amount represents the loss on sale of assets of the component for \$40 million when their book value was \$70 million.

[†]A 40% tax rate applies to all items of income or loss.

In addition, in 2018 the company had pretax net unrealized holding gains on investment securities of \$3 million and a positive foreign currency translation adjustment of \$1 million.

Required:

1. Prepare a single, continuous 2018 statement of comprehensive income for the Barrington Construction Company including EPS disclosures. There were 100 million shares of common stock outstanding throughout 2018. The company had no potentially dilutive securities outstanding or stock options that could cause additional common shares. Use the multiple-step approach for the income statement portion of the statement.

2. Prepare a separate 2018 statement of comprehensive income.

Solution:

1. Prepare a single, continuous 2018 statement of comprehensive income.

BARRINGTON CONSTRUCTION COMPANY		
Statement of Comprehensive Income		
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018		
(\$ in millions, except per share amounts)		
Sales revenue		\$450.0
Operating expenses		226.0
Operating income		224.0
Other income		16.0
Income from continuing operations before income taxes		240.0
Income tax expense		96.0
Income from continuing operations		144.0
Discontinued operations:		
Loss from operations of discontinued motel component (including loss on disposal of \$30)	\$(40)	
Income tax benefit	16	
Loss on discontinued operations		(24.0)
Net income		120.0
Other comprehensive income:		
Unrealized gains on investment securities, net of tax	1.8	
Foreign currency translation adjustment, net of tax	0.6	
Total other comprehensive income		2.4
Comprehensive income		\$122.4
Earnings per share:		
Income from continuing operations		\$ 1.44
Discontinued operations		(0.24)
Net income		\$ 1.20

2. Prepare a separate 2018 statement of comprehensive income.

BARRINGTON CONSTRUCTION COMPANY		
Statement of Comprehensive Income		
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018		
(\$ in millions)		
Net income		\$ 120.0
Other comprehensive income:		
Unrealized gains on investment securities, net of tax	\$1.8	
Foreign currency translation adjustment, net of tax	0.6	
Total other comprehensive income		2.4
Comprehensive income		\$ 122.4

Now that we have discussed the presentation and content of the income statement, we turn our attention to the statement of cash flows.

The Statement of Cash Flows

When a balance sheet and an income statement are presented, a **statement of cash flows (SCF)** is required for each income statement period.³¹ The purpose of the SCF is to provide information about the cash receipts and cash disbursements of an enterprise. Similar to the income statement, it is a *change* statement, summarizing the transactions that affected cash during the period. The term *cash* in the statement of cash flows refers to the total of cash, cash

PART B

● LO4–7

A statement of cash flows is presented for each period for which an income statement is provided.

³¹FASB ASC 230-10-45: Statement of Cash Flows-Overall-Other Presentation Matters (previously “Statement of Cash Flows,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 95* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1987)).

equivalents, and restricted cash. Cash equivalents, discussed in Chapter 3, include highly liquid (easily converted to cash) investments such as Treasury bills. Chapter 21 is devoted exclusively to the SCF. A brief overview is provided here.

Usefulness of the Statement of Cash Flows

We discussed the difference between cash and accrual accounting in Chapter 1. It was pointed out and illustrated that over short periods of time, operating cash flows may not be indicative of the company's long-run cash-generating ability, and that accrual-based net income provides a more accurate prediction of future operating cash flows. Nevertheless, information about cash flows from operating activities, when combined with information about cash flows from other activities, can provide information helpful in assessing future profitability, liquidity, and long-term solvency. After all, a company must pay its debts with cash, not with income.

Of particular importance is the amount of cash generated from operating activities. In the long run, a company must be able to generate positive cash flow from activities related to selling its product or service. These activities must provide the necessary cash to pay debts, provide dividends to shareholders, and provide for future growth.

Classifying Cash Flows

● LO4–8

A list of cash flows is more meaningful to investors and creditors if they can determine the type of transaction that gave rise to each cash flow. Toward this end, the statement of cash flows classifies all transactions affecting cash into one of three categories: (1) operating activities, (2) investing activities, and (3) financing activities.

Operating Activities

The inflows and outflows of cash that result from activities reported in the income statement are classified as cash flows from **operating activities**. In other words, this classification of cash flows includes the elements of net income reported on a cash basis rather than an accrual basis.³²

Cash inflows include cash received from the following:

1. Customers from the sale of goods or services
2. Interest and dividends from investments

These amounts may differ from sales and investment income reported in the income statement. For example, sales revenue measured on the accrual basis reflects revenue recognized during the period, not necessarily the cash actually collected. Revenue will not equal cash collected from customers if receivables from customers or deferred revenue changed during the period.

Cash outflows include cash paid for the following:

1. The purchase of inventory
2. Salaries, wages, and other operating expenses
3. Interest on debt
4. Income taxes

Likewise, these amounts may differ from the corresponding accrual expenses reported in the income statement. Expenses are reported when incurred, not necessarily when cash is actually paid for those expenses. Also, some revenues and expenses, like depreciation expense, don't affect cash at all and aren't included as cash outflows from operating activities.

The difference between the inflows and outflows is called *net cash flows from operating activities*. This is equivalent to net income if the income statement had been prepared on a cash basis rather than an accrual basis.

³²Cash flows related to gains and losses from the sale of assets shown in the income statement are reported as investing activities in the SCF.

Operating activities are inflows and outflows of cash related to the transactions entering into the determination of net operating income.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT METHODS OF REPORTING. Two generally accepted formats can be used to report operating activities, the direct method and the indirect method. Under the **direct method**, the cash effect of each operating activity is reported directly in the statement. For example, *cash received from customers* is reported as the cash effect of sales activities. Income statement transactions that have no cash flow effect, such as depreciation, are simply not reported.

By the **indirect method**, on the other hand, we arrive at net cash flow from operating activities indirectly by starting with reported net income and working backwards to convert that amount to a cash basis. Two types of adjustments to net income are needed. First, components of net income that do not affect cash are reversed. That means that noncash revenues and gains are subtracted, while noncash expenses and losses are added. For example, depreciation expense does not reduce cash, but it is subtracted in the income statement. To reverse this, then, we add back depreciation expense to net income to arrive at the amount that we would have had if depreciation had not been subtracted in the first place.

Second, we make adjustments for changes in operating assets and liabilities during the period that indicate that amounts included as components of net income are not the same as cash flows for those components. For instance, suppose accounts receivable increases during the period because cash collected from customers is less than sales revenue. This increase in accounts receivable would then be subtracted from net income to arrive at *cash flow from operating activities*. In the indirect method, positive adjustments to net income are made for decreases in related assets and increases in related liabilities, while negative adjustments are made for increases in those assets and decreases in those liabilities.

To contrast the direct and indirect methods further, consider the income statement and balance sheet for Arlington Lawn Care (ALC) in Illustration 4–14. We'll use these to construct the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows.

DIRECT METHOD. Let's begin with the direct method of presentation. We illustrated this method previously in Chapter 2. In that chapter, specific cash transactions were provided and we simply included them in the appropriate cash flow category in the SCF. Here, we start with account balances, so the direct method requires a bit more reasoning.

From the income statement, we see that ALC's net income has four components. Three of those—service revenue, general and administrative expenses, and income tax expense—affect cash flows, but not by the accrual amounts reported in the income statement. One component—depreciation—reduces net income but not cash; it's simply an allocation over time of a prior year's expenditure for a depreciable asset. So, to report these operating activities on a cash basis, rather than an accrual basis, we take the three items that affect cash and adjust the amounts to reflect cash inflow rather than revenue earned and cash outflows rather than expenses incurred. Let's start with service revenue.

Service revenue is \$90,000, but ALC did not collect that much cash from its customers. We know that because accounts receivable increased from \$0 to \$12,000, ALC must have collected to date only **\$78,000** of the amount earned.

Similarly, general and administrative expenses of \$32,000 were incurred, but \$7,000 of that hasn't yet been paid. We know that because accounts payable increased by \$7,000. Also, prepaid insurance increased by \$4,000 so ALC must have paid \$4,000 more cash for insurance coverage than the amount that expired and was reported as insurance expense. That means cash paid thus far for general and administrative expenses was only \$29,000 (\$32,000 less the \$7,000 increase in accounts payable plus the \$4,000 increase in prepaid insurance). The other expense, income tax, was \$15,000, but that's the amount by which income taxes payable increased so no cash has yet been paid for income taxes.

We can report ALC's cash flows from operating activities using the direct method as shown in Illustration 4–14A.

INDIRECT METHOD. To report operating cash flows using the indirect method, we take a different approach. We start with ALC's net income but realize that the \$35,000 includes both cash and noncash components. We need to adjust net income, then, to eliminate the noncash effects so that we're left with only the cash flows. We start by eliminating the only noncash component of net income in our illustration—depreciation expense. Depreciation

By the **direct method**, the cash effect of each operating activity is reported directly in the SCF.

By the **indirect method**, cash flow from operating activities is derived indirectly by starting with reported net income and adding or subtracting items to convert that amount to a cash basis.

Accounts receivable			
Beg. bal.	0		
Revenue	90		
		78	Cash
End bal.	12		

Depreciation expense does not reduce cash, but is subtracted in the income statement. So, we add back depreciation expense to net income to eliminate it.

Illustration 4-14

Contrasting the Direct and Indirect Methods of Presenting Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Net income is \$35,000, but cash flow from these same activities is not necessarily the same amount.

Changes in assets and liabilities can indicate that cash inflows are different from revenues and cash outflows are different from expenses.

Illustration 4-14A

Direct Method of Presenting Cash Flows from Operating Activities

By the direct method, we report the components of net income on a cash basis.

We make adjustments for changes in assets and liabilities that indicate that components of net income are not the same as cash flows.

Arlington Lawn Care (ALC) began operations at the beginning of 2018. ALC's 2018 income statement and its year-end balance sheet are shown below (\$ in thousands).

ARLINGTON LAWN CARE
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018

Service revenue		\$ 90
Operating expenses:		
General and administrative	\$32*	
Depreciation	8	
Total operating expenses		40
Income before income taxes		50
Income tax expense		15
Net income		<u>\$ 35</u>

*Includes \$6 in insurance expense

ARLINGTON LAWN CARE
Balance Sheet
At December 31, 2018

Assets		Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity	
Current assets:		Current liabilities:	
Cash	\$ 54	Accounts payable**	\$ 7
Accounts receivable	12	Income taxes payable	15
Prepaid insurance	4	Total current liabilities	22
Total current assets	70	Shareholders' equity:	
Equipment	40	Common stock	50
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(8)	Retained earnings	30†
Total assets	<u>\$102</u>	Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$102</u>

**For general and administrative expenses

†Net income of \$35 less \$5 in cash dividends paid

ARLINGTON LAWN CARE
Statement of Cash Flows
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018

(\$ in thousands)

Cash Flows from Operating Activities	
Cash received from customers*	\$78
Cash paid for general and administrative expenses**	(29)
Net cash flows from operating activities	<u>\$49</u>

*Service revenue of \$90 thousand, less increase of \$12 thousand in accounts receivable.

**General and administrative expenses of \$32 thousand, less increase of \$7 thousand in accounts payable, plus increase of \$4 thousand in prepaid insurance.

of \$8,000 was subtracted in the income statement, so to eliminate its negative effect on net income, we simply add it back.

That leaves us with three components of net income that do affect cash but not necessarily by the amounts reported—service revenue, general and administrative expenses, and income tax expense. For those, we need to make adjustments to net income to cause it to reflect cash flows rather than accrual amounts. For instance, we saw earlier that even though \$90,000 in service revenue is reflected in net income, only \$78,000 cash was received from customers. That means we need to include an adjustment to reduce net income by \$12,000, the increase in accounts receivable.

In a similar manner, we include adjustments for the changes in prepaid insurance, accounts payable, and income tax payable to adjust net income to reflect cash payments rather than expenses incurred. For prepaid insurance, because insurance expense in the income statement was less than cash paid for insurance, we need to subtract the difference, which equals the increase in prepaid insurance. If this asset had decreased, we would have added, rather than subtracted, the change. For accounts payable and taxes payable, because the related expense in the income statement was more than cash paid for those expenses, we need to add back the differences. If these liabilities had decreased, we would have subtracted, rather than added, the changes.

Cash flows from operating activities using the indirect method are shown in Illustration 4–14B.

ARLINGTON LAWN CARE Statement of Cash Flows For the Year Ended December 31, 2018			
			(\$ in thousands)
Cash Flows from Operating Activities			
Net income			\$35
<i>Adjustments for noncash effects:</i>			
Depreciation expense	\$ 8		
<i>Changes in operating assets and liabilities:</i>			
Increase in accounts receivable	(12)		
Increase in prepaid insurance	(4)		
Increase in accounts payable	7		
Increase in income taxes payable	15		14
Net cash flows from operating activities			<u>\$49</u>

Illustration 4–14B

Indirect Method of
Presenting Cash Flows
from Operating Activities

By the indirect method, we start with net income and work backwards to convert that amount to a cash basis.

Both the direct and the indirect methods produce the same net cash flows from operating activities (\$49,000 in our illustration); they are merely alternative approaches to reporting the cash flows. The FASB, in promulgating GAAP for the statement of cash flows, stated its preference for the direct method. However, nearly all U.S. companies use the indirect method.

The choice of presentation method for cash flow from operating activities has no effect on how investing activities and financing activities are reported. We now look at how cash flows are classified into those two categories.

Investing Activities

Cash flows from **investing activities** include inflows and outflows of cash related to the acquisition and disposition of long-lived assets used in the operations of the business (such as property, plant, and equipment) and investment assets (except those classified as cash equivalents and trading securities). The purchase and sale of inventories are not considered investing activities. Inventories are purchased for the purpose of being sold as part of the company's operations, so their purchase and sale are included with operating activities rather than investing activities.

Cash outflows from investing activities include cash paid for the following:

1. The purchase of long-lived assets used in the business
2. The purchase of investment securities like stocks and bonds of other entities (other than those classified as cash equivalents and trading securities)
3. Loans to other entities

Later, when the assets are disposed of, cash inflow from the sale of the assets (or collection of loans and notes) also is reported as cash flows from investing activities. As a result, cash inflows from these transactions are considered investing activities as follows:

1. The sale of long-lived assets used in the business

Investing activities involve the acquisition and sale of (1) long-term assets used in the business and (2) nonoperating investment assets.

2. The sale of investment securities (other than cash equivalents and trading securities)
3. The collection of a nontrade receivable (excluding the collection of interest, which is an operating activity)

Net cash flows from investing activities represents the difference between the inflows and outflows. The only investing activity indicated in Illustration 4–14 is ALC’s investment of \$40,000 cash for equipment.

Financing Activities

Financing activities involve cash inflows and outflows from transactions with creditors (excluding trade creditors) and owners.

Financing activities relate to the external financing of the company. Cash inflows occur when cash is borrowed from creditors or invested by owners. Cash outflows occur when cash is paid back to creditors or distributed to owners. The payment of interest to a creditor, however, is classified as an operating activity.

Cash inflows include cash received from the following:

1. Owners when shares are sold to them
2. Creditors when cash is borrowed through notes, loans, mortgages, and bonds

Cash outflows include cash paid to the following:

1. Owners in the form of dividends or other distributions
2. Owners for the reacquisition of shares previously sold
3. Creditors as repayment of the principal amounts of debt (excluding trade payables that relate to operating activities)

Net cash flows from financing activities is the difference between the inflows and outflows. The only financing activities indicated in Illustration 4–14 are ALC’s receipt of \$50,000 cash from issuing common stock and the payment of \$5,000 in cash dividends.

The 2018 statement of cash flows for ALC, beginning with net cash flows from operating activities, is shown in Illustration 4–15.

Illustration 4–15

Statement of Cash Flows
(beginning with net cash flows from operating activities)

ARLINGTON LAWN CARE Statement of Cash Flows (in part) For the Year Ended December 31, 2018			
			(\$ in thousands)
Net cash flows from operating activities (from Illustration 4–14A or 4–14B)			\$49
Cash flows from investing activities:			
Purchase of equipment			(40)
Cash flows from financing activities:			
Sale of common stock	\$50		
Payment of cash dividends	(5)		
Net cash flows from financing activities			45
Net increase in cash			54
Cash balance, January 1			0
Cash balance, December 31			<u>\$54</u>

We know \$40,000 was paid to buy equipment because that balance sheet account increased from no balance to \$40,000. Likewise, because common stock increased from zero to \$50,000, we include that amount as a cash inflow from financing activities. Finally, Illustration 4–14 told us that \$5,000 was paid as a cash dividend, also a financing activity.

Noncash Investing and Financing Activities

As we just discussed, the statement of cash flows provides useful information about the investing and financing activities in which a company is engaged. Even though these

International Financial Reporting Standards



LO4-9

Classification of Cash Flows. Like U.S. GAAP, international standards also require a statement of cash flows. Consistent with U.S. GAAP, cash flows are classified as operating, investing, or financing. However, the U.S. standard designates cash outflows for interest payments and cash inflows from interest and dividends received as operating cash flows. Dividends paid to shareholders are classified as financing cash flows.

IAS No. 7,³³ on the other hand, allows more flexibility. Companies can report interest and dividends paid as either operating or financing cash flows and interest and dividends received as either operating or investing cash flows. Interest and dividend payments usually are reported as financing activities. Interest and dividends received normally are classified as investing activities.

Typical Classification of Cash Flows from Interest and Dividends

U.S. GAAP

Operating Activities

Dividends received
Interest received
Interest paid

Investing Activities

Financing Activities

Dividends paid

IFRS

Operating Activities

Investing Activities

Dividends received
Interest received

Financing Activities

Dividends paid
Interest paid

Siemens AG, a German company, prepares its financial statements according to IFRS. In its statement of cash flows for the first three months of the 2014 fiscal year, the company reported interest and dividends received as operating cash flows, as would a U.S. company. However, Siemens classified **interest paid** as a financing cash flow.

SIEMENS AG Statement of Cash Flows (partial) For the First Three Months of Fiscal 2014

	(€ in millions)
Cash flows from financing activities:	
Transactions with owners	(6)
Repayment of long-term debt	(5)
Change in short-term debt and other financing activities	1,138
Interest paid	(78)
Dividends paid	(4)
Financing discontinued operations	(107)
Cash flows from financing activities—continuing operations	938

primarily result in cash inflows and cash outflows, there may be significant investing and financing activities occurring during the period that do not involve cash flows at all. In order to provide complete information about these activities, any significant noncash investing and financing activities (that is, noncash exchanges) are reported either on the face of the SCF or in a disclosure note. An example of a significant noncash investing and financing activity is the acquisition of equipment (an investing activity) by issuing either a long-term note payable or equity securities (a financing activity).

³³“Statement of Cash Flows,” *International Accounting Standard No. 7 (IASCF)*, as amended effective January 1, 2016.

Concept Review Exercise

STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS

Dublin Enterprises, Inc. (DEI), owns a chain of retail electronics stores located in shopping malls. The following are the company's 2018 income statement and comparative balance sheets (\$ in millions):

Income Statement		
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018		
Revenue		\$2,100
Cost of goods sold		<u>1,400</u>
Gross profit		700
Operating expenses:		
Selling and administrative	\$ 355	
Depreciation	<u>85</u>	
Total operating expenses		<u>440</u>
Income before income taxes		260
Income tax expense		<u>78</u>
Net income		<u>\$ 182</u>
Comparative Balance Sheets		
	12/31/2018	12/31/2017
Assets:		
Cash	\$ 300	\$ 220
Accounts receivable (net)	227	240
Inventory	160	120
Property, plant, and equipment	960	800
Less: Accumulated depreciation	<u>(405)</u>	<u>(320)</u>
Total assets	<u>\$1,242</u>	<u>\$1,060</u>
Liabilities and shareholders' equity:		
Accounts payable	\$ 145	\$ 130
Payables for selling and admin. expenses	147	170
Income taxes payable	95	50
Long-term debt	<u>—</u>	<u>100</u>
Common stock	463	400
Retained earnings	<u>392</u>	<u>210</u>
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$1,242</u>	<u>\$1,060</u>

Required:

1. Prepare DEI's 2018 statement of cash flows using the direct method.
2. Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of DEI's 2018 statement of cash flows using the indirect method.

Solution:

1. Prepare DEI's 2018 statement of cash flows using the direct method.

DUBLIN ENTERPRISES, INC.		
Statement of Cash Flows		
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018		
(\$ in millions)		
Cash Flows from Operating Activities		
Collections from customers*		\$ 2,113
Purchase of inventory**		(1,425)
Payment of selling and administrative expenses†		(378)
Payment of income taxes‡		<u>(33)</u>
Net cash flows from operating activities		\$277
Cash Flows from Investing Activities		
Purchase of property, plant, and equipment		(160)

*Sales revenue of \$2,100 million, plus \$13 million decrease in accounts receivable (net).

**Cost of goods sold of \$1,400 million, plus \$40 million increase in inventory, less \$15 million increase in accounts payable.

†Selling and administrative expenses of \$355 million, plus \$23 million decrease in payables for selling and administrative expenses.

‡Income tax expense of \$78 million, less \$45 million increase in income taxes payable.

(continued)

(concluded)

Cash Flows from Financing Activities

Issuance of common stock	63	
Payment on long-term debt	(100)	
Net cash flows from financing activities		(37)
Net increase in cash		80
Cash, January 1		220
Cash, December 31		<u>\$300</u>

2. Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of DEI's 2018 statement of cash flows using the indirect method.

DUBLIN ENTERPRISES, INC.
Statement of Cash Flows
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in millions)

Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Net Income	\$ 182	
<i>Adjustments for noncash effects:</i>		
Depreciation expense	85	
<i>Changes in operating assets and liabilities:</i>		
Decrease in accounts receivable (net)	13	
Increase in inventory	(40)	
Increase in accounts payable	15	
Increase in income taxes payable	45	
Decrease in payables for selling and administrative expenses	(23)	
Net cash flows from operating activities		<u>\$277</u>

Profitability Analysis

Chapter 3 provided an overview of financial statement analysis and introduced some of the common ratios used in risk analysis to investigate a company's liquidity and long-term solvency. We now look at ratios related to profitability analysis.

● LO4-10

Activity Ratios

One key to profitability is how well a company manages and utilizes its assets. Some ratios are designed to evaluate a company's effectiveness in managing assets. Of particular interest are the activity, or turnover ratios, of certain assets. The greater the number of times an asset turns over—the higher the ratio—the fewer assets are required to maintain a given level of activity (revenue). Therefore, high turnovers usually are preferred.

Although, in concept, the activity or turnover can be measured for any asset, activity ratios are most frequently calculated for total assets, accounts receivable, and inventory. These ratios are calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Asset turnover ratio} &= \frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average total assets}} \\ \text{Receivables turnover ratio} &= \frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average accounts receivable (net)}} \\ \text{Inventory turnover ratio} &= \frac{\text{Cost of goods sold}}{\text{Average inventory}}\end{aligned}$$

ASSET TURNOVER A broad measure of asset efficiency is the **asset turnover ratio**. The ratio is computed by dividing a company's net sales by the average total assets available for use during a period. The denominator, average assets, is determined by adding beginning and ending total assets and dividing by two. The asset turnover ratio provides an indication of how efficiently a company utilizes all of its assets to generate revenue.

Activity ratios measure a company's efficiency in managing its assets.

The asset turnover ratio measures a company's efficiency in using assets to generate revenue.

PART C

The *receivables turnover ratio* offers an indication of how quickly a company is able to collect its accounts receivable.

The *average collection period* indicates the average age of accounts receivable.

The *inventory turnover ratio* measures a company's efficiency in managing its investment in inventory.

RECEIVABLES TURNOVER. The *receivables turnover ratio* is calculated by dividing a period's net credit sales by the average net accounts receivable. Because income statements seldom distinguish between cash sales and credit sales, this ratio usually is computed using total net sales as the numerator. The denominator, average accounts receivable, is determined by adding beginning and ending net accounts receivable (gross accounts receivable less allowance for uncollectible accounts) and dividing by two.³⁴

The receivables turnover ratio provides an indication of a company's efficiency in collecting cash from customers. The ratio shows the number of times during a period that the average accounts receivable balance is collected. The higher the ratio, the shorter the average time between sales and cash collection.

A convenient extension is the *average collection period*. This measure is computed by dividing 365 days by the receivables turnover ratio. The result is an approximation of the number of days the average accounts receivable balance is outstanding.

$$\text{Average collection period} = \frac{365}{\text{Receivables turnover ratio}}$$

Monitoring the receivables turnover ratio (and average collection period) over time can provide useful information about a company's future prospects. For example, a decline in the receivables turnover ratio (an increase in the average collection period) could be an indication that sales are declining because of customer dissatisfaction with the company's products. Another possible explanation is that the company has changed its credit policy and is granting extended credit terms in order to maintain customers. Either explanation could signal a future increase in bad debts. Ratio analysis does not explain what is wrong. It does provide information that highlights areas for further investigation. We cover additional details of the receivables turnover ratio and average collection period in Chapter 7.

INVENTORY TURNOVER. An important activity measure for a merchandising company (a retail, wholesale, or manufacturing company) is the *inventory turnover ratio*. The ratio shows the number of times the average inventory balance is sold during a reporting period. It indicates how quickly inventory is sold. The more frequently a business is able to sell, or turn over, its inventory, the lower its investment in inventory must be for a given level of sales. The ratio is computed by dividing the period's cost of goods sold by the average inventory balance. The denominator, average inventory, is determined by adding beginning and ending inventory and dividing by two.³⁵

A relatively high ratio, say compared to a competitor, usually is desirable. A high ratio indicates comparative strength, perhaps caused by a company's superior sales force or maybe a successful advertising campaign. However, it might also be caused by a relatively low inventory level, which could mean either very efficient inventory management or stock-outs and lost sales in the future.

On the other hand, a relatively low ratio, or a decrease in the ratio over time, usually is perceived to be unfavorable. Too much capital may be tied up in inventory. A relatively low ratio may result from overstocking, the presence of obsolete items, or poor marketing and sales efforts.

Similar to the receivables turnover, we can divide the inventory turnover ratio into 365 days to compute the *average days in inventory*. This measure indicates the number of days it normally takes to sell inventory.

$$\text{Average days in inventory} = \frac{365}{\text{Inventory turnover ratio}}$$

³⁴Although net accounts receivable typically is used in practice for the denominator of receivables turnover, some prefer to use gross accounts receivable. Why? As the allowance for bad debts increases, net accounts receivable decreases, so if net accounts receivable is in the denominator, more bad debts have the effect of decreasing the denominator and therefore increasing receivables turnover. All else equal, an analyst would rather see receivables turnover improve because of more sales or less gross receivables, and not because of an increase in the allowance for bad debts.

³⁵Notice the consistency in the measure used for the numerator and denominator of the two turnover ratios. For the receivables turnover ratio, both numerator and denominator are based on sales dollars, whereas they are both based on cost for the inventory turnover ratio.

Profitability Ratios

A fundamental element of an analyst's task is to develop an understanding of a firm's profitability. Profitability ratios attempt to measure a company's ability to earn an adequate return relative to sales or resources devoted to operations. Resources devoted to operations can be defined as total assets or only those assets provided by owners, depending on the evaluation objective.

Three common profitability measures are (1) the profit margin on sales, (2) the return on assets, and (3) the return on shareholders' equity. These ratios are calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Profit margin on sales} &= \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Net sales}} \\ \text{Return on assets} &= \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average total assets}} \\ \text{Return on shareholders' equity} &= \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average shareholders' equity}}\end{aligned}$$

Notice that for all of the profitability ratios, our numerator is net income. Recall our discussion earlier in this chapter on earnings quality. The relevance of any historical-based financial statement hinges on its predictive value. To enhance predictive value, analysts often adjust net income in these ratios to separate a company's *temporary earnings* from its *permanent earnings*. Analysts begin their assessment of permanent earnings with income from continuing operations. Then, adjustments are made for any unusual, one-time gains or losses included in income from continuing operations. It is this adjusted number that they use as the numerator in these ratios.

Profitability ratios assist in evaluating various aspects of a company's profit-making activities.

When calculating profitability ratios, analysts often adjust net income for any temporary income effects.

PROFIT MARGIN ON SALES. The **profit margin on sales** is simply net income divided by net sales. The ratio measures an important dimension of a company's profitability. It indicates the portion of each dollar of revenue that is available after all expenses have been covered. It offers a measure of the company's ability to withstand either higher expenses or lower revenues.

The **profit margin on sales** measures the amount of net income achieved per sales dollar.

What is considered to be a desirable profit margin is highly sensitive to the nature of the business activity. For instance, you would expect a specialty shop to have a higher profit margin than, say, **Walmart**. A low profit margin can be compensated for by a high asset turnover rate, and vice versa, which brings us to considering the trade-offs inherent in generating return on assets.

RETURN ON ASSETS. The **return on assets (ROA)** ratio expresses income as a percentage of the average total assets available to generate that income. Because total assets are partially financed with debt and partially by equity funds, this is an inclusive way of measuring earning power that ignores specific sources of financing.

A company's return on assets is related to both profit margin and asset turnover. Specifically, profitability can be achieved by either a high profit margin, high asset turnover, or a combination of the two. In fact, the return on assets can be calculated by multiplying the profit margin and the asset turnover.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Return on assets} &= \text{Profit margin} \times \text{Asset turnover} \\ \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average total assets}} &= \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Net sales}} \times \frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average total assets}}\end{aligned}$$

Profit margin and asset turnover combine to yield **return on assets**, which measures the return generated by a company's assets.

Industry standards are particularly important when evaluating asset turnover and profit margin. Some industries are characterized by low turnover but typically make up for it with higher profit margins. Others have low profit margins but compensate with high turnover. Grocery stores typically have relatively low profit margins but relatively high asset turnover. In comparison, a manufacturer of specialized equipment will have a higher profit margin but a lower asset turnover ratio.

Additional Consideration

The return on assets ratio often is computed as follows:

$$\text{Return on assets} = \frac{\text{Net income} + \text{Interest expense} (1 - \text{Tax rate})}{\text{Average total assets}}$$

The reason for adding back interest expense (net of tax) is that interest represents a return to suppliers of debt capital and should not be deducted in the computation of net income when computing the return on total assets. In other words, the numerator is the total amount of income available to both debt and equity capital.

The return on shareholders' equity measures the return to suppliers of equity capital.

The DuPont framework shows that return on equity depends on profitability, activity, and financial leverage.

RETURN ON SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY. Equity investors typically are concerned about the amount of profit that management can generate from the resources that owners provide. A closely watched measure that captures this concern is **return on equity (ROE)**, calculated by dividing net income by average shareholders' equity.

In addition to monitoring return on equity, investors want to understand how that return can be improved. The **DuPont framework** provides a convenient basis for analysis that breaks return on equity into three key components:³⁶

- **Profitability**, measured by the profit margin ($\text{Net income} \div \text{Sales}$). As discussed already, a higher profit margin indicates that a company generates more profit from each dollar of sales.
- **Activity**, measured by asset turnover ($\text{Sales} \div \text{Average total assets}$). As discussed already, higher asset turnover indicates that a company uses its assets efficiently to generate more sales from each dollar of assets.
- **Financial Leverage**, measured by the equity multiplier ($\text{Average total assets} \div \text{Average total equity}$). A high equity multiplier indicates that relatively more of the company's assets have been financed with debt; that is, the company is more leveraged. As discussed in Chapter 3, leverage can provide additional return to the company's equity holders.

In equation form, the DuPont framework looks like this:

$$\text{Return on equity} = \text{Profit margin} \times \text{Asset turnover} \times \text{Equity multiplier}$$

$$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Avg. total equity}} = \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Net sales}} \times \frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Avg. total assets}} \times \frac{\text{Avg. total assets}}{\text{Avg. total equity}}$$

Notice that net sales and average total assets appear in the numerator of one ratio and the denominator of another, so they cancel to yield $\text{net income} \div \text{average total equity}$, or ROE.

We have already seen that ROA is determined by profit margin and asset turnover, so another way to compute ROE is by multiplying ROA by the equity multiplier:

$$\text{Return on equity} = \text{Return on assets} \times \text{Equity multiplier}$$

$$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Avg. total equity}} = \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Avg. total assets}} \times \frac{\text{Avg. total assets}}{\text{Avg. total equity}}$$

We can see from this equation that an equity multiplier of greater than 1 will produce a return on equity that is higher than the return on assets. However, as with all ratio analysis, there are trade-offs. If leverage is too high, creditors become concerned about the potential for default on the company's debt and require higher interest rates. Because interest is recognized as an expense, net income is reduced, so at some point the benefits of a higher equity multiplier are offset by a lower profit margin. Part of the challenge of managing a

³⁶DuPont analysis is so named because the basic model was developed by F. Donaldson Brown, an electrical engineer who worked for DuPont in the early part of the twentieth century.

Additional Consideration

Sometimes when return on equity is calculated, shareholders' equity is viewed more narrowly to include only common shareholders. In that case, preferred stock is excluded from the denominator, and preferred dividends are deducted from net income in the numerator. The resulting rate of return on common shareholders' equity focuses on profits generated on resources provided by common shareholders.

company is to identify the combination of profitability, activity, and leverage that produces the highest return for equity holders.

Illustration 4–16 provides a recap of the ratios we have discussed.

Activity ratios		
Asset turnover	=	$\frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average total assets}}$
Receivables turnover	=	$\frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average accounts receivable (net)}}$
Average collection period	=	$\frac{365}{\text{Receivables turnover ratio}}$
Inventory turnover	=	$\frac{\text{Cost of goods sold}}{\text{Average inventory}}$
Average days in inventory	=	$\frac{365}{\text{Inventory turnover ratio}}$
Profitability ratios		
Profit margin on sales	=	$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Net sales}}$
Return on assets	=	$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average total assets}}$
Return on shareholders' equity	=	$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average shareholders' equity}}$
Leverage ratio		
Equity multiplier	=	$\frac{\text{Average total assets}}{\text{Average total equity}}$

Illustration 4–16

Summary of Profitability Analysis Ratios

Profitability Analysis—An Illustration

To illustrate the application of the DuPont framework and the computation of the activity and profitability ratios, we analyze the 2015 financial statements of two well-known retailers, **Costco Wholesale Corporation** and **Wal-Mart Stores, Inc.**³⁷ The operations of these two companies are similar in their focus on operating large general merchandising and food discount stores. Illustration 4–17 presents selected financial statement information for the two companies (all numbers are in millions of dollars).

On the surface, it appears that Walmart is far more profitable than Costco. As shown at the bottom of Illustration 4–17, Walmart's 2015 net income was \$17,099 million, compared to Costco's \$2,377 million. But that's not the whole story. Even though both are very large companies, Walmart is more than six times the size of Costco in terms of total assets, so how can they be compared? Focusing on financial ratios helps adjust for size differences, and the DuPont framework helps identify the determinants of profitability from the perspective of shareholders.

Illustration 4–18 includes the DuPont analysis for Walmart and Costco, as well as some additional activity ratios we've discussed. Walmart's return on assets (ROA) is higher than

³⁷Walmart's financial statements are for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2015. Walmart refers to this as its 2015 fiscal year. Costco's financial statements are for the fiscal year ended August 30, 2015.

Illustration 4-17 Selected Financial Information for Costco Wholesale Corporation and Wal-Mart Stores, Inc.**Real World Financials**

(\$ in millions)	Costco		Walmart	
	2015	2014	2015	2014
Accounts receivable (net)	\$ 1,224	\$ 1,148	\$ 6,778	\$ 6,677
Inventories	8,908	8,456	45,141	44,858
Total assets	33,440	33,024	203,706	204,751
Total liabilities	22,597	20,509	117,769	121,921
Total shareholders' equity	10,843	12,515	85,937	82,830
Average for 2015:				
Accounts receivable (net)	\$ 1,186		\$ 6,727.5	
Inventories	8,682		44,999.5	
Total assets	33,232		204,228.5	
Total shareholders' equity	11,679		84,383.5	
Income Statement—2015				
Net sales	113,666		482,229	
Cost of goods sold	101,065		365,086	
Net Income	2,377		17,099	

Illustration 4-18 DuPont Framework and Activity Ratios—Costco Wholesale Corporation and Walmart Stores, Inc.**Real World Financials**

DuPont analysis	Costco		Walmart		Industry Average*
Profit margin on sales	$= \frac{\$2,377}{\$113,666} = 2.09\%$		$\frac{\$17,099}{\$482,229} = 3.55\%$		4.42%
×	×		×		
Asset turnover	$= \frac{\$113,666}{\$33,232} = 3.42$		$\frac{\$482,229}{\$204,228.5} = 2.36$		1.85
=	=		=		
Return on assets	$= \frac{\$2,377}{\$33,232} = 7.15\%$		$\frac{\$17,099}{\$204,228.5} = 8.37\%$		8.09%
×	×		×		
Equity Multiplier	$= \frac{\$33,232}{\$11,679} = 2.85$		$\frac{\$204,228.5}{\$84,383.5} = 2.42$		2.24
=	=		=		
Return on equity	$= \frac{\$2,377}{\$11,679} = 20.35\%$		$\frac{\$17,099}{\$84,383.5} = 20.26\%$		16.61%
Other activity ratios					
Receivables turnover	$= \frac{\$113,666}{\$1,186} = 95.84$		$\frac{\$482,229}{\$6,727.5} = 71.68$		79.35
Average collection period	$= \frac{365}{95.84} = 3.81 \text{ days}$		$\frac{365}{71.68} = 5.09 \text{ days}$		4.60 days
Inventory turnover	$= \frac{\$101,065}{\$8,682} = 11.64$		$\frac{\$365,086}{\$44,999.5} = 8.11$		7.17
Average days in inventory	$= \frac{365}{11.64} = 31.36 \text{ days}$		$\frac{365}{8.11} = 45.01 \text{ days}$		50.91 days

*www.reuters.com.

Costco's (8.37% for Walmart compared to 7.15% for Costco). Why? Remember that both profitability and activity combine to determine return on assets. Costco's asset turnover is much higher than Walmart's (3.42 compared to 2.36), but its profit margin is much lower than Walmart's (2.09% compared to 3.55%). So, even though Costco makes significantly more sales with each dollar of its assets, Walmart makes more profit on each dollar of sales, and Walmart ends up coming out ahead on return on assets.

The average days in inventory provides insight into Costco's higher asset turnover. Inventory takes only 31 days on average before being sold by Costco, compared with 45 days for Walmart. Costco also turns over its accounts receivable faster than Walmart does, but accounts receivable are relatively small so attention would be focused on other ratios for both companies.

What matters most to the shareholders of these companies is not return on assets, but the return on equity (ROE). Even though Walmart's return on assets is higher, its equity multiplier is lower (2.42 for Walmart compared to 2.85 for Costco). As a result, the two companies' ROEs are close, with Costco's ROE of 20.35% and Walmart's ROE of 20.26%. The ROE of both companies is above the industry average.

A Costco shareholder looking at these numbers might wonder how best to increase Costco's ROE. Should Costco attempt to increase operational efficiency on the asset turnover dimension? That might be tough, given its already high asset turnover. Or, should Costco attempt to increase profit margin? Given competitive pressures on retail pricing, can Costco generate a much higher profit margin with its current product mix and low-price strategy, or should it consider including more upscale, high-margin items in its inventory? Or, should Costco attempt to increase leverage and improve its equity multiplier, so that debt holders are financing a greater percentage of its assets?

The essential point of our discussion here, and in Part C of Chapter 3, is that raw accounting numbers alone mean little to decision makers. The numbers gain value when viewed in relation to other numbers. Similarly, the financial ratios formed by those relationships provide even greater perspective when compared with similar ratios of other companies, or with averages for several companies in the same industry. Accounting information is useful in making decisions. Financial analysis that includes comparisons of financial ratios enhances the value of that information.

Financial Reporting Case Solution

1. **How would you explain restructuring costs to Becky? Are restructuring costs something Becky should worry about?** (p. 170) Restructuring costs include employee severance and termination benefits plus other costs associated with the shutdown or relocation of facilities or downsizing of operations. Restructuring costs are not necessarily bad. In fact, the objective is to make operations more efficient. The costs are incurred now in hopes of better earnings later.
2. **Explain to Becky what is meant by discontinued operations and describe to her how that item is reported in an income statement.** (p. 173) Separate reporting as a discontinued operation is required when the disposal of a component represents a strategic shift that has, or will have, a major effect on a company's operations and financial results. The net-of-tax effect of discontinued operations is separately reported below income from continuing operations. If the component has been disposed of by the end of the reporting period, the income effects include: (1) income or loss from operations of the discontinued component from the beginning of the reporting period through the disposal date and (2) gain or loss on disposal of the component's assets. If the component has not been disposed of by the end of the reporting period, the income effects include: (1) income or loss from operations of the discontinued component from the beginning of the reporting period through the end of the reporting period, and (2) an impairment loss if the fair value minus cost to sell of the component's assets is less than their book value.



© Onoky/SuperStock

3. Describe to Becky the difference between basic and diluted earnings per share. (p. 180)

Basic earnings per share is computed by dividing net income available to common shareholders (net income less any preferred stock dividends) by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding for the period. Diluted earnings per share reflects the potential dilution that could occur for companies that have certain securities outstanding that are convertible into common shares or stock options that could create additional common shares if the options were exercised. These items could cause earnings per share to decrease (become diluted). Because of the complexity of the calculation and the importance of earnings per share to investors, the text devotes a substantial portion of Chapter 19 to this topic. ●

The Bottom Line

- LO4-1 The components of income from continuing operations are revenues, expenses (including income taxes), gains, and losses, excluding those related to discontinued operations. Companies often distinguish between operating and nonoperating income within continuing operations. (p. 164)
- LO4-2 The term *earnings quality* refers to the ability of reported earnings (income) to predict a company's future earnings. The relevance of any historical-based financial statement hinges on its predictive value. To enhance predictive value, analysts try to separate a company's *temporary earnings* from its *permanent earnings*. Many believe that manipulating income reduces earnings quality because it can mask permanent earnings. Two major methods used by managers to manipulate earnings are (1) income shifting and (2) income statement classification. (p. 168)
- LO4-3 Analysts begin their assessment of permanent earnings with income from continuing operations. It would be a mistake to assume income from continuing operations reflects permanent earnings entirely. In other words, there may be temporary earnings effects included in both operating and nonoperating income. (p. 169)
- LO4-4 A discontinued operation refers to the disposal or planned disposal of a component of the entity. The net-of-tax effect of discontinued operations is separately reported below income from continuing operations. (p. 173)
- LO4-5 Accounting changes include changes in principle, changes in estimate, or changes in reporting entity. Their effects on the current period and prior period financial statements are reported using various approaches—retrospective, modified retrospective, and prospective. Error corrections are made by restating prior period financial statements. Any correction to retained earnings is made with an adjustment to the beginning balance in the current period. Earnings per share (EPS) is the amount of income achieved during a period expressed per share of common stock outstanding. EPS must be disclosed for income from continuing operations and for discontinued operations. (p. 178)
- LO4-6 The FASB's Concept Statement 6 defines the term *comprehensive income* as the change in equity from nonowner transactions. The calculation of net income, however, excludes certain transactions that are included in comprehensive income. To convey the relationship between the two measures, companies must report both net income and comprehensive income and reconcile the difference between the two. The presentation can be (1) in a single, continuous statement of comprehensive income, or (2) in two separate, but consecutive statements—an income statement and a statement of comprehensive income. (p. 181)
- LO4-7 When a company provides a balance sheet and income statement, a statement of cash flows also is provided. The purpose of the statement of cash flows is to provide information about the cash receipts and cash disbursements that occurred during the period. (p. 185)
- LO4-8 To enhance the usefulness of the information, the statement of cash flows classifies all transactions affecting cash into one of three categories: (1) operating activities, (2) investing activities, or (3) financing activities. (p. 186)
- LO4-9 There are more similarities than differences between income statements and statements of cash flows prepared according to U.S. GAAP and those prepared applying international standards. In a statement of

cash flows, some differences are possible in the classifications of interest and dividend revenue, interest expense, and dividends paid. (p. 168, 182, 191 and 202)

- **LO4–10** Activity and profitability ratios provide information about a company's profitability. Activity ratios include the receivables turnover ratio, the inventory turnover ratio, and the asset turnover ratio. Profitability ratios include the profit margin on sales, the return on assets, and the return on shareholders' equity. DuPont analysis explains return on stockholders' equity as determined by profit margin, asset turnover, and the extent to which assets are financed with equity versus debt. (p. 193) ●

Interim Reporting

Financial statements covering periods of less than a year are called *interim reports*. Companies registered with the SEC, which includes most public companies, must submit quarterly reports, and you will see excerpts from these reports throughout this book.³⁸ Though there is no requirement to do so, most also provide quarterly reports to their shareholders and typically include abbreviated, unaudited interim reports as supplemental information within their annual reports. For instance, Illustration 4A–1 shows the quarterly information disclosed in the annual report of **Sherwin Williams Company**, a company that manufactures paint, for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2015. Amounts for each of the four quarters sum to the reported amount for the full year. Compare these numbers to the annual income statement in Illustration 4–2.

APPENDIX 4

Interim reports are issued for periods of less than a year, typically as quarterly financial statements.

Note 16 – Summary of Quarterly Results of Operations (Unaudited)

Year Ended December 31, 2015	1st Quarter	2nd Quarter	3rd Quarter	4th Quarter	Full Year
(\$ in thousands, except per share data)					
Net sales	\$2,450,284	\$3,132,139	\$3,152,285	\$2,604,596	\$11,339,304
Gross profit	1,132,449	1,529,986	1,574,552	1,322,239	5,559,226
Net income	131,404	349,937	374,491	198,017	1,053,849
Basic	\$ 1.41	\$ 3.78	\$ 4.04	\$ 2.15	\$ 11.38
Diluted	\$ 1.38	\$ 3.70	\$ 3.96	\$ 2.12	\$ 11.16

Illustration 4A–1

Interim Data in Annual Report—Sherwin Williams Company

Real World Financials

For accounting information to be useful to decision makers, it must be available on a timely basis. One of the objectives of interim reporting is to enhance the timeliness of financial information. In addition, quarterly reports provide investors and creditors with additional insight on the seasonality of business operations that might otherwise get lost in annual reports. Why are sales and net income higher in the 2nd and 3rd quarters (compared to the 1st and 4th quarters) for Sherwin Williams? Most outside painting occurs in the warmer months. These months occur in the 2nd and 3rd quarters, so it is expected that sales would be higher in these quarters. Because the company sells paint for a profit, profitability is also higher in quarters with greater sales.

However, the downside to these benefits is the relative unreliability of interim reporting. With a shorter reporting period, questions associated with estimation and allocation are magnified. For example, certain expenses often benefit an entire year's operations and yet are incurred primarily within a single interim period. Similarly, should smaller companies use lower tax rates in the earlier quarters and higher rates in later quarters as higher tax brackets are reached? Another result of shorter reporting periods is the intensified effect of unusual events such as material gains and losses. A second quarter casualty loss, for instance, that would reduce annual profits by 10% might reduce second quarter profits by 40% or more. Is it more realistic to allocate such a loss over the entire year? These and similar questions tend to hinge on the way we view an interim period in relation to the fiscal year. More specifically, should each interim period be viewed as a *discrete* reporting period or as an *integral part* of the annual period?

The fundamental debate regarding interim reporting centers on the choice between the discrete and integral part approaches.

³⁸Quarterly reports are filed with the SEC on Form 10-Q. Annual reports to the SEC are on Form 10-K.

With only a few exceptions, the same accounting principles applicable to annual reporting are used for interim reporting.

Reporting Revenues and Expenses

Existing practice and current reporting requirements for interim reporting generally follow the viewpoint that interim reports are an integral part of annual statements, although the discrete approach is applied to some items. Most revenues and expenses are recognized using the same accounting principles applicable to annual reporting. Some modifications are necessary to help cause interim statements to relate better to annual statements. This is most evident in the way costs and expenses are recognized. Most are recognized in interim periods as incurred. But when an expenditure clearly benefits more than just the period in which it is incurred, the expense should be allocated among the periods benefited on an allocation basis consistent with the company's annual allocation procedures. For example, annual repair expenses, property tax expense, and advertising expenses incurred in the first quarter that clearly benefit later quarters are assigned to each quarter through the use of accruals and deferrals. Costs and expenses subject to year-end adjustments, such as depreciation expense, are estimated and allocated to interim periods in a systematic way. Similarly, income tax expense at each interim date should be based on estimates of the effective tax rate for the whole year. This would mean, for example, that if the estimated effective rate has changed since the previous interim period(s), the tax expense in the current period would be determined as the new rate times the cumulative pretax income to date, less the total tax expense reported in previous interim periods.

Reporting Unusual Items

Discontinued operations and unusual items are reported entirely within the interim period in which they occur.

On the other hand, major events such as discontinued operations should be reported separately in the interim period in which they occur. That is, these amounts should not be allocated among individual quarters within the fiscal year. The same is true for items that are unusual. Treatment of these items is more consistent with the discrete view than the integral part view.

Earnings Per Share

Quarterly EPS calculations follow the same procedures as annual calculations.

A second item that is treated in a manner consistent with the discrete view is earnings per share. EPS calculations for interim reports follow the same procedures as annual calculations that you will study in Chapter 19. The calculations are based on conditions actually existing during the particular interim period rather than on conditions estimated to exist at the end of the fiscal year.

Reporting Accounting Changes

Recall that we account for a change in accounting principle retrospectively, meaning we recast prior years' financial statements when we report those statements again in comparative



● LO4–9

International Financial Reporting Standards

Interim Reporting. IAS No. 34 requires that a company apply the same accounting policies in its interim financial statements as it applies in its annual financial statements. Therefore, IFRS takes much more of a discrete-period approach than does U.S. GAAP. For example, costs for repairs, property taxes, and advertising that do not meet the definition of an asset at the end of an interim period are expensed entirely in the period in which they occur under IFRS, but are accrued or deferred and then charged to each of the periods they benefit under U.S. GAAP. This difference would tend to make interim period income more volatile under IFRS than under U.S. GAAP. However, as in U.S. GAAP, income taxes are accounted for based on an estimate of the tax rate expected to apply for the entire year.³⁹

³⁹Interim Financial Reporting," *International Accounting Standard No. 34* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016, par. 28–30.

form. In other words, we make those statements appear as if the newly adopted accounting method had been used in those prior years. It's the same with interim reporting. We retrospectively report a change made during an interim period in similar fashion. Then in financial reports of subsequent interim periods of the same fiscal year, we disclose how that change affected (a) income from continuing operations, (b) net income, and (c) related per share amounts for the postchange interim period.

Accounting changes made in an interim period are reported by retrospectively applying the changes to prior financial statements.

Minimum Disclosures

Complete financial statements are not required for interim period reporting, but certain minimum disclosures are required as follows:⁴⁰

- Sales, income taxes, and net income
- Earnings per share
- Seasonal revenues, costs, and expenses
- Significant changes in estimates for income taxes
- Discontinued operations and unusual items
- Contingencies
- Changes in accounting principles or estimates
- Information about fair value of financial instruments and the methods and assumptions used to estimate fair values
- Significant changes in financial position

When fourth quarter results are not separately reported, material fourth quarter events, including year-end adjustments, should be reported in disclosure notes to annual statements.

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 4-1** The income statement is a change statement. Explain what is meant by this.
- Q 4-2** What transactions are included in income from continuing operations? Briefly explain why it is important to segregate income from continuing operations from other transactions affecting net income.
- Q 4-3** Distinguish between operating and nonoperating income in relation to the income statement.
- Q 4-4** Briefly explain the difference between the single-step and multiple-step income statement formats.
- Q 4-5** Explain what is meant by the term *earnings quality*.
- Q 4-6** What are restructuring costs and where are they reported in the income statement?
- Q 4-7** Define intraperiod tax allocation. Why is the process necessary?
- Q 4-8** How are discontinued operations reported in the income statement?
- Q 4-9** What is meant by a change in accounting principle? Describe the possible accounting treatments for a mandated change in accounting principle.
- Q 4-10** Accountants very often are required to make estimates, and very often those estimates prove incorrect. In what period(s) is the effect of a change in an accounting estimate reported?
- Q 4-11** The correction of a material error discovered in a year subsequent to the year the error was made is considered a prior period adjustment. Briefly describe the accounting treatment for prior period adjustments.
- Q 4-12** Define earnings per share (EPS). For which income statement items must EPS be disclosed?
- Q 4-13** Define comprehensive income. What are the two ways companies can present comprehensive income?
- Q 4-14** Describe the purpose of the statement of cash flows.
- Q 4-15** Identify and briefly describe the three categories of cash flows reported in the statement of cash flows.
- Q 4-16** Explain what is meant by noncash investing and financing activities pertaining to the statement of cash flows. Give an example of one of these activities.
- Q 4-17** Distinguish between the direct method and the indirect method for reporting the results of operating activities in the statement of cash flows.

⁴⁰FASB ASC 270-10-50: Interim Reporting-Overall-Disclosure (previously "Interim Financial Reporting," *Accounting Principles Board Opinion No 28* (New York: AICPA, 1973)).

**IFRS****Q 4-18**

Describe the potential statement of cash flows classification differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS.

Q 4-19

Show the calculation of the following activity ratios: (1) the receivables turnover ratio, (2) the inventory turnover ratio, and (3) the asset turnover ratio. What information about a company do these ratios offer?

Q 4-20

Show the calculation of the following profitability ratios: (1) the profit margin on sales, (2) the return on assets, and (3) the return on shareholders' equity. What information about a company do these ratios offer?

Q 4-21

Show the DuPont framework's calculation of the three components of return on shareholders' equity. What information about a company do these ratios offer?

Q 4-22

Interim reports are issued for periods of less than a year, typically as quarterly financial statements. Should these interim periods be viewed as separate periods or integral parts of the annual period?

**IFRS****Q 4-23**

[Based on Appendix 4] What is the primary difference between interim reports under IFRS and U.S. GAAP?

Brief Exercises

**BE 4-1**

Single-step income statement

● LO4-1

The adjusted trial balance of Pacific Scientific Corporation on December 31, 2018, the end of the company's fiscal year, contained the following income statement items (\$ in millions): sales revenue, \$2,106; cost of goods sold, \$1,240; selling expenses, \$126; general and administrative expenses, \$105; interest expense, \$35; and gain on sale of investments, \$45. Income tax expense has not yet been recorded. The income tax rate is 40%. Prepare a single-step income statement for 2018. Ignore EPS disclosures.

BE 4-2

Multiple-step income statement

● LO4-1, LO4-3

Refer to the situation described in BE 4-1. If the company's accountant prepared a multiple-step income statement, what amount would appear in that statement for (a) operating income and (b) nonoperating income?

BE 4-3

Multiple-step income statement

● LO4-1, LO4-3

Refer to the situation described in BE 4-1. Prepare a multiple-step income statement for 2018. Ignore EPS disclosures.

BE 4-4

Multiple-step income statement

● LO4-1, LO4-3

The following is a partial year-end adjusted trial balance.

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Sales revenue		300,000
Loss on sale of investments	22,000	
Interest revenue		4,000
Cost of goods sold	160,000	
General and administrative expenses	40,000	
Restructuring costs	50,000	
Selling expenses	25,000	
Income tax expense	0	

Income tax expense has not yet been recorded. The income tax rate is 40%. Determine the following: (a) operating income (loss), (b) income (loss) before income taxes, and (c) net income (loss).

BE 4-5

Income from continuing operations

● LO4-3, LO4-5

The following are partial income statement account balances taken from the December 31, 2018, year-end trial balance of White and Sons, Inc.: restructuring costs, \$300,000; interest revenue, \$40,000; before-tax loss on discontinued operations, \$400,000; and loss on sale of investments, \$50,000. Income tax expense has not yet been recorded. The income tax rate is 40%. Prepare the lower portion of the 2018 income statement beginning with \$850,000 income from continuing operations before income taxes. Include appropriate EPS disclosures. The company had 100,000 shares of common stock outstanding throughout the year.

BE 4-6

Discontinued operations

● LO4-4

On December 31, 2018, the end of the fiscal year, Revolutionary Industries completed the sale of its robotics business for \$9 million. The business segment qualifies as a component of the entity according to GAAP. The book value of the assets of the segment was \$7 million. The income from operations of the segment during 2018 was \$4 million. Pretax income from continuing operations for the year totaled \$12 million. The income tax rate is 40%. Prepare the lower portion of the 2018 income statement beginning with pretax income from continuing operations. Ignore EPS disclosures.

BE 4-7

Discontinued operations

● LO4-4

On December 31, 2018, the end of the fiscal year, California Microtech Corporation completed the sale of its semiconductor business for \$10 million. The business segment qualifies as a component of the entity according to GAAP. The book value of the assets of the segment was \$8 million. The loss from operations of the segment

during 2018 was \$3.6 million. Pretax income from continuing operations for the year totaled \$5.8 million. The income tax rate is 30%. Prepare the lower portion of the 2018 income statement beginning with pretax income from continuing operations. Ignore EPS disclosures.

BE 4-8

Discontinued operations

● LO4-4

Refer to the situation described in BE 4-7. Assume that the semiconductor segment was not sold during 2018 but was held for sale at year-end. The estimated fair value of the segment's assets, less costs to sell, on December 31 was \$10 million. Prepare the lower portion of the 2018 income statement beginning with pretax income from continuing operations. Ignore EPS disclosures.

BE 4-9

Discontinued operations

● LO4-4

Refer to the situation described in BE 4-8. Assume instead that the estimated fair value of the segment's assets, less costs to sell, on December 31 was \$7 million rather than \$10 million. Prepare the lower portion of the 2018 income statement beginning with pretax income from continuing operations. Ignore EPS disclosures.

BE 4-10

Comprehensive income

● LO4-6

O'Reilly Beverage Company reported net income of \$650,000 for 2018. In addition, the company deferred a \$60,000 pretax loss on derivatives and had pretax net unrealized holding gains on investment securities of \$40,000. Prepare a separate statement of comprehensive income for 2018. The company's income tax rate is 40%.

BE 4-11

Statement of cash flows; direct method

● LO4-8

The following are summary cash transactions that occurred during the year for Hilliard Healthcare Co. (HHC):

Cash received from:	
Customers	\$660,000
Interest on note receivable	12,000
Collection of note receivable	100,000
Sale of land	40,000
Issuance of common stock	200,000
Cash paid for:	
Interest on note payable	18,000
Purchase of equipment	120,000
Operating expenses	440,000
Dividends to shareholders	30,000

Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of HHC's statement of cash flows using the direct method.

BE 4-12

Statement of cash flows; investing and financing activities

● LO4-8

Refer to the situation described in BE 4-11. Prepare the cash flows from investing and financing activities sections of HHC's statement of cash flows.

BE 4-13

Statement of cash flows; indirect method

● LO4-8

Net income of Mansfield Company was \$45,000. The accounting records reveal depreciation expense of \$80,000 as well as increases in prepaid rent, salaries payable, and income taxes payable of \$60,000, \$15,000, and \$12,000, respectively. Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of Mansfield's statement of cash flows using the indirect method.

BE 4-14

IFRS; Statement of cash flows

● LO4-8, LO4-9

Refer to the situation described in BE 4-11 and BE 4-12. How might your solution to those brief exercises differ if Hilliard Healthcare Co. prepares its statement of cash flows according to International Financial Reporting Standards?



IFRS

BE 4-15

Receivables and inventory turnover ratios

● LO4-10

Universal Calendar Company began the year with accounts receivable (net) and inventory balances of \$100,000 and \$80,000, respectively. Year-end balances for these accounts were \$120,000 and \$60,000, respectively. Sales for the year of \$600,000 generated a gross profit of \$200,000. Calculate the receivables and inventory turnover ratios for the year.

BE 4-16

Profitability ratios

● LO4-10

The 2018 income statement for Anderson TV and Appliance reported sales revenue of \$420,000 and net income of \$65,000. Average total assets for 2018 was \$800,000. Shareholders' equity at the beginning of the year was \$500,000 and \$20,000 was paid to shareholders as dividends. There were no other shareholders' equity

transactions that occurred during the year. Calculate the profit margin on sales, return on assets, and return on shareholders' equity for 2018.

BE 4-17

Profitability ratios

• LO4-10

Refer to the facts described in BE 4-16. Show the DuPont framework's calculation of the three components of the 2018 return on shareholders' equity for Anderson TV and Appliance.

BE 4-18

Inventory turnover ratio

• LO4-10

During 2018, Rogue Corporation reported sales revenue of \$600,000. Inventory at both the beginning and end of the year totaled \$75,000. The inventory turnover ratio for the year was 6.0. What amount of gross profit did the company report in its 2018 income statement?

Exercises

**E 4-1**

Operating versus Nonoperating Income

• LO4-1

Pandora Corporation operates several factories in the Midwest that manufacture consumer electronics. The December 31, 2018, year-end trial balance contained the following income statement items:

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Sales revenue		12,500,000
Interest revenue		50,000
Loss on sale of investments	100,000	
Cost of goods sold	6,200,000	
Selling expenses	620,000	
General and administrative expenses	1,520,000	
Interest expense	40,000	
Research and development expense	1,200,000	
Income tax expense	900,000	

Required:

Calculate the company's operating income for the year.

E 4-2

Income statement format; single step and multiple step

• LO4-1, LO4-5

The following is a partial trial balance for the Green Star Corporation as of December 31, 2018:

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Sales revenue		1,300,000
Interest revenue		30,000
Gain on sale of investments		50,000
Cost of goods sold	720,000	
Selling expenses	160,000	
General and administrative expenses	75,000	
Interest expense	40,000	
Income tax expense	130,000	

100,000 shares of common stock were outstanding throughout 2018.

Required:

1. Prepare a single-step income statement for 2018, including EPS disclosures.
2. Prepare a multiple-step income statement for 2018, including EPS disclosures.

E 4-3

Income statement format; single step and multiple step

• LO4-1, LO4-3, LO4-5

The following is a partial trial balance for General Lighting Corporation as of December 31, 2018:

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Sales revenue		2,350,000
Interest revenue		80,000
Loss on sale of investments	22,500	
Cost of goods sold	1,200,300	
Loss from write-down of inventory due to obsolescence	200,000	
Selling expenses	300,000	
General and administrative expenses	150,000	
Interest expense	90,000	

300,000 shares of common stock were outstanding throughout 2018. Income tax expense has not yet been recorded. The income tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Prepare a single-step income statement for 2018, including EPS disclosures.
2. Prepare a multiple-step income statement for 2018, including EPS disclosures.

E 4-4

Multiple-step continuous statement of comprehensive income

- LO4-1, LO4-5, LO4-6

The trial balance for Lindor Corporation, a manufacturing company, for the year ended December 31, 2018, included the following income accounts:

Account Title	Debits	Credits
Sales revenue		2,300,000
Cost of goods sold	1,400,000	
Selling and administrative expenses	420,000	
Interest expense	40,000	
Unrealized holding gains on investment securities		80,000

The trial balance does not include the accrual for income taxes. Lindor's income tax rate is 30%. One million shares of common stock were outstanding throughout 2018.

Required:

Prepare a single, continuous multiple-step statement of comprehensive income for 2018, including appropriate EPS disclosures.

E 4-5

Income statement presentation

- LO4-1, LO4-5

The following *incorrect* income statement was prepared by the accountant of the Axel Corporation:

AXEL CORPORATION Income Statement For the Year Ended December 31, 2018		
Revenues and gains:		
Sales		\$592,000
Interest and dividends		32,000
Gain on sale of investments		86,000
Total revenues and gains		710,000
Expenses and losses:		
Cost of goods sold	\$325,000	
Selling expenses	67,000	
Administrative expenses	87,000	
Interest	26,000	
Restructuring costs	55,000	
Income taxes	60,000	
Total expenses and losses		620,000
Net Income		\$ 90,000
Earnings per share		\$ 0.90

Required:

Prepare a multiple-step income statement for 2018 applying generally accepted accounting principles. The income tax rate is 40%.

E 4-6

Discontinued operations

- LO4-4, LO4-5

Chance Company had two operating divisions, one manufacturing farm equipment and the other office supplies. Both divisions are considered separate components as defined by generally accepted accounting principles. The farm equipment component had been unprofitable, and on September 1, 2018, the company adopted a plan to sell the assets of the division. The actual sale was completed on December 15, 2018, at a price of \$600,000. The book value of the division's assets was \$1,000,000, resulting in a before-tax loss of \$400,000 on the sale.

The division incurred a before-tax operating loss from operations of \$130,000 from the beginning of the year through December 15. The income tax rate is 40%. Chance's after-tax income from its continuing operations is \$350,000.

Required:

Prepare an income statement for 2018 beginning with income from continuing operations. Include appropriate EPS disclosures assuming that 100,000 shares of common stock were outstanding throughout the year.

E 4-7

Income statement presentation; discontinued operations; restructuring costs

- LO4-1, LO4-3, LO4-4

Esquire Comic Book Company had income before tax of \$1,000,000 in 2018 *before* considering the following material items:

1. Esquire sold one of its operating divisions, which qualified as a separate component according to generally accepted accounting principles. The before-tax loss on disposal was \$350,000. The division generated before-tax income from operations from the beginning of the year through disposal of \$500,000. Neither the loss on disposal nor the operating income is included in the \$1,000,000 before-tax income the company generated from its other divisions.
2. The company incurred restructuring costs of \$80,000 during the year.

Required:

Prepare a 2018 income statement for Esquire beginning with income from continuing operations. Assume an income tax rate of 40%. Ignore EPS disclosures.

E 4-8

Discontinued operations; disposal in subsequent year

- LO4-4

Kandon Enterprises, Inc., has two operating divisions; one manufactures machinery and the other breeds and sells horses. Both divisions are considered separate components as defined by generally accepted accounting principles. The horse division has been unprofitable, and on November 15, 2018, Kandon adopted a formal plan to sell the division. The sale was completed on April 30, 2019. At December 31, 2018, the component was considered held for sale.

On December 31, 2018, the company's fiscal year-end, the book value of the assets of the horse division was \$250,000. On that date, the fair value of the assets, less costs to sell, was \$200,000. The before-tax loss from operations of the division for the year was \$140,000. The company's effective tax rate is 40%. The after-tax income from continuing operations for 2018 was \$400,000.

Required:

1. Prepare a partial income statement for 2018 beginning with income from continuing operations. Ignore EPS disclosures.
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the estimated net fair value of the horse division's assets was \$400,000, instead of \$200,000.

E 4-9

Discontinued operations; disposal in subsequent year; solving for unknown

- LO4-4

On September 17, 2018, Ziltech, Inc., entered into an agreement to sell one of its divisions that qualifies as a component of the entity according to generally accepted accounting principles. By December 31, 2018, the company's fiscal year-end, the division had not yet been sold, but was considered held for sale. The net fair value (fair value minus costs to sell) of the division's assets at the end of the year was \$11 million. The pretax income from operations of the division during 2018 was \$4 million. Pretax income from continuing operations for the year totaled \$14 million. The income tax rate is 40%. Ziltech reported net income for the year of \$7.2 million.

Required:

Determine the book value of the division's assets on December 31, 2018.

E 4-10

Earnings per share

- LO4-5

The Esposito Import Company had 1 million shares of common stock outstanding during 2018. Its income statement reported the following items: income from continuing operations, \$5 million; loss from discontinued operations, \$1.6 million. All of these amounts are net of tax.

Required:

Prepare the 2018 EPS presentation for the Esposito Import Company.

E 4-11

Comprehensive income

- LO4-6

The Massoud Consulting Group reported net income of \$1,354,000 for its fiscal year ended December 31, 2018. In addition, during the year the company experienced a positive foreign currency translation adjustment of \$240,000 and had unrealized losses on investment securities of \$80,000. The company's effective tax rate on all items affecting comprehensive income is 30%. Each component of other comprehensive income is displayed net of tax.

Required:

Prepare a separate statement of comprehensive income for 2018.

E 4-12

Statement of cash flows; classifications

- LO4-8

The statement of cash flows classifies all cash inflows and outflows into one of the three categories shown below and lettered from a through c. In addition, certain transactions that do not involve cash are reported in the statement as noncash investing and financing activities, labeled d.

- a. Operating activities
- b. Investing activities
- c. Financing activities
- d. Noncash investing and financing activities

Required:

For each of the following transactions, use the letters above to indicate the appropriate classification category.

1. _____ Purchase of equipment for cash
2. _____ Payment of employee salaries
3. _____ Collection of cash from customers
4. _____ Cash proceeds from a note payable
5. _____ Purchase of common stock of another corporation for cash
6. _____ Issuance of common stock for cash
7. _____ Sale of equipment for cash
8. _____ Payment of interest on note payable
9. _____ Issuance of bonds payable in exchange for land and building
10. _____ Payment of cash dividends to shareholders
11. _____ Payment of principal on note payable

E 4-13

Statement of cash flows preparation

● LO4-8

The following summary transactions occurred during 2018 for Bluebonnet Bakers:

Cash Received from:	
Customers	\$380,000
Interest on note receivable	6,000
Principal on note receivable	50,000
Sale of investments	30,000
Proceeds from note payable	100,000
Cash Paid for:	
Purchase of inventory	160,000
Interest on note payable	5,000
Purchase of equipment	85,000
Salaries to employees	90,000
Principal on note payable	25,000
Payment of dividends to shareholders	20,000

The balance of cash and cash equivalents at the beginning of 2018 was \$17,000.

Required:

Prepare a statement of cash flows for 2018 for Bluebonnet Bakers. Use the direct method for reporting operating activities.

E 4-14

IFRS; statement of cash flows

● LO4-8, LO4-9



Refer to the situation described in E 4-13.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows assuming that Bluebonnet prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. Where IFRS allows flexibility, use the classification used most often in IFRS financial statements.

E 4-15

Indirect method; reconciliation of net income to net cash flows from operating activities

● LO4-8

The accounting records of Hampton Company provided the data below (\$ in thousands).

Net income	\$17,300
Depreciation expense	7,800
Increase in accounts receivable	4,000
Decrease in inventory	5,500
Decrease in prepaid insurance	1,200
Decrease in salaries payable	2,700
Increase in interest payable	800

Required:

Prepare a reconciliation of net income to net cash flows from operating activities.

E 4-16

Statement of cash flows; directly from transactions

● LO4-8

The following transactions occurred during March 2018 for the Wainwright Corporation. The company owns and operates a wholesale warehouse. [These are the same transactions analyzed in Exercise 2-1, when we determined their effect on elements of the accounting equation.]

1. Issued 30,000 shares of capital stock in exchange for \$300,000 in cash.

- Purchased equipment at a cost of \$40,000. \$10,000 cash was paid and a note payable to the seller was signed for the balance owed.
- Purchased inventory on account at a cost of \$90,000. The company uses the perpetual inventory system.
- Credit sales for the month totaled \$120,000. The cost of the goods sold was \$70,000.
- Paid \$5,000 in rent on the warehouse building for the month of March.
- Paid \$6,000 to an insurance company for fire and liability insurance for a one-year period beginning April 1, 2018.
- Paid \$70,000 on account for the merchandise purchased in 3.
- Collected \$55,000 from customers on account.
- Recorded depreciation expense of \$1,000 for the month on the equipment.

Required:

- Analyze each transaction and classify each as a financing, investing, and/or operating activity (a transaction can represent more than one type of activity). In doing so, also indicate the cash effect of each, if any. If there is no cash effect, simply place a check mark (✓) in the appropriate column(s).

Example:

Operating	Investing	Financing
1.		\$300,000

- Prepare a statement of cash flows, using the direct method to present cash flows from operating activities. Assume the cash balance at the beginning of the month was \$40,000.

E 4-17

Statement of cash flows; indirect method

• LO4-8

Cemtex Corporation prepares its statement of cash flows using the indirect method to report operating activities. Net income for the 2018 fiscal year was \$624,000. Depreciation and amortization expense of \$87,000 was included with operating expenses in the income statement. The following information describes the changes in current assets and liabilities other than cash:

Decrease in accounts receivable	\$22,000
Increase in inventories	9,200
Increase prepaid expenses	8,500
Increase in salaries payable	10,000
Decrease in income taxes payable	14,000

Required:

Prepare the operating activities section of the 2018 statement of cash flows.

E 4-18

Statement of cash flows; indirect method

• LO4-8

Chew Corporation prepares its statement of cash flows using the indirect method of reporting operating activities. Net income for the 2018 fiscal year was \$1,250,000. Depreciation expense of \$140,000 was included with operating expenses in the income statement. The following information describes the changes in current assets and liabilities other than cash:

Increase in accounts receivable	\$152,000
Decrease in inventories	108,000
Decrease prepaid expenses	62,000
Decrease in salaries payable	30,000
Increase in income taxes payable	44,000

Required:

Calculate cash flows from operating activities for 2018.

E 4-19

IFRS; statement of cash flows

• LO4-8, LO4-9



IFRS

The statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018, for Bronco Metals is presented below.

BRONCO METALS
Statement of Cash Flows
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018

Cash flows from operating activities:	
Collections from customers	\$353,000
Interest on note receivable	4,000
Dividends received from investments	2,400
Purchase of inventory	(186,000)
Payment of operating expenses	(67,000)

(continued)

(concluded)

Payment of interest on note payable	(8,000)	
Net cash flows from operating activities		\$ 98,400
Cash flows from investing activities:		
Collection of note receivable	100,000	
Purchase of equipment	(154,000)	
Net cash flows from investing activities		(54,000)
Cash flows from financing activities:		
Proceeds from issuance of common stock	200,000	
Dividends paid	(40,000)	
Net cash flows from financing activities		160,000
Net increase in cash		204,400
Cash and cash equivalents, January 1		28,600
Cash and cash equivalents, December 31		<u>\$233,000</u>

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows assuming that Bronco prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. Where IFRS allows flexibility, use the classification used most often in IFRS financial statements.

E 4-20

Statement of cash flows; indirect method

● LO4-8

Presented below is the 2018 income statement and comparative balance sheet information for Tiger Enterprises.

TIGER ENTERPRISES
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018

(\$ in thousands)		
Sales revenue		\$7,000
Operating expenses:		
Cost of goods sold	\$3,360	
Depreciation	240	
Insurance	100	
Administrative and other	1,800	
Total operating expenses		5,500
Income before income taxes		1,500
Income tax expense		600
Net income		<u>\$ 900</u>

Balance Sheet Information (\$ in thousands)	Dec. 31, 2018	Dec. 31, 2017
Assets:		
Cash	\$ 300	\$ 200
Accounts receivable	750	830
Inventory	640	600
Prepaid insurance	50	20
Plant and equipment	2,100	1,800
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(840)	(600)
Total assets	<u>\$3,000</u>	<u>\$2,850</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity:		
Accounts payable	\$ 300	\$360
Payables for administrative and other expenses	300	400
Income taxes payable	200	150
Note payable (due 12/31/2019)	800	600
Common stock	900	800
Retained earnings	500	540
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$3,000</u>	<u>\$2,850</u>

Required:

Prepare Tiger's statement of cash flows, using the indirect method to present cash flows from operating activities. (*Hint:* You will have to calculate dividend payments).

E 4-21

Statement of cash flows; direct method

● LO4-8

Refer to the situation described in E 4-20.

Required:

Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of Tiger's 2018 statement of cash flows using the direct method. Assume that all purchases and sales of inventory are on account, and that there are no anticipated bad

debts for accounts receivable. (Hint: Use T-accounts for the pertinent items to isolate the information needed for the statement).

E 4-22

FASB codification research

- LO4-5



The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on earnings per share using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Identify the Codification topic number that provides the accounting for earnings per share.
2. What is the specific citation that describes the additional information for earnings per share that must be included in the notes to the financial statements?
3. Describe the required disclosures.

E 4-23

FASB codification research

- LO4-5, LO4-6, LO4-8



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for each of the following items:

1. The calculation of the weighted average number of shares for basic earnings per share purposes
2. The alternative formats permissible for reporting comprehensive income
3. The classifications of cash flows required in the statement of cash flows

E 4-24

Concepts; terminology

- LO4-1, LO4-2, LO4-3, LO4-4, LO4-5, LO4-6, LO4-7, LO4-8

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with income statement presentation and the statement of cash flows. Pair each item from List A (by letter) with the item from List B that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. Intraperiod tax allocation	a. An other comprehensive income item
_____ 2. Comprehensive income	b. Starts with net income and works backwards to convert to cash
_____ 3. Unrealized holding gain on investments	c. Reports the cash effects of each operating activity directly on the statement
_____ 4. Operating income	d. Correction of a material error of a prior period
_____ 5. A discontinued operation	e. Related to the external financing of the company
_____ 6. Earnings per share	f. Associates tax with income statement item
_____ 7. Prior period adjustment	g. Total nonowner change in equity
_____ 8. Financing activities	h. Related to the transactions entering into the determination of net income
_____ 9. Operating activities (SCF)	i. Related to the acquisition and disposition of long-term assets
_____ 10. Investing activities	j. Required disclosure for publicly traded corporation
_____ 11. Direct method	k. A component of an entity
_____ 12. Indirect method	l. Directly related to principal revenue-generating activities

E 4-25

Inventory turnover; calculation and evaluation

- LO4-10

The following is a portion of the condensed income statement for Rowan, Inc., a manufacturer of plastic containers:

Net sales		\$2,460,000
Less: Cost of goods sold:		
Inventory, January 1	\$ 630,000	
Net purchases	1,900,000	
Inventory, December 31	(690,000)	1,840,000
Gross profit		<u>\$ 620,000</u>

Required:

1. Determine Rowan's inventory turnover.
2. What information does this ratio provide?

E 4-26

Evaluating efficiency of asset management

- LO4-10

The 2018 income statement of Anderson Medical Supply Company reported net sales of \$8 million, cost of goods sold of \$4.8 million, and net income of \$800,000. The following table shows the company's comparative balance sheets for 2018 and 2017:

	(\$ in thousands)	
	2018	2017
Assets		
Cash	\$ 300	\$ 380
Accounts receivable	700	500
Inventory	900	700
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	2,400	2,120
Total assets	<u>\$4,300</u>	<u>\$3,700</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Current liabilities	\$ 960	\$ 830
Bonds payable	1,200	1,200
Paid-in capital	1,000	1,000
Retained earnings	1,140	670
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$4,300</u>	<u>\$3,700</u>

Some industry averages for Anderson's line of business are

Inventory turnover	5 times
Average collection period	25 days
Asset turnover	1.8 times

Required:

- Determine the following ratios for 2018:
 - Inventory turnover
 - Receivables turnover
 - Average collection period
 - Asset turnover
- Assess Anderson's asset management relative to its industry.

E 4-27

Profitability ratios

● LO4-10

The following condensed information was reported by Peabody Toys, Inc., for 2018 and 2017:

	(\$ in thousands)	
	2018	2017
Income statement information		
Net sales	\$5,200	\$4,200
Net income	180	124
Balance sheet information		
Current assets	\$ 800	\$ 750
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	1,100	950
Total assets	<u>\$1,900</u>	<u>\$1,700</u>
Current liabilities	\$ 600	\$ 450
Long-term liabilities	750	750
Paid-in capital	400	400
Retained earnings	150	100
Liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$1,900</u>	<u>\$1,700</u>

Required:

- Determine the following ratios for 2018:
 - Profit margin on sales
 - Return on assets
 - Return on shareholders' equity
- Determine the amount of dividends paid to shareholders during 2018.

E 4-28

DuPont analysis

● LO4-10

This exercise is based on the Peabody Toys, Inc., data from E 4-27.

Required:

- Determine the following components of the DuPont framework for 2018:
 - Profit margin on sales

- b. Asset turnover
 - c. Equity multiplier
 - d. Return on shareholders' equity
2. Write an equation that relates these components in calculating ROE. Use the Peabody Toys data to show that the equation is correct.

E 4-29

Interim financial statements; income tax expense

● Appendix 4

Joplin Laminating Corporation reported income before income taxes during the first three quarters, and management's estimates of the annual effective tax rate at the end of each quarter as shown below:

	Quarter		
	First	Second	Third
Income before income taxes	\$50,000	\$40,000	\$100,000
Estimated annual effective tax rate	34%	30%	36%

Required:

Determine the income tax expense to be reported in the income statement in each of the three quarterly reports.

E 4-30

Interim reporting; recognizing expenses

● Appendix 4

Security-Rand Corporation determines executive incentive compensation at the end of its fiscal year. At the end of the first quarter, management estimated that the amount will be \$300 million. Depreciation expense for the year is expected to be \$60 million. Also during the quarter, the company realized a gain of \$23 million from selling two of its manufacturing plants.

Required:

What amounts for these items should be reported in the first quarter's income statement?

E 4-31

Interim financial statements; reporting expenses

● Appendix 4

Shields Company is preparing its interim report for the second quarter ending June 30. The following payments were made during the first two quarters:

Required:

Expenditure	Date	Amount
Annual advertising	January	\$800,000
Property tax for the fiscal year	February	350,000
Annual equipment repairs	March	260,000
One-time research and development fee to consultant	May	96,000

For each expenditure, indicate the amount that would be reported in the quarterly income statements for the periods ending March 31, June 30, September 30, and December 31.

E 4-32

Interim financial statements

● Appendix 4

Assume the same facts as in E 4-31, but that Shields Company reports under IFRS. For each expenditure, indicate the amount that would be reported in the quarterly income statements for the periods ending March 31, June 30, September 30, and December 31.



IFRS

Problems

**P 4-1**

Comparative income statements; multiple-step format

● LO4-1, LO4-3, LO4-4, LO4-5

Selected information about income statement accounts for the Reed Company is presented below (the company's fiscal year ends on December 31).

	2018	2017
Sales	\$4,400,000	\$3,500,000
Cost of goods sold	2,860,000	2,000,000
Administrative expenses	800,000	675,000
Selling expenses	360,000	312,000
Interest revenue	150,000	140,000
Interest expense	200,000	200,000
Loss on sale of assets of discontinued component	50,000	—



On July 1, 2018, the company adopted a plan to discontinue a division that qualifies as a component of an entity as defined by GAAP. The assets of the component were sold on September 30, 2018, for \$50,000 less than their book value. Results of operations for the component (*included* in the above account balances) were as follows:

	1/1/2018–9/30/2018	2017
Sales	\$400,000	\$500,000
Cost of goods sold	(290,000)	(320,000)
Administrative expenses	(50,000)	(40,000)
Selling expenses	(20,000)	(30,000)
Operating income before taxes	<u>\$ 40,000</u>	<u>\$ 110,000</u>

In addition to the account balances above, several events occurred during 2018 that have *not* yet been reflected in the above accounts:

1. A fire caused \$50,000 in uninsured damages to the main office building. The fire was considered to be an infrequent but not unusual event.
2. Inventory that had cost \$40,000 had become obsolete because a competitor introduced a better product. The inventory was sold as scrap for \$5,000.
3. Income taxes have not yet been recorded.

Required:

Prepare a multiple-step income statement for the Reed Company for 2018, showing 2017 information in comparative format, including income taxes computed at 40 percent and EPS disclosures assuming 300,000 shares of common stock.

P 4–2

Discontinued operations

• LO4–4

The following condensed income statements of the Jackson Holding Company are presented for the two years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017:

	2018	2017
Sales	\$15,000,000	\$9,600,000
Cost of goods sold	9,200,000	6,000,000
Gross profit	5,800,000	3,600,000
Operating expenses	3,200,000	2,600,000
Operating income	2,600,000	1,000,000
Gain on sale of division	600,000	—
	3,200,000	1,000,000
Income tax expense	1,280,000	400,000
Net income	<u>\$ 1,920,000</u>	<u>\$ 600,000</u>

On October 15, 2018, Jackson entered into a tentative agreement to sell the assets of one of its divisions. The division qualifies as a component of an entity as defined by GAAP. The division was sold on December 31, 2018, for \$5,000,000. Book value of the division's assets was \$4,400,000. The division's contribution to Jackson's operating income before-tax for each year was as follows:

2018	\$400,000
2017	\$300,000

Assume an income tax rate of 40 percent.

Required:

1. Prepare revised income statements according to generally accepted accounting principles, beginning with income from continuing operations before income taxes. Ignore EPS disclosures.
2. Assume that by December 31, 2018, the division had not yet been sold but was considered held for sale. The fair value of the division's assets on December 31 was \$5,000,000. What would be the amount presented for discontinued operations?
3. Assume that by December 31, 2018, the division had not yet been sold but was considered held for sale. The fair value of the division's assets on December 31 was \$3,900,000. What would be the amount presented for discontinued operations?

P 4–3

Income statement presentation;
Discontinued operations;
Accounting error

• LO4–4, LO4–5

For the year ending December 31, 2018, Micron Corporation had income from continuing operations before taxes of \$1,200,000 before considering the following transactions and events. All of the items described below are before taxes and the amounts should be considered material.

1. In November 2018, Micron sold its Waffle House restaurant chain that qualified as a component of an entity. The company had adopted a plan to sell the chain in May 2018. The income from operations of the chain from January 1, 2018, through November was \$160,000 and the loss on sale of the chain's assets was \$300,000.
2. In 2018, Micron sold one of its six factories for \$1,200,000. At the time of the sale, the factory had a book value of \$1,100,000. The factory was not considered a component of the entity.
3. In 2016, Micron's accountant omitted the annual adjustment for patent amortization expense of \$120,000. The error was not discovered until December 2018.

Required:

Prepare Micron's income statement, beginning with income from continuing operations before taxes, for the year ended December 31, 2018. Assume an income tax rate of 30%. Ignore EPS disclosures.

P 4-4

Restructuring costs;
Discontinued operations;
Accounting error

- LO4-3, LO4-4, LO4-5

The preliminary 2018 income statement of Alexian Systems, Inc., is presented below:

ALEXIAN SYSTEMS, INC.	
Income Statement	
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018	
(\$ in millions, except earnings per share)	
Revenues and gains:	
Net sales	\$ 425
Interest	3
Other income	126
Total revenues and gains	554
Expenses:	
Cost of goods sold	270
Selling and administrative	154
Income taxes	52
Total expenses	476
Net Income	\$ 78
Earnings per share	\$3.90

Additional Information:

1. Selling and administrative expenses include \$26 million in restructuring costs.
2. Included in other income is \$120 million in income from a discontinued operation. This consists of \$90 million in operating income and a \$30 million gain on disposal. The remaining \$6 million is from the gain on sale of investments.
3. Cost of goods sold was increased by \$5 million to correct an error in the calculation of 2017's ending inventory. The amount is material.

Required:

For each of the three additional facts listed in the additional information, discuss the appropriate presentation of the item described. Do not prepare a revised statement.

P 4-5

Income statement presentation;
Restructuring costs; Discontinued operations;
Accounting error

- LO4-1, LO4-3, LO4-4, LO4-5

[This is a variation of the previous problem focusing on income statement presentation.]

Required:

Refer to the information presented in P 4-4. Prepare a revised income statement for 2018 reflecting the additional facts. Use a multiple-step format. Assume that an income tax rate of 40% applies to all income statement items, and that 20 million shares of common stock were outstanding throughout the year.

**P 4-6**

Income statement presentation;
Discontinued operations; EPS

- LO4-1, LO4-3, LO4-4, LO4-5

Rembrandt Paint Company had the following income statement items for the year ended December 31, 2018 (\$ in thousands):

Net sales	\$18,000
Interest income	200
Interest expense	350
Cost of goods sold	10,500
Selling and administrative expenses	2,500
Restructuring costs	800



In addition, during the year the company completed the disposal of its plastics business and incurred a loss from operations of \$1.6 million and a gain on disposal of the component's assets of \$2 million. 500,000 shares of common stock were outstanding throughout 2018. Income tax expense has not yet been recorded. The income tax rate is 30% on all items of income (loss).

Required:

Prepare a multiple-step income statement for 2018, including EPS disclosures.

P 4-7

Income statement presentation; statement of comprehensive income; unusual items

- LO4-1, LO4-3 through LO4-6



The following income statement items appeared on the adjusted trial balance of Schembri Manufacturing Corporation for the year ended December 31, 2018 (\$ in thousands): sales revenue, \$15,300; cost of goods sold, \$6,200; selling expenses, \$1,300; general and administrative expenses, \$800; interest revenue, \$85; interest expense, \$180. Income taxes have not yet been recorded. The company's income tax rate is 40% on all items of income or loss. These revenue and expense items appear in the company's income statement every year. The company's controller, however, has asked for your help in determining the appropriate treatment of the following nonrecurring transactions that also occurred during 2018 (\$ in thousands). All transactions are material in amount.

1. Investments were sold during the year at a loss of \$220. Schembri also had unrealized gains of \$320 for the year on investments.
2. One of the company's factories was closed during the year. Restructuring costs incurred were \$1,200.
3. During the year, Schembri completed the sale of one of its operating divisions that qualifies as a component of the entity according to GAAP. The division had incurred a loss from operations of \$560 in 2018 prior to the sale, and its assets were sold at a gain of \$1,400.
4. In 2018, the company's accountant discovered that depreciation expense in 2017 for the office building was understated by \$200.
5. Negative foreign currency translation adjustment for the year totaled \$240.

Required:

1. Prepare Schembri's single, continuous multiple-step statement of comprehensive income for 2018, including earnings per share disclosures. One million shares of common stock were outstanding at the beginning of the year and an additional 400,000 shares were issued on July 1, 2018.
2. Prepare a separate statement of comprehensive income for 2018.

P 4-8

Multiple-step statement of income and comprehensive income

- LO4-1, LO4-3, LO4-5, LO4-6



Duke Company's records show the following account balances at December 31, 2018:

Sales	\$15,000,000
Cost of goods sold	9,000,000
General and administrative expenses	1,000,000
Selling expenses	500,000
Interest expense	700,000

Income tax expense has not yet been determined. The following events also occurred during 2018. All transactions are material in amount.

1. \$300,000 in restructuring costs were incurred in connection with plant closings.
2. Inventory costing \$400,000 was written off as obsolete. Material losses of this type are considered to be unusual.
3. It was discovered that depreciation expense for 2017 was understated by \$50,000 due to a mathematical error.
4. The company experienced a negative foreign currency translation adjustment of \$200,000 and had unrealized gains on investments of \$180,000.

Required:

Prepare a single, continuous multiple-step statement of comprehensive income for 2018. The company's effective tax rate on all items affecting comprehensive income is 40%. Each component of other comprehensive income should be displayed net of tax. Ignore EPS disclosures.

P 4-9

Statement of cash flows

- LO4-8

The Diversified Portfolio Corporation provides investment advice to customers. A condensed income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018, appears below:

Service revenue	\$900,000
Operating expenses	700,000
Income before income taxes	200,000
Income tax expense	80,000
Net income	<u>\$120,000</u>

The following balance sheet information also is available:

	12/31/2018	12/31/2017
Cash	\$275,000	\$ 70,000
Accounts receivable	120,000	100,000
Accounts payable (operating expenses)	70,000	60,000
Income taxes payable	10,000	15,000

In addition, the following transactions took place during the year:

1. Common stock was issued for \$100,000 in cash.
2. Long-term investments were sold for \$50,000 in cash. The original cost of the investments also was \$50,000.
3. \$80,000 in cash dividends was paid to shareholders.
4. The company has no outstanding debt, other than those payables listed above.
5. Operating expenses include \$30,000 in depreciation expense.

Required:

1. Prepare a statement of cash flows for 2018 for the Diversified Portfolio Corporation. Use the direct method for reporting operating activities.
2. Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of Diversified's 2018 statement of cash flows using the indirect method.

P 4-10

Integration
of financial
statements;
Chapters 3 and 4

• LO4-8



The chief accountant for Grandview Corporation provides you with the company's 2018 statement of cash flows and income statement. The accountant has asked for your help with some missing figures in the company's comparative balance sheets. These financial statements are shown next (\$ in millions).

GRANDVIEW CORPORATION
Statement of Cash Flows
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018

Cash Flows from Operating Activities:	
Collections from customers	\$71
Payment to suppliers	(30)
Payment of general & administrative expenses	(18)
Payment of income taxes	(9)
Net cash flows from operating activities	\$14
Cash Flows from Investing Activities:	
Sale of investments	65
Cash Flows from Financing Activities:	
Issuance of common stock	10
Payment of dividends	(3)
Net cash flows from financing activities	7
Net increase in cash	\$86

GRANDVIEW CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018

Sales revenue	\$80
Cost of goods sold	32
Gross profit	48
Operating expenses:	
General and administrative	\$18
Depreciation	10
Total operating expenses	28
Operating income	20
Other income:	
Gain on sale of investments	15
Income before income taxes	35
Income tax expense	7
Net income	\$28

(continued)

(concluded)

GRANDVIEW CORPORATION**Balance Sheets
At December 31**

	2018	2017
Assets:		
Cash	\$145	\$?
Accounts receivable	?	84
Investments	—	50
Inventory	60	?
Property, plant & equipment	150	150
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(65)	?
Total assets	?	?
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity:		
Accounts payable to suppliers	\$ 40	\$ 30
Payables for selling & admin. expenses	9	9
Income taxes payable	22	?
Common stock	240	230
Retained earnings	?	47
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	?	?

Required:

1. Calculate the missing amounts.
2. Prepare the operating activities section of Grandview's 2018 statement of cash flows using the indirect method.

P 4-11

Statement of cash
flows; indirect
method

● LO4-8



Presented below are the 2018 income statement and comparative balance sheets for Santana Industries.

SANTANA INDUSTRIES**Income Statement**

For the Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in thousands)

Sales revenue	\$14,250	
Service revenue	3,400	
Total revenue		\$17,650
Operating expenses:		
Cost of goods sold	7,200	
Selling	2,400	
General and administrative	1,500	
Total operating expenses		11,100
Operating income		6,550
Interest expense		200
Income before income taxes		6,350
Income tax expense		2,500
Net income		\$ 3,850
Balance Sheet Information (\$ in thousands)	Dec. 31, 2018	Dec. 31, 2017
Assets:		
Cash	\$ 7,350	\$ 2,200
Accounts receivable	2,500	2,200
Inventory	4,000	3,000
Prepaid rent	150	300
Plant and equipment	14,500	12,000
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(5,100)	(4,500)
Total assets	\$23,400	\$15,200
Liabilities and shareholders' equity:		
Accounts payable	\$ 1,400	\$ 1,100
Interest payable	100	0
Deferred service revenue	800	600
Income taxes payable	550	800
Loan payable (due 12/31/2020)	5,000	0
Common stock	10,000	10,000
Retained earnings	5,550	2,700
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$23,400	\$15,200

Additional information for the 2018 fiscal year (\$ in thousands):

1. Cash dividends of \$1,000 were declared and paid.
2. Equipment costing \$4,000 was purchased with cash.
3. Equipment with a book value of \$500 (cost of \$1,500 less accumulated depreciation of \$1,000) was sold for \$500.
4. Depreciation of \$1,600 is included in operating expenses.

Required:

Prepare Santana Industries' 2018 statement of cash flows, using the indirect method to present cash flows from operating activities.

P 4-12

Calculating activity and profitability ratios

• LO4-10

Financial statements for Askew Industries for 2018 are shown below (in thousands):

2018 Income Statement

Sales	\$9,000
Cost of goods sold	(6,300)
Gross profit	2,700
Operating expenses	(2,000)
Interest expense	(200)
Tax expense	(200)
Net income	\$ 300

Comparative Balance Sheets

	Dec. 31	
	2018	2017
Assets		
Cash	\$ 600	\$ 500
Accounts receivable	600	400
Inventory	800	600
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	2,000	2,100
	<u>\$4,000</u>	<u>\$3,600</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Current liabilities	\$1,100	\$ 850
Bonds payable	1,400	1,400
Paid-in capital	600	600
Retained earnings	900	750
	<u>\$4,000</u>	<u>\$3,600</u>

Required:

Calculate the following ratios for 2018.

1. Inventory turnover ratio
2. Average days in inventory
3. Receivables turnover ratio
4. Average collection period
5. Asset turnover ratio
6. Profit margin on sales
7. Return on assets
8. Return on shareholders' equity
9. Equity multiplier
10. Return on shareholders' equity (using the DuPont framework)

P 4-13

Use of ratios to compare two companies in the same industry

• LO4-10

Presented below are condensed financial statements adapted from those of two actual companies competing in the pharmaceutical industry—**Johnson and Johnson (J&J)** and **Pfizer, Inc.** (\$ in millions, except per share amounts).

Required:

Evaluate and compare the two companies by responding to the following questions. **Note:** Because two-year comparative statements are not provided, you should use year-end balances in place of average balances as appropriate.

1. Which of the two companies appears more efficient in collecting its accounts receivable and managing its inventory?
2. Which of the two firms had greater earnings relative to resources available?
3. Have the two companies achieved their respective rates of return on assets with similar combinations of profit margin and turnover?
4. From the perspective of a common shareholder, which of the two firms provided a greater rate of return?
5. From the perspective of a common shareholder, which of the two firms appears to be using leverage more effectively to provide a return to shareholders above the rate of return on assets?

Balance Sheets

(\$ in millions, except per share data)

	J&J	Pfizer
Assets:		
Cash	\$ 5,377	\$ 1,520
Short-term investments	4,146	10,432
Accounts receivable (net)	6,574	8,775
Inventories	3,588	5,837
Other current assets	3,310	3,177
Current assets	22,995	29,741
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	9,846	18,287
Intangibles and other assets	15,422	68,747
Total assets	<u>\$48,263</u>	<u>\$116,775</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity:		
Accounts payable	\$ 4,966	\$ 2,601
Short-term notes	1,139	8,818
Other current liabilities	7,343	12,238
Current liabilities	13,448	23,657
Long-term debt	2,955	5,755
Other long-term liabilities	4,991	21,986
Total liabilities	21,394	51,398
Capital stock (par and additional paid-in capital)	3,120	67,050
Retained earnings	30,503	29,382
Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	(590)	195
Less: Treasury stock and other equity adjustments	(6,164)	(31,250)
Total shareholders' equity	26,869	65,377
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$48,263</u>	<u>\$116,775</u>
Income Statements		
Net sales	\$41,862	\$ 45,188
Cost of goods sold	12,176	9,832
Gross profit	29,686	35,356
Operating expenses	19,763	28,486
Other (income) expense—net	(385)	3,610
Income before taxes	10,308	3,260
Tax expense	3,111	1,621
Net income	<u>\$ 7,197</u>	<u>\$ 1,639*</u>
Basic net income per share	<u>\$ 2.42</u>	<u>\$ 0.22</u>

*This is before income from discontinued operations.

P 4-14

Creating a balance sheet from ratios; Chapters 3 and 4

● LO4-10



Cadux Candy Company's income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018, reported interest expense of \$2 million and income tax expense of \$12 million. Current assets listed in its balance sheet include cash, accounts receivable, and inventories. Property, plant, and equipment is the company's only noncurrent asset. Financial ratios for 2018 are listed below. Profitability and turnover ratios with balance sheet items in the denominator were calculated using year-end balances rather than averages.

Debt to equity ratio	1.0
Current ratio	2.0
Acid-test ratio	1.0
Times interest earned ratio	17 times
Return on assets	10%
Return on shareholders' equity	20%

(continued)

(concluded)

Profit margin on sales	5%
Gross profit margin (gross profit divided by net sales)	40%
Inventory turnover	8 times
Receivables turnover	20 times

Required:

Prepare a December 31, 2018, balance sheet for the Cadux Candy Company.

P 4–15

Compare two companies in the same industry; Chapters 3 and 4

• LO4–10

Presented below are condensed financial statements adapted from those of two actual companies competing as the primary players in a specialty area of the food manufacturing and distribution industry (\$ in millions, except per share amounts).

	Balance Sheets	
	Metropolitan	Republic
Assets:		
Cash	\$ 179.3	\$ 37.1
Accounts receivable (net)	422.7	325.0
Short-term investments	—	4.7
Inventories	466.4	635.2
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	134.6	476.7
Current assets	1,203.0	1,478.7
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	2,608.2	2,064.6
Intangibles and other assets	210.3	464.7
Total assets	<u>\$4,021.5</u>	<u>\$4,008.0</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Accounts payable	\$ 467.9	\$ 691.2
Short-term notes	227.1	557.4
Accruals and other current liabilities	585.2	538.5
Current liabilities	1,280.2	1,787.1
Long-term debt	535.6	542.3
Deferred tax liability	384.6	610.7
Other long-term liabilities	104.0	95.1
Total liabilities	2,304.4	3,035.2
Common stock (par and additional paid-in capital)	144.9	335.0
Retained earnings	2,476.9	1,601.9
Less: Treasury stock	(904.7)	(964.1)
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$4,021.5</u>	<u>\$4,008.0</u>
Income Statements		
Net sales	\$5,698.0	\$7,768.2
Cost of goods sold	(2,909.0)	(4,481.7)
Gross profit	2,789.0	3,286.5
Operating expenses	(1,743.7)	(2,539.2)
Interest expense	(56.8)	(46.6)
Income before taxes	988.5	700.7
Tax expense	(394.7)	(276.1)
Net income	<u>\$ 593.8</u>	<u>\$ 424.6</u>
Net income per share	<u>\$ 2.40</u>	<u>\$ 6.50</u>

Required:

Evaluate and compare the two companies by responding to the following questions.

Note: Because comparative statements are not provided you should use year-end balances in place of average balances as appropriate.

1. Which of the two firms had greater earnings relative to resources available?
2. Have the two companies achieved their respective rates of return on assets with similar combinations of profit margin and turnover?
3. From the perspective of a common shareholder, which of the two firms provided a greater rate of return?
4. Which company is most highly leveraged and which has made most effective use of financial leverage?
5. Of the two companies, which appears riskier in terms of its ability to pay short-term obligations?
6. How efficiently are current assets managed?

7. From the perspective of a creditor, which company offers the most comfortable margin of safety in terms of its ability to pay fixed interest charges?

P 4-16

Interim financial reporting

- Appendix 4

Branson Electronics Company is a small, publicly traded company preparing its first quarter interim report to be mailed to shareholders. The following information for the quarter has been compiled:

Revenues		\$180,000
Cost of goods sold		35,000
Operating expenses:		
Fixed	\$59,000	
Variable	<u>48,000</u>	107,000

Fixed operating expenses include payments of \$50,000 to an advertising firm to promote Branson through various media throughout the year. The income tax rate for Branson's level of operations in the first quarter is 30%, but management estimates the effective rate for the entire year will be 36%.

Required:

Prepare the income statement to be included in Branson's first quarter interim report.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Judgment**Case 4-1**

Earnings quality

- LO4-2, LO4-3

The financial community in the United States has become increasingly concerned with the quality of reported company earnings.

Required:

1. Define the term *earnings quality*.
2. Explain the distinction between permanent and temporary earnings as it relates to the concept of earnings quality.
3. How do earnings management practices affect the quality of earnings?
4. Assume that a manufacturing company's annual income statement included a large gain from the sale of investment securities. What factors would you consider in determining whether or not this gain should be included in an assessment of the company's permanent earnings?

Judgment**Case 4-2**

Restructuring costs

- LO4-3

The appearance of restructuring costs in corporate income statements increased significantly in the 1980s and 1990s and continues to be relevant today.

Required:

1. What types of costs are included in restructuring costs?
2. When are restructuring costs recognized?
3. How would you classify restructuring costs in a multi-step income statement?
4. What factors would you consider in determining whether or not restructuring costs should be included in an assessment of a company's permanent earnings?

Judgment**Case 4-3**

Earnings management

- LO4-2, LO4-3

Companies often are under pressure to meet or beat Wall Street earnings projections in order to increase stock prices and also to increase the value of stock options. Some resort to earnings management practices to artificially create desired results.

Required:

Is *earnings management* always intended to produce higher income? Explain.

Real World**Case 4-4**

Earnings quality and non-GAAP earnings

- LO4-3

Companies often voluntarily provide non-GAAP earnings when they announce annual or quarterly earnings.

Required:

1. What is meant by the term *non-GAAP earnings* in this context?
2. How do non-GAAP earnings relate to the concept of earnings quality?

Research**Case 4–5**

FASB codification; locate and extract relevant information and cite authoritative support for a financial reporting issue; restructuring costs; exit or disposal cost obligations

● LO4–2, LO4–3



The accrual of restructuring costs creates obligations (liabilities) referred to as *exit or disposal cost obligations*.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on exit or disposal cost obligations using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*. You might gain access at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). What is the Codification topic number that addresses this issue?
2. What is the specific citation that addresses the initial measurement of these obligations?
3. How are these obligations and related costs to be measured?
4. What is the specific citation that describes the disclosure requirements in the notes to the financial statements for exit or disposal obligations?
5. List the required disclosures.

Judgment**Case 4–6**

Income statement presentation

● LO4–3, LO4–4, LO4–5

Each of the following situations occurred during 2018 for one of your audit clients:

1. The write-off of inventory due to obsolescence.
2. Discovery that depreciation expenses were omitted by accident from 2017's income statement.
3. The useful lives of all machinery were changed from eight to five years.
4. The depreciation method used for all equipment was changed from the declining-balance to the straight-line method.
5. Restructuring costs were incurred.
6. The Stridewell Company, a manufacturer of shoes, sold all of its retail outlets. It will continue to manufacture and sell its shoes to other retailers. A loss was incurred in the disposition of the retail stores. The retail stores are considered a component of the entity.
7. The inventory costing method was changed from FIFO to average cost.

Required:

1. For each situation, identify the appropriate reporting treatment from the list below (consider each event to be material):
 - a. As an unusual gain or loss
 - b. As a prior period adjustment
 - c. As a change in accounting principle
 - d. As a discontinued operation
 - e. As a change in accounting estimate
 - f. As a change in accounting estimate achieved by a change in accounting principle
2. Indicate whether each situation would be included in the income statement in continuing operations (CO) or below continuing operations (BC), or if it would appear as an adjustment to retained earnings (RE). Use the format shown below to answer requirements 1 and 2.

Situation	Treatment (a–f)	Financial Statement Presentation (CO, BC, or RE)
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		

Judgment**Case 4–7**

Income statement presentation

● LO4–3, LO4–4, LO4–5

The following events occurred during 2018 for various audit clients of your firm. Consider each event to be independent and the effect of each event to be material.

1. A manufacturing company recognized a loss on the sale of investments.

2. An automobile manufacturer sold all of the assets related to its financing component. The operations of the financing business is considered a component of the entity.
3. A company changed its depreciation method from the double-declining-balance method to the straight-line method.
4. Due to obsolescence, a company engaged in the manufacture of high-technology products incurred a loss on the write-down of inventory.
5. One of your clients discovered that 2017's depreciation expense was overstated. The error occurred because of a miscalculation of depreciation for the office building.
6. A cosmetics company decided to discontinue the manufacture of a line of women's lipstick. Other cosmetic lines will be continued. A loss was incurred on the sale of assets related to the lipstick product line. The operations of the discontinued line is not considered a component of the entity.

Required:

Discuss the 2018 financial statement presentation of each of the above events. Do not consider earnings per share disclosures.

IFRS Case 4–8

Statement of cash flows;
GlaxoSmithKline Plc.

● LO4–8, LO4–9

Real World Financials

GlaxoSmithKline Plc. (GSK) is a global pharmaceutical and consumer health-related products company located in the United Kingdom. The company prepares its financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards. Below is a portion of the company's statements of cash flows included in recent financial statements:

GLAXOSMITHKLINE PLC. Consolidated Cash Flow Statement For the Year Ended 31 December 2013				
	Notes	2013 £m	2012 (restated) £m	2011 (restated) £m
Cash flow from operating activities				
Profit after taxation for the year		5,628	4,678	5,405
Adjustments reconciling profit after tax to operating cash flows	36	2,871	1,370	2,308
Cash generated from operations		8,499	6,048	7,713
Taxation paid		(1,277)	(1,673)	(1,463)
Net cash inflow from operating activities		7,222	4,375	6,250
Cash flow from investing activities				
Purchase of property, plant and equipment		(1,188)	(1,051)	(923)
Proceeds from sale of property, plant and equipment		46	68	100
Purchase of intangible assets		(513)	(469)	(405)
Proceeds from sale of intangible assets		136	1,056	237
Purchase of equity investments		(133)	(229)	(76)
Proceeds from sale of equity investments		59	28	68
Purchase of businesses, net of cash acquired	38	(247)	(2,235)	(264)
Disposal of businesses	38	1,851	—	—
Investments in associates and joint ventures	20	(8)	(99)	(35)
Proceeds from disposal of subsidiary and interest in associate		429	—	1,034
Decrease in liquid investments		15	224	30
Interest received		59	30	97
Dividends from associates and joint ventures		18	46	25
Net cash inflow/(outflow) from investing activities		524	(2,631)	(112)
Cash flow from financing activities				
Proceeds from own shares for employee share options		—	58	45
Shares acquired by ESOP Trusts		(45)	(37)	(36)
Issue of share capital	33	585	356	250
Purchase of own shares for cancellation or to be held as Treasury shares		(1,504)	(2,493)	(2,191)
Purchase of non-controlling interests		(588)	(14)	—
Increase in long-term loans		1,913	4,430	—
Increase in short-term loans		—	1,743	45
Repayment of short-term loans		(1,872)	(2,559)	(8)
Net repayment of obligations under finance leases		(31)	(35)	(38)
Interest paid		(749)	(779)	(769)
Dividends paid to shareholders		(3,680)	(3,814)	(3,406)
Distributions to non-controlling interests		(238)	(171)	(234)

(continued)

(concluded)

Other financing cash flows		(64)	(36)	110
Net cash outflow from financing activities		(6,273)	(3,351)	(6,232)
Increase/(decrease) in cash and bank overdrafts	37	1,473	(1,607)	(94)
Cash and bank overdrafts at beginning of year		3,906	5,605	5,807
Exchange adjustments		(148)	(92)	(108)
Increase/(decrease) in cash and bank overdrafts		1,473	(1,607)	(94)
Cash and bank overdrafts at end of year		5,231	3,906	5,605
Cash and bank overdrafts at end of year comprise:				
Cash and cash equivalents		5,534	4,184	5,714
Overdrafts		(303)	(278)	(109)
		5,231	3,906	5,605

Required:

Identify the items in the above statements that would be reported differently if GlaxoSmithKline prepared its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP rather than IFRS.

Norse Manufacturing Inc. prepares an annual single, continuous statement of income and comprehensive income. The following situations occurred during the company's 2018 fiscal year:

1. Restructuring costs were incurred due to the closing of a factory.
2. Investments were sold, and a loss was recognized.
3. A positive foreign currency translation adjustment was recognized.
4. Interest expense was incurred.
5. A division was sold that qualifies as a separate component of the entity according to GAAP.
6. Obsolete inventory was written off.
7. The controller discovered an error in the calculation of 2017's patent amortization expense.

Required:

1. For each situation, identify the appropriate reporting treatment from the list below (consider each event to be material):
 - a. As a component of operating income
 - b. As a nonoperating income item (other income or expense)
 - c. As a discontinued operation
 - d. As an other comprehensive income item
 - e. As an adjustment to retained earnings
2. Identify the situations that would be reported net-of-tax.

It has been suggested that not all accounting choices are made by management in the best interest of fair and consistent financial reporting.

Required:

What motivations can you think of for management's choice of accounting methods?

Judgment**Case 4–9**

Income statement presentation; unusual items; comprehensive income

- LO4–3, LO4–4, LO4–5, LO4–6

Judgment**Case 4–10**

Management incentives for change

- LO4–2

Research**Case 4–11**

Non-GAAP earnings

- LO4–3

Companies often voluntarily provide non-GAAP earnings when they announce annual or quarterly earnings. These numbers are controversial as they represent management's view of permanent earnings. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act (SOX), issued in 2002, requires that if non-GAAP earnings are included in any periodic or other report filed with the SEC or in any public disclosure or press release, the company also must provide a reconciliation with earnings determined according to GAAP.

Professors Entwistle, Feltham, and Mbagwu, in "Financial Reporting Regulation and the Reporting of Pro Forma Earnings," examine whether firms changed their reporting practice in response to the regulations included in SOX.

Required:

1. In your library or from some other source, locate the indicated article in *Accounting Horizons*, March 2006.
2. What sample of firms did the authors use in their examination?
3. What percent of firms reported non-GAAP earnings (referred to as *pro forma earnings* by the authors) in 2001? In 2003?
4. What percent of firms had non-GAAP earnings greater than GAAP earnings in 2001? In 2003?

5. What was the most frequently reported adjusting item in 2001? In 2003?
6. What are the authors' main conclusions of the impact of SOX on non-GAAP reporting?

Integrating Case 4–12

Balance sheet
and income
statement;
Chapters 3 and 4
● LO4–3

Rice Corporation is negotiating a loan for expansion purposes and the bank requires financial statements. Before closing the accounting records for the year ended December 31, 2018, Rice's controller prepared the following financial statements:

RICE CORPORATION
Balance Sheet At December 31, 2018
(\$ in thousands)

Assets		
Cash		\$ 275
Marketable securities		78
Accounts receivable		487
Inventories		425
Allowance for uncollectible accounts		(50)
Property and equipment, net		160
Total assets		<u>\$1,375</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities		\$ 420
Notes payable		200
Common stock		260
Retained earnings		495
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity		<u>\$1,375</u>

RICE CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in thousands)

Net sales		\$1,580
Expenses:		
Cost of goods sold	\$755	
Selling and administrative	385	
Miscellaneous	129	
Income taxes	100	
Total expenses		<u>1,369</u>
Net income		<u>\$ 211</u>

Additional Information:

1. The company's common stock is traded on an organized stock exchange.
2. The investment portfolio consists of short-term investments valued at \$57,000. The remaining investments will not be sold until the year 2020.
3. Notes payable consist of two notes:
 Note 1: \$80,000 face value dated September 30, 2018. Principal and interest at 10% are due on September 30, 2019.
 Note 2: \$120,000 face value dated April 30, 2018. Principal is due in two equal installments of \$60,000 plus interest on the unpaid balance. The two payments are scheduled for April 30, 2019, and April 30, 2020.
 Interest on both loans has been correctly accrued and is included in accrued liabilities on the balance sheet and selling and administrative expenses on the income statement.
4. Selling and administrative expenses include \$90,000 representing costs incurred by the company in restructuring some of its operations. The amount is material.

Required:

Identify and explain the deficiencies in the presentation of the statements prepared by the company's controller. Do not prepare corrected statements. Include in your answer a list of items which require additional disclosure, either on the face of the statement or in a note.

Refer to the income statement of **Sherwin Williams Company** in Illustration 4–2 of this chapter.

Required:

1. Is this income statement presented in the single-step or multiple-step format?

Analysis Case 4–13

Income statement
information
● LO4–1

- What is the company's approximate income tax rate?
- What is the percentage of net income relative to net sales?

Real World Case 4–14

Income statement
information

- LO4–1, LO4–3,
LO4–4

Real World Financials

EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, performs automated collection, validation, indexing, and forwarding of submissions by companies and others who are required by law to file forms with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR to make the majority of their filings. (Some foreign companies file voluntarily.) Form 10-K, which includes the annual report, is required to be filed on EDGAR. The SEC makes this information available on the Internet.

Required:

- Access EDGAR on the Internet. The web address is www.sec.gov.
- Search for a public company with which you are familiar. Access the most recent 10-K filing. Search or scroll to find the financial statements and related notes.
- Answer the following questions related to the company's income statement:
 - Does the company use the single-step or multiple-step format, or a variation?
 - Does the income statement contain any income or loss on discontinued operations? If it does, describe the component of the company that was discontinued. (*Hint*: there should be a related disclosure note.)
 - Describe the trend in net income over the years presented.
- Repeat requirements 2 and 3 for two additional companies.

Real World Case 4–15

Income
statement format;
restructuring
costs; earnings
per share;
comprehensive
income;
statement of
cash flows; Ralph
Lauren

- LO4–1, LO4–3,
LO4–5, LO4–6,
LO4–8

Real World Financials

Ralph Lauren Corporation is a global leader in the design, marketing, and distribution of premium lifestyle products, including men's, women's and children's apparel. Below are selected financial statements taken from a recent 10-K filing.

Required:

Use the information in the financial statements to answer the following questions.

- Does the company use the single-step or multiple-step format to present its income statements?
- What are restructuring costs? Why are they reported as a line item?
- Describe the fiscal 2014 restructuring and other costs. (Note: this will require access to the company's 10-K which you can find using EDGAR on the Internet at www.sec.gov, or on the investor relations page at the company website: www.ralphlauren.com).
- Using the information you find in the company's 10-K, describe the 2013 asset impairments.
- Explain the difference between basic and diluted earnings per share.
- The company chose to report comprehensive income in two consecutive statements, a statement of income and a statement of comprehensive income. What other alternative did the company have to report the information in these two statements?
- What "other comprehensive items (OCI)" did the company report in fiscal 2014? What other possible transactions would be reported as OCI if the company had experienced those transactions?
- What method does the company use to report net cash provided by operating activities? What other method(s) could the company have used?
- What is the largest cash outflow from investing activities?

RALPH LAUREN CORPORATION CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF INCOME

	Fiscal Years Ended		
	March 29, 2014	March 30, 2013	March 31, 2012
	(\$ in millions, except per share data)		
Net sales	\$ 7,284	\$ 6,763	\$ 6,679
Licensing revenue	166	182	181
Net revenues	7,450	6,945	6,860
Cost of goods sold	(3,140)	(2,789)	(2,862)
Gross profit	4,310	4,156	3,998
Other costs and expenses:			
Selling, general, and administrative expenses	(3,142)	(2,971)	(2,916)
Amortization of intangible assets	(35)	(27)	(29)
Gain on acquisition of Chaps	16	—	—
Impairments of assets	(1)	(19)	(2)

(continued)

(concluded)

RALPH LAUREN CORPORATION
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF INCOME

	Fiscal Years Ended		
	March 29, 2014	March 30, 2013	March 31, 2012
	(\$ in millions, except per share data)		
Restructuring and other costs	(18)	(12)	(12)
Total other costs and expenses, net	(3,180)	(3,029)	(2,959)
Operating income	1,130	1,127	1,039
Foreign currency losses	(8)	(12)	(2)
Interest expense	(20)	(22)	(24)
Interest and other income, net	3	6	11
Equity in losses of equity-method investees	(9)	(10)	(9)
Income before provision for income taxes	1,096	1,089	1,015
Provision for income taxes	(320)	(339)	(334)
Net income	\$ 776	\$ 750	\$ 681
Net income per common share:			
Basic	\$ 8.55	\$ 8.21	\$ 7.35
Diluted	\$ 8.43	\$ 8.00	\$ 7.13

RALPH LAUREN CORPORATION
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME

	Fiscal Years Ended		
	March 29, 2014	March 30, 2013	March 31, 2012
	(\$ in millions)		
Net income	\$776	\$750	\$681
Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax:			
Foreign currency translation adjustments	52	(93)	(50)
Gains (losses) on derivatives	(27)	(13)	32
Net unrealized gains (losses) on available-for-sale investments	(5)	4	1
Losses on defined benefit plans	—	(1)	(2)
Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax	20	(103)	(19)
Total comprehensive income	\$796	\$647	\$662

RALPH LAUREN CORPORATION
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS

	Fiscal Years Ended		
	March 29, 2014	March 30, 2013	March 31, 2012
	(\$ in millions)		
Cash flows from operating activities:			
Net income	\$776	\$750	\$ 681
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Depreciation and amortization expense	258	233	225
Deferred income tax expense (benefit)	1	14	(15)
Equity in losses of equity-method investees	9	10	9
Non-cash stock-based compensation expense	93	88	78
Gain on acquisition of Chaps	(16)	—	—
Non-cash impairment of assets	1	19	2
Other non-cash charges, net	6	3	3
Excess tax benefits from stock-based compensation arrangements	(34)	(41)	(40)
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Accounts receivable	(104)	82	(114)
Inventories	(77)	(68)	(148)

(continued)

(concluded)

RALPH LAUREN CORPORATION			
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS			
	Fiscal Years Ended		
	March 29, 2014	March 30, 2013	March 31, 2012
	(\$ in millions)		
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(56)	4	(39)
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	43	(57)	33
Income tax receivables and payables	59	(13)	122
Deferred income	(18)	(30)	(19)
Other balance sheet changes, net	(34)	25	107
Net cash provided by operating activities	907	1,019	885
Cash flows from investing activities:			
Capital expenditures	(390)	(276)	(272)
Purchases of investments	(1,067)	(876)	(1,360)
Proceeds from sales and maturities of investments	1,011	1,058	1,394
Acquisitions and ventures, net of cash acquired	(40)	(22)	(12)
Change in restricted cash deposits	(2)	3	1
Net cash used in investing activities	(488)	(113)	(249)
Cash flows from financing activities:			
Proceeds from issuance of debt	300	—	108
Repayment of debt	(269)	—	(108)
Payments of capital lease obligations	(9)	(9)	(8)
Payments of dividends	(149)	(128)	(74)
Repurchases of common stock, including shares surrendered for tax withholdings	(558)	(497)	(419)
Prepayments of common stock repurchases	—	(50)	—
Proceeds from exercise of stock options	52	49	61
Excess tax benefits from stock-based compensation arrangements	34	41	40
Payment on interest rate swap termination	—	—	(8)
Other financing activities	—	(1)	—
Net cash used in financing activities	(599)	(595)	(408)
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	3	(9)	(9)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	(177)	302	219
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period	974	672	453
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period	\$ 797	\$ 974	\$ 672

Performance and profitability of a company often are evaluated using the financial information provided by a firm's annual report in comparison with other firms in the same industry. Ratios are useful in this assessment.

Analysis Case 4–16

Evaluating profitability and asset management; obtain and compare annual reports from companies in the same industry

LO4–10

Required:

Obtain annual reports from two corporations in the same primary industry. Using techniques you learned in this chapter and any analysis you consider useful, respond to the following questions:

1. How do earnings trends compare in terms of both the direction and stability of income?
2. Which of the two firms had greater earnings relative to resources available?
3. How efficiently are current assets managed?
4. Has each of the companies achieved its respective rate of return on assets with similar combinations of profit margin and turnover?
5. Are there differences in accounting methods that should be taken into account when making comparisons?

Note: You can obtain copies of annual reports from friends who are shareholders, the investor relations department of the corporations, from a friendly stockbroker, or from EDGAR (Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval) on the Internet (www.sec.gov).

Judgment Case 4–17

Relationships among ratios; Chapters 3 and 4

LO4–10

You are a part-time financial advisor. A client is considering an investment in common stock of a waste recycling firm. One motivation is a rumor the client heard that the company made huge investments in a new fuel creation process. Unable to confirm the rumor, your client asks you to determine whether the firm's assets had recently increased significantly.

Because the firm is small, information is sparse. Last quarter's interim report showed total assets of \$324 million, approximately the same as last year's annual report. The only information more current than that is a press release last week in which the company's management reported "record net income for the year of \$21 million, representing a 14.0% return on shareholders' equity. Performance was enhanced by the Company's judicious use of financial leverage on a debt/equity ratio of 2 to 1."

Integrating Case 4–18

Using ratios to test reasonableness of data; Chapters 3 and 4

● LO4–10

Required:

Use the information available to provide your client with an opinion as to whether the waste recycling firm invested in the new fuel creation process during the last quarter of the year.

You are a new staff accountant with a large regional CPA firm, participating in your first audit. You recall from your auditing class that CPAs often use ratios to test the reasonableness of accounting numbers provided by the client. Since ratios reflect the relationships among various account balances, if it is assumed that prior relationships still hold, prior years' ratios can be used to estimate what current balances should approximate. However, you never actually performed this kind of analysis until now. The CPA in charge of the audit of Covington Pike Corporation brings you the list of ratios shown below and tells you these reflect the relationships maintained by Covington Pike in recent years.

Profit margin on sales = 5%

Return on assets = 7.5%

Gross profit margin = 40%

Inventory turnover ratio = 6 times

Receivables turnover ratio = 25 times

Acid-test ratio = 0.9 to one

Current ratio = 2 to 1

Return on shareholders' equity = 10%

Debt to equity ratio = 1/3

Times interest earned ratio = 12 times

Jotted in the margins are the following notes:

- Net income \$15,000.
- Only one short-term note (\$5,000); all other current liabilities are trade accounts.
- Property, plant, and equipment are the only noncurrent assets.
- Bonds payable are the only noncurrent liabilities.
- The effective interest rate on short-term notes and bonds is 8%.
- No investment securities.
- Cash balance totals \$15,000.

Required:

You are requested to approximate the current year's balances in the form of a balance sheet and income statement, to the extent the information allows. Accompany those financial statements with the calculations you use to estimate each amount reported.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

● LO4–3, LO4–4, LO4–6, LO4–8

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. By what name does Target label its income statement?
2. What amounts did Target report for the following items for the year ended January 30, 2016?
 - a. Sales
 - b. Gross margin
 - c. Earnings from continuing operations before income taxes
 - d. Net earnings from continuing operations
 - e. Net earnings
3. What additional items, if any, does Target report as part of its comprehensive income?
4. Does target prepare the statement of cash flows using the direct method or the indirect method?
5. Which is higher, net earnings or operating cash flows? Which line item is the biggest reason for this difference? Explain why.
6. What is the largest investing cash flow and the largest financing cash flow reported by the company for the year ended January 30, 2016?

**Air France–KLM
Case**

● LO4–9

**IFRS**

Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are provided Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. How does AF classify operating expenses in its income statement? How are these expenses typically classified in a U.S. company income statement?
2. How does AF classify interest paid, interest received, and dividends received in its statement of cash flows? What other alternatives, if any, does the company have for the classification of these items? How are these items classified under U.S. GAAP?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

5

Revenue Recognition

OVERVIEW

In Chapter 4, we discussed net income and its presentation in the income statement. In Chapter 5 we focus on revenue recognition, which determines when and how much revenue appears in the income statement. In Part A of this chapter, we discuss the general approach for recognizing revenue in three situations—at a point in time, over a period of time, and for contracts that include multiple parts that might require recognizing revenue at different times. In Part B, we see how to deal with special issues that affect the revenue recognition process. In Part C, we discuss how to account for revenue in long-term contracts. In an appendix, we consider some aspects of GAAP that were eliminated by recent changes in accounting standards but that still will be used in practice until the end of 2017.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO5-1** State the core revenue recognition principle and the five key steps in applying it. (p. 236)
- **LO5-2** Explain when it is appropriate to recognize revenue at a single point in time. (p. 238)
- **LO5-3** Explain when it is appropriate to recognize revenue over a period of time. (p. 239)
- **LO5-4** Allocate a contract's transaction price to multiple performance obligations. (p. 241)
- **LO5-5** Determine whether a contract exists, and whether some frequently encountered features of contracts qualify as performance obligations. (p. 245)
- **LO5-6** Understand how variable consideration and other aspects of contracts affect the calculation and allocation of the transaction price. (p. 248)
- **LO5-7** Determine the timing of revenue recognition with respect to licenses, franchises, and other common arrangements. (p. 254)
- **LO5-8** Understand the disclosures required for revenue recognition, accounts receivable, contract assets, and contract liabilities. (p. 259)
- **LO5-9** Demonstrate revenue recognition for long-term contracts, both at a point in time when the contract is completed and over a period of time according to the percentage completed. (p. 261)
- **LO5-10** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to revenue recognition. (pp. 246, 249 and 256)



© Hero Images/Getty Images

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Ask the Oracle

“Good news! I got the job,” she said, closing the door behind her.

Your roommate, a software engineer, goes on to explain that she accepted a position at **Oracle Corporation**, a world leader in enterprise software, computer hardware, and cloud-computing services.

“The salary’s good, too,” she continued. “Plus, Mr. Watson, my supervisor, said I’ll be getting a bonus tied to the amount of revenue my projects produce. So I started looking at Oracle’s financial statements, but I can’t even understand when they get to recognize revenue. Sometimes they recognize it all at once, sometimes over time, and sometimes they seem to

break apart a sale and recognize revenue for different parts at different times. And sometimes they recognize revenue before they are even done with a project, according to the percentage they have completed so far. You’re the accountant. What determines when Oracle gets to recognize revenue?”

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. Under what circumstances do companies recognize revenue at a point in time? Over a period of time? (p. 238)
2. When do companies break apart a sale and treat its parts differently for purposes of recognizing revenue? (p. 241)
3. How do companies account for long-term contracts that qualify for revenue recognition over time? (p. 262)

QUESTIONS

What is **revenue**? According to the FASB’s conceptual framework, “Revenues are inflows or other enhancements of assets of an entity or settlements of its liabilities (or a combination of both) from delivering or producing goods, rendering services, or other activities that constitute the entity’s ongoing major or central operations.”¹ In simpler terms, revenue is the inflow of cash or accounts receivable that a business receives when it provides goods or services to its customers.

For many companies, revenue is the single largest number reported in the financial statements. Its pivotal role in the picture painted by the financial statements makes measuring and reporting revenue one of the most critical aspects of financial reporting. It is important not only to determine *how much* revenue to recognize (record), but also *when* to recognize it. A one-year income statement should report a company’s revenues for only that one-year period. Sometimes, though, it’s difficult to determine how much revenue to recognize in a particular period. Also, you can imagine that a manager who is evaluated according to how much revenue she generates each period might be tempted to recognize more revenue than is appropriate. In fact, the SEC has cracked down on revenue-recognition abuses in the past, and its enforcement division continues to do so.²

¹“Elements of Financial Statements,” *Statement of Financial Concepts No. 6* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1985, par. 78).

²For SEC guidance that provides examples of appropriate and inappropriate revenue recognition, see FASB ASC 605–10–S99: Revenue Recognition—Overall—SEC Materials (originally “Revenue Recognition in Financial Statements,” *Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 101* (Washington, D.C.: SEC, December 1999) and *Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 104* (Washington, D.C.: SEC, December 2003)).

Revenue recognition criteria help ensure that an income statement reflects the actual accomplishments of a company for the period.

Revenue recognition accounting standards help ensure that the appropriate amount of revenue appears in each period's income statement. That guidance has changed recently.

Revenue recognition previously was based on the "realization principle," which required that we recognize revenue when both the earnings process is virtually complete and there is reasonable certainty as to the collectibility of the assets to be received in exchange for goods and services. That approach to revenue recognition created some problems. Revenue recognition was poorly tied to the FASB's conceptual framework, which places more emphasis on recognizing assets and liabilities rather than on the earnings process. The focus on the earnings process led to similar transactions being treated differently in different industries. And, the realization principle was difficult to apply to complex arrangements that involved multiple goods or services.

To address these concerns, the FASB and IASB worked together to develop a new revenue recognition standard, which the FASB issued as *Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2014-09*, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers," on May 28, 2014.³ The ASU provides a unified approach that replaces more than 200 different pieces of specialized guidance that had developed over time in U.S. GAAP for revenue recognition under various industries and circumstances. Public companies reporting under U.S. GAAP must adopt the ASU for periods beginning after December 15, 2017.⁴ Companies have two options for adopting *ASU No. 2014-09*: they can restate prior years presented in comparative financial statements to appear as if the company had always accounted for revenue under the ASU, or they can leave prior year financial statements unchanged and in the beginning of 2018 record the adjustments necessary to convert to the ASU.

Because you need to understand the revenue recognition requirements that will be in effect during your career, we focus on the revenue recognition approach described in *ASU No. 2014-09* (and clarified in subsequent guidance). In the chapter appendix, we consider aspects of GAAP that were eliminated by the ASU but that still will appear in practice for public companies until the end of 2017.

PART A

Introduction to Revenue Recognition

• LO5-1

Let's start with the core revenue recognition principle and the key steps we use to apply that principle. These are shown in Illustration 5-1.

Illustration 5-1

Core Revenue Recognition Principle and the Five Steps Used to Apply the Principle

Core Revenue Recognition Principle

Companies recognize revenue when goods or services are transferred to customers for the amount the company expects to be entitled to receive in exchange for those goods or services.*

Five Steps Used to Apply the Principle

- Step 1** • Identify the contract with a customer.
- Step 2** • Identify the performance obligation(s) in the contract.
- Step 3** • Determine the transaction price.
- Step 4** • Allocate the transaction price to each performance obligation.
- Step 5** • Recognize revenue when (or as) each performance obligation is satisfied.

*FASB ASC 606-10-05-4: Revenue from Contracts with Customers—Overall—Overview and Background—General (previously "Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)" *Accounting Standards Update 2014-09* (Norwalk, Conn: FASB, 2014)).

³"Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)" *Accounting Standards Update 2014-09* (Norwalk, Conn: FASB, 2014).

⁴The new revenue recognition standard is required for nonpublic companies for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2018. All U.S. companies can adopt the ASU for periods starting after December 15, 2016 if they so choose. For companies issuing reports under IFRS, the IFRS version of this standard, IFRS 15, is effective for periods beginning January 1, 2018. Early adoption of IFRS 15 is permitted.

All revenue recognition starts with a contract between a seller and a customer. You may not have realized it, but you have been a party to several such contracts very recently. Maybe you bought a cup of **Starbucks** coffee or a breakfast biscuit at **McDonald's** this morning. Or maybe you bought this textbook through **Amazon** or had a checkup at your doctor's office. Even though these transactions weren't accompanied by written and signed agreements, they are considered contracts for purposes of revenue recognition. The key is that, implicitly or explicitly, you entered into an arrangement that specifies the legal rights and obligations of a seller and a customer.

Contracts between a seller and a customer contain one or more **performance obligations**, which are promises by the seller to transfer goods or services to a customer. The seller recognizes revenue when it satisfies a performance obligation by transferring the promised good or service. We consider transfer to have occurred when the customer has *control* of the good or service. *Control* means that the customer has direct influence over the use of the good or service and obtains its benefits.

For many contracts, following this approach is very straightforward. In particular, if a contract includes only one performance obligation, we typically just have to decide when the seller delivers the good or provides the service to a customer, and then make sure that the seller recognizes revenue at that time.

As a simple example, assume **Macy's** sells a skirt to Susan for \$75 that Macy's previously purchased from a wholesaler for \$40. How would Macy's account for the sale to Susan?

1. **Identify the contract with a customer:** In this case, the contract may not be written, but it is clear—Macy's delivers the skirt to Susan, and Susan agrees to pay \$75 to Macy's.
2. **Identify the performance obligation(s) in the contract:** Macy's has only a single performance obligation—to deliver the skirt.
3. **Determine the transaction price:** Macy's is entitled to receive \$75 from Susan.
4. **Allocate the transaction price to each performance obligation:** With only one performance obligation, Macy's allocates the full transaction price of \$75 to delivery of the skirt.
5. **Recognize revenue when (or as) each performance obligation is satisfied:** Macy's satisfies its performance obligation when it delivers the skirt to Susan, so Macy's records the following journal entries at that time:

Cash	75	
Sales revenue		75
Cost of goods sold*	40	
Inventory		40

*This second journal entry assumes that Macy's uses a "perpetual" inventory system, by which we record increases and decreases in inventory as they occur ("perpetually"). We reviewed this method briefly in Chapter 2 and explore it in more depth in Chapter 8.

Performance obligations are promises to transfer goods or services to a customer.

Performance obligations are satisfied when the seller transfers control of goods or services to the customer.

Revenue recognition gets more complicated when a contract contains more than one performance obligation. For example, when **Verizon** signs up a new cell phone customer, the sales contract might require Verizon to provide (1) a smartphone, (2) related software, (3) a warranty on the phone, (4) ongoing network access, and (5) optional future upgrades. Verizon must determine which of these goods and services constitute performance obligations, allocate the transaction price to those performance obligations, and recognize revenue when (or as) each performance obligation is satisfied.

In Part A of this chapter, we apply the five steps for recognizing revenue to various types of contracts. First we'll focus on contracts that have only one performance obligation to deliver a good or service at a single point in time, like when Macy's sells a skirt to Susan. Then we'll consider situations in which one performance obligation to deliver goods and services is satisfied over time, like a landlord renting an apartment or a bank lending money. After that, we'll consider contracts that contain multiple performance obligations, like the Verizon example we just discussed. Illustration 5–2 summarizes some key considerations we will return to throughout this chapter.

Illustration 5-2 Key Considerations When Applying the Five Steps to Revenue Recognition

Five Steps to Recognizing Revenue	For Transactions Involving Single and Multiple Performance Obligations		
Step 1 Identify the contract	Legal rights of seller and customer established		
Step 2 Identify the performance obligation(s)	Single performance obligation	Multiple performance obligations	
Step 3 Determine the transaction price	Amount seller is entitled to receive from customer	Amount seller is entitled to receive from customer	
Step 4 Allocate the transaction price	No allocation required	Allocate a portion to each performance obligation	
Step 5 Recognize revenue when (or as) each performance obligation is satisfied	At a point in time	Over a period of time	At whatever time is appropriate for each performance obligation

Recognizing Revenue at a Single Point in Time

• LO5-2

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 235

First we consider a simple contract that includes only one performance obligation and is satisfied at a single point in time. The performance obligation is satisfied when control of the goods or services is transferred from the seller to the customer. Usually it's obvious that transfer occurs at the time of delivery. In our Macy's example above, for instance, the performance obligation is satisfied at the time of the sale when the skirt is transferred to Susan.

In other cases transfer of control can be harder to determine. Illustration 5-3 lists five key indicators we use to decide whether control has passed from the seller to the customer. Sellers should evaluate these indicators individually and in combination to decide whether control has been transferred and revenue can be recognized.

Illustration 5-3

Indicators that Control Has Been Transferred from the Seller to the Customer

The customer is more likely to control a good or service if the customer has:

- An obligation to pay the seller.
- Legal title to the asset.
- Physical possession of the asset.
- Assumed the risks and rewards of ownership.
- Accepted the asset.*

*These indicators apply to both goods and services. It may seem strange to talk about the customer accepting an asset with respect to a service, but think of a service as an asset that is consumed as the customer receives it.

In Illustration 5-4 we apply these indicators to TrueTech Industries, a company we will revisit throughout this chapter to illustrate revenue recognition.

Illustration 5-4

Recognizing Revenue at a Point in Time

TrueTech Industries sells the Tri-Box, a gaming console that allows users to play video games individually or in multiplayer environments over the Internet. A Tri-Box is only a gaming module and includes no other goods or services. When should TrueTech recognize revenue for the following sale of 1,000 Tri-Boxes to CompStores?

- **December 20, 2017: CompStores orders 1,000 Tri-Boxes at a price of \$240 each, promising payment within 30 days after delivery.** TrueTech has received the order but hasn't fulfilled its performance obligation to deliver Tri-Boxes. In light of this and other indicators, TrueTech's judgment is that control has not been transferred and revenue should not be recognized.

(continued)

- **January 1, 2018: TrueTech delivers 1,000 Tri-Boxes to CompStores, and title to the Tri-Boxes transfers to CompStores.** TrueTech has delivered the Tri-Boxes, and CompStores has accepted delivery, so CompStores has physical possession, legal title, the risks and rewards of ownership, and an obligation to pay TrueTech. TrueTech's performance obligation has been satisfied, so TrueTech can recognize revenue and a related account receivable of \$240,000.*

Accounts receivable ($\$240 \times 1,000$)	240,000	
Sales revenue		240,000

- **January 25, 2018: TrueTech receives \$240,000 from CompStores.** This transaction does not affect revenue. We recognize revenue when performance obligations are satisfied, not when cash is received. TrueTech simply records collection of the account receivable.

Cash	240,000	
Accounts receivable		240,000

*TrueTech also would debit cost of goods sold and credit inventory to recognize the cost of inventory sold.

Illustration 5-4

(concluded)

Recognizing Revenue over a Period of Time

Services such as lending money, performing audits, and providing consulting advice are performed over a period of time. Some construction contracts require construction over months or even years. In these situations, should a company recognize revenue continuously over time as a product or service is being provided, or wait to recognize revenue at the single point in time when the company has finished providing the product or service? As we'll see next, in most situations like these, companies should recognize revenue over time as the service or product is being provided.

• LO5-3

Criteria for Recognizing Revenue over Time

Let's assume once again that we have a contract with a customer that includes a single performance obligation and a known transaction price. As indicated in Illustration 5-5, we recognize revenue over time if any one of three criteria is met.

Revenue is recognized over time if either:

1. **The customer consumes the benefit of the seller's work as it is performed**, as when a company provides cleaning services to a customer for a period of time, or
2. **The customer controls the asset as it is created**, as when a contractor builds an extension onto a customer's existing building, or
3. **The seller is creating an asset that has no alternative use to the seller, and the seller has the legal right to receive payment for progress to date**, as when a company manufactures customized fighter jets for the U.S. Air Force.

Illustration 5-5

Criteria for Recognizing Revenue over Time

We recognize revenue over time if one of three criteria is met.

If a performance obligation meets at least one of these criteria, we recognize revenue over time, in proportion to the amount of the performance obligation that has been satisfied. If, say, one-third of a service has been performed, then one-third of the performance obligation has been satisfied, so one-third of the revenue should be recognized. For example, **Gold's Gym** recognizes revenue from a two-year membership over the 24-month membership period, and **Six Flags Entertainment** recognizes revenue for season passes over the operating season. Often these arrangements involve receiving cash in advance of satisfying a performance obligation, which requires recognition of a liability, deferred revenue. For example, consider Illustration 5-6.

Most long-term construction contracts qualify for revenue recognition over time. For example, many long-term construction contracts are structured such that the customer owns the work-in-process (WIP) as it is constructed, which satisfies the second criterion in Illustration 5-5. Also, the third criterion is satisfied if the asset the seller is constructing has no alternate use to the

When a performance obligation is satisfied over time, revenue is recognized in proportion to the amount of the performance obligation that has been satisfied.

Most long-term construction contracts qualify for revenue recognition over time.

Illustration 5–6

Recognizing Revenue over a Period of Time

	Deferred Revenue	
1/1		60,000
1/31	5,000	
2/28	5,000	
...	...	
12/31	5,000	
12/31		-0-

	Service Revenue	
1/1		-0-
1/31		5,000
2/28		5,000
...		...
12/31		5,000
12/31		60,000

TrueTech Industries sells one-year subscriptions to the Tri-Net multiuser platform of Internet-based games. TrueTech sells 1,000 subscriptions for \$60 each on January 1, 2018.

TrueTech has a single performance obligation—to provide a service to subscribers by allowing them access to the gaming platform for one year. Because Tri-Net users consume the benefits of access to that service over time, under the first criterion in Illustration 5–5 TrueTech recognizes revenue from the subscriptions over the one-year time period.

On January 1, 2018, TrueTech records the following journal entry:

Cash (\$60 × 1,000).....	60,000	
Deferred revenue.....		60,000

TrueTech recognizes no revenue on January 1. Rather, TrueTech recognizes a deferred revenue liability for \$60,000 associated with receiving cash prior to satisfying its performance obligation to provide customers with access to the Tri-Net games for a year.

Tri-Net subscribers receive benefits each day they have access to the Tri-Net network, so TrueTech uses “proportion of time” as its measure of progress toward completion. At the end of each of the 12 months following the sale, TrueTech would record the following entry to recognize Tri-Net subscription revenue:

Deferred revenue (\$60,000 ÷ 12).....	5,000	
Service revenue		5,000

After 12 months TrueTech will have recognized the entire \$60,000 of Tri-Net subscription revenue, and the deferred revenue liability will be reduced to zero.

seller and the contract stipulates that the seller is paid for performance. We discuss accounting for long-term construction contracts in more detail in Part C of this chapter.

If a performance obligation doesn’t meet any of the three criteria for recognizing revenue over time, we recognize revenue at the point in time when the performance obligation has been completely satisfied, which usually occurs at the end of the contract.

Many services are so short term in nature that companies don’t bother with recognizing revenue over time even if they qualify for doing so. For example, **UPS** picks up a package and delivers it to its destination within a few days. The company’s summary of significant accounting policies disclosure note indicates that “Revenue is recognized upon delivery of a letter or package.” In other words, UPS recognizes revenue upon completion of service rather than over time during the service period. This departure from GAAP is immaterial given the short duration of UPS’s services and the lack of additional useful information that would be provided by more precise timing of revenue recognition.

Determining Progress toward Completion

Because progress toward completion is the basis for recognizing revenue over time, the seller needs to estimate that progress in a way that reflects when the control of goods or services is transferred to the customer.

Sellers sometimes use an *output-based* estimate of progress toward completion, measured as the proportion of the goods or services transferred to date. For our Tri-Net example in Illustration 5–6, output is measured by the passage of time, because the performance obligation being satisfied is to provide access to the Tri-Net gaming platform. Other times sellers use an *input-based* estimate of progress toward completion, measured as the proportion of effort expended thus far relative to the total effort expected to satisfy the performance obligation. For example, sellers often use the ratio of costs incurred to date compared to total costs estimated to complete the job.⁵ In Part C of this chapter, we continue our discussion of output- and input-based measures of progress toward completion, and also consider how to deal with changes in estimates of progress toward completion.

Input or output methods can be used to estimate progress toward completion when performance obligations are satisfied over time.

⁵If for some reason the seller can’t make a reasonable estimate of progress to completion using either input or output methods, the seller must wait to recognize revenue until the performance obligation has been completely satisfied. However, if the seller expects to be able to at least recover its costs from the customer, the seller can recognize an amount of revenue equal to the costs incurred until it can make a reasonable estimate of progress toward completion.

Recognizing Revenue for Contracts that Contain Multiple Performance Obligations

Revenue recognition becomes more complicated when a contract contains multiple performance obligations. As an example, in Illustration 5–7 we combine the two TrueTech examples we already have discussed. In the first example (Illustration 5–4), TrueTech sold Tri-Box modules and recognized revenue at a single point in time (upon delivery). In the second example (Illustration 5–6), TrueTech sold one-year subscriptions to the Tri-Net platform and recognized revenue over time (one-twelfth each month over the year). Now, let's consider how TrueTech would recognize revenue if these two items were sold as a package deal for a single price.

• LO5–4

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 235

TrueTech Industries manufactures the Tri-Box System, a multiplayer gaming system allowing players to compete with each other over the Internet.

- The Tri-Box System includes the physical Tri-Box module as well as a one-year subscription to the Tri-Net multiuser platform of Internet-based games and other applications.
- TrueTech sells individual one-year subscriptions to the Tri-Net platform for \$60. Customers can access the Tri-Net using a Tri-Box as well as other gaming modules.
- TrueTech sells individual Tri-Box modules for \$240. Customers can use a Tri-Box to access the Tri-Net as well as other multiuser gaming platforms.
- As a package deal, TrueTech sells the Tri-Box System (module plus subscription) for \$250.

On January 1, 2018, TrueTech delivers 1,000 Tri-Box Systems to CompStores at a price of \$250 per system. TrueTech receives \$250,000 from CompStores on January 25, 2018.

Illustration 5–7

Contract Containing
Multiple Performance
Obligations

We'll assume TrueTech has concluded that it has a contract with CompStores, so step 1 of revenue recognition is satisfied. We'll start with step 2.

Step 2: Identify the Performance Obligation(s)

Sellers account for a promise to provide a good or service as a performance obligation if the good or service is **distinct** from other goods or services in the contract. The idea is to separate contracts into parts that can be viewed on a stand-alone basis. That way the financial statements can better reflect the timing of the transfer of separate goods and services and the profit generated on each one. Goods or services that are not distinct are combined and treated as a single performance obligation.

A good or service is distinct if it is both:

1. *Capable of being distinct.* The customer could use the good or service on its own or in combination with other goods or services it could obtain elsewhere, and
2. *Separately identifiable from other goods or services in the contract.* The promises to transfer goods and services are distinct in the *context of the contract*, because the seller is promising to provide goods and services *individually* as opposed to promising to provide a *combined* good or service for which the individual goods or services are inputs.

As an example of applying these criteria, think of going to a store like **Home Depot** to purchase lumber, paint, and other building supplies for a home project. Each of those products is capable of being distinct, because you can buy it individually and use it however you desire. Each also is separately identifiable from other goods and services, because Home Depot's only performance obligation is to deliver the individual items. So, Home Depot can view its promise to deliver each of these items as a separate performance obligation.

Now think about signing an agreement with a construction contractor like **Toll Brothers** to build a house for you. Like Home Depot, the contractor is selling you lumber, paint, and other building supplies. However, while those items are capable of being distinct, they aren't separately identifiable in the context of the contract, because the contractor's performance obligation is to combine those inputs and deliver a completed building. Therefore, Toll Brothers views itself as having a single performance obligation. As we discuss further

Promises to provide
goods and services are
performance obligations
when the goods and
services are *distinct*.

in Part C of this chapter, most long-term construction contracts are viewed as including a single performance obligation because the seller provides the service of combining goods and services into a combined output.

Construction contracts aren't the only ones that fail the "separately identifiable" criterion. Goods and services also aren't considered separately identifiable if they are highly interdependent, or if one significantly modifies or customizes another. For example, consider a company that offers online access to a clip-art library. The only way customers can access the clip art is by using the online access service. Even though a clip art library and an online access service might be capable of being distinct outside the context of the contract, within the contract they are so intertwined that they are more appropriately thought of as a single performance obligation.⁶

In Illustration 5–8 we apply these criteria to identify the performance obligations for our TrueTech example.

Illustration 5–8

Determining Whether Goods or Services Are Distinct

Assume the same facts as in Illustration 5–7. Do the Tri-Box module and the Tri-Net subscription qualify as performance obligations in TrueTech's contract with CompStores?

Which of the goods and services promised in the contract are distinct? Both the Tri-Box module and the Tri-Net subscription can be used on their own by a customer, so they are capable of being distinct. The module and subscription are not highly interrelated and do not modify or customize each other, and the nature of TrueTech's promise is not to integrate the module and service into a combined unit, so they are separately identifiable in the context of the contract.

Conclusion: The module and subscription are distinct so the contract has two performance obligations: (1) delivery of a Tri-Box module and (2) fulfillment of a one-year Tri-Net subscription.

The **transaction price** is the amount the seller expects to be entitled to receive from the customer in exchange for providing goods or services.

Step 3: Determine the Transaction Price

The **transaction price** is the amount the seller expects to be entitled to receive from the customer in exchange for providing goods or services.⁷ Determining the transaction price is simple if the customer pays a fixed amount immediately or soon after the sale. That's the case with our TrueTech example. The transaction price is \$250,000, equal to \$250 per system × 1,000 systems.

We allocate the transaction price to performance obligations in proportion to their relative stand-alone selling prices.

Step 4: Allocate the Transaction Price to Each Performance Obligation

If a contract includes more than one performance obligation, the seller allocates the transaction price to each one in proportion to the stand-alone selling prices of the goods or services underlying all the performance obligations in the contract. The **stand-alone selling price** is the amount at which the good or service is sold separately under similar circumstances.⁸ If a stand-alone selling price can't be directly observed, the seller should estimate it.

Look at Illustration 5–9 to see how we allocate the transaction price to each of the performance obligations in our TrueTech example.

Revenue with respect to each performance obligation is recognized when (or as) that performance obligation is satisfied.

Step 5: Recognize Revenue When (Or As) Each Performance Obligation Is Satisfied

As we discussed earlier, performance obligations can be satisfied either at a point in time or over a period of time, and revenue with respect to a performance obligation is recognized when (or as) the performance obligation is satisfied. That timing doesn't depend on whether

⁶Sellers also treat as a single performance obligation a series of distinct goods or services that are substantially the same and have the same pattern of transfer.

⁷Normally, sellers are immediately or eventually paid in cash, but sometimes sellers are paid with other assets like property. In that case, the seller measures the assets received at fair value at the start of the contract.

⁸A contractually stated "list price" doesn't necessarily represent a stand-alone selling price, because the seller might actually sell the good or service for a different amount. The seller has to reference actual stand-alone selling prices, or estimate those prices.

Assume the same facts as in Illustration 5–7. The transaction price of one Tri-Box System is \$250. Because the stand-alone price of a Tri-Box module (\$240) represents 80% of the sum of the stand-alone selling prices [\$240 ÷ (\$240 + 60)], and the stand-alone price of a Tri-Net subscription comprises 20% of the total [\$60 ÷ (\$240 + 60)], we allocate 80% of the transaction price to the Tri-Box module and 20% of the transaction price to the Tri-Net subscription, as follows:

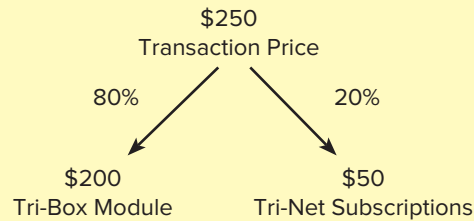


Illustration 5–9

Allocating the Transaction Price to Performance Obligations Based on Relative Selling Prices

Additional Consideration

Discounts in Contracts with Multiple Performance Obligations. Note that Illustration 5–7 shows that Tri-Box systems are sold at a discount—TrueTech sells the system for a transaction price (\$250) that's less than the \$300 sum of the stand-alone selling prices of the Tri-Box module (\$240) and the subscription to Tri-Net (\$60). Because there is no evidence that the discount relates to only one of the performance obligations, it is spread between them in the allocation process. If TrueTech had clear evidence from sales of those goods and services that the discount related to only one of them, the entire discount would be allocated to that good or service.

a performance obligation is the only one in a contract or is one of several performance obligations in a contract. We determine the timing of revenue recognition for each performance obligation individually.

Returning to our TrueTech example, the \$200,000 of revenue associated with the Tri-Box modules is recognized when those modules are delivered to CompStores on January 1, but the \$50,000 of revenue associated with the Tri-Net subscriptions is recognized over the one-year subscription term. The timing of revenue recognition for each performance obligation is shown in Illustration 5–10.

Assume the same facts as in Illustration 5–7. TrueTech records the following journal entry at the time of the sale to CompStores (ignoring any entry to record the reduction in inventory and the corresponding cost of goods sold):

January 1, 2018:		
Accounts receivable	250,000	
Sales revenue (\$250,000 × 80%)		200,000
Deferred revenue (\$250,000 × 20%)		50,000

In each of the 12 months following the sale, TrueTech records the following entry to recognize Tri-Net subscription revenue:

Deferred revenue (\$50,000 ÷ 12)	4,167	
Service revenue		4,167

After 12 months TrueTech will have recognized the entire \$50,000 of Tri-Net subscription revenue, and the deferred revenue liability will have been reduced to zero.

Illustration 5–10

Recognizing Revenue for Multiple Performance Obligations

	Deferred Revenue	
1/1		50,000
1/31	4,167	
2/28	4,167	
...	...	
12/31	4,167	
12/31		-0-
	Service Revenue	
1/1		-0-
1/31		4,167
2/28		4,167
...		...
12/31		4,167
12/31		50,000

Illustration 5–11 summarizes Part A's discussion of the fundamental issues related to recognizing revenue.

Illustration 5-11 Summary of Fundamental Issues Related to Recognizing Revenue

Revenue Recognition	Fundamental Issues
Step 1 Identify the contract	A contract establishes the legal rights and obligations of the seller and customer with respect to one or more performance obligations.
Step 2 Identify the performance obligation(s)	A performance obligation is a promise to transfer a good or service that is distinct, which is the case if the good or service is both (a) capable of being distinct and (b) separately identifiable.
Step 3 Determine the transaction price	The transaction price is the amount the seller is entitled to receive from the customer.
Step 4 Allocate the transaction price	The seller allocates the transaction price to performance obligations based on the relative stand-alone selling prices of the goods or services in each performance obligation.
Step 5 Recognize revenue when (or as) each performance obligation is satisfied	<div> <p>The seller recognizes revenue at a single point in time when control passes to the customer, which is more likely if the customer has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Obligation to pay the seller. • Legal title to the asset. • Possession of the asset. • Assumed the risks and rewards of ownership. • Accepted the asset. </div> <div> <p>The seller recognizes revenue over a period of time if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Customer consumes benefit as work performed, • Customer controls asset as it's created, or • Seller is creating an asset that has no alternative use to the seller and the seller has right to receive payment for work completed. </div>

Concept Review Exercise

REVENUE RECOGNITION FOR CONTRACTS WITH MULTIPLE PERFORMANCE OBLIGATIONS

Macrovision sells a variety of satellite TV packages. The popular \$600 Basic Package includes a hardware component (consisting of a satellite dish and receiver) along with a twelve-month subscription to 130 TV channels. Macrovision sells the hardware component without a subscription for \$180, and sells a twelve-month subscription to the same 130 channels without hardware for \$540/year. Let's account for the sale of one Basic Package for \$600 on January 1, 2018.

Required:

1. Identify the performance obligations in the Basic Package contract, and determine when revenue for each should be recognized.
2. For the single Basic Package sold on January 1, 2018, allocate the \$600 transaction price to the performance obligations in the contract, and prepare a journal entry to record the sale (ignoring any entry to record the reduction in inventory and the corresponding cost of goods sold).
3. Prepare any journal entry necessary to record revenue related to the same contract on January 31, 2018.

Solution:

1. Identify the performance obligations in the Basic Package contract, and determine when revenue for each should be recognized.

The hardware component and the twelve-month subscription are *capable of being distinct* (they are sold separately) and are *separately identifiable* (the hardware and services are not highly intertwined so it makes sense to consider them separately). Therefore, the hardware component and the twelve-month subscription are distinct from each other and should be treated as separate performance obligations. Revenue for

the hardware component should be recognized on January 1, 2018, because transfer of control of the hardware occurs when the hardware is delivered to the customer. Revenue for the subscription should be recognized over the next twelve months as the customer receives the benefit of having access to TV channels.

- For the single Basic Package sold on January 1, 2018, allocate the \$600 transaction price to the performance obligations in the contract, and prepare a journal entry to record the sale (ignoring any entry to record the reduction in inventory and the corresponding cost of goods sold).

Because the stand-alone price of the hardware component (\$180) represents 25% of the total of all the stand-alone selling prices ($\$180 \div [\$180 + \$540]$), and the stand-alone price of the twelve-month subscription comprises 75% of the total ($\$540 \div [\$180 + \$540]$), we allocate 25% of the transaction price to the hardware component and 75% of the transaction price to the twelve-month subscription. The transaction price of \$600 would be allocated as follows:

Hardware Component: $\$600 \times 25\% = \150 .

Twelve-Month Subscription: $\$600 \times 75\% = \450 .

The journal entry recorded on January 1, 2018, would be:

Cash.....	600	
Sales revenue (for delivery of hardware).....		150
Deferred revenue (for subscription).....		450

- Prepare any journal entry necessary to record revenue for the same contract on January 31, 2018.

Deferred revenue ($\$450 \div 12$).....	37.50	
Service revenue		37.50

Special Topics in Revenue Recognition

Now that we've covered the basics, let's consider some important issues that occur in practice with respect to each of the five steps. We'll cover each step in turn.

Special Issues for Step 1: Identify the Contract

A **contract** is an agreement that creates legally enforceable rights and obligations. We normally think of a contract as being specified in a written document, but contracts can be oral rather than written. Contracts also can be *implicit* based on the typical business practices that a company follows. Remember from our example in Part A, just buying a skirt from Macy's implies a contract for purposes of recognizing revenue. The key is that all parties to the contract are committed to performing their obligations and enforcing their rights.⁹

A contract only exists for purposes of revenue recognition if the seller believes it's probable that it will collect substantially all of the amount it's entitled to receive in exchange for the goods or services that it will provide to the customer. This collectibility threshold makes sure that revenue really reflects an inflow of net assets from the customer. However, even if a contract doesn't exist, the seller still can recognize an amount of revenue equal to any nonrefundable payments it has received, so long as it has already transferred control of the

PART B

LO5-5

A contract is an agreement that creates legally enforceable rights and obligations.

A seller must believe collectibility is probable for a contract to exist for purposes of revenue recognition.

⁹Specifically, *ASU No. 2014-09* indicates that a contract exists for purposes of revenue recognition only if it (a) has commercial substance, affecting the risk, timing or amount of the seller's future cash flows, (b) has been approved by both the seller and the customer, indicating commitment to fulfilling their obligations, (c) specifies the seller's and customer's rights regarding the goods or services to be transferred, (d) specifies payment terms, and (e) is probable that the seller will collect substantially all of the amount it is entitled to receive. These criteria are very similar to requirements previously indicated by the SEC in the Staff Accounting Bulletins No. 101 and No. 104 mentioned earlier in this chapter.

goods or services and it does not have any further obligations to transfer goods or services to the customer.

A contract does not exist if (a) neither the seller nor the customer has performed any obligations under the contract and (b) both the seller and the customer can terminate the contract without penalty. In other words, either the seller or the customer must have done something that has commercial substance for the seller to start accounting for revenue. Illustration 5–12 provides an example.

Illustration 5–12

Determining Whether a Contract Exists for Revenue Recognition Purposes

Recall from Illustration 5–7 that CompStores ordered 1,000 Tri-Box systems on December 20, 2017, at a price of \$250 per unit. Assume that CompStores and TrueTech can cancel the order without penalty prior to delivery. TrueTech made delivery on January 1, 2018, and received \$250,000 on January 25, 2018. When does TrueTech's arrangement with CompStores qualify as a contract for purposes of revenue recognition?

The arrangement qualifies as a contract on January 1, 2018. That's the date TrueTech makes delivery to CompStores. Prior to delivery, neither TrueTech nor CompStores had performed an obligation under the contract, and both parties could cancel the order without penalty, so the arrangement didn't qualify as a contract for purposes of revenue recognition.



• LO5–10

International Financial Reporting Standards

ASU No. 2014–09 defines “probable” as “likely to occur.” Similarly, *SFAC No. 6* defines “probable” to mean an amount can “reasonably be expected or believed on the basis of available evidence or logic but is neither certain nor proved,” which implies a relatively high likelihood of occurrence. IFRS defines “probable” as a likelihood that is greater than 50%, which is lower than the definition in U.S. GAAP. Therefore, some contracts might not meet this threshold under U.S. GAAP that do meet it under IFRS.

Additional Consideration

Contract Modifications. A customer and seller might agree to modify a contract in some way. For instance, they might change the transaction price, change the performance obligations, or add another performance obligation. The way we account for a contract modification depends on the nature of the modification:

1. Sometimes a modification is really just a separate new contract. That happens when the modification adds another distinct good or service and requires the customer to pay an additional amount equal to the stand-alone selling price of the added good or service. In that case, we view the modification as a separate contract.
2. Other times a modification is to a contract for which the remaining goods and services are distinct from those already transferred, but the modification doesn't qualify as a separate contract. In that case, the seller acts as if the old contract has been terminated and a new contract has been created. The new contract includes whatever performance obligations remain after the modification, and its transaction price is equal to the amount that hasn't yet been recognized as revenue under the old contract plus or minus any change in price required by the modification. We allocate the revised transaction price to all performance obligations remaining in the contract based on their stand-alone selling prices at that time.
3. Finally, sometimes we modify a contract for which the remaining performance obligations are not distinct and therefore form a single performance obligation that is being satisfied over time. In that case, we need to update our assessment of progress toward completion and adjust revenue as appropriate to reflect progress to date, just like we treat other changes in estimates.

Special Issues for Step 2: Identify the Performance Obligation(s)

Previously we saw that promises to provide goods and services are treated as performance obligations when the goods and services are distinct. Now let's consider several aspects of

contracts we often encounter and determine if they qualify as performance obligations. We discuss prepayments, warranties, and options.

PREPAYMENTS. Some contracts require nonrefundable up-front fees for particular activities (for example, **LA Fitness** charges up-front registration fees for gym memberships). We don't consider such *prepayments* to be performance obligations because they aren't a promise to transfer a product or service to a customer. Instead, the up-front fee is an advance payment by the customer for future products or services and should be included in the transaction price, allocated to the various performance obligations in the contract, initially recorded as deferred revenue, and recognized as revenue when (or as) each performance obligation is satisfied.

A prepayment is not a performance obligation.

WARRANTIES. Most products are sold with a warranty that obligates the seller to make repairs or replace products that later are found to be defective or unsatisfactory. These warranties are not sold separately, and either can be stated explicitly or be implicit based on normal business practice. We call these **quality-assurance warranties**. A quality-assurance warranty (sometimes called an "assurance-type warranty") is not a performance obligation. Rather, it is a cost of satisfying the performance obligation to deliver products of acceptable quality. The seller recognizes this cost in the period of sale as a warranty expense and related contingent liability. Because the exact amount of the cost usually is not known at the time of the sale, it must be estimated. For example, **Deere & Company**, which manufactures equipment used for construction, landscaping and other purposes, reported a quality-assurance warranty liability of \$807 million at the end of its 2015 fiscal year.

A quality-assurance warranty obligates the seller to repair or replace defective products.

A quality-assurance warranty is not a performance obligation.

Extended warranties, on the other hand, are offered as an additional service that covers new problems arising after the customer takes control of the product. It's unusual these days to buy a phone, digital tablet, car, or almost any durable consumer product without being asked to buy an extended warranty. An extended warranty (sometimes called a "service-type warranty") provides protection beyond the manufacturer's quality-assurance warranty. Because an extended warranty usually is priced and sold separately from the product, it constitutes a performance obligation and can be viewed as a separate sales transaction. The price is recorded as a deferred revenue liability and then recognized as revenue over the extended warranty period. If an extended warranty is included along with the related product as part of a single contract, the extended warranty still is treated as a separate performance obligation, allocated a portion of the transaction price, and that portion of the transaction price is recorded as deferred revenue. Deere & Company reported a liability for deferred extended warranty revenue of \$454 million at the end of its 2015 fiscal year.

An extended warranty is an additional service that covers new problems arising after a customer takes control of a product.

An extended warranty is a separate performance obligation.

How can you tell if a warranty should be treated as a quality-assurance warranty or an extended warranty? A warranty should be treated as an extended warranty if either (a) the customer has the option to purchase the warranty separately from the seller or (b) the warranty provides a service to the customer beyond only assuring that the seller delivered a product or service that was free from defects. The specifics of the warranty have to be considered when making this determination. For example, if the warranty period is very long, it's likely the warranty is covering more than just the quality of the product at the date of delivery, so it likely would represent an extended warranty.

We discuss accounting for warranties more in Chapter 13.

CUSTOMER OPTIONS FOR ADDITIONAL GOODS OR SERVICES. In some contracts the seller grants to the customer an *option* to receive additional goods or services at no cost or at a discount. Examples include software upgrades, customer loyalty programs (frequent flier miles, credit card points), discounts on future goods or services, and contract renewal options. Options for additional goods or services are considered performance obligations if they provide a *material right* to the customer that the customer would not receive otherwise.¹⁰ For example, if a shoe seller normally discounts its products by 5%, but customers who purchase a pair of shoes receive a 20% discount off the next pair of shoes purchased at

¹⁰Be careful not to confuse these types of options with stock options, which are financial instruments that allow purchase of shares of stock at a specific price at a future date.

An option for additional goods or services is a performance obligation if it confers a material right to the customer.

Illustration 5–13

Customer options for additional goods or services.

the same store, the extra discount of 15% ($20\% - 5\%$) is a material right, as it is a discount customers would not receive otherwise.

When a contract includes an option that provides a material right, the seller must allocate part of the contract's transaction price to the option. Just like for other performance obligations, that allocation process requires the seller to estimate the stand-alone selling price of the option, taking into account the likelihood that the customer will actually exercise the option. The seller recognizes revenue associated with the option when the option is exercised or expires. Illustration 5–13 provides an example.

TrueTech offers a promotional coupon with every Tri-Box it sells for the normal price of \$240. The coupon gives the Tri-Box customer an opportunity to buy a headset that normally sells for \$150 for only \$90 (a 40% discount). The coupon must be redeemed within one year of the Tri-Box purchase. TrueTech estimates that 80% of customers will take advantage of the coupon. How would TrueTech account for the cash sale of 100 Tri-Boxes sold under this promotion on January 1, 2018?

The coupon provides a material right to the customer, because it provides a discount of $\$150 \times 40\% = \60 , so it is a performance obligation. Therefore, TrueTech must allocate the \$240 transaction price to two performance obligations: the Tri-Box and the coupon.

Because TrueTech expects only 80% of the coupons to be used, it estimates the stand-alone selling price of a coupon to be $\$60 \times 80\% = \48 .* The sum of the stand-alone selling prices of the performance obligations is \$288, equal to the Tri-Box module (\$240) plus the coupon (\$48). The Tri-Box module (\$240) represents five-sixths (or 83.33%) of the total ($\$240 \div \288), and the coupon comprises one-sixth (or 16.67%) of the total ($\$48 \div \288), so TrueTech allocates five-sixths of the \$240 transaction price to the Tri-Box module and one-sixth to the coupon, as follows:

January 1, 2018:

Cash.....	24,000	
Sales revenue ($\$240 \times 5/6 \times 100$ units)		20,000
Deferred revenue—coupons ($\$240 \times 1/6 \times 100$ units).....		4,000

When the coupons are later redeemed or expire, TrueTech will debit deferred revenue—coupons and credit revenue.

*It may seem strange that we consider the likelihood that the customer will use the coupon when estimating the coupon's stand-alone selling price, but think about it from TrueTech's perspective. Each coupon saves a customer \$60, but on average TrueTech will only have to provide discounts of \$48, so \$48 is its estimate of the average stand-alone value of its performance obligation.

Special Issues for Step 3: Determine the Transaction Price

LO5–6

The transaction price is the amount the seller expects to be entitled to receive from the customer.

Until now we've assumed that contracts indicate a fixed **transaction price** that will be paid at or soon after delivery. However, in some contracts the transaction price is less clear. Specific situations affecting the transaction price are (a) variable consideration and the constraint on its recognition, (b) sales with a right of return (a particular type of variable consideration), (c) identifying whether the seller is acting as a principal or an agent, (d) the time value of money, and (e) payments by the seller to the customer. Let's consider these one at a time to see how recording revenue will be affected when there is variable consideration.

VARIABLE CONSIDERATION. Sometimes a transaction price is uncertain because some of the price depends on the outcome of future events. Contracts that include this **variable consideration** are commonplace in many industries, including construction (incentive payments), entertainment and media (royalties), health care (Medicare and Medicaid reimbursements), manufacturing (volume discounts and product returns), and telecommunications (rebates).

Variable consideration is the portion of a transaction price that depends on the outcome of future events.

Variable consideration is estimated as either the expected value or the most likely amount.

Estimating Variable Consideration. When an amount to be received depends on some uncertain future event, the seller still should include the uncertain amount in the transaction price by estimating it. A seller estimates variable consideration as either (a) the *expected*

Additional Consideration

Shipping Costs. **Amazon Prime** includes “free” two-day shipping. You pay one price but Amazon has two obligations: to provide a good and to ship that good. Are these considered separate performance obligations that require Amazon to allocate the transaction price for purposes of revenue recognition? It depends.

If shipping is provided *prior* to the seller transferring control of goods to the buyer (for example, if title passes to the customer upon delivery), then shipping is viewed as just another cost of doing business.¹¹ In that case, shipping is not treated as a separate performance obligation, and none of the transaction price would be allocated to it.

If shipping is provided *after* the customer has taken control of goods, then shipping could be viewed as a separate service and treated as a separate performance obligation. Note 1 of Amazon’s 2015 10-K provides an example of this situation: “Retail sales to customers are made pursuant to a sales contract that provides for transfer of both title and risk of loss upon our delivery to the carrier.” Amazon could view these arrangements as including two separate performance obligations: providing goods and then shipping those goods. However, allocating a small portion of the transaction price to “shipping revenue” might be more trouble than it’s worth. Therefore, the FASB allows companies to choose whether to treat shipping provided after the customer takes control as either (a) just a cost of doing business or (b) a separate performance obligation (which requires sellers to allocate a portion of the transaction price to shipping and then to recognize shipping revenue when shipping is completed). The seller’s policy must be disclosed clearly.¹² The IASB does not allow this choice, so some companies that apply IFRS might be forced to recognize “shipping revenue” when they would prefer not to go to the trouble of doing so.

value (calculated as the sum of each possible amount multiplied by its probability), or (b) the *most likely amount*, depending on which estimation approach better predicts the amount that the seller will receive. If there are several possible outcomes, the expected value will be more appropriate. On the other hand, if only two outcomes are possible, the most likely amount might be the best indication of the amount the seller will likely receive. Illustration 5–14 provides an example.

The seller must reassess its estimate of the transaction price in each period to determine whether circumstances have changed. If the seller revises its estimate of the amount of variable consideration it will receive, it must revise any receivable it has recorded and reflect the adjustment in that period’s revenue, as we see in Illustration 5–15.

Constraint on Recognizing Variable Consideration. Sometimes sellers lack sufficient information to make a good estimate of variable consideration. The concern is that a seller might overestimate variable consideration, recognize revenue based on a transaction price that is too high, and later have to reverse that revenue (and reduce net income) to correct the estimate. To guard against this, sellers only include an estimate of variable consideration in the transaction price to the extent it is “probable” that a significant reversal of revenue

International Financial Reporting Standards

IFRS uses the term “highly probable” instead of “probable” in this case. Because IFRS defines “probable” to mean a likelihood greater than 50%, its use of “highly probable” is intended to convey the same likelihood as is conveyed by “probable” in U.S. GAAP.



• LO5–10

¹¹In Chapter 8 we’ll distinguish between situations in which title transfers before shipment and after shipment.

¹²FASB ASC 606-10-25-18B: Revenue from Contracts with Customers—Overall—Identifying Performance Obligations (previously “Revenue from Contracts with Customers” (Topic 606) – Identifying Performance Obligations and Licensing” *Accounting Standards Update 2016-10* (Norwalk, Conn: FASB, 2016)).

Illustration 5-14

Accounting for Variable Consideration

	Bonus Receivable
1/1	-0-
1/31	30,000
2/28	30,000
3/31	30,000
4/30	30,000
5/31	30,000
6/30	30,000 180,000
6/30	-0-

	Service Revenue
1/1	-0-
1/31	80,000
2/28	80,000
3/31	80,000
4/30	80,000
5/31	80,000
6/30	80,000
6/30	480,000

	Bonus Receivable
1/1	-0-
1/31	30,000
2/28	30,000
3/31	30,000
4/30	90,000
4/30	-0-

	Service Revenue
1/1	-0-
1/31	80,000
2/28	80,000
3/31	80,000
4/30	90,000 50,000
5/31	50,000
6/30	50,000
6/30	300,000

TrueTech enters into a contract with ProSport Gaming to add ProSport's online games to the Tri-Net network. ProSport offers popular games like Brawl of Bands, and wants those games offered on the Tri-Net so ProSport can sell gems, weapons, health potions, and other game features that allow players to advance more quickly in a game.

On January 1, 2018, ProSport pays TrueTech an up-front fixed fee of \$300,000 for six months of featured access. ProSport also will pay TrueTech a bonus of \$180,000 if Tri-Net users access ProSport games for at least 15,000 hours during the six-month period. TrueTech estimates a 75% chance that it will achieve the usage target and receive the \$180,000 bonus.

TrueTech would record the following entry for the receipt of the cash on January 1, 2018:

Cash.....	300,000	
Deferred revenue.....		300,000

Subsequent entries to recognize revenue depend on whether TrueTech estimates the transaction price as the expected value or the most likely amount.

Alternative 1: Expected Value

The expected value would be calculated as a probability-weighted transaction price.

Possible Amounts	Probabilities	Expected Amounts
\$480,000 (\$300,000 fixed fee + 180,000 bonus)	× 75% =	\$ 360,000
\$300,000 (\$300,000 fixed fee + 0 bonus)	× 25% =	75,000
Expected value of the contract price at inception		<u>\$435,000</u>

Alternative 2: Most Likely Amount

Because there is a greater chance of qualifying for the bonus than of not qualifying for the bonus, a transaction price based on the most likely amount would be \$300,000 + \$180,000, or **\$480,000**.

Let's assume that TrueTech bases the estimate on the most likely amount, **\$480,000**. In each successive month TrueTech would recognize one month's revenue based on a total transaction price of \$480,000. Because it previously recorded \$300,000 as deferred revenue, at the end of each month TrueTech would reduce deferred revenue by one-sixth of the \$300,000 as well as recognizing a bonus receivable for one-sixth of the \$180,000 bonus it expects to receive.

Deferred revenue (\$300,000 ÷ 6 months).....	50,000	
Bonus receivable (\$180,000 ÷ 6 months).....	30,000	
Service revenue (\$480,000 ÷ 6 months)*.....		80,000

After six months, TrueTech's deferred revenue account would have been reduced to a zero balance, and the bonus receivable account would have a balance of \$180,000 (\$30,000 × 6). At that point, TrueTech would know if the usage of ProSport products had reached the bonus threshold and would record one of the following two journal entries:

If TrueTech receives the bonus	If TrueTech does not receive the bonus
Cash..... 180,000	Service revenue..... 180,000
Bonus receivable 180,000	Bonus receivable 180,000

*If TrueTech instead used the expected value as its estimate of the transaction price, the journal entries would be the same except that the amount of revenue recognized each month would be \$72,500 (**\$435,000** ÷ 6 months). The reduction in the deferred revenue liability each month would still be \$50,000, and the amount of bonus receivable accrued each month would be \$22,500 (\$135,000 ÷ 6 months).

Illustration 5-15

Accounting for Variable Consideration

Assume the same facts as in Illustration 5-14, but that after three months TrueTech concludes that, due to low usage of ProSport's games, the most likely outcome is that TrueTech will *not* receive the \$180,000 bonus. TrueTech would record the following entry in April to reduce its bonus receivable to zero and reflect the adjustment in revenue:

Service revenue.....	90,000	
Bonus receivable (reducing the account to zero).....		90,000

For the remainder of the contract, TrueTech only recognizes revenue in each month associated with the up-front fixed payment of \$300,000.

Deferred revenue (\$300,000 ÷ 6 months).....	50,000	
Service revenue		50,000

recognized to date will not occur when the uncertainty associated with the variable consideration is resolved in the future.

Applying this constraint requires judgment on the part of the seller, taking into account all information available. Indicators that a significant revenue reversal could occur include (a) poor evidence on which to base an estimate, (b) dependence of the estimate on factors outside the seller's control, (c) a history of the seller changing payment terms on similar contracts, (d) a broad range of outcomes that could occur, and (e) a long delay before uncertainty resolves.

If a seller changes its opinion regarding whether a constraint on variable consideration is necessary, the seller should update the transaction price in the current reporting period, just as the seller would do for other changes in estimated variable consideration. Illustration 5-16 provides an example.

Sellers are limited to recognizing variable consideration to the extent that it is probable that a significant revenue reversal will not occur in the future.

Illustration 5-16

Constraint on Recognizing Variable Consideration

Assume the same facts as in Illustration 5-14, but that initially TrueTech can't conclude that it is probable that a significant revenue reversal will not occur in the future. In that case, TrueTech is constrained from recognizing revenue associated with variable consideration. It includes only the up-front fixed payment of \$300,000 in the transaction price, and recognizes revenue of \$50,000 each month.

Deferred revenue (\$300,000 ÷ 6 months).....	50,000	
Service revenue		50,000

On March 31, after three months of the contract have passed, TrueTech concludes it can make an accurate enough bonus estimate for it to be probable that a significant revenue reversal will not occur. As in Illustration 5-14, TrueTech estimates a 75% likelihood it will receive the bonus and bases its estimate on the "most likely amount" of \$180,000. Since on March 31 the contract is one-half finished (3 of the 6 months have passed), TrueTech records a bonus receivable and service revenue for \$90,000 (\$180,000 × ½), the cumulative amount that would have been recognized over the first three months of the contract if an estimate of variable consideration had been included in the transaction price to begin with:

Bonus receivable (\$180,000 × ½)	90,000	
Service revenue		90,000

In the final three months of the contract, TrueTech recognizes the remaining revenue assuming a transaction price of \$480,000, exactly as if it had included an estimate of variable consideration in the transaction price all along:

Deferred revenue (\$300,000 ÷ 6 months).....	50,000	
Bonus receivable (\$180,000 ÷ 6 months).....	30,000	
Service revenue (\$480,000 ÷ 6 months)		80,000

Bonus Receivable

1/1	-0-	
3/31	90,000	
4/30	30,000	
5/31	30,000	
6/30	30,000	
6/30	180,000	

Service Revenue

1/1		-0-
1/31		50,000
2/28		50,000
3/31		50,000
3/31		90,000
4/30		80,000
5/31		80,000
6/30		80,000
6/30		480,000

RIGHT OF RETURN. Retailers usually give customers the right to return merchandise if customers decide they don't want it, are not satisfied with it, or are unable to resell it. For example, video-game manufacturers like **Take-Two Interactive Software** often give customers a **right of return** for unsold products.

The right to return merchandise does not create a performance obligation for the seller. Instead, it represents a potential failure to satisfy the original performance obligation to provide goods that the customer wants to keep.

Because the total amount of cash a seller is entitled to receive depends on the amount of returns, a right of return creates a situation involving variable consideration. Based on past experience, a seller usually can estimate the returns that will result for a given volume of sales, so the seller reduces revenue by the estimated returns and records a liability for cash the seller anticipates refunding to customers. For example, assume that TrueTech sold 1,000 Tri-Boxes to CompStores for \$240 each. TrueTech would record the following entry:

A right of return is not a performance obligation.

A right of return is a form of variable consideration.

Cash (\$240 × 1,000)	240,000	
Sales revenue		240,000

If TrueTech estimates that CompStores will return five percent of the Tri-Boxes purchased, TrueTech would record a liability for that amount:

Sales returns (\$240,000 × 5% estimated returns).....	12,000	
Refund liability.....		12,000

Sales revenue
Less: Sales returns

Net sales

The sales returns account is a “contra revenue” account that has the effect of reducing revenue. As a result, we report sales revenues net of the amount expected to be returned.¹³ We also have to consider the effect of expected returns on cost of goods sold and inventory. When TrueTech recorded the sale, it would have reduced inventory and recognized cost of goods sold. To account for expected returns, it would need to reduce cost of goods sold and record an asset, “Inventory—estimated returns,” to reflect the cost of inventory expected to be returned.

In practice, most companies find it impractical to record an estimated refund liability each time they make a sale. Instead, they debit sales returns and credit cash as returns occur and then, at the end of each reporting period, make appropriate adjustments to sales returns and a refund liability to account for their estimate of remaining returns. We discuss these and other aspects of accounting for returns in more detail in Chapter 7.

What if TrueTech had sold the Tri-Boxes on account rather than for cash? When TrueTech accounts for estimated returns, it might not want to record a refund liability to return cash it hadn’t yet received. Instead, TrueTech might credit a contra asset, *allowance for sales returns*, that reduces the book value, sometimes called the carrying value or carrying amount, of accounts receivable to \$228,000 (\$240,000 – 12,000).

If the seller lacks sufficient information to be able to accurately estimate returns, the constraint on recognizing variable consideration we discussed earlier applies, and the seller should recognize revenue only to the extent it is probable that a significant revenue reversal will not occur later if the estimate of returns changes. In fact, the seller might postpone recognizing any revenue until the uncertainty about returns is resolved. Illustration 5–17 provides an example.

Illustration 5–17
Disclosure of Revenue
Recognition Policy—Intel
Corporation.

Real World Financials

Revenue Recognition

Because of frequent sales price reductions and rapid technology obsolescence in the industry, we defer product revenue and related costs of sales from component sales made to distributors under agreements allowing price protection or right of return until the distributors sell the merchandise.

Source: Excerpts taken from the Intel Corporation 10-K filed February 23, 2009.

A principal controls goods or services and is responsible for providing them to the customer.

An agent doesn’t control goods or services, but rather facilitates transfers between sellers and customers.

IS THE SELLER A PRINCIPAL OR AGENT? Sometimes more than one company is involved in providing goods or services to a customer. In those situations, we need to determine whether a company is acting as a **principal** and providing the good or service to the customer, or an **agent** and only arranging for another company to provide the good or service.

We view the seller as a principal if it obtains control of the goods or services before they are transferred to the customer. Various indicators help determine whether a seller obtains control. Control is indicated if the seller has primary responsibility for providing a product or service that the customer finds acceptable, if the seller has discretion in setting prices, and/or if the seller is vulnerable to risks associated with holding inventory or having inventory returned to it.

A principal’s performance obligation is to provide goods and services. In contrast, an agent doesn’t primarily provide goods or services, but acts as a facilitator that receives a commission for helping sellers provide goods and services to buyers. An

¹³Alternatively, the seller could combine the journal entries and record net revenue as:

Cash.....	240,000	
Sales revenue (net).....		228,000
Refund liability.....		12,000

agent's performance obligation is to facilitate a transaction between a principal and a customer.

Many examples of agents occur in business. One you're familiar with is a real estate agent. Real estate agents don't own the houses they sell, but rather charge a commission to help home owners transact with home buyers. Similarly, online auction houses like **eBay**, travel facilitators like **Expedia, Inc.** and **priceline.com**, and broad web-based retailers like **Amazon.com** act as agents for a variety of sellers. Complicating matters, these same companies also act as principals on some other arrangements, selling their own products and services directly to customers.

The distinction between a principal and an agent is important because it affects the amount of revenue that a company can record. If the company is a principal, it records revenue equal to the total sales price paid by customers as well as cost of goods sold equal to the cost of the item to the company. On the other hand, if the company is an agent, it records as revenue only the commission it receives on the transaction.

We see from Illustration 5–18 that whether the seller is a principal or an agent can have a significant effect on its revenue. This is particularly important for start-ups or growth-oriented companies that may be valued more for growth in revenue than for growth in net income.

An agent only records its commission as revenue.

Mike buys a Tri-Box module from an online retailer for \$290. Let's consider accounting for that sale by two retailers, PrinCo and AgenCo.

- PrinCo purchases Tri-Box modules directly from TrueTech for \$240, has the modules shipped to its distribution center in Kansas, and then ships individual modules to buyers when a sale is made. PrinCo offers occasional price discounts according to its marketing strategy. Because PrinCo is responsible for fulfilling the contract, bears the risk of holding inventory, and has latitude in setting sales prices, the evidence suggests that PrinCo is a principal in this transaction.
- AgenCo serves as a web portal by which multiple game module manufacturers like TrueTech can offer their products for sale. The manufacturers ship directly to buyers when a sale is made. AgenCo receives a \$50 commission on each sale that occurs via its web portal. Given that AgenCo is not primarily responsible for fulfilling the contract, bears no inventory risk, has no latitude in setting sales prices, and is paid on commission, the evidence suggests AgenCo is an agent in this transaction.

The first part of the income statement for each retailer is shown below. Notice that the same amount of gross profit, \$50, is recognized by the principal and the agent. What differ are the amounts of revenue and expense that are recognized and reported.

A Principal Records Gross Revenue (PrinCo)		An Agent Records Net Revenue (AgenCo)	
Revenue	\$290	Revenue	\$50
Less: Cost of goods sold	240	Less: Cost of goods sold	0
Gross profit	\$ 50	Gross profit	\$50

Illustration 5–18

Comparison of Revenue Recognition by Principals and Agents

THE TIME VALUE OF MONEY. It's common for contracts to specify that payment occurs either before or after delivery. We recognize an account receivable when payment occurs after delivery, and we recognize deferred revenue when payment occurs before delivery. We can think of these arrangements in part as financing transactions. In the case of an account receivable, the seller is making a loan to the customer between delivery and payment. In the case of a payment prior to delivery, the customer is making a loan to the seller by paying in advance. As with any other loan, there is an interest charge (a "time value of money") implicit in these arrangements.

If delivery and payment occur relatively near each other, the time value of money is not significant and can be ignored. As a practical matter, a seller can assume the time value of money is not significant if the period between delivery and payment is less than a year. However, if the time value of money is significant, the seller views the transaction price as

Sellers must account for the financing component of transactions when it is significant.

consisting of (a) the cash price of the good or service and (b) a “financing component” representing the interest for the time between the sale and the cash payment. The seller then adjusts the transaction price to remove the financing component. That way, the seller recognizes the same amount of revenue for goods or services that it would recognize if the customer paid cash at the time the seller delivers those goods or services. The seller separately accounts for the financing component of the contract by recognizing interest revenue (in the case of an account receivable) or interest expense (in the case of a customer prepayment) over time. We discuss the time value of money in detail in Chapter 6. We discuss how sellers make adjustments for the time value of money for accounts receivable in Chapter 7 and for prepayments in Chapter 13.

PAYMENTS BY THE SELLER TO THE CUSTOMER. Usually it’s the customer who pays the seller for goods or services. Occasionally, though, a *seller* also makes payments to a *customer*. For example, **Samsung** sells TVs, smartphones, tablets, and other products to **BestBuy**. However, Samsung also might pay BestBuy for dedicated space in BestBuy stores or to conduct special Samsung-focused advertising programs. The question is whether a payment by Samsung is a purchase of goods or services from BestBuy, or really just a refund of some of the price paid by BestBuy to purchase Samsung products.

The way we account for payments by a seller to a customer depends on the specifics of the arrangement. If the seller is purchasing distinct goods or services from the customer at the fair value of those goods or services, we account for that purchase as a separate transaction. If a seller pays more for distinct goods or services purchased from its customer than the fair value of those goods or services, those excess payments are viewed as a refund. They are subtracted from the amount the seller is entitled to receive when calculating the transaction price of the sale to the customer. In our Samsung example, if Samsung pays more for dedicated floor space at BestBuy than the fair value of that floor space, Samsung should treat that excess payment as a refund to BestBuy of part of the price paid by BestBuy for Samsung products.

Special Issues for Step 4: Allocate the Transaction Price to the Performance Obligations

We already discussed the need for the seller to allocate the transaction price to each performance obligation in a contract in proportion to the stand-alone selling prices of the goods or services. We also noted that when goods and services aren’t normally sold separately, sellers must estimate those stand-alone selling prices. Various approaches are available to estimate stand-alone selling prices. Examples include the following:

1. **Adjusted market assessment approach:** The seller considers what it could sell the product or services for in the market in which it normally conducts business, perhaps referencing prices charged by competitors.
2. **Expected cost plus margin approach:** The seller estimates its costs of satisfying a performance obligation and then adds an appropriate profit margin.
3. **Residual approach:** The seller estimates an unknown (or highly uncertain) stand-alone selling price by subtracting the sum of the known or estimated stand-alone selling prices of other goods or services in the contract from the total transaction price of the contract. The residual approach is allowed only if the stand-alone selling price is highly uncertain, either because the seller hasn’t previously sold the good or service and hasn’t yet determined a price for it, or because the seller provides the same good or service to different customers at substantially different prices. Illustration 5–19 provides an example of the residual approach.

The residual approach is used to estimate a stand-alone selling price that is very uncertain.

Special Issues for Step 5: Recognize Revenue When (Or As) Each Performance Obligation Is Satisfied

- **LO5–7** Previously, we discussed recognizing revenue at a point in time and over a period of time. Now let’s look at a few commonplace arrangements that occur in practice that make it more

Assume the same facts as Illustration 5–7, except that the stand-alone selling price of the one-year Tri-Net subscription is highly uncertain because TrueTech hasn't sold that service previously and hasn't established a price for it. Under the residual approach, the value of the subscription would be estimated as follows:

Total price of Tri-Box with Tri-Net subscription ($\$250 \times 1,000$)	\$250,000
Stand-alone price of Tri-Box sold without subscription ($\$240 \times 1,000$)	<u>240,000</u>
Estimated stand-alone price of Tri-Net subscription	<u>\$ 10,000</u>

Based on these relative stand-alone selling prices, if CompStores orders 1,000 Tri-Box Systems at the normal wholesale price of \$250 each, TrueTech records the following journal entry (ignoring any entry to record the reduction in inventory and corresponding cost of goods sold):

Accounts receivable	250,000	
Sales revenue		240,000
Deferred revenue.....		<u>10,000</u>

TrueTech would convert the \$10,000 of deferred revenue to revenue (debit deferred revenue; credit service revenue) over the one-year term of the Tri-Net subscription.

Illustration 5–19

Allocating Transaction Price to Performance Obligations Using the Residual Approach

Additional Consideration

Allocating Variable Consideration. What if a contract that has variable consideration includes multiple performance obligations? Typically the seller would include the variable consideration in the transaction price that is allocated to each of those performance obligations according to their relative stand-alone selling prices. Also, changes in estimated variable consideration are allocated to performance obligations on the same basis. However, if the variable consideration relates only to one performance obligation, it is allocated to only that performance obligation.

difficult to determine when revenue should be recognized. In particular, we discuss licenses, franchises, bill-and-hold sales, consignment arrangements, and gift cards.

LICENSES. Customers sometimes pay a licensing fee to use a company's intellectual property ("IP"). **Licenses** are common in the software, technology, media, and entertainment (including motion pictures and music) industries. The accounting question is when to recognize revenue for these arrangements, which the FASB recently addressed in ASU 2016-10.¹⁴

Functional intellectual property: Some licenses transfer a *right of use* to IP that has *significant standalone functionality*, meaning that it can perform a function or a task, or be played or aired. The benefit the customer receives from the license isn't affected by the seller's ongoing activity. Examples of this *functional IP* include software like **Microsoft** Office, drug formulas, and media content like books, music, and movies. For licenses of functional IP, sellers typically recognize revenue at the *point in time* that the customer can start using the IP.

For example, once you download a Beyoncé hit from **Apple's** iTunes, you can enjoy listening to that song as often as you like, regardless of future actions by Beyoncé or iTunes. You probably didn't realize it, but you had just purchased a license to use IP (and that license came with some restrictions, like not being able to copy and sell the music or broadcast

Licenses allow the customer to use the seller's intellectual property.

Licenses of functional IP transfer a right of use, so sellers typically recognize revenue at a point in time.

¹⁴FASB ASC 606-10-55-59-62: Revenue from Contracts with Customers—Overall—Implementation Guidance and Illustrations—Determining the Nature of the Entity's Promise (previously "Revenue from Contracts with Customers" (Topic 606)—Identifying Performance Obligations and Licensing" *Accounting Standards Update 2016-10* (Norwalk, Conn: FASB, 2016)).

Licenses of symbolic IP transfer a *right of access*, so sellers recognize revenue over time.

it publicly). Apple recognized revenue at the point in time that the download occurred, because that is when you could start listening to the downloaded music.

Symbolic intellectual property: Other licenses provide the customer with the *right of access* to the seller's IP with the understanding that the IP does not have significant stand-alone functionality. Rather, the seller will undertake ongoing activities during the license period that benefit the customer. The seller might make changes to the IP over the course of the license, or could perform marketing or other activities that affect the value of the license to the customer. Examples of this *symbolic IP* include trademarks, logos, brand names and franchise rights. For licenses of symbolic IP, sellers recognize revenue *over time*, because that is when they satisfy their performance obligation.

For example, suppose the **NBA** sells a five-year license that allows **Adidas** to manufacture shirts and hats with NBA team logos. Adidas agrees to the license arrangement with the understanding that the NBA will continue to play games and promote the league during the license period. These activities affect the value of the shirts and hats and thus the license to Adidas. Therefore, the NBA satisfies its performance obligation under the license agreement through its ongoing activities and will recognize revenue over the *period of time* for which access is provided.

Licenses of functional IP transfer a *right of use*, so sellers typically recognize revenue at a point in time.

Sometimes functional IP also requires revenue recognition over time. This happens when the seller is expected to change the functionality over the license period and the customer is required to use the updated version. For example, that's the case with some software products, like virus protection. In that case, even though the license involves functional IP, we view the license as transferring a right of access, so revenue must be recognized over the license period.

Finally, sometimes a license isn't considered to be a separate performance obligation because it's not *distinct* from other goods or services provided in the same transaction. For example, an online service might grant a license to customers to access content at a website. In that case, the license isn't distinct from the website content, because the purpose of the license is to access the content. As result, the website access and license would be treated as



● LO5–10

International Financial Reporting Standards

The IASB's licensing guidance doesn't rely on the functional/symbolic classifications, so it differs from U.S. GAAP by not requiring revenue recognition over time for all symbolic intellectual property. Instead, the IASB requires the seller to recognize revenue over time only if the seller's ongoing activities affect the benefits the customer obtains from the IP. This distinction usually doesn't matter, but there are exceptions. For example, given that the Brooklyn Dodgers played their last baseball game in 1957, it is unlikely that their ongoing activities affect the benefit of licensing the Brooklyn Dodgers logo. Therefore, under IFRS, the seller would recognize license revenue for licensing that logo at the point in time the customer can use the logo. However, because U.S. GAAP would focus on the logo being symbolic IP, U.S. GAAP would require the seller to recognize revenue over the license period.

Additional Consideration

Variable Consideration and Licenses. Previously you learned about sellers being able to recognize revenue associated with variable consideration. There's an exception if variable consideration is based on sales or usage of a license. Those amounts (often called "royalties") are only included in the transaction price when the sales or usage has actually occurred, such that they are known rather than needing to be estimated.

a single performance obligation, and revenue would be recognized over time as customers are provided access to the website.

FRANCHISES. Many retail outlets for fast food, restaurants, hotels, and auto rental agencies are operated as franchises. In franchise arrangements, the **franchisor**, such as **Subway**, grants to the **franchisee**, quite often an individual, a right to sell the franchisor's products and use its name for a specified period of time. The franchisor also typically provides initial start-up services (such as identifying locations, remodeling or constructing facilities, selling equipment, and providing training to the franchisee) as well as providing ongoing products and services (such as franchise-branded products and advertising and administrative services). So, a franchise involves a *license* to use the franchisor's intellectual property, but also involves *initial sales* of products and services as well as *ongoing sales* of products and services. The franchisor must evaluate each part of the franchise arrangement to identify the performance obligations. Illustration 5–20 gives an example.

In a **franchise arrangement**, a franchisor grants to the franchisee the right to sell the franchisor's products and use its name.

Assume that TrueTech starts selling TechStop franchises. TrueTech charges franchisees an initial fee in exchange for (a) the exclusive right to operate the only TechStop in a particular area for a five-year period, (b) the equipment necessary to distribute and repair TrueTech products, and (c) training services to be provided over a two-year period. Similar equipment and training can be purchased elsewhere. What are the performance obligations in this arrangement, and when would TrueTech recognize revenue for each of them?

1. The exclusive five-year right to operate the only TechStop in a particular area is distinct because it can be used with other goods or services (furnishings, equipment, products) that the customer could obtain elsewhere.
2. The equipment is distinct because similar equipment is sold separately.
3. The training is distinct because similar training could be acquired elsewhere.

TrueTech would allocate the initial franchise fee to three separate performance obligations based on their relative stand-alone prices: (1) the right to operate a TechStop, (2) equipment, and (3) training. TrueTech would recognize revenue for the right to operate a TechStop over the five-year license period, because TrueTech's ongoing activities over the license period affect the value of the right to run a TechStop. TrueTech would recognize revenue for the equipment at the time the equipment is delivered to the franchisee, and would recognize revenue for the training over the two-year period that the training is provided.

What if TrueTech also charges franchisees an additional fee for ongoing services provided by TrueTech? In that case, TrueTech would recognize revenue associated with that fee over time as it provides the ongoing services.

Illustration 5–20

Franchise Arrangements

BILL-AND-HOLD ARRANGEMENTS. A **bill-and-hold** arrangement exists when a customer purchases goods but requests that the seller retain physical possession of the goods until a later date. For example, a customer might buy equipment and ask the seller to store the equipment until an installation site has been prepared.

For bill-and-hold arrangements, the key issue is that the customer doesn't have physical possession of the asset until the seller has delivered it. Remember, physical possession is one of the indicators that control may have been transferred as listed in Illustration 5–3. Bill-and-hold arrangements might arise normally in the course of business, but they also have been abused by some companies in the past. Managers at companies like **Sunbeam**, **NutraCea**, and **Nortel Networks** are alleged to have overstated revenue by falsely claiming that unsold inventory has been sold under a bill-and-hold arrangement.

The physical possession indicator normally overshadows other control indicators in a bill-and-hold arrangement, so sellers usually conclude that control has not been transferred and revenue should not be recognized until actual delivery to the customer occurs.

A **bill-and-hold arrangement** occurs when a customer purchases goods but requests that shipment occur at a later date.

Revenue recognition usually occurs at delivery for a **bill-and-hold arrangement**.

Ethical Dilemma



The Precision Parts Corporation manufactures automobile parts. The company has reported a profit every year since the company's inception in 1980. Management prides itself on this accomplishment and believes one important contributing factor is the company's incentive plan that rewards top management a bonus equal to a percentage of operating income if the operating income goal for the year is achieved. However, 2018 has been a tough year, and prospects for attaining the income goal for the year are bleak.

Tony Smith, the company's chief financial officer, has determined a way to increase December sales by an amount sufficient to boost operating income over the goal for the year and secure bonuses for all top management. A reputable customer ordered \$120,000 of normally stocked parts to be shipped on January 15, 2019. Tony told the rest of top management "I know we can get that order ready by December 31. We can then just leave the order on the loading dock until shipment. I see nothing wrong with recognizing the sale in 2018, since the parts will have been manufactured and we do have a firm order from a reputable customer." The company's normal procedure is to ship goods f.o.b. destination and to recognize sales revenue when the customer receives the parts.

Consistent with SEC guidance, sellers can recognize revenue prior to delivery only if (a) they conclude that the customer controls the product, (b) there is a good reason for the bill-and-hold arrangement, and (c) the product is specifically identified as belonging to the customer and is ready for shipment.¹⁵

CONSIGNMENT ARRANGEMENTS. Sometimes a company arranges for another company to sell its product under **consignment**. In these arrangements, the "consignor" physically transfers the goods to the other company (the consignee), but the consignor retains legal title. If a buyer is found, the consignee remits the selling price (less commission and approved expenses) to the consignor. If the consignee can't find a buyer within an agreed-upon time, the consignee returns the goods to the consignor.

When does control transfer from the consignor, allowing the consignor to recognize revenue? Referring to the indicators listed in Illustration 5-3, the consignor still has title and retains many of the risks and rewards of ownership for goods it has placed on consignment. Therefore, it's likely that the consignor would be judged to retain control after transfer to the consignee and would postpone recognizing revenue until sale to an end customer occurs. Illustration 5-21 provides an example of a consignment arrangement by **Boston Scientific Corporation** from a recent annual report. We discuss accounting for consignment arrangements further in Chapter 8.

Revenue recognition occurs upon sale to an end customer in a **consignment** arrangement.

Illustration 5-21

Disclosure of Revenue Recognition Policy for Consignment Arrangements—Boston Scientific Corporation

Real World Financials

Sales of gift cards are recognized as deferred revenue.

Note 1: Business and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies: Revenue Recognition (in part)

We generally meet these criteria at the time of shipment, unless a consignment arrangement exists or we are required to provide additional services. We recognize revenue from consignment arrangements based on product usage, or implant, which indicates that the sale is complete.

Source: Excerpts taken from the Boston Scientific Corporation 10-K filed February 28, 2008.

GIFT CARDS. Let's assume you received an iTunes **gift card** that allows you to download songs or audiobooks later. When your friend bought that gift card, **Apple** recorded a deferred revenue liability in anticipation of recording revenue when you used your gift card to get songs. But, what if you lose the card or fail to redeem it for some other reason?

¹⁵FASB ASC 605-10-S99: Revenue Recognition—Overall—SEC Materials (originally "Revenue Recognition in Financial Statements," *Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 101* (Washington, D.C.: SEC, 1999) and *Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 104* (Washington, D.C.: SEC, 2003)).

Sellers like Apple, **Target**, **Amazon**, and others will recognize revenue at the point when they have concluded based on past experience that there is only a “remote likelihood” that customers will use the cards.¹⁶ We discuss accounting for gift card liabilities further in Chapter 13.

Disclosures

INCOME STATEMENT DISCLOSURE. Of course, a seller reports revenue in its income statement. In addition, that seller is required to either include in its income statement or disclosure notes any bad debt expense and any interest revenue or interest expense associated with significant financing components of long-term contracts.

● LO5–8

BALANCE SHEET DISCLOSURE. A seller reports accounts receivable, “contract liabilities,” and “contract assets” on separate lines of its balance sheet. We discuss each in turn.

If a customer pays the seller before the seller has satisfied a performance obligation, we saw earlier that the seller records deferred revenue. For example, we recorded deferred revenue in Illustration 5–6 when TrueTech received payment for Tri-Net subscriptions prior to providing that service. A **contract liability** is a label we give to deferred revenue (or unearned revenue) accounts.

On the other hand, if the seller satisfies a performance obligation *before* the customer has paid for it, the seller records either a contract asset or accounts receivable. The seller recognizes an **account receivable** if the seller has an unconditional right to receive payment, which is the case if only the passage of time is required before the payment is due. In other words, the seller has satisfied all of its performance obligations and is just waiting to be paid.

If, instead, the seller satisfies a performance obligation but payment depends on something other than the passage of time, the seller recognizes a **contract asset**. For example, construction companies sometimes complete a significant amount of work prior to when the construction contract indicates they can bill their clients for progress payments. As we will see in Part C of this chapter, a construction company in that situation reports a contract asset called “construction-in-progress in excess of billings” to reflect that the company will be able to bill its client in the future for the work that has been completed.

DISCLOSURE NOTES. Several important aspects of revenue recognition must be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements. For example, sellers must separate their revenue into categories that help investors understand the nature, amount, timing, and uncertainty of revenue and cash flows. Categories might include product lines, geographic regions, types of customers, or types of contracts. Sellers also must disclose amounts included in revenue that were previously recognized as deferred revenue or that resulted from changes in transaction prices.

Sellers also must describe their outstanding performance obligations, discuss how performance obligations typically are satisfied, and describe important contractual provisions like payment terms and policies for refunds, returns, and warranties. They also must disclose any significant judgments used to estimate transaction prices, to allocate transaction prices to performance obligations, and to determine when performance obligations have been satisfied.

Sellers also must explain significant changes in contract assets and contract liabilities that occurred during the period.

The objective of these disclosures is to help users of financial statements understand the revenue and cash flows arising from contracts with customers. Of course, the downside of these disclosures is that sellers also are providing information to competitors, suppliers, and customers.

Illustration 5–22 provides a summary of both Parts A and Parts B of this chapter to provide a comprehensive review of revenue recognition.

The seller recognizes **contract liabilities**, **contract assets**, and **accounts receivable** on separate lines of its balance sheet.

The seller has a **contract liability** if it received payment prior to satisfying a performance obligation.

A seller has an **account receivable** if it has an unconditional right to receive payment after satisfying a performance obligation.

A seller has a **contract asset** if it has a conditional right to receive payment after satisfying a performance obligation.

Companies provide detailed disclosures about revenues.

¹⁶This is sometimes referred to as “breakage” of the gift card.

Illustration 5-22 Summary of Fundamental and Special Issues Related to Recognizing Revenue

Revenue Recognition	Fundamental Issues (Part A)	Special Issues (Part B)
Step 1 Identify the contract	A contract establishes the legal rights and obligations of the seller and customer with respect to one or more performance obligations.	A contract exists if it (a) has commercial substance, (b) has been approved by both the seller and the customer, (c) specifies the seller's and customer's rights and obligations, (d) specifies payment terms, and (e) is probable that the seller will collect the amounts it is entitled to receive. A contract does not exist if (a) neither the seller nor the customer has performed any obligations under the contract, and (b) both the seller and the customer can terminate the contract without penalty.
Step 2 Identify the performance obligation(s)	A performance obligation is a promise to transfer a good or service that is distinct, which is the case if the good or service is both (a) capable of being distinct and (b) separately identifiable.	<div> The following do not qualify as performance obligations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quality assurance warranties • Customer prepayments </div> <div> The following do qualify as performance obligations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Extended warranties • Customer options for additional goods and services that provide a material right </div>
Step 3 Determine the transaction price	The transaction price is the amount the seller is entitled to receive from the customer.	The seller adjusts the transaction price for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Variable consideration (estimated as either the expected value or the most likely amount). Constraint: Variable consideration is recognized only to the extent it is probable that a significant revenue reversal will not occur in the future. • Whether the seller is acting as a principal or agent • A significant financing component • Any payments by the seller to the customer
Step 4 Allocate the transaction price	The seller allocates the transaction price to performance obligations based on relative stand-alone selling prices of the goods or services in each performance obligation.	Various approaches are available to estimate stand-alone selling prices: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjusted market assessment approach • Expected cost plus margin approach • Residual approach
Step 5 Recognize revenue when (or as) each performance obligation is satisfied	<div> The seller recognizes revenue at a single point in time when control passes to the customer, which is more likely if the customer has: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Obligation to pay seller. • Legal title to the asset. • Possession of the asset. • Assumed the risks and rewards of ownership. • Accepted the asset. </div> <div> The seller recognizes revenue over a period of time if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Customer consumes benefit as work performed, • Customer controls asset as it's created, or • Seller is creating an asset that has no alternative use to the seller and the seller has right to receive payment for work completed. </div>	The seller must determine the timing of revenue recognition for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Licenses (if functional intellectual property, usually recognize revenue at beginning of license; if symbolic intellectual property, recognize revenue over license period). • Franchises (initial fees recognized when goods and services are transferred; continuing fees recognized over time). • Bill-and-hold arrangements (typically do not transfer control, so recognize upon delivery of goods to customer). • Consignment arrangements (do not transfer control, so recognize after sale to end customer occurs). • Gift cards (initially deferred and then recognized as redeemed or expire).

PART C

Accounting for Long-Term Contracts

A recent survey of reporting practices of 500 large public companies indicates that approximately one in every eight companies participates in long-term contracts.¹⁷ These are not only construction companies. Illustration 5–23 lists just a sampling of companies that use long-term contracts, many of which you might recognize.

• LO5–9

Illustration 5–23

Companies Engaged in Long-Term Contracts

Company	Type of Industry or Product
Oracle Corp.	Computer software, license and consulting fees
Lockheed Martin Corporation	Aircraft, missiles, and spacecraft
HP	Information technology
Northrop Grumman Corporation	Shipbuilding
Nortel Networks Corp.	Networking solutions and services to support the Internet
SBA Communications Corp.	Telecommunications
Layne Christensen Company	Water supply services and geotechnical construction
Kaufman & Broad Home Corp.	Commercial and residential construction
Raytheon Company	Defense electronics
Amec Foster Wheeler Corp.	Construction, petroleum and chemical facilities
Halliburton	Construction, energy services
Allied Construction Products Corp.	Large metal stamping presses

The five-step process for recognizing revenue described in Parts A and B of this chapter also applies to long-term contracts. However, steps 2 and 5 merit special attention.

Step 2, “Identify the performance obligation(s) in the contract,” is important because long-term contracts typically include many products and services that could be viewed as separate performance obligations. For example, constructing a building requires the builder to deliver many different materials and other products (concrete, lumber, furnace, bathroom fixtures, carpeting) and to provide many different services (surveying, excavating, construction, fixture installation, painting, landscaping). These products and services are capable of being distinct, but they are not separately identifiable, because the seller’s role is to combine those products and services for purposes of delivering a completed building to the customer. Therefore, it’s the bundle of products and services that comprise a single performance obligation. Most long-term contracts should be viewed as including a single performance obligation.

Step 5, “Recognize revenue when (or as) each performance obligation is satisfied,” is important because there can be a considerable difference for long-term contracts between recognizing revenue over time and recognizing revenue only when the contract has been completed. Imagine a builder who spends years constructing a skyscraper but only gets to recognize revenue at the end of the contract. Such delayed revenue recognition would do a poor job of informing financial statement users about the builder’s economic activity. Fortunately, most long-term contracts qualify for revenue recognition over time. Often the customer owns the seller’s work in process, such that the seller is creating an asset that the customer controls as it is completed. Also, often the seller is creating an asset that is customized for the customer, so the seller has no other use for the asset and has the right to be paid for progress even if the customer cancels the contract. In either of those cases, the seller recognizes revenue over time.

Long-term contracts are complex, and specialized accounting approaches have been developed to handle that complexity. For many years, long-term contracts that qualified for revenue recognition over time were accounted for using an approach called the *percentage-of-completion method*, which recognized revenue in each year of the contract according to the progress toward completion that occurred during that year. Long-term contracts that didn’t qualify for revenue recognition over time were accounted for using an approach

¹⁷U.S. GAAP Financial Statements—Best Practices in Presentation and Disclosure—2013 (New York: AICPA, 2013).

called the *completed contract method*, because all revenue was recognized at a single point in time—upon completion of the contract.

ASU No. 2014–09 removes the terms “percentage-of-completion method” and “completed contract method” from the Accounting Standards Codification, and changes the criteria that determine whether revenue should be recognized over a period of time or at a point in time. However, the journal entries necessary to account for revenue over time are the same as those that were used under the percentage-of-completion method, and those used to account for revenue at a point in time are the same as those used under the completed contract method. We demonstrate those journal entries next.

Accounting for a Profitable Long-Term Contract

Much of the accounting for long-term contracts is the same regardless of whether we recognize revenue over the contract period or upon completion of the contract. So, we start by discussing the similarities between the two approaches, and then the differences. You’ll see that we recognize the same total amounts of revenue and profit over the life of the contract either way. Only the timing of recognition differs.

Illustration 5–24 provides information for a typical long-term construction contract that we’ll use to consider accounting for long-term contracts.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 235

Illustration 5–24

Example of Long-Term
Construction Contract

At the beginning of 2018, the Harding Construction Company received a contract to build an office building for \$5 million. Harding will construct the building according to specifications provided by the buyer, and the project is estimated to take three years to complete. According to the contract, Harding will bill the buyer in installments over the construction period according to a prearranged schedule. Information related to the contract is as follows:

	2018	2019	2020
Construction costs incurred during the year	\$ 1,500,000	\$ 1,000,000	\$ 1,600,000
Construction costs incurred in prior years	-0-	1,500,000	2,500,000
Cumulative actual construction costs	1,500,000	2,500,000	4,100,000
Estimated costs to complete at end of year	2,250,000	1,500,000	-0-
Total estimated and actual construction costs	\$3,750,000	\$4,000,000	\$4,100,000
Billings made during the year	\$ 1,200,000	\$ 2,000,000	\$ 1,800,000
Cash collections during year	1,000,000	1,400,000	2,600,000

Construction costs include the labor, materials, and overhead costs directly related to the construction of the building. Notice how the total of estimated and actual construction costs changes from period to period. Cost revisions are typical in long-term contracts because costs are estimated over long periods of time.

ACCOUNTING FOR THE COST OF CONSTRUCTION AND ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE. Summary journal entries are shown in Illustration 5–24A for actual construction costs, billings, and cash receipts. These journal entries are not affected by the timing of revenue recognition.

The first journal entry shows Harding incurring various costs during the construction process and recording them in an asset account called **construction in progress** (or “CIP” for short). This asset account is equivalent to work-in-process inventory in a manufacturing company. This is logical because the construction project is essentially an inventory item in process for the contractor.

The second journal entry occurs when Harding bills its customer according to whatever schedule the contract permits. Notice that periodic billings are credited to **billings on construction contract**. This account is a contra account to the CIP asset. At the end of each period, the balances in these two accounts are compared. If the net amount is a debit, it is reported in the balance sheet as a contract asset. Conversely, if the net amount is a credit, it is reported as a contract liability.¹⁸

Construction in progress (CIP) is the contractor’s work-in-process inventory.

Accounting for costs, billings, and cash receipts does not depend on the timing of revenue recognition.

¹⁸If the company is engaged in more than one long-term contract, all contracts for which construction in progress exceeds billings are reported in the balance sheet as contract assets, and all contracts for which billings exceed construction in progress are reported as contract liabilities.

Illustration 5-24A Journal Entries—Costs, Billings, and Cash Collections

	2018	2019	2020
Construction in progress (CIP)	1,500,000	1,000,000	1,600,000
Cash, materials, etc.	1,500,000	1,000,000	1,600,000
<i>To record construction costs.</i>			
Accounts receivable	1,200,000	2,000,000	1,800,000
Billings on construction contract.....	1,200,000	2,000,000	1,800,000
<i>To record progress billings.</i>			
Cash	1,000,000	1,400,000	2,600,000
Accounts receivable.....	1,000,000	1,400,000	2,600,000
<i>To record cash collections.</i>			

To understand why we use the billings on construction contract account (or “billings” for short), consider a key difference between accounting for a long-term contract and accounting for a more normal sale of inventory to a customer. In the normal case, the seller debits an account receivable and credits revenue, and also debits cost of goods sold and credits inventory. Thus, the seller gives up its physical asset (inventory) and recognizes cost of goods sold at the same time it gets a financial asset (an account receivable) and recognizes revenue. First the physical asset is in the balance sheet, and then the financial asset, but the two are not in the balance sheet at the same time.

Now consider our Harding Construction example. Harding is creating a physical asset (CIP) in the same periods it recognizes a financial asset (first recognizing accounts receivable when the customer is billed and then recognizing cash when the receivable is collected). Having both the physical asset and the financial asset in the balance sheet at the same time constitutes double counting the same arrangement. The billings account solves this problem. Whenever an account receivable is recognized, the other side of the journal entry increases the billings account, which is contra to (and thus reduces) CIP. As a result, the financial asset (accounts receivable) increases and the physical asset (the net amount of CIP and billings) decreases, and no double counting occurs.

Remember, we recognize accounts receivable when the seller has an unconditional right to receive payment, which is the case if only the passage of time is required before the payment is due, and we recognize a contract asset when the seller’s right to receive payment depends on something other than the passage of time. Consistent with those definitions, Harding will report an account receivable for amounts it has billed the client and not yet been paid, and will report a contract asset (CIP – Billings) for the remaining amount of work completed, for which it eventually will be paid once it is able to bill the client.

The billings on construction contract account prevents “double counting” assets by reducing CIP whenever an account receivable is recognized.

REVENUE RECOGNITION—GENERAL APPROACH. Now let’s consider revenue recognition. The top portion of Illustration 5-24B shows the single journal entry to recognize

Illustration 5-24B Journal Entries—Revenue Recognition

	2018	2019	2020
Recognizing Revenue upon Completion			
Construction in progress (CIP)			900,000
Cost of construction.....			4,100,000
Revenue from long-term contracts.....			5,000,000
<i>To record gross profit.</i>			
Recognizing Revenue Over Time According to Percentage of Completion			
Construction in progress (CIP)	500,000	125,000	275,000
Cost of construction.....	1,500,000	1,000,000	1,600,000
Revenue from long-term contracts.....	2,000,000	1,125,000	1,875,000
<i>To record gross profit.</i>			

revenue, cost of construction (think of this as cost of goods sold), and gross profit when recognizing revenue upon completion of the contract, while the bottom portion shows the journal entries that achieve this when recognizing revenue over the term of the contract. At this point focus on the structure of the journal entries (what is debited and credited). We'll discuss how to calculate the specific amounts later in the chapter.

The same total amount of revenue is recognized whether it's over the term of the contract or only upon completion, but the timing of recognition differs.

It's important to understand two key aspects of Illustration 5-24B. First, the same amounts of revenue (the \$5 million contract price), cost, and gross profit are recognized whether it's over the term of the contract or only upon completion. The only difference is timing. To check this, we can add together all of the revenue recognized for both methods over the three years, as follows:

	Revenue Recognition	
	Over Time	Upon Completion
Revenue recognized:		
2018	\$2,000,000	\$ 0-
2019	1,125,000	0-
2020	1,875,000	5,000,000
Total revenue	<u>\$5,000,000</u>	<u>\$5,000,000</u>

Second, notice that, regardless of the timing of revenue recognition, we add gross profit (the difference between revenue and cost) to the CIP asset. That seems odd—why add profit to what is essentially an inventory account? The key here is that, when Harding recognizes gross profit, Harding is acting like it has sold some portion of the asset to the customer, but Harding keeps the asset in Harding's own balance sheet (in the CIP account) until delivery to the customer. Putting recognized gross profit into the CIP account just updates that account to reflect the total value (cost + gross profit = sales price) of the customer's asset. But don't forget that the billings account is contra to the CIP account. Over the life of the construction project, Harding will bill the customer for the entire sales price of the asset. Therefore, at the end of the contract, the CIP account (containing total cost and gross profit) and the billings account (containing all amounts billed to the customer) will have equal balances that exactly offset to create a net value of zero.

CIP includes profits and losses on the contract that have been recognized to date.

Now let's discuss the timing of revenue recognition in more detail.

REVENUE RECOGNITION UPON THE COMPLETION OF THE CONTRACT. If a contract doesn't qualify for revenue recognition over time, revenue is recognized at the point in time that control transfers from the seller to the customer, which typically occurs when the contract has been completed. At that time, the seller views itself as selling the asset and recognizes revenues and expenses associated with the sale. As shown in Illustration 5-24B and in the T-accounts below, completion occurs in 2020 for our Harding example. Prior to then, CIP includes only costs, showing a cumulative balance of \$1,500,000 and \$2,500,000 at the end of 2018 and 2019, respectively, and totaling \$4,100,000 (\$1,500,000 + 1,000,000 + 1,600,000) when the project is completed in 2020. Upon completion, Harding recognizes revenue of \$5,000,000 and cost of construction (similar to cost of goods sold) of \$4,100,000, because the asset is viewed as "sold" on that date. Harding includes the resulting **\$900,000** gross profit in CIP, increasing its balance to the \$5,000,000 total cost + gross profit for the project.

If a contract doesn't qualify for revenue recognition over time, revenue is recognized when the project is completed.

Recognizing Revenue upon Completion

	Construction in Progress (CIP)		Billings on Construction Contract		
2018 construction costs	1,500,000			1,200,000	2018 billings
End balance, 2018	1,500,000			1,200,000	End balance, 2018
2019 construction costs	1,000,000			2,000,000	2019 billings
End balance, 2019	2,500,000			3,200,000	End balance, 2019
2020 construction costs	1,600,000			1,800,000	2020 billings
Total gross profit	900,000				
Balance, before closing	<u>5,000,000</u>			<u>5,000,000</u>	Balance, before closing

If revenue is recognized upon completion of the contract, CIP is updated to include gross profit at that point in time.

RECOGNIZING REVENUE OVER TIME ACCORDING TO PERCENTAGE OF COMPLETION.

If a contract qualifies for revenue recognition over time, revenue is recognized based on progress towards completion. How should progress to date be estimated?

As discussed in Part A of this chapter, one approach to estimating progress towards completion is to use output-based measures, like number of units produced or delivered, achievement of milestones, and surveys or appraisals of performance completed to date. A shortcoming of output measures is that they may provide a distorted view of actual progress to date.¹⁹ For example, an output measure for highway construction might be finished miles of road, but that measure could be deceptive if not all miles of road require the same effort. A highway contract for the state of Arizona would likely pay the contractor more for miles of road blasted through the mountains than for miles paved across flat desert. Another shortcoming of some output measures is that the information they require, such as surveys or appraisals, might be costly to obtain.

Another way to estimate progress is to base it on the seller's *input*, measured as the proportion of effort expended thus far relative to the total effort expected to satisfy the performance obligation. Measures of effort include costs incurred, labor hours expended, machine hours used, or time lapsed. The most common approach to estimating progress toward completion is to use a "cost-to-cost ratio" that compares total cost incurred to date to the total estimated cost to complete the project.²⁰ When using that approach, sellers have to make sure to exclude from the ratio costs that don't reflect progress toward completion. For example, inefficiencies in production could lead to wasted materials, labor, or other resources. Those costs must be expensed as incurred, but not included in the cost-to-cost ratio.

Regardless of the specific approach used to estimate progress towards completion, we determine the amount of revenue recognized in each period using the following logic:

$$\text{Revenue recognized this period} = \underbrace{\left(\frac{\text{Total estimated revenue}}{\text{Percentage completed to date}} \right)}_{\text{Cumulative revenue to be recognized to date}} - \text{Revenue recognized in prior periods}$$

Illustration 5–24C shows the calculation of revenue for each of the years for our Harding Construction Company example, with progress to date estimated using the cost-to-cost ratio. Notice that this approach automatically includes changes in estimated cost to complete the job, and therefore in estimated percentage completion, by first calculating the cumulative amount of revenue to be recognized to date and then subtracting revenue recognized in prior periods to determine revenue recognized in the current period. Refer to the following T-accounts to see that the gross profit recognized in each period is added to the CIP account.

If a contract qualifies for revenue recognition over time, revenue is recognized over time as the project is completed.

When recognizing revenue over the term of the contract, CIP is updated each period to include gross profit.

Recognizing Revenue Over the Term of the Contract

	Construction in Progress (CIP)	Billings on Construction Contract	
2018 construction costs	1,500,000		2018 billings
2018 gross profit	500,000		
End balance, 2018	2,000,000	1,200,000	End balance, 2018
2019 construction costs	1,000,000	2,000,000	2019 billings
2019 gross profit	125,000		
End balance, 2019	3,125,000	3,200,000	End balance, 2019
2020 construction costs	1,600,000	1,800,000	2020 billings
2020 gross profit	275,000		
Balance, before closing	5,000,000	5,000,000	Balance, before closing

¹⁹Number of units produced or delivered is not an appropriate basis for measuring progress toward completion if these measures are distorted by the seller having material amounts of work-in-progress or finished-goods inventory at the end of the period.

²⁰R. K. Larson and K. L. Brown, "Where Are We with Long-Term Contract Accounting?" *Accounting Horizons*, September 2004, pp. 207–219.

Illustration 5-24C

Allocation of Revenue to Each Period

	2018	2019	2020
Construction costs:			
Construction costs incurred during the year	\$1,500,000	\$1,000,000	\$1,600,000
Construction costs incurred in prior years	—0—	1,500,000	2,500,000
Actual costs to date	1,500,000	2,500,000	4,100,000
Estimated remaining costs to complete	2,250,000	1,500,000	—0—
Total cost (estimated + actual)	<u>\$3,750,000</u>	<u>\$4,000,000</u>	<u>\$4,100,000</u>
Contract price	\$5,000,000	\$5,000,000	\$5,000,000
Multiplied by:	×	×	×
Percentage of completion	$\left(\frac{\$1,500,000}{\$3,750,000} \right)$	$\left(\frac{\$2,500,000}{\$4,000,000} \right)$	$\left(\frac{\$4,100,000}{\$4,100,000} \right)$
Actual costs to date Total cost (est. + actual)	<u>= 40%</u>	<u>= 62.5%</u>	<u>= 100%</u>
Equals:			
Cumulative revenue to be recognized to date	\$2,000,000	\$3,125,000	\$5,000,000
Less:			
Revenue recognized in prior periods	—0—	(2,000,000)	(3,125,000)
Equals:			
Revenue recognized in the current period	<u>\$2,000,000</u>	<u>\$1,125,000</u>	<u>\$1,875,000</u>
Journal entries to recognize revenue:			
Construction in progress (CIP)	500,000	125,000	275,000
Cost of construction	1,500,000	1,000,000	1,600,000
Revenue from long-term contracts	<u>\$2,000,000</u>	<u>\$1,125,000</u>	<u>\$1,875,000</u>

The income statement includes revenue, cost of construction and gross profit.

If a contract qualifies for revenue recognition over time, the income statement for each year will report the appropriate revenue and cost of construction amounts. For example, in 2018, the income statement will report revenue of \$2,000,000 (40% of the \$5,000,000 contract price) less \$1,500,000 cost of construction, yielding gross profit of **\$500,000**.²¹ The table in Illustration 5-24D shows the revenue, cost of construction, and gross profit recognized in each of the three years of our example.

Illustration 5-24D

Recognition of Revenue and Cost of Construction in Each Period

2018		
Revenue recognized ($\$5,000,000 \times 40\%$)		\$2,000,000
Cost of construction		(1,500,000)
Gross profit		<u>\$ 500,000</u>
2019		
Revenue recognized to date ($\$5,000,000 \times 62.5\%$)	\$3,125,000	
Less: Revenue recognized in 2018	<u>2,000,000</u>	
Revenue recognized		\$ 1,125,000
Cost of construction		(1,000,000)
Gross profit		<u>\$ 125,000</u>
2020		
Revenue recognized to date ($\$5,000,000 \times 100\%$)	\$5,000,000	
Less: Revenue recognized in 2018 and 2019	<u>3,125,000</u>	
Revenue recognized		\$ 1,875,000
Cost of construction		(1,600,000)
Gross profit		<u>\$ 275,000</u>

We record the same journal entry to close out the billings and CIP accounts regardless of whether revenue is recognized over time or upon completion.

COMPLETION OF THE CONTRACT. After the job is finished, the only task remaining is for Harding to officially transfer title to the finished asset to the customer. At that time, Harding will prepare a journal entry that removes the contract from its balance sheet by

²¹In most cases, cost of construction also equals the construction costs incurred during the period. Cost of construction does not equal the construction costs incurred during the year when a loss is projected on the entire project. This situation is illustrated later in the chapter.

debiting billings and crediting CIP for the entire value of the contract. As shown in Illustration 5–24E, the same journal entry is recorded to close out the billings on construction contract and CIP accounts whether revenue is recognized over the term of the contract or at the completion of the contract.

	2018	2019	2020
Billings on construction contract.....			5,000,000
Construction in progress (CIP).....			5,000,000
<i>To close accounts.</i>			

Illustration 5–24E

Journal Entry to Close
Billings and CIP Accounts
Upon Contract Completion

A Comparison of Revenue Recognized Over the Term of the Contract and at the Completion of Contract

INCOME RECOGNITION. Illustration 5–24B shows the journal entries that would determine the amount of revenue, cost, and therefore gross profit that would appear in the income statement when we recognize revenue over the term of the contract and at the completion of contract. Comparing the gross profit patterns produced by each method of revenue recognition demonstrates the essential difference between them:

	Revenue Recognition	
	Over Time	Upon Completion
Gross profit recognized:		
2018	\$500,000	\$ –0–
2019	125,000	–0–
2020	275,000	900,000
Total gross profit	<u>\$ 900,000</u>	<u>\$900,000</u>

Timing of revenue
recognition does not affect
the total amount of profit
or loss recognized.

Whether revenue is recognized over time or upon completion does not affect the total gross profit of \$900,000 recognized over the three-year contract, but the timing of gross profit recognition is affected. When the contract does not qualify for recognizing revenue over time, we defer all gross profit to 2020, when the project is completed. Obviously, recognizing revenue over the term of the contract provides a better measure of the company's economic activity and progress over the three-year term. As indicated previously, most long-term contracts qualify for revenue recognition over time.²² Revenue is deferred until the completion of the contract only if the seller doesn't qualify for revenue recognition over time according to the criteria listed in Illustration 5–5.

BALANCE SHEET RECOGNITION. The balance sheet presentation for the construction-related accounts for both methods is shown in Illustration 5–24F.

Balance Sheet (End of Year)		
	2018	2019
Projects for which Revenue Recognized Upon Completion:		
<i>Current assets:</i>		
Accounts receivable	\$200,000	\$800,000
Costs (\$1,500,000) in excess of billings (\$1,200,000)	300,000	
<i>Current liabilities:</i>		
Billings (\$3,200,000) in excess of costs (\$2,500,000)		\$700,000
Projects for which Revenue Recognized Over Time:		
<i>Current assets:</i>		
Accounts receivable	\$200,000	\$800,000
Costs and profit (\$2,000,000) in excess of billings (\$1,200,000)	800,000	
<i>Current liabilities:</i>		
Billings (\$3,200,000) in excess of costs and profit (\$3,125,000)		\$ 75,000

Illustration 5–24F

Balance Sheet
Presentation

²²For income tax purposes, revenue can be recognized at completion for home construction contracts and certain other real estate construction contracts. All other contracts must recognize revenue over time according to percentage of completion.

Billings on construction contracts are subtracted from CIP to determine balance sheet presentation.

In the balance sheet, the construction in progress (CIP) account is offset against the billings on construction contract account, with $CIP > \text{Billings}$ shown as a contract asset and $\text{Billings} > CIP$ shown as a contract liability. Rather than referring to CIP, companies sometimes refer to what the CIP account contains, as is done in Illustration 5–24F. When revenue is recognized over the term of the contract, CIP contains cost and gross profit; if revenue is recognized upon the completion of the contract, CIP typically contains only costs. Because a company may have some contracts that have a net asset position and others that have a net liability position, it is not unusual to see both contract assets and contract liabilities shown in a balance sheet at the same time.

CIP in excess of billings is treated as a contract asset rather than an accounts receivable because something other than the passage of time must occur for the company to be paid for that amount. Although Harding has incurred construction costs (and is recognizing gross profit over the term of the contract) for which it will be paid by the buyer, those amounts are not yet billable according to the construction contract. Once Harding has made progress sufficient to bill the customer, it will debit accounts receivable and credit billings, which will increase the accounts receivable asset and reduce CIP in excess of billings (by increasing billings).

On the other hand, *Billings in excess of CIP* is treated as a contract liability. It reflects that Harding has billed its customer for more work than it actually has done. This is similar to the deferred revenue liability that is recorded when a customer pays for a product or service in advance. The advance is properly shown as a liability that represents the obligation to provide the good or service in the future.

Long-Term Contract Losses

The Harding Construction Company example above involves a situation in which an overall profit was anticipated at each stage of the contract. Unfortunately, losses sometimes occur on long-term contracts. As facts change, sellers must update their estimates and recognize losses if necessary to properly account for the amount of revenue that should have been recognized to date. How we treat losses in any one period depends on whether the contract is profitable overall.

PERIODIC LOSS OCCURS FOR PROFITABLE PROJECT. When a project qualifies for revenue recognition over time, a loss sometimes must be recognized in at least one period along the way, even though the project as a whole is expected to be profitable. We determine the loss in precisely the same way we determine the profit in profitable years. For example, assume the same \$5 million contract for Harding Construction Company described earlier in Illustration 5–24 but with the following cost information:

	2018	2019	2020
Construction costs incurred during the year	\$1,500,000	\$1,260,000	\$1,840,000
Construction costs incurred in prior years	—0—	1,500,000	2,760,000
Cumulative construction costs	1,500,000	2,760,000	4,600,000
Estimated costs to complete at end of year	2,250,000	1,840,000	—0—
Total estimated and actual construction costs	<u>\$3,750,000</u>	<u>\$4,600,000</u>	<u>\$4,600,000</u>

At the end of 2018, 40% of the project is complete ($\$1,500,000 \div \$3,750,000$). Revenue of $\$2,000,000 - \text{cost of construction of } \$1,500,000 = \text{gross profit of } \$500,000$ is recognized in 2018, as previously determined.

At the end of 2019, though, the company now forecasts a total profit of \$400,000 ($\$5,000,000 - 4,600,000$) on the project and, at that time, the project is estimated to be 60% complete (**$\$2,760,000 \div 4,600,000$**). Applying this percentage to the anticipated revenue of \$5,000,000 results in revenue *to date* of \$3,000,000. This implies that gross profit recognized to date should be \$240,000 ($\$3,000,000 - \textbf{\$2,760,000}$). But remember, gross profit of \$500,000 was recognized the previous year.

We treat a situation like this as a *change in accounting estimate* because it results from a change in the estimation of costs to complete at the end of 2018. Total estimated costs to complete the project at the end of 2019—\$4,600,000—were much higher than the 2018 year-end estimate of \$3,750,000. Recall from our discussion of changes in accounting estimates in Chapter 4 that we don't go back and restate the prior year's income statement. Instead, the 2019 income statement reports a *loss of \$260,000* ($\$500,000 - 240,000$) so that

the cumulative amount of gross profit recognized to date is \$240,000. The loss consists of 2019 revenue of \$1,000,000 (computed as \$5,000,000 \times 60% = \$3,000,000 revenue to be recognized by end of 2019 less 2018 revenue of \$2,000,000) less cost of construction of \$1,260,000 (cost incurred in 2019). Just as gross profit gets debited to the CIP account, this gross loss gets credited to the CIP account, so that CIP includes the cumulative amount of gross profit or loss recognized to date. The following journal entry records the loss in 2019:

Cost of construction.....	1,260,000	
Revenue from long-term contracts (below).....		1,000,000
Construction in progress (CIP).....		260,000

Recognized losses on long-term contracts reduce the CIP account.

In 2020 the company recognizes \$2,000,000 in revenue (\$5,000,000 less revenue of \$3,000,000 recognized in 2018 and 2019) and \$1,840,000 in cost of construction (cost incurred in 2020), yielding a gross profit of \$160,000.

Revenue	\$2,000,000
Less: Cost of construction	(1,840,000)
Gross profit	<u>\$ 160,000</u>

Of course, if revenue is instead recognized upon the completion of the contract, rather than over time, no profit or loss is recorded in 2018 or 2019. Instead, revenue of \$5,000,000, cost of construction of \$4,600,000, and gross profit of \$400,000 are recognized in 2020.

LOSS IS PROJECTED ON THE ENTIRE PROJECT. If an overall loss is projected on the entire contract, the total loss must be recognized in the period in which that loss becomes evident, regardless of whether revenue is recognized over the term of the contract or only upon the completion of the contract. Again, consider the Harding Construction Company example but with the following cost information:

	2018	2019	2020
Construction costs incurred during the year	\$1,500,000	\$ 1,260,000	\$2,440,000
Construction costs incurred in prior years	—0—	1,500,000	2,760,000
Cumulative construction costs	1,500,000	2,760,000	5,200,000
Estimated costs to complete at end of year	2,250,000	2,340,000	—0—
Total estimated and actual construction costs	<u>\$3,750,000</u>	<u>\$5,100,000</u>	<u>\$5,200,000</u>

At the end of 2019, revised costs indicate an estimated loss of \$100,000 for the entire project (contract revenue of \$5,000,000 less estimated construction costs of **\$5,100,000**). In this situation, the *total* anticipated loss must be recognized in 2019 regardless of whether revenue is recognized over the term of the contract or only upon the completion of the contract. If revenue is being recognized over the term of the contract, a gross profit of \$500,000 was recognized in 2018, so a *\$600,000 loss is recognized in 2019* to make the cumulative amount recognized to date total a \$100,000 loss. Once again, this situation is treated as a change in accounting estimate, with no restatement of 2018 income. On the other hand, if revenue is being recognized only upon the completion of the contract, no gross profit is recognized in 2018, and the \$100,000 loss for the project is recognized in 2019. This is accomplished by debiting a loss from long-term contracts and crediting CIP for \$100,000.

An estimated loss on a long-term contract is fully recognized in the first period the loss is anticipated, regardless of the whether revenue is recognized over time or upon completion.

Why recognize the estimated overall loss of \$100,000 in 2019, rather than at the end of the contract? If the loss is not recognized in 2019, CIP would be valued at an amount greater than the company expects to realize from the contract. To avoid that problem, the loss reduces the CIP account to \$2,660,000 (\$2,760,000 in costs to date less \$100,000 estimated total loss). This amount combined with the estimated costs to complete of \$2,340,000 equals the contract price of \$5,000,000. Recognizing losses on long-term contracts in the period the losses become known is similar to measuring inventory at the lower of cost or net realizable value, a concept we will study in Chapter 9.

The pattern of gross profit (loss) over the contract term is summarized in the following table. Notice that in 2020 an additional unanticipated increase in costs of \$100,000 causes a further loss of \$100,000 to be recognized.

	Revenue Recognition	
	Over Time	Upon Completion
Gross profit (loss) recognized:		
2018	\$ 500,000	\$ —0—
2019	(600,000)	(100,000)
2020	(100,000)	(100,000)
Total project loss	<u>\$ (200,000)</u>	<u>\$ (200,000)</u>

The table in Illustration 5–24G shows the revenue and cost of construction recognized in each of the three years, assuming the contract qualifies for recognizing revenue over time. Revenue is recognized in the usual way by multiplying a percentage of completion by the total contract price. In situations where a loss is expected on the entire project, cost of construction for the period will no longer be equal to cost incurred during the period. The easiest way to compute the cost of construction is to add the amount of the loss recognized to the amount of revenue recognized. For example, in 2019 revenue recognized of \$706,000 is added to the loss of \$600,000 to arrive at the cost of construction of \$1,306,000.²³

Illustration 5–24G

Allocation of Revenue and Cost of Construction to Each Period—Loss on Entire Project

2018

Revenue recognized (\$5,000,000 × 40%)	\$ 2,000,000
Cost of construction	<u>(1,500,000)</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$ 500,000</u>

2019

Revenue recognized to date (\$5,000,000 × 54.12%)*	\$2,706,000	
Less: Revenue recognized in 2018	<u>(2,000,000)</u>	
Revenue recognized		\$ 706,000
Cost of construction†		<u>(1,306,000)</u>
Loss		<u>\$ (600,000)</u>

2020

Revenue recognized to date (\$5,000,000 × 100%)	\$5,000,000	
Less: Revenue recognized in 2018 and 2019	<u>(2,706,000)</u>	
Revenue recognized		\$ 2,294,000
Cost of construction†		<u>(2,394,000)</u>
Loss		<u>\$ (100,000)</u>

*\$2,760,000 ÷ \$5,100,000 = 54.12%

†The difference between revenue and loss

The journal entries to record the losses in 2019 and 2020 are as follows:

2019

Cost of construction.....	1,306,000	
Revenue from long-term contracts.....		706,000
Construction in progress (CIP).....		600,000

2020

Cost of construction.....	2,394,000	
Revenue from long-term contracts.....		2,294,000
Construction in progress (CIP).....		100,000

²³The cost of construction also can be determined as follows:

Loss to date (100% recognized)		\$ 100,000
Add:		
Remaining total project cost, not including the loss		
(\$5,100,000 – 100,000)	\$5,000,000	
Multiplied by the percentage of completion	× .5412*	<u>2,706,000</u>
Total		2,806,000
Less: Cost of construction recognized in 2016		<u>(1,500,000)</u>
Cost of construction recognized in 2017		<u>\$1,306,000</u>

*\$2,760,000 ÷ 5,100,000

Recognizing revenue over time in this case produces a large overstatement of income in 2018 and a large understatement in 2019 because of a change in the estimation of future costs. These estimate revisions happen occasionally when revenue is recognized over time.

When the contract does not qualify for recognizing revenue over time, no revenue or cost of construction is recognized until the contract is complete. In 2019, a loss on long-term contracts (an income statement account) of \$100,000 is recognized. In 2020, the income statement will report revenue of \$5,000,000 and cost of construction of \$5,100,000, combining for an additional loss of \$100,000. The journal entries to record the losses in 2019 and 2020 are as follows:

2019

Loss on long-term contracts.....	100,000	
Construction in progress (CIP).....		100,000

2020

Cost of construction.....	5,100,000	
Revenue from long-term contracts.....		5,000,000
Construction in progress (CIP).....		100,000

Concept Review Exercise

During 2018, the Samuelson Construction Company began construction on an office building for the City of Gernon. The contract price is \$8,000,000 and the building will take approximately 18 months to complete. Completion is scheduled for early in 2020. The company's fiscal year ends on December 31.

The following is a year-by-year recap of construction costs incurred and the estimated costs to complete the project as of the end of each year. Progress billings and cash collections also are indicated.

LONG-TERM CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS

	2018	2019	2020
Actual costs incurred during the year	\$ 1,500,000	\$4,500,000	\$ 1,550,000
Actual costs incurred in prior years	—0—	1,500,000	6,000,000
Cumulative actual costs incurred to date	1,500,000	6,000,000	7,550,000
Estimated costs to complete at end of year	4,500,000	1,500,000	—0—
Total costs (actual + estimated)	<u>\$ 6,000,000</u>	<u>\$7,500,000</u>	<u>\$ 7,550,000</u>
Billings made during the year	\$ 1,400,000	\$5,200,000	\$ 1,400,000
Cash collections during year	1,000,000	4,000,000	3,000,000

Required:

1. Determine the amount of construction revenue, construction cost, and gross profit or loss to be recognized in each of the three years assuming (a) the contract qualifies for recognizing revenue over time and (b) the contract does *not* qualify for recognizing revenue over time.
2. Assuming the contract qualifies for recognizing revenue over time, prepare the necessary summary journal entries for each of the three years to account for construction costs, construction revenue, contract billings, and cash collections, and to close the construction accounts in 2020.
3. Assuming the contract qualifies for recognizing revenue over time, prepare a partial balance sheet for 2018 and 2019 that includes all construction-related accounts.

Solution:

1. Determine the amount of construction revenue, construction cost, and gross profit or loss to be recognized in each of the three years assuming (a) the contract qualifies for recognizing revenue over time and (b) the contract does *not* qualify for recognizing revenue over time.

**The Contract Qualifies
for Recognizing Revenue Over Time**

	2018	2019	2020
Contract price	\$8,000,000	\$8,000,000	\$8,000,000
Multiplied by % of completion*	25%	80%	100%
Cumulative revenue to be recognized to date	2,000,000	6,400,000	8,000,000
Less revenue recognized in prior years	—0—	(2,000,000)	(6,400,000)
Revenue recognized this year	2,000,000	4,400,000	1,600,000
Less actual costs incurred this year	(1,500,000)	(4,500,000)	1,550,000
Gross profit (loss) recognized this year	\$ 500,000	\$ (100,000)	\$ 50,000

*Estimated percentage of completion:

2018	2019	2020
$\frac{1,500,000}{6,000,000} = 25\%$	$\frac{6,000,000}{7,500,000} = 80\%$	Project complete = 100%

**The Contract Does Not Qualify
for Recognizing Revenue Over Time**

	2018	2019	2020
Revenue recognized	\$—0—	\$—0—	\$ 8,000,000
Less cost of construction recognized	—0—	—0—	(7,550,000)
Gross profit recognized	\$—0—	\$—0—	\$ 450,000

2. Assuming the contract qualifies for recognizing revenue over time, prepare the necessary summary journal entries for each of the three years to account for construction costs, construction revenue, contract billings, and cash collections, and to close the construction accounts in 2020.

	2018	2019	2020
Construction in progress (CIP)	1,500,000	4,500,000	1,550,000
Cash, materials, etc.	1,500,000	4,500,000	1,550,000
<i>To record construction costs.</i>			
Construction in progress (CIP)	500,000		50,000
Cost of construction	1,500,000		1,550,000
Revenue	2,000,000		1,600,000
<i>To record revenue and gross profit.</i>			
Cost of construction		4,500,000	
Revenue		4,400,000	
Construction in progress (CIP)		100,000	
<i>To record revenue and gross loss.</i>			
Accounts receivable	1,400,000	5,200,000	1,400,000
Billings on construction contract	1,400,000	5,200,000	1,400,000
<i>To record progress billings.</i>			
Cash	1,000,000	4,000,000	3,000,000
Accounts receivable	1,000,000	4,000,000	3,000,000
<i>To record cash collections.</i>			
Billings on construction contract			8,000,000
Construction in progress (CIP)			8,000,000
<i>To close accounts.</i>			

3. Assuming the contract qualifies for recognizing revenue over time, prepare a partial balance sheet for 2018 and 2019 that includes all construction-related accounts.

**Balance Sheet
(End of Year)**

	2018	2019
Current assets:		
Accounts receivable	\$400,000	\$1,600,000
Costs and profit (\$2,000,000) in excess of billings (\$1,400,000)	600,000	
Current liabilities:		
Billings (\$6,600,000) in excess of costs and profit (\$6,400,000)		\$ 200,000

Financial Reporting Case Solution

1. **Under what circumstances do companies recognize revenue at a point in time? Over a period of time?** (p. 238) A seller recognizes revenue when it satisfies a performance obligation, which happens when the seller transfers control of a good or service to the customer. Indicators that transfer of control has occurred include customer acceptance and physical possession of the good or service as well as the seller having a right to receive payment. Some performance obligations are satisfied at a point in time, when the seller has finished transferring the good or service to the customer. Other performance obligations are satisfied over time. For example, the customer might consume the benefit of the seller's work as it is performed, or the customer might control an asset as the seller creates it.
2. **When do companies break apart a sale and treat its parts differently for purposes of recognizing revenue?** (p. 241) Sellers must break apart a contract if the contract contains more than one performance obligation. Goods and services are viewed as separate performance obligations if they are both capable of being distinct (for example, if the goods and services could be sold separately) and if they are separately identifiable (which isn't the case if the point of the contract is to combine various goods and services into a completed product, as occurs with construction contracts). To account for contracts with multiple performance obligations, the seller allocates the contract's transaction price to the performance obligations according to their stand-alone selling prices and then recognizes revenue for each performance obligation when it is satisfied.
3. **How do companies account for long-term contracts that qualify for revenue recognition over time?** (p. 262) When contracts qualify for revenue recognition over time, the seller recognizes revenue each period as the contract is being fulfilled. The amount recognized is based on progress to date, which usually is estimated as the fraction of the project's cost incurred to date divided by total estimated costs. To calculate the total amount of revenue that should be recognized up to a given date, the estimated percentage of completion is multiplied by the contract price. To calculate the amount of revenue to be recognized in the current period, the amount of revenue recognized in prior periods is subtracted from the total amount of revenue that should be recognized as of the end of the current period. ●



© Hero Images/Getty Images

The Bottom Line

- LO5-1 Companies recognize revenue when goods or services are transferred to customers for the amount the company expects to be entitled to receive in exchange for those goods or services. That core principle is implemented by (1) identifying a contract with a customer, (2) identifying the performance obligations in the contract, (3) determining the transaction price of the contract, (4) allocating that price to the performance obligations, and (5) recognizing revenue when (or as) each performance obligation is satisfied. (p. 236)
- LO5-2 Revenue should be recognized *at a single point in time* when control of a good or service is transferred to the customer on a specific date. Indicators that transfer has occurred and that revenue should be recognized include the seller having the right to receive payment, the customer having legal title and physical possession of the asset, the customer formally accepting the asset, and the customer assuming the risks and rewards of ownership. (p. 238)
- LO5-3 Revenue should be recognized *over time* when a performance obligation is satisfied over time. That occurs if (1) the customer consumes the benefit of the seller's work as it is performed, (2) the customer controls the asset as the seller creates it, or (3) the asset has no alternative use to the seller and the seller can be paid for its progress even if the customer cancels the contract. (p. 239)

- LO5-4 A contract's transaction price is allocated to its performance obligations. The allocation is based on the *stand-alone selling prices* of the goods and services underlying those performance obligations. The stand-alone selling price must be estimated if a good or service is not sold separately. (p. 241)
- LO5-5 A contract exists when it has commercial substance and all parties to the contract are committed to performing the obligations and enforcing the rights that it specifies. Performance obligations are promises by the seller to transfer goods or services to a customer. A promise to transfer a good or service is a separate performance obligation if it is *distinct*, which is the case if it is both *capable of being distinct* (meaning that the customer could use the good or service on its own or in combination with other goods and services it could obtain elsewhere), and *it is separately identifiable* (meaning that the good or service is not highly interrelated with other goods and services in the contract, so it is distinct in the context of the contract). Prepayments, rights to return merchandise, and normal quality-assurance warranties do not qualify as performance obligations, because they don't transfer a good or service to the customer. On the other hand, extended warranties and customer options to receive goods or services in some preferred manner (for example, at a discount) qualify as performance obligations. (p. 245)
- LO5-6 When a contract includes consideration that depends on the outcome of future events, sellers estimate that variable consideration and include it in the contract's transaction price. The seller's estimate is based either on the most likely outcome or the expected value of the outcome. However, a constraint applies—variable consideration only should be included in the transaction price to the extent it is probable that a significant revenue reversal will not occur. The estimate of variable consideration is updated each period to reflect changes in circumstances. A seller also needs to determine if it is a principal (and recognizes as revenue the amount received from the customer) or an agent (and recognizes its commission as revenue), consider time value of money, and consider the effect of any payments by the seller to the customer. Once the transaction price is estimated, we allocate it to performance obligations according to their stand-alone selling prices, which can be estimated using the adjusted market assessment approach, the expected cost plus margin approach, or the residual approach. (p. 248)
- LO5-7 If the seller's activity over the license period is expected to affect the benefits the customer receives from the intellectual property being licensed, as with symbolic IP, the seller recognizes revenue over the license period. Otherwise, the seller recognizes revenue at the point in time that the customer obtains access to the seller's intellectual property. Franchises are an example of contracts that typically include licenses as well as other performance obligations. Revenue for bill-and-hold sales should be recognized when the seller transfers control of goods to the customer, even if the seller retains physical possession of the goods, and for consignment sales when goods are delivered to the end customer. Revenue for gift cards should be recognized when the gift card is redeemed, expires, or viewed as broken. (p. 254)
- LO5-8 Much disclosure is required for revenue recognition. For example, a seller recognizes contract liabilities, contract assets, and accounts receivable on separate lines of its balance sheet. If the customer makes payment to the seller before the seller has satisfied performance obligations, the seller records a contract liability, such as deferred revenue. If the seller satisfies a performance obligation before the customer has paid for it, the seller records either a contract asset or an account receivable. The seller recognizes an account receivable if only the passage of time is required before the payment is due. If instead the seller's right to payment depends on something other than the passage of time, the seller recognizes a contract asset. (p. 259)
- LO5-9 Long-term contracts usually qualify for revenue recognition over time. We recognize revenue over time by assigning a share of the project's revenues and costs to each reporting period over the life of the project according to the percentage of the project completed to date. If long-term contracts don't qualify for revenue recognition over time, we recognize revenues and expenses at the point in time when the project is complete. (p. 261)
- LO5-10 IFRS interprets the word "probable" as indicating a lower probability threshold than does U.S. GAAP. As a consequence, a seller could conclude a contract meets the "probable that it will collect the amounts its entitled to receive" threshold and recognize revenue under IFRS but not under U.S. GAAP. Also, IFRS doesn't tie the timing of revenue recognition for licenses to whether a license involves "functional" versus "symbolic" intellectual property, so IFRS might allow revenue recognition at a point in time for "symbolic IP" licenses that would require revenue recognition over time under U.S. GAAP. (pp. 246, 249 and 256) ●

Questions For Review of Key Topics



IFRS

- Q 5-1** What are the five key steps a company follows to apply the core revenue recognition principle?
- Q 5-2** What indicators suggest that a performance obligation has been satisfied at a single point in time?
- Q 5-3** What criteria determine whether a company can recognize revenue over time?
- Q 5-4** We recognize service revenue either at one point in time or over a period of time. Explain the rationale for recognizing service revenue using these two approaches.
- Q 5-5** What characteristics make a good or service a performance obligation?
- Q 5-6** How does a seller allocate a transaction price to a contract's performance obligations?
- Q 5-7** What must a contract include for the contract to exist for purposes of revenue recognition?
- Q 5-8** How might the definition of "probable" affect determining whether a contract exists under IFRS as compared to U.S. GAAP?
- Q 5-9** When a contract includes an option to buy additional goods or services, when does that option give rise to a performance obligation?
- Q 5-10** Is variable consideration included in the calculation of a contract's transaction price? If so, how is the amount of variable consideration estimated?
- Q 5-11** How are sellers constrained from recognizing variable consideration, and under what circumstances does the constraint apply?
- Q 5-12** Is a customer's right to return merchandise a performance obligation of the seller? How should sellers account for a right of return?
- Q 5-13** What is the difference between a principal and an agent for determining the amount of revenue to recognize?
- Q 5-14** Under what circumstances should sellers consider the time value of money when recognizing revenue?
- Q 5-15** When should a seller view a payment to its customer as a refund of part of the price paid by the customer for the seller's products or services?
- Q 5-16** What are three methods for estimating stand-alone selling prices of goods and services that normally are not sold separately?
- Q 5-17** When is revenue recognized with respect to licenses?
- Q 5-18** In a franchise arrangement, what are a franchisor's typical performance obligations?
- Q 5-19** When does a company typically recognize revenue for a bill-and-hold sale?
- Q 5-20** How might a license for symbolic intellectual property be treated differently under IFRS as compared to U.S. GAAP?
- Q 5-21** When does a consignor typically recognize revenue for a consignment sale?
- Q 5-22** When does a company recognize revenue for a sale of a gift card?
- Q 5-23** Must bad debt expense be reported on its own line on the income statement? If not, how should it be disclosed?
- Q 5-24** Explain the difference between contract assets, contract liabilities, and accounts receivable.
- Q 5-25** Explain how to account for revenue on a long-term contract over time as opposed to at a point in time. Under what circumstances should revenue be recognized at the point in time a contract is completed?
- Q 5-26** Periodic billings to the customer for a long-term construction contract are recorded as billings on construction contract. How is this account reported in the balance sheet?
- Q 5-27** When is an estimated loss on a long-term contract recognized, both for contracts that recognize revenue over time and those that recognize revenue at the point in time the contract is completed?

Brief Exercises



BE 5-1

Revenue recognition at a point in time

● LO5-2

On July 1, 2018, Apache Company, a real estate developer, sold a parcel of land to a construction company for \$3,000,000. The book value of the land on Apache's books was \$1,200,000. Terms of the sale required a down payment of \$150,000 and 19 annual payments of \$150,000 plus interest at an appropriate interest rate due on each July 1 beginning in 2019. How much revenue will Apache recognize for the sale (ignoring interest), assuming that it recognizes revenue at the point in time at which it transfers the land to the construction company?

BE 5-2

Timing of revenue recognition

● LO5-3

Estate Construction is constructing a building for CyberB, an online retailing company. Under the construction agreement, if for any reason Estate can't complete construction, CyberB would own the partially completed building and could hire another construction company to complete the job. When should Estate recognize revenue: as the building is constructed, or after construction is completed?

BE 5-3

Timing of revenue recognition

● LO5-3

On May 1, 2018, Varga Tech Services signed a \$6,000 consulting contract with Shaffer Holdings. The contract requires Varga to provide computer technology support services whenever requested over the period from May 1, 2018, to April 30, 2019, with Shaffer paying the entire \$6,000 on May 1, 2018. How much revenue should Varga recognize in 2018?

BE 5-4

Allocating the transaction price

● LO5-4

Sarjit Systems sold software to a customer for \$80,000. As part of the contract, Sarjit promises to provide “free” technical support over the next six months. Sarjit sells the same software without technical support for \$70,000 and a stand-alone six-month technical support contract for \$30,000, so these products would sell for \$100,000 if sold separately. Prepare Sarjit’s journal entry to record the sale of the software.

BE 5-5

Existence of a contract

● LO5-5

Tulane Tires wrote a contract for a \$100,000 sale to the new Garden District Tour Company. Tulane only anticipates a slightly greater than fifty percent chance that Garden will be able to pay the amounts that Tulane is entitled to receive under the contract. Upon delivery of the tires, assuming no payment has yet been made by Garden, how much revenue should Tulane recognize under U.S. GAAP?

BE 5-6

Existence of a contract; IFRS

● LO5-5, LO5-10

Assume the same facts as in BE 5-5 but that Tulane Tires reports under IFRS. How much revenue should Tulane recognize under IFRS?



IFRS

BE 5-7

Performance obligations; prepayments

● LO5-5

eLean is an online fitness community, offering access to workout routines, nutrition advice, and eLean coaches. Customers pay a \$50 fee to become registered on the website, and then pay \$5 per month for access to all eLean services. How many performance obligations exist in the implied contract when a customer registers for the services?

BE 5-8

Performance obligations; warranties

● LO5-5

Vroom Vacuums sells the Tornado vacuum cleaner. Each Tornado has a one-year warranty that covers any product defects. When customers purchase a Tornado, they also have the option to purchase an extended three-year warranty that covers any breakage or maintenance. The extended warranty sells for the same amount regardless of whether it is purchased at the same time as the Tornado or at some other time. How many performance obligations exist in the implied contract for the purchase of a vacuum cleaner?

BE 5-9

Performance obligations; warranties

● LO5-5

Assume the same facts as in BE 5-8 but that customers pay 20% less for the extended warranty if they buy it at the same time they buy a Tornado. How many performance obligations exist in the implied contract for the purchase of a vacuum cleaner?

BE 5-10

Performance obligations; options

● LO5-5

McAfee sells a subscription to its antivirus software along with a subscription renewal option that allows renewal at half the prevailing price for a new subscription. How many performance obligations exist in this contract?

BE 5-11

Performance obligations; construction

● LO5-5

Precision Equipment, Inc., specializes in designing and installing customized manufacturing equipment. On February 1, 2018, it signs a contract to design a fully automated wristwatch assembly line for \$2 million, which will be settled in cash upon completion of construction. Precision Equipment will install the equipment on the client’s property, furnish it with a customized software package that is integral to operations, and provide consulting services that integrate the equipment with Precision’s other assembly lines. How many performance obligations exist in this contract?

BE 5-12

Performance obligations; construction

● LO5-5

On January 1, 2018, Lego Construction Company signed a contract to build a custom garage for a customer and received \$10,000 in advance for the job. The new garage will be built on the customer’s land. To complete this project, Lego must first build a concrete floor, construct wooden pillars and walls, and finally install a roof. Lego normally charges stand-alone prices of \$3,000, \$4,000, and \$5,000, respectively, for each of these three smaller tasks if done separately. How many performance obligations exist in this contract?

BE 5-13

Performance obligations; right of return

● LO5-5, LO5-6

Aria Perfume, Inc., sold 3,210 boxes of white musk soap during January of 2018 at the price of \$90 per box. The company offers a full refund to unsatisfied customers for any product returned within 30 days from the date of purchase. Based on historical experience, Aria expects that 3% of sales will be returned. How many performance obligations are there in each sale of a box of soap? How much revenue should Aria recognize in January?

BE 5-14

Variable consideration

● LO5-6

Leo Consulting enters into a contract with Highgate University to restructure Highgate's processes for purchasing goods from suppliers. The contract states that Leo will earn a fixed fee of \$25,000 and earn an additional \$10,000 if Highgate achieves \$100,000 of cost savings. Leo estimates a 50% chance that Highgate will achieve \$100,000 of cost savings. Assuming that Leo determines the transaction price as the expected value of expected consideration, what transaction price will Leo estimate for this contract?

BE 5-15

Variable consideration

● LO5-6

In January 2018, Continental Fund Services, Inc., enters into a one-year contract with a client to provide investment advisory services. The company will receive a management fee, prepaid at the beginning of the contract, that is calculated as 1% of the client's \$150 million total assets being managed. In addition, the contract specifies that Continental will receive a performance bonus of 20% of any returns in excess of the return on the Dow Jones Industrial Average market index. Continental estimates that it will earn a \$2 million performance bonus, but is very uncertain of that estimate, given that the bonus depends on a highly volatile stock market. On what transaction price should Continental base revenue recognition?

BE 5-16

Right of return

● LO5-6

Finerly Corporation sells cosmetics through a network of independent distributors. Finerly shipped cosmetics to its distributors and is considering whether it should record \$300,000 of revenue upon shipment of a new line of cosmetics. Finerly expects the distributors to be able to sell the cosmetics, but is uncertain because it has little experience with selling cosmetics of this type. Finerly is committed to accepting the cosmetics back from the distributors if the cosmetics are not sold. How much revenue should Finerly recognize upon delivery to its distributors?

BE 5-17

Principal or agent

● LO5-6

Assume that **Amazon.com** sells the MacBook Pro, a computer produced by **Apple**, for a retail price of \$1,500. Amazon arranges its operations such that customers receive products directly from Apple Stores rather than Amazon. Customers purchase from Amazon using credit cards, and Amazon forwards cash to Apple equal to the retail price minus a \$150 commission that Amazon keeps. In this arrangement, how much revenue will Amazon recognize for the sale of one MacBook Pro?

BE 5-18

Payments by the seller to the customer

● LO5-6

Lewis Co. sold merchandise to AdCo for \$60,000 and received \$60,000 for that sale one month later. One week prior to receiving payment from AdCo, Lewis made a \$10,000 payment to AdCo for advertising services that have a fair value of \$7,500. After accounting for any necessary adjustments, how much revenue should Lewis Co. record for the merchandise sold to AdCo?

BE 5-19

Estimating stand-alone selling prices: adjusted market assessment approach

● LO5-6

O'Hara Associates sells golf clubs, and with each sale of a full set of clubs provides complementary club-fitting services. A full set of clubs with the fitting services sells for \$1,500. Similar club-fitting services are offered by other vendors for \$110, and O'Hara generally charges approximately 10% more than do other vendors for similar services. Estimate the stand-alone selling price of the club-fitting services using the adjusted market assessment approach.

BE 5-20

Estimating stand-alone selling prices: expected cost plus margin approach

● LO5-6

O'Hara Associates sells golf clubs, and with each sale of a full set of clubs provides complementary club-fitting services. A full set of clubs with the fitting services sells for \$1,500. O'Hara estimates that it incurs \$60 of staff compensation and other costs to provide the fitting services, and normally earns 30% over cost on similar services. Assuming that the golf clubs and the club-fitting services are separate performance obligations, estimate the stand-alone selling price of the club-fitting services using the expected cost plus margin approach.

BE 5-21

Estimating stand-alone selling prices; residual approach

● LO5-6

O'Hara Associates sells golf clubs, and with each sale of a full set of clubs provides complementary club-fitting services. A full set of clubs with the fitting services sells for \$1,500. O'Hara sells the same clubs without the fitting service for \$1,400. Assuming that the golf clubs and the club-fitting services are separate performance obligations, estimate the stand-alone selling price of the club fitting services using the residual approach.

BE 5-22

Timing of revenue recognition; licenses

● LO5-7

Saar Associates sells two licenses to Kim & Company on September 1, 2018. First, in exchange for \$100,000, Saar provides Kim with a copy of its proprietary investment management software, which Saar does not anticipate updating and which Kim can use permanently. Second, in exchange for \$90,000, Saar provides Kim with a three-year right to market Kim's financial advisory services under the name of

Saar Associates, which Saar advertises on an ongoing basis. How much revenue will Saar recognize in 2018 under this arrangement?

BE 5-23

Timing of revenue recognition; licenses

● LO5-7



IFRS

Assume the same facts as in BE 5-22 except that the trade name “Saar Associates” is not well known in the marketplace and the owner provides no advertising or other benefits to a licensee of the Saar Associates trade name during the license period. How much revenue will Saar recognize in 2018 under this arrangement if Saar reports under U.S. GAAP?

BE 5-24

Timing of revenue recognition; licenses

● LO5-7, LO5-10



IFRS

Assume the same facts as in BE 5-23. How much revenue will Saar recognize in 2018 under this arrangement if Saar reports under IFRS?

BE 5-25

Timing of revenue recognition; franchises

● LO5-7

TopChop sells hairstyling franchises. TopChop receives \$50,000 from a new franchisee for providing initial training, equipment and furnishings that have a stand-alone selling price of \$50,000. TopChop also receives \$30,000 per year for use of the TopChop name and for ongoing consulting services (starting on the date the franchise is purchased). Carlos became a TopChop franchisee on July 1, 2018, and on August 1, 2018, had completed training and was open for business. How much revenue in 2018 will TopChop recognize for its arrangement with Carlos?

BE 5-26

Timing of revenue recognition; bill-and-hold

● LO5-7

Dowell Fishing Supply, Inc., sold \$50,000 of Dowell Rods on December 15, 2018, to Bassadrome. Because of a shipping backlog, Dowell held the inventory in Dowell’s warehouse until January 12, 2019 (having assured Bassadrome that it would deliver sooner if necessary). How much revenue should Dowell recognize in 2018 for the sale to Bassadrome?

BE 5-27

Timing of revenue recognition; consignment

● LO5-7

Kerianne paints landscapes, and in late 2018 placed four paintings with a retail price of \$250 each in the Holmstrom Gallery. Kerianne’s arrangement with Holmstrom is that Holmstrom will earn a 20% commission on paintings sold to gallery patrons. As of December 31, 2018, one painting had been sold by Holmstrom to gallery patrons. How much revenue with respect to these four paintings should Kerianne recognize in 2018?

BE 5-28

Timing of revenue recognition; gift card

● LO5-7

GoodBuy sells gift cards redeemable for GoodBuy products either in store or online. During 2018, GoodBuy sold \$1,000,000 of gift cards, and \$840,000 of the gift cards were redeemed for products. As of December 31, 2018, \$30,000 of the remaining gift cards had passed the date at which GoodBuy concludes that the cards will never be redeemed. How much gift card revenue should GoodBuy recognize in 2018?

BE 5-29

Contract assets and contract liabilities

● LO5-8

Holt Industries received a \$2,000 prepayment from the Ramirez Company for the sale of new office furniture. Holt will bill Ramirez an additional \$3,000 upon delivery of the furniture to Ramirez. Upon receipt of the \$2,000 prepayment, how much should Holt recognize for a contract asset, a contract liability, and accounts receivable?

BE 5-30

Contract assets and contract liabilities

● LO5-8, LO5-9

As of December 31, 2018, Cady Construction has one construction job for which the construction in progress (CIP) account has a balance of \$20,000 and the billings on construction contract account has a balance of \$14,000. Cady has another construction job for which the construction in progress account has a balance of \$3,000 and the billings on construction contract account has a balance of \$5,000. Indicate the amount of contract asset and/or contract liability that Cady would show in its December 31, 2018, balance sheet.

BE 5-31

Long-term contract; revenue recognition over time; profit recognition

● LO5-9

A construction company entered into a fixed-price contract to build an office building for \$20 million. Construction costs incurred during the first year were \$6 million and estimated costs to complete at the end of the year were \$9 million. The company recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion. How much revenue and gross profit or loss will appear in the company’s income statement in the first year of the contract?

BE 5-32

Long-term contract; revenue recognition over time; balance sheet

• LO5-9

Refer to the situation described in BE 5-31. Assume that, during the first year the company billed its customer \$7 million, of which \$5 million was collected before year-end. What would appear in the year-end balance sheet related to this contract?

BE 5-33

Long-term contract; revenue recognition upon completion

• LO5-9

Refer to the situation described in BE 5-31. Assume that the building was completed during the second year, and construction costs incurred during the second year were \$10 million. How much revenue and gross profit or loss will the company recognize in the first and second year if it recognizes revenue upon contract completion?

BE 5-34

Long-term contract; revenue recognition; loss on entire project

• LO5-9

Franklin Construction entered into a fixed-price contract to build a freeway-connecting ramp for \$30 million. Construction costs incurred in the first year were \$16 million and estimated remaining costs to complete at the end of the year were \$17 million. How much gross profit or loss will Franklin recognize in the first year if it recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion? What if instead Franklin recognizes revenue upon contract completion?

Exercises

**E 5-1**

FASB codification research

• LO5-1, LO5-2, LO5-3



Access the *FASB's Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).

Required:

Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

1. What are the five key steps to applying the revenue recognition principle?
2. What are indicators that control has passed from the seller to the buyer, such that it is appropriate to recognize revenue at a point in time?
3. Under what circumstances can sellers recognize revenue over time?

E 5-2

Service revenue

• LO5-4

Ski West, Inc., operates a downhill ski area near Lake Tahoe, California. An all-day adult lift ticket can be purchased for \$85. Adult customers also can purchase a season pass that entitles the pass holder to ski any day during the season, which typically runs from December 1 through April 30. Ski West expects its season pass holders to use their passes equally throughout the season. The company's fiscal year ends on December 31.

On November 6, 2018, Jake Lawson purchased a season pass for \$450.

Required:

1. When should Ski West recognize revenue from the sale of its season passes?
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entries that Ski West would record on November 6 and December 31.
3. What will be included in the Ski West 2018 income statement and balance sheet related to the sale of the season pass to Jake Lawson?

E 5-3

Allocating transaction price

• LO5-4

Video Planet (VP) sells a big screen TV package consisting of a 60-inch plasma TV, a universal remote, and on-site installation by VP staff. The installation includes programming the remote to have the TV interface with other parts of the customer's home entertainment system. VP concludes that the TV, remote, and installation service are separate performance obligations. VP sells the 60-inch TV separately for \$1,700, sells the remote separately for \$100, and offers the installation service separately for \$200. The entire package sells for \$1,900.

Required:

How much revenue would be allocated to the TV, the remote, and the installation service?

E 5-4

FASB codification research

• LO5-4, LO5-5



Access the *FASB Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).

Required:

Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

1. On what basis is a contract's transaction price allocated to its performance obligations?
2. What are indicators that a promised good or service is separately identifiable from other goods and services promised in the contract?
3. Under what circumstances is an option viewed as a performance obligation?

E 5-5

Performance obligations

- LO5-2, LO5-4, LO5-5

On March 1, 2018, Gold Examiner receives \$147,000 from a local bank and promises to deliver 100 units of certified 1-oz. gold bars on a future date. The contract states that ownership passes to the bank when Gold Examiner delivers the products to Brink's, a third-party carrier. In addition, Gold Examiner has agreed to provide a replacement shipment at no additional cost if the product is lost in transit. The stand-alone price of a gold bar is \$1,440 per unit, and Gold Examiner estimates the stand-alone price of the replacement insurance service to be \$60 per unit. Brink's picked up the gold bars from Gold Examiner on March 30, and delivery to the bank occurred on April 1.

Required:

1. How many performance obligations are in this contract?
2. Prepare the journal entry Gold Examiner would record on March 1.
3. Prepare the journal entry Gold Examiner would record on March 30.
4. Prepare the journal entry Gold Examiner would record on April 1.

E 5-6

Performance obligations; customer option for additional goods or services

- LO5-2, LO5-4, LO5-5

Clarks Inc., a shoe retailer, sells boots in different styles. In early November the company starts selling "SunBoots" to customers for \$70 per pair. When a customer purchases a pair of SunBoots, Clarks also gives the customer a 30% discount coupon for any additional future purchases made in the next 30 days. Customers can't obtain the discount coupon otherwise. Clarks anticipates that approximately 20% of customers will utilize the coupon, and that on average those customers will purchase additional goods that normally sell for \$100.

Required:

1. How many performance obligations are in a contract to buy a pair of SunBoots?
2. Prepare a journal entry to record revenue for the sale of 1,000 pairs of SunBoots, assuming that Clarks uses the residual method to estimate the stand-alone selling price of SunBoots sold without the discount coupon.

E 5-7

Performance obligations; customer option for additional goods or services; prepayment

- LO5-3, LO5-4, LO5-5

A New York City daily newspaper called "Manhattan Today" charges an annual subscription fee of \$135. Customers prepay their subscriptions and receive 260 issues over the year. To attract more subscribers, the company offered new subscribers the ability to pay \$130 for an annual subscription that also would include a coupon to receive a 40% discount on a one-hour ride through Central Park in a horse-drawn carriage. The list price of a carriage ride is \$125 per hour. The company estimates that approximately 30% of the coupons will be redeemed.

Required:

1. How much revenue should Manhattan Today recognize upon receipt of the \$130 subscription price?
2. How many performance obligations exist in this contract?
3. Prepare the journal entry to recognize sale of 10 new subscriptions, clearly identifying the revenue or deferred revenue associated with each performance obligation.

E 5-8

Performance obligations; customer option for additional goods or services

- LO5-4, LO5-5

On May 1, 2018, Meta Computer, Inc., enters into a contract to sell 5,000 units of Comfort Office Keyboard to one of its clients, Bionics, Inc., at a fixed price of \$95,000, to be settled by a cash payment on May 1. Delivery is scheduled for June 1, 2018. As part of the contract, the seller offers a 25% discount coupon to Bionics for any purchases in the next six months. The seller will continue to offer a 5% discount on all sales during the same time period, which will be available to all customers. Based on experience, Meta Computer estimates a 50% probability that Bionics will redeem the 25% discount voucher, and that the coupon will be applied to \$20,000 of purchases. The stand-alone selling price for the Comfort Office Keyboard is \$19.60 per unit.

Required:

1. How many performance obligations are in this contract?
2. Prepare the journal entry that Meta would record on May 1, 2018.
3. Assume the same facts and circumstances as above, except that Meta gives a 5% discount option to Bionics instead of 25%. In this case, what journal entry would Meta record on May 1, 2018?

E 5-9

Variable consideration; estimation and constraint

- LO5-6

Thomas Consultants provided Bran Construction with assistance in implementing various cost-savings initiatives. Thomas's contract specifies that it will receive a flat fee of \$50,000 and an additional \$20,000 if Bran reaches a prespecified target amount of cost savings. Thomas estimates that there is a 20% chance that Bran will achieve the cost-savings target.

Required:

1. Assuming Thomas uses the expected value as its estimate of variable consideration, calculate the transaction price.
2. Assuming Thomas uses the most likely value as its estimate of variable consideration, calculate the transaction price.
3. Assume Thomas uses the expected value as its estimate of variable consideration, but is very uncertain of that estimate due to a lack of experience with similar consulting arrangements. Calculate the transaction price.

E 5-10

Variable consideration—most likely amount; change in estimate

● LO5-3, LO5-6

Rocky Guide Service provides guided 1–5 day hiking tours throughout the Rocky Mountains. Wilderness Tours hires Rocky to lead various tours that Wilderness sells. Rocky receives \$1,000 per tour day, and shortly after the end of each month Rocky learns whether it will receive a \$100 bonus per tour day it guided during the previous month if its service during that month received an average evaluation of “excellent” by Wilderness customers. The \$1,000 per day and any bonus due are paid in one lump payment shortly after the end of each month.

- On July 1, based on prior experience, Rocky estimated there is a 30% chance it will earn the bonus for July tours. It guided a total of 10 days from July 1–July 15.
- On July 16, based on Rocky’s view that it had provided excellent service during the first part of the month, Rocky revised its estimate to an 80% chance it would earn the bonus for July tours. Rocky also guided customers for 15 days from July 16–July 31.
- On August 5 Rocky learned it did not receive an average evaluation of “excellent” for its July tours, so it would not receive any bonus for July, and received all payment due for the July tours.

Rocky bases estimates of variable consideration on the most likely amount it expects to receive.

Required:

1. Prepare Rocky’s July 15 journal entry to record revenue for tours given from July 1–July 15.
2. Prepare Rocky’s July 31 journal entry to record revenue for tours given from July 16–July 31.
3. Prepare Rocky’s August 5 journal entry to record any necessary adjustments to revenue and receipt of payment from Wilderness.

E 5-11

Variable consideration—expected value; change in estimate

● LO5-3, LO5-6

Assume the same facts as in E 5-10.

Required:

Complete the requirements of E 5-10 assuming that Rocky bases estimates of variable consideration on the expected value it expects to receive.

E 5-12

Consideration payable to customer; collectibility of transaction price

● LO5-2, LO5-5, LO5-6

Furtastic manufactures imitation fur garments. On June 1, 2018, Furtastic made a sale to Willett’s Department Store under terms that require Willett to pay \$150,000 to Furtastic on June 30, 2018. In a separate transaction on June 15, 2018, Furtastic purchased brand advertising services from Willett for \$12,000. The fair value of those advertising services is \$5,000. Furtastic expects that 3% of all sales will prove uncollectible.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Furtastic’s sale on June 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record Furtastic’s purchase of advertising services from Willett on June 15, 2018. Assume all of the advertising services are delivered on June 15, 2018.
3. Prepare the journal entry to record Furtastic’s receipt of \$150,000 from Willett on June 30, 2018.
4. How would Furtastic’s expectation regarding uncollectible accounts affect its recognition of revenue from the sale to Willett’s Department Store on June 1, 2018? Explain briefly.

E 5-13

Approaches for estimating stand-alone selling prices

● LO5-6

(This exercise is a variation of E 5-3.)

Video Planet (VP) sells a big screen TV package consisting of a 60-inch plasma TV, a universal remote, and on-site installation by VP staff. The installation includes programming the remote to have the TV interface with other parts of the customer’s home entertainment system. VP concludes that the TV, remote, and installation service are separate performance obligations. VP sells the 60-inch TV separately for \$1,750 and sells the remote separately for \$100, and offers the entire package for \$1,900. VP does not sell the installation service separately. VP is aware that other similar vendors charge \$150 for the installation service. VP also estimates that it incurs approximately \$100 of compensation and other costs for VP staff to provide the installation service. VP typically charges 40% above cost on similar sales.

Required:

1. Estimate the stand-alone selling price of the installation service using the adjusted market assessment approach.
2. Estimate the stand-alone selling price of the installation service using the expected cost plus margin approach.
3. Estimate the stand-alone selling price of the installation service using the residual approach.

E 5-14

FASB codification research

● LO5-6, LO5-7

Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).

Required:

Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

1. What alternative approaches can be used to estimate variable consideration?
2. What alternative approaches can be used to estimate the stand-alone selling price of performance obligations that are not sold separately?

**E 5-15**

Franchises;
residual method

• LO5-6, LO5-7

- What determines the timing of revenue recognition with respect to licenses of symbolic intellectual property?
- What indicators suggest that a seller is a principal rather than an agent?

Monitor Muffler sells franchise arrangements throughout the United States and Canada. Under a franchise agreement, Monitor receives \$600,000 in exchange for satisfying the following separate performance obligations: (1) franchisees have a five-year right to operate as a Monitor Muffler retail establishment in an exclusive sales territory, (2) franchisees receive initial training and certification as a Monitor Mechanic, and (3) franchisees receive a Monitor Muffler building and necessary equipment. The stand-alone selling price of the initial training and certification is \$15,000, and \$450,000 for the building and equipment. Monitor estimates the stand-alone selling price of the five-year right to operate as a Monitor Muffler establishment using the residual approach.

Monitor received \$75,000 on July 1, 2018, from Perkins and accepted a note receivable for the rest of the franchise price. Monitor will construct and equip Perkins's building and train and certify Perkins by September 1, and Perkins's five-year right to operate as a Monitor Muffler establishment will commence on September 1 as well.

Required:

- What amount would Monitor calculate as the stand-alone selling price of the five-year right to operate as a Monitor Muffler retail establishment?
- What journal entry would Monitor record on July 1, 2018, to reflect the sale of a franchise to Dan Perkins?
- How much revenue would Monitor recognize in the year ended December 31, 2018, with respect to its franchise arrangement with Perkins? (Ignore any interest on the note receivable.)

E 5-16

FASB codification
research

• LO5-8



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).

Required:

Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

- What disclosures are required with respect to performance obligations that the seller is committed to satisfying but that are not yet satisfied?
- What disclosures are required with respect to uncollectible accounts receivable, also called impairments of receivables?
- What disclosures are required with respect to significant changes in contract assets and contract liabilities?

E 5-17

Long-term
contract; revenue
recognition over
time and at a
point in time

• LO5-9

Assume **Nortel Networks** contracted to provide a customer with Internet infrastructure for \$2,000,000. The project began in 2018 and was completed in 2019. Data relating to the contract are summarized below:

	2018	2019
Costs incurred during the year	\$ 300,000	\$ 1,575,000
Estimated costs to complete as of 12/31	1,200,000	—0—
Billings during the year	380,000	1,620,000
Cash collections during the year	250,000	1,750,000

Required:

- Compute the amount of revenue and gross profit or loss to be recognized in 2018 and 2019 assuming Nortel recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion.
- Compute the amount of revenue and gross profit or loss to be recognized in 2018 and 2019 assuming this project does not qualify for revenue recognition over time.
- Prepare a partial balance sheet to show how the information related to this contract would be presented at the end of 2018 assuming Nortel recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion.
- Prepare a partial balance sheet to show how the information related to this contract would be presented at the end of 2018 assuming this project does not qualify for revenue recognition over time.

E 5-18

Long-term
contract; revenue
recognition
over time vs.
upon project
completion

• LO5-9

On June 15, 2018, Sanderson Construction entered into a long-term construction contract to build a baseball stadium in Washington, D.C., for \$220 million. The expected completion date is April 1, 2020, just in time for the 2020 baseball season. Costs incurred and estimated costs to complete at year-end for the life of the contract are as follows (\$ in millions):

	2018	2019	2020
Costs incurred during the year	\$ 40	\$80	\$50
Estimated costs to complete as of December 31	120	60	—

Required:

- How much revenue and gross profit will Sanderson report in its 2018, 2019, and 2020 income statements related to this contract assuming Sanderson recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion?

- How much revenue and gross profit will Sanderson report in its 2018, 2019, and 2020 income statements related to this contract assuming this project does not qualify for revenue recognition over time?
- Suppose the estimated costs to complete at the end of 2019 are \$80 million instead of \$60 million. Determine the amount of revenue and gross profit or loss to be recognized in 2019 assuming Sanderson recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion.

E 5-19

Long-term contract; revenue recognition over time; loss projected on entire project

● LO5-9

On February 1, 2018, Arrow Construction Company entered into a three-year construction contract to build a bridge for a price of \$8,000,000. During 2018, costs of \$2,000,000 were incurred with estimated costs of \$4,000,000 yet to be incurred. Billings of \$2,500,000 were sent, and cash collected was \$2,250,000.

In 2019, costs incurred were \$2,500,000 with remaining costs estimated to be \$3,600,000. 2019 billings were \$2,750,000, and \$2,475,000 cash was collected. The project was completed in 2020 after additional costs of \$3,800,000 were incurred. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31. Arrow recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion.

Required:

- Calculate the amount of revenue and gross profit or loss to be recognized in each of the three years.
- Prepare journal entries for 2018 and 2019 to record the transactions described (credit "various accounts" for construction costs incurred).
- Prepare a partial balance sheet to show the presentation of the project as of December 31, 2018 and 2019.

E 5-20

Long-term contract; revenue recognition upon project completion; loss projected on entire project

● LO5-8, LO5-9

[This is a variation of E 5-19 focusing on the revenue recognition upon project completion.]

On February 1, 2018, Arrow Construction Company entered into a three-year construction contract to build a bridge for a price of \$8,000,000. During 2018, costs of \$2,000,000 were incurred, with estimated costs of \$4,000,000 yet to be incurred. Billings of \$2,500,000 were sent, and cash collected was \$2,250,000.

In 2019, costs incurred were \$2,500,000 with remaining costs estimated to be \$3,600,000. 2019 billings were \$2,750,000, and \$2,475,000 cash was collected. The project was completed in 2020 after additional costs of \$3,800,000 were incurred. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31. This project does not qualify for revenue recognition over time.

Required:

- Calculate the amount of gross profit or loss to be recognized in each of the three years.
- Prepare journal entries for 2018 and 2019 to record the transactions described (credit "various accounts" for construction costs incurred).
- Prepare a partial balance sheet to show the presentation of the project as of December 31, 2018 and 2019. Indicate whether any of the amounts shown are contract assets or contract liabilities.

E 5-21

Income (loss) recognition; Long-term contract; revenue recognition over time vs. upon project completion

● LO5-9

Brady Construction Company contracted to build an apartment complex for a price of \$5,000,000. Construction began in 2018 and was completed in 2020. The following is a series of independent situations, numbered 1 through 6, involving differing costs for the project. All costs are stated in thousands of dollars.

Situation	Costs Incurred During Year			Estimated Costs to Complete (As of the End of the Year)		
	2018	2019	2020	2018	2019	2020
1	1,500	2,100	900	3,000	900	—
2	1,500	900	2,400	3,000	2,400	—
3	1,500	2,100	1,600	3,000	1,500	—
4	500	3,000	1,000	3,500	875	—
5	500	3,000	1,300	3,500	1,500	—
6	500	3,000	1,800	4,600	1,700	—

Required:

Copy and complete the following table:

Situation	Gross Profit (Loss) Recognized					
	Over Time			Upon Completion		
	2018	2019	2020	2018	2019	2020
1						
2						
3						
4						
5						
6						

E 5-22

Long-term contract; revenue recognition over time; solve for unknowns

• LO5-9

In 2018, Long Construction Corporation began construction work under a three-year contract. The contract price is \$1,600,000. Long recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion for financial reporting purposes. The financial statement presentation relating to this contract at December 31, 2018, is as follows:

Balance Sheet		
Accounts receivable (from construction progress billings)		\$30,000
Construction in progress	\$100,000	
Less: Billings on construction contract	(94,000)	
Cost and profit of uncompleted contracts in excess of billings		6,000
Income Statement		
Income (before tax) on the contract recognized in 2018		\$20,000

Required:

1. What was the cost of construction actually incurred in 2018?
2. How much cash was collected in 2018 on this contract?
3. What was the estimated cost to complete as of the end of 2018?
4. What was the estimated percentage of completion used to calculate revenue in 2018? (AICPA adapted)

Problems

**P 5-1**

Upfront fees; performance obligations

• LO5-4, LO5-5

Fit & Slim (F&S) is a health club that offers members various gym services.

Required:

1. Assume F&S offers a deal whereby enrolling in a new membership for \$700 provides a year of unlimited access to facilities and also entitles the member to receive a voucher redeemable for 25% off yoga classes for one year. The yoga classes are offered to gym members as well as to the general public. A new membership normally sells for \$720, and a one-year enrollment in yoga classes sells for an additional \$500. F&S estimates that approximately 40% of the vouchers will be redeemed. F&S offers a 10% discount on all one-year enrollments in classes as part of its normal promotion strategy.
 - a. How many performance obligations are included in the new member deal?
 - b. How much of the contract price would be allocated to each performance obligation? Explain your answer.
 - c. Prepare the journal entry to recognize revenue for the sale of a new membership. Clearly identify revenue or deferred revenue associated with each performance obligation.
2. Assume F&S offers a "Fit 50" coupon book with 50 prepaid visits over the next year. F&S has learned that Fit 50 purchasers make an average of 40 visits before the coupon book expires. A customer purchases a Fit 50 book by paying \$500 in advance, and for any additional visits over 50 during the year after the book is purchased, the customer can pay a \$15 visitation fee per visit. F&S typically charges \$15 to nonmembers who use the facilities for a single day.
 - a. How many separate performance obligations are included in the Fit 50 member deal? Explain your answer.
 - b. How much of the contract price would be allocated to each separate performance obligation? Explain your answer.
 - c. Prepare the journal entry to recognize revenue for the sale of a new Fit 50 book.

P 5-2

Performance obligations; warranties; option

• LO5-2, LO5-4, LO5-5

Creative Computing sells a tablet computer called the Protab. The \$780 sales price of a Protab Package includes the following:

- One Protab computer.
- A 6-month limited warranty. This warranty guarantees that Creative will cover any costs that arise due to repairs or replacements associated with defective products for up to six months.
- A coupon to purchase a Creative Probook e-book reader for \$200, a price that represents a 50% discount from the regular Probook price of \$400. It is expected that 20% of the discount coupons will be utilized.
- A coupon to purchase a one-year extended warranty for \$50. Customers can buy the extended warranty for \$50 at other times as well. Creative estimates that 40% of customers will purchase an extended warranty.
- Creative does not sell the Protab without the limited warranty, option to purchase a Probook, and the option to purchase an extended warranty, but estimates that if it did so, a Protab alone would sell for \$760.

Required:

1. How many performance obligations are included in a Protab Package? Explain your answer.

2. List the performance obligations in the Protab Package in the following table, and complete it to allocate the transaction price of 100,000 Protab Packages to the performance obligations in the contract.

Performance obligation:	Stand-alone selling price of the performance obligation:	Percentage of the sum of the stand-alone selling prices of the performance obligations (to two decimal places):	Allocation of total transaction price to the performance obligation:

3. Prepare a journal entry to record sales of 100,000 Protab Packages (ignore any sales of extended warranties).

P 5-3

Performance obligations; warranties; option

- LO5-2, LO5-4, LO5-5



Assume the same facts as in P5-2, except that customers must pay \$75 to purchase the extended warranty if they don't purchase it with the \$50 coupon that was included in the Protab Package. Creative estimates that 40% of customers will use the \$50 coupon to purchase an extended warranty. Complete the same requirements as in P 5-2.

P 5-4

Performance obligations; customer options for additional goods and services

- LO5-2, LO5-4, LO5-5

Supply Club, Inc., sells a variety of paper products, office supplies, and other products used by businesses and individual consumers. During July 2018 it started a loyalty program through which qualifying customers can accumulate points and redeem those points for discounts on future purchases. Redemption of a loyalty point reduces the price of one dollar of future purchases by 20% (equal to 20 cents). Customers do not earn additional loyalty points for purchases on which loyalty points are redeemed. Based on past experience, Supply Club estimates a 60% probability that any point issued will be redeemed for the discount. During July 2018, the company records \$135,000 of revenue and awards 125,000 loyalty points. The aggregate stand-alone selling price of the purchased products is \$135,000. Eighty percent of sales were cash sales, and the remainder were credit sales.

Required:

1. Prepare Supply Club's journal entry to record July sales.
2. During August, customers redeem loyalty points on \$60,000 of merchandise. Seventy-five percent of those sales were for cash, and the remainder were credit sales. Prepare Supply Club's journal entry to record those sales.

P 5-5

Variable consideration

- LO5-3, LO5-6

On January 1, Revis Consulting entered into a contract to complete a cost reduction program for Green Financial over a six-month period. Revis will receive \$20,000 from Green at the end of each month. If total cost savings reach a specific target, Revis will receive an additional \$10,000 from Green at the end of the contract, but if total cost savings fall short, Revis will refund \$10,000 to Green. Revis estimates an 80% chance that cost savings will reach the target and calculates the contract price based on the expected value of future payments to be received.

Required:

Prepare the following journal entries for Revis:

1. Prepare the journal entry on January 31 to record the collection of cash and recognition of the first month's revenue.
2. Assuming total cost savings exceed target, prepare the journal entry on June 30 to record receipt of the bonus.
3. Assuming total cost savings fall short of target, prepare the journal entry on June 30 to record payment of the penalty.

P 5-6

Variable consideration; change of estimate

- LO5-3, LO5-6

Since 1970, Super Rise, Inc., has provided maintenance services for elevators. On January 1, 2018, Super Rise obtains a contract to maintain an elevator in a 90-story building in New York City for 10 months and receives a fixed payment of \$80,000. The contract specifies that Super Rise will receive an additional \$40,000 at the end of the 10 months if there is no unexpected delay, stoppage, or accident during the year. Super Rise estimates variable consideration to be the most likely amount it will receive.

Required:

1. Assume that, because the building sees a constant flux of people throughout the day, Super Rise is allowed to access the elevators and related mechanical equipment only between 3am and 5am on any given day, which

is insufficient to perform some of the more time-consuming repair work. As a result, Super Rise believes that unexpected delays are likely and that it will not earn the bonus. Prepare the journal entry Super Rise would record on January 1.

2. Assume instead that Super Rise knows at the inception of the contract that it will be given unlimited access to the elevators and related equipment each day, with the right to schedule repair sessions any time. When given these terms and conditions, Super Rise has never had any delays or accidents in the past. Prepare the journal entry Super Rise would record on January 31 to record one month of revenue.
3. Assume the same facts as requirement 1. In addition assume that, on May 31, Super Rise determines that it does not need to spend more than two hours on any given day to operate the elevator safely because the client's elevator is relatively new. Therefore, Super Rise believes that unexpected delays are very unlikely. Prepare the journal entry Super Rise would record on May 31 to recognize May revenue and any necessary revision in its estimated bonus receivable.

P 5-7

Variable
consideration;
constraint and
change of
estimate

● LO5-3, LO5-6

Assume the same facts as P 5-6.

Required:

1. Assume that Super Rise anticipates it will earn the performance bonus, but is highly uncertain about its estimate given unfamiliarity with the building and uncertainty about its access to the elevators and related equipment. Prepare the journal entry Super Rise would record on January 1.
2. Assume the same facts as requirement 1. In addition assume that, on May 31, Super Rise determines that it has sufficient experience with the company to make an accurate estimate of the likelihood that it will earn the performance bonus, and concludes that it is likely to earn the performance bonus. Prepare the journal entry Super Rise would record on May 31 to recognize May revenue and any necessary revision in its estimated bonus receivable.

P 5-8

Variable
transaction price

● LO5-3, LO5-6



Velocity, a consulting firm, enters into a contract to help Burger Boy, a fast-food restaurant, design a marketing strategy to compete with **Burger King**. The contract spans eight months. Burger Boy promises to pay \$60,000 at the beginning of each month. At the end of the contract, Velocity either will give Burger Boy a refund of \$20,000 or will be entitled to an additional \$20,000 bonus, depending on whether sales at Burger Boy at year-end have increased to a target level. At the inception of the contract, Velocity estimates an 80% chance that it will earn the \$20,000 bonus and calculates the contract price based on the expected value of future payments to be received. After four months, circumstances change, and Velocity revises to 60% its estimate of the probability that it will earn the bonus. At the end of the contract, Velocity receives the additional consideration of \$20,000.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record revenue each month for the first four months of the contract.
2. Prepare the journal entry that the Velocity Company would record after four months to recognize the change in estimate associated with the reduced likelihood that the \$20,000 bonus will be received.
3. Prepare the journal entry to record the revenue each month for the second four months of the contract.
4. Prepare the journal entry after eight months to record receipt of the \$20,000 cash bonus.

P 5-9

Variable
transaction price

● LO5-3, LO5-6,
LO5-7



Tran Technologies licenses its functional intellectual property to Lyon Industries. Terms of the arrangement require Lyon to pay Tran \$500,000 on April 1, 2018, when Lyon first obtains access to Tran's intellectual property, and then to pay Tran a royalty of 4% of future sales of products that utilize that intellectual property. Tran anticipates receiving sales-based royalties of \$1,000,000 during 2018 and \$1,500,000/year for the years 2019–2021. Assume Tran accounts for the Lyon license as a right of use, because Tran's actions subsequent to April 1, 2018, will affect the benefits that Lyon receives from access to Tran's intellectual property.

Required:

1. Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Identify the specific citation for accounting for variable consideration arising from sales-based royalties on licenses of intellectual property, and consider the relevant GAAP. When can Tran recognize revenue from sales-based royalties associated with the Lyon license?
2. What journal entry would Tran record on April 1, 2018, when it receives the \$500,000 payment from Lyon?
3. Assume on December 31, 2018, Tran receives \$1,000,000 for all sales-based royalties earned from Lyon in 2018. What journal entry would Tran record on December 31, 2018, to recognize any revenue that should be recognized in 2018 with respect to the Lyon license that it has not already recognized?
4. Assume Tran accounts for the Lyon license as a five-year right to access Tran's symbolic intellectual property from April 1, 2018, through March 31, 2023. Tran expects that its ongoing marketing efforts will affect the value of the license to Lyon during the five-year license period. Repeat requirements 2 and 3.

P 5-10

Long-term contract; revenue recognition over time

• LO5-8, LO5-9



In 2018, the Westgate Construction Company entered into a contract to construct a road for Santa Clara County for \$10,000,000. The road was completed in 2020. Information related to the contract is as follows:

	2018	2019	2020
Cost incurred during the year	\$2,400,000	\$3,600,000	\$2,200,000
Estimated costs to complete as of year-end	5,600,000	2,000,000	—0—
Billings during the year	2,000,000	4,000,000	4,000,000
Cash collections during the year	1,800,000	3,600,000	4,600,000

Westgate recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion.

Required:

1. Calculate the amount of revenue and gross profit to be recognized in each of the three years.
2. Prepare all necessary journal entries for each of the years (credit “various accounts” for construction costs incurred).
3. Prepare a partial balance sheet for 2018 and 2019 showing any items related to the contract. Indicate whether any of the amounts shown are contract assets or contract liabilities.
4. Calculate the amount of revenue and gross profit to be recognized in each of the three years assuming the following costs incurred and costs to complete information:

	2018	2019	2020
Costs incurred during the year	\$2,400,000	\$3,800,000	\$3,200,000
Estimated costs to complete as of year-end	5,600,000	3,100,000	—0—

5. Calculate the amount of revenue and gross profit to be recognized in each of the three years assuming the following costs incurred and costs to complete information:

	2018	2019	2020
Costs incurred during the year	\$2,400,000	\$3,800,000	\$3,900,000
Estimated costs to complete as of year-end	5,600,000	4,100,000	—0—

P 5-11

Long-term contract; revenue recognition upon completion

• LO5-9

[This is a variation of P 5-10 modified to focus on revenue recognition upon project completion.]

Required:

Complete the requirements of P 5-10 assuming that Westgate Construction’s contract with Santa Clara County does *not* qualify for revenue recognition over time.

P 5-12

Long-term contract; revenue recognized over time; loss projected on entire project

• LO5-9

Curtiss Construction Company, Inc., entered into a fixed-price contract with Axelrod Associates on July 1, 2018, to construct a four-story office building. At that time, Curtiss estimated that it would take between two and three years to complete the project. The total contract price for construction of the building is \$4,000,000. Curtiss concludes that the contract does not qualify for revenue recognition over time. The building was completed on December 31, 2020. Estimated percentage of completion, accumulated contract costs incurred, estimated costs to complete the contract, and *accumulated* billings to Axelrod under the contract were as follows:

	At 12-31-2018	At 12-31-2019	At 12-31-2020
Percentage of completion	10%	60%	100%
Costs incurred to date	\$ 350,000	\$2,500,000	\$4,250,000
Estimated costs to complete	3,150,000	1,700,000	—0—
Billings to Axelrod, to date	720,000	2,170,000	3,600,000

Required:

1. For each of the three years, prepare a schedule to compute total gross profit or loss to be recognized as a result of this contract.
2. Assuming Curtiss recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion, compute gross profit or loss to be recognized in each of the three years.
3. Assuming Curtiss recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion, compute the amount to be shown in the balance sheet at the end of 2018 and 2019 as either cost in excess of billings or billings in excess of costs.

(AICPA adapted)

P 5-13

Long-term contract; revenue recognition over time vs. upon project completion

● LO5-9



Citation Builders, Inc., builds office buildings and single-family homes. The office buildings are constructed under contract with reputable buyers. The homes are constructed in developments ranging from 10–20 homes and are typically sold during construction or soon after. To secure the home upon completion, buyers must pay a deposit of 10% of the price of the home with the remaining balance due upon completion of the house and transfer of title. Failure to pay the full amount results in forfeiture of the down payment. Occasionally, homes remain unsold for as long as three months after construction. In these situations, sales price reductions are used to promote the sale.

During 2018, Citation began construction of an office building for Altamont Corporation. The total contract price is \$20 million. Costs incurred, estimated costs to complete at year-end, billings, and cash collections for the life of the contract are as follows:

	2018	2019	2020
Costs incurred during the year	\$ 4,000,000	\$ 9,500,000	\$4,500,000
Estimated costs to complete as of year-end	12,000,000	4,500,000	—
Billings during the year	2,000,000	10,000,000	8,000,000
Cash collections during the year	1,800,000	8,600,000	9,600,000

Also during 2018, Citation began a development consisting of 12 identical homes. Citation estimated that each home will sell for \$600,000, but individual sales prices are negotiated with buyers. Deposits were received for eight of the homes, three of which were completed during 2018 and paid for in full for \$600,000 each by the buyers. The completed homes cost \$450,000 each to construct. The construction costs incurred during 2018 for the nine uncompleted homes totaled \$2,700,000.

Required:

- Briefly explain the difference between recognizing revenue over time and upon project completion when accounting for long-term construction contracts.
- Answer the following questions assuming that Citation concludes it does not qualify for revenue recognition over time for its office building contracts:
 - How much revenue related to this contract will Citation report in its 2018 and 2019 income statements?
 - What is the amount of gross profit or loss to be recognized for the Altamont contract during 2018 and 2019?
 - What will Citation report in its December 31, 2018, balance sheet related to this contract? (Ignore cash.)
- Answer requirements 2a through 2c assuming that Citation recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion for its office building contracts.
- Assume the same information for 2018 and 2019, but that as of year-end 2019 the estimated cost to complete the office building is \$9,000,000. Citation recognizes revenue over time according to percentage of completion for its office building contracts.
 - How much revenue related to this contract will Citation report in the 2019 income statement?
 - What is the amount of gross profit or loss to be recognized for the Altamont contract during 2019?
 - What will Citation report in its 2019 balance sheet related to this contract? (Ignore cash.)
- When should Citation recognize revenue for the sale of its single-family homes?
- What will Citation report in its 2018 income statement and 2018 balance sheet related to the single-family home business (ignore cash in the balance sheet)?

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Research Case 5-1

Earnings management with respect to revenues

● LO5-1

An article published in *Accounting Horizons* describes various techniques that companies use to manage their earnings.

Required:

In your library, on the Internet, or from some other source, locate the article “How Are Earnings Managed? Evidence from Auditors” in *Accounting Horizons*, 2003 (Supplement), and answer the following questions:

- What are the four most common revenue-recognition abuses identified by auditors in that article? From the examples provided in the article, briefly explain each abuse.

2. What is the revenue-recognition abuse identified in the article related to the percentage-of-completion method?
3. Did revenue-recognition abuses tend to increase or decrease net income in the year they occurred?
4. Did auditors tend to require their clients to make adjustments that reduced the revenue-recognition abuses they detected?

Judgment**Case 5–2**

Satisfaction of
performance
obligations

● LO5–2

Assume **McDonald's** enters into a contract to sell Billy Bear dolls for Toys4U Stores. Based on the contract, McDonald's displays the dolls in selected stores. Toys4U is not paid until the dolls have been sold by McDonald's, and unsold dolls are returned to Toys4U.

Required:

Determine whether Toys4U has satisfied its performance obligation when it delivers the dolls to McDonald's. Explain your answer.

Judgment**Case 5–3**

Satisfaction of
performance
obligations

● LO5–2

Cutler Education Corporation developed a software product to help children under age 12 learn mathematics. The software contains two separate parts: Basic Level (Level I) and Intermediate Level (Level II). Parents purchase each level separately and are eligible to purchase the access code for Level II only if their children pass the Level I exam.

Kerry purchases the Level I software at a price of \$50 for his son, Tom, on December 1. Suppose Tom passed the Level I test on December 10, and Kerry immediately purchased the access code for Level II for an additional \$30. Cutler provided Kerry with the access code to Level II on December 20.

Required:

When would Cutler recognize revenue for the sale of Level I and Level II software?

Ethics Case 5–4

Revenue
recognition

● LO5–2

Horizon Corporation manufactures personal computers. The company began operations in 2013 and reported profits for the years 2013 through 2016. Due primarily to increased competition and price slashing in the industry, 2017's income statement reported a loss of \$20 million. Just before the end of the 2018 fiscal year, a memo from the company's chief financial officer to Jim Fielding, the company controller, included the following comments:

If we don't do something about the large amount of unsold computers already manufactured, our auditors will require us to write them off. The resulting loss for 2018 will cause a violation of our debt covenants and force the company into bankruptcy. I suggest that you ship half of our inventory to J.B. Sales, Inc., in Oklahoma City. I know the company's president and he will accept the merchandise and acknowledge the shipment as a purchase. We can record the sale in 2018 which will boost profits to an acceptable level. Then J.B. Sales will simply return the merchandise in 2019 after the financial statements have been issued.

Required:

Discuss the ethical dilemma faced by Jim Fielding.

Judgment**Case 5–5**

Satisfying
performance
obligations

● LO5–2, LO5–3

Consider each of the following scenarios separately:

Scenario 1: Crown Construction Company entered into a contract with Star Hotel for building a highly sophisticated, customized conference room to be completed for a fixed price of \$400,000. Nonrefundable progress payments are made on a monthly basis for work completed during the month. Legal title to the conference room equipment is held by Crown until the end of the construction project, but if the contract is terminated before the conference room is finished, Star retains the partially completed job and must pay for any work completed to date.

Scenario 2: Regent Company entered into a contract with Star Hotel for constructing and installing a standard designed gym for a fixed price of \$400,000. Nonrefundable progress payments are made on a monthly basis for work completed during the month. Legal title to the gym passes to Star upon completion of the building process. If Star cancels the contract before the gym construction is completed, Regent removes all the installed equipment and Star must compensate Regent for any loss of profit on sale of the gym to another customer.

Scenario 3: On January 1, the CostDriver Company, a consulting firm, entered into a three-month contract with Coco Seafood Restaurant to analyze its cost structure in order to find a way to reduce operating costs and increase profits. CostDriver promises to share findings with the restaurant every two weeks and to provide the restaurant with a final analytical report at the end of the contract. This service is customized to Coco, and CostDriver would need to start from scratch if it provided a similar service to another client. Coco promises to pay \$5,000 per month. If Coco chooses to terminate the contract, it is entitled to receive a report detailing analyses to that stage.

Scenario 4: Assume Trump International Tower (Phase II) is developing luxury residential real estate and begins to market individual apartments during their construction. The Tower entered into a contract with Edwards for the sale of a specific apartment. Edwards pays a deposit that is refundable only if the Tower fails to deliver the completed apartment in accordance with the contract. The remainder of the purchase price is paid on completion of the contract when Edwards obtains possession of the apartment.

Required:

For each of the scenarios, determine whether the seller should recognize revenue (a) over time or (b) when the product or service is completed. Explain your answer.

Judgment**Case 5–6**

Performance obligation; licensing

● LO5–5, LO5–7

Assume that **Pfizer**, a large research-based pharmaceutical company, enters into a contract with a start-up biotechnology company called HealthPro and promises to:

1. Grant HealthPro the exclusive rights to use Pfizer's Technology A for the life of its patent. The license gives HealthPro the exclusive right to market, distribute, and manufacture Drug B as developed using Technology A. Pfizer views the patent as functional intellectual property.
2. Assign four full-time equivalent employees to perform research and development services for HealthPro in a specially designated Pfizer lab facility. The primary objective of these services is to receive regulatory approval to market and distribute Drug B using Technology A.

HealthPro is required to use Pfizer's lab to perform the research and development services necessary to develop Drug B using Technology A, because the expertise related to Technology A is proprietary to Pfizer and not available elsewhere.

Required:

What parts of this contract are separate performance obligations? Explain your reasoning for each obligation.

Communication**Case 5–7**

Performance obligations; loyalty program

● LO5–5

Jerry's Ice Cream Parlor is considering a marketing plan to increase sales of ice cream cones. The plan will give customers a free ice cream cone if they buy 10 ice cream cones at regular prices. Customers will be issued a card that will be punched each time an ice cream cone is purchased. After 10 punches, the card can be turned in for a free cone.

Jerry Donovan, the company's owner, is not sure how the new plan will affect accounting procedures. He realizes that the company will be incurring costs each time a free ice cream cone is awarded, but there will be no corresponding revenue or cash inflow.

The focus of this case is on how to account for revenue if the new plan is adopted. Your instructor will divide the class into two to six groups depending on the size of the class. The mission of your group is to reach consensus on the appropriate accounting treatment for the new plan. That treatment should describe when revenue is recognized and how it will be calculated.

Required:

1. Each group member should deliberate the situation independently and draft a tentative argument prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.
2. In class, each group will meet for 10–15 minutes in different areas of the classroom. During that meeting, group members will take turns sharing their suggestions for the purpose of arriving at a single group treatment.
3. After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each group (selected during the group meetings) will share the group's solution with the class. The goal of the class is to incorporate the views of each group into a consensus approach to the situation.

Judgment**Case 5–8**

Principal or agent

● LO5–6

AuctionCo.com sells used products collected from different suppliers. Assume a customer purchases a used bicycle through AuctionCo.com for \$300. AuctionCo.com agrees to pay the supplier \$200 for the bicycle. The bicycle will be shipped to the customer by the original bicycle owner.

Required:

1. Assume AuctionCo.com takes control of this used bicycle before the sale and pays \$200 to the supplier. Under this assumption, how much revenue would AuctionCo.com recognize at the time of the sale to the customer?
2. Assume AuctionCo.com never takes control of this used bicycle before the sale. Instead, the bicycle is shipped directly to the customer by the original bicycle owner, and then AuctionCo.com pays \$200 to the supplier. Under this assumption, how much revenue would AuctionCo.com recognize at the time of the sale to the customer?
3. Assume AuctionCo.com promises to pay \$200 to the supplier regardless of whether the bicycle is sold, but the bicycle will continue to be shipped directly from the supplier to the customer. Under this assumption, how much revenue would AuctionCo.com recognize at the time of the sale to the customer?

Real World**Case 5–9**

Principal agent considerations

● LO5–6

EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, performs automated collection, validation, indexing, and forwarding of submissions by companies and others who are required by law to file forms with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR to make the majority of their filings. (Some foreign companies file voluntarily.) Form 10-K, which includes the annual report, is required to be filed on EDGAR. The SEC makes this information available on the Internet.

Required:

1. Access EDGAR on the Internet. The web address is www.sec.gov.

2. Search for the most recent 10-K's of **Expedia, Inc.**, and **Priceline Group Inc.** Search or scroll to find the revenue recognition note in the financial statements.
3. For each of the following types of revenue, indicate whether the amount shown in the income statement is "net" or "gross" (the terms used with respect to revenue recognition in the chapter), and briefly explain your answer.
 - a. Expedia's "merchant hotel model" revenues
 - b. Priceline's "'Name Your Own Price'® services"
 - c. Priceline's "merchant retail services"
 - d. Priceline's agency revenues
4. Consider your responses to 3a through 3d. Does it look like there is the potential for noncomparability when readers consider Expedia and Priceline? Indicate "yes" or "no," and briefly explain your answer.

Research

Case 5–10

FASB codification; locate and extract relevant information and authoritative support for a financial reporting issue; reporting revenue as a principal or as an agent

● LO5–6



The birth of the Internet in the 1990s led to the creation of a new industry of online retailers such as **Amazon**, **Overstock.com**, and **PCM, Inc.**. Many of these companies often act as intermediaries between the manufacturer and the customer without ever taking possession of the merchandise sold. Revenue recognition for this type of transaction has been controversial.

Assume that **Overstock.com** sold you a product for \$200 that cost \$150. The company's profit on the transaction clearly is \$50. Should Overstock recognize \$200 in revenue and \$150 in cost of goods sold (the gross method), or should it recognize only the \$50 in gross profit (the net method) as commission revenue?

Required:

1. Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific Codification citation that indicates what an entity assesses to determine whether the nature of its promise is to act as a principal or agent.
2. What indicators does the Codification list that suggest an entity is a principal? Determine the specific Codification citation.
3. Using EDGAR (www.sec.gov), access **Google, Inc.**'s 2013 10-K. Locate the disclosure note that discusses the company's revenue recognition policy.
4. Does Google discuss determining whether they should report revenue on a gross versus net basis with respect to any of their products or services? What is the reason Google provides for its choices? Do you agree with Google's reasoning?

Real World

Case 5–11

Chainsaw Al; revenue recognition and earnings management

● LO5–7

In May 2001, the Securities and Exchange Commission sued the former top executives at Sunbeam, charging the group with financial reporting fraud that allegedly cost investors billions in losses. **Sunbeam Corporation** is a recognized designer, manufacturer, and marketer of household and leisure products, including Coleman, Eastpak, First Alert, Grillmaster, Mixmaster, Mr. Coffee, Oster, Powermate, and Campingaz. In the mid-1990s, Sunbeam needed help: its profits had declined by over 80% percent, and in 1996, its stock price was down over 50% from its high. To the rescue: Albert Dunlap, also known as "Chainsaw Al" based on his reputation as a ruthless executive known for his ability to restructure and turn around troubled companies, largely by eliminating jobs.

The strategy appeared to work. In 1997, Sunbeam's revenues had risen by 18 percent. However, in April 1998, the brokerage firm of **Paine Webber** downgraded Sunbeam's stock recommendation. Why the downgrade? Paine Webber had noticed unusually high accounts receivable, massive increases in sales of electric blankets in the third quarter 1997, which usually sell best in the fourth quarter, as well as unusually high sales of barbecue grills for the fourth quarter. Soon after, Sunbeam announced a first quarter loss of \$44.6 million, and Sunbeam's stock price fell 25 percent.

It eventually came to light that Dunlap and Sunbeam had been using a "bill-and-hold" strategy with retail buyers. This involved selling products at large discounts to retailers before they normally would buy and then holding the products in third-party warehouses, with delivery at a later date.

Many felt Sunbeam had deceived shareholders by artificially inflating earnings and the company's stock price. A class-action lawsuit followed, alleging that Sunbeam and Dunlap violated federal securities laws, suggesting the motivation to inflate the earnings and stock price was to allow Sunbeam to complete hundreds of millions of dollars of debt financing in order to complete some ongoing mergers. Shareholders alleged damages when Sunbeam's subsequent earnings decline caused a huge drop in the stock price.

Required:

1. How might Sunbeam's 1997 "bill-and-hold" strategy have contributed to artificially high earnings in 1997?
2. How would the strategy have led to the unusually high accounts receivable Paine Webber noticed?
3. How might Sunbeam's 1997 "bill-and-hold" strategy have contributed to a 1998 earnings decline?
4. How does earnings management of this type affect earnings quality?

Judgment**Case 5–12**

Revenue recognition; long-term construction contracts

• LO5–9

Two accounting students were discussing the timing of revenue recognition for long-term construction contracts. The discussion focused on which method was most like the typical revenue recognition method of recognizing revenue at the point of product delivery. Bill argued that recognizing revenue upon project completion was preferable because it was analogous to recognizing revenue at the point of delivery. John disagreed and supported recognizing revenue over time, stating that it was analogous to accruing revenue as a performance obligation was satisfied. John also pointed out that an advantage of recognizing revenue over time is that it provides information sooner to users.

Required:

Discuss the arguments made by both students. Which argument do you support? Why?

Communication**Case 5–13**

Long-term contract; revenue recognition over time vs. upon project completion

• LO5–9

Willingham Construction is in the business of building high-priced, custom, single-family homes. The company, headquartered in Anaheim, California, operates throughout the Southern California area. The construction period for the average home built by Willingham is six months, although some homes have taken as long as nine months.

You have just been hired by Willingham as the assistant controller and one of your first tasks is to evaluate the company's revenue recognition policy. The company presently recognizes revenue upon completion for all of its projects and management is now considering whether revenue recognition over time is appropriate.

Required:

Write a 1- to 2-page memo to Virginia Reynolds, company controller, describing the differences between the effects of recognizing revenue over time and upon project completion on the income statement and balance sheet. Indicate any criteria specifying when revenue should be recognized. Be sure to include references to GAAP as they pertain to the choice of method. Do not address the differential effects on income taxes nor the effect on the financial statements of switching between methods.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

• LO5-2, LO5-6, LO5-7

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material also is available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. On what line of Target's income statement is revenue reported? What was the amount of revenue Target reported for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016?
2. Disclosure Note 2 indicates that Target generally records revenue in retail stores at the point of sale. Does that suggest that Target generally records revenue at a point in time or over a period of time? Explain.
3. Disclosure Note 2 indicates that customers ("guests") can return some merchandise within 90 days of purchase and can return other merchandise within a year of purchase. How is Target's revenue and net income affected by returns, given that it does not know at the time a sale is made which items will be returned?
4. Disclosure Note 2 indicates that "Commissions earned on sales generated by leased departments are included within sales and were \$37 million . . . in 2015." Do you think it likely that Target is accounting for those sales as a principal or an agent? Explain.
5. Disclosure Note 2 discusses Target's accounting for gift card sales. Does Target recognize revenue when it sells a gift card to a customer? If not, when does it recognize revenue? Explain.
6. Disclosure Note 4 discussed how Target accounts for consideration received from vendors, which they call "vendor income". Does that consideration produce revenue for Target? Does that consideration produce revenue for Target's vendors? Explain.

Air France–KLM Case

• LO5-2, LO5-4, LO5-5



IFRS

Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. In note 4.6, AF indicates that "Sales related to air transportation are recognized when the transportation service is provided," so passenger and freight tickets "are consequently recorded as "Deferred revenue upon issuance date"."
 - a. Examine AF's balance sheet. What is the total amount of deferred revenue on ticket sales as of December 31, 2015?
 - b. When transportation services are provided with respect to the deferred revenue on ticket sales, what journal entry would AF make to reduce deferred revenue?

- c. Does AF's treatment of deferred revenue under IFRS appear consistent with how these transactions would be handled under U.S. GAAP? Explain.
- 2. AF has a frequent flyer program, "Flying Blue," which allows members to acquire "miles" as they fly on AF or partner airlines that are redeemable for free flights or other benefits.
 - a. How does AF account for these miles?
 - b. Does AF report any liability associated with these miles as of December 31, 2015?
 - c. Although AF's 2015 annual report was issued prior to the effective date of *ASU No. 2014-09*, consider whether the manner in which AF accounts for its frequent flier program appears consistent with the revenue recognition guidelines included in the ASU.

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

GAAP in Effect Prior to *ASU No. 2014-09*

A Chapter Supplement

PREFACE

Chapter 5 is based on the revenue recognition approach established in *ASU No. 2014-09*, which must be adopted by companies issuing reports under U.S. GAAP for periods beginning after December 15, 2017, and for companies issuing reports under IFRS for periods beginning January 1, 2018. Companies may adopt the ASU one year earlier than required. This appendix discusses GAAP that is eliminated by the ASU but that is traditionally covered in intermediate accounting courses. GAAP covered in this appendix will be relevant until the ASU becomes effective, and students taking the CPA or CMA exams will be responsible for this GAAP until six months after the effective date of the ASU.

Summary of GAAP Changes

Over 200 specific items of revenue recognition guidance were replaced by *ASU No. 2014-09* (hereafter “the ASU”). Illustration 5–S1 summarizes some important changes in GAAP that occurred.

The rest of this supplement discusses some of these changes in more detail, focusing on aspects of GAAP that usually are featured in intermediate accounting courses but that are eliminated by the ASU. We start by discussing the realization principle, which guided revenue recognition prior to the ASU. Then we discuss the installment sales and cost recovery

Additional Consideration

Transitioning to *ASU No. 2014-09*. Given the importance of revenue recognition and the changes in information systems and reporting practices necessary to implement the new ASU, the FASB gave companies over two years before requiring that it be adopted. The FASB also allowed companies to choose between two alternatives to transition to the ASU.

- **Full Retroactive Restatement:** This approach restates prior years to appear as if the ASU had been used all along, similar to the approach used for other accounting changes. For example, prior-year revenue, net income, and retained earnings are adjusted to reflect the ASU.
- **Partial Retroactive Restatement:** This approach applies the ASU only to new contracts and to contracts that have not been completed as of the date the ASU is initially adopted by the company. Under this approach, the company only adjusts the opening balance of retained earnings in the year the ASU is adopted to account for the cumulative effect of the ASU on net income recognized in prior years with respect to uncompleted contracts.

Allowing two approaches for adopting the ASU reduces comparability between companies.

Illustration 5–S1

Some Important Changes in Revenue Recognition GAAP Resulting from ASU No. 2014-09

	Previous GAAP	New GAAP Under ASU No. 2014-09
Key concept underlying revenue recognition	The realization principle: Recognize revenue when both the earnings process is complete and there is reasonable certainty as to collectibility of the asset(s) to be received.	The core revenue recognition principle: Recognize revenue when goods or services are transferred to customers for the amount the company expects to be entitled to receive in exchange for those goods and services.
Role of collectibility in determining whether revenue is recognized.	Defer revenue recognition if cash collection is not reasonably certain. Use installment method or cost-recovery method to tie revenue recognition to subsequent cash collection.	Defer revenue recognition until cash collection is probable. Installment and cost-recovery methods eliminated.
Criteria for recognizing revenue over time	Depends on the earnings process. For long-term contracts, recognizing revenue over time is generally required unless reliable estimates can't be made.	Depends on characteristics of the contract and of the performance obligations being satisfied.
Accounting for multiple performance obligations	Depends on the industry. Sometimes performance obligations are ignored (e.g., "free" smartphones in cell phone contracts); sometimes revenue recognition is constrained (e.g., software for which there is not sufficient evidence of stand-alone prices).	Regardless of industry, apply criteria for determining whether goods and services are distinct to identify performance obligations, allocate transaction price to performance obligations, and recognize revenue when each performance obligation is satisfied.
Treatment of customer options for additional goods or services	Depends on the industry. Sometimes treated as a separate deliverable (e.g., software upgrades), other times ignored (e.g., frequent flyer miles).	Regardless of industry, treat an option as a separate performance obligation if it provides a material right to the customer that the customer would not otherwise have.
Treatment of variable consideration	Typically only recognize revenue associated with variable consideration when uncertainty has been resolved.	Include estimated variable consideration in the transaction price, but only to the extent it is probable that a significant revenue reversal will not occur in the future.
Treatment of time value of money	Interest revenue recognized for long-term receivables but interest expense typically not recognized for long-term customer prepayments.	Interest revenue or expense recognized for both long-term receivables and long-term customer prepayments if amount is significant.

methods, which were used when collectibility of receivables was very uncertain. We conclude with coverage of revenue recognition practices particular to software contracts, other multiple-deliverable arrangements, and franchises.

The Realization Principle

Revenue recognition used to be based on the **realization principle**. As shown in Illustration 5–S2, the realization principle required that two criteria be satisfied before revenue can be recognized (recorded).

The Realization Principle*

Revenue should only be recognized when *both*:

1. The earnings process is judged to be complete or virtually complete (the earnings process refers to the activity or activities performed by the company to generate revenue).
2. There is reasonable certainty as to the collectibility of the asset to be received (usually cash).

*These criteria are addressed in SFAC 5, "Recognition and Measurement in Financial Statements," *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 5* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1984).

Illustration 5–S2

The Realization Principle

The realization principle bases revenue recognition on completion of the earnings process and reasonable certainty about collectibility.

The realization principle may sound similar to the approach discussed in Chapter 5, which bases revenue recognition on satisfaction of performance obligations and which requires that it be probable that receivables will be collected. However, it differs in important ways.

First, the idea of completion of the earnings process was interpreted and applied differently in various industries and for various types of products and services. As a consequence, revenue recognition standards and other guidance became very complicated, and sometimes transactions that were relatively similar were treated very differently. The ASU eliminates much of that industry-specific guidance, including special treatment of software sales and franchise arrangements. We cover that guidance in a later section of this appendix.

Second, the realization principle's requirement that there be reasonable certainty as to collectibility meant that revenue recognition sometimes was delayed until cash had been collected. As discussed in the next section of this appendix, the installment sales method and the cost recovery method were used to tie revenue recognition to cash collection. Those methods aren't allowed by the ASU.²⁴ Instead, the ASU only requires that collectibility be probable, and ties subsequent revenue recognition to satisfying performance obligations rather than cash collection.



International Financial Reporting Standards

Revenue Recognition Concepts. The IFRS version of ASU No. 2014-09, called *IFRS No. 15*, replaces preexisting IFRS. Prior to *IFRS No. 15*, *IAS No. 18* governed most revenue recognition under IFRS. It allowed revenue to be recognized when the following conditions had been satisfied:

- the amount of revenue and costs associated with the transaction can be measured reliably,
- it is probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction will flow to the seller,
- (for sales of goods) the seller has transferred to the buyer the risks and rewards of ownership, and doesn't effectively manage or control the goods, and
- (for sales of services) the stage of completion can be measured reliably.

These general conditions typically led to revenue recognition at the same time and in the same amount as would occur under U.S. GAAP, but there were exceptions. Also, IFRS had much less industry-specific guidance than did U.S. GAAP, leading to fewer exceptions to applying these revenue recognition conditions.

Installment Sales

The installment sales and cost recovery methods are only used when extreme uncertainty exists regarding future cash collections.

Customers sometimes are allowed to pay for purchases in installments over a long period of time. Many large retail stores, such as **Sears** and **J.C. Penney**, sell products on such installment plans. In most situations, the increased uncertainty concerning the collection of cash from installment sales can be accommodated satisfactorily by estimating uncollectible amounts. However, if it is not possible to make a reasonable assessment of future bad debts, the seller lacks reasonable certainty as to collectibility, and the realization principle requires that revenue recognition be delayed.

These circumstances occur relatively rarely in practice, because sellers typically don't want to enter into transactions when they can't estimate how much cash they will be paid. However, exceptions do occur. For example, real estate sales often are made on an installment basis with relatively small down payments and long payment periods, perhaps 25 years or more. These payment characteristics, combined with the general speculative nature of many of these transactions, may translate into extreme uncertainty concerning the collectibility of the installment receivable.²⁵

²⁴The tax law still requires the use of the installment sales method for certain types of properties unless a taxpayer elects not to use the method.

²⁵In fact, the installment sales method was required for retail land sales that met certain conditions. FASB ASC 360—20: Property, Plant, and Equipment—Real Estate Sales (previously "Accounting for Sales of Real Estate," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 66* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1982)).

When extreme uncertainty exists regarding the ultimate collectibility of cash, GAAP previously required the use of one of two accounting techniques, the installment sales method or the cost recovery method. We discuss each in turn.

Installment Sales Method. The **installment sales method** recognizes revenue and costs only when cash payments are received. Each payment is assumed to be composed of two components: (1) a partial recovery of the cost of the item sold and (2) a gross profit component. These components are determined by the gross profit percentage applicable to the sale. For example, if the gross profit percentage (gross profit ÷ sales price) is 40%, then 40% of each dollar collected represents gross profit and the remaining 60% represents cost recovery. Consider the example in Illustration 5–S3.

On November 1, 2018, the Belmont Corporation, a real estate developer, sold a tract of land for \$800,000. The sales agreement requires the customer to make four equal annual payments of \$200,000 plus interest on each November 1, beginning November 1, 2018. The land cost \$560,000 to develop. The company's fiscal year ends on December 31.

Illustration 5–S3

Installment Sales Method

The gross profit of **\$240,000** (\$800,000 – 560,000) represents 30% of the sales price (\$240,000 ÷ \$800,000). The collection of cash and the recognition of gross profit under the installment method are summarized below. In this example, we ignore the collection of interest charges and the recognition of interest revenue to concentrate on the collection of the \$800,000 sales price and the recognition of gross profit on the sale.

Date	Cash Collected	Amount Allocated to	
		Cost (70%)	Gross Profit (30%)
Nov. 1, 2018	\$200,000	\$140,000	\$ 60,000
Nov. 1, 2019	200,000	140,000	60,000
Nov. 1, 2020	200,000	140,000	60,000
Nov. 1, 2021	200,000	140,000	60,000
Totals	<u>\$800,000</u>	<u>\$560,000</u>	<u>\$240,000</u>

The **installment sales method** recognizes the gross profit by applying the gross profit percentage on the sale to the amount of cash actually received.

The gross profit recognized in a period will be equal to the gross profit percentage multiplied by the period's cash collection. The following journal entries are recorded (interest charges ignored):

Make Installment Sale: November 1, 2018

Installment receivables	800,000	
Inventory		560,000
Deferred gross profit		240,000
<i>To record installment sale.</i>		

The first entry records the installment receivable and the reduction of inventory. The difference between the \$800,000 selling price and the \$560,000 cost of sales represents the gross profit on the sale of \$240,000. As gross profit will be recognized in net income only as collections are received, it is recorded initially in an account called deferred gross profit.

This is a contra account to the installment receivable. The deferred gross profit account will be reduced as collections are received until all profit has been recognized.²⁶

²⁶Accountants sometimes initially record installment sales in separate entries:

Installment receivables	800,000	
Installment sales		800,000
<i>To record installment sales.</i>		
Cost of installment sales	560,000	
Inventory		560,000
<i>To record the cost of installment sales.</i>		

Then at the end of the period, the following adjusting/closing entry is needed:

Installment sales	800,000	
Cost of installment sales		560,000
Deferred gross profit on installment sales		240,000

The text entries concentrate on the effect of the transactions and avoid this unnecessary procedural complexity.

Collect Cash: November 1, 2018

Cash	200,000	
Installment receivables		200,000
<i>To record cash collection from installment sale.</i>		
Deferred gross profit	60,000	
Realized gross profit		60,000
<i>To recognize gross profit from installment sale.</i>		

The second set of entries records the collection of the first installment and recognizes the gross profit component of the payment, \$60,000. Realized gross profit gets closed to income summary as part of the normal year-end closing process and is included in net income in the income statement. Journal entries to record the remaining three payments on November 1, 2019, 2020, and 2021, are identical.

At the end of 2018, the balance sheet would report the following:

Installment receivables (\$800,000 – 200,000)	\$600,000
Less: Deferred gross profit (\$240,000 – 60,000)	(180,000)
Installment receivables (net)	<u>\$420,000</u>

The net amount of the receivable reflects the portion of the remaining payments to be received that represents cost recovery ($70\% \times \$600,000$). The installment receivables are classified as current assets if they will be collected within one year (or within the company's operating cycle, if longer); otherwise, they are classified as noncurrent assets.

The income statement for 2018 would report gross profit from installment sales of \$60,000. Sales and cost of goods sold associated with installment sales usually are not reported in the income statement under the installment method, just the resulting gross profit. However, if those amounts aren't included in the income statement in the period in which the installment sale is made, they need to be included in the notes to the financial statements, along with the amount of gross profit that has not yet been recognized.

Additional Consideration

A company uses the installment method because it can't reliably estimate bad debts. Therefore, the company doesn't explicitly recognize bad debts or create an allowance for uncollectible accounts in the installment method. Rather, bad debts are dealt with implicitly by deferring gross profit until cash is collected. If the cash never is collected, the related deferred gross profit never gets included in net income. To illustrate, assume that in the example described in Illustration 5–A3, the Belmont Corporation collected the first payment but the customer was unable to make the remaining payments. Typically, the seller would repossess the item sold and make the following journal entry:

Repossessed inventory	420,000	
Deferred gross profit	180,000	
Installment receivable		600,000

This entry removes the receivable and the remaining deferred gross profit and records the repossessed land in an inventory account. This example assumes that the repossessed land's current fair value is equal to the net receivable of \$420,000. If the land's fair value at the date of repossession is less than \$420,000, a loss on repossession is recorded (debited).

The cost recovery method defers all gross profit recognition until cash equal to the cost of the item sold has been received.

Cost Recovery Method. In situations where there is an extremely high degree of uncertainty regarding the ultimate cash collection on an installment sale, an even more conservative approach, the **cost recovery method**, can be used. This method defers all gross profit recognition until the cost of the item sold has been recovered. The gross profit recognition

pattern applying the cost recovery method to the Belmont Corporation situation used in Illustration 5–A3 is shown below.

Date	Cash Collected	Cost Recovery	Gross Profit Recognized
Nov. 1, 2018	\$200,000	\$200,000	\$ —0—
Nov. 1, 2019	200,000	200,000	—0—
Nov. 1, 2020	200,000	160,000	40,000
Nov. 1, 2021	200,000	—0—	200,000
Totals	<u>\$800,000</u>	<u>\$560,000</u>	<u>\$240,000</u>

The journal entries using this method are similar to those for the installment sales method except that \$40,000 in gross profit is recognized in 2020 and \$200,000 in 2021.

Make Installment Sale: November 1, 2018

Installment receivables	800,000	
Inventory.....		560,000
Deferred gross profit.....		240,000

To record installment sale.

Collect Cash: November 1, 2018, 2019, 2020, and 2021

Cash	200,000	
Installment receivables.....		200,000

To record cash collection from installment sale.

November 1, 2018 and 2019

No entry for gross profit.

November 1, 2020

Deferred gross profit	40,000	
Realized gross profit		40,000

To recognize gross profit from installment sale.

November 1, 2021

Deferred gross profit	200,000	
Realized gross profit		200,000

To recognize gross profit from installment sale.

A couple of points are apparent from these journal entries. First, the cost recovery method's initial journal entry is identical to what appears under the installment sales method. Second, when payments are received, gross profit only is recognized under the cost recovery method after all costs have been recovered.

Concept Review Exercise

Boatwright Implements, Inc., manufactures and sells farm machinery. For most of its sales, revenue and cost of sales are recognized at the delivery date. In 2018 Boatwright sold a cotton baler to a new customer for \$100,000. The cost of the baler was \$60,000. Payment will be made in five annual installments of \$20,000 each, with the first payment due in 2018. Boatwright usually does not allow its customers to pay in installments. Due to the unusual nature of the payment terms and the uncertainty of collection of the installment payments, Boatwright is considering alternative methods of recognizing profit on this sale.

INSTALLMENT SALES

Required:

Ignoring interest charges, prepare a table showing the gross profit to be recognized from 2018 through 2022 on the cotton baler sale using the following three methods:

1. Revenue recognition upon delivery

2. The installment sales method
3. The cost recovery method

Solution:

	At Delivery	Installment Sales Method (40% × cash collection)	Cost Recovery Method
2018	\$40,000	\$ 8,000	\$ 0
2019	0	8,000	0
2020	0	8,000	0
2021	0	8,000	20,000
2022	0	8,000	20,000
Totals	<u>\$40,000</u>	<u>\$40,000</u>	<u>\$40,000</u>

Industry-Specific Revenue Issues

SOFTWARE AND OTHER MULTIPLE-ELEMENT ARRANGEMENTS

The software industry is a key economic component of our economy. **Microsoft** alone reported revenues of over \$93 billion for its 2015 fiscal year. Yet, the recognition of software revenues has been a controversial accounting issue because of the way software vendors typically package their products. It is not unusual for these companies to sell multiple software elements in a bundle for a lump-sum contract price. The bundle often includes product, upgrades, post-contract customer support, and other services. The critical accounting question concerns the timing of revenue recognition.

Prior to *ASU No. 2014-09*, GAAP required that the revenue associated with a software contract that included multiple elements be allocated to the elements based on “vendor-specific objective evidence” (“VSOE”) of fair values of the individual elements. The VSOE of fair values are the sales prices of the elements when sold separately by that vendor. If VSOE didn’t exist, revenue recognition was deferred until VSOE became available or until all elements of the contract had been delivered.²⁷

For example, suppose that a vendor sold software to a customer for \$90,000. As part of the contract, the vendor promises to provide “free” technical support over the next six months. However, the vendor sells the same software without technical support for \$80,000, and the vendor sells a stand-alone six-month technical support contract for \$20,000, so those products would sell for \$100,000 if sold separately. Based on that VSOE, the software comprises 80% of the total fair values, and the technical support 20%. Therefore, the seller would recognize \$72,000 (\$90,000 × 80%) in revenue up front when the software is delivered, and defer the remaining \$18,000 (\$90,000 × 20%) and recognize it ratably over the next six months as the technical support service is provided. If VSOE was not available, the vendor couldn’t recognize any revenue initially, and instead would recognize the entire \$90,000 ratably over the six-month period.

These revenue deferrals can be material. For example, in its 2013 balance sheet, **Microsoft** reported a liability for unearned (deferred) software revenue of over \$22 billion.

In 2009, the FASB’s Emerging Issues Task Force (EITF) issued guidance to broaden the application of this basic perspective to other arrangements that involve “multiple deliverables.”²⁸ Examples of such arrangements are sales of appliances with maintenance contracts and even painting services that include sales of paint as well as labor. Other examples are products that contain both hardware and software essential to the functioning of the product, such as computers and smartphones that are always sold with an operating system. The new guidance required that sellers allocate total revenue to the various parts of a multiple-deliverable arrangement on the basis of the relative stand-alone selling prices of the parts, similar to how

Revenue for bundled software contracts was allocated based on vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE).

Revenue for multiple-deliverable contracts is allocated based on actual or estimated stand-alone selling prices.

²⁷FASB ASC 985-605-25: Software—Revenue Recognition—Recognition (previously “Software Revenue Recognition,” *Statement of Position 97-2* (New York: AICPA, 1997), p. 14).

²⁸FASB ASC 605-25-25: Revenue Recognition—Multiple-Element Arrangements—Recognition (Originally *EITF 08-1: Revenue Arrangements with Multiple Deliverables* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 2009)), and *EITF 09-3: Applicability of AICPA Statement of Position 97-2 to Certain Arrangements that Include Software Elements* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 2009)).

software contracts were handled. Sellers had to defer revenue recognition for parts that don't have stand-alone value, or whose value was contingent upon other undelivered parts. However, unlike software-only arrangements, sellers offering other multiple-deliverable contracts were allowed to estimate selling prices when they lacked VSOE from stand-alone sales prices. Using estimated selling prices allowed earlier revenue recognition than would be allowed if sellers had to have VSOE in order to recognize revenue.

For some sellers this change had a huge effect. As an example, consider **Apple Inc.** and the highly successful iPhone. Prior to the change, Apple deferred revenue on iPhones and other products because it didn't have VSOE of the sales price of future software upgrades included with the phones. This practice resulted in over \$12 billion of unearned (deferred) revenue in its balance sheet at the end of the company's 2009 fiscal year. After this accounting change, Apple recognized almost all of the revenue associated with an iPhone at the time of sale. The only amount deferred was the small amount of revenue estimated for future software upgrade rights.

The ASU requires a similar process as was used to account for revenue on contracts that include multiple deliverables. Sellers allocate a contract's transaction price to the contract's performance obligations based on the stand-alone selling prices of those performance obligations. Important differences are that the ASU provides much more guidance concerning how to identify performance obligation and eliminates the need for VSOE for software contracts.

FRANCHISE SALES

The use of franchise arrangements is popular throughout the world. Many retail outlets for fast food, restaurants, motels, and auto rental agencies are operated as franchises. In franchise arrangements, the **franchisor**, such as **McDonald's Corporation**, grants to the **franchisee**, quite often an individual, the right to sell the franchisor's products and use its name for a specified period of time. The fees to be paid by the franchisee to the franchisor usually comprise (1) an *initial franchise fee* and (2) *continuing franchise fees*.

Initial franchise fees compensate the franchisor for the right to use its name and sell its products, as well as for such services as assistance in finding a location, constructing the facilities, and training employees. The initial franchise fee usually is a fixed amount, but it may be payable in installments.

In the early 1960s and 1970s, many franchisors recognized the entire initial franchise fee as revenue in the period in which the contract was signed. However, in many cases the fee included payment for significant services to be performed after that period and the fee was collectible in installments over an extended period of time, creating uncertainty as to cash collection. GAAP was modified to require that substantially all of the initial services of the franchisor required by the franchise agreement be performed before the initial franchise fee could be recognized as revenue. If the initial franchise fee was collectible in installments, and if a reasonable estimate of bad debts could not be made, the installment sales or cost recovery methods were required.

Unlike initial franchise fees, continuing franchise fees compensate the franchisor for ongoing rights and services provided over the life of the franchise agreement. These fees sometimes are a fixed annual or monthly amount, a percentage of the volume of business done by the franchise, or a combination of both. They usually do not present any accounting difficulty and previous GAAP required that they be recognized by the franchisor as revenue over time in the periods the services are performed by the franchisor, which generally corresponded to the periods they are received. Consider the example in Illustration 5-S4.

On March 31, 2018, the Red Hot Chicken Wing Corporation entered into a franchise agreement with Thomas Keller. In exchange for an initial franchise fee of \$50,000, Red Hot will provide initial services to include the selection of a location, construction of the building, training of employees, and consulting services over several years. \$10,000 is payable on March 31, 2018, with the remaining \$40,000 payable in annual installments that include interest at an appropriate rate. In addition, the franchisee will pay continuing franchise fees of \$1,000 per month for advertising and promotion provided by Red Hot, beginning immediately after the franchise begins operations. Thomas Keller opened his Red Hot franchise for business on September 30, 2018.

Illustration 5-S4

Franchise Sales

Initial Franchise Fee. Assuming that the initial services to be performed by Red Hot subsequent to the contract signing are substantial but that collectibility of the installment note receivable is reasonably certain, the following journal entry is recorded:

March 31, 2018

Cash	10,000	
Note receivable	40,000	
Unearned franchise fee revenue		50,000
<i>To record franchise agreement and down payment.</i>		

Unearned franchise fee revenue (called “deferred franchise fee revenue” in the body of Chapter 5) is a liability. It would be reduced to zero and revenue would be recognized when the initial services have been performed. This could occur in increments or at one point in time, depending on the circumstances.²⁹ For example, in our illustration, if substantial performance was deemed to have occurred when the franchise began operations, the following entry would be recorded:

Sept. 30, 2018

Unearned franchise fee revenue	50,000	
Franchise fee revenue		50,000
<i>To recognize franchise fee revenue.</i>		

If collectibility of the installment note receivable is uncertain and there is no basis for estimating uncollectible amounts, the September 30 entry would record a credit to deferred franchise fee revenue, which is then recognized as being earned using either the installment sales or cost recovery methods.

Continuing Franchise Fees. Continuing franchise fee revenue is recognized on a monthly basis as follows:

Cash (or accounts receivable)	1,000	
Service revenue		1,000
<i>To recognize continuing franchise fee revenue.</i>		

Expenses incurred by the franchisor in providing these continuing franchise services should be recognized in the same periods as the service revenue.

Accounting for franchise revenue under *ASU No. 2014-09* is similar to revenue recognition under previous GAAP. To the extent that the services underlying initial franchise fees constitute separate performance obligations, revenue associated with those fees is recognized when those services have been performed. Similarly, to the extent that continuing franchise fees constitute payments for services that are provided over time, revenue recognition over time is likely to be appropriate. However, the justification for the amount and timing of revenue recognition is based on the ASU, rather than on special guidance provided for franchise arrangements. Also, *ASU 2014-09* includes new guidance for recognizing licensing revenue.

Other unique industry-specific revenue recognition situations exist besides those we have discussed. The FASB and AICPA previously issued detailed revenue recognition guidance for such industries as insurance, record and music, cable television, and motion pictures. All of that guidance was replaced by *ASU No. 2014-09*.³⁰

²⁹Franchise agreements sometimes require that any payments made to the franchisor will be refunded if the franchise fails to open. If this condition is present, it would be an important factor in deciding whether to recognize revenue before the franchise opens.

³⁰FASB ASC 944: Financial Services—Insurance (previously “Accounting and Reporting by Insurance Enterprises,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 60* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1982)); FASB ASC 928—Entertainment—Music (previously “Financial Reporting in the Record and Music Industry,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 50* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1981)); FASB ASC 922: Entertainment—Cable Television (previously “Financial Reporting by Cable Television Companies,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 51* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1981)); FASB ASC 928: Entertainment—Films (previously “Accounting by Producers or Distributors of Films,” *Statement of Position 00-2* (New York: AICPA, 2000)).

Additional Differences Between U.S. GAAP and IFRS

ASU No. 2014-09 is a converged standard, providing virtually identical guidance for U.S. GAAP and IFRS. However, prior to issuance of the ASU, there was incomplete convergence between U.S. GAAP and IFRS. In addition to differences in revenue recognition concepts discussed earlier in this appendix, key differences involved accounting for revenue on long-term contracts and multiple-deliverable arrangements. We provide an IFRS Box for each of these issues below.

International Financial Reporting Standards



Long-Term Construction Contracts. Prior to issuance of the ASU, *IAS No. 11* governed revenue recognition for long-term construction contracts.³¹ Like U.S. GAAP, that standard required the use of the percentage-of-completion method when reliable estimates can be made. However, unlike U.S. GAAP, *IAS No. 11* required the use of the cost recovery method rather than the completed contract method when reliable estimates couldn't be made.³² Under the cost recovery method, contract costs are expensed as incurred, and an offsetting amount of contract revenue is recognized to the extent that it is probable that costs will be recoverable from the customer. No gross profit is recognized until all costs have been recovered, which is why this method is also sometimes called the "zero-profit method." Note that under both the completed contract and cost recovery methods no gross profit is recognized until the contract is near completion, but revenue and construction costs will be recognized earlier under the cost recovery method than under the completed contract method. Also, under both methods an expected loss is recognized immediately.

To see this difference between the completed contract and cost recovery methods, here is a version of Illustration 5–24B that compares revenue, cost, and gross profit recognition under the two methods, as follows:

	2018	2019	2020
Completed Contract			
Construction in progress (CIP).....			900,000
Cost of construction.....		4,100,000	
Revenue from long-term contracts.....			5,000,000
<i>To record gross profit.</i>			
Cost Recovery			
Construction in progress (CIP).....			900,000
Cost of construction.....	1,500,000	1,000,000	1,600,000
Revenue from long-term contracts.....	1,500,000	1,000,000	2,500,000
<i>To record gross profit.</i>			

Revenue recognition occurs earlier under the cost recovery method than under the completed contract method, but gross profit recognition occurs near the end of the contract for both methods. As a result, gross profit as a percentage of revenue differs between the two methods at various points in the life of the contract.

³¹"Construction Contracts," *International Accounting Standard No. 11* (IASCF), as amended, effective January 1, 2011.



³²Earlier in this appendix we referred to the "cost recovery method" in a different circumstance—when a company had already delivered a product to a customer but had to delay gross profit recognition until a point after delivery because of an inability to make reliable estimates of uncollectible accounts. In that case, gross profit only could be recognized after costs had been recovered (and cash collections exceeded cost of goods sold). IFRS use of "cost recovery method" is similar, in that gross profit recognition is delayed until after cost has been recovered, but note that in this case the product is being constructed for the customer and therefore has not yet been delivered.



International Financial Reporting Standards

Multiple-Deliverable Arrangements. IFRS contained very little guidance about multiple-deliverable arrangements. *IAS No. 18* simply states that: “. . . in certain circumstances, it is necessary to apply the recognition criteria to the separately identifiable components of a single transaction in order to reflect the substance of the transaction” and gives a couple of examples.³³ Allocations of total revenue to individual components were based on fair value, with no requirements to focus on VSOE. Also, IFRS tended to encourage focus on the underlying economics of revenue transactions, so particular contractual characteristics like contingencies mattered less under IFRS than they do under U.S. GAAP.

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 5-28** What are the two general criteria that must be satisfied before a company can recognize revenue?
- Q 5-29** Explain why, in most cases, a seller recognizes revenue when it delivers its product rather than when it produces the product.
- Q 5-30** Revenue recognition for most installment sales occurs at the point of delivery of the product or service. Under what circumstances would a seller delay revenue recognition for installment sales beyond the delivery date?
- Q 5-31** Distinguish between the installment sales method and the cost recovery method of accounting for installment sales.
- Q 5-32** How does a company report deferred gross profit resulting from the use of the installment sales method in its balance sheet?
-  **IFRS Q 5-33** When percentage-of-completion accounting is not appropriate, U.S. GAAP requires the use of the completed contract method, while IFRS requires the use of the cost recovery method. Explain how the two methods affect recognition of revenue, cost of construction, and gross profit over the life of a profitable contract.
- Q 5-34** Briefly describe the guidelines for recognizing revenue from the sale of software and other multiple-deliverable arrangements.
-  **IFRS Q 5-35** Briefly describe how IFRS guidelines for recognizing revenue from multiple-deliverable arrangements differ from U.S. GAAP guidelines.
- Q 5-36** Briefly describe the guidelines provided by GAAP for the recognition of revenue by a franchisor for an initial franchise fee.

Brief Exercises



- BE 5-35** Installment sales method
On July 1, 2018, Apache Company sold a parcel of undeveloped land to a construction company for \$3,000,000. The book value of the land on Apache's books was \$1,200,000. Terms of the sale required a down payment of \$150,000 and 19 annual payments of \$150,000 plus interest at an appropriate interest rate due on each July 1 beginning in 2019. Apache has no significant obligations to perform services after the sale. How much gross profit will Apache recognize in both 2018 and 2019 applying the installment sales method?
- BE 5-36** Installment sales method
Refer to the situation described in BE 5-35. What should be the balance in the deferred gross profit account at the end of 2019 applying the installment sales method?
- BE 5-37** Cost recovery method
Refer to the situation described in BE 5-35. How much gross profit will Apache recognize in both 2018 and 2019 applying the cost recovery method?
- BE 5-38** IFRS; long-term contracts; cost recovery method
A construction company entered into a fixed-price contract to build an office building for \$20 million. Construction costs incurred during the first year were \$6 million and estimated costs to complete at the end of the year were \$9 million. The building was completed during the second year. Construction costs incurred during the



³³“Revenue,” *International Accounting Standards No. 18* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2014, par. 13.

second year were \$10 million. How much revenue, cost, and gross profit will the company recognize in the first and second year of the contract applying the cost recovery method that is required by IFRS?

BE 5-39

Revenue recognition; software contracts

Orange, Inc., sells a LearnIt-Plus software package that consists of their normal LearnIt math tutorial program along with a one-year subscription to the online LearnIt Office Hours virtual classroom. LearnIt-Plus retails for \$200. When sold separately, the LearnIt math tutorial sells for \$150, and access to the LearnIt Office Hours sells for \$100 per year. When should Orange recognize revenue for the parts of this arrangement? Would your answer change if Orange did not sell the LearnIt Office Hours separately, but believed it would price it at \$100 per year if they ever decided to do so?

BE 5-40

Revenue recognition; software contracts under IFRS



Refer to the situation described in BE 5-39. How would your answer change if Orange reported under IFRS?

BE 5-41

Revenue recognition; franchise sales

Collins, Inc., entered into a 10-year franchise agreement with an individual. For an initial franchise fee of \$40,000, Collins agrees to assist in design and construction of the franchise location and in all other necessary start-up activities. Also, in exchange for advertising and promotional services, the franchisee agrees to pay continuing franchise fees equal to 5% of revenue generated by the franchise. When should Collins recognize revenue for the initial and continuing franchise fees?

Exercises

**E 5-23**

Installment sales method

Charter Corporation, which began business in 2018, appropriately uses the installment sales method of accounting for its installment sales. The following data were obtained for sales made during 2018 and 2019:

	2018	2019
Installment sales	\$360,000	\$350,000
Cost of installment sales	234,000	245,000
Cash collections on installment sales during:		
2018	150,000	100,000
2019	—	120,000

Required:

- How much gross profit should Charter recognize in 2018 and 2019 from installment sales?
- What should be the balance in the deferred gross profit account at the end of 2018 and 2019?

E 5-24

Installment sales method; journal entries

[This is a variation of E 5-23 focusing on journal entries.]

Charter Corporation, which began business in 2018, appropriately uses the installment sales method of accounting for its installment sales. The following data were obtained for sales during 2018 and 2019:

	2018	2019
Installment sales	\$360,000	\$350,000
Cost of installment sales	234,000	245,000
Cash collections on installment sales during:		
2018	150,000	100,000
2019	—	120,000

Required:

Prepare summary journal entries for 2018 and 2019 to account for the installment sales and cash collections. The company uses the perpetual inventory system.

E 5-25

Installment sales; alternative recognition methods

On July 1, 2018, the Foster Company sold inventory to the Slate Corporation for \$300,000. Terms of the sale called for a down payment of \$75,000 and three annual installments of \$75,000 due on each July 1, beginning July 1, 2019. Each installment also will include interest on the unpaid balance applying an appropriate interest rate. The inventory cost Foster \$120,000. The company uses the perpetual inventory system.

Required:

1. Compute the amount of gross profit to be recognized from the installment sale in 2018, 2019, 2020, and 2021 if revenue was recognized upon delivery. Ignore interest charges.
2. Repeat requirement 1 applying the installment sales method.
3. Repeat requirement 1 applying the cost recovery method.

E 5-26

Journal entries;
point of delivery,
installment sales,
and cost recovery
methods

[This is a variation of E 5-25 focusing on journal entries.]

On July 1, 2018, the Foster Company sold inventory to the Slate Corporation for \$300,000. Terms of the sale called for a down payment of \$75,000 and three annual installments of \$75,000 due on each July 1, beginning July 1, 2019. Each installment also will include interest on the unpaid balance applying an appropriate interest rate. The inventory cost Foster \$120,000. The company uses the perpetual inventory system.

Required:

1. Prepare the necessary journal entries for 2018 and 2019 assuming revenue recognition upon delivery. Ignore interest charges.
2. Repeat requirement 1 applying the installment sales method.
3. Repeat requirement 1 applying the cost recovery method.

E 5-27

Installment sales
and cost recovery
methods; solve
for unknowns

Wolf Computer Company began operations in 2018. The company allows customers to pay in installments for many of its products. Installment sales for 2018 were \$1,000,000. If revenue is recognized at the point of delivery, \$600,000 in gross profit would be recognized in 2018. If the company instead uses the cost recovery method, \$100,000 in gross profit would be recognized in 2018.

Required:

1. What was the amount of cash collected on installment sales in 2018?
2. What amount of gross profit would be recognized if the company uses the installment sales method?

E 5-28

Installment sales;
default and
repossession

Sanchez Development Company uses the installment sales method to account for some of its installment sales. On October 1, 2018, Sanchez sold a parcel of land to the Kreuze Corporation for \$4 million. This amount was not considered significant relative to Sanchez's other sales during 2018. The land had cost Sanchez \$1.8 million to acquire and develop. Terms of the sale required a down payment of \$800,000 and four annual payments of \$800,000 plus interest at an appropriate interest rate, with payments due on each October 1 beginning in 2019. Kreuze paid the down payment, but on October 1, 2019, defaulted on the remainder of the contract. Sanchez repossessed the land. On the date of repossession the land had a fair value of \$1.3 million.

Required:

Prepare the necessary entries for Sanchez to record the sale, receipt of the down payment, and the default and repossession applying the installment sales method. Ignore interest charges.

E 5-29

Real estate sales;
gain recognition

On April 1, 2018, the Apex Corporation sold a parcel of underdeveloped land to the Applegate Construction Company for \$2,400,000. The book value of the land on Apex's books was \$480,000. Terms of the sale required a down payment of \$120,000 and 19 annual payments of \$120,000 plus interest at an appropriate interest rate due on each April 1 beginning in 2019. Apex has no significant obligations to perform services after the sale.

Required:

1. Prepare the necessary entries for Apex to record the sale, receipt of the down payment, and receipt of the first installment assuming that Apex is able to make a reliable estimate of possible uncollectible amounts (that is, profit is recognized upon delivery). Ignore interest charges.
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that Apex cannot make a reliable estimate of possible uncollectible amounts and decides to use the installment sales method for profit recognition.

E 5-30

FASB codification
research

Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).

Required:

Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items: Circumstances indicating when the installment method or cost recovery method is appropriate for revenue recognition.

**E 5-31**

Long-term
contracts, Cost
recovery method

Assume the same information as in E 5-18.

Required:

Determine the amount of revenue, cost, and gross profit or loss to be recognized in each of the three years under IFRS, assuming that using the percentage-of-completion method is not appropriate.

**E 5-32**

Revenue
recognition;
software

Easywrite Software Company shipped software to a customer on July 1, 2018. The arrangement with the customer also requires the company to provide technical support over the next 12 months and to ship an expected software

upgrade on January 1, 2019. The total contract price is \$243,000, and Easywrite estimates that the individual fair values of the components of the arrangement if sold separately would be as follows:

Software	\$210,000
Technical support	30,000
Upgrade	30,000

Required:

1. Determine the timing of revenue recognition for the \$243,000.
2. Assume that the \$243,000 contract price was paid on July 1, 2018. Prepare a journal entry to record the cash receipt. Disregard the cost of the items sold.

E 5-33

Multiple-deliverable arrangements

Richardson Systems sells integrated bottling manufacturing systems that involve a conveyer, a labeler, a filler, and a capper. All of this equipment is sold separately by other vendors, and the fair values of the separate equipment are as follows:

Conveyer	\$20,000
Labeler	10,000
Filler	15,000
Capper	5,000
Total	<u>\$50,000</u>

Richardson sells the integrated system for \$45,000. Each of the components is shipped separately to the customer for the customer to install.

Required:

1. Assume that each of the components can be used independently, even though Richardson sells them as an integrated system. How much revenue should be allocated to each component?
2. Now assume that the labeler, filler, and capper can't be used in production without the conveyer, and that the conveyer is the last component installed. How much revenue should be recognized at the time the conveyer is installed?

E 5-34

Multiple-deliverable arrangements under IFRS



Assume the same facts as in E 5-33, but that Richardson Systems reports under IFRS. How would your answers change? (Assume for requirement 2 that separate shipment is part of the normal course of Richardson's operations, and successful customer installation is highly probable.)

E 5-35

Revenue recognition; franchise sales

On October 1, 2018, the Submarine Sandwich Company entered into a franchise agreement with an individual. In exchange for an initial franchise fee of \$300,000, Submarine will provide initial services to the franchisee to include assistance in design and construction of the building, help in training employees, and help in obtaining financing. Ten percent of the initial franchise fee is payable on October 1, 2018, with the remaining \$270,000 payable in nine equal annual installments beginning on October 1, 2019. These installments will include interest at an appropriate rate. The franchise opened for business on January 15, 2019.

Required:

Assume that the initial services to be performed by Submarine Sandwich subsequent to October 1, 2018, are substantial and that collectibility of the installment receivable is reasonably certain. Substantial performance of the initial services is deemed to have occurred when the franchise opened. Prepare the necessary journal entries for the following dates (ignoring interest charges):

1. October 1, 2018
2. January 15, 2019

Problems

P 5-14

Income statement presentation; installment sales method (Chapters 4 and 5)

Reagan Corporation computed income from continuing operations before income taxes of \$4,200,000 for 2018. The following material items have not yet been considered in the computation of income:

1. The company sold equipment and recognized a gain of \$50,000. The equipment had been used in the manufacturing process and was replaced by new equipment.
2. In December, the company received a settlement of \$1,000,000 for a lawsuit it had filed based on antitrust violations of a competitor. The settlement was considered to be an unusual and infrequent event.

- Inventory costing \$400,000 was written off as obsolete. Material losses of this type were incurred twice in the last eight years.
- It was discovered that depreciation expense on the office building of \$50,000 per year was not recorded in either 2017 or 2018.

In addition, you learn that included in revenues is \$400,000 from installment sales made during the year. The cost of these sales is \$240,000. At year-end, \$100,000 in cash had been collected on the related installment receivables. Because of considerable uncertainty regarding the collectibility of receivables from these sales, the company's accountant should have used the installment sales method to recognize revenue and gross profit on these sales.

Also, the company's income tax rate is 40% and there were 1 million shares of common stock outstanding throughout the year.

Required:

Prepare an income statement for 2018 beginning with income from continuing operations before income taxes. Include appropriate EPS disclosures.

P 5-15

Installment sales and cost recovery methods



Ajax Company appropriately accounts for certain sales using the installment sales method. The perpetual inventory system is used. Information related to installment sales for 2018 and 2019 is as follows:

	2018	2019
Sales	\$300,000	\$400,000
Cost of sales	180,000	280,000
Customer collections on:		
2018 sales	120,000	100,000
2019 sales	—	150,000

Required:

- Calculate the amount of gross profit that would be recognized each year from installment sales.
- Prepare all necessary journal entries for each year.
- Repeat requirements 1 and 2 assuming that Ajax uses the cost recovery method to account for its installment sales.

P 5-16

Installment sales; alternative recognition methods



On August 31, 2018, the Silva Company sold merchandise to the Bendix Corporation for \$500,000. Terms of the sale called for a down payment of \$100,000 and four annual installments of \$100,000 due on each August 31, beginning August 31, 2019. Each installment also will include interest on the unpaid balance applying an appropriate interest rate. The book value of the merchandise on Silva's books on the date of sale was \$300,000. The perpetual inventory system is used. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31.

Required:

- Prepare a table showing the amount of gross profit to be recognized in each of the five years of the installment sale applying each of the following methods:
 - Point of delivery revenue recognition
 - Installment sales method
 - Cost recovery method
- Prepare journal entries for each of the five years applying the three revenue recognition methods listed in requirement 1. Ignore interest charges.
- Prepare a partial balance sheet as of the end of 2018 and 2019 listing the items related to the installment sale applying each of the three methods listed in requirement 1.

P 5-17

Installment sales and cost recovery methods



Mulcahey Builders (MB) remodels office buildings in low-income urban areas that are undergoing economic revitalization. MB typically accepts a 25% down payment when they complete a job and a note that requires that the remainder be paid in three equal installments over the next three years, plus interest. Because of the inherent uncertainty associated with receiving these payments, MB has historically used the cost recovery method to recognize revenue.

As of January 1, 2018, MB's outstanding gross installment accounts receivable (not net of deferred gross profit) consist of the following:

1. \$400,000 due from the Bluebird Motel. MB completed the Bluebird job in 2016, and estimated gross profit on that job is 25%.
2. \$150,000 due from the PitStop Gas and MiniMart. MB completed the PitStop job in 2015, and estimated gross profit on that job is 35%.

Dan Mulcahey has been considering switching from the cost recovery method to the installment sales method, because he wants to show the highest possible gross profit in 2018 and he understands that the installment sales method recognizes gross profit sooner than does the cost recovery method.

Required:

1. Calculate how much gross profit is expected to be earned on these jobs in 2018 under the cost recovery method, and how much would be earned if MB instead used the installment sales method. Ignore interest.
2. If Dan is primarily concerned about 2018, do you think he would be happy with a switch to the installment sales method? Explain.

P 5–18

Construction
accounting under
IFRS



[This is a variation of P 5–10 modified to focus on IFRS.]

Required:

Complete the requirements of P 5–10 assuming that Westgate Construction reports under IFRS and concludes that the percentage-of-completion method is not appropriate.

P 5–19

Franchise sales;
installment sales
method



Olive Branch Restaurant Corporation sells franchises throughout the western states. On January 30, 2018, the company entered into the following franchise agreement with Jim and Tammy Masters:

1. The initial franchise fee is \$1.2 million. \$200,000 is payable immediately and the remainder is due in ten, \$100,000 installments plus 10% interest on the unpaid balance each January 30, beginning January 30, 2019. The 10% interest rate is an appropriate market rate.
2. In addition to allowing the franchisee to use the franchise name for the 10-year term of the agreement, in exchange for the initial fee Olive Branch agrees to assist the franchisee in selecting a location, obtaining financing, designing and constructing the restaurant building, and training employees.
3. All of the initial down payment of \$200,000 is to be refunded by Olive Branch and the remaining obligation canceled if, for any reason, the franchisee fails to open the franchise.
4. In addition to the initial franchise fee, the franchisee is required to pay a monthly fee of 3% of franchise sales for advertising, promotion, menu planning, and other continuing services to be provided by Olive Branch over the life of the agreement. This fee is payable on the 10th of the following month.

Substantial performance of the initial services provided by Olive Branch, which are significant, is deemed to have occurred when the franchise opened on September 1, 2018. Franchise sales for the month of September 2018 were \$40,000.

Required:

1. Assuming that collectibility of the installment receivable is reasonably certain, prepare the necessary journal entries for Olive Branch on the following dates (ignore interest charges on the installment receivable and the costs of providing franchise services):
 - a. January 30, 2018
 - b. September 1, 2018
 - c. September 30, 2018
 - d. January 30, 2019
2. Assume that significant uncertainty exists as to the collection of the installment receivable and that Olive Branch elects to recognize initial franchise fee revenue using the installment sales method. Prepare the necessary journal entries for the dates listed in requirement 1 (ignore interest charges on the installment receivable and the costs of providing franchise services).
3. Examine your answer to requirement 1a of this problem (the January 30, 2018, journal entry under the installment sales method). What is the effect of that journal entry on Olive Branch's balance sheet? (Ignore cash.) Briefly explain your answer.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Judgment

Case 5–14

Revenue recognition;
installment sale

On October 1, 2018, the Marshall Company sold a large piece of machinery to the Hammond Construction Company for \$80,000. The cost of the machine was \$40,000. Hammond made a down payment of \$10,000 and agreed to pay the remaining balance in seven equal monthly installments of \$10,000, plus interest at 12% on the unpaid balance, beginning November 1.

Required:

1. Identify three alternative methods for recognizing revenue and costs for the situation described and compute the amount of gross profit that would be recognized in 2018 using each method.
2. Discuss the circumstances under which each of the three methods would be used.

IFRS Case 5–15

Comparison of revenue recognition in Sweden and the United States

Vodafone Group, Plc, headquartered in the United Kingdom, is one of the world's largest telecommunications companies. Excerpts from the revenue recognition disclosure included in its 2015 annual report are reproduced below.

Note A1: Significant accounting policies

Revenue

Revenue is recognised to the extent the Group has delivered goods or rendered services under an agreement, the amount of revenue can be measured reliably and it is probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction will flow to the Group. Revenue is measured at the fair value of the consideration received, exclusive of sales taxes and discounts.

The Group principally obtains revenue from providing the following telecommunication services: access charges, airtime usage, messaging, interconnect fees, data services and information provision, connection fees and equipment sales. Products and services may be sold separately or in bundled packages.

Revenue for access charges, airtime usage and messaging by contract customers is recognised as services are performed, with unbilled revenue resulting from services already provided accrued at the end of each period and unearned revenue from services to be provided in future periods deferred. Revenue from the sale of prepaid credit is deferred until such time as the customer uses the airtime, or the credit expires.

Revenue from interconnect fees is recognised at the time the services are performed.

Revenue from data services and information provision is recognised when the Group has performed the related service and, depending on the nature of the service, is recognised either at the gross amount billed to the customer or the amount receivable by the Group as commission for facilitating the service.

Customer connection revenue is recognised together with the related equipment revenue to the extent that the aggregate equipment and connection revenue does not exceed the fair value of the equipment delivered to the customer. Any customer connection revenue not recognised together with related equipment revenue is deferred and recognised over the period in which services are expected to be provided to the customer.

Revenue for device sales is recognised when the device is delivered to the end customer and the significant risk and rewards of ownership have transferred. For device sales made to intermediaries, revenue is recognised if the significant risks associated with the device are transferred to the intermediary and the intermediary has no general right to return the device to receive a refund. If the significant risks are not transferred, revenue recognition is deferred until sale of the device to an end customer by the intermediary or the expiry of the right of return.

In revenue arrangements including more than one deliverable, the arrangements are divided into separate units of accounting. Deliverables are considered separate units of accounting if the following two conditions are met: (1) the deliverable has value to the customer on a stand-alone basis and (2) there is evidence of the fair value of the item. The arrangement consideration is allocated to each separate unit of accounting based on its relative fair value.

IFRS Case 5–16

Comparison of revenue recognition for construction contracts

**Trueblood Accounting Case 5–17**

Revenue recognition for long-term contracts

**Trueblood Accounting Case 5–18**

Revenue recognition for multiple-deliverable contracts.

Real World Case 5–19

Revenue recognition; franchise sales

Required:

On the basis of the information the disclosures provide, compare revenue recognition under IFRS (as applied by Vodafone) with that in the United States.

ThyssenKrupp AG, headquartered in Germany, is one of the world's largest technology companies, with almost 160,000 employees worldwide and primary segments in steel, technology, and capital goods and services.

Required:

1. Access ThyssenKrupp's most recent annual report using the Internet. Find the footnote describing significant accounting policies. Indicate the methods that ThyssenKrupp uses to account for long-term construction contracts when they can and cannot make an accurate estimate of the income on a construction contract.
2. If ThyssenKrupp was a U.S. company, how would you expect its accounting for these contracts to differ?

The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion Material, can be obtained from the Deloitte Foundation at its website www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases.

Case 12.5: Aren't We Done Yet?

This case concerns the appropriate timing of revenue recognition for a long-term construction contract, including percentage-of-completion, completed contract, and zero-profit methods used pre-*ASU No. 2014-09* under U.S. GAAP and IFRS.

The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion Material, can be obtained from the Deloitte Foundation at its website www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases.

Case 14-3: Coconut Telegraph

This case concerns accounting for revenue when multiple deliverables exist within an arrangement that includes software, as well as identifying the relevant standard used pre-*ASU No. 2014-09* under U.S. GAAP and IFRS.

EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, performs automated collection, validation, indexing, and forwarding of submissions by companies and others who are required by law to file forms with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR to make the majority of their filings. (Some foreign companies file voluntarily.) Form 10-K which includes the annual report, is required to be filed on EDGAR. The SEC makes this information available on the Internet.

Required:

1. Access EDGAR on the Internet. The web address is www.sec.gov.
2. Search for **Jack in the Box, Inc.** Access the most recent 10-K filing. Search or scroll to find the financial statements and related notes.
3. Answer the following questions related to the company's revenue recognition policies:
 - a. When does the company recognize initial franchise license fee revenue?
 - b. How are continuing fees determined?
4. Repeat requirements 2 and 3 for two additional companies that you suspect also earn revenues through the sale of franchise rights. Compare their revenue recognition policies with the policies of Jack in the Box.

6

Time Value of Money Concepts

OVERVIEW

Time value of money concepts, specifically future value and present value, are essential in a variety of accounting situations. These concepts and the related computational procedures are the subjects of this chapter. Present values and future values of *single amounts* and present values and future values of *annuities* (series of equal periodic payments) are described separately but shown to be interrelated.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO6-1** Explain the difference between simple and compound interest. (p. 314)
- **LO6-2** Compute the future value of a single amount. (p. 315)
- **LO6-3** Compute the present value of a single amount. (p. 316)
- **LO6-4** Solve for either the interest rate or the number of compounding periods when present value and future value of a single amount are known. (p. 317)
- **LO6-5** Explain the difference between an ordinary annuity and an annuity due situation. (p. 323)
- **LO6-6** Compute the future value of both an ordinary annuity and an annuity due. (p. 324)
- **LO6-7** Compute the present value of an ordinary annuity, an annuity due, and a deferred annuity. (p. 325)
- **LO6-8** Solve for unknown values in annuity situations involving present value. (p. 330)
- **LO6-9** Briefly describe how the concept of the time value of money is incorporated into the valuation of bonds, long-term leases, and pension obligations. (p. 333)



© Shutterstock/Gabriel Petrescu

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

The Winning Ticket

Pedro Quezada, a former shop owner from a working-class suburb, had been in the United States for 26 years. On Monday, March 25, 2013, he walked out of a local liquor store with a lottery ticket. The next day the New Jersey resident learned he had won the \$338 million Powerball lottery, the fourth-largest jackpot in Powerball history. “I felt pure joy, just happiness,” he said. Imagine his surprise, though, when he was told that, having chosen a lump-sum payout rather than 30-year installment payments, he would get a check for “only” \$152 million. Sure, federal tax was withheld at a 25% rate and New Jersey added another 3%, but this difference was far more than the amount of the tax.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. Why was Quezada to receive \$152 million rather than the \$338 million lottery prize? (p. 326)
2. What interest rate did the state of New Jersey use to calculate the \$152 million lump-sum payment? (p. 331)
3. What are some of the accounting applications that incorporate the time value of money into valuation? (p. 334)

QUESTIONS

Basic Concepts

Time Value of Money

The key to solving the problem described in the financial reporting case is an understanding of the concept commonly referred to as the **time value of money**. This concept means that money invested today will grow to a larger dollar amount in the future. For example, \$100 invested in a savings account at your local bank yielding 6% annually will grow to \$106 in one year. The difference between the \$100 invested now—the present value of the investment—and its \$106 future value represents the time value of money.

This concept has nothing to do with the worth or buying power of those dollars. Prices in our economy can change. If the inflation rate were higher than 6%, then the \$106 you would have in the savings account actually would be worth less than the \$100 you had a year earlier. The time value of money concept concerns only the growth in the dollar amounts of money, ignoring inflation.

The concepts you learn in this chapter are useful in solving business decisions such as determining the lottery award presented in the financial reporting case. More important, the concepts are necessary when valuing assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes. Most accounting applications that incorporate the time value of money involve the concept of present value. The valuation of leases, bonds, pension obligations, and certain notes receivable and payable are a few prominent examples. It is important that you master the concepts and tools we review here as it is essential for the remainder of your accounting education.

PART A

The time value of money means that money can be invested today to earn interest and grow to a larger dollar amount in the future.

Time value of money concepts are useful in valuing several assets and liabilities.

Simple versus Compound Interest

● LO6-1

Interest is the amount of money paid or received in excess of the amount borrowed or lent.

Compound interest includes interest not only on the initial investment but also on the accumulated interest in previous periods.

Interest is the “rent” paid for the use of money for some period of time. In dollar terms, it is the amount of money paid or received in excess of the amount of money borrowed or lent. If you lend someone \$100 today and “receive” \$106 a year from now, your interest would be \$6. Interest also can be expressed as a rate at which money will grow. In this case, that rate is 6%. It is this interest that gives money its time value.

Simple interest is computed by multiplying an initial investment times both the applicable interest rate and the period of time for which the money is used. For example, simple interest earned each year on a \$1,000 investment paying 10% is \$100 ($\$1,000 \times 10\%$).

Compound interest occurs when money remains invested for multiple periods. It results in increasingly larger interest amounts for each period of the investment. The reason is that interest is then being generated not only on the initial investment amount but also on the accumulated interest earned in previous periods.

For example, Cindy Johnson invested \$1,000 in a savings account paying 10% interest *compounded* annually. How much interest will she earn each year, and what will be her investment balance after three years?

Date	Interest (Interest rate \times Outstanding balance = Interest)	Balance
Initial deposit		\$ 1,000
End of year 1	$10\% \times \$1,000 = \100	\$ 1,100
End of year 2	$10\% \times \$1,100 = \110	\$ 1,210
End of year 3	$10\% \times \$1,210 = \121	\$1,331

With compound interest at 10% annually, the \$1,000 investment would grow to **\$1,331** at the end of the three-year period. If Cindy withdrew the interest earned each year, she would earn only \$100 in interest each year (the amount of simple interest). If the investment period had been 20 years, 20 calculations would be needed. However, calculators, Excel, and compound interest tables, like those in an appendix to this textbook, make these calculations easier.

Most banks compound interest more frequently than once a year. Daily compounding is common for savings accounts. More rapid compounding has the effect of increasing the actual rate, which is called the **effective rate**, at which money grows per year. It is important to note that interest is typically stated as an annual rate regardless of the length of the compounding period involved. In situations when the compounding period is less than a year, the interest rate per compounding period is determined by dividing the annual rate by the number of periods. Assuming an annual rate of 12%:

Compounded	Interest Rate Per Compounding Period
Semiannually	$12\% \div 2 = 6\%$
Quarterly	$12\% \div 4 = 3\%$
Monthly	$12\% \div 12 = 1\%$

As an example, now let's assume Cindy Johnson invested \$1,000 in a savings account paying 10% interest *compounded* twice a year. There are two six-month periods paying interest at 5% (the annual rate divided by two periods). How much interest will she earn the first year, and what will be her investment balance at the end of the year?

Date	Interest (Interest rate \times Outstanding balance = Interest)	Balance
Initial deposit		\$ 1,000.00
After six months	$5\% \times \$1,000 = \50.00	\$ 1,050.00
End of year 1	$5\% \times \$1,050 = \52.50	\$1,102.50

The \$1,000 would grow by \$102.50, the interest earned, to **\$1,102.50**, \$2.50 more than if interest were compounded only once a year. The effective annual interest rate, often referred to as the annual *yield*, is 10.25% ($\$102.50 \div \$1,000$).

Interest rates are typically stated as annual rates.

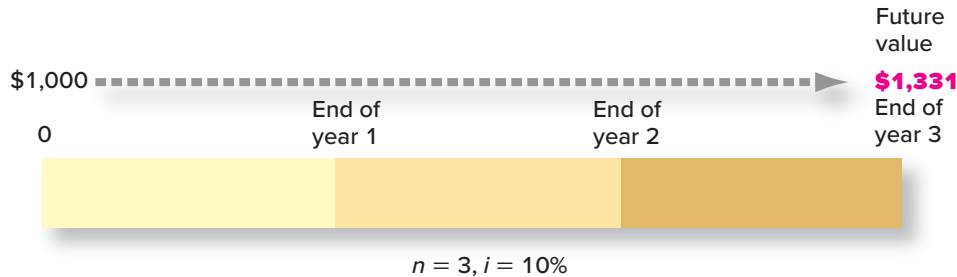
The **effective interest rate** is the rate at which money actually will grow during a full year.

Valuing a Single Cash Flow Amount

Future Value of a Single Amount

In the first Cindy example, in which \$1,000 was invested for three years at 10% compounded annually, the **\$1,331** is referred to as the **future value (FV)**. A time diagram is a useful way to visualize this relationship, with 0 indicating the date of the initial investment.

• LO6-2



The future value after one year can be calculated as $\$1,000 \times 1.10$ ($1.00 + .10$) = \$1,100. After three years, the future value is $\$1,000 \times 1.10 \times 1.10 \times 1.10 = \$1,331$. In fact, the future value of any invested amount can be determined as follows:

$$FV = I(1 + i)^n$$

where: FV = Future value of the invested amount
 I = Amount invested at the beginning of the period
 i = Interest rate
 n = Number of compounding periods

The **future value** of a single amount is the amount of money that a dollar will grow to at some point in the future.

The future value can be determined by using Table 1, Future Value of \$1, located at the end of this textbook. The table contains the future value of \$1 invested for various periods of time, n , and at various rates, i .

Use this table to determine the future value of any invested amount simply by multiplying it by the table value at the *intersection* of the column for the desired rate and the row for the number of compounding periods. Illustration 6-1 contains an excerpt from Table 1.

Periods (n)	Interest Rates (i)					
	7%	8%	9%	10%	11%	12%
1	1.07000	1.08000	1.09000	1.10000	1.11000	1.12000
2	1.14490	1.16640	1.18810	1.21000	1.23210	1.25440
3	1.22504	1.25971	1.29503	1.33100	1.36763	1.40493
4	1.31080	1.36049	1.41158	1.46410	1.51807	1.57352
5	1.40255	1.46933	1.53862	1.61051	1.68506	1.76234

Illustration 6-1

Future Value of \$1 (excerpt from Table 1 located at the end of this book)

The table shows various values of $(1 + i)^n$ for different combinations of i and n . From the table you can find the future value factor for three periods at 10% to be **1.331**. This means that \$1 invested at 10% compounded annually will grow to approximately \$1.33 in three years. So, the future value of \$1,000 invested for three years at 10% is **\$1,331**:

$$FV = I \times FV \text{ factor}$$

$$FV = \$1,000 \times 1.331^* = \$1,331$$

*Future value of \$1; $n = 3, i = 10\%$

The future value function in financial calculators or in an Excel spreadsheet calculates future values in the same way. Determining future values (and present values) electronically avoids the need for tables such as those in the appendix. But, we use the tables extensively in the book to make it easier for you to visualize how the amounts are actually determined. It's important to remember that the n in the future value formula refers to the number of compounding periods, not necessarily the number of years. For example, suppose you wanted to

know the future value *two* years from today of \$1,000 invested at 12% with *quarterly* compounding. The number of periods is therefore eight, and the compounding rate is 3% (12% annual rate divided by four, the number of quarters in a year). The future value factor from Table 1 is 1.26677, so the future value is \$1,266.77 (\$1,000 \times 1.26677).¹

Present Value of a Single Amount

LO6-3

The present value of a single amount is today's equivalent to a particular amount in the future.

The example used to illustrate future value reveals that \$1,000 invested today is equivalent to \$1,100 received after one year, \$1,210 after two years, or \$1,331 after three years, assuming 10% interest compounded annually. Thus, the **\$1,000** investment (I) is the **present value (PV)** of the single sum of \$1,331 to be received at the end of three years. It is also the present value of \$1,210 to be received in two years or \$1,100 in one year.

Remember that the future value of a present amount is the present amount *times* $(1 + i)^n$. Logically, then, that computation can be reversed to find the *present value* of a future amount to be the future amount *divided* by $(1 + i)^n$. We substitute PV for I (invested amount) in the future value formula above.

$$FV = PV(1 + i)^n$$

$$PV = \frac{FV}{(1 + i)^n}$$

In our example,

$$PV = \frac{\$1,331}{(1 + .10)^3} = \frac{\$1,331}{1.331} = \text{\textbf{\$1,000}}$$

Of course, dividing by $(1 + i)^n$ is the same as multiplying by its reciprocal, $1/(1 + i)^n$.

$$PV = \$1,331 \times \frac{1}{(1 + .10)^3} = \$1,331 \times .75131 = \text{\textbf{\$1,000}}$$

As with future value, these computations are simplified by using calculators, Excel, or present value tables. Table 2, Present Value of \$1, provides the solutions of $1/(1 + i)^n$ for various interest rates (*i*) and compounding periods (*n*). These amounts represent the present value of \$1 to be received at the *end* of the different periods. The table can be used to find the present value of any single amount to be received in the future by *multiplying* that amount by the value in the table that lies at the *intersection* of the column for the appropriate rate and the row for the number of compounding periods.² Illustration 6-2 contains an excerpt from Table 2.

Illustration 6-2

Present Value of \$1
(excerpt from Table 2)

Periods (<i>n</i>)	Interest Rates (<i>i</i>)					
	7%	8%	9%	10%	11%	12%
1	0.93458	0.92593	0.91743	0.90909	0.90090	0.89286
2	0.87344	0.85734	0.84168	0.82645	0.81162	0.79719
3	0.81630	0.79383	0.77218	0.75131	0.73119	0.71178
4	0.76290	0.73503	0.70843	0.68301	0.65873	0.63552
5	0.71299	0.68058	0.64993	0.62092	0.59345	0.56743

Notice that the further into the future the \$1 is to be received, the less valuable it is now. This is the essence of the concept of the time value of money. Given a choice between \$1,000 now and \$1,000 three years from now, you would choose to have the money now. If you have

¹When interest is compounded more frequently than once a year, the effective annual interest rate, or yield, can be determined using the following equation:

$$\text{Yield} = \left(1 + \frac{i}{p}\right)^p - 1$$

with *i* being the annual interest rate and *p* the number of compounding periods per year. In this example, the annual yield would be 12.55%, calculated as follows:

$$\text{Yield} = \left(1 + \frac{12}{4}\right)^4 - 1 = 1.1255 - 1 = .1255$$

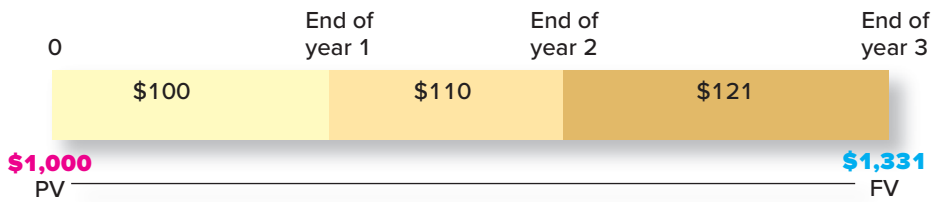
Determining the yield is useful when comparing returns on investment instruments with different compounding period length.

²The factors in Table 2 are the reciprocals of those in Table 1. For example, the future value factor for 10%, three periods is 1.331, while the present value factor is .75131. $\$1 \div 1.331 = \0.75131 , and $\$1 \div \text{\textbf{0.75131}} = \1.331 .

it now, you could put it to use. But the choice between, say, \$740 now and \$1,000 three years from now would depend on your time value of money. If your time value of money is 10%, you would choose the \$1,000 in three years, because the \$740 invested at 10% for three years would grow to only \$984.94 [$\740×1.331 (FV of \$1, $i = 10\%$, $n = 3$)]. On the other hand, if your time value of money is 11% or higher, you would prefer the \$740 now.³ Presumably, you would invest the \$740 now and have it grow to \$1,012.05 ($\740×1.36763) in three years.

Using the present value table in Illustration 6-2, the present value of \$1,000 to be received in three years assuming a time value of money of 10% is \$751.31 [$\$1,000 \times 0.75131$ (PV of \$1, $i = 10\%$ and $n = 3$)]. Because the present value of the future amount, \$1,000, is higher than \$740 we could have today, we again determine that with a time value of money of 10%, the \$1,000 in three years is preferred to the \$740 now.

In our earlier example, \$1,000 now is equivalent to \$1,331 in three years, assuming the time value of money is 10%. Graphically, the relation between the present value and the future value can be viewed this way:



While the calculation of *future value* of a single sum invested today requires the *inclusion* of compound interest, *present value* problems require the *removal* of compound interest. The process of computing present value *removes* the \$331 of interest earned over the three-year period from the future value of \$1,331, just as the process of computing future value *adds* \$331 of interest to the present value of \$1,000 to arrive at the future value of \$1,331.

As we demonstrate later in this chapter and in subsequent chapters, present value calculations are incorporated into accounting valuation much more frequently than future value.

The calculation of future value requires the addition of interest, while the calculation of present value requires the removal of interest.

Accountants use PV calculations much more frequently than FV.

Solving for Other Values When FV and PV are Known

There are four variables in the process of adjusting single cash flow amounts for the time value of money: the present value (PV), the future value (FV), the number of compounding periods (n), and the interest rate (i). If you know any three of these, the fourth can be determined. Illustration 6-3 solves for an unknown interest rate and Illustration 6-4 determines an unknown number of periods.

• LO6-4

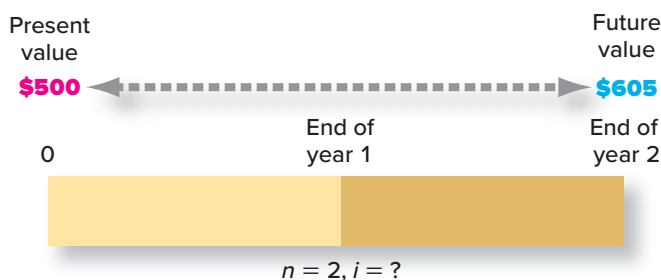
DETERMINING THE UNKNOWN INTEREST RATE

Suppose a friend asks to borrow \$500 today and promises to repay you \$605 two years from now. What is the annual interest rate you would be agreeing to?

Illustration 6-3

Determining i When PV, FV, and n are Known

The following time diagram illustrates the situation:



³The interest rate used to find the present value sometimes is called the *discount rate*, and finding the present value is sometimes called “discounting” a future amount to its present value.

The interest rate is the rate that will provide a present value of **\$500** when determining the present value of the **\$605** to be received in two years:

$$\text{\$500 (present value)} = \text{\$605 (future value)} \times ?^*$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 2, i = ?$

Rearranging algebraically, we find that the present value table factor is 0.82645.

$$\text{\$500 (present value)} \div \text{\$605 (future value)} = 0.82645^*$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 2, i = ?$

The unknown variable is the annuity amount.

When you consult the present value table, Table 2, you search row two ($n = 2$) for this value and find it in the 10% column. So the effective interest rate is 10%. Notice that the computed factor value exactly equals the table factor value.⁴

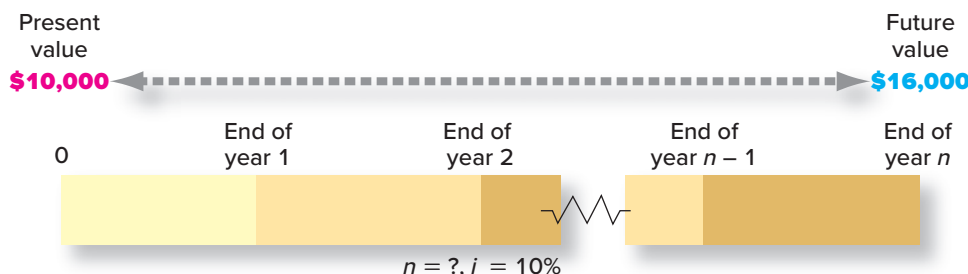
DETERMINING THE UNKNOWN NUMBER OF PERIODS

Illustration 6-4

Determining n When PV, FV, and i are Known

You want to invest \$10,000 today to accumulate \$16,000 for graduate school. If you can invest at an interest rate of 10% compounded annually, how many years will it take to accumulate the required amount?

The following time diagram illustrates the situation:



The years it will take is the value of n that will provide a present value of **\$10,000** when finding the present value of **\$16,000** at a rate of 10%:

$$\text{\$10,000 (present value)} = \text{\$16,000 (future value)} \times ?^*$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = ?, i = 10\%$

Rearranging algebraically, we find that the present value table factor is 0.625.

$$\text{\$10,000 (present value)} \div \text{\$16,000 (future value)} = 0.625^*$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = ?, i = 10\%$

The unknown variable is the interest rate.

When you consult the present value table, Table 2, you search the 10% column ($i = 10\%$) for this value and find 0.62092 in row five. So it would take approximately five years to accumulate **\$16,000** in the situation described.

⁴If the calculated factor lies between two table factors, interpolation is useful in finding the unknown value. For example, if the future value in our example is \$600, instead of \$605, the calculated PV factor is 0.83333 ($\$500 \div \600). This factor lies between the 9% factor of 0.84168 and the 10% factor of 0.82645. The total difference between these factors is .01523 ($0.84168 - 0.82645$). The difference between the calculated factor of 0.83333 and the 10% factor of 0.82645 is 0.00688. This is 45% of the difference between the 9% and 10% factors:

$$\frac{0.00688}{0.01523} = 0.45$$

Therefore, the interpolated interest rate is 9.55% ($10 - 0.45$).

Additional Consideration

Solving for the unknown factor in either of these examples could just as easily be done using the future value tables. The number of years is the value of n that will provide a present value of \$10,000 when \$16,000 is the future amount and the interest rate is 10%.

$$\$16,000 \text{ (future value)} = \$10,000 \text{ (present value)} \times ?^*$$

*Future value of \$1: $n = ?$, $i = 10\%$

Rearranging algebraically, the future value table factor is 1.6.

$$\$16,000 \text{ (future value)} \div \$10,000 \text{ (present value)} = 1.6^*$$

*Future value of \$1: $n = ?$, $i = 10\%$

When you consult the future value table, Table 1, you search the 10% column ($i = 10\%$) for this value and find 1.61051 in row five. So it would take approximately five years to accumulate \$16,000 in the situation described.

Concept Review Exercise

Using the appropriate table, answer each of the following independent questions.

1. What is the future value of \$5,000 at the end of six periods at 8% compound interest?
2. What is the present value of \$8,000 to be received eight periods from today assuming a compound interest rate of 12%?
3. What is the present value of \$10,000 to be received two *years* from today assuming an annual interest rate of 24% and *monthly* compounding?
4. If an investment of \$2,000 grew to \$2,520 in three periods, what is the interest rate at which the investment grew? Solve using both present and future value tables.
5. Approximately how many years would it take for an investment of \$5,250 to accumulate to \$15,000, assuming interest is compounded at 10% annually? Solve using both present and future value tables.

VALUING A SINGLE CASH FLOW AMOUNT

Solution:

$$1. \text{ FV} = \$5,000 \times 1.58687^* = \$7,934$$

*Future value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 8\%$ (from Table 1)

$$2. \text{ PV} = \$8,000 \times 0.40388^* = \$3,231$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 8$, $i = 12\%$ (from Table 2)

$$3. \text{ PV} = \$10,000 \times 0.62172^* = \$6,217$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 24$, $i = 2\%$ (from Table 2)

4. Using present value table,

$$\$2,000/\$2,520 = 0.7937^*$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = ?$ (from Table 2, i approximately 8%)

Using future value table,

$$\frac{\$2,520}{\$2,000} = 1.260^*$$

*Future value of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = ?$ (from Table 1, i approximately 8%)

5. Using present value table,

$$\frac{\$5,250}{\$15,000} = 0.35^*$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = ?$, $i = 10\%$ (from Table 2, n approximately 11 years)

Using future value table,

$$\frac{\$15,000}{\$5,250} = 2.857^*$$

*Future value of \$1: $n = ?$, $i = 10\%$ (from Table 1, n approximately 11 years)

Preview of Accounting Applications of Present Value Techniques—Single Cash Amount

Doug Smith switched off his television set immediately after watching the Super Bowl game and swore to himself that this would be the last year he would watch the game on his 10-year-old 24-inch TV. “Next year, a big screen 4K LED,” he promised himself. Soon after, he saw an advertisement in the local newspaper from Slim Jim’s TV and Appliance offering a Samsung 78-inch television on sale for \$1,800. And the best part of the deal was that Doug could take delivery immediately but would not have to pay the \$1,800 for one whole year! “In a year, I can easily save the \$1,800,” he thought.

In the above scenario, the seller, Slim Jim’s TV and Appliance, records a sale when the TV is delivered to Doug. How should the company value its receivable and corresponding sales revenue? We provide a solution to this question at the end of this section. The following discussion will help you to understand that solution.

Most monetary assets and monetary liabilities are valued at the present value of future cash flows.

Many assets and most liabilities are monetary in nature. **Monetary assets** include money and claims to receive money, the amount of which is fixed or determinable. Examples include cash and most receivables. **Monetary liabilities** are obligations to pay amounts of cash, the amount of which is fixed or determinable. Most liabilities are monetary. For example, if you borrow money from a bank and sign a note payable, the amount of cash to be repaid to the bank is fixed. Monetary receivables and payables are valued based on the fixed amount of cash to be received or paid in the future taking into account the time value of money. In other words, we value most receivables and payables at the present value of future cash flows, reflecting an appropriate time value of money.⁵

The example in Illustration 6–5 demonstrates this concept.

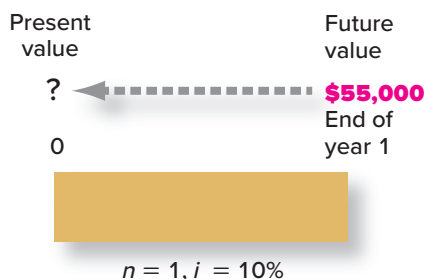
Illustration 6–5

Valuing a Note: One Payment, Explicit Interest

Explicit Interest

The Stridewell Wholesale Shoe Company manufactures athletic shoes for sale to retailers. The company recently sold a large order of shoes to Harmon Sporting Goods for \$50,000. Stridewell agreed to accept a note in payment for the shoes requiring payment of \$50,000 in one year plus interest at 10%.

How should Stridewell value the note receivable and corresponding sales revenue earned? How should Harmon value the note payable and corresponding inventory purchased? As long as the interest rate explicitly stated in the agreement properly reflects the time value of money, the answer is \$50,000, the face value of the note. It’s important to realize that this amount also equals the present value of future cash flows at 10%. Future cash flows equal **\$55,000**, the \$50,000 note itself plus \$5,000 interest (\$50,000 × 10%). Using a time diagram, it’s illustrated as follows:



In equation form, we can solve for present value as follows:

$$\text{\$55,000 (future value)} \times 0.90909^* = \text{\$50,000 (present value)}$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 1, i = 10\%$

⁵FASB ASC 835–30: Interest–Imputation of Interest (previously “Interest on Receivables and Payables,” *Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 21* (New York: AICPA, 1971)). As you will learn in Chapter 7, we value normal trade accounts receivable and accounts payable at the amounts expected to be received or paid, not the present value of those amounts. The difference between the amounts expected to be received or paid and present values often is immaterial.

By calculating the present value of \$55,000 to be received in one year, the interest of \$5,000 is removed from the future value, resulting in the appropriate note receivable/sales revenue value of \$50,000 for Stridewell and a \$50,000 note payable/inventory value for Harmon.

While most notes, loans, and mortgages explicitly state an interest rate that will properly reflect the time value of money, there can be exceptions. Consider the example in Illustration 6–6.

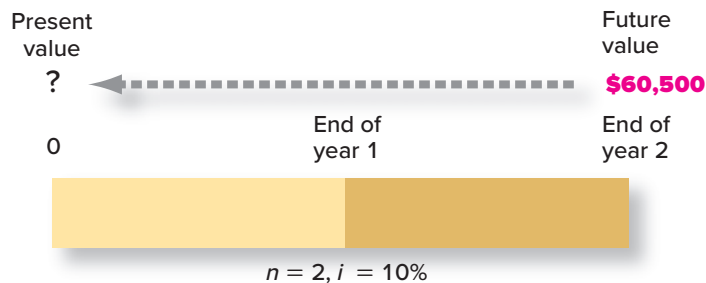
No Explicit Interest

The Stridewell Wholesale Shoe Company recently sold a large order of shoes to Harmon Sporting Goods. Terms of the sale require Harmon to sign a noninterest-bearing note of \$60,500 with payment due in two years.

Illustration 6–6

Valuing a Note: One Payment, Explicit Interest

How should Stridewell and Harmon value the note receivable/payable and corresponding sales revenue/inventory? Even though the agreement states a noninterest-bearing note, the \$60,500 does, in fact, include interest for the two-year period of the loan. We need to remove the interest portion of the \$60,500 to determine the portion that represents the sales price of the shoes. We do this by computing the present value. The following time diagram illustrates the situation assuming that a rate of 10% reflects the appropriate interest rate for a loan of this type:



Again, using the present value of \$1 table,

$$\text{\$60,500 (future value)} \times 0.82645^* = \text{\$50,000 (present value)}$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 2, i = 10\%$

Both the note receivable for Stridewell and the note payable for Harmon initially will be valued at \$50,000. The difference of \$10,500 ($\text{\$60,500} - 50,000$) represents interest revenue/expense to be recognized over the life of the note. The appropriate journal entries are illustrated in later chapters.

Now can you answer the question posed in the scenario at the beginning of this section? Assuming that a rate of 10% reflects the appropriate interest rate in this situation, Slim Jim's TV and Appliance records a receivable and sales revenue of \$1,636 which is the present value of the \$1,800 to be received from Doug Smith one year from the date of sale.

$$\text{\$1,800 (future value)} \times 0.90909^* = \text{\$1,636 (present value)}$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 1, i = 10\%$ (from Table 2)

Additional Consideration

In Illustration 6–6, if Harmon Sporting Goods had prepaid Stridewell for delivery of the shoes in two years, rather than buying now and paying later, Harmon would be viewed as providing a two-year loan to Stridewell. Assuming that Harmon pays Stridewell \$41,323, the present value of \$50,000 for two-periods at 10%, Stridewell would record interest expense and Harmon would record interest revenue of \$8,677 ($\text{\$50,000} - 41,323$) over the two-year period. When delivery occurs in two years, Stridewell records sales revenue of \$50,000 and Harmon values the inventory acquired at \$50,000.

Expected Cash Flow Approach

SFAC No. 7 provides a framework for using future cash flows in accounting measurements.

Present value measurement has long been integrated with accounting valuation and is specifically addressed in several accounting standards. Because of its increased importance, the FASB issued *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 7*, “Using Cash Flow Information and Present Value in Accounting Measurements.”⁶ This statement provides a framework for using future cash flows as the basis for accounting measurement and asserts that the objective in valuing an asset or liability using present value is to approximate the fair value of that asset or liability. Key to that objective is determining the present value of future cash flows associated with the asset or liability, *taking into account any uncertainty concerning the amounts and timing of the cash flows*. Although future cash flows in many instances are contractual and certain, the amounts and timing of cash flows are less certain in other situations.

For example, lease payments are provided in the contract between lessor and lessee. On the other hand, the future cash flows to be paid to settle a pending lawsuit may be highly uncertain. Traditionally, the way uncertainty has been considered in present value calculations has been by finding the present value of the “best estimate” of future cash flows applying an interest rate that has been adjusted to reflect the uncertainty or risk of those cash flows. With the approach described by *SFAC No. 7*, though, the adjustment for uncertainty or risk of cash flows is applied to the cash flows, not the interest rate. This new *expected cash flow approach* incorporates specific probabilities of cash flows into the analysis. Consider Illustration 6–7.

Illustration 6–7

Expected Cash Flow Approach

Dalton Corporation faces the likelihood of having to pay an uncertain amount in five years in connection with an environmental cleanup. The future cash flow estimate is in the range of \$100 million to \$300 million with the following estimated probabilities:

Loss Amount	Probability
\$100 million	10%
\$200 million	60%
\$300 million	30%

The expected cash flow, then, is \$220 million as shown below:

\$100 × 10% =	\$ 10 million
200 × 60% =	120 million
300 × 30% =	90 million
	<u>\$220 million</u>

If the company’s risk-free rate of interest is 5%, Dalton Corporation will report a liability of \$172,376,600, the present value of the expected cash outflow as follows:

\$220,000,000
× 0.78353*
<u>\$ 172,376,600</u>

*Present value of \$1, $n = 5$, $i = 5\%$ (from Table 2)

The company’s risk-free rate of interest is used when applying the expected cash flow approach to the calculation of present value.

Compare the approach described in Illustration 6–7 to the traditional approach that uses the present value of the most likely estimate of \$200 million and ignores information about cash flow probabilities.

The interest rate used to determine present value when applying the expected cash flow approach should be the company’s *risk-free rate of interest*. Uncertainty is incorporated

⁶“Using Cash Flow Information and Present Value in Accounting Measurements,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 7* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2000). Recall that Concept Statements do not directly prescribe GAAP, but instead provide structure and direction to financial accounting.

into the determination of the probability-weighted expected cash flows. In the traditional approach, uncertainty is incorporated into a risk-adjusted interest rate.

The FASB expects that the traditional approach to calculating present value will continue to be used in many situations, particularly those where future cash flows are contractual. The board also believes that the expected cash flow approach is more appropriate in more complex situations. In fact, the board has incorporated the concepts developed in *SFAC No. 7* into standards on asset retirement obligations, impairment losses, and business combinations. In Chapter 10, we illustrate the use of the expected cash flow approach as it would be applied to the measurement of an asset retirement obligation. In Chapter 13, we use the approach to measure the liability associated with a loss contingency.

Basic Annuities

The previous examples involved the receipt or payment of a single future amount. Financial instruments frequently involve multiple receipts or payments of cash. If the same amount is to be received or paid each period, the series of cash flows is referred to as an **annuity**. A common annuity encountered in practice is a loan on which periodic interest is paid in equal amounts. For example, bonds typically pay interest semiannually in an amount determined by multiplying a stated rate by a fixed principal amount. Some loans and most leases are paid in equal installments during a specified period of time.

An agreement that creates an annuity can produce either an **ordinary annuity** or an **annuity due** (sometimes referred to as an annuity in advance) situation. The first cash flow (receipt or payment) of an ordinary annuity is made one compounding period *after* the date on which the agreement begins. The final cash flow takes place on the *last* day covered by the agreement. For example, an installment note payable dated December 31, 2018, might require the debtor to make three equal annual payments, with the first payment due on December 31, 2019, and the last one on December 31, 2021. The following time diagram illustrates an ordinary annuity:

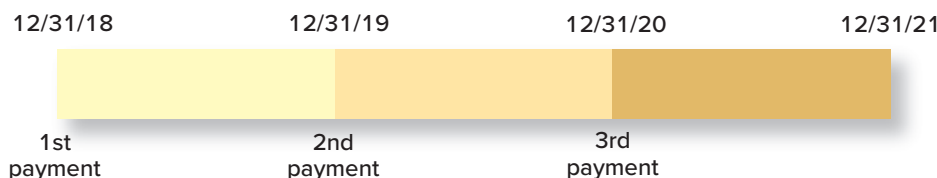


LO6–5

In an *ordinary annuity*, cash flows occur at the end of each period.

Ordinary annuity.

The first payment of an annuity due is made on the *first* day of the agreement, and the last payment is made one period *before* the end of the agreement. For example, a three-year lease of a building that begins on December 31, 2018, and ends on December 31, 2021, may require the first year's lease payment in advance on December 31, 2018. The third and last payment would take place on December 31, 2020, the beginning of the third year of the lease. The following time diagram illustrates this situation:



In an *annuity due*, cash flows occur at the beginning of each period.

Annuity due.

Future Value of an Annuity

Future Value of an Ordinary Annuity

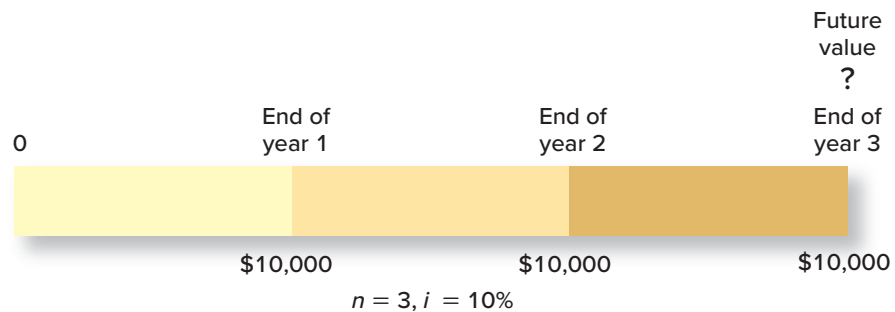
- LO6-6 Let's first consider the future value of an ordinary annuity in Illustration 6-8.

Illustration 6-8

Future Value of an Ordinary Annuity

Rita Grant wants to accumulate a sum of money to pay for graduate school. Rather than investing a single amount today that will grow to a future value, she decides to invest \$10,000 a year over the next three years in a savings account paying 10% interest compounded annually. She decides to make the first payment to the bank one year from today.

The following time diagram illustrates this ordinary annuity situation. Time 0 is the start of the first period.



Using the FV of \$1 factors from Table 1, we can calculate the future value of this annuity by calculating the future value of each of the individual payments as follows:

	Payment		FV of \$1 $i = 10\%$		Future Value (at the end of year 3)	n
First payment	\$10,000	×	1.21	=	\$ 12,100	2
Second payment	10,000	×	1.10	=	11,000	1
Third payment	10,000	×	1.00	=	10,000	0
Total			<u>3.31</u>		<u>\$33,100</u>	

In the future value of an ordinary annuity, the last cash payment will not earn any interest.

From the time diagram, we can see that the first payment has two compounding periods to earn interest. The factor used, 1.21, is the FV of \$1 invested for two periods at 10%. The second payment has one compounding period, and the last payment does not earn any interest because it is invested on the last day of the three-year annuity period. Therefore, the factor used is 1.00.

This illustration shows that it's possible to calculate the future value of the annuity by separately calculating the FV of each payment and then adding these amounts together. Fortunately, that's not necessary. Table 3, Future Value of an Ordinary Annuity of \$1, simplifies the computation by summing the individual FV of \$1 factors for various factors of n and i . Illustration 6-9 contains an excerpt from Table 3.

Illustration 6-9

Future Value of an Ordinary Annuity of \$1 (excerpt from Table 3)

Periods (n)	Interest Rates (i)					
	7%	8%	9%	10%	11%	12%
1	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000
2	2.0700	2.0800	2.0900	2.1000	2.1100	2.1200
3	3.2149	3.2464	3.2781	3.3100	3.3421	3.3744
4	4.4399	4.5061	4.5731	4.6410	4.7097	4.7793
5	5.7507	5.8666	5.9847	6.1051	6.2278	6.3528

The future value of \$1 at the end of each of three periods invested at 10% is shown in Table 3 to be **\$3.31**. We can simply multiply this factor by \$10,000 to derive the FV of our ordinary annuity (FVA):

$$\text{FVA} = \$10,000 (\text{annuity amount}) \times 3.31^* = \$33,100$$

*Future value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = 10\%$

Future Value of an Annuity Due

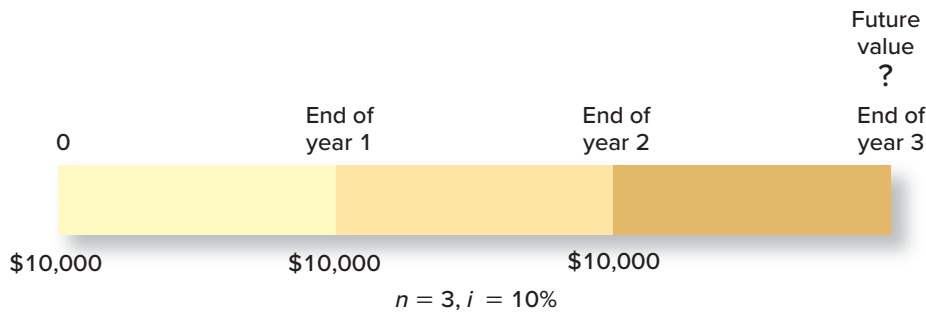
Let's modify the previous illustration to create an annuity due in Illustration 6–10.

Rita Grant wants to accumulate a sum of money to pay for graduate school. Rather than investing a single amount today that will grow to a future value, she decides to invest \$10,000 a year over the next three years in a savings account paying 10% interest compounded annually. She decides to make the first payment to the bank immediately. How much will Sally have available in her account at the end of three years?

Illustration 6–10

Future Value of an Annuity Due

The following time diagram depicts the situation. Again, note that 0 is the start of the first period.



The future value can be found by separately calculating the FV of each of the three payments and then summing those individual future values:

	Payment		FV of \$1 $i = 10\%$		Future Value (at the end of year 3)	n
First payment	\$10,000	×	1.331	=	\$ 13,310	3
Second payment	10,000	×	1.210	=	12,100	2
Third payment	10,000	×	1.100	=	11,000	1
Total			<u>3.641</u>		<u>\$36,410</u>	

In the future value of an annuity due, the last cash payment will earn interest.

And, again, this same future value can be found by using the future value of an annuity due (FVAD) factor from Table 5, Future Value of an Annuity Due of \$1 as follows:

$$\text{FVAD} = \$10,000 (\text{annuity amount}) \times 3.641^* = \$36,410$$

*Future value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = 10\%$

Of course, if *unequal* amounts are invested each year, we can't solve the problem by using the annuity tables. The future value of each payment would have to be calculated separately.

Present Value of an Annuity

Present Value of an Ordinary Annuity

You will learn in later chapters that liabilities and receivables, with the exception of certain trade receivables and payables, are reported in financial statements at their present values. Most of these financial instruments specify equal periodic interest payments or installment

• LO6–7

payments. As a result, the most common accounting applications of the time value of money involve determining present value of annuities. As in the future value applications we discussed above, an annuity can be either an ordinary annuity or an annuity due. Let's look at an ordinary annuity first.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 313

Illustration 6-11

Present Value of an
Ordinary Annuity

In Illustration 6-8, we determined that Rita Grant could accumulate \$33,100 for graduate school by investing \$10,000 at the end of each of three years at 10%. The \$33,100 is the future value of the ordinary annuity described. Another alternative is to invest one single amount at the beginning of the three-year period. (See Illustration 6-11.) This single amount will equal the present value at the beginning of the three-year period of the \$33,100 future value. It will also equal the present value of the \$10,000 three-year annuity.

Rita Grant wants to accumulate a sum of money to pay for graduate school. She wants to invest a single amount today in a savings account earning 10% interest compounded annually that is equivalent to investing \$10,000 at the end of each of the next three years.

The present value can be found by separately calculating the PV of each of the three payments and then summing those individual present values as follows:

	Payment		PV of \$1 <i>i</i> = 10%		Present Value (at the beginning of year 1)	<i>n</i>
First payment	\$10,000	×	0.90909	=	\$ 9,091	1
Second payment	10,000	×	0.82645	=	8,264	2
Third payment	10,000	×	0.75131	=	7,513	3
Total			2.48685		\$24,868	

A more efficient method of calculating present value is to use Table 4, Present Value of an Ordinary Annuity of \$1. Illustration 6-12 contains an excerpt from Table 4.

Illustration 6-12

Present Value of an
Ordinary Annuity of \$1
(excerpt from Table 4)

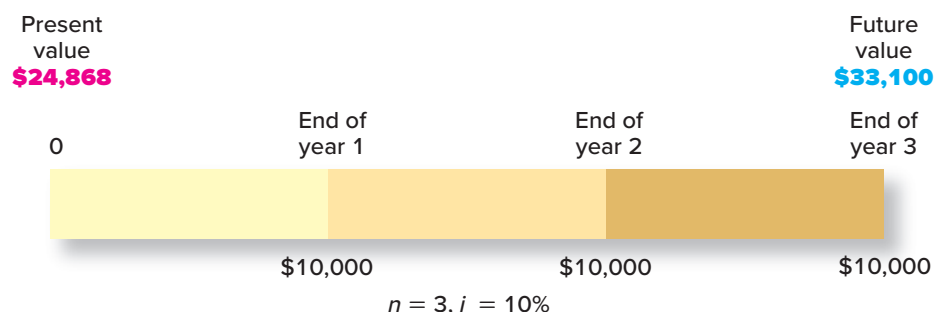
Periods (<i>n</i>)	Interest Rates (<i>i</i>)					
	7%	8%	9%	10%	11%	12%
1	0.93458	0.92593	0.91743	0.90909	0.90090	0.89286
2	1.80802	1.78326	1.75911	1.73554	1.71252	1.69005
3	2.62432	2.57710	2.53129	2.48685	2.44371	2.40183
4	3.38721	3.31213	3.23972	3.16987	3.10245	3.03735
5	4.10020	3.99271	3.88965	3.79079	3.69590	3.60478

Using Table 4, we calculate the PV of the ordinary annuity (PVA) as follows:

$$\text{PVA} = \$10,000 (\text{annuity amount}) \times \mathbf{2.48685^*} = \mathbf{\$24,868}$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = 10\%$

The relationship between the present value and the future value of the annuity can be depicted graphically as follows:



This can be interpreted in several ways.

1. \$10,000 invested at 10% at the end of each of the next three years will accumulate to \$33,100 at the end of the third year.
2. \$24,868 invested at 10% now will grow to \$33,100 after three years.
3. Someone whose time value of money is 10% would be willing to pay \$24,868 now to receive \$10,000 at the end of each of the next three years.
4. If your time value of money is 10%, you should be indifferent with respect to paying/receiving (a) \$24,868 now, (b) \$33,100 three years from now, or (c) \$10,000 at the end of each of the next three years.

Additional Consideration

We also can verify that these are the present value and future value of the same annuity by calculating the present value of a single cash amount of \$33,100 three years hence:

$$PV = \$33,100 (\text{future value}) \times 0.75131^* = \$24,868$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 3, i = 10\%$

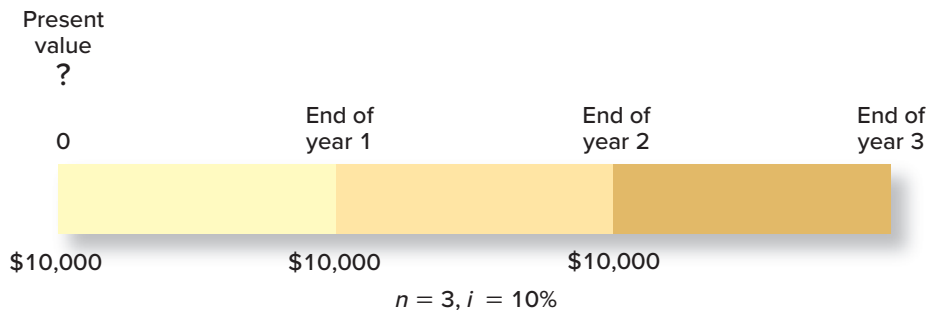
Present Value of an Annuity Due

In the previous illustration, suppose that the three equal payments of \$10,000 are to be made at the *beginning* of each of the three years. Recall from Illustration 6–10 that the future value of this annuity is \$36,410. What is the present value?

Illustration 6–13

Present Value of an Annuity Due

The following time diagram depicts this situation:



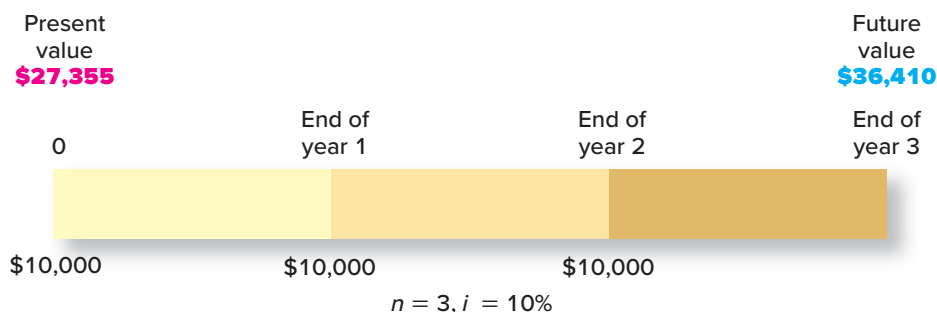
Once again, using individual PV factors of \$1 from Table 2, the PV of the annuity due can be calculated as follows:

	Payment		PV of \$1 $i = 10\%$		Present Value (at the beginning of year 1)	n
First payment	\$10,000	×	1.00000	=	\$ 10,000	0
Second payment	10,000	×	0.90909	=	9,091	1
Third payment	10,000	×	0.82645	=	8,264	2
Total			2.73554		\$27,355	

The first payment does not contain any interest since it is made on the first day of the three-year annuity period. Therefore, the factor used is 1.00. The second payment has one compounding period and the factor used of 0.90909 is the PV factor of \$1 for one period and 10%, and we need to remove two compounding periods of interest from the third payment. The factor used of 0.82645 is the PV factor of \$1 for two periods and 10%.

In the present value of an annuity due, no interest needs to be removed from the first cash payment.

The relationship between the present value and the future value of the annuity can be depicted graphically as follows:



Using Table 6, Present Value of an Annuity Due, we can more efficiently calculate the PV of the annuity due (PVAD):

$$\text{PVAD} = \$10,000 (\text{annuity amount}) \times 2.73554^* = \$27,355$$

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 3, i = 10\%$

To better understand the relationship between Tables 4 and 6, notice that the PVAD factor for three periods, 10%, from Table 6 is 2.73554. This is simply the PVA factor for two periods, 10%, of 1.73554, plus 1.0. The addition of 1.0 reflects the fact that the first payment does not require the removal of any interest.

Present Value of a Deferred Annuity

A deferred annuity exists when the first cash flow occurs more than one period after the date the agreement begins.

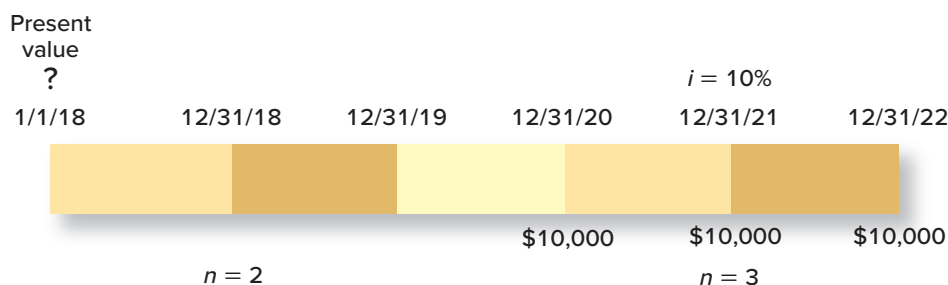
Illustration 6-14

Deferred Annuity

Accounting valuations often involve the present value of annuities in which the first cash flow is expected to occur more than one time period after the date of the agreement. As the inception of the annuity is deferred beyond a single period, this type of annuity is referred to as a **deferred annuity**.⁷

At January 1, 2018, you are considering acquiring an investment that will provide three equal payments of \$10,000 each to be received at the end of three consecutive years. However, the first payment is not expected until *December 31, 2020*. The time value of money is 10%. How much would you be willing to pay for this investment?

The following time diagram depicts this situation:



The present value of the deferred annuity can be calculated by summing the present values of the three individual cash flows, as of today.

	Payment		PV of \$1 $i = 10\%$		Present Value	n
First payment	\$10,000	×	0.75131	=	\$ 7,513	3
Second payment	10,000	×	0.68301	=	6,830	4
Third payment	10,000	×	0.62092	=	6,209	5
					<u>\$20,552</u>	

⁷The future value of a deferred annuity is the same as the future amount of an annuity not deferred. That is because there are no interest compounding periods prior to the beginning of the annuity period.

A more efficient way of calculating the present value of a deferred annuity involves a two-step process.

1. Calculate the PV of the annuity *as of the beginning of the annuity period*.
2. Reduce the single amount calculated in (1) to its present value *as of today*.

In this case, we compute the present value of the annuity as of December 31, 2019, by multiplying the annuity amount by the three-period ordinary annuity factor:

$$\text{PVA} = \$10,000 (\text{annuity amount}) \times 2.48685^* = \text{\$24,868}$$

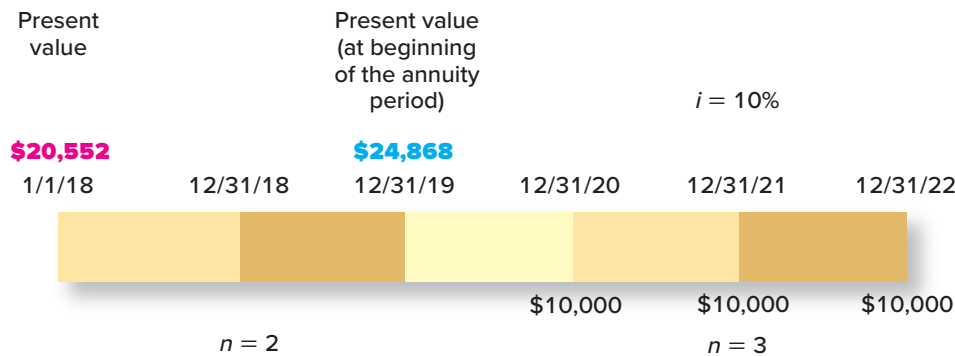
*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = 10\%$

This is the present value as of December 31, 2019. This single amount is then reduced to present value as of January 1, 2018, by making the following calculation:

$$\text{PV} = \text{\$24,868} (\text{future amount}) \times 0.82645^* = \text{\$20,552}$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 2$, $i = 10\%$

The following time diagram illustrates this two-step process:



If you recall the concepts you learned in this chapter, you might think of other ways the present value of a deferred annuity can be determined. Among them:

1. Calculate the PV of an annuity due, rather than an ordinary annuity, and then reduce that amount **three** periods rather than two:

$$\text{PVAD} = \$10,000 (\text{annuity amount}) \times 2.73554^* = \$27,355$$

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = 10\%$

This is the present value as of December 31, 2020. This single amount is then reduced to present value as of January 1, 2018 by making the following calculation:

$$\text{PV} = \$27,355 \times 0.75131^* = \text{\$20,552}$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = 10\%$

2. From Table 4, subtract the two-period PVA factor (1.73554) from the five-period PVA factor (3.79079) and multiply the difference (2.05525) by \$10,000 to get **\$20,552**.

Financial Calculators and Excel

As previously mentioned, financial calculators can be used to solve future and present value problems. For example, a Texas Instruments model BA-35 has the following pertinent keys:

N **%I** **PV** **FV** **PMT** **CPT**

These keys are defined as follows:

N = number of periods
 %I = interest rate
 PV = present value



enter: **N** 10 **I** 10
PMT -200
Output: **PV** 1,229



PV(10,10,-200)
Output: 1,229

Many professionals choose to use spreadsheet software, such as Excel, to solve time value of money problems. These spreadsheets can be used in a variety of ways. A template can be created using the formulas shown in Illustration 6–22. An alternative is to use the software’s built-in financial functions. For example, Excel has a function called PV that calculates the present value of an ordinary annuity. To use the function, you would select the pull-down menu for “Insert,” click on “Function” and choose the category called “Financial.” Scroll down to PV and double-click. You will then be asked to input the necessary variables—interest rate, the number of periods, and the payment amount.

In subsequent chapters we illustrate the use of both a calculator and Excel in addition to present value tables to solve present value calculations for selected examples and illustrations.

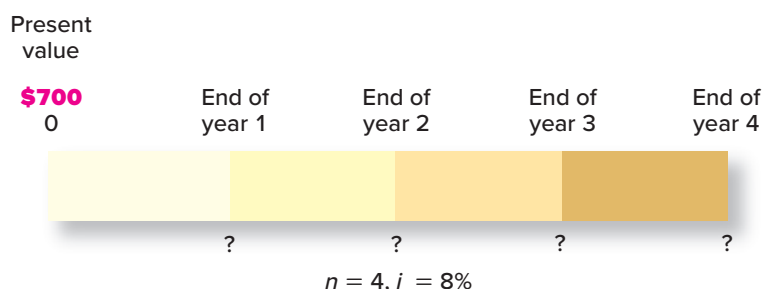
- LO6–8

In present value problems involving annuities, there are four variables: (1) present value of an ordinary annuity (PVA) or present value of an annuity due (PVAD), (2) the amount of each annuity payment, (3) the number of periods, n , and (4) the interest rate, i . If you know any three of these, the fourth can be determined.

Determining the Annuity Amount When Other Variables Are Known

Assume that you borrow \$700 from a friend and intend to repay the amount in four equal annual installments beginning one year from today. Your friend wishes to be reimbursed for the time value of money at an 8% annual rate. What is the required annual payment that must be made (the annuity amount), to repay the loan in four years?

The following time diagram illustrates the situation:



The required payment is the annuity amount that will provide a present value of \$700 when using an interest rate of 8%.

\$700 (present value) = 3.31213^* \times annuity amount

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 4$, $i = 8\%$

Rearranging algebraically, we find that the annuity amount is \$211.34.

\$700 (present value) \div 3.31213* = \$211.34 (annuity amount)

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 4$, $i = 8\%$

The unknown variable is the annuity amount.

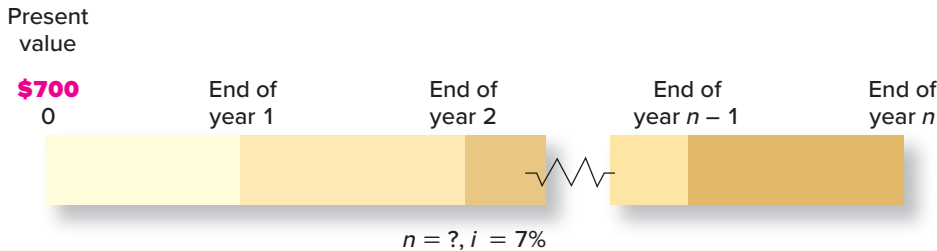
You would have to make four annual payments of \$211.34 to repay the loan. Total payments of \$845.36 ($4 \times \211.34) would include \$145.36 in interest ($\$845.36 - 700.00$).

Assume that you borrow \$700 from a friend and intend to repay the amount in equal installments of \$100 per year over a period of years. The payments will be made at the end of each year beginning one year from now. Your friend wishes to be reimbursed for the time value of money at a 7% annual rate. How many years would it take before you repaid the loan?

Illustration 6-16

Determining n When Other Variables Are Known

Once again, this is an ordinary annuity situation because the first payment takes place one year from now. The following time diagram illustrates the situation:



The number of years is the value of n that will provide a present value of \$700 when finding the present value of \$100 payments using an interest rate of 7%:

$$\text{\$700 (present value)} = \$100 (\text{annuity amount}) \times ?^*$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = ?, i = 7\%$

The unknown variable is the number of periods.

Rearranging algebraically, we find that the PVA table factor is 7.0.

$$\text{\$700 (present value)} \div \$100 (\text{annuity amount}) = 7.0^*$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = ?, i = 7\%$

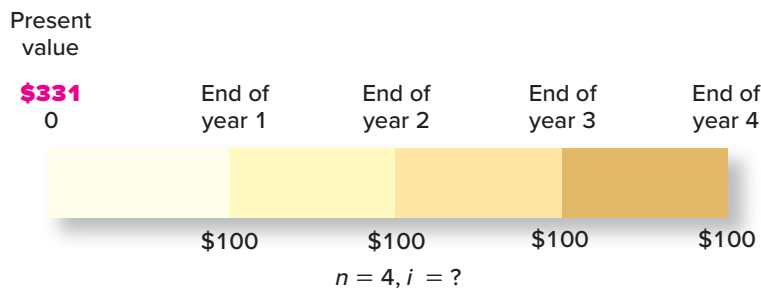
When you consult the PVA table, Table 4, you search the 7% column ($i = 7\%$) for this value and find 7.02358 in row 10. So it would take approximately 10 years to repay the loan in the situation described.

Suppose that a friend asked to borrow \$331 today (present value) and promised to repay you \$100 (the annuity amount) at the end of each of the next four years. What is the annual interest rate implicit in this agreement?

Illustration 6-17

Determining i When Other Variables Are Known

First of all, we are dealing with an ordinary annuity situation as the payments are at the end of each period. The following time diagram illustrates the situation:



The interest rate is the rate that will provide a present value of \$331 when finding the present value of the \$100 four-year ordinary annuity.

$$\text{\$331 (present value)} = \$100 (\text{annuity amount}) \times ?^*$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 4, i = ?$

The unknown variable is the interest rate.

Rearranging algebraically, we find that the PVA table factor is 3.31.

$$\text{\$331 (present value)} \div \$100 (\text{annuity amount}) = 3.31^*$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 4, i = ?$

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 313

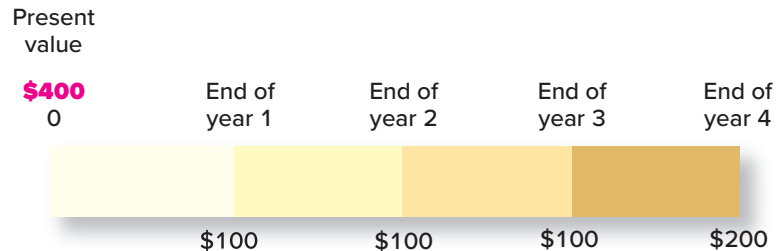
When you consult the PVA table, Table 4, you search row four ($n = 4$) for this value and find it in the 8% column. So the effective interest rate is 8%.

Illustration 6-18

Determining i When Other Variables Are Known—Unequal Cash Flows

Suppose that you borrowed \$400 from a friend and promised to repay the loan by making three annual payments of \$100 at the end of each of the next three years plus a final payment of \$200 at the end of year four. What is the interest rate implicit in this agreement?

The following time diagram illustrates the situation:



\$100 annuity has $n = 3$, $i = ?$

\$200 single payment has $n = 4$, $i = ?$

The interest rate is the rate that will provide a present value of \$400 when finding the present value of the \$100 three-year ordinary annuity plus the \$200 to be received in four years:

The unknown variable is the interest rate.

$$\text{\$400 (present value)} = \$100 (\text{annuity amount}) \times ?^* + \$200 (\text{single payment}) \times ?^\dagger$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = ?$

†Present value of \$1: $n = 4$, $i = ?$

This equation involves two unknowns and is not as easily solved as the two previous examples. One way to solve the problem is to trial-and-error the answer. For example, if we assumed i to be 9%, the total PV of the payments would be calculated as follows:

$$\text{PV} = \$100 (2.53129^*) + \$200 (0.70843^\dagger) = \$395$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = 9\%$

†Present value of \$1: $n = 4$, $i = 9\%$

Because the present value computed is less than the \$400 borrowed, using 9% removes too much interest. Recalculating PV with $i = 8\%$ results in a PV of \$405. This indicates that the interest rate implicit in the agreement is between 8% and 9%.

Concept Review Exercise

ANNUITIES

Using the appropriate table, answer each of the following independent questions.

1. What is the future value of an annuity of \$2,000 invested at the *end* of each of the next six periods at 8% interest?
2. What is the future value of an annuity of \$2,000 invested at the *beginning* of each of the next six periods at 8% interest?
3. What is the present value of an annuity of \$6,000 to be received at the *end* of each of the next eight periods assuming an interest rate of 10%?
4. What is the present value of an annuity of \$6,000 to be received at the *beginning* of each of the next eight periods assuming an interest rate of 10%?
5. Jane bought a \$3,000 audio system and agreed to pay for the purchase in 10 equal annual installments of \$408 beginning one year from today. What is the interest rate implicit in this agreement?
6. Jane bought a \$3,000 audio system and agreed to pay for the purchase in 10 equal annual installments beginning one year from today. The interest rate is 12%. What is the amount of the annual installment?

7. Jane bought a \$3,000 audio system and agreed to pay for the purchase by making nine equal annual installments beginning one year from today plus a lump-sum payment of \$1,000 at the end of 10 periods. The interest rate is 10%. What is the required annual installment?
8. Jane bought an audio system and agreed to pay for the purchase by making four equal annual installments of \$800 beginning one year from today plus a lump-sum payment of \$1,000 at the end of five years. The interest rate is 12%. What was the cost of the audio system? (Hint: What is the present value of the cash payments?)
9. Jane bought an audio system and agreed to pay for the purchase by making five equal annual installments of \$1,100 beginning four years from today. The interest rate is 12%. What was the cost of the audio system? (Hint: What is the present value of the cash payments?)

Solution:

$$1. FVA = \$2,000 \times 7.3359^* = \$14,672$$

*Future value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 8\%$ (from Table 3)

$$2. FVAD = \$2,000 \times 7.9228^* = \$15,846$$

*Future value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 8\%$ (from Table 5)

$$3. PVA = \$6,000 \times 5.33493^* = \$32,010$$

*Present value of ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 8$, $i = 10\%$ (from Table 4)

$$4. PVAD = \$6,000 \times 5.86842^* = \$35,211$$

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 8$, $i = 10\%$ (from Table 6)

$$5. \frac{\$3,000}{\$408} = 7.35^*$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 10$, $i = ?$ (from Table 4, i approximately 6%)

$$6. \text{Each annuity payment} = \frac{\$3,000}{5.65022^*} = \$531$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 10$, $i = 12\%$ (from Table 4)

$$7. \text{Each annuity payment} = \frac{\$3,000 - [\text{PV of } \$1,000(n = 10, i = 10\%)]}{5.75902^*}$$

$$\text{Each annuity payment} = \frac{\$3,000 - (\$1,000 \times .38554^\dagger)}{5.75902^*}$$

$$\text{Each annuity payment} = \frac{\$2,614}{5.75902^*} = \$454$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 9$, $i = 10\%$ (from Table 4)

†Present value of \$1: $n = 10$, $i = 10\%$ (from Table 2)

$$8. PV = \$800 \times 3.03735^* + \$1,000 \times 0.56743^\dagger = \$2,997$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 4$, $i = 12\%$ (from Table 4)

†Present value of \$1: $n = 5$, $i = 12\%$ (from Table 2)

$$9. PVA = \$1,100 \times 3.60478^* = \$3,965$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 5$, $i = 12\%$ (from Table 4)

This is the present value three years from today (the beginning of the five-year ordinary annuity). This single amount is then reduced to present value as of today by making the following calculation:

$$PV = \$3,965 \times 0.71178^\dagger = \$2,822$$

†Present value of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = 12\%$, (from Table 2)

Preview of Accounting Applications of Present Value Techniques—Annuities

The time value of money has many applications in accounting. Most of these applications involve the concept of present value. Because financial instruments typically specify equal periodic payments, these applications quite often involve annuity situations. For example, let's consider one accounting situation using both an ordinary annuity and the present value of a single amount (long-term bonds), one using an annuity due (long-term leases), and a third using a deferred annuity (pension obligations).

**FINANCIAL
Reporting Case**

Q3, p. 313

Illustration 6–19

Valuing a Long-Term Bond Liability

Valuation of Long-Term Bonds

You will learn in Chapter 14 that a long-term bond usually requires the issuing (borrowing) company to repay a specified amount at maturity and make periodic stated interest payments over the life of the bond. The *stated* interest payments are equal to the contractual stated rate multiplied by the face value of the bonds. At the date the bonds are issued (sold), the marketplace will determine the price of the bonds based on the *market* rate of interest for investments with similar characteristics. The market rate at date of issuance may not equal the bonds' stated rate in which case the price of the bonds (the amount the issuing company actually is borrowing) will not equal the bonds' face value. Bonds issued at more than face value are said to be issued at a premium, while bonds issued at less than face value are said to be issued at a discount. Consider the example in Illustration 6–19.

On June 30, 2018, Fumatsu Electric issued 10% stated rate bonds with a face amount of \$200 million. The bonds mature on June 30, 2038 (20 years). The market rate of interest for similar issues was 12%. Interest is paid semiannually (5%) on June 30 and December 31, beginning December 31, 2018. The interest payment is \$10 million (5% × \$200 million). What was the price of the bond issue? What amount of interest expense will Fumatsu record for the bonds in 2018?

To determine the price of the bonds, we calculate the present value of the 40-period annuity (40 semiannual interest payments of \$10 million) and the lump-sum payment of \$200 million paid at maturity using the semiannual market rate of interest of 6%. In equation form,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PVA} &= \$10 \text{ million (annuity amount)} \times 15.04630^* = \$150,463,000 \\ \text{PV} &= \$200 \text{ million (lump-sum)} \times 0.09722^\dagger = \underline{19,444,000} \\ \text{Price of the bond issue} &= \underline{\underline{\$169,907,000}} \end{aligned}$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 40$, $i = 6\%$

†Present value of \$1: $n = 40$, $i = 6\%$

The bonds will sell for \$169,907,000, which represents a discount of \$30,093,000 (\$200,000,000 – 169,907,000). The discount results from the difference between the semiannual stated rate of 5% and the market rate of 6%. Fumatsu records a \$169,907,000 increase in cash and a corresponding liability for bonds payable.

Interest expense for the first six months is determined by multiplying the carrying value (book value) of the bonds (\$169,907,000) by the semiannual effective rate (6%) as follows:

$$\$169,907,000 \times 6\% = \$10,194,420$$

The difference between interest expense (\$10,194,420) and interest paid (\$10,000,000) increases the carrying value of the bond liability. Interest for the second six months of the bonds' life is determined by multiplying the new carrying value by the 6% semiannual effective rate.⁸

We discuss the specific accounts used to record these transactions in Chapters 12 and 14.

Valuation of Long-Term Leases

Companies frequently acquire the use of assets by leasing rather than purchasing them. Leases usually require the payment of fixed amounts at regular intervals over the life of the lease. You will learn in Chapter 15 that certain leases are treated in a manner similar to an installment purchase by the lessee. In other words, the lessee records an asset and corresponding lease liability at the present value of the lease payments. Consider the example in Illustration 6–20.

Once again, by computing the present value of the lease payments, we remove the portion of the payments that represents interest, leaving the portion that represents payment for the asset itself. Because the first payment is due immediately, as is common for leases, this is an annuity due situation. In equation form:

$$\text{PVAD} = \$10,000 \text{ (annuity amount)} \times 9.98474^* = \$99,847$$

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 25$, $i = 10\%$

Leases require the recording of an asset and corresponding liability at the present value of future lease payments.

⁸In Chapters 12 and 14, we refer to the process of determining interest as the effective interest rate times the loan balance as the *effective interest method*.

On January 1, 2018, the Stridewell Wholesale Shoe Company signed a 25-year lease agreement for an office building. Terms of the lease call for Stridewell to make annual lease payments of **\$10,000** at the beginning of each year, with the first payment due on January 1, 2018. Assuming an interest rate of 10% properly reflects the time value of money in this situation, how should Stridewell value the asset acquired and the corresponding lease liability?

Illustration 6-20

Valuing a Long-Term Lease Liability

Stridewell initially will value the leased asset and corresponding lease liability at \$99,847.

Right-of-use asset.....	99,847	
Lease payable.....		99,847

Journal entry at the beginning of the lease.

The difference between this amount and total future cash payments of \$250,000 ($\$10,000 \times 25$) represents the interest that is implicit in this agreement. That difference is recorded as interest over the life of the lease.

Valuation of Pension Obligations

Pension plans are important compensation vehicles used by many U.S. companies. These plans are essentially forms of deferred compensation as the pension benefits are paid to employees after they retire. You will learn in Chapter 17 that some pension plans create obligations during employees' service periods that must be paid during their retirement periods. These obligations are funded during the employment period. This means companies contribute cash to pension funds annually with the intention of accumulating sufficient funds to pay employees the retirement benefits they have earned. The amounts contributed are determined using estimates of retirement benefits. The actual amounts paid to employees during retirement depend on many factors including future compensation levels and length of life. Consider Illustration 6-21.

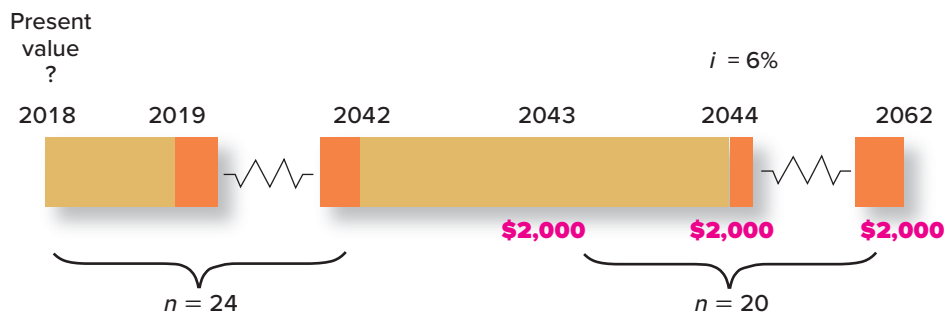
On January 1, 2018, the Stridewell Wholesale Shoe Company hired Terry Elliott. Terry is expected to work for 25 years before retirement on December 31, 2042. Annual retirement payments will be paid at the end of each year during his retirement period, expected to be 20 years. The first payment will be on December 31, 2043. During 2018 Terry earned an annual retirement benefit estimated to be **\$2,000** per year. The company plans to contribute cash to a pension fund that will accumulate to an amount sufficient to pay Terry this benefit. Assuming that Stridewell anticipates earning 6% on all funds invested in the pension plan, how much would the company have to contribute at the end of 2018 to pay for pension benefits earned in 2018?

Illustration 6-21

Valuing a Pension Obligation

To determine the required contribution, we calculate the present value on December 31, 2018, of the deferred annuity of **\$2,000** that begins on December 31, 2043, and is expected to end on December 31, 2062.

The following time diagram depicts this situation:



We can calculate the present value of the annuity using a two-step process. The first step computes the present value of the annuity as of December 31, 2042, by multiplying the annuity amount by the 20-period ordinary annuity factor.

$$PVA = \$2,000 \text{ (annuity amount)} \times 11.46992^* = \$22,940$$

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 20$, $i = 6\%$

This is the present value as of December 31, 2042. This single amount is then reduced to present value as of December 31, 2018, by a second calculation.

$$PV = \$22,940 \text{ (future amount)} \times 0.24698^* = \$5,666$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 24$, $i = 6\%$

Stridewell would have to contribute \$5,666 at the end of 2018 to fund the estimated pension benefits earned by its employee in 2018. Viewed in reverse, \$5,666 invested now at 6% will accumulate a fund balance of \$22,940 at December 31, 2042. If the fund balance remains invested at 6%, \$2,000 can be withdrawn each year for 20 years before the fund is depleted.

Among the other situations you'll encounter using present value techniques are valuing notes (Chapters 10 and 14) and other postretirement benefits (Chapter 17).

Summary of Time Value of Money Concepts

Illustration 6–22 summarizes the time value of money concepts discussed in this chapter.

Illustration 6–22

Summary of Time Value of Money Concepts

Concept	Summary	Formula	Table
Future value (FV) of \$1	The amount of money that a dollar will grow to at some point in the future.	$FV = \$1 (1 + i)^n$	1
Present value (PV) of \$1	The amount of money today that is equivalent to a given amount to be received or paid in the future.	$PV = \frac{\$1}{(1 + i)^n}$	2
Future value of an ordinary annuity (FVA) of \$1	The future value of a series of equal-sized cash flows with the first payment taking place at the end of the first compounding period.	$FVA = \frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i}$	3
Present value of an ordinary annuity (PVA) of \$1	The present value of a series of equal-sized cash flows with the first payment taking place at the end of the first compounding period.	$PVA = \frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1 + i)^n}}{i}$	4
Future value of an annuity due (FVAD) of \$1	The future value of a series of equal-sized cash flows with the first payment taking place at the beginning of the annuity period.	$FVAD = \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i} \right] \times (1 + i)$	5
Present value of an annuity due (PVAD) of \$1	The present value of a series of equal-sized cash flows with the first payment taking place at the beginning of the annuity period.	$PVAD = PVA \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1 + i)^n}}{i} \right] \times (1 + i)$	6

Financial Reporting Case Solution

1. **Why was Quezada to receive \$152 million rather than the \$338 million lottery prize?** (p. 326) Quezada chose to receive his lottery winnings in one lump payment immediately rather than in 30 installment payments. The state calculates the present value of the payments, withholds the necessary federal and state income tax, and pays Quezada the remainder.
2. **What interest rate did the state of New Jersey use to calculate the \$152 million lump-sum payment** (p. 331) Assuming equal annual installment payments beginning immediately, the amount of the payments is determined by dividing \$338 million by 30 periods:



© Shutterstock/Gabriel Petrescu

\$338 million ÷ 30 =	\$11,266,667
Less: 28% income tax	(3,154,667)
Net-of-tax payment	<u>\$ 8,112,000</u>

Because the first payment is made immediately, this is an annuity due situation. We must find the interest rate that provides a present value of \$152 million. $\$152,000,000 \div \$8,112,000$ is 18.738, the present value factor that equates the payments and their present value. Searching for that factor in row 30 of Table 6 at the end of the text, we find the factor closest to 18.738 in the 3.5% column. So, the interest rate used by the state was approximately 3.5%.

3. **What are some of the accounting applications that incorporate the time value of money into valuation?** (p. 334) Accounting applications that incorporate the time value of money techniques into valuation include the valuation of long-term notes receivable and various long-term liabilities that include bonds, notes, leases, pension obligations, and other postretirement benefits. We study these in detail in later chapters. ●

The Bottom Line

- **LO6-1** A dollar today is worth more than a dollar to be received in the future. The difference between the present value of cash flows and their future value represents the time value of money. Interest is the rent paid for the use of money over time. (p. 314)
- **LO6-2** The future value of a single amount is the amount of money that a dollar will grow to at some point in the future. It is computed by *multiplying* the single amount by $(1 + i)^n$, where i is the interest rate and n the number of compounding periods. The Future Value of \$1 table allows for the calculation of future value for any single amount by providing the factors for various combinations of i and n . (p. 315)
- **LO6-3** The present value of a single amount is the amount of money today that is equivalent to a given amount to be received or paid in the future. It is computed by *dividing* the future amount by $(1 + i)^n$. The Present Value of \$1 table simplifies the calculation of the present value of any future amount. (p. 316)
- **LO6-4** There are four variables in the process of adjusting single cash flow amounts for the time value of money: present value (PV), future value (FV), i and n . If you know any three of these, the fourth can be computed easily. (p. 317)
- **LO6-5** An annuity is a series of equal-sized cash flows occurring over equal intervals of time. An ordinary annuity exists when the cash flows occur at the end of each period. An annuity due exists when the cash flows occur at the beginning of each period. (p. 323)
- **LO6-6** The future value of an ordinary annuity (FVA) is the future value of a series of equal-sized cash flows with the first payment taking place at the end of the first compounding period. The last payment will not earn any interest since it is made at the end of the annuity period. The future value of an annuity due (FVAD) is the future value of a series of equal-sized cash flows with the first payment taking place at the beginning of the annuity period (the beginning of the first compounding period). (p. 324)
- **LO6-7** The present value of an ordinary annuity (PVA) is the present value of a series of equal-sized cash flows with the first payment taking place at the end of the first compounding period. The present value of an

annuity due (PVAD) is the present value of a series of equal-sized cash flows with the first payment taking place at the beginning of the annuity period. The present value of a deferred annuity is the present value of a series of equal-sized cash flows with the first payment taking place more than one time period after the date of the agreement. (p. 325)

- LO6-8 In present value problems involving annuities, there are four variables: PVA or PVAD, the annuity amount, the number of compounding periods (n) and the interest rate (i). If you know any three of these, you can determine the fourth. (p. 330)
- LO6-9 Most accounting applications of the time value of money involve the present values of annuities. The initial valuation of long-term bonds is determined by calculating the present value of the periodic stated interest payments and the present value of the lump-sum payment made at maturity. Certain leases require the lessee to compute the present value of future lease payments to value the leased asset and corresponding lease obligation. Also, pension plans require the payment of deferred annuities to retirees. (p. 333) ●

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 6-1** Define interest.
- Q 6-2** Explain compound interest.
- Q 6-3** What would cause the annual interest rate to be different from the annual effective rate or yield?
- Q 6-4** Identify the three items of information necessary to calculate the future value of a single amount.
- Q 6-5** Define the present value of a single amount.
- Q 6-6** Explain the difference between monetary and nonmonetary assets and liabilities.
- Q 6-7** What is an annuity?
- Q 6-8** Explain the difference between an ordinary annuity and an annuity due.
- Q 6-9** Explain the relationship between Table 2, Present Value of \$1, and Table 4, Present Value of an Ordinary Annuity of \$1.
- Q 6-10** Prepare a time diagram for the present value of a four-year ordinary annuity of \$200. Assume an interest rate of 10% per year.
- Q 6-11** Prepare a time diagram for the present value of a four-year annuity due of \$200. Assume an interest rate of 10% per year.
- Q 6-12** What is a deferred annuity?
- Q 6-13** Assume that you borrowed \$500 from a friend and promised to repay the loan in five equal annual installments beginning one year from today. Your friend wants to be reimbursed for the time value of money at an 8% annual rate. Explain how you would compute the required annual payment.
- Q 6-14** Compute the required annual payment in Question 6-13.
- Q 6-15** Explain how the time value of money concept is incorporated into the valuation of certain leases.

Brief Exercises



- BE 6-1**
Simple versus compound interest
● LO6-1
Fran Smith has two investment opportunities. The interest rate for both investments is 8%. Interest on the first investment will compound annually while interest on the second will compound quarterly. Which investment opportunity should Fran choose? Why?
- BE 6-2**
Future value; single amount
● LO6-2
Bill O'Brien would like to take his wife, Mary, on a trip three years from now to Europe to celebrate their 40th anniversary. He has just received a \$20,000 inheritance from an uncle and intends to invest it for the trip. Bill estimates the trip will cost \$23,500 and he believes he can earn 5% interest, compounded annually, on his investment. Will he be able to pay for the trip with the accumulated investment amount?
- BE 6-3**
Future value; solving for unknown; single amount
● LO6-4
Refer to the situation described in BE 6-2. Assume that the trip will cost \$26,600. What interest rate, compounded annually, must Bill earn to accumulate enough to pay for the trip?

BE 6-4

Present value;
single amount

● LO6-3

John has an investment opportunity that promises to pay him \$16,000 in four years. He could earn a 6% annual return investing his money elsewhere. What is the maximum amount he would be willing to invest in this opportunity?

BE 6-5

Present value;
solving for
unknown; single
amount

● LO6-4

Refer to the situation described in BE 6-4. Suppose the opportunity requires John to invest \$13,200 today. What is the interest rate John would earn on this investment?

BE 6-6

Future value;
ordinary annuity

● LO6-6

Leslie McCormack is in the spring quarter of her freshman year of college. She and her friends already are planning a trip to Europe after graduation in a little over three years. Leslie would like to contribute to a savings account over the next three years in order to accumulate enough money to take the trip. Assuming an interest rate of 4%, compounded quarterly, how much will she accumulate in three years by depositing \$500 at the *end* of each of the next 12 quarters, beginning three months from now?

BE 6-7

Future value;
annuity due

● LO6-6

Refer to the situation described in BE 6-6. How much will Leslie accumulate in three years by depositing \$500 at the *beginning* of each of the next 12 quarters?

BE 6-8

Present value;
ordinary annuity

● LO6-7

Canliss Mining Company borrowed money from a local bank. The note the company signed requires five annual installment payments of \$10,000 beginning one year from today. The interest rate on the note is 7%. What amount did Canliss borrow?

BE 6-9

Present value;
annuity due

● LO6-7

Refer to the situation described in BE 6-8. What amount did Canliss borrow assuming that the first \$10,000 payment was due immediately?

BE 6-10

Deferred annuity

● LO6-7

Refer to the situation described in BE 6-8. What amount did Canliss borrow assuming that the first of the five annual \$10,000 payments was not due for three years?

BE 6-11

Solve for
unknown; annuity

● LO6-8

Kingsley Toyota borrowed \$100,000 from a local bank. The loan requires Kingsley to pay 10 equal annual installments beginning one year from today. Assuming an interest rate of 8%, what is the amount of each annual installment payment?

BE 6-12

Price of a bond

● LO6-9

On December 31, 2018, Interlink Communications issued 6% stated rate bonds with a face amount of \$100 million. The bonds mature on December 31, 2048. Interest is payable annually on each December 31, beginning in 2019. Determine the price of the bonds on December 31, 2018, assuming that the market rate of interest for similar bonds was 7%.

BE 6-13

Lease payment

● LO6-9

On September 30, 2018, Ferguson Imports leased a warehouse. Terms of the lease require Ferguson to make 10 annual lease payments of \$55,000 with the first payment due immediately. Accounting standards require the company to record a lease liability when recording this type of lease. Assuming an 8% interest rate, at what amount should Ferguson record the lease liability on September 30, 2018, before the first payment is made?

Exercises

**E 6-1**

Future value;
single amount

● LO6-2

Determine the future value of the following single amounts:

	Invested Amount	Interest Rate	No. of Periods
1.	\$15,000	6%	12
2.	20,000	8	10
3.	30,000	12	20
4.	50,000	4	12

E 6-2

Future value;
single amounts

• LO6-2

Determine the future value of \$10,000 under each of the following sets of assumptions:

	Annual Rate	Period Invested	Interest Compounded
1.	10%	10 years	Semiannually
2.	12	5 years	Quarterly
3.	24	30 months	Monthly

E 6-3

Present value;
single amounts

• LO6-3

Determine the present value of the following single amounts:

	Future Amount	Interest Rate	No. of Periods
1.	\$20,000	7%	10
2.	14,000	8	12
3.	25,000	12	20
4.	40,000	10	8

E 6-4

Present value;
multiple, unequal
amounts

• LO6-3

Determine the combined present value as of December 31, 2018, of the following four payments to be received at the end of each of the designated years, assuming an annual interest rate of 8%.

Payment	Year Received
\$5,000	2019
6,000	2020
8,000	2022
9,000	2024

E 6-5

Noninterest-
bearing note;
single payment

• LO6-3

The Field Detergent Company sold merchandise to the Abel Company on June 30, 2018. Payment was made in the form of a noninterest-bearing note requiring Abel to pay \$85,000 on June 30, 2020. Assume that a 10% interest rate properly reflects the time value of money in this situation.

Required:

Calculate the amount at which Field should record the note receivable and corresponding sales revenue on June 30, 2018.

E 6-6

Solving for
unknowns; single
amounts

• LO6-4

For each of the following situations involving single amounts, solve for the unknown (?). Assume that interest is compounded annually. (i = interest rate, and n = number of years)

	Present Value	Future Value	i	n
1.	?	\$ 40,000	10%	5
2.	\$36,289	65,000	?	10
3.	15,884	40,000	8	?
4.	46,651	100,000	?	8
5.	15,376	?	7	20

E 6-7

Future value;
annuities

• LO6-6

Wiseman Video plans to make four annual deposits of \$2,000 each to a special building fund. The fund's assets will be invested in mortgage instruments expected to pay interest at 12% on the fund's balance. Using the appropriate annuity table, determine how much will be accumulated in the fund on December 31, 2021, under each of the following situations:

1. The first deposit is made on December 31, 2018, and interest is compounded annually.
2. The first deposit is made on December 31, 2017, and interest is compounded annually.
3. The first deposit is made on December 31, 2017, and interest is compounded quarterly.
4. The first deposit is made on December 31, 2017, interest is compounded annually, *and* interest earned is withdrawn at the end of each year.

E 6-8

Present value;
annuities

• LO6-7

Using the appropriate present value table and assuming a 12% annual interest rate, determine the present value on December 31, 2018, of a five-period annual annuity of \$5,000 under each of the following situations:

1. The first payment is received on December 31, 2019, and interest is compounded annually.
2. The first payment is received on December 31, 2018, and interest is compounded annually.
3. The first payment is received on December 31, 2019, and interest is compounded quarterly.

E 6-9

Solving for
unknowns;
annuities

• LO6-8

For each of the following situations involving annuities, solve for the unknown (?). Assume that interest is compounded annually and that all annuity amounts are received at the *end* of each period. (i = interest rate, and n = number of years)

	Present Value	Annuity Amount	<i>i</i>	<i>n</i>
1.	?	\$ 3,000	8%	5
2.	\$242,980	75,000	?	4
3.	161,214	20,000	9	?
4.	500,000	80,518	?	8
5.	250,000	?	10	4

E 6-10

Future value;
solving for
annuities and
single amount

● LO6-4, LO6-8

John Rider wants to accumulate \$100,000 to be used for his daughter's college education. He would like to have the amount available on December 31, 2023. Assume that the funds will accumulate in a certificate of deposit paying 8% interest compounded annually.

Required:

Answer each of the following independent questions.

1. If John were to deposit a single amount, how much would he have to invest on December 31, 2018?
2. If John were to make five equal deposits on each December 31, beginning on December 31, 2019, what is the required amount of each deposit?
3. If John were to make five equal deposits on each December 31, beginning on December 31, 2018, what is the required amount of each deposit?

E 6-11

Future and
present value

● LO6-3, LO6-6,
LO6-7

Answer each of the following independent questions.

1. Alex Meir recently won a lottery and has the option of receiving one of the following three prizes:
(1) \$64,000 cash immediately, (2) \$20,000 cash immediately and a six-period annuity of \$8,000 beginning one year from today, or (3) a six-period annuity of \$13,000 beginning one year from today. Assuming an interest rate of 6%, which option should Alex choose?
2. The Weimer Corporation wants to accumulate a sum of money to repay certain debts due on December 31, 2027. Weimer will make annual deposits of \$100,000 into a special bank account at the end of each of 10 years beginning December 31, 2018. Assuming that the bank account pays 7% interest compounded annually, what will be the fund balance after the last payment is made on December 31, 2027?

E 6-12

Deferred
annuities

● LO6-7

Lincoln Company purchased merchandise from Grandville Corp. on September 30, 2018. Payment was made in the form of a noninterest-bearing note requiring Lincoln to make six annual payments of \$5,000 on each September 30, beginning on September 30, 2021.

Required:

Calculate the amount at which Lincoln should record the note payable and corresponding purchases on September 30, 2018, assuming that an interest rate of 10% properly reflects the time value of money in this situation.

E 6-13

Solving for
unknown annuity
payment

● LO6-8

Don James purchased a new automobile for \$20,000. Don made a cash down payment of \$5,000 and agreed to pay the remaining balance in 30 monthly installments, beginning one month from the date of purchase. Financing is available at a 24% *annual* interest rate.

Required:

Calculate the amount of the required monthly payment.

E 6-14

Solving for
unknown interest
rate

● LO6-8

Lang Warehouses borrowed \$100,000 from a bank and signed a note requiring 20 annual payments of \$13,388 beginning one year from the date of the agreement.

Required:

Determine the interest rate implicit in this agreement.

E 6-15

Solving for
unknown annuity
amount

● LO6-8

Sandy Kupchack just graduated from State University with a bachelor's degree in history. During her four years at the university, Sandy accumulated \$12,000 in student loans. She asks for your help in determining the amount of the *quarterly* loan payment. She tells you that the loan must be paid back in five years and that the annual interest rate is 8%. Payments begin in three months.

Required:

Determine Sandy's quarterly loan payment.

E 6-16

Deferred
annuities; solving
for annuity
amount

● LO6-7, LO6-8

On April 1, 2018, John Vaughn purchased appliances from the Acme Appliance Company for \$1,200. In order to increase sales, Acme allows customers to pay in installments and will defer any payments for six months. John will make 18 equal monthly payments, beginning October 1, 2018. The annual interest rate implicit in this agreement is 24%.

Required:

Calculate the monthly payment necessary for John to pay for his purchases.

E 6-17

Price of a bond
● LO6-9

On September 30, 2018, the San Fillipo Corporation issued 8% stated rate bonds with a face amount of \$300 million. The bonds mature on September 30, 2038 (20 years). The market rate of interest for similar bonds was 10%. Interest is paid semiannually on March 31 and September 30.

Required:

Determine the price of the bonds on September 30, 2018.

E 6-18

Price of a bond;
interest expense
● LO6-9

On June 30, 2018, Singleton Computers issued 6% stated rate bonds with a face amount of \$200 million. The bonds mature on June 30, 2033 (15 years). The market rate of interest for similar bond issues was 5% (2.5% semi-annual rate). Interest is paid semiannually (3%) on June 30 and December 31, beginning on December 31, 2018.

Required:

1. Determine the price of the bonds on June 30, 2018.
2. Calculate the interest expense Singleton reports in 2018 for these bonds.

E 6-19

Lease payments
● LO6-9

On June 30, 2018, Fly-By-Night Airlines leased a jumbo jet from **Boeing Corporation**. The terms of the lease require Fly-By-Night to make 20 annual payments of \$400,000 on each June 30. Generally accepted accounting principles require this lease to be recorded as a liability for the present value of scheduled payments. Assume that a 7% interest rate properly reflects the time value of money in this situation.

Required:

1. At what amount should Fly-By-Night record the lease liability on June 30, 2018, assuming that the first payment will be made on June 30, 2019?
2. At what amount should Fly-By-Night record the lease liability on June 30, 2018, *before* any payments are made, assuming that the first payment will be made on June 30, 2018?

E 6-20

Lease payments;
solve for
unknown interest
rate
● LO6-8, LO6-9

On March 31, 2018, Southwest Gas leased equipment from a supplier and agreed to pay \$200,000 annually for 20 years beginning March 31, 2019. Generally accepted accounting principles require that a liability be recorded for this lease agreement for the present value of scheduled payments. Accordingly, at inception of the lease, Southwest recorded a \$2,293,984 lease liability.

Required:

Determine the interest rate implicit in the lease agreement.

E 6-21

Concepts;
terminology
● LO6-1 through
LO6-3, LO6-5

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with concepts discussed in the chapter. Pair each item from List A with the item from List B (by letter) that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
___ 1. Interest	a. First cash flow occurs one period after agreement begins
___ 2. Monetary asset	b. The rate at which money will actually grow during a year
___ 3. Compound interest	c. First cash flow occurs on the first day of the agreement
___ 4. Simple interest	d. The amount of money that a dollar will grow to
___ 5. Annuity	e. Amount of money paid/received in excess of amount borrowed/lent
___ 6. Present value of a single amount	f. Obligation to pay a sum of cash, the amount of which is fixed
___ 7. Annuity due	g. Money can be invested today and grow to a larger amount
___ 8. Future value of a single amount	h. No fixed dollar amount attached
___ 9. Ordinary annuity	i. Computed by multiplying an invested amount by the interest rate
___ 10. Effective rate or yield	j. Interest calculated on invested amount plus accumulated interest
___ 11. Nonmonetary asset	k. A series of equal-sized cash flows
___ 12. Time value of money	l. Amount of money required today that is equivalent to a given future amount
___ 13. Monetary liability	m. Claim to receive a fixed amount of money

Problems

P 6-1

Analysis of
alternatives
● LO6-3, LO6-7

Esquire Company needs to acquire a molding machine to be used in its manufacturing process. Two types of machines that would be appropriate are presently on the market. The company has determined the following:

Machine A could be purchased for \$48,000. It will last 10 years with annual maintenance costs of \$1,000 per year. After 10 years the machine can be sold for \$5,000.

Machine B could be purchased for \$40,000. It also will last 10 years and will require maintenance costs of \$4,000 in year three, \$5,000 in year six, and \$6,000 in year eight. After 10 years, the machine will have no salvage value.

Required:

Determine which machine Esquire should purchase. Assume an interest rate of 8% properly reflects the time value of money in this situation and that maintenance costs are paid at the end of each year. Ignore income tax considerations.

P 6-2

Present and future value

- LO6-6, LO6-7, LO6-9

Johnstone Company is facing several decisions regarding investing and financing activities. Address each decision independently.

- On June 30, 2018, the Johnstone Company purchased equipment from Genovese Corp. Johnstone agreed to pay Genovese \$10,000 on the purchase date and the balance in five annual installments of \$8,000 on each June 30 beginning June 30, 2019. Assuming that an interest rate of 10% properly reflects the time value of money in this situation, at what amount should Johnstone value the equipment?
- Johnstone needs to accumulate sufficient funds to pay a \$400,000 debt that comes due on December 31, 2023. The company will accumulate the funds by making five equal annual deposits to an account paying 6% interest compounded annually. Determine the required annual deposit if the first deposit is made on December 31, 2018.
- On January 1, 2018, Johnstone leased an office building. Terms of the lease require Johnstone to make 20 annual lease payments of \$120,000 beginning on January 1, 2018. A 10% interest rate is implicit in the lease agreement. At what amount should Johnstone record the lease liability on January 1, 2018, *before* any lease payments are made?

P 6-3

Analysis of alternatives

- LO6-3, LO6-7

Harding Company is in the process of purchasing several large pieces of equipment from Danning Machine Corporation. Several financing alternatives have been offered by Danning:

- Pay \$1,000,000 in cash immediately.
- Pay \$420,000 immediately and the remainder in 10 annual installments of \$80,000, with the first installment due in one year.
- Make 10 annual installments of \$135,000 with the first payment due immediately.
- Make one lump-sum payment of \$1,500,000 five years from date of purchase.

Required:

Determine the best alternative for Harding, assuming that Harding can borrow funds at an 8% interest rate.

P 6-4

Investment analysis

- LO6-3, LO6-7

John Wiggins is considering the purchase of a small restaurant. The purchase price listed by the seller is \$800,000. John has used past financial information to estimate that the net cash flows (cash inflows less cash outflows) generated by the restaurant would be as follows:

Years	Amount
1–6	\$80,000
7	70,000
8	60,000
9	50,000
10	40,000

If purchased, the restaurant would be held for 10 years and then sold for an estimated \$700,000.

Required:

Assuming that John desires a 10% rate of return on this investment, should the restaurant be purchased? (Assume that all cash flows occur at the end of the year.)

P 6-5

Investment decision; varying rates

- LO6-3, LO6-7

John and Sally Claussen are considering the purchase of a hardware store from John Duggan. The Claussens anticipate that the store will generate cash flows of \$70,000 per year for 20 years. At the end of 20 years, they intend to sell the store for an estimated \$400,000. The Claussens will finance the investment with a variable rate mortgage. Interest rates will increase twice during the 20-year life of the mortgage. Accordingly, the Claussens' desired rate of return on this investment varies as follows:

Years 1–5	8%
Years 6–10	10%
Years 11–20	12%

Required:

What is the maximum amount the Claussens should pay John Duggan for the hardware store? (Assume that all cash flows occur at the end of the year.)



P 6-6

Solving for unknowns

● LO6-3, LO6-8



The following situations should be considered independently.

1. John Jamison wants to accumulate \$60,000 for a down payment on a small business. He will invest \$30,000 today in a bank account paying 8% interest compounded annually. Approximately how long will it take John to reach his goal?
2. The Jasmine Tea Company purchased merchandise from a supplier for \$28,700. Payment was a noninterest-bearing note requiring Jasmine to make five annual payments of \$7,000 beginning one year from the date of purchase. What is the interest rate implicit in this agreement?
3. Sam Robinson borrowed \$10,000 from a friend and promised to pay the loan in 10 equal annual installments beginning one year from the date of the loan. Sam's friend would like to be reimbursed for the time value of money at a 9% annual rate. What is the annual payment Sam must make to pay back his friend?

P 6-7

Solving for unknown

● LO6-8



Lowlife Company defaulted on a \$250,000 loan that was due on December 31, 2018. The bank has agreed to allow Lowlife to repay the \$250,000 by making a series of equal annual payments beginning on December 31, 2019.

Required:

1. Calculate the required annual payment if the bank's interest rate is 10% and four payments are to be made.
2. Calculate the required annual payment if the bank's interest rate is 8% and five payments are to be made.
3. If the bank's interest rate is 10%, how many annual payments of \$51,351 would be required to repay the debt?
4. If three payments of \$104,087 are to be made, what interest rate is the bank charging Lowlife?

P 6-8

Deferred annuities

● LO6-7

On January 1, 2018, the Montgomery Company agreed to purchase a building by making six payments. The first three are to be \$25,000 each, and will be paid on December 31, 2018, 2019, and 2020. The last three are to be \$40,000 each and will be paid on December 31, 2021, 2022, and 2023. Montgomery borrowed other money at a 10% annual rate.

Required:

1. At what amount should Montgomery record the note payable and corresponding cost of the building on January 1, 2018?
2. How much interest expense on this note will Montgomery recognize in 2018?

P 6-9

Deferred annuities

● LO6-7

John Roberts is 55 years old and has been asked to accept early retirement from his company. The company has offered John three alternative compensation packages to induce John to retire.

1. \$180,000 cash payment to be paid immediately
2. A 20-year annuity of \$16,000 beginning immediately
3. A 10-year annuity of \$50,000 beginning at age 65

Required:

Which alternative should John choose assuming that he is able to invest funds at a 7% rate?

P 6-10

Noninterest-bearing note; annuity and lump-sum payment

● LO6-3, LO6-7

On January 1, 2018, The Barrett Company purchased merchandise from a supplier. Payment was a noninterest-bearing note requiring five annual payments of \$20,000 on each December 31 beginning on December 31, 2018, and a lump-sum payment of \$100,000 on December 31, 2022. A 10% interest rate properly reflects the time value of money in this situation.

Required:

Calculate the amount at which Barrett should record the note payable and corresponding merchandise purchased on January 1, 2018.

P 6-11

Solving for unknown lease payment

● LO6-8, LO6-9

Benning Manufacturing Company is negotiating with a customer for the lease of a large machine manufactured by Benning. The machine has a cash price of \$800,000. Benning wants to be reimbursed for financing the machine at an 8% annual interest rate.

Required:

1. Determine the required lease payment if the lease agreement calls for 10 equal annual payments beginning immediately.
2. Determine the required lease payment if the first of 10 annual payments will be made one year from the date of the agreement.
3. Determine the required lease payment if the first of 10 annual payments will be made immediately and Benning will be able to sell the machine to another customer for \$50,000 at the end of the 10-year lease.

P 6-12

Solving for unknown lease payment; compounding periods of varying length

● LO6-8, LO6-9

[This is a variation of P 6-11 focusing on compounding periods of varying length.]

Benning Manufacturing Company is negotiating with a customer for the lease of a large machine manufactured by Benning. The machine has a cash price of \$800,000. Benning wants to be reimbursed for financing the machine at a 12% annual interest rate over the five-year lease term.

Required:

1. Determine the required lease payment if the lease agreement calls for 10 equal semiannual payments beginning six months from the date of the agreement.
2. Determine the required lease payment if the lease agreement calls for 20 equal quarterly payments beginning immediately.
3. Determine the required lease payment if the lease agreement calls for 60 equal monthly payments beginning one month from the date of the agreement. The present value of an ordinary annuity factor for $n = 60$ and $i = 1\%$ is 44.9550.

P 6-13

Lease vs. buy alternatives

● LO6-3, LO6-7, LO6-9

Kiddy Toy Corporation needs to acquire the use of a machine to be used in its manufacturing process. The machine needed is manufactured by Lollie Corp. The machine can be used for 10 years and then sold for \$10,000 at the end of its useful life. Lollie has presented Kiddy with the following options:

1. *Buy machine.* The machine could be purchased for \$160,000 in cash. All insurance costs, which approximate \$5,000 per year, would be paid by Kiddy.
2. *Lease machine.* The machine could be leased for a 10-year period for an annual lease payment of \$25,000 with the first payment due immediately. All insurance costs will be paid for by the Lollie Corp. and the machine will revert back to Lollie at the end of the 10-year period.

Required:

Assuming that a 12% interest rate properly reflects the time value of money in this situation and that all maintenance and insurance costs are paid at the end of each year, determine which option Kiddy should choose. Ignore income tax considerations.

P 6-14

Deferred annuities; pension obligation

● LO6-7, LO6-9

Three employees of the Horizon Distributing Company will receive annual pension payments from the company when they retire. The employees will receive their annual payments for as long as they live. Life expectancy for each employee is 15 years beyond retirement. Their names, the amount of their annual pension payments, and the date they will receive their first payment are shown below:

Employee	Annual Payment	Date of First Payment
Tinkers	\$20,000	12/31/21
Evers	25,000	12/31/22
Chance	30,000	12/31/23

Required:

1. Compute the present value of the pension obligation to these three employees as of December 31, 2018. Assume an 11% interest rate.
2. The company wants to have enough cash invested at December 31, 2021, to provide for all three employees. To accumulate enough cash, they will make three equal annual contributions to a fund that will earn 11% interest compounded annually. The first contribution will be made on December 31, 2018. Compute the amount of this required annual contribution.

P 6-15

Bonds and leases; deferred annuities

● LO6-3, LO6-7, LO6-9

On the last day of its fiscal year ending December 31, 2018, the Sedgwick & Reams (S&R) Glass Company completed two financing arrangements. The funds provided by these initiatives will allow the company to expand its operations.

1. S&R issued 8% stated rate bonds with a face amount of \$100 million. The bonds mature on December 31, 2036 (20 years). The market rate of interest for similar bond issues was 9% (4.5% semiannual rate). Interest is paid semiannually (4%) on June 30 and December 31, beginning on June 30, 2019.
2. The company leased two manufacturing facilities. Lease A requires 20 annual lease payments of \$200,000 beginning on January 1, 2019. Lease B also is for 20 years, beginning January 1, 2019. Terms of the lease require 17 annual lease payments of \$220,000 beginning on January 1, 2022. Generally accepted accounting principles require both leases to be recorded as liabilities for the present value of the scheduled payments. Assume that a 10% interest rate properly reflects the time value of money for the lease obligations.

Required:

What amounts will appear in S&R's December 31, 2018, balance sheet for the bonds and for the leases?

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Ethics Case 6-1

Rate of return

● LO6-1

The Damon Investment Company manages a mutual fund composed mostly of speculative stocks. You recently saw an ad claiming that investments in the funds have been earning a rate of return of 21%. This rate seemed quite high so you called a friend who works for one of Damon's competitors. The friend told you that the 21% return figure was determined by dividing the two-year appreciation on investments in the fund by the average investment. In other words, \$100 invested in the fund two years ago would have grown to \$121 ($\$21 \div \$100 = 21\%$).

Required:

Discuss the ethics of the 21% return claim made by the Damon Investment Company.

Analysis Case 6-2

Bonus alternatives;
present value analysis

● LO6-3, LO6-7

Sally Hamilton has performed well as the chief financial officer of the Maxtech Computer Company and has earned a bonus. She has a choice among the following three bonus plans:

1. A \$50,000 cash bonus paid now.
2. A \$10,000 annual cash bonus to be paid each year over the next six years, with the first \$10,000 paid now.
3. A three-year \$22,000 annual cash bonus with the first payment due three years from now.

Required:

Evaluate the three alternative bonus plans. Sally can earn a 6% annual return on her investments.

Communication Case 6-3

Present value of annuities

● LO6-7

Harvey Alexander, an all-league professional football player, has just declared free agency. Two teams, the San Francisco 49ers and the Dallas Cowboys, have made Harvey the following offers to obtain his services:

- | | |
|----------|---|
| 49ers: | \$1 million signing bonus payable immediately and an annual salary of \$1.5 million for the five-year term of the contract. |
| Cowboys: | \$2.5 million signing bonus payable immediately and an annual salary of \$1 million for the five-year term of the contract. |

With both contracts, the annual salary will be paid in one lump sum at the end of the football season.

Required:

You have been hired as a consultant to Harvey's agent, Phil Marks, to evaluate the two contracts. Write a short letter to Phil with your recommendation including the method you used to reach your conclusion. Assume that Harvey has no preference between the two teams and that the decision will be based entirely on monetary considerations. Also assume that Harvey can invest his money and earn an 8% annual return.

Analysis Case 6-4

Present value of an annuity

● LO6-7

On a rainy afternoon two years ago, John Smiley left work early to attend a family birthday party. Eleven minutes later, a careening truck slammed into his SUV on the freeway causing John to spend two months in a coma. Now he can't hold a job or make everyday decisions and is in need of constant care. Last week, the 40-year-old Smiley won an out-of-court settlement from the truck driver's company. He was awarded payment for all medical costs and attorney fees, plus a lump-sum settlement of \$2,330,716. At the time of the accident, John was president of his family's business and earned approximately \$200,000 per year. He had anticipated working 25 more years before retirement.⁹

John's sister, an acquaintance of yours from college, has asked you to explain to her how the attorneys came up with the settlement amount. "They said it was based on his lost future income and a 7% rate of some kind," she explained. "But it was all 'legal-speak' to me."

Required:

How was the amount of the lump-sum settlement determined? Create a calculation that might help John's sister understand.

Judgment Case 6-5

Replacement decision

● LO6-3, LO6-7

Hughes Corporation is considering replacing a machine used in the manufacturing process with a new, more efficient model. The purchase price of the new machine is \$150,000 and the old machine can be sold for \$100,000. Output for the two machines is identical; they will both be used to produce the same amount of product for five years. However, the annual operating costs of the old machine are \$18,000 compared to \$10,000 for the new

⁹This case is based on actual events.

machine. Also, the new machine has a salvage value of \$25,000, but the old machine will be worthless at the end of the five years.

Required:

Should the company sell the old machine and purchase the new model? Assume that an 8% rate properly reflects the time value of money in this situation and that all operating costs are paid at the end of the year. Ignore the effect of the decision on income taxes.

Real World

Case 6–6

Zero-coupon bonds; Johnson & Johnson

● LO6–3, LO6–9

Real World Financials

Johnson & Johnson is one of the world's largest manufacturers of health care products. The company's December 31, 2015, financial statements included the following information in the long-term debt disclosure note:

	(\$ in millions) 2015
Zero-coupon convertible subordinated debentures, due 2020	\$137

The bonds were issued at the beginning of 2000. The disclosure note stated that the effective interest rate for these bonds is 3% annually. Some of the original convertible bonds have been converted into Johnson & Johnson shares of stock. The \$137 million is the present value of the bonds not converted and thus reported in the financial statements. Each individual bond has a maturity value (face amount) of \$1,000. The maturity value indicates the amount that Johnson & Johnson will pay bondholders at the beginning of 2020. Zero-coupon bonds pay no cash interest during the term to maturity. The company is “accreting” (gradually increasing) the issue price to maturity value using the bonds’ effective interest rate computed on a semiannual basis.

Required:

1. Determine the maturity value of the zero-coupon bonds that Johnson & Johnson will pay bondholders at the beginning of 2020.
2. Determine the issue price at the beginning of 2000 of a single, \$1,000 maturity-value bond.

Real World

Case 6–7

Leases;
Southwest Airlines

● LO6–3, LO6–9

Real World Financials

Southwest Airlines provides scheduled air transportation services in the United States. Like many airlines, Southwest leases many of its planes from **Boeing Company**. In its long-term debt disclosure note included in the financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2015, the company listed \$324 million in lease obligations. The existing leases had an approximate ten-year remaining life and future lease payments average approximately \$45 million per year.

Required:

1. Determine the effective interest rate the company used to determine the lease liability assuming that lease payments are made at the end of each fiscal year.
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that lease payments are made at the beginning of each fiscal year.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

● LO6-3, LO6-7
LO6-9

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com). Target leases most of its facilities.

Required:

1. Refer to disclosure note 22 following Target's financial statements. What is the amount reported for “capital” leases (shown as the present value of minimum lease payments)? What is the total of those lease payments? What accounts for the difference between the two amounts?
2. What is the total of the operating lease payments? New lease accounting guidance (discussed in Chapter 15) will require companies to report operating leases at present value as well as capital leases (now called finance leases). If Target had used the new lease accounting guidance in its 2016 financial statements, what would be the amount reported for operating leases? Hint: Assume the payments “after 2020” are to be paid evenly over a 16 years period and all payments are at the end of years indicated. Target indicates elsewhere in its financial statements that 6% is an appropriate discount rate for its leases.

**Air France–KLM
Case**

● LO6–9



Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com.) The presentation of financial statements often differs between U.S. GAAP and IFRS, particularly with respect to the balance sheet.

Using IFRS, companies discount their pension obligations using an interest rate approximating the average interest rate on high quality corporate bonds. U.S. GAAP allows much more flexibility in the choice of a discount rate. By both sets of standards, the rate used is reported in the disclosure note related to pensions.

Required:

Refer to AF's Note 31.2 "Description of the actuarial assumptions and related sensitivities."

1. What are the average discount rates used to measure AF's (a) 10-15 year and (b) 15 year and more pension obligations in the "euro" geographic zone in 2015?
2. If the rate used had been 1% (100 basis points) higher, what change would have occurred in the pension obligation in 2015? What if the rate had been 1% lower?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

7

Cash and Receivables

OVERVIEW

We begin our study of assets by looking at cash and receivables—the two assets typically listed first in a balance sheet. For cash, the key issues are internal control and classification in the balance sheet. For receivables, the key issues are valuation and the related income statement effects of transactions involving accounts receivable and notes receivable.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO7-1** Define what is meant by internal control and describe some key elements of an internal control system for cash receipts and disbursements. (p. 352)
- **LO7-2** Explain the possible restrictions on cash and their implications for classification in the balance sheet. (p. 353)
- **LO7-3** Distinguish between the gross and net methods of accounting for cash discounts. (p. 357)
- **LO7-4** Describe the accounting treatment for merchandise returns. (p. 358)
- **LO7-5** Describe the accounting treatment of anticipated uncollectible accounts receivable. (p. 362)
- **LO7-6** Describe how to estimate the allowance for uncollectible accounts. (p. 364)
- **LO7-7** Describe the accounting treatment of notes receivable. (p. 368)
- **LO7-8** Differentiate between the use of receivables in financing arrangements accounted for as a secured borrowing and those accounted for as a sale. (p. 374)
- **LO7-9** Describe the variables that influence a company's investment in receivables and calculate the key ratios used by analysts to monitor that investment. (p. 382)
- **LO7-10** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to cash and receivables. (pp. 355, 373, 381, and 392)



© Rob Daly / age fotostock

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Bad Debt Trouble

Your roommate, Karen Buckley, was searching for some information about her future employer, **Community Health Systems**. Karen, a nursing major, noticed an article online titled “CHS Missed Big in Q4.” “This doesn’t look good,” Karen said. “This article says my new employer’s provision for bad debts jumped by over \$200 million. Does that mean those patients haven’t paid? What is CHS doing for cash—I want my paycheck to clear!” You look over the article and start to explain. “First of all, the term *provision* just means expense. The company uses what is called the allowance method to account for bad debts. It looks like CHS recorded more in expense and increased the allowance for uncollect-

ible accounts. That doesn’t necessarily mean they have a cash flow problem.” Karen was not happy with your answer. “So, it isn’t that the patients haven’t paid, it’s that they aren’t going to pay? How does CHS know what they are going to do? And here is another article saying that CHS is securitizing its receivables to get more cash. Does that mean they are making the receivables more secure?” “Okay,” you offer, “let’s start at the beginning.”

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. Explain the allowance method of accounting for bad debts. (p. 362)
2. What approaches might CHS have used to arrive at the \$200 million increase in its bad debt provision? (p. 364)
3. Are there any alternatives to the allowance method? (p. 365)
4. What does it mean for CHS to securitize its receivables? (p. 376)

QUESTIONS

In the earlier chapters of this text, we studied the underlying measurement and reporting concepts for the basic financial statements presented to external decision makers. Now we turn our attention to the elements of those financial statements. Specifically, we further explore the elements of the balance sheet, and also consider the income statement effects of transactions involving these elements. We first address assets, then liabilities, and finally shareholders’ equity. This chapter focuses on the current assets cash and cash equivalents and receivables.

Cash and Cash Equivalents

Cash includes currency and coins, balances in checking accounts, and items acceptable for deposit in these accounts, such as checks and money orders received from customers. These forms of cash represent amounts readily available to pay off debt or to use in operations, without any legal or contractual restriction.

Managers typically invest temporarily idle cash to earn interest on those funds rather than keep an unnecessarily large checking account. These amounts are essentially equivalent to cash because they can quickly become available for use as cash. So, short-term, highly liquid investments that can be readily converted to cash with little risk of loss are viewed as

PART A

A company's policy concerning which short-term, highly liquid investments it classifies as *cash equivalents* should be described in a disclosure note.

Illustration 7-1

Disclosure of Cash Equivalents—Walgreen Boots Alliance, Inc.

Real World Financials

Credit and debit card receivables often are included in cash equivalents.

cash equivalents. For financial reporting we make no distinction between cash in the form of currency or bank account balances and amounts held in cash-equivalent investments.

Cash equivalents include money market funds, treasury bills, and commercial paper. To be classified as cash equivalents, these investments must have a maturity date no longer than three months *from the date of purchase*. Companies are permitted flexibility in designating cash equivalents and must establish individual policies regarding which short-term, highly liquid investments are classified as cash equivalents. A company's policy should be consistent with the usual motivation for acquiring these investments. The policy should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.

Illustration 7-1 shows a note from the 2015 annual report of **Walgreen Boots Alliance, Inc.**, which operates the largest drugstore chain in the United States.

Note 2: Summary of Major Accounting Policies (in part) Cash and Cash Equivalents

Cash and cash equivalents include cash on hand and all highly liquid investments with an original maturity of three months or less. Credit and debit card receivables from banks, which generally settle within two to seven business days, of \$165 million and \$229 million were included in cash and cash equivalents at August 31, 2015 and 2014, respectively.

The measurement and reporting of cash and cash equivalents are largely straightforward because cash generally presents no measurement problems. It is the standard medium of exchange and the basis for measuring assets and liabilities. Cash and cash equivalents usually are combined and reported as a single amount in the balance sheet. However, cash that is not available for use in current operations because it is restricted for a special purpose usually is classified in one of the noncurrent asset categories. Restricted cash is discussed later in this chapter.

All assets must be safeguarded against possible misuse. However, cash is the most liquid asset and the asset most easily stolen. As a result, a system of internal control of cash is a key accounting issue.

Internal Control

● LO7-1

The success of any business enterprise depends on an effective system of **internal control**. Internal control refers to a company's plan to (a) encourage adherence to company policies and procedures, (b) promote operational efficiency, (c) minimize errors and theft, and (d) enhance the reliability and accuracy of accounting data. From a financial accounting perspective, the focus is on controls intended to improve the accuracy and reliability of accounting information and to safeguard the company's assets.

Recall from our discussion in Chapter 1 that Section 404 of the *Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002* requires that companies document their internal controls and assess their adequacy. The Public Company Accounting Oversight Board AS 2201 further requires the auditor to express its own opinion on whether the company has maintained effective internal control over financial reporting.

Many companies have incurred significant costs in an effort to comply with the requirements of Section 404.¹ A framework for designing an internal control system is provided by the *Committee of Sponsoring Organizations (COSO)* of the Treadway Commission.² Formed in 1985, the organization is dedicated to improving the quality of financial reporting through, among other things, effective internal controls.

COSO defines internal control as a process, undertaken by an entity's board of directors, management and other personnel, designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of objectives in the following categories:

- Effectiveness and efficiency of operations

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires a company to document and assess its internal controls. Auditors express an opinion on management's assessment.

¹PCAOB AS 2201 emphasizes audit efficiency with a focused, risk-based testing approach that is intended to reduce the total costs of 404 compliance.

²The sponsoring organizations include the AICPA, the Financial Executives International, the Institute of Internal Auditors, the American Accounting Association, and the Institute of Management Accountants.

- Reliability of financial reporting
- Compliance with applicable laws and regulations³

Internal Control Procedures—Cash Receipts

As cash is the most liquid of all assets, a well-designed and functioning system of internal control must surround all cash transactions. **Separation of duties** is critical. Individuals that have physical responsibility for assets should not also have access to accounting records. So, employees who handle cash should not be involved in or have access to accounting records nor be involved in the reconciliation of cash book balances to bank balances.

Employees involved in recordkeeping should not also have physical access to the assets.

Consider the cash receipt process. Most nonretail businesses receive payment for goods by checks received through the mail. An approach to internal control over cash receipts that utilizes separation of duties might include the following steps:

1. Employee A opens the mail each day and prepares a multicopy listing of all checks including the amount and payor's name.
2. Employee B takes the checks, along with one copy of the listing, to the person responsible for depositing the checks in the company's bank account.
3. A second copy of the check listing is sent to the accounting department, where Employee C enters receipts into the accounting records.

Good internal control helps ensure accuracy as well as safeguard against theft. The bank-generated deposit slip can be compared with the check listing to verify that the amounts received were also deposited. And, because the person opening the mail is not the person who maintains the accounting records, it's impossible for one person to steal checks and alter accounting records to cover up their theft.

Internal Control Procedures—Cash Disbursements

Proper controls for cash disbursements should be designed to prevent any unauthorized payments and ensure that disbursements are recorded in the proper accounts. Important elements of a cash disbursement control system include:

1. All disbursements, other than very small disbursements from petty cash, should be made by check. This provides a permanent record of all disbursements.
2. All expenditures should be *authorized* before a check is prepared. For example, a vendor invoice for the purchase of inventory should be compared with the purchase order and receiving report to ensure the accuracy of quantity, price, part numbers, and so on. This process should include verification of the proper ledger accounts to be debited.
3. Checks should be signed only by authorized individuals.

Once again, separation of duties is important. Responsibilities for check signing, check writing, check mailing, cash disbursement documentation, and recordkeeping should be separated whenever possible. That way, a single person can't write checks to himself and disguise that theft as a payment to an approved vendor.

An important part of any system of internal control of cash is the periodic reconciliation of book balances and bank balances to the correct balance. In addition, a petty cash system is employed by many business enterprises. We cover these two topics in Appendix 7A.

Restricted Cash and Compensating Balances

We discussed the classification of assets and liabilities in Chapter 3. You should recall that only cash available for current operations or to satisfy current liabilities is classified as a current asset. Cash that is restricted in some way and not available for current use usually is reported as a noncurrent asset such as *investments and funds* or *other assets*.

● LO7–2

³www.coso.org.

Restrictions on cash can be informal, arising from management's intent to use a certain amount of cash for a specific purpose. For example, a company may set aside funds for future plant expansion. This cash, if material, should be classified as investments and funds or other assets. Sometimes restrictions are contractually imposed. Debt instruments, for instance, frequently require the borrower to set aside funds (often referred to as a sinking fund) for the future payment of a debt. In these instances, the restricted cash is classified as noncurrent investments and funds or other assets if the debt is classified as noncurrent. On the other hand, if the liability is current, the restricted cash also is classified as current. Disclosure notes should describe any material restrictions of cash.

Banks frequently require cash restrictions in connection with loans or loan commitments (lines of credit). Typically, the borrower is asked to maintain a specified balance in a low interest or noninterest-bearing account at the bank (creditor). The required balance usually is some percentage of the committed amount (say 2% to 5%). These are known as **compensating balances** because they compensate the bank for granting the loan or extending the line of credit.

The effect of a compensating balance is a higher effective interest rate on the debt.

A compensating balance results in the borrower's paying an effective interest rate higher than the stated rate on the debt. For example, suppose that a company borrows \$10,000,000 from a bank at an interest rate of 12%. If the bank requires a compensating balance of \$2,000,000 to be held in a noninterest-bearing checking account, the company really is borrowing only \$8,000,000 (the loan less the compensating balance). This means an effective interest rate of 15% (\$1,200,000 interest divided by \$8,000,000 cash available for use).

A material compensating balance must be disclosed regardless of the classification of the cash.

The classification and disclosure of a compensating balance depends on the nature of the restriction and the classification of the related debt.⁴ If the restriction is legally binding, the cash is classified as either current or noncurrent (investments and funds or other assets) depending on the classification of the related debt. In either case, note disclosure is appropriate.

If the compensating balance arrangement is informal with no contractual agreement that restricts the use of cash, the compensating balance can be reported as part of cash and cash equivalents, with note disclosure of the arrangement.

Illustration 7-2 provides an example of a note disclosure from **Walgreen's** annual report.

Illustration 7-2

Disclosure of Restricted Cash—Walgreen Boots Alliance, Inc.

Real World Financials

Note 2: Summary of Major Accounting Policies (in part) Restricted Cash

The Company is required to maintain cash deposits with certain banks which consist of deposits restricted under contractual agency agreements and cash restricted by law and other obligations. As of August 31, 2015, the amount of such restricted cash was \$184 million. There was no restricted cash as of August 31, 2014.

Where We're Headed



Restricted Cash and the Statement of Cash Flows. In mid-2016, the FASB issued an exposure draft of an ASU that would require more complete disclosure of restricted cash and its changes during each reporting period. In the statement of cash flows, companies would reconcile the beginning and ending balance in the total of cash, cash equivalents, restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents (rather than reconciling only unrestricted amounts). Also, companies would be required to disclose in the statement of cash flows or in the notes to the financial statements the amounts and line items in which restricted cash appears in the balance sheet. It is likely this ASU will be adopted, improving disclosure of restricted cash.

⁴FASB ASC 210-10-S99-2: SAB Topic 6.H—Balance Sheet—Overall—SEC Materials, *Accounting Series Release 148* (originally “Amendments to Regulations S-X and Related Interpretations and Guidelines Regarding the Disclosure of Compensating Balances and Short-Term Borrowing Arrangements,” *Accounting Series Release No. 148*, Securities and Exchange Commission (November 13, 1973)).

International Financial Reporting Standards



Cash and Cash Equivalents. In general, cash and cash equivalents are treated similarly under IFRS and U.S. GAAP. One difference relates to bank overdrafts, which occur when withdrawals from a bank account exceed the available balance. U.S. GAAP requires that overdrafts typically be treated as liabilities. In contrast, IAS No. 7 allows bank overdrafts to be offset against other cash accounts when overdrafts are payable on demand and fluctuate between positive and negative amounts as part of the normal cash management program that a company uses to minimize its cash balance.⁵ For example, LaDonia Company has two cash accounts with the following balances as of December 31, 2018:

National Bank	\$300,000
Central Bank	(15,000)

Under U.S. GAAP, LaDonia's 12/31/18 balance sheet would report a cash asset of \$300,000 and an overdraft current liability of \$15,000. Under IFRS, LaDonia would report a cash asset of \$285,000.

● LO7–10

Decision Makers' Perspective

Cash often is referred to as a *nonearning* asset because it earns no interest. For this reason, managers invest idle cash in either cash equivalents or short-term investments, both of which provide a return. Management's goal is to hold the minimum amount of cash necessary to conduct normal business operations, meet its obligations, and take advantage of opportunities. Too much cash reduces profits through lost returns, while too little cash increases risk. This trade-off between risk and return is an ongoing choice made by management (internal decision makers). Whether the choice made is appropriate is an ongoing assessment made by investors and creditors (external decision makers).

A company must have cash available for the compensating balances we discussed in the previous section as well as for planned disbursements related to normal operating, investing, and financing cash flows. However, because cash inflows and outflows can vary from planned amounts, a company needs an additional cash cushion as a precaution against unexpected events. The size of the cushion depends on the company's ability to convert cash equivalents and short-term investments into cash quickly, along with its short-term borrowing capacity.

Liquidity is a measure of a company's cash position and overall ability to obtain cash in the normal course of business to pay liabilities as they come due. A company is assumed to be liquid if it has sufficient cash or is capable of converting its other assets to cash in a relatively short period of time so that current needs can be met. Frequently, liquidity is measured with respect to the ability to pay currently maturing debt. The current ratio is one of the most common ways of measuring liquidity and is calculated by dividing current assets by current liabilities. By comparing liabilities that must be satisfied in the near term with assets that either are cash or will be converted to cash in the near term we have a base measure of a company's liquidity. We can refine the measure by adjusting for the implicit assumption of the current ratio that all current assets are equally liquid. In the acid-test or quick ratio, the numerator consists of "quick assets," which include only cash and cash equivalents, short-term investments, and accounts receivable. By eliminating inventories and prepaid expenses, the current assets that are less readily convertible into cash, we get a more precise indication of a company's short-term liquidity than with the current ratio. We discussed and illustrated these liquidity ratios in Chapter 3.

We should evaluate the adequacy of any ratio in the context of the industry in which the company operates and other specific circumstances. Bear in mind, though, that industry averages are only one indication of acceptability and any ratio is but one indication of liquidity. Profitability, for instance, is perhaps the best long-run indication of liquidity. And

Companies hold cash to pay for planned and unplanned transactions and to satisfy compensating balance requirements.

⁵"Statement of Cash Flows," *International Accounting Standard No. 7 (IASCF)*, as amended effective January 1, 2016, par. 8.

A manager should actively monitor the company's cash position.

a company may be very efficient in managing its current assets so that, say, receivables are more liquid than they otherwise would be. The receivables turnover ratio we discuss in Part B of this chapter offers a measure of management's efficiency in this regard.

There are many techniques that a company can use to manage cash balances. A discussion of these techniques is beyond the scope of this text. However, it is sufficient here to understand that management must make important decisions related to cash that have a direct impact on a company's profitability and risk. Because the lack of prudent cash management can lead to the failure of an otherwise sound company, it is essential that managers as well as outside investors and creditors maintain close vigil over this facet of a company's health. ●

PART B

Current Receivables

Receivables represent a company's claims to the future collection of cash, other assets, or services. Receivables resulting from the sale of goods or services on account are called **accounts receivable** and often are referred to as *trade receivables*. Nontrade receivables are those other than trade receivables and include tax refund claims, interest receivable, and loans by the company to other entities including stockholders and employees. When a receivable, trade or nontrade, is accompanied by a formal promissory note, it is referred to as a note receivable. We consider notes receivable after first discussing accounts receivable.

As you study receivables, realize that one company's claim to the future collection of cash corresponds to another company's (or individual's) obligation to pay cash. One company's account receivable will be the mirror image of another company's account payable. Chapter 13 addresses accounts payable and other current liabilities.

An account receivable and an account payable reflect opposite sides of the same transaction.

Accounts Receivable

Accounts receivable are created when sellers recognize revenue associated with a credit sale. Recall from Chapter 5 that revenue is recognized when a seller satisfies a performance obligation. For most products or services, the performance obligation is satisfied at the point of delivery of the product or service, so revenue and the related receivable are recognized at that time.

Most businesses provide credit to their customers, either because it's not practical to require immediate cash payment or to encourage customers to purchase the company's product or service. Accounts receivable are *informal* credit arrangements supported by an invoice and normally are due in 30 to 60 days after the sale. They almost always are classified as current assets because their normal collection period, even if longer than a year, is part of, and therefore less than, the operating cycle of the business.

Typically, revenue and related accounts receivable are recognized at the point of delivery of the product or service.

Accounts receivable are current assets because they will be converted to cash within the normal operating cycle.

Initial Valuation of Accounts Receivable

You learned in Chapter 5 that sellers recognize an amount of revenue equal to the amount they are entitled to receive in exchange for satisfying a performance obligation. Sellers allocate the transaction price to the various performance obligations in a contract and then recognize revenue (and the corresponding receivable for credit sales) when performance obligations are satisfied. Clearly, revenue recognition and accounts receivable recognition are closely related. That means that some of the complexities that affect revenue recognition also affect accounts receivable.

One potential complexity relates to time value of money. Because credit sales allow a customer to get goods or services now but pay for them in the future, you can view a credit sale as providing a loan in addition to whatever goods or services are included in a contract. However, as you learned in Chapter 5, sellers can ignore this "financing component" when it is not significant, which typically is the case when receivables are due in less than one year. Therefore, sellers usually record relatively short-term accounts receivable at the entire amount the seller expects to receive, rather than at the present value of that amount.⁶ For

Accounts receivable typically are not shown at present value.

⁶FASB ASC 606-10-32-15: Revenue from Contracts with Customers—Overall—Measurement—The Existence of a Significant Financing Component" (previously "Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)" *Accounting Standards Update 2014-09* (Norwalk, Conn: FASB, 2014)).

long-term receivables the financing component is more significant and sellers have to account for it, as you will see when we cover notes receivable later in this section.

Another type of complexity relates to variable consideration. As you learned in Chapter 5, contracts can include some aspect of variable consideration that must be estimated when determining the transaction price, and therefore the amount of the receivable. In particular, contracts can allow cash discounts as well as sales returns and allowances. Let's discuss each of those complexities in turn.

DISCOUNTS. There are two types of discounts that companies commonly offer, trade discounts and cash discounts. Companies frequently offer **trade discounts** to customers, usually a percentage reduction from the list price. For example, a manufacturer might list a machine part at \$2,500 but sell it to an important customer at a 10% discount. That discount of \$250 is reflected by recording the sale at the agreed-upon price of \$2,250.

Trade discounts are not variable consideration. Rather, they are simply a way to specify a transaction price. Trade discounts allow a seller to offer different prices without publishing a new catalog, to disguise real prices from competitors, and to give quantity discounts to large customers.

Cash discounts, often called *sales discounts*, represent reductions in the amount to be paid by a credit customer if the customer makes payment within a specified period of time. A cash discount provides an incentive for quick payment. The amount of a cash discount and the time period within which it's available usually are conveyed by terms like 2/10, n/30 (meaning a 2% discount if paid within 10 days, otherwise full payment within 30 days).

Cash discounts are variable consideration, because there is uncertainty about whether the customer will pay quickly enough to qualify for the discount. However, it is usually difficult for a seller to estimate the amount of discount that will be taken with every sale. Therefore, sellers use two methods in practice that simplify the process of recording cash discounts: the gross method and the net method. With both methods, sales revenue ends up being reduced by only those discounts that are actually taken. To see how these methods work, consider the example in Illustration 7–3.

Trade discounts allow a customer to pay an amount that is below the list price.

Trade discounts are not variable consideration.

● LO7–3

Cash discounts reduce the amount to be paid if payment occurs within a specified short period of time.

Cash discounts are variable consideration.

The Hawthorne Manufacturing Company offers credit customers a 2% cash discount if the sales price is paid within 10 days. Any amounts not paid within 10 days are due in 30 days. These repayment terms are stated as 2/10, n/30. On October 5, 2018, Hawthorne sold merchandise at a price of \$20,000. The customer paid \$13,720 (\$14,000 less the 2% cash discount) on October 14 and the remaining balance of \$6,000 on November 4.

The appropriate journal entries to record the sale and cash collection, comparing the gross and net methods are as follows:

Gross Method		Net Method	
October 5, 2018		October 5, 2018	
Accounts receivable	20,000	Accounts receivable	19,600
Sales revenue	20,000	Sales revenue	19,600
October 14, 2018		October 14, 2018	
Cash	13,720	Cash	13,720
Sales discounts	280	Accounts receivable	13,720
Accounts receivable	14,000		
November 4, 2018		November 4, 2018	
Cash	6,000	Cash	6,000
Accounts receivable	6,000	Accounts receivable	5,880
		Sales discounts forfeited	120

Illustration 7–3

Cash Discounts

Both methods get us to the same place from the perspective of total revenue and therefore total net income recognized, as shown in the table below. They just get us to that place in slightly different ways.

Revenue comparison of the gross method and the net method.

	Gross Method	Net Method
Sales revenue	\$20,000	\$19,600
Less: Sales discounts	(280)	—0—
Add: Discounts forfeited	0	120
Net sales revenue	<u>\$ 19,720</u>	<u>\$ 19,720</u>

The **gross method** assumes customers won't take cash discounts and then reduces revenue for discounts taken.

The **net method** assumes customers will take cash discounts and then increases revenue for discounts forfeited.

The **net method** is more correct conceptually.

Using the **gross method**, we initially record the revenue and related receivable at the full \$20,000 price. If payment occurs within the discount period, the \$280 discount is recorded as a debit to an account called *sales discounts*. This is a contra account to sales revenue and is deducted from sales revenue to derive the net sales revenue reported in the income statement. If payment occurs after the discount period, cash is simply increased and accounts receivable decreased by the gross amount originally recorded.

Using the **net method**, we record revenue and the related accounts receivable at the agreed-upon price *less* the 2% discount, yielding \$19,600. If payment occurs within the discount period, we simply debit cash and credit accounts receivable for the amount received. If payment occurs after the discount period, the discount not taken is recorded to an account called *sales discounts forfeited*. This account is added to sales revenue to calculate net sales revenue. Conceptually, sales discounts forfeited is similar to interest revenue, since it is extra revenue received because a receivable is outstanding for a longer period of time.⁷ In this case, customers forfeited \$120 (\$6,000 × 2%) of cash discounts.

Which method is correct? Remember from Chapter 5 that sales revenue and the corresponding accounts receivable should be stated at the amount of consideration the seller expects to be entitled to receive. The net method typically better reflects that amount, because the discount is a savings that prudent customers are unwilling to forgo. To appreciate the size of that savings, reconsider Illustration 7–3. In order to save \$2, the customer must pay \$98 twenty days earlier than otherwise due, effectively “investing” \$98 to “earn” \$2, a rate of return of 2.04% (\$2/\$98) for a 20-day period. To convert this 20-day rate to an annual rate, we multiply by 365/20:

$$2.04\% \times 365/20 = 37.23\% \text{ effective rate}$$

Would you like to earn a sure return of over 37%? You can see why customers try to take the discount if at all possible. That's why recording the receivable net of the discount is more accurate. Still, even though the net method is more correct conceptually, both methods are used in practice, because many sellers prefer to record receivables at gross and then make downward adjustments at the time payment is made. The dollar value of the difference between methods usually is viewed as immaterial.

SALES RETURNS. Customers frequently are given the right to return merchandise they purchase. When practical, a customer might be given a special price reduction as an incentive to keep the merchandise purchased.⁸ We use the term **sales returns** to refer to these returns and other adjustments. Sales returns are common in industries such as food products, publishing, and retailing.

As we discussed in Chapter 5, sales returns are a form of variable consideration. Because products might be returned or prices adjusted, there is uncertainty as to the final amount the seller will be entitled to receive (the seller's consideration). Recognizing returns only at the time they happen might cause receivables, revenue, and profit to be overstated in the period the sale is made and understated in the return period. For example, assume merchandise is sold to a customer for \$10,000 in December 2018, the last month in the selling company's fiscal year, and that the merchandise cost \$6,000. The company would recognize gross profit of \$4,000 in 2018 (\$10,000 – 6,000). If all of the

⁷In fact, prior to the effective date of ASU 2014-09 (which specified how variable consideration should be treated in revenue recognition), sales discounts forfeited were often disclosed as interest revenue or other revenue in the income statement.

⁸Price reductions sometimes are referred to as *sales allowances* and are distinguished from situations when the products actually are returned for a refund or credit (sales returns).

● LO7–4

Sales returns are variable consideration.

merchandise is returned in 2019, after financial statements for 2018 are issued, gross profit will be overstated in 2018 and understated in 2019 by \$4,000. Assets at the end of 2018 also will be overstated by \$4,000, because a \$10,000 receivable would be recorded instead of \$6,000 in inventory.

To avoid this problem, the seller should estimate sales returns and reduce both revenue and accounts receivable accordingly. Technically, the seller should estimate returns at the time of sale and adjust the transaction price at that time. However, as noted in Chapter 5, it is impractical for most sellers to estimate returns every time they make a sale. For that reason, sellers typically account for returns as they actually occur and then make an adjusting entry at the end of the accounting period to reflect any remaining returns they expect to occur in the future. That is the approach we demonstrate.

To account for returns, rather than reducing sales revenue directly, we debit a contra-revenue account, *sales returns*, which reduces sales revenue indirectly. Sales revenue minus sales returns equals the sales that aren't returned (referred to as *net sales* or *net sales revenue* in the income statement). As shown in Illustration 7–4, the corresponding credit in the journal entry that debits sales returns depends on whether cash has already been collected or we have an outstanding receivable.

As shown in Illustration 7–4, for cash sales (or if cash already has been collected for credit sales), Hawthorne refunds the cash when a customer returns a product. At the end of the period, Hawthorne also records a **refund liability** for its estimate of additional cash that it will have to refund in the future.

When returns occur for credit sales with the receivable still outstanding, Hawthorne reduces the receivable, because Hawthorne no longer is entitled to receive payment from the customer. At the end of the period, Hawthorne also must estimate returns for accounts receivable still outstanding. In this text, we'll record this estimate as a credit to **allowance for sales return**. This allowance is a contra account that is offset against accounts receivable to reduce the net balance of accounts receivable for Hawthorne's estimate of future returns. We use this allowance account, instead of a separate refund liability account, to avoid showing a liability to return cash that hasn't yet been received. (In practice, some companies instead might show a refund liability, just as if cash had already been collected.)

Regardless of whether cash has been collected or a receivable is outstanding, the 2018 income statement reports net sales revenue of \$1,800,000, which is gross sales revenue of \$2,000,000 reduced by actual and estimated returns of \$200,000 (\$130,000 + 70,000).

Hawthorne also must adjust inventory to account for the returned merchandise. In a perpetual inventory system we record increases (debits) and decreases (credits) in the inventory account as events occur. So, when actual returns occur, Hawthorne increases inventory to include the \$78,000 of returned items. Later, when Hawthorne estimates returns at the end of the period, the \$42,000 of inventory *expected* to be returned in 2019 is included as an asset, "inventory—estimated returns," in Hawthorne's 2018 balance sheet, even though the actual merchandise still belongs to customers, because ownership of the merchandise is expected to revert back to the Hawthorne. As a result, 2018 cost of goods sold equals \$1,080,000, which is \$1,200,000 reduced by the cost of actual and estimated returns of \$120,000 (\$78,000 + \$42,000).⁹

Sometimes a customer will return damaged or defective merchandise. This possibility is included in a company's estimate of returns. As we will see in Chapter 9, the amount recorded in inventory for damaged or defective merchandise reflects a value less than its original cost.

Sellers should reduce revenue and accounts receivable for estimated future returns.

Sales revenue
Less: Sales returns
Net sales revenue

Accounts receivable
Less: Allow. for sales returns
Net accounts receivable

⁹As indicated in Chapter 5, companies technically should estimate all variable consideration, including sales returns, at the time a sale is made. The financial statement outcomes of that approach are the same as those shown in Illustration 7–4, but the journal entries that get us there are somewhat different. To adapt our example to account for estimated returns at the time of sale, look at the journal entries that Hawthorne makes at the end of 2018 to account for estimated future returns. Hawthorne would record the same journal entries at the time of sale, but for the full amount of estimated sales returns (\$200,000) and estimated inventory to be returned (\$200,000 × 60% = \$120,000). After recording the estimated returns at the time of the sale, all *actual* returns would be accounted for as shown in our example for actual returns occurring in 2019, reducing the refund liability for cash sales or reducing the allowance for sales returns for credit sales.

Illustration 7-4 Accounting for Sales Returns

During 2018, its first year of operations, the Hawthorne Manufacturing Company sold merchandise for \$2,000,000. This merchandise cost Hawthorne \$1,200,000 (60% of the selling price). Industry experience indicates that 10% of all sales will be returned, which equals \$200,000 (\$2,000,000 × 10%) in this case. Customers returned \$130,000 of sales during 2018. Hawthorne uses a perpetual inventory system.

	Cash Sales		Credit Sales (A/R Outstanding)*	
Sales of \$2,000,000 occurred in 2018, with cost of goods sold of \$1,200,000.	Cash.....	2,000,000	Accounts receivable.....	2,000,000
	Sales revenue	2,000,000	Sales revenue	2,000,000
	Cost of goods sold.....	1,200,000	Cost of goods sold.....	1,200,000
	Inventory.....	1,200,000	Inventory.....	1,200,000
Sales returns of \$130,000 occurred during 2018. The cost of returned inventory is \$78,000 (\$130,000 × 60%).	Sales returns.....	130,000	Sales returns.....	130,000
	Cash.....	130,000	Accounts receivable.....	130,000
	Inventory.....	78,000	Inventory.....	78,000
	Cost of goods sold.....	78,000	Cost of goods sold.....	78,000
At the end of 2018, an additional \$70,000 of sales returns are expected. The cost of the inventory expected to be returned is \$42,000 (\$70,000 × 60%).	Sales returns.....	70,000	Sales returns.....	70,000
	Refund liability	70,000	Allow. for sales returns	70,000
	Inventory—est. returns ...	42,000	Inventory—est. returns	42,000
	Cost of goods sold.....	42,000	Cost of goods sold.....	42,000
Sales returns of \$70,000 occurred during 2019. The cost of returned inventory is \$42,000.	Refund liability	70,000	Allow. for sales returns.....	70,000
	Cash.....	70,000	Accounts receivable.....	70,000
	Inventory.....	42,000	Inventory.....	42,000
	Inventory—est. returns	42,000	Inventory—est. returns...	42,000

*If a sale was made on credit and cash already has been collected, returns are handled the same way they are for cash sales.

Changes in estimated returns are recorded in whatever period the estimate changes.

What happens if Hawthorne's estimate of future returns is wrong, such that returns end up being more or less than \$70,000? We don't revise prior years' financial statements to reflect the new estimate. Instead, as you learned in Chapter 5, we adjust the accounts to reflect the change in estimated returns, with any effect on income recognized in the period in which the adjustment is made. For example, suppose in our illustration that only \$60,000 of 2018 sales were returned in 2019, instead of the \$70,000 that Hawthorne anticipated. Also suppose that the estimated returns relate to outstanding accounts receivable, and that Hawthorne estimates that no more returns will occur. In that case, the allowance for sales

returns still has a pre-adjustment balance of **\$10,000** remaining from 2018 sales. Likewise, inventory—estimated returns still has a pre-adjustment balance of **\$6,000** ($60\% \times \$10,000$) remaining from 2018 sales.

Allowance for sales returns			Inventory—estimated returns		
1/1/2019		70,000	1/1/2019	42,000	
2019 returns	60,000		2019 returns		36,000
Pre-adjustment balance		10,000	Pre-adjustment balance	6,000	
Change in estimate	10,000		Change in estimate		6,000
12/31/2019		-0-	12/31/2019	-0-	

In 2019, Hawthorne would record its change in estimated returns of 2018 sales as follows:

Allowance for sales returns	10,000	
Sales returns ($\$70,000 - 60,000$)		10,000
Cost of goods sold ($60\% \times \$10,000$)	6,000	
Inventory—estimated returns		6,000

These adjustments remove the remaining 2018 balance from the allowance for sales returns and inventory—estimated returns. They also increase net sales revenue (by reducing sales returns) and cost of goods sold in 2019, the period in which the change in estimate occurs.

How do companies estimate returns? They rely on past history, but they also consider any changes that might affect future experience. For example, changes in customer base, payment terms offered to customers, and overall economic conditions might suggest that future returns will differ from past returns. The task of estimating returns is made easier for many large retail companies whose fiscal year-end is the end of January. Since retail companies generate a large portion of their annual sales during the Christmas season, most returns from these sales already have been accounted for by the end of January. In fact, that's an important motivation for those companies to choose to end their fiscal years at the end of January.

AVX Corporation is a leading manufacturer of electronic components. Illustration 7–5, drawn from AVX's 2015 annual report, describes the company's approach to estimating returns.

Experience guides firms when estimating returns.

Revenue Recognition and Accounts Receivable (in part): Returns

Sales revenue and cost of sales reported in the income statement are reduced to reflect estimated returns. We record an estimated sales allowance for returns at the time of sale based on historical trends, current pricing and volume information, other market specific information, and input from sales, marketing, and other key management personnel. The amount accrued reflects the return of value of the customer's inventory. These procedures require the exercise of significant judgments. We believe that these procedures enable us to make reliable estimates of future returns. Our actual results have historically approximated our estimates. When the product is returned and verified, the customer is given credit against their accounts receivable.

Illustration 7–5

Disclosure of Sales Returns Policy—AVX Corporation

Real World Financials

In some industries, returns typically are small and infrequent. Companies in these industries usually don't bother to estimate returns and simply record returns in the period they occur, because the effect on income measurement and asset valuation is immaterial. Also, companies sometimes lack sufficient information to make a good estimate of returns. As you learned in Chapter 5, companies must recognize only the amount of revenue that is probable to not require reversal in the future. That way, sales are less likely to be overstated in the period of the transfer of goods or services. Difficulty estimating returns requires a larger estimate of returns (and therefore a smaller amount of net sales revenue recognized) than would be the case if a more precise estimate was possible.

If sales returns are immaterial, they can be recorded as they occur.

Subsequent Valuation of Accounts Receivable

LO7-5

You learned in Chapter 5 that revenue and a corresponding receivable are recognized for the amount the seller is *entitled* to receive for satisfying a performance obligation. However, being entitled to receive payment doesn't necessarily mean that the seller *will* be paid. In fact, **credit losses** (bad debts) are an inherent cost of granting credit. How should we account for the fact that not every account receivable is likely to be collected?

DIRECT WRITE-OFF METHOD (NOT GAAP). A simple approach to recognizing bad debts that is *not* allowed by GAAP is to wait until a particular account is deemed uncollectible and write it off at that time. For example, if a customer goes bankrupt and it becomes clear that a \$15,000 account receivable will not be collected, the following journal entry could be recorded under the direct write-off method:

Bad debt expense.....	15,000	
Accounts receivable.....		15,000

A shortcoming of the **direct write-off method** is that it overstates the balance in accounts receivable in the periods prior to the write off, because it fails to anticipate that some accounts receivable will prove uncollectible. Also, it distorts net income by postponing recognition of any bad debt expense until the period in which the customer actually fails to pay, even though some bad debts expense was predictable before that time. These conceptual problems are why the direct write-off method isn't allowed for financial-reporting purposes unless the amount of bad debts is not material. However, the direct write-off method is required for income tax purposes for most companies.

The carrying value of accounts receivable is reduced by the allowance for uncollectible accounts.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 351

Illustration 7-6

Disclosure of Accounts Receivable—Johnson & Johnson

Real World Financials

ALLOWANCE METHOD (GAAP). GAAP requires use of the **allowance method** whenever the amount of bad debts is material. Under the allowance method, companies use a contra-asset account, the **allowance for uncollectible accounts**, to reduce the carrying value of accounts receivable to the amount of cash they expect to collect.¹⁰ Both the carrying value and the amount of the allowance typically are shown on the face of the balance sheet. For example, Illustration 7-6 shows how **Johnson & Johnson**, the large pharmaceutical company, reported accounts receivable in its comparative balance sheets for 2015 and 2014.

	(\$ in millions)	
	2015	2014
Accounts receivable trade, less allowances for doubtful accounts \$268 (2014, \$275).....	10,734	10,985

Johnson & Johnson's balance sheet communicates that, as of year-end 2015, it had net accounts receivable of \$10,734 and an allowance for doubtful accounts of \$268, which implies a gross accounts receivable of $\$10,734 + \$268 = \$11,002$.

Under the allowance method, bad debt expense is *not* recognized when specific accounts are written off. Rather, bad debt expense is recognized earlier, when the allowance is created and subsequently adjusted to reflect new sales and changes in customer's credit quality. Later, when a specific account receivable is deemed uncollectible, both the allowance and the specific account receivable are reduced to write off the receivable.

An example will clarify how the allowance method works. Assume the Hawthorne Manufacturing Company started operations in 2018. It had sales of \$1,200,000 and collections of \$895,000, leaving a balance of **\$305,000** in accounts receivable as of December 31, 2018.

The allowance method recognizes bad debt expense when the allowance is adjusted for estimated bad debts, not when specific accounts are written off.

¹⁰You may see this carrying value referred to as "net realizable value". However, as you will learn in Chapter 9, that term has a very specific definition in GAAP that should not be misused.

Accounts Receivable		
1/1/2018	-0-	
Sales	1,200,000	
Collections		895,000
12/31/2018	305,000	

Recognizing allowance for uncollectible accounts (end of first year). Hawthorne's analysis indicates it expects to collect **\$280,000** of its accounts receivable, so it must establish an allowance for uncollectible accounts of **\$25,000** (**\$305,000** – **280,000**). (Later we'll talk about how Hawthorne would estimate the allowance. For now let's assume that number.)

Hawthorne establishes the necessary allowance with the following journal entry:

Bad debt expense	25,000	
Allowance for uncollectible accounts		25,000

The balances in accounts receivable (**\$305,000**) and the contra asset allowance for uncollectible accounts (**\$25,000**) offset to carry receivables at a net amount of **\$280,000** on the balance sheet.

Of course, at this point Hawthorne doesn't know which particular accounts receivable will prove uncollectible. (If it could predict that perfectly, it wouldn't have made those sales to begin with!) Hawthorne only can record an **estimate** of the amount of uncollectible accounts for its outstanding receivables. That estimate both reduces net income (through bad debt expense) and reduces the carrying value of Hawthorne's accounts receivable.

When accounts are deemed uncollectible. On April 24, 2019, Hawthorne concludes that it will not collect a \$15,000 account receivable from a customer that recently has gone bankrupt. Hawthorne would make the following journal entry:

Allowance for uncollectible accounts	15,000	
Accounts receivable		15,000

Accounts Receivable		
1/1/2019	305,000	
Specific write-off		15,000
	290,000	

Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts		
1/1/2019		25,000
Specific write-off	15,000	
		10,000

Note that the journal entry didn't affect net income, and that accounts receivable still are carried at a net amount of **\$280,000** (**\$290,000** – **10,000**) on the balance sheet.

When previously written-off accounts are reinstated. Occasionally, a receivable that has been written off is later reinstated because the company gets new information and now believes the receivable will be collected in part or in full. When this happens, the entry to write off the account is reversed. For example, assume Hawthorne learns on May 30 that the financial situation of its customer has improved and it will collect \$1,200 of the receivable that previously was written off. Hawthorne reinstates that amount of the receivable with the following journal entry:

Accounts receivable	1,200	
Allowance for uncollectible accounts		1,200

Accounts Receivable		
	290,000	
Reinstatement	1,200	
	291,200	

Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts		
		10,000
Reinstatement	1,200	
		11,200

Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts	
1/1/2018	-0-
Bad debt expense	25,000
12/31/2018	25,000

The write-off of an account receivable *reduces* both gross receivables and the allowance, thus having no effect on net income or financial position.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 351

Reinstating a previously written off accounts receivable *increases* both gross receivables and the allowance, thus having no effect on net income or financial position.

Note that, once again, the journal entry didn't affect net income, and that accounts receivable still are carried at a net amount of **\$280,000** (**\$291,200** – **11,200**) on the balance sheet. Just as the carrying value of accounts receivable was not affected by writing off a specific receivable, it also is not affected by reversing the write-off of a specific receivable.

Once the receivable is reinstated, collection is recorded the same way it would be if the receivable had never been written off, debiting cash and crediting accounts receivable.

● LO7-6

ESTIMATING THE ALLOWANCE FOR UNCOLLECTIBLE ACCOUNTS. Basing bad debt expense on the appropriate carrying value of accounts receivable is very much a **balance sheet approach**. The company determines what the ending balance of the allowance for uncollectible accounts should be, and then records the amount of bad debt expense that's necessary to adjust the allowance to that desired balance.

Past history as well as current conditions guide estimation of the necessary balance in the allowance for uncollectible accounts. Estimation could be done by analyzing each customer account, by applying an estimate of the percentage of bad debts to the entire outstanding receivable balance, or by applying different percentages to accounts receivable balances depending on the length of time outstanding. This latter approach employs an **accounts receivable aging schedule**, and is very common in practice. For example, Illustration 7-7 shows the aging schedule for Hawthorne's December 31, 2018 accounts receivable balance of \$305,000.

Illustration 7-7

Accounts Receivable Aging Schedule

Customer	Accounts Receivable 12/31/2018	0–60 Days	61–90 Days	91–120 Days	Over 120 Days
Axel Manufacturing Co.	\$ 20,000	\$ 14,000	\$ 6,000		
Banner Corporation	33,000		20,000	\$10,000	\$ 3,000
Dando Company	60,000	50,000	10,000		
----	--	--	--	--	--
----	--	--	--	--	--
Xicon Company	18,000	10,000	4,000	3,000	1,000
Totals	<u>\$305,000</u>	<u>\$220,000</u>	<u>\$50,000</u>	<u>\$25,000</u>	<u>\$10,000</u>

Summary			
Age Group	Amount	Estimated Percent Uncollectible	Estimated Allowance
0–60 days	\$220,000	5%	\$ 11,000
61–90 days	50,000	10%	5,000
91–120 days	25,000	20%	5,000
Over 120 days	10,000	40%	4,000
Allowance for uncollectible accounts			<u>\$25,000</u>

The schedule classifies the year-end receivable balances according to their length of time outstanding. Therefore, the schedule applies higher estimated default percentages to groups of older receivables. Typically, the longer an account has been outstanding, the more likely it will prove uncollectible. Because the schedule calculates a necessary balance in the allowance of **\$25,000**, Hawthorn would adjust the balance of the allowance to that amount, as shown previously in this section.

A/R	\$400,000
Less allowance	40,000
Net A/R	<u>\$360,000</u>

Recognizing allowance for uncollectible accounts (end of second year). At the end of the second year of operations (and each year thereafter), Hawthorne must once again estimate what the carrying value of its accounts receivable should be, and adjust the allowance as necessary to produce that carrying value. Let's suppose that at the end of 2019 Hawthorne has a gross accounts receivable balance of \$400,000 but believes it only will collect **\$360,000**. That implies that Hawthorne needs an allowance of **\$40,000** (**\$400,000** – **\$360,000**). Unlike the first year, the balance of the allowance for uncollectible accounts in later years may not be zero at the time Hawthorne makes the adjustment. In our example, the

pre-adjustment balance is \$11,200 (see T-account above). What adjustment is needed to update the allowance account from \$11,200 to the new estimate of \$40,000? The adjusting entry is a “plug” of **\$28,800**.

Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts	
(Pre-adjustment balance)	11,200
Bad debt expense	28,800
(Post-adjustment balance)	40,000

Bad debt expense	28,800	
Allowance for uncollectible accounts		28,800

Be sure to understand that the amount of bad debt expense recognized in this journal entry is purely a plug that is determined by the difference between the pre-adjustment balance and the necessary post-adjustment balance in the allowance. For example, if Hawthorne had written off so many accounts receivable during 2019 that the adjustment account had a pre-adjustment balance that was a **debit** of \$2,000, Hawthorne would have to credit the allowance for **\$42,000** (and debit bad debt expense for the same amount) to reach the necessary \$40,000 post-adjustment balance.

Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts	
Beg. Bal.	2,000
Bad Debt Exp.	42,000
End Bal.	40,000

On the other hand, if the pre-adjustment balance in the allowance was a credit of \$11,200 and the quality of Hawthorne’s receivables improved so much that Hawthorne believed the post-adjustment balance in the allowance should be only \$5,000, Hawthorne would need to *debit* the allowance for **\$6,200**.

Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts	
Beg. Bal.	11,200
Bad Debt Exp. 6,200	
End Bal.	5,000

A debit to the allowance requires a credit to bad debt expense. While crediting an expense looks weird, think of it as driven by a change in an estimate. The allowance was increased by too much in a prior period, so Hawthorne has to reduce it this period. As with changes in other estimates, we don’t restate prior year financial statements, but instead show the effect of the change in estimate in current-period net income.

Income statement approach. An alternative to the balance sheet approach is to estimate bad debt expense directly as a percentage of each period’s net credit sales. This percentage usually is determined by reviewing the company’s recent history of the relationship between credit sales and actual bad debts. For a relatively new company, this percentage may be estimated by referring to other sources such as industry averages. For example, if Hawthorne had sales of \$1,200,000 in 2018, and estimated that 2% of those sales would prove uncollectible, it would debit bad debts expense and credit the allowance for uncollectible accounts for \$24,000 ($\$1,200,000 \times 2\%$).

It’s important to notice that this **income statement approach** focuses on the current year’s credit sales, so the effect on the balance sheet—the allowance for uncollectible accounts and hence net accounts receivable—is an incidental result of estimating the expense. An income statement approach should be used only if it doesn’t provide a distorted estimate of the net amount of cash that is expected to be collected from accounts receivable.

Combined approaches. Some companies use a combination of approaches when estimating bad debts. For example, Hawthorne might decide it’s more convenient to estimate bad debts on a quarterly basis using the income statement approach and then refine the

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 351

Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts	
	24,000
	1,000
	25,000

estimate by employing the balance sheet approach at the end of the year based on an aging of receivables. In our example, Hawthorne recognized \$24,000 in the allowance and the bad debt expense accounts during the year under the income statement approach. If at the end of the year Hawthorne's aging schedule indicated that a total of **\$25,000** was needed in the allowance, Hawthorne would recognize an additional **\$1,000** of allowance and bad debt expense to adjust the total to the necessary balance.

Bad debt expense.....	1,000	
Allowance for uncollectible accounts.....		1,000

Ethical Dilemma

The management of the Auto Parts Division of the Santana Corporation receives a bonus if the division's income achieves a specific target. For 2018 the target will be achieved by a wide margin. Mary Beth Williams, the controller of the division, has been asked by Philip Stanton, the head of the division's management team, to try to reduce this year's income and "bank" some of the profits for future years. Mary Beth suggests that the division's bad debt expense as a percentage of the gross accounts receivable balance for 2018 be increased from 3% to 5%. She believes that 3% is the more accurate estimate but knows that both the corporation's internal auditors as well as the external auditors allow some flexibility when estimates are involved. Does Mary Beth's proposal present an ethical dilemma?

Illustration 7–8 summarizes the key issues involving measuring and reporting accounts receivable.

Illustration 7–8

Measuring and Reporting
Accounts Receivable

Recognition	Depends on revenue recognition; for most credit sales, revenue and the related receivables are recognized at the point of delivery.
Initial valuation	Initially recorded at the amount of consideration the seller is entitled to receive. Affected by cash discounts and variable consideration such as sales discounts and sales returns.
Subsequent valuation	Initial valuation reduced by allowance for uncollectible accounts, so accounts receivable are shown at the amount of cash the seller expects to receive.
Classification	Almost always classified as a current asset.

CURRENT EXPECTED CREDIT LOSS (CECL) MODEL FOR ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE. Under current GAAP, the potential for bad debts is viewed as a loss contingency (meaning that the amount of loss depends on some future event, like a customer's failure to pay). We'll discuss loss contingencies more in Chapter 13, but for now you only need to understand that an allowance and corresponding expense is recognized for any amount of loss that is both probable to occur and can be reasonably estimated. When a company has many accounts receivable, it is probable that some bad debts will occur, so companies recognize an allowance and accrue bad debt expense to adjust the carrying value of accounts receivable to the amount expected to be collected.

Guidance in this area is changing. Starting in 2020, companies will be required to use the **CECL ("Current Expected Credit Loss") model** to account for bad debts, and companies can choose to use that approach starting in 2019.¹¹ The CECL model is designed to give a more accurate and forward-looking estimate of bad debt expense. It still uses the allowance method, and it still uses the same journal entries, but it differs from current GAAP in two important ways. First, the "probable" threshold for identifying bad debts is removed. Therefore, even if the seller is considering a single receivable for which the likelihood of default

¹¹"Financial Instruments—Credit Losses (Topic 326)" *Accounting Standards Update 2016-13* (Norwalk, Conn: FASB, 2016).

is low (and thus not “probable”), the seller typically will make some estimate of bad debts. Second, while current practice tends to focus on events that already have occurred when considering the potential for bad debts, the CECL model explicitly requires creditors to also consider additional information such as reasonable and supportable forecasts about the future.

Concept Review Exercise

The Crowe Company offers 30 days of credit to its customers. At the end of the year, bad debts expense is estimated and the allowance for uncollectible accounts is adjusted based on an aging of accounts receivable. The company began 2019 with the following balances in its accounts:

UNCOLLECTIBLE ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE

Accounts receivable	\$350,000
Allowance for uncollectible accounts	(32,000)
Net accounts receivable	<u>\$318,000</u>

During 2019, sales on credit were \$1,300,000, cash collections from customers were \$1,253,000, and actual write-offs of accounts were \$25,000.

Crowe Company Accounts Receivable Aging December 31, 2019

Age Group	Summary	
	Amount	Estimated Percent Uncollectible
0–60 days	\$250,000	6%
61–90 days	80,000	15%
91–120 days	32,000	25%
Over 121 days	10,000	50%
Total	<u>\$372,000</u>	

Required:

- Determine the balances in accounts receivable and allowance for uncollectible accounts at the end of 2019.
- Determine bad debt expense for 2019.
- Prepare journal entries to write off receivables and to recognize bad debt expense for 2019.

Solution:

- Determine the balances in accounts receivable and allowance for uncollectible accounts at the end of 2019.

Accounts Receivable		
12/31/2018	350,000	
Sales	1,300,000	
Collections		1,253,000
Write-offs		25,000
12/31/2019	372,000	

Crowe Company Accounts Receivable Aging December 31, 2019

Age Group	Summary		
	Amount	Estimated Percent Uncollectible	Estimated Allowance
0–60 days	\$250,000	6%	\$15,000
61–90 days	60,000	15%	9,000
91–120 days	32,000	25%	8,000
Over 121 days	10,000	50%	5,000
Total	<u>\$352,000</u>		<u>\$37,000</u>

Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts		
		32,000
Write-offs	25,000	
Bad debt expense		30,000
(12/31/2019) adjustment		
		37,000

As shown in the T-account, the ending balance in Accounts Receivable is **\$352,000**. As shown in the calculation within the aging of accounts receivable, the ending balance in the Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts is **\$37,000**.

- Determine bad debt expense for 2019.

As shown in the T-account above, the plug necessary to reach the required ending balance in the Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts is **\$30,000**, so that is bad debt expense for 2019.

- Prepare journal entries to write off receivables and to recognize bad debt expense for 2019.

Allowance for uncollectible accounts	25,000	
Accounts receivable.....		25,000
<i>Write-off of accounts receivable as they are determined uncollectible.</i>		
Bad debt expense	30,000	
Allowance for uncollectible accounts.....		30,000
<i>Year-end adjusting entry for bad debts.</i>		

Notes Receivable

LO7-7

Notes receivable are formal credit arrangements between a creditor (lender) and a debtor (borrower) that specify payment terms. Notes arise from loans made to people and companies who need cash, including stockholders and employees, as well as from the sale of merchandise, other assets, or services under relatively long-term payment arrangements. Notes receivable are classified as either current or noncurrent depending on the expected collection date(s).

When the term of a note is less than a year, it is reported as a short-term note. We start by discussing short-term notes, and then discuss long-term notes.

Short-Term Interest-Bearing Notes

The typical **interest-bearing note receivable** requires payment of a specified face amount, also called *principal*, at a specified maturity date or dates. In addition, interest is paid at a stated percentage of the face amount. Interest on notes is calculated as:

$$\text{Face amount} \times \text{Annual rate} \times \text{Fraction of the annual period}$$

For an example, consider Illustration 7–9.

If the sale in the illustration instead occurred on August 1, 2018, and the company's fiscal year-end is December 31, a year-end adjusting entry accrues interest earned.

December 31, 2018		
Interest receivable	35,000	
Interest revenue ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{5}{12}$)		35,000

The February 1 collection is then recorded as follows:

February 1, 2019		
Cash ($\$700,000 + [\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{6}{12}]$).....	742,000	
Interest revenue ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{1}{12}$).....		7,000
Interest receivable (accrued at December 31)		35,000
Note receivable		700,000

Illustration 7-9

Note Receivable

The Stridewell Wholesale Shoe Company manufactures athletic shoes that it sells to retailers. On May 1, 2018, the company sold shoes to Harmon Sporting Goods. Stridewell agreed to accept a \$700,000, 6-month, 12% note in payment for the shoes. Interest is payable at maturity. Assume that an interest rate of 12% is appropriate for a note of this type.

Stridewell would account for the note as follows:*

May 1, 2018

Note receivable	700,000	
Sales revenue		700,000
<i>To record the sale of goods in exchange for a note receivable.</i>		

November 1, 2018

Cash (\$700,000 + \$42,000)	742,000	
Interest revenue ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{1}{2}$)		42,000
Note receivable		700,000

To record the collection of the note at maturity.

*To focus on recording the note we intentionally omit the entry required for the cost of the goods sold if the perpetual inventory system is used.

Short-Term Noninterest-Bearing Notes

Sometimes a receivable assumes the form of a so-called **noninterest-bearing note**. The name is a misnomer, though. Noninterest-bearing notes actually do bear interest, but the interest is deducted (or *discounted*) from the face amount to determine the cash proceeds made available to the borrower at the outset. For example, what if Stridewell accepted a six-month, \$700,000 noninterest-bearing note with a 12% discount rate? If Stridewell views the financing component of the note to be insignificant, it would ignore the interest rate and simply record an account receivable for \$700,000. However, Stridewell could view the financing component of the contract to be significant. In that case, \$42,000 ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{1}{2}$ year) interest would be discounted at the outset rather than explicitly stated, and the selling price of the shoes would be only \$658,000.¹² Stridewell still receives \$700,000, but that total revenue is recognized as sales revenue of \$658,000 and interest revenue of \$42,000. Assuming a May 1, 2018 sale, the transaction is recorded as follows:¹³

May 1, 2018

Note receivable (face amount)	700,000	
Discount on note receivable ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{1}{2}$)		42,000
Sales revenue (difference)		658,000

November 1, 2018

Discount on note receivable	42,000	
Interest revenue		42,000
Cash	700,000	
Note receivable (face amount)		700,000

¹²Sometimes the terms *discount rate* and *effective interest rate* are used interchangeably, so don't be confused by the different use of the term *discount rate* with respect to noninterest-bearing notes. Here, *discount rate* refers only to a rate that is multiplied by the face amount of the note (in Stridewell's case, \$700,000) to calculate how much interest is included in the note (in Stridewell's case, \$42,000). That discount rate is different from the *effective interest rate* that Stridewell earns on the outstanding receivable balance, and that Stridewell would use to calculate the present value of future cash flows.

¹³The entries shown assume the note is recorded by the gross method. By the net method, the interest component is netted against the face amount of the note as follows:

May 1, 2016

Note receivable	658,000	
Sales revenue		658,000

November 1, 2016

Cash	700,000	
Note receivable		658,000
Interest revenue ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{1}{2}$)		42,000

When interest is discounted from the face amount of a note, the effective interest rate is higher than the stated discount rate.



Using a calculator,
enter: N 1 I .06383
 PMT – 700000
Output: PV 658,000



Using Excel, enter:
= PV(.06383,1,700000)
Output: 658,000

The discount on note receivable is a contra account to the note receivable account. That is, the note receivable would be reported in the balance sheet net (less) any remaining discount. The discount represents future interest revenue that will be recognized as it is earned over time. The sales revenue under this arrangement is only \$658,000, but the total amount of interest is calculated as the discount rate times the \$700,000 face amount. This causes the *effective* interest rate to be higher than the 12% discount rate.

\$ 42,000	Interest for 6 months
÷ \$658,000	Sales price
= 6.383%	Rate for 6 months
× 2*	To annualize the rate
= 12.766%	Effective interest rate

*Two 6-month periods

This note should be valued at the present value of future cash receipts. The present value of \$700,000 to be received in six months using an effective interest rate of 6.383% is \$658,000 ($\$700,000 \div 1.06383 = \$658,000$). The use of present value techniques for valuation purposes was introduced in Chapter 6, and we'll use these techniques extensively in subsequent chapters to value various long-term notes receivable, investments, and liabilities.

In the illustration, if the sale occurs on August 1, the December 31, 2018, adjusting entry and the entry to record the cash collection on February 1, 2019, are recorded as follows:

December 31, 2018

Discount on note receivable	35,000	
Interest revenue ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{1}{2}$)*		35,000

February 1, 2019

Discount on note receivable	7,000	
Interest revenue ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{1}{2}$)		7,000
Cash	700,000	
Note receivable (face amount)		700,000

*We also can calculate interest revenue by multiplying the net note receivable balance by the effective interest rate ($\$658,000 \times 12.766\% \times \frac{1}{2} = \$35,000$).

In the December 31, 2018 balance sheet, the note receivable is shown at \$693,000: the face amount (\$700,000) less remaining discount (\$7,000).

Long-Term Notes Receivable

We account for long-term notes receivable the same way we account for short-term notes receivable, but the time value of money has a larger effect. Therefore, if long-term notes are received in exchange for goods and services, the financing component of the transaction typically is viewed as significant for revenue recognition purposes. To provide an example, Illustration 7–10 modifies the facts in Illustration 7–9 to have Stridewell agree on January 1, 2018, to accept a two-year noninterest-bearing note.

It's useful to consider a couple of aspects of Illustration 7–10. First, notice that the sales revenue in 2018 is not recorded for the full \$700,000. Instead, sales revenue is calculated as **(\$558,036)**, the *present value* of the amount (\$700,000) to be received in two years. The net amount of the note receivable equals its present value (\$558,036), which is the note receivable of \$700,000 less the discount on note receivable of \$141,964. Recall from Chapter 5 that sellers need to recognize the financing component of a contract when the time value of money is significant. That is what Stridewell is doing. It earns sales revenue of \$558,036 from selling shoes, and interest revenue totaling \$141,964 ($\$66,964 + 75,000$) for financing the transaction.

Second, interest revenue each period is calculated based on the *net* note receivable as of the beginning of that period. As a consequence, interest revenue differs between periods because the net note receivable increases over time. In our example, Stridewell's 2018 interest revenue of **\$66,964** is calculated based on the initial net note receivable balance



Using a calculator,
enter: N 2 I .12
 PMT – 700000
Output: PV 558,036



Using Excel, enter:
= PV(.12,2,700000)
Output: 558,036

The Stridewell Wholesale Shoe Company manufactures athletic shoes that it sells to retailers. On January 1, 2018, the company sold shoes to Harmon Sporting Goods. Stridewell agreed to accept a \$700,000, two-year note in payment for the shoes. Assuming a 12% effective interest rate, Stridewell would account for the note as follows:*

January 1, 2018

Notes receivable	700,000	
Discount on note receivable		141,964
Sales revenue†		558,036
<i>To record the sale of goods in exchange for a two-year note receivable.</i>		

December 31, 2018

Discount on note receivable	66,964	
Interest revenue (\$558,036 × 12%)		66,964
<i>To record interest revenue in 2018.</i>		

December 31, 2019

Cash	700,000	
Discount on note receivable	75,000	
Interest revenue [(\$558,036 + \$66,964) × 12%]		75,000
Notes receivable		700,000
<i>To record interest revenue in 2019 and collection of the note</i>		

*To focus on recording the note we intentionally omit the entry required for the cost of the goods sold if the perpetual inventory system is used.

†\$700,000 × Present value of \$1; $n = 2$, $i = 12\%$

Illustration 7-10

Long-Term Noninterest-Bearing Note Receivable

(\$558,036 × 12%). We reduce the discount on note receivable for 2018 interest revenue, which increases the net note receivable balance to \$625,000 (**\$558,036** + **\$66,964**). So, Stridewell's 2019 interest revenue of \$75,000 is calculated based on that higher net note receivable balance (\$625,000 × 12%), reducing the discount on note receivable to zero by the end of 2019. At that point, the book value of the note, sometimes called the carrying value, carrying amount, or amortized cost basis, is \$700,000, and that is the amount of cash that is collected. The effective interest rate stays the same over time, but interest revenue increases as that rate is multiplied by a receivable balance that increases over time. This is an application of the **effective interest method**, by which we calculate interest revenue or interest expense by multiplying the outstanding balance of a long-term receivable or liability by the effective interest rate. As you will see in later chapters, that method is used for all long-term receivables and liabilities.

We discuss long-term notes receivable in much greater detail in Chapter 14 at the same time we discuss accounting for long-term notes payable. That discussion provides more examples of accounting for long-term noninterest-bearing notes, as well as long-term interest-bearing notes, and also considers accounting for notes receivable that are collected in equal installment payments.

Marriott International accepts both interest-bearing and noninterest-bearing notes from developers and franchisees of new hotels. The 2015 disclosure note shown in Illustration 7-11 describes the company's accounting policy for these notes.

NOTES RECEIVED SOLELY FOR CASH. If a note with an unrealistic interest rate—even a noninterest-bearing note—is received *solely* in exchange for cash, the cash paid to the issuer is considered to be the note's present value.¹⁴ Even if this means recording interest at a ridiculously low or zero rate, the amount of cash exchanged is the basis for valuing the

In the effective interest method, interest is determined by multiplying the outstanding balance by the effective interest rate.

When a noninterest-bearing note is received solely in exchange for cash, the amount of cash exchanged is the basis for valuing the note.

¹⁴This assumes that no other present or future considerations are included in the agreement. For example, a noninterest-bearing note might be given to a vendor in exchange for cash and a promise to provide future inventories at prices lower than anticipated market prices. The issuer values the note at the present value of cash payments using a realistic interest rate, and the difference between present value and cash payments is recognized as interest revenue over the life of the note. This difference also increases future inventory purchases to realistic market prices.

Illustration 7-11Disclosure of Notes
Receivable—Marriott
International**Real World Financials****Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (in part)**

We may make senior, mezzanine, and other loans to owners of hotels that we operate or franchise, generally to facilitate the development of a hotel and sometimes to facilitate brand programs or initiatives. We expect the owners to repay the loans in accordance with the loan agreements, or earlier as the hotels mature and capital markets permit.

Note 9: Notes Receivable (in part)

Notes Receivable Principal Payments (net of reserves and unamortized discounts) and Interest Rates (\$ in millions)

	Amount
Balance at year-end 2015	\$221
Range of stated interest rates at year-end 2015	0 to 15%

note. If the noninterest-bearing note in the previous example had been received solely in exchange for \$700,000 cash, the transaction would be recorded as follows:

Note receivable (face amount).....	700,000	
Cash (given).....		700,000

Subsequent Valuation of Notes Receivable

Similar to accounts receivable, if a company anticipates bad debts (also called credit losses) on short-term notes receivable, it uses an allowance account to reduce the receivable to the appropriate carrying value. The process of recording bad debt expense is the same as with accounts receivable.

One of the more difficult measurement problems facing banks and other lending institutions is the estimation of bad debts on their long-term notes (loans). It's difficult to predict uncollectible accounts for these arrangements. As an example, **Wells Fargo & Company**, a large bank holding company, reported the following in the asset section of its December 31, 2015, balance sheet:

(\$ in millions)	December 31, 2015	December 31, 2014
Loans	\$916,559	\$862,551
Allowance for loan losses	(11,545)	(12,319)
Net loans	<u>\$905,014</u>	<u>\$850,232</u>

A disclosure note, reproduced in Illustration 7-12, describes Wells Fargo's loan loss policy.

Illustration 7-12Disclosure of Allowance for
Loan Losses—Wells Fargo
& Company**Real World Financials****Allowance for Credit Losses (ACL) (in part)**

The allowance for credit losses is management's estimate for credit losses inherent in the loan portfolio, including unfunded credit commitments, at the balance sheet date. We have an established process to determine the appropriateness of the allowance for credit losses that assesses the losses inherent in our portfolio and related unfunded credit commitments. While we attribute portions of the allowance to our respective commercial and consumer portfolio segments, the entire allowance is available to absorb credit losses inherent in the total loan portfolio and unfunded credit commitments.

GAAP requires that companies disclose the fair value of their notes receivable in the disclosure notes (they don't have to disclose the fair value of accounts receivable when the book value of the receivables approximates fair value).¹⁵ Also, companies can choose

¹⁵FASB ASC 825-10-50-10: Financial Instruments—Overall—Disclosure—Fair Value of Financial Instruments (previously "Disclosures about Fair Value of Financial Instruments" *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 107* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1991)).

to carry receivables at fair value in their balance sheets, with changes in fair value recognized as gains or losses in the income statements.¹⁶ This “fair value option” is discussed in Chapter 12.

Usually creditors account for bad debts for a portfolio of notes, just as they do for a portfolio of accounts receivable. However, when it becomes *probable* that a creditor will be unable to collect all amounts due according to the contractual terms of a *particular* note receivable, that receivable is considered impaired and accounted for separately. The receivable is remeasured as the present value of currently expected cash flows, discounted at the loan’s original effective rate. Impairments of receivables are discussed in Appendix 7B.

CURRENT EXPECTED CREDIT LOSS (CECL) MODEL FOR NOTES RECEIVABLE. As with accounts receivable, the CECL model will be used to estimate credit losses with respect to notes receivable starting in 2020, and companies can choose to use that approach starting in 2019. Under the CECL model, creditors consider all relevant information when assessing credit losses, including reasonable and supportable forecasts about the future. Creditors can use a variety of approaches to estimate uncollectible notes receivable, including the aging method illustrated for accounts receivable. Often creditors use discounted cash flow techniques, estimating the amount of necessary allowance by comparing the balance in the note receivable to the present value of the cash flows expected to be received, discounted at the interest rate that was effective when the receivable was initially recognized. An example of that approach is included in Appendix 7B.

International Financial Reporting Standards



Accounts and Notes Receivable. Until recently, *IAS No. 39* was the standard that specified appropriate accounting for accounts and notes receivable, under the category of Loans and Receivables.¹⁷ However, *IFRS No. 9* currently is scheduled to be required after January 1, 2018, and earlier adoption is allowed.¹⁸ Therefore, until 2018 either standard could be in effect for a particular company that reports under IFRS (although countries in the European Union may not report under *IFRS No. 9*, as the European Commission has not yet ratified it). Still, both of the IFRS standards are very similar to U.S. GAAP with respect to accounting for accounts and notes receivable, with similar treatment of trade and cash discounts, sales returns, recognizing interest on notes receivable, and using an allowance for uncollectible accounts (which typically is called a “provision for bad debts” under IFRS).

A few key differences remain. IFRS and U.S. GAAP both allow a “fair value option” for accounting for receivables, but the IFRS standards restrict the circumstances in which that option is allowed (we discuss this more in Chapter 12). Also, *IAS No. 39* permits accounting for receivables as “available for sale” investments if that approach is elected upon initial recognition of the receivable. *IFRS No. 9* does not allow that option for receivables, and U.S. GAAP only allows “available for sale” accounting for investments in debt securities (we also discuss that approach further in Chapter 12). Also, U.S. GAAP requires more disaggregation of accounts and notes receivable in the balance sheet or notes to the financial statements. For example, companies need to separately disclose accounts receivable from customers, from related parties, and from others. IFRS recommends but does not require separate disclosure.

A final important difference relates to estimating bad debts. IFRS uses the ECL (“Expected Credit Loss”) model. For most receivables, the ECL model reports a “12-month ECL,” which bases expected credit losses only on defaults that could occur within the next twelve months. Only if a receivable’s credit quality has deteriorated significantly does the creditor instead report the “lifetime ECL,” which also includes credit losses expected to occur from defaults after twelve months, as is done for all receivables under the CECL model that will be used in U.S. GAAP. As a result of this lack of convergence, it is likely that accruals for credit losses under IFRS will be lower, and occur later, than under U.S. GAAP.

● LO7-10

¹⁶FASB ASC 825-10-25: Financial Instruments—Overall—Recognition Fair Value Option (previously “The Fair Value Option for Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 159* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2007)).

¹⁷“Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement,” *International Accounting Standard No. 39* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

¹⁸“Financial Instruments,” *International Financial Reporting Standard No. 9* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

Financing with Receivables

● LO7–8

Financial institutions have developed a wide variety of ways for companies to use their receivables to obtain immediate cash. Companies can find this attractive because it shortens their operating cycles by providing cash immediately rather than having to wait until credit customers pay the amounts due. Also, many companies avoid the difficulties of servicing (billing and collecting) receivables by having financial institutions take on that role. Of course, financial institutions require compensation for providing these services, usually interest and/or a finance charge.

The various approaches used to finance with receivables differ with respect to which rights and risks are retained by the *transferor* (the company who was the original holder of the receivables) and which are passed on to the *transferee* (the new holder, the financial institution). Despite this diversity, any of these approaches can be described as either:

1. A *secured borrowing*. Under this approach, the transferor (borrower) simply acts like it borrowed money from the transferee (lender), with the receivables remaining in the transferor's balance sheet and serving as collateral for the loan. On the other side of the transaction, the transferee recognizes a note receivable.
2. A *sale of receivables*. Under this approach, the transferor (seller) “derecognizes” (removes) the receivables from its balance sheet, acting like it sold them to the transferee (buyer). On the other side of the transaction, the transferee recognizes the receivables as assets in its balance sheet and measures them at their fair value.

As you will see in the examples that follow, the transferor (borrower) debits cash regardless of whether the transaction is treated as a secured borrowing or a sale of receivables. What differs is whether the borrower credits a liability (for a secured borrowing) or credits the receivable asset (for a sale of receivables). Let's discuss each of these approaches in more detail as they apply to accounts receivable and notes receivable. Then we'll discuss the circumstances under which GAAP requires each approach.

Secured Borrowing

When companies **pledge** accounts receivable as collateral for debt, a disclosure note describes the arrangement.

Sometimes companies **pledge** accounts receivable as collateral for a loan. No particular receivables are associated with the loan. Rather, the entire receivables balance serves as collateral. The responsibility for collection of the receivables remains solely with the company. No special accounting treatment is needed for pledged receivables, but the arrangement should be described in a disclosure note. For example, Illustration 7–13 shows a portion of the long-term debt disclosure note included in the 2015 annual report of **Virco Mfg. Corporation**, a manufacturer of office furniture.

Illustration 7–13

Disclosure of Receivables
Used as Collateral—Virco
Mfg. Corporation

Real World Financials

Liquidity and Capital Resources (in part) Working Capital Requirements (in part)

The Revolving Credit Facility is an asset-based line of credit that is subject to a borrowing base limitation and generally provides for advances of up to 85% of eligible accounts receivable . . .

Alternatively, financing arrangements can require that companies **assign** particular receivables to serve as collateral for loans. You already may be familiar with the concept of assigning an asset as collateral if you or someone you know has a mortgage on a home. The bank or other financial institution holding the mortgage will require that, if the homeowner defaults on the mortgage payments, the home be sold and the proceeds used to pay off the mortgage debt. Similarly, in the case of an assignment of receivables, nonpayment of a debt will require the proceeds from collecting the assigned receivables to go directly toward repayment of the debt.

In these arrangements, the lender typically lends an amount of money that is less than the amount of receivables assigned by the borrower. The difference provides some protection for the lender to allow for possible uncollectible accounts. Also, the lender (sometimes

called an *assignee*) usually charges the borrower (sometimes called an *assignor*) an upfront finance charge in addition to stated interest on the loan. The receivables might be collected either by the lender or the borrower, depending on the details of the arrangement. Illustration 7–14 provides an example.

On December 1, 2018, the Santa Teresa Glass Company borrowed \$500,000 from Finance Bank and signed a promissory note. Interest at 12% is payable monthly. The company assigned \$620,000 of its receivables as collateral for the loan. Finance Bank charges a finance fee equal to 1.5% of the accounts receivable assigned.

Santa Teresa Glass records the borrowing as follows:

Cash (difference)	490,700	
Finance charge expense* (1.5% × \$620,000)	9,300	
Liability—financing arrangement.....		500,000

*In theory, this fee should be allocated over the entire period of the loan rather than recorded as an expense in the initial period. However, amounts usually are small and the loan period usually is short. For expediency, then, we expense the entire fee immediately.

Santa Teresa will continue to collect the receivables, and will record any discounts, sales returns, and bad debt write-offs, but will remit the cash to Finance Bank, usually on a monthly basis. If \$400,000 of the receivables assigned are collected in December, Santa Teresa Glass records the following entries:

Cash	400,000	
Accounts receivable.....		400,000
Interest expense (\$500,000 × 12% × 1/12).....	5,000	
Liability—financing arrangement.....	400,000	
Cash.....		405,000

Illustration 7–14

Assignment of Accounts Receivable

Accounts Receivable	
620,000	
	400,000
220,000	
Note Payable	
	500,000
400,000	
	100,000

In Santa Teresa's financial statements, the arrangement is described in a disclosure note.

Sale of Receivables

Accounts and notes receivable, like any other assets, can be sold at a gain or a loss. The basic accounting treatment for the sale of receivables is similar to accounting for the sale of other assets. The seller (transferor) (a) removes from the accounts the receivables (and any allowance for bad debts associated with them), (b) recognizes at fair value any assets acquired or liabilities assumed by the seller in the transaction, and (c) records the difference as a gain or loss.

The sale of accounts receivable is a popular method of financing. A technique once used by companies in a few industries or with poor credit ratings, the sale of receivables is now a common occurrence for many different types of companies. For example, **General Motors**, **Deere & Co.**, and **Bank of America** all sell receivables. The two most common types of selling arrangements are **factoring** and **securitization**. We'll now discuss each type.

In a **factoring** arrangement, the company sells its accounts receivable to a financial institution. The financial institution typically buys receivables for cash, handles the billing and collection of the receivables, and charges a fee for this service. Actually, credit cards like **VISA** and **Mastercard** are forms of factoring arrangements. The seller relinquishes all rights to the future cash receipts in exchange for cash from the buyer (the *factor*).

As an example, Illustration 7–15 shows an excerpt from the website of BusinessCash.Com, a financial institution that offers factoring as one of its services.

Notice that the factor, BusinessCash.com, advances only between 70%–92% of the factored receivables. The remaining balance is retained as security until all of the receivables are collected and then remitted to the transferor, net of the factor's fee. The interest rate charged by this factor might seem low, but realize it is a 30-day rate. Multiply it by 12, and you will see a range of annual interest rates from 7% to almost 18%. The specific rate charged depends on, among other things, the quality of the receivables and the length of time before payment is required.

Two popular arrangements used for the sale of receivables are **factoring** and **securitization**.

Illustration 7-15

Advertisement of
Factoring BusinessCash.
Com

Real World Financials

Accounts Receivable Factoring

0.59-1.49% 30-Day Rates!

Funding in 24-48 hours!

Accounts Receivable Financing is the sale of a company's receivables at a discount in exchange for immediate cash. The percentage of working capital a company can receive upfront ranges from 70-92%. AR financing can be a perfect solution for many industries, including to textiles, to wine distributors, and to start-ups.

**FINANCIAL
Reporting Case**

Q4, p. 351

Another popular arrangement used to sell receivables is **securitization**. In a typical accounts receivable securitization, the company creates a “special purpose entity” (SPE), usually a trust or a subsidiary. The SPE buys a pool of trade receivables, credit card receivables, or loans from the company, and then sells related securities, typically debt such as bonds or commercial paper, that are backed (collateralized) by the receivables. Securitizing receivables using an SPE can provide significant economic advantages, allowing companies to reach a large pool of investors and to obtain more favorable financing terms.¹⁹

As an example of a securitization, Illustration 7-16 shows a portion of the disclosure note included in the 2015 annual report of **Flextronics International Limited**, a worldwide leader in design, manufacturing and logistics services, describing the securitization of its trade accounts receivables.

Illustration 7-16

Description of
Securitization Program—
Flextronics International
Limited

Real World Financials

Note 10: Trade Receivables Securitization

The Company continuously sells designated pools of trade receivables . . . to affiliated special purpose entities, each of which in turns sells 100% of the receivables to unaffiliated financial institutions . . . The company services, administers and collects the receivables on behalf of the special purpose entities and receives a servicing fee of 0.1% to 0.5% of serviced receivables per annum.

The specifics of sale accounting vary depending on the particular arrangement between the seller and buyer (transferee).²⁰ One key feature is whether the receivables are transferred **without recourse** or **with recourse**.

The buyer assumes the risk of uncollectibility when accounts receivable are sold **without recourse**.

SALE WITHOUT RECOURSE. If a factoring arrangement is made **without recourse**, the buyer can't ask the seller for more money if the receivables prove to be uncollectible. Therefore, the buyer assumes the risk of bad debts. Illustration 7-17 provides an example of receivables factored without recourse.

Note that in Illustration 7-17 the fair value (**\$50,000**) of the last 10% of the receivables to be collected is less than 10% of the total book value of the receivables ($10\% \times \$600,000 = \$60,000$). That's common, because the last receivables to be collected are likely to be reduced by sales returns and allowances, and therefore have a lower fair value.

The seller retains the risk of uncollectibility when accounts receivable are sold **with recourse**.

SALE WITH RECOURSE. When a company sells accounts receivable **with recourse**, the seller retains all of the risk of bad debts. In effect, the seller guarantees that the buyer will be paid even if some receivables prove to be uncollectible. To compensate the seller for retaining the risk of bad debts, the buyer usually charges a lower factoring fee when receivables are sold with recourse.

In Illustration 7-17, even if the receivables were sold with recourse, Santa Teresa Glass still could account for the transfer as a sale so long as the conditions for sale treatment are met. The only difference is the additional requirement that Santa Teresa record the estimated

¹⁹Although SPEs usually aren't viewed as separate entities for accounting purposes, they typically are separate entities for legal purposes. As a consequence, an SPE typically is viewed as “bankruptcy remote,” meaning that the transferor's creditors can't access the receivables if the transferor goes bankrupt. This increases the safety of the SPE's assets and typically allows it to obtain more favorable financing terms than could the transferor.

²⁰FASB ASC 860: Transfers and Servicing (previously “Accounting for Transfers of Financial Assets, an amendment of FASB Statement No. 140,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 166* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2009)).

In December 2018, the Santa Teresa Glass Company factored accounts receivable that had a book value of \$600,000 to Factor Bank. The transfer was made without recourse. Under this arrangement, Santa Teresa transfers the \$600,000 of receivables to Factor, and Factor immediately remits to Santa Teresa cash equal to 90% of the factored amount ($90\% \times \$600,000 = \$540,000$). Factor retains the remaining 10% to cover its factoring fee (equal to 4% of the total factored amount; $4\% \times \$600,000 = \$24,000$) and to provide a cushion against potential sales returns and allowances. After Factor has collected cash equal to the amount advanced to Santa Teresa plus their factoring fee, Factor remits the excess to Santa Teresa. Therefore, under this arrangement Factor provides Santa Teresa with cash upfront and a “beneficial interest” in the transferred receivables equal to the fair value of the last 10% of the receivables to be collected (which management estimates to equal **\$50,000**), less the 4% factoring fee.*

Santa Teresa Glass records the transfer as follows:

Cash ($90\% \times \$600,000$).....	540,000	
Loss on sale of receivables (to balance)	34,000	
Receivable from factor (\$50,000 – 24,000 fee).....	26,000	
Accounts receivable (book value sold)		600,000

*Illustration 7–17 depicts an arrangement in which the factor’s fee is paid out of the 10% of receivables retained by the factor. Alternatively, a factoring arrangement could be structured to have the factor’s fee withheld from the cash advanced to the company at the start of the arrangement. In that case, in Illustration 7–17 the journal entry recorded by Santa Teresa would be:

Cash [$90\% \times \$600,000$] – \$24,000 fee)	516,000	
Loss on sale of receivables (to balance)	34,000	
Receivable from factor	50,000	
Accounts receivable (book value sold)		600,000

Illustration 7–17

Accounts Receivable
Factored without Recourse

fair value of its recourse obligation as a liability. The recourse obligation is the estimated amount that Santa Teresa will have to pay Factor Bank as a reimbursement for uncollectible receivables. Illustration 7–18 provides an example of receivables factored with recourse.

Assume the same facts as in Illustration 7–17, except that Santa Teresa sold the receivables to Factor *with recourse* and estimates the fair value of the recourse obligation to be \$5,000. Santa Teresa records the transfer as follows:

Cash ($90\% \times \$600,000$).....	540,000	
Loss on sale of receivables (to balance)	39,000	
Receivable from factor ($\$50,000 - 24,000$ fee).....	26,000	
Recourse liability		5,000
Accounts receivable (book value sold)		600,000

Illustration 7–18

Accounts Receivable
Factored with Recourse

When comparing Illustration 7–17 and 7–18, notice that the estimated recourse liability of **\$5,000** increases the loss on sale by \$5,000. If the factor eventually collects all of the receivables, Santa Teresa eliminates the recourse liability and recognizes a gain.

Transfers of Notes Receivable

We handle transfers of notes receivable in the same manner as transfers of accounts receivable. A note receivable can be used to obtain immediate cash from a financial institution either by pledging the note as collateral for a loan or by selling the note. Notes also can be securitized.

The transfer of a note to a financial institution is referred to as **discounting**. The financial institution accepts the note and gives the seller cash equal to the maturity value of the note reduced by a discount. The discount is computed by applying a discount rate to the maturity value and represents the financing fee the financial institution charges for the transaction. Illustration 7–19 provides an example of the calculation of the proceeds received by the transferor.

The transfer of a note receivable to a financial institution is called **discounting**.

Illustration 7–19

Discounting a Note Receivable

STEP 1: Accrue interest earned on the note receivable prior to its being discounted.

STEP 2: Add interest to maturity to calculate maturity value.

STEP 3: Deduct discount to calculate cash proceeds.

On December 31, 2018, the Stridewell Wholesale Shoe Company sold land in exchange for a nine-month, 10% note. The note requires the payment of \$200,000 plus interest on September 30, 2019. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31. The 10% rate properly reflects the time value of money for this type of note. On March 31, 2019, Stridewell discounted the note at the Bank of the East. The bank's discount rate is 12%.

Because the note had been outstanding for three months before it's discounted at the bank, Stridewell first records the interest that has accrued prior to being discounted:

March 31, 2019

Interest receivable	5,000	
Interest revenue ($\$200,000 \times 10\% \times \frac{3}{12}$)		5,000

Next, the value of the note if held to maturity is calculated. Then the discount for the time remaining to maturity is deducted to determine the cash proceeds from discounting the note:

\$200,000	Face amount
15,000	Interest to maturity ($\$200,000 \times 10\% \times \frac{9}{12}$)
<u>215,000</u>	Maturity value
(12,900)	Discount ($\$215,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{3}{12}$)
<u>\$202,100</u>	Cash proceeds

Similar to accounts receivable, Stridewell potentially could account for the transfer as a sale or a secured borrowing. For example, Illustration 7–20 shows the appropriate journal entries to account for the transfer as a sale without recourse.

Illustration 7–20

Discounted Note Treated as a Sale

Cash (proceeds determined above)	202,100	
Loss on sale of note receivable (to balance)	2,900	
Note receivable (face amount)		200,000
Interest receivable (accrued interest determined above)		5,000

Deciding Whether to Account for a Transfer as a Sale or a Secured Borrowing

Transferors usually prefer to use the sale approach rather than the secured borrowing approach to account for the transfer of a receivable, because the sale approach makes the transferor seem less leveraged, more liquid, and perhaps more profitable than does the secured borrowing approach. Illustration 7–21 explains why by describing particular effects on key accounting metrics.

Illustration 7–21

Why Do Transferors of Receivables Generally Want to Account for the Transfer as a Sale?

Does the Accounting Approach	Transfer of Receivables Accounted for as		
	Sale	Secured Borrowing	Why Sales Approach is Preferred by the Transferor
Derecognize A/R, reducing assets?	Yes	No	Sale approach produces lower total assets and higher return on assets (ROA).
Recognize liability for cash received?	No	Yes	Sale approach produces lower liabilities and less leverage (debt/equity).
Where is cash received shown in the statement of cash flows?	May be in operating or financing sections	Always in financing section	Sale approach can produce higher cash flow from operations at time of transfer.
Recognize gain on transfer?	More likely	Less likely	Sale approach can produce higher income at time of transfer.

So when is a company allowed to account for the transfer of receivables as a sale? The most critical element is the extent to which the company (the transferor) *surrenders control over the assets transferred*. For some arrangements, surrender of control is clear (e.g., when a receivable is sold without recourse and without any other involvement by the transferor). However, for other arrangements this distinction is not obvious. Indeed, some companies appear to structure transactions in ways that qualify for sale treatment but retain enough involvement to have control. This led the FASB to provide guidelines designed to constrain inappropriate use of the sale approach. Specifically, the transferor (defined to include the company, its consolidated affiliates, and people acting on behalf of the company) is determined to have surrendered control over the receivables if and only if all of the following conditions are met:²¹

- a. The transferred assets have been isolated from the transferor—beyond the reach of the transferor and its creditors.
- b. Each transferee has the right to pledge or exchange the assets it received.
- c. The transferor does not maintain *effective control* over the transferred assets, for example, by structuring the transfer such that the assets are likely to end up returned to the transferor.

If *all* of these conditions are met, the transferor accounts for the transfer as a sale. If *any* of the conditions are not met, the transferor treats the transaction as a secured borrowing.

It is not surprising that some companies have aggressively tried to circumvent these conditions by creating elaborate transactions to qualify for sale treatment. The most famous recent case was Lehman Brothers' use of "Repo 105" transactions, discussed in Illustration 7–22.

If the transferor is deemed to have surrendered control over the transferred receivables, the arrangement is accounted for as a sale; otherwise as a secured borrowing.

Lehman Brothers' bankruptcy in 2008 was the largest ever to occur in the United States. One factor that likely contributed to investor losses was Lehman's use of "Repo 105" transactions that concealed how overburdened with liabilities the company had become. Here is how a Repo 105 transaction worked. Near the end of each quarter, Lehman would transfer financial assets like receivables to a bank or other financial institution in exchange for cash, and would account for that transfer as a sale of the financial assets. Lehman would use the cash obtained from the transfer to pay down liabilities, so the net effect of the transaction was to reduce assets, reduce liabilities, and therefore make Lehman appear less leveraged and less risky. Lehman also agreed to repurchase ("repo") the assets in the next quarter for an amount of cash that exceeded the amount it initially received.

In substance, this transaction is a loan, since Lehman ended up retaining the financial assets and paying amounts equivalent to principal and interest. However, Lehman argued that the assets were beyond its *effective control*, because the cash it received for transferring the assets was insufficient to enable Lehman to repurchase those assets (the "105" in "Repo 105" refers to the assets being worth at least 105% of the cash Lehman was getting for them). Although Lehman's interpretation was supported by the GAAP in effect at the time, these transactions were very poorly disclosed, and when they eventually came to light, the financial markets and investing public reacted very negatively. In response to the Lehman debacle, the FASB has taken steps to close the loophole that allowed Repo 105 transactions to be accounted for as sales.*

*FASB ASC 860–10–55: Transfers and Servicing—Overall—Implementation Guidance and Illustrations (previously ASU 2011-03: Transfers and Servicing (Topic 860): *Reconsideration of Effective Control for Repurchase Agreements* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB 2011)).

Illustration 7–22

Repo 105 Transactions—
Lehman Brothers

Real World Financials

Illustration 7–23 summarizes the decision process that is used to determine whether a transfer of a receivable is accounted for as a secured borrowing or a sale.

Disclosures

Much disclosure is required when the transferor has continuing involvement in the transferred assets but accounts for the transfer as a sale. Why? Those are the circumstances under

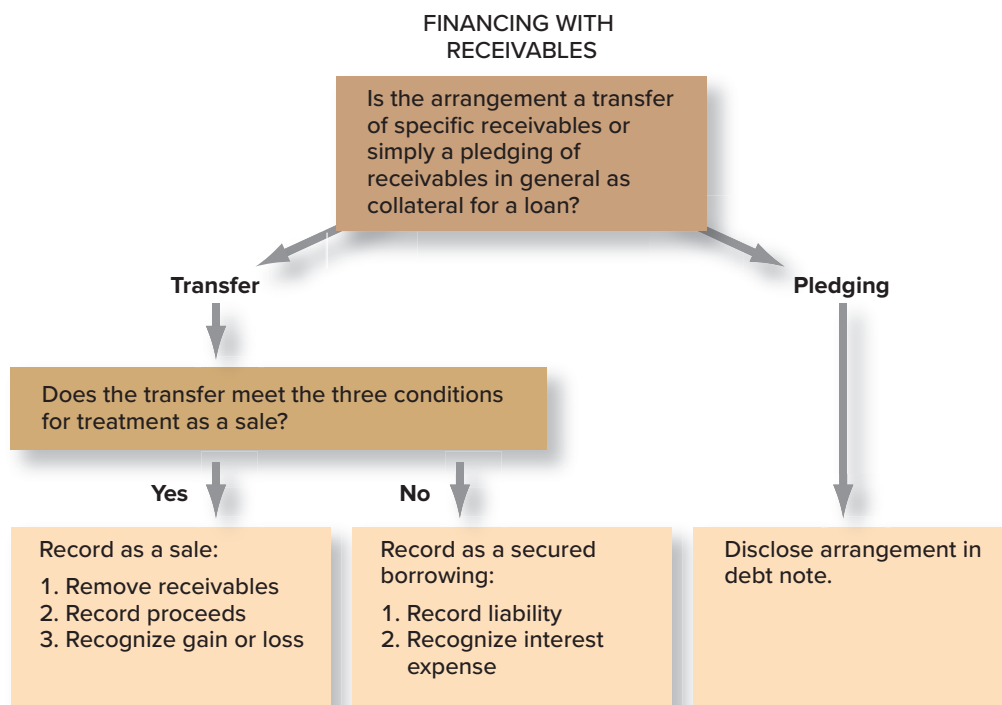
²¹FASB ASC 860–10–40: Transfers and Servicing—Overall—Derecognition (previously "Accounting for Transfers and Servicing of Financial Assets and Extinguishments of Liabilities," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 140* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2000), as amended by *SFAS No. 166*).

Additional Consideration

Participating Interests. What if, rather than transferring all of a particular receivable, a company transfers only part of it? For example, what if a company transfers the right to receive future interest payments on a note, but retains the right to receive the loan principal? U.S. GAAP requires that a partial transfer be treated as a secured borrowing unless the amount transferred qualifies as a “participating interest” as well as meeting the “surrender of control” requirements described above. Participating interests are defined as having a proportionate ownership interest in the receivable and sharing proportionally in the cash flows of the receivable. Many common securitization arrangements do not qualify as participating interests, so this change in GAAP makes it harder for partial transfers to qualify for the sale approach.

Illustration 7-23

Accounting for the
Financing of Receivables



which it's most likely that the transferor may still bear significant risk associated with the arrangement, so those are the arrangements that analysts often view instead as a secured borrowing. As a result, transferors must provide enough information about the transfer to allow financial statement users to fully understand (a) the transfer, (b) any continuing involvement with the transferred assets, and (c) any ongoing risks to the transferor.

The company also has to provide information about the quality of the transferred assets. For example, for transferred receivables, the company needs to disclose the amount of receivables that are past due and any credit losses occurring during the period. Among the other information the company must disclose are these:

- How fair values were estimated when recording the transaction
- Any cash flows occurring between the transferor and the transferee
- How any continuing involvement in the transferred assets will be accounted for on an ongoing basis²²

²²FASB ASC 860-10-40: Transfers and Servicing—Overall—Derecognition (previously “Accounting for Transfers of Financial Assets, an amendment of FASB Statement No. 140,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 166* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2009), par. 17).

International Financial Reporting Standards



LO7-10

Transfers of Receivables. IAS No. 39 and FASB ASC 860 cover financing with receivables under IFRS and U.S. GAAP, respectively.^{23,24} The international and U.S. guidance often lead to similar accounting treatments. Both seek to determine whether an arrangement should be treated as a secured borrowing or a sale, and, having concluded which approach is appropriate, both account for the approaches in a similar fashion.

Where IFRS and U.S. GAAP most differ is in the conceptual basis for their choice of accounting approaches and in the decision process they require to determine which approach to use. As you have seen in this chapter, U.S. GAAP focuses on whether control of assets has shifted from the transferor to the transferee. In contrast, IFRS requires a more complex decision process. The company has to have transferred the rights to receive the cash flows from the receivable, and then considers whether the company has transferred “substantially all of the risks and rewards of ownership,” as well as whether the company has transferred control. Under IFRS:

1. If the company *transfers* substantially all of the risks and rewards of ownership, the transfer is treated as a sale.
2. If the company *retains* substantially all of the risks and rewards of ownership, the transfer is treated as a secured borrowing.
3. If neither conditions 1 or 2 hold, the company accounts for the transaction as a sale if it has transferred control, and as a secured borrowing if it has retained control.

Whether risks and rewards have been transferred is evaluated by comparing how variability in the amounts and timing of the cash flows of the transferred asset affect the company before and after the transfer.

This is a broad overview of the IFRS guidance. Application of the detailed rules is complex, and depending on the specifics of an arrangement, a company could have different accounting under IFRS and U.S. GAAP.

Concept Review Exercise

The Hollywood Lumber Company obtains financing from the Midwest Finance Company by factoring (or discounting) its receivables. During June 2018, the company factored \$1,000,000 of accounts receivable to Midwest. The transfer was made *without* recourse. The factor, Midwest Finance, remits 80% of the factored receivables and retains 20%. When the receivables are collected by Midwest, the retained amount, less a 3% fee (3% of the total factored amount), will be remitted to Hollywood Lumber. Hollywood estimates that the fair value of the amount retained by Midwest is \$180,000.

In addition, on June 30, 2018, Hollywood discounted a note receivable without recourse. The note, which originated on March 31, 2018, requires the payment of \$150,000 *plus* interest at 8% on March 31, 2019. Midwest’s discount rate is 10%. The company’s fiscal year-end is December 31.

Required:

Prepare journal entries for Hollywood Lumber for the factoring of accounts receivable and the note receivable discounted on June 30. Assume that the required criteria are met and the transfers are accounted for as sales.

FINANCING WITH RECEIVABLES

²³“Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement,” *International Accounting Standard No. 39* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2014.

²⁴FASB ASC 860: Transfers and Servicing (previously “Accounting for Transfers of Financial Assets, an amendment of FASB Statement No. 140,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 166* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2009)).

Solution:

The Factoring of Receivables			
Cash ($80\% \times \$1,000,000$).....	800,000		
Loss on sale of receivables (to balance)	50,000		
Receivable from factor ($\$180,000 - 30,000$ fee).....	150,000		
Accounts receivable (balance sold)		1,000,000	
The Note Receivable Discounted			
Interest receivable	3,000		
Interest revenue ($\$150,000 \times 8\% \times 3/12$).....		3,000	
Cash (proceeds determined below)	149,850		
Loss on sale of note receivable (difference)	3,150		
Note receivable (face amount)		150,000	
Interest receivable (accrued interest determined above)		3,000	

\$150,000	Face amount
12,000	Interest to maturity ($\$150,000 \times 8\%$)
<u>162,000</u>	Maturity value
(12,150)	Discount ($\$162,000 \times 10\% \times 9/12$)
<u>\$149,850</u>	Cash proceeds

Decision Makers' Perspective

● LO7-9

Management must evaluate the costs and benefits of any change in credit and collection policies.

RECEIVABLES MANAGEMENT. A company's investment in receivables is influenced by several variables, including the level of sales, the nature of the product or service sold, and credit and collection policies. These variables are, of course, related. For example, a change in credit policies could affect sales. In fact, more liberal credit policies—allowing customers a longer time to pay or offering cash discounts for early payment—often are initiated with the specific objective of increasing sales volume.

Management's choice of credit and collection policies often involves trade-offs. For example, offering cash discounts may increase sales volume, accelerate customer payment, and reduce bad debts. These benefits are not without cost. The cash discounts reduce the amount of cash collected from customers who take advantage of the discounts. Extending payment terms also may increase sales volume. However, this creates an increase in the required investment in receivables and may increase bad debts.

The ability to use receivables as a method of financing also offers management alternatives. Assigning, factoring, and discounting receivables are alternative methods of financing operations that must be evaluated relative to other financing methods such as lines of credit or other types of short-term borrowing.

Investors, creditors, and financial analysts can gain important insights by monitoring a company's investment in receivables. Chapter 4 introduced the receivables turnover ratio and the related average collection period, ratios designed to monitor receivables. Recall that these ratios are calculated as follows:

$$\text{Receivables turnover ratio} = \frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average accounts receivable (net)}}$$

$$\text{Average collection period} = \frac{365 \text{ days}}{\text{Receivables turnover ratio}}$$

The turnover ratio shows the number of times during a period that the average accounts receivable balance is collected, and the average collection period is an approximation of the number of days the average accounts receivable balance is outstanding.

As a company's sales grow, receivables also will increase. If the percentage increase in receivables is greater than the percentage increase in sales, the receivables turnover ratio will decline (the average collection period will increase). This could indicate customer

dissatisfaction with the product or that the company has extended too generous payment terms in order to attract new customers, which, in turn, could increase sales returns and bad debts.

These ratios also can be used to compare the relative effectiveness of companies in managing the investment in receivables. Of course, it would be meaningless to compare the receivables turnover ratio of a computer products company such as **IBM** with that of, say, a food products company like **Hershey**. A company selling high-priced, low-volume products like mainframe computers generally will grant customers longer payment terms than a company selling lower priced, higher volume food products. Illustration 7–24 lists the 2015 receivables turnover ratio for some well-known companies. The differences are as expected, given the nature of the companies' products and operations. In particular, companies designing expensive products for medical and business applications turn over their receivables less frequently than do consumer-goods manufacturers and wholesalers.

Company	2015 Receivables Turnover Ratio
Medtronic (medical technology)	4.54
Autodesk (design software)	4.84
General Mills (wholesale consumer foods)	8.28

Illustration 7–24

Receivables Turnover Ratios

To illustrate receivables analysis in more detail, let's compute the 2015 receivables turnover ratio and the average collection period for two companies in the software industry, **Symantec Corp.** and **CA, Inc.**

(\$ in millions)				
	Symantec Corp.		CA, Inc.	
	2015	2014	2015	2014
Accounts receivable (net)	\$993	\$1,007	\$652	\$800
Two-year averages	\$1,000		\$ 726	
Net sales—2015	\$6,508		\$4,262	

	Symantec Corp.	CA, Inc.	Industry Average
Receivables Turnover	$\frac{\$6,508}{\$1,000} = 6.51 \text{ times}$	$\frac{\$4,262}{\$726} = 5.87 \text{ times}$	6.85 times
Average Collection Period	$\frac{365}{6.51} = 56.07 \text{ days}$	$\frac{365}{5.87} = 62.18 \text{ days}$	53.28 days

On average, Symantec collects its receivables 6 days sooner than does CA, but 3 days slower than the industry average. A major portion of Symantec's sales of products like Norton antivirus software are made directly to consumers online who pay immediately with credit cards, significantly accelerating payment. CA, on the other hand, sells primarily to businesses, which take longer to pay.

EARNINGS QUALITY. Recall our discussion in Chapter 4 concerning earnings quality. We learned that managers have the ability, to a limited degree, to manipulate reported income and that many observers believe this practice diminishes earnings quality because it can mask "permanent" earnings. Former SEC Chairman Arthur Levitt listed discretionary accruals, which he called "Miscellaneous Cookie Jar Reserves," as one of the most popular methods companies use to manipulate income.

Sometimes financial statement users can examine accounts receivable, the allowance for bad debts, and other accounts to detect low earnings quality. For example, in an analysis that eventually led to an important SEC fraud case, **PaineWebber Inc.** downgraded its

Bad debt expense is one of a variety of discretionary accruals that provide management with the opportunity to manipulate income.

stock recommendation for **Sunbeam, Inc.**, after noticing unusually high accounts receivable and unexpected increases in sales of certain products. Also, Sunbeam's allowance for uncollectible accounts had shown large increases in prior periods. It eventually came to light that Sunbeam had been manipulating its income by using a "bill and hold" strategy with retail buyers. This involved selling products at large discounts to retailers before they normally would buy and then holding the products in third-party warehouses, with delivery at a later date. More generally, research indicates that companies sometimes manage earnings by building up large allowances for bad debts in good periods and then reducing those allowances to increase earnings in bad periods.²⁵

Another area for accounting-quality concern is the sale method used to account for transfers of receivables. Research suggests that some companies manage earnings by distorting the fair value estimates that are made as part of recording securitizations.²⁶ Also, some firms classify cash flows associated with selling their accounts receivable in the operating section of the statement of cash flows, such that changes in the extent to which accounts receivable are sold can be used to manipulate cash flow from operations. In fact, evidence suggests that sophisticated investors and bond-rating agencies undo sales accounting to treat transfers of receivables as secured borrowings before assessing the riskiness of a company's debt.²⁷ Still, Wall Street is very good at identifying clever ways to structure transactions around accounting standards, so it is important to be vigilant regarding the accounting for these transactions. ●

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© Rob Daly / age fotostock

- 1. Explain the allowance method of accounting for bad debts.** (p. 362) The allowance method is used to carry accounts receivable at the amount expected to be collected. In an adjusting entry, we record bad debt expense and reduce accounts receivable indirectly by crediting a contra account to accounts receivable for an estimate of the amount that eventually will prove uncollectible.
- 2. What approaches might CHS have used to arrive at the \$275 million bad debt provision?** (p. 364) CHS would determine the balance in the allowance for uncollectible accounts that is necessary to show net accounts receivable at the appropriate carrying value, and then would record whatever adjustment and corresponding bad debt expense resulted in that balance. It likely would use an aging of accounts receivable to calculate the appropriate balance. It might also use a percentage of net sales to estimate bad debt expense, particularly on an interim basis, but that approach would only be allowed if it produced a similar carrying value as the balance sheet approach.
- 3. Are there any alternatives to the allowance method?** (p. 365) An alternative to the allowance method is the direct write-off method. Using this method, adjusting entries are not recorded and any bad debt that does arise simply is written off as bad debt expense. The direct write-off method is not permitted by GAAP except in limited circumstances.
- 4. What does it mean for CHS to securitize its receivables?** (p. 376) Securitization is a method used to sell accounts receivables. In a typical securitization, a company creates a "special purpose entity" that buys receivables from the company and issues securities that are collateralized by the securities. Securitization allows CHS to obtain cash for its receivables sooner than it could otherwise, and to reach a large pool of investors at favorable financing rates.

²⁵S.B. Jackson and X. Liu, "The Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts, Conservatism, and Earnings Management," *Journal of Accounting Research* 48, No. 3 (2010): 565-601.

²⁶P. M. Dechow, L. A. Myers, and C. Shakespeare, "Fair Value Accounting and Gains from Asset Securitizations: A Convenient Earnings Management Tool with Compensation Side-Benefits," *Journal of Accounting and Economics* 49, No. 2 (2010): 2-25.

²⁷Other recent research provides evidence that investors treat securitizations as loans rather than asset sales, suggesting that they are unconvinced that a sale has truly taken place. For example, see W. R. Landsman, K. Peasnell, and C. Shakespeare, "Are Asset Securitizations Sales or Loans?" *The Accounting Review* 83, No. 5 (2008), pp. 1251-72.

The Bottom Line

- **LO7-1** Internal control refers to the plan designed to encourage adherence to company policies and procedures; promote operational efficiency; minimize errors, thefts or fraud; and maximize the reliability and accuracy of accounting data. Key elements of an internal control system for cash receipts and disbursements include separation of record keeping from control of cash duties and the periodic preparation of a bank reconciliation. (p. 352)
- **LO7-2** Cash can be informally restricted by management for a particular purpose. Restrictions also can be contractually imposed. If restricted cash is available for current operations or to pay current liabilities, it's classified as a current asset; otherwise, it's classified as investments and funds or other assets. (p. 353)
- **LO7-3** The gross method of accounting for cash discounts considers a discount not taken as part of sales revenue. The net method considers a discount not taken as sales discount forfeited. (p. 357)
- **LO7-4** When merchandise returns are anticipated, an allowance for sales returns should be recorded as a contra account to accounts receivable and sales revenue also should be reduced by the anticipated sales returns. (p. 358)
- **LO7-5** At the end of each period, the company estimates the necessary balance in the allowance for uncollectible accounts and then records whatever adjustment to the allowance and corresponding bad debt expense is necessary to reach that balance. (p. 362)
- **LO7-6** The balance sheet approach determines bad debt expense by estimating the appropriate carrying value of accounts receivable to be reported in the balance sheet and then adjusting the allowance for uncollectible accounts as necessary to reach that carrying value. The income statement approach estimates bad debt expense based on the notion that a certain percentage of each period's credit sales will prove to be uncollectible. (p. 364)
- **LO7-7** Notes receivable are formal credit arrangements between a creditor (lender) and a debtor (borrower). The typical note receivable requires the payment of a specified face amount, also called principal, at a specified maturity date or dates. In addition, interest is paid at a stated percentage of the face amount. Interest on notes is calculated by multiplying the face amount by the annual rate by the fraction of the annual period. (p. 368)
- **LO7-8** A wide variety of methods exists for companies to use their receivables to obtain immediate cash. These methods can be described as either a secured borrowing or a sale of receivables. If three conditions indicating surrender of control are met, the transferor accounts for the transfer of receivables as a sale; otherwise as a secured borrowing. (p. 374)
- **LO7-9** A company's investment in receivables is influenced by several related variables, to include the level of sales, the nature of the product or service, and credit and collection policies. Investors, creditors, and financial analysts can gain important insights by monitoring a company's investment in receivables. The receivables turnover and average collection period ratios are designed to monitor receivables. (p. 382)
- **LO7-10** Accounting for cash and accounts receivable are similar under U.S. GAAP and IFRS. Other than some differences in terminology and balance sheet classifications, the most important differences involve accounting for transfers of receivables. Both IFRS and U.S. GAAP seek to distinguish between determining whether a sales treatment or secured borrowing treatment is appropriate, but they use different conceptual frameworks to guide that choice. U.S. GAAP focuses on whether control of the receivables is transferred, while IFRS use a more complex decision process that also considers whether substantially all of the risks and rewards of ownership have been transferred. (pp. 355, 373, 381, and 392) ●

Cash Controls

APPENDIX 7A

Bank Reconciliation

One of the most important tools used in the control of cash is the **bank reconciliation**. Since all cash receipts are deposited into the bank account and cash disbursements are made by check, the bank account provides a separate record of cash. It's desirable to periodically compare the bank balance with the balance in the company's own records and reconcile any differences.

Differences between the cash book and bank balance occur due to differences in the timing of recognition of certain transactions and errors.

STEP 1: Adjust the bank balance to the corrected cash balance.

STEP 2: Adjust the book balance to the corrected cash balance.

Illustration 7A-1

Bank Reconciliation—
Reconciling Items

Balance per Bank
+ Deposits outstanding
– Checks outstanding
± Errors

Corrected balance

Balance per Book
+ Collections by bank
– Service charges
– NSF checks
± Errors

Corrected balance

The two corrected
balances must equal.

You probably know from your own personal experience that the ending balance in your checking account reported on your monthly bank statement rarely equals the balance you have recorded in your checkbook. Differences arise from two types of items: timing differences and errors.

Timing differences occur when the company and the bank record transactions at different times. At any point in time the company may have adjusted the cash balance for items of which the bank is not yet aware. Likewise, the bank may have adjusted its record of that balance by items of which the company is not yet aware. For example, checks written and cash deposits are not all processed by the bank in the same month that they are recorded by the company. Also, the bank may adjust the company's account for items such as service charges that the company is not aware of until the bank statement is received.

Errors can be made either by the company or the bank. For example, a check might be written for \$210 but recorded on the company's books as a \$120 disbursement; a deposit of \$500 might be processed incorrectly by the bank as a \$50 deposit. In addition to serving as a safeguard of cash, the bank reconciliation also uncovers errors such as these and helps ensure that the proper cash balance is reported in the balance sheet.

Bank reconciliations include adjustments to the balance per bank for timing differences involving transactions already reflected in the company's accounting records that have not yet been processed by the bank. These adjustments usually include *checks outstanding* and *deposits outstanding* (also called *deposits in transit*). In addition, the balance per bank would be adjusted for any bank errors discovered. These adjustments produce an adjusted bank balance that represents the corrected cash balance.

The balance per books is similarly adjusted for timing differences involving transactions already reflected by the bank of which the company is unaware until the bank statement is received. These would include service charges, charges for NSF (nonsufficient funds) checks, and collections made by the bank on the company's behalf. In addition, the balance per books is adjusted for any company errors discovered, resulting in an adjusted book balance that will also represent the corrected cash balance. *Each of these adjustments requires a journal entry to correct the book balance.* Only adjustments to the book balance require journal entries. Illustration 7A-1 recaps these reconciling items.

Step 1: Adjustments to Bank Balance

1. *Add deposits outstanding.* These represent cash amounts received by the company and debited to cash that have not been deposited in the bank by the bank statement cutoff date and cash receipts deposited in the bank near the end of the period that are not recorded by the bank until after the cutoff date.
2. *Deduct checks outstanding.* These represent checks written and recorded by the company as credits to cash that have not yet been processed by the bank before the cutoff date.
3. *Bank errors.* These will either be increases or decreases depending on the nature of the error.

Step 2: Adjustments to Book Balance

1. *Add collections made by the bank* on the company's behalf and other increases in cash that the company is unaware of until the bank statement is received.
2. *Deduct service and other charges* made by the bank that the company is unaware of until the bank statement is received.
3. *Deduct NSF (nonsufficient funds) checks.* These are checks previously deposited for which the payors do not have sufficient funds in their accounts to cover the amount of the checks. The checks are returned to the company whose responsibility it is to seek payment from payors.
4. *Company errors.* These will either be increases or decreases depending on the nature of the error.

To demonstrate the bank reconciliation process, consider Illustration 7A-2.

Illustration 7A-2

Bank Reconciliation

The Hawthorne Manufacturing Company maintains a general checking account at the First Pacific Bank. First Pacific provides a bank statement and canceled checks once a month. The cutoff date is the last day of the month. The bank statement for the month of May is summarized as follows:

Balance, May 1, 2018	\$ 32,120
Deposits	82,140
Checks processed	(78,433)
Service charges	(80)
NSF checks	(2,187)
Note payment collected by bank (includes \$120 interest)	1,120
Balance, May 31, 2018	\$ 34,680

The company's general ledger cash account has a balance of **\$35,276** at the end of May. A review of the company records and the bank statement reveals the following:

1. Cash receipts not yet deposited totaled \$2,965.
2. A deposit of \$1,020 was made on May 31 that was not credited to the company's account until June.
3. All checks written in April have been processed by the bank. Checks written in May that had not been processed by the bank total \$5,536.
4. A check written for \$1,790 was incorrectly recorded by the company as a \$790 disbursement. The check was for payment to a supplier of raw materials.

The bank reconciliation prepared by the company appears as follows:

Step 1: Bank Balance to Corrected Balance

Balance per bank statement	\$34,680
Add: Deposits outstanding	3,985*
Deduct: Checks outstanding	(5,536)
Corrected cash balance	\$ 33,129

Step 2: Book Balance to Corrected Balance

Balance per books	\$35,276
Add: Note collected by bank	1,120
Deduct:	
Service charges	(80)
NSF checks	(2,187)
Error—understatement of check	(1,000)
Corrected cash balance	\$ 33,129

*\$2,965 + 1,020 = \$3,985

The next step is to prepare adjusting journal entries to reflect each of the adjustments to the balance per books. These represent amounts the company was not previously aware of until receipt of the bank statement. No adjusting entries are needed for the adjustments to the balance per bank because the company has already recorded these items. However, the bank needs to be notified of any errors discovered.

To record the receipt of principal and interest on note collected directly by the bank

Cash	1,120	
Notes receivable		1,000
Interest revenue		120

(continued)

(concluded)

To record credits to cash revealed by the bank reconciliation		
Miscellaneous expense (bank service charges).....	80	
Accounts receivable (NSF checks).....	2,187	
Accounts payable (error in check to supplier)	1,000	
Cash.....		3,267

After these entries are posted, the general ledger cash account will equal the corrected balance of \$33,129.

Petty Cash

Most companies keep a small amount of cash on hand to pay for low-cost items such as postage, office supplies, delivery charges, and entertainment expenses. It would be inconvenient, time consuming, and costly to process a check each time these small payments are made. A petty cash fund provides a more efficient way to handle these payments.

The petty cash fund always should have cash and receipts that together equal the amount of the fund.

A petty cash fund is established by transferring a specified amount of cash from the company's general checking account to an employee designated as the petty cash custodian. The amount of the fund should approximate the expenditures made from the fund during a relatively short period of time (say a week or a month). The custodian disburses cash from the fund when the appropriate documentation is presented, such as a receipt for the purchase of office supplies. At any point in time, the custodian should be in possession of cash and appropriate receipts that sum to the amount of the fund. The receipts serve as the basis for recording appropriate expenses each time the fund is replenished. Consider the example in Illustration 7A-3.

Illustration 7A-3
Petty Cash Fund

On May 1, 2018, the Hawthorne Manufacturing Company established a \$200 petty cash fund. John Ringo is designated as the petty cash custodian. The fund will be replenished at the end of each month. On May 1, 2018, a check is written for \$200 made out to John Ringo, petty cash custodian. During the month of May, John paid bills totaling \$160 summarized as follows:		
Postage	\$ 40	
Office supplies	35	
Delivery charges	55	
Entertainment	30	
Total	<u>\$160</u>	

In journal entry form, the transaction to establish the fund would be recorded as follows:

May 1, 2018		
Petty Cash	200	
Cash (checking account).....		200

A petty cash fund is established by writing a check to the custodian.

No entries are recorded at the time the actual expenditures are made from the fund. The expenditures are recorded when reimbursement is requested at the end of the month. At that time, a check is written to John Ringo, petty cash custodian, for the total of the fund receipts, \$160 in this case. John cashes the check and replenishes the fund to \$200. In journal entry form, replenishing the fund would be recorded as follows:

May 31, 2018		
Postage expense.....	40	
Office supplies expense	35	
Delivery expense.....	55	
Entertainment expense	30	
Cash (checking account).....		160

The petty cash account is not debited when replenishing the fund. If, however, the size of the fund is increased at time of replenishment, the account is debited for the increase. Similarly, petty cash would be credited if the size of the fund is decreased.

To maintain the control objective of separation of duties, the petty cash custodian should not be involved in the process of writing or approving checks, nor in record-keeping. In addition, management should arrange for surprise counts of the fund.

The appropriate expense accounts are debited when the petty cash fund is reimbursed.

Accounting for Impairment of a Receivable and a Troubled Debt Restructuring²⁸

APPENDIX 7B

Impairment of a Receivable

Earlier in this chapter you learned about the allowance method of accounting for bad debts. Because it is difficult to determine which individual receivables will ultimately prove uncollectible, the allowance method recognizes bad debt expense for a large group of receivables and reduces the book value of that group of receivables by establishing an allowance for uncollectible accounts. Later, when an individual receivable proves uncollectible, the receivable and the allowance are both reduced. The allowance method is used for many types of receivables, including normal trade receivables, notes receivable, and loans receivable.

However, for long-term receivables like notes receivable and loans receivable, companies also can consider information specific to an *individual* receivable when estimating bad debt (credit loss) expense. For example, a bank might learn that one of its borrowers is having financial difficulties. In that case, a more precise estimate of a credit loss for that receivable can be made.

Under current GAAP, an impairment loss (credit loss) on a receivable is recognized if the creditor (lender) believes it is *probable* that it will not receive all of the cash flows (principal and any interest payments) that have been promised by the debtor (borrower). In that case, the creditor remeasures the receivable based on the present value of currently expected cash flows, discounted at the receivable's original effective interest rate.²⁹ The necessary adjustment should seem familiar—a loss is included in current income by debiting bad debt expense (or a separate impairment loss account) and crediting the allowance for uncollectible accounts. Illustration 7B–1 provides an example.

In the future, if additional information indicates that conditions have changed, bad debt expense and the allowance for uncollectible accounts are increased or decreased as necessary to reflect the change.

You may be wondering whether recognizing an impairment loss leads to a double counting of bad debt expense. After all, the receivable first was included in a group of receivables for which bad debt expense was estimated, and then was singled out for recognition of an impairment loss. Creditors have to be careful to avoid this problem by excluding an impaired receivable and estimating bad debt expense as appropriate for the rest of the receivables. That way, bad debt expense for the impaired receivable and for the rest of the receivables is calculated separately, and there is no double counting.

CURRENT EXPECTED CREDIT LOSS (CECL) MODEL: EXAMPLE As mentioned earlier in the chapter, the CECL model, required starting in 2020 and adopted as early as 2019, removes the “probable” criterion for recognizing bad debts.³⁰ The FASB provides firms with broad latitude concerning how they will estimate credit losses under CECL. As an example of how the CECL model could be applied, Illustration 7B–2 considers a long-term receivable for which there is a relatively lower likelihood of credit loss than you saw in Illustration 7B–1.

²⁸This appendix discusses accounting for the impairment of individual accounts and notes receivable, as specified in ASC 310–10–35: Receivables—Overall—Subsequent Measurement (previously “Accounting by Creditors for Impairment of a Loan—An amendment of FASB Statements No. 5 and 15,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 114* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1993)). When a receivable has been securitized, or when a company has elected to account for a receivable under the fair value option, the receivable is viewed as an investment and different GAAP applies, as described in Appendix 12B.

²⁹Rather than calculating the present value of the loan, as a practical expediency the creditor can base the new value of the loan on the loan's market price or the fair value of collateral that supports the loan.

³⁰“Financial Instruments—Credit Losses (Topic 326)” *Accounting Standards Update 2016-13* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2016).

Illustration 7B-1

Receivable Impairment

The discounted present value of the cash flows prior to the impairment is the same as the receivable's book value.

The discounted present value of the cash flows after the impairment is less than book value.

The difference is a loss, debited to bad debt expense.

Brillard Properties owes First Prudent Bank \$30 million under a 10% note with two years remaining to maturity. Due to Brillard's financial difficulties, the previous year's interest (\$3 million) was not paid. First Prudent estimates that it will not receive the \$3 million of accrued interest, that it will receive only \$2 million of interest in each of the next two years, and that it will receive only \$25 million of principal at the end of two years.

Analysis

Previous Value

Accrued interest (10% × \$30,000,000)	\$ 3,000,000	
Principal	30,000,000	
Book value of the receivable		\$ 33,000,000

New Value (based on estimated cash flows to be received)

Present value of accrued interest to be received	= \$	0	
Present value of future interest	\$ 2 million × 1.73554*	=	3,471,080
Present value of estimated principal	\$25 million × 0.82645†	=	20,661,250
Present value of the receivable			(24,132,330)
Loss			\$ 8,867,670

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 2$, $i = 10\%$

†Present value of \$1: $n = 2$, $i = 10\%$

Journal Entry

Bad debt expense (to balance)	8,867,670	
Accrued interest receivable		3,000,000
Allowance for uncollectible accounts (\$30,000,000 – 24,132,330)		5,867,670

Illustration 7B-2

Receivable Impairment
Under CECL Model

Hart Industries owes Second National Bank \$20 million under a 10% note with two years remaining to maturity. Due to Hart's financial difficulties, the previous year's interest (\$2 million) was not paid. Based on its experience with similar loans and its projections regarding Hart's ability to generate cash in the future, Second National estimates that there is a 75% chance it will be paid in full and a 25% chance that Hart will default and Second National will (a) not receive the \$2 million of accrued interest, (b) receive only \$1 million of interest in each of the next two years, and (c) receive only \$15 million of principal at the end of two years.

Analysis

Previous Value

Accrued interest (10% × \$20,000,000)	\$ 2,000,000	
Principal	20,000,000	
Amortized cost basis of the receivable		\$22,000,000

Value Assuming Default (based on estimated cash flows to be received)

Present value of accrued interest to be received	= \$	0	
Present value of future interest	\$ 1 million × 1.73554*	=	1,735,540
Present value of estimated principal	\$15 million × 0.82645†	=	12,396,750
Present value of the receivable			(14,132,290)
Loss if Default Occurs			\$ 7,867,710

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 2$, $i = 10\%$

†Present value of \$1: $n = 2$, $i = 10\%$

Calculation of CECL Impairment

Amortized cost basis of the receivable (see Illustration 7B-2)		\$22,000,000
Expected credit loss		
(25%) × \$7,867,710 (see Illustration 7B-2)	\$1,966,928	
(75%) × \$0 loss		0
Expected credit loss		(1,966,928)
Revised amortized cost basis of the receivable		\$ 20,033,072

Note that, under current GAAP, Second National would recognize *zero* impairment, because a loss is *not probable*. The receivable still would be grouped with other similar receivables to consider the potential for bad debts for the group. When you compare the write down of \$0 under current GAAP with the write down of almost \$2 million under the CECL model, you can see why banks are concerned that the CECL model will increase the amount of bad debt expense they have to recognize.

Second National would account for the expected credit loss as a credit loss (bad debt) expense, adjusting upward or downward its allowance for credit losses (bad debts) with respect to the Second National loan as necessary to state the net receivable at \$20,033,072.

Troubled Debt Restructurings

Sometimes a creditor changes the original terms of a debt agreement in response to the debtor's financial difficulties. The creditor makes concessions to the debtor that make it easier for the debtor to pay, with the goal of maximizing the amount of cash that the creditor can collect. In that case, the new arrangement is referred to as a **troubled debt restructuring**. Because identifying an arrangement as a troubled debt restructuring requires recognizing any impairment loss associated with the arrangement, creditors might be reluctant to conclude that a troubled debt restructuring has occurred, so the FASB provides guidance to help ensure that all troubled debt restructurings are properly identified.³¹

A troubled debt restructuring occurs when the creditor makes concessions to the debtor in response to the debtor's financial difficulties.

WHEN THE RECEIVABLE IS CONTINUED, BUT WITH MODIFIED TERMS. In a troubled debt restructuring, it's likely that the bank allows the receivable to continue but with the terms of the debt agreement modified to make it easier for the debtor to comply. The lender might agree to reduce or delay the scheduled interest payments. Or, it may agree to reduce or delay the maturity amount. Often a troubled debt restructuring will call for some combination of these concessions.

Consider again Illustration 7B–1. What if First Prudent Bank and Brillard Properties actually *renegotiated* Brillard's debt to (1) forgive the interest accrued from last year, (2) reduce the two remaining interest payments from \$3 million each to \$2 million each, and (3) reduce the face amount from \$30 million to \$25 million? In that case, First Prudent would account for its loss in exactly the same way as shown in Illustration 7B–1. The only difference would be that, whereas we originally based calculations on First Prudent's estimates of future cash flows, we now base calculations on the cash flows that were specified in the restructured debt agreement.

WHEN THE RECEIVABLE IS SETTLED OUTRIGHT. Sometimes a receivable in a troubled debt restructuring is actually settled at the time of the restructuring by the debtor making a payment of cash, some other noncash assets, or even shares of the debtor's stock. In that case, the creditor simply records a loss for the difference between the carrying amount of the receivable and the fair value of the asset(s) or equity securities received. Illustration 7B–3 provides an example.

³¹A troubled debt restructuring occurs when a creditor makes concessions in response to a debtor's financial difficulties. These terms have been clarified recently (ASC 310–40–15: Receivables–Troubled Debt Restructurings by Creditors–Scope and Scope Exceptions; previously “A Creditor’s Determination of Whether a Restructuring is a Troubled Debt Restructuring,” *Accounting Standards Update No. 2011–02* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2011)). A debtor is viewed as experiencing *financial difficulties* if it is probable that the debtor will default on any of its liabilities unless the creditor restructures the debt. A *concession* has occurred if, as a result of the restructuring, the creditor does not expect to collect all amounts due, including accrued interest. A concession also can occur if the creditor restructures the terms of the debt in a way that provides the debtor with funds at a better rate of interest than the debtor could receive if the debtor tried to obtain new debt with similar terms (for example, a similar payment schedule, collateral, and guarantees) as the restructured debt. But, not all changes are concessions. For example, a restructuring that results in an insignificant delay of payment is not a concession.

Illustration 7B-3Debt Settled at the Time of
a Restructuring

First Prudent Bank is owed \$30 million by Brillard Properties under a 10% note with two years remaining to maturity. Due to Brillard's financial difficulties, the previous year's interest (\$3 million) was not received. The bank agrees to settle the receivable (and accrued interest receivable) in exchange for property having a fair value of \$20 million.

	(\$ in millions)
Land (fair value)	20
Bad debt expense (to balance)*	13
Accrued interest receivable (10% × \$30 million)	3
Note receivable (account balance)	30

*Rather than debiting bad debt expense, First Prudent might debit Loss on troubled debt restructuring.



International Financial Reporting Standards

● LO7-10

Impairments. IFRS (IAS 39) and current U.S. GAAP (ASC 310) generally provide similar treatments of impairments of receivables, but the specific impairment evaluation process and criteria are somewhat different regarding:^{32,33}

- Level of analysis:
 - Under U.S. GAAP we examine impairment of individual receivables (whether or not they are significant). If impairment isn't indicated, we group the receivables with other receivables of similar risk characteristics when estimating bad debts for the group.
 - Under IFRS we first consider whether individually significant receivables are impaired. If impairment isn't indicated, the individually significant receivables are grouped with other receivables of similar risk characteristics to test impairment.
- Impairment indicators:
 - U.S. GAAP provides an illustrative list of information we might consider when evaluating receivables for impairment, and requires measurement of potential impairment if impairment (a) is viewed as probable and (b) can be estimated reliably.
 - IFRS provides an illustrative list of "loss events" and requires measurement of an impairment if there is objective evidence that a loss event has occurred that has an impact on the future cash flows to be collected and that can be estimated reliably. Requiring the occurrence of a loss event may result in recognizing a loss later under IFRS than U.S. GAAP.
- Reversal of impairments: Under both U.S. GAAP and IFRS, if an impaired receivable's estimated future cash flows improve, the creditor recalculates the impairment and adjusts the valuation allowance up or down as appropriate. The net book value of the receivable can't exceed the original amount of the receivable (as adjusted for any normal amortization of any discount or premium). Reversals increase income (for example, by crediting bad debt expense in the period of reversal).





Also, as indicated earlier in this chapter, IFRS requirements are moving to an ECL ("Expected Credit Loss") model for recognizing credit losses on long-term receivables, while U.S. GAAP is moving to the CECL model. The primary difference between the two approaches is that the ECL model used in IFRS does not accrue post-twelve-month credit losses for receivables that have not as yet deteriorated in credit quality. Therefore, U.S. GAAP will tend to recognize credit losses earlier, and in higher amounts, than are recognized under IFRS. Further convergence in this area is unlikely in the near future.

In this appendix we have focused on creditors' accounting for loan losses and troubled debt restructurings. We discuss those topics from the standpoint of the debtor in Chapter 14, Appendix B.

³²"Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement," *International Accounting Standard No. 39* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2014.

³³34FASB ASC 310-10-35: Receivables—Overall—Subsequent Measurement.

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 7-1** Define cash equivalents.
- Q 7-2** Explain the primary functions of internal controls procedures in the accounting area. What is meant by separation of duties?
- Q 7-3** What are the responsibilities of management described in Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act? What are the responsibilities of the company's auditor?
- Q 7-4** Define a compensating balance. How are compensating balances reported in financial statements?
-  **IFRS Q 7-5** Do U.S. GAAP and IFRS differ in how bank overdrafts are treated? Explain.
- Q 7-6** Explain the difference between a trade discount and a cash discount.
- Q 7-7** Distinguish between the gross and net methods of accounting for cash discounts.
- Q 7-8** Briefly explain the accounting treatment for sales returns.
- Q 7-9** Explain the typical way companies account for uncollectible accounts receivable (bad debts). When is it permissible to record bad debt expense only at the time when receivables actually prove uncollectible?
- Q 7-10** Briefly explain the difference between the income statement approach and the balance sheet approach to estimating bad debts.
-  **IFRS Q 7-11** If a company has accounts receivable from ordinary customers and from related parties, can they combine those receivables in their financial statements under U.S. GAAP? Under IFRS?
- Q 7-12** Is any special accounting treatment required for the assigning of accounts receivable in general as collateral for debt?
- Q 7-13** Explain any possible differences between accounting for an account receivable factored with recourse compared with one factored without recourse.
-  **IFRS Q 7-14** Do U.S. GAAP and IFRS differ in the criteria they use to determine whether a transfer of receivables is treated as a sale? Explain.
- Q 7-15** What is meant by the discounting of a note receivable? Describe the four-step process used to account for discounted notes.
- Q 7-16** What are the key variables that influence a company's investment in receivables? Describe the two ratios used by financial analysts to monitor a company's investment in receivables.
- Q 7-17** Explain how the CECL model (introduced in *ASU No. 2016-13* and required in 2020) differs from current GAAP in its calculation of bad debt expense.
- Q 7-18** (Based on **Appendix 7A**) In a two-step bank reconciliation, identify the items that might be necessary to adjust the bank balance to the corrected cash balance. Identify the items that might be necessary to adjust the book balance to the corrected cash balance.
- Q 7-19** (Based on **Appendix 7A**) How is a petty cash fund established? How is the fund replenished?
- Q 7-20** (Based on **Appendix 7B**) Marshall Companies, Inc., holds a note receivable from a former subsidiary. Due to financial difficulties, the former subsidiary has been unable to pay the previous year's interest on the note. Marshall agreed to restructure the debt by both delaying and reducing remaining cash payments. The concessions impair the creditor's investment in the receivable. How is this impairment recorded?
-  **IFRS Q 7-21** (Based on **Appendix 7B**) Do U.S. GAAP and IFRS differ in the ability of a company to recognize in net income the recovery of impairment losses of accounts and notes receivable? ●

Brief Exercises



- BE 7-1**
Internal control
● LO7-1
- Janice Dodds opens the mail for the Ajax Plumbing Company. She lists all customer checks on a spreadsheet that includes the name of the customer and the check amount. The checks, along with the spreadsheet, are then sent to Jim Seymour in the accounting department who records the checks and deposits them daily in the company's checking account. How could the company improve its internal control procedure for the handling of its cash receipts?
- BE 7-2**
Bank overdrafts
● LO7-2, LO7-10
- Cutler Company has a cash account with a balance of \$250,000 with Wright Bank and a cash account with an overdraft of \$5,000 at Lowe Bank. What would the current assets section of Cutler's balance sheet include for "cash" under IFRS? Under U.S. GAAP?



IFRS

BE 7-3

Cash and cash equivalents

● LO7-2

The following items appeared on the year-end trial balance of Consolidated Freight Corporation: cash in a checking account, U.S. Treasury bills that mature in six months, undeposited customer checks, cash in a savings account, and currency and coins. Which of these items would be included in the company's balance sheet as cash and cash equivalents?

BE 7-4

Cash discounts; gross method

● LO7-3

On December 28, 2018, Tristar Communications sold 10 units of its new satellite uplink system to various customers for \$25,000 each. The terms of each sale were 1/10, n/30. Tristar uses the gross method to account for sales discounts. In what year will income before tax be affected by discounts, assuming that all customers paid the net-of-discount amount on January 6, 2019? By how much?

BE 7-5

Cash discounts; net method

● LO7-3

Refer to the situation described in BE 7-4. Answer the questions assuming that Tristar uses the net method to account for sales discounts.

BE 7-6

Sales returns

● LO7-4

During 2018, its first year of operations, Hollis Industries recorded sales of \$10,600,000 and experienced returns of \$720,000. Cost of goods sold totaled \$6,360,000 (60% of sales). The company estimates that 8% of all sales will be returned. Prepare the year-end adjusting journal entries to account for anticipated sales returns, assuming that all sales are made on credit and all accounts receivable are outstanding.

BE 7-7

Sales returns

● LO7-4

Refer to the situation described in BE 7-6. Prepare the year-end adjusting journal entries to account for anticipated sales returns under the assumption that all sales are made for cash (no accounts receivable are outstanding).

BE 7-8

Accounts receivable classification

● LO7-5, LO7-10

Singletary Associates has accounts receivable due from normal credit customers, and also has an account receivable due from a director of the company. Singletary would like to combine both of those receivables on one line in the current assets section of their balance sheet and in the disclosure notes. Is that permissible under U.S. GAAP? Under IFRS? Explain.



IFRS

BE 7-9

Uncollectible accounts; income statement approach

● LO7-5, LO7-6

The following information relates to a company's accounts receivable: accounts receivable balance at the beginning of the year, \$300,000; allowance for uncollectible accounts at the beginning of the year, \$25,000 (credit balance); credit sales during the year, \$1,500,000; accounts receivable written off during the year, \$16,000; cash collections from customers, \$1,450,000. Assuming the company estimates bad debts at an amount equal to 2% of credit sales, calculate (1) bad debt expense for the year and (2) the year-end balance in the allowance for uncollectible accounts.

BE 7-10

Uncollectible accounts; balance sheet approach

● LO7-5, LO7-6

Refer to the situation described in BE 7-9. Answer the two questions assuming the company estimates that future bad debts will equal 10% of the year-end balance in accounts receivable.

BE 7-11

Uncollectible accounts; solving for unknown

● LO7-5, LO7-6

A company's year-end balance in accounts receivable is \$2,000,000. The allowance for uncollectible accounts had a beginning-of-year credit balance of \$30,000. An aging of accounts receivable at the end of the year indicates a required allowance of \$38,000. If bad debt expense for the year was \$40,000, what was the amount of bad debts written off during the year?

BE 7-12

Uncollectible accounts; solving for unknown

● LO7-5, LO7-6

Refer to the situation described in BE 7-11. If credit sales for the year were \$8,200,000 and \$7,950,000 was collected from credit customers, what was the beginning-of-year balance in accounts receivable?

BE 7-13

Note receivable

● LO7-7

On December 1, 2018, Davenport Company sold merchandise to a customer for \$20,000. In payment for the merchandise, the customer signed a 6% note requiring the payment of interest and principal on March 1, 2019. How much interest revenue will the company recognize during 2018? In 2019?

BE 7-14

Long-term notes receivable

● LO7-4

On April 19, 2018, Millipede Machinery sold a tractor to Thomas Hartwood, accepting a note promising payment of \$120,000 in five years. The applicable effective interest rate is 7%. What amount of sales revenue would Millipede recognize on April 19, 2018, for the Hartwood transaction?

BE 7-15

Factoring
of accounts
receivable

● LO7-8

Logitech Corporation transferred \$100,000 of accounts receivable to a local bank. The transfer was made without recourse. The local bank remits 85% of the factored amount to Logitech and retains the remaining 15%. When the bank collects the receivables, it will remit to Logitech the retained amount less a fee equal to 3% of the total amount factored. Logitech estimates a fair value of its 15% interest in the receivables of \$11,000 (not including the 3% fee). What is the effect of this transaction on the company's assets, liabilities, and income before income taxes?

BE 7-16

Factoring
of accounts
receivable

● LO7-8

Refer to the situation described in BE 7-15. Assuming that the sale criteria are not met, describe how Logitech would account for the transfer.

BE 7-17

Transfers
of accounts
receivable

● LO7-8, LO7-10

Huling Associates plans to transfer \$300,000 of accounts receivable to Mitchell Inc. in exchange for cash. Huling has structured the arrangement so that it retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership but shifts control over the receivables to Mitchell. Assuming all other criteria are met for recognizing the transfer as a sale, how would Huling account for this transaction under IFRS? Under U.S. GAAP?



IFRS

BE 7-18

Discounting a
note

● LO7-8

On March 31, Dower Publishing discounted a \$30,000 note at a local bank. The note was dated February 28 and required the payment of the principal amount and interest at 6% on May 31. The bank's discount rate is 8%. How much cash will Dower receive from the bank on March 31?

BE 7-19

Receivables
turnover

● LO7-8

Camden Hardware's credit sales for the year were \$320,000. Accounts receivable at the beginning and end of the year were \$50,000 and \$70,000, respectively. Calculate the accounts receivable turnover ratio and the average collection period for the year.

BE 7-20

Bank
Reconciliation

● Appendix 7A

Marin Company's general ledger indicates a cash balance of \$22,340 as of September 30, 2018. Early in October Marin received a bank statement indicating that during September Marin had an NSF check of \$1,500 returned to a customer and incurred service charges of \$45. Marin also learned it had incorrectly recorded a check received from a customer on September 15 as \$500 when in fact the check was for \$550. Calculate Marin's correct September 30, 2018, cash balance.

BE 7-21

Bank
Reconciliation

● Appendix 7A

Shan Enterprises received a bank statement listing its May 31, 2018, bank balance as \$47,582. Shan determined that as of May 31 it had cash receipts of \$2,500 that were not yet deposited and checks outstanding of \$7,224. Calculate Shan's correct May 31, 2018, cash balance.

BE 7-22

Impairments
of Accounts
Receivable

● Appendix 7B

Einhorn Industries believes it is not probable that Thaler Inc. will default on an account receivable, but given the possibility of default, Einhorn believes it will collect \$30,000 less than the receivable's current carrying value on Einhorn's balance sheet. Under current GAAP, how much impairment charge should Einhorn recognize?

BE 7-23

Credit Losses
on Accounts
Receivable (CECL
Model)

● Appendix 7B

Assume the same facts as in BE 7-22, but that Einhorn determines credit losses using the CECL model introduced in *ASU 2016-13* and required in 2020. How much credit loss should Einhorn recognize?

Exercises

**E 7-1**

Cash and cash
equivalents;
restricted cash

● LO7-2

The controller of the Red Wing Corporation is in the process of preparing the company's 2018 financial statements. She is trying to determine the correct balance of cash and cash equivalents to be reported as a current asset in the balance sheet. The following items are being considered:

- Balances in the company's accounts at the First National Bank; checking \$13,500, savings \$22,100.
- Undeposited customer checks of \$5,200.

- c. Currency and coins on hand of \$580.
- d. Savings account at the East Bay Bank with a balance of \$400,000. This account is being used to accumulate cash for future plant expansion (in 2020).
- e. \$20,000 in a checking account at the East Bay Bank. The balance in the account represents a 20% compensating balance for a \$100,000 loan with the bank. Red Wing may not withdraw the funds until the loan is due in 2021.
- f. U.S. Treasury bills; 2-month maturity bills totaling \$15,000, and 7-month bills totaling \$20,000.

Required:

1. Determine the correct balance of cash and cash equivalents to be reported in the current asset section of the 2018 balance sheet.
2. For each of the items not included in your answer to requirement 1, explain the correct classification of the item.

E 7-2

Cash and cash equivalents

● LO7-2

Delta Automotive Corporation has the following assets listed in its 12/31/2018 trial balance:

Cash in bank—checking account	\$22,500
U.S. Treasury bills (mature in 60 days)*	5,000
Cash on hand (currency and coins)	1,350
U.S. Treasury bills (mature in six months)*	10,000
Undeposited customer checks	1,840

*Purchased on 11/30/2018

Required:

1. Determine the correct balance of cash and cash equivalents to be reported in the current asset section of the 2018 balance sheet.
2. For each of the items not included in your answer to requirement 1, explain the correct classification of the item.

E 7-3

FASB codification research

● LO7-2, LO7-6, LO7-7



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).

Required:

Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

1. Accounts receivables from related parties should be shown separately from trade receivables
2. The definition of cash equivalents
3. The requirement to value notes exchanged for cash at the cash proceeds
4. The two conditions that must be met to accrue a loss on an accounts receivable

E 7-4

Bank overdrafts

● LO7-2, LO7-10



Parker Inc. has the following cash balances:

First Bank	\$150,000
Second Bank	(10,000)
Third Bank	25,000
Fourth Bank	(5,000)

Required:

1. Prepare the current assets and current liabilities section of Parker's 2018 balance sheet, assuming Parker reports under U.S. GAAP.
2. Prepare the current assets and current liabilities section of Parker's 2018 balance sheet, assuming Parker reports under IFRS.

E 7-5

Trade and cash discounts; the gross method and the net method compared

● LO7-3

Tracy Company, a manufacturer of air conditioners, sold 100 units to Thomas Company on November 17, 2018. The units have a list price of \$600 each, but Thomas was given a 30% trade discount. The terms of the sale were 2/10, n/30.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries to record the sale on November 17 (ignore cost of goods) and collection on November 26, 2018, assuming that the gross method of accounting for cash discounts is used.
2. Prepare the journal entries to record the sale on November 17 (ignore cost of goods) and collection on December 15, 2018, assuming that the gross method of accounting for cash discounts is used.
3. Repeat requirements 1 and 2 assuming that the net method of accounting for cash discounts is used.

E 7-6

Cash discounts;
the gross method

● LO7-3

Harwell Company manufactures automobile tires. On July 15, 2018, the company sold 1,000 tires to the Nixon Car Company for \$50 each. The terms of the sale were 2/10, n/30. Harwell uses the gross method of accounting for cash discounts.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries to record the sale on July 15 (ignore cost of goods) and collection on July 23, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries to record the sale on July 15 (ignore cost of goods) and collection on August 15, 2018.

E 7-7

Cash discounts;
the net method

● LO7-3

[This is a variation of E 7-6 modified to focus on the net method of accounting for cash discounts.]

Harwell Company manufactures automobile tires. On July 15, 2018, the company sold 1,000 tires to the Nixon Car Company for \$50 each. The terms of the sale were 2/10, n/30. Harwell uses the net method of accounting for cash discounts.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries to record the sale on July 15 (ignore cost of goods) and payment on July 23, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries to record the sale on July 15 (ignore cost of goods) and payment on August 15, 2018.

E 7-8

Sales returns

● LO7-4

Halifax Manufacturing allows its customers to return merchandise for any reason up to 90 days after delivery and receive a credit to their accounts. All of Halifax's sales are for credit (no cash is collected at the time of sale). The company began 2018 with an allowance for sales returns of \$300,000. During 2018, Halifax sold merchandise on account for \$11,500,000. This merchandise cost Halifax \$7,475,000 (65% of selling prices). Also during the year, customers returned \$450,000 in sales for credit. Sales returns, estimated to be 4% of sales, are recorded as an adjusting entry at the end of the year.

Required:

1. Prepare an entry to record actual merchandise returns as they occur (not adjusting the allowance for sales returns), and then record a year-end entry to adjust the allowance for sales returns to its appropriate balance.
2. What is the amount of the year-end allowance for sales returns after the adjusting entry is recorded?

E 7-9

FASB codification
research

● LO7-5



The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on accounting for accounts receivable using the FASB's Codification Research System at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). What is the specific citation that describes the information about loans and trade receivables that is to be disclosed in the summary of significant accounting policies?
2. List the disclosure requirements.

E 7-10

Uncollectible
accounts;
allowance
method vs. direct
write-off method

● LO7-5, LO7-6

Johnson Company uses the allowance method to account for uncollectible accounts receivable. Bad debt expense is established as a percentage of credit sales. For 2018, net credit sales totaled \$4,500,000, and the estimated bad debt percentage is 1.5%. The allowance for uncollectible accounts had a credit balance of \$42,000 at the beginning of 2018 and \$40,000, after adjusting entries, at the end of 2018.

Required:

1. What is bad debt expense for 2018 as a percent of net credit sales?
2. Assume Johnson makes no other adjustment of bad debt expense during 2018. Determine the amount of accounts receivable written off during 2018.
3. If the company uses the direct write-off method, what would bad debt expense be for 2018?

E 7-11

Uncollectible
accounts;
allowance
method; balance
sheet approach

● LO7-5, LO7-6

Colorado Rocky Cookie Company offers credit terms to its customers. At the end of 2018, accounts receivable totaled \$625,000. The allowance method is used to account for uncollectible accounts. The allowance for uncollectible accounts had a credit balance of \$32,000 at the beginning of 2018 and \$21,000 in receivables were written off during the year as uncollectible. Also, \$1,200 in cash was received in December from a customer whose account previously had been written off. The company estimates bad debts by applying a percentage of 10% to accounts receivable at the end of the year.

Required:

1. Prepare journal entries to record the write-off of receivables, the collection of \$1,200 for previously written off receivables, and the year-end adjusting entry for bad debt expense.
2. How would accounts receivable be shown in the 2018 year-end balance sheet?

E 7-12

Uncollectible accounts; allowance method and direct write-off method compared; solving for unknown

● LO7-6

Castle Company provides estimates for its uncollectible accounts. The allowance for uncollectible accounts had a credit balance of \$17,280 at the beginning of 2018 and a \$22,410 credit balance at the end of 2018 (after adjusting entries). If the direct write-off method had been used to account for uncollectible accounts (bad debt expense equals actual write-offs), the income statement for 2018 would have included bad debt expense of \$17,100 and revenue of \$2,200 from the collection of previously written off bad debts.

Required:

Determine bad debt expense for 2018 according to the allowance method.

E 7-13

Uncollectible accounts; allowance method; solving for unknowns; General Mills

● LO7-5, LO7-6

General Mills reported the following information in its 2015 financial statements (\$ in millions):

	2015	2014
Balance Sheet:		
Accounts receivable, net	\$ 1,386.7	\$1,483.6
Income statement:		
Sales revenue	\$17,630.3	

Real World Financials

A note disclosed that the allowance for uncollectible accounts had a balance of \$25.3 million and \$21.0 million at the end of 2015 and 2014, respectively. Bad debt expense for 2015 was \$19.8 million.

Required:

Determine the amount of cash collected from customers during 2015.

E 7-14

Note receivable

● LO7-7

On June 30, 2018, the Esquire Company sold some merchandise to a customer for \$30,000. In payment, Esquire agreed to accept a 6% note requiring the payment of interest and principal on March 31, 2019. The 6% rate is appropriate in this situation.

Required:

1. Prepare journal entries to record the sale of merchandise (omit any entry that might be required for the cost of the goods sold), the December 31, 2018 interest accrual, and the March 31, 2019 collection.
2. If the December 31 adjusting entry for the interest accrual is not prepared, by how much will income before income taxes be over- or understated in 2018 and 2019?

E 7-15

Noninterest-bearing note receivable

● LO7-7

[This is a variation of E 7-14 modified to focus on a noninterest-bearing note.]

On June 30, 2018, the Esquire Company sold some merchandise to a customer for \$30,000 and agreed to accept as payment a noninterest-bearing note with an 8% discount rate requiring the payment of \$30,000 on March 31, 2019. The 8% rate is appropriate in this situation. Esquire views the financing component of this contract as significant.

Required:

1. Prepare journal entries to record the sale of merchandise (omit any entry that might be required for the cost of the goods sold), the December 31, 2018 interest accrual, and the March 31, 2019 collection.
2. What is the *effective* interest rate on the note?

E 7-16

Long-term notes receivable

● LO7-7

On January 1, 2018, Wright Transport sold four school buses to the Elmira School District. In exchange for the buses, Wright received a note requiring payment of \$515,000 by Elmira on December 31, 2020. The effective interest rate is 8%.

Required:

1. How much sales revenue would Wright recognize on January 1, 2018, for this transaction?
2. Prepare journal entries to record the sale of merchandise on January 1, 2018 (omit any entry that might be required for the cost of the goods sold), the December 31, 2018, interest accrual, the December 31, 2019, interest accrual, and receipt of payment of the note on December 31, 2020.

E 7-17

Interest-bearing note receivable; solving for unknown rate

● LO7-7

On January 1, 2018, the Apex Company exchanged some shares of common stock it had been holding as an investment for a note receivable. The note principal plus interest is due on January 1, 2019. The 2018 income statement reported \$2,200 in interest revenue from this note and a \$6,000 gain on sale of investment in stock. The stock's book value was \$16,000. The company's fiscal year ends on December 31.

Required:

1. What is the note's effective interest rate?
2. Reconstruct the journal entries to record the sale of the stock on January 1, 2018, and the adjusting entry to record interest revenue at the end of 2018. The company records adjusting entries only at year-end.

E 7-18

Assigning of specific accounts receivable

- LO7-8

On June 30, 2018, the High Five Surfboard Company had outstanding accounts receivable of \$600,000. On July 1, 2018, the company borrowed \$450,000 from the Equitable Finance Corporation and signed a promissory note. Interest at 10% is payable monthly. The company assigned specific receivables totaling \$600,000 as collateral for the loan. Equitable Finance charges a finance fee equal to 1.8% of the accounts receivable assigned.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry to record the borrowing on the books of High Five Surfboard.

E 7-19

Factoring of accounts receivable without recourse

- LO7-8

Mountain High Ice Cream Company transferred \$60,000 of accounts receivable to the Prudential Bank. The transfer was made *without recourse*. Prudential remits 90% of the factored amount to Mountain High and retains 10%. When the bank collects the receivables, it will remit to Mountain High the retained amount (which Mountain estimates has a fair value of \$5,000) less a 2% fee (2% of the total factored amount).

Required:

Prepare the journal entry to record the transfer on the books of Mountain High assuming that the sale criteria are met.

E 7-20

Factoring of accounts receivable with recourse

- LO7-8

[This is a variation of E 7-19 modified to focus on factoring with recourse.]

Mountain High Ice Cream Company transferred \$60,000 of accounts receivable to the Prudential Bank. The transfer was made *with recourse*. Prudential remits 90% of the factored amount to Mountain High and retains 10% to cover sales returns and allowances. When the bank collects the receivables, it will remit to Mountain High the retained amount (which Mountain estimates has a fair value of \$5,000). Mountain High anticipates a \$3,000 recourse obligation. The bank charges a 2% fee (2% of \$60,000), and requires that amount to be paid at the start of the factoring arrangement.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry to record the transfer on the books of Mountain High assuming that the sale criteria are met.

E 7-21

Factoring of accounts receivable with recourse under IFRS

- LO7-8, LO7-10



This is a variation of E 7-20 modified to focus on factoring with recourse under IFRS.]

Mountain High Ice Cream Company reports under IFRS. Mountain High transferred \$60,000 of accounts receivable to the Prudential Bank. The transfer was made *with recourse*. Prudential remits 90% of the factored amount to Mountain High and retains 10% to cover sales returns and allowances. When the bank collects the receivables, it will remit to Mountain High the retained amount (which Mountain estimates has a fair value of \$5,000). Mountain High anticipates a \$3,000 recourse obligation. The bank charges a 2% fee (2% of \$60,000), and requires that amount to be paid at the start of the factoring arrangement. Mountain High has transferred control over the receivables, but determines that it still retains substantially all risks and rewards associated with them.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry to record the transfer on the books of Mountain High, considering whether the sale criteria under IFRS have been met.

E 7-22

Discounting a note receivable

- LO7-8

Selkirk Company obtained a \$15,000 note receivable from a customer on January 1, 2018. The note, along with interest at 10%, is due on July 1, 2018. On February 28, 2018, Selkirk discounted the note at Unionville Bank. The bank's discount rate is 12%.

Required:

Prepare the journal entries required on February 28, 2018, to accrue interest and to record the discounting (round all calculations to the nearest dollar) for Selkirk. Assume that the discounting is accounted for as a sale.

E 7-23

Concepts; terminology

- LO7-1 through LO7-8

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with cash and receivables. Pair each item from List A (by letter) with the item from List B that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. Internal control	a. Restriction on cash
_____ 2. Trade discount	b. Cash discount not taken is sales revenue
_____ 3. Cash equivalents	c. Includes separation of duties
_____ 4. Allowance for uncollectibles	d. Bad debt expense a % of credit sales
_____ 5. Cash discount	e. Recognizes bad debts as they occur
_____ 6. Balance sheet approach	f. Sale of receivables to a financial institution
_____ 7. Income statement approach	g. Include highly liquid investments
_____ 8. Net method	h. Estimate of bad debts
_____ 9. Compensating balance	i. Reduction in amount paid by credit customer
_____ 10. Discounting	j. Reduction below list price
_____ 11. Gross method	k. Cash discount not taken is sales discount forfeited
_____ 12. Direct write-off method	l. Bad debt expense determined by estimating amount of accounts receivable expected to be received
_____ 13. Factoring	m. Sale of note receivable to a financial institution

E 7-24

Receivables;
transaction
analysis

- LO7-3, LO7-5
through LO7-8

Weldon Corporation's fiscal year ends December 31. The following is a list of transactions involving receivables that occurred during 2018:

Mar. 17	Accounts receivable of \$1,700 were written off as uncollectible. The company uses the allowance method.
30	Loaned an officer of the company \$20,000 and received a note requiring principal and interest at 7% to be paid on March 30, 2019.
May 30	Discounted the \$20,000 note at a local bank. The bank's discount rate is 8%. The note was discounted without recourse and the sale criteria are met.
June 30	Sold merchandise to the Blankenship Company for \$12,000. Terms of the sale are 2/10, n/30. Weldon uses the gross method to account for cash discounts.
July 8	The Blankenship Company paid its account in full.
Aug. 31	Sold stock in a nonpublic company with a book value of \$5,000 and accepted a \$6,000 noninterest-bearing note with a discount rate of 8%. The \$6,000 payment is due on February 28, 2019. The stock has no ready market value.
Dec. 31	Bad debt expense is estimated to be 2% of credit sales for the year. Credit sales for 2018 were \$700,000.

Required:

1. Prepare journal entries for each of the above transactions (round all calculations to the nearest dollar).
2. Prepare any additional year-end adjusting entries indicated.

E 7-25

Ratio analysis;
Microsoft

- LO7-9

Real World Financials

Microsoft Corporation reported the following information in its financial statements for three successive quarters (\$ in millions):

	Three Months Ended		
	12/31/2015 (Q2)	9/30/2015 (Q1)	6/30/2015 (Q4)
Balance sheets:			
Accounts receivable, net	\$14,507	\$11,444	\$17,908
Income statements:			
Sales revenue	\$23,796	\$20,379	\$22,180

Required:

Compute the receivables turnover ratio and the average collection period for Q1 and Q2. Assume that each quarter consists of 91 days.

E 7-26

Ratio analysis

- LO7-9

The current asset section of the Moorcroft Outboard Motor Company's balance sheet reported the following amounts:

	12/31/2018	12/31/2017
Accounts receivable, net	\$400,000	\$300,000

The average collection period for 2018 is 50 days.

Required:

Determine net sales for 2018.

E 7-27

Petty cash

- Appendix 7A

Loucks Company established a \$200 petty cash fund on October 2, 2018. The fund is replenished at the end of each month. At the end of October 2018, the fund contained \$37 in cash and the following receipts:

Office supplies	\$76
Lunch with client	48
Postage	20
Miscellaneous	19

Required:

Prepare the necessary general journal entries to establish the petty cash fund on October 2 and to replenish the fund on October 31.

E 7-28

Petty cash

- Appendix 7A

The petty cash fund of Ricco's Automotive contained the following items at the end of September 2018:

Currency and coins		\$ 58
Receipts for the following expenditures:		
Delivery charges	\$16	
Printer paper	11	
Paper clips and rubber bands	8	35
An I.O.U. from an employee		25
Postage		32
Total		<u>\$150</u>

The petty cash fund was established at the beginning of September with a transfer of \$150 from cash to the petty cash account.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry to replenish the fund at the end of September.

E 7-29

Bank
reconciliation

● Appendix 7A

Jansen Company's general ledger showed a checking account balance of \$23,820 at the end of May 2018. The May 31 cash receipts of \$2,340, included in the general ledger balance, were placed in the night depository at the bank on May 31 and were processed by the bank on June 1. The bank statement dated May 31, 2018, showed bank service charges of \$38. All checks written by the company had been processed by the bank by May 31 and were listed on the bank statement except for checks totaling \$1,890.

Required:

Prepare a bank reconciliation as of May 31, 2018. [*Hint:* You will need to compute the balance that would appear on the bank statement.]

E 7-30

Bank
reconciliation and
adjusting entries

● Appendix 7A

Harrison Company maintains a checking account at the First National City Bank. The bank provides a bank statement along with canceled checks on the last day of each month. The July 2018 bank statement included the following information:

Balance, July 1, 2018	\$ 55,678
Deposits	179,500
Checks processed	(192,610)
Service charges	(30)
NSF checks	(1,200)
Monthly loan payment deducted directly by bank from account (includes \$320 in interest)	(3,320)
Balance, July 31, 2018	<u>\$ 38,018</u>

The company's general ledger account had a balance of \$38,918 at the end of July. Deposits outstanding totaled \$6,300 and all checks written by the company were processed by the bank except for those totaling \$8,420. In addition, a \$2,000 July deposit from a credit customer was recorded as a \$200 debit to cash and credit to accounts receivable, and a check correctly recorded by the company as a \$30 disbursement was incorrectly processed by the bank as a \$300 disbursement.

Required:

1. Prepare a bank reconciliation for the month of July.
2. Prepare the necessary journal entries at the end of July to adjust the general ledger cash account.

E 7-31

Impairments of
Notes Receivable

● Appendix 7B

At January 1, 2018, Lewis Enterprises has the following individual notes receivable that it is considering for impairment:

- A \$2 million note (including accrued interest) from Bebko Inc. Lewis believes it is probable that Bebko will default on the note, and calculates the net realizable value of the receivable to be \$1.4 million.
- A \$3 million note (including accrued interest) from Dutta Associates. Lewis believes it is possible but not probable that Dutta will default on the note, and calculates the net realizable value of the receivable to be \$2.5 million.

Required:

Determine the amount of impairment that Lewis would recognize for these two loans.

E 7-32

Credit Losses
from Notes
Receivable (CECL
Model)

● Appendix 7B

Assume the same facts as in E 7-31, but that Lewis determines credit losses using the CECL model introduced in *ASU 2016-13* and required in 2020. Determine the amount of credit losses that Lewis would recognize for these two loans.

E 7-33

Impairment of
notes receivable;
troubled debt
restructuring

● Appendix 7B

At January 1, 2018, Clayton Hoists Inc. owed Third BancCorp \$12 million, under a 10% note due December 31, 2019. Interest was paid last on December 31, 2016. Clayton was experiencing severe financial difficulties and asked Third BancCorp to modify the terms of the debt agreement. After negotiation Third BancCorp agreed to do the following:

- Forgive the interest accrued for the year just ended.
- Reduce the remaining two years' interest payments to \$1 million each.
- Reduce the principal amount to \$11 million.

Required:

Prepare the journal entries by Third BancCorp necessitated by the restructuring of the debt at

1. January 1, 2018
2. December 31, 2018
3. December 31, 2019

E 7-34

Impairment of notes receivable; troubled debt restructuring

• Appendix 7B

At January 1, 2018, NCI Industries, Inc., was indebted to First Federal Bank under a \$240,000, 10% unsecured note. The note was signed January 1, 2016, and was due December 31, 2019. Annual interest was last paid on December 31, 2016. NCI was experiencing severe financial difficulties and negotiated a restructuring of the terms of the debt agreement. First Federal agreed to reduce last year's interest and the remaining two years' interest payments to \$11,555 each and delay all payments until December 31, 2019, the maturity date.

Required:

Prepare the journal entries by First Federal Bank necessitated by the restructuring of the debt at

1. January 1, 2018
2. December 31, 2018
3. December 31, 2019

Problems

**P 7-1**

Uncollectible accounts; allowance method; income statement and balance sheet approach

• LO7-5, LO7-6



Swathmore Clothing Corporation grants its customers 30 days' credit. The company uses the allowance method for its uncollectible accounts receivable. During the year, a monthly bad debt accrual is made by multiplying 3% times the amount of credit sales for the month. At the fiscal year-end of December 31, an aging of accounts receivable schedule is prepared and the allowance for uncollectible accounts is adjusted accordingly.

At the end of 2017, accounts receivable were \$574,000 and the allowance account had a credit balance of \$54,000. Accounts receivable activity for 2018 was as follows:

Beginning balance	\$ 574,000
Credit sales	2,620,000
Collections	(2,483,000)
Write-offs	(68,000)
Ending balance	<u>\$ 643,000</u>

The company's controller prepared the following aging summary of year-end accounts receivable:

Age Group	Summary	
	Amount	Percent Uncollectible
0-60 days	\$430,000	4%
61-90 days	98,000	15
91-120 days	60,000	25
Over 120 days	55,000	40
Total	<u>\$643,000</u>	

Required:

1. Prepare a summary journal entry to record the monthly bad debt accrual and the write-offs during the year.
2. Prepare the necessary year-end adjusting entry for bad debt expense.
3. What is total bad debt expense for 2018? How would accounts receivable appear in the 2018 balance sheet?

P 7-2

Uncollectible accounts; Amdahl

• LO7-5

Real World Financials



Amdahl Corporation manufactures large-scale, high performance computer systems. In a recent annual report, the balance sheet included the following information (\$ in thousands):

	Current Year	Previous Year
Current assets:		
Receivables, net of allowances of \$5,042 and \$6,590 in the previous year	\$504,944	\$580,640

In addition, the income statement reported sales revenue of \$2,158,755 (\$ in thousands) for the current year. All sales are made on a credit basis. The statement of cash flows indicates that cash collected from customers during the current year was \$2,230,065 (\$ in thousands). There were no recoveries of accounts receivable previously written off.

Required:

1. Compute the following (\$ in thousands):
 - a. The amount of uncollectibles written off by Amdahl during the current year
 - b. The amount of bad debt expense that Amdahl would include in its income statement for the current year
 - c. The approximate percentage that Amdahl used to estimate uncollectibles for the current year, assuming that it uses the income statement approach
2. Suppose that Amdahl had used the direct write-off method to account for uncollectibles. Compute the following (\$ in thousands):
 - a. The accounts receivable information that would be included in the year-end balance sheet
 - b. The amount of bad debt expense that Amdahl would include in its income statement for the current year

P 7-3

Bad debts; Nike, Inc.

LO7-5

Real World Financials

Nike, Inc., is a leading manufacturer of sports apparel, shoes, and equipment. The company's 2015 financial statements contain the following information (\$ in millions):

	2015	2014
Balance sheets:		
Accounts receivable, net	\$ 3,358	\$ 3,434
Income statements:		
Sales revenue	\$30,601	\$27,799

A note disclosed that the allowance for uncollectible accounts had a balance of \$78 million and \$78 million at the end of 2015 and 2014, respectively. Bad debt expense for 2015 was \$20 million. Assume that all sales are made on a credit basis.

Required:

1. What is the amount of gross (total) accounts receivable due from customers at the end of 2015 and 2014?
2. What is the amount of bad debt write-offs during 2015?
3. Analyze changes in the gross accounts receivable account to calculate the amount of cash received from customers during 2015.
4. Analyze changes in net accounts receivable to calculate the amount of cash received from customers during 2015.

P 7-4

Uncollectible accounts

LO7-5, LO7-6

Raintree Cosmetic Company sells its products to customers on a credit basis. An adjusting entry for bad debt expense is recorded only at December 31, the company's fiscal year-end. The 2017 balance sheet disclosed the following:

Current assets:	
Receivables, net of allowance for uncollectible accounts of \$30,000	\$432,000

During 2018, credit sales were \$1,750,000, cash collections from customers \$1,830,000, and \$35,000 in accounts receivable were written off. In addition, \$3,000 was collected from a customer whose account was written off in 2017. An aging of accounts receivable at December 31, 2018, reveals the following:

Age Group	Percentage of Year-End Receivables in Group	Percent Uncollectible
0-60 days	65%	4%
61-90 days	20	15
91-120 days	10	25
Over 120 days	5	40

Required:

1. Prepare summary journal entries to account for the 2018 write-offs and the collection of the receivable previously written off.
2. Prepare the year-end adjusting entry for bad debts according to each of the following situations:
 - a. Bad debt expense is estimated to be 3% of credit sales for the year.
 - b. Bad debt expense is estimated by computing net realizable value of the receivables. The allowance for uncollectible accounts is estimated to be 10% of the year-end balance in accounts receivable.
 - c. Bad debt expense is estimated by computing net realizable value of the receivables. The allowance for uncollectible accounts is determined by an aging of accounts receivable.
3. For situations (a)–(c) in requirement 2 above, what would be the net amount of accounts receivable reported in the 2018 balance sheet?



P 7-5

Receivables; bad debts and returns; Avon Products, Inc.

• LO7-4, LO7-5

Real World Financials

Avon Products, Inc., located in New York City, is one of the world's largest producers of beauty and related products. The company's consolidated balance sheets for the 2015 and 2014 fiscal years included the following (\$ in thousands):

	2015	2014
Current assets:		
Receivables, less allowances of \$86,700 in 2015 and \$106,900 in 2014	\$443,000	\$515,600



A disclosure note accompanying the financial statements reported the following (\$ in thousands):

	Year Ended	
	2015	2014
<i>Calculation of account receivables, net:</i>		
Receivables	\$529,700	\$622,500
Less: allowance for doubtful accounts	(77,600)	(93,700)
Less: reserve for product returns	(9,100)	(13,200)
Trade accounts receivable, net:	\$443,000	\$515,600

Assume that the company reported bad debt expense in 2015 of \$144,100 and had products returned for credit totaling \$6,800 (sales price). Net sales for 2015 were \$6,076,500 (\$ in thousands).

Required:

1. What is the amount of accounts receivable due from customers at the end of 2015 and 2014?
2. What amount of accounts receivable did Avon write off during 2015?
3. What is the amount of Avon's gross sales for the 2015 fiscal year?
4. Assuming that all sales are made on a credit basis, what is the amount of cash Avon collected from customers during the 2015 fiscal year?

P 7-6

Notes receivable; solving for unknowns

• LO7-7

Cypress Oil Company's December 31, 2018, balance sheet listed \$645,000 of notes receivable and \$16,000 of interest receivable included in current assets. The following notes make up the notes receivable balance:

Note 1	Dated 8/31/2018, principal of \$300,000 and interest at 10% due on 2/28/2019.
Note 2	Dated 6/30/2018, principal of \$150,000 and interest due 3/31/2019.
Note 3	\$200,000 face value noninterest-bearing note dated 9/30/2018, due 3/31/2019. Note was issued in exchange for merchandise.

The company records adjusting entries only at year-end. There were no other notes receivable outstanding during 2018.

Required:

1. Determine the rate used to discount the noninterest-bearing note.
2. Determine the explicit interest rate on Note 2.
3. What is the amount of interest revenue that appears in the company's 2018 income statement related to these notes?

P 7-7

Factoring versus assigning of accounts receivable

• LO7-8

Loneragan Company occasionally uses its accounts receivable to obtain immediate cash. At the end of June 2018, the company had accounts receivable of \$780,000. Loneragan needs approximately \$500,000 to capitalize on a unique investment opportunity. On July 1, 2018, a local bank offers Loneragan the following two alternatives:

- a. Borrow \$500,000, sign a note payable, and assign the entire receivable balance as collateral. At the end of each month, a remittance will be made to the bank that equals the amount of receivables collected plus 12% interest on the unpaid balance of the note at the beginning of the period.
- b. Transfer \$550,000 of specific receivables to the bank without recourse. The bank will charge a 2% factoring fee on the amount of receivables transferred. The bank will collect the receivables directly from customers. The sale criteria are met.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries that would be recorded on July 1 for each of the alternatives.
2. Assuming that 80% of all June 30 receivables are collected during July, prepare the necessary journal entries to record the collection and the remittance to the bank.

3. For each alternative, explain any required note disclosures that would be included in the July 31, 2018, financial statements.

P 7-8

Factoring of accounts receivable; without recourse

- LO7-8

Samson Wholesale Beverage Company regularly factors its accounts receivable with the Milpitas Finance Company. On April 30, 2018, the company transferred \$800,000 of accounts receivable to Milpitas. The transfer was made without recourse. Milpitas remits 90% of the factored amount and retains 10%. When Milpitas collects the receivables, it remits to Samson the retained amount less a 4% fee (4% of the total factored amount). Samson estimates the fair value of the last 10% of its receivables to be \$60,000.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry for Samson Wholesale Beverage for the transfer of accounts receivable on April 30, assuming the sale criteria are met.

P 7-9

Cash and accounts receivable under IFRS

- LO7-2, LO7-5, LO7-8, LO7-10



IFRS

The following facts apply to Walken Company during December 2018:

- Walken began December with an accounts receivable balance (net of bad debts) of €25,000.
- Walken had credit sales of €85,000.
- Walken had cash collections of €30,000.
- Walken factored €20,000 of net accounts receivable with Reliable Factor Company, transferring all risks and rewards associated with the receivable, and otherwise meeting all criteria necessary to qualify for treating the transfer of receivables as a sale.
- Walken factored €15,000 of net accounts receivable with Dependable Factor Company, retaining all risks and rewards associated with the receivable, and otherwise meeting all criteria necessary to qualify for treating the transfer of receivables as a sale.
- Walken did not recognize any additional bad debts expense, and had no write-offs of bad debts during the month.
- At December 31, 2018, Walken had a balance of €40,000 of cash at M&V Bank and an overdraft of (€5,000) at First National Bank. (That cash balance includes any effects on cash of the other transactions described in this problem.)

Required:

Prepare the cash and accounts receivable lines of the current assets section of Walken's balance sheet, as of December 31, 2018.

P 7-10

Miscellaneous receivable transactions

- LO7-3, LO7-4, LO7-7, LO7-8

Evergreen Company sells lawn and garden products to wholesalers. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31. During 2018, the following transactions related to receivables occurred:

- | | |
|---------|---|
| Feb. 28 | Sold merchandise to Lennox, Inc., for \$10,000 and accepted a 10%, 7-month note. 10% is an appropriate rate for this type of note. |
| Mar. 31 | Sold merchandise to Maddox Co. and accepted a noninterest-bearing note with a discount rate of 10%. The \$8,000 payment is due on March 31, 2019. |
| Apr. 3 | Sold merchandise to Carr Co. for \$7,000 with terms 2/10, n/30. Evergreen uses the gross method to account for cash discounts. |
| 11 | Collected the entire amount due from Carr Co. |
| 17 | A customer returned merchandise costing \$3,200. Evergreen reduced the customer's receivable balance by \$5,000, the sales price of the merchandise. Sales returns are recorded by the company as they occur. |
| 30 | Transferred receivables of \$50,000 to a factor without recourse. The factor charged Evergreen a 1% finance charge on the receivables transferred. The sale criteria are met. |
| June 30 | Discounted the Lennox, Inc., note at the bank. The bank's discount rate is 12%. The note was discounted without recourse. |
| Sep. 30 | Lennox, Inc., paid the note amount plus interest to the bank. |

Required:

- Prepare the necessary journal entries for Evergreen for each of the above dates. For transactions involving the sale of merchandise, ignore the entry for the cost of goods sold (round all calculations to the nearest dollar).
- Prepare any necessary adjusting entries at December 31, 2018. Adjusting entries are only recorded at year-end (round all calculations to the nearest dollar).
- Prepare a schedule showing the effect of the journal entries in requirements 1 and 2 on 2018 income before taxes.

P 7-11

Discounting a note receivable

• LO7-7



Descriptors are provided below for six situations involving notes receivable being discounted at a bank. In each case, the maturity date of the note is December 31, 2018, and the principal and interest are due at maturity. For each, determine the proceeds received from the bank on discounting the note.

Note	Note Face Value	Date of Note	Interest Rate	Date Discounted	Discount Rate
1	\$50,000	3/31/2018	8%	6/30/2018	10%
2	50,000	3/31/2018	8	9/30/2018	10
3	50,000	3/31/2018	8	9/30/2018	12
4	80,000	6/30/2018	6	10/31/2018	10
5	80,000	6/30/2018	6	10/31/2018	12
6	80,000	6/30/2018	6	11/30/2018	10

P 7-12

Accounts and notes receivable; discounting a note receivable; receivables turnover ratio

• LO7-5, LO7-6, LO7-7, LO7-8, LO7-9



Chamberlain Enterprises Inc. reported the following receivables in its December 31, 2018, year-end balance sheet:

Current assets:

Accounts receivable, net of \$24,000 in allowance for uncollectible accounts	\$218,000
Interest receivable	6,800
Notes receivable	260,000

Additional Information:

- The notes receivable account consists of two notes, a \$60,000 note and a \$200,000 note. The \$60,000 note is dated October 31, 2018, with principal and interest payable on October 31, 2019. The \$200,000 note is dated June 30, 2018, with principal and 6% interest payable on June 30, 2019.
- During 2019, sales revenue totaled \$1,340,000, \$1,280,000 cash was collected from customers, and \$22,000 in accounts receivable were written off. All sales are made on a credit basis. Bad debt expense is recorded at year-end by adjusting the allowance account to an amount equal to 10% of year-end accounts receivable.
- On March 31, 2019, the \$200,000 note receivable was discounted at the Bank of Commerce. The bank's discount rate is 8%. Chamberlain accounts for the discounting as a sale.

Required:

- In addition to sales revenue, what revenue and expense amounts related to receivables will appear in Chamberlain's 2019 income statement?
- What amounts will appear in the 2019 year-end balance sheet for accounts receivable?
- Calculate the receivables turnover ratio for 2019.

P 7-13

Bank reconciliation and adjusting entries; cash and cash equivalents

• Appendix 7A



The bank statement for the checking account of Management Systems Inc. (MSI) showed a December 31, 2018, balance of \$14,632.12. Information that might be useful in preparing a bank reconciliation is as follows:

- Outstanding checks were \$1,320.25.
- The December 31, 2018, cash receipts of \$575 were not deposited in the bank until January 2, 2019.
- One check written in payment of rent for \$246 was correctly recorded by the bank but was recorded by MSI as a \$264 disbursement.
- In accordance with prior authorization, the bank withdrew \$450 directly from the checking account as payment on a mortgage note payable. The interest portion of that payment was \$350. MSI has made no entry to record the automatic payment.
- Bank service charges of \$14 were listed on the bank statement.
- A deposit of \$875 was recorded by the bank on December 13, but it did not belong to MSI. The deposit should have been made to the checking account of MIS, Inc.
- The bank statement included a charge of \$85 for an NSF check. The check was returned with the bank statement and the company will seek payment from the customer.
- MSI maintains a \$200 petty cash fund that was appropriately reimbursed at the end of December.
- According to instructions from MSI on December 30, the bank withdrew \$10,000 from the account and purchased U.S. Treasury bills for MSI. MSI recorded the transaction in its books on December 31 when it received notice from the bank. Half of the Treasury bills mature in two months and the other half in six months.

Required:

- Prepare a bank reconciliation for the MSI checking account at December 31, 2018. You will have to compute the balance per books.
- Prepare any necessary adjusting journal entries indicated.
- What amount would MSI report as cash and cash equivalents in the current asset section of the December 31, 2018, balance sheet?

P 7-14

Bank
reconciliation and
adjusting entries

● Appendix 7A



El Gato Painting Company maintains a checking account at American Bank. Bank statements are prepared at the end of each month. The November 30, 2018, reconciliation of the bank balance is as follows:

Balance per bank, November 30		\$3,231
Add: Deposits outstanding		1,200
Less: Checks outstanding		
#363	\$123	
#365	201	
#380	56	
#381	86	
#382	340	(806)
Adjusted balance per bank, November 30		<u>\$3,625</u>

The company's general ledger checking account showed the following for December:

Balance, December 1	\$ 3,625
Receipts	42,650
Disbursements	(41,853)
Balance, December 31	<u>\$ 4,422</u>

The December bank statement contained the following information:

Balance, December 1	\$ 3,231
Deposits	43,000
Checks processed	(41,918)
Service charges	(22)
NSF checks	(440)
Balance, December 31	<u>\$ 3,851</u>

The checks that were processed by the bank in December include all of the outstanding checks at the end of November except for check #365. In addition, there are some December checks that had not been processed by the bank by the end of the month. Also, you discover that check #411 for \$320 was correctly recorded by the bank but was incorrectly recorded on the books as a \$230 disbursement for advertising expense. Included in the bank's deposits is a \$1,300 deposit incorrectly credited to the company's account. The deposit should have been posted to the credit of the Los Gatos Company. The NSF checks have not been redeposited and the company will seek payment from the customers involved.

Required:

1. Prepare a bank reconciliation for the El Gato checking account at December 31, 2018.
2. Prepare any necessary adjusting journal entries indicated.

P 7-15

Impairment of
receivables

● Appendix 7B



National Bank loaned the Lyon Company \$10 million, at an interest rate of 8%. The note was signed January 1, 2008, and was due December 31, 2022. Annual interest was last paid on December 31, 2016. At January 1, 2018, National Bank concluded it was probable that the note was impaired. National believes it will not collect accrued interest, that it will only receive \$500,000 of interest each year, and that it will only receive \$8 million of principal at the end of the life of the note.

Required:

Calculate the amount of impairment that National Bank would recognize for the Lyon note.

P 7-16

Impairment of
receivables

● Appendix 7B



Assume the same facts as in P 7-15, but that National Bank believes there is only a 40% chance that the loan is impaired (suffers a credit loss).

Required:

1. Calculate the amount of impairment that National Bank would recognize for the Lyon note under current U.S. GAAP.
2. Calculate the amount of credit loss that National Bank would recognize for the Lyon note, but assuming that since 2017 National has determined credit losses using the CECL model introduced in *ASU 2016-13*.

P 7-17

Impairment of
receivables;
troubled debt
restructuring

● Appendix 7B

Rothschild Chair Company, Inc., was indebted to First Lincoln Bank under a \$20 million, 10% unsecured note. The note was signed January 1, 2008, and was due December 31, 2021. Annual interest was last paid on December 31, 2016. At January 1, 2018, Rothschild Chair Company was experiencing severe financial difficulties and negotiated a restructuring of the terms of the debt agreement.

**Required:**

Prepare all journal entries by First Lincoln Bank to record the restructuring and any remaining transactions, for current and future years, relating to the debt under each of the independent circumstances below:

1. First Lincoln Bank agreed to settle the debt in exchange for land having a fair value of \$16 million but carried on Rothschild Chair Company's books at \$13 million.
2. First Lincoln Bank agreed to (a) forgive the interest accrued from last year, (b) reduce the remaining four interest payments to \$1 million each, and (c) reduce the principal to \$15 million.
3. First Lincoln Bank agreed to defer all payments (including accrued interest) until the maturity date and accept \$27,775,000 at that time in settlement of the debt.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Judgment Case 7-1

Accounts and
notes receivable

- LO7-5, LO7-6,
LO7-8

Magrath Company has an operating cycle of less than one year and provides credit terms for all of its customers. On April 1, 2018, the company factored, without recourse, some of its accounts receivable. Magrath transferred the receivables to a financial institution, and will have no further association with the receivables.

Magrath uses the allowance method to account for uncollectible accounts. During 2018, some accounts were written off as uncollectible and other accounts previously written off as uncollectible were collected.

Required:

1. How should Magrath account for and report the accounts receivable factored on April 1, 2018? Why is this accounting treatment appropriate?
2. How should Magrath account for the collection of the accounts previously written off as uncollectible?
3. What are the two basic approaches to estimating uncollectible accounts under the allowance method? What is the rationale for each approach?

(AICPA adapted)

Communication Case 7-2

Uncollectible
accounts

- LO7-5

You have been hired as a consultant by a parts manufacturing firm to provide advice as to the proper accounting methods the company should use in some key areas. In the area of receivables, the company president does not understand your recommendation to use the allowance method for uncollectible accounts. She stated, "Financial statements should be based on objective data rather than the guesswork required for the allowance method. Besides, since my uncollectibles are fairly constant from period to period, with significant variations occurring infrequently, the direct write-off method is just as good as the allowance method."

Required:

Draft a one-page response in the form of a memo to the president in support of your recommendation for the company to use the allowance method.

Judgment Case 7-3

Accounts
receivable

- LO7-3, LO7-7,
LO7-8

Hogan Company uses the net method of accounting for sales discounts. Hogan offers trade discounts to various groups of buyers.

On August 1, 2018, Hogan factored some accounts receivable on a without recourse basis. Hogan incurred a finance charge.

Hogan also has some notes receivable bearing an appropriate rate of interest. The principal and total interest are due at maturity. The notes were received on October 1, 2018, and mature on September 30, 2019. Hogan's operating cycle is less than one year.

Required:

1. a. Using the net method, how should Hogan account for the sales discounts at the date of sale? What is the rationale for the amount recorded as sales under the net method?
b. Using the net method, what is the effect on Hogan's sales revenues and net income when customers do not take the sales discounts?
2. What is the effect of trade discounts on sales revenues and accounts receivable? Why?
3. How should Hogan account for the accounts receivable factored on August 1, 2018? Why?
4. How should Hogan report the effects of the interest-bearing notes receivable in its December 31, 2018, balance sheet and its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018? Why?

(AICPA adapted)

Real World**Case 7-4**

Sales returns;
Green Mountain
Coffee Roasters
● LO7-4

Real World Financials

The following is an excerpt from Sam Antar, “Is Green Mountain Coffee Roasters Shuffling the Beans to Beat Earnings Expectations?” (*Phil’s Stock World delivered by Newstex*, May 9, 2011.)

On May 3, 2011, Green Mountain Coffee Roasters (NASDAQ: GMCR) beat analysts’ earnings estimates by \$0.10 per share for the thirteen-week period ended March 26, 2011. The next day, the stock price had risen to \$11.91 per share to close at \$75.98 per share, a staggering 18.5% increase over the previous day’s closing stock price. CNBC Senior Stocks Commentator Herb Greenberg raised questions about the quality of Green Mountain Coffee’s earnings because its provision for sales returns dropped \$22 million in the thirteen-week period. He wanted to know if there was a certain adjustment to reserves (“a reversal”) that helped Green Mountain Coffee beat analysts’ earnings estimates. . . .

During the thirteen-week period ended March 26, 2011, it was calculated that Green Mountain Coffee had a negative \$22.259 million provision for sales returns. In its latest 10-Q report, Green Mountain Coffee disclosed that its provision for sales returns was \$5.262 million for the twenty-six week period ending March 26, 2011, but the company did not disclose amounts for the thirteen-week period ended March 26, 2011. In its previous 10-Q report for the thirteen-week period ended December 25, 2010, Green Mountain Coffee disclosed that its provision for sales returns was \$27.521 million. Therefore, the provision for sales returns for the thirteen-week period ended March 26, 2011 was a negative \$22.259 million (\$5.262 million minus \$27.521 million).

Required:

1. Access EDGAR on the Internet. The web address is www.sec.gov.
2. Search for **Green Mountain Coffee Roasters, Inc.**’s 10-K for the fiscal year ended September 25, 2010 (filed December 9, 2010). (*Note:* the company now is named **Keurig Green Mountain, Inc.**) Answer the following questions related to the company’s 2010 accounting for sales returns:
 - a. What type of an account (for example, asset, contraliability) is Sales Returns Reserve? Explain.
 - b. Prepare a T-account for fiscal 2010’s sales returns reserve. Include entries for the beginning and ending balance, acquisitions, amounts charged to cost and expense, and deductions.
 - c. Prepare journal entries for amounts charged to cost and expense and for deductions. Provide a brief explanation of what each of those journal entries represents.
 - d. For any of the amounts included in your journal entries that appear in Green Mountain’s statement of cash flows on page F-8, explain why the amount appears as an increase or decrease to cash flows.
3. Now consider the information provided by Antar in the excerpt at the beginning of this case.
 - a. Prepare a T-account for the first quarter of fiscal 2011’s sales returns reserve. Assume amounts associated with acquisitions and deductions are zero, such that the only entry affecting the account during the first quarter of fiscal 2011 is to record amounts charged or recovered from cost and expense. Compute the ending balance of the account.
 - b. Prepare a T-account for the second quarter of fiscal 2011’s sales returns reserve. Assume amounts associated with acquisitions and deductions are zero, such that the only entry affecting the account during the first quarter of fiscal 2011 is to record amounts charged or recovered from cost and expense. Compute the ending balance of the account.
 - c. Assume that actual returns were zero during the second quarter of fiscal 2011. Prepare a journal entry to record amounts charged or recovered from cost and expense during the second quarter of fiscal 2011. How would that journal entry affect 2011 net income?
 - d. Speculate as to what might have caused the activity in Green Mountain’s sales returns account during the second quarter of fiscal 2011. Consider how this result could occur unintentionally, or why it might occur intentionally as a way to manage earnings.

Ethics Case 7-5

Uncollectible
accounts

● LO7-5

You have recently been hired as the assistant controller for Stanton Industries, a large, publicly held manufacturing company. Your immediate superior is the controller who, in turn, is responsible to the vice president of finance.

The controller has assigned you the task of preparing the year-end adjusting entries. In the receivables area, you have prepared an aging of accounts receivable and have applied historical percentages to the balances of each of the age categories. The analysis indicates that an appropriate balance for the allowance for uncollectible accounts is \$180,000. The existing balance in the allowance account prior to any adjusting entry is a \$20,000 credit balance.

After showing your analysis to the controller, he tells you to change the aging category of a large account from over 120 days to current status and to prepare a new invoice to the customer with a revised date that agrees with the new aging category. This will change the required allowance for uncollectible accounts from \$180,000 to \$135,000. Tactfully, you ask the controller for an explanation for the change and he tells you “We need the extra income; the bottom line is too low.”

Required:

1. What is the effect on income before taxes of the change requested by the controller?
2. Discuss the ethical dilemma you face. Consider your options and responsibilities along with the possible consequences of any action you might take.

Judgment**Case 7–6**

Internal control

● LO7–1

For each of the following independent situations, indicate the apparent internal control weaknesses and suggest alternative procedures to eliminate the weaknesses.

1. John Smith is the petty cash custodian. John approves all requests for payment out of the \$200 fund, which is replenished at the end of each month. At the end of each month, John submits a list of all accounts and amounts to be charged and a check is written to him for the total amount. John is the only person ever to tally the fund.
2. All of the company's cash disbursements are made by check. Each check must be supported by an approved voucher, which is in turn supported by the appropriate invoice and, for purchases, a receiving document. The vouchers are approved by Dean Leiser, the chief accountant, after reviewing the supporting documentation. Betty Hanson prepares the checks for Leiser's signature. Leiser also maintains the company's check register (the cash disbursements journal) and reconciles the bank account at the end of each month.
3. Fran Jones opens the company's mail and makes a listing of all checks and cash received from customers. A copy of the list is sent to Jerry McDonald who maintains the general ledger accounts. Fran prepares and makes the daily deposit at the bank. Fran also maintains the subsidiary ledger for accounts receivable, which is used to generate monthly statements to customers.

Real World**Case 7–7**

Receivables;
bad debts; Cisco
Systems, Inc.

● LO7–5

EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, performs automated collection, validation, indexing, and forwarding of submissions by companies and others who are required by law to file forms with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR to make the majority of their filings. (Some foreign companies file voluntarily). Form 10-K or 10-KSB, which include the annual report, is required to be filed on EDGAR. The SEC makes this information available on the Internet.

Required:**Real World Financials**

1. Access EDGAR on the Internet. The web address is www.sec.gov.
2. Search for **Cisco Systems, Inc.** Access the 10-K filing for the most recent fiscal year. Search or scroll to find the financial statements.
3. Answer the following questions related to the company's accounts receivable and bad debts:
 - a. What is the amount of gross trade accounts receivable at the end of the year?
 - b. What is the amount of bad debt expense for the year? (*Hint:* check the statement of cash flows).
 - c. Determine the amount of actual bad debt write-offs made during the year. Assume that all bad debts relate only to trade accounts receivable.
 - d. Using only information from the balance sheets, income statements, and your answer to requirement 3(c), determine the amount of cash collected from customers during the year. Assume that all sales are made on a credit basis, that the company provides no allowances for sales returns, that no previously written-off receivables were collected, and that all sales relate to trade accounts receivable.

Integrating**Case 7–8**

Change in
estimate of bad
debts

● LO7–5

McLaughlin Corporation uses the allowance method to account for bad debts. At the end of the company's fiscal year, accounts receivable are analyzed and the allowance for uncollectible accounts is adjusted. At the end of 2018, the company reported the following amounts:

Accounts receivable	\$10,850,000
Less: Allowance for uncollectible accounts	(450,000)
Accounts receivable, net	<u>\$10,400,000</u>

In 2019, it was determined that \$1,825,000 of year-end 2018 receivables had to be written off as uncollectible. This was due in part to the fact that Hughes Corporation, a long-standing customer that had always paid its bills, unexpectedly declared bankruptcy in 2019. Hughes owed McLaughlin \$1,400,000. At the end of 2018, none of the Hughes receivable was considered uncollectible.

Required:

Describe the appropriate accounting treatment and required disclosures for McLaughlin's underestimation of bad debts at the end of 2018.

Analysis**Case 7–9**

Financing with
receivables

● LO7–8

Financial institutions have developed a wide variety of methods for companies to use their receivables to obtain immediate cash. The methods differ with respect to which rights and risks are retained by the transferor (the original holder of the receivable) and those passed on to the transferee (the new holder, usually a financial institution).

Required:

1. Describe the alternative methods available for companies to use their receivables to obtain immediate cash.
2. Discuss the alternative accounting treatments for these methods.

Real World Case 7–10

Financing with
receivables;
Sanofi-Aventis

- LO7–5, LO7–8,
LO7–10



Research Case 7–11

Locate and
extract relevant
information and
authoritative
support for a
financial reporting
issue; financing
with receivables

- LO7–8



Analysis Case 7–12

Compare
receivables
management
using ratios;
Tyson Foods
Inc. and Pilgrim's
Pride Corp.

- LO7–9

Real World Financials

Search on the Internet for the 2015 annual report for **Sanofi-Aventis**. Find the accounts receivable disclosure note.

Required:

- Sanofi-Aventis subtracts “impairment” from the gross value of accounts receivable to obtain the net value. Interpret the impairment of (€167) in 2015 in terms of how that amount would typically be described in U.S. GAAP.
- To what extent does Sanofi-Aventis factor or securitize accounts receivable? How do you know?
- Assume that Sanofi-Aventis decided to increase the extent to which it securitizes its accounts receivable, changing to a policy of securitizing accounts receivable immediately upon making a sale and treating the securitization as a sale of accounts receivable. Indicate the likely effect of that change in policy on:
 - Accounts receivable in the period of the change
 - Cash flow from operations in the period of the change
 - Accounts receivable in subsequent periods
 - Cash flow from operations in subsequent periods
- Given your answers to requirement 3, could a company change the extent to which it factors or securitizes receivables to create one-time changes in its cash flow? Explain.

You are spending the summer working for a local wholesale furniture company, Samson Furniture, Inc. The company is considering a proposal from a local financial institution, Old Reliant Financial, to factor Samson's receivables. The company controller is unfamiliar with the prevailing GAAP that deals with accounting for the transfer of financial assets and has asked you to do some research. The controller wants to make sure the arrangement with the financial institution is structured in such a way as to allow the factoring to be accounted for as a sale.

Old Reliant has offered to factor all of the company's receivables on a “without recourse” basis. Old Reliant will remit to Samson 90% of the factored amount, collect the receivables from Samson's customers, and retain the remaining 10% until all of the receivables have been collected. When Old Reliant collects all of the receivables, it will remit to Samson the retained amount, less a 4% fee (4% of the total factored amount).

Required:

- Explain the meaning of the term *without recourse*.
- Access the relevant authoritative literature on accounting for the transfer of financial assets using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*. You might gain access at the FASB website (www.fasb.org), from your school library, or some other source. What conditions must be met for a transfer of receivables to be accounted for as a sale (or in accounting terms, “derecognized”)? What is the specific citation that Samson would rely on in applying that accounting treatment?
- Assuming that the conditions for treatment as a sale are met, prepare Samson's journal entry to record the factoring of \$400,000 of receivables. Assume that the fair value of the last 10% of Samson's receivables is equal to \$25,000.
- An agreement that both entitles and obligates the transferor, Samson, to repurchase or redeem transferred assets from the transferee, Old Reliant, maintains the transferor's effective control over those assets and the transfer is accounted for as a secured borrowing, not a sale, if and only if what conditions are met?

The table below contains selected financial information included in the 2015 financial statements of **Tyson Foods Inc.** and **Pilgrim's Pride Corp.**

	(\$ in millions)			
	Tyson		Pilgrim's Pride	
	2015	2014	2015	2014
Balance sheets:				
Accounts receivable, net	\$ 1,620	\$ 1,684	\$ 349	\$ 379
Income statements:				
Net sales	\$41,373	\$37,580	\$8,180	\$8,583

Required:

- Calculate the 2015 receivables turnover ratio and average collection period for both companies. Evaluate the management of each company's investment in receivables.
- Obtain annual reports from three corporations in the same primary industry and compare the management of each company's investment in receivables.

Note: You can obtain copies of annual reports from your library, from the investor relations department of the corporations, or from EDGAR (Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval) on the Internet (www.sec.gov).

Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO7–2, LO7–5

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material also is available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. What is Target's policy for designating investments as cash equivalents?
2. What is Target's balance of cash equivalents for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016?
3. What is Target's policy with respect to accounting for merchandise returns?
4. Does Target have accounts receivable? Speculate as to why it has the balance that it has. (Hint, see Disclosure Notes 9, 11 and 13).

Air France–KLM Case



- LO7–8

Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. In note 4.11, AF describes how it values trade receivables. How does the approach used by AF compare to U.S. GAAP?
2. In note 26, AF reconciles the beginning and ending balances of its valuation allowances for trade accounts receivable. Prepare a T-account for the valuation allowance and include entries for the beginning and ending balances as well as any reconciling items that affected the account during 2015.
3. Examine note 28. Does AF have any bank overdrafts? If so, are the overdrafts shown in the balance sheet the same way they would be shown under U.S. GAAP?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

8

Inventories: Measurement

OVERVIEW

The next two chapters continue our study of assets by investigating the measurement and reporting issues involving inventories and the related expense—cost of goods sold. Inventory refers to the assets a company (1) intends to sell in the normal course of business, (2) has in production for future sale, or (3) uses currently in the production of goods to be sold.

**LEARNING
OBJECTIVES**

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO8-1** Explain the types of inventory and the differences between a perpetual inventory system and a periodic inventory system. (p. 416)
- **LO8-2** Explain which physical units of goods should be included in inventory. (p. 420)
- **LO8-3** Account for transactions that affect net purchases and prepare a cost of goods sold schedule. (p. 421)
- **LO8-4** Differentiate between the specific identification, FIFO, LIFO, and average cost methods used to determine the cost of ending inventory and cost of goods sold. (p. 424)
- **LO8-5** Discuss the factors affecting a company's choice of inventory method. (p. 431)
- **LO8-6** Understand supplemental LIFO disclosures and the effect of LIFO liquidations on net income. (p. 432)
- **LO8-7** Calculate the key ratios used by analysts to monitor a company's investment in inventories. (p. 438)
- **LO8-8** Determine ending inventory using the dollar-value LIFO inventory method. (p. 441)
- **LO8-9** Discuss the primary difference between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to determining the cost of inventory. (p. 431)



© Dave and Les Jacobs LLC

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Inventory Measurement at Kroger Company

As you were reading the annual report of **Kroger Company**, one of the world's largest grocery retailers, you notice the company accounts for nearly all of its grocery inventory based on a LIFO method (last-in, first-out). This means the company reports its most recent inventory purchases as sold *first*. However, you understand that most grocery inventory consists of perishable food items, meaning that the company in reality almost certainly sells its most recent purchases *last*. Otherwise, there would be considerable inventory spoilage. You decide to look a little deeper and notice the following discussion in the company's annual report:

Inventories (in part)

Inventories are stated at the lower of cost (principally on a last-in, first-out "LIFO" basis) or market. In total, approximately 95% of inventories were valued using the LIFO method. Replacement cost was higher than the carrying amount by \$1,272 at January 30, 2016 and \$1,245 at January 31, 2015.

(\$ in millions)	2016	2015
FIFO Inventory	\$7,440	\$6,933
LIFO reserve	(1,272)	(1,245)
Reported inventories	<u>\$6,168</u>	<u>\$5,688</u>

After seeing this information, you are further confused because you don't understand why Kroger would choose to report inventory for more than \$1 billion below its replacement cost. Doesn't that make the company's inventory look less valuable and therefore the company less profitable?

You do some more research and find that other retail companies, as well as companies in industries such as automobiles, consumer products, energy, manufacturing, and mining, also use the LIFO method. Each of these companies most likely sells its actual inventory on a first-in, first-out (FIFO) basis, so why are they assuming the opposite?

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. How is the LIFO method used to calculate inventories? Is this permissible according to GAAP? (p. 430)
2. What is the purpose of disclosing the difference between the reported LIFO inventory amounts and replacement cost, assuming that replacement cost is equivalent to a FIFO basis? (p. 432)
3. Are you correct that, by using LIFO, Kroger reports lower inventory and lower profits? Why would Kroger do that? (p. 438)

QUESTIONS

Recording and Measuring Inventory

Inventory refers to the assets a company (1) intends to sell in the normal course of business, (2) has in production for future sale (work in process), or (3) uses currently in the production of goods to be sold (raw materials). The computers produced by

PART A

Inventories consist of assets that a retail or wholesale company acquires for resale or goods that manufacturers produce for sale.

Hewlett-Packard (HP), that are intended for sale to customers are inventory, as are partially completed components, the computer chips, and memory modules that will go into computers produced later. The computers *used* by HP's employees to maintain its accounting system and other company operations, however, are not available for sale to customers and therefore are classified and accounted for as equipment. Similarly, the stocks and bonds a securities dealer holds for sale are inventory, whereas HP would classify the securities it holds as investments.

Cost of goods sold is the expense related to inventory. The inventory amount in the balance sheet represents the cost of the inventory still on hand (not yet sold) at the end of the period, while cost of goods sold in the income statement represents the cost of the inventory sold during the period.

Inventory usually is one of the most valuable assets listed in the balance sheet for manufacturing, wholesale, and retail companies (enterprises that produce revenue by selling goods). Similarly, cost of goods sold typically is the largest expense in the income statement of these companies. For example, a recent balance sheet for **Best Buy** reported inventories of \$5.1 billion, which represented 51% of current assets. The company's income statement for the year ended January 30, 2016, reported cost of goods sold of \$30.3 billion representing 80% of operating expenses.

As we'll see in this and the next chapter, it's usually difficult to measure inventory and cost of goods sold at the exact cost of the actual physical quantities on hand and sold. Fortunately, accountants can use one of several techniques to approximate the desired result and satisfy our measurement objectives.

Types of Inventory

Merchandising Inventory

• LO8-1

Wholesale and retail companies purchase goods that are primarily in finished form. These companies are intermediaries in the process of moving goods from the manufacturer to the end-user. They often are referred to as merchandising companies and their inventory as merchandise inventory. *The cost of merchandise inventory includes the purchase price plus any other costs necessary to get the goods in condition and location for sale.* We discuss the concept of condition and location and the types of costs that typically constitute inventory later in this chapter.

Manufacturing Inventories

Inventory for a manufacturing company consists of raw materials, work in process, and finished goods.

Unlike merchandising companies, manufacturing companies actually produce the goods they sell to wholesalers, retailers, other manufacturers, or consumers. Inventory for a manufacturer consists of (1) raw materials, (2) work in process, and (3) finished goods.

Raw materials represent the cost of components purchased from suppliers that will become part of the finished product. For example, Hewlett-Packard's raw materials inventory includes semiconductors, circuit boards, plastic, and glass that go into the production of personal computers.

Work-in-process inventory refers to the products that are not yet complete in the manufacturing process. The cost of work in process includes the cost of raw materials used in production, the cost of labor that can be directly traced to the goods in process, and an allocated portion of other manufacturing costs, called *manufacturing overhead*. Overhead costs include electricity and other utility costs to operate the manufacturing facility, depreciation of manufacturing equipment, and many other manufacturing costs that cannot be directly linked to the production of specific goods.

Finished goods are goods that have been completed in the manufacturing process but have not yet been sold. They have reached their final stage and now await sale to a customer. Their cost includes the cost of all raw materials and work-in-process used in production.

Manufacturing companies generally disclose, either in a note or directly in the balance sheet, the dollar amount of each inventory category. For example, **Intel**, one of the world's largest semiconductor chip manufacturers, reports inventory as shown in Illustration 8-1.

	(\$ in millions)	
	December 26, 2015	December 27, 2014
Raw materials	\$ 532	\$ 462
Work in process	2,893	2,375
Finished goods	1,742	1,436
Total Inventories	<u>\$5,167</u>	<u>\$4,273</u>

Illustration 8-1

Inventories Disclosure—
Intel Corporation

Real World Financials

The inventory accounts and the cost flows for a typical manufacturing company are shown using T-accounts in Illustration 8-2. The costs of raw materials used, direct labor applied, and manufacturing overhead applied flow into work in process and then to finished goods. When the goods are sold, the cost of those goods flows to cost of goods sold.

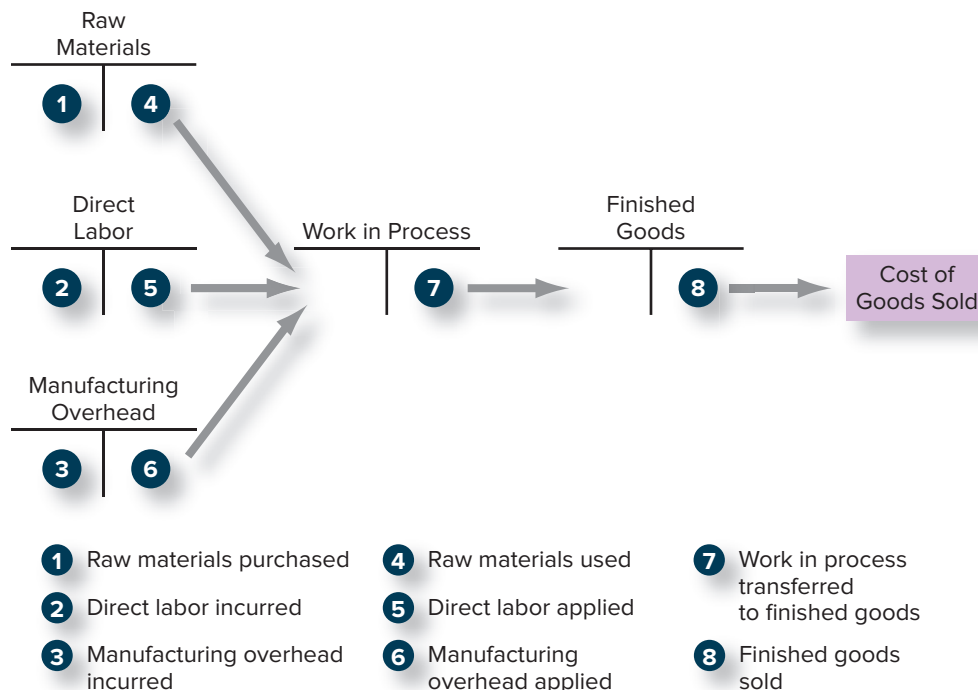


Illustration 8-2

Inventory Components
and Cost Flow for a
Manufacturing Company

The costs of inventory units follow their physical movement from one stage of activity to another.

We focus in this text primarily on merchandising companies (wholesalers and retailers). Still, most of the accounting principles and procedures discussed here also apply to manufacturing companies. The unique problems involved with accumulating the direct costs of raw materials and labor and with allocating manufacturing overhead are addressed in managerial and cost accounting textbooks.

Types of Inventory Systems

Perpetual Inventory System

Two accounting systems are used to record transactions involving inventory: the **perpetual inventory system** and the **periodic inventory system**. The perpetual system was introduced in Chapter 2. The system is aptly termed perpetual because the account *inventory* is continually adjusted for each change in inventory, whether it's caused by a purchase, a sale, or a return of merchandise by the company to its supplier (a *purchase return* for the buyer, a *sales return* for the seller).¹ The cost of goods sold account, along with the inventory account, is adjusted each time goods are sold or are returned by a customer. This concept is applied to the Lothridge Wholesale Beverage Company for which inventory information is provided in Illustration 8-3. This hypothetical company also will be used in the next several illustrations.

¹We discussed accounting for sales returns in Chapter 7.

Illustration 8-3
Perpetual Inventory System

The Lothridge Wholesale Beverage Company purchases soft drinks from producers and then sells them to retailers. The company begins 2018 with inventory of \$120,000 on hand. The following information relates to inventory transactions during 2018:

1. Additional soft drink inventory is purchased on account at a cost of \$600,000.
2. Sales for the year, all on account, totaled \$820,000.
3. The cost of the soft drink inventory sold is \$540,000.

Lothridge uses the *perpetual inventory system* to keep track of both inventory quantities and inventory costs. The system indicates that the cost of inventory on hand at the end of the year is \$180,000.

The following summary journal entries record the inventory transactions for the Lothridge Company:

2018		
Inventory.....	600,000	
Accounts payable		600,000
<i>To record the purchase of inventory.</i>		
2018		
Accounts receivable	820,000	
Sales revenue		820,000
<i>To record sales on account.</i>		
Cost of goods sold	540,000	
Inventory.....		540,000
<i>To record the cost of sales.</i>		

An important feature of a perpetual system is that it is designed to track inventory quantities from their acquisition to their sale. If the system is accurate, it allows management to determine how many goods are on hand on any date without having to take a physical count. However, physical counts of inventory usually are made anyway, either at the end of the fiscal year or on a sample basis throughout the year, to verify that the perpetual system is correctly tracking quantities. Differences between the quantity of inventory determined by the physical count and the quantity of inventory according to the perpetual system could be caused by system errors, theft, breakage, or spoilage. In addition to keeping up with inventory purchases, a perpetual system also directly determines how many items are sold during a period.

When a company uses a perpetual inventory system to record inventory and cost of goods sold transactions, merchandise cost data also is included in the system. That way, when merchandise is purchased/sold, the system records not only the addition/reduction in inventory quantity but also the addition/reduction in the *cost* of the inventory.

The perpetual inventory system is becoming increasingly popular among companies. You probably are familiar with the scanning mechanisms used at grocery stores and other checkout counters. The scanners not only record each item sold but also can be used to track the purchase of merchandise for inventory management purposes. Inventory software and barcode tracking systems reduce the burden of physical inventory counts and make the use of the perpetual inventory system easier and more efficient.

Periodic Inventory System

A **periodic inventory system** is not designed to track either the quantity or cost of merchandise. The merchandise inventory account balance is not adjusted as purchases and sales are made but only periodically at the end of a reporting period. A physical count of the period's ending inventory is made and costs are assigned to the quantities determined. Merchandise purchases, purchase returns, purchase discounts, and freight-in (purchases plus freight-in less returns and discounts equals net purchases) are recorded in temporary accounts and the period's cost of goods sold is determined at the end of the period by combining the temporary accounts with the inventory account:

Beginning inventory + Net purchases – Ending inventory = Cost of goods sold

A perpetual inventory system continuously tracks both inventory quantities and inventory costs.

A periodic inventory system adjusts inventory and records cost of goods sold only at the end of each reporting period.

Cost of goods sold equation

The cost of goods sold equation assumes that all inventory quantities not on hand at the end of the period were sold. This may not be the case if inventory items were either damaged or stolen. If damaged and stolen inventory are identified, they must be removed from beginning inventory or purchases before calculating cost of goods sold and then classified as a separate expense item.

Illustration 8–4 looks at the periodic system using the Lothridge Wholesale Beverage Company example.

Illustration 8–4

Periodic Inventory System

The Lothridge Wholesale Beverage Company purchases soft drinks from producers and then sells them to retailers. The company begins 2018 with inventory of \$120,000 on hand. The following information relates to inventory transactions during 2018:

1. Additional soft drink inventory is purchased on account at a cost of \$600,000.
2. Sales for the year, all on account, totaled \$820,000.

Lothridge uses the **periodic inventory system**. A physical count determined the cost of inventory at the end of the year to be \$180,000.

The following summary journal entries record the inventory transactions for the Lothridge Company:

2018

Purchases	600,000	
Accounts payable		600,000
<i>To record the purchase of inventory.</i>		

2018

Accounts receivable	820,000	
Sales revenue		820,000
<i>To record sales on account.</i>		

No entry is recorded for the cost of inventory sold.

Because cost of goods sold isn't determined automatically and continually by the periodic system, it must be determined indirectly after a physical inventory count. Cost of goods sold for 2018 is determined as follows:

Beginning inventory	\$ 120,000
Plus: Purchases	600,000
Cost of goods available for sale	720,000
Less: Ending inventory (per physical count)	(180,000)
Cost of goods sold	\$540,000

The following journal entry combines the components of cost of goods sold into a single expense account and updates the balance in the inventory account:

December 31, 2018

Cost of goods sold	540,000	
Inventory (ending)	180,000	
Inventory (beginning)		120,000
Purchases		600,000
<i>To adjust inventory, close the purchases account, and record cost of goods sold.</i>		

This entry adjusts the inventory account to the correct period-end amount, closes the temporary purchases account, and records the residual as cost of goods sold. Now let's compare the two inventory accounting systems.

A Comparison of the Perpetual and Periodic Inventory Systems

Beginning inventory plus net purchases during the period is the *cost of goods available for sale*. The main difference between a perpetual and a periodic system is that the periodic

system allocates cost of goods available for sale between ending inventory and cost of goods sold (periodically) *at the end of the period*. In contrast, the perpetual system performs this allocation by decreasing inventory and increasing cost of goods sold (perpetually) *each time goods are sold*.

The impact on the financial statements of choosing one system over the other generally is not significant. The choice between the two approaches usually is motivated by management control considerations as well as the comparative costs of implementation. Perpetual systems can provide more information about the dollar amounts of inventory levels on a continuous basis. They also facilitate the preparation of interim financial statements by providing fairly accurate information without the necessity of a physical count of inventory.

On the other hand, a perpetual system may be more expensive to implement than a periodic system. This is particularly true for inventories consisting of large numbers of low-cost items. Perpetual systems are more workable with inventories of high-cost items such as construction equipment or automobiles. However, with the help of computers and electronic sales devices such as cash register systems with barcode scanners, the perpetual inventory system now is available to many small businesses that previously could not afford them and is economically feasible for a broader range of inventory items than before.

The periodic system is less costly to implement during the period but requires a physical count before ending inventory and cost of goods sold can be determined. This makes the preparation of interim financial statements more costly unless an inventory estimation technique is used.² And, perhaps most importantly, the inventory monitoring features provided by a perpetual system are not available. However, it is important to remember that a perpetual system involves the tracking of both inventory quantities *and* costs. Many companies that determine costs only periodically employ systems to constantly monitor inventory quantities.

A perpetual system provides more timely information but generally is more costly.

What Is Included in Inventory?

Physical Units Included in Inventory

• LO8-2

Regardless of the system used, the measurement of inventory and cost of goods sold starts with determining the physical units of goods. Typically, determining the physical units that should be included in inventory is a simple matter because it consists of items in the possession of the company. However, in some situations the identification of items that should be included in inventory is more difficult. Consider, for example, goods in transit, goods on consignment, and sales returns.

GOODS IN TRANSIT. At the end of a reporting period, it's important to ensure a proper inventory cutoff. This means ownership must be determined for goods that are in transit between the company and its customers as well as between the company and its suppliers.

For example, in December 2018, the Lothridge Wholesale Beverage Company sold goods to the Jabbar Company.

1. The goods were shipped from Lothridge on December 29, 2018, but
2. The goods didn't arrive at Jabbar until January 3, 2019.

If both companies have December 31 fiscal year ends, whose inventory is it on December 31, 2018? In other words, which company will report these goods in ending inventory in the balance sheet as of December 31, 2018? The answer depends on who owns the goods on December 31. Ownership depends on the terms of the agreement between the two companies.

If the goods are shipped **f.o.b. (free on board) shipping point**, then legal title to the goods changes hands at the *point of shipment* when the seller delivers the goods to the common carrier (for example, a trucking company). In this case, the purchaser is responsible for shipping costs and transit insurance. Lothridge records the sale of inventory on December

Inventory shipped **f.o.b. shipping point** is included in the purchaser's inventory as soon as the merchandise is shipped.

²In Chapter 9 we discuss inventory estimation techniques that avoid the necessity of a physical count to determine ending inventory and cost of goods sold.

29, 2018, and Jabbar records the purchase of inventory on that same day. Jabbar will include these goods in its 2018 ending inventory even though the company is not in physical possession of the goods on the last day of the fiscal year.

On the other hand, if the goods are shipped **f.o.b. destination**, the seller is responsible for shipping, and legal title does not pass until the goods arrive at their *destination* (the customer's location). In our example, if the goods are shipped f.o.b. destination, Lothridge includes the goods in its 2018 ending inventory and the sale is not recorded until January 3, 2019, when those goods reach Jabbar. Jabbar also will wait until 2019 to record the purchase.

Inventory shipped **f.o.b. destination** is included in the purchaser's inventory only after it reaches the purchaser's destination.

GOODS ON CONSIGNMENT. Sometimes a company arranges for another company to sell its product under **consignment**. The goods are physically transferred to the other company (the consignee), but the transferor (consignor) retains legal title. If the consignee can't find a buyer, the goods are returned to the consignor. If a buyer is found, the consignee remits the selling price (less commission and approved expenses) to the consignor.

Goods held on **consignment** are included in the inventory of the consignor until sold by the consignee.

As we discussed in Chapter 5, because risk is retained by the consignor, the sale is not complete (revenue is not recognized) until an eventual sale to a third party occurs. As a result, goods held on consignment generally are not included in the consignee's inventory. While in stock, they belong to the consignor and should be included in inventory of the consignor even though not in the company's physical possession. A sale is recorded by the consignor only when the goods are sold by the consignee and title passes to the customer.

SALES RETURNS. Recall from our discussions in Chapters 5 and 7 that when the right of return exists, a seller must be able to estimate those returns before revenue can be recognized. The adjusting entry for estimated sales returns includes a debit to sales returns and a credit to refund liability (or some companies might credit an allowance for sales returns in the case of credit sales). At the same time, cost of goods sold is reduced and an estimate of inventory to be returned is made (see Illustration 7-4). As a result, a company includes in ending inventory the cost of merchandise sold it anticipates will be returned.

Now that we've considered which goods are part of inventory, let's examine the types of costs that should be associated with those inventory units.

Transactions Affecting Net Purchases

As mentioned earlier, the cost of inventory includes all necessary expenditures to acquire the inventory and bring it to its desired *condition* and *location* for sale or for use in the manufacturing process. Obviously, the cost includes the purchase price of the goods. But usually the cost of acquiring inventory also includes freight charges on incoming goods borne by the buyer; insurance costs incurred by the buyer while the goods are in transit (if shipped f.o.b. shipping point); and the costs of unloading, unpacking, and preparing merchandise inventory for sale or raw materials inventory for use.³ The costs included in inventory are called **product costs**. They are associated with products and *expensed as cost of goods sold only when the related products are sold*.⁴

● LO8-3

Expenditures necessary to bring inventory to its *condition and location* for sale or use are included in its cost.

FREIGHT-IN ON PURCHASES. Freight-in on purchases is commonly included in the cost of inventory. These costs clearly are necessary to get the inventory in location for sale or use and can generally be associated with particular goods. Freight costs are added to the *inventory* account in a perpetual system.

The cost of **freight-in** paid by the purchaser generally is part of the cost of inventory.

In a periodic system, freight costs generally are recorded in a temporary account called **freight-in** or **transportation-in**, which is added to total purchases in determining net purchases for inclusion in cost of goods sold. (See also the cost of goods sold schedule in

³Generally accepted accounting principles require that abnormal amounts of certain costs be recognized as current period expenses rather than being included in the cost of inventory, specifically idle facility costs, freight, handling costs, and waste materials (spoilage). FASB ASC 330-10-30: Inventory—Overall—Initial Measurement (previously “Inventory Costs—An Amendment of ARB No. 43, Chapters 4,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 151* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2004)).

⁴For practical reasons, though, some of these expenditures often are not included in inventory cost and are treated as **period costs**. They often are immaterial or it is impractical to associate the expenditures with particular units of inventory (for example, unloading and unpacking costs). Period costs are not associated with products and are expensed in the *period* incurred.

Shipping charges on outgoing goods are reported either as part of cost of goods sold or as an operating expense, usually among selling expenses.

Purchase discounts represent reductions in the amount to be paid if remittance is made within a designated period of time.

Illustration 8-5

Purchase Discounts

By either method, net purchases are reduced by discounts taken.

Illustration 8-6 later in this section.) From a control perspective, by recording freight-in as a separate item, management can more easily track its freight costs. The same perspectives pertain to purchase returns and purchase discounts, which are discussed in the next sections.

Shipping charges on outgoing goods (freight-out) are not included in the cost of inventory. They are reported in the income statement either as part of cost of goods sold or as an operating expense, usually among selling expenses. If a company adopts a policy of not including shipping charges in cost of goods sold, both the amounts incurred during the period as well as the income statement classification of the expense must be disclosed.⁵

PURCHASE RETURNS. In Chapter 7 we discussed merchandise returns from the perspective of the selling company. At the time a customer returns merchandise, the seller records a sales return (a contra revenue account). We now address returns from the buyer's point of view. When merchandise is returned, the buyer records a **purchase return**. In a perpetual inventory system, the purchase return is recorded directly as a reduction to the *inventory* account. In a periodic system, we use a *purchase returns* account to temporarily accumulate these amounts. Recall our earlier discussion of the cost of goods sold calculation (Beginning inventory + *Net purchases* – Ending inventory = Cost of goods sold). Purchase returns are subtracted from total purchases to calculate net purchases. (See also the cost of goods sold schedule in Illustration 8-6 later in this section.)

PURCHASE DISCOUNTS. Cash discounts also were discussed from the seller's perspective in Chapter 7. These discounts really are quick-payment discounts because they represent reductions in the amount to be paid by the buyer in the event payment is made within a specified period of time. The amount of the discount and the time period within which it's available are conveyed by terms like 2/10, n/30 (meaning a 2% discount if paid within 10 days, otherwise full payment within 30 days). As with the seller, the purchaser can record these **purchase discounts** using either the **gross method** or the **net method**. Consider Illustration 8-5, which is similar to the cash discount illustration in Chapter 7.

On October 5, 2018, the Lothridge Wholesale Beverage Company purchased merchandise at a price of \$20,000. The repayment terms are stated as 2/10, n/30. Lothridge paid \$13,720 (\$14,000 less the 2% cash discount) on October 14 and the remaining balance of \$6,000 on November 4. Lothridge employs a periodic inventory system.

The gross and net methods of recording the purchase and cash payment are compared as follows:

Gross Method		Net Method	
October 5, 2018		October 5, 2018	
Purchases*	20,000	Purchases*	19,600
Accounts payable	20,000	Accounts payable	19,600
October 14, 2018		October 14, 2018	
Accounts payable	14,000	Accounts payable	13,720
Purchase discounts*	280	Cash	13,720
Cash	13,720		
November 4, 2018		November 4, 2018	
Accounts payable	6,000	Accounts payable	5,880
Cash	6,000	Interest expense	120
		Cash	6,000

*The Inventory account is used in a perpetual system.

Conceptually, the gross method views a discount not taken as part of the cost of inventory. The net method considers the cost of inventory to include the net, after-discount amount, and any discounts not taken are reported as *interest expense*.⁶ The discount is viewed as compensation to the seller for providing financing to the buyer.

⁵FASB ASC 605-45-50-2: Revenue Recognition—Principal Agent Considerations—Disclosure—Shipping and Handling Fees and Costs (previously “Accounting for Shipping and Handling Fees and Costs,” *EITF Issue No. 00-10* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2000), par. 6).

⁶An alternative treatment is to debit an expense account called *purchase discounts lost* rather than interest expense. This enables a company to more easily identify the forgone discounts. Some companies might prefer to include discounts lost as part of cost of goods sold.

Purchase discounts recorded under the gross method are subtracted from total purchases when determining net purchases. Under the perpetual inventory system, purchase discounts are treated as a reduction in the inventory account.

The effect on the financial statements of the difference between the two methods usually is immaterial. Net income over time will be the same using either method. *There will, however, be a difference in gross profit between the two methods equal to the amount of discounts not taken.* In Illustration 8–5, the \$120 in discounts not taken is included as interest expense using the net method and in cost of goods sold using the gross method.

Illustration 8–6 compares the perpetual and periodic inventory systems, using the gross method. A schedule to demonstrate the calculation of cost of goods sold is provided at the end.

Illustration 8–6

Inventory Transactions—
Perpetual and Periodic
Systems

The Lothridge Wholesale Beverage Company purchases soft drinks from producers and then sells them to retailers. The company began 2018 with merchandise inventory of \$120,000 on hand. During 2018 additional inventory transactions include:

- Purchases of merchandise on account totaled \$620,000, with terms 2/10, n/30.
- Freight charges paid by Lothridge were \$16,000.
- Merchandise with a cost of \$20,000 was returned to suppliers for credit.
- All purchases on account were paid within the discount period.
- Sales on account totaled \$830,000. The cost of soft drinks sold was \$550,000.
- Inventory remaining on hand at the end of 2018 totaled \$174,000.

The above transactions are recorded in summary form according to both the perpetual and periodic inventory systems using the gross method:

(\$ in thousands)			
Perpetual System		Periodic System	
Purchases			
Inventory	620	Purchases	620
Accounts payable	620	Accounts payable	620
Freight			
Inventory	16	Freight-in	16
Cash.....	16	Cash	16
Returns			
Accounts payable	20	Accounts payable	20
Inventory	20	Purchase returns	20
Discounts			
Accounts Payable	600	Accounts Payable	600
Inventory (\$600 × 2%)	12	Purchase discounts (\$600 × 2%)	12
Cash	588	Cash	588
Sales			
Accounts receivable	830	Accounts receivable	830
Sales revenue	830	Sales revenue	830
Cost of goods sold	550	No entry	
Inventory	550		
End of period			
No entry		Cost of goods sold (below)	550 ←
		Inventory (ending)	174
		Purchase returns	20
		Purchase discounts.....	12
		Inventory (beginning)	120
		Purchases.....	620
		Freight-in	16

(continued)

(concluded)

Supporting Schedule

Cost of goods sold:		
Beginning inventory		\$120
Purchases	\$620	
Plus: Freight-in	16	
Less: Returns	(20)	
Less: Discounts	(12)	
Net purchases	604	
Cost of goods available	724	
Less: Ending inventory	(174)	
Cost of goods sold		\$550

Inventory Cost Flow Assumptions

● LO8-4

Regardless of whether the perpetual or periodic system is used, it's necessary to assign dollar amounts to the physical quantities of goods sold and goods remaining in ending inventory. Unless each item of inventory is specifically identified and traced through the system, assigning dollars is accomplished by making an assumption regarding how units of goods (and their associated costs) flow through the system. We examine the common cost flow assumptions next. In previous illustrations, dollar amounts of the cost of goods sold and the cost of ending inventory were assumed known. However, if various portions of inventory are acquired at different costs, we need a way to decide which units were sold and which remain in inventory. Illustration 8-7 will help explain.

Illustration 8-7

Inventory Information

Goods available for sale include beginning inventory plus purchases.

The Browning Company has the following inventory information for 2018:

Beginning Inventory and Purchases During 2018

Date	Units	Unit Cost*	Total Cost
Jan. 1 (Beginning Inventory)	4,000	\$5.50	\$22,000
Purchases:			
Jan. 17	1,000	6.00	6,000
Mar. 22	3,000	7.00	21,000
Oct. 15	3,000	7.50	22,500
Goods available for sale	11,000		\$71,500

Sales

Date of Sale	Units
Jan. 10	2,000
Apr. 15	1,500
Nov. 20	3,000
Total	6,500

*Includes purchase price and cost of freight.

Browning began the year with 4,000 units and purchased another 7,000 units, so there were 11,000 units available for sale. Of this amount, 6,500 units were sold. This means 4,500 units remain in ending inventory. This allocation of units is depicted in Illustration 8-7A.

What is the cost of the 6,500 units sold? In other words, which of the 11,000 units available for sale were sold? If all units, including beginning inventory, were purchased at the

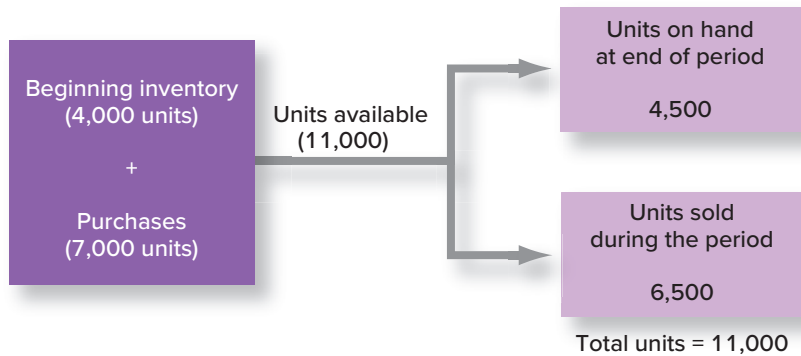


Illustration 8-7A

Allocation of Units Available

same price, then the answer would be simple. However, that rarely is the case. Using the numbers given, let's consider the question as follows:

Beginning inventory (4,000 units @ \$5.50)	\$ 22,000
Plus: Purchases (7,000 units @ various prices)	49,500
Cost of goods available for sale (11,000 units)	\$71,500
Less: Ending inventory (4,500 units @ ?)	?
Cost of goods sold (6,500 units @ ?)	?

The **\$71,500** in cost of goods available for sale must be allocated to ending inventory and cost of goods sold. The allocation decision is depicted in Illustration 8-7B.

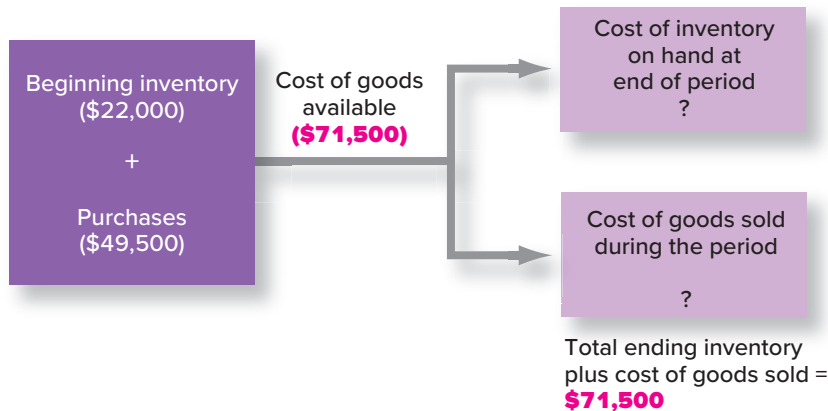


Illustration 8-7B

Allocation of Cost of Goods Available

Let's turn our attention now to the various inventory methods that can be used to achieve the allocation between ending inventory and cost of goods sold.

Specific Identification

It's sometimes possible for each unit sold during the period or each unit on hand at the end of the period to be matched with its actual cost. Actual costs can be determined by reference to the invoice representing the purchase of the item. The **specific identification** is used frequently by companies selling unique, expensive products with low sales volume which makes it relatively easy and economically feasible to associate each item with its actual cost. For example, automobiles have unique serial numbers that can be used to match a specific auto with the invoice identifying the actual purchase price.

The specific identification method, however, is not feasible for many types of products either because items are not uniquely identifiable or because it's too costly to match a specific purchase price with each item sold or each item remaining in ending inventory. For this reason, most companies use other cost flow methods that *assume* which units of inventory have been sold and which units remain in ending inventory. It's important to note that the *actual flow of a company's inventory does not have to match management's assumed flow*.

The three most common cost flow assumption methods are average cost; first-in, first-out (FIFO); and last-in, first-out (LIFO). We discuss each of these next. Later in this chapter

we will discuss the various motivating factors that influence management's choice among various methods.

Average Cost

The **average cost method** assumes that items sold and items in ending inventory come from a mixture of all the goods available for sale.

In a periodic inventory system, the average cost is computed only at the end of the period.

The **average cost method** assumes that cost of goods sold and ending inventory consist of a mixture of all the goods available for sale. The average unit cost applied to goods sold or to ending inventory is not simply an average of the various unit costs of purchases during the period but an average unit cost *weighted* by the number of units acquired at the various unit costs.

PERIODIC AVERAGE COST. In a periodic inventory system, this weighted average is calculated only at the end of the period as follows:

$$\text{Weighted-average unit cost} = \frac{\text{Cost of goods available for sale}}{\text{Quantity available for sale}}$$

The calculation of average cost is demonstrated in Illustration 8–7C using data from Illustration 8–7.

Illustration 8–7C

Average Cost—Periodic Inventory System

Beginning inventory (4,000 units @ \$5.50)	\$ 22,000
Plus: Purchases (7,000 units @ various prices)	49,500
Cost of goods available for sale (11,000 units)	71,500
Less: Ending inventory* (determined below)	(29,250)
Cost of goods sold (6,500 units)	<u>\$42,250</u>
*Cost of Ending Inventory:	
Weighted-average unit cost = $\frac{\$71,500}{11,000 \text{ units}} = \6.50	
4,500 units × \$6.50 =	\$29,250

Cost of goods sold also could be determined directly by multiplying the weighted-average unit cost of \$6.50 by the number of units sold ($\$6.50 \times 6,500 \text{ units} = \$42,250$).

In a perpetual inventory system, the average cost method is applied by computing a moving-average unit cost each time additional inventory is purchased.

PERPETUAL AVERAGE COST. The weighted-average unit cost in a perpetual inventory system becomes a moving-average unit cost. *A new weighted-average unit cost is calculated each time additional units are purchased.* The new average is determined after each purchase by (1) summing the cost of the previous inventory balance and the cost of the new purchase, and (2) dividing this new total cost (cost of goods available for sale) by the number of units on hand (the inventory units that are available for sale). This average is then used to cost any units sold before the next purchase is made. The moving-average concept is applied in Illustration 8–7D.

On January 17 the new average of **\$5.667** (rounded) is calculated by dividing the \$17,000 cost of goods available (\$11,000 from beginning inventory + \$6,000 purchased on January 17) by the 3,000 units available (2,000 units from beginning inventory + 1,000 units acquired on January 17). The average is updated to **\$6.333** (rounded) with the March 22 purchase. The 1,500 units sold on April 15 are then costed at the average cost of **\$6.333**.

Periodic average cost and perpetual average cost generally produce different allocations to cost of goods sold and ending inventory.

The **first-in, first-out (FIFO) method** assumes that items sold are those that were acquired first.

Ending inventory applying FIFO consists of the most recently acquired items.

First-In, First-Out (FIFO)

The **first-in, first-out (FIFO) method** assumes that units sold are the first units acquired. Beginning inventory is sold first, followed by purchases during the period in the chronological order of their acquisition. In our illustration, 6,500 units were sold during 2018. Applying FIFO, these would be the 4,000 units in beginning inventory, the 1,000 units purchased on January 17, and 1,500 of the 3,000 units from the March 22 purchase.

Illustration 8-7D Average Cost—Perpetual Inventory System

Date	Purchased	Sold	Balance
Beginning inventory	4,000 @ \$5.50 = \$22,000		4,000 @ \$5.50 = \$22,000
Jan. 10		2,000 @ \$5.50 = \$11,000	2,000 @ \$5.50 = \$11,000
Jan. 17	1,000 @ \$6.00 = \$6,000		\$11,000 + \$6,000 = \$17,000
Average cost per unit →	$\left[\frac{\$17,000}{3,000 \text{ units}} \right] = \$5.667/\text{unit}$		2,000 + 1,000 = 3,000 units
Mar. 22	3,000 @ \$7.00 = \$21,000		\$17,000 + \$21,000 = \$38,000
Average cost per unit →	$\left[\frac{\$38,000}{6,000 \text{ units}} \right] = \$6.333/\text{unit}$		3,000 + 3,000 = 6,000 units
Apr. 15		1,500 @ \$6.333 = \$9,500	4,500 @ \$6.333 = \$28,500
Oct. 15	3,000 @ \$7.50 = \$22,500		\$28,500 + \$22,500 = \$51,000
Average cost per unit →	$\left[\frac{\$51,000}{7,500 \text{ units}} \right] = \$6.80/\text{unit}$		4,500 + 3,000 = 7,500 units
Nov. 20		3,000 @ \$6.80 = \$20,400	4,500 @ \$6.80 = <u>\$30,600</u>
Total cost of goods sold		<u><u>= \$40,900</u></u>	

Ending inventory consists of the remaining units assumed not to be sold. In this case, the 4,500 units in ending inventory consist of 1,500 of the 3,000 units purchased on March 22 and all of the 3,000 units purchased on October 15. Graphically, the flow is as follows:

Units Available	
Beg. inv.	4,000
Jan. 17	1,000
Mar. 22	1,500
6,500 units sold	
Mar. 22	1,500
Oct. 15	3,000
4,500 units in ending inventory	
Total	<u><u>11,000</u></u>

PERIODIC FIFO Recall that we determine physical quantities on hand in a periodic inventory system by taking a physical count. Costing the 4,500 units in ending inventory this way automatically gives us the cost of goods sold as well. Using the numbers from our illustration, we determine cost of goods sold to be \$38,500 by subtracting the \$33,000 ending inventory from \$71,500 cost of goods available for sale as shown in Illustration 8-7E.

Beginning inventory (4,000 units @ \$5.50)	\$22,000
Plus: Purchases (7,000 units @ various prices)	49,500
Cost of goods available for sale (11,000 units)	<u>71,500</u>
Less: Ending inventory* (determined below)	<u>(33,000)</u>
Cost of goods sold (6,500 units)	<u><u>\$38,500</u></u>

***Cost of Ending Inventory:**

Date of Purchase	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Mar. 22	1,500	\$7.00	\$ 10,500
Oct. 15	3,000	7.50	<u>22,500</u>
Total	<u>4,500</u>		<u><u>\$33,000</u></u>

Illustration 8-7E

FIFO—Periodic Inventory System

Of course, the 6,500 units sold could be costed directly as follows:

Date of Purchase	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Jan. 1 (Beginning inventory)	4,000	\$5.50	\$22,000
Jan. 17	1,000	6.00	6,000
Mar. 22	1,500	7.00	10,500
Total	<u>6,500</u>		<u>\$38,500</u>

Perpetual FIFO results in cost of goods sold and ending inventory amounts that are the same as those obtained using periodic FIFO.

PERPETUAL FIFO The ending inventory and cost of goods sold will have the same amounts in a perpetual inventory system as in a periodic inventory system when FIFO is used. This is because the same units and costs are first in and first out whether cost of goods sold is determined as each sale is made or at the end of the period as a residual amount. The application of FIFO in a perpetual system is shown in Illustration 8–7F.

Illustration 8–7F

FIFO—Perpetual Inventory System

Date	Purchased	Sold	Balance
Beginning inventory	4,000 @ \$5.50 = \$22,000		4,000 @ \$5.50 = \$22,000
Jan. 10		2,000 @ \$5.50 = \$ 11,000	2,000 @ \$5.50 = \$11,000
Jan. 17	1,000 @ \$6.00 = \$ 6,000		2,000 @ \$5.50 } 1,000 @ \$6.00 } \$17,000
Mar. 22	3,000 @ \$7.00 = \$21,000		2,000 @ \$5.50 } 1,000 @ \$6.00 } \$38,000 3,000 @ \$7.00 }
Apr. 15		1,500 @ \$5.50 = \$ 8,250	500 @ \$5.50 } 1,000 @ \$6.00 } \$29,750 3,000 @ \$7.00 }
Oct. 15	3,000 @ \$7.50 = \$22,500		500 @ \$5.50 } 1,000 @ \$6.00 } \$52,250 3,000 @ \$7.00 } 3,000 @ \$7.50 }
Nov. 20		500 @ \$5.50 + 1,000 @ \$6.00 + 1,500 @ \$7.00 = \$ 19,250	1,500 @ \$7.00 } 3,000 @ \$7.50 } <u>\$33,000</u>
Total cost of goods sold			= <u>\$38,500</u>

Last-In, First-Out (LIFO)

The last-in, first-out (LIFO) method assumes that items sold are those that were most recently acquired.

Ending inventory applying LIFO consists of the items acquired first.

The **last-in, first-out (LIFO) method** assumes that the units sold are the most recent units purchased. In our illustration, the 6,500 units assumed sold would be the 6,500 units acquired most recently: the 3,000 units acquired on October 15, the 3,000 units acquired on March 22, and 500 of the 1,000 units purchased on January 17. Ending inventory, then, consists of the remaining units assumed not sold; in this case, 500 of the 1,000 units purchased on January 17 and all of the 4,000 units from beginning inventory. Graphically, the flow is as follows:

Units Available		
Beg. inv.	4,000	} 4,500 units in ending inventory
Jan. 17	500	
Jan. 17	500	} 6,500 units sold
Mar. 22	3,000	
Oct. 15	<u>3,000</u>	
Total	<u>11,000</u>	

PERIODIC LIFO The cost of ending inventory determined to be \$25,000 (calculated below) by the LIFO assumption and using a periodic system is subtracted from cost of goods available for sale to arrive at the cost of goods sold of \$46,500 as shown in Illustration 8–7G.

Beginning inventory (4,000 units @ \$5.50)	\$ 22,000
Plus: Purchases (7,000 units @ various prices)	49,500
Cost of goods available for sale (11,000 units)	71,500
Less: Ending inventory* (determined below)	(25,000)
Cost of goods sold (6,500 units)	<u>\$46,500</u>

***Cost of Ending Inventory:**

Date of Purchase	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Jan. 1 (Beginning inventory)	4,000	\$5.50	\$22,000
Jan. 17	500	6.00	3,000
Total	<u>4,500</u>		<u>\$25,000</u>

Illustration 8–7G

LIFO—Periodic Inventory System

The 6,500 sold could be costed directly as follows:

Date of Purchase	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Jan. 17	500	\$6.00	\$ 3,000
Mar. 22	3,000	7.00	21,000
Oct. 15	3,000	7.50	22,500
Total	<u>6,500</u>		<u>\$46,500</u>

PERPETUAL LIFO The application of LIFO in a perpetual system is shown in Illustration 8–7H. Each time inventory is purchased or sold, the LIFO layers are adjusted. For example, after the March 22 purchase, we have three layers of inventory at different unit costs listed in the chronological order of their purchase. When 1,500 units are sold on April 15, we assume they come from the most recent layer of 3,000 units purchased at \$7.00.

Notice that the total cost of goods available for sale is allocated **\$44,000** to cost of goods sold by perpetual LIFO and **\$27,500** to ending inventory (the balance after the last

Perpetual LIFO generally results in cost of goods sold and inventory amounts that are different from those obtained by applying periodic LIFO.

Date	Purchased	Sold	Balance
Beginning inventory	4,000 @ \$5.50 = \$22,000		4,000 @ \$5.50 = \$ 22,000
Jan. 10		2,000 @ \$5.50 = \$ 11,000	2,000 @ \$5.50 = \$ 11,000
Jan. 17	1,000 @ \$6.00 = \$6,000		2,000 @ \$5.50 } 1,000 @ \$6.00 } \$ 17,000
Mar. 22	3,000 @ \$7.00 = \$21,000		2,000 @ \$5.50 } 1,000 @ \$6.00 } 3,000 @ \$7.00 } \$ 38,000
Apr. 15		1,500 @ \$7.00 = \$ 10,500	2,000 @ \$5.50 } 1,000 @ \$6.00 } 1,500 @ \$7.00 } \$ 27,500
Oct. 15	3,000 @ \$7.50 = \$22,500		2,000 @ \$5.50 } 1,000 @ \$6.00 } 1,500 @ \$7.00 } 3,000 @ \$7.50 } \$ 50,000
Nov. 20		3,000 @ \$7.50 = \$ 22,500	2,000 @ \$5.50 } 1,000 @ \$6.00 } 1,500 @ \$7.00 } <u>\$27,500</u>
Total cost of goods sold		= <u>\$44,000</u>	

Illustration 8–7H

LIFO—Perpetual Inventory System

transaction), which is different from the periodic LIFO result of **\$46,500** and **\$25,000**. Unlike FIFO, applying LIFO in a perpetual inventory system will generally result in an ending inventory and cost of goods sold different from the allocation arrived at when applying LIFO in a periodic system. Periodic LIFO applies the last-in, first-out concept to total sales and total purchases only at the conclusion of the reporting period. Perpetual LIFO applies the same concept, but several times during the period—every time a sale is made.

For example, when 2,000 units are sold on January 10, perpetual LIFO costs those units at \$5.50, the beginning inventory unit cost, because those were the last units acquired *before the sale*. Periodic LIFO, by contrast, would be applied at year-end. By the end of the year, enough purchases have been made that the beginning inventory would be assumed to remain intact, and the January 10 units sold would be costed at a price from the most recent acquisition *before the end of the year*.

Comparison of cost flow methods

Comparison of Cost Flow Methods

The three cost flow methods are compared below assuming a periodic inventory system.

	Average	FIFO	LIFO
Cost of goods sold	\$42,250	\$38,500	\$46,500
Ending inventory	29,250	33,000	25,000
Total	<u>\$71,500</u>	<u>\$71,500</u>	<u>\$71,500</u>

Notice that the average cost method in this example produces amounts that fall in between the FIFO and LIFO amounts for both cost of goods sold and ending inventory. This will usually be the case. Whether it will be FIFO or LIFO that produces the highest or lowest value of cost of goods sold depends on the pattern of the actual unit cost changes during the period.

During periods of rising costs, as in our example, FIFO results in a lower cost of goods sold than LIFO because the lower costs of the earliest purchases are assumed sold. LIFO cost of goods sold will include the more recent higher cost purchases. On the other hand, FIFO ending inventory includes the most recent higher cost purchases which results in a higher ending inventory than LIFO. LIFO ending inventory includes the lower costs of the earliest purchases. Conversely, if costs are declining, then FIFO will result in a higher cost of goods sold and lower ending inventory than LIFO.⁷

Each of the three methods is permissible according to generally accepted accounting principles and frequently is used. Also, a company need not use the same method for its entire inventory. For example, **International Paper Company** uses LIFO for its raw materials and finished pulp and paper products, and both the FIFO and average cost methods for other inventories. Because of the importance of inventories and the possible differential effects of different methods on the financial statements, a company must identify in a disclosure note the method(s) it uses. The chapter's opening case included an example of this disclosure for **Kroger**, and you will encounter additional examples later in the chapter.

Illustration 8–8 shows the results of a recent survey of inventory methods used by 500 large public companies.⁸ FIFO is the most popular method, but both LIFO and average cost are used

If unit costs are increasing, LIFO will result in a higher cost of goods sold and lower ending inventory than FIFO.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 415

A company must disclose the inventory method(s) it uses.

Illustration 8–8

Inventory Cost Flow Methods Used in Practice

Real World Financials

	# of Companies	% of Companies
FIFO	312	47%
LIFO	163	24
Average	133	20
Other* and not disclosed	61	9
Total	<u>669</u>	<u>100%</u>

*"Other" includes the specific identification method and miscellaneous less popular methods.

⁷The differences between the various methods also hold when a perpetual inventory system is used.

⁸U.S. GAAP Financial Statements-Best Practices in Presentation and Disclosure-2013 (New York, New York: AICPA, 2013).

by many companies. Notice that the column total for the number of companies is greater than 500, indicating that many companies included in this sample do use multiple methods.

International Financial Reporting Standards

Inventory Cost Flow Assumptions. IAS No. 2 does not permit the use of LIFO.⁹ Because of this restriction, many U.S. multinational companies use LIFO only for their domestic inventories and FIFO or average cost for their foreign subsidiaries. A disclosure note included in a recent annual report of **General Mills** provides an example:

Inventories (in part)

All inventories in the United States other than grain are valued at the lower of cost, using the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method, or market. Inventories outside of the United States generally are valued at the lower of cost, using the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method, or market.

This difference could prove to be a significant impediment to U.S. convergence to international standards. Unless the U.S. Congress repeals the LIFO conformity rule, convergence would cause many corporations to lose a valuable tax shelter, the use of LIFO for tax purposes. If these companies were immediately taxed on the difference between LIFO inventories and inventories valued using another method, it would cost companies billions of dollars. Some industries would be particularly hard hit. Most oil companies and auto manufacturers, for instance, use LIFO. The government estimates that the repeal of the LIFO method would increase federal tax revenues by \$76 billion over a ten-year period.¹⁰ The companies affected most certainly will lobby heavily to retain the use of LIFO for tax purposes.



● LO8–9

Real World Financials

Decision Makers' Perspective—Factors Influencing Method Choice

What factors motivate companies to choose one method over another? What factors have caused the increased popularity of LIFO? Choosing among alternative accounting methods is a complex issue. Often such choices are not made in isolation but in such a way that the combination of inventory cost flow assumptions, depreciation methods, pension assumptions, and other choices meet a particular objective. Also, many believe managers sometimes make these choices to maximize their own personal benefits rather than those of the company or its external constituents. But regardless of the motive, the impact on reported numbers is an important consideration in each choice of method. The inventory choice determines (a) how closely reported costs reflect the actual physical flow of inventory, (b) the timing of reported income and income tax expense, and (c) how well costs are matched with associated revenues.

● LO8–5

PHYSICAL FLOW. If a company wanted to choose a method that most closely approximates specific identification, then the actual physical flow of inventory in and out of the company would motivate the choice of method.

For example, companies often attempt to sell the oldest goods in inventory first for some of their products. This certainly is the case with perishable goods such as many grocery items. The FIFO method best mirrors the physical flow in these situations. The average cost method might be used for liquids such as chemicals where items sold are taken from a mixture of inventory acquired at different times and different prices. There are very few inventories that actually flow in a LIFO manner. It is important for you to understand that there is no requirement that companies choose an inventory method that approximates actual

A company is not required to choose an inventory method that approximates actual physical flow.

⁹"Inventories," *International Accounting Standard No. 2* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

¹⁰Andrew Lundeen, "Proposed Tax Changes in President Obama's Fiscal Year 2016 Budget," (taxfoundation.org).

physical flow and few companies make the choice on this basis. In fact, as we discuss next, the effect of inventory method on income and income taxes is the primary motivation that influences method choice.

INCOME TAXES AND NET INCOME. If the unit cost of inventory changes during a period, the inventory method chosen can have a significant effect on the amount of income reported by the company to external parties and also on the amount of income taxes paid to the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) and state and local taxing authorities. Over the entire life of a company, cost of goods sold for all years will equal actual costs of items sold regardless of the inventory method used. However, as we have discussed, different inventory methods can produce significantly different results in each particular year.

Many companies choose LIFO in order to reduce income taxes in periods when prices are rising.

When prices rise and inventory quantities are not decreasing, LIFO produces a higher cost of goods sold and therefore lower net income than the other methods. The company's income tax returns will report a lower taxable income using LIFO and lower taxes will be paid currently. Taxes are not reduced permanently, only deferred. The reduced amount will be paid to the taxing authorities when either the unit cost of inventory or the quantity of inventory subsequently declines. However, we know from our discussion of the time value of money that it is advantageous to save a dollar today even if it must be paid back in the future. In the past, high inflation (increasing prices) periods motivated many companies to switch to LIFO in order to gain this tax benefit.

If a company uses LIFO to measure its taxable income, IRS regulations require that LIFO also be used to measure income reported to investors and creditors (the LIFO conformity rule).

A corporation's taxable income comprises revenues, expenses (including cost of goods sold), gains, and losses measured according to the regulations of the appropriate taxing authority. Income before tax as reported in the income statement does not always equal taxable income. In some cases, differences are caused by the use of different measurement methods.¹¹ However, IRS regulations, which determine federal taxable income, require that if a company uses LIFO to measure taxable income, the company also must use LIFO for external financial reporting. This is known as the **LIFO conformity rule** with respect to inventory methods.

Because of the LIFO conformity rule, to obtain the tax advantages of using LIFO in periods of rising prices, lower net income is reported to shareholders, creditors, and other external parties. The income tax motivation for using LIFO may be offset by a desire to report higher net income. Reported net income could have an effect on a corporation's share price,¹² on bonuses paid to management, or on debt agreements with lenders. For example, research has indicated that the managers of companies with bonus plans tied to income measures are more likely to choose accounting methods that maximize their bonuses (often those that increase net income).¹³

The LIFO conformity rule permits LIFO users to report non-LIFO inventory valuations in a disclosure note, but not on the face of the income statement. For example, Illustration 8–9 shows the notes provided in a recent annual report of **Dollar General Corporation**, a large variety store chain, disclosing its use of LIFO to value its inventories.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 415

LO8–6

LIFO RESERVES. Many companies use LIFO for external reporting and income tax purposes but maintain their internal records using FIFO or average cost. There is a variety of reasons, including: (1) the high recordkeeping costs for LIFO, (2) contractual agreements such as bonus or profit sharing plans that calculate net income with a method other than LIFO, and (3) using FIFO or average cost information for pricing decisions.

¹¹For example, a corporation can take advantage of incentives offered by Congress by deducting more depreciation in the early years of an asset's life in its federal income tax return than it reports in its income statement.

¹²The concept of capital market efficiency has been debated for many years. In an efficient capital market, the market is not fooled by differences in accounting method choice that do not translate into real cash flow differences. The only apparent cash flow difference caused by different inventory methods is the amount of income taxes paid currently. In an efficient market, we would expect the share price of a company that switched its method to LIFO and saved tax dollars to increase even though it reported lower net income than if LIFO had not been adopted. Research on this issue is mixed. For example, see William E. Ricks, "Market's Response to the 1974 LIFO Adoptions," *Journal of Accounting Research* (Autumn 1982); and Robert Moren Brown, "Short-Range Market Reaction to Changes to LIFO Using Preliminary Earnings Announcement Dates," *Journal of Accounting Research* (Spring 1980).

¹³For example, see P. M. Healy, "The Effect of Bonus Schemes on Accounting Decisions," *Journal of Accounting and Economics* (April 1985); and D. Dhaliwal, G. Salamon, and E. Smith, "The Effect of Owner Versus Management Control on the Choice of Accounting Methods," *Journal of Accounting and Economics* (July 1982).

Inventories

Inventories are stated at the lower of cost or market with cost determined using the retail last-in, first-out (LIFO) method as this method results in a better matching of costs and revenues.

The excess of current cost over LIFO cost was approximately \$92.9 million and \$95.1 million at January 29, 2016 and January 30, 2015, respectively. Current cost is determined using the retail inventory method on a first-in, first-out basis.

Illustration 8–9

Inventories Disclosures—
Dollar General Corporation

Real World Financials

Generally, the conversion to LIFO from the internal records occurs at the end of the reporting period without actually entering the adjustment into the company's records. Some companies, though, enter the conversion adjustment—the difference between the internal method and LIFO—directly into the records as a “contra account” to inventory. This contra account is called the **LIFO reserve** or the *LIFO allowance*.

For illustration, let's say that the Doubletree Corporation began 2018 with a balance of \$475,000 in its LIFO reserve account. This balance means that at the beginning of the year, the inventory balance under LIFO is \$475,000 lower than it would be under FIFO. By the end of 2018, assume the difference between LIFO and FIFO inventory balances is then \$535,000. The LIFO reserve needs to be adjusted to reflect the increase in the reserve during the year. The LIFO reserve has a normal credit balance, so the entry to increase its balance is recorded as:

Cost of goods sold (\$535,000 – 475,000).....	60,000	
LIFO reserve		60,000

The entry to increase the LIFO reserve also involves an increase to cost of goods sold. The debit to cost of goods sold increases total expenses and therefore lowers reported profitability.

If the difference between inventory valued internally using FIFO and inventory valued using LIFO had *decreased* over the year, the LIFO reserve would need to be decreased with a debit. The corresponding credit would be to cost of goods sold. In this situation, when cost of goods sold is decreased, profits will increase. This situation demonstrates that even though reported inventory is lower under LIFO than FIFO, LIFO profits might be larger than FIFO profits when the LIFO reserve decreases during the year.

As an example of the disclosure of the LIFO reserve, Illustration 8–10 provides a disclosure note of **Books-A-Million, Inc.**, a leading book retailer primarily located in the eastern United States that operates both superstores and traditional bookstores. The note shows the company's inventories valued at FIFO (the internal method), less the LIFO reserve, to arrive at the LIFO amount reported in the company's balance sheet.

An increase in the LIFO reserve reduces reported profits.

A decrease in the LIFO reserve increases reported profits.

Inventories (in part)

(\$ in thousands)

	2015	2014
Inventories (at FIFO)	\$192,605	\$204,220
Less: LIFO reserve	(4,645)	(4,636)
Net inventories (at LIFO)	<u>\$187,960</u>	<u>\$199,584</u>

Illustration 8–10

Inventories Disclosure—
Books-A-Million

Real World Financials

Under LIFO, inventory is reported in the 2015 balance sheet at a lower amount, which indicates the need for a LIFO reserve of \$4,645. The LIFO reserve at the beginning of 2015 was already \$4,636, so its balance needs to be increased by only \$9 thousand (\$4,645 – \$4,636). The increase is recorded with a credit to the LIFO reserve. At the same time, we increase (or debit) cost of goods sold, thereby reducing reported profit.

LIFO LIQUIDATIONS Earlier in the text, we demonstrated the importance of matching revenues and expenses in creating an income statement that is useful in predicting future

Proponents of LIFO argue that it results in a better match of revenues and expenses.

cash flows. Under LIFO, sales reflect the most recent selling prices, and cost of goods sold includes the costs of the most recent purchases.

For the same reason, though, inventory costs in the balance sheet with LIFO generally are out of date because they reflect old purchase transactions. It is not uncommon for a company's LIFO inventory balance to be based on unit costs actually incurred several years earlier.

This distortion sometimes carries over to the income statement as well. When inventory quantities decline during a period, then these out-of-date inventory layers are liquidated and cost of goods sold will partially match noncurrent costs with current selling prices. If costs have been increasing (decreasing), LIFO liquidations produce higher (lower) net income than would have resulted if the liquidated inventory were included in cost of goods sold at current costs. The paper profits (losses) caused by including out-of-date, low (high) costs in cost of goods sold is referred to as the effect on income of liquidations of LIFO inventory.

To illustrate this problem, consider the example in Illustration 8–11.

Illustration 8–11

LIFO Liquidation

National Distributors, Inc., uses the LIFO inventory method. The company began 2018 with inventory of 10,000 units that cost \$20 per unit. During 2018, 30,000 units were purchased for \$25 each and 35,000 units were sold.

National's LIFO cost of goods sold for 2018 consists of:

30,000 units @ \$25 per unit =	\$750,000
5,000 units @ \$20 per unit =	100,000
<u>35,000</u>	<u>\$850,000</u>

Included in cost of goods sold are 5,000 units from beginning inventory that now have been liquidated. If the company had purchased at least 35,000 units, no liquidation would have occurred. Then cost of goods sold would have been \$875,000 (35,000 units × \$25 per unit) instead of \$850,000. The difference between these two cost of goods sold figures is \$25,000 (\$875,000 – 850,000). This is the before-tax income effect of the LIFO liquidation.

We also can determine the \$25,000 before-tax LIFO liquidation profit by multiplying the 5,000 units liquidated by the difference between the \$25 *current cost* per unit and the \$20 *acquisition cost* per unit we included in cost of goods sold (5,000 units × [\$25 – 20] = \$25,000). Assuming a 40% income tax rate, the net effect of the liquidation is to increase net income by \$15,000 [\$25,000 × (1 – 0.40)]. The lower the costs of the units liquidated, the more severe the effect on income.

A company must disclose in a note any material effect of **LIFO liquidation** on net income. For example, Illustration 8–12 shows the disclosure note included with recent financial statements of **Genuine Parts Company**, a distributor of automotive replacement parts, industrial replacement parts, office products, and electrical parts.

Illustration 8–12

LIFO Liquidation Disclosure—Genuine Parts Company

Real World Financials

Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (in part)

Merchandise Inventories

During 2014 and 2013, reductions in inventory levels in automotive parts inventories (2013) and industrial parts inventories (2014 and 2013) resulted in liquidations of LIFO inventory layers. The effect of the LIFO liquidations in 2014 and 2013 was to reduce cost of goods sold by approximately \$8,000,000 and \$5,000,000, respectively.

In Illustration 8–11, National Distributors would disclose that LIFO liquidations increased income by \$15,000 in 2018, assuming that this effect on income is considered material.

We've discussed several factors that influence companies in their choice of inventory method. A company could be influenced by the actual physical flow of its inventory, by the effect of inventory method on reported net income and the amount of income taxes payable currently, or by a desire to provide a better match of expenses with revenues. You've seen

that the direction of the change in unit costs determines the effect of using different methods on net income and income taxes. While the United States has experienced persistent inflation for many years (increases in the general price-level), the prices of many goods and services have experienced periods of declining prices (for example, personal computers). ●

Concept Review Exercise

The Rogers Company had beginning inventory in 2018 of 10 million units at a cost of \$5 each.

INVENTORY COST FLOW METHODS

The following inventory transactions occurred during the first six months of 2018.

Date	Transaction
Feb. 15	Purchased, on account, 5 million units at a cost of \$6.50 each.
Mar. 20	Sold, on account, 8 million units at a selling price of \$12 each.
Apr. 30	Purchased, on account, 5 million units at a cost of \$7 each.

On June 30, 2018, 12 million units were on hand.

Required:

- Prepare journal entries to record the above transactions. The company uses a periodic inventory system.
- Prepare the required adjusting entry on June 30, 2018, applying each of the following inventory methods:
 - Average
 - FIFO
 - LIFO
- Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the company uses a perpetual inventory system.

Solution:

- Prepare journal entries to record the above transactions. The company uses a periodic inventory system.

February 15		(\$ in millions)
Purchases (5 million × \$6.50).....	32.5	
Accounts payable		32.5
<i>To record the purchase of inventory.</i>		
March 20		
Accounts receivable (8 million × \$12).....	96	
Sales revenue		96
<i>To record sales on account.</i>		
No entry is recorded for the cost of inventory sold.		
April 30		
Purchases (5 million × \$7)	35	
Accounts payable		35
<i>To record the purchase of inventory.</i>		

- Prepare the required adjusting entry on June 30, 2018, applying each method.

Date	Journal entry	(\$ in millions)		
		Average	FIFO	LIFO
June 30	Cost of goods sold (determined below)	47.0	40.0	54.5
	Inventory (ending—determined below)	70.5	77.5	63.0
	Inventory [beginning—(10 million @ \$5)]	50.0	50.0	50.0
	Purchases (\$32.5 million + 35 million)	67.5	67.5	67.5

Calculation of ending inventory and cost of goods sold:

a. Average:

	(\$ in millions)
Beginning inventory (10 million units @ \$5.00)	\$50.0
Plus: Purchases (10 million units @ various prices)	67.5
Cost of goods available for sale (20 million units)	117.5
Less: Ending inventory* (determined below)	(70.5)
Cost of goods sold	<u>\$47.0</u>

*Cost of ending inventory:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Weighted-average unit cost} &= \frac{\$117.5}{20 \text{ million units}} = \$5.875 \\ 12 \text{ million units} \times \$5.875 &= \$70.5 \text{ million}\end{aligned}$$

b. FIFO:

Cost of goods available for sale (20 million units)	\$117.5
Less: Ending inventory* (determined below)	(77.5)
Cost of goods sold	<u>\$ 40.0</u>

*Cost of ending inventory:

Date of Purchase	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Beg. inv.	2 million	\$5.00	\$10.0
Feb. 15	5 million	6.50	32.5
April 30	5 million	7.00	35.0
Total	12 million		<u>\$77.5</u>

c. LIFO:

Cost of goods available for sale (20 million units)	\$117.5
Less: Ending inventory* (determined below)	(63.0)
Cost of goods sold	<u>\$ 54.5</u>

*Cost of ending inventory:

Date of Purchase	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Beg. inv.	10 million	\$5.00	\$50.0
Feb. 15	2 million	6.50	13.0
Total	12 million		<u>\$63.0</u>

3. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the company uses a perpetual inventory system.

	(\$ in millions)
February 15	
Inventory (5 million × \$6.50).....	32.5
Accounts payable	32.5
<i>To record the purchase of inventory.</i>	
April 30	
Inventory (5 million × \$7.00)	35.0
Accounts payable	35.0
<i>To record the purchase of inventory.</i>	

		(\$ in millions)		
Journal Entries—March 20		Average	FIFO	LIFO
Accounts receivable (8 million × \$12)		96.0	96.0	96.0
Sales revenue		96.0	96.0	96.0
<i>To record sales on account.</i>				
Cost of goods sold (determined below)		44.0	40.0	47.5
Inventory		44.0	40.0	47.5
<i>To record cost of goods sold.</i>				

Calculation of cost of goods sold:

a. Average:

Cost of goods sold:

		(\$ in millions, except unit costs)	
Date	Purchased	Sold	Balance
Beg. inv.	10 million @ \$5.00 = \$50.0		10 million @ \$5.00 = \$50.0
Feb. 15	5 million @ \$6.50 = \$32.5		\$50.0 + \$32.5 = \$82.5
	<u>\$82.5</u>		
	15 million units	= \$5.50/unit	
Mar. 20		8 million @ \$5.50 = \$44.0	

b. FIFO:

Cost of goods sold:

Units Sold	Cost of Units Sold	Total Cost
8 million (from Beg. inv.)	\$5.00	\$40.0

c. LIFO:

Cost of goods sold:

Units Sold	Cost of Units Sold	Total Cost
5 million (from Feb. 15 purchase)	\$6.50	\$32.5
3 million (from Beg. inv.)	5.00	15.0
<u>8 million</u>		<u>\$47.5</u>

Decision Makers' Perspective—Inventory Management

Managers closely monitor inventory levels to (1) ensure that the inventories needed to sustain operations are available, and (2) hold the cost of ordering and carrying inventories to the lowest possible level.¹⁴ Unfortunately, these objectives often conflict with one another. Companies must maintain sufficient quantities of inventory to meet customer demand. However, maintaining inventory is costly. Fortunately, a variety of tools are available, including computerized inventory control systems and the outsourcing of inventory component production, to help balance these conflicting objectives.¹⁵

A **just-in-time (JIT) system** is another valuable technique that many companies have adopted to assist them with inventory management. JIT is a system used by a manufacturer to coordinate production with suppliers so that raw materials or components arrive just as they are needed in the production process. **Harley Davidson** is a company known for its custom-ordered motorcycles, and the company's JIT inventory system is an important part of the

Real World Financials

A company should maintain sufficient inventory quantities to meet customer demand while at the same time minimizing inventory ordering and carrying costs.

¹⁴The cost of carrying inventory includes the possible loss from the write-down of obsolete inventory. We discuss inventory write-downs in Chapter 9. There are analytical models available to determine the appropriate amount of inventory a company should maintain. A discussion of these models is beyond the scope of this text.

¹⁵Eugene Brigham and Joel Houston, *Fundamentals of Financial Management*, 12th ed. (Florence, Kentucky: South-Western, 2010).

company's success. This system enables Harley Davidson to maintain relatively low inventory balances. At the same time, the company's efficient production techniques, along with its excellent relationships with suppliers ensuring prompt delivery of components, enables it to quickly meet customer demand. For the year ended December 31, 2015, Harley Davidson reported motorcycle sales of \$5,308.7 million on cost of goods sold of only \$3,356.3 million. That's a gross profit of \$1,952.4 (or 36.8% of sales), far outpacing the industry average.

As we discussed in Chapter 4, one factor financial analysts use to evaluate management's success is how well the company utilizes its assets. This evaluation, which often is based on the calculation of certain ratios, is influenced by the company's inventory method choice. The different inventory methods affect reported amounts, requiring analysts must make adjustments when comparing companies that use different methods. For companies that use LIFO, supplemental disclosures help to convert inventory amounts to those that would have been reported using FIFO, allowing a better comparison to a company that reports using FIFO.

For example, **Harley Davidson** uses the LIFO method. Additional inventory information from the company's recent financial statements is provided below.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 415

Real World Financials

(\$ in millions)	For the Year Ended	
	December 31, 2015	December 31, 2014
Balance sheets:		
Inventories	\$ 585.9	\$ 448.9
Income statements:		
Net sales	\$5,308.7	\$5,567.7
Cost of goods sold	3,356.3	3,542.6

Supplemental LIFO disclosures can be used to convert LIFO inventories and cost of goods sold amounts.

Suppose an analyst wanted to compare Harley Davidson with a competitor that used all FIFO, or that used both LIFO and FIFO but with different percentages of LIFO and FIFO. To compare apples with apples, we can convert Harley Davidson's inventories and cost of goods sold (and the competitor's if necessary) to a 100% FIFO basis before comparing the two companies. The information necessary for this conversion is provided as a supplemental disclosure by Harley Davidson:

	2015	2014
Inventories (LIFO)	\$585.9	\$448.9
Add: conversion to FIFO	49.3	49.9
Inventories (100% FIFO)	\$635.2	\$498.8

If Harley Davidson had used FIFO instead of LIFO, ending inventory in 2015 would have been \$49.3 million higher. The large difference in reported inventory can have a material effect on financial ratios (as demonstrated below).

The use of FIFO versus LIFO has less of an effect on cost of goods sold. For Harley Davidson, the *difference* between FIFO and LIFO inventory decreased by \$0.6 million during 2015 (from \$49.9 to \$49.3 million). This means the company would have recorded a decrease of \$0.6 million in the LIFO reserve in 2015, along with a decrease in cost of goods sold (see earlier discussion of the LIFO reserve adjustment). The decrease in cost of goods sold indicates that reported profits under LIFO were slightly higher than if FIFO had been used. If the LIFO reserve had increased during the year, profits would have been lower under LIFO than FIFO.

LO8-7

One useful profitability indicator that involves cost of goods sold is **gross profit**. The **gross profit ratio** is computed as follows:

$$\text{Gross profit ratio} = \frac{\text{Gross profit}}{\text{Net sales}}$$

The higher the ratio, the higher the markup a company is able to achieve on its products. For example, a product that costs \$100 and sells for \$150 provides a gross profit of \$50 (\$150 - \$100) and the gross profit ratio is 33% (\$50 ÷ \$150). If that same product can be sold for \$200, the gross profit increases to \$100 and the gross profit ratio increases to 50% (\$100 ÷ \$200), so more dollars are available to cover expenses other than cost of goods sold.

The **gross profit ratio** indicates the percentage of each sales dollar available to cover expenses other than cost of goods sold and to provide a profit.

As we discussed previously, the 2015 gross profit for Harley Davidson's motorcycle sales is \$1,952.4 million (equal to sales of \$5,308.7 million minus cost of goods sold of \$3,356.3 million). That's a gross profit ratio of 36.8%. The industry average is 20.5%. Harley Davidson is able to sell its products at significantly higher markups. Even if we adjust cost of goods sold slightly upward (by \$0.6 million) to its FIFO amount, Harley Davidson remains relatively profitable.

Monitoring this ratio over time can provide valuable insights. For example, a declining ratio might indicate that the company is unable to offset rising costs with corresponding increases in selling price, or perhaps that sales prices are declining without a commensurate reduction in costs. In either case, the decline in the ratio has important implications for future profitability.

In Chapter 4 we were introduced to an important ratio, the **inventory turnover ratio**, which is designed to evaluate a company's effectiveness in managing its investment in inventory. The ratio shows the number of times the average inventory balance is sold during a reporting period. The more frequently a business is able to sell or turn over its inventory, the lower its investment in inventory must be for a given level of sales. Monitoring the inventory turnover ratio over time can highlight potential problems. A declining ratio generally is unfavorable and could be caused by the presence of obsolete or slow-moving products, or poor marketing and sales efforts.

Recall that the ratio is computed as follows:

$$\text{Inventory turnover ratio} = \frac{\text{Cost of goods sold}}{\text{Average inventory}}$$

If the analysis is prepared for the fiscal year reporting period, we can divide the inventory turnover ratio into 365 days to calculate the **average days in inventory**, which indicates the average number of days it normally takes the company to sell its inventory. In 2015, Harley Davidson's inventory turnover ratio using reported LIFO amounts is 6.49 $\{ \$3,356.3 \div [(\$585.9 + 448.9) \div 2] \}$ and the average days in inventory is 56.2 days $(365 \div 6.49)$.

Alternatively, if we convert amounts to those under FIFO, we see that Harley Davidson's inventory turnover ratio would have been only 5.92 $\{ \$3,356.9 \div [(\$635.2 + 498.8) \div 2] \}$ and the average days in inventory would have been 61.7 days $(365 \div 5.92)$. The difference in inventory turnover ratios between LIFO and FIFO is caused primarily by lower average inventory under LIFO and demonstrates the noticeable effect that the choice of inventory method can have on financial ratios.

EARNINGS QUALITY. Changes in the ratios we discussed above often provide information about the quality of a company's current period earnings. For example, a slowing turnover ratio combined with higher than normal inventory levels may indicate the potential for decreased production, obsolete inventory, or a need to decrease prices to sell inventory (which will then decrease gross profit ratios and net income). This proposition was tested in an important academic research study. Professors Lev and Thiagarajan empirically demonstrated the importance of a set of 12 fundamental variables in valuing companies' common stock. The set of variables included inventory (change in inventory minus change in sales). The inventory variable was found to be a significant indicator of returns on investments in common stock, particularly during high and medium inflation years.¹⁶

The choice of which inventory method to use also affects earnings quality, particularly in times of rapidly changing prices. Earlier in this chapter we discussed the effect of a LIFO liquidation on company profits. A LIFO liquidation profit (or loss) reduces the quality of current period earnings. Fortunately for analysts, companies must disclose these profits or losses, if material. In addition, LIFO cost of goods sold determined using a periodic inventory system is more susceptible to manipulation than is FIFO. Year-end purchases can have a dramatic effect on LIFO cost of goods sold in rapid cost-change environments. Recall again our discussion in Chapter 4 concerning earnings quality. Many believe that manipulating income reduces earnings quality because it can mask permanent earnings. Inventory write-downs and changes in inventory method are two additional inventory-related techniques a company could use to manipulate earnings. We discuss these issues in the next chapter. ●

¹⁶B. Lev and S. R. Thiagarajan, "Fundamental Information Analysis," *Journal of Accounting Research* (Autumn 1993). The main conclusion of the study was that fundamental variables, not just earnings, are useful in firm valuation, particularly when examined in the context of macroeconomic conditions such as inflation.

PART B

The recordkeeping costs of unit LIFO can be significant.

Another disadvantage of unit LIFO is the possibility of LIFO liquidation.

A pool consists of inventory units grouped according to natural physical similarities.

The average cost for all of the pool purchases during the period is applied to the current year's LIFO layer.

Methods of Simplifying LIFO

The LIFO method described and illustrated to this point is called *unit LIFO*¹⁷ because the last-in, first-out concept is applied to individual units of inventory. One problem with unit LIFO is that it can be very costly to implement. It requires records of each unit of inventory. The costs of maintaining these records can be significant, particularly when a company has numerous individual units of inventory and when unit costs change often during a period.

In the previous section, a second disadvantage of unit LIFO was identified—the possibility that LIFO layers will be liquidated if the quantity of a particular inventory unit declines below its beginning balance. Even if a company's total inventory quantity is stable or increasing, if the quantity of any particular inventory unit declines, unit LIFO will liquidate all or a portion of a LIFO layer of inventory. When inventory quantity declines in a period of rising costs, noncurrent lower costs will be included in cost of goods sold and matched with current selling prices, resulting in LIFO liquidation profit.

This part of the chapter discusses techniques that can be used to significantly reduce the recordkeeping costs of LIFO and to minimize the probability of LIFO inventory layers being liquidated. Specifically, we discuss the use of inventory pools and the dollar-value LIFO method.

LIFO Inventory Pools

The objectives of using **LIFO inventory pools** are to simplify recordkeeping by grouping inventory units into pools based on physical similarities of the individual units and to reduce the risk of LIFO layer liquidation. For example, a glass company might group its various grades of window glass into a single window pool. Other pools might be auto glass and sliding-door glass. A lumber company might pool its inventory into hardwood, framing lumber, paneling, and so on.

This allows a company to account for a few inventory pools rather than every specific type of inventory separately. Within pools, all purchases during a period are considered to have been made at the same time and at the same cost. Individual unit costs are converted to an average cost for the pool. If the quantity of ending inventory for the pool increases, then ending inventory will consist of the beginning inventory plus a single layer added during the period at the average acquisition cost for that pool.

Here's an example. Let's say Diamond Lumber Company has a rough-cut lumber inventory pool that includes three types: pine, oak, and maple. The beginning inventory consisted of the following:

	Quantity (Board Feet)	Cost (Per Foot)	Total Cost
Pine	16,000	\$2.20	\$35,200
Oak	10,000	3.00	30,000
Maple	14,000	2.40	33,600
	<u>40,000</u>		<u>\$98,800</u>

The average cost for this pool is \$2.47 per board foot ($\$98,800 \div 40,000$ board feet). Now assume that during the next reporting period Diamond purchased 50,000 board feet of lumber as follows:

	Quantity (Board Feet)	Cost (Per Foot)	Total Cost
Pine	20,000	\$2.25	\$ 45,000
Oak	14,000	3.00	42,000
Maple	16,000	2.50	40,000
	<u>50,000</u>		<u>\$127,000</u>

¹⁷Unit LIFO sometimes is called *specific goods LIFO*.

The average cost for this pool is **\$2.54** per board foot ($\$127,000 \div 50,000$ board feet). Assuming that Diamond sold 46,000 board feet during this period, the quantity of inventory for the pool increased by **4,000** board feet (50,000 purchased less 46,000 sold). Ending inventory includes the beginning 40,000 feet of inventory and a new LIFO layer consisting of the **4,000** board feet purchased this period. We would add this LIFO layer at the average cost of purchases made during the period, **\$2.54**. The ending inventory of \$108,960 now consists of two layers:

	Quantity (Board Feet)	Cost (Per Foot)	Total Cost
Beginning inventory	40,000	\$2.47	\$ 98,800
LIFO layer added	4,000	2.54	10,160
Ending inventory	<u>44,000</u>		<u>\$108,960</u>

Despite the advantages of LIFO inventory pools, it's easy to imagine situations in which its benefits are not achieved. Suppose, for instance, that a company discontinues a certain product included in one of its pools. The old costs that existed in prior layers of inventory would be recognized as cost of goods sold and produce LIFO liquidation profit. Even if the product is replaced with another product, the replacement may not be similar enough to be included in the same inventory pool. In fact, the process itself of having to periodically re-define pools as changes in product mix occur can be expensive and time consuming. Next we discuss the dollar-value LIFO approach which helps overcome these problems.

Dollar-Value LIFO

Many companies that report inventory using LIFO actually use a method called **dollar-value LIFO (DVL)**. DVL extends the concept of inventory pools by allowing a company to combine a large variety of goods into one pool. Pools are not based on physical units. Instead, an inventory pool is viewed as comprising layers of dollar value from different periods. Specifically, a pool should consist of those goods that are likely to be subject to the same cost change pressures.

A DVL pool is made up of items that are likely to face the same cost change pressures.

● LO8-8

Cost Indexes

In either the unit LIFO approach or the pooled LIFO approach, we determine whether a new LIFO layer was added by comparing the ending quantity with the beginning quantity. The focus is on *units* of inventory. Under DVL, we determine whether a new LIFO layer was added by comparing the ending dollar amount with the beginning dollar amount. The focus is on inventory *value*, not units. However, if the price level has changed, we need a way to determine whether an observed increase is a real increase (an increase in the quantity of inventory) or one caused by an increase in prices. *So before we compare the beginning and ending inventory amounts, we need to deflate inventory dollar amounts by any increase in prices so that both the beginning and ending amounts are measured in terms of the same price level.* We accomplish this by using cost indexes. A cost index for a particular layer year is determined as follows:

$$\text{Cost index in layer year} = \frac{\text{Cost in layer year}}{\text{Cost in base year}}$$

The base year is the year in which the DVL method is adopted and the layer year is any subsequent year in which an inventory layer is created. The cost index for the base year is set at 1.00. Subsequent years' indexes reflect cost changes relative to the base year. For example, if a "basket" of inventory items cost \$120 at the end of the current year, and \$100 at the end of the base year, the cost index for the current year would be: $\$120 \div \$100 = 120\%$, or 1.20. This index simply tells us that costs in the layer year are 120% of what they were in the base year (i.e., costs increased by 20%).

The cost index for the base year (the year DVL is initially adopted) is set at 1.00.

There are several techniques that can be used to determine an index for a DVL pool. An external index like the Consumer Price Index (CPI) or the Producer Price Index (PPI) can be used. For example, assume that a company adopted the DVL method on January 1, 2018,

when the CPI was 200. This amount is set equivalent to 1.00, the base year index. Then, the index in the layer year, say the end of 2018, would be determined relative to 200. So, if the CPI is 210 at the end of 2018, the 2018 index for DVL purposes would be 1.05 ($210 \div 200$).

However, in most cases these indexes would not properly reflect cost changes for any individual DVL pool. Instead, most companies use an internally generated index. These indexes can be calculated using one of several techniques such as the *double-extension method* or the *link-chain method*. A discussion of these methods is beyond the scope of this text. In our examples and illustrations, we assume cost indexes are given.

The DVL Inventory Estimation Technique

To see the calculation of ending inventory using DVL, consider the following example. Assume that Hanes Company adopted DVL on January 1, 2018, when the inventory cost was \$400,000. On December 31, 2018, Hanes determines the year-end cost of inventory is \$462,000. This amount is obtained by taking the physical units of inventory on hand at the end of the year and multiplying by year-end costs. It's not necessary for Hanes to track the item-by-item cost of purchases during the year.

Assuming a cost index for 2018 of 1.05 (105%), we'll use three steps to calculate the amount to report for ending inventory using dollar-value LIFO.

STEP 1: Convert ending inventory to base year cost. Notice inventory increased from \$400,000 at the beginning of the year to \$462,000 at the end of the year. Does this \$62,000 increase in inventory represent an increase in the *quantity* and/or an increase in the *cost* of inventory? To determine this, the first step is to convert the ending inventory from year-end costs to base year costs. We do this by dividing ending inventory by the year's cost index.

$$\text{Ending inventory at base year cost} = \frac{\$462,000}{1.05} = \$440,000$$

STEP 2: Identify the layers of ending inventory created each year. The 2018 ending inventory deflated to base year cost is \$440,000. From this, we can determine that the \$62,000 increase in the cost of total inventory for the year consists of a \$40,000 increase due to quantity (new inventory layer added in 2018) plus \$22,000 due to an increase in the cost index of inventory ($= \$440,000 \times 5\%$).

\$400,000	(beginning inventory cost in 2018; beginning layer)
+ 40,000	(increase in <i>quantity</i> in 2018; new layer)
+ 22,000	(increase in <i>cost</i> = $\$440,000 \times 5\%$)
<u>\$462,000</u>	(ending inventory cost in 2018)

The calculation above is important for identifying the two layers of inventory *quantity* for applying the LIFO concept: (1) beginning inventory layer of \$400,000 and (2) \$40,000 layer added in 2018. These are the costs as if each layer was acquired at base year prices. The increase in inventory due to rising costs (\$22,000) does not represent more units purchased.

STEP 3: Restate each layer using the cost index in the year acquired. Once the layers are identified, each is restated to prices existing when the layers were acquired. This is done by multiplying each layer by the cost index for the year it was acquired. The \$400,000 layer was acquired when prices were 1.00, and the \$40,000 layer was acquired when prices were 1.05. All layers are added, and ending inventory under DVL would be reported at **\$442,000**.¹⁸

Date	Ending Inventory at Base Year Cost	×	Cost Index	=	Ending Inventory at DVL Cost
1/1/2018	\$400,000		1.00		\$ 400,000
2018 layer	40,000		1.05		42,000
Totals	<u>\$440,000</u>				<u>\$442,000</u>

¹⁸It is important to note that the costs of the year's layer are only an approximation of actual acquisition cost. DVL assumes that all inventory quantities added during a particular year were acquired at a single cost.

In cases where the quantity of inventory *decreases*, no layer would be added in the current year. In our example, if inventory at the end of 2018 had a base year cost of only \$380,000, then no layer would have been added in 2018. Instead, the decrease of \$20,000 would reduce old inventory layers in LIFO order (backwards in time). In addition, any future increases in inventory quantity (in 2019 or after) would add new layers beyond the \$380,000 layer.

The identification of inventory layers is demonstrated further in the Concept Review Exercise below. In years when there is an increase in inventory at base year cost (2019 and 2021), a new inventory layer is added. In years when there is a decrease in inventory at base year cost (2020), we use LIFO and assume the inventory sold was from the last layer added.

Concept Review Exercise

On January 1, 2018, the Johnson Company adopted the dollar-value LIFO method. The inventory value on this date was \$500,000. Inventory data for 2018 through 2021 are as follows:

DOLLAR-VALUE LIFO

Date	Ending Inventory at Year-End Costs	Cost Index
12/31/2018	\$556,500	1.05
12/31/2019	596,200	1.10
12/31/2020	615,250	1.15
12/31/2021	720,000	1.25

Required:

Calculate Johnson's ending inventory for the years 2018 through 2021.

Solution:

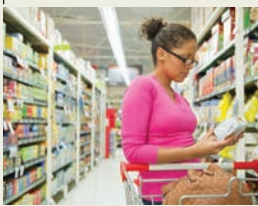
JOHNSON COMPANY					
Date	Ending Inventory at Year-End Cost	Step 1	Step 2	Step 3	Ending Inventory at DVL Cost
		Ending Inventory at Base Year Cost	Inventory Layers at Base Year Cost	Inventory Layers Converted to Acquisition Year Cost	
1/1/2018	\$500,000 (base year)	$\frac{\$500,000}{1.00} = \$500,000$	\$500,000 (base)	$\$500,000 \times 1.00 = \$500,000$	\$500,000
12/31/2018	556,500	$\frac{\$556,500}{1.05} = \$530,000$	\$500,000 (base) 30,000 (2018)	$\$500,000 \times 1.00 = \$500,000$ $30,000 \times 1.05 = 31,500$	531,500
12/31/2019	596,200	$\frac{\$596,200}{1.10} = \$542,000$	\$500,000 (base) 30,000 (2018) 12,000 (2019)	$\$500,000 \times 1.00 = \$500,000$ $30,000 \times 1.05 = 31,500$ $12,000 \times 1.10 = 13,200$	544,700
12/31/2020	615,250	$\frac{\$615,250}{1.15} = \$535,000^*$	\$500,000 (base) 30,000 (2018) 5,000 (2019)	$\$500,000 \times 1.00 = \$500,000$ $30,000 \times 1.05 = 31,500$ $5,000 \times 1.10 = 5,500$	537,000
12/31/2021	720,000	$\frac{\$720,000}{1.25} = \$576,000$	\$500,000 (base) 30,000 (2018) 5,000 (2019) 41,000 (2021)	$\$500,000 \times 1.00 = \$500,000$ $30,000 \times 1.05 = 31,500$ $5,000 \times 1.10 = 5,500$ $41,000 \times 1.25 = 51,250$	588,250

*Since inventory declined during 2020 (from \$542,000 to \$535,000 at base year costs), no new layer is added. Instead the most recently acquired layer, 2019, is reduced by \$7,000 (from \$12,000 to \$5,000).

Advantages of DVL

The DVL method has important advantages. First, it simplifies the recordkeeping procedures compared to unit LIFO because no information is needed about unit flows. Second, it minimizes the probability of the liquidation of LIFO inventory layers, even more so than the use of pools alone, through the aggregation of many types of inventory into larger pools. In addition, the method can be used by firms that do not replace units sold with new units of the same kind. For firms whose products are subject to annual model changes, for example, the items in one year's inventory are not the same as those of the prior year. Under pooled LIFO, however, the new replacement items must be substantially identical to previous models to be included in the same pool. Under DVL, no distinction is drawn between the old and new merchandise on the basis of their physical characteristics, so a much broader range of goods can be included in the pool. That is, the acquisition of the new items is viewed as replacement of the dollar value of the old items. Because the old layers are maintained, this approach retains the benefits of LIFO by matching the most recent acquisition cost of goods with sales measured at current selling prices.

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© Dave and Les Jacobs LLC

- 1. How is the LIFO method used to calculate inventories? Is this permissible according to GAAP? (p. 430)** The LIFO method uses the assumption that the most recent inventory purchased is sold first. Yes, this method is permissible according to generally accepted accounting principles. A company need not use the same method that represents its actual inventory flow.
- 2. What is the purpose of disclosing the difference between the reported LIFO inventory amounts and replacement cost, assuming that replacement cost is equivalent to a FIFO basis? (p. 432)** The LIFO conformity rule requires that if a company uses LIFO to measure taxable income, it also must use LIFO for external financial reporting. Kroger does this. However, the LIFO conformity rule allows LIFO users to report non-LIFO inventory valuations in a disclosure note, but not on the face of the income statement. The company's disclosure note offers this additional information.
- 3. Are you correct that, by using LIFO, Kroger reports lower inventory and lower profits? Why would Kroger do that? (p. 438)** Yes. Because Kroger uses LIFO instead of FIFO, reported inventory in the balance sheet is lower. For the year ended January 30, 2016, Kroger reported LIFO inventory of only \$6,168 million, compared to \$7,440 million that it would have reported under FIFO. This is a difference of \$1,272 million. In the previous year, the difference between LIFO and FIFO was \$1,245 million. This means the LIFO effect (or LIFO reserve) has increased by \$27 million (\$1,272 million minus \$1,245 million). An increase in the LIFO reserve is recorded to cost of goods sold, lowering profits. However, if the LIFO reserve had decreased in the current year, cost of goods sold would be reduced and profits would have been higher. ●


The Bottom Line

- **LO8-1** In a perpetual inventory system, inventory is continually adjusted for each change in inventory. Cost of goods sold is adjusted each time goods are sold or returned by a customer. A periodic inventory system adjusts inventory and records cost of goods sold only at the end of a reporting period. (p. 416)
- **LO8-2** Generally, determining the physical quantity that should be included in inventory is a simple matter, because it consists of items in the possession of the company. However, at the end of a reporting period it's important to determine the ownership of goods that are in transit between the company and its customers as well as between the company and its suppliers. Also, goods on consignment should be included in inventory of the consignor even though the company doesn't have physical possession of the goods. In addition, a company anticipating sales returns includes in inventory the cost of merchandise it estimates will be returned. (p. 420)

- **LO8-3** The cost of inventory includes all expenditures necessary to acquire the inventory and bring it to its desired condition and location for sale or use. Generally, these expenditures include the purchase price of the goods reduced by any returns and purchase discounts, plus freight-in charges. (p. 421)
- **LO8-4** Once costs are determined, the cost of goods available for sale must be allocated between cost of goods sold and ending inventory. Unless each item is specifically identified and traced through the system, the allocation requires an assumption regarding the flow of costs. First-in, first-out (FIFO) assumes that units sold are the first units acquired. Last-in, first-out (LIFO) assumes that the units sold are the most recent units purchased. The average cost method assumes that cost of goods sold and ending inventory consist of a mixture of all the goods available for sale. (p. 424)
- **LO8-5** A company's choice of inventory method will be influenced by (a) how closely cost flow reflects the actual physical flow of its inventory, (b) the timing of income tax expenses, and (c) how costs are matched with revenues. (p. 431)
- **LO8-6** The LIFO conformity rule requires that if a company uses LIFO to measure taxable income, it also must use LIFO for external financial reporting. LIFO users often provide a disclosure note describing the effect on inventories of using another method for inventory valuation rather than LIFO. If a company uses LIFO and inventory quantities decline during a period, then out-of-date inventory layers are liquidated and the cost of goods sold will partially match noncurrent costs with current selling prices. If costs have been increasing (decreasing), LIFO liquidations produce higher (lower) net income than would have resulted if the liquidated inventory were included in cost of goods sold at current costs. The paper profits (losses) caused by including out-of-date, low (high) costs in cost of goods sold is referred to as the effect on income of liquidations of LIFO inventory. (p. 432)
- **LO8-7** Investors, creditors, and financial analysts can gain important insights by monitoring a company's investment in inventories. The gross profit ratio, inventory turnover ratio, and average days in inventory are designed to monitor inventories. (p. 438)
- **LO8-8** The dollar-value LIFO method converts ending inventory at year-end cost to base year cost using a cost index. After identifying the layers in ending inventory with the years they were created, each year's base year cost measurement is converted to layer year cost measurement using the layer year's cost index. The layers are then summed to obtain total ending inventory at cost. (p. 441)
- **LO8-9** The primary difference between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to determining the cost of inventory is that IFRS does not allow the use of the LIFO method to value inventory. (p. 431) ●

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 8-1** Describe the three types of inventory of a manufacturing company.
- Q 8-2** What is the main difference between a perpetual inventory system and a periodic inventory system?
- Q 8-3** The Cloud Company employs a perpetual inventory system and the McKenzie Corporation uses a periodic system. Describe the differences between the two systems in accounting for the following events: (1) purchase of merchandise, (2) sale of merchandise, (3) return of merchandise to supplier, and (4) payment of freight charge on merchandise purchased. Indicate which inventory-related accounts would be debited or credited for each event.
- Q 8-4** The Bockner Company shipped merchandise to Laetner Corporation on December 28, 2018. Laetner received the shipment on January 3, 2019. December 31 is the fiscal year-end for both companies. The merchandise was shipped f.o.b. shipping point. Explain the difference in the accounting treatment of the merchandise if the shipment had instead been designated f.o.b. destination.
- Q 8-5** What is a consignment arrangement? Explain the accounting treatment of goods held on consignment.
- Q 8-6** Distinguish between the gross and net methods of accounting for purchase discounts.
- Q 8-7** The Esquire Company employs a periodic inventory system. Indicate the effect (increase or decrease) of the following items on cost of goods sold:
 - 1. Beginning inventory
 - 2. Purchases
 - 3. Ending inventory
 - 4. Purchase returns
 - 5. Freight-in
- Q 8-8** Identify four methods of assigning cost to ending inventory and cost of goods sold and briefly explain the difference in the methods.

- Q 8-9** It's common in the electronics industry for unit costs of raw materials inventories to decline over time. In this environment, explain the difference between LIFO and FIFO, in terms of the effect on income and financial position. Assume that inventory quantities remain the same for the period.
- Q 8-10** Explain why proponents of LIFO argue that it provides a better match of revenue and expenses. In what situation would it not provide a better match?
- Q 8-11** Explain what is meant by the Internal Revenue Service conformity rule with respect to the inventory method choice.
- Q 8-12** Describe the ratios used by financial analysts to monitor a company's investment in inventories.
- Q 8-13** What is a LIFO inventory pool? How is the cost of ending inventory determined when pools are used?
- Q 8-14** Identify two advantages of dollar-value LIFO compared with unit LIFO.
- Q 8-15** The Austin Company uses the dollar-value LIFO inventory method with internally developed price indexes. Assume that ending inventory at year-end cost has been determined. Outline the remaining steps used in the dollar-value LIFO computations.
-  **IFRS Q 8-16** Identify any differences between U.S. GAAP and International Financial Reporting Standards in the methods allowed to value inventory.

Brief Exercises



- BE 8-1**
Determining ending inventory; periodic system
● LO8-1
A company began its fiscal year with inventory of \$186,000. Purchases and cost of goods sold for the year were \$945,000 and \$982,000, respectively. What was the amount of ending inventory?
- BE 8-2**
Perpetual system; journal entries
● LO8-1
Litton Industries uses a perpetual inventory system. The company began its fiscal year with inventory of \$267,000. Purchases of merchandise on account during the year totaled \$845,000. Merchandise costing \$902,000 was sold on account for \$1,420,000. Prepare the journal entries to record these transactions.
- BE 8-3**
Goods in transit
● LO8-2
Kelly Corporation shipped goods to a customer f.o.b. destination on December 29, 2018. The goods arrived at the customer's location in January. In addition, one of Kelly's major suppliers shipped goods to Kelly f.o.b. shipping point on December 30. The merchandise arrived at Kelly's location in January. Which shipments should be included in Kelly's December 31 inventory?
- BE 8-4**
Purchase discounts; gross method
● LO8-3
On December 28, 2018, Videotech Corporation (VTC) purchased 10 units of a new satellite uplink system from Tristar Communications for \$25,000 each. The terms of each sale were 1/10, n/30. VTC uses the gross method to account for purchase discounts and a perpetual inventory system. VTC paid the net-of-discount amount on January 6, 2019. Prepare the journal entries on December 28 and January 6 to record the purchase and payment.
- BE 8-5**
Purchase discounts; net method
● LO8-3
Refer to the situation described in BE 8-4. Prepare the necessary journal entries assuming that VTC uses the net method to account for purchase discounts.
- BE 8-6**
Inventory cost flow methods; periodic system
● LO8-4
Samuelson and Messenger (SAM) began 2018 with 200 units of its one product. These units were purchased near the end of 2017 for \$25 each. During the month of January, 100 units were purchased on January 8 for \$28 each and another 200 units were purchased on January 19 for \$30 each. Sales of 125 units and 100 units were made on January 10 and January 25, respectively. There were 275 units on hand at the end of the month. SAM uses a *periodic* inventory system. Calculate ending inventory and cost of goods sold for January using (1) FIFO, and (2) average cost.
- BE 8-7**
Inventory cost flow methods; perpetual system
● LO8-4
Refer to the situation described in BE 8-6. SAM uses a *perpetual* inventory system. Calculate ending inventory and cost of goods sold for January using (1) FIFO, and (2) average cost.
- BE 8-8**
LIFO method
● LO8-4
Esquire Inc. uses the LIFO method to value its inventory. Inventory at January 1, 2018, was \$500,000 (20,000 units at \$25 each). During 2018, 80,000 units were purchased, all at the same price of \$30 per unit. 85,000 units

were sold during 2018. Esquire uses a periodic inventory system. Calculate the December 31, 2018, ending inventory and cost of goods sold for 2018.

BE 8-9

LIFO method

● LO8-4

AAA Hardware uses the LIFO method to value its inventory. Inventory at the beginning of the year consisted of 10,000 units of the company's one product. These units cost \$15 each. During the year, 60,000 units were purchased at a cost of \$18 each and 64,000 units were sold. Near the end of the fiscal year, management is considering the purchase of an additional 5,000 units at \$18. What would be the effect of this purchase on income before income taxes? Would your answer be the same if the company used FIFO instead of LIFO?

BE 8-10

LIFO liquidation

● LO8-6

Refer to the situation described in BE 8-8. Assuming an income tax rate of 40%, what is LIFO liquidation profit or loss that the company would report in a disclosure note accompanying its financial statements?

BE 8-11Supplemental
LIFO disclosures;
Walgreen

● LO8-6

Real World Financials

Walgreens Boots Alliance, Inc. reported inventories of \$8,678 million and \$6,076 million in its August 31, 2015, and August 31, 2014, balance sheets, respectively. Cost of goods sold for the year ended August 31, 2015, was \$76,520 million. The company uses primarily the LIFO inventory method. A disclosure note reported that if FIFO had been used instead of LIFO, inventory would have been higher by \$2,500 million and \$2,300 million at the end of the August 31, 2015, and August 31, 2014, periods, respectively. Calculate cost of goods sold for the year ended August 31, 2015, assuming Walgreens used FIFO instead of LIFO.

BE 8-12

Ratio analysis

● LO8-7

Selected financial statement data for Schmitzer Inc. is shown below:

	2018	2017
Balance sheet:		
Inventories	60,000	48,000
Ratios:		
Gross profit ratio for 2018	40%	
Inventory turnover ratio for 2018	5	

What was the amount of net sales for 2018?

BE 8-13

Dollar-value LIFO

● LO8-8

At the beginning of 2018, a company adopts the dollar-value LIFO inventory method for its one inventory pool. The pool's value on that date was \$1,400,000. The 2018 ending inventory valued at year-end costs was \$1,664,000 and the year-end cost index was 1.04. Calculate the inventory value at the end of 2018 using the dollar-value LIFO method.

Exercises

**E 8-1**Perpetual
inventory system;
journal entries

● LO8-1

John's Specialty Store uses a perpetual inventory system. The following are some inventory transactions for the month of May 2018:

1. John's purchased merchandise on account for \$5,000. Freight charges of \$300 were paid in cash.
2. John's returned some of the merchandise purchased in (1). The cost of the merchandise was \$600 and John's account was credited by the supplier.
3. Merchandise costing \$2,800 was sold for \$5,200 in cash.

Required:

Prepare the necessary journal entries to record these transactions.

E 8-2Periodic inventory
system; journal
entries

● LO8-1

[This is a variation of E 8-1 modified to focus on the periodic inventory system.]

John's Specialty Store uses a periodic inventory system. The following are some inventory transactions for the month of May 2018:

1. John's purchased merchandise on account for \$5,000. Freight charges of \$300 were paid in cash.
2. John's returned some of the merchandise purchased in (1). The cost of the merchandise was \$600 and John's account was credited by the supplier.
3. Merchandise costing \$2,800 was sold for \$5,200 in cash.

Required:

Prepare the necessary journal entries to record these transactions.

E 8-3

Determining cost of goods sold; periodic inventory system

• LO8-1

Askew Company uses a periodic inventory system. The June 30, 2018, year-end trial balance for the company contained the following information:

Account	Debit	Credit
Merchandise inventory, 7/1/17	32,000	
Sales		380,000
Sales returns	12,000	
Purchases	240,000	
Purchase discounts		6,000
Purchase returns		10,000
Freight-in	17,000	

In addition, you determine that the June 30, 2018, inventory balance is \$40,000.

Required:

1. Calculate the cost of goods sold for the Askew Company for the year ending June 30, 2018.
2. Prepare the year-end adjusting entry to record cost of goods sold.

E 8-4

Perpetual and periodic inventory systems compared

• LO8-1

The following information is available for the Johnson Corporation for 2018:

Beginning inventory	\$ 25,000
Merchandise purchases (on account)	155,000
Freight charges on purchases (paid in cash)	10,000
Merchandise returned to supplier (for credit)	12,000
Ending inventory	30,000
Sales (on account)	250,000
Cost of merchandise sold	148,000

Required:

Applying both a perpetual and a periodic inventory system, prepare the journal entries that summarize the transactions that created these balances. Include all end-of-period adjusting entries indicated.

E 8-5

Periodic inventory system; missing data

• LO8-1

The Playa Company uses a periodic inventory system. The following information is taken from Playa's records. Certain data have been intentionally omitted (\$ in thousands).

	2018	2019	2020
Beginning inventory	?	?	225
Cost of goods sold	627	621	?
Ending inventory	?	225	216
Cost of goods available for sale	876	?	800
Purchases (gross)	630	?	585
Purchase discounts	18	15	?
Purchase returns	24	30	14
Freight-in	13	32	16

Required:

Determine the missing numbers. Show computations where appropriate.

E 8-6

Goods in transit

• LO8-2

The Kwok Company's inventory balance on December 31, 2018, was \$165,000 (based on a 12/31/2018 physical count) *before* considering the following transactions:

1. Goods shipped to Kwok f.o.b. destination on December 20, 2018, were received on January 4, 2019. The invoice cost was \$30,000.
2. Goods shipped to Kwok f.o.b. shipping point on December 28, 2018, were received on January 5, 2019. The invoice cost was \$17,000.
3. Goods shipped from Kwok to a customer f.o.b. destination on December 27, 2018, were received by the customer on January 3, 2019. The sales price was \$40,000 and the merchandise cost \$22,000.
4. Goods shipped from Kwok to a customer f.o.b. destination on December 26, 2018, were received by the customer on December 30, 2018. The sales price was \$20,000 and the merchandise cost \$13,000.
5. Goods shipped from Kwok to a customer f.o.b. shipping point on December 28, 2018, were received by the customer on January 4, 2019. The sales price was \$25,000 and the merchandise cost \$12,000.

Required:

Determine the correct inventory amount to be reported in Kwok's 2018 balance sheet.

E 8-7

Goods in transit;
consignment

● LO8-2

The December 31, 2018, year-end inventory balance of the Raymond Corporation is \$210,000. You have been asked to review the following transactions to determine if they have been correctly recorded.

1. Goods shipped to Raymond f.o.b. destination on December 26, 2018, were received on January 2, 2019. The invoice cost of \$30,000 *is* included in the preliminary inventory balance.
2. At year-end, Raymond held \$14,000 of merchandise on consignment from the Harrison Company. This merchandise *is* included in the preliminary inventory balance.
3. On December 29, merchandise costing \$6,000 was shipped to a customer f.o.b. shipping point and arrived at the customer's location on January 3, 2019. The merchandise is *not* included in the preliminary inventory balance.
4. At year-end, Raymond had merchandise costing \$15,000 on consignment with the Joclyn Corporation. The merchandise is *not* included in the preliminary inventory balance.

Required:

Determine the correct inventory amount to be reported in Raymond's 2018 balance sheet.

E 8-8

Physical
quantities and
costs included in
inventory

● LO8-2

The Phoenix Corporation's fiscal year ends on December 31. Phoenix determines inventory quantity by a physical count of inventory on hand at the close of business on December 31. The company's controller has asked for your help in deciding if the following items should be included in the year-end inventory count.

1. Merchandise held on consignment for Trout Creek Clothing.
2. Goods shipped f.o.b. destination on December 28 that arrived at the customer's location on January 4.
3. Goods purchased from a vendor shipped f.o.b. shipping point on December 26 that arrived on January 3.
4. Goods shipped f.o.b. shipping point on December 28 that arrived at the customer's location on January 5.
5. Phoenix had merchandise on consignment at Lisa's Markets, Inc.
6. Goods purchased from a vendor shipped f.o.b. destination on December 27 that arrived on January 3.
7. Freight charges on goods purchased in 3.

Required:

Determine if each of the items above should be included or excluded from the company's year-end inventory.

E 8-9

Purchase
discounts; the
gross method

● LO8-3

On July 15, 2018, the Nixon Car Company purchased 1,000 tires from the Harwell Company for \$50 each. The terms of the sale were 2/10, n/30. Nixon uses a periodic inventory system and the *gross* method of accounting for purchase discounts.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries to record the purchase on July 15 and payment on July 23, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the payment on August 15, 2018.
3. If Nixon instead uses a perpetual inventory system, explain any changes to the journal entries created in requirements 1 and 2.

E 8-10

Purchase
discounts; the net
method

● LO8-3

[This is a variation of E 8-9 modified to focus on the net method of accounting for purchase discounts.]

On July 15, 2018, the Nixon Car Company purchased 1,000 tires from the Harwell Company for \$50 each. The terms of the sale were 2/10, n/30. Nixon uses a periodic inventory system and the *net* method of accounting for purchase discounts.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries to record the purchase on July 15 and payment on July 23, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the payment on August 15, 2018.
3. If Nixon instead uses a perpetual inventory system, explain any changes to the journal entries created in requirements 1 and 2.

E 8-11

Trade and
purchase
discounts; the
gross method and
the net method
compared

● LO8-3

Tracy Company, a manufacturer of air conditioners, sold 100 units to Thomas Company on November 17, 2018. The units have a list price of \$500 each, but Thomas was given a 30% trade discount. The terms of the sale were 2/10, n/30. Thomas uses a periodic inventory system.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries to record the purchase by Thomas on November 17 and payment on November 26, 2018, using the gross method of accounting for purchase discounts.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the payment on December 15, 2018, using the gross method of accounting for purchase discounts.
3. Repeat requirements 1 and 2 using the net method of accounting for purchase discounts.

E 8-12

FASB codification research

- LO8-2, LO8-3



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for each of the following items:

1. Define the meaning of cost as it applies to the initial measurement of inventory.
2. Indicate the circumstances when it is appropriate to initially measure agricultural inventory at fair value.
3. What is a major objective of accounting for inventory?
4. Are abnormal freight charges included in the cost of inventory?

E 8-13

Inventory cost flow methods; periodic system

- LO8-1, LO8-4

Altira Corporation uses a periodic inventory system. The following information related to its merchandise inventory during the month of August 2018 is available:

Aug. 1	Inventory on hand—2,000 units; cost \$6.10 each.
8	Purchased 10,000 units for \$5.50 each.
14	Sold 8,000 units for \$12.00 each.
18	Purchased 6,000 units for \$5.00 each.
25	Sold 7,000 units for \$11.00 each.
31	Inventory on hand—3,000 units.

Required:

Determine the inventory balance Altira would report in its August 31, 2018, balance sheet and the cost of goods sold it would report in its August 2018 income statement using each of the following cost flow methods:

1. First-in, first-out (FIFO)
2. Last-in, first-out (LIFO)
3. Average cost

E 8-14

Inventory cost flow methods; perpetual system

- LO8-1, LO8-4

[This is a variation of E 8-13 modified to focus on the perpetual inventory system and alternative cost flow methods.]

Altira Corporation uses a perpetual inventory system. The following transactions affected its merchandise inventory during the month of August 2018:

Aug. 1	Inventory on hand—2,000 units; cost \$6.10 each.
8	Purchased 10,000 units for \$5.50 each.
14	Sold 8,000 units for \$12.00 each.
18	Purchased 6,000 units for \$5.00 each.
25	Sold 7,000 units for \$11.00 each.
31	Inventory on hand—3,000 units.

Required:

Determine the inventory balance Altira would report in its August 31, 2018, balance sheet and the cost of goods sold it would report in its August 2018 income statement using each of the following cost flow methods:

1. First-in, first-out (FIFO)
2. Last-in, first-out (LIFO)
3. Average cost

E 8-15

Comparison of FIFO and LIFO; periodic system

- LO8-1, LO8-4

Alta Ski Company's inventory records contained the following information regarding its latest ski model. The company uses a periodic inventory system.

Beginning inventory, January 1, 2018	600 units @ \$80 each
Purchases:	
January 15	1,000 units @ \$95 each
January 21	800 units @ \$100 each
Sales:	
January 5	400 units @ \$120 each
January 22	800 units @ \$130 each
January 29	400 units @ \$135 each
Ending inventory, January 31, 2018	800 units

Required:

1. Which method, FIFO or LIFO, will result in the highest cost of goods sold figure for January 2018? Why? Which method will result in the highest ending inventory balance? Why?
2. Compute cost of goods sold for January and the ending inventory using both the FIFO and LIFO methods.

E 8-16

Average cost method; periodic and perpetual systems

• LO8-1, LO8-4

The following information is taken from the inventory records of the CNB Company for the month of September:

Beginning inventory, 9/1/2018	5,000 units @ \$10.00
Purchases:	
9/7	3,000 units @ \$10.40
9/25	8,000 units @ \$10.75
Sales:	
9/10	4,000 units
9/29	5,000 units
7,000 units were on hand at the end of September.	

Required:

1. Assuming that CNB uses a periodic inventory system and employs the average cost method, determine cost of goods sold for September and September's ending inventory.
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the company uses a perpetual inventory system.

E 8-17

FIFO, LIFO, and average cost methods

• LO8-1, LO8-4

Causwell Company began 2018 with 10,000 units of inventory on hand. The cost of each unit was \$5.00. During 2018 an additional 30,000 units were purchased at a single unit cost, and 20,000 units remained on hand at the end of 2018 (20,000 units therefore were sold during 2018). Causwell uses a periodic inventory system. Cost of goods sold for 2018, applying the average cost method, is \$115,000. The company is interested in determining what cost of goods sold would have been if the FIFO or LIFO methods were used.

Required:

1. Determine the cost of goods sold for 2018 using the FIFO method. [Hint: Determine the cost per unit of 2018 purchases.]
2. Determine the cost of goods sold for 2018 using the LIFO method.

E 8-18

Supplemental LIFO disclosures; LIFO reserve; AEP Industries

• LO8-6

Real World Financials

AEP Industries Inc. is a leading manufacturer of plastic packing films. The company uses the LIFO inventory method for external reporting but maintains its internal records using FIFO. The following disclosure note was included in a recent quarterly report:

4. Inventories (in part)

Inventories are comprised of the following (\$ in thousands):

	January 31, 2016	October 31, 2015
Raw materials	\$ 42,881	\$ 47,593
Finished goods	71,547	66,484
Supplies	5,240	5,280
	<u>119,668</u>	<u>119,357</u>
Less: LIFO reserve	(13,655)	(18,093)
Inventories (under LIFO)	<u>\$106,013</u>	<u>\$101,264</u>

The company's income statements reported cost of goods sold of \$209,826 thousand for the quarter ended January 31, 2016.

Required:

1. Assume that AEP adjusts the LIFO reserve at the end of its quarter. Prepare the January 31, 2016, adjusting entry to record the cost of goods sold adjustment.
2. If AEP had used FIFO to value its inventories, what would cost of goods sold have been for the quarter ended January 31, 2016?

E 8-19

LIFO liquidation

• LO8-1, LO8-4, LO8-6

The Reuschel Company began 2018 with inventory of 10,000 units at a cost of \$7 per unit. During 2018, 50,000 units were purchased for \$8.50 each. Sales for the year totaled 54,000 units leaving 6,000 units on hand at the end of 2018. Reuschel uses a periodic inventory system and the LIFO inventory cost method.

Required:

1. Calculate cost of goods sold for 2018.
2. From a financial reporting perspective, what problem is created by the use of LIFO in this situation? Describe the disclosure required to report the effects of this problem.

E 8-20

LIFO liquidation

● LO8-4, LO8-6

The Churchill Corporation uses a periodic inventory system and the LIFO inventory cost method for its one product. Beginning inventory of 20,000 units consisted of the following, listed in chronological order of acquisition:

12,000 units at a cost of \$8.00 per unit = \$96,000
8,000 units at a cost of \$9.00 per unit = 72,000

During 2018, inventory quantity declined by 10,000 units. All units purchased during 2018 cost \$12.00 per unit.

Required:

Calculate the before-tax LIFO liquidation profit or loss that the company would report in a disclosure note, assuming the amount determined is material.

E 8-21

FASB codification research

● LO8-6



The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on the disclosure of accounting policies using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).
2. What is the specific citation that describes the disclosure requirements that must be made by publicly traded companies for a LIFO liquidation?
3. Describe the disclosure requirements.

E 8-22

Ratio analysis; Home Depot and Lowe's

● LO8-7

The table below contains selected information from recent financial statements of **The Home Depot, Inc.**, and **Lowe's Companies, Inc.**, two companies in the home improvement retail industry (\$ in millions):

	Home Depot		Lowe's	
	1/31/16	2/1/15	1/29/16	1/30/15
Net sales	\$88,519	\$83,176	\$59,074	\$56,223
Cost of goods sold	58,254	54,787	38,504	36,665
Year-end inventory	11,809	11,079	9,458	8,911
Industry averages:				
Gross profit ratio		33%		
Inventory turnover ratio		3.9 times		
Average days in inventory		94 days		

Real World Financials**Required:**

Calculate the gross profit ratio, the inventory turnover ratio, and the average days in inventory for the two companies for their fiscal years ending in 2016. Compare your calculations for the two companies, taking into account the industry averages.

E 8-23

Dollar-value LIFO

● LO8-8

On January 1, 2018, the Haskins Company adopted the dollar-value LIFO method for its one inventory pool. The pool's value on this date was \$660,000. The 2018 and 2019 ending inventory valued at year-end costs were \$690,000 and \$760,000, respectively. The appropriate cost indexes are 1.04 for 2018 and 1.08 for 2019.

Required:

Calculate the inventory value at the end of 2018 and 2019 using the dollar-value LIFO method.

E 8-24

Dollar-value LIFO

● LO8-8

Mercury Company has only one inventory pool. On December 31, 2018, Mercury adopted the dollar-value LIFO inventory method. The inventory on that date using the dollar-value LIFO method was \$200,000. Inventory data are as follows:

Year	Ending Inventory at Year-End Costs	Ending Inventory at Base Year Costs
2019	\$231,000	\$220,000
2020	299,000	260,000
2021	300,000	250,000

Required:

Compute the inventory at December 31, 2019, 2020, and 2021, using the dollar-value LIFO method.

(AICPA adapted)

E 8-25

Dollar-value LIFO

● LO8-8

Carswell Electronics adopted the dollar-value LIFO method on January 1, 2018, when the inventory value of its one inventory pool was \$720,000. The company decided to use an external index, the Consumer Price Index (CPI), to adjust for changes in the cost level. On January 1, 2018, the CPI was 240. On December 31, 2018, inventory valued at year-end cost was \$880,000 and the CPI was 264.

Required:

Calculate the inventory value at the end of 2018 using the dollar-value LIFO method.

E 8-26Concepts;
terminology● LO8-1 through
LO8-5

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with inventory measurement. Pair each item from List A with the item from List B (by letter) that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. Perpetual inventory system	a. Legal title passes when goods are delivered to common carrier.
_____ 2. Periodic inventory system	b. Goods are transferred to another company but title remains with transferor.
_____ 3. F.o.b. shipping point	c. Purchase discounts not taken are included in inventory cost.
_____ 4. Gross method	d. If LIFO is used for taxes, it must be used for financial reporting.
_____ 5. Net method	e. Assumes items sold are those acquired first.
_____ 6. Cost index	f. Assumes items sold are those acquired last.
_____ 7. F.o.b. destination	g. Purchase discounts not taken are considered interest expense.
_____ 8. FIFO	h. Used to convert ending inventory at year-end cost to base year cost.
_____ 9. LIFO	i. Continuously records changes in inventory.
_____ 10. Consignment	j. Assumes items sold come from a mixture of goods acquired during the period.
_____ 11. Average cost	k. Legal title passes when goods arrive at location.
_____ 12. IRS conformity rule	l. Adjusts inventory at the end of the period.

Problems

**P 8-1**Various inventory
transactions;
journal entries● LO8-1 through
LO8-3

James Company began the month of October with inventory of \$15,000. The following inventory transactions occurred during the month:

- The company purchased merchandise on account for \$22,000 on October 12, 2018. Terms of the purchase were 2/10, n/30. James uses the net method to record purchases. The merchandise was shipped f.o.b. shipping point and freight charges of \$500 were paid in cash.
- On October 31, James paid for the merchandise purchased on October 12.
- During October merchandise costing \$18,000 was sold on account for \$28,000.
- It was determined that inventory on hand at the end of October cost \$19,060.

Required:

- Assuming that the James Company uses a periodic inventory system, prepare journal entries for the above transactions including the adjusting entry at the end of October to record cost of goods sold.
- Assuming that the James Company uses a perpetual inventory system, prepare journal entries for the above transactions.

P 8-2Items to be
included in
inventory

● LO8-2

The following inventory transactions took place near December 31, 2018, the end of the Rasul Company's fiscal year-end:

- On December 27, 2018, merchandise costing \$2,000 was shipped to the Myers Company on consignment. The shipment arrived at Myers's location on December 29, but none of the merchandise was sold by the end of the year. The merchandise was *not* included in the 2018 ending inventory.
- On January 5, 2019, merchandise costing \$8,000 was received from a supplier and recorded as a purchase on that date and *not* included in the 2018 ending inventory. The invoice revealed that the shipment was made f.o.b. shipping point on December 28, 2018.
- On December 29, 2018, the company shipped merchandise costing \$12,000 to a customer f.o.b. destination. The goods, which arrived at the customer's location on January 4, 2019, were *not* included in Rasul's 2018 ending inventory. The sale was recorded in 2018.
- Merchandise costing \$4,000 was received on December 28, 2018, on consignment from the Aborn Company. A purchase was *not* recorded and the merchandise was *not* included in 2018 ending inventory.
- Merchandise costing \$6,000 was received and recorded as a purchase on January 8, 2019. The invoice revealed that the merchandise was shipped from the supplier on December 28, 2018, f.o.b. destination. The merchandise was *not* included in 2018 ending inventory.

Required:

State whether Rasul correctly accounted for each of the above transactions. Give the reason for your answer.

P 8-3

Costs included in inventory

• LO8-2, LO8-3

Reagan Corporation is a wholesale distributor of truck replacement parts. Initial amounts taken from Reagan's records are as follows:

Inventory at December 31 (based on a physical count of goods in Reagan's warehouse on December 31)			\$1,250,000
Accounts payable at December 31:			
Vendor	Terms	Amount	
Baker Company	2%, 10 days, net 30	\$ 265,000	
Charlie Company	Net 30	210,000	
Dolly Company	Net 30	300,000	
Eagler Company	Net 30	225,000	
Full Company	Net 30	—	
Greg Company	Net 30	—	
Accounts payable, December 31		\$1,000,000	
Sales for the year		\$9,000,000	

Additional Information:

- Parts held by Reagan on consignment from Charlie, amounting to \$155,000, were included in the physical count of goods in Reagan's warehouse and in accounts payable at December 31.
- Parts totaling \$22,000, which were purchased from Full and paid for in December, were sold in the last week of the year and *appropriately* recorded as sales of \$28,000. The parts were included in the physical count of goods in Reagan's warehouse on December 31 because the parts were on the loading dock waiting to be picked up by customers.
- Parts in transit on December 31 to customers, shipped f.o.b. shipping point on December 28, amounted to \$34,000. The customers received the parts on January 6 of the following year. Sales of \$40,000 to the customers for the parts were recorded by Reagan on January 2.
- Retailers were holding goods on consignment from Reagan, which had a cost of \$210,000 and a retail value of \$250,000.
- Goods were in transit from Greg to Reagan on December 31. The cost of the goods was \$25,000, and they were shipped f.o.b. shipping point on December 29.
- A freight bill in the amount of \$2,000 specifically relating to merchandise purchased in December, all of which was still in the inventory at December 31, was received on January 3. The freight bill was not included in either the inventory or in accounts payable at December 31.
- All the purchases from Baker occurred during the last seven days of the year. These items have been recorded in accounts payable and accounted for in the physical inventory at cost before discount. Reagan's policy is to pay invoices in time to take advantage of all discounts, adjust inventory accordingly, and record accounts payable net of discounts.

Required:

Prepare a schedule of adjustments to the initial amounts using the format shown below. Show the effect, if any, of each of the transactions separately and if the transactions would have no effect on the amount shown, state *none*.

	Inventory	Accounts Payable	Sales
Initial amounts	\$1,250,000	\$1,000,000	\$9,000,000
Adjustments—increase (decrease):			
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
Total adjustments			
Adjusted amounts	\$	\$	\$

(AICPA adapted)

P 8-4

Various inventory transactions; determining inventory and cost of goods

- LO8-1 through LO8-4

Johnson Corporation began 2018 with inventory of 10,000 units of its only product. The units cost \$8 each. The company uses a periodic inventory system and the LIFO cost method. The following transactions occurred during 2018:

- Purchased 50,000 additional units at a cost of \$10 per unit. Terms of the purchases were 2/10, n/30, and 100% of the purchases were paid for within the 10-day discount period. The company uses the gross method to record purchase discounts. The merchandise was purchased f.o.b. shipping point and freight charges of \$0.50 per unit were paid by Johnson.
- 1,000 units purchased during the year were returned to suppliers for credit. Johnson was also given credit for the freight charges of \$0.50 per unit it had paid on the original purchase. The units were defective and were returned two days after they were received.
- Sales for the year totaled 45,000 units at \$18 per unit.
- On December 28, 2018, Johnson purchased 5,000 additional units at \$10 each. The goods were shipped f.o.b. destination and arrived at Johnson's warehouse on January 4, 2019.
- 14,000 units were on hand at the end of 2018.

Required:

- Determine ending inventory and cost of goods sold for 2018.
- Assuming that operating expenses other than those indicated in the above transactions amounted to \$150,000, determine income before income taxes for 2018.

P 8-5

Various inventory costing methods

- LO8-1, LO8-4



Ferris Company began 2018 with 6,000 units of its principal product. The cost of each unit is \$8. Merchandise transactions for the month of January 2018 are as follows:

Date of Purchase	Purchases		
	Units	Unit Cost*	Total Cost
Jan. 10	5,000	\$ 9	\$ 45,000
Jan. 18	6,000	10	60,000
Totals	11,000		\$ 105,000

*Includes purchase price and cost of freight.

Sales	
Date of Sale	Units
Jan. 5	3,000
Jan. 12	2,000
Jan. 20	4,000
Total	9,000

8,000 units were on hand at the end of the month.

Required:

Calculate January's ending inventory and cost of goods sold for the month using each of the following alternatives:

- FIFO, periodic system
- LIFO, periodic system
- LIFO, perpetual system
- Average cost, periodic system
- Average cost, perpetual system

P 8-6

Various inventory costing methods; gross profit ratio

- LO8-1, LO8-4, LO8-7



Topanga Group began operations early in 2018. Inventory purchase information for the quarter ended March 31, 2018, for Topanga's only product is provided below. The unit costs include the cost of freight. The company uses a periodic inventory system.

Date of Purchase	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Jan. 7	5,000	\$4.00	\$ 20,000
Feb. 16	12,000	4.50	54,000
March 22	17,000	5.00	85,000
Totals	34,000		\$159,000

Sales for the quarter, all at \$7.00 per unit, totaled 20,000 units leaving 14,000 units on hand at the end of the quarter.

Required:

- Calculate the Topanga's gross profit ratio for the first quarter using:
 - FIFO
 - LIFO
 - Average cost
- Comment on the relative effect of each of the three inventory methods on the gross profit ratio.

P 8-7

Various inventory costing methods

• LO8-1, LO8-4



Carlson Auto Dealers Inc. sells a handmade automobile as its only product. Each automobile is identical; however, they can be distinguished by their unique ID number. At the beginning of 2018, Carlson had three cars in inventory, as follows:

Car ID	Cost
203	\$60,000
207	60,000
210	63,000

During 2018, each of the three autos sold for \$90,000. Additional purchases (listed in chronological order) and sales for the year were as follows:

Car ID	Cost	Selling Price
211	\$63,000	\$ 90,000
212	63,000	93,000
213	64,500	not sold
214	66,000	96,000
215	69,000	100,500
216	70,500	not sold
217	72,000	105,000
218	72,300	106,500
219	75,000	not sold

Required:

- Calculate 2018 ending inventory and cost of goods sold assuming the company uses the specific identification inventory method.
- Calculate ending inventory and cost of goods sold assuming FIFO and a periodic inventory system.
- Calculate ending inventory and cost of goods sold assuming LIFO and a periodic inventory system.
- Calculate ending inventory and cost of goods sold assuming the average cost method and a periodic inventory system.

P 8-8

Supplemental LIFO disclosures; Caterpillar

• LO8-4, LO8-6

Real World Financials



Caterpillar, Inc., is one of the world's largest manufacturers of construction, mining, and forestry machinery. The following disclosure note is included in the company's 2015 financial statements:

D. Inventories (\$ in millions)

Inventories are stated at the lower of cost or market. Cost is principally determined using the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method. If the FIFO (first-in, first-out) method had been in use, inventories would have been \$2,498 million and \$2,430 million higher than reported at December 31, 2015 and 2014, respectively.

Required:

- The company reported LIFO cost of goods sold of \$33,742 million. Calculate the amount that would be reported for cost of goods sold had Caterpillar used the FIFO inventory method for all of its inventory.
- How does the amount in requirement 1 affect income before taxes?
- Why might the information contained in the disclosure note be useful to a financial analyst?

P 8-9

LIFO liquidation

• LO8-4, LO8-6

Taylor Corporation has used a periodic inventory system and the LIFO cost method since its inception in 2011. The company began 2018 with the following inventory layers (listed in chronological order of acquisition):

10,000 units @ \$15	\$150,000
15,000 units @ \$20	300,000
Beginning inventory	<u>\$450,000</u>

During 2018, 30,000 units were purchased for \$25 per unit. Due to unexpected demand for the company's product, 2018 sales totaled 40,000 units at various prices, leaving 15,000 units in ending inventory.

Required:

1. Calculate cost of goods sold for 2018.
2. Determine the amount of LIFO liquidation profit that the company must report in a disclosure note to its 2018 financial statements. Assume an income tax rate of 40%.
3. If the company decided to purchase an additional 10,000 units at \$25 per unit at the end of the year, how much income tax currently payable would be saved?

P 8-10

LIFO liquidation

• LO8-4, LO8-6

Cansela Corporation uses a periodic inventory system and the LIFO method to value its inventory. The company began 2018 with inventory of 4,500 units of its only product. The beginning inventory balance of \$64,000 consisted of the following layers:

2,000 units at \$12 per unit	=	\$24,000
2,500 units at \$16 per unit	=	40,000
Beginning inventory		<u>\$64,000</u>

During the three years 2018–2020 the cost of inventory remained constant at \$18 per unit. Unit purchases and sales during these years were as follows:

	Purchases	Sales
2018	10,000	11,000
2019	13,000	14,500
2020	12,000	13,000

Required:

1. Calculate cost of goods sold for 2018, 2019, and 2020.
2. Disregarding income tax, determine the LIFO liquidation profit or loss, if any, for each of the three years.
3. Prepare the company's LIFO liquidation disclosure note that would be included in the 2020 financial statements to report the effects of any liquidation on cost of goods sold and net income. Assume any liquidation effects are material and that Cansela's effective income tax rate is 40%. Cansela's 2020 financial statements include income statements for two prior years for comparative purposes.

P 8-11

Inventory cost flow methods: LIFO liquidation; ratios

• LO8-4, LO8-6, LO8-7



Cast Iron Grills, Inc., manufactures premium gas barbecue grills. The company uses a periodic inventory system and the LIFO cost method for its grill inventory. Cast Iron's December 31, 2018, fiscal year-end inventory consisted of the following (listed in chronological order of acquisition):

Units	Unit Cost
5,000	\$700
4,000	800
6,000	900

The replacement cost of the grills throughout 2019 was \$1,000. Cast Iron sold 27,000 grills during 2019. The company's selling price is set at 200% of the current replacement cost.

Required:

1. Compute the gross profit (sales minus cost of goods sold) and the gross profit ratio for 2019 assuming that Cast Iron purchased 28,000 units during the year.
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that Cast Iron purchased only 15,000 units.
3. Why does the number of units purchased affect your answers to the above requirements?
4. Repeat requirements 1 and 2 assuming that Cast Iron uses the FIFO inventory cost method rather than the LIFO method.
5. Why does the number of units purchased have no effect on your answers to requirements 1 and 2 when the FIFO method is used?

P 8-12

Integrating problem; inventories and accounts receivable; Chapters 7 and 8

• LO8-4, LO8-6, LO8-7

Inverness Steel Corporation is a producer of flat-rolled carbon, stainless and electrical steels, and tubular products. The company's income statement for the 2018 fiscal year reported the following information (\$ in millions):

Sales	\$6,255
Cost of goods sold	5,190



The company's balance sheets for 2018 and 2017 included the following information (\$ in millions):

	2018	2017
Current assets:		
Accounts receivable, net	\$703	\$583
Inventories	880	808

The statement of cash flows reported bad debt expense for 2018 of \$8 million. The summary of significant accounting policies included the following notes (\$ in millions):

Accounts Receivable (in part)

The allowance for uncollectible accounts was \$10 and \$7 at December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively. All sales are on credit.

Inventories

Inventories are valued at the lower of cost or market. The cost of the majority of inventories is measured using the last in, first out (LIFO) method. Other inventories are measured principally at average cost and consist mostly of foreign inventories and certain raw materials. If the entire inventory had been valued on an average cost basis, inventory would have been higher by \$480 and \$350 at the end of 2018 and 2017, respectively.

During 2018, 2017, and 2016, liquidation of LIFO layers generated income of \$6, \$7, and \$25, respectively.

Required:

Using the information provided:

- Determine the amount of accounts receivable Inverness wrote off during 2018.
- Calculate the amount of cash collected from customers during 2018.
- Calculate what cost of goods sold would have been for 2018 if the company had used average cost to value its entire inventory.
- Calculate the following ratios for 2018:
 - Receivables turnover ratio
 - Inventory turnover ratio
 - Gross profit ratio
- Explain briefly what caused the income generated by the liquidation of LIFO layers. Assuming an income tax rate of 35%, what was the effect of the liquidation of LIFO layers on cost of goods sold in 2018?

P 8-13

Dollar-value LIFO

• LO8-8



On January 1, 2018, the Taylor Company adopted the dollar-value LIFO method. The inventory value for its one inventory pool on this date was \$400,000. Inventory data for 2018 through 2020 are as follows:

Date	Ending Inventory at Year-End Costs	Cost Index
12/31/2018	\$441,000	1.05
12/31/2019	487,200	1.12
12/31/2020	510,000	1.20

Required:

Calculate Taylor's ending inventory for 2018, 2019, and 2020.

P 8-14

Dollar-value LIFO

• LO8-8

Kingston Company uses the dollar-value LIFO method of computing inventory. An external price index is used to convert ending inventory to base year. The company began operations on January 1, 2018, with an inventory of \$150,000. Year-end inventories at year-end costs and cost indexes for its one inventory pool were as follows:

Year Ended December 31	Ending Inventory at Year-End Costs	Cost Index (Relative to Base Year)
2018	\$200,000	1.08
2019	245,700	1.17
2020	235,980	1.14
2021	228,800	1.10

Required:

Calculate inventory amounts at the end of each year.

P 8-15

Dollar-value LIFO

● LO8-8

On January 1, 2018, Avondale Lumber adopted the dollar-value LIFO inventory method. The inventory value for its one inventory pool on this date was \$260,000. An internally generated cost index is used to convert ending inventory to base year. Year-end inventories at year-end costs and cost indexes for its one inventory pool were as follows:

Year Ended December 31	Inventory Year- End Costs	Cost Index (Relative to Base Year)
2018	\$340,000	1.02
2019	350,000	1.06
2020	400,000	1.07
2021	430,000	1.10

Required:

Calculate inventory amounts at the end of each year.

P 8-16

Dollar-value
LIFO; solving for
unknowns

● LO8-8



At the beginning of 2018, Quentin and Kopps (Q&K) adopted the dollar-value LIFO (DVL) inventory method. On that date the value of its one inventory pool was \$84,000. The company uses an internally generated cost index to convert ending inventory to base year. Inventory data for 2018 through 2021 are as follows:

Year Ended December 31	Ending Inventory at Year-End Costs	Ending Inventory at Base-Year Costs	Cost Index	Ending Inventory at DVL cost
2018	\$100,800	\$ 96,000	1.05	?
2019	136,800	?	1.14	?
2020	150,000	125,000	?	?
2021	?	?	1.25	\$133,710

Required:

Determine the missing amounts.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Judgment Case 8-1

Riding the
Merry-Go-Round

● LO8-7

Real World Financials

Merry-Go-Round Enterprises, the clothing retailer for dedicated followers of young men's and women's fashion, was looking natty as a company. It was March 1993, and the Joppa, Maryland-based outfit had just announced the acquisition of Chess King, a rival clothing chain, a move that would give it the biggest share of the young men's clothing market. Merry-Go-Round told brokerage firm analysts that the purchase would add \$13 million, or 15 cents a share, to profits for the year. So some Wall Street analysts raised their earnings estimates for Merry-Go-Round. The company's stock rose \$2.25, or 15 percent, to \$17 on the day of the Chess King news. Merry-Go-Round was hot—\$100 of its stock in January 1988 was worth \$804 five years later. In 1993 the chain owned 1,460 stores in 44 states, mostly under the Cignal, Chess King, and Merry-Go-Round names.

Merry-Go-Round's annual report for the fiscal year ended January 30, 1993, reported a 15% sales growth, to \$877.5 million from \$761.2 million. A portion of the company's balance sheet is reproduced below:

	Jan. 30, 1993	Feb. 1, 1992
Assets		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$40,115,000	\$29,781,000
Marketable securities	—	9,703
Receivables	6,466,000	6,195
Merchandise inventories	82,197,000	59,971,000

But Merry-Go-Round spun out. The company lost \$544,000 in the first six months of 1993, compared with earnings of \$13.5 million in the first half of 1992. In the fall of 1992, Leonard "Boogie" Weinglass, Merry-Go-Round's flamboyant founder and chairman who had started the company in 1968, boarded up his Merry-Go-Ranch in Aspen, Colorado, and returned to management after a 12-year hiatus. But the pony-tailed, shirtsleeved entrepreneur—the inspiration for the character Boogie in the movie *Diner*—couldn't save his company from bankruptcy. In January 1994, the company filed for Chapter 11 protection in Baltimore. Shares crumbled below \$3.

Required:

In retrospect, can you identify any advance warning at the date of the financial statements of the company's impending bankruptcy?

[Adapted from Jonathan Burton, "Due Diligence," *Worth*, June 1994, pp. 89–96.]

**Real World Case
8–2**

Physical quantities and costs included in inventory; Sport Chalet

● LO8–2

Real World Financials

Determining the physical quantity that should be included in inventory normally is a simple matter because that amount consists of items in the possession of the company. The cost of inventory includes all necessary expenditures to acquire the inventory and bring it to its desired *condition* and *location* for sale or for use in the manufacturing process.

Required:

1. Identify and describe the situations in which physical quantity included in inventory is more difficult than simply determining items in the possession of the company.
2. In addition to the direct acquisition costs such as the price paid and transportation costs to obtain inventory, what other expenditures might be necessary to bring the inventory to its desired condition and location?
3. Access EDGAR on the Internet. The web address is www.sec.gov. Search for **Sport Chalet Inc.**, a leading operator of full-service, specialty sporting goods stores in California and Nevada. Access the 10-K filing for the most recent fiscal year. Search or scroll to find the disclosure notes (footnotes). What costs does Sport Chalet include in its inventory?

**Judgment Case
8–3**

The specific identification inventory method; inventoriable costs

● LO8–3, LO8–4

Happlia Co. imports household appliances. Each model has many variations and each unit has an identification number. Happlia pays all costs for getting the goods from the port to its central warehouse in Des Moines. After repackaging, the goods are consigned to retailers. A retailer makes a sale, simultaneously buys the appliance from Happlia, and pays the balance due within one week.

To alleviate the overstocking of refrigerators at a Minneapolis retailer, some were reshipped to a Kansas City retailer where they were still held in inventory at December 31, 2018. Happlia paid the costs of this reshipment. Happlia uses the specific identification inventory costing method.

Required:

1. In regard to the specific identification inventory costing method:
 - a. Describe its key elements.
 - b. Discuss why it is appropriate for Happlia to use this method.
2. a. What general criteria should Happlia use to determine inventory carrying amounts at December 31, 2018?
b. Give four examples of costs included in these inventory carrying amounts.
3. What costs should be reported in Happlia's 2018 income statement? Ignore lower of cost or market considerations.

(AICPA adapted)

**Communication
Case 8–4**

LIFO versus FIFO

● LO8–4, LO8–5

You have just been hired as a consultant to Tangier Industries, a newly formed company. The company president, John Meeks, is seeking your advice as to the appropriate inventory method Tangier should use to value its inventory and cost of goods sold. Mr. Meeks has narrowed the choice to LIFO and FIFO. He has heard that LIFO might be better for tax purposes, but FIFO has certain advantages for financial reporting to investors and creditors. You have been told that the company will be profitable in its first year and for the foreseeable future.

Required:

Prepare a report for the president describing the factors that should be considered by Tangier in choosing between LIFO and FIFO.

**Communication
Case 8–5**

LIFO versus FIFO

● LO8–4, LO8–5

An accounting intern for a local CPA firm was reviewing the financial statements of a client in the electronics industry. The intern noticed that the client used the FIFO method of determining ending inventory and cost of goods sold. When she asked a colleague why the firm used FIFO instead of LIFO, she was told that the client used FIFO to minimize its income tax liability. This response puzzled the intern because she thought that LIFO would minimize income tax liability.

Required:

What would you tell the intern to resolve the confusion?

**Judgment Case
8–6**

Goods in transit

● LO8–2

At the end of 2018, the Biggie Company performed its annual physical inventory count. John Lawrence, the manager in charge of the physical count, was told that an additional \$22,000 in inventory that had been sold and was in transit to the customer should be included in the ending inventory balance. John was of the opinion that the merchandise shipped should be excluded from the ending inventory since Biggie was not in physical possession of the merchandise.

Required:

Discuss the situation and indicate why John's opinion might be incorrect.

Ethics Case 8-7

Profit
manipulation

● LO8-4

In 2017 the Moncrief Company purchased from Jim Lester the right to be the sole distributor in the western states of a product called Zelenex. In payment, Moncrief agreed to pay Lester 20% of the gross profit recognized from the sale of Zelenex in 2018.

Moncrief uses a periodic inventory system and the LIFO inventory method. Late in 2018, the following information is available concerning the inventory of Zelenex:

Beginning inventory, 1/1/2018 (10,000 units @ \$30)	\$ 300,000
Purchases (40,000 units @ \$30)	1,200,000
Sales (35,000 units @ \$60)	2,100,000

By the end of the year, the purchase price of Zelenex had risen to \$40 per unit. On December 28, 2018, three days before year-end, Moncrief is in a position to purchase 20,000 additional units of Zelenex at the \$40 per unit price. Due to the increase in purchase price, Moncrief will increase the selling price in 2019 to \$80 per unit. Inventory on hand before the purchase, 15,000 units, is sufficient to meet the next six months' sales and the company does not anticipate any significant changes in purchase price during 2019.

Required:

1. Determine the effect of the purchase of the additional 20,000 units on the 2018 gross profit from the sale of Zelenex and the payment due to Jim Lester.
2. Discuss the ethical dilemma Moncrief faces in determining whether or not the additional units should be purchased.

Real World Case 8-8

Effects of
inventory
valuation
methods;
supplemental
LIFO disclosures;
Wolverine World
Wide, Inc.

● LO8-4, LO8-6

Income statement and balance sheet information abstracted from a recent annual report of **Wolverine World Wide, Inc.** appears below:

Balance Sheets (\$ in millions)		
	January 2, 2016	January 3, 2015
Current assets:		
Inventories	\$466.6	\$414.0
Income Statements (\$ in millions)		
	For the Year Ended	
	January 2, 2016	January 3, 2015
Net sales	\$2,691.6	\$2,761.1
Cost of goods sold	1,636.9	1,673.8
Gross profit	\$1,054.7	\$1,087.3

The significant accounting policies note disclosure contained the following:

Inventories

The Company used the LIFO method to value inventories. If the FIFO method had been used, inventories would have been \$27.0 million and \$25.1 million higher than reported at January 2, 2016 and January 3, 2015, respectively.

Required:

1. Why is Wolverine disclosing the FIFO cost of its LIFO inventory?
2. Calculate what beginning inventory and ending inventory would have been for the year ended January 2, 2016, if Wolverine had used FIFO for all of its inventories.
3. Calculate what cost of goods sold would have been for the year ended January 2, 2016, if Wolverine had used FIFO for all of its inventories.

Real World Case 8-9

Effects of
inventory valuation
methods; Whole
Foods Market

● LO8-4, LO8-5,
LO8-7

EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, performs automated collection, validation, indexing, and forwarding of submission by companies and others who are required by law to file forms with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR to make the majority of their filings. (Some foreign companies file voluntarily.) Form 10-K, which includes the annual report, is required to be filed on EDGAR. The SEC makes this information available on the Internet.

Required:

1. Access EDGAR on the Internet. The web address is www.sec.gov.
2. Search for **Whole Foods Market, Inc.** Access the 10-K filing for the most recent fiscal year. Search or scroll to find the financial statements and related notes.

Real World Financials

3. Answer the following questions related to the company's inventories:
 - a. What method(s) does the company use to value its inventories?
 - b. Calculate what cost of sales would have been for the year if the company had used FIFO to value its inventories.
 - c. Calculate inventory turnover for the year using the reported numbers.

Communication Case 8–10

Dollar-value LIFO method

● LO8–8

Maxi Corporation uses the unit LIFO inventory method. The costs of the company's products have been steadily rising since the company began operations in 2008 and cost increases are expected to continue. The chief financial officer of the company would like to continue using LIFO because of its tax advantages. However, the controller, Sally Hamel, would like to reduce the recordkeeping costs of LIFO that have steadily increased over the years as new products have been added to the company's product line. Sally suggested the use of the dollar-value LIFO method. The chief financial officer has asked Sally to describe the dollar-value LIFO procedure.

Required:

Describe the dollar-value LIFO procedure.

Research Case 8–11

FASB codification; locate and extract relevant information and authoritative support for a financial reporting issue; product financing arrangement

● LO8–2, LO8–3

You were recently hired to work in the controller's office of the Balboa Lumber Company. Your boss, Alfred Eagleton, took you to lunch during your first week and asked a favor. "Things have been a little slow lately, and we need to borrow a little cash to tide us over. Our inventory has been building up and the CFO wants to pledge the inventory as collateral for a short-term loan. But I have a better idea." Mr. Eagleton went on to describe his plan. "On July 1, 2018, the first day of the company's third quarter, we will sell \$100,000 of inventory to the Harbaugh Corporation for \$160,000. Harbaugh will pay us immediately and then we will agree to repurchase the merchandise in two months for \$164,000. The \$4,000 is Harbaugh's fee for holding the inventory and for providing financing. I already checked with Harbaugh's controller and he has agreed to the arrangement. Not only will we obtain the financing we need, but the third quarter's before-tax profits will be increased by \$56,000, the gross profit on the sale less the \$4,000 fee. Go research the issue and make sure we would not be violating any specific accounting standards related to product financing arrangements."

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on product financing arrangements using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*. You might gain access at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). What is the specific citation that provides guidance for determining whether an arrangement involving the sale of inventory is "in substance" a financing arrangement?
2. What is the specific citation that addresses the recognition of a product financing arrangement?
3. Determine the appropriate treatment of product financing arrangements like the one proposed by Mr. Eagleton.
4. Prepare the journal entry for Balboa Lumber to record the "sale" of the inventory and subsequent repurchase.

Analysis Case 8–12

Compare inventory management using ratios; Kohl's and Dillards

● LO8–7

The table below contains selected financial information included in the 2016 financial statements of **Kohl's Corporation** and **Dillards, Inc.**, two companies in the department store industry.

	(\$ in millions)			
	Kohl's Corp.		Dillards, Inc.	
	2016	2015	2016	2015
Balance sheet:				
Inventories	\$ 4,038	\$3,814	\$1,375	\$1,374
Income statement—2016:				
Net sales	\$19,204		\$6,755	
Cost of goods sold	12,265		4,351	

Required:

1. Calculate the 2016 gross profit ratio, inventory turnover ratio, and average days in inventory for both companies. Evaluate the management of each company's investment in inventory.
2. Obtain annual reports from three corporations in an industry other than department stores and compare the management of each company's investment in inventory.

Note: You can obtain copies of annual reports from your library, from friends who are shareholders, from the investor relations department of the corporations, from a friendly stockbroker, or from EDGAR (Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval) on the Internet (www.sec.gov).

Real World Financials

Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO8-1, LO8-4, LO8-7

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. What inventory method(s) does Target use to value its inventories?
2. In addition to the purchase price, what additional expenditures does the company include in the initial cost of merchandise?
3. Calculate the gross profit ratio and the inventory turnover ratio for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016. Compare Target's ratios with the industry averages of 24.5% and 7.1 times.

Air France-KLM Case



- LO8-9

Air France-KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

What method does the company use to value its inventory? What other alternatives are available under IFRS? Under U.S. GAAP?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

9

Inventories: Additional Issues

OVERVIEW

We covered most of the principal measurement and reporting issues involving the asset inventory and the corresponding expense cost of goods sold in the previous chapter. In this chapter, we complete our discussion of inventory measurement by explaining how inventories are measured at the end of the period. In addition, we investigate inventory estimation techniques, methods of simplifying LIFO, changes in inventory method, and inventory errors.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO9-1** Understand and apply rules for measurement of inventory at the end of the reporting period. (p. 465)
- **LO9-2** Estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold using the gross profit method. (p. 473)
- **LO9-3** Estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold using the retail inventory method, applying the various cost flow methods. (p. 475)
- **LO9-4** Explain how the retail inventory method can be made to approximate the lower of cost or market rule. (p. 478)
- **LO9-5** Determine ending inventory using the dollar-value LIFO retail inventory method. (p. 483)
- **LO9-6** Explain the appropriate accounting treatment required when a change in inventory method is made. (p. 486)
- **LO9-7** Explain the appropriate accounting treatment required when an inventory error is discovered. (p. 488)
- **LO9-8** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to the lower of cost or net realizable value rule for valuing inventory. (p. 468)



© Justin Sullivan/Getty Images

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Does It Count?

Today you drove over to **Dollar General** to pick up a few items. You recall from class yesterday that your accounting professor had discussed inventory measurement issues and the different methods (FIFO, LIFO, and average) used by companies to determine ending inventory and cost of goods sold. As of February 26, 2016, Dollar General had 12,575 store locations. You can't imagine actually counting the inventory in all

of the stores around the country. You consider that there must be some way Dollar General can avoid counting all of that inventory every time they want to produce financial statements. When you get home, you check their financial statements on the Internet to see what kind of inventory method they use. You find the following in the summary of significant accounting policies included in Dollar General's most recent financial statements:

Merchandise Inventories (in part):

Merchandise inventories are stated at the lower of cost or market ("LCM") with cost determined using the retail last in, first out ("LIFO") method. We use the retail inventory method ("RIM") to calculate gross profit and the resulting valuation of inventories at cost, which are computed utilizing a calculated cost-to-retail inventory ratio at an inventory department level. The RIM will result in valuing inventories at LCM if permanent markdowns are currently taken as a reduction of the retail value of inventories.

We perform an annual LIFO analysis whereby all merchandise units are considered for inclusion in the index formulation. An actual valuation of inventory under the LIFO method is made at the end of each year based on the inventory levels and costs at that time.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. How does Dollar General avoid counting all its inventory every time it produces financial statements? (p. 483)
2. What is the index formulation used for? (p. 483)

QUESTIONS

Subsequent Measurement of Inventory

As you would expect, companies hope to sell their inventory for more than its cost. Yet, this doesn't always happen. Sometimes circumstances arise after (or *subsequent* to) the purchase or production of inventory that indicate the company will have to sell its inventory for less than its cost. This might happen because of inventory damage, physical deterioration, obsolescence, changes in price levels, or any situation that lessens demand for the inventory. Consider, for example, the value of unsold electronics inventory when the next generation comes out, or the leftover clothing inventory at the end of the selling season. Usually, the only way these items can be sold is at deeply discounted prices (well-below their purchase cost).

GAAP requires that companies evaluate their unsold inventory at the end of each reporting period (for reasons mentioned above). When the expected benefit of unsold inventory is estimated to have fallen below its cost, companies must depart from the cost basis of reporting ending inventory; an adjusting entry is needed to reduce the reported amount of inventory and to reduce net income for the period. This end-of-period adjusting entry is known as an *inventory write-down*.

The two measurement approaches for recording an inventory write-down are listed in Illustration 9-1. The approach chosen by a company depends on which inventory costing

PART A

• LO9-1

An inventory write-down has the effect of reducing inventory and reducing net income.

method the company uses.¹ For companies that use a cost method other than LIFO or the retail inventory method, we report inventory at the *lower of cost or net realizable value*. For companies that use LIFO or the retail inventory method (discussed later in this chapter), we report inventory at the *lower of cost or market*.

Illustration 9-1

Subsequent Inventory Measurement

Measurement Approach	For Companies that Use	Financial Statement Effects of Inventory Write-Downs
1. Lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV)	FIFO, average cost, or any other method besides LIFO or the retail inventory method	a. Reduce reported inventory b. Reduce net income
2. Lower of cost or market (LCM)	LIFO or retail inventory method	a. Reduce reported inventory b. Reduce net income

For both measurement approaches, the financial statement effects of an inventory write-down are the same: (a) reduce reported inventory and (b) reduce net income. Both approaches have the same conceptual purpose of reporting inventory conservatively at the lower of two amounts. The difference between the two approaches is the measurement of the *amount* of the inventory write-down. We discuss those measurements next.²

Lower of Cost or Net Realizable Value (LCNRV)

Net realizable value (NRV) is the estimated selling price reduced by any costs of completion, disposal, and transportation.

Companies that use FIFO, average cost, or any other method besides LIFO or the retail inventory method report inventory using the **lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV)** approach. To do this, a company compares the inventory's cost to the inventory's net realizable value (NRV). NRV is the estimated selling price of the inventory in the ordinary course of business reduced by reasonably predictable costs of completion, disposal, and transportation (such as sales commissions and shipping costs).

Another way to think about NRV is that it's the *net* amount a company expects to *realize* (or collect in cash) from the sale of the inventory. Companies often estimate the "costs to sell" by applying a predetermined percentage to the selling price. For example, if the selling price of Product A is \$10 per unit, and the company estimates that sales commissions and shipping costs average approximately 10% of selling price, NRV would be \$9 [\$10 - (\$10 × 10%)].

After comparing cost and NRV, a company reports inventory at the lower of the two amounts.

When NRV is lower than cost, an inventory write down is recorded.

1. If NRV is lower than cost, we need an adjusting entry to reduce inventory from its already recorded purchase cost to the lower NRV. NRV then becomes the new carrying value of inventory reported in the balance sheet.
2. If cost is lower than NRV, no adjusting entry is needed. Inventory already is recorded at cost at the time it was purchased, and this cost is lower than total NRV at the end of the period.

The LCNRV approach avoids reporting inventory at an amount greater than the cash it can provide to the company. Reporting inventories this way causes income to be reduced in the period the value of inventory declines below its cost rather than in the period in which the goods ultimately are sold.³

¹FASB ASC 330-10-35-1A through 35-1C: Inventory-Overall-Subsequent Measurement.

²Interestingly, the two approaches to subsequent measurement of inventory arose out of *Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2015-11*, which was part of the FASB's Simplification Initiative aimed at *reducing* reporting complexity. However, *ASU 2015-11* *increases* the number of subsequent measurement approaches. Prior to *ASU 2015-11*, all companies reported inventory using a single approach - the lower of cost or market. Some may argue that the introduction of a second approach increases reporting complexity.

³In other words, if the inventory was not written down to NRV (and instead remained at cost) at the end of the current period, the full cost amount would become cost of goods sold and thus reduce net income when the inventory is sold in a subsequent period.

Applying Lower of Cost or Net Realizable Value

For financial reporting purposes, LCNRV can be applied (a) to individual inventory items, (b) to major categories of inventory, or (c) to the entire inventory.⁴ Illustration 9–2 demonstrates the LCNRV approach with each of the three possible applications.

The LCNRV rule can be applied to individual inventory items, major inventory categories, or the entire inventory.

Illustration 9–2

Lower of Cost or Net Realizable Value—Application at Different Levels of Aggregation

The Collins Company has five inventory items on hand at the end of the year. The year-end cost (determined by applying the FIFO cost method) and net realizable value (current selling prices less costs of completion, disposal, and transportation) for each of the items are presented below.

Items A and B are a collection of similar items, and items C, D, and E are another collection of similar items. Each collection can be considered a category of inventory.

Item	Cost	NRV	Lower of Cost or NRV		
			By Individual Items	By Category	By Total Inventory
A	\$ 50,000	\$ 85,000	\$ 50,000		
B	100,000	90,000	90,000		
Total A and B	\$150,000	\$175,000		\$150,000	
C	\$ 80,000	\$ 75,000	75,000		
D	90,000	85,000	85,000		
E	95,000	96,000	95,000		
Total C, D, and E	\$265,000	\$256,000		256,000	
Total	\$415,000	\$431,000	\$395,000	\$406,000	\$415,000

If we first consider LCNRV *by individual items*, we see that cost is lower than NRV for items A and E (see “By Individual Items” column). These inventory items were initially recorded at cost at the time of purchase. So, under the LCNRV approach, they are currently recorded at their proper amounts. No adjustment is needed. However, for items B, C, and D, we see that NRV is below cost. Therefore, we need to adjust the carrying value of these items downward and report them at NRV in the balance sheet. After determining the lower of cost or NRV for each individual item, the total amount to report for inventory is **\$395,000**.

Now let’s see what happens if we apply the LCNRV approach *by inventory category* (see “By Category” column). The first category of inventory (items A and B) has a combined cost of \$150,000 and a combined NRV of \$175,000, so we report this second inventory group at its cost of \$150,000. For the second category (items C, D, and E), the combined NRV (\$256,000) is lower than the combined cost (\$265,000), so we report this second inventory group at its NRV of \$256,000. We report inventory at **\$406,000** (\$150,000 + \$256,000).

Finally, if we apply the LCNRV approach *by total inventory*, we see that inventory’s total cost (\$415,000) is lower than its total NRV (\$431,000). Inventory would be reported at its cost of **\$415,000**.

As shown in this illustration, applying the LCNRV rule to groups of inventory items will cause a higher inventory valuation than if applied on an item-by-item basis. The reason is that group application permits increases in the net realizable value of some items to offset decreases in others. Each approach is acceptable but should be applied consistently from one period to another.

⁴FASB ASC 330–10–35–8: Inventory—Overall—Subsequent Measurement. In addition, for income tax purposes, the rule must be applied on an individual item basis.

Ethical Dilemma



The Hartley Company, owned and operated by Bill Hartley, manufactures and sells high-end ergonomic office chairs and custom bookshelves. The company has reported profits in the majority of years since the company's inception in 1975 and is projecting a profit in 2018 of \$65,000, down from \$96,000 in 2017.

Near the end of 2018, the company is in the process of applying for a bank loan. The loan proceeds will be used to replace manufacturing equipment to modernize the manufacturing operation. In preparing the financial statements for the year, the chief accountant, Don Davis, mentioned to Bill Hartley that net realizable value (NRV) of the bookshelf inventory is below its cost by \$40,000 and should be written off in 2018. However, no write-off is necessary for office chairs because their NRV is \$50,000 above cost.

Bill is worried that the write-down would lower 2018 income to a level that might cause the bank to refuse the loan. Without the loan, it would be difficult for the company to compete. This could decrease future business, and employees might have to be laid off. Bill suggests to Don that the company combine the office chairs and bookshelves into a single inventory category (office furniture) for reporting purposes, so that the combined NRV is above the combined cost. In this case, no inventory write-down would be needed. The company has not previously combined these inventory items and has no stated policy on the matter. Don is contemplating his responsibilities in this situation.

Adjusting Cost to Net Realizable Value

When NRV is below cost, companies are required to write down inventory to the lower NRV. This is accomplished in one of two ways depending on the nature of the decline in inventory value. These write-downs usually are included in cost of goods sold because they are a natural consequence of holding inventory and therefore part of the inventory's cost. However, when a write-down is substantial and unusual, the write-down should be recorded in a loss account instead. That loss must be expressly disclosed in the financial statements. This could be accomplished with a disclosure note alone or by also reporting the loss in a separate line of the income statement, usually among operating expenses.

Referring back to Illustration 9–2, assume that we report inventory using the LCNRV approach by individual items. The recorded cost of inventory (\$415,000) needs to be written down to its NRV (**\$395,000**) at the end of the period. The amount of the reduction is \$20,000. The period-end adjusting entry would be one of the following, depending on whether the inventory write-down is usual (cost of goods sold) or unusual (loss):

Inventory	
415,000	
	20,000
395,000	

Cost of goods sold.....	20,000		Loss on write-down of inventory ...	20,000		
Inventory*		20,000	or	Inventory*		20,000

*Or, inventory can be reduced indirectly with a credit to an allowance account.

*Or, inventory can be reduced indirectly with a credit to an allowance account.

Regardless of which entry we use to report the write-down, the reduced inventory amount becomes the new cost basis for subsequent reporting. If the inventory value later increases prior to its sale, we do not write it back up.⁵

⁵The SEC, in *Staff Accounting Bulletin* No. 100, "Restructuring and Impairment Charges" (Washington, D.C.: SEC, November, 1999), paragraph B.B., (FASB ASC 330–10–S35–1: SAB Topic 5.BB), reaffirmed the provisions of GAAP literature on this issue. For interim reporting purposes, however, recoveries of losses on the same inventory in subsequent interim periods of the same fiscal year through market price recoveries should be recognized as gains in the later interim period, not to exceed the previously recognized losses.

International Financial Reporting Standards



Lower of cost or net realizable value. You just learned that in the United States some companies report inventory at the *lower of cost or net realizable value*. This is the same approach used under IFRS. However, there are some differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS in the application of lower of cost or net realizable value.

First, *IAS No. 2* specifies that if circumstances indicate that an inventory write-down is no longer appropriate, it must be reversed.⁶ Reversals are not permitted under U.S. GAAP.

Second, under U.S. GAAP, the lower of cost or net realizable value rule can be applied to individual items, inventory categories, or the entire inventory. Under the international standard, the assessment usually is applied to individual items, although using inventory categories is allowed under certain circumstances.

Siemens AG, a German electronics and electrical engineering company, prepares its financial statements according to IFRS. The following disclosure note illustrates the valuation of inventory at the lower of cost or net realizable value.

Inventories (in part)

Inventory is valued at the lower of acquisition or production cost and net realizable value, cost being generally determined on the basis of an average or first-in, first-out method.

● LO9-8

Concept Review Exercise

The Strand Company sells four products that can be grouped into two major categories and employs the FIFO cost method. Information needed to apply the lower of cost or NRV (LCNRV) rule on December 31, 2018 (end of the period), for each of the four products is presented below. Sales commissions and transportation costs average 10% of selling price. Inventory write-downs are a normal occurrence for Strand.

**LOWER OF
COST OR NET
REALIZABLE VALUE**

Product	Cost	Selling Price
101	\$120,000	\$160,000
102	175,000	180,000
201	160,000	160,000
202	45,000	60,000

Products 101 and 102 are in category A, and products 201 and 202 are in category B.

Required:

Determine the reported amount of ending inventory and record any necessary year-end adjusting entry to write down inventory, applying the LCNRV approach to the following:

1. Individual items
2. Major categories
3. Total inventory

Solution:

Determine the reported amount of ending inventory and record any necessary year-end adjusting entry to write down inventory, applying the LCNRV approach.

⁶"Inventories," *International Accounting Standard No. 2* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

Product	Cost	NRV*	Lower of Cost or NRV		
			By Individual Products	By Category	By Total Inventory
101	\$120,000	\$144,000	\$120,000		
102	175,000	162,000	162,000		
Total 101 + 102	\$295,000	\$306,000		\$295,000	
201	\$160,000	\$144,000	144,000		
202	45,000	54,000	45,000		
Total 201 + 202	\$205,000	\$198,000		198,000	
Total	\$500,000	\$504,000	\$471,000	\$493,000	\$500,000

*NRV = Selling price less costs to sell. For product 101, $\$160,000 - (\$160,000 \times 10\%) = \$144,000$.

The NRV for both the individual product and category applications are lower than cost so inventory write-downs are needed. On the other hand, cost is lower than NRV at the total inventory level, so no adjustment would be needed.

1. Individual items

Reported ending inventory = \$471,000 (NRV)

December 31, 2018

Cost of goods sold [†]	29,000*	
Inventory.....		29,000
* $\$500,000$ (recorded cost) – $\$471,000$ (NRV)		

2. Major categories

Reported ending inventory = \$493,000 (NRV)

December 31, 2018

Cost of goods sold [†]	7,000*	
Inventory.....		7,000
* $\$500,000$ (recorded cost) – $\$493,000$ (NRV)		

[†]For the two entries above, we record the adjustment to the cost of goods sold account because the inventory write-down is considered usual. If the write-down had been unusual, we record the adjustment to a Loss account.

3. Total inventory

Reported ending inventory = \$500,000 (Cost)

Because inventory already is recorded at cost as of December 31, 2018, and because total cost is lower than total NRV (\$504,000), no year-end adjustment is needed.

Additional Consideration

Critics of reporting inventory lower than its cost contend that this causes losses to be recognized that haven't actually occurred. Others maintain that it introduces needless inconsistency in order to be conservative, because decreases in value are recognized as they occur, but not increases. As you learned in Chapter 1, conservatism is not part of the conceptual framework. So, why not record increases as well? Recall the revenue recognition guidance we discussed in Chapter 5. Recognizing increases in the value of inventory prior to sale would, in most cases, result in premature revenue recognition, because the seller would be acting as if it had satisfied a performance obligation (selling inventory) before that actually occurred. For example, let's say that merchandise costing \$100 now has a net realizable value of \$150. Recognizing a gain for the increase in value would increase pretax income by \$50. This is equivalent to recognizing revenue of \$150, cost of goods sold of \$100, and gross profit of \$50. The effect is to increase pretax income in a period prior to sale of the product. That's not allowed.

Lower of Cost or Market (LCM)

Companies that use LIFO or the retail inventory method report inventory using the **lower of cost or market** (LCM) approach. You might interpret the term *market* to mean the amount that could be realized if the inventory were sold. This would be similar to the concept of *net realizable value* discussed above. However, market is defined differently.

Market is the inventory's current replacement cost (by purchase or reproduction) except that:

1. Market should not be greater than the net realizable value (this forms a "ceiling" on market), and
2. Market should not be less than net realizable value reduced by an allowance for an approximately normal profit margin (this forms a "floor" on market).

In effect, we have a ceiling and a floor between which market (that is, replacement cost) must fall. If replacement cost is between the ceiling and the floor, it represents market; if replacement cost is above the ceiling or below the floor, the ceiling or the floor becomes market. The designated market amount is compared with cost, and the lower of the two is used to value inventory.

To see an example, let's look at Illustration 9–3. In the top part of the illustration, we calculate the ceiling and the floor. In the bottom part, we calculate LCM.

Market is current replacement cost, but not above the ceiling or below the floor.

The Collins Company has five inventory items on hand at the end of the year. The year-end selling prices, and estimated costs of completion, disposal, and transportation (selling costs) for each of the items are given below. The normal gross profit ratio for each of the products is 20% of selling price. These amounts are used to calculate the ceiling and floor as follows:

Item	Selling Price	Estimated Selling Costs	NRV [Ceiling]*	Normal Profit Margin (20% of Selling Price)	NRV – NPM [Floor]†
A	\$100,000	\$15,000	\$85,000	\$20,000	\$65,000
B	120,000	30,000	90,000	24,000	66,000
C	90,000	15,000	75,000	18,000	57,000
D	100,000	15,000	85,000	20,000	65,000
E	110,000	14,000	96,000	22,000	74,000

Additional information related to year-end inventory cost (determined by applying the LIFO cost method) and replacement cost are given in the first two columns. Determination of LCM is a two-step process: (1) calculate the market amount using replacement cost, subject to a ceiling and floor, and (2) select the lower of cost or market.

Item	Market					LCM [Lower of (1) or (5)]
	(1) Cost	(2) Replacement Cost	(3) NRV [Ceiling]	(4) NRV – NPM [Floor]	(5) Market [Middle of (2), (3), (4)]	
A	\$ 50,000	\$55,000	\$85,000	\$65,000	\$65,000	\$ 50,000
B	100,000	97,000	90,000	66,000	90,000	90,000
C	80,000	70,000	75,000	57,000	70,000	70,000
D	90,000	95,000	85,000	65,000	85,000	85,000
E	95,000	92,000	96,000	74,000	92,000	92,000
Total	<u>\$415,000</u>					<u>\$387,000</u>

*NRV = Estimated selling price less estimated selling costs. For item A, \$100,000 – \$15,000 = \$85,000.

†NRV – NPM = NRV less a normal profit margin. For item A, \$85,000 – (\$100,000 selling price × 20%) = \$65,000.

Illustration 9–3

Lower of Cost or Market (LCM)

Notice the market amount for each inventory item is simply the middle value among replacement cost, NRV (ceiling), and NRV – NPM (floor). When replacement cost is:

- Below the floor* (item A), we select the floor as the market.
- Above the ceiling* (items B and D), we select the ceiling as the market.
- Between the ceiling and the floor* (items C and E), we select replacement cost as the market.

We then compare each item's designated market amount to its cost and choose the lower of the two. After doing this, ending inventory under LCM is **\$387,000**. This means that the recorded cost of \$415,000 needs to be reduced by \$28,000 (\$415,000 – \$387,000). We record that adjustment to cost of goods sold if the decrease to market is considered normal for this company. Otherwise, the reduction is recorded as a loss.

Inventory	
415,000	
	28,000
387,000	

Cost of goods sold.....	28,000	Loss on write-down of inventory ...	28,000
Inventory*	28,000	or Inventory*	28,000

*Or, inventory can be reduced indirectly with a credit to an allowance account.

The example in Illustration 9–3 calculates LCM on an individual items basis. The LCM method also can be applied to major categories of inventory or to the entire inventory, just like we saw in Illustration 9–2 under the LCNRV approach. As shown in Illustration 9–3A, inventory using the LCM approach applied *by category* would be reported as **\$397,000**. If we calculate LCM *by total inventory*, the amount to report for ending inventory would be **\$402,000**.

Illustration 9–3A

Lower of Cost or Market—
Application at Different
Levels of Aggregation

From the information in Illustration 9–3, also assume items A and B are a collection of similar items, and items C, D, and E are another collection of similar items. Each collection can be considered a category of inventory.

Item	Cost	Market	Lower of Cost or Market		
			By Individual Items	By Category	By Total Inventory
A	\$ 50,000	\$ 65,000	\$ 50,000		
B	100,000	90,000	90,000		
Total A and B	<u>\$150,000</u>	<u>\$155,000</u>		\$ 150,000	
C	\$ 80,000	\$ 70,000	70,000		
D	90,000	85,000	85,000		
E	95,000	92,000	92,000		
Total C, D, and E	<u>\$265,000</u>	<u>\$247,000</u>		247,000	
Total	<u><u>\$415,000</u></u>	<u><u>\$402,000</u></u>	<u><u>\$387,000</u></u>	<u><u>\$397,000</u></u>	<u><u>\$402,000</u></u>

PART B

Inventory Estimation Techniques

For some companies or in certain situations, it becomes difficult or impossible to physically count each unit of inventory. For example, consider a large retail company that has locations over the entire nation and sells many different items. Trying to track the cost of each item would be nearly impossible. In these situations, companies have developed methods for estimating inventory. We'll study those methods next.

The Gross Profit Method

The **gross profit method**, also known as the **gross margin method**, is useful in situations where estimates of inventory are desirable. The technique is valuable in a variety of situations, including the following:

1. In determining the cost of inventory that has been lost, destroyed, or stolen
2. In estimating inventory and cost of goods sold for interim reports, avoiding the expense of a physical inventory count
3. In auditors' testing of the overall reasonableness of inventory amounts reported by clients
4. In budgeting and forecasting

● LO9-2

The technique relies on a relationship you learned in the previous chapter—ending inventory and cost of goods sold always equal the cost of goods available for sale. Even when inventory is unknown, we can estimate it because accounting records usually indicate the cost of goods available for sale (beginning inventory plus net purchases), and the cost of goods sold can be estimated from available information. So by subtracting the cost of goods sold estimate from the cost of goods available for sale, we obtain an estimate of ending inventory. Let's compare that with the way inventory and cost of goods sold normally are determined.

Usually, in a periodic inventory system, ending inventory is known from a physical count and cost of goods sold is *derived* as follows:

Beginning inventory	(from the accounting records)
Plus: Net purchases	(from the accounting records)
<hr/> Goods available for sale	
Less: Ending inventory	(from a physical count)
<hr/> Cost of goods sold	

However, when using the gross profit method, the ending inventory is *not* known. Instead, the amount of sales is known—from which we can estimate the cost of goods sold—and ending inventory is the amount calculated.

Beginning inventory	(from the accounting records)
Plus: Net purchases	(from the accounting records)
<hr/> Goods available for sale	
Less: Cost of goods sold	(estimated)
<hr/> Ending inventory	(estimated)

So, a first step in estimating inventory is to estimate cost of goods sold. This estimate relies on the historical relationship among (a) net sales, (b) cost of goods sold, and (c) gross profit. Gross profit, you will recall, is simply net sales minus cost of goods sold. So, if we know what net sales are, and if we know what percentage of net sales the gross profit is, we can fairly accurately estimate cost of goods sold. Companies often sell products that have similar gross profit ratios. As a result, accounting records usually provide the information necessary to estimate the cost of ending inventory, even when a physical count is impractical.

Suppose a company began 2018 with inventory of **\$600,000**, and on March 17 a warehouse fire destroyed the entire inventory. Company records indicate net purchases of **\$1,500,000** and net sales of **\$2,000,000** prior to the fire. The gross profit ratio in each of the previous three years has been very close to 40%. Illustration 9-4 shows how the company can estimate the cost of the inventory destroyed for its insurance claim.

A Word of Caution

The gross profit method provides only an estimate. The key to obtaining good estimates is the reliability of the gross profit ratio. The ratio usually is estimated from relationships between sales and cost of goods sold. However, the current relationship may differ from the past. In that case, all available information should be used to make necessary adjustments. For example, the company may have made changes in the markup percentage of some of its

The key to obtaining good estimates is the reliability of the gross profit ratio.

Illustration 9-4

Gross Profit Method

Beginning inventory (from records)		\$ 600,000
Plus: Net purchases (from records)		<u>1,500,000</u>
Goods available for sale		2,100,000
Less: Cost of goods sold:		
Net sales	\$2,000,000	
Less: Estimated gross profit of 40%	<u>(800,000)</u>	
Estimated cost of goods sold*		<u>(1,200,000)</u>
Estimated ending inventory		<u>\$ 900,000</u>

*Alternatively, cost of goods sold can be calculated as $\$2,000,000 \times (1 - 0.40) = \$1,200,000$.

products. Very often different products have different markups. In these situations, a blanket ratio should not be applied across the board. The accuracy of the estimate can be improved by grouping inventory into pools of products that have similar gross profit relationships rather than using one gross profit ratio for the entire inventory.

The company's cost flow assumption should be implicitly considered when estimating the gross profit ratio. For example, if LIFO is used and the relationship between cost and selling price has changed for recent acquisitions, this would suggest a ratio different from one where the average cost method was used.

Another difficulty with the gross profit method is that it does not explicitly consider possible theft or spoilage of inventory. The method assumes that if the inventory was not sold, then it must be on hand at the end of the period. Suspected theft or spoilage would require an adjustment to estimates obtained using the gross profit method.

Because of these deficiencies, the gross profit method is not allowed under generally accepted accounting principles for annual financial statements. The method can be used for interim reports.

The gross profit method is not acceptable for the preparation of annual financial statements.

Additional Consideration

The gross profit ratio is, by definition, a percentage of sales. Sometimes, though, the gross profit is stated as a percentage of cost instead. In that case, it is referred to as the **markup on cost**. For instance, a 66% markup on cost is equivalent to a gross profit ratio of 40%.

Here's why:

A gross profit ratio of 40% can be formulated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Sales} &= \text{Cost} + \text{Gross profit} \\ 100\% &= 60\% + 40\%\end{aligned}$$

Now, expressing gross profit as a percentage of cost we get the following:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Gross profit \%} \div \text{Cost\%} &= \text{Gross profit as a \% of cost} \\ 40\% \div 60\% &= 66\frac{2}{3}\%\end{aligned}$$

Conversely, gross profit as a percentage of cost can be converted to gross profit as a percentage of sales (the gross profit ratio) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Gross profit as a \% of sales} &= \frac{\text{Gross profit as a \% of cost}}{1 + \text{Gross profit as a \% of cost}} \\ \frac{66\frac{2}{3}\%}{1 + 66\frac{2}{3}\%} &= 40\%\end{aligned}$$

Be careful to note which way the percentage is being stated. If stated as a markup on cost, it can be converted to the gross profit ratio, and the gross profit method can be applied the usual way.

The Retail Inventory Method

As the name implies, the retail inventory method is used by many retail companies such as **Target**, **Walmart**, **Sears Holding Corporation**, **J.C. Penney**, and **Macy's**. Certain retailers like auto dealers and jewelry stores, whose inventory consists of few, high-priced items, can economically use the specific identification inventory method. However, high-volume retailers selling many different items at low unit prices find the retail inventory method ideal. Its principal benefit is that a physical count of inventory is not required to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold.⁷

In its simplest form, the retail inventory method first estimates the amount of ending inventory (at retail) by subtracting sales (at retail) from goods available for sale (at retail). *Retail* amounts refer to current selling prices. Ending inventory (at retail) is then multiplied by the current **cost-to-retail percentage** to estimate ending inventory (at cost). The cost-to-retail percentage is found by dividing goods available for sale at *cost* by goods available for sale at *current selling price*.

Illustration 9–5 provides an example of the retail inventory method. It shows how Home Improvement Stores, Inc., can use the relation between its inventory's cost and retail to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold for the month of June.

LO9–3

The retail inventory method is used to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold.

Home Improvement Stores, Inc., uses a periodic inventory system and the retail inventory method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold. The following data are available from the company's records for the month of June:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 60,000	\$ 100,000
Plus: Net purchases	287,200	460,000
Goods available for sale	347,200	560,000
Cost-to-retail percentage: $\frac{\$347,200}{\$560,000} = 62\%$		
Less: Net sales		(400,000)
Estimated ending inventory at retail		\$160,000
Estimated ending inventory at cost (\$160,000 × 62%)	(99,200)	
Estimated cost of goods sold	\$248,000*	

*Goods available for sale (at cost) minus ending inventory (at cost)

Illustration 9–5

Retail Inventory Method—
Estimating ending
inventory and cost of
goods sold

Home Improvement Stores first estimates ending inventory at retail (**\$160,000**) by subtracting net sales from goods available for sale (at retail). Ending inventory at retail is multiplied by the cost-to-retail percentage (**62%**), which is found by dividing goods available for sale at *cost* by goods available for sale at *current selling price*. This multiplication leads to an estimate of ending inventory of **\$99,200**. This amount is subtracted from the cost of goods available for sale to estimate cost of goods sold of **\$248,000**.

The retail inventory method tends to provide a more accurate estimate than the gross profit method because it's based on the current relation between cost and selling prices rather than the historical gross profit ratio. This is one reason the retail inventory method is allowed for financial reporting purposes.

Another advantage of the retail inventory method is that different cost flow methods can be explicitly incorporated into the estimation technique. In other words, we can modify the application of the method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold using FIFO, LIFO, or average cost.

As shown in Illustration 9–6, **American Eagle Outfitters** uses the retail inventory method with average cost to value its inventory.

⁷The retail inventory method is acceptable for external financial reporting if the results of applying the method are sufficiently close to what would have been achieved using a more rigorous determination of the cost of ending inventory. Also, it's allowed by the Internal Revenue Service as a method that can be used to determine cost of goods sold for income tax purposes.

Illustration 9-6

Inventory Method
Disclosure—American
Eagle Outfitters
Real World Financials

Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (in part)*Merchandise Inventory*

Merchandise inventory is valued at the lower of average cost and net realizable value, utilizing the retail method.

Later in the chapter we illustrate average cost and LIFO with the retail inventory method. We do not illustrate the FIFO method with the retail inventory method because it is used infrequently in practice.

Like the gross profit method, the retail inventory method also can be used to estimate the cost of inventory lost, stolen, or destroyed; for testing the overall reasonableness of physical counts; in budgeting and forecasting as well as in generating information for interim financial statements. Even though the retail method provides fairly accurate estimates, a physical count of inventory usually is performed at least once a year to verify accuracy and detect spoilage, theft, and other irregularities.⁸

Retail Terminology

Our example above is simplified in that we implicitly assumed that the selling prices of beginning inventory and of merchandise purchased did not change from date of acquisition to the end of the period. This frequently is an unrealistic assumption. After the initial markup of inventory but before it has been sold, companies sometimes increase the selling price further (additional markup) or reduce the selling price (markdown). For applying the retail inventory method, we need to track the movement in the selling price until it is sold. The terms in Illustration 9-7 are associated with changing retail prices of merchandise inventory.

Changes in the selling prices must be included in the determination of ending inventory at retail.

Illustration 9-7

Terminology Used in
Applying the Retail Method

Initial markup	Original amount of markup from cost to selling price
Additional markup	Increase in selling price subsequent to initial markup
Markup cancellation	Elimination of an additional markup
Markdown	Reduction in selling price below the original selling price
Markdown cancellation	Elimination of a markdown

To illustrate, assume that a product purchased for \$6 is initially listed with a selling price of \$10 (that is, there is a \$4 initial markup). If the selling price is subsequently increased to \$12, the additional markup is \$2. If the selling price is then subsequently decreased to **\$10.50**, the markup cancellation is \$1.50. A markup cancellation reduces an additional markup but not below the original selling price. We refer to the net effect of additional markups and markup cancellations ($\$2.00 - \$1.50 = \$0.50$) as the **net markup**. Illustration 9-8A depicts these events.

Now, let's say the selling price of the product, purchased for \$6 and initially marked up to \$10, is reduced to \$7. The markdown is \$3. If the selling price is later increased to **\$8**, the markdown cancellation is \$1. A markdown cancellation reduces a markdown but not above the original selling price. We refer to the net effect of markdowns and markdown cancellations ($\$3 - \$1 = \$2$) as the **net markdown**. Illustration 9-8B depicts this possibility.

When applying the retail inventory method, *net markups and net markdowns must be included in the determination of ending inventory at retail*. We now continue our illustration of the retail inventory method, but expand it to incorporate markups and markdowns as well as to approximate cost by each of the alternative inventory cost flow methods.

Net markups and net markdowns are included in the retail column to determine ending inventory at retail.

⁸The retail inventory method also is allowable under IFRS. "Inventories," *International Accounting Standard No. 2 (IASCF)*, as amended effective January 1, 2016, par. 22.

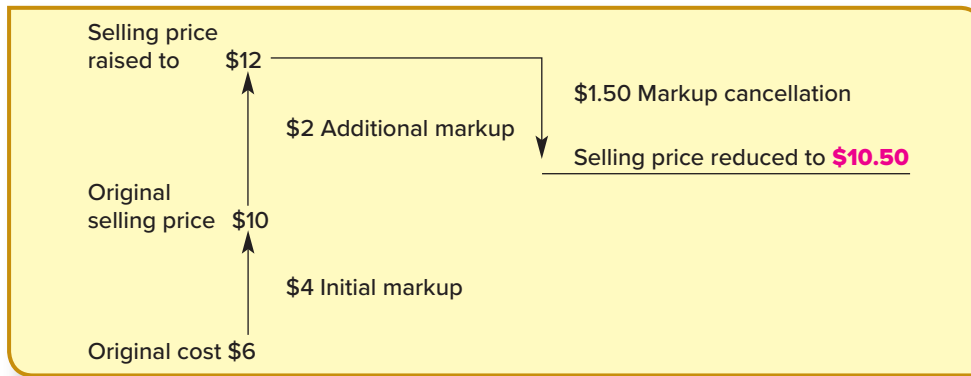
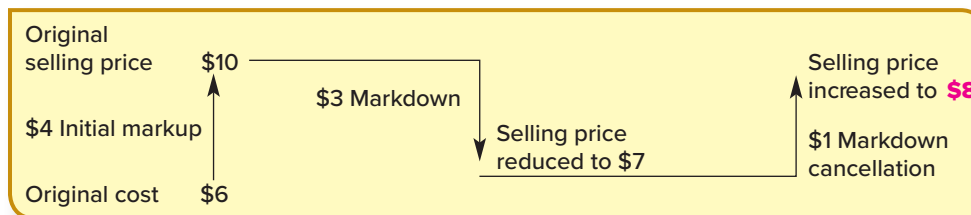


Illustration 9-8A

Retail Inventory Method Terminology

Illustration 9-8B

Retail Inventory Method Terminology



Cost Flow Methods

Let's continue our example of Home Improvement Stores, Inc., from Illustration 9-5. We'll use the data in Illustration 9-9 to see how the retail inventory method can be used to approximate different cost flow assumptions.

Home Improvement Stores, Inc., uses a periodic inventory system and the retail inventory method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold. The following data are available from the company's records for the month of July:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 99,200	\$160,000
Net purchases	305,280*	470,000**
Net markups		10,000
Net markdowns		8,000
Net sales		434,000†

*Purchases at cost less returns, plus freight-in.

**Original selling price of purchased goods less returns at retail.

†Gross sales less returns.

Illustration 9-9

The Retail Inventory Method—Various Cost Flow Methods

APPROXIMATING AVERAGE COST. Recall that the average cost method assumes that cost of goods sold and ending inventory each consist of a *mixture* of all the goods available for sale. So when we use the retail method to approximate average cost, the cost-to-retail percentage should be based on the weighted averages of the costs and retail amounts for *all* goods available for sale. This is achieved by calculating the cost-to-retail percentage by dividing the total cost of goods available for sale by total goods available for sale at retail. When this average percentage is applied to ending inventory at retail, we get an estimate of ending inventory at average cost.

We demonstrate the retail inventory method approximating average costs for July in Illustration 9-10. Notice that both markups and markdowns are included in the determination of goods available for sale at retail.

To approximate average cost, the cost-to-retail percentage is determined for *all* goods available for sale.

Illustration 9–10

Retail Inventory Method—
Average Cost

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 99,200	\$ 160,000
Plus: Net purchases	305,280	470,000
Net markups		10,000
Less: Net markdowns		(8,000)
Goods available for sale	404,480	632,000
Cost-to-retail percentage: $\frac{\$404,480}{\$632,000} = 64\%$		
Less: Net sales		(434,000)
Estimated ending inventory at retail		\$198,000
Estimated ending inventory at cost (\$198,000 × 64%)	(126,720)	
Estimated cost of goods sold	\$ 277,760	

If you look back to our simplified example for the month of June in Illustration 9–5, you’ll notice that we used this approach there. So, our ending inventory and cost of goods sold estimates for June were estimates of average cost.⁹

● LO9–4

APPROXIMATING AVERAGE LOWER OF COST OR MARKET—THE CONVENTIONAL RETAIL METHOD. Recall from our discussion earlier in the chapter that companies using the retail inventory method report inventory in the balance sheet at the lower of cost or market. Fortunately, we can apply the retail inventory method in such a way that the lower of average cost or market is approximated. This method often is referred to as the **conventional retail method**. We apply the method by *excluding markdowns from the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage*. Markdowns still are subtracted in the retail column but only after the percentage is calculated. To approximate lower of average cost or market, the retail method is modified as shown in Illustration 9–11.

To approximate the lower of average cost or market, markdowns are not included in the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage.

Illustration 9–11

Retail Inventory
Method—Conventional

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 99,200	\$ 160,000
Plus: Net purchases	305,280	470,000
Net markups		10,000
Goods available for sale (excluding net markdowns)	404,480	640,000
Cost-to-retail percentage: $\frac{\$404,480}{\$640,000} = 63.2\%$		
Less: Net markdowns		(8,000)
Goods available for sale (including net markdowns)		632,000
Less: Net sales		(434,000)
Estimated ending inventory at retail		\$198,000
Estimated ending inventory at cost (\$198,000 × 63.2%)	(125,136)	
Estimated cost of goods sold	\$ 279,344	

Notice that by not subtracting net markdowns from the denominator, the cost-to-retail percentage is lower than it was previously (63.2% versus 64%). This always will be the case when markdowns exist. As a result, the cost approximation of ending inventory always will be less when markdowns exist.

To understand why this lower amount approximates the lower of average cost or market, we need to realize that markdowns usually occur when obsolescence, spoilage, overstocking, price declines, or competition has lessened the utility of the merchandise. To recognize

The logic for using this approximation is that a markdown is evidence of a reduction in the utility of inventory.

⁹We also implicitly assumed no net markups or markdowns in Illustration 9–5.

this decline in utility in the period it occurs, we exclude net markdowns from the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage. It should be emphasized that this approach provides only an *approximation* of what ending inventory might be as opposed to applying the lower of cost or market rule in the more exact way described earlier in the chapter.

Also notice that the ending inventory at retail is the same using both approaches (\$198,000). This will be the case regardless of the cost flow method used because in all approaches this amount reflects the ending inventory at current retail prices.

The conventional retail variation generally is not used in combination with LIFO. This does not mean that a company using LIFO ignores the lower of cost or market rule. Any obsolete or slow-moving inventory that has not been marked down by year-end can be written down to market after the estimation of inventory using the retail method. This usually is not a significant problem. If prices are rising, LIFO ending inventory includes old lower-priced items whose costs are likely to be lower than current market. The conventional retail variation could be applied to the FIFO method.

THE LIFO RETAIL METHOD. The last-in, first-out (LIFO) method assumes that units sold are those most recently acquired. When there's a net increase in inventory quantity during a period, the use of LIFO results in ending inventory that includes the beginning inventory as well as one or more additional layers added during the period. When there's a net decrease in inventory quantity, LIFO layer(s) are liquidated. In applying LIFO to the retail method in the simplest way, we assume that the retail prices of goods remained stable during the period. This assumption, which is relaxed later in the chapter, allows us to look at the beginning and ending inventory in dollars to determine if inventory quantity has increased or decreased.

Assume retail prices remain stable.

We'll use the numbers from our previous example to illustrate using the retail method to approximate LIFO so we can compare the results with those of the conventional retail method. Recall that beginning inventory at retail is \$160,000 and ending inventory at retail is \$198,000. If we assume stable retail prices, inventory quantity must have increased during the year. This means ending inventory includes the beginning inventory layer of \$160,000 (\$99,200 at cost) as well as some additional merchandise purchased during the period. To estimate total ending inventory at LIFO cost, we also need to determine the inventory layer added during the period. When using the LIFO retail method, we assume no more than one inventory layer is added per period if inventory increases.¹⁰ Each layer will carry its own cost-to-retail percentage.

If inventory at retail increases during the year, a new layer is added.

Illustration 9–12 shows how Home Improvement Stores would estimate total ending inventory and cost of goods sold for the period using the LIFO retail method. The beginning inventory layer carries a cost-to-retail percentage of 62% ($\$99,200 \div \$160,000$). The layer of inventory added during the period is \$38,000 at retail, which is determined by subtracting beginning inventory at retail from ending inventory at retail ($\$198,000 - \$160,000$). This layer will be converted to cost by multiplying it by its own cost-to-retail percentage reflecting the *current* period's ratio of cost to retail amounts, in this case 64.68%.

The next period's (August's) beginning inventory will include the two distinct layers (June and July), each of which carries its own unique cost-to-retail percentage. Notice in the illustration that both net markups and net markdowns are included in the calculation of the current period's cost-to-retail percentage.

Other Issues Pertaining to the Retail Method

To focus on the key elements of the retail method, we've so far ignored some of the details of the retail process. Fundamental elements such as returns and allowances, discounts, freight, spoilage, and shortages can complicate the retail method.

Recall that net purchases is found by adding freight-in to purchases and subtracting both purchase returns and purchase discounts. When these components are considered separately in the retail method, purchase returns are deducted from purchases on both the cost and

¹⁰Of course, any number of layers at different costs can actually be added through the years. When using the regular LIFO method, rather than LIFO retail, we would keep track of each of those layers.

Illustration 9-12

LIFO Retail Method

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 99,200	\$160,000
Plus: Net purchases	305,280	470,000
Net markups		10,000
Less: Net markdowns		(8,000)
Goods available for sale (excluding beginning inventory)	305,280	472,000
Goods available for sale (including beginning inventory)	404,480	632,000
Beginning inventory cost-to-retail percentage:	$\frac{\$99,200}{\$160,000} = 62.00\%$	
July cost-to-retail percentage:	$\frac{\$305,280}{\$472,000} = 64.68\%$	
Less: Net sales		(434,000)
Estimated ending inventory at retail		\$198,000
Estimated ending inventory at cost (calculated below)	(123,778)	
Estimated cost of goods sold	\$280,702	

Calculation of ending inventory at cost:		
	Retail	Cost
Beginning inventory	\$160,000 × 62.00% =	\$ 99,200
Current period's layer	38,000 × 64.68% =	24,578
Estimated ending Inventory	\$198,000	\$123,778

Each layer has its own cost-to-retail percentage.

If sales are recorded net of employee discounts, the discounts are added to sales.

retail side (at different amounts) and freight-in is added only to the cost side in determining net purchases. If the gross method is used to record purchases, purchase discounts taken also are deducted in determining the cost of net purchases.

Likewise, net sales is determined by subtracting sales returns from sales. However, sales discounts are *not* subtracted because to do so would cause the inventory to be overstated. Sales discounts do not represent an adjustment in selling price but a financial incentive for customers to pay early. On the other hand, when sales are recorded net of employee discounts, the discounts are *added* to net sales before sales are deducted in the retail column.

For example, suppose an item of merchandise purchased for \$6 is initially marked up to \$10. Original selling price is therefore \$10. When the item is sold, we deduct sales of \$10 from the retail column. But if the item is sold to an employee for \$7 (a \$3 employee discount) and recorded as a \$7 sale, the \$3 employee discount must be added back to sales so the full \$10 is deducted from goods available at retail to arrive at ending inventory at retail.

We also need to consider spoilage, breakage, and theft. So far we've assumed that by subtracting goods sold from goods available for sale, we find ending inventory. It's possible, though, that some of the goods available for sale were lost to such shortages and therefore do not remain in ending inventory.

To take these shortages into account when using the retail method, we deduct the retail value of inventory lost due to spoilage, breakage, or theft in the retail column. These losses are expected for most retail ventures so they are referred to as *normal shortages* (spoilage, breakage, etc.), and are deducted in the retail column *after* the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage. Because these losses are anticipated, they are included implicitly in the determination of selling prices. Including normal spoilage in the calculation of the percentage would distort the normal relationship between cost and retail. *Abnormal shortages* should be deducted in both the cost and retail columns *before* the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage. These losses are not anticipated and are not included in the determination of selling prices.

Normal shortages are deducted in the retail column *after* the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage.

Abnormal shortages are deducted in both the cost and retail columns *before* the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage.

We recap the treatment of special elements in the application of the retail method in Illustration 9–13 and illustrate the use of some of them in the concept review exercise that follows.

Illustration 9–13

Recap of Other Retail Method Elements

Element	Treatment
Before calculating the cost-to-retail percentage:	
Freight-in	<i>Added</i> in the cost column.
Purchase returns	<i>Deducted</i> in both the cost and retail columns.
Purchase discounts taken (if gross method used to record purchases)	<i>Deducted</i> in the cost column.
Abnormal shortages (spoilage, breakage, theft)	<i>Deducted</i> in both the cost and retail columns.
After calculating the cost-to-retail percentage:	
Normal shortages (spoilage, breakage, theft)	<i>Deducted</i> in the retail column.
Employee discounts (if sales recorded net of discounts)	<i>Added</i> to net sales.

Concept Review Exercise

The Henderson Company uses the retail inventory method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold. The following data are available in Henderson's accounting records:

RETAIL INVENTORY METHOD

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 8,000	\$12,000
Purchases	68,000	98,000
Freight-in	3,200	
Purchase returns	3,000	4,200
Net markups		6,000
Net markdowns		2,400
Normal spoilage		1,800
Net sales		92,000

The company records sales net of employee discounts. These discounts totaled \$2,300.

Required:

1. Estimate Henderson's ending inventory and cost of goods sold for the year using the average cost retail method.
2. Estimate Henderson's ending inventory and cost of goods sold for the year using the conventional retail method.
3. Estimate Henderson's ending inventory and cost of goods sold for the year using the LIFO retail method.

Solution:

1. Estimate Henderson's ending inventory and cost of goods sold for the year using the average cost retail method.

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 8,000	\$ 12,000
Plus: Purchases	68,000	98,000
Freight-in	3,200	
Less: Purchase returns	(3,000)	(4,200)
Plus: Net markups		6,000
Less: Net markdowns		(2,400)
Goods available for sale	76,200	109,400
Cost-to-retail percentage:	$\frac{\$76,200}{\$109,400} = 69.65\%$	

(continued)

	Cost	Retail
Less: Normal spoilage		(1,800)
Sales:		
Net sales	\$92,000	
Add back employee discounts	<u>2,300</u>	<u>(94,300)</u>
Estimated ending inventory at retail		<u>\$ 13,300</u>
Estimated ending inventory at cost ($69.65\% \times \$13,300$)	<u>(9,263)</u>	
Estimated cost of goods sold	<u>\$66,937</u>	

2. Estimate Henderson's ending inventory and cost of goods sold for the year using the conventional retail method.

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 8,000	\$ 12,000
Plus: Purchases	68,000	98,000
Freight-in	3,200	
Less: Purchase returns	(3,000)	(4,200)
Plus: Net markups		<u>6,000</u>
		111,800
Cost-to-retail percentage: $\frac{\$76,200}{\$111,800} = 68.16\%$		
Less: Net markdowns		<u>(2,400)</u>
Goods available for sale	76,200	109,400
Less: Normal spoilage		(1,800)
Sales:		
Net sales	\$92,000	
Add back employee discounts	<u>2,300</u>	<u>(94,300)</u>
Estimated ending inventory at retail		<u>\$ 13,300</u>
Estimated ending inventory at cost ($68.16\% \times \$13,300$)	<u>(9,065)</u>	
Estimated cost of goods sold	<u>\$67,135</u>	

3. Estimate Henderson's ending inventory and cost of goods sold for the year using the LIFO retail method.

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 8,000	\$ 12,000
Plus: Purchases	68,000	98,000
Freight-in	3,200	
Less: Purchase returns	(3,000)	(4,200)
Plus: Net markups		6,000
Less: Net markdowns		<u>(2,400)</u>
Goods available for sale (excluding beginning inventory)	68,200	97,400
Goods available for sale (including beginning inventory)	76,200	109,400
Cost-to-retail percentage: $\frac{\$68,200}{\$97,400} = 70.02\%$		
Less: Normal spoilage		(1,800)
Sales:		
Net sales	\$92,000	
Add back employee discounts	<u>2,300</u>	<u>(94,300)</u>
Estimated ending inventory at retail		<u>\$ 13,300</u>
Estimated ending inventory at cost (see below)	<u>(8,910)</u>	
Estimated cost of goods sold	<u>\$67,290</u>	

	Retail	Cost
Beginning inventory	$\$12,000 \times 66.67\% =$	$\$8,000$
Current period's layer	$1,300 \times 70.02\% =$	910
Estimated Ending Inventory	<u>\$13,300</u>	<u>\$8,910</u>

* $\$8,000 \div \$12,000 = 66.67\%$

Dollar-Value LIFO Retail

In our earlier discussion of the LIFO retail method, we assumed that the retail prices of the inventory remained stable during the period. If you recall from Illustration 9–12, we compared the ending inventory (at retail) with the beginning inventory (at retail) to see if inventory had increased. If the dollar amount of ending inventory exceeded the beginning amount, we assumed a new LIFO layer had been added. But this isn't necessarily true. It may be that the dollar amount of ending inventory exceeded the beginning amount simply because retail prices increased, without an actual change in the quantity of goods. So, to see if there's been a "real" increase in quantity, we need a way to eliminate the effect of any price changes before we compare the ending inventory with the beginning inventory. Fortunately, we can accomplish this by combining two methods we've already discussed—the LIFO retail method (Part B of this chapter) and dollar-value LIFO (previous chapter). The combination is called the **dollar-value LIFO retail method**.

To illustrate, we return to the Home Improvement Stores situation (Illustration 9–12) in which we applied LIFO retail. We keep the same inventory data, but change the illustration from the month of July to the fiscal year 2018. This allows us to build into Illustration 9–12A a significant change in retail prices over the year of 10% (an increase in the retail price index from 1.00 to 1.10). We follow the LIFO retail procedure up to the point of comparing the ending inventory with the beginning inventory. However, because prices have risen, the apparent increase in inventory is only partly due to an additional layer of inventory and partly due to the increase in retail prices. The real increase is found by deflating the ending inventory amount to beginning of the year prices before comparing beginning and ending amounts. We did this with the dollar-value LIFO technique discussed in the previous chapter.¹¹

PART C

LO9–5

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 465

Allow for retail prices to change during the period.

Using the retail method

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 465

Illustration 9–12A

The Dollar-Value LIFO Retail Method

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 99,200	\$160,000
Plus: Net purchases	305,280	470,000
Net markups		10,000
Less: Net markdowns		(8,000)
Goods available for sale (excluding beginning inventory)	305,280	472,000
Goods available for sale (including beginning inventory)	404,480	632,000
Base layer cost-to-retail percentage: $\frac{\$99,200}{\$160,000} = 62\%$		
2018 layer cost-to-retail percentage: $\frac{\$305,280}{\$472,000} = 64.68\%$		
Less: Net sales		(434,000)
Ending inventory at current year retail prices		\$198,000
Estimated ending inventory at cost (calculated below)	(113,430)	
Estimated cost of goods sold	\$ 291,050	

Calculation of ending inventory at cost:

Ending Inventory at Year-End Retail Prices	Step 1 Ending Inventory at Base Year Retail Prices	Step 2 Inventory Layers at Base Year Retail Prices	Step 3 Inventory Layers Converted to LIFO Cost
\$198,000 (assumed) →	$\frac{\$198,000}{1.10} = \$180,000$ →	\$180,000	
		160,000 (base) × 1.00 × 0.62 = \$ 99,200	
		20,000 (2018) × 1.10 × 0.6468 = 14,230	
			\$113,430
Total ending inventory at dollar-value LIFO retail cost			

¹¹The index used here is analogous to the cost index used in regular DVL except that it reflects the change in retail prices rather than in acquisition costs.

Each layer year carries its unique retail price index and its unique cost-to-retail percentage.

In this illustration, the ending inventory (at retail) of **\$198,000** is restated to base year prices (\$180,000). Comparing this restated amount to beginning inventory layer of **\$160,000** reveals that a layer of **\$20,000** has been added in 2018. Multiplying each layer by its retail price index and by its cost-to-retail percentage converts it from retail to cost. The two layers are added to derive ending inventory at dollar-value LIFO retail cost.

When additional layers are added in subsequent years, their LIFO amounts are determined the same way. For illustration, let's assume ending inventory in 2019 is **\$226,200** at current retail prices and the price level has risen to **1.16**. Also assume that the cost-to-retail percentage for 2019 net purchases is 63%. In Illustration 9–12B, the ending inventory is converted to base year retail prices (step 1). This amount is apportioned into layers, each at base year retail prices (step 2). Layers then are converted to LIFO costs (step 3).

Illustration 9–12B

The Dollar-Value LIFO Retail Inventory Method

Ending Inventory at Year-End Retail Prices	Step 1 Ending Inventory at Base Year Retail Prices	Step 2 Inventory Layers at Base Year Retail Prices	Step 3 Inventory Layers Converted to LIFO Cost
\$226,200 (assumed)	$\frac{\$226,200}{1.16} = \$195,000$		
		160,000 (base) × 1.00 × 0.62	= \$ 99,200
		20,000 (2018) × 1.10 × 0.6468	= 14,230
		15,000 (2019) × 1.16 × 0.63	= 10,962
		Total ending inventory at dollar-value LIFO retail cost	<u><u>\$124,392</u></u>

Now, let's assume that ending inventory in 2019 is **\$204,160** at current retail prices (instead of \$226,200 as in the previous example) and the price level has risen to 1.16. Also assume that the cost-to-retail percentage for 2019 net purchases is 63%. Step 1 converts the ending inventory to a base year price of \$176,000 ($\$204,160 \div 1.16$).

Recall from the prior example that ending inventory in 2018 at base year prices was \$180,000 (see Illustration 9–12B). The decrease in ending inventory to \$176,000 at base year prices indicates that inventory *decreased* during 2019. In this case, no 2019 layer is added, and 2019 ending inventory at dollar-value LIFO retail of **\$110,584** is determined in Illustration 9–12C.

Illustration 9–12C

The Dollar-Value LIFO Retail Inventory Method

Ending Inventory at Year-End Retail Prices	Step 1 Ending Inventory at Base Year Retail Prices	Step 2 Inventory Layers at Base Year Retail Prices	Step 3 Inventory Layers Converted to LIFO Cost
\$204,160 (assumed)	$\frac{\$204,160}{1.16} = \$176,000$		
		160,000 (base) × 1.00 × 0.62	= \$99,200
		16,000 (2018) × 1.10 × 0.6468	= 11,384
		0 (no layer in 2019) × 1.16	= 0
		Total ending inventory at dollar-value LIFO retail cost	<u><u>\$110,584</u></u>

When inventory decreases, a layer is liquidated.

A portion of the 2018 inventory layer has been liquidated—reduced from \$20,000 to \$16,000 at base year prices—to reduce total inventory at base year prices to \$176,000.

As we mentioned earlier in this section, many high-volume retailers selling many different items use the retail method. **Costco Wholesale Corporation**, for example, uses the dollar-value LIFO variation of the retail method. Illustration 9–13 shows the inventory disclosure note included in the company's recent financial statements.

Merchandise Inventories (in part)

Merchandise inventories are valued at the lower of cost or market, as determined primarily by the retail inventory method, and are stated using the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method for substantially all U.S. merchandise inventories. The Company records an adjustment each quarter, if necessary, for the projected annual effect of inflation or deflation, and these estimates are adjusted to actual results determined at year-end, after actual inflation rates and inventory levels for the year have been determined.

Illustration 9–13

Disclosure of Inventory Method—Costco Wholesale Corporation
Real World Financials

Concept Review Exercise

On January 1, 2018, the Nicholson Department Store adopted the dollar-value LIFO retail inventory method. Inventory transactions at both cost and retail and cost indexes for 2018 and 2019 are as follows:

DOLLAR-VALUE LIFO RETAIL METHOD

	2018		2019	
	Cost	Retail	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$16,000	\$24,000		
Net purchases	42,000	58,500	\$45,000	\$58,700
Net markups		3,000		2,400
Net markdowns		1,500		1,100
Net sales		56,000		57,000
Price index:				
January 1, 2018		1.00		
December 31, 2018		1.08		
December 31, 2019		1.15		

Required:

Estimate the 2018 and 2019 ending inventory and cost of goods sold using the dollar-value LIFO retail inventory method.

Solution:

	2018		2019	
	Cost	Retail	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 16,000	\$ 24,000	\$ 17,456	\$ 28,000
Plus: Net purchases	42,000	58,500	45,000	58,700
Net markups		3,000		2,400
Less: Net markdowns		(1,500)		(1,100)
Goods available for sale (excluding beg. inv.)	42,000	60,000	45,000	60,000
Goods available for sale (including beg. inv.)	58,000	84,000	62,456	88,000
Base layer				
Cost-to-retail percentage: $\frac{\$16,000}{\$24,000} = 66.67\%$				
2018				
Cost-to-retail percentage: $\frac{\$42,000}{\$60,000} = 70.00\%$				
2019				
Cost-to-retail percentage: $\frac{\$45,000}{\$60,000} = 75.00\%$				
Less: Net sales		(56,000)		(57,000)
Estimated ending inv. at current year retail prices		\$ 28,000		\$ 31,000
Less: Estimated ending inventory at cost (below)	(17,456)		(18,345)	
Estimated cost of goods sold	\$ 40,544		\$ 44,111	

2018			
Ending Inventory at Year-End Retail Prices	Step 1 Ending Inventory at Base Year Retail Prices	Step 2 Inventory Layers at Base Year Retail Prices	Step 3 Inventory Layers Converted to Cost
\$28,000 (above)	$\frac{\$28,000}{1.08} = \$25,926$	$\$24,000 \text{ (base)} \times 1.00 \times 66.67\% =$ $1,926 \text{ (2018)} \times 1.08 \times 70.00\% =$	\$16,000 1,456
Total ending inventory at dollar-value LIFO retail cost			<u>\$17,456</u>
2019			
Ending Inventory at Year-End Retail Prices	Step 1 Ending Inventory at Base Year Retail Prices	Step 2 Inventory Layers at Base Year Retail Prices	Step 3 Inventory Layers Converted to Cost
\$31,000 (above)	$\frac{\$31,000}{1.15} = \$26,957$	$\$24,000 \text{ (base)} \times 1.00 \times 66.67\% =$ $1,926 \text{ (2018)} \times 1.08 \times 70.00\% =$ $1,031 \text{ (2019)} \times 1.15 \times 75.00\% =$	\$16,000 1,456 889
Total ending inventory at dollar-value LIFO retail cost			<u>\$18,345</u>

PART D

Change in Inventory Method and Inventory Errors

Change in Inventory Method

LO9-6

Accounting principles should be applied consistently from period to period to allow for comparability of operating results. However, changes within a company as well as changes in the external economic environment may require a company to change an accounting method. As we mentioned in Chapter 8, in the past, high inflation periods motivated many companies to switch to LIFO for the tax benefit.

Specific accounting treatment and disclosures are prescribed for companies that change accounting principles. Chapter 4 introduced the subject of accounting changes and Chapter 20 provides in-depth coverage of the topic. Here we provide an overview of how changes in inventory methods are reported.

Most Inventory Changes

Recall from our brief discussion in Chapter 4 that most voluntary changes in accounting principles are reported retrospectively. This means reporting all previous periods' financial statements as if the new method had been used in all prior periods. Changes in inventory methods, other than a change to LIFO, are treated this way. We discuss the *change to LIFO* exception in the next section. In Chapter 4, we briefly discussed the steps a company undertakes to account for a change in accounting principle. We demonstrate those steps in Illustration 9-14.

Changes in inventory methods, other than a change to LIFO, are accounted for retrospectively.

Illustration 9-14

Change in Inventory Method

Autogeek, Inc., a wholesale distributor of auto parts, began business in 2015. Inventory reported in the 2017 year-end balance sheet, determined using the average cost method, was **\$123,000**. In 2018, the company decided to change its inventory method to FIFO. If the company had used the FIFO method in 2017, ending inventory would have been **\$146,000**. What steps should Autogeek take to report this change?

Step 1: Revise comparative financial statements.

The first step is to revise prior years' financial statements. That is, for each year reported in the comparative statements, Autogeek makes those statements appear as if the newly adopted inventory method, FIFO, had been applied all along. In its balance sheets, assuming

that the company presents balance sheets for two years for comparative purposes, the company would report 2018 inventory by its newly adopted method, FIFO, and also would revise the amounts it reported last year for its 2017 inventory. In its 2018 and prior year income statements, cost of goods sold would also reflect the new method.

In its statements of shareholders' equity, Autogeek would report retained earnings each year as if it had used FIFO all along. And, for the earliest year reported, the company would revise beginning retained earnings that year to reflect the cumulative income effect of the difference in inventory methods for all prior years. You will see this step illustrated in Chapter 20 after you have studied the statement of shareholders' equity in more depth.

Autogeek also would record a journal entry to adjust the book balances from their current amounts to what those balances would have been using FIFO. Because differences in cost of goods sold and income are reflected in retained earnings, as are the income tax effects, the journal entry updates inventory, retained earnings, and the appropriate income tax account. We ignore the income tax effects here but include those effects in an illustration in Chapter 20. The journal entry below, *ignoring income taxes*, increases the 2018 beginning inventory to the FIFO basis amount of \$146,000 and increases retained earnings by the same amount, because that's what the increase in prior years' income would have been had FIFO been used.

Inventory (\$146,000 – 123,000).....	23,000	
Retained earnings.....		23,000

Step 2: The affected accounts are adjusted.

Autogeek must provide in a disclosure note clear explanation of why the change to FIFO is preferable. The note also would indicate the effects of the change on (a) income from continuing operations, (b) net income, (c) each line-item affected, (d) earnings per share, and (e) the cumulative effect of the change on retained earnings or other components of equity as of the beginning of the earliest period presented.

Step 3: A disclosure note provides additional information.

We see in Illustration 9–15 an example of such a note in a recent annual report of **CVS Health Corporation** when it changed its inventory method for retail/LTC inventories to the average cost method.

Inventory (in part)

Effective January 1, 2015, the Company changed its methods of accounting for “front store” inventories in the Retail/LTC Segment. Prior to 2015, the Company valued front store inventories at the lower of cost or market on a first-in, first-out (“FIFO”) basis in retail stores using the retail inventory method and in distribution centers using the FIFO cost method. Effective January 1, 2015, all front store inventories in the Retail/LTC Segment have been valued at the lower of cost or market using the weighted average cost method.

These changes were made primarily to provide the Company with better information to manage its retail front store operations and to bring all of the Company's inventories to a common inventory valuation methodology. The Company believes the weighted average cost method is preferable to the retail inventory method and the FIFO cost method because it results in greater precision in the determination of cost of revenues and inventories at the stock keeping unit (“SKU”) level and results in a consistent inventory valuation method for all of the Company's inventories as all of the Company's remaining inventories, which consist of prescription drugs, were already being valued using the weighted average cost method.

The Company recorded the cumulative effect of these changes in accounting principle as of January 1, 2015. The effect of these changes in accounting principle as of January 1, 2015, was a decrease in inventories of \$7 million, an increase in current deferred income tax assets of \$3 million and a decrease in retained earnings of \$4 million.

Illustration 9–15

Disclosure of Change in Inventory Method—CVS Health Corporation

Real World Financials

Change to the LIFO Method

When a company changes to the *LIFO inventory method* from any other method, it usually is impossible to calculate the income effect on prior years. To do so would require assumptions as to when specific LIFO inventory layers were created in years prior to the change.

Accounting records usually are inadequate for a company changing to LIFO to report the change retrospectively.

As a result, a company changing to LIFO usually does not report the change retrospectively. Instead, the LIFO method simply is used from that point on. The base year inventory for all future LIFO determinations is the beginning inventory in the year the LIFO method is adopted.¹²

A disclosure note is needed to explain (a) the nature of and justification for the change, (b) the effect of the change on current year's income and earnings per share, and (c) why retrospective application was impracticable. When **Seneca Foods Corporation** adopted the LIFO inventory method, it reported the change in the note shown in Illustration 9–16.

Illustration 9–16

Change in Inventory
Method Disclosure—
Seneca Foods Corporation
Real World Financials

10. Inventories (in part)

The Company decided to change its inventory valuation method from the FIFO method to the LIFO method. In the high inflation environment that the Company is experiencing, the Company believes that the LIFO inventory method is preferable over the FIFO method because it better compares the cost of current production to current revenue. Selling prices are established to reflect current market activity, which recognizes the increasing costs. Under FIFO, revenue and costs are not aligned. Under LIFO, the current cost of sales is matched to the current revenue.

The Company determined that retrospective application of LIFO for periods prior to the current fiscal year was impracticable because the period-specific information necessary to analyze inventories, including inventories acquired as part of the prior fiscal year's Signature acquisition, were not readily available and could not be precisely determined at the appropriate level of detail, including the commodity, size and item code information necessary to perform the detailed calculations required to retrospectively compute the internal LIFO indices applicable to prior fiscal years. The effect of this change was to reduce net earnings by \$37,917,000 and \$18,307,000 in the current and prior fiscal year, respectively, below that which would have been reported using the Company's previous inventory method. The reduction in earnings per share was \$3.12 (\$3.09 diluted) and \$1.50 per share (\$1.49 diluted) in the current and prior fiscal year, respectively.

As we discussed in Chapter 8, an important motivation for using LIFO in periods of rising costs is that it produces higher cost of goods sold and lowers net income and income taxes. Notice in the Seneca Foods disclosure note that the switch to LIFO did cause a decrease in net income and therefore income taxes in the year of the switch indicating an environment of increasing costs.

Additional Consideration

When changing from one generally accepted accounting principle to another, a company must justify that the change results in financial information that more properly portrays operating results and financial position. For income tax purposes, a company generally must obtain consent from the Internal Revenue Service before changing an accounting method. A special form also must be filed with the IRS when a company intends to adopt the LIFO inventory method. When a company changes from LIFO for tax purposes, it can't change back to LIFO until five tax returns have been filed using the non-LIFO method.

Inventory Errors

• LO9–7

Accounting errors must be corrected when they are discovered. In Chapter 4, we briefly discussed the correction of accounting errors, and Chapter 20 provides in-depth coverage. Here we provide an overview of the accounting treatment and disclosures in the context of inventory errors. Inventory errors include the over- or understatement of ending inventory

¹²A change to LIFO is handled the same way for income tax purposes.

due to a mistake in physical count or a mistake in pricing inventory quantities. Also, errors include the over- or understatement of purchases which could be caused by the cutoff errors described in Chapter 8.

If an inventory error is discovered in the same accounting period it occurred, the original erroneous entry should simply be reversed and the appropriate entry recorded. This situation presents no particular reporting problem.

If a *material* inventory error is discovered in an accounting period subsequent to the period in which the error was made, any previous years' financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the error are retrospectively restated to reflect the correction.¹³ And, of course, any account balances that are incorrect as a result of the error are corrected by journal entry. If, due to an error affecting net income, retained earnings is one of the incorrect accounts, the correction is reported as a prior period adjustment to the beginning balance on the statement of shareholders' equity.¹⁴ In addition, a disclosure note is needed to describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on net income, each line-item affected, and earnings per share.

When analyzing inventory errors, it's helpful to visualize the way cost of goods sold, net income, and retained earnings are determined (see Illustration 9-17). Beginning inventory and net purchases are *added* in the calculation of cost of goods sold. If either of these is overstated (understated) then cost of goods sold would be overstated (understated). On the other hand, ending inventory is *deducted* in the calculation of cost of goods sold, so if ending inventory is overstated (understated) then cost of goods sold is understated (overstated). Of course, errors that affect income also will affect income taxes. In the illustration that follows, we ignore the tax effects of the errors and focus on the errors themselves rather than their tax aspects.

For material errors, previous years' financial statements are retrospectively restated.

Incorrect balances are corrected.

A correction of retained earnings is reported as a prior period adjustment.

A disclosure note describes the nature and the impact of the error.

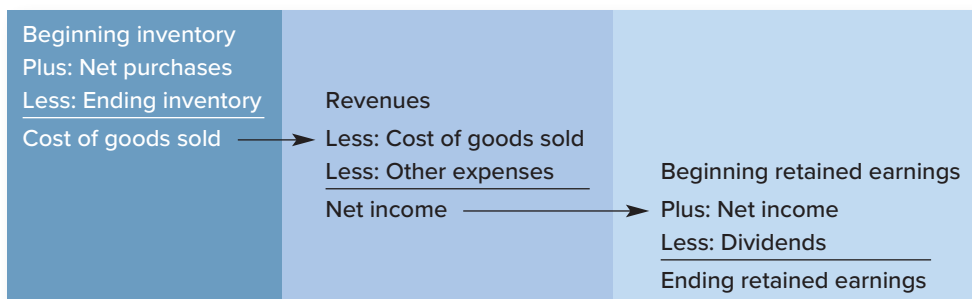


Illustration 9-17

Visualizing the Effect of Inventory Errors

Let's look at an example in Illustration 9-18.

The Barton Company uses a periodic inventory system. At the end of 2017, a mathematical error caused an \$800,000 overstatement of ending inventory. Ending inventories for 2018 and 2019 are correctly determined.

The way we correct this error depends on when the error is discovered. Assuming that the error is not discovered until after 2018, the 2017 and 2018 effects of the error, ignoring income tax effects, are shown below. The overstated and understated amounts are \$800,000 in each instance.

(continued)

Illustration 9-18

Inventory Error Correction

¹³If the effect of the error is not material, it is simply corrected in the year of discovery.

¹⁴The prior period adjustment is applied to beginning retained earnings for the year following the error, or for the earliest year being reported in the comparative financial statements when the error occurs prior to the earliest year presented. The retained earnings balances in years after the first year also are adjusted to what those balances would be if the error had not occurred, but a company may choose not to explicitly report those adjustments as separate line items.

(concluded)

Analysis: U = Understated O = Overstated

2017		2018	
Beginning inventory		Beginning inventory	O – 800,000
Plus: Net purchases		Plus: Net purchases	
Less: Ending inventory	O – 800,000	Less: Ending inventory	
Cost of goods sold	U – 800,000	Cost of goods sold	O – 800,000
Revenues		Revenues	
Less: Cost of goods sold	U – 800,000	Less: Cost of goods sold	O – 800,000
Less: Other expenses		Less: Other expenses	
Net income	O – 800,000	Net income	U – 800,000
↓		↓	
Retained earnings	O – 800,000	Retained earnings	<u>corrected</u>

Previous years' financial statements are retrospectively restated.

A journal entry corrects any incorrect account balance.

When retained earnings requires correction, a *prior period adjustment* is made on the statement of shareholders' equity.

A disclosure note describes the nature of the error and the impact of the correction on income.

When the Inventory Error Is Discovered the Following Year

First, let's assume the error is discovered in 2018. The 2017 financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the error are retrospectively restated to reflect the correct inventory amount, cost of goods sold, net income, and retained earnings when those statements are reported again for comparative purposes in the 2018 annual report. The following journal entry, *ignoring income taxes*, corrects the error.

Retained earnings	800,000	
Inventory		800,000

Because retained earnings is one of the accounts that is incorrect, when the error is discovered in 2018, the correction to that account is reported as a *prior period adjustment* to the 2018 beginning retained earnings balance in Barton's statement of shareholders' equity (or statement of retained earnings). Prior period adjustments do not flow through the income statement but directly adjust retained earnings. This adjustment is illustrated in Chapter 20.

When the Inventory Error Is Discovered Two Years Later

If the error in 2017 isn't discovered until 2019, the 2018 financial statements also are retrospectively restated to reflect the correct cost of goods sold and net income even though no correcting entry would be needed at that point. Inventory and retained earnings would not require adjustment. The error has self-corrected and no prior period adjustment is needed.

Also, a disclosure note in Barton's annual report should describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on each year's net income (overstated by \$800,000 in 2017; understated by \$800,000 in 2018), the line items affected, and earnings per share.

Concept Review Exercise

INVENTORY ERRORS

In 2018, the controller of the Fleischman Wholesale Beverage Company discovered the following material errors related to the 2016 and 2017 financial statements:

- Inventory at the end of 2016 was understated by \$50,000.
- Late in 2017, a \$3,000 purchase was incorrectly recorded as a \$33,000 purchase. The invoice has not yet been paid.
- Inventory at the end of 2017 was overstated by \$20,000.

The company uses a periodic inventory system.

Required:

1. Assuming that the errors were discovered after the 2017 financial statements were issued, analyze the effect of the errors on 2016 and 2017 cost of goods sold, net income, and retained earnings. Ignore income taxes.
2. Prepare a journal entry to correct the errors.

Solution:

1. **Analysis: U = Understated O = Overstated**

2016		2017	
Beginning inventory		Beginning inventory	U – 50,000
Plus: Net purchases		Plus: Net purchases	O – 30,000
Less: Ending inventory	U – 50,000	Less: Ending inventory	O – 20,000
Cost of goods sold	O – 50,000	Cost of goods sold	U – 40,000
Revenues		Revenues	
Less: Cost of goods sold	O – 50,000	Less: Cost of goods sold	U – 40,000
Less: Other expenses		Less: Other expenses	
Net income	U – 50,000	Net income	O – 40,000
↓		↓	
Retained earnings	U – 50,000	Retained earnings	U – 10,000

2. Prepare a journal entry to correct the errors.

Accounts payable.....	30,000	
Inventory		20,000
Retained earnings		10,000

Earnings Quality

A change in the accounting method a company uses to value inventory is one way managers can artificially manipulate income. However, this method of income manipulation is transparent. As we learned in a previous section, the effect on income of switching from one inventory method to another must be disclosed. That disclosure restores comparability between periods and enhances earnings quality.

On the other hand, inventory write-downs are included in the broader category of “big bath” accounting techniques some companies use to manipulate earnings. By overstating the write-down, profits are increased in future periods as the inventory is used or sold. When the demand for many high technology products decreased significantly in late 2000 and early 2001, several companies, including **Sycamore Networks**, **Cisco Systems**, **Lucent Technologies**, and **JDS Uniphase**, recorded large inventory write-offs, some in the billions of dollars. Certainly, these write-offs reflected the existing economic environment. However, some analysts questioned the size of some of the write-offs. For example, William Schaff, an investment officer at Bay Isle Financial, noted that Cisco’s \$2 billion write-off was approximately equal to the balance of inventory on hand at the end of the previous quarter and about equal to the cost of goods actually sold during the quarter.

A financial analyst must carefully consider the effect of any significant asset write-down on the assessment of a company’s permanent earnings.

Inventory write-downs often are cited as a method used to shift income between periods.

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© Justin Sullivan/Getty Images

1. **How does Dollar General avoid counting all its inventory every time it produces financial statements? (p. 483)** Dollar General uses the dollar-value LIFO retail inventory method. The retail inventory estimation technique avoids the counting of ending inventory by keeping track of goods available for sale not only at cost but also at retail prices. Each period's sales, at sales prices, are deducted from the retail amount of goods available for sale to arrive at ending inventory at retail. This amount is then converted to cost using a cost-to-retail percentage.
2. **What is the index formulation used for? (p. 483)** The dollar-value LIFO retail method uses a price index to first convert ending inventory at retail to base year prices. Yearly LIFO layers are then determined and each layer is converted to that year's current year retail prices using the year's price index and then to cost using the layer's cost-to-retail percentage. ●

The Bottom Line

- LO9-1 Companies that use FIFO, average cost, or any other method besides LIFO or the retail inventory method report inventory at the lower of cost or net realizable value (NRV). Net realizable value is selling price less costs to sell. Companies that use LIFO or the retail inventory method report inventory at the lower of cost or market. Market equals replacement cost, except that market should not (a) be greater than NRV (ceiling) or (b) be less than NRV minus an approximately normal profit margin (floor). (p. 465)
- LO9-2 The gross profit method estimates cost of goods sold which is then subtracted from cost of goods available for sale to estimate ending inventory. The estimate of cost of goods sold is determined by subtracting an estimate of gross profit from net sales. The estimate of gross profit is determined by multiplying the historical gross profit ratio times net sales. (p. 473)
- LO9-3 The retail inventory method determines the amount of ending inventory at retail by subtracting sales for the period from goods available for sale at retail. Ending inventory at retail is then converted to *cost* by multiplying it by the cost-to-retail percentage, which is based on a current relationship between cost and selling price. (p. 475)
- LO9-4 By the conventional retail method, we estimate average cost at lower of cost or market. Average cost is estimated by including beginning inventory in the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage. The lower of average cost or market is estimated by excluding markdowns from the calculation. Markdowns are subtracted in the retail column after the percentage is calculated. (p. 478)
- LO9-5 By the LIFO retail method, ending inventory includes the beginning inventory plus the current year's layer. To determine layers, we compare ending inventory at retail to beginning inventory at retail and assume that no more than one inventory layer is added if inventory increases. Each layer carries its own cost-to-retail percentage which is used to convert each layer from retail to cost. The dollar-value LIFO retail inventory method combines the LIFO retail method and the dollar-value LIFO method (Chapter 8) to estimate LIFO from retail prices when the price level has changed. (p. 483)
- LO9-6 Most changes in inventory methods are reported retrospectively. This means revising all previous periods' financial statements to appear as if the newly adopted inventory method had been applied all along. An exception is a change to the LIFO method. In this case, it usually is impossible to calculate the income effect on prior years. To do so would require assumptions as to when specific LIFO inventory layers were created in years prior to the change. As a result, a company changing to LIFO usually does not report the change retrospectively. Instead, the LIFO method simply is used from that point on. (p. 486)
- LO9-7 If a material inventory error is discovered in an accounting period subsequent to the period in which the error is made, previous years' financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the error are retrospectively restated to reflect the correction. Account balances are corrected by journal entry. A correction of retained earnings is reported as a prior period adjustment to the beginning balance in the statement of shareholders' equity. In addition, a disclosure note is needed to describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on continuing operations, net income, and earnings per share. (p. 488)

- **LO9–8** *IAS No. 2* specifies that if circumstances reveal that an inventory write-down is no longer appropriate, it must be reversed. Reversals are not permitted under U.S. GAAP. Under U.S. GAAP, the lower of cost or net realizable value rule can be applied to individual items, inventory categories, or the entire inventory. Using the international standard, the assessment usually is applied to individual items, although using inventory categories is allowed under certain circumstances. (p. 468) ●

Purchase Commitments

Purchase commitments are contracts that obligate a company to purchase a specified amount of merchandise or raw materials at specified prices on or before specified dates. Companies enter into these agreements to make sure they will be able to obtain important inventory as well as to protect against increases in purchase price. However, if the purchase price decreases before the agreement is exercised, the commitment has the disadvantage of requiring the company to purchase inventory at a higher than market price. If this happens, a loss on the purchase commitment is recorded.

Because purchase commitments create the possibility of this kind of loss, the loss occurs when the market price falls below the commitment price rather than when the inventory eventually is sold. This means recording the loss when the product is purchased or, if the commitment is still outstanding, at the end of the reporting period. In other words, purchases are recorded at market price when that price is lower than the contract price, and a loss is recognized for the difference. Also, losses are recognized for any purchase commitments outstanding at the end of a reporting period when market price is less than contract price. This is best understood by the example in Illustration 9A–1.

In July 2018, the Lassiter Company signed two purchase commitments. The first requires Lassiter to purchase inventory for \$500,000 by November 15, 2018. The second requires Lassiter to purchase inventory for \$600,000 by February 15, 2019. Lassiter's fiscal year-end is December 31. The company uses a perpetual inventory system.

APPENDIX 9

Purchase commitments protect the buyer against price increases and provide a supply of product.

Purchases made pursuant to a purchase commitment are recorded at the lower of contract price or market price on the date the contract is executed.

Illustration 9A–1

Purchase Commitments

Contract Period within Fiscal Year

The contract period for the first commitment is contained within a single fiscal year. Lassiter would record the purchase at the contract price if the market price of inventory at date of acquisition is *equal to or greater than* the contract price of \$500,000.¹⁵

Inventory (contract price).....	500,000	
Cash (or accounts payable).....		500,000

Purchase inventory at the contract price.

If the market price of inventory at acquisition is *less* than the contract price, inventory is recorded at the market price and a loss is recognized.¹⁶ For example, if the market price is \$425,000 at the time of acquisition, Lassiter must still pay \$500,000 (contract price) and would record the following entry:

Inventory (market price).....	425,000	
Loss on purchase commitment.....	75,000	
Cash (or accounts payable).....		500,000

If market price is less than the contract price at acquisition, a loss is recorded.

¹⁵In each of the following situations, if a periodic inventory system is used, purchases is debited instead of inventory.

¹⁶Recall from the chapter that one method of recording losses from inventory write-downs is to report the loss as a line item in the income statement.

The objective of this treatment is to associate the loss with the period in which the price declines rather than with the period in which the company eventually sells the inventory. This is consistent with recording inventory at the lower of cost or market, as you studied in the chapter.

Contract Period Extends beyond Fiscal Year

Now let's consider Lassiter's second purchase commitment that is outstanding at the end of the fiscal year 2018 (that is, the purchases have not yet been made). If the market price of inventory at the end of the year is *equal to or greater than* the contract price of \$600,000, no entry is recorded. However, if the market price at year-end is *less* than the contract price, a loss must be recognized. The objective is to associate the loss with the period in which the price declines rather than with the period in which the company eventually sells the inventory. Let's say the year-end market price of the inventory for Lassiter's second purchase commitment is \$540,000. The following adjusting entry is recorded:

If the market price at year-end is less than the contract price, a loss is recorded for the difference.

December 31, 2018

Estimated loss on purchase commitment (\$600,000 – 540,000)	60,000	
Estimated liability on purchase commitment.....		60,000

A liability is credited for estimated losses on purchase commitments.

At this point, the loss is an *estimated* loss. The actual loss, if any, will not be known until the inventory actually is purchased. The best estimate of the market price on date of purchase is the current market price, in this case \$540,000. Because no inventory has been acquired, we can't credit inventory for the loss. Instead, a liability is credited because, in a sense, the loss represents an obligation to purchase inventory above market price.

The entry to record the actual purchase on or before February 15, 2019, will vary depending on the market price of the inventory at date of purchase. If the market price is unchanged or has increased from the year-end price, the following entry is made:

If market price on purchase date has not declined from year-end price, the purchase is recorded at the year-end market price.

Inventory (accounting cost).....	540,000	
Estimated liability on purchase commitment	60,000	
Cash (or accounts payable).....		600,000

Even if the market price of the inventory increases, there is no recovery of the \$60,000 loss recognized in 2018. Similar to the method of recording inventory at the lower of cost or market, the reduced inventory value, in this case the reduced value of purchases, is considered to be the new cost and any recovery of value is ignored.

If the market price declines even further from year-end levels, an additional loss is recognized. For example, if the market price of the inventory covered by the commitment declines to \$510,000, the following entry is recorded:


If market price declines further from year-end, an additional loss is recorded at acquisition.

Inventory (market price).....	510,000	
Loss on purchase commitment (\$540,000 – 510,000).....	30,000	
Estimated liability on purchase commitment	60,000	
Cash (or accounts payable).....		600,000

The total loss on this purchase commitment of \$90,000 is thus allocated between 2018 and 2019 according to when the decline in value of the inventory covered by the commitment occurred.

If there are material amounts of purchase commitments outstanding at the end of a reporting period, the contract details are disclosed in a note. This disclosure is required even if no loss estimate has been recorded.

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 9-1** Explain the (a) lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV) approach and the (b) lower of cost or market (LCM) approach to valuing inventory.
- Q 9-2** What are the various levels of aggregation to which the LCNRV and LCM approaches can be applied?
- Q 9-3** Describe the alternative approaches for recording inventory write-downs.
- Q 9-4** Explain the gross profit method of estimating ending inventory.
- Q 9-5** The Rider Company uses the gross profit method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold. The cost percentage is determined based on historical data. What factors could cause the estimate of ending inventory to be overstated?
- Q 9-6** Explain the retail inventory method of estimating ending inventory.
- Q 9-7** Both the gross profit method and the retail inventory method provide a way to estimate ending inventory. What is the main difference between the two estimation techniques?
- Q 9-8** Define each of the following retail terms: initial markup, additional markup, markup cancellation, markdown, markdown cancellation.
- Q 9-9** Explain how to estimate the average cost of inventory when using the retail inventory method.
- Q 9-10** What is the conventional retail method?
- Q 9-11** Explain the LIFO retail inventory method.
- Q 9-12** Discuss the treatment of freight-in, net markups, normal spoilage, and employee discounts in the application of the retail inventory method.
- Q 9-13** Explain the difference between the retail inventory method using LIFO and the dollar-value LIFO retail method.
- Q 9-14** Describe the accounting treatment for a change in inventory method other than to LIFO.
- Q 9-15** When a company changes its inventory method to LIFO, an exception is made for the way accounting changes usually are reported. Explain the difference in the accounting treatment of a change to the LIFO inventory method from other inventory method changes.
- Q 9-16** Explain the accounting treatment of material inventory errors discovered in an accounting period subsequent to the period in which the error is made.
- Q 9-17** It is discovered in 2018 that ending inventory in 2016 was understated. What is the effect of the understatement on the following:
- | | |
|-------|--------------------------|
| 2016: | Cost of goods sold |
| | Net income |
| | Ending retained earnings |
| 2017: | Net purchases |
| | Cost of goods sold |
| | Net income |
| | Ending retained earnings |
-  **Q 9-18** Identify any differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS when applying the lower of cost or net realizable value rule to inventory valuation.
- Q 9-19** (Based on Appendix 9) Define purchase commitments. What is the advantage(s) of these agreements to buyers?
- Q 9-20** (Based on Appendix 9) Explain how purchase commitments are recorded for the lower of contract price or market price.

Brief Exercises



BE 9-1

Lower of cost or net realizable value

• LO9-1

Ross Electronics has one product in its ending inventory. Per unit data consist of the following: cost, \$20; selling price, \$30; selling costs, \$4. What unit value should Ross use when applying the lower of cost or net realizable value rule to ending inventory?

BE 9-2

Lower of cost or net realizable value

• LO9-1

SLR Corporation has 1,000 units of each of its two products in its year-end inventory. Per unit data for each of the products are as follows:

	Product 1	Product 2
Cost	\$50	\$34
Selling price	70	36
Costs to sell	6	4

Determine the carrying value of SLR's inventory assuming that the lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV) rule is applied to individual products. What is the before-tax income effect of the LCNRV adjustment?

BE 9-3

Lower of cost or market

• LO9-1

[This is a variation of BE 9-1, modified to focus on the lower of cost or market.] Ross Electronics has one product in its ending inventory. Per unit data consist of the following: cost, \$20; replacement cost, \$18; selling price, \$30; selling costs, \$4. The normal profit margin is 30% of selling price. What unit value should Ross use when applying the lower of cost or market (LCM) rule to ending inventory?

BE 9-4

Lower of cost or market

• LO9-1

[This is a variation of BE 9-2, modified to focus on the lower of cost or market.] SLR Corporation has 1,000 units of each of its two products in its year-end inventory. Per unit data for each of the products are as follows:

	Product 1	Product 2
Cost	\$50	\$34
Replacement cost	48	26
Selling price	70	36
Selling costs	6	4
Normal profit margin	10	8

Determine the carrying value of SLR's inventory assuming that the lower of cost or market (LCM) rule is applied to individual products. What is the before-tax income effect of the LCM adjustment?

BE 9-5

Gross profit method

• LO9-2

On February 26 a hurricane destroyed the entire inventory stored in a warehouse owned by the Rockford Corporation. The following information is available from the records of the company's periodic inventory system: beginning inventory, \$220,000; purchases and net sales from the beginning of the year through February 26, \$400,000 and \$600,000, respectively; gross profit ratio, 30%. Estimate the cost of the inventory destroyed by the hurricane using the gross profit method.

BE 9-6

Gross profit method; solving for unknown

• LO9-2

Adams Corporation estimates that it lost \$75,000 in inventory from a recent flood. The following information is available from the records of the company's periodic inventory system: beginning inventory, \$150,000; purchases and net sales from the beginning of the year through the date of the flood, \$450,000 and \$700,000, respectively. What is the company's gross profit ratio?

BE 9-7

Retail inventory method; average cost

• LO9-3

Kiddie World uses a periodic inventory system and the retail inventory method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold. The following data are available for the quarter ending September 30, 2018:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$300,000	\$ 450,000
Net purchases	861,000	1,210,000
Freight-in	22,000	
Net markups		48,000
Net markdowns		18,000
Net sales		1,200,000

Estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold (average cost).

BE 9-8

Retail inventory method; LIFO

• LO9-3

Refer to the situation described in BE 9-7. Estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold (LIFO).

BE 9-9

Conventional retail method

• LO9-4

Refer to the situation described in BE 9-7. Estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold using the conventional method.

BE 9-10

Conventional retail method

• LO9-4

Roberson Corporation uses a periodic inventory system and the retail inventory method. Accounting records provided the following information for the 2018 fiscal year:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$220,000	\$ 400,000
Net purchases	640,000	1,180,000
Freight-in	17,800	
Net markups		16,000
Net markdowns		6,000
Normal spoilage		3,000
Net sales		1,300,000

The company records sales to employees net of discounts. These discounts totaled \$15,000 for the year. Estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold using the conventional method.

BE 9–11

Dollar-value LIFO retail

● LO9–5

On January 1, 2018, Sanderson Variety Store adopted the dollar-value LIFO retail inventory method. Accounting records provided the following information:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 40,800	\$ 68,000
Net purchases	155,440	270,000
Net markups		6,000
Net markdowns		8,000
Net sales		250,000
Retail price index, end of year		1.02

Estimate ending inventory using the dollar-value LIFO retail method.

BE 9–12

Dollar-value LIFO retail

● LO9–5

This exercise is a continuation of BE 9–11. During 2019, purchases at cost and retail were \$168,000 and \$301,000, respectively. Net markups, net markdowns, and net sales for the year were \$3,000, \$4,000, and \$280,000, respectively. The retail price index at the end of 2019 was 1.06. Estimating ending inventory in 2019 using the dollar-value LIFO retail method.

BE 9–13

Change in inventory costing methods

● LO9–6

In 2018, Hopyard Lumber changed its inventory method from LIFO to FIFO. Inventory at the end of 2017 of \$127,000 would have been \$145,000 if FIFO had been used. Inventory at the end of 2018 is \$162,000 using the new FIFO method but would have been \$151,000 if the company had continued to use LIFO. Describe the steps Hopyard should take to report this change. What is the effect of the change on 2018 cost of goods sold?

BE 9–14

Change in inventory costing methods

● LO9–6

In 2018, Wade Window and Glass changed its inventory method from FIFO to LIFO. Inventory at the end of 2017 is \$150,000. Describe the steps Wade Window and Glass should take to report this change.

BE 9–15

Inventory error

● LO9–7

In 2018, Winslow International, Inc.'s controller discovered that ending inventories for 2016 and 2017 were overstated by \$200,000 and \$500,000, respectively. Determine the effect of the errors on retained earnings at January 1, 2018. (Ignore income taxes.)

BE 9–16

Inventory error

● LO9–7

Refer to the situation described in BE 9–15. What steps would be taken to report the error in the 2018 financial statements?

Exercises

**E 9–1**

Lower of cost or net realizable value

● LO9–1

Herman Company has three products in its ending inventory. Specific per unit data at the end of the year for each of the products are as follows:

	Product 1	Product 2	Product 3
Cost	\$20	\$ 90	\$50
Selling price	40	120	70
Costs to sell	6	40	10

Required:

What unit values should Herman use for each of its products when applying the lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV) rule to ending inventory?

E 9-2

Lower of cost or net realizable value

• LO9-1

The inventory of Royal Decking consisted of five products. Information about the December 31, 2018, inventory is as follows:

Product	Per Unit	
	Cost	Selling Price
A	\$ 40	\$ 60
B	80	100
C	40	80
D	100	130
E	20	30

Costs to sell consist of a sales commission equal to 10% of selling price and shipping costs equal to 5% of cost.

Required:

What unit value should Royal Decking use for each of its products when applying the lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV) rule to units of ending inventory?

E 9-3

Lower of cost or net realizable value

• LO9-1

Tatum Company has four products in its inventory. Information about the December 31, 2018, inventory is as follows:

Product	Total Cost	Total Net Realizable Value
101	\$120,000	\$100,000
102	90,000	110,000
103	60,000	50,000
104	30,000	50,000

Required:

- Determine the carrying value of inventory at December 31, 2018, assuming the lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV) rule is applied to individual products.
- Assuming that inventory write-downs are common for Tatum Company, record any necessary year-end adjusting entry.

E 9-4

Lower of cost or market

• LO9-1

[This is a variation of E 9-1, modified to focus on the lower of cost or market.] Herman Company has three products in its ending inventory. Specific per unit data at the end of the year for each of the products are as follows:

	Product 1	Product 2	Product 3
Cost	\$20	\$ 90	\$50
Replacement cost	18	85	40
Selling price	40	120	70
Selling costs	6	40	10
Normal profit margin	5	30	12

Required:

What unit values should Herman use for each of its products when applying the lower of cost or market (LCM) rule to ending inventory?

E 9-5

Lower of cost or market

• LO9-1

[This is a variation of E 9-2, modified to focus on the lower of cost or market.] The inventory of Royal Decking consisted of five products. Information about the December 31, 2018, inventory is as follows:

Product	Per Unit		
	Cost	Replacement Cost	Selling Price
A	\$ 40	\$35	\$ 60
B	80	70	100
C	40	55	80
D	100	70	130
E	20	28	30

Selling costs consist of a sales commission equal to 10% of selling price and shipping costs equal to 5% of cost. The normal gross profit percentage is 30% of selling price.

Required:

What unit value should Royal Decking use for each of its products when applying the lower of cost or market (LCM) rule to units of ending inventory?

E 9-6

Lower of cost or market

● LO9-1

[This is a variation of E 9-3, modified to focus on the lower of cost or market.] Tatum Company has four products in its inventory. Information about the December 31, 2018, inventory is as follows:

Product	Total Cost	Total Replacement Cost	Total Net Realizable Value
101	\$120,000	\$100,000	\$100,000
102	90,000	85,000	110,000
103	60,000	40,000	50,000
104	30,000	28,000	50,000

The normal gross profit percentage is 25% of *total cost*.

Required:

1. Determine the carrying value of inventory at December 31, 2018, assuming the lower of cost or market (LCM) rule is applied to individual products.
2. Assuming that inventory write-downs are common for Tatum Company, record any necessary year-end adjusting entry.

E 9-7

FASB codification research

● LO9-3, LO9-6, LO9-7

Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for each of the following items:

1. Measurement of ending inventory using the lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV) rule
2. Measurement of ending inventory using the lower of cost or market (LCM) rule
3. The level of aggregation that should be used in applying the LCNRV or LCM rule

**E 9-8**

Gross profit method

● LO9-2

On September 22, 2018, a flood destroyed the entire merchandise inventory on hand in a warehouse owned by the Rocklin Sporting Goods Company. The following information is available from the records of the company's periodic inventory system:

Inventory, January 1, 2018	\$140,000
Net purchases, January 1 through September 22	370,000
Net sales, January 1 through September 22	550,000
Gross profit ratio	25%

Required:

Estimate the cost of inventory destroyed in the flood using the gross profit method.

E 9-9

Gross profit method

● LO9-2

On November 21, 2018, a fire at Hodge Company's warehouse caused severe damage to its entire inventory of Product Tex. Hodge estimates that all usable damaged goods can be sold for \$12,000. The following information was available from the records of Hodge's periodic inventory system:

Inventory, November 1	\$100,000
Net purchases from November 1, to the date of the fire	140,000
Net sales from November 1, to the date of the fire	220,000

Based on recent history, Hodge's gross profit ratio on Product Tex is 35% of net sales.

Required:

Calculate the estimated loss on the inventory from the fire, using the gross profit method.

E 9-10

Gross profit method

● LO9-2

A fire destroyed a warehouse of the Goren Group, Inc., on May 4, 2018. Accounting records on that date indicated the following:

(AICPA adapted)

Merchandise inventory, January 1, 2018	\$1,900,000
Purchases to date	5,800,000
Freight-in	400,000
Sales to date	8,200,000

The gross profit ratio has averaged 20% of sales for the past four years.

Required:

Use the gross profit method to estimate the cost of the inventory destroyed in the fire.

E 9-11

Gross profit method

● LO9-2

Royal Gorge Company uses the gross profit method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold when preparing monthly financial statements required by its bank. Inventory on hand at the end of October was \$58,500. The following information for the month of November was available from company records:

Purchases	\$110,000
Freight-in	3,000
Sales	180,000
Sales returns	5,000
Purchases returns	4,000

In addition, the controller is aware of \$8,000 of inventory that was stolen during November from one of the company's warehouses.

Required:

1. Calculate the estimated inventory at the end of November, assuming a gross profit ratio of 40%.
2. Calculate the estimated inventory at the end of November, assuming a markup on cost of 100%.

E 9-12

Gross profit method; solving for unknown cost percentage

● LO9-2

National Distributing Company uses a periodic inventory system to track its merchandise inventory and the gross profit method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold for interim periods. Net purchases for the month of August were \$31,000. The July 31 and August 31, 2018, financial statements contained the following information:

Income Statements For the Months Ending		
	August 31, 2018	July 31, 2018
Net sales	<u>\$50,000</u>	<u>\$40,000</u>
Balance Sheets at		
	August 31, 2018	July 31, 2018
Assets:		
Merchandise inventory	<u>\$28,000</u>	<u>\$27,000</u>

Required:

Determine the company's cost percentage.

E 9-13

Retail inventory method; average cost

● LO9-3

San Lorenzo General Store uses a periodic inventory system and the retail inventory method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold. The following data are available for the month of October 2018:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$35,000	\$50,000
Net purchases	19,120	31,600
Net markups		1,200
Net markdowns		800
Net sales		32,000

Required:

Estimate the average cost of ending inventory and cost of goods sold for October.

E 9-14

Conventional retail method

● LO9-4

Campbell Corporation uses the retail method to value its inventory. The following information is available for the year 2018:

	Cost	Retail
Merchandise inventory, January 1, 2018	\$190,000	\$280,000
Purchases	600,000	840,000
Freight-in	8,000	
Net markups		20,000
Net markdowns		4,000
Net sales		800,000

Required:

Determine the December 31, 2018, inventory that approximates average cost.

E 9-15

Retail inventory method; LIFO

• LO9-3

Crosby Company owns a chain of hardware stores throughout the state. The company uses a periodic inventory system and the retail inventory method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold. The following data are available for the three months ending March 31, 2018:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$160,000	\$280,000
Net purchases	607,760	840,000
Net markups		20,000
Net markdowns		4,000
Net sales		800,000

Required:

Estimate the LIFO cost of ending inventory and cost of goods sold for the three months ending March 31, 2018. Assume stable retail prices during the period.

E 9-16

Conventional retail method; normal spoilage

• LO9-4

Almaden Valley Variety Store uses the retail inventory method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold. Data for 2018 are as follows:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 12,000	\$ 20,000
Purchases	102,600	165,000
Freight-in	3,480	
Purchase returns	4,000	7,000
Net markups		6,000
Net markdowns		3,000
Normal spoilage		4,200
Net sales		152,000

Required:

Estimate the ending inventory and cost of goods sold for 2018, applying the conventional retail method.

E 9-17

Conventional retail method; employee discounts

• LO9-3, LO9-4

LeMay Department Store uses the retail inventory method to estimate ending inventory for its monthly financial statements. The following data pertain to one of its largest departments for the month of March 2018:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 40,000	\$ 60,000
Purchases	207,000	400,000
Freight-in	14,488	
Purchase returns	4,000	6,000
Net markups		5,800
Net markdowns		3,500
Normal breakage		6,000
Net sales		280,000
Employee discounts		1,800

Sales are recorded net of employee discounts.

Required:

1. Compute estimated ending inventory and cost of goods sold for March applying the conventional retail method.
2. Recompute the cost-to-retail percentage using the average cost method.

E 9-18

Retail inventory method; solving for unknowns

• LO9-3

Adams Corporation uses a periodic inventory system and the retail inventory method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold. The following data are available for the month of September 2018:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$21,000	\$35,000
Net purchases	10,500	?
Net markups		4,000
Net markdowns		1,000
Net sales		?

The company used the average cost flow method and estimated inventory at the end of September to be \$17,437.50. If the company had used the LIFO cost flow method, the cost-to-retail percentage would have been 50%.

Required:

Compute net purchases at retail and net sales for the month of September.

E 9-19

Dollar-value LIFO retail

● LO9-5

On January 1, 2018, the Brunswick Hat Company adopted the dollar-value LIFO retail method. The following data are available for 2018:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 71,280	\$ 132,000
Net purchases	112,500	255,000
Net markups		6,000
Net markdowns		11,000
Net sales		232,000
Retail price index, 12/31/2018		1.04

Required:

Calculate the estimated ending inventory and cost of goods sold for 2018.

E 9-20

Dollar-value LIFO retail

● LO9-5

Canova Corporation adopted the dollar-value LIFO retail method on January 1, 2018. On that date, the cost of the inventory on hand was \$15,000 and its retail value was \$18,750. Information for 2018 and 2019 is as follows:

Date	Ending Inventory at Retail	Retail Price Index	Cost-to-Retail Percentage
12/31/2018	\$25,000	1.25	82%
12/31/2019	28,600	1.30	85

Required:

- What is the cost-to-retail percentage for the inventory on hand at 1/1/2018?
- Calculate the inventory value at the end of 2018 and 2019 using the dollar-value LIFO retail method.

E 9-21

Dollar-value LIFO retail

● LO9-5

Lance-Hefner Specialty Shoppes decided to use the dollar-value LIFO retail method to value its inventory. Accounting records provide the following information:

	Cost	Retail
Merchandise inventory, January 1, 2018	\$160,000	\$250,000
Net purchases	350,200	510,000
Net markups		7,000
Net markdowns		2,000
Net sales		380,000

Related retail price indexes are as follows:

January 1, 2018	1.00
December 31, 2018	1.10

Required:

Determine ending inventory and cost of goods sold.

E 9-22

Dollar-value LIFO retail; solving for unknowns

● LO9-5

Bosco Company adopted the dollar-value LIFO retail method at the beginning of 2018. Information for 2018 and 2019 is as follows, with certain data intentionally omitted:

Date	Inventory		Retail Price Index	Cost-to-Retail Percentage
	Cost	Retail		
Inventory, 1/1/2018	\$21,000	\$28,000	1.00	?
Inventory, 12/31/2018	22,792	33,600	1.12	?
2019 net purchases	60,000	88,400		
2019 net sales		80,000		
Inventory, 12/31/2019	?	?	1.20	

Required:

Determine the missing data.

E 9-23

Change in inventory costing methods

● LO9-6

In 2018, CPS Company changed its method of valuing inventory from the FIFO method to the average cost method. At December 31, 2017, CPS's inventories were \$32 million (FIFO). CPS's records indicated that the inventories would have totaled \$23.8 million at December 31, 2017, if determined on an average cost basis.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the adjustment. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Briefly describe other steps CPS should take to report the change.

E 9-24

Change in
inventory costing
methods

● LO9-6

Goddard Company has used the FIFO method of inventory valuation since it began operations in 2015. Goddard decided to change to the average cost method for determining inventory costs at the beginning of 2018. The following schedule shows year-end inventory balances under the FIFO and average cost methods:

Year	FIFO	Average Cost
2015	\$45,000	\$54,000
2016	78,000	71,000
2017	83,000	78,000

Required:

1. Ignoring income taxes, prepare the 2018 journal entry to adjust the accounts to reflect the average cost method.
2. How much higher or lower would cost of goods sold be in the 2017 revised income statement?

E 9-25

Error correction;
inventory error

● LO9-7

During 2018, WMC Corporation discovered that its ending inventories reported in its financial statements were misstated by the following material amounts:

2016	understated by	\$120,000
2017	overstated by	150,000

WMC uses a periodic inventory system and the FIFO cost method.

Required:

1. Determine the effect of these errors on retained earnings at January 1, 2018, before any adjustments. Explain your answer. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Prepare a journal entry to correct the errors.
3. What other step(s) would be taken in connection with the correction of the errors?

E 9-26

Inventory errors

● LO9-7

For each of the following inventory errors occurring in 2018, determine the effect of the error on 2018's cost of goods sold, net income, and retained earnings. Assume that the error is not discovered until 2019 and that a periodic inventory system is used. Ignore income taxes.

U = understated O = overstated NE = no effect

	Cost of Goods Sold	Net Income	Retained Earnings
1. Overstatement of ending inventory	U	O	O
2. Overstatement of purchases			
3. Understatement of beginning inventory			
4. Freight-in charges are understated			
5. Understatement of ending inventory			
6. Understatement of purchases			
7. Overstatement of beginning inventory			
8. Understatement of purchases plus understatement of ending inventory by the same amount			

E 9-27

Inventory error

● LO9-7

In 2018, the internal auditors of Development Technologies, Inc., discovered that a \$4 million purchase of merchandise in 2018 was recorded in 2017 instead. The physical inventory count at the end of 2017 was correct.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry needed in 2018 to correct the error. Also, briefly describe any other measures Development Technologies would take in connection with correcting the error. (Ignore income taxes.)

E 9-28

Inventory errors

● LO9-7

In 2018, the controller of Sytec Corporation discovered that \$42,000 of inventory purchases were incorrectly charged to advertising expense in 2017. In addition, the 2017 year-end inventory count failed to include \$30,000 of company merchandise held on consignment by Erin Brothers. Sytec uses a periodic inventory system. Other than the omission of the merchandise on consignment, the year-end inventory count was correct. The amounts of the errors are deemed to be material.

Required:

1. Determine the effect of the errors on retained earnings at January 1, 2018. Explain your answer. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Prepare a journal entry to correct the errors.
3. What other step(s) would be taken in connection with the correction of the errors?

E 9-29

Concepts;
terminology

- LO9-1 through LO9-7

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with inventory measurement. Pair each item from List A with the item from List B (by letter) that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. Gross profit ratio	a. Reduction in selling price below the original selling price
_____ 2. Cost-to-retail percentage	b. Beginning inventory is not included in the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage
_____ 3. Additional markup	c. Deducted in the retail column after the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage
_____ 4. Markdown	d. Requires base year retail to be converted to layer year retail and then to cost
_____ 5. Net markup	e. Gross profit divided by net sales
_____ 6. Retail method, FIFO and LIFO	f. Material inventory error discovered in a subsequent year
_____ 7. Conventional retail method	g. Must be added to sales if sales are recorded net of discounts
_____ 8. Change from LIFO	h. Deducted in the retail column to arrive at goods available for sale at retail
_____ 9. Dollar-value LIFO retail	i. Divide cost of goods available for sale by goods available at retail
_____ 10. Normal spoilage	j. Average cost, lower of cost or market
_____ 11. Requires retrospective restatement	k. Added to the retail column to arrive at goods available for sale
_____ 12. Employee discounts	l. Increase in selling price subsequent to initial markup
_____ 13. Net markdowns	m. Selling price less estimated selling costs
_____ 14. Net realizable value	n. Accounting change requiring retrospective treatment

E 9-30

Purchase
commitments

- Appendix

On October 6, 2018, the Elgin Corporation signed a purchase commitment to purchase inventory for \$60,000 on or before March 31, 2019. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31. The contract was exercised on March 21, 2019, and the inventory was purchased for cash at the contract price. On the purchase date of March 21, the market price of the inventory was \$54,000. The market price of the inventory on December 31, 2018, was \$56,000. The company uses a perpetual inventory system.

Required:

1. Prepare the necessary adjusting journal entry (if any is required) on December 31, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the purchase on March 21, 2019.

E 9-31

Purchase
commitments

- Appendix

In March 2018, the Phillips Tool Company signed two purchase commitments. The first commitment requires Phillips to purchase inventory for \$100,000 by June 15, 2018. The second commitment requires the company to purchase inventory for \$150,000 by August 20, 2018. The company's fiscal year-end is June 30. Phillips uses a periodic inventory system.

The first commitment is exercised on June 15, 2018, when the market price of the inventory purchased was \$85,000. The second commitment was exercised on August 20, 2018, when the market price of the inventory purchased was \$120,000.

Required:

Prepare the journal entries required on June 15, June 30, and August 20, 2018, to account for the two purchase commitments. Assume that the market price of the inventory related to the outstanding purchase commitment was \$140,000 at June 30.

Problems

**P 9-1**

Lower of cost or
net realizable
value

- LO9-1

Decker Company has five products in its inventory. Information about the December 31, 2018, inventory follows.

Product	Quantity	Unit Cost	Unit Selling Price
A	1,000	\$10	\$16
B	800	15	18
C	600	3	8
D	200	7	6
E	600	14	13

The cost to sell for each product consists of a 15 percent sales commission.

Required:

1. Determine the carrying value of inventory at December 31, 2018, assuming the lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV) rule is applied to individual products.
2. Determine the carrying value of inventory at December 31, 2018, assuming the LCNRV rule is applied to the entire inventory. Also, assuming inventory write-downs are usual business practice for Decker, record any necessary year-end adjusting entry.



P 9-2

Lower of cost or net realizable value

• LO9-1

Almaden Hardware Store sells two product categories, tools and paint products. Information pertaining to its 2018 year-end inventory is as follows:

Inventory, by Product Category	Quantity	Per Unit Cost	Net Realizable Value
Tools:			
Hammers	100	\$ 5.00	\$5.50
Saws	200	10.00	9.00
Screwdrivers	300	2.00	2.60
Paint products:			
1-gallon cans	500	6.00	5.00
Paint brushes	100	4.00	4.50

Required:

1. Determine the carrying value of inventory at year-end, assuming the lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV) rule is applied to (a) individual products, (b) product categories, and (c) total inventory.
2. Assuming that the company reports an inventory write-down as a line item in the income statement, for each of the LCNRV applications determine the amount of the loss.

P 9-3

Lower of cost or market

• LO9-1

Forester Company has five products in its inventory. Information about the December 31, 2018, inventory follows.

Product	Quantity	Unit Cost	Unit Replacement Cost	Unit Selling Price
A	1,000	\$10	\$12	\$16
B	800	15	11	18
C	600	3	2	8
D	200	7	4	6
E	600	14	12	13

The cost to sell for each product consists of a 15 percent sales commission. The normal profit percentage for each product is 40 percent of the selling price.

Required:

1. Determine the carrying value of inventory at December 31, 2018, assuming the lower of cost or market (LCM) rule is applied to individual products.
2. Determine the carrying value of inventory at December 31, 2018, assuming the LCM rule is applied to the entire inventory. Also, assuming inventory write-downs are usual business practice for Forester, record any necessary year-end adjusting entry.

P 9-4

Lower of cost or market

• LO9-1

Home Stop sells two product categories, furniture and accessories. Information pertaining to its 2018 year-end inventory is as follows:

Inventory, by Product Category	Quantity	Per Unit Cost	Market
Furniture:			
Chairs	50	\$25	\$31
Desks	10	73	58
Tables	20	84	92
Accessories:			
Rugs	40	60	48
Lamps	30	22	18

Required:

- Determine the carrying value of inventory at year-end, assuming the lower of cost or market (LCM) rule is applied to (a) individual products, (b) product categories, and (c) total inventory.
- Assuming that the company reports an inventory write-down as a line item in the income statement, for each of the LCM applications determine the amount of the loss.

P 9-5

Gross profit method

• LO9-2

Smith Distributors, Inc., supplies ice cream shops with various toppings for making sundaes. On November 17, 2018, a fire resulted in the loss of all of the toppings stored in one section of the warehouse. The company must provide its insurance company with an estimate of the amount of inventory lost. The following information is available from the company's accounting records:

	Fruit Toppings	Marshmallow Toppings	Chocolate Toppings
Inventory, January 1, 2018	\$ 20,000	\$ 7,000	\$ 3,000
Net purchases through Nov. 17	150,000	36,000	12,000
Net sales through Nov. 17	200,000	55,000	20,000
Historical gross profit ratio	20%	30%	35%

Required:

- Calculate the estimated cost of each of the toppings lost in the fire.
- What factors could cause the estimates to be over- or understated?

P 9-6

Retail inventory method; various cost methods

• LO9-3, LO9-4

Sparrow Company uses the retail inventory method to estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold. Data for 2018 are as follows:

	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 90,000	\$180,000
Purchases	355,000	580,000
Freight-in	9,000	
Purchase returns	7,000	11,000
Net markups		16,000
Net markdowns		12,000
Normal spoilage		3,000
Abnormal spoilage	4,800	8,000
Sales		540,000
Sales returns		10,000

The company records sales net of employee discounts. Discounts for 2018 totaled \$4,000.

Required:

Estimate Sparrow's ending inventory and cost of goods sold for the year using the retail inventory method and the following applications:

- Average cost
- Conventional

P 9-7

Retail inventory method; conventional and LIFO

• LO9-3, LO9-4



Alquist Company uses the retail method to estimate its ending inventory. Selected information about its year 2018 operations is as follows:

- January 1, 2018, beginning inventory had a cost of \$100,000 and a retail value of \$150,000.
- Purchases during 2018 cost \$1,387,500 with an original retail value of \$2,000,000.
- Freight costs were \$10,000 for incoming merchandise.
- Net additional markups were \$300,000 and net markdowns were \$150,000.
- Based on prior experience, shrinkage due to shoplifting was estimated to be \$15,000 of retail value.
- Merchandise is sold to employees at a 20% of selling price discount. Employee sales are recorded in a separate account at the net selling price. The balance in this account at the end of 2018 is \$250,000.
- Sales to customers totaled \$1,750,000 for the year.

Required:

- Estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold using the conventional retail method.
- Estimate ending inventory and cost of goods sold using the LIFO retail method. (Assume stable prices.)

P 9-8

Retail inventory method; conventional

• LO9-4



Grand Department Store, Inc., uses the retail inventory method to estimate ending inventory for its monthly financial statements. The following data pertain to a single department for the month of October 2018:

Inventory, October 1, 2018:

At cost	\$ 20,000
At retail	30,000
Purchases (exclusive of freight and returns):	
At cost	100,151
At retail	146,495
Freight-in	5,100
Purchase returns:	
At cost	2,100
At retail	2,800
Additional markups	2,500
Markup cancellations	265
Markdowns (net)	800
Normal spoilage and breakage	4,500
Sales	135,730

Required:

- Using the conventional retail method, prepare a schedule computing estimated lower of cost or market (LCM) inventory for October 31, 2018.
- A department store using the conventional retail inventory method estimates the cost of its ending inventory as \$29,000. An accurate physical count reveals only \$22,000 of inventory at lower of cost or market. List the factors that may have caused the difference between computed inventory and the physical count.

(AICPA adapted)

P 9-9

Retail method—average cost and conventional

• LO9-3, LO9-4

Smith-Kline Company maintains inventory records at selling prices as well as at cost. For 2018, the records indicate the following data:

	(\$ in thousands)	
	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 80	\$ 125
Purchases	671	1,006
Freight-in on purchases	30	
Purchase returns	1	2
Net markups		4
Net markdowns		8
Net sales		916

Required:

Use the retail method to approximate cost of ending inventory in each of the following ways:

- Average cost
- Conventional

P 9–10

Dollar-value LIFO retail method

● LO9–5

[This is a variation of P 9–9, modified to focus on the dollar-value LIFO retail method.] Smith-Kline Company maintains inventory records at selling prices as well as at cost. For 2018, the records indicate the following data:

	(\$ in thousands)	
	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 80	\$ 125
Purchases	671	1,006
Freight-in on purchases	30	
Purchase returns	1	2
Net markups		4
Net markdowns		8
Net sales		916

Required:

Assuming the price level increased from 1.00 at January 1 to 1.10 at December 31, 2018, use the dollar-value LIFO retail method to approximate cost of ending inventory and cost of goods sold.

P 9–11

Dollar-value LIFO retail

● LO9–5

On January 1, 2018, HGC Camera Store adopted the dollar-value LIFO retail inventory method. Inventory transactions at both cost and retail, and cost indexes for 2018 and 2019 are as follows:

	2018		2019	
	Cost	Retail	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$28,000	\$ 40,000		
Net purchases	85,000	108,000	\$90,000	\$114,000
Freight-in	2,000		2,500	
Net markups		10,000		8,000
Net markdowns		2,000		2,200
Net sales to customers		100,000		104,000
Sales to employees (net of 20% discount)		2,400		4,000
Price Index:				
January 1, 2018				1.00
December 31, 2018				1.06
December 31, 2019				1.10

Required:

Estimate the 2018 and 2019 ending inventory and cost of goods sold using the dollar-value LIFO retail inventory method.

P 9–12

Retail inventory method; various applications

● LO9–3 through LO9–5

Raleigh Department Store uses the conventional retail method for the year ended December 31, 2016. Available information follows:

- The inventory at January 1, 2016, had a retail value of \$45,000 and a cost of \$27,500 based on the conventional retail method.
- Transactions during 2016 were as follows:

	Cost	Retail
Gross purchases	\$282,000	\$490,000
Purchase returns	6,500	10,000
Purchase discounts	5,000	
Gross sales		492,000
Sales returns		5,000
Employee discounts		3,000
Freight-in	26,500	
Net markups		25,000
Net markdowns		10,000

Sales to employees are recorded net of discounts.

- The retail value of the December 31, 2017, inventory was \$56,100, the cost-to-retail percentage for 2017 under the LIFO retail method was 62%, and the appropriate price index was 102% of the January 1, 2017, price level.



- d. The retail value of the December 31, 2018, inventory was \$48,300, the cost-to-retail percentage for 2018 under the LIFO retail method was 61%, and the appropriate price index was 105% of the January 1, 2017, price level.

Required:

1. Estimate ending inventory for 2016 using the conventional retail method.
2. Estimate ending inventory for 2016 assuming Raleigh Department Store used the LIFO retail method.
3. Assume Raleigh Department Store adopts the dollar-value LIFO retail method on January 1, 2017. Estimating ending inventory for 2017 and 2018.

(AICPA adapted)

P 9-13

Retail inventory method; various applications

- LO9-3 through LO9-5



On January 1, 2018, Pet Friendly Stores adopted the retail inventory method. Inventory transactions at both cost and retail, and cost indexes for 2018 and 2019 are as follows:

	2018		2019	
	Cost	Retail	Cost	Retail
Beginning inventory	\$ 90,000	\$150,000		
Purchases	478,000	730,000	\$511,000	\$760,000
Purchase returns	2,500	3,500	2,200	4,000
Freight-in	6,960		8,000	
Net markups		8,500		10,000
Net markdowns		4,000		6,000
Net sales to customers		650,000		680,000
Sales to employees (net of 30% discount)		14,000		17,500
Normal spoilage		5,000		6,600
Price Index:				
January 1, 2018	1.00			
December 31, 2018	1.03			
December 31, 2019	1.06			

Required:

1. Estimate the 2018 and 2019 ending inventory and cost of goods sold using the dollar-value LIFO retail method.
2. Estimate the 2018 ending inventory and cost of goods sold using the average cost retail method.
3. Estimate the 2018 ending inventory and cost of goods sold using the conventional retail method.

P 9-14

Change in methods

- LO9-6

Rockwell Corporation uses a periodic inventory system and has used the FIFO cost method since inception of the company in 1979. In 2018, the company decided to switch to the average cost method. Data for 2018 are as follows:

Beginning inventory, FIFO (5,000 units @ \$30)	\$150,000
Purchases:	
5,000 units @ \$36	\$180,000
5,000 units @ \$40	200,000
Cost of goods available for sale	<u>\$530,000</u>
Sales for 2018 (8,000 units @ \$70)	<u>\$560,000</u>

Additional Information:

- a. The company's effective income tax rate is 40% for all years.
- b. If the company had used the average cost method prior to 2018, ending inventory for 2017 would have been \$130,000.
- c. 7,000 units remained in inventory at the end of 2018.

Required:

1. Ignoring income taxes, prepare the 2018 journal entry to adjust the accounts to reflect the average cost method.
2. What is the effect of the change in methods on 2018 net income?

P 9-15

Inventory errors

- LO9-7

You have been hired as the new controller for the Ralston Company. Shortly after joining the company in 2018, you discover the following errors related to the 2016 and 2017 financial statements:

- a. Inventory at December 31, 2016, was understated by \$6,000.
- b. Inventory at December 31, 2017, was overstated by \$9,000.

- c. On December 31, 2017, inventory was purchased for \$3,000. The company did not record the purchase until the inventory was paid for early in 2018. At that time, the purchase was recorded by a debit to purchases and a credit to cash.

The company uses a periodic inventory system.

Required:

1. Assuming that the errors were discovered after the 2017 financial statements were issued, analyze the effect of the errors on 2017 and 2016 cost of goods sold, net income, and retained earnings. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Prepare a journal entry to correct the errors.
3. What other step(s) would be taken in connection with the errors?

P 9-16

Inventory errors

● LO9-7

The December 31, 2018, inventory of Tog Company, based on a physical count, was determined to be \$450,000. Included in that count was a shipment of goods received from a supplier at the end of the month that cost \$50,000. The purchase was recorded and paid for in 2019. Another supplier shipment costing \$20,000 was correctly recorded as a purchase in 2018. However, the merchandise, shipped FOB shipping point, was not received until 2019 and was incorrectly omitted from the physical count. A third purchase, shipped from a supplier FOB shipping point on December 28, 2018, did not arrive until January 3, 2019. The merchandise, which cost \$80,000, was not included in the physical count and the purchase has not yet been recorded.

The company uses a periodic inventory system.

Required:

1. Determine the correct December 31, 2018, inventory balance and, assuming that the errors were discovered after the 2018 financial statements were issued, analyze the effect of the errors on 2018 cost of goods sold, net income, and retained earnings. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Prepare a journal entry to correct the errors.

P 9-17

Integrating problem;
Chapters 8 and 9;
inventory errors

● LO9-7



Capwell Corporation uses a periodic inventory system. The company's ending inventory on December 31, 2018, its fiscal-year end, based on a physical count, was determined to be \$326,000. Capwell's unadjusted trial balance also showed the following account balances: Purchases, \$620,000; Accounts payable, \$210,000; Accounts receivable, \$225,000; Sales revenue, \$840,000.

The internal audit department discovered the following items:

1. Goods valued at \$32,000 held on consignment from Dix Company were included in the physical count but not recorded as a purchase.
2. Purchases from Xavier Corporation were incorrectly recorded at \$41,000 instead of the correct amount of \$14,000. The correct amount was included in the ending inventory.
3. Goods that cost \$25,000 were shipped from a vendor on December 28, 2018, terms f.o.b. destination. The merchandise arrived on January 3, 2019. The purchase and related accounts payable were recorded in 2018.
4. One inventory item was incorrectly included in ending inventory as 100 units, instead of the correct amount of 1,000 units. This item cost \$40 per unit.
5. The 2017 balance sheet reported inventory of \$352,000. The internal auditors discovered that a mathematical error caused this inventory to be understated by \$62,000. This amount is considered to be material. Comparative financial statements will be issued.
6. Goods shipped to a customer f.o.b. destination on December 25, 2018, were received by the customer on January 4, 2019. The sales price was \$40,000 and the merchandise cost \$22,000. The sale and corresponding accounts receivable were recorded in 2018.
7. Goods shipped from a vendor f.o.b. shipping point on December 27, 2018, were received on January 3, 2019. The merchandise cost \$18,000. The purchase was not recorded until 2019.

Required:

1. Determine the correct amounts for 2018 purchases, accounts payable, sales revenue, and accounts receivable.
2. Calculate ending inventory and cost of goods sold for 2018.
3. Describe the steps Capwell would undertake to correct the error in the 2017 ending inventory. What was the effect of the error on 2017 before-tax income?

P 9-18

Purchase commitments

● Appendix

In November 2018, the Brunswick Company signed two purchase commitments. The first commitment requires Brunswick to purchase 10,000 units of inventory at \$10 per unit by December 15, 2018. The second commitment requires the company to purchase 20,000 units of inventory at \$11 per unit by March 15, 2019. Brunswick's fiscal year-end is December 31. The company uses a periodic inventory system. Both contracts were exercised on their expiration date.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the December 15 purchase for cash assuming the following alternative unit market prices on that date:
 - a. \$10.50
 - b. \$ 9.50
2. Prepare any necessary adjusting entry at December 31, 2018, for the second purchase commitment assuming the following alternative unit market prices on that date:
 - a. \$12.50
 - b. \$10.30
3. Assuming that the unit market price on December 31, 2018, was \$10.30, prepare the journal entry to record the purchase on March 15, 2019, assuming the following alternative unit market prices on that date:
 - a. \$11.50
 - b. \$10.00

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Judgment**Case 9-1**

Inventoriable costs; lower of cost or market; retail inventory method

- LO9-1, LO9-3, LO9-4

Hudson Company, which is both a wholesaler and a retailer, purchases its inventories from various suppliers. Additional facts for Hudson's wholesale operations are as follows:

- a. Hudson incurs substantial warehousing costs.
- b. Hudson values inventory at the lower of cost or market. Market is below cost of the inventories.

Additional facts for Hudson's retail operations are as follows:

- a. Hudson determines the estimated cost of its ending inventories held for sale at retail using the conventional retail inventory method, which approximates lower of average cost or market.
- b. Hudson incurs substantial freight-in costs.
- c. Hudson has net markups and net markdowns.

Required:

1. Theoretically, how should Hudson account for the warehousing costs related to its wholesale inventories? Why?
2.
 - a. In general, why is inventory valued at the lower of cost or market?
 - b. At which amount should Hudson's wholesale inventories be reported in the balance sheet?
3. In the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage used to determine the estimated cost of its ending retail inventories, how should Hudson treat
 - a. Freight-in costs?
 - b. Net markups?
 - c. Net markdowns?
4. Why does Hudson's retail inventory method approximate lower of average cost or market?

(AICPA adapted)

Communication
Case 9-2

Lower of cost or net realizable value

- LO9-1

The lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV) approach to valuing inventory is a departure from the accounting principle of reporting assets at their historical costs. There are those who believe that inventory, as well as other assets, should be valued at NRV, regardless of whether NRV is above or below cost.

The focus of this case is the justification for the LCNRV rule for valuing inventories. Your instructor will divide the class into two to six groups depending on the size of the class. The mission of your group is to defend the LCNRV approach against the alternatives of valuing inventory at either historical cost or NRV.

Required:

1. Each group member should consider the situation independently and draft a tentative argument prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.
2. In class, each group will meet for 10 to 15 minutes in different areas of the classroom. During that meeting, group members will take turns sharing their suggestions for the purpose of arriving at a single group argument.

3. After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each group (selected during the group meetings) will share the group's solution with the class. The goal of the class is to incorporate the views of each group into a consensus approach to the situation.

Integrating Case 9–3

FIFO and lower of cost or net realizable value

● LO9–1

York Co. sells one product, which it purchases from various suppliers. York's trial balance at December 31, 2018, included the following accounts:

Sales (33,000 units @ \$16)	\$528,000
Sales discounts	7,500
Purchases	368,900
Purchase discounts	18,000
Freight-in	5,000
Freight-out	11,000

York Co.'s inventory purchases during 2018 were as follows:

	Units	Cost per Unit	Total Cost
Beginning inventory	7,000	\$7.70	\$ 53,900
Purchases, quarter ended March 31	13,000	7.50	97,500
Purchases, quarter ended June 30	15,000	7.90	118,500
Purchases, quarter ended September 30	12,000	8.25	99,000
Purchases, quarter ended December 31	8,000	8.20	65,600
	<u>55,000</u>		<u>\$434,500</u>

Additional Information:

- a. York's accounting policy is to report inventory in its financial statements at the lower of cost or net realizable value, applied to total inventory. Cost is determined under the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method.
- b. York has determined that, at December 31, 2018, the net realizable value was \$8.00 per unit.

Required:

1. Prepare York's schedule of cost of goods sold, with a supporting schedule of ending inventory. York includes inventory write-down losses in cost of goods sold.
2. Explain the rule of lower of cost or net realizable value and its application in this situation.

(AICPA adapted)

Judgment Case 9–4

The dollar-value LIFO method; the retail inventory method

● LO9–3, LO9–4

Huddell Company, which is both a wholesaler and retailer, purchases merchandise from various suppliers. The dollar-value LIFO method is used for the wholesale inventories.

Huddell determines the estimated cost of its retail ending inventories using the conventional retail inventory method, which approximates lower of average cost or market.

Required:

1. a. What are the advantages of using the dollar-value LIFO method as opposed to the traditional LIFO method?
- b. How does the application of the dollar-value LIFO method differ from the application of the traditional LIFO method?
2. a. In the calculation of the cost-to-retail percentage used to determine the estimated cost of its ending inventories, how should Huddell use
 - Net markups?
 - Net markdowns?
- b. Why does Huddell's retail inventory method approximate lower of average cost or market?

(AICPA adapted)

Communication Case 9–5

Retail inventory method

● LO9–3, LO9–4

The Brenly Paint Company, your client, manufactures paint. The company's president, Mr. Brenly, decided to open a retail store to sell paint as well as wallpaper and other items that would be purchased from other suppliers. He has asked you for information about the retail method of estimating inventories at the retail store.

Required:

Prepare a report to the president explaining the retail method of estimating inventories.

Analysis**Case 9–6**

Change in inventory method

- LO9–6

Generally accepted accounting principles should be applied consistently from period to period. However, changes within a company, as well as changes in the external economic environment, may force a company to change an accounting method. The specific reporting requirements when a company changes from one generally accepted inventory method to another depend on the methods involved.

Required:

Explain the accounting treatment for a change in inventory method (a) not involving LIFO, (b) from the LIFO method, and (c) to the LIFO method. Explain the logic underlying those treatments. Also, describe how disclosure requirements are designed to address the departure from consistency and comparability of changes in accounting principle.

Real World**Case 9–7**

Change in inventory method; Abercrombie & Fitch Co.

- LO9–6

Real World Financials

Abercrombie & Fitch Co. is a specialty retail company operating over 1,000 stores globally. The following disclosure note was included in recent financial statements:

4. Change in Accounting Principle

The Company elected to change its method of accounting for inventory from the retail method to the weighted average cost method effective February 2, 2013. In accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, all periods have been retroactively adjusted to reflect the period-specific effects of the change to the weighted average cost method. The Company believes that accounting under the weighted average cost method is preferable as it better aligns with the Company's focus on realized selling margin and improves the comparability of the Company's financial results with those of its competitors. Additionally, it will improve the matching of cost of goods sold with the related net sales and reflect the acquisition cost of inventory outstanding at each balance sheet date. The cumulative adjustment as of January 30, 2010, was an increase in its inventory of \$73.6 million and an increase in retained earnings of \$47.3 million.

Required:

Why does GAAP require Abercrombie to retroactively adjust all prior periods for this type of accounting change?

Real World**Case 9–8**

Various inventory issues;

Chapters 8 and 9; Fred's Inc.

- LO9–1, LO9–5, LO9–6

Real World Financials

Fred's Inc. operates general merchandise retail discount stores and full-service pharmacies in the Southeastern United States. Access the company's 10-K for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016. You can find the 10-K by using EDGAR at www.sec.gov. Answer the following questions.

Required:

1. What inventory methods does Fred's use to value its inventory?
2. Which price index does the company use in applying the retail inventory method?
3. A company that uses LIFO is allowed to provide supplemental disclosures reporting the effect of using another inventory method rather than LIFO. Using the supplemental LIFO disclosures provided by Fred's, determine the income effect of using LIFO versus another method for the current fiscal year.
4. Calculate the company's inventory turnover ratio for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016.
5. Assume that in the next fiscal year the company decides to switch to the average cost method. Describe the accounting treatment required for the switch.

Communication**Case 9–9**

Change in inventory method; disclosure note

- LO9–6

Mayfair Department Stores, Inc., operates over 30 retail stores in the Pacific Northwest. Prior to 2018, the company used the FIFO method to value its inventory. In 2018, Mayfair decided to switch to the dollar value LIFO retail inventory method. One of your responsibilities as assistant controller is to prepare the disclosure note describing the change in method that will be included in the company's 2018 financial statements. Kenneth Meier, the controller, provided the following information:

- a. Internally developed retail price indexes are used to adjust for the effects of changing prices.
- b. If the change had not been made, cost of goods sold for the year would have been \$22 million lower. The company's income tax rate is 40% and there were 100 million shares of common stock outstanding during 2018.
- c. The cumulative effect of the change on prior years' income is not determinable.
- d. The reasons for the change were (a) to provide a more consistent matching of merchandise costs with sales revenue, and (b) the new method provides a more comparable basis of accounting with competitors that also use the LIFO method.

Required:

1. Prepare for Kenneth Meier the disclosure note that will be included in the 2018 financial statements.
2. Explain why the “cumulative effect of the change on prior years’ income is not determinable.”

Judgment**Case 9–10**

Inventory errors

- LO9–7

Some inventory errors are said to be self-correcting in that the error has the opposite financial statement effect in the period following the error, thereby correcting the original account balance errors.

Required:

Despite this self-correcting feature, discuss why these errors should not be ignored and describe the steps required to account for the error correction.

Ethics Case 9–11

Overstatement of ending inventory

- LO9–7

Danville Bottlers is a wholesale beverage company. Danville uses the FIFO inventory method to determine the cost of its ending inventory. Ending inventory quantities are determined by a physical count. For the fiscal year-end June 30, 2018, ending inventory was originally determined to be \$3,265,000. However, on July 17, 2018, John Howard, the company’s controller, discovered an error in the ending inventory count. He determined that the correct ending inventory amount should be \$2,600,000.

Danville is a privately owned corporation with significant financing provided by a local bank. The bank requires annual audited financial statements as a condition of the loan. By July 17, the auditors had completed their review of the financial statements which are scheduled to be issued on July 25. They did not discover the inventory error.

John’s first reaction was to communicate his finding to the auditors and to revise the financial statements before they are issued. However, he knows that his and his fellow workers’ profit-sharing plans are based on annual pretax earnings and that if he revises the statements, everyone’s profit-sharing bonus will be significantly reduced.

Required:

1. Why will bonuses be negatively affected? What is the effect on pretax earnings?
2. If the error is not corrected in the current year and is discovered by the auditors during the following year’s audit, how will it be reported in the company’s financial statements?
3. Discuss the ethical dilemma John Howard faces.

Analysis**Case 9–12**

Purchase commitments

- Appendix

The management of the Esquire Oil Company believes that the wholesale price of heating oil that they sell to homeowners will increase again as the result of increased political problems in the Middle East. The company is currently paying \$0.80 a gallon. If they are willing to enter an agreement in November 2018 to purchase a million gallons of heating oil during the winter of 2019, their supplier will guarantee the price at \$0.80 per gallon. However, if the winter is a mild one, Esquire would not be able to sell a million gallons unless they reduced their retail price and thereby increase the risk of a loss for the year. On the other hand, if the wholesale price did increase substantially, they would be in a favorable position with respect to their competitors. The company’s fiscal year-end is December 31.

Required:

Discuss the accounting issues related to the purchase commitment that Esquire is considering.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO9–3, LO9–4, LO9–5

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target’s financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company’s website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. What indices does Target use to measure the LIFO provision?
2. Why does Target feel that the retail inventory method will result in inventory being valued at the lower of cost or market?
3. How does Target account for inventory when arrangements are made with vendors whereby Target does not purchase or pay for merchandise until the merchandise is ultimately sold to a customer?

**Air France–
KLM Case**

● LO9–8

Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

AF's inventories are valued at the lower of cost or net realizable value. Does this approach differ from U.S. GAAP?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

10

Property, Plant, and Equipment and Intangible Assets: Acquisition

OVERVIEW

This chapter and the one that follows address the measurement and reporting issues involving property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets, the tangible and intangible long-lived assets that are used in the production of goods and services. This chapter covers the valuation at date of acquisition. In Chapter 11, we discuss the allocation of the cost of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets to the periods benefited by their use, the treatment of expenditures made over the life of these assets to maintain and improve them, impairment, and disposition.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO10-1** Identify the various costs included in the initial cost of property, plant, and equipment, natural resources, and intangible assets. (p. 520)
- **LO10-2** Determine the initial cost of individual property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets acquired as a group for a lump-sum purchase price. (p. 529)
- **LO10-3** Determine the initial cost of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets acquired in exchange for a deferred payment contract. (p. 530)
- **LO10-4** Determine the initial cost of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets acquired in exchange for equity securities or through donation. (p. 532)
- **LO10-5** Calculate the fixed-asset turnover ratio used by analysts to measure how effectively managers use property, plant, and equipment. (p. 534)
- **LO10-6** Determine the initial cost of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets acquired in exchange for other nonmonetary assets. (p. 534)
- **LO10-7** Identify the items included in the cost of a self-constructed asset and determine the amount of capitalized interest. (p. 538)
- **LO10-8** Explain the difference in the accounting treatment of costs incurred to purchase intangible assets versus the costs incurred to internally develop intangible assets. (p. 544)
- **LO10-9** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to the acquisition of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets. (pp. 533, 547, and 549)



© Preston Mack/Disney Parks via Getty Images

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

A Disney Adventure

“Now I’m really confused,” confessed Stan, your study partner, staring blankly at the **Walt Disney Company** balance sheet that your professor handed out last week. “I thought that interest is always expensed in the income statement. Now I see that Disney is capitalizing interest. I’m not even sure what *capitalize* means! And what about this other account called *goodwill*? What’s that all about?” We talked about these topics in our accounting class today. Let’s take a look at the Disney financial statements and the disclosure note on capitalized interest and I’ll try to explain it all to you.”

Borrowings (in part):

The Company capitalizes interest on assets constructed for its parks and resorts and on theatrical productions. In fiscal years 2015, 2014, and 2013, total interest capitalized was \$110 million, \$73 million, and \$77 million, respectively.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. Describe to Stan what it means to capitalize an expenditure. What is the general rule for determining which costs are capitalized when property, plant, and equipment or an intangible asset is acquired? (p. 520)
2. Which costs might be included in the initial cost of equipment? (p. 520)
3. What is goodwill and how is it measured? (p. 527)
4. In what situations is interest capitalized rather than expensed? (p. 539)
5. What is the three-step process used to determine the amount of interest capitalized? (p. 541)

QUESTIONS

General Motors Corporation has significant investments in the production facilities it uses to manufacture the automobiles it sells. On the other hand, the principal revenue-producing assets of **Microsoft Corporation** are the copyrights on its computer software that permit it the exclusive rights to earn profits from those products. Timber reserves provide major revenues to **International Paper**. From a reporting perspective, we classify GM’s production facilities as property, plant, and equipment; Microsoft’s copyrights as intangible assets; and International Paper’s timber reserves as natural resources.¹ Together, these three noncurrent assets constitute the *long-lived, revenue-producing assets* of a company. Unlike manufacturers, many service firms and merchandising companies rely primarily on people or investments in inventories rather than on property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets to generate revenues. Even nonmanufacturing firms, though, typically have at least modest investments in buildings and equipment.

The measurement and reporting issues pertaining to this group of assets include valuation at date of acquisition, disposition, the treatment of expenditures made over the life of these assets to maintain and improve them, the allocation of cost to reporting periods that benefit from their use, and impairment. We focus on initial valuation in this chapter. In the next chapter, we examine subsequent expenditures, cost allocation, impairment, and disposition.

¹These are sometimes called *plant assets* or *fixed assets*.

PART A

Valuation at Acquisition

Types of Assets

For financial reporting purposes, long-lived, revenue-producing assets typically are classified in two categories.

1. **Property, plant, and equipment.** Assets in this category include land, land improvements, buildings, machinery used in manufacturing, computers and other office equipment, vehicles, furniture, and fixtures. **Natural resources** such as oil and gas deposits, timber tracts, and mineral deposits also are included.
2. **Intangible assets.** Unlike property, plant, and equipment and natural resources, these lack physical substance and the extent and timing of their future benefits typically are uncertain. They include patents, copyrights, trademarks, franchises, and goodwill.

Of course, every company maintains its own unique mix of these assets. The way these assets are classified and combined for reporting purposes also varies from company to company. As an example, a recent balance sheet of **Semtech Corporation**, a leading supplier of semiconductor products, reported net property, plant, and equipment of **\$101,006** thousand and **\$115,471** thousand at the end of fiscal years 2016 and 2015, respectively. A disclosure note, shown in Illustration 10–1, provided the details.

Illustration 10–1

Property, Plant, and Equipment—Semtech Corporation

Real World Financials

Note 7. Property, Plant, and Equipment (in part):

The following is a summary of property and equipment, at cost less accumulated depreciation:

(\$ in thousands)	January 31, 2016	January 25, 2015
Property	\$ 8,888	\$ 9,022
Buildings	18,749	18,657
Leasehold improvements	10,182	10,429
Machinery and equipment	141,357	135,956
Enterprise resource planning systems	35,907	26,890
Furniture and office equipment	28,166	33,780
Construction in progress	1,539	1,325
Property, plant, and equipment, gross	244,788	236,059
Less: accumulated depreciation and amortization	(143,782)	(120,588)
Property, plant, and equipment, net	\$101,006	\$115,471

In practice, some companies report intangibles as part of property, plant, and equipment, and others show intangibles as a separate balance sheet category. For example, **Layne Christensen Company**, a leading construction and exploration company, reported goodwill of \$8,915 thousand and other intangible assets of **\$6,991** thousand in a recent disclosure note, as shown in Illustration 10–2.

In this chapter, we'll first discuss how to record the acquisition cost of several types of property, plant, and equipment, and then we'll discuss the acquisition cost of intangible assets. You should find it helpful to study the overview of typical acquisition costs for each type of asset in Illustration 10–3. In Part B of this chapter, we examine how to record the acquisition of these assets when no cash is involved. Self-constructed assets and special issues related to research and development costs are addressed in Part C of the chapter. In the next chapter, we'll see how asset acquisition costs are expensed over time in a process called *depreciation* for plant and equipment, *depletion* for natural resources, and *amortization* for intangibles.

(5) Other Intangible Assets (in part)

(\$ in thousands)	2016		2015	
	Gross Amount	Accumulated Amortization	Gross Amount	Accumulated Amortization
Tradenames	\$5,120	\$(3,527)	\$5,120	\$(3,186)
Patents	905	(592)	905	(548)
Other	966	(653)	966	(590)
Total	\$6,991	\$(4,772)	\$6,991	\$(4,324)

Illustration 10-2

Intangible Assets—Layne Christensen Company

Real World Financials**Illustration 10-3**

Property, Plant, and Equipment and Intangible Assets and Their Acquisition Costs

Asset	Description	Typical Acquisition Costs
Property, plant, and equipment	Productive assets that derive their value from long-term use in operations rather than from resale.	All expenditures necessary to get the asset in condition and location for its intended use.
Equipment	Broad term that includes machinery, computers and other office equipment, vehicles, furniture, and fixtures.	Purchase price (less discounts), taxes, transportation, installation, testing, trial runs, and reconditioning.
Land	Real property used in operations (land held for speculative investment or future use is reported as investments or other assets).	Purchase price, attorney's fees, title, recording fees, commissions, back taxes, mortgages, liens, clearing, filling, draining, and removing old buildings.
Land improvements	Enhancements to property such as parking lots, driveways, private roads, fences, landscaping, and sprinkler systems.	Separately identifiable costs.
Buildings	Structures that include warehouses, plant facilities, and office buildings.	Purchase price, attorney's fees, commissions, and reconditioning.
Natural resources	Productive assets that are physically consumed in operations such as timber, mineral deposits, and oil and gas reserves.	Acquisition, exploration, development, and restoration costs.
Intangible Assets	Productive assets that lack physical substance and have long-term but typically uncertain benefits.	All expenditures necessary to get the asset in condition and location for its intended use.
Patents	Exclusive 20-year right to manufacture a product or use a process.	Purchase price, legal fees, filing fees, not including internal R&D.
Copyrights	Exclusive right to benefit from a creative work such as a song, film, painting, photograph, or book.	Purchase price, legal fees, filing fees, not including internal R&D.
Trademarks (tradenames)	Exclusive right to display a word, a slogan, a symbol, or an emblem that distinctively identifies a company, product, or a service.	Purchase price, legal fees, filing fees, not including internal R&D.
Franchises	A contractual arrangement under which a franchisor grants the franchisee the exclusive right to use the franchisor's trademark or tradename and certain product rights.	Franchise fee plus any legal fees.
Goodwill	The unique value of the company as a whole over and above all identifiable assets.	Excess of the fair value of the consideration exchanged for the company over the fair value of the net assets acquired.

Costs to be Capitalized

● LO10-1

The initial cost of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets includes the purchase price and all expenditures necessary to bring the asset to its desired condition and location for use.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 517

Property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets can be acquired through purchase, exchange, lease, donation, self-construction, or a business combination. We address acquisitions through leasing in Chapter 15 and acquisitions through business combinations later in this chapter and in Chapter 12.

The initial valuation of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets usually is quite simple. We know from prior study that assets are valued on the basis of their original costs. In Chapter 8 we introduced the concept of condition and location in determining the cost of inventory. For example, if Thompson Company purchased inventory for \$42,000 and incurred \$1,000 in freight costs to have the inventory shipped to its location, the initial cost of the inventory is \$43,000. This concept applies to the valuation of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets as well. The initial cost of these assets includes the purchase price and all expenditures necessary to bring the asset to its desired condition and location for use. We discuss these additional expenditures in the next section.

Our objective in identifying the costs of an asset is to distinguish the expenditures that produce future benefits from those that produce benefits only in the current period. The costs in the second group are recorded as expenses, but those in the first group are *capitalized*; that is, they are recorded as an asset and expensed in future periods.² For example, the cost of a major improvement to a delivery truck that extends its useful life generally would be capitalized. On the other hand, the cost of an engine tune-up for the delivery truck simply allows the truck to continue its productive activity but does not increase future benefits. These maintenance costs would be expensed. Subsequent expenditures for these assets are discussed in Chapter 11.

The distinction is not trivial. This point was unmistakably emphasized in the summer of 2002 when **WorldCom, Inc.**, disclosed that it had improperly capitalized nearly \$4 billion in expenditures related to the company's telecom network. This massive fraud resulted in one of the largest financial statement restatements in history and triggered the collapse of the once powerful corporation. Capitalizing rather than expensing these expenditures caused a substantial understatement of expenses and overstatement of reported income for 2001 and the first quarter of 2002. If the deception had not been discovered, not only would income for 2001 and 2002 have been overstated, but also income for many years into the future would have been understated as the fraudulent capitalized assets were depreciated. Of course, the balance sheet also would have overstated the assets and equity of the company.

Property, Plant, and Equipment

COST OF EQUIPMENT. Equipment is a broad term that encompasses machinery used in manufacturing, computers and other office equipment, vehicles, furniture, and fixtures. The cost of equipment includes the purchase price plus any sales tax (less any discounts received from the seller), transportation costs paid by the buyer to transport the asset to the location in which it will be used, expenditures for installation, testing, legal fees to establish title, and any other costs of bringing the asset to its condition and location for use. To the extent that these costs can be identified and measured, they should be included in the asset's initial valuation rather than expensed currently.

Although most costs can be identified easily, others are more difficult. For example, the costs of training personnel to operate machinery could be considered a cost necessary to make the asset ready for use. However, because it is difficult to measure the amount of training costs associated with specific assets, these costs usually are expensed. Consider Illustration 10-4.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2 p. 517

²Exceptions are land and certain intangible assets that have indefinite useful lives. Costs to acquire these assets also produce future benefits and therefore are capitalized, but unlike other property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets, their costs are not systematically expensed in future periods as depreciation or amortization.

Central Machine Tools purchased an industrial machine to be used in its manufacturing process. The purchase price was \$62,000. Central paid a freight company \$1,000 to transport the machine to its plant location plus \$300 shipping insurance. In addition, the machine had to be installed and mounted on a special platform built specifically for the machine at a cost of \$1,200. After installation, several trial runs were made to ensure proper operation. The cost of these trials including wasted materials was \$600. At what amount should Central capitalize the machine?

Purchase price	\$62,000
Freight and handling	1,000
Insurance during shipping	300
Special platform	1,200
Trial runs	600
	<u>\$65,100</u>

Each of the expenditures described was necessary to bring the machine to its condition and location for use and should be capitalized. These costs will be expensed in the future periods in which the asset is used.

Illustration 10-4

Initial Cost of Equipment

COST OF LAND. The cost of land also should include expenditures needed to get the land ready for its intended use. These include the purchase price plus closing costs such as fees for the attorney, real estate agent commissions, title and title search, and recording. If the property is subject to back taxes, liens, mortgages, or other obligations, these amounts are included also. In addition, any expenditures such as clearing, filling, draining, and even removing (razing) old buildings that are needed to prepare the land for its intended use are part of the land's cost. Proceeds from the sale of salvaged materials from old buildings torn down after purchase reduce the cost of land. Illustration 10-5 provides an example.

The Byers Structural Metal Company purchased a six-acre tract of land and an existing building for \$500,000. The company plans to remove the old building and construct a new office building on the site. In addition to the purchase price, the company made the following expenditures at closing of the purchase:

Title insurance	\$ 3,000
Commissions	16,000
Property taxes	6,000*

*The \$6,000 in property taxes included \$4,000 of delinquent taxes paid by Byers on behalf of the seller and \$2,000 attributable to the portion of the current fiscal year after the purchase date.

In addition, shortly after closing, the Byers paid a contractor \$10,000 to tear down the old building and remove it from the site. An additional \$5,000 was paid to grade the land. What should be the capitalized cost of the land?

Capitalized cost of land:	
Purchase price of land (and building to be removed)	\$500,000
Title insurance	3,000
Commissions	16,000
Delinquent property taxes	4,000
Cost of removing old building	10,000
Cost of grading	5,000
Total cost of land	<u>\$538,000</u>

Property taxes of \$2,000 were not included. These relate only to the current period and should be expensed separately. Other costs were necessary to acquire the land and are capitalized.

Illustration 10-5

Initial Cost of Land

LAND IMPROVEMENTS. It's important to distinguish between the cost of land and the cost of **land improvements** because land has an indefinite life and land improvements usually have useful lives that are estimable. Examples of land improvements include the costs of establishing parking lots, driveways, and private roads and the costs of fences and lawn and garden sprinkler systems. Costs of these assets are separately identified and capitalized. We depreciate their cost over periods benefited by their use.

COST OF BUILDINGS. The cost of acquiring a building usually includes realtor commissions and legal fees in addition to the purchase price. Quite often a building must be refurbished, remodeled, or otherwise modified to suit the needs of the new owner. These reconditioning costs are part of the building's acquisition cost. When a building is constructed rather than purchased, unique accounting issues are raised. We discuss these in Part C in the "Self-Constructed Assets" section.

COST OF NATURAL RESOURCES. **Natural resources** that provide long-term benefits are reported as property, plant, and equipment. These include timber tracts, mineral deposits, and oil and gas deposits. They can be distinguished from other assets by the fact that their benefits are derived from their physical consumption. For example, mineral deposits are physically diminishing as the minerals are extracted from the ground and either sold or used in the production process.³ On the contrary, equipment, land, and buildings produce benefits for a company through their *use* in the production of goods and services. Unlike those of natural resources, their physical characteristics usually remain unchanged during their useful lives.

Sometimes a company buys natural resources from another company. In that case, initial valuation is simply the purchase price plus any other costs necessary to bring the asset to condition and location for use. More frequently, though, the company will develop these assets. In this situation, the initial valuation can include (a) acquisition costs, (b) exploration costs, (c) development costs, and (d) restoration costs. **Acquisition costs** are the amounts paid to acquire the rights to explore for undiscovered natural resources or to extract proven natural resources. **Exploration costs** are expenditures such as drilling a well, or excavating a mine, or any other costs of searching for natural resources. **Development costs** are incurred after the resource has been discovered but before production begins. They include a variety of costs such as expenditures for tunnels, wells, and shafts. It is not unusual for the cost of a natural resource, either purchased or developed, to include estimated **restoration costs**. These are costs to restore land or other property to its original condition after extraction of the natural resource ends. Because restoration expenditures occur later—after production begins—they initially represent an obligation incurred in conjunction with an asset retirement. Restoration costs are one example of *asset retirement obligations*, the topic of the next subsection.

On the other hand, the costs of heavy equipment and other assets a company uses during drilling or excavation usually are not considered part of the cost of the natural resource itself. Instead, they are considered depreciable plant and equipment. However, if an asset used in the development of a natural resource cannot be moved and has no alternative use, its depreciable life is limited by the useful life of the natural resource.

ASSET RETIREMENT OBLIGATIONS. Sometimes a company incurs obligations associated with the disposition of property, plant, and equipment and natural resources, often as a result of acquiring those assets. For example, an oil and gas exploration company might be required to restore land to its original condition after extraction is completed. Before 2001, there was considerable diversity in the ways companies accounted for these obligations. Some companies recognized these **asset retirement obligations (AROs)** gradually over the life of the asset while others did not recognize the obligations until the asset was retired or sold.

Generally accepted accounting principles require that an existing legal obligation associated with the retirement of a tangible, long-lived asset be recognized as a liability and

The cost of a natural resource includes the **acquisition costs** for the use of land, the **exploration and development costs** incurred before production begins, and **restoration costs** incurred during or at the end of extraction.

An **asset retirement obligation (ARO)** is measured at fair value and is recognized as a liability and corresponding increase in asset valuation.

³Because of this characteristic, natural resources sometimes are called *wasting assets*.

measured at fair value, if value can be reasonably estimated. When the liability is credited, the offsetting debit is to the related asset.⁴ These retirement obligations could arise in connection with several types of assets. We introduce the topic here because it often arises with natural resources. Let's consider some of the provisions of the standard that addresses these obligations.

Scope. AROs arise only from *legal* obligations associated with the retirement of a tangible long-lived asset that result from the acquisition, construction, or development and (or) normal operation of a long-lived asset.

Recognition. A retirement obligation might arise at the inception of an asset's life or during its operating life. For instance, an offshore oil-and-gas production facility typically incurs its removal obligation when it begins operating. On the other hand, a landfill or a mining operation might incur a reclamation obligation gradually over the life of the asset as space is consumed with waste or as the mine is excavated.

Measurement. A company recognizes the fair value of an ARO in the period it's incurred. The amount of the liability increases the valuation of the related asset. Usually, the fair value is estimated by calculating the present value of estimated future cash outflows.

Present value calculations. Traditionally, the way uncertainty has been considered in present value calculations has been by discounting the "best estimate" of future cash flows applying a discount rate that has been adjusted to reflect the uncertainty or risk of those cash flows. That's not the approach we take here. Instead, we follow the approach described in the FASB's *Concept Statement No. 7* which is to adjust the cash flows, not the discount rate, for the uncertainty or risk of those cash flows.⁵ This **expected cash flow approach** incorporates specific probabilities of cash flows into the analysis. We use a discount rate equal to the *credit-adjusted risk free rate*. The higher a company's credit risk, the higher will be the discount rate. All other uncertainties or risks are incorporated into the cash flow probabilities. We first considered an illustration of this approach in Chapter 6. Illustration 10–6 demonstrates the approach in connection with the acquisition of a natural resource.

The Jackson Mining Company paid \$1,000,000 for the right to explore for a coal deposit on 500 acres of land in Pennsylvania. Costs of exploring for the coal deposit totaled \$800,000 and intangible development costs incurred in digging and erecting the mine shaft were \$500,000. In addition, Jackson purchased new excavation equipment for the project at a cost of \$600,000. After the coal is removed from the site, the equipment will be sold.

Jackson is required by its contract to restore the land to a condition suitable for recreational use after it extracts the coal. The company has provided the following three cash flow possibilities (A, B, and C) for the restoration costs to be paid in three years, after extraction is completed:

	Cash Outflow	Probability
A	\$500,000	30%
B	600,000	50%
C	700,000	20%

The company's credit-adjusted risk free interest rate is 8%.

Illustration 10–6

Cost of Natural Resources

⁴FASB ASC 410–20–25: Asset Retirement and Environmental Obligations—Asset Retirement Obligations—Recognition (previously "Accounting for Asset Retirement Obligations," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 143* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2001)).

⁵"Using Cash Flow Information and Present Value in Accounting Measurements," *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 7* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2000).

Illustration 10-6

Continued

Total capitalized cost for the coal deposit is:

Purchase of rights to explore	\$1,000,000
Exploration costs	800,000
Development costs	500,000
Restoration costs	468,360*
Total cost of coal deposit	<u><u>\$2,768,360</u></u>

*Present value of expected cash outflow for restoration costs (asset retirement obligation):

$\$500,000 \times 30\% =$	$\$150,000$
$600,000 \times 50\% =$	$300,000$
$700,000 \times 20\% =$	$140,000$
	<u>$\\$590,000 \times 0.79383 =$</u>
	<u>\$468,360</u>

(0.79383 is the present value of \$1, $n = 3$, $i = 8\%$)

Journal Entries

Coal mine (determined above)	2,768,360	
Cash (\$1,000,000 + 800,000 + 500,000)		2,300,000
Asset retirement liability (determined above)		468,360
Excavation equipment	600,000	
Cash (cost)		600,000

As we discuss in Chapter 11, the cost of the coal mine is allocated to future periods as *depletion* using a depletion rate based on the estimated amount of coal discovered. The \$600,000 cost of the excavation equipment, less any anticipated residual value, is allocated to future periods as *depreciation*.

Additionally, the difference between the asset retirement liability of **\$468,360** and the probability-weighted expected cash outflow of **\$590,000** is recognized as **accretion expense**, an additional expense that accrues as an operating expense, over the three-year excavation period. This process increases the liability to \$590,000 by the end of the excavation period.

Year	Accretion Expense	Increase in Balance	Asset Retirement Obligation
			468,360
1	8% (468,360) = 37,469	37,469	505,829
2	8% (505,829) = 40,466	40,466	546,295
3	8% (546,295) = 43,705*	43,705	590,000

*Rounded

The journal entry to record accretion expense for the first year is as follows:

Accretion expense	37,469	
Asset retirement liability		37,469

If the actual restoration costs are more (less) than the \$590,000, we recognize a loss (gain) on retirement of the obligation for the difference. For example, if the actual restoration costs were \$625,000, we would record the transaction as follows:

Asset retirement liability	590,000	
Loss (\$625,000 - 590,000)	35,000	
Cash		625,000

SM Energy Company is engaged in the exploration, development, acquisition, and production of natural gas and crude oil. For the year ended December 31, 2015, SM reported \$137.5 million in asset retirement obligations in its balance sheet. A disclosure note included in a recent annual report shown in Illustration 10-7 describes the company's policy and provides a summary of disclosure requirements.

It is important to understand that asset retirement obligations could result from the acquisition of many different types of tangible assets, not just natural resources. For example,

Asset retirement obligations could result from the acquisition of many different types of tangible assets, not just natural resources.

Note 9—Asset Retirement Obligations (in part)

The Company recognizes an estimated liability for future costs associated with the plugging and abandonment of its oil and gas properties. A liability for the fair value of an asset retirement obligation (“ARO”) and a corresponding increase to the carrying value of the related long-lived asset are recorded at the time a well is drilled or acquired. The increase in carrying value is included in proved oil and gas properties in the accompanying balance sheets. The Company depletes the amount added to proved oil and gas property costs and recognizes expense in connection with the accretion of the discounted liability over the remaining estimated economic lives of the respective oil and gas properties. Cash paid to settle asset retirement obligations is included in the operating section of the Company’s accompanying statements of cash flows.

The Company’s estimated asset retirement obligation liability is based on historical experience in plugging and abandoning wells, estimated economic lives, estimated plugging and abandonment cost, and federal and state regulatory requirements. The liability is discounted using the credit-adjusted risk-free rate estimated at the time the liability is incurred or revised. The credit-adjusted risk-free rates used to discount the Company’s plugging and abandonment liabilities range from 5.5 percent to 12 percent. In periods subsequent to initial measurement of the liability, the Company must recognize period-to-period changes in the liability resulting from the passage of time, revisions to either the amount of the original estimate of undiscounted cash flows or changes in inflation factors or the Company’s credit-adjusted risk-free rate as market conditions warrant.

Illustration 10–7

Disclosure of Asset Retirement Obligations—
SM Energy Company

Real World Financials

Dow Chemical Company reported a \$96 million asset retirement liability in its 2016 balance sheet related to anticipated demolition and remediation activities at its manufacturing sites in the United States, Canada, Brazil, China, Argentina, Australia, and Europe; and capping activities at landfill sites in the United States, Canada, Brazil, and Italy.

Sometimes, after exploration or development, it becomes apparent that continuing the project is economically infeasible. If that happens, any costs incurred are expensed rather than capitalized. An exception is in the oil and gas industry, where we have two generally accepted accounting alternatives for accounting for projects that prove unsuccessful. We discuss these alternatives in Appendix 10.

Intangible Assets

Intangible assets are assets, other than financial assets, that lack physical substance. They include such items as patents, copyrights, trademarks, franchises, and goodwill. Despite their lack of physical substance, these assets can be extremely valuable resources for a company. For example, **Interbrand Sampson**, the world’s leading branding consulting company, recently estimated the value of the **Coca-Cola** trademark to be \$78 billion.⁶ In general, intangible assets refer to the ownership of exclusive rights that provide benefits to the owner in the production of goods and services.

Intangible assets generally represent exclusive rights that provide benefits to the owner.

The issues involved in accounting for intangible assets are similar to those of property, plant, and equipment. One key difference, though, is that the future benefits that we attribute to intangible assets usually are much less certain than those attributed to tangible assets. For example, will the new toy for which a company acquires a patent be accepted by the market? If so, will it be a blockbuster like Silly Bandz or Rubik’s Cube, or will it be only a moderate success? Will it have lasting appeal like Barbie dolls, or will it be a short-term fad? In short, it’s often very difficult to anticipate the timing, and even the existence, of future benefits attributable to many intangible assets. In fact, this uncertainty is a discriminating characteristic of intangible assets that perhaps better distinguishes them from tangible assets than their lack of physical substance. After all, other assets, too, do not exist physically but are not considered intangible assets. Accounts receivable and prepaid expenses, for example, have no physical substance and yet are reported among tangible assets.

Companies can either (1) *purchase* intangible assets from other entities (existing patent, copyright, trademark, or franchise rights) or (2) *develop* intangible assets internally (say, develop a new product or process that is then patented). For purchased intangible assets, the

Purchased intangible assets are valued at their original cost.

⁶This \$78 billion represents an estimate of the fair value to the company at the time the estimate was made, not the historical cost valuation that appears in the balance sheet of Coca-Cola.

initial valuation usually is quite simple. We value a purchased intangible at its original cost, which includes its purchase price and all other costs necessary to bring it to condition and location for intended use. For example, if a company purchases a patent from another entity, it might pay legal fees and filing fees in addition to the purchase price. We value intangible assets acquired in exchange for stock, or for other nonmonetary assets, or with deferred payment contracts exactly as we do property, plant, and equipment.

The cost of an intangible asset is amortized over its useful life unless it has an indefinite useful life.⁷ Also, just like property, plant, and equipment, intangibles are subject to asset impairment rules. We discuss amortization and impairment in Chapter 11. In this chapter, we consider the acquisition cost of intangible assets. Let's look briefly at the costs of purchasing some of the more common intangible assets.

PATENTS. A **patent** is an exclusive right to manufacture a product or to use a process. This right is granted by the U.S. Patent Office for a period of 20 years. In essence, the holder of a patent has a monopoly on the use, manufacture, or sale of the product or process. If a patent is purchased from an inventor or another individual or company, the amount paid is its initial valuation. The cost might also include such other costs as legal and filing fees to secure the patent. Holders of patents often need to defend a patent in court against infringement. Any attorney fees and other costs of successfully defending a patent are added to the patent account.

When a patent is *developed internally*, the research and development costs of doing so are expensed as incurred. We discuss research and development in more detail in a later section. We capitalize legal and filing fees to secure the patent, even if internally developed.

COPYRIGHTS. A **copyright** is an exclusive right of protection given to a creator of a published work, such as a song, film, painting, photograph, or book. Copyrights are protected by law and give the creator the exclusive right to reproduce and sell the artistic or published work for the life of the creator plus 70 years. Accounting for the costs of copyrights is virtually identical to that of patents.

TRADEMARKS. A **trademark**, also called **tradename**, is an exclusive right to display a word, a slogan, a symbol, or an emblem that distinctively identifies a company, a product, or a service. The trademark can be registered with the U.S. Patent Office which protects the trademark from use by others for a period of 10 years. The registration can be renewed for an indefinite number of 10-year periods, so a trademark is an example of an intangible asset whose useful life could be indefinite.

Trademarks or tradenames often are acquired through a business combination. As an example, in 2002, **Hewlett-Packard Company (HP)** acquired all of the outstanding stock of **Compaq Computer Corporation** for \$24 billion. Of that amount, \$1.4 billion was assigned to the Compaq tradename. HP stated in a disclosure note that this “. . . intangible asset will not be amortized because it has an indefinite remaining useful life based on many factors and considerations, including the length of time that the Compaq name has been in use, the Compaq brand awareness and market position and the plans for continued use of the Compaq brand within a portion of HP's overall product portfolio.”

Trademarks or tradenames can be very valuable. The estimated value of \$78 billion for the Coca-Cola trademark mentioned previously is a good example. Note that the cost of the trademark reported in the balance sheet is far less than the estimate of its worth to the company. The Coca-Cola Company's balance sheet at December 31, 2015, disclosed all trademarks at a cost of only \$6 billion.

FRANCHISES. A **franchise** is a contractual arrangement under which the franchisor grants the franchisee the exclusive right to use the franchisor's trademark or tradename and may include product and formula rights, within a geographical area, usually for a specified period of time. Many popular retail businesses such as fast food outlets, automobile dealerships, and motels are franchises. For example, the last time you ordered a hamburger at McDonald's, you were probably dealing with a franchise.

The owner of that McDonald's outlet paid **McDonald's Corporation** a fee in exchange for the exclusive right to use the McDonald's name and to sell its products within a specified geographical

Trademarks or tradenames often are considered to have indefinite useful lives.

Franchise operations are among the most common ways of doing business.

⁷FASB ASC 350–30–35–1: Intangibles–Goodwill and Other–General Intangibles Other Than Goodwill–Subsequent Measurement, and FASB ASC 350–20–35–1: Intangibles–Goodwill and Other–Goodwill–Subsequent Measurement (previously “Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 142* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2001)).

area. In addition, many franchisors provide other benefits to the franchisee, such as participating in the construction of the retail outlet, training of employees, and national advertising.

Payments to the franchisor usually include an initial payment plus periodic payments over the life of the franchise agreement. The franchisee capitalizes as an intangible asset the initial franchise fee plus any legal costs associated with the contract agreement. The franchise asset is then amortized over the life of the franchise agreement. The periodic payments usually relate to services provided by the franchisor on a continuing basis and are expensed as incurred.

Most purchased intangibles are *specifically identifiable*. That is, cost can be directly associated with a specific intangible right. An exception is goodwill, which we discuss next.

GOODWILL. Goodwill is a unique intangible asset in that its cost can't be directly associated with any specifically identifiable right and it is not separable from the company itself. It represents the unique value of a company as a whole over and above its identifiable tangible and intangible assets. Goodwill can emerge from a company's clientele and reputation, its trained employees and management team, its favorable business location, and any other unique features of the company that can't be associated with a specific asset.

Because goodwill can't be separated from a company, it's not possible for a buyer to acquire it without also acquiring the whole company or a portion of it. Goodwill will appear as an asset in a balance sheet only when it was purchased in connection with the acquisition of control over another company. In that case, the capitalized cost of goodwill equals the fair value of the consideration exchanged (acquisition price) for the company less the fair value of the net assets acquired. The fair value of the net assets equals the fair value of all identifiable tangible and intangible assets less the fair value of any liabilities of the selling company assumed by the buyer. Goodwill is a residual asset; it's the amount left after other assets are identified and valued. Consider Illustration 10–8.

Goodwill can only be purchased through the acquisition of another company.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 517

Goodwill is the excess of the fair value of the consideration exchanged over the fair value of the net assets acquired.

The Smithson Corporation acquired all of the outstanding common stock of the Rider Corporation in exchange for \$180 million cash.* Smithson assumed all of Rider's long-term liabilities, which have a fair value of \$120 million at the date of acquisition. The fair values of all identifiable assets of Rider are as follows (\$ in millions):

Receivables	\$ 50
Inventory	70
Property, plant, and equipment	90
Patent	40
Total	<u>\$250</u>

The cost of the goodwill resulting from the acquisition is \$50 million:

Fair value of consideration exchanged	\$180
Less: Fair value of net assets acquired:	
Fair value of identifiable assets acquired	\$250
Less: Fair value of liabilities assumed	(120) (130)
Goodwill	<u>\$ 50</u>

The following journal entry captures the effect of the acquisition on Smithson's assets and liabilities:

Receivables (fair value)	50
Inventory (fair value)	70
Property, plant, and equipment (fair value).....	90
Patent (fair value).....	40
Goodwill (difference).....	50
Liabilities (fair value)	120
Cash (acquisition price)	180

*Determining the amount an acquirer is willing to pay for a company in excess of the identifiable net assets is a question of determining the value of a company as a whole. This question is addressed in most introductory and advanced finance textbooks.

Illustration 10–8

Goodwill

Of course, a company can develop its own goodwill through advertising, training, and other efforts. In fact, most do. However, a company must expense all such costs incurred in the internal generation of goodwill. By not capitalizing these items, accountants realize that this results in an improper match of expenses with revenues because many of these expenditures do result in significant future benefits. Also, it's difficult to compare two companies when one has acquired goodwill and the other has not. But imagine how difficult it would be to associate these expenditures with any objective measure of goodwill. In essence, we have a situation where the characteristic of faithful representation overshadows relevance.

Just like for other intangible assets that have indefinite useful lives, *we do not amortize goodwill*. This makes it imperative that companies make every effort to identify specific intangibles other than goodwill that they acquire in a business combination since goodwill is the amount left after other assets are identified.

Goodwill, along with other intangible assets with indefinite useful lives, is not amortized.

Additional Consideration

It's possible for the fair value of net assets to exceed the fair value of the consideration exchanged for those net assets. A "bargain purchase" situation could result from an acquisition involving a "forced sale" in which the seller is acting under duress. The FASB previously required this excess, deemed *negative goodwill*, to be allocated as a pro rata reduction of the amounts that otherwise would have been assigned to particular assets acquired. This resulted in assets acquired being recorded at amounts less than their fair values. However, current GAAP makes it mandatory that assets and liabilities acquired in a business combination be valued at their fair values.⁸ Any negative goodwill is reported as a gain in the year of the combination.

In a business combination, an intangible asset must be recognized as an asset apart from goodwill if it arises from contractual or other legal rights or is separable.

In keeping with that goal, GAAP provides guidelines for determining which intangibles should be separately recognized and valued. Specifically, an intangible should be recognized as an asset apart from goodwill if it arises from contractual or other legal rights or is capable of being separated from the acquired entity. Possibilities are patents, trademarks, copyrights, and franchise agreements, and such items as customer lists, license agreements, order backlogs, employment contracts, and noncompetition agreements.⁹ In past years, some of these intangibles, if present in a business combination, often were included in the cost of goodwill.¹⁰

Additional Consideration

Contract Acquisition Costs. Chapter 5 introduced you to the new guidance on revenue recognition issued by the FASB in 2014. Under the new standard, sellers of goods and services are required to capitalize, as an intangible asset, the incremental costs of obtaining and fulfilling a long-term (longer than one year) contract. A sales commission is an example of a contract acquisition cost that could be capitalized, rather than expensed, under this new guidance.

If capitalized, the cost of the resulting intangible asset is amortized on a systematic basis that is consistent with the pattern of transfer of the goods or services to which the asset relates. The intangible asset also is evaluated for impairment using the same approach used for other intangible assets. We discuss amortization and impairment testing of intangible assets in Chapter 11.

⁸FASB ASC 805: Business Combinations (previously "Business Combinations," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 141 (revised)* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2007)).

⁹Ibid.

¹⁰An assembled workforce is an example of an intangible asset that is not recognized as a separate asset. A workforce does not represent a contractual or legal right, nor is it separable from the company as a whole.

Lump-Sum Purchases

It's not unusual for a group of assets to be acquired for a single sum. If these assets are indistinguishable, for example 10 identical delivery trucks purchased for a lump-sum price of \$150,000, valuation is obvious. Each of the trucks would be valued at \$15,000 ($\$150,000 \div 10$). However, if the lump-sum purchase involves different assets, it's necessary to allocate the lump-sum acquisition price among the separate items. The assets acquired may have different characteristics and different useful lives. For example, the acquisition of a factory may include assets that are significantly different such as land, building, and equipment.

The allocation is made in proportion to the individual assets' relative fair values. This process is best explained by an example in Illustration 10–9.

LO10–2

The Smyrna Hand & Edge Tools Company purchased an existing factory for a single sum of \$2,000,000. The price included title to the land, the factory building, the manufacturing equipment in the building, a patent on a process the equipment uses, and inventories of raw materials. An independent appraisal estimated the fair values of the assets (if purchased separately) at:

Fair Values		
Land	\$ 330,000	15%
Building	550,000	25
Equipment	660,000	30
Patent	440,000	20
Inventories	220,000	10
Total	<u>\$2,200,000</u>	<u>100%</u>

The lump-sum purchase price of \$2,000,000 is allocated to the separate assets as follows:

Land	(15% × \$2,000,000).....	300,000	
Building	(25% × \$2,000,000).....	500,000	
Equipment	(30% × \$2,000,000).....	600,000	
Patent	(20% × \$2,000,000).....	400,000	
Inventories	(10% × \$2,000,000).....	200,000	
Cash		2,000,000

Illustration 10–9

Lump-Sum Purchase

The total purchase price is allocated in proportion to the relative fair values of the assets acquired.

The relative fair value percentages are multiplied by the lump-sum purchase price to determine the initial valuation of each of the separate assets. Notice that the lump-sum purchase includes inventories. The procedure used here to allocate the purchase price in a lump-sum acquisition pertains to any type of asset mix, not just to property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets.

Ethical Dilemma



Grandma's Cookie Company purchased a factory building. The company controller, Don Nelson, is in the process of allocating the lump-sum purchase price between land and building. Don suggests to the company's chief financial officer, Judith Prince, that they fudge a little by allocating a disproportionately higher share of the price to land. Don reasons that this will reduce depreciation expense, boost income, increase their profit-sharing bonus, and hopefully, increase the price of the company's stock. Judith has some reservations about this because the higher reported income will also cause income taxes to be higher than they would be if a correct allocation of the purchase price is made.

What are the ethical issues? What stakeholders' interests are in conflict?

PART B

Noncash Acquisitions

Companies sometimes acquire assets without paying cash at the time of the purchase. In Part B, we examine four situations where this occurs.

1. Deferred payments (notes payable)
2. Issuance of equity securities
3. Donated assets
4. Exchanges of nonmonetary assets for other assets

Assets acquired in noncash transactions are valued at the fair value of the assets given or the fair value of the assets received, whichever is more clearly evident.

The controlling principle in each of these situations is that in any noncash transaction, the asset acquired is recorded at its fair value. The first indicator of fair value is the fair value of the assets, debt, or equity securities given. Sometimes the fair value of the assets received is used when their fair value is more clearly evident than the fair value of the assets given.

Deferred Payments

● LO10-3

A company can acquire an asset by giving the seller a promise to pay cash in the future and thus creating a liability, usually a note payable. The initial valuation of the asset is, again, quite simple as long as the note payable explicitly requires the payment of interest at a realistic interest rate. For example, suppose a machine is acquired for \$15,000 and the buyer signs a note requiring the payment of \$15,000 sometime in the future *plus* interest in the meantime at a realistic interest rate. The machine would be valued at \$15,000 and the transaction recorded as follows:

Machine	15,000	
Note payable.....		15,000

We know from our discussion of the time value of money in Chapter 6 that most liabilities are valued at the present value of future cash payments, reflecting an appropriate time value of money. As long as the note payable explicitly contains a realistic interest rate, the present value will equal the face value of the note, \$15,000 in our previous example. This also should be equal to the fair value of the machine purchased. On the other hand, when an interest rate is not specified or is unrealistic, determining the cost of the asset is less straight-forward. In that case, the accountant should look beyond the form of the transaction and record its substance. Consider Illustration 10-10.

Illustration 10-10

Asset Acquired with Debt—
Present Value of Note
Indicative of Fair Value

On January 2, 2018, the Midwestern Steam Gas Corporation purchased an industrial furnace. In payment, Midwestern signed a noninterest-bearing note requiring \$50,000 to be paid on December 31, 2019. If Midwestern had borrowed cash to buy the furnace, the bank would have required an interest rate of 10%.

Some portion of the payment(s) required by a noninterest-bearing note in reality is interest.

Noncash transactions are recorded at the fair value of the items exchanged.

On the surface, it might appear that Midwestern is paying \$50,000 for the furnace, the eventual cash payment. However, when you recognize that the agreement specifies no interest even though the payment won't be made for two years, it becomes obvious that a portion of the \$50,000 payment is not actually payment for the furnace, but instead is interest on the note. At what amount should Midwestern value the furnace and the related note payable?

The answer is fair value, as it is for any noncash transaction. This might be the fair value of the furnace or the fair value of the note. Let's say, in this situation, that the furnace is custom-built, so its cash price is unavailable. But Midwestern can determine the fair value of the note payable by computing the present value of the cash payments at the appropriate interest rate of 10%. The amount actually paid for the furnace, then, is the present value of the cash flows called for by the loan agreement, discounted at the market rate—10% in this case.

$$PV = \$50,000 (0.82645^*) = \$41,323$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 2$, $i = 10\%$ (from Table 2).

So the furnace should be recorded at its *real* cost, \$41,323, as follows:¹¹

Furnace (determined above).....	41,323	
Discount on note payable (difference).....	8,677	
Note payable (face amount).....		50,000

The economic essence of a transaction should prevail over its outward appearance.

Notice that the note also is recorded at \$41,323, its present value, but this is accomplished by using a contra account, called *discount on note payable*, for the difference between the face amount of the note (\$50,000) and its present value (\$41,323). The difference of \$8,677 is the portion of the eventual \$50,000 payment that represents interest and is recognized as interest expense over the life of the note.

Assuming that Midwestern's fiscal year-end is December 31 and that adjusting entries are recorded only at the end of each year, the company would record the following entries at the end of 2018 and 2019 to accrue interest and the payment of the note:

December 31, 2018

Interest expense (\$41,323 × 10%).....	4,132	
Discount on note payable.....		4,132

December 31, 2019

Interest expense [(\$41,323 + 4,132)* × 10%]	4,545	
Discount on note payable.....		4,545
Note payable (face amount)	50,000	
Cash.....		50,000

*The 2018 unpaid interest increases the amount owed by \$4,132.

Note payable	
Jan. 1, 2018	50,000
	50,000
Dec. 31, 2019	
Bal. 12/31/19	0

Discount on note payable	
Jan. 1, 2018	
	8,677
Dec. 31, 2018	4,132
Dec. 31, 2019	4,545
Bal. 12/31/19	0

Sometimes, the fair value of an asset acquired in a noncash transaction is readily available from price lists, previous purchases, or otherwise. In that case, this fair value may be more clearly evident than the fair value of the note and it would serve as the best evidence of the exchange value of the transaction. As an example, let's consider Illustration 10-11.

On January 2, 2018, Dennison, Inc., purchased a machine and signed a noninterest-bearing note in payment. The note requires the company to pay \$100,000 on December 31, 2020. Dennison is not sure what interest rate appropriately reflects the time value of money. However, price lists indicate the machine could have been purchased for cash at a price of \$79,383.

Dennison records both the asset and liability at \$79,383 on January 2 as shown:

Machine (cash price).....	79,383	
Discount on note payable (difference).....	20,617	
Note payable (face amount).....		100,000

Illustration 10-11

Noninterest-Bearing Note—Fair Value of Asset Is Known

In this situation, we infer the present value of the note from the fair value of the asset. Again, the difference between the note's \$79,383 present value and the cash payment of \$100,000 represents interest. We can determine the interest rate that is implicit in the agreement as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \$79,383 \text{ (present value)} &= \$100,000 \text{ (face amount)} \times \text{PV factor} \\ \$79,383 \div \$100,000 &= 0.79383^* \end{aligned}$$

*Present value of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = ?$ (from Table 2, $i = 8\%$).

We refer to the **8%** rate as the *implicit rate of interest*. Dennison records interest each year at 8% in the same manner as demonstrated in Illustration 10-10 and discussed in greater depth in Chapter 14.

¹¹The entry shown assumes the note is recorded using the gross method. By the net method, a discount account is not used and the note is simply recorded at present value.

Furnace.....	41,323	
Note payable.....		41,323

We now turn our attention to the acquisition of assets acquired in exchange for equity securities and through donation.

Issuance of Equity Securities

● LO10-4

The most common situation in which equity securities are issued for property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets occurs when small companies incorporate and the owner or owners contribute assets to the new corporation in exchange for ownership securities, usually common stock. Because the common shares are not publicly traded, it's difficult to determine their fair value. In that case, the fair value of the assets received by the corporation is probably the better indicator of the transaction's exchange value. In other situations, particularly those involving corporations whose stock is actively traded, the market value of the shares is the best indication of fair value. Consider Illustration 10-12.

Illustration 10-12

Asset Acquired by Issuing Equity Securities

Assets acquired by issuing common stock are valued at the fair value of the securities or the fair value of the assets, whichever is more clearly evident.

On March 31, 2018, the Elcorn Company issued 10,000 shares of its noper common stock in exchange for land. On the date of the transaction, the fair value of the common stock, evidenced by its market price, was \$20 per share. The journal entry to record this transaction is shown below:

Land	200,000	
Common stock (10,000 shares × \$20)		200,000

If the fair value of the common stock had not been reliably determinable, the value of the land as determined through an independent appraisal would be used as the cost of the land and the value of the common stock.

Donated Assets

Donated assets are recorded at their fair values.

Revenue is credited for the amount paid by an unrelated party.

On occasion, companies acquire assets through donation. The donation usually is an enticement to do something that benefits the donor. For example, the developer of an industrial park might pay some of the costs of building a manufacturing facility to entice a company to locate in its park. Companies record assets donated by unrelated parties at their fair values based on either an available market price or an appraisal value. This should not be considered a departure from historical cost valuation. Instead, it is equivalent to the donor contributing cash to the company and the company using the cash to acquire the asset.

As the recipient records the asset at its fair value, what account receives the offsetting credit? Over the years, there has been disagreement over this question. Should the recipient increase its paid-in capital—the part of shareholders' equity representing investments in the firm? Or, should the donated asset be considered revenue? GAAP requires that donated assets be recorded as *revenue*.¹² Recall that revenues generally are inflows of assets from delivering or producing goods, rendering services, or from other activities that constitute the entity's ongoing major or central operations. The rationale is that the company receiving the donation is performing a service for the donor in exchange for the asset donated.

Corporations occasionally receive donations from governmental units. A local governmental unit might provide land or pay all or some of the cost of a new office building or manufacturing plant to entice a company to locate within its geographical boundaries. For example, the city of San Jose, California, paid a significant portion of the cost of a new office building for **IBM Corporation**. The new office building, located in downtown San Jose, brought jobs to a revitalized downtown area and increased revenues to the city. The City of San Jose did not receive an equity interest in IBM through its donation, but significantly benefited nevertheless. Illustration 10-13 provides an example.

¹²FASB ASC 958-605-15-2 and FASB ASC 958-605-25-2: Not-for-Profit Entities—Revenue Recognition—Scope and Scope Exceptions—Contributions Received (previously "Accounting for Contributions Received and Contributions Made," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 116* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1993)).

Elcorn Enterprises decided to relocate its office headquarters to the city of Westmont. The city agreed to pay 20% of the \$20 million cost of building the headquarters in order to entice Elcorn to relocate. The building was completed on May 3, 2018. Elcorn paid its portion of the cost of the building in cash. Elcorn records the transaction as follows:

Building	20,000,000	
Cash.....		16,000,000
Revenue—donation of asset (20% × \$20 million).....		4,000,000

Illustration 10–13

Asset Donation

International Financial Reporting Standards



Government Grants. Both U.S. GAAP and IFRS require that companies value donated assets at their fair values. For government grants, though, the way that value is recorded is different under the two sets of standards. Unlike U.S. GAAP, donated assets are not recorded as revenue under IFRS. *IAS No. 20* requires that government grants be recognized in income over the periods necessary to match them on a systematic basis with the related costs that they are intended to compensate. So, for example, *IAS No. 20* allows two alternatives for grants related to assets.¹³

1. Deduct the amount of the grant in determining the initial cost of the asset.
2. Record the grant as a liability, deferred income, in the balance sheet and recognize it in the income statement systematically over the asset's useful life.

In Illustration 10–13, if a company chose the first option, the building would be recorded at \$16 million. If instead the company chose the second option, the building would be recorded at \$20 million, but rather than recognizing \$4 million in revenue as with U.S. GAAP, a \$4 million credit to deferred income would be recorded and recognized as income over the life of the building.

Siemens, a global electronics and electrical engineering company based in Germany, prepares its financial statements according to IFRS, and sometimes receives government grants for the purchase or production of fixed assets. The following disclosure note included with recent financial statements indicates that Siemens uses the first option, deducting the amount of the grant from the initial cost of the asset.

Government Grants (in part)

Grants awarded for the purchase or the production of fixed assets (grants related to assets) are generally offset against the acquisition or production costs of the respective assets and reduce future depreciations accordingly.

● LO10–9

IFRS requires government grants to be recognized in income over the periods necessary to match them on a systematic basis with the related costs that they are intended to compensate.

Property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets also can be acquired in an exchange. Because an exchange transaction inherently involves a disposition of one asset as it is given up in exchange for another, we cover these transactions next under Exchanges.

Decision Makers' Perspective

The property, plant, and equipment and intangible asset acquisition decision is among the most significant decisions that management must make. A decision to acquire a new fleet of airplanes or to build or purchase a new office building or manufacturing plant could influence a company's performance for many years.

These decisions, often referred to as **capital budgeting** decisions, require management to forecast all future net cash flows (cash inflows minus cash outflows) generated by the asset(s). These cash flows are then used in a model to determine if the future cash flows are sufficient to warrant the capital expenditure. One such model, the net present value model, compares the present value of future net cash flows with the required initial acquisition cost

¹³"Government Grants," *International Accounting Standard No. 20* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

of the asset(s). If the present value is higher than the acquisition cost, the asset is acquired. You have studied or will study capital budgeting in considerable depth in a financial management course. The introduction to the time value of money concept in Chapter 6 provided you with important tools necessary to evaluate capital budgeting decisions.

● LO10–5

A key to profitability is how well a company manages and utilizes its assets. Financial analysts often use activity, or turnover, ratios to evaluate a company's effectiveness in managing assets. This concept was illustrated with receivables and inventory in previous chapters. Property, plant, and equipment (PP&E) usually are a company's primary revenue-generating assets. Their efficient use is critical to generating a satisfactory return to owners. One ratio analysts often use to measure how effectively managers use PP&E is the **fixed-asset turnover ratio**. This ratio is calculated as follows:

The *fixed-asset turnover ratio* measures a company's effectiveness in managing property, plant, and equipment.

$$\text{Fixed-asset turnover ratio} = \frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average fixed assets}}$$

The ratio indicates the level of sales generated by the company's investment in fixed assets. The denominator usually is the book value, sometimes called carrying value or carrying amount (cost less accumulated depreciation and depletion) of property, plant, and equipment.¹⁴

As with other turnover ratios, we can compare a company's fixed-asset turnover with that of its competitors, with an industry average, or with the same company's ratio over time. Let's compare the fixed-asset turnover ratios for **The Gap, Inc.**, and **Ross Stores, Inc.**, two companies in the retail apparel industry.

	(\$ in millions)			
	Gap		Ross Stores	
	2016	2015	2016	2015
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	\$2,850	\$2,773	\$2,343	\$2,274
Net sales—2016	\$15,797		\$11,940	

The 2016 fixed-asset turnover for Gap is 5.62 ($\$15,797 \div [(\$2,850 + 2,773) \div 2]$) compared to the turnover for Ross Stores of 5.17 ($\$11,940 \div [(\$2,343 + 2,274) \div 2]$). Gap is able to generate \$0.45 more in sales dollars than Ross Stores for each dollar invested in fixed assets. ●

Exchanges

An asset received in an exchange of nonmonetary assets generally is valued at fair value.

● LO10–6

Sometimes a company will acquire an asset in exchange for an asset other than cash. This frequently involves a trade-in by which a new asset is acquired in exchange for an old asset, and cash is given to equalize the fair values of the assets exchanged. The basic principle followed in these nonmonetary asset¹⁵ exchanges is to value the asset received at fair value. This amount can be based on the fair value of the asset(s) given up or the fair value of the asset(s) received plus (or minus) any cash exchanged. In practice, we expect the fair value of total assets received to equal fair value of total assets given up in a fair trade. *We recognize a gain or loss for the difference between the fair value and the book value of the asset given up.* See the example in Illustration 10–14A.

In Illustration 10–14A, the fair value of the old asset (\$150,000) was known. However, in a trade-in, quite often the fair value of the new asset is more clearly evident than the second-hand value of the asset traded in. For example, if it was known that the fair value of the new asset was \$580,000, then the fair value of the old asset could have been determined by subtracting the cash paid ($\$580,000 - \$430,000$).

Let's modify the illustration slightly by assuming that the fair value of the old equipment is \$75,000 instead of \$150,000. Illustration 10–14B shows the journal entry to record the transaction.

¹⁴If intangible assets are significant, their book value could be added to the denominator to produce a turnover that reflects all long-revenue-producing assets. The use of book value provides an approximation of the company's current investment in these assets.

¹⁵Monetary items are assets and liabilities whose *amounts are fixed*, by contract or otherwise, in terms of a specific number of dollars. Others are considered nonmonetary.

The Elcorn Company traded its laser equipment for the newer air-cooled ion lasers manufactured by American Laser Corporation. The old equipment had a book value of \$100,000 (cost of \$500,000 less accumulated depreciation of \$400,000) and a **fair value of \$150,000**. Elcorn also paid American Laser **\$430,000 in cash** as part of the exchange. The following journal entry records the transaction:

Equipment—new (\$150,000 + 430,000).....	580,000	
Accumulated depreciation—old (account balance).....	400,000	
Equipment—old (account balance).....		500,000
Cash (amount paid).....		430,000
Gain (to balance; also: \$150,000 fair value — 100,000 book value).....		50,000

The new laser equipment is recorded at **\$580,000**, the fair value of the old equipment, \$150,000, plus the cash given, \$430,000. The old asset's account and accumulated depreciation are written off for their balances at the date of the exchange, and cash paid is recorded. Elcorn recognizes a gain of \$50,000 for the difference between the old equipment's fair value, \$150,000, and its book value, \$100,000. The gain of \$50,000 also is the amount needed to allow the debits to equal credits in the journal entry.

Illustration 10-14A

Nonmonetary Asset
Exchange—Gain

A gain is recognized when the fair value of an asset given is more than its book value.

The Elcorn Company traded its laser equipment for the newer air-cooled ion lasers manufactured by American Laser Corporation. The old equipment had a book value of \$100,000 (cost of \$500,000 less accumulated depreciation of \$400,000) and a **fair value of \$75,000**. Elcorn also paid American Laser **\$430,000 in cash** as part of the exchange. The following journal entry records the transaction:

Equipment—new (\$75,000 + 430,000).....	505,000	
Accumulated depreciation—old (account balance).....	400,000	
Loss (to balance; also: \$100,000 book value — 75,000 fair value).....	25,000	
Equipment—old (account balance).....		500,000
Cash (amount paid).....		430,000

The new laser equipment is recorded at **\$505,000**, the fair value of the old equipment, \$75,000, plus the cash given, \$430,000. Elcorn recognizes a loss of \$25,000 for the difference between the old equipment's fair value, \$75,000, and its book value, \$100,000. The loss of \$25,000 also is the amount needed to allow the debits to equal credits in the journal entry.

Illustration 10-14B

Nonmonetary Asset
Exchange—Loss

A loss is recognized when the fair value of an asset given is less than its book value.

It's important to understand that the gain or loss recognized in these transactions is the difference between the fair value and book value of the asset given. *The amount of cash given or received has no effect on the amount of gain or loss recognized.* The cash given or received simply serves to equalize the fair value of the assets exchanged.

Until 2005, the accounting treatment of nonmonetary asset exchanges depended on a number of factors including (1) whether the assets exchanged were similar or dissimilar, (2) whether a gain or loss was indicated in the exchange, and (3) whether cash was given or received. Then a new accounting standard¹⁶ simplified accounting for exchanges by requiring the use of fair value except in rare situations in which the fair value can't be determined or the exchange lacks commercial substance.¹⁷

Let's discuss these two rare situations.

Fair Value Not Determinable

It would be unusual for a company to be unable to reasonably determine fair value of either asset in an exchange. Nevertheless, if the situation does occur, the company would simply use the book value of the asset given up, plus (minus) any cash given (received) to value the

¹⁶FASB ASC 845: Nonmonetary Transactions (previously "Exchanges of Nonmonetary Assets an amendment of APB Opinion No. 29," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 153* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2004)).

¹⁷There is a third situation which precludes the use of fair value in a nonmonetary exchange. The transaction is an exchange of inventories to facilitate sales to customers other than the parties to the exchange.

asset acquired. For example, if fair value had not been determinable in Illustration 10–14A, Elcorn would have recorded the exchange as follows:

If we can't determine the fair value of either asset in the exchange, the asset received is valued at the book value of the asset given.

Equipment—new (book value + cash: \$100,000 + 430,000)	530,000
Accumulated depreciation—old (account balance)	400,000
Equipment—old (account balance)	500,000
Cash (amount paid)	430,000

The new equipment is valued at the book value of the old equipment (\$100,000) plus the cash given (\$430,000). No gain or loss is recognized.

Lack of Commercial Substance

If we record an exchange at fair value, we recognize a gain or loss for the difference between the fair value and book value of the asset(s) given up. To prevent a company from exchanging an asset whose fair value is greater than book value for the sole purpose of recognizing a gain, fair value can be used only in gain situations that have “commercial substance.”

Commercial substance occurs when future cash flows change as a result of the exchange.

A nonmonetary exchange is considered to have commercial substance if future cash flows will change as a result of the exchange. Most exchanges are for business reasons and would not be transacted if there were no anticipated change in future cash flows. For example, newer models of equipment can increase production or improve manufacturing efficiency, causing an increase in revenue or a decrease in operating costs with a corresponding increase in future cash flows. The exchange of old laser equipment for the *newer* model in Illustration 10–14A is an example of an exchange transacted for business reasons.

GAIN SITUATION. Suppose a company owned a tract of land that had a book value of \$1 million and a fair value of \$5 million. The only ways to recognize the \$4 million difference as a gain are to either sell the land or to exchange the land for another nonmonetary asset for a legitimate business purpose. For example, if the land were exchanged for a different type of asset, say an office building, then future cash flows most likely will change. In this case, the exchange has commercial substance, and the \$4 million gain can be recognized. On the other hand, if the land were exchanged for a tract of land that has the identical characteristics as the land given, then it is unlikely that future cash flows would change. In this case, the exchange lacks commercial substance and the new land is valued at the book value of the old land. Illustration 10–15 provides an example.

Illustration 10–15

Nonmonetary Asset Exchange—Exchange Lacks Commercial Substance

The Elcorn Company traded a tract of land to Sanchez Development for a similar tract of land. The old land had a book value of \$2,500,000 and a fair value of \$4,500,000. Elcorn also paid Sanchez \$500,000 in cash. The following journal entry records the transaction, *assuming that the exchange lacks commercial substance*:

Land—new (book value + cash: \$2,500,000 + 500,000)	3,000,000
Land—old (account balance)	2,500,000
Cash (amount paid)	500,000

The new land is recorded at **\$3,000,000**, the book value of the old land, \$2,500,000, plus the cash given, \$500,000. No gain is recognized because the exchange does not have commercial substance.

The FASB's intent in including the commercial substance requirement for the use of fair value was to avoid companies' trading property for no business reason other than to recognize the gain.

When the fair value of the asset given is less than its book value, we always use fair value to record the exchange.

LOSS SITUATION. In Illustration 10–15, what if the fair value of the land given was less than its book value? It's unlikely that a company would enter into this type of transaction unless there was a good reason. When a loss is indicated in a nonmonetary exchange, it's okay to record the loss and we use fair value to value the asset acquired.

Additional Consideration

In Illustration 10–15, cash was *given*. What if cash was *received*? Suppose that \$450,000 cash was received instead of the \$500,000 given. The fair value of the old land was \$4,500,000, which means that the fair value of the land received is \$4,050,000 (\$4,500,000 – \$450,000). In that case, a portion of the transaction is considered monetary and we would recognize that portion of the \$2,000,000 gain (\$4,500,000 fair value – \$2,500,000 book value). The amount of gain recognized is equal to the portion of cash received relative to the total received.¹⁸

$$\frac{\$450,000}{\$450,000 + 4,050,000} = 10\%$$

Elcorn would recognize a \$200,000 gain (\$2,000,000 × 10%) and would value the land received at **\$2,250,000**, the book value of the land given (\$2,500,000), plus the gain recognized (\$200,000), less the cash received (\$450,000). The following journal entry records the transaction:

Land—new (\$2,500,000 + 200,000 – 450,000)	2,250,000	
Cash	450,000	
Land—old		2,500,000
Gain		200,000

Illustration 10–16 summarizes the treatment of gains and losses, as well as the amount to record for the asset received, for each type of exchange discussed above.

Illustration 10–16

Exchanges

Type of Exchange	Amount of Gain/Loss to Recognized on Exchange	Amount to Record for Asset Received*
Fair value determinable	Gain = FV given – BV given. [†]	FV given + cash paid (or – cash received).
	Loss = BV given – FV given.	Same as above.
Fair value not determinable	No gain or loss recognized.	BV given + cash paid (or – cash received).
Lack of commercial substance	Gain = (FV given – BV given) × (cash received ÷ total FV received).	BV given – cash received + gain recognized.
	Gain = 0, if no cash received.	BV given + cash paid.
	Loss = BV given – FV given.	FV given + cash paid (or – cash received).

*For each type of exchange, the asset given is written off at its book value (cost less accumulated depreciation) at the date of the exchange.

[†]FV = fair value; BV = book value. All references to FV and BV relate to the asset being given in the exchange.

When fair value is determinable, we record the asset received at total fair value. Gains and losses are recorded for the difference between the fair value and book value of the asset given, depending on which is higher.

When fair value is not determinable, fair value cannot be used to record the asset being received, and therefore we don't record a gain or loss on the asset being given. The asset received is simply recorded for the book value of the asset given, adjusted for the effects of any cash exchanged.

The rules for exchanges that lack commercial substance reflect a bias toward preventing gains from being recognized unless some cash is received so that a portion of the transaction represents a monetary exchange. Losses in exchanges that lack commercial substance are fully recognized regardless of cash received or paid, just like losses when fair value is determinable.

¹⁸If the amount of monetary consideration received is deemed significant, the transaction is considered to be monetary and the entire gain is recognized. In other words, the transaction is accounted for as if it had commercial substance. GAAP defines "significance" in this situation as 25% or more of the fair value of the exchange. FASB ASC 845–10–25–6: Nonmonetary transactions—Overall—Recognition (previously "Interpretations of APB Opinion No. 29," *EITF Abstracts No. 01–02* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2002)).

Concept Review Exercise

EXCHANGES

The MD Corporation recently acquired new equipment to be used in its production process. In exchange, the company traded in an existing asset that had an original cost of \$60,000 and accumulated depreciation on the date of the exchange of \$45,000. In addition, MD paid \$40,000 cash to the equipment manufacturer. The fair value of the old equipment is \$17,000.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry MD would use to record the exchange transaction assuming that the transaction has commercial substance.
2. Prepare the journal entry MD would use to record the exchange transaction assuming that the transaction does *not* have commercial substance.
3. Prepare the journal entry MD would use to record the exchange transaction assuming that the fair value of the old equipment is only \$10,000.

Solution:

1. Prepare the journal entry MD would use to record the exchange transaction assuming that the transaction has commercial substance.

Equipment—new (\$17,000 + 40,000)	57,000	
Accumulated depreciation—old (account balance).....	45,000	
Equipment—old (account balance).....		60,000
Cash (amount paid).....		40,000
Gain (\$17,000 fair value – \$15,000 book value).....		2,000

2. Prepare the journal entry MD would use to record the exchange transaction assuming that the transaction does not have commercial substance.

Equipment—new (\$15,000 + 40,000)	55,000	
Accumulated depreciation—old (account balance).....	45,000	
Equipment—old (account balance).....		60,000
Cash (amount paid).....		40,000

3. Prepare the journal entry MD would use to record the exchange transaction assuming that the fair value of the old equipment is only \$10,000.

Equipment—new (\$10,000 + 40,000)	50,000	
Accumulated depreciation—old (account balance).....	45,000	
Loss (\$15,000 book value – \$10,000 fair value).....	5,000	
Equipment—old (account balance).....		60,000
Cash (amount paid).....		40,000

PART C

Self-Constructed Assets and Research and Development

Two types of expenditures relating to property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets whose accounting treatment has generated considerable controversy are interest costs pertaining to self-constructed assets and amounts spent for research and development. We now consider those expenditures and why those controversies have developed.

Self-Constructed Assets

A company might decide to construct an asset for its own use rather than buy an existing one. For example, a retailer like **Nordstrom** might decide to build its own store rather than purchase an existing building. A manufacturing company like **Intel** could construct its own

manufacturing facility. In fact, Nordstrom and Intel are just two of the many companies that self-construct assets. Other recognizable examples include **Walt Disney**, **Sears**, and **Caterpillar**. Quite often these companies act as the main contractor and then subcontract most of the actual construction work.

The critical accounting issue in these instances is identifying the cost of the self-constructed asset. The task is more difficult than for purchased assets because there is no external transaction to establish an exchange price. Actually, two difficulties arise in connection with assigning costs to self-constructed assets: (1) determining the amount of the company's indirect manufacturing costs (overhead) to be allocated to the construction and (2) deciding on the proper treatment of interest (actual or implicit) incurred during construction.

Overhead Allocation

One difficulty of associating costs with self-constructed assets is the same difficulty encountered when determining cost of goods manufactured for sale. The costs of material and direct labor usually are easily identified with a particular construction project and are included in cost. However, the treatment of manufacturing overhead cost and its allocation between construction projects and normal production is a controversial issue.

Some accountants advocate the inclusion of only the *incremental* overhead costs in the total cost of construction. That is, the asset's cost would include only those additional costs that are incurred because of the decision to construct the asset. This would exclude such indirect costs as depreciation and the salaries of supervisors that would be incurred whether or not the construction project is undertaken. If, however, a new construction supervisor was hired specifically to work on the project, then that salary would be included in asset cost.

Others advocate assigning overhead on the same basis that is used for a regular manufacturing process. That is, all overhead costs are allocated both to production and to self-constructed assets based on the relative amount of a chosen cost driver (for example, labor hours) incurred. This is known as the *full-cost approach* and is the generally accepted method used to determine the cost of a self-constructed asset.

Interest Capitalization

To reiterate, the cost of an asset includes all costs necessary to get the asset ready for its intended use. Unlike one purchased from another company, a self-constructed asset requires time to create it. During this construction period, the project must be financed in some way. This suggests the question as to whether interest costs during the construction period are one of the costs of acquiring the asset itself or simply costs of financing the asset.

On the one hand, we might point to interest charges to finance inventories during their period of manufacture or to finance the purchase of plant assets from others and argue that construction period interest charges are merely costs of financing the asset that should be expensed as incurred like all other interest costs.

On the other hand, we might argue that self-constructed assets are different in that during the construction period, they are not yet ready for their intended use for producing revenues. And, so, in keeping with the historical cost principle, all costs during this period, including interest, should be capitalized. Those costs are then allocated as depreciation during later periods when the assets are providing benefits.

QUALIFYING ASSETS Generally accepted accounting principles are consistent with the second argument. Specifically, interest is capitalized during the construction period for (a) assets built for a company's own use as well as for (b) assets constructed *as discrete projects* for sale or lease (a ship or a real estate development, for example). This excludes from interest capitalization consideration inventories that are routinely manufactured in large quantities on a repetitive basis and assets that already are in use or are ready for their intended use.¹⁹ Interest costs incurred during the productive life of the asset are expensed as incurred.

The cost of a self-constructed asset includes identifiable materials and labor and a portion of the company's manufacturing overhead costs.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q4, p. 517

Only assets that are constructed as discrete projects qualify for interest capitalization.

¹⁹FASB ASC 835-20-25: Interest-Capitalization of Interest-Recognition (previously "Capitalization of Interest Costs," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 34* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1979)).

The interest capitalization period begins when construction begins and the first expenditure is made as long as interest costs are actually being incurred.

Average accumulated expenditures approximates the average debt necessary for construction.

PERIOD OF CAPITALIZATION. The capitalization period for a self-constructed asset starts with the first expenditure (materials, labor, or overhead) and ends either when the asset is substantially complete and ready for use or when interest costs no longer are being incurred. Interest costs incurred can pertain to borrowings other than those obtained specifically for the construction project. However, interest costs can't be imputed; actual interest costs must be incurred.

AVERAGE ACCUMULATED EXPENDITURES. Because we consider interest to be a necessary cost of getting a self-constructed asset ready for use, the amount capitalized is only that portion of interest cost incurred during the construction period that *could have been avoided* if expenditures for the asset had not been made. In other words, if construction had not been undertaken, debt incurred for the project would not have been necessary and/or other interest-bearing debt could have been liquidated or employed elsewhere.

As a result, interest should be determined for only the construction expenditures *actually incurred* during the capitalization period. And unless all expenditures are made at the outset of the period, it's necessary to determine the *average* amount outstanding during the period. This is the amount of debt that would be required to finance the expenditures and thus the amount on which interest would accrue. For instance, if a company accumulated \$1,500,000 of construction expenditures fairly evenly throughout the construction period, the average expenditures would be:

Total accumulated expenditures incurred evenly throughout the period	\$1,500,000
	÷ 2
Average accumulated expenditures	\$ 750,000

At the beginning of the period, no expenditures have accumulated, so no interest has accrued (on the equivalent amount of debt). But, by the end of the period interest is accruing on the total amount, \$1,500,000. On average, then, interest accrues on half the total or \$750,000.

If expenditures are not incurred evenly throughout the period, a simple average is insufficient. In that case, a *weighted average* is determined by time-weighting individual expenditures or groups of expenditures by the number of months from their incurrence to the end of the construction period.

Let's use the expenditures and loan information in Illustration 10–17 to demonstrate the calculation of interest capitalization. This calculation will involve three steps: (1) determine the weighted-average accumulated expenditures, (2) calculate the amount of interest to be capitalized, and (3) compare calculated interest with actual interest incurred.

Average accumulated expenditures is determined by time-weighting individual expenditures made during the construction period.

Illustration 10–17

Expenditures and Loan Information for Interest Capitalization

On January 1, 2018, the Mills Conveying Equipment Company began construction of a building to be used as its office headquarters. The building was completed on June 30, 2019. Expenditures on the project, mainly payments to subcontractors, were as follows:

January 1, 2018	\$ 500,000
March 31, 2018	400,000
September 30, 2018	600,000
Accumulated expenditures at December 31, 2018 (before interest capitalization)	\$1,500,000
January 31, 2019	600,000
April 30, 2019	300,000

On January 1, 2018, the company obtained a \$1 million construction loan with an 8% interest rate. The loan was outstanding during the entire construction period. The company's other interest-bearing debt included two long-term notes of \$2,000,000 and \$4,000,000 with interest rates of 6% and 12%, respectively. Both notes were outstanding during the entire construction period.

The weighted-average accumulated expenditures by the end of 2018 are shown below:

	Actual Expenditures		Portion of Year Outstanding		Time-Weighted Expenditures
January 1, 2018	\$ 500,000	×	$\frac{12}{12}$	=	\$ 500,000
March 31, 2018	400,000	×	$\frac{9}{12}$	=	300,000
September 30, 2018	600,000	×	$\frac{3}{12}$	=	150,000
	<u>\$1,500,000</u>				<u>\$950,000</u>

Notice that the weighted-average accumulated expenditures are less than the actual accumulated expenditures of \$1,500,000. If Mills had borrowed exactly the amount necessary to finance the project, it would not have incurred interest on a loan of \$1,500,000 for the whole year but only on an average loan of **\$950,000**. The next step is to determine the interest to be capitalized for the weighted-average accumulated expenditures.

INTEREST RATES. In this situation, debt financing was obtained specifically for the construction project, and the amount borrowed is sufficient to cover the average accumulated expenditures. To determine the interest capitalized, then, we simply multiply the construction loan rate of 8% by the weighted-average accumulated expenditures.

$$\text{Interest capitalized for 2018} = \$950,000 \times 8\% = \$76,000$$

Notice that this is the same answer we would get by assuming separate 8% construction loans were made for each expenditure at the time each expenditure was made.

Actual Expenditures		Annual Rate		Portion of Year Outstanding		Calculated Interest
\$500,000	×	8%	×	$\frac{12}{12}$	=	\$ 40,000
400,000	×	8%	×	$\frac{9}{12}$	=	24,000
600,000	×	8%	×	$\frac{3}{12}$	=	12,000
Interest capitalized for 2018						<u>\$76,000</u>

The interest of **\$76,000** is added to the cost of the building, bringing accumulated expenditures at December 31, 2018, to \$1,576,000 (\$1,500,000 + **\$76,000**). The remaining interest cost incurred but not capitalized is expensed.

It should be emphasized that interest capitalization does not require that funds actually be borrowed for this specific purpose, only that the company does have outstanding debt. The presumption is that even if the company doesn't borrow specifically for the project, funds from other borrowings must be diverted to finance the construction. Either way—directly or indirectly—interest costs are incurred. In our illustration, for instance, even without the construction loan, interest would be capitalized because other debt was outstanding. The capitalized interest would be the average accumulated expenditures multiplied by the weighted-average rate on these other loans. The weighted-average interest rate on all debt other than the construction loan would be 10%, calculated as follows:²⁰

Loans		Annual Rate		Interest
\$2,000,000	×	6%	=	\$120,000
4,000,000	×	12%	=	480,000
<u>\$6,000,000</u>				<u>\$600,000</u>

$$\text{Weighted-average rate: } \frac{\$600,000}{\$6,000,000} = 10\%$$

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q5, p. 517

STEP 1: Determine the weighted-average accumulated expenditures.

STEP 2: Calculate the amount of interest to be capitalized.

The amount of interest capitalized is determined by multiplying an interest rate by the average accumulated expenditures.

²⁰The same result can be obtained simply by multiplying the individual debt interest rates by the relative amount of debt at each rate. In this case, one-third of total debt is at 6% and two-thirds of the total debt is at 12% [(1/3 × 6%) + (2/3 × 12%) = 10%].

This is a weighted average because total interest is \$600,000 on total debt of \$6,000,000. Therefore, in our illustration, without any specific construction loan, interest capitalized for 2018 would have been \$95,000 ($\$950,000 \times 10\%$).

Additional Consideration

The weighted-average rate isn't used for 2018 in our illustration because the specific construction loan is sufficient to cover the average accumulated expenditures. If the specific construction loan had been insufficient to cover the average accumulated expenditures, its 8% interest rate would be applied to the average accumulated expenditures up to the amount of the specific borrowing, and any remaining average accumulated expenditures in excess of specific borrowings would be multiplied by the weighted-average rate on all other outstanding interest-bearing debt. Suppose, for illustration, that the 8% construction loan had been only \$500,000 rather than \$1,000,000. We would calculate capitalized interest using both the specific rate and the weighted-average rate:

	Time-Weighted Expenditures		Annual Rate		Calculated Interest
Total	\$950,000				
Specific borrowing	500,000	×	8%	=	\$40,000
Excess	\$450,000	×	10%	=	45,000
Capitalized interest					<u>\$85,000</u>

In our illustration, it's necessary to use this approach in 2019.

Interest capitalized is limited to interest incurred.

It's possible that the amount of interest calculated to be capitalized exceeds the amount of interest actually incurred. If that's the case, we limit the interest capitalized to the actual interest incurred. In our illustration, total interest cost incurred during 2018 far exceeds the **\$76,000** of capitalized interest calculated, so it's not necessary to limit the capitalized amount.

STEP 3: Compare calculated interest with actual interest incurred.

Loans		Annual Rate		Actual Interest	Calculated Interest
\$1,000,000	×	8%	=	\$ 80,000	
2,000,000	×	6%	=	120,000	
4,000,000	×	12%	=	480,000	
				<u>\$680,000</u>	
					\$76,000
					↑
					Use lower amount

Continuing the example based on the information in Illustration 10–17, let's determine the amount of interest capitalized during 2019 for the building. The total accumulated expenditures by the end of the project are:

Accumulated expenditures at the beginning of 2019 (including interest capitalization)	\$1,576,000
January 31, 2019 expenditures	600,000
April 30, 2019 expenditures	<u>300,000</u>
Accumulated expenditures at June 30, 2019 (before 2019 interest capitalization)	<u>\$2,476,000</u>

The weighted-average accumulated expenditures by the end of the project are:

STEP 1: Determine the weighted-average accumulated expenditures.

	Actual Expenditures		Portion of Year by End of Project		Time-Weighted Expenditures
January 1, 2019	\$1,576,000	×	$\frac{6}{12}$	=	\$ 1,576,000
January 31, 2019	600,000	×	$\frac{5}{12}$	=	500,000
April 30, 2019	300,000	×	$\frac{3}{12}$	=	100,000
Weighted-average accumulated expenditures for 2019					<u><u>\$2,176,000</u></u>

Notice that the 2019 expenditures are weighted relative to the construction period of six months because the project was finished on June 30, 2019. Interest capitalized for 2019 would be **\$98,800**, calculated as follows:

STEP 2: Calculate the amount of interest to be capitalized.

	Time-Weighted Expenditures		Annual Rate		Portion of Year Outstanding		Calculated Interest
Total	\$2,176,000						
Specific borrowing	1,000,000	×	8%	×	$\frac{6}{12}$	=	\$40,000
Excess	\$1,176,000	×	10%	×	$\frac{6}{12}$	=	58,800
Interest capitalized for 2019							<u><u>\$98,800</u></u>

Multiplying by six-twelfths reflects the fact that the interest rates are annual rates (12-month rates) and the construction period is only 6 months. Next, we compare the calculated interest with the actual interest incurred.

STEP 3: Compare calculated interest with actual interest incurred.

Loans		Annual Rate		Portion of Year Outstanding		Actual Interest	Calculated Interest
\$1,000,000	×	8%	×	$\frac{6}{12}$	=	\$ 40,000	
2,000,000	×	6%	×	$\frac{6}{12}$	=	60,000	
4,000,000	×	12%	×	$\frac{6}{12}$	=	240,000	
						<u>\$340,000</u>	<u><u>\$98,800</u></u>

↑
Use lower amount

For the first six months of 2019, **\$98,800** of interest would be capitalized, bringing the total capitalized cost of the building to \$2,574,800 (\$2,476,000 + 98,800), and \$241,200 in interest would be expensed (\$340,000 − 98,800).

Additional Consideration

To illustrate how the actual interest limitation might come into play, let's assume the nonspecific borrowings in our illustration were \$200,000 and \$400,000 (instead of \$2,000,000 and \$4,000,000). Our comparison would change as follows:

Loans		Annual Rate		Portion of Year Outstanding		Actual Interest	Calculated Interest
\$1,000,000	×	8%	×	$\frac{6}{12}$	=	\$40,000	
200,000	×	6%	×	$\frac{6}{12}$	=	6,000	
400,000	×	12%	×	$\frac{6}{12}$	=	24,000	
						<u>\$70,000</u>	<u><u>\$98,800</u></u>

↑
Use lower amount

The method of determining interest to capitalize that we've discussed is called the **specific interest method** because we use rates from specific construction loans to the extent of specific borrowings before using the average rate of other debt. Sometimes, though, it's difficult to associate specific borrowings with projects. In these situations, it's acceptable to just use the weighted-average rate on all interest-bearing debt, including all construction loans. This is known as the **weighted-average method**. In our illustration, for example, if the \$1,000,000, 8% loan had not been specifically related to construction, we would calculate a single weighted-average rate as shown below.

Weighted-average method

Loans		Annual Rate		Interest
\$1,000,000	×	8%	=	\$ 80,000
2,000,000	×	6%	=	120,000
4,000,000	×	12%	=	480,000
<u>\$7,000,000</u>				<u>\$680,000</u>

$$\text{Weighted-average rate: } \frac{\$680,000}{\$7,000,000} = 9.7\%$$

If we were using the weighted-average method rather than the specific interest method, we would simply multiply this single rate times the average accumulated expenditures to determine capitalizable interest.

If material, the amount of interest capitalized during the period must be disclosed.

DISCLOSURE. For an accounting period in which interest costs are capitalized, the total amount of interest costs capitalized, if the amount is material, should be disclosed. Illustration 10–18 shows an interest capitalization disclosure note that was included in a recent annual report of **Wal-Mart Stores, Inc.**, the world's largest retailer.

Illustration 10–18

Capitalized Interest Disclosure—Wal-Mart Stores, Inc.

Real World Financials

Property and equipment (in part)

Interest costs capitalized on construction projects were \$39 million, \$59 million, and \$78 million in fiscal 2016, 2015, and 2014, respectively.

Research and Development (R&D)

LO10–8

“Innovation” is a word commonly used in the marketing and production departments of most companies. Companies compete fiercely to dream up the next top-selling product or service. In 2015, **Volkswagen** spent more than \$15 billion to research new technology for its hybrid vehicles and improve CO₂ emissions. **Microsoft** spent \$11.4 billion on discovering new technology products. Of the 118,000 people employed by Microsoft, 39,000 are in product research and development. **Google** spent \$9.8 billion on futuristic ideas such as self-driving cars and computer eyewear. **Merck** invested \$7.2 billion to test new drugs related to oncology, infectious diseases, vaccines, and diabetes.

R&D costs entail a high degree of uncertainty of future benefits and are difficult to match with future revenues.

R&D costs are expensed in the periods incurred.

Companies are willing to spend huge amounts on R&D because they believe the project will eventually provide benefits that exceed the current expenditures. Unfortunately, though, it's difficult to predict which individual research and development projects will ultimately provide benefits. Will Google's expenditures on self-driving cars ever generate enough revenue to cover its costs? Moreover, even for those projects that pan out, a direct relationship between research and development costs and specific future revenue is difficult to establish. In other words, even if R&D costs do lead to future benefits, it's difficult to objectively determine the size of the benefits and in which periods the costs should be expensed if they are capitalized. For these reasons, *the FASB takes a conservative approach and requires R&D costs to be expensed immediately.*²¹

The FASB's decision is controversial. Many companies would prefer to delay the recognition of these expenses until later years when presumably the expenditures bear fruit. In other words, many companies would prefer to record R&D expenditures initially as an asset, because

²¹FASB ASC 730–10–25–1: Research and Development—Overall—Recognition (previously “Accounting for Research and Development Costs,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 2* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1974), par. 12).

at least some of the R&D expenditures will likely produce future benefits. The requirement to expense R&D immediately leads to assets being understated and expenses being overstated.

Determining R&D Costs

GAAP distinguishes research and development as follows:

- **Research** is planned search or critical investigation aimed at discovery of new knowledge with the hope that such knowledge will be useful in developing a new product or service or a new process or technique or in bringing about a significant improvement to an existing product or process.
- **Development** is the translation of research findings or other knowledge into a plan or design for a new product or process or for a significant improvement to an existing product or process whether intended for sale or use.²²

R&D costs include salaries, wages, and other labor costs of personnel engaged in R&D activities, the costs of materials consumed, equipment, facilities, and intangibles used in R&D projects, the costs of services performed by others in connection with R&D activities, and a reasonable allocation of indirect costs related to those activities. General and administrative costs should not be included unless they are clearly related to the R&D activity.

If an asset is purchased specifically for a single R&D project, its cost is considered R&D and expensed immediately even though the asset's useful life extends beyond the current year. However, the cost of an asset that has an alternative future use beyond the current R&D project is *not* a current R&D expense. Instead, the depreciation or amortization of these alternative-use assets is included as R&D expenses in the current and future periods the assets are used for R&D activities.

In general, R&D costs pertain to activities that occur prior to the start of commercial production. Commercial production most often refers to the point in time where the company has no other plans to materially change the product prior to beginning production for intended sales to customers.

Any costs incurred after the start of commercial production are not classified as R&D costs. These costs would be either expensed or treated as manufacturing overhead and included in the cost of inventory.

Illustration 10–19 captures this concept with a time line beginning with the start of an R&D project and ending with the ultimate sale of a developed product or the use of a

R&D expense includes the depreciation and amortization of assets used in R&D activities.

Costs incurred before the start of commercial production are expensed as R&D.

Costs incurred after commercial production begins would be either expensed or included in the cost of inventory.

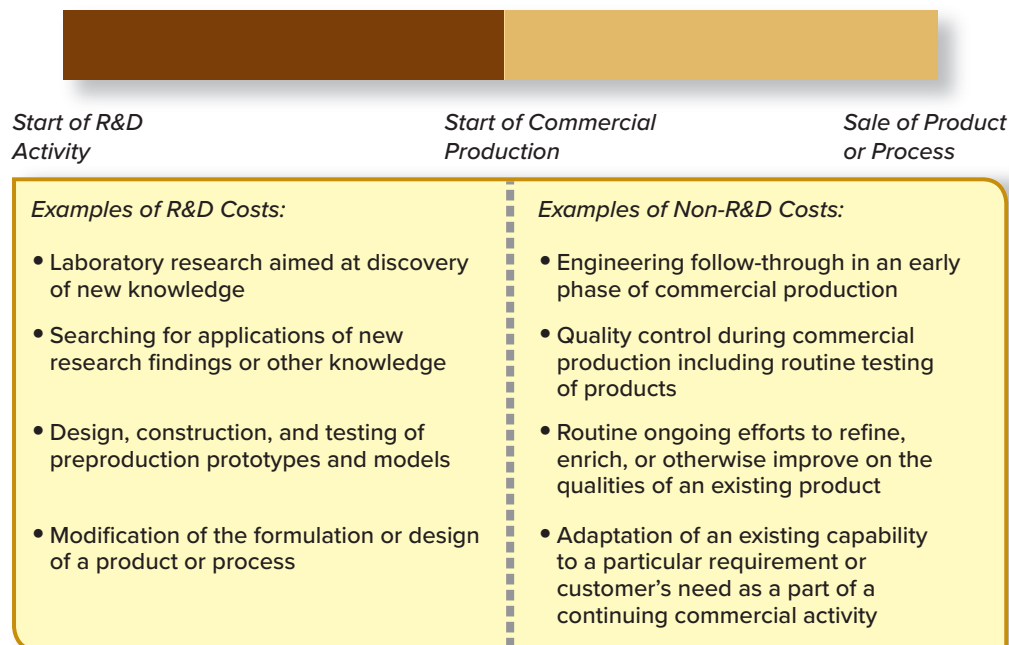


Illustration 10–19

Research and Development Expenditures

²²Ibid., section 730–10–20 (previously par. 8 of SFAS No. 2).

developed process. The illustration also provides examples of activities typically included as R&D and examples of activities typically excluded from R&D.²³ Let's look at an example in Illustration 10–20.

Illustration 10–20

Research and
Development Costs

The Askew Company made the following cash expenditures during 2018 related to the development of a new industrial plastic:

R&D salaries and wages	\$ 10,000,000
R&D supplies consumed during 2018	3,000,000
Purchase of R&D equipment	5,000,000
Patent filing and legal costs	100,000
Payments to others for services performed in connection with R&D activities	1,200,000
Total	\$19,300,000

The project resulted in a new product to be manufactured in 2019. A patent was filed with the U.S. Patent Office. Amortization of the patent's filing and legal costs will begin in 2019. The equipment purchased will be employed in other projects. Depreciation on the equipment for 2018 was \$500,000.

Filing and legal costs for patents, copyrights, and other developed intangibles are capitalized and amortized in future periods.

The salaries and wages, supplies consumed, and payments to others for R&D services are expensed in 2018 as R&D. The equipment is capitalized and the 2018 depreciation is expensed as R&D. Even though the costs to develop the patented product are expensed, the filing and legal costs for the patent are capitalized and amortized in future periods just as similar costs are capitalized for purchased intangibles. Amortization of the patent is discussed in Chapter 11.

The various expenditures would be recorded as follows:

R&D expense (\$10,000,000 + 3,000,000 + 1,200,000).....	14,200,000	
Cash.....		14,200,000
<i>To record R&D expenses.</i>		
Equipment.....	5,000,000	
Cash.....		5,000,000
<i>To record the purchase of equipment.</i>		
R&D expense.....	500,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment.....		500,000
<i>To record R&D depreciation.</i>		
Patent.....	100,000	
Cash.....		100,000
<i>To capitalize the patent filing and legal costs.</i>		

Expenditures reconciliation:

Recorded as R&D	\$ 14,200,000
Capitalized as equipment	5,000,000
Capitalized as patent	100,000
Total expenditures	\$19,300,000

GAAP requires disclosure of total R&D expense incurred during the period.

GAAP requires that total R&D expense incurred must be disclosed either as a line item in the income statement or in a disclosure note. In our illustration, total R&D expense disclosed in 2018 would be \$14,700,000 (\$14,200,000 in expenditures and \$500,000 in depreciation). Note that if Askew later sells this patent to another company for, say, \$15 million, the buyer would capitalize the entire purchase price rather than only the filing and legal costs. Once again, the reason for the apparent inconsistency in accounting treatment of internally generated intangibles and externally purchased intangibles is the difficulty of associating costs and benefits.

²³Ibid., section 730–10–55 (previously par. 9 of SFAS No. 2).

International Financial Reporting Standards



IAS No. 38 draws a distinction between research activities and development activities.²⁴ Research expenditures are *expensed* in the period incurred. However, development expenditures that meet specified criteria are *capitalized* as an intangible asset. Under both U.S. GAAP and IFRS, any direct costs to secure a patent, such as legal and filing fees, are capitalized.

Heineken, a company based in Amsterdam, prepares its financial statements according to IFRS. The following disclosure note describes the company's adherence to IAS No. 38. The note also describes the criteria for capitalizing development expenditures as well as the types of expenditures capitalized.

Software, Research and Development and Other Intangible Assets (in part)

Expenditures on research activities, undertaken with the prospect of gaining new technical knowledge and understanding, are recognized in the income statement when incurred. Development activities involve a plan or design for the production of new or substantially improved products and processes. Development expenditures are capitalized only if development costs can be measured reliably, the product or process is technically and commercially feasible, future economic benefits are probable, and Heineken intends to and has sufficient resources to complete development and to use or sell the asset. The expenditures capitalized include the cost of materials, direct labor and overhead costs that are directly attributable to preparing the asset for its intended use, and capitalized borrowing costs.

Amortization of capitalized development costs begins when development is complete and the asset is available for use. Heineken disclosed that it amortizes its capitalized development costs using the straight-line method over an estimated three-year useful life.

IFRS requires companies to capitalize development expenditures that meet specified criteria.

● LO10–9

We've just discussed that U.S. GAAP requires R&D costs to be expensed immediately. There are three types of costs related to R&D, however, that are capitalized (recorded as an asset). These exceptions are shown below:

1. Development costs for software that has reached the point of technological feasibility
2. R&D performed by the company for sale to others
3. R&D purchased in a business acquisition

Software Development Costs

The computer software industry has become a large and important U.S. business over the last two decades. Companies in this multibillion dollar industry include **Microsoft**, **Oracle**, **IBM**, **Adobe Systems**, and **Intuit**. A significant expenditure for these companies is the cost of developing software. In the early years of the software industry, some software companies were capitalizing software development costs and expensing them in future periods and others were expensing these costs in the period incurred.

Now GAAP establishes a timeline for purposes of accounting for software development costs. Any software costs incurred from initial development activity until **technological feasibility** of the software are treated like all other R&D costs (expensed as incurred). Technological feasibility refers to the point in time "when the enterprise has completed all planning, designing, coding, and testing activities that are necessary to establish that the product can be produced to meet its design specifications including functions, features, and technical performance requirements."²⁵

Costs incurred after technological feasibility but before the software is available for general release to customers are capitalized as an intangible asset. These costs include items such

GAAP requires the capitalization of software development costs incurred after technological feasibility is established.

²⁴"Intangible Assets," *International Accounting Standard No. 38* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

²⁵FASB ASC 985–20–25–2: Software—Costs of Software to be Sold, Leased, or Marketed—Recognition (previously "Accounting for the Costs of Computer Software to be Sold, Leased, or Otherwise Marketed," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 86* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1985) par. 4).

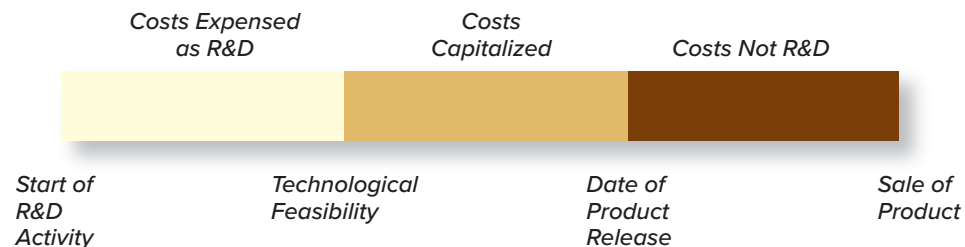
as further coding and testing and the production of product masters. Capitalized costs are then amortized over the economic life of the software (discussed and illustrated below). Any costs incurred after the software release date generally are expensed but not as part of R&D.

The discussion above relates to costs incurred to develop or purchase computer software to be sold, leased, or otherwise marketed (that is, *for external purposes*).²⁶ We account for the costs incurred to develop computer software *to be used internally* in a similar manner. Costs incurred during the preliminary project stage are expensed as R&D. After the application development stage is reached (for example, at the coding stage or installation stage), we capitalize any further costs.²⁷ If, instead, we *purchase* computer software for internal use, those costs generally are capitalized.

Illustration 10–21 shows the R&D time line introduced earlier in the chapter modified to include the point at which technological feasibility is established. Only the costs incurred between technological feasibility and the software release date are capitalized.

Illustration 10–21

Research and Development Expenditures—Computer Software



The amortization of capitalized computer software development costs begins when the product is available for general release to customers. The periodic amortization percentage is the greater of (1) the ratio of current revenues to current and anticipated revenues (percentage-of-revenue method) or (2) the straight-line percentage over the useful life of the asset, as shown in Illustration 10–22.

Illustration 10–22

Software Development Costs

The Astro Corporation develops computer software graphics programs for sale. A new development project begun in 2017 reached technological feasibility at the end of June 2018, and the product was available for release to customers early in 2019. Development costs incurred in 2018 prior to June 30 were \$1,200,000 and costs incurred from June 30 to the product availability date were \$800,000. 2019 revenues from the sale of the new product were \$3,000,000 and the company anticipates an additional \$7,000,000 in revenues in future years. The economic life of the software is estimated at four years.

Astro Corporation would expense the \$1,200,000 in costs incurred prior to the establishment of technological feasibility and capitalize the \$800,000 in costs incurred between technological feasibility and the product availability date. 2019 amortization of the intangible asset, software development costs, is calculated as follows:

1. Percentage-of-revenue method:

$$\frac{\$3,000,000}{\$3,000,000 + 7,000,000} = 30\% \times \$800,000 = \$240,000$$

2. Straight-line method:

$$\frac{1}{4} \text{ or } 25\% \times \$800,000 = \$200,000.$$

The percentage-of-revenue method is used because it produces the greater amortization, \$240,000.

Illustration 10–23 shows the software disclosure included in a recent annual report of **CA, Inc.** The note provides a good summary of the accounting treatment of software development costs.

²⁶FASB ASC 985–20–25–1: Software—Costs of Software to be Sold, Leased, or Marketed—Recognition (previously “Accounting for the Costs of Computer Software to be Sold, Leased, or Otherwise Marketed,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 86* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1985)).

²⁷FASB ASC 350–40–25: Intangibles—Goodwill and Other—Internal-Use Software—Recognition (previously “Accounting for the Costs of Computer Software Developed or Obtained for Internal Use,” *Statement of Position 98-1* (New York: AICPA, 1998)).

Internally Developed Software Products

Internally developed software products, which are included in “Capitalized software and other intangible assets, net” in the Consolidated Balance Sheets, consist of capitalized costs associated with the development of computer software to be sold, leased or otherwise marketed. Software development costs associated with new products and significant enhancements to existing software products are expensed as incurred until technological feasibility, as defined in FASB ASC Topic 985-20, has been established. Costs incurred thereafter are capitalized until the product is made generally available. The stage during the Company’s development process for a new product or new release at which technological feasibility requirements are established affects the amount of costs capitalized.

Annual amortization of internally developed software products is the greater of the amount computed using the ratio that current gross revenues for a product bear to the total of current and anticipated future gross revenues for that product or the straight-line method over the remaining estimated economic life of the software product, generally estimated to be 5 years from the date the product became available for general release to customers. The Company generally recognizes amortization expense for capitalized software costs using the straight-line method, and such amortization is included in “Amortization of capitalized software costs” in the Consolidated Statements of Operations. Internally developed software products are reviewed for impairment quarterly and whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset may not be recoverable.

Illustration 10–23

Software Disclosure—CA, Inc.

Real World Financials

Why do generally accepted accounting principles allow this exception to the general rule of expensing all R&D? We could attribute it to the political process. Software is a very important industry to our economy and perhaps its lobbying efforts resulted in the standard allowing software companies to capitalize certain R&D costs.

We could also attribute the exception to the nature of the software business. Recall that R&D costs in general are expensed in the period incurred for two reasons: (1) they entail a high degree of uncertainty of future benefits, and (2) they are difficult to match with future benefits. With software, there is an important identifiable engineering milestone, technological feasibility. When this milestone is attained, the probability of the software product’s success increases significantly. And because the useful life of software is fairly short (one to five years in most cases), it is much easier to determine the periods of increased revenues than for R&D projects in other industries. Compare this situation with, say, the development of a new drug. Even after the drug has been developed, it must go through extensive testing to meet FDA (Food and Drug Administration) approval, which may never be attained. If attained, the useful life of the drug could be anywhere from a few months to many years.

International Financial Reporting Standards

Software Development Costs. The percentage we use to amortize computer software development costs under U.S. GAAP is the greater of (1) the ratio of current revenues to current and anticipated revenues or (2) the straight-line percentage over the useful life of the software. This approach is allowed under IFRS, but not required. Amortization under IFRS typically occurs over the useful life of the software, based on pattern of benefits, with straight-line as the default.



● LO10–9

R&D Performed for Others

The principle requiring the immediate expensing of R&D does not apply to companies that perform R&D for other companies under contract. In these situations, the R&D costs are capitalized as inventory and carried forward into future years until the project is completed. Of course, justification is that the benefits of these expenditures are the contract revenues that will eventually be recognized. Revenue from these contracts can be recognized over time or at a point in time, depending on the specifics of the contract. We discussed these alternatives in Chapter 5.

R&D Purchased in Business Acquisitions

It's not unusual for one company to buy another company in order to obtain technology that the acquired company has developed or is in the process of developing. Any time a company buys another, it values the tangible and intangible assets acquired at fair value. When part of the acquisition price involves technology, we distinguish between:

1. Developed technology
2. In-process research and development

In business acquisitions, the fair value of developed technology is capitalized as an finite-life intangible asset.

In business acquisitions, the fair value of in-process research and development is capitalized as an indefinite-life intangible asset.

To distinguish these two types of technology acquired, we borrow a criterion used in accounting for software development costs, and determine whether *technological feasibility* has been achieved. If it has, the technology is considered “developed,” and we capitalize its fair value (record it as an asset) and amortize that amount over its useful life just like any other *finite-life* intangible asset.

For in-process R&D (technology that has not reached the feasibility stage), GAAP also requires capitalization of its fair value. However, unlike developed technology, we view in-process R&D as an *indefinite-life* intangible asset.²⁸ As you will learn in Chapter 11, we don't amortize indefinite-life intangibles. Instead, we monitor these assets and test them for impairment when required by GAAP.

If the acquired R&D project is completed successfully, we switch to the way we account for developed technology and amortize the capitalized amount over the estimated period the product or process developed will provide benefits. If the project instead is abandoned, we expense the entire balance immediately.

R&D costs incurred after the acquisition to complete the project are expensed as incurred, consistent with the treatment of usual R&D expenditures. Similarly, the purchase of R&D from third parties not associated with a business combination is expensed as incurred, just as if the company had performed the R&D activity itself. An exception is when the purchased R&D has an alternative use beyond a specific project.

As an example of R&D associated with a business acquisition, in 2015 **AbbVie Inc.**, a global research-based biopharmaceutical company, acquired **Pharmacyclics Inc.** for approximately \$20.8 billion. The fair values assigned included finite-life intangible assets of \$11.4 billion, in-process R&D of \$7.2 billion, and goodwill of \$7.6 billion (as well as other identifiable assets of \$1.7 billion and liabilities of \$7.1 billion). AbbVie classified projects acquired that have not yet received regulatory approval as in-process R&D.

Illustration 10–24

Acquired In-Process Research and Development—AbbVie, Inc.

Real World Financials

Acquired In-Process Research and Development

The initial costs of rights to IPR&D projects acquired in an asset acquisition are expensed as IPR&D in the consolidated statements of earnings unless the project has an alternative future use. These costs include initial payments incurred prior to regulatory approval in connection with research and development collaboration agreements that provide rights to develop, manufacture, market and/or sell pharmaceutical products. The fair value of IPR&D projects acquired in a business combination are capitalized and accounted for as indefinite-lived intangible assets until the underlying project receives regulatory approval, at which point the intangible asset will be accounted for as a definite-lived intangible asset, or discontinuation, at which point the intangible asset will be written off. Development costs incurred after the acquisition are expensed as incurred. Indefinite- and definite-lived assets are subject to impairment reviews as discussed previously.

Start-Up Costs

Start-up costs are expensed in the period incurred.

Whenever a company introduces a new product or service, or commences business in a new territory or with a new customer, it incurs **start-up costs**. Start-up costs also include **organization costs** related to organizing a new entity, such as legal fees and state filing fees to incorporate. Prior to 1999, companies frequently capitalized start-up costs until the new business started and amortized organization costs over five years. Now, as with R&D expenditures, companies are required

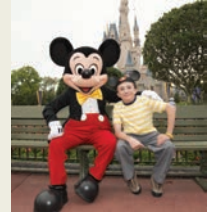
²⁸FASB ASC 805: Business Combinations (previously “Business Combinations,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 141 (revised)* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2007)).

to expense all the costs related to a company's start-up and organization activities in the period incurred, rather than capitalize those costs as an asset.²⁹

For the year ended December 31, 2015, **Chipotle Mexican Grill, Inc.**, opened 227 new restaurants. The company incurred a variety of one-time preopening costs for wages, benefits and travel for the training and opening teams, food and other restaurant operating costs totaling \$17 million. These costs were expensed immediately.

Financial Reporting Case Solution

- 1. Describe to Stan what it means to capitalize an expenditure. What is the general rule for determining which costs are capitalized when property, plant, and equipment or an intangible asset is acquired?** (p. 520) To capitalize an expenditure simply means to record it as an asset. All expenditures other than payments to shareholders and debt repayments are either expensed as incurred or capitalized. In general, the choice is determined by whether the expenditure benefits more than just the current period. Exceptions to this general principle are discussed in the chapter. The initial cost of an asset includes all expenditures necessary to bring the asset to its desired condition and location for use.
- 2. Which costs might be included in the initial cost of equipment?** (p. 520) In addition to the purchase price, the cost of equipment might include the cost of transportation, installation, testing, and legal fees to establish title.
- 3. What is goodwill and how is it measured?** (p. 527) Goodwill represents the unique value of a company as a whole over and above its identifiable tangible and intangible assets. Because goodwill can't be separated from a company, it's not possible for a buyer to acquire it without also acquiring the whole company or a controlling portion of it. Goodwill will appear as an asset in a balance sheet only when it was purchased in connection with the acquisition of another company. In that case, the capitalized cost of goodwill equals the fair value of the consideration exchanged for the company less the fair value of the net assets acquired. Goodwill is a residual asset; it's the amount left after other assets are identified and valued. Just like for other intangible assets that have indefinite useful lives, we do not amortize goodwill.
- 4. In what situations is interest capitalized rather than expensed?** (p. 539) Interest is capitalized only for assets constructed for a company's own use or for assets constructed as discrete products for sale or lease. For example, **Walt Disney** capitalizes interest on assets constructed for its theme parks, resorts and other property, and on theatrical and television productions. During the construction period, interest is considered a cost necessary to get the asset ready for its intended use.
- 5. What is the three-step process used to determine the amount of interest capitalized?** (p. 541) The first step is to determine the average accumulated expenditures for the period. The second step is to multiply the average accumulated expenditures by an appropriate interest rate or rates to determine the amount of interest capitalized. A final step compares the interest determined in step two with actual interest incurred. Interest capitalized is limited to the amount of interest incurred. ●



© Preston Mack/Disney Parks via Getty Images.

The Bottom Line

- **LO10-1** The initial cost of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets acquired in an exchange transaction includes the purchase price and all expenditures necessary to bring the asset to its desired condition and location for use. The cost of a natural resource includes the acquisition costs for the use of land, the exploration and development costs incurred before production begins, and restoration costs incurred during or at the end of extraction. Purchased intangible assets are valued at their original cost to include the purchase price and legal and filing fees. (p. 520)

²⁹FASB ASC 720-15-25-1: Other Expenses-Start-Up Costs-Recognition (previously "Reporting on the Costs of Start-Up Activities," *Statement of Position 98-5* (New York: AICPA, 1998)).

- LO10-2 If a lump-sum purchase involves different assets, it is necessary to allocate the lump-sum acquisition price among the separate items according to some logical allocation method. A widely used allocation method is to divide the lump-sum purchase price according to the individual assets' relative fair values. (p. 529)
- LO10-3 Assets acquired in exchange for deferred payment contracts are valued at their fair value or the present value of payments using a realistic interest rate. (p. 530)
- LO10-4 Assets acquired through the issuance of equity securities are valued at the fair value of the securities if known; if not known, the fair value of the assets received is used. Donated assets are valued at their fair value. (p. 532)
- LO10-5 A key to profitability is how well a company manages and utilizes its assets. Financial analysts often use activity, or turnover, ratios to evaluate a company's effectiveness in managing its assets. Property, plant, and equipment (PP&E) usually are a company's primary revenue-generating assets. Their efficient use is critical to generating a satisfactory return to owners. One ratio that analysts often use to measure how effectively managers use PP&E is the fixed-asset turnover ratio. This ratio is calculated by dividing net sales by average fixed assets. (p. 534)
- LO10-6 The basic principle used for nonmonetary exchanges is to value the asset(s) received based on the fair value of the asset(s) given up. In certain situations, the valuation of the asset(s) received is based on the book value of the asset(s) given up. (p. 534)
- LO10-7 The cost of a self-constructed asset includes identifiable materials and labor and a portion of the company's manufacturing overhead costs. In addition, GAAP provides for the capitalization of interest incurred during construction. The amount of interest capitalized is equal to the average accumulated expenditures for the period multiplied by the appropriate interest rates, not to exceed actual interest incurred. (p. 538)
- LO10-8 Research and development costs incurred to internally develop an intangible asset are expensed in the period incurred. Filing and legal costs for developed intangibles are capitalized. (p. 544)
- LO10-9 *IAS No. 20* requires that government grants be recognized in income over the periods necessary to match them on a systematic basis with the related costs that they are intended to compensate. Other than software development costs incurred after technological feasibility has been established, U.S. GAAP requires all research and development expenditures to be expensed in the period incurred. *IAS No. 38* draws a distinction between research activities and development activities. Research expenditures are expensed in the period incurred. However, development expenditures that meet specified criteria are capitalized as an intangible asset. (pp. 533, 547, and 549) ●

APPENDIX 10 Oil and Gas Accounting

There are two generally accepted methods that companies can use to account for oil and gas exploration costs. The **successful efforts method** requires that exploration costs that are known *not* to have resulted in the discovery of oil or gas (sometimes referred to as *dry holes*) be included as expenses in the period the expenditures are made. The alternative, the **full-cost method**, allows costs incurred in searching for oil and gas within a large geographical area to be capitalized as assets and expensed in the future as oil and gas from the successful wells are removed from that area. Both of these methods are widely used. Illustration 10A-1 compares the two alternatives.

Illustration 10A-1

Oil and Gas Accounting

The Shannon Oil Company incurred \$2,000,000 in exploration costs for each of 10 oil wells drilled in 2018 in west Texas. Eight of the 10 wells were dry holes.

The accounting treatment of the \$20 million in total exploration costs will vary significantly depending on the accounting method used. The summary journal entries using each of the alternative methods are as follows:

Successful Efforts		Full Cost	
Oil Deposit	4,000,000	Oil Deposit	20,000,000
Exploration Expense.....	16,000,000	Cash.....	20,000,000
Cash.....	20,000,000		

Using the full-cost method, Shannon would capitalize the entire \$20 million which is expensed as oil from the two successful wells is depleted. On the other hand, using the successful efforts method, the cost of the unsuccessful wells is expensed in 2018, and only the \$4 million cost related to the successful wells is capitalized and expensed in future periods as the oil is depleted.

Chapter 1 characterized the establishment of accounting and reporting standards as a political process. Standards, particularly changes in standards, can have significant differential effects on companies, investors and creditors, and other interest groups. The FASB must consider potential economic consequences of a change in an accounting standard or the introduction of a new standard. The history of oil and gas accounting provides a good example of this political process and the effect of possible adverse economic consequences on the standard-setting process.

In 1977 the FASB attempted to establish uniformity in the accounting treatment of oil and gas exploration costs. An accounting standard was issued requiring all companies to use the successful efforts method.³⁰

This standard met with criticism from the oil and gas companies that were required to switch from full cost to successful efforts accounting. These companies felt that the switch would seriously depress their reported income over time. As a result, they argued, their ability to raise capital in the securities markets would be inhibited, which would result in a cutback of new exploration. The fear that the Standard would cause domestic companies to significantly reduce oil and gas exploration and thus increase our dependence on foreign oil was compelling to Congress, the SEC, and the U.S. Department of Energy.

Extensive pressure from Congress, the SEC, and affected companies forced the FASB to rescind the Standard. Presently, oil and gas companies can use either the successful efforts or full-cost method to account for oil and gas exploration costs. Of course, the method used must be disclosed. For example, Illustration 10A–2 shows how **Chevron Corp.** disclosed its use of the successful efforts method in a note to recent financial statements. ●

Many feared that the requirement to switch to successful efforts accounting would cause a significant cutback in the exploration for new oil and gas in the United States.

Properties, Plant, and Equipment (in part)

The successful efforts method is used for crude oil and natural gas exploration and production activities.

Illustration 10A–2




Oil and Gas Accounting Disclosure—Chevron Corp.

Real World Financials

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 10–1** Explain the difference between tangible and intangible long-lived, revenue-producing assets.
- Q 10–2** What is included in the original cost of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets acquired in an exchange transaction?
- Q 10–3** Identify the costs associated with the initial valuation of a developed natural resource.
- Q 10–4** Briefly summarize the accounting treatment for intangible assets, explaining the difference between purchased and internally developed intangible assets.
- Q 10–5** What is goodwill and how is it measured?
- Q 10–6** Explain the method generally used to allocate the cost of a lump-sum purchase to the individual assets acquired.
- Q 10–7** When an asset is acquired and a note payable is assumed, explain how acquisition cost of the asset is determined when the interest rate for the note is less than the current market rate for similar notes.
- Q 10–8** Explain how assets acquired in exchange for equity securities are valued.
- Q 10–9** Explain how property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets acquired through donation are valued.
- Q 10–10** What account is credited when a company receives donated assets? What is the rationale for this choice?

³⁰The rescinded standard was “Financial Accounting and Reporting by Oil and Gas Producing Companies,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 19* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1977). Authoritative guidance on this topic can now be found at FASB ASC 932: Extractive Activities—Oil and Gas.

- Q 10–11** What is the basic principle for valuing property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets acquired in exchange for other nonmonetary assets?
- Q 10–12** Identify the two exceptions to valuing property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets acquired in nonmonetary exchanges at the fair value of the asset(s) given up.
- Q 10–13** In what situations is interest capitalized?
- Q 10–14** Define average accumulated expenditures and explain how the amount is computed.
- Q 10–15** Explain the difference between the specific interest method and the weighted-average method in determining the amount of interest to be capitalized.
- Q 10–16** Define R&D according to U.S. GAAP.
- Q 10–17** Explain the accounting treatment of equipment acquired for use in R&D projects.
- Q 10–18** Explain the accounting treatment of costs incurred to develop computer software.
- Q 10–19** Explain the difference in the accounting treatment of the cost of developed technology and the cost of in-process R&D in an acquisition.
-  **IFRS Q 10–20** Identify any differences between U.S. GAAP and International Financial Reporting Standards in accounting for government grants received.
-  **IFRS Q 10–21** Identify any differences between U.S. GAAP and International Financial Reporting Standards in the treatment of research and development expenditures.
-  **IFRS Q 10–22** Identify any differences between U.S. GAAP and International Financial Reporting Standards in the treatment of software development costs.
- Q 10–23** (Based on Appendix 10) Explain the difference between the successful efforts and the full-cost methods of accounting for oil and gas exploration costs.

Brief Exercises



BE 10–1

Acquisition cost;
machine

● LO10–1

Beaverton Lumber purchased a milling machine for \$35,000. In addition to the purchase price, Beaverton made the following expenditures: freight, \$1,500; installation, \$3,000; testing, \$2,000; personal property tax on the machine for the first year, \$500. What is the initial cost of the machine?

BE 10–2

Acquisition cost;
land and building

● LO10–1

Fullerton Waste Management purchased land and a warehouse for \$600,000. In addition to the purchase price, Fullerton made the following expenditures related to the acquisition: broker's commission, \$30,000; title insurance, \$3,000; miscellaneous closing costs, \$6,000. The warehouse was immediately demolished at a cost of \$18,000 in anticipation of the building of a new warehouse. Determine the amounts Fullerton should capitalize as the cost of the land and the building.

BE 10–3

Lump-sum
acquisition

● LO10–2

Refer to the situation described in BE 10–2. Assume that Fullerton decides to use the warehouse rather than demolish it. An independent appraisal estimates the fair values of the land and warehouse at \$420,000 and \$280,000, respectively. Determine the amounts Fullerton should capitalize as the cost of the land and the building.

BE 10–4

Cost of a natural
resource; asset
retirement
obligation

● LO10–1

Smithson Mining operates a silver mine in Nevada. Acquisition, exploration, and development costs totaled \$5.6 million. After the silver is extracted in approximately five years, Smithson is obligated to restore the land to its original condition, including constructing a wildlife preserve. The company's controller has provided the following three cash flow possibilities for the restoration costs: (1) \$500,000, 20% probability; (2) \$550,000, 45% probability; and (3) \$650,000, 35% probability. The company's credit-adjusted, risk-free rate of interest is 6%. What is the initial cost of the silver mine?

BE 10–5

Asset retirement
obligation

● LO10–1

Refer to the situation described in BE 10–4. What is the book value of the asset retirement liability at the end of one year? Assuming that the actual restoration costs incurred after extraction is completed are \$596,000, what amount of gain or loss will Smithson recognize on retirement of the liability?

BE 10–6

Goodwill

● LO10–1

Pro-tech Software acquired all of the outstanding stock of Reliable Software for \$14 million. The book value of Reliable's net assets (assets minus liabilities) was \$8.3 million. The fair values of Reliable's assets and liabilities equaled their book values with the exception of certain intangible assets whose fair values exceeded book values by \$2.5 million. Calculate the amount paid for goodwill.

BE 10-7

Acquisition cost;
noninterest-
bearing note

● LO10-3

On June 30, 2018, Kimberly Farms purchased custom-made harvesting equipment from a local producer. In payment, Kimberly signed a noninterest-bearing note requiring the payment of \$60,000 in two years. The fair value of the equipment is not known, but an 8% interest rate properly reflects the time value of money for this type of loan agreement. At what amount will Kimberly initially value the equipment? How much interest expense will Kimberly recognize in its income statement for this note for the year ended December 31, 2018?

BE 10-8

Acquisition cost;
issuance of equity
securities

● LO10-4

Shackelford Corporation acquired a patent from its founder, Jim Shackelford, in exchange for 50,000 shares of the company's noper common stock. On the date of the exchange, the common stock had a fair value of \$22 per share. Determine the cost of the patent.

BE 10-9

Fixed-asset
turnover ratio

● LO10-5

Huebert Corporation and Winslow Corporation reported the following information:

	(\$ in millions)			
	Huebert		Winslow	
	2018	2017	2018	2017
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	\$210	\$220	\$680	\$650
Net sales—2018	\$1,850		\$5,120	

Calculate each company's fixed-asset turnover ratio and determine which company utilizes its fixed assets most efficiently to generate sales.

BE 10-10

Fixed-asset
turnover ratio;
solve for
unknown

● LO10-5

The balance sheets of Pinewood Resorts reported net fixed assets of \$740,000 and \$940,000 at the end of 2017 and 2018, respectively. The fixed-asset turnover ratio for 2018 was 3.25. Calculate Pinewood's net sales for 2018.

BE 10-11

Nonmonetary
exchange

● LO10-6

Calaveras Tire exchanged equipment for two pickup trucks. The book value and fair value of the equipment were \$20,000 (original cost of \$65,000 less accumulated depreciation of \$45,000) and \$17,000, respectively. Calaveras also paid \$8,000 in cash. At what amount will Calaveras value the pickup trucks? How much gain or loss will the company recognize on the exchange? Assume the exchange has commercial substance.

BE 10-12

Nonmonetary
exchange

● LO10-6

Refer to the situation described in BE 10-11. Answer the questions assuming that the fair value of the equipment was \$24,000, instead of \$17,000.

BE 10-13

Nonmonetary
exchange

● LO10-6

Refer to the situation described in BE 10-11. Answer the questions assuming that the exchange lacks commercial substance.

BE 10-14

Interest
capitalization

● LO10-7

A company constructs a building for its own use. Construction began on January 1 and ended on December 30. The expenditures for construction were as follows: January 1, \$500,000; March 31, \$600,000; June 30, \$400,000; October 30, \$600,000. To help finance construction, the company arranged a 7% construction loan on January 1 for \$700,000. The company's other borrowings, outstanding for the whole year, consisted of a \$3 million loan and a \$5 million note with interest rates of 8% and 6%, respectively. Assuming the company uses the *specific interest method*, calculate the amount of interest capitalized for the year.

BE 10-15

Interest
capitalization

● LO10-7

Refer to the situation described in BE 10-14. Assuming the company uses the *weighted-average method*, calculate the amount of interest capitalized for the year.

BE 10-16

Research and
development

● LO10-8

Maxtor Technology incurred the following costs during the year related to the creation of a new type of personal computer monitor:

Salaries	\$220,000
Depreciation on R&D facilities and equipment	125,000
Utilities and other direct costs incurred for the R&D facilities	66,000
Patent filing and related legal costs	22,000
Payment to another company for performing a portion of the development work	120,000
Costs of adapting the new monitor for the specific needs of a customer	80,000

What amount should Maxtor report as research and development expense in its income statement?

BE 10-17

Software development costs

• LO10-8

In February 2018, Culverson Company began developing a new software to be sold to customers. The software allows people to enter health information and track daily eating and exercise habits to track their health status. The project was completed in November 2018 at a cost of \$800,000. Of this amount, \$300,000 was spent before technological feasibility was established. Culverson expects a useful life of two years for the new product and total revenues of \$1,500,000. Determine the amount that Culverson should capitalize as software development costs in 2018.

BE 10-18

Research and development; various types

• LO10-8

Maltese Laboratories incurred the following research and developments costs related to its pharmaceutical business:

Internal projects (salaries, supplies, overhead for R&D facilities)	\$620,000
Payment to acquire R&D from a third party related to a specific project	75,000
Costs of an R&D project to be sold under contract to Libo Pharmacy, a third party	82,000
In-process R&D associated with the acquisition of Curatics, an independent research company.	148,000

What amount should Maltese report as research and development expense in its income statement?

BE 10-19

Start-up costs

• LO10-8

In the current year, Big Burgers, Inc., expanded its fast food operations by opening several new stores in Texas. The company incurred the following costs in the current year: market appraisal (\$50,000), consulting fees (\$72,000), advertising (\$47,000), and traveling to train employees (\$31,000). The company is willing to incur these costs because it foresees strong customer demand in Texas for the next several years. What amount should Big Burgers report as an expense in its income statement associated with these costs?

Exercises

**E 10-1**

Acquisition costs; land and building

• LO10-1

On March 1, 2018, Beldon Corporation purchased land as a factory site for \$60,000. An old building on the property was demolished, and construction began on a new building that was completed on December 15, 2018. Costs incurred during this period are listed below:

Demolition of old building	\$ 4,000
Architect's fees (for new building)	12,000
Legal fees for title investigation of land	2,000
Property taxes on land (for period beginning March 1, 2018)	3,000
Construction costs	500,000
Interest on construction loan	5,000

Salvaged materials resulting from the demolition of the old building were sold for \$2,000.

Required:

Determine the amounts that Beldon should capitalize as the cost of the land and the new building.

E 10-2

Acquisition cost; equipment

• LO10-1

Oaktree Company purchased new equipment and made the following expenditures:

Purchase price	\$45,000
Sales tax	2,200
Freight charges for shipment of equipment	700
Insurance on the equipment for the first year	900
Installation of equipment	1,000

The equipment, including sales tax, was purchased on open account, with payment due in 30 days. The other expenditures listed above were paid in cash.

Required:

Prepare the necessary journal entries to record the above expenditures.

E 10-3

Acquisition costs; lump-sum acquisition
 • LO10-1, LO10-2

Samtech Manufacturing purchased land and building for \$4 million. In addition to the purchase price, Samtech made the following expenditures in connection with the purchase of the land and building:

Title insurance	\$16,000
Legal fees for drawing the contract	5,000
Pro-rated property taxes for the period after acquisition	36,000
State transfer fees	4,000

An independent appraisal estimated the fair values of the land and building, if purchased separately, at \$3.3 and \$1.1 million, respectively. Shortly after acquisition, Samtech spent \$82,000 to construct a parking lot and \$40,000 for landscaping.

Required:

1. Determine the initial valuation of each asset Samtech acquired in these transactions.
2. Repeat requirement 1, assuming that immediately after acquisition, Samtech demolished the building. Demolition costs were \$250,000 and the salvaged materials were sold for \$6,000. In addition, Samtech spent \$86,000 clearing and grading the land in preparation for the construction of a new building.

E 10-4

Cost of a natural resource; asset retirement obligation
 • LO10-1

Jackpot Mining Company operates a copper mine in central Montana. The company paid \$1,000,000 in 2018 for the mining site and spent an additional \$600,000 to prepare the mine for extraction of the copper. After the copper is extracted in approximately four years, the company is required to restore the land to its original condition, including repaving of roads and replacing a greenbelt. The company has provided the following three cash flow possibilities for the restoration costs:

	Cash Outflow	Probability
1	\$300,000	25%
2	400,000	40%
3	600,000	35%

To aid extraction, Jackpot purchased some new equipment on July 1, 2018, for \$120,000. After the copper is removed from this mine, the equipment will be sold. The credit-adjusted, risk-free rate of interest is 10%.

Required:

1. Determine the cost of the copper mine.
2. Prepare the journal entries to record the acquisition costs of the mine and the purchase of equipment.

E 10-5

Intangibles
 • LO10-1

In 2018, Bratten Fitness Company made the following cash purchases:

1. The exclusive right to manufacture and sell the X-Core workout machine from Symmetry Corporation for \$200,000. Symmetry created the unique design for the machine. Bratten also paid an additional \$10,000 in legal and filing fees to attorneys to complete the transaction.
2. An initial fee of \$300,000 for a three-year agreement with Silver's Gym to use its name for a new facility in the local area. Silver's Gym has locations throughout the country. Bratten is required to pay an additional fee of \$5,000 for each month it operates under the Silver's Gym name, with payments beginning in March 2018. Bratten also purchased \$400,000 of exercise equipment to be placed in the new facility.
3. The exclusive right to sell Healthy Choice, a book authored by Kent Patterson, for \$25,000. The book includes healthy recipes, recommendations for dietary supplements, and natural remedies. Bratten plans to display the book at the check-in counter at its new facility, as well as make it available online.

Required:

Prepare a summary journal entry to record expenditures related to initial acquisitions.

E 10-6

Goodwill
 • LO10-1

On March 31, 2018, Wolfson Corporation acquired all of the outstanding common stock of Barney Corporation for \$17,000,000 in cash. The book values and fair values of Barney's assets and liabilities were as follows:

	Book Value	Fair Value
Current assets	\$ 6,000,000	\$ 7,500,000
Property, plant, and equipment	11,000,000	14,000,000
Other assets	1,000,000	1,500,000
Current liabilities	4,000,000	4,000,000
Long-term liabilities	6,000,000	5,500,000

Required:

Calculate the amount paid for goodwill.

E 10-7
Goodwill
● LO10-1

Johnson Corporation acquired all of the outstanding common stock of Smith Corporation for \$11,000,000 in cash. The book value of Smith's net assets (assets minus liabilities) was \$7,800,000. The fair values of all of Smith's assets and liabilities were equal to their book values with the following exceptions:

	Book Value	Fair Value
Receivables	\$1,300,000	\$1,100,000
Property, plant, and equipment	8,000,000	9,400,000
Intangible assets	200,000	1,200,000

Required:

Calculate the amount paid for goodwill.

E 10-8
Lump-sum acquisition
● LO10-2

Pinewood Company purchased two buildings on four acres of land. The lump-sum purchase price was \$900,000. According to independent appraisals, the fair values were \$450,000 (building A) and \$250,000 (building B) for the buildings and \$300,000 for the land.

Required:

Determine the initial valuation of the buildings and the land.

E 10-9
Acquisition cost; noninterest-bearing note
● LO10-3

On January 1, 2018, Byner Company purchased a used tractor. Byner paid \$5,000 down and signed a noninterest-bearing note requiring \$25,000 to be paid on December 31, 2020. The fair value of the tractor is not determinable. An interest rate of 10% properly reflects the time value of money for this type of loan agreement. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the acquisition of the tractor. Round computations to the nearest dollar.
2. How much interest expense will the company include in its 2018 and 2019 income statements for this note?
3. What is the amount of the liability the company will report in its 2018 and 2019 balance sheets for this note?

E 10-10
Acquisition costs; noninterest-bearing note
● LO10-1, LO10-3

Teradene Corporation purchased land as a factory site and contracted with Maxtor Construction to construct a factory. Teradene made the following expenditures related to the acquisition of the land, building, and equipment for the factory:

Purchase price of the land	\$1,200,000
Demolition and removal of old building	80,000
Clearing and grading the land before construction	150,000
Various closing costs in connection with acquiring the land	42,000
Architect's fee for the plans for the new building	50,000
Payments to Maxtor for building construction	3,250,000
Equipment purchased	860,000
Freight charges on equipment	32,000
Trees, plants, and other landscaping	45,000
Installation of a sprinkler system for the landscaping	5,000
Cost to build special platforms and install wiring for the equipment	12,000
Cost of trial runs to ensure proper installation of the equipment	7,000
Fire and theft insurance on the factory for the first year of use	24,000

In addition to the above expenditures, Teradene purchased four forklifts from **Caterpillar**. In payment, Teradene paid \$16,000 cash and signed a noninterest-bearing note requiring the payment of \$70,000 in one year. An interest rate of 7% properly reflects the time value of money for this type of loan.

Required:

Determine the initial valuation of each of the assets Teradene acquired in the above transactions.

E 10-11
IFRS; acquisition cost; issuance of equity securities and donation
● LO10-4, LO10-9

On February 1, 2018, the Xilon Corporation issued 50,000 shares of its npar common stock in exchange for five acres of land located in the city of Monrovia. On the date of the acquisition, Xilon's common stock had a fair value of \$18 per share. An office building was constructed on the site by an independent contractor. The building was completed on November 2, 2018, at a cost of \$6,000,000. Xilon paid \$4,000,000 in cash and the remainder was paid by the city of Monrovia.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries to record the acquisition of the land and the building.
2. Assuming that Xilon prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards, explain the alternatives the company has for recording the acquisition of the office building.



IFRS

E 10-12

IFRS; acquisition cost; acquisition by donation; government grant

LO10-9



Cranston LTD. prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. In October 2018, the company received a \$2 million government grant. The grant represents 20% of the total cost of equipment that will be used to improve the roads in the local area. Cranston recorded the grant and the purchase of the equipment as follows:

Cash	2,000,000	
Revenue.....		2,000,000
Equipment.....	10,000,000	
Cash		10,000,000

Required:

1. Explain the alternative accounting treatments available to Cranston for accounting for this government grant.
2. Prepare any necessary correcting entries under each of the alternatives described in requirement 1.

E 10-13

Fixed-asset turnover ratio; Nvidia

LO10-5

Real World Financials

Nvidia Corporation, a global technology company located in Santa Clara, California, reported the following information in its 2016 financial statements (\$ in millions):

	2016	2015
Balance sheets		
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	\$ 466	\$557
Income statement		
Net sales for 2016	\$5,010	

Required:

1. Calculate the company's 2016 fixed-asset turnover ratio.
2. How would you interpret this ratio?

E 10-14

Nonmonetary exchange

LO10-6

Cedric Company recently traded in an older model computer for a new model. The old model's book value was \$180,000 (original cost of \$400,000 less \$220,000 in accumulated depreciation) and its fair value was \$200,000. Cedric paid \$60,000 to complete the exchange which has commercial substance.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry to record the exchange.

E 10-15

Nonmonetary exchange

LO10-6

[This is a variation of the previous exercise.]

Required:

Assume the same facts as in Exercise 10-14, except that the fair value of the old equipment is \$170,000. Prepare the journal entry to record the exchange.

E 10-16

Nonmonetary exchange

LO10-6

The Bronco Corporation exchanged land for equipment. The land had a book value of \$120,000 and a fair value of \$150,000. Bronco paid the owner of the equipment \$10,000 to complete the exchange which has commercial substance.

Required:

1. What is the fair value of the equipment?
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the exchange.

E 10-17

Nonmonetary exchange

LO10-6

[This is a variation of the previous exercise.]

Required:

Assume the same facts as in Exercise 10-16 except that Bronco *received* \$10,000 from the owner of the equipment to complete the exchange.

1. What is the fair value of the equipment?
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the exchange.

E 10-18

Nonmonetary exchange

LO10-6

The Tinsley Company exchanged land that it had been holding for future plant expansion for a more suitable parcel located farther from residential areas. Tinsley carried the land at its original cost of \$30,000. According to an independent appraisal, the land currently is worth \$72,000. Tinsley paid \$14,000 in cash to complete the transaction.

Required:

1. What is the fair value of the new parcel of land received by Tinsley?
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the exchange assuming the exchange has commercial substance.

3. Prepare the journal entry to record the exchange assuming the exchange lacks commercial substance.
4. Prepare the journal entry to record the exchange except that Tinsley *received* \$18,000 in the exchange, and the exchange lacks commercial substance.

E 10-19

Acquisition cost;
multiple methods

- LO10-1, LO10-3,
LO10-4, LO10-6

Connors Corporation acquired manufacturing equipment for use in its assembly line. Below are four *independent* situations relating to the acquisition of the equipment.

1. The equipment was purchased on account for \$25,000. Credit terms were 2/10, n/30. Payment was made within the discount period and the company records the purchases of equipment net of discounts.
2. Connors gave the seller a noninterest-bearing note. The note required payment of \$27,000 one year from date of purchase. The fair value of the equipment is not determinable. An interest rate of 10% properly reflects the time value of money in this situation.
3. Connors traded in old equipment that had a book value of \$6,000 (original cost of \$14,000 and accumulated depreciation of \$8,000) and paid cash of \$22,000. The old equipment had a fair value of \$2,500 on the date of the exchange. The exchange has commercial substance.
4. Connors issued 1,000 shares of its noper common stock in exchange for the equipment. The market value of the common stock was not determinable. The equipment could have been purchased for \$24,000 in cash.

Required:

For each of the above situations, prepare the journal entry required to record the acquisition of the equipment. Round computations to the nearest dollar.

E 10-20

FASB codification
research

- LO10-6



The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on nonmonetary exchanges using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Identify the Codification topic number for nonmonetary transactions.
2. What are the specific citations that list the disclosure requirements for nonmonetary transactions?
3. Describe the disclosure requirements.

E 10-21

FASB codification
research

- LO10-1, LO10-6,
LO10-7, LO10-8



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for each of the following items:

1. The disclosure requirements in the notes to the financial statements for depreciation on property, plant, and equipment.
2. The criteria for determining commercial substance in a nonmonetary exchange.
3. The disclosure requirements for interest capitalization.
4. The elements of costs to be included as R&D activities.

E 10-22

Interest
capitalization

- LO10-7

On January 1, 2018, the Marjlee Company began construction of an office building to be used as its corporate headquarters. The building was completed early in 2019. Construction expenditures for 2018, which were incurred evenly throughout the year, totaled \$6,000,000. Marjlee had the following debt obligations which were outstanding during all of 2018:

Construction loan, 10%	\$1,500,000
Long-term note, 9%	2,000,000
Long-term note, 6%	4,000,000

Required:

Calculate the amount of interest capitalized in 2018 for the building using the specific interest method.

E 10-23

Interest
capitalization

- LO10-7

On January 1, 2018, the Shagri Company began construction on a new manufacturing facility for its own use. The building was completed in 2019. The only interest-bearing debt the company had outstanding during 2018 was long-term bonds with a book value of \$10,000,000 and an effective interest rate of 8%. Construction expenditures incurred during 2018 were as follows:

January 1	\$500,000
March 1	600,000
July 31	480,000
September 30	600,000
December 31	300,000

Required:

Calculate the amount of interest capitalized for 2018.

E 10-24

Interest capitalization

● LO10-7

On January 1, 2018, the Highlands Company began construction on a new manufacturing facility for its own use. The building was completed in 2019. The company borrowed \$1,500,000 at 8% on January 1 to help finance the construction. In addition to the construction loan, Highlands had the following debt outstanding throughout 2018:

\$5,000,000, 12% bonds
\$3,000,000, 8% long-term note

Construction expenditures incurred during 2018 were as follows:

January 1	\$ 600,000
March 31	1,200,000
June 30	800,000
September 30	600,000
December 31	400,000

Required:

Calculate the amount of interest capitalized for 2018 using the specific interest method.

E 10-25

Interest capitalization; multiple periods

● LO10-7

Thornton Industries began construction of a warehouse on July 1, 2018. The project was completed on March 31, 2019. No new loans were required to fund construction. Thornton does have the following two interest-bearing liabilities that were outstanding throughout the construction period:

\$2,000,000, 8% note
\$8,000,000, 4% bonds

Construction expenditures incurred were as follows:

July 1, 2018	\$400,000
September 30, 2018	600,000
November 30, 2018	600,000
January 30, 2019	540,000

The company's fiscal year-end is December 31.

Required:

Calculate the amount of interest capitalized for 2018 and 2019.

E 10-26

Research and development

● LO10-8

In 2018, Space Technology Company modified its model Z2 satellite to incorporate a new communication device. The company made the following expenditures:

Basic research to develop the technology	\$2,000,000
Engineering design work	680,000
Development of a prototype device	300,000
Acquisition of equipment	60,000
Testing and modification of the prototype	200,000
Legal and other fees for patent application on the new communication system	40,000
Legal fees for successful defense of the new patent	20,000
Total	<u>\$3,300,000</u>

The equipment will be used on this and other research projects. Depreciation on the equipment for 2018 is \$10,000.

During your year-end review of the accounts related to intangibles, you discover that the company has capitalized all of the above as costs of the patent. Management contends that the device simply represents an improvement of the existing communication system of the satellite and, therefore, should be capitalized.

Required:

Prepare correcting entries that reflect the appropriate treatment of the expenditures.

E 10-27

Research and development

● LO10-8

Delaware Company incurred the following research and development costs during 2018:

Salaries and wages for lab research	\$ 400,000
Materials used in R&D projects	200,000
Purchase of equipment	900,000
Fees paid to third parties for R&D projects	320,000
Patent filing and legal costs for a developed product	65,000
Salaries, wages, and supplies for R&D work performed for another company under a contract	350,000
Total	<u>\$2,235,000</u>

The equipment has a seven-year life and will be used for a number of research projects. Depreciation for 2018 is \$120,000.

Required:

Calculate the amount of research and development expense that Delaware should report in its 2018 income statement.

E 10-28

IFRS; research
and development
● LO10-8, LO10-9

Janson Pharmaceuticals incurred the following costs in 2018 related to a new cancer drug:

Research for new formulas	\$2,425,000
Development of a new formula	1,600,000
Legal and filing fees for a patent for the new formula	60,000
Total	\$4,085,000

The development costs were incurred after technological and commercial feasibility was established and after the future economic benefits were deemed probable. The project was successfully completed and the new drug was patented before the end of the 2018 fiscal year.

Required:

1. Calculate the amount of research and development expense Janson should report in its 2018 income statement related to this project.
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that Janson prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards.

E 10-29

IFRS; research
and development
● LO10-9

NXS Semiconductor prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. The company incurred the following expenditures during 2018 related to the development of a chip to be used in mobile devices:

Salaries and wages for basic research	\$3,450,000
Materials used in basic research	330,000
Other costs incurred for basic research	1,220,000
Development costs	1,800,000
Legal and filing fees for a patent for the new technology	50,000

The development costs were incurred after NXS established technological and commercial feasibility and after NXS deemed the future economic benefits to be probable. The project was successfully completed, and the new chip was patented near the end of the 2018 fiscal year.

Required:

1. Which of the expenditures should NXS expense in its 2018 income statement?
2. Explain the accounting treatment of the remaining expenditures.

E 10-30

Concepts;
terminology
● LO10-1, LO10-4,
LO10-6, LO10-7

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets. Pair each item from List A with the item from List B (by letter) that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
____ 1. Property, plant, and equipment	a. Exclusive right to display a word, a symbol, or an emblem
____ 2. Land improvements	b. Exclusive right to benefit from a creative work
____ 3. Capitalize	c. Assets that represent rights
____ 4. Average accumulated expenditures	d. Costs of establishing parking lots, driveways, and private roads
____ 5. Revenue	e. Purchase price less fair value of net identifiable assets
____ 6. Nonmonetary exchange	f. Assets such as land, buildings, and machines
____ 7. Natural resources	g. Approximation of average amount of debt if all construction funds were borrowed
____ 8. Intangible assets	h. Account credited when assets are donated to a corporation
____ 9. Copyright	i. Term meaning to record the cost as an asset
____ 10. Trademark	j. Basic principle is to value assets acquired using fair value of assets given other than cash
____ 11. Goodwill	k. Assets such as timber tracks and mineral deposits

E 10-31

Software
development
costs
● LO10-8

Early in 2018, the Excalibur Company began developing a new software package to be marketed. The project was completed in December 2018 at a cost of \$6 million. Of this amount, \$4 million was spent before technological feasibility was established. Excalibur expects a useful life of five years for the new product with total revenues of \$10 million. During 2019, revenue of \$3 million was recognized.

Required:

1. Prepare a journal entry to record the 2018 development costs.
2. Calculate the required amortization for 2019.
3. At what amount should the computer software costs be reported in the December 31, 2019, balance sheet?

E 10-32

Software development costs

● LO10-8

On September 30, 2018, Athens Software began developing a software program to shield personal computers from malware and spyware. Technological feasibility was established on February 28, 2019, and the program was available for release on April 30, 2019. Development costs were incurred as follows:

September 30 through December 31, 2018	\$2,200,000
January 1 through February 28, 2019	800,000
March 1 through April 30, 2019	400,000

Athens expects a useful life of four years for the software and total revenues of \$5,000,000 during that time. During 2019, revenue of \$1,000,000 was recognized.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries to record the development costs in 2018 and 2019.
2. Calculate the required amortization for 2019.

E 10-33

Intangibles; start-up costs

● LO10-1, LO10-8

Freitas Corporation was organized early in 2018. The following expenditures were made during the first few months of the year:

Attorneys' fees in connection with the organization of the corporation	\$ 12,000
State filing fees and other incorporation costs	3,000
Purchase of a patent	20,000
Legal and other fees for transfer of the patent	2,000
Purchase of equipment	30,000
Pre-opening salaries and employee training	40,000
Total	\$107,000

Required:

Prepare a summary journal entry to record the \$107,000 in cash expenditures.

E 10-34

Full-cost and successful efforts methods compared

● Appendix

The Manguino Oil Company incurred exploration costs in 2018 searching and drilling for oil as follows:

Well 101	\$ 50,000
Well 102	60,000
Well 103	80,000
Wells 104-108	260,000
Total	\$450,000

It was determined that Wells 104-108 were dry holes and were abandoned. Wells 101, 102, and 103 were determined to have sufficient oil reserves to be commercially successful.

Required:

1. Prepare a summary journal entry to record the indicated costs assuming that the company uses the full-cost method of accounting for exploration costs. All of the exploration costs were paid in cash.
2. Prepare a summary journal entry to record the indicated costs assuming that the company uses the successful efforts method of accounting for exploration costs. All of the exploration costs were paid in cash.

Problems

P 10-1

Acquisition costs

● LO10-1 through LO10-4

Tristar Production Company began operations on September 1, 2018. Listed below are a number of transactions that occurred during its first four months of operations.

1. On September 1, the company acquired five acres of land with a building that will be used as a warehouse. Tristar paid \$100,000 in cash for the property. According to appraisals, the land had a fair value of \$75,000 and the building had a fair value of \$45,000.
2. On September 1, Tristar signed a \$40,000 noninterest-bearing note to purchase equipment. The \$40,000 payment is due on September 1, 2019. Assume that 8% is a reasonable interest rate.
3. On September 15, a truck was donated to the corporation. Similar trucks were selling for \$2,500.

4. On September 18, the company paid its lawyer \$3,000 for organizing the corporation.
5. On October 10, Tristar purchased maintenance equipment for cash. The purchase price was \$15,000 and \$500 in freight charges also were paid.
6. On December 2, Tristar acquired various items of office equipment. The company was short of cash and could not pay the \$5,500 normal cash price. The supplier agreed to accept 200 shares of the company's nonpar common stock in exchange for the equipment. The fair value of the stock is not readily determinable.
7. On December 10, the company acquired a tract of land at a cost of \$20,000. It paid \$2,000 down and signed a 10% note with both principal and interest due in one year. Ten percent is an appropriate rate of interest for this note.

Required:

Prepare journal entries to record each of the above transactions.

P 10-2

Acquisition costs;
land and building

- LO10-1,
LO10-2, LO10-7

On January 1, 2018, the Blackstone Corporation purchased a tract of land (site number 11) with a building for \$600,000. Additionally, Blackstone paid a real estate broker's commission of \$36,000, legal fees of \$6,000, and title insurance of \$18,000. The closing statement indicated that the land value was \$500,000 and the building value was \$100,000. Shortly after acquisition, the building was razed at a cost of \$75,000.

Blackstone entered into a \$3,000,000 fixed-price contract with Barnett Builders, Inc., on March 1, 2018, for the construction of an office building on land site 11. The building was completed and occupied on September 30, 2019. Additional construction costs were incurred as follows:

Plans, specifications, and blueprints	\$12,000
Architects' fees for design and supervision	95,000

To finance the construction cost, Blackstone borrowed \$3,000,000 on March 1, 2018. The loan is payable in 10 annual installments of \$300,000 plus interest at the rate of 14%. Blackstone's average amounts of accumulated building construction expenditures were as follows:

For the period March 1 to December 31, 2018	\$ 900,000
For the period January 1 to September 30, 2019	2,300,000

Required:

1. Prepare a schedule that discloses the individual costs making up the balance in the land account in respect of land site 11 as of September 30, 2019.
2. Prepare a schedule that discloses the individual costs that should be capitalized in the office building account as of September 30, 2019.

(AICPA adapted)

P 10-3

Acquisition costs

- LO10-1, LO10-4,
LO10-6

The plant asset and accumulated depreciation accounts of Pell Corporation had the following balances at December 31, 2017:

	Plant Asset	Accumulated Depreciation
Land	\$ 350,000	\$ —
Land improvements	180,000	45,000
Building	1,500,000	350,000
Machinery and equipment	1,158,000	405,000
Automobiles	150,000	112,000

Transactions during 2018 were as follows:

- a. On January 2, 2018, machinery and equipment were purchased at a total invoice cost of \$260,000, which included a \$5,500 charge for freight. Installation costs of \$27,000 were incurred.
- b. On March 31, 2018, a small storage building was donated to the company. The person donating the building originally purchased it three years ago for \$25,000. The fair value of the building on the day of the donation was \$17,000.
- c. On May 1, 2018, expenditures of \$50,000 were made to repave parking lots at Pell's plant location. The work was necessitated by damage caused by severe winter weather.
- d. On November 1, 2018, Pell acquired a tract of land with an existing building in exchange for 10,000 shares of Pell's common stock that had a market price of \$38 per share. Pell paid legal fees and title insurance totaling \$23,000. Shortly after acquisition, the building was razed at a cost of \$35,000 in anticipation of new building construction in 2019.
- e. On December 31, 2018, Pell purchased a small storage building by giving \$15,250 cash and an old automobile purchased for \$18,000 in 2014. Depreciation on the old automobile recorded through December 31, 2018, totaled \$13,500. The fair value of the old automobile was \$3,750.



Required:

Prepare a schedule analyzing the changes in each of the plant assets during 2018, with detailed supporting computations.

(AICPA adapted)

P 10-4

Intangibles

- LO10-1, LO10-8

The Horstmeyer Corporation commenced operations early in 2018. A number of expenditures were made during 2018 that were debited to one account called *intangible asset*. A recap of the \$144,000 balance in this account at the end of 2018 is as follows:

Date	Transaction	Amount
2/3/18	State incorporation fees and legal costs related to organizing the corporation	\$ 7,000
3/1/18	Fire insurance premium for three-year period	6,000
3/15/18	Purchased a copyright	20,000
4/30/18	Research and development costs	40,000
6/15/18	Legal fees for filing a patent on a new product resulting from an R&D project	3,000
9/30/18	Legal fee for successful defense of patent developed above	12,000
10/13/18	Entered into a 10-year franchise agreement with franchisor	40,000
Various	Advertising costs	16,000
	Total	<u>\$144,000</u>

Required:

Prepare the necessary journal entry to clear the intangible asset account and to set up accounts for separate intangible assets, other types of assets, and expenses indicated by the transactions.

P 10-5

Acquisition costs;
journal entries

- LO10-1, LO10-3,
LO10-6, LO10-8

Consider each of the transactions below. All of the expenditures were made in cash.

- The Edison Company spent \$12,000 during the year for experimental purposes in connection with the development of a new product.
- In April, the Marshall Company lost a patent infringement suit and paid the plaintiff \$7,500.
- In March, the Cleanway Laundromat bought equipment. Cleanway paid \$6,000 down and signed a noninterest-bearing note requiring the payment of \$18,000 in nine months. The cash price for this equipment was \$23,000.
- On June 1, the Jamsen Corporation installed a sprinkler system throughout the building at a cost of \$28,000.
- The Mayer Company, plaintiff, paid \$12,000 in legal fees in November, in connection with a successful infringement suit on its patent.
- The Johnson Company traded its old machine with an original cost of \$7,400 and a book value of \$3,000 plus cash of \$8,000 for a new one that had a fair value of \$10,000. The exchange has commercial substance.

Required:

Prepare journal entries to record each of the above transactions.

P 10-6

Nonmonetary
exchange

- LO10-6

Southern Company owns a building that it leases to others. The building's fair value is \$1,400,000 and its book value is \$800,000 (original cost of \$2,000,000 less accumulated depreciation of \$1,200,000). Southern exchanges this for a building owned by the Eastern Company. The building's book value on Eastern's books is \$950,000 (original cost of \$1,600,000 less accumulated depreciation of \$650,000). Eastern also gives Southern \$140,000 to complete the exchange. The exchange has commercial substance for both companies.

Required:

Prepare the journal entries to record the exchange on the books of both Southern and Eastern.

P 10-7

Nonmonetary
exchange

- LO10-6

On September 3, 2018, the Robers Company exchanged equipment with Phifer Corporation. The facts of the exchange are as follows:

	Robers' Asset	Phifer's Asset
Original cost	\$120,000	\$140,000
Accumulated depreciation	55,000	63,000
Fair value	75,000	70,000

To equalize the exchange, Phifer paid Robers \$5,000 in cash.

Required:

Record the exchange for both Robers and Phifer. The exchange has commercial substance for both companies.

P 10-8

Nonmonetary exchange

● LO10-6



Case A. Kapono Farms exchanged an old tractor for a newer model. The old tractor had a book value of \$12,000 (original cost of \$28,000 less accumulated depreciation of \$16,000) and a fair value of \$9,000. Kapono paid \$20,000 cash to complete the exchange. The exchange has commercial substance.

Required:

1. What is the amount of gain or loss that Kapono would recognize on the exchange? What is the initial value of the new tractor?
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the fair value of the old tractor is \$14,000 instead of \$9,000.

Case B. Kapono Farms exchanged 100 acres of farmland for similar land. The farmland given had a book value of \$500,000 and a fair value of \$700,000. Kapono paid \$50,000 cash to complete the exchange. The exchange has commercial substance.

Required:

1. What is the amount of gain or loss that Kapono would recognize on the exchange? What is the initial value of the new land?
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the fair value of the farmland given is \$400,000 instead of \$700,000.
3. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the exchange lacked commercial substance.

P 10-9

Interest capitalization; specific interest method

● LO10-7



On January 1, 2018, the Mason Manufacturing Company began construction of a building to be used as its office headquarters. The building was completed on September 30, 2019. Expenditures on the project were as follows:

January 1, 2018	\$1,000,000
March 1, 2018	600,000
June 30, 2018	800,000
October 1, 2018	600,000
January 31, 2019	270,000
April 30, 2019	585,000
August 31, 2019	900,000

On January 1, 2018, the company obtained a \$3 million construction loan with a 10% interest rate. The loan was outstanding all of 2018 and 2019. The company's other interest-bearing debt included two long-term notes of \$4,000,000 and \$6,000,000 with interest rates of 6% and 8%, respectively. Both notes were outstanding during all of 2018 and 2019. Interest is paid annually on all debt. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31.

Required:

1. Calculate the amount of interest that Mason should capitalize in 2018 and 2019 using the specific interest method.
2. What is the total cost of the building?
3. Calculate the amount of interest expense that will appear in the 2018 and 2019 income statements.

P 10-10

Interest capitalization; weighted-average method

● LO10-7



[This is a variation of the previous problem, modified to focus on the weighted-average interest method.]

Required:

Refer to the facts in Problem 10-9 and answer the following questions:

1. Calculate the amount of interest that Mason should capitalize in 2018 and 2019 using the weighted-average method.
2. What is the total cost of the building?
3. Calculate the amount of interest expense that will appear in the 2018 and 2019 income statements.

P 10-11

Research and development

● LO10-8

In 2018, Starsearch Corporation began work on three research and development projects. One of the projects was completed and commercial production of the developed product began in December. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31. All of the following 2016 expenditures were included in the R&D expense account:

Salaries and wages for:	
Lab research	\$ 300,000
Design and construction of preproduction prototype	160,000
Quality control during commercial production	20,000
Materials and supplies consumed for:	
Lab research	60,000
Construction of preproduction prototype	30,000
Purchase of equipment	600,000
Patent filing and legal fees for completed project	40,000
Payments to others for research	120,000
Total	<u>\$1,330,000</u>

\$200,000 of equipment was purchased solely for use in one of the projects. After the project is completed, the equipment will be abandoned. The remaining \$400,000 in equipment will be used on future R&D projects. The useful life of equipment is five years. Assume that all of the equipment was acquired at the beginning of the year.

Required:

Prepare journal entries, reclassifying amounts in R&D expense, to reflect the appropriate treatment of the expenditures.

P 10–12

Acquisition costs; lump-sum acquisition; noninterest-bearing note; interest capitalization

- LO10–1, LO10–2, LO10–3, LO10–7



Early in its fiscal year ending December 31, 2018, San Antonio Outfitters finalized plans to expand operations. The first stage was completed on March 28 with the purchase of a tract of land on the outskirts of the city. The land and existing building were purchased for \$800,000. San Antonio paid \$200,000 and signed a noninterest-bearing note requiring the company to pay the remaining \$600,000 on March 28, 2020. An interest rate of 8% properly reflects the time value of money for this type of loan agreement. Title search, insurance, and other closing costs totaling \$20,000 were paid at closing.

During April, the old building was demolished at a cost of \$70,000, and an additional \$50,000 was paid to clear and grade the land. Construction of a new building began on May 1 and was completed on October 29.

Construction expenditures were as follows:

May 1	\$1,200,000
July 30	1,500,000
September 1	900,000
October 1	1,800,000

San Antonio borrowed \$3,000,000 at 8% on May 1 to help finance construction. This loan, plus interest, will be paid in 2019. The company also had the following debt outstanding throughout 2018:

\$2,000,000, 9% long-term note payable
\$4,000,000, 6% long-term bonds payable

In November, the company purchased 10 identical pieces of equipment and office furniture and fixtures for a lump-sum price of \$600,000. The fair values of the equipment and the furniture and fixtures were \$455,000 and \$245,000, respectively. In December, San Antonio paid a contractor \$285,000 for the construction of parking lots and for landscaping.

Required:

- Determine the initial values of the various assets that San Antonio acquired or constructed during 2018. The company uses the specific interest method to determine the amount of interest capitalized on the building construction.
- How much interest expense will San Antonio report in its 2018 income statement?

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Judgment

Case 10–1

Acquisition costs

- LO10–1, LO10–3, LO10–6

A company may acquire property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets for cash, in exchange for a deferred payment contract, by exchanging other assets, or by a combination of these methods.

Required:

1. Identify six types of costs that should be capitalized as the cost of a parcel of land. For your answer, assume that the land has an existing building that is to be removed in the immediate future in order that a new building can be constructed on the site.
2. At what amount should a company record an asset acquired in exchange for a deferred payment contract?
3. In general, at what amount should assets received in exchange for other nonmonetary assets be valued? Specifically, at what amount should a company value a new machine acquired by exchanging an older, similar machine and paying cash?

(AICPA adapted)

Research**Case 10–2**

FASB codification; locate and extract relevant information and cite authoritative support for a financial reporting issue; restoration costs; asset retirement obligation

LO10–1



Your client, Hazelton Mining, recently entered into an agreement to obtain the rights to operate a coal mine in West Virginia for \$15 million. Hazelton incurred development costs of \$6 million in preparing the mine for extraction, which began on July 1, 2018. The contract requires Hazelton to restore the land and surrounding area to its original condition after extraction is complete in three years.

The company controller, Alice Cushing, is not sure how to account for the restoration costs and has asked your advice. Alice is aware of an accounting standard addressing this issue, but is not sure of its provisions. She has narrowed down the possible cash outflows for the restoration costs to four possibilities.

Cash Outflow	Probability
\$3 million	20%
4 million	30%
5 million	25%
6 million	25%

Alice also informs you that the company's credit-adjusted risk-free interest rate is 9%. Before responding to Alice, you need to research the issue.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on accounting for asset retirement obligations using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*. You might gain access at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Explain the basic treatment of asset retirement obligations. What are the specific citations that you would rely on to determine (a) the accounting treatment for an asset retirement obligation and (b) how to measure the obligation?
2. Determine the capitalized cost of the coal mine.
3. Prepare a summary journal entry to record the acquisition costs of the mine.
4. How much accretion expense will the company record in its income statement for the 2018 fiscal year, related to this transaction? What are the specific citations from the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* that address (a) the calculation of accretion expense and (b) the classification of accretion expense in the income statement?
5. Explain to Alice how Hazelton would account for the restoration if the restoration costs differed from the recorded liability in three years. By way of explanation, prepare the journal entry to record the payment of the retirement obligation in three years assuming that the actual restoration costs were \$4.7 million.
6. Describe to Alice the necessary disclosure requirements for the obligation. What is the specific citation from the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* that contains these disclosure requirements?

Judgment**Case 10–3**

Self-constructed assets

LO10–7

Chilton Peripherals manufactures printers, scanners, and other computer peripheral equipment. In the past, the company purchased equipment used in manufacturing from an outside vendor. In March 2018, Chilton decided to design and build equipment to replace some obsolete equipment. A section of the manufacturing plant was set aside to develop and produce the equipment. Additional personnel were hired for the project. The equipment was completed and ready for use in September.

Required:

1. In general, what costs should be capitalized for a self-constructed asset?
2. Discuss two alternatives for the inclusion of overhead costs in the cost of the equipment constructed by Chilton. Which alternative is generally accepted for financial reporting purposes?
3. Under what circumstance(s) would interest be included in the cost of the equipment?

GAAP provides guidelines for the inclusion of interest in the initial cost of a self-constructed asset.

Required:

1. What assets qualify for interest capitalization? What assets do not qualify for interest capitalization?
2. Over what period should interest be capitalized?
3. Explain average accumulated expenditures.
4. Explain the two methods that could be used to determine the appropriate interest rate(s) to be used in capitalizing interest.
5. Describe the three steps used to determine the amount of interest capitalized during a reporting period.

Judgment**Case 10–4**

Interest capitalization

LO10–7

Research**Case 10–5**

Goodwill

● LO10–1

Accounting for acquired goodwill has been a controversial issue for many years. In the United States, the amount of acquired goodwill is capitalized and not amortized. Globally, the treatment of goodwill varies significantly, with some countries not recognizing goodwill as an asset. Professors Johnson and Petrone, in “Is Goodwill an Asset?” discuss this issue.

Required:

1. In your library or from some other source, locate the indicated article in *Accounting Horizons*, September 1998.
2. Does goodwill meet the FASB’s definition of an asset?
3. What are the key concerns of those that believe goodwill is not an asset?

Real World**Case 10–6**

Property, plant,
and equipment;
Norfolk Southern
Corporation

● LO10–1

Norfolk Southern Corporation, one of the nation’s premier transportation companies, reported the following amounts in the asset section of its balance sheets for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2014:

	(\$ in millions)	
	December 31, 2015	December 31, 2014
Property and equipment, net	\$28,992	\$27,694

Real World Financials

In addition, information from the 2015 statement of cash flows and related notes reported the following items (\$ in millions):

Depreciation	\$1,059
Additions to property and equipment	2,385
Sales price of property and equipment	63

Required:

For what amount was the sales price above book value of property and equipment sold for the year ended December 31, 2015?

Judgment**Case 10–7**

Goodwill

● LO10–1

Athena Paper Corporation acquired for cash 100% of the outstanding common stock of Georgia, Inc., a supplier of wood pulp. The \$4,500,000 amount paid was significantly higher than the book value of Georgia’s net assets (assets less liabilities) of \$2,800,000. The Athena controller recorded the difference of \$1,700,000 as an asset, goodwill.

Required:

1. Discuss the meaning of the term goodwill.
2. In what situation would the Athena controller be correct in her valuation of goodwill?

Judgment**Case 10–8**

Research and
development

● LO10–8

Prior to 1974, accepted practice was for companies to either expense or capitalize R&D costs. In 1974, the FASB issued a Standard that requires all research and development costs to be charged to expense when incurred. This was a controversial standard, opposed by many companies who preferred delaying the recognition of these expenses until later years when presumably the expenditures bear fruit.

Several research studies have been conducted to determine if the Standard had any impact on the behavior of companies. One interesting finding was that, prior to 1974, companies that expensed R&D costs were significantly larger than those companies that capitalized R&D costs.

Required:

1. Explain the FASB’s logic in deciding to require all companies to expense R&D costs in the period incurred.
2. Identify possible reasons to explain why, prior to 1974, companies that expensed R&D costs were significantly larger than those companies that capitalized R&D costs.

Judgment**Case 10–9**

Research and
development

● LO10–8

Clonal, Inc., a biotechnology company, developed and patented a diagnostic product called Trouver. Clonal purchased some research equipment to be used exclusively for Trouver and subsequent research projects. Clonal defeated a legal challenge to its Trouver patent, and began production and marketing operations for the project.

Corporate headquarters’ costs were allocated to Clonal’s research division as a percentage of the division’s salaries.

Required:

1. How should the equipment purchased for Trouver be reported in Clonal’s income statements and statements of financial position?
2. a. Describe the accounting treatment of research and development costs.

- b. What is the justification for the accounting treatment of research and development costs?
3. How should corporate headquarters' costs allocated to the research division be classified in Clonal's income statements? Why?
4. How should the legal expenses incurred in defending Trouver's patent be reported in Clonal's financial statements?

(AICPA adapted)

Communication

Case 10–10

Research and development

● LO10–8

The focus of this case is the situation described in Case 10–9. What is the appropriate accounting for R&D costs? Do you believe that (1) capitalization is the correct treatment of R&D costs, (2) expensing is the correct treatment of R&D costs, or (3) that companies should be allowed to choose between expensing and capitalizing R&D costs?

Required:

1. Develop a list of arguments in support of your view prior to the class session for which the case is assigned. Do not be influenced by the method required by the FASB. Base your opinion on the conceptual merit of the options.
2. In class, your instructor will pair you (and everyone else) with a classmate who also has independently developed a position.
 - a. You will be given three minutes to argue your view to your partner. Your partner likewise will be given three minutes to argue his or her view to you. During these three-minute presentations, the listening partner is not permitted to speak.
 - b. Then after each person has had a turn attempting to convince his or her partner, the two partners will have a three-minute discussion in which they will decide which alternative is more convincing and arguments will be merged into a single view for each pair.
3. After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each of the three alternatives will be selected by the instructor. Each spokesperson will field arguments from the class as to the appropriate alternative. The class will then discuss the merits of the alternatives and attempt to reach a consensus view, though a consensus is not necessary.

Communication

Case 10–11

Research and development

● LO10–8

Thomas Plastics is in the process of developing a revolutionary new plastic valve. A new division of the company was formed to develop, manufacture, and market this new product. As of year-end (December 31, 2018), the new product has not been manufactured for sale; however, prototype units were built and are in operation.

Throughout 2018, the new division incurred a variety of costs. These costs included expenses (including salaries of administrative personnel) and market research costs. In addition, approximately \$500,000 in equipment (estimated useful life of 10 years) was purchased for use in developing and manufacturing the new valve. Approximately \$200,000 of this equipment was built specifically for developing the design of the new product; the remaining \$300,000 of the equipment was used to manufacture the preproduction prototypes and will be used to manufacture the new product once it is in commercial production.

The president of the company, Sally Rogers, has been told that research and development costs must be expensed as incurred, but she does not understand this treatment. She believes the research will lead to a profitable product and to increased future revenues. Also, she wonders how to account for the \$500,000 of equipment purchased by the new division. "I thought I understood accounting," she growled. "Explain to me why expenditures that benefit our future revenues are expensed rather than capitalized!"

Required:

Write a one-to two-page report to Sally Rogers explaining the generally accepted accounting principles relevant to this issue. The report also should address the treatment of the equipment purchases.

(AICPA adapted)

Ethics

Case 10–12

Research and development

● LO10–8

Mayer Biotechnical, Inc., develops, manufactures, and sells pharmaceuticals. Significant research and development (R&D) expenditures are made for the development of new drugs and the improvement of existing drugs. During 2018, \$220 million was spent on R&D. Of this amount, \$30 million was spent on the purchase of equipment to be used in a research project involving the development of a new antibiotic.

The controller, Alice Cooper, is considering capitalizing the equipment and depreciating it over the five-year useful life of the equipment at \$6 million per year, even though the equipment likely will be used on only one project. The company president has asked Alice to make every effort to increase 2018 earnings because in 2019 the company will be seeking significant new financing from both debt and equity sources. "I guess we might use the equipment in other projects later," Alice wondered to herself.

Required:

1. Assuming that the equipment was purchased at the beginning of 2018, by how much would Alice's treatment of the equipment increase before tax earnings as opposed to expensing the equipment cost?
2. Discuss the ethical dilemma Alice faces in determining the treatment of the \$30 million equipment purchase.

IFRS Case 10–13

Research and development; comparison of U.S. GAAP and IFRS; Siemens AG
 ● LO10–8, LO10–9

**Analysis****Case 10–14**

Fixed-asset turnover ratio; Pier 1 Imports, Inc.
 ● LO10–5

Real World Financials

Siemens AG, a German company, is Europe's largest engineering and electronics company. The company prepares its financial statements according to IFRS.

Required:

1. Use the Internet to locate the most recent financial report for Siemens. The address is www.siemens.com. Locate the significant accounting policies disclosure note.
2. How does the company account for research and development expenditures? Does this policy differ from U.S. GAAP?

Pier 1 Imports, Inc., is a leading retailer of domestic merchandise and home furnishings. The company's 2016 fixed-asset turnover ratio, using the average book value of property, plant, and equipment (PP&E) as the denominator, was approximately 8.97. Additional information taken from the company's 2016 annual report is as follows:

	(\$ in thousands)
Book value of PP&E—beginning of 2016	\$214,048
Purchases of PP&E during 2016	51,813
Depreciation of PP&E for 2016	55,830

Equipment having a book value of \$2,398 thousand was sold during 2016.

Required:

1. How is the fixed-asset turnover ratio computed? How would you interpret Pier 1's ratio of 8.97?
2. Use the data to determine Pier 1's net sales for 2016.
3. Obtain annual reports from three corporations in the same primary industry as Pier 1 Imports, Inc. (Bed, Bath & Beyond and Williams-Sonoma, Inc., are two well-known companies in the same industry) and compare the management of each company's investment in property, plant, and equipment.

Note: You can obtain copies of annual reports from your library, from friends who are shareholders, from the investor relations department of the corporations, from a friendly stockbroker, or from EDGAR (Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval) on the Internet (www.sec.gov).

Judgment**Case 10–15**

Computer software costs
 ● LO10–8

The Elegant Software Company recently completed the development and testing of a new software program that provides the ability to transfer data from among a variety of operating systems. The company believes this product will be quite successful and capitalized all of the costs of designing, developing, coding, and testing the software. These costs will be amortized over the expected useful life of the software on a straight-line basis.

Required:

1. Was Elegant correct in its treatment of the software development costs? Why?
2. Explain the appropriate method for determining the amount of periodic amortization for any capitalized software development costs.

Real World Case 10–16

Property, plant, and equipment; Home Depot
 ● LO10–1, LO10–7

Real World Financials

EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, performs automated collection, validation, indexing, and forwarding of submissions by companies and others who are required by law to file forms with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR to make the majority of their filings. (Some foreign companies file voluntarily.) Form 10-K, which includes the annual report, is required to be filed on EDGAR. The SEC makes this information available on the Internet.

Required:

1. Access EDGAR on the Internet. The web address is www.sec.gov.
2. Search for **Home Depot, Inc.** Access the 10-K filing for the most recent fiscal year. Search or scroll to find the financial statements and related notes.
3. Answer the following questions related to the company's property, plant, and equipment:
 - a. Name the different types of assets the company lists in its balance sheet under property, plant, and equipment.
 - b. How much cash was used for the acquisition of property, plant, and equipment during the year?
 - c. What was the amount of interest capitalized during the year?
 - d. Compute the fixed-asset turnover ratio for the fiscal year.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO10-1, LO10-5

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. What categories of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets does Target report in its January 30, 2016 balance sheet?
2. How much cash was used in the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016, to purchase property and equipment? How does this compare with purchases in previous years?
3. Do you think a company like Target would have significant research and development costs or capitalized interest related to self-constructed assets? Explain.
4. What is Target's fixed-asset turnover ratio for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016? What is the ratio intended to measure?

Air France-KLM Case

- LO10-9



IFRS

Air France-KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. What method does Air France-KLM use to amortize the cost of computer software development costs? How does this approach differ from U.S. GAAP?
2. AF does not report any research and development expenditures. If it did, its approach to accounting for research and development would be significantly different from U.S. GAAP. Describe the differences between IFRS and U.S. GAAP in accounting for research and development expenditures.
3. AF does not report the receipt of any governments grants. If it did, its approach to accounting for government grants would be significantly different from U.S. GAAP. Describe the differences between IFRS and U.S. GAAP in accounting for government grants. If AF received a grant for the purchase of assets, what alternative accounting treatments are available under IFRS?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

11

Property, Plant, and Equipment and Intangible Assets: Utilization and Disposition

OVERVIEW

This chapter completes our discussion of accounting for property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets. We address the allocation of the cost of these assets to the periods benefited by their use.

The usefulness of most of these assets is consumed as the assets are applied to the production of goods or services. Cost allocation corresponding to this consumption of usefulness is known as *depreciation* for plant and equipment, *depletion* for natural resources, and *amortization* for intangibles.

We also consider other issues until final disposal such as impairment of these assets and the treatment of expenditures subsequent to acquisition.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO11-1** Explain the concept of cost allocation as it pertains to property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets. (p. 575)
- **LO11-2** Determine periodic depreciation using both time-based and activity-based methods and account for dispositions. (p. 578)
- **LO11-3** Calculate the periodic depletion of a natural resource. (p. 591)
- **LO11-4** Calculate the periodic amortization of an intangible asset. (p. 593)
- **LO11-5** Explain the appropriate accounting treatment required when a change is made in the service life or residual value of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets. (p. 599)
- **LO11-6** Explain the appropriate accounting treatment required when a change in depreciation, amortization, or depletion method is made. (p. 600)
- **LO11-7** Explain the appropriate treatment required when an error in accounting for property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets is discovered. (p. 601)
- **LO11-8** Identify situations that involve a significant impairment of the value of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets and describe the required accounting procedures. (p. 603)
- **LO11-9** Discuss the accounting treatment of repairs and maintenance, additions, improvements, and rearrangements to property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets. (p. 614)
- **LO11-10** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to the utilization and impairment of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets. (pp. 584, 589, 593, 596, 605, 607, 611, and 617)



© fStop/Getty Images

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

What's in a Name?

"I don't understand this at all," your friend Penny Lane moaned. "Depreciation, depletion, amortization; what's the difference? Aren't they all the same thing?" Penny and you are part of a class team working on a case involving **Weyerhaeuser Company**, a large forest products company. Part of the project involves comparing reporting methods over a three-year period. "Look at these disclosure notes from last year's annual report. Besides mentioning those three terms, they also talk about asset impairment. How is that different?" Penny showed you the disclosure notes.

Property and Equipment and Timber and Timberlands (in part)

Depreciation is calculated using a straight-line method at rates based on estimated service lives. Logging roads are generally amortized—as timber is harvested—at rates based on the volume of timber estimated to be removed. We carry timber and timberlands at cost less depletion.

Depletion (in part)

To determine depletion rates, we divide the net carrying value by the related volume of timber estimated to be available over the growth cycle.

Impairment of Long-Lived Assets (in part)

We review long-lived assets—including certain identifiable intangibles—for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of the assets may not be recoverable.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. Is Penny correct? Do the terms *depreciation*, *depletion*, and *amortization* all mean the same thing? (p. 576)
2. Weyerhaeuser determines depletion based on the "volume of timber estimated to be available." Explain this approach. (p. 587)
3. Explain how asset impairment differs from depreciation, depletion, and amortization. How do companies measure impairment losses for property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets with finite useful lives? (p. 602)

QUESTIONS

Depreciation, Depletion, and Amortization

Cost Allocation—an Overview

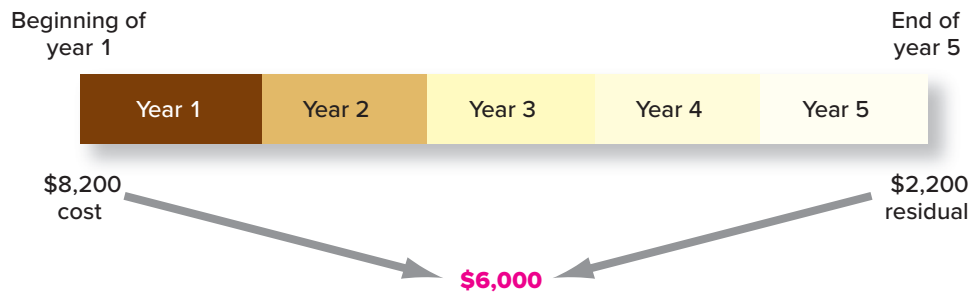
Property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets are purchased with the expectation that they will provide future benefits. Specifically, they are acquired to be used as part of the revenue-generating operations, usually for several years. Logically, then, the cost of these acquisitions initially should be recorded as assets (as we saw in Chapter 10), and then these costs should be allocated to expense over the reporting periods benefited by their use. That is, their costs are reported with the revenues they help generate.

● LO11-1

PART A

Let's suppose that a company purchases a used truck for \$8,200 to deliver products to customers. The company estimates that five years from the acquisition date the truck will be sold for \$2,200. It is estimated, then, that **\$6,000** ($\$8,200 - \$2,200$) of the truck's purchase cost will be used up (consumed) during a five-year useful life. The situation is portrayed in Illustration 11-1.

Illustration 11-1
Cost Allocation



Because the truck will help to produce revenues over the next five years, an asset of \$8,200 is recorded at the time of acquisition. Over the subsequent five years, **\$6,000** of the truck's costs is expected to be consumed and, conceptually, should be allocated to expense in those years in direct proportion to the role the asset played in revenue production. However, very seldom is there a clear-cut relationship between the use of the asset and revenue production. In other words, we can't tell precisely the portion of the total benefits of the asset that was consumed in any particular period. As a consequence, we must resort to arbitrary allocation methods to approximate the portion of the asset's cost used each period. Contrast this situation with the \$24,000 prepayment of one year's rent on an office building at \$2,000 per month. In that case, we know precisely that the benefits of the asset (prepaid rent) are consumed at a rate of \$2,000 per month. That's why we allocate \$2,000 of prepaid rent to rent expense for each month that passes.

The process of allocating the cost of plant and equipment over the periods they are used to produce revenues is known as **depreciation**. The process of depreciation often is confused with measuring a decline in fair value of an asset. For example, let's say our delivery truck purchased for \$8,200 can be sold for \$5,000 at the end of one year but we intend to keep it for the full five-year estimated life. It has experienced a decline in value of \$3,200 ($\$8,200 - \$5,000$). However, *depreciation is a process of cost allocation, not valuation*. We would not record depreciation expense of \$3,200 for year one of the truck's life. Instead, we would distribute the cost of the asset, less any anticipated residual value, over the estimated useful life in a systematic and rational manner that attempts to associate revenues with the *use* of the asset, not the decline in its value. After all, the truck is purchased to be used in operations, not to be sold.

For natural resources, we refer to cost allocation as **depletion**, and for intangible assets, we refer to it as **amortization**. While the terms *depreciation*, *depletion*, and *amortization* differ across types of assets, they conceptually refer to the same idea—the process of allocating an asset's cost over the periods it is used to produce revenues.

For assets used in the manufacture of a product, depreciation, depletion, or amortization is considered a product cost to be included as part of the cost of inventory. Eventually, when the product is sold, it becomes part of the cost of goods sold. For assets *not* used in production, primarily plant and equipment and certain intangibles used in the selling and administrative functions of the company, depreciation or amortization is reported as a period expense in the income statement. You might recognize this distinction between a product cost and a period cost. A product cost is reported as an expense (cost of goods sold) when the product is sold; a period cost is reported as an expense in the reporting period in which it is incurred.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 575

Depreciation, depletion, and amortization are processes that allocate an asset's cost to periods of benefit.

Measuring Cost Allocation

The process of cost allocation requires that three factors be established at the time the asset is put into use. These factors are

1. **Service life**—The estimated use that the company expects to receive from the asset.

2. **Allocation base**—The cost of the asset expected to be consumed during its service life.
3. **Allocation method**—The pattern in which the allocation base is expected to be consumed.

Let's consider these one at a time.

Service Life

The **service life**, or **useful life**, is the amount of use that the company expects to obtain from the asset before disposing of it. This use can be expressed in units of time or in units of activity. For example, the estimated service life of a delivery truck could be expressed in terms of years or in terms of the number of miles that the company expects the truck to be driven before disposition. We use the terms service life and useful life interchangeably throughout the chapter.

Physical life provides the upper bound for service life of tangible, long-lived assets. Physical life will vary according to the purpose for which the asset is acquired and the environment in which it is operated. For example, a diesel powered electric generator may last for many years if it is used only as an emergency backup or for only a few years if it is used regularly.

The service life of a tangible asset may be less than physical life for a variety of reasons. For example, the expected rate of technological change may shorten service life. If suppliers are expected to develop new technologies that are more efficient, the company may keep an asset for a period of time much shorter than physical life. Likewise, if the company sells its product in a market that frequently demands new products, the machinery and equipment used to produce products may be useful only for as long as its output can be sold. Similarly, a mineral deposit might be projected to contain 4 million tons of a mineral, but it may be economically feasible with existing extraction methods to mine only 2 million tons. For intangible assets, legal or contractual life often is a limiting factor. For instance, a patent might be capable of providing enhanced profitability for 50 years, but the legal life of a patent is only 20 years.

Management intent also may shorten the period of an asset's usefulness below its physical, legal, or contractual life. For example, a company may have a policy of using its delivery trucks for a three-year period and then trading the trucks for new models.

Companies quite often disclose the range of service lives for different categories of assets. For example, Illustration 11-2 shows how **IBM Corporation** disclosed its service lives in a note accompanying recent financial statements.

The service life, or useful life, can be expressed in units of time or in units of activity.

Expected obsolescence can shorten service life below physical life.

Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (in part)

Depreciation and Amortization

The estimated useful lives of certain depreciable assets are as follows: buildings, 30 to 50 years; building equipment, 10 to 20 years; land improvements, 20 years; plant, laboratory, and office equipment, 2 to 20 years; and computer equipment, 1.5 to 5 years.

Illustration 11-2

Service Life Disclosure—
International Business
Machines Corporation

Real World Financials

Allocation Base

The amount of cost to be allocated over an asset's service life is called its **allocation base**. The amount is the difference between the asset's capitalized cost at the date placed in service and the asset's **residual value**. Residual value (sometimes called *salvage value*) is the amount the company expects to receive for the asset at the end of its service life less any anticipated disposal costs.

For plant and equipment, we commonly refer to the allocation base as the *depreciable base*. In our delivery truck example above, the depreciable base is \$6,000 (\$8,200 cost less \$2,200 anticipated residual value). We will allocate a portion of the \$6,000 to each year of the truck's service life. For the depletion of natural resources, we refer to the allocation base as the *depletion base*. For amortization of intangible asset, we refer to the allocation base as the *amortization base*.

Allocation base is the difference between the cost of the asset and its anticipated residual value.

In certain situations, residual value can be estimated by referring to a company's prior experience or to publicly available information concerning resale values of various types of assets. For example, if a company intends to trade its delivery truck in three years for the new model, approximations of the three-year residual value for that type of truck can be obtained from used truck values.

However, estimating residual value for many assets can be very difficult due to the uncertainty about the future. For this reason, along with the fact that residual values often are immaterial, many companies simply assume a residual value of zero. Companies usually do not disclose estimated residual values.

Allocation Method

The allocation method used should be systematic and rational and correspond to the pattern of asset use.

In determining how much cost to allocate to periods of an asset's use, a method should be selected that corresponds to the pattern of benefits received from the asset's use. Generally accepted accounting principles state that the chosen method should allocate the asset's cost "as equitably as possible to the periods during which services are obtained from [its] use." GAAP further specifies that the method should produce a cost allocation in a "systematic and rational manner."¹ The objective is to try to allocate cost to the period in an amount that is proportional to the amount of benefits generated by the asset during the period relative to the total benefits provided by the asset during its life.

In practice, there are two general approaches that attempt to obtain this systematic and rational allocation. The first approach allocates the cost base according to the *passage of time*. Methods following this approach are referred to as **time-based** methods. The second approach allocates an asset's cost base using a measure of the asset's *input* or *output*. This is an **activity-based** method. We compare these approaches first in the context of depreciation. Later we see that depletion of natural resources typically follows an activity-based approach, and the amortization of intangibles typically follows a time-based approach.

Depreciation

- LO11-2 To demonstrate and compare the most common depreciation methods, we refer to the situation described in Illustration 11-3.

Illustration 11-3

Depreciation Methods

The Hogan Manufacturing Company purchased a machine for \$250,000. The company expects the service life of the machine to be five years. During that time, it is expected that the machine will produce 140,000 units. The estimated residual value is \$40,000. The machine was disposed of after five years of use. Actual production during the five years of the asset's life was:

Year	Units Produced
1	20,000
2	32,000
3	44,000
4	28,000
5	26,000
Total	150,000

Time-Based Depreciation Methods

The straight-line method depreciates an equal amount of the depreciable base to each year of the asset's service life.

STRAIGHT-LINE METHOD By far the most easily understood and widely used depreciation method is **straight line**. In this approach, an equal amount of the depreciable base (or allocation base) is allocated to each year of the asset's service life. The depreciable base is simply divided by the number of years in the asset's life to determine annual depreciation.

¹FASB ASC 360-10-35-4: Property, Plant, and Equipment—Overall—Subsequent Measurement (previously "Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research Bulletins," *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43* (New York: AICPA, 1953), Ch. 9).

Using the information given in Illustration 11–3, straight-line depreciation expense in each year is \$42,000, calculated as follows:

$$\frac{\$250,000 - 40,000}{5 \text{ years}} = \$42,000 \text{ per year}$$

The calculation of depreciation over the entire five-year life is demonstrated in detail in Illustration 11–3A. Notice the last three columns. **Depreciation expense** is the portion of the asset's cost that is allocated to an expense *in the current year*. **Accumulated depreciation** (a contra-asset account) represents the cumulative amount of the asset's cost that has been depreciated *in all prior years including the current year*. This amount represents the reduction in the asset's cost reported in the balance sheet. The asset is reported in the balance sheet at its **book value**, which is the asset's cost minus accumulated depreciation. Book value is sometimes called carrying value or carrying amount. The residual value (\$40,000 in this example) does not affect the calculation of book value, but the residual value does set a limit on which book value cannot go below.

Illustration 11–3A Straight-Line Depreciation

Using the information given in Illustration 11–3:

Year	Depreciable Base (\$250,000 – 40,000)	×	Depreciation Rate per Year	=	Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Depreciation	Book Value End of Year (\$250,000 less Accum. Depreciation)
1	\$210,000		1/5*		\$ 42,000	\$ 42,000	\$208,000
2	210,000		1/5		42,000	84,000	166,000
3	210,000		1/5		42,000	126,000	124,000
4	210,000		1/5		42,000	168,000	82,000
5	210,000		1/5		42,000	210,000	40,000
Totals					<u>\$210,000</u>		

*The rate equals one divided by the asset's five-year estimated service life (1/5 = 20%).

The entry to record depreciation at the end of each year using the straight-line method would be:

Depreciation expense.....	42,000*	
Accumulated depreciation		42,000

*\$42,000 = (\$250,000 – 40,000) ÷ 5 years.

ACCELERATED METHODS Using the straight-line method implicitly assumes that the benefits derived from the use of the asset are the same each year. In some situations it might be more appropriate to assume that the asset will provide greater benefits in the early years of its life than in the later years. In these cases, a more appropriate matching of depreciation with revenues is achieved with a declining pattern of depreciation, with higher depreciation in the early years of the asset's life and lower depreciation in later years.

An accelerated depreciation method also would be appropriate when benefits derived from the asset are approximately equal over the asset's life, but repair and maintenance costs increase significantly in later years. The early years incur higher depreciation and lower repairs and maintenance expense, while the later years have lower depreciation and higher repairs and maintenance. Two ways to achieve such a declining pattern of depreciation are the sum-of-the-years'-digits method and declining balance methods.

Sum-of-the-years'-digits method. The **sum-of-the-years'-digits (SYD) method** has no logical foundation other than the fact that it accomplishes the objective of accelerating depreciation in a systematic manner. This is achieved by multiplying the depreciable base by a fraction that declines each year and results in depreciation that decreases by the same

Accelerated depreciation methods report higher depreciation in earlier years.

The SYD method multiplies depreciable base by a declining fraction.

amount each year. The denominator of the fraction remains constant and is the *sum of the digits* from one to n , where n is the number of years in the asset's service life. For example, if there are five years in the service life, the denominator is the sum of 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5, which equals 15.² The numerator decreases each year; it begins with the value of n in the first year and decreases by one each year until it equals one in the final year of the asset's estimated service life. The annual fractions for an asset with a five-year life are: $\frac{5}{15}$, $\frac{4}{15}$, $\frac{3}{15}$, $\frac{2}{15}$, and $\frac{1}{15}$. We calculate depreciation for the five years of the machine's life using the sum-of-the-years'-digits method in Illustration 11–3B.

Illustration 11–3B Sum-of-the-Years'-Digits Depreciation

Using the information given in Illustration 11–3:

Year	Depreciable Base (\$250,000 – 40,000)	×	Depreciation Rate per Year	=	Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Depreciation	Book Value End of Year (\$250,000 less Accum. Depreciation)
1	\$210,000		$\frac{5}{15}$ *		\$ 70,000	\$ 70,000	\$180,000
2	210,000		$\frac{4}{15}$		56,000	126,000	124,000
3	210,000		$\frac{3}{15}$		42,000	168,000	82,000
4	210,000		$\frac{2}{15}$		28,000	196,000	54,000
5	210,000		$\frac{1}{15}$		14,000	210,000	40,000
Totals			$\frac{15}{15}$		\$210,000		

$$* \frac{n(n+1)}{2} = \frac{5(5+1)}{2} = 15$$

Notice that total depreciation (\$210,000) is the same for an accelerated method like SYD as it is for the straight-line method, as shown in Illustration 11–3A. The difference is the pattern in which this total cost is allocated to each year of the asset's service life.

Declining balance depreciation methods multiply beginning-of-year book value, not depreciable base, by an annual rate that is a multiple of the straight-line rate.

Declining balance methods. As an alternative, an accelerated depreciation pattern can be achieved by a declining balance method. Rather than multiplying a constant balance by a declining fraction as we do in SYD depreciation, we multiply a constant fraction by a declining balance each year. Specifically, we multiply a constant percentage rate times the decreasing book value (cost less accumulated depreciation) of the asset (not depreciable base) at the beginning of the year. Because the rate remains constant while the book value declines, annual depreciation declines each year.

A common declining balance method is known as the **double-declining-balance (DDB) method**. Under this method, we multiply the straight-line rate by 200% (or *double* the straight-line rate). For example, in our illustration, the double-declining-balance rate would be 40% (double the straight-line rate of 20%). Various other multiples are used in practice, such as 125% or 150% of the straight-line rate.

Depreciation using the double-declining-balance method is calculated in Illustration 11–3C for the five years of the machine's life. Notice that book value at the beginning of the year, rather than the depreciable base, is used as the starting point. Further, notice that in year 4 we did not multiply \$54,000 by 40%. If we had, annual depreciation would have been \$21,600. This amount would have resulted in accumulated depreciation by the end of year 4 of \$217,600 and book value of \$32,400, which is below the asset's expected residual value of \$40,000. Therefore, we instead use a plug amount that reduces book value to the expected residual value (book value beginning of year, \$54,000, minus expected residual value, \$40,000 = **\$14,000**). This also means there is no depreciation in year 5 since book value has already been reduced to the expected residual value. Declining balance methods often allocate the asset's depreciable base over fewer years than the expected service life.

²A formula useful when calculating the denominator is $n(n+1)/2$.

Using the information given in Illustration 11–3:

Year	Book Value Beginning of Year	×	Depreciation Rate per Year	=	Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Depreciation	Book Value End of Year (\$250,000 less Accum. Depreciation)
1	\$250,000		40%*		\$100,000	\$100,000	\$150,000
2	150,000		40%		60,000	160,000	90,000
3	90,000		40%		36,000	196,000	54,000
4	54,000				14,000 [†]	210,000	40,000
5	40,000				—		40,000
Total					\$210,000		

*Double the straight-line rate of 20%. The straight-line rate is one divided by the asset's five-year estimated service life ($\frac{1}{5} = 20\%$).

[†]Amount necessary to reduce book value to residual value.

Illustration 11–3C

Double-Declining-Balance
Depreciation

SWITCH FROM ACCELERATED TO STRAIGHT LINE. The result of applying the double-declining-balance method in our illustration produces an awkward result in the later years of the asset's life. By using the double-declining-balance method in our illustration, no depreciation is recorded in year 5 even though the asset is still producing benefits. As a planned approach to depreciation, many companies have a formal policy to use accelerated depreciation for approximately the first half of an asset's service life and then switch to the straight-line method for the remaining life of the asset.

In our illustration, the company would switch to straight line in either year 3 or year 4. Assuming the switch is made at the beginning of year 4, and the book value at the beginning of that year is \$54,000, an additional \$14,000 (\$54,000 – 40,000 in residual value) of depreciation must be recorded over the remaining life of the asset. Applying the straight-line concept, \$7,000 (\$14,000 divided by two remaining years) in depreciation is recorded in both year 4 and year 5.

It should be noted that this switch to straight line is not a change in depreciation method. The switch is part of the company's planned depreciation approach. However, as you will learn later in the chapter, the accounting treatment is the same as a change in depreciation method.

Activity-Based Depreciation Methods

The most logical way to allocate an asset's cost to periods of an asset's use is to measure the usefulness of the asset in terms of its productivity. For example, we could measure the service life of a machine in terms of its *output* (for example, the estimated number of units it will produce) or in terms of its *input* (for example, the number of hours it will operate). We have already mentioned that one way to measure the service life of a vehicle is to estimate the number of miles it will operate. The most common activity-based method is called the **units-of-production method**.

The measure of output used is the estimated number of units (pounds, items, barrels, etc.) to be produced by the machine. By the units-of-production method, we first compute the average depreciation rate per unit by dividing the depreciable base by the number of units expected to be produced. This per unit rate is then multiplied by the actual number of units produced each period. In our illustration, the depreciation rate per unit is \$1.50, computed as follows:

$$\frac{\$250,000 - 40,000}{140,000 \text{ units}} = \$1.50 \text{ per unit}$$

Each unit produced will require \$1.50 of depreciation to be recorded. In other words, each unit produced is assigned \$1.50 of the asset's cost.

It is not uncommon for a company to switch from accelerated to straight line approximately halfway through an asset's useful life as part of the company's planned depreciation approach.

Activity-based depreciation methods estimate service life in terms of some measure of productivity.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 575

The units-of-production method computes a depreciation rate per measure of activity and then multiplies this rate by actual activity to determine periodic depreciation.

Illustration 11–3D shows that depreciation each year is the actual units produced multiplied by the depreciation rate per unit. This means that the amount of depreciation each year varies proportionately with the number of units being produced, with one exception. Notice that the asset produced 26,000 units in year 5, causing total production over the life of the asset (150,000 units) to exceed its estimated production (140,000 units). In this case, we cannot record depreciation for the final 10,000 units produced. Depreciation in year five is limited to the amount that brings the book value of the asset down to its residual value (book value beginning of year, \$64,000, minus expected residual value, \$40,000 = **\$24,000**).

Illustration 11–3D

Units-of-Production
Depreciation

Using the information given in Illustration 11–3:

Year	Units Produced	×	Depreciation Rate per Unit	=	Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Depreciation	Book Value End of Year (\$250,000 less Accum. Depreciation)
1	20,000		\$1.50*		\$ 30,000	\$ 30,000	\$220,000
2	32,000		1.50		48,000	78,000	172,000
3	44,000		1.50		66,000	144,000	106,000
4	28,000		1.50		42,000	186,000	64,000
5	26,000				24,000*	210,000	40,000
Totals	150,000				<u>\$210,000</u>		

*(\$250,000 – 40,000) / 140,000 units = \$1.50 per unit.

*Amount necessary to reduce book value to residual value.

The machine may produce *fewer than* 140,000 units by the end of its useful life. For example, suppose production in year 5 had been only 6,000 units, bringing total production to 130,000 units, and management has no future plans to use the machine. We would record depreciation in Year 5 for \$9,000 (6,000 units × \$1.50). If management then develops a formal plan to sell the machine, the machine is classified as “held for sale” (discussed in more detail below) and reported at the lower of its current book value or its fair value less any cost to sell. If management plans to retire the asset without selling it, a loss is recorded for the remaining book value.

Decision Makers’ Perspective—Selecting A Depreciation Method

All methods provide the same total depreciation over an asset’s life.

Illustration 11–3E compares periodic depreciation calculated using each of the alternatives we discussed and illustrated.

Illustration 11–3E

Comparison of Various
Depreciation Methods

Year	Straight Line	Sum-of-the- Years’-Digits	Double-Declining Balance	Units of Production
1	\$ 42,000	\$ 70,000	\$100,000	\$ 30,000
2	42,000	56,000	60,000	48,000
3	42,000	42,000	36,000	66,000
4	42,000	28,000	14,000	42,000
5	42,000	14,000	0	24,000
Total	<u>\$210,000</u>	<u>\$210,000</u>	<u>\$210,000</u>	<u>\$210,000</u>

Conceptually, using an activity-based depreciation method provides a better matching of the asset’s cost to the use of that asset to help produce revenues. Clearly, the productivity of

a plant asset is more closely associated with the benefits provided by that asset than the mere passage of time. Also, these methods allow for patterns of depreciation to correspond with the patterns of asset use.

However, activity-based methods quite often are either infeasible or too costly to use. For example, buildings don't have an identifiable measure of productivity. Even for machinery, there may be an identifiable measure of productivity such as machine hours or units produced, but it frequently is more costly to determine each period than it is to simply measure the passage of time. For these reasons, most companies use time-based depreciation methods.

Illustration 11-4 shows the results of a recent survey of depreciation methods used by large public companies.³

Activity-based methods are conceptually superior to time-based methods but often are impractical to apply in practice.

Depreciation Method	Number of Companies
Straight line	490
Declining balance	9
Sum-of-the-years'-digits	2
Accelerated method—not specified	9
Units of production	12
Group/composite	17

Illustration 11-4

Use of Various Depreciation Methods

Real World Financials

Why do so many companies use the straight-line method as opposed to other time-based methods? Many companies perhaps consider the benefits derived from the majority of plant assets to be realized approximately evenly over these assets' useful lives. Certainly a contributing factor is that straight-line is the easiest method to understand and apply.

Another motivation is the positive effect on reported income. Straight-line depreciation produces a higher net income than accelerated methods in the early years of an asset's life. In Chapter 8 we pointed out that reported net income can affect bonuses paid to management or debt agreements with lenders.

Conflicting with the desire to report higher profits is the desire to reduce taxes by reducing taxable income. An accelerated method serves this objective by reducing taxable income more in the early years of an asset's life than straight line. You probably recall a similar discussion from Chapter 8 in which the benefits of using the LIFO inventory method during periods of increasing costs were described. However, remember that the LIFO conformity rule requires companies using LIFO for income tax reporting to also use LIFO for financial reporting. *No such conformity rule exists for depreciation methods.* Income tax regulations allow firms to use different approaches to computing depreciation in their tax returns and in their financial statements. The method used for tax purposes is therefore not a constraint in the choice of depreciation methods for financial reporting. As a result, most companies use the straight-line method for financial reporting and the Internal Revenue Service's prescribed accelerated method (discussed in Appendix 11A) for income tax purposes. For example, Illustration 11-5 shows **Merck & Co.**'s depreciation policy as reported in a disclosure note accompanying recent financial statements.

A company does not have to use the same depreciation method for both financial reporting and income tax purposes.

Summary of Accounting Policies (in part): Depreciation

Depreciation is provided over the estimated useful lives of the assets, principally using the straight-line method. For tax purposes, accelerated methods are used.

Illustration 11-5

Depreciation Method Disclosure—Merck & Co.

Real World Financials

It is not unusual for a company to use different depreciation methods for different classes of assets. For example, Illustration 11-6 illustrates the **International Paper Company** depreciation policy disclosure contained in a note accompanying recent financial statements.

³U.S. GAAP *Financial Statements—Best Practices in Presentation and Disclosure—2013* (New York: AICPA, 2013).

Illustration 11-6

Depreciation Method
Disclosure—International
Paper Company

Real World Financials



• LO11-10

Summary of Accounting Policies (in part): Plants, Properties, and Equipment

Plants, properties, and equipment are stated at cost, less accumulated depreciation. The units-of-production method of depreciation is used for major pulp and paper mills and the straight-line method is used for other plants and equipment.

International Financial Reporting Standards

Depreciation. IAS No. 16 requires that each component of an item of property, plant, and equipment must be depreciated separately if its cost is significant in relation to the total cost of the item.⁴ In the United States, component depreciation is allowed but is not often used in practice.

Consider the following illustration:

Cavandish LTD. purchased a delivery truck for \$62,000. The truck is expected to have a service life of six years and a residual value of \$12,000. At the end of three years, the oversized tires, which have a cost of \$6,000 (included in the \$62,000 purchase price), will be replaced.

Under U.S. GAAP, the typical accounting treatment is to depreciate the \$50,000 (\$62,000 – 12,000) depreciable base of the truck over its six-year useful life. Using IFRS, the depreciable base of the truck is \$44,000 (\$62,000 – 12,000 – 6,000) and is depreciated over the truck's six-year useful life, and the \$6,000 cost of the tires is depreciated separately over a three-year useful life.

U.S. GAAP and IFRS determine depreciable base in the same way, by subtracting estimated residual value from cost. However, IFRS requires a review of residual values at least annually.

Sanofi-Aventis, a French pharmaceutical company, prepares its financial statements using IFRS. In its property, plant, and equipment note, the company discloses its use of the component-based approach to accounting for depreciation.

Property, plant, and equipment (in part)

The component-based approach to accounting for property, plant, and equipment is applied. Under this approach, each component of an item of property, plant, and equipment with a cost which is significant in relation to the total cost of the item and which has a different useful life from the other components must be depreciated separately.

Depreciation Methods. IAS No. 16 specifically mentions three depreciation methods: straight-line, units-of-production, and the diminishing balance method. The diminishing balance method is similar to the declining balance method sometimes used by U.S. companies. As in the U.S., the straight-line method is used by most companies. A recent survey of large companies that prepare their financial statement according to IFRS reports 93% of the surveyed companies used the straight-line method.⁵

Concept Review Exercise

DEPRECIATION METHODS

The Sprague Company purchased a fabricating machine on January 1, 2018, at a net cost of \$130,000. At the end of its four-year useful life, the company estimates that the machine will be worth \$30,000. Sprague also estimates that the machine will run for 25,000 hours during its four-year life. The company's fiscal year ends on December 31.

⁴"Property, Plant and Equipment," *International Accounting Standard No. 16* (IASCF), par. 42, as amended effective January 1, 2016.

⁵"IFRS Accounting Trends and Techniques" (New York, AICPA, 2011), p. 328.

Required:

Compute depreciation for 2018 through 2021 using each of the following methods:

1. Straight line
2. Sum-of-the-years'-digits
3. Double-declining balance
4. Units of production (using machine hours); actual production was as follows:

Year	Machine Hours
2018	6,000
2019	8,000
2020	5,000
2021	7,000

Solution:

1. Straight line:

$$\frac{\$130,000 - 30,000}{4 \text{ years}} = \$25,000 \text{ per year}$$

2. Sum-of-the-years'-digits:

Year	Depreciable Base	×	Depreciation Rate per Year	=	Depreciation Expense
2018	\$100,000		$\frac{4}{10}$		\$ 40,000
2019	100,000		$\frac{3}{10}$		30,000
2020	100,000		$\frac{2}{10}$		20,000
2021	100,000		$\frac{1}{10}$		10,000
Total					<u>\$100,000</u>

3. Double-declining balance:

Year	Book Value Beginning of Year	×	Depreciation Rate per Year	=	Depreciation Expense	Book Value End of Year
2018	\$130,000		50%*		\$ 65,000	\$65,000
2019	65,000		50%		32,500	32,500
2020	32,500				2,500†	30,000
2021	30,000				—	30,000
Total					<u>\$100,000</u>	

*Double the straight-line rate of 25%. The straight-line rate is one divided by the asset's four-year estimated service life.

†Amount necessary to reduce book value to residual value.

4. Units of production (using machine hours):

Year	Machine Hours	×	Depreciation Rate per Hour	=	Depreciation Expense	Book Value End of Year
2018	6,000		\$4*		\$ 24,000	\$106,000
2019	8,000		4		32,000	74,000
2020	5,000		4		20,000	54,000
2021	7,000				24,000†	30,000
Total					<u>\$100,000</u>	

* $(\$130,000 - 30,000)/25,000 \text{ hours} = \4 per hour .

†Amount necessary to reduce book value to residual value.

Dispositions

After using property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets, companies will sell or retire those assets. When selling property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets for monetary consideration (cash or a receivable), the seller recognizes a **gain** or **loss** for the difference between the consideration received and the book value of the asset sold.

A gain or loss is recognized for the difference between the consideration received and the asset's book value.

Consideration received	\$xxx
Less: Book value of asset sold	(xxx)
Gain/loss on sale of asset	<u>\$xxx</u>

We'll demonstrate this calculation next in Illustration 11-3F by modifying our earlier example of Hogan Manufacturing Company in Illustration 11-3A. In Illustration 11-3F, Hogan sells a machine before the end of its service life and receives more cash than the asset's book value (cost minus accumulated depreciation) at the time of the sale. This causes a gain to be recognized. We then modify the example to show that when the amount of cash received is less than the asset's book value, a loss is recognized.

Illustration 11-3F

Sale of Property, Plant, and Equipment

On January 1, 2018, Hogan Manufacturing Company purchased a machine for \$250,000. The company expects the service life of the machine to be five years. The estimated residual value is \$40,000. Hogan uses the straight-line depreciation method.

Suppose Hogan decides not to hold the machine for the expected five years but instead sells it on December 31, 2020 (three years later), for \$140,000. We first need to update depreciation to the date of sale. Since depreciation for 2018 and 2019 has already been recorded in those years, we need to update depreciation only for the current year, 2020.

The entry to update depreciation for 2020:

Depreciation expense	42,000*	
Accumulated depreciation		42,000

*\$42,000 = (\$250,000 - \$40,000) ÷ 5 years. See also Illustration 11-3A.

The balance of accumulated depreciation equals depreciation that has already been recorded in 2018 and 2019 (\$42,000 + \$42,000) plus the depreciation recorded above in 2020 (\$42,000).

Accumulated Depreciation		
	42,000	2018
	42,000	2019
	42,000	2020
	126,000	

We can now calculate the gain or loss on the sale as the difference between consideration received and the asset's book value. In this example, the amount of cash received is greater than the asset's book value, so a gain is recognized.

Consideration received	\$140,000
Less: Book value of asset sold	(124,000)*
Gain on sale of machine	<u>\$ 16,000</u>

*Book value = Cost (\$250,000) - Accumulated Depreciation (**\$126,000**)

Finally, the sale of the equipment requires (1) the cash received to be recorded, (2) the machine's account balance as well as its accumulated depreciation balance to be removed from the books, and (3) the gain or loss recognized.

The entry to record the sale on December 31, 2020, for \$140,000:

Cash	140,000	
Accumulated depreciation (account balance)	126,000	
Machine (account balance)		250,000
Gain on sale of machine (difference)		16,000

The balances of the machine account and the accumulated depreciation account will be \$0 after this entry. The gain on the sale normally is reported in the income statement as a separate component of operating expenses.

Now, assume that Hogan sold the machine on December 31, 2020, for only \$110,000. This amount is less than book value by **\$14,000** and a loss on the sale would be recorded.

Consideration received	\$ 110,000
Less: Book value of asset sold	(124,000)
Loss on sale of machine	<u>\$ (14,000)</u>

The entry to record the sale on December 31, 2020, for \$110,000

Cash.....	110,000	
Accumulated depreciation (account balance)	126,000	
Loss on sale of machine (difference).....	14,000	
Machine (account balance).....		250,000

Notice that the amounts of the machine and accumulated depreciation removed from the books upon sale of the asset do not depend on whether a gain or loss is recorded; the asset's book value is written off completely. It's the amount of cash received relative to the asset's book value that determines the amount of the gain or loss.

Decision Makers' Perspective—Understanding gains and losses

It's tempting to think of a "gain" and "loss" on the sale of a depreciable asset as "good" and "bad" news. For example, we commonly use the term "gain" in everyday language to mean we sold something for more than we bought it. Gain could also be misinterpreted to mean the asset was sold for more than its fair value (we got a "good deal"). However, neither of these represents the meaning of a gain on the sale of assets. Refer back to our example in Illustration 11–3F. The sale of the machine resulted in a gain, but the machine was sold for *less than* its original cost, and there is no indication that Hogan sold the machine for more than its fair value.

A gain on the sale of a depreciable asset simply means the asset was sold for more than its book value. In other words, the asset being received and recorded (such as cash) is greater than the recorded book value of the asset being sold and written off. The net increase in the book value of total assets is an accounting gain (not an economic gain).

The same is true for losses. A loss signifies that the cash received is less than the book value of the asset being sold; there is a net decrease in the book value of total assets. ●

ASSETS HELD FOR SALE. Sometimes management plans to sell property, plant, and equipment or an intangible asset but that sale hasn't yet happened. In this case, the asset is classified as "held for sale" in the period in which all of the following criteria are met:⁶

1. Management commits to a plan to sell the asset.
2. The asset is available for immediate sale in its present condition.
3. An active plan to locate a buyer and sell the asset has been initiated.
4. The completed sale of the asset is probable and typically expected to occur within one year.
5. The asset is being offered for sale at a reasonable price relative to its current fair value.
6. Management's actions indicate the plan is unlikely to change significantly or be withdrawn.

An asset that is classified as held for sale is no longer depreciated or amortized. *An asset classified as held for sale is reported at the lower of its current book value or its fair value less any cost to sell.* If the fair value less cost to sell is below book value, we recognize a loss in the current period. If financial statements are again prepared prior to the sale, we reassess the asset's fair value less selling costs. If a further decline has occurred, we recognize another loss. If the fair value less selling costs has increased since the previous measurement, we recognize a gain, but limited to the cumulative amount of any previous losses.

Property, plant, and equipment or an intangible asset to be disposed of by sale is classified as held for sale and measured at the lower of the asset's book value or the asset's fair value less cost to sell.

⁶FASB ASC 360–10–45–9: Property, Plant, and Equipment—Overall—Other Presentation Matters—Impairment or Disposal of Long-Lived Assets.

RETIREMENTS. Sometimes instead of selling a used asset, a company will retire (or abandon) the asset. Retirements are treated similarly to selling for monetary consideration. At the time of retirement, the asset account and the corresponding accumulated depreciation account are removed from the books and a loss equal to the remaining book value of the asset is recorded because there will be no monetary consideration received. When there is a formal plan to retire an asset but before the actual retirement, there may be some revision in depreciation due a change in the estimated service life or residual value.

Group and Composite Depreciation Methods

Group and composite depreciation methods aggregate assets to reduce the recordkeeping costs of determining periodic depreciation.

As you might imagine, depreciation records could become quite cumbersome and costly if a company has hundreds, or maybe thousands, of depreciable assets. However, the burden can be lessened if the company uses the group or composite method to depreciate assets collectively rather than individually. The two methods are the same except for the way the collection of assets is aggregated for depreciation. The **group depreciation method** defines the collection as depreciable assets that share similar service lives and other attributes. For example, group depreciation could be used for fleets of vehicles or collections of machinery. The **composite depreciation method** is used when assets are physically dissimilar but are aggregated anyway to gain the convenience of a collective depreciation calculation. For instance, composite depreciation can be used for all of the depreciable assets in one manufacturing plant, even though individual assets in the composite may have widely diverse service lives.

Both approaches are similar in that they involve applying a single straight-line rate based on the average service lives of the assets in the group or composite.⁷ The process is demonstrated using Illustration 11–7.

Illustration 11–7 Group Depreciation

The Express Delivery Company began operations in 2018. It will depreciate its fleet of delivery vehicles using the group method. The cost of vehicles purchased early in 2018, along with residual values, estimated lives, and straight-line depreciation per year by type of vehicle, are as follows:

Asset	Cost	Residual Value	Depreciable Base	Estimated Life (years)	Depreciation per Year (straight line)
Vans	\$150,000	\$30,000	\$120,000	6	\$ 20,000
Trucks	120,000	16,000	104,000	5	20,800
Wagons	60,000	12,000	48,000	4	12,000
Totals	<u>\$330,000</u>	<u>\$58,000</u>	<u>\$272,000</u>		<u>\$52,800</u>

The *group depreciation* rate is determined by dividing the depreciation per year by the total cost. The group's *average service life* is calculated by dividing the depreciable base by the depreciation per year:

$$\text{Group depreciation rate} = \frac{\$52,800}{\$330,000} = 16\%$$

$$\text{Average service life} = \frac{\$272,000}{\$52,800} = 5.15 \text{ years (rounded)}$$

The depreciation rate is applied to the total cost of the group or composite for the period.

If there are no changes in the assets contained in the group, depreciation of **\$52,800** per year ($\$330,000 \times 16\%$) will be recorded for 5.15 years. This means the depreciation in the sixth year will be \$7,920 (0.15 of a full year's depreciation = $15\% \times \$52,800$), which depreciates the cost of the group down to its estimated residual value. In other words, the group will be depreciated over the average service life of the assets in the group.

⁷A declining balance method could also be used with either the group or composite method by applying a multiple (e.g., 200%) to the straight-line group or composite rate.

In practice, there very likely will be changes in the assets constituting the group as new assets are added and others are retired or sold. Additions are recorded by increasing the group asset account for the cost of the addition. Depreciation is determined by multiplying the group rate by the total cost of assets in the group for that period. Once the group or composite rate and the average service life are determined, they normally are continued despite the addition and disposition of individual assets. This implicitly assumes that the service lives of new assets approximate those of individual assets they replace.

Because depreciation records are not kept on an individual asset basis, dispositions are recorded under the assumption that the book value of the disposed item exactly equals any proceeds received and no gain or loss is recorded. For example, if a delivery truck in the above illustration that cost \$15,000 is sold for \$3,000 in the year 2021, the following journal entry is recorded:

Cash	3,000	
Accumulated depreciation (difference)	12,000	
Vehicles		15,000

No gain or loss is recorded when a group or composite asset is retired or sold.

Any actual gain or loss is included in the accumulated depreciation account. This practice generally will not distort income as the unrecorded gains tend to offset unrecorded losses.

The group and composite methods simplify the recordkeeping of depreciable assets. This simplification justifies any immaterial errors in income determination. Illustration 11–8 shows a disclosure note accompanying recent financial statements of the **El Paso Natural Gas Company (EPNG)** describing the use of the group depreciation method for its property that is regulated by federal statutes.

**Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (in part)
Property, Plant, and Equipment (in part)**

We use the group method to depreciate property, plant, and equipment. Under this method, assets with similar lives and characteristics are grouped and depreciated as one asset. We apply the depreciation rate approved in our rate settlements to the total cost of the group until its net book value equals its salvage value. The majority of our property, plant, and equipment are on our El Paso Natural Gas Company (EPNG) system, which has depreciation rates ranging from one percent to 50 percent.

When we retire property, plant, and equipment, we charge accumulated depreciation and amortization for the original cost of the assets in addition to the cost to remove, sell, or dispose of the assets, less their salvage value. We do not recognize a gain or loss unless we sell an entire operating unit.

Illustration 11–8

Disclosure of Depreciation Method—El Paso Natural Gas Company

Real World Financials

Additional group-based depreciation methods, the retirement and replacement methods, are discussed in Appendix 11B.

International Financial Reporting Standards

Valuation of Property, Plant, and Equipment. As we've discussed, under U.S. GAAP a company reports property, plant, and equipment (PP&E) in the balance sheet at cost less accumulated depreciation (book value). *IAS No. 16* allows a company to report property, plant, and equipment at that amount or, alternatively, at its fair value (revaluation).⁸ If a company chooses revaluation, all assets within a class of PP&E must be revalued on a regular basis. U.S. GAAP prohibits revaluation.

(continued)



● LO11–10

⁸"Property, Plant and Equipment," *International Accounting Standard No. 16* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

(concluded)

If the revaluation option is chosen, the way the company reports the difference between fair value and book value depends on which amount is higher:

- If fair value is higher than book value, the difference is reported as *other comprehensive income (OCI)* which then accumulates in a “revaluation surplus” (sometimes called revaluation reserve) account in equity.
- If book value is higher than fair value, the difference is reported as an *expense in the income statement*. An exception is when a revaluation surplus account relating to the same asset has a balance from a previous *increase* in fair value, that balance is eliminated before debiting revaluation expense.

Consider the following illustration:

Candless Corporation prepares its financial statements according to IFRS. At the beginning of its 2018 fiscal year, the company purchased equipment for \$100,000. The equipment is expected to have a five-year useful life with no residual value, so depreciation for 2018 is \$20,000. At the end of the year, Candless chooses to revalue the equipment as permitted by IAS No. 16. Assuming that the fair value of the equipment at year-end is \$84,000, Candless records depreciation and the revaluation using the following journal entries:

(a) Depreciation expense (\$100,000 ÷ 5 years).....	20,000	
Accumulated depreciation.....		20,000

After this entry, the book value of the equipment is \$80,000; the fair value is \$84,000. We use the ratio of the two amounts to adjust both the equipment and the accumulated depreciation accounts (and thus the book value) to fair value (\$ in thousands):

December 31, 2018	Before Revaluation				After Revaluation			
Equipment	\$100	×	$\frac{84}{80}$	=				\$105
Accumulated depreciation	20	×	$\frac{84}{80}$	=				21
Book value	\$ 80	×	$\frac{84}{80}$	=				\$ 84

The entries to revalue the equipment and the accumulated depreciation accounts (and thus the book value) are:

(b) Equipment (\$105,000 – 100,000).....	5,000	
Accumulated depreciation (\$21,000 – 20,000).....		1,000
Revaluation surplus—OCI (\$84,000 – 80,000).....		4,000

The new basis for the equipment is its fair value of \$84,000 (\$105,000 – 21,000), and the following years’ depreciation is based on that amount. Thus, 2019 depreciation would be \$84,000 divided by the four remaining years, or \$21,000:⁹

(a) Depreciation expense (\$84,000 ÷ 4 years).....	21,000	
Accumulated depreciation.....		21,000

After this entry, the accumulated depreciation is \$42,000 and the book value of the equipment is \$63,000. Let’s say the fair value now is \$57,000. We use the ratio of the two amounts (fair value of \$57,000 divided by book value of \$63,000) to adjust both the equipment and the accumulated depreciation accounts (and thus the book value) to fair value (\$ in thousands):

December 31, 2019	Before Revaluation				After Revaluation			
Equipment	\$105	×	$\frac{57}{63}$	=				\$95
Accumulated depreciation	42	×	$\frac{57}{63}$	=				38
Book value	\$ 63	×	$\frac{57}{63}$	=				\$57

(continued)

To record the revaluation of equipment to its fair value.

⁹IAS No. 16 allows companies to choose between the method illustrated here and an alternative. The second method eliminates the entire accumulated depreciation account and adjusts the asset account (equipment in this illustration) to fair value. Using either method the revaluation surplus (or expense) would be the same.

(concluded)

The entries to revalue the equipment and the accumulated depreciation accounts (and thus the book value) are:

(b) Revaluation surplus—OCI (\$57,000 – 63,000 = \$6,000; limit:		
\$4,000 balance)	4,000	
Revaluation expense (to balance)	2,000	
Accumulated depreciation (\$38,000 – 42,000)	4,000	
Equipment (\$95,000 – 105,000)		10,000

A decrease in fair value, as occurred in 2019, is expensed unless it reverses a revaluation surplus account relating to the same asset, as in this illustration. So, of the \$6,000 decrease in value (\$63,000 book value less \$57,000 fair value), \$4,000 is debited to the previously created revaluation surplus and the remaining \$2,000 is recorded as revaluation expense in the income statement.

Investcorp, a provider and manager of alternative investment products headquartered in London, prepares its financial statements according to IFRS. The following disclosure note included in a recent annual report discusses the company's method of valuing its building and certain operating assets.

Premises and Equipment (in part)

The Bank carries its building on freehold land and certain operating assets at revalued amounts, being the fair value of the assets at the date of revaluation less any subsequent accumulated depreciation and subsequent accumulated impairment losses. Any revaluation surplus is credited to the asset revaluation reserve included in equity, except to the extent that it reverses a revaluation decrease of the same asset previously recognized in profit and loss, in which case the increase is recognized in profit or loss. A revaluation deficit is recognized directly in profit or loss, except that a deficit directly offsetting a previous surplus on the same asset is directly offset against the surplus in the asset revaluation reserve.

The revaluation alternative is used infrequently. A recent survey of large companies that prepare their financial statements according to IFRS reports that only 10 of the 160 surveyed companies used the revaluation alternative for at least one asset class.¹⁰

Depletion of Natural Resources

Allocation of the cost of natural resources is called **depletion**. Because the usefulness of natural resources generally is directly related to the amount of the resources extracted, the activity-based units-of-production method is widely used to calculate periodic depletion. Service life is therefore the estimated amount of natural resource to be extracted (for example, tons of mineral or barrels of oil).

The depletion base is cost less any anticipated residual value. Residual value could be significant if cost includes land that has a value after the natural resource has been extracted.

The example in Illustration 11–9 was first introduced in Chapter 10 in Illustration 10–6.

Depletion of the cost of natural resources usually is determined using the units-of-production method.

• LO11–3

In 2018, Jackson Mining Company has the following costs related to 500 acres of land in Pennsylvania.

1. Payment for the right to explore for a coal deposit	\$1,000,000
2. Actual exploration costs for a coal deposit	800,000
3. Intangible development costs in digging and constructing the mine shaft.	500,000
4. Purchase of excavation equipment for the project	600,000
5. Restoration of the land for recreational use after extraction is completed, as required by contract (determined using the expected cash flow approach)	468,360

The company's geologist estimates that 1,000,000 tons of coal will be extracted over a three-year period. After the coal is removed from the site, the excavation equipment will be sold for an anticipated residual value of \$60,000. During 2018, 300,000 tons were extracted.

Illustration 11–9

Depletion of Natural Resources

¹⁰“IFRS Accounting Trends and Techniques” (New York, AICPA, 2011), p. 171.

In Illustration 10–6 we determined that the capitalized cost of the coal mine (natural resource), including the expected restoration costs, is **\$2,768,360**. Since there is no residual value to the land, the depletion base equals cost and the depletion rate per ton is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Depletion per ton} &= \frac{\text{Depletion base}}{\text{Estimated extractable tons}} \\ \text{Depletion per ton} &= \frac{\$2,768,360}{1,000,000 \text{ tons}} = \$2.76836 \text{ per ton}\end{aligned}$$

For each ton of coal extracted, \$2.76836 in depletion is recorded. In 2018, the following journal entry records depletion for the 300,000 tons of coal actually extracted.

Depletion (\$2.76836 × 300,000 tons)	830,508	
Coal mine		830,508

Notice that the credit is to the asset, coal mine, rather than to a contra account, accumulated depletion. Although this approach is traditional, the use of a contra account is acceptable.

Depletion is a product cost and is included in the cost of the inventory of coal, just as the depreciation on manufacturing equipment is included in inventory cost. The depletion is then included in cost of goods sold in the income statement when the coal is sold.

What about depreciation on the \$600,000 cost of excavation equipment? If the equipment can be moved from the site and used on future projects, the equipment's depreciable base should be allocated over its useful life. If the asset is not movable, as in our illustration, then it should be depreciated over its useful life or the life of the natural resource, whichever is shorter.

Quite often, companies use the units-of-production method to calculate depreciation and amortization on assets used in the extraction of natural resources. The activity base used is the same as that used to calculate depletion, the estimated recoverable natural resource. In our illustration, the depreciation rate would be \$0.54 per ton, calculated as follows.

$$\text{Depreciation per ton} = \frac{\$600,000 - 60,000}{1,000,000 \text{ tons}} = \$0.54 \text{ per ton}$$

In 2018, depreciation of \$162,000 (\$0.54 × 300,000 tons) is recorded and also included as part of the cost of the coal inventory.

The summary of significant accounting policies disclosure accompanying recent financial statements of **ConocoPhillips** shown in Illustration 11–10 provides a good summary of depletion, amortization, and depreciation for natural resource properties.

The units-of-production method often is used to determine depreciation and amortization on assets used in the extraction of natural resources.

Illustration 11–10

Depletion Method
Disclosure—ConocoPhillips

Real World Financials

Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (in part)

Depletion and Amortization—Leasehold costs of producing properties are depleted using the units-of-production method based on estimated proved oil and gas reserves. Amortization of intangible development costs is based on the units-of-production method using estimated proved developed oil and gas reserves.

Depreciation and Amortization—Depreciation and amortization of PP&E on producing hydrocarbon properties and certain pipeline assets (those which are expected to have a declining utilization pattern), are determined by the units-of-production method. Depreciation and amortization of all other PP&E are determined by either the individual-unit-straight-line method or the group-straight-line method (for those individual units that are highly integrated with other units).

Additional Consideration

Percentage Depletion

Depletion of cost less residual value required by GAAP should not be confused with percentage depletion (also called *statutory depletion*) allowable for income tax purposes for oil, gas, and most mineral natural resources. Under these tax provisions, a producer is allowed to deduct the greater of cost-based depletion or a fixed percentage of gross income as depletion expense. Over the life of the asset, depletion could exceed the asset's cost. The percentage allowed for percentage-based depletion varies according to the type of natural resource.

Because percentage depletion usually differs from cost depletion, a difference between taxable income and financial reporting income before tax results. Differences between taxable income and financial reporting income are discussed in Chapter 16.

International Financial Reporting Standards



Biological Assets. Living animals and plants, including the trees in a timber tract or in a fruit orchard, are referred to as *biological assets*. Under U.S. GAAP, a timber tract is valued at cost less accumulated depletion and a fruit orchard at cost less accumulated depreciation. Under IFRS, biological assets are valued at their fair value less estimated costs to sell, with changes in fair value included in the calculation of net income.¹¹

Mondi Limited, an international paper and packing group headquartered in Johannesburg, South Africa, prepares its financial statements according to IFRS. The following disclosure note included in a recent annual report discusses the company's policy for valuing its forestry assets.

Owned Forestry Assets (in part)

Owned forestry assets are measured at fair value, calculated by applying the expected selling price, less costs to harvest and deliver, to the estimated volume of timber on hand at each reporting date.

Changes in fair value are recognized in the combined and consolidated income statement within other net operating expenses.

● LO11-10

Amortization of Intangible Assets

Let's turn now to a third type of long-lived asset—intangible assets. As with other assets we have discussed, we allocate the cost of an intangible asset over its service or useful life. The allocation of intangible asset cost is called **amortization**. Below we distinguish those intangible assets with *finite versus indefinite* useful lives. For the few intangible assets with *indefinite* useful lives, amortization is inappropriate.

● LO11-4

Intangible Assets Subject to Amortization

Most intangible assets have a finite useful life. This means their estimated useful life is limited in nature. We allocate the capitalized cost less any estimated residual value of an intangible asset to the periods in which the asset is expected to contribute to the company's revenue-generating activities. This requires that we determine the asset's useful life, its amortization base (cost less estimated residual value), and the appropriate allocation method, similar to our depreciating tangible assets.

The cost of an intangible asset with a *finite* useful life is *amortized*.

USEFUL LIFE. Legal, regulatory, or contractual provisions often limit the useful life of an intangible asset. On the other hand, useful life might sometimes be less than the asset's legal

¹¹"Agriculture," *International Accounting Standard No. 41* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

or contractual life. For example, the useful life of a patent would be considerably less than its legal life of 20 years if obsolescence were expected to limit the longevity of a protected product.

RESIDUAL VALUE. We discussed the cost of intangible assets in Chapter 10. The expected residual value of an intangible asset usually is zero. This might not be the case, though, if at the end of its useful life to the reporting entity the asset will benefit another entity. For example, if Quadra Corp. has a commitment from another company to purchase one of Quadra's patents at the end of its useful life at a determinable price, we use that price as the patent's residual value.

ALLOCATION METHOD. The method of amortization should reflect the pattern of use of the asset in generating benefits. Most companies use the straight-line method. We discussed and illustrated a unique approach to determining the periodic amortization of software development costs in Chapter 10. Recall that the periodic amortization percentage for software development costs is the *greater* of (1) the ratio of current revenues to current and anticipated revenues (percentage of revenue method), or (2) the straight-line percentage over the useful life of the asset.

Intel Corporation reported several intangible assets in a recent balance sheet. A note, shown in Illustration 11–11, disclosed the range of estimated useful lives.

Illustration 11–11

Intangible Asset Useful
Life Disclosure—Intel
Corporation

Real World Financials

Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (in part) Identified Intangible Assets (in part)

The estimated useful life ranges for identified intangible assets that are subject to amortization are as follows:

(in years)	Estimated Useful Life
Acquisition-related developed technology	3–9
Acquisition-related customer relationships	5–11
Acquisition-related brands	5–8
Licensed technology and patents	2–17

Like depletion, amortization expense traditionally is credited to the asset account itself rather than to accumulated amortization. However, the use of a contra account is acceptable. Let's look at an example in Illustration 11–12.

Illustration 11–12

Amortization of Intangibles

Hollins Corporation began operations in 2018. Early in January, the company purchased a franchise from Ajax Industries for \$200,000. The franchise agreement is for a period of 10 years. In addition, Hollins purchased a patent for \$50,000. The remaining legal life of the patent is 13 years. However, due to expected technological obsolescence, the company estimates that the useful life of the patent is only 8 years. Hollins uses the straight-line amortization method for all intangible assets. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31.

The journal entries to record a full year of amortization for these intangibles are as follows:

Amortization expense (\$200,000 ÷ 10 years).....	20,000	
Franchise.....		20,000
<i>To record amortization of franchise</i>		
Amortization expense (\$50,000 ÷ 8 years).....	6,250	
Patent.....		6,250
<i>To record amortization of patent</i>		

(continued)

(concluded)

Assume that Hollins decided to sell the patent on December 31, 2022 (five years after acquisition), for \$21,000.

The journal entries to update amortization of the patent in 2022, and to sell the patent are as follows:

Amortization expense (\$50,000 ÷ 8 years).....	6,250	
Patent.....		6,250
<i>To record amortization of patent in 2022</i>		
Cash.....	21,000	
Patent (account balance)*		18,750
Gain on sale of patent (difference)		2,250
<i>To record sale of patent</i>		

*\$50,000 – (\$6,250 × 5 years)

Similar to depreciation, amortization is either a product cost or a period cost depending on the use of the asset. For intangibles used in the manufacture of a product, amortization is a product cost and is included in the cost of inventory (and doesn't become an expense until the inventory is sold). For intangible assets not used in production, such as the franchise cost in our illustration, periodic amortization is expensed in the period incurred.

Intangible Assets Not Subject to Amortization

Intangible assets with an indefinite useful life are those with no foreseeable limit on the period of time over which the asset is expected to contribute to the cash flows of the entity.¹² In other words, there are no legal, contractual, or economic factors that are expected to limit their useful life to a company. Because of their indefinite lives, these intangible assets are not subject to periodic amortization.

For example, suppose Collins Corporation acquired a trademark in conjunction with the acquisition of a tire company. Collins plans to continue to produce the line of tires marketed under the acquired company's trademark. Recall from our discussion in Chapter 10 that trademarks have a legal life of 10 years, but the registration can be renewed for an indefinite number of 10-year periods. Therefore, the life of the purchased trademark is initially considered to be indefinite and the cost of the trademark is not amortized. However, if after several years management decides to phase out production of the tire line over the next three years, Collins would amortize the remaining book value over a three-year period.

In 2015, **Boeing Company** reported indefinite-lived intangible assets (other than goodwill) of \$490 million. The company states that, "Indefinite-lived intangibles consist of brand and trade names acquired in business combinations." Illustration 11-13 provides another example in a disclosure made by **The Estee Lauder Companies Inc.**, in a recent annual report.

The cost of an intangible asset with an *indefinite* useful life is *not* amortized

Trademarks or tradenames often are considered to have indefinite useful lives.

Other Intangible Assets

Indefinite-lived intangible assets (e.g., trademarks) are not subject to amortization and are assessed at least annually for impairment during the fiscal fourth quarter, or more frequently if certain events or circumstances warrant.

Illustration 11-13

Indefinite-Life Intangibles Disclosure—The Estee Lauder Companies Inc.

Real World Financials

Goodwill is the most common intangible asset with an indefinite useful life. Recall that goodwill is measured as the difference between the purchase price of a company and the fair value of all of the identifiable net assets acquired (tangible and intangible assets minus the fair value of liabilities assumed). Does this mean that goodwill and other intangible assets with indefinite useful lives will remain in a company's balance sheet at their original capitalized values indefinitely? Not necessarily. Like other assets, intangibles are subject to the impairment rules we discuss in a subsequent section of this chapter.

Goodwill is an intangible asset whose cost is *not* expensed through periodic amortization.

¹²FASB ASC 350-30-35-4: Intangibles—Goodwill and Other—General Intangibles Other than Goodwill—Subsequent Measurement (previously "Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 142* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2001), par. B45).



International Financial Reporting Standards

LO11-10

Valuation of Intangible Assets. *IAS No. 38* allows a company to value an intangible asset subsequent to initial valuation at (1) cost less accumulated amortization or (2) fair value, if fair value can be determined by reference to an active market.¹³ If revaluation is chosen, all assets within that class of intangibles must be revalued on a regular basis. Goodwill, however, cannot be revalued. U.S. GAAP prohibits revaluation of any intangible asset.

Notice that the revaluation option is possible only if fair value can be determined by reference to an active market, making the option relatively uncommon. However, the option possibly could be used for intangibles such as franchises and certain license agreements.

If the revaluation option is chosen, the accounting treatment is similar to the way we applied the revaluation option for property, plant, and equipment earlier in this chapter. Recall that the way the company reports the difference between fair value and book value depends on which amount is higher. If fair value is higher than book value, the difference is reported as other comprehensive income (OCI) and then accumulates in a revaluation surplus account in equity. On the other hand, if book value is higher than fair value, the difference is expensed after reducing any existing revaluation surplus for that asset.

Consider the following illustration:

Amershan LTD. prepares its financial statements according to IFRS. At the beginning of its 2018 fiscal year, the company purchased a franchise for \$500,000. The franchise has a 10-year contractual life and no residual value, so amortization in 2018 is \$50,000. The company does not use an accumulated amortization account and credits the franchise account directly when amortization is recorded. At the end of the year, Amershan chooses to revalue the franchise as permitted by *IAS No. 38*. Assuming that the fair value of the franchise at year-end, determined by reference to an active market, is \$600,000, Amershan records amortization and the revaluation using the following journal entries:

Amortization expense (\$500,000 ÷ 10 years)	50,000	
Franchise		50,000
Franchise (\$600,000 – 450,000)	150,000	
Revaluation surplus—OCI		150,000

With the second entry Amershan increases the book value of the franchise from \$450,000 (\$500,000 – 50,000) to its fair value of \$600,000 and records a revaluation surplus for the difference. The new basis for the franchise is its fair value of \$600,000, and the following years' amortization is based on that amount. Thus, 2019 amortization would be \$600,000 divided by the nine remaining years, or \$66,667.

To record the revaluation of franchise to its fair value.

Partial Periods

Only in textbooks are property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets purchased and disposed of at the very beginning or very end of a company's fiscal year. When acquisition and disposal occur at other times, a company theoretically must determine how much depreciation, depletion, and amortization to record for the part of the year that each asset actually is used.

Let's repeat the Hogan Manufacturing Company illustration used earlier in Illustration 11-3 but modify it in Illustration 11-14 to assume that the asset was acquired *during* the company's fiscal year.

Illustration 11-14

Depreciation Methods—
Partial Year

On April 1, 2018, the Hogan Manufacturing Company purchased a machine for \$250,000. The company expects the service life of the machine to be five years and the anticipated residual value is \$40,000. The machine was disposed of after five years of use. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31. Partial-year depreciation is recorded based on the number of months the asset is in service.

¹³"Intangible Assets," *International Accounting Standard No. 38* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

Notice that no information is provided on the estimated output of the machine. Partial-year depreciation presents a problem only when time-based depreciation methods are used. In an activity-based method, the rate per unit of output simply is multiplied by the actual output for the period, regardless of the length of that period.

Depreciation per year of the asset's life calculated earlier in Illustration 11-3A, Illustration 11-3B, and Illustration 11-3C for the various time-based depreciation methods is summarized in Illustration 11-14A.

Illustration 11-14A

Yearly Depreciation

Year	Straight Line	Sum-of-the-Years'-Digits	Double-Declining Balance
1	\$ 42,000	\$ 70,000	\$100,000
2	42,000	56,000	60,000
3	42,000	42,000	36,000
4	42,000	28,000	14,000
5	42,000	14,000	0
Total	<u>\$210,000</u>	<u>\$210,000</u>	<u>\$210,000</u>

Illustration 11-14B shows how Hogan would depreciate the machinery by these three methods assuming an April 1 acquisition date.

Illustration 11-14B

Partial-Year Depreciation

Year	Straight Line	Sum-of-the-Years'-Digits	Double-Declining Balance
2018	$\$42,000 \times \frac{3}{4} = \$ 31,500$	$\$70,000 \times \frac{3}{4} = \$ 52,500$	$\$100,000 \times \frac{3}{4} = \$ 75,000$
2019	\$ 42,000	$\$70,000 \times \frac{1}{4} = \$ 17,500$ $+ \$56,000 \times \frac{3}{4} = 42,000$ \$ 59,500	$\$100,000 \times \frac{1}{4} = \$ 25,000$ $+ \$60,000 \times \frac{3}{4} = 45,000$ \$ 70,000*
2020	\$ 42,000	$\$56,000 \times \frac{1}{4} = \$ 14,000$ $+ \$42,000 \times \frac{3}{4} = 31,500$ \$ 45,500	$\$60,000 \times \frac{1}{4} = \$ 15,000$ $+ \$36,000 \times \frac{3}{4} = 27,000$ \$ 42,000
2021	\$ 42,000	$\$42,000 \times \frac{1}{4} = \$ 10,500$ $+ \$28,000 \times \frac{3}{4} = 21,000$ \$ 31,500	$\$36,000 \times \frac{1}{4} = \$ 9,000$ $+ \$14,000 \times \frac{3}{4} = 10,500$ \$ 19,500
2022	\$ 42,000	$\$28,000 \times \frac{1}{4} = \$ 7,000$ $+ \$14,000 \times \frac{3}{4} = 10,500$ \$ 17,500	$\$14,000 \times \frac{1}{4} = \$ 3,500$
2023	$\$42,000 \times \frac{1}{4} = \$ 10,500$	$\$14,000 \times \frac{1}{4} = \$ 3,500$	
Totals	<u>\$210,000</u>	<u>\$210,000</u>	<u>\$210,000</u>

*Could also be determined by multiplying the book value at the beginning of the year by twice the straight-line rate: $(\$250,000 - 75,000) \times 40\% = \$70,000$.

Notice that 2018 depreciation is three-fourths of the full year's depreciation for the first year of the asset's life, because the asset was used nine months, or $\frac{3}{4}$ of the year. The remaining one-fourth of the first year's depreciation is included in 2019's depreciation along with three-fourths of the depreciation for the second year of the asset's life. This calculation is not necessary for the straight-line method because a full year's depreciation is the same for each year of the asset's life.

Usually, the above procedure is impractical or at least cumbersome. As a result, most companies adopt a simplifying assumption, or convention, for computing partial year's depreciation and use it consistently. A common convention is to record one-half of a full

year's depreciation in the year of acquisition and another half year in the year of disposal. This is known as the **half-year convention**.¹⁴

Concept Review Exercise

DEPLETION AND AMORTIZATION

Part A:

On March 29, 2018, the Horizon Energy Corporation purchased the mineral rights to a coal deposit in New Mexico for \$2 million. Development costs and the present value of estimated land restoration costs totaled an additional \$3.4 million. The company removed 200,000 tons of coal during 2018 and estimated that an additional 1,600,000 tons would be removed over the next 15 months.

Required:

Compute depletion on the mine for 2018.

Solution:

Cost of Coal Mine:	(\$ in millions)
Purchase price of mineral rights	\$2.0
Development and restoration costs	3.4
	<u>\$5.4</u>

Depletion:

$$\text{Depletion per ton} = \frac{\$5.4 \text{ million}}{1.8 \text{ million tons}^*} = \$3 \text{ per ton}$$

$$^*200,000 + 1,600,000$$

$$2018 \text{ depletion} = \$3 \times 200,000 \text{ tons} = \$600,000$$

Part B:

On October 1, 2018, Advanced Micro Circuits, Inc., completed the purchase of Zotec Corporation for \$200 million. Included in the allocation of the purchase price were the following identifiable intangible assets (\$ in millions), along with the fair values and estimated useful lives:

Intangible Asset	Fair value	Useful Life (in years)
Patent	\$10	5
Developed technology	50	4
Customer list	10	2

In addition, the fair value of acquired tangible assets was \$100 million. Goodwill was valued at \$30 million. Straight-line amortization is used for all purchased intangibles.

During 2018, Advanced finished work on a software development project. Development costs incurred after technological feasibility was achieved and before the product release date totaled \$2 million. The software was available for release to the general public on September 29, 2018. During the last three months of the year, revenue from the sale of the software was \$4 million. The company estimates that the software will generate an additional \$36 million in revenue over the next 45 months.

Required:

Compute amortization for purchased intangibles and software development costs for 2018.

Solution:

Amortization of Purchased Intangibles:

Patent	\$10 million / 5 = \$2 million × ¾ year = \$0.5 million
Developed technology	\$50 million / 4 = \$12.5 million × ¾ year = \$3.125 million
Customer list	\$10 million / 2 = \$5 million × ¾ year = \$1.25 million
Goodwill	The cost of goodwill is not amortized.

¹⁴Another common method is the modified half-year convention. This method records a full year's depreciation when the asset is acquired in the first half of the year or sold in the second half. No depreciation is recorded if the asset is acquired in the second half of the year or sold in the first half. These half-year conventions are simple and, in most cases, will not result in material differences from a more precise calculation.

Amortization of Software Development Costs:

(1) Percentage-of-revenue method:

$$\frac{\$4 \text{ million}}{(\$4 \text{ million} + 36 \text{ million})} = 10\% \times \$2 \text{ million} = \$200,000$$

(2) Straight-line:

$$\frac{3 \text{ months}}{48 \text{ months}} \text{ or } 6.25\% \times \$2 \text{ million} = \$125,000$$

Advanced will use the percentage-of-revenue method since it produces the greater amortization, \$200,000.

Additional Issues

In this part of the chapter, we discuss the following issues related to cost allocation:

1. Change in estimates
2. Change in method
3. Error correction
4. Impairment of value

Change in Estimates

The calculation of depreciation, depletion, or amortization requires estimates of both service life and residual value. It's inevitable that at least some estimates will prove incorrect. Chapter 4 briefly introduced the topic of changes in estimates along with coverage of changes in accounting principles and the correction of errors. Here and in subsequent sections of this chapter, we provide overviews of the accounting treatment and disclosures required for these changes and errors when they involve property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets.

Changes in estimates are accounted for prospectively. When a company revises a previous estimate based on new information, prior financial statements are not restated. Instead, the company merely incorporates the new estimate in any related accounting determinations from then on. So, it usually will affect some aspects of both the balance sheet and the income statement in the current and future periods. Companies typically make these changes at the beginning of the year of the change, but they could be made at other times. A disclosure note should describe the effect of a change in estimate on net income and per share amounts for the current period.

Consider the example in Illustration 11–15.

• LO11–5

A change in estimate should be reflected in the financial statements of the current period and future periods.

On January 1, 2016, the Hogan Manufacturing Company purchased a machine for \$250,000. The company expects the service life of the machine to be five years and the anticipated residual value to be \$40,000. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31 and the straight-line depreciation method is used for all depreciable assets. On January 1, 2018, the company revised its estimate of service life **from five to eight years** and also revised estimated residual value **from \$40,000 to \$22,000**.

Prior to the revision (2016 and 2017), depreciation was \$42,000 per year $[(\$250,000 - 40,000) \div 5 \text{ years}]$ or \$84,000 for the two years. The remaining book value at the beginning of 2018 is \$166,000 $(\$250,000 - 84,000)$. Depreciation for 2018 and subsequent years is determined by allocating the remaining book value less the revised residual value equally over the remaining service life of six years $(8 - 2)$. Depreciation for 2018 and subsequent years is recorded as follows:

Depreciation expense (below)	24,000	
Accumulated depreciation		24,000
		(continued)

Illustration 11–15

Change in Accounting Estimate

(concluded)

	\$250,000	Cost
\$42,000		Previous annual depreciation ($\$210,000 \div 5$ years)
<u>$\times 2$ years</u>	<u>84,000</u>	Depreciation to date (2016–2017)
	166,000	Book value as of January 1, 2018
	<u>22,000</u>	Less revised residual value
	144,000	Revised depreciable base
	<u>$\div 6$</u>	Estimated remaining life (8 years – 2 years)
	<u><u>\$ 24,000</u></u>	New annual depreciation

The asset's book value is depreciated down to the anticipated residual value of \$22,000 at the end of the revised eight-year service life. In addition, a note discloses the effect of the change in estimate on income, if material. The before-tax effect is an increase in income of \$18,000 (depreciation of \$42,000 if the change had not been made, less \$24,000 depreciation after the change).

Verizon Communications Inc. recently revised its estimates of the service lives of certain property, plant, and equipment. Illustration 11–16 shows the note that disclosed the change.

Illustration 11–16

Change in Estimate Disclosure—Verizon Communications Inc.

Real World Financials

Plant and Depreciation (in part)

In connection with our ongoing review of the estimated remaining average useful lives of plant, property and equipment, we determined that changes were necessary to the remaining estimated useful lives of certain assets as a result of technology upgrades, enhancements, and planned retirements. These changes resulted in an increase in depreciation expense of \$0.4 billion and \$0.6 billion in 2015 and 2014, respectively. While the timing and extent of current deployment plans are subject to ongoing analysis and modification, we believe the current estimates of useful lives are reasonable.

Change in Depreciation, Amortization, or Depletion Method

Changes in depreciation, amortization, or depletion methods are accounted for the same way as a change in accounting estimate.

• LO11–6

Generally accepted accounting principles allow a company to change from one depreciation method to another if the company can justify the change. For example, new information might become available to suggest that a different depreciation method would better represent the pattern of the asset's consumption relative to revenue production.

We account for these changes prospectively, exactly as we would any other change in estimate. One difference is that most changes in estimate do not require a company to justify the change. However, this change in estimate is a result of changing an accounting principle and therefore requires a clear justification as to why the new method is preferable. Consider the example in Illustration 11–17.

Illustration 11–17

Change in Depreciation Method

On January 1, 2016, the Hogan Manufacturing Company purchased a machine for \$250,000. The company expects the service life of the machine to be five years and its anticipated residual value to be \$30,000. The company's fiscal year-end is December 31 and the double-declining-balance (DDB) depreciation method is used. During 2018, the company switched from the DDB to the straight-line method. In 2018, the adjusting entry is:

Depreciation expense (below)	20,000	
Accumulated depreciation		20,000
DDB depreciation:		
2016 \$100,000 ($\$250,000 \times 40\%$)		
2017 60,000 [$(\$250,000 - 100,000) \times 40\%$]		
Total <u><u>\$160,000</u></u>		

*Double the straight-line rate for 5 years [$(\% = 20\%) \times 2 = 40\%$]

(continued)

(concluded)	\$250,000	Cost
	<u>160,000</u>	Depreciation to date, DDB (2016–2017)
	90,000	Undepreciated cost as of January 1, 2018
	<u>30,000</u>	Less residual value
	60,000	Depreciable base
	÷ 3 yrs.	Remaining life (5 years – 2 years)
	<u>\$ 20,000</u>	New annual depreciation

A disclosure note reports the effect of the change on net income and earnings per share along with clear justification for changing depreciation methods.

Illustration 11–18 shows a disclosure note describing a recent change in depreciation method made by **Agrium Inc.**

Accounting standards and policy changes (in part)

We changed the method of depreciation from the straight-line basis to the units of production basis for our potash facility mining and milling assets beginning January 1, 2015, and our nitrogen and phosphate mining and plant assets beginning October 1, 2015. The change in method of depreciation reflects anticipated changes to our production schedule due to facility expansions, volatility in market conditions, and the frequency and duration of plant turnarounds. The current and expected reduction in depreciation expense is 2015 – \$30 million and 2016 – \$7 million.

Illustration 11–18

Change in Depreciation Method—Agrium Inc.

Real World Financials

Frequently, when a company changes depreciation method, the change will be effective only for assets placed in service after that date. Of course, that means depreciation schedules do not require revision because the change does not affect assets depreciated in prior periods. A disclosure note still is required to provide justification for the change and to report the effect of the change on the current year's income.

Error Correction

Errors involving property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets include computational errors in the calculation of depreciation, depletion, or amortization and mistakes made in determining whether expenditures should be capitalized or expensed. These errors can affect many years. For example, let's say a major addition to equipment should be capitalized but incorrectly is expensed. Not only is income in the year of the error understated, but subsequent years' income is overstated because depreciation is omitted.

Recall from our discussion of inventory errors in Chapter 9 that if a material error is discovered in an accounting period subsequent to the period in which the error is made, any previous years' financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the error are retrospectively restated to reflect the correction. Any account balances that are incorrect as a result of the error are corrected by journal entry. If retained earnings is one of the incorrect accounts, the correction is reported as a *prior period adjustment* to the beginning balance in the statement of shareholders' equity.¹⁵ In addition, a disclosure note is needed to describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on net income and earnings per share.

Here is a summary of the treatment of material errors occurring in a previous year:

- Previous years' financial statements are retrospectively restated.
- Account balances are corrected.

¹⁵The prior period adjustment is applied to beginning retained earnings for the year following the error, or for the earliest year being reported in the comparative financial statements when the error occurs prior to the earliest year presented. The retained earnings balances in years after the first year also are adjusted to what those balances would be if the error had not occurred, but a company may choose not to explicitly report those adjustments as separate line items.

• LO11–7

- If retained earnings requires correction, the correction is reported as a prior period adjustment.
- A note describes the nature of the error and the impact of the correction on income.

Consider Illustration 11–19. The 2016 and 2017 financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the error are *retrospectively restated* to report the addition to the patent and to reflect the correct amount of amortization expense, assuming both statements are reported again for comparative purposes in the 2018 annual report.

Illustration 11–19

Error Correction

Sometimes, the analysis is easier if you re-create the entries actually recorded incorrectly and those that would have been recorded if the error hadn't occurred, and then compare them.

In 2018, the controller of the Hathaway Corporation discovered an error in recording \$300,000 in legal fees to successfully defend a patent infringement suit in 2016. The \$300,000 was charged to legal fee expense but should have been capitalized and amortized over the five-year remaining life of the patent. Straight-line amortization is used by Hathaway for all intangibles.

Analysis

	Correct (Should Have Been Recorded)	Incorrect (As Recorded)
2016 Patent	300,000	Expense 300,000
Cash.....	300,000	Cash..... 300,000
2016 Expense	60,000	Amortization entry omitted
Patent.....	60,000	
2017 Expense	60,000	Amortization entry omitted
Patent.....	60,000	

During the two-year period (2016 and 2017), amortization expense was *understated* by \$120,000, but other expenses were *overstated* by \$300,000, so net income during the period was *understated* by \$180,000 (ignoring income taxes). This means retained earnings is currently *understated* by that amount.

Patent is understated by \$180,000.

Patent	180,000	
Retained earnings.....		180,000
To correct incorrect accounts		

Because retained earnings is one of the accounts incorrect as a result of the error, a correction to that account of **\$180,000** is reported as a prior period adjustment to the 2018 beginning retained earnings balance in Hathaway's comparative statements of shareholders' equity. Assuming that 2017 is included with 2018 in the comparative statements, a correction would be made to the 2017 beginning retained earnings balance as well. That prior period adjustment, though, would be for the pre-2017 difference: $300,000 - 60,000 = \$240,000$.

Also, a disclosure note accompanying Hathaway's 2018 financial statements should describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on each year's net income (understated by \$240,000 in 2016 and overstated by \$60,000 in 2017), and earnings per share.

Chapter 20 provides in-depth coverage of changes in estimates and methods, and of accounting errors. We cover the tax effect of these changes and errors in that chapter.

Impairment of Value

Depreciation, depletion, and amortization reflect a gradual consumption of the benefits inherent in property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets. An implicit assumption in allocating the cost of an asset over its useful life is that there has been no significant reduction in the anticipated total benefits or service potential of the asset. Situations can arise, however, that cause a significant decline or impairment of those benefits or service potential. An extreme case would be the destruction of a plant asset—say a building destroyed

by fire—before the asset is fully depreciated. The remaining book value of the asset in that case should be written off as a loss. Sometimes, though, the impairment of future value is more subtle.

The way we recognize and measure an impairment loss differs depending on whether the assets are classified as (1) held and used or (2) held for sale. Accounting is different, too, for assets with finite lives and those with indefinite lives. We consider those differences now.

● LO11–8

Assets Held and Used

An increasingly common occurrence in practice is the partial write-down of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets that remain in use. For example, in 2015, **Murphy Oil Corporation** recorded impairment charges of \$2.4 billion. The charges reflect the decline in asset values associated with lower oil and gas prices.

Conceptually, there is considerable merit for a policy requiring the write-down of an asset when there has been a significant decline in value. A write-down can provide important information about the future cash flows that a company can generate from using the asset. However, in practice, this process is very subjective. Even if it appears certain that significant impairment of value has occurred, it often is difficult to measure the amount of the required write-down.

An asset held for use should be written down if there has been a significant impairment of value.

For example, let's say a company purchased \$2,000,000 of equipment to be used in the production of a new type of laser printer. Depreciation is determined using the straight-line method over a useful life of six years and the residual value is estimated at \$200,000. At the beginning of year 3, the machine's book value has been depreciated to \$1,400,000 [$\$2,000,000 - (\$300,000 \times 2)$]. At that time, new technology is developed causing a significant reduction in the selling price of the new laser printer as well as a reduction in anticipated demand for the product. Management estimates that the equipment will be useful for only two more years and will have no significant residual value.

This situation is not simply a matter of a change in the estimates of useful life and residual value. Management must decide if the events occurring in year 3 warrant a write-down of the asset below \$1,400,000. A write-down would be appropriate if the company decided that it would be unable to fully recover this amount through future use.

For assets to be held and used, different guidelines apply to (1) property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets with finite useful lives (subject to depreciation, depletion, or amortization) and (2) intangible assets with indefinite useful lives (not subject to amortization).

PROPERTY, PLANT, AND EQUIPMENT AND FINITE-LIFE INTANGIBLE ASSETS

Generally accepted accounting principles provide guidelines for when to recognize and how to measure impairment losses of long-lived tangible assets and intangible assets with finite useful lives.¹⁶ For purposes of this recognition and measurement, assets are grouped at the lowest level for which identifiable cash flows are largely independent of the cash flows of other assets.

When to Test for Impairment. It would be impractical to test all assets or asset groups for impairment at the end of every reporting period. GAAP requires investigation of possible impairment only if events or changes in circumstances indicate that the book value of the asset or asset group may not be recoverable. This might happen from:

- a. A significant decrease in market price
- b. A significant adverse change in how the asset is being used or in its physical condition
- c. A significant adverse change in legal factors or in the business climate
- d. An accumulation of costs significantly higher than the amount originally expected for the acquisition or construction of an asset

Property, plant, and equipment and finite-life intangible assets are tested for impairment only when events or changes in circumstances indicate book value may not be recoverable.

¹⁶FASB ASC 360–10–35–15 through 20: Property, Plant, and Equipment—Overall—Subsequent Measurement—Impairment or Disposal of Long-Lived Assets (previously “Accounting for the Impairment of Long-Lived Assets and for Long-Lived Assets to Be Disposed Of,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 144* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2001)).

- e. A current-period loss combined with a history of losses or a projection of continuing losses associated with the asset
- f. A realization that the asset will be disposed of significantly before the end of its estimated useful life¹⁷

Determining whether an impairment loss has occurred and for how much to record the loss is a two-step process.

1. **Recoverability Test.** An impairment occurs when the undiscounted sum of estimated future cash flows from an asset is less than the asset's book value.
2. **Measurement.** If the recoverability test indicates an impairment has occurred, an impairment loss is recorded for the difference between the asset's book value and its fair value.

For Step 2, fair value is the amount at which the asset could be bought or sold in a current transaction between willing parties. Quoted market prices could be used if they're available. If fair value is not determinable, it must be estimated.

If an impairment loss is recognized, the written-down book value becomes the new cost base for future cost allocation. Later recovery of an impairment loss is prohibited.

The process is best described by an example. Consider Illustration 11–20.

Illustration 11–20

Impairment Loss—Property, Plant, and Equipment

The Dakota Corporation operates several factories that manufacture medical equipment. Near the end of the company's 2018 fiscal year, a change in business climate related to a competitor's innovative products indicated to management that the \$170 million book value (original cost of \$300 million less accumulated depreciation of \$130 million) of the assets of one of Dakota's factories may not be recoverable.

Management is able to identify cash flows from this factory and estimates that future cash flows over the remaining useful life of the factory will be \$150 million. The fair value of the factory's assets is not readily available but is estimated to be \$135 million.

Change in circumstances. A change in the business climate related to a competitor's innovative products requires Dakota to investigate for possible impairment.

Step 1. Recoverability Test. Because the book value of \$170 million exceeds the \$150 million undiscounted future cash flows, an impairment loss is indicated.

Step 2. Measurement of impairment loss. The impairment loss is \$35 million, determined as follows:

Book value	\$170 million
Less: Fair value	135 million
Impairment loss	<u>\$ 35 million</u>

The entry to record the loss is (\$ in millions):

Loss on impairment (above).....	35	
Accumulated depreciation (reduce to zero).....	130	
Factory assets (decrease to fair value).....		165

The loss normally is reported in the income statement as a separate component of operating expenses.

In the entry in Illustration 11–20, we reduce accumulated depreciation to zero and decrease the cost base of the assets to their fair value of \$135 million (\$300 – 165). The new book value of \$135 serves as the revised basis for subsequent depreciation over the remaining useful life of the assets, just as if the assets had been acquired on the impairment date for their fair values.

¹⁷FASB ASC 360–10–35–21: Property, Plant, and Equipment—Overall—Subsequent Measurement—Impairment or Disposal of Long-Lived Assets (previously “Accounting for the Impairment of Long-Lived Assets and for Long-Lived Assets to Be Disposed Of,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 144* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2001), par.8).

Because the fair value of the factory assets was not readily available to Dakota in Illustration 11–20, the \$135 million had to be estimated. One method that can be used to estimate fair value is to compute the discounted present value of future cash flows expected from the asset. Keep in mind that we use *undiscounted* estimates of cash flows in Step 1 to determine whether an impairment loss is indicated, but *discounted* estimates of cash flows in Step 2 to determine the amount of the loss. In calculating present value, either a traditional approach or an expected cash flow approach can be used. The traditional approach is to incorporate risk and uncertainty into the discount rate. Recall from discussions in previous chapters that the expected cash flow approach incorporates risk and uncertainty instead into a determination of a probability-weighted cash flow expectation, and then discounts this expected cash flow using a risk-free interest rate. We discussed and illustrated the expected cash flow approach in previous chapters.

A disclosure note is needed to describe the impairment loss. The note should include a description of the impaired asset or asset group, the facts and circumstances leading to the impairment, the amount of the loss if not separately disclosed on the face of the income statement, and the method used to determine fair value.

Macy's, Inc., is a department store chain providing brand-name clothing, accessories, home furnishings, and housewares. Illustration 11–21 shows the company's disclosure notes describing recent impairment losses. The notes also provide a summary of the process used to identify and measure impairment losses for property, plant, and equipment and finite-life intangible assets.

The present value of future cash flows often is used as a measure of fair value.

Property and Equipment (in part)

The carrying values of long-lived assets are periodically reviewed by the Company whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying value may not be recoverable, such as historical operating losses or plans to close stores before the end of their previously estimated useful lives. Additionally, on an annual basis, the recoverability of the carrying values of individual stores are evaluated. A potential impairment has occurred if projected future undiscounted cash flows are less than the carrying value of the assets. The estimate of cash flows includes management's assumptions of cash inflows and outflows directly resulting from the use of those assets in operations. When a potential impairment has occurred, an impairment write-down is recorded if the carrying value of the long-lived asset exceeds its fair value.

Impairments, Store Closing and Other Costs (in part)

As a result of the Company's projected undiscounted future cash flows related to certain store locations and other assets being less than their carrying value, the Company recorded impairment charges, including properties that were the subject of announced store closings. The fair values of these assets were calculated based on the projected cash flows and an estimated risk-adjusted rate of return that would be used by market participants in valuing these assets or based on prices of similar assets. During 2015, long-lived assets held and used with a carrying value of \$201 million were written down to their fair value of \$53 million, resulting in asset impairment charges of \$148 million.

Illustration 11–21

Asset Impairment
Disclosure—Macy's, Inc.

Real World Financials

International Financial Reporting Standards

Impairment of Value: Property, Plant, and Equipment and Finite-Life Intangible Assets.

Highlighted below are some important differences in accounting for impairment of value for property, plant, and equipment and finite-life intangible assets between U.S. GAAP and IAS No. 36.¹⁸

(continued)



LO11–10

¹⁸“Impairment of Assets,” *International Accounting Standard No. 36* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

(concluded)

	U.S. GAAP	IFRS
When to Test	When events or changes in circumstances indicate that book value may not be recoverable.	Assets must be assessed for indicators of impairment at the end of each reporting period. Indicators of impairment are similar to U.S. GAAP.
Recoverability	An impairment loss is required when an asset's book value exceeds the undiscounted sum of the asset's estimated future cash flows.	There is no equivalent recoverability test. An impairment loss is required when an asset's book value exceeds the higher of the asset's value-in-use (present value of estimated future cash flows) and fair value less costs to sell.
Measurement	The impairment loss is the difference between book value and fair value.	The impairment loss is the difference between book value and the "recoverable amount" (the higher of the asset's value-in-use and fair value less costs to sell).
Subsequent Reversal of Loss	Prohibited.	Required if the circumstances that caused the impairment are resolved.

Let's look at an illustration highlighting the important differences described above. The Jasmine Tea Company has a factory that has significantly decreased in value due to technological innovations in the industry. Below are data related to the factory's assets:

	(\$ in millions)
Book value	\$18.5
Undiscounted sum of estimated future cash flows	19.0
Present value of future cash flows	16.0
Fair value less cost to sell (determined by appraisal)	15.5

What amount of impairment loss should Jasmine Tea recognize, if any, under U.S. GAAP? Under IFRS?

U.S. GAAP There is no impairment loss. The sum of undiscounted estimated future cash flows exceeds the book value.

IFRS Jasmine should recognize an impairment loss of \$2.5 million. Indicators of impairment are present and book value exceeds both value-in-use (present value of cash flows) and fair value less costs to sell. The recoverable amount is \$16 million, the higher of value-in-use (\$16 million) and fair value less costs to sell (\$15.5 million). The impairment loss is the difference between book value of \$18.5 million and the \$16 million recoverable amount.

Nokia, a Finnish company, prepares its financial statements according to IFRS. The following disclosure note describes the company's impairment policy:

Assessment of the Recoverability of Long-Lived Assets, Intangible Assets, and Goodwill (in part)

The carrying value of identifiable intangible assets and long-lived assets is assessed if events or changes in circumstances indicate that such carrying value may not be recoverable. Factors that trigger an impairment review include, but are not limited to, underperformance relative to historical or projected future results, significant changes in the manner of the use of the acquired assets or the strategy for the overall business and significant negative industry or economic trends.

Nokia conducts its impairment testing by determining the recoverable amount for the asset. The recoverable amount of an asset is the higher of its fair value less costs to sell and its value-in-use. The recoverable amount is then compared to the asset's carrying amount and an impairment loss is recognized if the recoverable amount is less than the carrying amount. Impairment losses are recognized immediately in the income statement.

INDEFINITE-LIFE INTANGIBLE ASSETS OTHER THAN GOODWILL. Intangible assets with indefinite useful lives, other than goodwill, should be tested for impairment annually and more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicate that it is more likely than not that the asset is impaired.

A company has the option of first undertaking a qualitative assessment. Companies selecting this option will evaluate relevant events and circumstances to determine whether it is “more likely than not” (a likelihood of more than 50 percent) that the fair value of the asset is less than its book value. Only if that’s determined to be the case will the company perform the quantitative impairment test described in the next paragraph.

The measurement of an impairment loss for indefinite-life intangible assets other than goodwill is a one-step process. We compare the fair value of the asset with its book value. If book value exceeds fair value, an impairment loss is recognized for the difference. Notice that we omit the recoverability test with these assets. Because we anticipate cash flows to continue indefinitely, recoverability is not a good indicator of impairment.

Similar to property, plant, and equipment and finite-life intangible assets, if an impairment loss is recognized, the written-down book value becomes the new cost base for future cost allocation. Recovery of the impairment loss is prohibited. Disclosure requirements also are similar.

If book value exceeds fair value, an impairment loss is recognized for the difference.

International Financial Reporting Standards

Impairment of Value: Indefinite-Life Intangible Assets Other than Goodwill. Similar to U.S. GAAP, IFRS requires indefinite-life intangible assets other than goodwill to be tested for impairment at least annually. However, under U.S. GAAP, a company has the option to avoid annual testing by making qualitative evaluations of the likelihood of asset impairment. Also, under U.S. GAAP, the impairment loss is measured as the difference between book value and fair value, while under IFRS the impairment loss is the difference between book value and the recoverable amount. The recoverable amount is the higher of the asset’s value-in-use (present value of estimated future cash flows) and fair value less costs to sell.

IFRS requires the reversal of an impairment loss if the circumstances that caused the impairment are resolved. Reversals are prohibited under U.S. GAAP.

Also, indefinite-life intangible assets may not be combined with other indefinite-life intangible assets for the required annual impairment test. Under U.S. GAAP, though, if certain criteria are met, indefinite-life intangible assets should be combined for the required annual impairment test.



● LO11–10

GOODWILL. Recall that goodwill is a unique intangible asset. Unlike other assets, its cost (a) can’t be directly associated with any specific identifiable right and (b) is not separable from the company as a whole. Because of these unique characteristics, we don’t measure the impairment of goodwill the same way as we do other assets. GAAP provides guidelines for impairment, which, while similar to general impairment guidelines, are specific to goodwill.¹⁹ Let’s compare the two-step process for measuring goodwill impairment with the two-step process for measuring impairment for property, plant, and equipment and finite-life intangible assets.

In Step 1, for all classifications of assets, we decide whether a write-down due to impairment is required by determining whether the value of an asset has fallen below its book value. However, in this comparison, the value of assets for property, plant, and equipment and finite-life intangible assets is considered to be value-in-use as measured by the sum of undiscounted cash flows expected from the asset. But due to its unique characteristics, the value of goodwill is not associated with any specific cash flows and must be measured in a unique way. By its very nature, goodwill is inseparable from a particular *reporting unit*. A reporting unit is an operating segment of a company or a component of an operating segment for which discrete financial information is available and segment management

STEP 1—A goodwill impairment loss is indicated when the fair value of the reporting unit is less than its book value.

¹⁹FASB ASC 350–20–35: Intangibles–Goodwill and Other–Goodwill–Subsequent Measurement (previously “Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 142* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2001)).

STEP 2—A goodwill impairment loss is measured as the excess of the book value of the goodwill over its “implied” fair value.

regularly reviews the operating results of that component. So, for Step 1, we compare the value of the reporting unit itself with its book value. If the fair value of the reporting unit is less than its book value, an impairment loss is indicated.

In Step 2, for all classifications of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets, if impairment is indicated from Step 1, we measure the amount of impairment as the excess of the book value of the asset over its fair value. However, unlike for most other assets, the fair value of goodwill cannot be measured directly (market value, present value of associated cash flows, etc.) and so must be “implied” from the fair value of the reporting unit that acquired the goodwill.

The implied fair value of goodwill is calculated in the same way that goodwill is determined in a business combination. That is, it’s a residual amount measured by subtracting the fair value of all identifiable net assets from the purchase price using the unit’s previously determined fair value as the purchase price.²⁰

If goodwill is tested for impairment at the same time as other assets of the reporting unit, the other assets must be tested first and any impairment loss and asset write-down is recorded prior to testing goodwill. Subsequent reversal (recovery) of a previous goodwill impairment loss is not allowed.

When to test for impairment. Prior to 2012, companies were required to perform *Step 1* of the two-step test for goodwill impairment at least once a year, as well as in between annual test dates if something occurred that would indicate that the fair value of the reporting unit was below its book value. Then, if the first step indicated that the fair value of the reporting unit was indeed below book value, the company would perform *Step 2* to measure the amount of goodwill impairment.

In response to concerns about the cost and complexity of performing Step 1 every year, the FASB now allows companies the option to decide whether Step 1 is necessary.²¹ Companies selecting this option will perform a qualitative assessment by evaluating relevant events and circumstances to determine whether it is “more likely than not” (a likelihood of more than 50 percent) that the fair value of a reporting unit is now less than its book value. Only if that’s determined to be the case will the company perform the first step of the two-step goodwill impairment test. A list of possible events and circumstances that a company should consider in this qualitative assessment is provided in ASC 350–20–35–3C.

A goodwill impairment example is provided in Illustration 11–22.

Illustration 11–22

Impairment Loss—Goodwill

The “implied” fair value of goodwill is a residual amount measured by subtracting the fair value of all identifiable net assets from the unit’s fair value.

In 2017, the Upjane Corporation acquired Pharmacopia Corporation for \$500 million. Upjane recorded \$100 million in goodwill related to this acquisition because the fair value of the net assets of Pharmacopia was \$400 million. After the acquisition, Pharmacopia continues to operate as a separate company and is considered a reporting unit.

At the end of 2018, events and circumstances indicated that it is more likely than not that the fair value of Pharmacopia is less than its book value requiring Upjane to perform Step 1 of the goodwill impairment test. The book value of Pharmacopia’s net assets at the end of 2018 is \$440 million, including the \$100 million in goodwill. On that date, the fair value of Pharmacopia is estimated to be \$360 million and the fair value of all of its identifiable tangible and intangible assets, excluding goodwill, is estimated to be \$335 million.

Step 1. Recoverability Test. Because the book value of the net assets of \$440 million exceeds the \$360 million fair value of the reporting unit, an impairment loss is indicated.

Step 2. Measurement of impairment loss. The impairment loss is **\$75 million**, determined as follows:

Determination of the implied fair value of goodwill:

Fair value of Pharmacopia	\$360 million
Fair value of Pharmacopia’s net assets (excluding goodwill)	335 million
Implied fair value of goodwill	<u>\$ 25 million</u>

(continued)

²⁰The impairment loss recognized can’t exceed the book value of goodwill.

²¹FASB ASC 350–20–35–3: Intangibles—Goodwill and Other—Goodwill—Subsequent Measurement (previously “Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 142* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2001)).

(concluded)

Measurement of the impairment loss:

Book value of goodwill	\$ 100 million
Implied fair value of goodwill	25 million
Impairment loss	<u>\$ 75 million</u>

The entry to record the loss is (\$ in millions):

Loss on impairment of goodwill	75	
Goodwill		75

The loss normally is reported in the income statement as a separate component of operating expenses.

Where We're Headed

In May 2016, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) issued a proposed Accounting Standards Update (ASU) that would simplify the accounting for goodwill impairment. The proposed ASU is Phase 1 of a two-phase project. The proposal is to eliminate Step 2 in the goodwill impairment test. As a result, companies would no longer be required to measure the goodwill impairment loss for a reporting unit as the excess of the book value of the goodwill over its “implied” fair value as we did in Illustration 11–22. Instead, using only the measurements from Step 1, **the impairment loss would be the book value of the reporting unit minus its fair value (not to exceed the book value of goodwill)**. Here is the difference in the current and proposed approach to measuring the loss:

Current measurement:

$$\text{Goodwill impairment loss} = \text{Book value of goodwill} - \text{Implied fair value of goodwill}$$

Proposed measurement:

$$\text{Goodwill impairment loss} = \text{Book value of reporting unit} - \text{Fair value of reporting unit}$$

By proposing to remove Step 2, the FASB intends to reduce the cost and complexity of evaluating goodwill for impairment. However, at the time this book was published, the FASB had not yet decided whether to adopt the proposed ASU. To demonstrate how the proposed measurement would look if adopted, let's reexamine the example in Illustration 11–22.

Upjane Corporation believes that it is more likely than not that the fair value of Pharmacopia Corporation (a reporting unit) is less than its book value. In this case, Upjane determines that the book value of the net assets of \$440 million exceeds the \$360 million fair value of Pharmacopia. The difference of \$80 million is the impairment loss.

Measurement of the impairment loss:

Book value of the net assets of Pharmacopia	\$440 million
Fair value of Pharmacopia	360 million
Impairment loss	<u>\$ 80 million</u>

The entry to record the loss is (\$ in millions):

Loss on impairment of goodwill	80	
Goodwill		80

Recall that Upjane recorded \$100 million in goodwill related to the initial acquisition of Pharmacopia. After the impairment loss of \$80 million is recorded, the balance of goodwill is reduced to \$20 million. If Pharmacopia's book value had exceeded its fair value by more than \$100 million, then the goodwill impairment loss would have been limited to only \$100 million to reduce the balance of goodwill to zero.

In Phase 2 of the project (which is not part of the proposed ASU discussed above), the FASB will consider permitting or requiring companies to amortize goodwill, and also consider making other changes in the impairment testing methodology.

Some examples of multibillion dollar goodwill impairment losses in recent years are shown in Illustration 11–23.

Illustration 11–23

Goodwill Impairment Losses

Real World Financials

Company	Goodwill Impairment Loss
General Motors	\$27.1 billion
Hewlett-Packard	13.7 billion
Microsoft	6.2 billion
Yahoo	4.5 billion
Boston Scientific	4.4 billion

Yahoo's disclosure of its goodwill impairment loss is shown in Illustration 11–24.

Illustration 11–24

Goodwill Impairment Disclosure—Yahoo Inc.

Real World Financials

Goodwill Impairment Charge (in part)

During 2015, we recorded a \$4,461 million goodwill impairment charge. The impairments were a result of a combination of factors, including a sustained decrease in our market capitalization in the fourth quarter of 2015 and lower estimated projected revenue and profitability in the near term. We concluded that the carrying value of our U.S. & Canada, Europe, Tumblr, and Latin America reporting units exceeded their respective estimated fair values and recorded a goodwill impairment charge of approximately \$3,692 million, \$531 million, \$230 million, and \$8 million, respectively.

Additional Consideration

Private Company GAAP—Accounting for Goodwill. The Private Company Council (PCC) sought feedback from private company stakeholders on the issue of goodwill accounting and found that most users of private company financial statements disregard goodwill and goodwill impairment losses. As a result, the PCC concluded that the cost and complexity of goodwill accounting outweigh the benefits for private companies.

In response to the PCC's conclusion, the FASB issued an Accounting Standards Update in 2014 that allows an accounting alternative for the subsequent measurement of goodwill for private companies that calls for goodwill to be amortized and also simplifies the goodwill impairment test.²²

The main provisions of the alternative are:

1. Amortizing goodwill on a straight-line basis over a maximum of 10 years
2. Testing goodwill for impairment at either the company level or the reporting unit level
3. Testing goodwill for impairment only when a triggering event occurs indicating that goodwill may be impaired
4. The option of determining whether a quantitative impairment test is necessary when a triggering event occurs
5. If a quantitative test is necessary, measuring the goodwill impairment loss as the excess of the book value of the company (or reporting unit) over its fair value, not to exceed the book value of goodwill

The fifth provision is now being proposed for public companies. We discussed this above in the previous "Where We're Headed" box.

For assets held for sale, if book value exceeds fair value less cost to sell, an impairment loss is recognized for the difference.

Assets Held for Sale

We have been discussing the recognition and measurement for the impairment of value of assets to be held and used. We also test for impairment of assets held for sale. These are assets management has actively committed to immediately sell in their present condition and for which sale is probable.

²²Accounting Standards Update No. 2014–02, "Intangibles-Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): Accounting for Goodwill," (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, January 2014).

International Financial Reporting Standards



LO11-10

Impairment of Value—Goodwill. Highlighted below are some important differences in accounting for the impairment of goodwill between U.S. GAAP and IAS No. 36.

	U.S. GAAP	IFRS
Level of Testing	<i>Reporting unit</i> —a segment or a component of an operating segment for which discrete financial information is available.	<i>Cash-generating unit (CGU)</i> —the lowest level at which goodwill is monitored by management. A CGU can't be lower than a segment.
Measurement	<p><i>A two-step process:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Compare the fair value of the reporting unit with its book value. A loss is indicated if fair value is less than book value. 2. The impairment loss is the excess of book value over implied fair value. 	<p><i>A one-step process:</i></p> <p>Compare the recoverable amount of the CGU to book value. If the recoverable amount is less, reduce goodwill first, then other assets. The recoverable amount is the higher of fair value less costs to sell and value-in-use (present value of estimated future cash flows).</p>

IAS No. 36 requires goodwill to be tested for impairment at least annually. U.S. GAAP allows a company to avoid annual testing by making qualitative evaluations of the likelihood of goodwill impairment to determine if step one is necessary. Both U.S. GAAP and IAS No. 36 prohibit the reversal of goodwill impairment losses.

Let's look at an illustration highlighting these differences.

Canterbury LTD. has \$38 million of goodwill in its balance sheet from the 2016 acquisition of Denton, Inc. At the end of 2018, Canterbury's management provided the following information for the year-end goodwill impairment test (\$ in millions):

Fair value of Denton (determined by appraisal)	\$132
Fair value of Denton's net assets (excluding goodwill)	120
Book value of Denton's net assets (including goodwill)	150
Present value of Denton's estimated future cash flows	135

Assume that Denton is considered a reporting unit under U.S. GAAP and a cash-generating unit under IFRS, and that its fair value approximates fair value less costs to sell. What is the amount of goodwill impairment loss that Canterbury should recognize, if any, under U.S. GAAP? Under IFRS?

U.S. GAAP		
	Fair value of Denton	\$132
	Fair value of Denton's net assets (excluding goodwill)	120
	Implied fair value of goodwill	<u>\$ 12</u>
	Book value of goodwill	\$ 38
	Implied fair value of goodwill	<u>12</u>
	Impairment loss	<u>\$ 26</u>
IFRS		
	The recoverable amount is \$135 million, the higher of the \$135 million value-in-use (present value of estimated future cash flows) and the \$132 million fair value less costs to sell.	
	Denton's book value	\$150
	Recoverable amount	135
	Impairment loss	<u>\$ 15</u>

Deutsche Bank is the largest bank in Germany and one of the largest financial institutions in Europe and the world. The company prepares its financial statements according to IFRS. The following disclosures describe the company's goodwill impairment policy as well as goodwill impairment loss.

(continued)

(concluded)

Impairment of Goodwill (in part)

Goodwill is tested for impairment annually in the fourth quarter by comparing the recoverable amount of each goodwill-carrying cash-generating unit (CGU) with its carrying amount. In addition, in accordance with IAS 36, the Group tests goodwill whenever a triggering event is identified. The recoverable amount is the higher of a CGU's fair value less costs of disposal and its value in use.

Impairment charge during the period (in part)

The goodwill impairment test in the third quarter 2015 resulted in goodwill impairments totaling € 4,933 million, consisting of € 2,168 million and € 2,765 million in the CGUs CB&S, and PBC, respectively. The impairment in CB&S was mainly driven by changes to the business mix in light of expected higher regulatory capital requirements, leading to a recoverable amount of approximately € 26.1 billion. The impairment in PBC was, in addition to the changed capital requirements, mainly driven by current disposal expectations regarding Hua Xia Bank Co. Ltd. and Postbank, which resulted in a recoverable amount of approximately € 12.3 billion for the CGU.

An asset or group of assets classified as held for sale is measured at the lower of its book value, or fair value less cost to sell. An impairment loss is recognized for any write-down to fair value less cost to sell.²³ Except for including the cost to sell, notice the similarity to impairment of assets to be held and used. We don't depreciate or amortize these assets while classified as held for sale and we report them separately in the balance sheet. Recall from our discussion of discontinued operations in Chapter 4 that similar rules apply for a component of an entity that is classified as held for sale.

Illustration 11–25 summarizes the guidelines for the recognition and measurement of impairment losses.

Illustration 11–25

Summary of Asset
Impairment Guidelines

Asset Classification	When to Test for Impairment	Impairment Test
Held and Used		
Property, plant, and equipment and finite-life intangible assets	When events or circumstances indicate book value may not be recoverable.	Step 1—An impairment loss is required only when book value is not recoverable (undiscounted sum of estimated future cash flows less than book value). Step 2—The impairment loss is the excess of book value over fair value.
Indefinite-life intangible assets (other than goodwill)	At least annually, and more frequently if indicated. Option to avoid annual testing by making qualitative evaluations of the likelihood of asset impairment.	If book value exceeds fair value, an impairment loss is recognized for the difference.
Goodwill	At least annually, and more frequently if indicated. Option to avoid annual testing by making qualitative evaluations of the likelihood of goodwill impairment to determine if Step 1 is necessary.	Step 1—A loss is indicated when the fair value of the reporting unit is less than its book value. Step 2—An impairment loss is measured as the excess of book value over implied fair value.
Held for Sale	At the time of classification as held for sale and thereafter.	If book value exceeds fair value less cost to sell, an impairment loss is recognized for the difference.

²³If the asset is unsold at the end of a subsequent reporting period, a gain is recognized for any increase in fair value less cost to sell, but not in excess of the loss previously recognized.

Impairment Losses and Earnings Quality

What do losses from the write-down of inventory and restructuring costs have in common? The presence of these items in a corporate income statement presents a challenge to an analyst trying to determine a company's permanent earnings—those likely to continue in the future. We discussed these issues in prior chapters.

We now can add asset impairment losses to the list of “big bath” accounting techniques some companies use to manipulate earnings. By writing off large amounts of assets, companies significantly reduce earnings in the year of the write-off but are able to increase future earnings by lowering future depreciation, depletion, or amortization. Here's how. We measure the impairment loss as the difference between an asset's book value and its fair value. However, in most cases, fair value must be estimated, and the estimation process usually involves a forecast of future net cash flows the company expects to generate from the asset's use. If a company underestimates future net cash flows, fair value is understated. This has two effects: (1) current year's income is unrealistically low due to the impairment loss being overstated and (2) future income is unrealistically high because depreciation, depletion, and amortization are based on understated asset values.

An analyst must decide whether to consider asset impairment losses as temporary in nature or as a part of permanent earnings.

Concept Review Exercise

Part A:

Illumination Inc. owns a factory in Wisconsin that makes light bulbs. During 2018, due to increased competition from LED light bulb manufacturers, the company determined that an impairment test was appropriate. Management has prepared the following information for the assets of the factory (\$ in millions):

Cost	\$345
Accumulated depreciation	85
Estimated future undiscounted cash flows to be generated by the factory	230
Estimated fair value of the factory assets	170

Required:

- Determine the amount of impairment loss Illumination should recognize, if any.
- If a loss is indicated, prepare the journal entry to record the loss.
- Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the estimated undiscounted future cash flows are \$270 million instead of \$230 million.

Solution:

- Determine the amount of impairment loss Illumination should recognize, if any.

Recoverability Test: Because the book value of \$260 (\$345 – 85) million exceeds the \$230 million undiscounted future cash flows, an impairment loss is indicated.

Measurement: The impairment loss is \$90 million, determined as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
Book value	\$260
Less: Fair value	170
Impairment loss	<u>\$ 90</u>

- If a loss is indicated, prepare the journal entry to record the loss.

	(\$ in millions)
Loss on impairment (determined above).....	90
Accumulated depreciation (balance).....	85
Factory assets (\$345 – 170).....	175

- Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the estimated undiscounted future cash flows are \$270 million instead of \$230 million.

Because the undiscounted sum of future cash flows of \$270 million exceeds book value of \$260 million, the recoverability test indicates that there is no impairment, so no impairment loss is recorded.

Part B:

In 2016, Illumination Inc. acquired Zapo Lighting Company for \$620 million, of which \$80 million was allocated to goodwill. After the acquisition, Zapo continues to operate a separate company and is considered a reporting unit. At the end of 2018, management provided the following information for a required goodwill impairment test (\$ in millions):

Fair value of Zapo Lighting	\$540
Fair value of Zapo's net assets (excluding goodwill)	510
Book value of Zapo's net assets (including goodwill)	600

Required:

Determine the amount of goodwill impairment loss that Illumination should recognize at the end of 2018, if any.

Solution:

Recoverability Test: Because the book value of the net assets of \$600 million exceeds the \$540 million fair value of the reporting unit, an impairment loss is indicated.

Measurement: The impairment loss is \$50 million, determined as follows:

Determination of implied fair value of goodwill:	(\$ in millions)
Fair value of Zapo	\$540
Fair value of Zapo's net assets (excluding goodwill)	510
Implied fair value of goodwill	<u>\$ 30</u>
Measurement of impairment loss:	
Book value of goodwill	\$ 80
Implied fair value of goodwill	30
Impairment loss	<u>\$ 50</u>

PART C

Subsequent Expenditures

Now that we have acquired and measured assets, we can address accounting issues incurred subsequent to their acquisition. This part of the chapter deals with the treatment of expenditures made over the life of these assets to maintain and/or improve them.

Expenditures Subsequent to Acquisition

LO11-9

Many long-lived assets require expenditures to repair, maintain, or improve them after their acquisition. These expenditures can present accounting problems if they are material. In general, a choice must be made between capitalizing the expenditures by either increasing the asset's book value or creating a new asset, or expensing them in the period in which they are incurred. Typically, we capitalize expenditures that are expected to produce benefits beyond the current fiscal year. In contrast, expenditures that simply maintain a given level of benefits are expensed in the period they are incurred.

Expenditures related to assets can increase future benefits in the following ways:

1. An extension of the *useful life* of the asset
2. An increase in the *operating efficiency* of the asset resulting in either an increase in the quantity of goods or services produced or a decrease in future operating costs
3. An increase in the *quality* of the goods or services produced by the asset

Expenditures that cause any of these results should be capitalized initially and then expensed in future periods through depreciation, depletion, or amortization. Of course, materiality is an important factor in the practical application of this approach.

For convenience, many companies set materiality thresholds for the capitalization of any expenditure. For example, a company might decide to expense all expenditures under \$1,000 regardless of whether or not future benefits are increased. Judgment is required to determine the appropriate materiality threshold as well as the appropriate treatment of expenditures over \$1,000. There often are practical problems in capitalizing these expenditures. For example, even if future benefits are increased by the expenditure, it may be difficult to determine how long the benefits will last. It's important for a company to establish a policy for treating these expenditures and apply it consistently.

We classify subsequent expenditures as (1) repairs and maintenance, (2) additions, (3) improvements, or (4) rearrangements.

Many companies do not capitalize any expenditure unless it exceeds a predetermined amount that is considered material.

Repairs and Maintenance

These expenditures are made to *maintain* a given level of benefits provided by the asset and do not *increase* future benefits. For example, the cost of an engine tune-up or the repair of an engine part for a delivery truck allows the truck to continue its productive activity. If the maintenance is not performed, the truck will not provide the benefits originally anticipated. In that sense, future benefits are provided; without the repair, the truck will no longer operate. The key, though, is that future benefits are not provided *beyond those originally anticipated*. Expenditures for these activities should be expensed in the period incurred.

Expenditures for repairs and maintenance generally are expensed when incurred.

Additional Consideration

If repairs and maintenance costs are seasonal, interim financial statements may be misstated. For example, suppose annual maintenance is performed on a company's fleet of delivery trucks. The annual income statement correctly includes one year's maintenance expense. However, for interim reporting purposes, if the entire expenditure is made in one quarter, should that quarter's income statement include as expense the entire cost of the annual maintenance? If these expenditures can be anticipated, they should be accrued evenly throughout the year by crediting an allowance account. The allowance account is then debited when the maintenance is performed.

Additions

As the term implies, **additions** involve adding a new major component to an existing asset and should be capitalized because future benefits are increased. For example, adding a refrigeration unit to a delivery truck increases the capability of the truck, thus increasing its future benefits. Other examples include the construction of a new wing on a building and the addition of a security system to an existing building.

The capitalized cost includes all necessary expenditures to bring the addition to a condition and location for use. For a building addition, this might include the costs of tearing down and removing a wall of the existing building. The capitalized cost of additions is depreciated over the remaining useful life of the original asset or its own useful life, whichever is shorter.

The costs of additions usually are capitalized.

Improvements

Expenditures classified as **improvements** involve the replacement of a major component of an asset. The replacement can be a new component with the same characteristics as the old component or a new component with enhanced operating capabilities. For example, an existing refrigeration unit in a delivery truck could be replaced with a new but similar unit or with a new and improved refrigeration unit. In either case, the cost of the improvement usually increases future benefits and should be capitalized by increasing the book value of the related asset (the delivery truck) and depreciated over the useful life of the improved asset. There are three methods used to record the cost of improvements.

The costs of improvements usually are capitalized.

1. *Substitution.* The improvement can be recorded as both (1) a disposition of the old component and (2) the acquisition of the new component. This approach is conceptually appealing but it is practical only if the original cost and accumulated depreciation of the old component can be separately identified.
2. *Capitalization of new cost.* Another way to record an improvement is to include the cost of the improvement (net of any consideration received from the disposition of the old component) as a debit to the related asset account, without removing the original cost and accumulated depreciation of the original component. This approach is acceptable only if the book value of the original component has been reduced to an immaterial amount through prior depreciation.
3. *Reduction of accumulated depreciation.* Another way to increase an asset's book value is to leave the asset account unaltered but decrease its related accumulated depreciation. The argument for this method is that many improvements extend the useful life of an asset and are equivalent to a partial recovery of previously recorded depreciation. This approach produces the same book value as the capitalization of cost to the asset account. However, cost and accumulated depreciation amounts will differ under the two methods.

The three methods are compared in Illustration 11–26.

Illustration 11–26

Improvements

1. Substitution

(a) Disposition of old component

(b) Acquisition of new component.

2. Capitalization of new cost.

3. Reduction of accumulated depreciation.

The Palmer Corporation replaced the air conditioning system in one of its office buildings that it leases to tenants. The cost of the old air conditioning system, \$200,000, is included in the cost of the building. However, the company has separately depreciated the air conditioning system. Depreciation recorded up to the date of replacement totaled \$160,000. The old system was removed and the new system installed at a cost of \$230,000, which was paid in cash. Parts from the old system were sold for \$12,000.

Accounting for the improvement differs depending on the alternative chosen.

Alternative 1—Substitution

Cash	12,000	
Accumulated depreciation—buildings (remove old)	160,000	
Loss on disposal (difference)	28,000	
Buildings (remove old)		200,000

Buildings (add new)	230,000	
Cash		230,000

Alternative 2—Capitalization of new cost

Buildings	218,000	
Cash (\$230,000 – 12,000)		218,000

Alternative 3—Reduction of accumulated depreciation

Accumulated depreciation—buildings	218,000	
Cash (\$230,000 – 12,000)		218,000

Rearrangements

The costs of material rearrangements should be capitalized if they clearly increase future benefits.

Expenditures made to restructure an asset without addition, replacement, or improvement are termed **rearrangements**. The objective is to create a new capability for the asset and not necessarily to extend its useful life. Examples include the rearrangement of machinery on the production line to increase operational efficiency and the relocation of a company's operating plant or office building. If these expenditures are material and they clearly increase future benefits, they should be capitalized and expensed in the future periods benefited. If the expenditures are not material or if it's not certain that future benefits have increased, they should be expensed in the period incurred.

Illustration 11–27 provides a summary of the accounting treatment for the various types of expenditures related to property, plant, and equipment.

Type of Expenditure	Definition	Usual Accounting Treatment
Repairs and maintenance	Expenditures to maintain a given level of benefits	Expense in the period incurred
Additions	The addition of a new major component to an existing asset	Capitalize and depreciate over the remaining useful life of the <i>original asset or its own useful</i> life, whichever is shorter
Improvements	The replacement of a major component	Capitalize and depreciate over the useful life of the improved asset
Rearrangements	Expenditures to restructure an asset without addition, replacement, or improvement	If expenditures are material and clearly increase future benefits, capitalize and depreciate over the future periods benefited

Illustration 11-27

Expenditures Subsequent to Acquisition

Costs of Defending Intangible Rights

Repairs, additions, improvements, and rearrangements generally relate to property, plant, and equipment. A possible significant expenditure incurred subsequent to the acquisition of intangible assets is the cost of defending the right that gives the intangible asset its value. If an intangible right is *successfully* defended, the litigation costs should be capitalized and amortized over the remaining useful life of the related intangible. This is the appropriate treatment of these expenditures even if the intangible asset was originally developed internally rather than purchased.

If the defense of an intangible right is *unsuccessful*, then the intangible asset has no future value. In this case, the litigation costs provide no future benefit and should be expensed immediately. In addition, the book value of the intangible asset should be reduced to realizable value. For example, if a company is unsuccessful in defending a patent infringement suit, the patent's value may be eliminated and a loss recorded.

The costs incurred to *successfully* defend an intangible right should be capitalized.

The costs incurred to *unsuccessfully* defend an intangible right should be expensed.

International Financial Reporting Standards

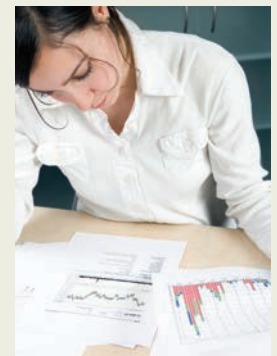
Costs of Defending Intangible Rights. Under U.S. GAAP, litigation costs to successfully defend an intangible right are capitalized and amortized over the remaining useful life of the related intangible. Under IFRS, these costs are expensed, except in rare situations when an expenditure increases future benefits.²⁴



LO11-10

Financial Reporting Case Solution

1. **Is Penny correct? Do the terms *depreciation*, *depletion*, and *amortization* all mean the same thing?** (p. 576) Penny is correct. Each of these terms refers to the cost allocation of assets over their service lives. The term *depreciation* is used for plant and equipment, *depletion* for natural resources, and *amortization* for intangible assets.
2. **Weyerhaeuser determines depletion based on the “volume of timber estimated to be available.” Explain this approach.** (p. 581) **Weyerhaeuser** is using the units-of-production method to determine depletion. The units-of-production method is an activity-based method that computes a depletion (or depreciation or amortization) rate per measure of activity and then multiplies this rate by actual activity to determine periodic cost allocation. The method is used by Weyerhaeuser to measure depletion of the cost of timber harvested and the amortization of logging roads. Logging roads are intangible assets because the company does not own the roads.



© fStop/Getty Images

²⁴“Intangible Assets,” *International Accounting Standard No. 38* (IASCF), par. 20, as amended effective January 1, 2016.

3. **Explain how asset impairment differs from depreciation, depletion, and amortization. How do companies measure impairment losses for property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets with finite useful lives?** (p. 602) Depreciation, depletion, and amortization reflect a gradual consumption of the benefits inherent in a long-lived asset. An implicit assumption in allocating the cost of an asset over its useful life is that there has been no significant reduction in the anticipated total benefits or service potential of the asset. Situations can arise, however, that cause a significant decline or *impairment* of those benefits or service potentials. Determining whether to record an impairment loss for an asset and actually recording the loss is a two-step process. The first step is a recoverability test—an impairment loss is required only when the undiscounted sum of estimated future cash flows from an asset is less than the asset's book value. The measurement of impairment loss—Step 2—is the difference between the asset's book value and its fair value. If an impairment loss is recognized, the written-down book value becomes the new cost base for future cost allocation. ●

The Bottom Line

- LO11-1 The use of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets represents a consumption of benefits, or service potentials, inherent in the assets. The cost of these inherent benefits or service potentials should be recognized as an expense over the periods they help to produce revenues. As there very seldom is a direct relationship between the use of assets and revenue production, accounting resorts to arbitrary methods to allocate these costs over the periods of their use. (p. 575)
- LO11-2 The allocation process for plant and equipment is called *depreciation*. Time-based depreciation methods estimate service life in years and then allocate depreciable base, cost less estimated residual value, using either a straight-line or accelerated pattern. Activity-based depreciation methods allocate the depreciable base by estimating service life according to some measure of productivity. When an item of property, plant, and equipment or an intangible asset is sold, a gain or loss is recognized for the difference between the consideration received and the asset's book value. (p. 578)
- LO11-3 The allocation process for natural resources is called *depletion*. The activity-based method called units-of-production usually is employed to determine periodic depletion. (p. 591)
- LO11-4 The allocation process for intangible assets is called *amortization*. For an intangible asset with a finite useful life, the capitalized cost less any estimated residual value must be allocated to periods in which the asset is expected to contribute to the company's revenue-generating activities. An intangible asset that is determined to have an indefinite useful life is not subject to periodic amortization. Goodwill is perhaps the most typical intangible asset with an indefinite useful life. (p. 593)
- LO11-5 A change in either the service life or residual value of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets should be reflected in the financial statements of the current period and future periods by recalculating periodic depreciation, depletion, or amortization. (p. 599)
- LO11-6 A change in depreciation, depletion, or amortization method is considered a change in accounting estimate that is achieved by a change in accounting principle. We account for these changes prospectively, exactly as we would any other change in estimate. One difference is that most changes in estimate do not require a company to justify the change. However, this change in estimate is a result of changing an accounting principle and therefore requires a clear justification as to why the new method is preferable. (p. 600)
- LO11-7 A material error in accounting for property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets that is discovered in a year subsequent to the year of the error requires that previous years' financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the error are retrospectively restated to reflect the correction. Any account balances that are incorrect as a result of the error are corrected by journal entry. If retained earnings is one of the incorrect accounts, the correction is reported as a prior period adjustment to the beginning balance in the statement of shareholders' equity. In addition, a disclosure note is needed to describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on income. (p. 601)
- LO11-8 Conceptually, there is considerable merit for a policy requiring the write-down of an asset when there has been a *significant* decline in value below book value. The write-down provides important information

about the future cash flows to be generated from the use of the asset. However, in practice this policy is very subjective. GAAP [FASB ASC 360] establishes guidance for when to recognize and how to measure impairment losses of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets that have finite useful lives. GAAP [FASB ASC 350] also provides guidance for the recognition and measurement of impairment for indefinite-life intangibles and goodwill. (p. 603)

- **LO11-9** Expenditures for repairs and maintenance generally are expensed when incurred. The costs of additions and improvements usually are capitalized. The costs of material rearrangements should be capitalized if they clearly increase future benefits. (p. 614)
- **LO11-10** Among the several differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to the utilization and impairment of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets pertains to reporting assets in the balance sheet. IFRS allows a company to value property, plant, and equipment (PP&E) and intangible assets subsequent to initial valuation at (1) cost less accumulated depreciation/amortization or (2) fair value (revaluation). U.S. GAAP prohibits revaluation. There also are significant differences in accounting for the impairment of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets. (pp. 584, 589, 593, 596, 605, 607, 611, and 617) ●

Comparison with MACRS (Tax Depreciation)

APPENDIX 11A

Depreciation for financial reporting purposes is an attempt to distribute the cost of the asset, less any anticipated residual value, over the estimated useful life in a systematic and rational manner that attempts to match revenues with the use of the asset. Depreciation for income tax purposes is influenced by the revenue needs of government as well as the desire to influence economic behavior. For example, accelerated depreciation schedules currently allowed are intended to provide incentive for companies to expand and modernize their facilities thus stimulating economic growth.

The federal income tax code allows taxpayers to compute depreciation for their tax returns on assets acquired after 1986 using the **modified accelerated cost recovery system (MACRS)**.²⁵ Key differences between the calculation of depreciation for financial reporting and the calculation using MACRS are:

1. Estimated useful lives and residual values are not used in MACRS.
2. Firms can't choose among various accelerated methods under MACRS.
3. A half-year convention is used in determining the MACRS depreciation amounts.

Under MACRS, each asset generally is placed within a recovery period category. The six categories for personal property are 3, 5, 7, 10, 15, and 20 years. For example, the 5-year category includes automobiles, light trucks, and computers.

Depending on the category, fixed percentage rates are applied to the original cost of the asset. The rates for the 5-year asset category are as follows:

Year	Rate
1	20.00%
2	32.00
3	19.20
4	11.52
5	11.52
6	5.76
Total	<u>100.00%</u>

These rates are equivalent to applying the double-declining-balance method with a switch to straight-line in the year straight-line yields an equal or higher deduction than DDB. In most cases, the half-year convention is used regardless of when the asset is placed in service.²⁶ The first-year rate of 20% for the five-year category is one-half of the DDB rate for an asset with a five-year life ($2 \times 20\%$). The sixth year rate of 5.76% is one-half of

²⁵For assets acquired between 1981 and 1986, tax depreciation is calculated using the accelerated cost recovery system (ACRS), which is similar to MACRS. For assets acquired before 1981, tax depreciation can be calculated using any of the depreciation methods discussed in the chapter. Residual values are used in the calculation of depreciation for pre-1981 assets.

²⁶In certain situations, mid-quarter and mid-month conventions are used.

the straight-line rate established in year 4, the year straight-line depreciation exceeds DDB depreciation.

Companies have the option to use the straight-line method for the entire tax life of the asset, applying the half-year convention, rather than using MACRS depreciation schedules. Because of the differences discussed above, tax depreciation for a given year will likely be different from GAAP depreciation. ●

APPENDIX 11B

Retirement and Replacement Methods of Depreciation

The retirement depreciation method records depreciation when assets are disposed of and measures depreciation as the difference between the proceeds received and cost.

Retirement and **replacement** depreciation methods occasionally are used to depreciate relatively low-valued assets with short service lives. Under either approach, an aggregate asset account that represents a group of similar assets is increased at the time the initial collection is acquired.

Retirement Method

Using the **retirement depreciation method**, the asset account also is increased for the cost of subsequent expenditures. When an item is disposed of, the asset account is credited for its cost, and depreciation expense is recorded for the difference between cost and proceeds received, if any. No other entries are made for depreciation. As a consequence, one or more periods may pass without any expense recorded. For example, the following entry records the purchase of 100 handheld calculators at \$50 acquisition cost each:

Calculators (100 × \$50).....	5,000	
Cash		5,000
To record the acquisition of calculators		

If 20 new calculators are acquired at \$45 each, the asset account is increased.

Calculators (20 × \$45)	900	
Cash		900
To record additional calculator acquisitions		

Thirty calculators are disposed of (retired) by selling them secondhand to a bookkeeping firm for \$5 each. The following entry reflects the retirement method:

Cash (30 × \$5).....	150	
Depreciation expense (difference)	1,350	
Calculators (30 × \$50).....		1,500
To record the sale/depreciation of calculators		

Notice that the retirement system assumes a FIFO cost flow approach in determining the cost of assets, \$50 each, that were disposed.

Replacement Method

By the replacement method, depreciation is recorded when assets are replaced.

By the **replacement depreciation method**, the initial acquisition of assets is recorded the same way as by the retirement method; that is, the aggregate cost is increased. However, depreciation expense is the amount paid for new or replacement assets. Any proceeds received from asset dispositions reduces depreciation expense. For our example, the acquisition of 20 new calculators at \$45 each is recorded as depreciation as follows:

Depreciation expense (20 × \$45).....	900	
Cash.....		900
To record the replacement/depreciation of calculators		





The sale of the old calculators is recorded as a reduction of depreciation:

Cash (30 × \$5).....	150	
Depreciation expense		150
<i>To record the sale of calculators</i>		

The asset account balance remains the same throughout the life of the aggregate collection of assets.

Because these methods are likely to produce aggregate expense measurements that differ from individual calculations, retirement and replacement methods are acceptable only in situations where the distortion in depreciation expense does not have a material effect on income. These methods occasionally are encountered in regulated industries such as utilities. ●

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 11-1** Explain the similarities in and differences among depreciation, depletion, and amortization.
- Q 11-2** Depreciation is a process of cost allocation, not valuation. Explain this statement.
- Q 11-3** Identify and define the three characteristics of an asset that must be established to determine periodic depreciation, depletion, or amortization.
- Q 11-4** Discuss the factors that influence the estimation of service life for a depreciable asset.
- Q 11-5** What is meant by depreciable base? How is it determined?
- Q 11-6** Briefly differentiate between activity-based and time-based allocation methods.
- Q 11-7** Briefly differentiate between the straight-line depreciation method and accelerated depreciation methods.
- Q 11-8** Why are time-based depreciation methods used more frequently than activity-based methods?
- Q 11-9** What are some factors that could explain the predominant use of the straight-line depreciation method?
- Q 11-10** When an item of property, plant, and equipment is disposed of, how is gain or loss on disposal computed?
- Q 11-11** Briefly explain the differences and similarities between the group approach and composite approach to depreciating aggregate assets.
- Q 11-12** Define depletion and compare it with depreciation.
- Q 11-13** Compare and contrast amortization of intangible assets with depreciation and depletion.
- Q 11-14** What are some of the simplifying conventions a company can use to calculate depreciation for partial years?
- Q 11-15** Explain the accounting treatment required when a change is made to the estimated service life of a machine.
- Q 11-16** Explain the accounting treatment and disclosures required when a change is made in depreciation method.
- Q 11-17** Explain the steps required to correct an error in accounting for property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets that is discovered in a year subsequent to the year the error was made.
- Q 11-18** Explain what is meant by the impairment of the value of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets. How should these impairments be accounted for?
- Q 11-19** Explain the differences in the accounting treatment of repairs and maintenance, additions, improvements, and rearrangements.
-  **IFRS Q 11-20** Identify any differences between U.S. GAAP and International Financial Reporting Standards in the subsequent valuation of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets.
-  **IFRS Q 11-21** Briefly explain the difference between U.S. GAAP and IFRS in the *measurement* of an impairment loss for property, plant, and equipment and finite-life intangible assets.
-  **IFRS Q 11-22** Briefly explain the differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS in the measurement of an impairment loss for goodwill.
-  **IFRS Q 11-23** Under U.S. GAAP, litigation costs to successfully defend an intangible right are capitalized and amortized over the remaining useful life of the related intangible. How are these costs typically accounted for under IFRS?

Brief Exercises

BE 11-1

Cost allocation

● LO11-1

At the beginning of its fiscal year, Koeplin Corporation purchased a machine for \$50,000. At the end of the year, the machine had a fair value of \$32,000. Koeplin's controller recorded depreciation of \$18,000 for the year, the decline in the machine's value. Why is this an incorrect approach to measuring periodic depreciation?

- BE 11-2**
Depreciation methods
● LO11-2
- On January 1, 2018, Canseco Plumbing Fixtures purchased equipment for \$30,000. Residual value at the end of an estimated four-year service life is expected to be \$2,000. The company expects the machine to operate for 10,000 hours. Calculate depreciation expense for 2018 and 2019 using each of the following depreciation methods: (a) straight line, (b) sum-of-the-years'-digits, (c) double-declining balance, and (d) units-of-production using machine hours. The machine operated for 2,200 and 3,000 hours in 2018 and 2019, respectively.
- BE 11-3**
Depreciation methods; partial periods
● LO11-2
- Refer to the situation described in BE 11-2. Assume the machine was purchased on March 31, 2018, instead of January 1. Calculate depreciation expense for 2018 and 2019 using each of the following depreciation methods: (a) straight line, (b) sum-of-the-years'-digits, and (c) double-declining balance.
- BE 11-4**
Disposal of property, plant, and equipment
● LO11-2
- Lawler Clothing sold manufacturing equipment for \$16,000. Lawler originally purchased the equipment for \$80,000, and depreciation through the date of sale totaled \$71,000. What was the gain or loss on the sale of the equipment?
- BE 11-5**
Disposal of property, plant, and equipment
● LO11-2
- Funseth Farms Inc. purchased a tractor in 2015 at a cost of \$30,000. The tractor was sold for \$3,000 in 2018. Depreciation recorded through the disposal date totaled \$26,000. Prepare the journal entry to record the sale. Now assume the tractor was sold for \$10,000; prepare the journal entry to record the sale.
- BE 11-6**
Disposal of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets
● LO11-2
- On July 15, 2018, Cottonwood Industries sold a patent and equipment to Roquemore Corporation for \$750,000 and \$325,000, respectively. The book value of the patent and equipment on the date of sale were \$120,000 and \$400,000 (cost of \$550,000 less accumulated depreciation of \$150,000), respectively. Prepare the journal entries to record the sales of the patent and equipment.
- BE 11-7**
Group depreciation; disposal
● LO11-2
- Mondale Winery depreciates its equipment using the group method. The cost of equipment purchased in 2018 totaled \$425,000. The estimated residual value of the equipment was \$40,000 and the group depreciation rate was determined to be 18%. What is the annual depreciation for the group? If equipment that cost \$42,000 is sold in 2019 for \$35,000, what amount of gain or loss will the company recognize for the sale?
- BE 11-8**
Depletion
● LO11-3
- Fitzgerald Oil and Gas incurred costs of \$8.25 million for the acquisition and development of a natural gas deposit. The company expects to extract 3 million cubic feet of natural gas during a four-year period. Natural gas extracted during years 1 and 2 were 700,000 and 800,000 cubic feet, respectively. What was the depletion for year 1 and year 2?
- BE 11-9**
Amortization; Partial periods
● LO11-4
- On June 28 Lexicon Corporation acquired 100% of the common stock of Gulf & Eastern. The purchase price allocation included the following items: \$4 million, patent; \$3 million, developed technology; \$2 million, in-process research and development; \$5 million, goodwill. Lexicon's policy is to amortize intangible assets using the straight-line method, no residual value, and a five-year useful life. What is the total amount of expenses (ignoring taxes) that would appear in Lexicon's income statement for the year ended December 31 related to these items?
- BE 11-10**
Change in estimate; useful life of equipment
● LO11-5
- At the beginning of 2016, Robotics Inc. acquired a manufacturing facility for \$12 million. \$9 million of the purchase price was allocated to the building. Depreciation for 2016 and 2017 was calculated using the straight-line method, a 25-year useful life, and a \$1 million residual value. In 2018, the estimates of useful life and residual value were changed to 20 years and \$500,000, respectively. What is depreciation on the building for 2018?
- BE 11-11**
Change in principle; change in depreciation method
● LO11-6
- Refer to the situation described in BE 11-10. Assume that instead of changing the useful life and residual value, in 2018 the company switched to the double-declining-balance depreciation method. How should Robotics account for the change? What is depreciation on the building for 2018?
- BE 11-12**
Error correction
● LO11-7
- Refer to the situation described in BE 11-10. Assume that 2016 depreciation was incorrectly recorded as \$32,000. This error was discovered in 2018. How should Robotics account for the error? What is depreciation on the building for 2018 assuming no change in estimate of useful life or residual value?

BE 11-13

Impairment;
property, plant,
and equipment

● LO11-8

Collison and Ryder Company (C&R) has been experiencing declining market conditions for its sportswear division. Management decided to test the assets of the division for possible impairment. The test revealed the following: book value of division's assets, \$26.5 million; fair value of division's assets, \$21 million; sum of estimated future cash flows generated from the division's assets, \$28 million. What amount of impairment loss should C&R recognize?

BE 11-14

Impairment;
property, plant,
and equipment

● LO11-8

Refer to the situation described in BE 11-13. Assume that the sum of estimated future cash flows is \$24 million instead of \$28 million. What amount of impairment loss should C&R recognize?

BE 11-15

IFRS; impairment;
property, plant,
and equipment

● LO11-8, LO11-10

Refer to the situation described in BE 11-13. Assume that the present value of the estimated future cash flows generated from the division's assets is \$22 million and that their fair value approximates fair value less costs to sell. What amount of impairment loss should C&R recognize if the company prepares its financial statements according to IFRS?



IFRS

BE 11-16

Impairment;
goodwill

● LO11-8

WebHelper Inc. acquired 100% of the outstanding stock of Silicon Chips Corporation (SCC) for \$45 million, of which \$15 million was allocated to goodwill. At the end of the current fiscal year, an impairment test revealed the following: fair value of SCC, \$40 million; fair value of SCC's net assets (excluding goodwill), \$31 million; book value of SCC's net assets (including goodwill), \$42 million. What amount of impairment loss should WebHelper recognize?

BE 11-17

Impairment;
goodwill

● LO11-8

Refer to the situation described in BE 11-16. Assume that the fair value of SCC is \$44 million instead of \$40 million. What amount of impairment loss should WebHelper recognize?

BE 11-18

IFRS; impairment;
goodwill

● LO11-10

Refer to the situation described in BE 11-16. Assume that SCC's fair value of \$40 million approximates fair value less costs to sell and that the present value of SCC's estimated future cash flows is \$41 million. If WebHelper prepares its financial statements according to IFRS and SCC is considered a cash-generating unit, what amount of impairment loss, if any, should WebHelper recognize?



IFRS

BE 11-19

Subsequent
expenditures

● LO11-9

Demmert Manufacturing incurred the following expenditures during the current fiscal year: annual maintenance on its machinery, \$5,400; remodeling of offices, \$22,000; rearrangement of the shipping and receiving area resulting in an increase in productivity, \$35,000; addition of a security system to the manufacturing facility, \$25,000. How should Demmert account for each of these expenditures?

Exercises

**E 11-1**

Depreciation
methods

● LO11-2

On January 1, 2018, the Excel Delivery Company purchased a delivery van for \$33,000. At the end of its five-year service life, it is estimated that the van will be worth \$3,000. During the five-year period, the company expects to drive the van 100,000 miles.

Required:

Calculate annual depreciation for the five-year life of the van using each of the following methods. Round all computations to the nearest dollar.

1. Straight line
2. Sum-of-the-years'-digits
3. Double-declining balance
4. Units of production using miles driven as a measure of output, and the following actual mileage:

Year	Miles
2018	22,000
2019	24,000
2020	15,000
2021	20,000
2022	21,000

E 11-2
Depreciation
methods

● LO11-2

On January 1, 2018, the Allegheny Corporation purchased machinery for \$115,000. The estimated service life of the machinery is 10 years and the estimated residual value is \$5,000. The machine is expected to produce 220,000 units during its life.

Required:

Calculate depreciation for 2018 and 2019 using each of the following methods. Round all computations to the nearest dollar.

1. Straight line
2. Sum-of-the-years'-digits
3. Double-declining balance
4. One hundred fifty percent declining balance
5. Units of production (units produced in 2018, 30,000; units produced in 2019, 25,000)

E 11-3
Depreciation
methods; partial
periods

● LO11-2

[This is a variation of Exercise 11-2 modified to focus on depreciation for partial years.]

On October 1, 2018, the Allegheny Corporation purchased machinery for \$115,000. The estimated service life of the machinery is 10 years and the estimated residual value is \$5,000. The machine is expected to produce 220,000 units during its life.

Required:

Calculate depreciation for 2018 and 2019 using each of the following methods. Partial-year depreciation is calculated based on the number of months the asset is in service. Round all computations to the nearest dollar.

1. Straight line
2. Sum-of-the-years'-digits
3. Double-declining balance
4. One hundred fifty percent declining balance
5. Units of production (units produced in 2018, 10,000; units produced in 2019, 25,000)

E 11-4
Depreciation
methods; asset
addition; partial
period

● LO11-2, LO11-9

Tristen Company purchased a five-story office building on January 1, 2016, at a cost of \$5,000,000. The building has a residual value of \$200,000 and a 30-year life. The straight-line depreciation method is used. On June 30, 2018, construction of a sixth floor was completed at a cost of \$1,650,000.

Required:

Calculate the depreciation on the building and building addition for 2018 and 2019 assuming that the addition did not change the life or residual value of the building.

E 11-5
Depreciation
methods; solving
for unknowns

● LO11-2

For each of the following depreciable assets, determine the missing amount (?). Abbreviations for depreciation methods are SL for straight line, SYD for sum-of-the-years'-digits, and DDB for double-declining balance.

Asset	Cost	Residual Value	Service Life (Years)	Depreciation Method	Depreciation (Year 2)
A	?	\$20,000	5	DDB	\$24,000
B	\$ 40,000	?	8	SYD	7,000
C	65,000	5,000	?	SL	6,000
D	230,000	10,000	10	?	22,000
E	200,000	20,000	8	150%DB	?

E 11-6
Depreciation
methods; partial
periods

● LO11-2

On April 30, 2018, Quality Appliances purchased equipment for \$260,000. The estimated service life of the equipment is six years and the estimated residual value is \$20,000. Quality's fiscal year ends on December 31.

Required:

Calculate depreciation for 2018 and 2019 using each of the three methods listed. Quality calculates partial year depreciation based on the number of months the asset is in service. Round all computations to the nearest dollar.

1. Straight-line
2. Sum-of-the-years'-digits
3. Double-declining balance

E 11-7
Depreciation
methods; partial
periods

● LO11-2

On March 31, 2018, Susquehanna Insurance purchased an office building for \$12,000,000. Based on their relative fair values, one-third of the purchase price was allocated to the land and two-thirds to the building. Furniture and fixtures were purchased separately from office equipment on the same date for \$1,200,000 and \$700,000, respectively. The company uses the straight-line method to depreciate its buildings and the double-declining-balance

method to depreciate all other depreciable assets. The estimated useful lives and residual values of these assets are as follows:

	Service Life	Residual Value
Building	30	10% of cost
Furniture and fixtures	10	10% of cost
Office equipment	5	\$30,000

Required:

Calculate depreciation for 2018 and 2019.

E 11-8

IFRS;
depreciation;
partial periods

● LO11-2, LO11-10



On June 30, 2018, Rosetta Granite purchased a machine for \$120,000. The estimated useful life of the machine is eight years and no residual value is anticipated. An important component of the machine is a specialized high-speed drill that will need to be replaced in four years. The \$20,000 cost of the drill is included in the \$120,000 cost of the machine. Rosetta uses the straight-line depreciation method for all machinery.

Required:

1. Calculate depreciation for 2018 and 2019 applying the typical U.S. GAAP treatment.
2. Repeat requirement 1 applying IFRS.

E 11-9

IFRS; revaluation
of machinery;
depreciation;
partial periods

● LO11-10



Dower Corporation prepares its financial statements according to IFRS. On March 31, 2018, the company purchased equipment for \$240,000. The equipment is expected to have a six-year useful life with no residual value. Dower uses the straight-line depreciation method for all equipment. On December 31, 2018, the end of the company's fiscal year, Dower chooses to revalue the equipment to its fair value of \$220,000.

Required:

1. Calculate depreciation for 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the revaluation of the equipment. Round calculations to the nearest thousand.
3. Calculate depreciation for 2019.
4. Repeat requirement 2 assuming that the fair value of the equipment at the end of 2018 is \$195,000.

E 11-10

Disposal of
property, plant,
and equipment

● LO11-2

Mercury Inc. purchased equipment in 2016 at a cost of \$400,000. The equipment was expected to produce 700,000 units over the next five years and have a residual value of \$50,000. The equipment was sold for \$210,000 part way through 2018. Actual production in each year was: 2016 = 100,000 units; 2017 = 160,000 units; 2018 = 80,000 units. Mercury uses units-of-production depreciation, and all depreciation has been recorded through the disposal date.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the sale.
2. Assuming that the equipment was sold for \$245,000, prepare the journal entry to record the sale.

E 11-11

Disposal of
property, plant,
and equipment;
partial periods

● LO11-2

On July 1, 2013, Farm Fresh Industries purchased a specialized delivery truck for \$126,000. At the time, Farm Fresh estimated the truck to have a useful life of eight years and a residual value of \$30,000. On March 1, 2018, the truck was sold for \$58,000. Farm Fresh uses the straight-line depreciation method for all of its plant and equipment. Partial-year depreciation is calculated based on the number of months the asset is in service.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to update depreciation in 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the sale of the truck.
3. Assuming that the truck was sold for \$80,000, prepare the journal entry to record the sale.

E 11-12

Depreciation
methods;
disposal; partial
periods

● LO11-2

Howarth Manufacturing Company purchased a lathe on June 30, 2014, at a cost of \$80,000. The residual value of the lathe was estimated to be \$5,000 at the end of a five-year life. The lathe was sold on March 31, 2018, for \$17,000. Howarth uses the straight-line depreciation method for all of its plant and equipment. Partial-year depreciation is calculated based on the number of months the asset is in service.

Required:

1. Prepare a schedule to calculate the gain or loss on the sale.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the sale.

3. Assuming that Howarth had instead used the sum-of-the-years'-digits depreciation method, prepare the journal entry to record the sale.

E 11-13
Group
depreciation
● LO11-2

Highsmith Rental Company purchased an apartment building early in 2018. There are 20 apartments in the building and each is furnished with major kitchen appliances. The company has decided to use the group depreciation method for the appliances. The following data are available:

Appliance	Cost	Residual Value	Service Life (in years)
Stoves	\$15,000	\$3,000	6
Refrigerators	10,000	1,000	5
Dishwashers	8,000	500	4

In 2021, three new refrigerators costing \$2,700 were purchased for cash. The old refrigerators, which originally cost \$1,500, were sold for \$200.

Required:

1. Calculate the group depreciation rate, group life, and depreciation for 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries to record the purchase of the new refrigerators and the sale of the old refrigerators.

E 11-14
Double-declining-
balance method;
switch to straight
line
● LO11-2, LO11-6

On January 2, 2018, the Jackson Company purchased equipment to be used in its manufacturing process. The equipment has an estimated life of eight years and an estimated residual value of \$30,625. The expenditures made to acquire the asset were as follows:

Purchase price	\$154,000
Freight charges	2,000
Installation charges	4,000

Jackson's policy is to use the double-declining-balance (DDB) method of depreciation in the early years of the equipment's life and then switch to straight line halfway through the equipment's life.

Required:

1. Calculate depreciation for each year of the asset's eight-year life.
2. Discuss the accounting treatment of the depreciation on the equipment.

E 11-15
Depletion
● LO11-3

On April 17, 2018, the Loadstone Mining Company purchased the rights to a coal mine. The purchase price plus additional costs necessary to prepare the mine for extraction of the coal totaled \$4,500,000. The company expects to extract 900,000 tons of coal during a four-year period. During 2018, 240,000 tons were extracted and sold immediately.

Required:

1. Calculate depletion for 2018.
2. Discuss the accounting treatment of the depletion calculated in requirement 1.

E 11-16
Depreciation and
depletion
● LO11-2, LO11-3

At the beginning of 2018, Terra Lumber Company purchased a timber tract from Boise Cantor for \$3,200,000. After the timber is cleared, the land will have a residual value of \$600,000. Roads to enable logging operations were constructed and completed on March 30, 2018. The cost of the roads, which have no residual value and no alternative use after the tract is cleared, was \$240,000. During 2018, Terra logged 500,000 of the estimated five million board feet of timber.

Required:

Calculate the 2018 depletion of the timber tract and depreciation of the logging roads assuming the units-of-production method is used for both assets.

E 11-17
Cost of a natural
resource;
depletion and
depreciation;
Chapters 10 and 11
● LO11-2, LO11-3

[This exercise is a continuation of Exercise 10-4 in Chapter 10 focusing on depletion and depreciation.]

Jackpot Mining Company operates a copper mine in central Montana. The company paid \$1,000,000 in 2018 for the mining site and spent an additional \$600,000 to prepare the mine for extraction of the copper. After the copper is extracted in approximately four years, the company is required to restore the land to its original condition, including repaving of roads and replacing a greenbelt. The company has provided the following three cash flow possibilities for the restoration costs:

	Cash Outflow	Probability
1	\$300,000	25%
2	400,000	40%
3	600,000	35%

To aid extraction, Jackpot purchased some new equipment on July 1, 2018, for \$120,000. After the copper is removed from this mine, the equipment will be sold for an estimated residual amount of \$20,000. There will be no residual value for the copper mine. The credit-adjusted risk-free rate of interest is 10%.

The company expects to extract 10 million pounds of copper from the mine. Actual production was 1.6 million pounds in 2018 and 3 million pounds in 2019.

Required:

1. Compute depletion and depreciation on the mine and mining equipment for 2018 and 2019. The units-of-production method is used to calculate depreciation.
2. Discuss the accounting treatment of the depletion and depreciation on the mine and mining equipment.

E 11-18

Amortization

● LO11-4, LO11-5

Janes Company provided the following information on intangible assets:

- a. A patent was purchased from the Lou Company for \$700,000 on January 1, 2016. Janes estimated the remaining useful life of the patent to be 10 years. The patent was carried on Lou's accounting records at a net book value of \$350,000 when Lou sold it to Janes.
- b. During 2018, a franchise was purchased from the Rink Company for \$500,000. The contractual life of the franchise is 10 years and Janes records a full year of amortization in the year of purchase.
- c. Janes incurred research and development costs in 2018 as follows:

Materials and supplies	\$140,000
Personnel	180,000
Indirect costs	60,000
Total	\$380,000

- d. Effective January 1, 2018, based on new events that have occurred, Janes estimates that the remaining life of the patent purchased from Lou is only five more years.

Required:

1. Prepare the entries necessary for years 2016 through 2018 to reflect the above information.
2. Prepare a schedule showing the intangible asset section of Janes's December 31, 2018, balance sheet.

E 11-19

Patent
amortization;
patent defense

● LO11-4, LO11-9

On January 2, 2018, David Corporation purchased a patent for \$500,000. The remaining legal life is 12 years, but the company estimated that the patent will be useful only for eight years. In January 2020, the company incurred legal fees of \$45,000 in successfully defending a patent infringement suit. The successful defense did not change the company's estimate of useful life.

Required:

Prepare journal entries related to the patent for 2018, 2019, and 2020.

E 11-20

Change in
estimate; useful
life of patent

● LO11-4, LO11-5

Van Frank Telecommunications has a patent on a cellular transmission process. The company has amortized the patent on a straight-line basis since 2014, when it was acquired at a cost of \$9 million at the beginning of that year. Due to rapid technological advances in the industry, management decided that the patent would benefit the company over a total of six years rather than the nine-year life being used to amortize its cost. The decision was made at the beginning of 2018.

Required:

Prepare the year-end journal entry for patent amortization in 2018. No amortization was recorded during the year.

E 11-21

IFRS; revaluation
of patent;
amortization

● LO11-10



IFRS

Saint John Corporation prepares its financial statements according to IFRS. On June 30, 2018, the company purchased a franchise for \$1,200,000. The franchise is expected to have a 10-year useful life with no residual value. Saint John uses the straight-line amortization method for all intangible assets. On December 31, 2018, the end of the company's fiscal year, Saint John chooses to revalue the franchise. There is an active market for this particular franchise and its fair value on December 31, 2018, is \$1,180,000.

Required:

1. Calculate amortization for 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the revaluation of the patent.
3. Calculate amortization for 2019.

E 11-22

Change in
estimate; useful life
and residual value
of equipment

● LO11-2, LO11-5

Wardell Company purchased a minicomputer on January 1, 2016, at a cost of \$40,000. The computer was depreciated using the straight-line method over an estimated five-year life with an estimated residual value of \$4,000. On January 1, 2018, the estimate of useful life was changed to a total of 10 years, and the estimate of residual value was changed to \$900.

Required:

1. Prepare the year-end journal entry for depreciation in 2018. No depreciation was recorded during the year.
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the company uses the sum-of-the-years'-digits method instead of the straight-line method.

E 11-23

Change in principle; change in depreciation methods

● LO11-2, LO11-6

Alteran Corporation purchased office equipment for \$1.5 million in 2015. The equipment is being depreciated over a 10-year life using the sum-of-the-years'-digits method. The residual value is expected to be \$300,000. At the beginning of 2018, Alteran decided to change to the straight-line depreciation method for this equipment.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry to record depreciation for 2018.

E 11-24

Change in principle; change in depreciation methods

● LO11-2, LO11-6

For financial reporting, Clinton Poultry Farms has used the declining-balance method of depreciation for conveyor equipment acquired at the beginning of 2015 for \$2,560,000. Its useful life was estimated to be six years, with a \$160,000 residual value. At the beginning of 2018, Clinton decides to change to the straight-line method. The effect of this change on depreciation for each year is as follows:

Year	(\$ in thousands)		
	Straight Line	Declining Balance	Difference
2015	\$ 400	\$ 853	\$453
2016	400	569	169
2017	400	379	(21)
	<u>\$1,200</u>	<u>\$1,801</u>	<u>\$601</u>

Required:

1. Briefly describe the way Clinton should report this accounting change in the 2016–2018 comparative financial statements.
2. Prepare any 2018 journal entry related to the change.

E 11-25

Error correction

● LO11-2, LO11-7

In 2018, internal auditors discovered that PKE Displays, Inc. had debited an expense account for the \$350,000 cost of equipment purchased on January 1, 2015. The equipment's life was expected to be five years with no residual value. Straight-line depreciation is used by PKE.

Required:

1. Prepare the correcting entry assuming the error was discovered in 2018 before the adjusting and closing entries. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Assume the error was discovered in 2020 after the 2019 financial statements are issued. Prepare the correcting entry.

E 11-26

Impairment; property, plant, and equipment

● LO11-8

Chadwick Enterprises, Inc. operates several restaurants throughout the Midwest. Three of its restaurants located in the center of a large urban area have experienced declining profits due to declining population. The company's management has decided to test the assets of the restaurants for possible impairment. The relevant information for these assets is presented below.

Book value	\$6.5 million
Estimated undiscounted sum of future cash flows	4.0 million
Fair value	3.5 million

Required:

1. Determine the amount of the impairment loss, if any.
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the estimated undiscounted sum of future cash flows is \$6.8 million and fair value is \$5 million.

E 11-27

IFRS; impairment; property, plant, and equipment

● LO11-10

Refer to the situation described in Exercise 11-26.

Required:

How might your solution differ if Chadwick Enterprises, Inc. prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards? Assume that the fair value amount given in the exercise equals both (a) the fair value less costs to sell and (b) the present value of estimated future cash flows.



IFRS

E 11-28

IFRS; Impairment; property, plant, and equipment

● LO11-8, LO11-10

Collinsworth LTD., a U.K. company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. Late in its 2018 fiscal year, a significant adverse change in business climate indicated to management that the assets of its appliance division may be impaired. The following data relate to the division's assets:



IFRS

	(£ in millions)
Book value	£220
Undiscounted sum of estimated future cash flows	210
Present value of future cash flows	150
Fair value less cost to sell (determined by appraisal)	145

Required:

1. What amount of impairment loss, if any, should Collinsworth recognize?
2. Assume that Collinsworth prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP and that fair value less cost to sell approximates fair value. What amount of impairment loss, if any, should Collinsworth recognize?

E 11-29

Impairment;
property, plant,
and equipment

● LO11-8

General Optic Corporation operates a manufacturing plant in Arizona. Due to a significant decline in demand for the product manufactured at the Arizona site, an impairment test is deemed appropriate. Management has acquired the following information for the assets at the plant:

Cost	\$ 32,500,000
Accumulated depreciation	14,200,000
General's estimate of the total cash flows to be generated by selling the products manufactured at its Arizona plant, not discounted to present value	15,000,000

The fair value of the Arizona plant is estimated to be \$11,000,000.

Required:

1. Determine the amount of impairment loss, if any.
2. If a loss is indicated, where would it appear in General Optic's multiple-step income statement?
3. If a loss is indicated, prepare the entry to record the loss.
4. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the estimated undiscounted sum of future cash flows is \$12,000,000 instead of \$15,000,000.
5. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the estimated undiscounted sum of future cash flows is \$19,000,000 instead of \$15,000,000.

E 11-30

Impairment;
goodwill

● LO11-8

In 2016, Alliant Corporation acquired Centerpoint, Inc. for \$300 million, of which \$50 million was allocated to goodwill. At the end of 2018, management has provided the following information for a required goodwill impairment test:

Fair value of Centerpoint, Inc.	\$220 million
Fair value of Centerpoint's net assets (excluding goodwill)	200 million
Book value of Centerpoint's net assets (including goodwill)	250 million

Required:

1. Determine the amount of the impairment loss.
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the fair value of Centerpoint is \$270 million.

E 11-31

IFRS; impairment;
goodwill

● LO11-10



Refer to the situation described in E 11-30, requirement 1. Alliant prepares its financial statements according to IFRS, and Centerpoint is considered a cash-generating unit. Assume that Centerpoint's fair value of \$220 million approximates fair value less costs to sell and that the present value of Centerpoint's estimated future cash flows is \$225 million.

Required:

Determine the amount of goodwill impairment loss Alliant should recognize.

E 11-32

Goodwill valuation
and impairment;
Chapters 10 and 11

● LO11-8

On May 28, 2018, Pesky Corporation acquired all of the outstanding common stock of Harman, Inc. for \$420 million. The fair value of Harman's identifiable tangible and intangible assets totaled \$512 million, and the fair value of liabilities assumed by Pesky was \$150 million.

Pesky performed a goodwill impairment test at the end of its fiscal year ended December 31, 2018. Management has provided the following information:

Fair value of Harman, Inc.	\$400 million
Fair value of Harman's net assets (excluding goodwill)	370 million
Book value of Harman's net assets (including goodwill)	410 million

Required:

1. Determine the amount of goodwill that resulted from the Harman acquisition.
2. Determine the amount of goodwill impairment loss that Pesky should recognize at the end of 2018, if any.
3. If an impairment loss is required, prepare the journal entry to record the loss.

E 11-33

FASB codification research

- LO11-8



The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on the impairment or disposal of long-lived assets using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Indicate the Codification topic number that provides guidance on accounting for the impairment of long-lived assets.
2. What is the specific citation that discusses the disclosures required in the notes to the financial statements for the impairment of long-lived assets classified as held and used?
3. Describe the disclosure requirements.

E 11-34

FASB codification research

- LO11-2, LO11-1, LO11-6, LO11-8



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for each of the following items:

1. Depreciation involves a systematic and rational allocation of cost rather than a process of valuation
2. The calculation of an impairment loss for property, plant, and equipment
3. Accounting for a change in depreciation method
4. Goodwill should not be amortized

E 11-35

Subsequent expenditures

- LO11-9

Belltone Company made the following expenditures related to its 10-year-old manufacturing facility:

1. The heating system was replaced at a cost of \$250,000. The cost of the old system was not known. The company accounts for improvements as reductions of accumulated depreciation.
2. A new wing was added at a cost of \$750,000. The new wing substantially increases the productive capacity of the plant.
3. Annual building maintenance was performed at a cost of \$14,000.
4. All of the equipment on the assembly line in the plant was rearranged at a cost of \$50,000. The rearrangement clearly increases the productive capacity of the plant.

Required:

Prepare journal entries to record each of the above expenditures.

E 11-36

IFRS; amortization; cost to defend a patent

- LO11-4, LO11-9, LO11-10



On September 30, 2016, Leeds LTD. acquired a patent in conjunction with the purchase of another company. The patent, valued at \$6 million, was estimated to have a 10-year life and no residual value. Leeds uses the straight-line method of amortization for intangible assets. At the beginning of January 2018, Leeds successfully defended its patent against infringement. Litigation costs totaled \$500,000.

Required:

1. Calculate amortization of the patent for 2016 and 2017.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the 2018 litigation costs.
3. Calculate amortization for 2018.
4. Repeat requirements 2 and 3 assuming that Leeds prepares its financial statements according to IFRS.

E 11-37

Concepts; terminology

- LO11-1 through LO11-6, LO11-8

Listed below are several items and phrases associated with depreciation, depletion, and amortization. Pair each item from List A with the item from List B (by letter) that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. Depreciation	a. Cost allocation for natural resource
_____ 2. Service life	b. Accounted for prospectively
_____ 3. Depreciable base	c. When there has been a significant decline in value
_____ 4. Activity-based methods	d. The amount of use expected from plant and equipment and finite-life intangible assets
_____ 5. Time-based methods	e. Estimates service life in units of output
_____ 6. Double-declining balance	f. Cost less residual value
_____ 7. Group method	g. Cost allocation for plant and equipment
_____ 8. Composite method	h. Does not subtract residual value from cost
_____ 9. Depletion	i. Accounted for in the same way as a change in estimate
_____ 10. Amortization	j. Aggregates assets that are similar
_____ 11. Change in useful life	k. Aggregates assets that are physically unified
_____ 12. Change in depreciation method	l. Cost allocation for an intangible asset
_____ 13. Write-down of asset	m. Estimates service life in years

E 11-38

Retirement and replacement depreciation

- Appendix B

Cadillac Construction Company uses the retirement method to determine depreciation on its small tools. During 2016, the first year of the company's operations, tools were purchased at a cost of \$8,000. In 2018, tools originally costing \$2,000 were sold for \$250 and replaced with new tools costing \$2,500.

Required:

1. Prepare journal entries to record each of the above transactions.
2. Repeat requirement 1 assuming that the company uses the replacement depreciation method instead of the retirement method.

Problems

**P 11-1**

Depreciation methods; change in methods

• LO11-2, LO11-6

The fact that generally accepted accounting principles allow companies flexibility in choosing between certain allocation methods can make it difficult for a financial analyst to compare periodic performance from firm to firm.

Suppose you were a financial analyst trying to compare the performance of two companies. Company A uses the double-declining-balance depreciation method. Company B uses the straight-line method. You have the following information taken from the 12/31/2018 year-end financial statements for Company B:

Income Statement	
Depreciation expense	\$ 10,000
Balance Sheet	
Assets:	
Plant and equipment, at cost	\$200,000
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(40,000)
Net	\$160,000

You also determine that all of the assets constituting the plant and equipment of Company B were acquired at the same time, and that all of the \$200,000 represents depreciable assets. Also, all of the depreciable assets have the same useful life and residual values are zero.

Required:

1. In order to compare performance with Company A, estimate what B's depreciation expense would have been for 2018 if the double-declining-balance depreciation method had been used by Company B since acquisition of the depreciable assets.
2. If Company B decided to switch depreciation methods in 2018 from the straight line to the double-declining-balance method, prepare the 2018 journal entry to record depreciation for the year, assuming no journal entry for depreciation in 2018 has yet been recorded.

P 11-2

Comprehensive problem; Chapters 10 and 11

• LO11-2, LO11-4



At December 31, 2017, Cord Company's plant asset and accumulated depreciation and amortization accounts had balances as follows:

Category	Plant Asset	Accumulated Depreciation and Amortization
Land	\$ 175,000	\$ —
Buildings	1,500,000	328,900
Machinery and equipment	1,125,000	317,500
Automobiles and trucks	172,000	100,325
Leasehold improvements	216,000	108,000
Land improvements	—	—

Depreciation methods and useful lives:

Buildings—150% declining balance; 25 years.

Machinery and equipment—Straight line; 10 years.

Automobiles and trucks—150% declining balance; 5 years, all acquired after 2014.

Leasehold improvements—Straight line.

Land improvements—Straight line.

Depreciation is computed to the nearest month and residual values are immaterial. Transactions during 2018 and other information:

- a. On January 6, 2018, a plant facility consisting of land and building was acquired from King Corp. in exchange for 25,000 shares of Cord's common stock. On this date, Cord's stock had a fair value of \$50 a share. Current assessed values of land and building for property tax purposes are \$187,500 and \$562,500, respectively.
- b. On March 25, 2018, new parking lots, streets, and sidewalks at the acquired plant facility were completed at a total cost of \$192,000. These expenditures had an estimated useful life of 12 years.

- c. The leasehold improvements were completed on December 31, 2014, and had an estimated useful life of eight years. The related lease, which would terminate on December 31, 2020, was renewable for an additional four-year term. On April 30, 2018, Cord exercised the renewal option.
- d. On July 1, 2018, machinery and equipment were purchased at a total invoice cost of \$325,000. Additional costs of \$10,000 for delivery and \$50,000 for installation were incurred.
- e. On August 30, 2018, Cord purchased a new automobile for \$12,500.
- f. On September 30, 2018, a truck with a cost of \$24,000 and a book value of \$9,100 on date of sale was sold for \$11,500. Depreciation for the nine months ended September 30, 2018, was \$2,650.
- g. On December 20, 2018, a machine with a cost of \$17,000 and a book value of \$2,975 at date of disposition was scrapped without cash recovery.

Required:

1. Prepare a schedule analyzing the changes in each of the plant asset accounts during 2018. This schedule should include columns for beginning balance, increase, decrease, and ending balance for each of the plant asset accounts. Do not analyze changes in accumulated depreciation and amortization.
2. For each asset category, prepare a schedule showing depreciation or amortization expense for the year ended December 31, 2018. Round computations to the nearest whole dollar.

(AICPA adapted)

P 11-3

Depreciation methods; partial periods Chapters 10 and 11

LO11-2



[This problem is a continuation of Problem 10-3 in Chapter 10 focusing on depreciation.]

Required:

For each asset classification, prepare a schedule showing depreciation for the year ended December 31, 2018, using the following depreciation methods and useful lives:

Land improvements—Straight line; 15 years
 Building—150% declining balance; 20 years
 Machinery and equipment—Straight line; 10 years
 Automobiles—150% declining balance; 3 years

Depreciation is computed to the nearest month and no residual values are used.

(AICPA adapted)

P 11-4

Partial-year depreciation; asset addition; increase in useful life

LO11-2, LO11-5, LO11-9

On April 1, 2016, the KB Toy Company purchased equipment to be used in its manufacturing process. The equipment cost \$48,000, has an eight-year useful life, and has no residual value. The company uses the straight-line depreciation method for all manufacturing equipment.

On January 4, 2018, \$12,350 was spent to repair the equipment and to add a feature that increased its operating efficiency. Of the total expenditure, \$2,000 represented ordinary repairs and annual maintenance and \$10,350 represented the cost of the new feature. In addition to increasing operating efficiency, the total useful life of the equipment was extended to 10 years.

Required:

Prepare journal entries for the following:

1. Depreciation for 2016 and 2017
2. The 2018 expenditure
3. Depreciation for 2018

P 11-5

Property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets; comprehensive

LO11-2



The Thompson Corporation, a manufacturer of steel products, began operations on October 1, 2016. The accounting department of Thompson has started the fixed-asset and depreciation schedule presented below. You have been asked to assist in completing this schedule. In addition to ascertaining that the data already on the schedule are correct, you have obtained the following information from the company's records and personnel:

- a. Depreciation is computed from the first of the month of acquisition to the first of the month of disposition.
- b. Land A and Building A were acquired from a predecessor corporation. Thompson paid \$812,500 for the land and building together. At the time of acquisition, the land had a fair value of \$72,000 and the building had a fair value of \$828,000.
- c. Land B was acquired on October 2, 2016, in exchange for 3,000 newly issued shares of Thompson's common stock. At the date of acquisition, the stock had a par value of \$5 per share and a fair value of \$25 per share. During October 2016, Thompson paid \$10,400 to demolish an existing building on this land so it could construct a new building.
- d. Construction of Building B on the newly acquired land began on October 1, 2017. By September 30, 2018, Thompson had paid \$210,000 of the estimated total construction costs of \$300,000. Estimated completion and occupancy are July 2019.

- e. Certain equipment was donated to the corporation by the city. An independent appraisal of the equipment when donated placed the fair value at \$16,000 and the residual value at \$2,000.
- f. Machine A's total cost of \$110,000 includes installation charges of \$550 and normal repairs and maintenance of \$11,000. Residual value is estimated at \$5,500. Machine A was sold on February 1, 2018.
- g. On October 1, 2017, Machine B was acquired with a down payment of \$4,000 and the remaining payments to be made in 10 annual installments of \$4,000 each beginning October 1, 2018. The prevailing interest rate was 8%.

THOMPSON CORPORATION
Fixed Asset and Depreciation Schedule
For Fiscal Years Ended September 30, 2017, and September 30, 2018

Assets	Acquisition Date	Cost	Residual	Depreciation Method	Estimated Life (in years)	Depreciation for Year Ended 9/30	
						2017	2018
Land A	10/1/16	\$(1)	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Building A	10/1/16	(2)	\$47,500	SL	(3)	\$14,000	\$(4)
Land B	10/2/16	(5)	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Building B	Under construction to date	210,000	—	SL	30	—	(6)
Donated Equipment	10/2/16	(7)	2,000	150% Declining balance	10	(8)	(9)
Machine A	10/2/16	(10)	5,500	Sum-of-the-years'-digits	10	(11)	(12)
Machine B	10/1/17	(13)	—	SL	15	—	(14)

N/A = not applicable

Required:

Supply the correct amount for each numbered item on the schedule. Round each answer to the nearest dollar.

(AICPA adapted)

P 11-6

Depreciation methods; partial-year depreciation; sale of assets

• LO11-2



On March 31, 2018, the Herzog Company purchased a factory complete with machinery and equipment. The allocation of the total purchase price of \$1,000,000 to the various types of assets along with estimated useful lives and residual values are as follows:

Asset	Cost	Estimated Residual Value	Estimated Useful Life (in years)
Land	\$ 100,000	N/A	N/A
Building	500,000	none	25
Machinery	240,000	10% of cost	8
Equipment	160,000	\$13,000	6
Total	<u>\$1,000,000</u>		

On June 29, 2019, machinery included in the March 31, 2018, purchase that cost \$100,000 was sold for \$80,000. Herzog uses the straight-line depreciation method for buildings and machinery and the sum-of-the-years'-digits method for equipment. Partial-year depreciation is calculated based on the number of months an asset is in service.

Required:

1. Compute depreciation expense on the building, machinery, and equipment for 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries to record (1) depreciation on the machinery sold on June 29, 2019, and (2) the sale of machinery.
3. Compute depreciation expense on the building, remaining machinery, and equipment for 2019.

P 11-7

Depletion; change in estimate

• LO11-3, LO11-5



In 2018, the Marion Company purchased land containing a mineral mine for \$1,600,000. Additional costs of \$600,000 were incurred to develop the mine. Geologists estimated that 400,000 tons of ore would be extracted. After the ore is removed, the land will have a resale value of \$100,000.

To aid in the extraction, Marion built various structures and small storage buildings on the site at a cost of \$150,000. These structures have a useful life of 10 years. The structures cannot be moved after the ore has been removed and will be left at the site. In addition, new equipment costing \$80,000 was purchased and installed at the site. Marion does not plan to move the equipment to another site, but estimates that it can be sold at auction for \$4,000 after the mining project is completed.

In 2018, 50,000 tons of ore were extracted and sold. In 2019, the estimate of total tons of ore in the mine was revised from 400,000 to 487,500. During 2019, 80,000 tons were extracted, of which 60,000 tons were sold.

**Required:**

1. Compute depletion and depreciation of the mine and the mining facilities and equipment for 2018 and 2019. Marion uses the units-of-production method to determine depreciation on mining facilities and equipment.
2. Compute the book value of the mineral mine, structures, and equipment as of December 31, 2019.
3. Discuss the accounting treatment of the depletion and depreciation on the mine and mining facilities and equipment.

P 11-8

Amortization;
partial period

● LO11-4

The following information concerns the intangible assets of Epstein Corporation:

- a. On June 30, 2018, Epstein completed the acquisition of the Johnstone Corporation for \$2,000,000 in cash. The fair value of the net identifiable assets of Johnstone was \$1,700,000.
- b. Included in the assets purchased from Johnstone was a patent that was valued at \$80,000. The remaining legal life of the patent was 13 years, but Epstein believes that the patent will only be useful for another eight years.
- c. Epstein acquired a franchise on October 1, 2018, by paying an initial franchise fee of \$200,000. The contractual life of the franchise is 10 years.

Required:

1. Prepare year-end adjusting journal entries to record amortization expense on the intangibles at December 31, 2018.
2. Prepare the intangible asset section of the December 31, 2018, balance sheet.

P 11-9

Straight-line
depreciation;
disposal; partial
period; change in
estimate

● LO11-2, LO11-5

The property, plant, and equipment section of the Jasper Company's December 31, 2017, balance sheet contained the following:

Property, plant, and equipment:		
Land		\$120,000
Building	\$ 840,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(200,000)	640,000
Equipment	180,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation	?	?
Total property, plant, and equipment		?

The land and building were purchased at the beginning of 2013. Straight-line depreciation is used and a residual value of \$40,000 for the building is anticipated.

The equipment is comprised of the following three machines:

Machine	Cost	Date Acquired	Residual Value	Life (in years)
101	\$70,000	1/1/15	\$7,000	10
102	80,000	6/30/16	8,000	8
103	30,000	9/1/17	3,000	9

The straight-line method is used to determine depreciation on the equipment. On March 31, 2018, Machine 102 was sold for \$52,500. Early in 2018, the useful life of machine 101 was revised to seven years in total, and the residual value was revised to zero.

Required:

1. Calculate the accumulated depreciation on the equipment at December 31, 2017.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record 2018 depreciation on machine 102 up to the date of sale.
3. Prepare a schedule to calculate the gain or loss on the sale of machine 102.
4. Prepare the journal entry for the sale of machine 102.
5. Prepare the 2018 year-end journal entries to record depreciation on the building and equipment.

P 11-10

Accounting
changes; three
accounting
situations

● LO11-2, LO11-5,
LO11-6

Described below are three independent and unrelated situations involving accounting changes. Each change occurs during 2018 before any adjusting entries or closing entries are prepared.

- a. On December 30, 2014, Rival Industries acquired its office building at a cost of \$10,000,000. It has been depreciated on a straight-line basis assuming a useful life of 40 years and no residual value. Early in 2018, the estimate of useful life was revised to 28 years in total with no change in residual value.
- b. At the beginning of 2014, the Hoffman Group purchased office equipment at a cost of \$330,000. Its useful life was estimated to be 10 years with no residual value. The equipment has been depreciated by the sum-of-the-years'-digits method. On January 1, 2018, the company changed to the straight-line method.
- c. At the beginning of 2018, Jantzen Specialties, which uses the sum-of-the-years'-digits method, changed to the straight-line method for newly acquired buildings and equipment. The change increased current year net income by \$445,000.

Required:

For each situation:

1. Identify the type of change.
2. Prepare any journal entry necessary as a direct result of the change as well as any adjusting entry for 2018 related to the situation described. (Ignore income tax effects.)
3. Briefly describe any other steps that should be taken to appropriately report the situation.

P 11-11

Error correction;
change in
depreciation
method

- LO11-2, LO11-6,
LO11-7

Collins Corporation purchased office equipment at the beginning of 2016 and capitalized a cost of \$2,000,000. This cost figure included the following expenditures:

Purchase price	\$1,850,000
Freight charges	30,000
Installation charges	20,000
Annual maintenance charge	100,000
Total	\$2,000,000

The company estimated an eight-year useful life for the equipment. No residual value is anticipated. The double-declining-balance method was used to determine depreciation expense for 2016 and 2017.

In 2018, after the 2017 financial statements were issued, the company decided to switch to the straight-line depreciation method for this equipment. At that time, the company's controller discovered that the original cost of the equipment incorrectly included one year of annual maintenance charges for the equipment.

Required:

1. Ignoring income taxes, prepare the appropriate correcting entry for the equipment capitalization error discovered in 2018.
2. Ignoring income taxes, prepare any 2018 journal entry(s) related to the change in depreciation methods.

P 11-12

Depreciation and
amortization;
impairment

- LO11-2, LO11-4,
LO11-8

At the beginning of 2016, Metatec Inc. acquired Ellison Technology Corporation for \$600 million. In addition to cash, receivables, and inventory, the following assets and their fair values were also acquired:

Plant and equipment (depreciable assets)	\$150 million
Patent	40 million
Goodwill	100 million

The plant and equipment are depreciated over a 10-year useful life on a straight-line basis. There is no estimated residual value. The patent is estimated to have a 5-year useful life, no residual value, and is amortized using the straight-line method.

At the end of 2018, a change in business climate indicated to management that the assets of Ellison might be impaired. The following amounts have been determined:

Plant and equipment:	
Undiscounted sum of future cash flows	\$ 80 million
Fair value	60 million
Patent:	
Undiscounted sum of future cash flows	\$ 20 million
Fair value	13 million
Goodwill:	
Fair value of Ellison Technology Corporation	\$450 million
Fair value of Ellison's net assets (excluding goodwill)	390 million
Book value of Ellison's net assets (including goodwill)	470 million*

*After first recording any impairment losses on plant and equipment and the patent.

Required:

1. Compute the book value of the plant and equipment and patent at the end of 2018.
2. When should the plant and equipment and the patent be tested for impairment?
3. When should goodwill be tested for impairment?
4. Determine the amount of any impairment loss to be recorded, if any, for the three assets.

P 11-13

Depreciation and
depletion; change
in useful life;
asset retirement
obligation;

- Chapters 10 and 11
- LO11-2, LO11-3,
LO11-5

On May 1, 2018, Hecala Mining entered into an agreement with the state of New Mexico to obtain the rights to operate a mineral mine in New Mexico for \$10 million. Additional costs and purchases included the following:

Development costs in preparing the mine	\$3,200,000
Mining equipment	140,000
Construction of various structures on site	68,000

After the minerals are removed from the mine, the equipment will be sold for an estimated residual value of \$10,000. The structures will be torn down.



Geologists estimate that 800,000 tons of ore can be extracted from the mine. After the ore is removed the land will revert back to the state of New Mexico.

The contract with the state requires Hecala to restore the land to its original condition after mining operations are completed in approximately four years. Management has provided the following possible outflows for the restoration costs:

Cash Outflow	Probability
\$600,000	30%
700,000	30%
800,000	40%

Hecala's credit-adjusted risk-free interest rate is 8%. During 2018, Hecala extracted 120,000 tons of ore from the mine. The company's fiscal year ends on December 31.

Required:

1. Determine the amount at which Hecala will record the mine.
2. Calculate the depletion of the mine and the depreciation of the mining facilities and equipment for 2018, assuming that Hecala uses the units-of-production method for both depreciation and depletion. Round depletion and depreciation rates to four decimals.
3. How much accretion expense will the company record in its income statement for the 2018 fiscal year?
4. Are depletion of the mine and depreciation of the mining facilities and equipment reported as separate expenses in the income statement? Discuss the accounting treatment of these items in the income statement and balance sheet.
5. During 2019, Hecala changed its estimate of the total amount of ore originally in the mine from 800,000 to 1,000,000 tons. Briefly describe the accounting treatment the company will employ to account for the change *and* calculate the depletion of the mine and depreciation of the mining facilities and equipment for 2019 assuming Hecala extracted 150,000 tons of ore in 2019.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Analysis Case 11-1

Depreciation, depletion, and amortization

• LO11-1

The terms depreciation, depletion, and amortization all refer to the process of allocating the cost of an asset to the periods the asset is used.

Required:

Discuss the differences between depreciation, depletion, and amortization as the terms are used in accounting for property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets.

Communication Case 11-2

Depreciation

• LO11-1

At a recent luncheon, you were seated next to Mr. Hopkins, the president of a local company that manufactures bicycle parts. He heard that you were a CPA and made the following comments to you:

Why is it that I am forced to recognize depreciation expense in my company's income statement when I know that I could sell many of my assets for more than I paid for them? I thought that the purpose of the balance sheet was to reflect the value of my business and that the purpose of the income statement was to report the net change in value or wealth of a company. It just doesn't make sense to penalize my profits when there hasn't been any loss in value from using the assets.

At the conclusion of the luncheon, you promised to send him a short explanation of the rationale for current depreciation practices.

Required:

Prepare a letter to Mr. Hopkins. Explain the accounting concept of depreciation and include a brief example in your explanation showing that over the life of the asset the change in value approach to depreciation and the allocation of cost approach will result in the same total effect on income.

Judgment Case 11-3

Straight-line method; composite depreciation
 ● LO11-1, LO11-2

Portland Co. uses the straight-line depreciation method for depreciable assets. All assets are depreciated individually except manufacturing machinery, which is depreciated by the composite method.

Required:

- What factors should have influenced Portland's selection of the straight-line depreciation method?
- What benefits should derive from using the composite method rather than the individual basis for manufacturing machinery?
 - How should Portland have calculated the manufacturing machinery's annual depreciation in its first year of operation?

(AICPA adapted)

Judgment Case 11-4

Depreciation
 ● LO11-1, LO11-2

At the beginning of the year, Patrick Company acquired a computer to be used in its operations. The computer was delivered by the supplier, installed by Patrick, and placed into operation. The estimated useful life of the computer is five years, and its estimated residual value is significant.

Required:

- What costs should Patrick capitalize for the computer?
 - What is the objective of depreciation accounting?
- What is the rationale for using accelerated depreciation methods?

(AICPA adapted)

Judgment Case 11-5

Capitalize or expense; materiality
 ● LO11-9

Redline Publishers, Inc. produces various manuals ranging from computer software instructional booklets to manuals explaining the installation and use of large pieces of industrial equipment. At the end of 2018, the company's balance sheet reported total assets of \$62 million and total liabilities of \$40 million. The income statement for 2018 reported net income of \$1.1 million, which represents an approximate 3% increase from the prior year. The company's effective income tax rate is 30%.

Near the end of 2018, a variety of expenditures were made to overhaul the company's manufacturing equipment. None of these expenditures exceeded \$750, the materiality threshold the company has set for the capitalization of any such expenditure. Even though the overhauls extended the service life of the equipment, the expenditures were expensed, not capitalized.

John Henderson, the company's controller, is worried about the treatment of the overhaul expenditures. Even though no individual expenditure exceeded the \$750 materiality threshold, total expenditures were \$70,000.

Required:

Should the overhaul expenditures be capitalized or expensed?

Communication Case 11-6

Capitalize or expense; materiality
 ● LO11-9

The focus of the case is the situation described in Judgment Case 11-5. Your instructor will divide the class into two to six groups depending on the size of the class. The mission of your group is to determine the treatment of the overhaul expenditures.

Required:

- Each group member should deliberate the situation independently and draft a tentative argument prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.
- In class, each group will meet for 10 to 15 minutes in different areas of the classroom. During the meeting, group members will take turns sharing their suggestions for the purpose of arriving at a single group treatment.
- After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each group (selected during the group meetings) will share the group's solution with the class. The goal of the class is to incorporate the views of each group into a consensus approach to the situation.

Integrating Case 11-7

Errors; change in estimate; change in principle; inventory, patent, and equipment
 ● LO11-5 through LO11-7

Whaley Distributors is a wholesale distributor of electronic components. Financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2018, reported the following amounts and subtotals (\$ in millions):

	Assets	Liabilities	Shareholders' Equity	Net Income	Expenses
2017	\$640	\$330	\$310	\$210	\$150
2018	\$820	\$400	\$420	\$230	\$175

In 2019 the following situations occurred or came to light:

- Internal auditors discovered that ending inventories reported in the financial statements the two previous years were misstated due to faulty internal controls. The errors were in the following amounts:

2017 inventory	Overstated by \$12 million
2018 inventory	Understated by \$10 million

- b. A patent costing \$18 million at the beginning of 2017, expected to benefit operations for a total of six years, has not been amortized since acquired.
- c. Whaley's conveyor equipment has been depreciated by the sum-of-the-years'-digits (SYD) method since constructed at the beginning of 2017 at a cost of \$30 million. It has an expected useful life of five years and no expected residual value. At the beginning of 2019, Whaley decided to switch to straight-line depreciation.

Required:

For each situation:

1. Prepare any journal entry necessary as a direct result of the change or error correction as well as any adjusting entry for 2019 related to the situation described. (Ignore tax effects.)
2. Determine the amounts to be reported for each of the items shown above from the 2017 and 2018 financial statements when those amounts are reported again in the 2019, 2018, and 2017 comparative financial statements.

Judgment Case 11-8

Accounting changes

● LO11-5, LO11-6

There are various types of accounting changes, each of which is required to be reported differently.

Required:

1. What type of accounting change is a change from the sum-of-the-years'-digits method of depreciation to the straight-line method for previously recorded assets as a result of new information related to production patterns? Under what circumstances does this type of accounting change occur?
2. What type of accounting change is a change in the expected service life of an asset arising because of more experience with the asset? Under what circumstances does this type of accounting change occur?

(AICPA adapted)

Research Case 11-9

FASB codification; locate and extract relevant information and cite authoritative support for a financial reporting issue; impairment of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets

● LO11-8



The company controller, Barry Melrose, has asked for your help in interpreting the authoritative accounting literature that addresses the recognition and measurement of impairment losses for property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets. "We have a significant amount of goodwill on our books from last year's acquisition of Churchill Corporation. Also, I think we may have a problem with the assets of some of our factories out West. And one of our divisions is currently considering disposing of a large group of depreciable assets."

Your task as assistant controller is to research the issue.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on accounting for the impairment of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*. You might gain access at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Cite the reference locations regarding impairment of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets.
2. When should property, plant, and equipment and finite-life intangible assets be tested for impairment?
3. Explain the process for measuring an impairment loss for property, plant, and equipment and finite-life intangible assets to be held and used.
4. What are the specific criteria that must be met for an asset or asset group to be classified as held-for-sale? What is the specific citation reference from the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* that contains these criteria?
5. Explain the process for measuring an impairment loss for property, plant, and equipment and finite-life intangible assets classified as held-for-sale.

Ethics Case 11-10

Asset impairment

● LO11-8

At the beginning of 2016, the Healthy Life Food Company purchased equipment for \$42 million to be used in the manufacture of a new line of gourmet frozen foods. The equipment was estimated to have a 10-year service life and no residual value. The straight-line depreciation method was used to measure depreciation for 2016 and 2017.

Late in 2018, it became apparent that sales of the new frozen food line were significantly below expectations. The company decided to continue production for two more years (2019 and 2020) and then discontinue the line. At that time, the equipment will be sold for minimal scrap values.

The controller, Heather Meyer, was asked by Harvey Dent, the company's chief executive officer (CEO), to determine the appropriate treatment of the change in service life of the equipment. Heather determined that there has been an impairment of value requiring an immediate write-down of the equipment of \$12,900,000. The remaining book value would then be depreciated over the equipment's revised service life.

The CEO does not like Heather's conclusion because of the effect it would have on 2018 income. "Looks like a simple revision in service life from 10 years to 5 years to me," Dent concluded. "Let's go with it that way, Heather."

Required:

1. What is the difference in before-tax income between the CEO's and Heather's treatment of the situation?
2. Discuss Heather Meyer's ethical dilemma.

Judgment Case 11–11

Earnings management and accounting changes; impairment

- LO11–5, LO11–6, LO11–8

Companies often are under pressure to meet or beat Wall Street earnings projections in order to increase stock prices and also to increase the value of stock options. Some resort to earnings management practices to artificially create desired results.

Required:

1. How can a company manage earnings by changing its depreciation method? Is this an effective technique to manage earnings?
2. How can a company manage earnings by changing the estimated useful lives of depreciable assets? Is this an effective technique to manage earnings?
3. Using a fictitious example and numbers you make up, describe in your own words how asset impairment losses could be used to manage earnings. How might that benefit the company?

Trueblood Accounting Case 11–12

Accounting for impairment losses; property, plant, and equipment

- LO11–8

The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion Material, can be obtained from the Deloitte Foundation at its website www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases.

Case 12–9: Rough Waters Ahead

This case concerns the impairment test for a cruise ship.

Judgment Case 11–13

Subsequent expenditures

- LO11–9

The Cummings Company charged various expenditures made during 2018 to an account called repairs and maintenance expense. You have been asked by your supervisor in the company's internal audit department to review the expenditures to determine if they were appropriately recorded. The amount of each of the transactions included in the account is considered material.

1. Engine tune-up and oil change on the company's 12 delivery trucks—\$1,300.
2. Rearrangement of machinery on the main production line—\$5,500. It is not evident that the rearrangement will increase operational efficiency.
3. Installation of aluminum siding on the manufacturing plant—\$32,000.
4. Replacement of the old air conditioning system in the manufacturing plant with a new system—\$120,000.
5. Replacement of broken parts on three machines—\$1,500.
6. Annual painting of the manufacturing plant—\$11,000.
7. Purchase of new forklift to move finished product to the loading dock—\$6,000.
8. Patching leaks in the roof of the manufacturing plant—\$6,500. The repair work did not extend the useful life of the roof.

Required:

For each of the transactions listed above, indicate whether the expenditure is appropriately charged to the repair and maintenance expense account, and if not, indicate the proper account to be charged.

Real World Case 11–14

Disposition and depreciation; Chapters 10 and 11; D.R. Horton

- LO11–1

Real World Financials

D.R. Horton, Inc., is the largest homebuilding company by volume in the United States. D.R. Horton reported the following in a disclosure note accompanying its 2015 financial statements (\$ in millions):

	2015	2014
Property and equipment	\$ 313.8	\$ 334.8
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(166.9)	(141.1)
Property, plant, and equipment - Net	<u>\$ 146.9</u>	<u>\$ 193.7</u>

Also, the company disclosed that the total cost of property and equipment included \$26.7 and \$66.9 (dollars in millions) in land at the end of 2015 and 2014, respectively. In addition, the statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2015, reported the following as cash flows from investing activities:

	(\$ in millions)
Purchases of property and equipment	\$(56.1)
Proceeds from the sale of property and equipment	56.0

The statement of cash flows also reported 2015 depreciation and amortization of \$54.1 million (depreciation of \$50.3 and amortization of \$3.8).

Required:

1. Assume that all property and equipment acquired during 2015 were purchased for cash. Determine the amount of gain or loss from sale of property and equipment that D.R. Horton recognized during 2015.
2. Assume that D.R. Horton uses the straight-line method to depreciate property and equipment (excluding land). What is the approximate average service life of depreciable assets?

Real World Case 11–15

Depreciation and depletion method; asset impairment; subsequent expenditures; Chevron

- LO11–2, LO11–3, LO11–8, LO11–9

Real World Financials

EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, performs automated collection, validation, indexing, and forwarding of submissions by companies and others who are required by law to file forms with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR to make the majority of their filings. (Some foreign companies file voluntarily.) Form 10-K, which includes the annual report, is required to be filed on EDGAR. The SEC makes this information available on the Internet.

Required:

1. Access EDGAR on the Internet. The web address is www.sec.gov.
2. Search for **Chevron Corporation**. Access the 10-K filing for most recent fiscal year. Search or scroll to find the financial statements and related notes.
3. Answer the following questions related to the company's property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets:
 - a. Describe the company's depreciation and depletion policies.
 - b. Describe the company's policy for subsequent expenditures made for plant and equipment.

IFRS Case 11–16

Subsequent valuation of property, plant, and equipment; comparison of U.S. GAAP and IFRS; GlaxoSmithKline

- LO11–10

Real World Financials



IFRS

GlaxoSmithKline is a global pharmaceutical and consumer health-related products company located in the United Kingdom. The company prepares its financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards.

Required:

1. Use the Internet to locate GlaxoSmithKline's most recent annual report. The address is www.gsk.com/en-gb/investors/. Locate the significant accounting policies disclosure note.
2. How does the company value its property, plant, and equipment? Does the company have any other options under IFRS for valuing these assets? How do these options differ from U.S. GAAP?
3. What are the company's policies for possible reversals of impairment losses for goodwill and for other non-current assets? How do these policies differ from U.S. GAAP?

Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO11–2, LO11–8, LO11–9

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. Compare the property and equipment listed in the balance sheet with the list in Note 14. What are the estimated useful lives for recording depreciation? Why is land not listed in Note 14?
2. Which depreciation method does Target use for property and equipment for financial reporting? Which depreciation method is used for tax purposes? Why might these methods be chosen?
3. How does Target record repairs and maintenance expense?
4. How does Target account for impairment of property and equipment? Were any impairments recorded for the year ended January 30, 2016? If so, what was the amount and what were the reasons for the impairments?
5. From Notes 15 and 16, what was the amount of intangible assets for the year ended January 30, 2016? Were any impairments related to intangible assets recorded for the year ended January 30, 2016? If so, what was the amount and what were the reasons for the impairments?

**Air France–KLM
Case**

● LO11–10



Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. AF's property, plant, and equipment is reported at cost. The company has a policy of not revaluing property, plant, and equipment. Suppose AF decided to revalue its flight equipment on December 31, 2015, and that the fair value of the equipment on that date was €10,000 million. Prepare the journal entry to record the revaluation assuming that the journal entry to record annual depreciation had already been recorded. (*Hint:* you will need to locate the original cost and accumulated depreciation of the equipment at the end of the year in the appropriate disclosure note.)
2. Under U.S. GAAP, what alternatives do companies have to value their property, plant, and equipment?
3. AF calculates depreciation of plant and equipment on a straight-line basis, over the useful life of the asset. Describe any differences between IFRS and U.S. GAAP in the calculation of depreciation.
4. When does AF test for the possible impairment of fixed assets? How does this approach differ from U.S. GAAP?
5. Describe the approach AF uses to determine fixed asset impairment losses. (*Hint:* see Note 4.14) How does this approach differ from U.S. GAAP?
6. The following is included in AF's disclosure note 4.13: "Intangible assets are recorded at initial cost less accumulated amortization and any accumulated impairment losses." Assume that on December 31, 2015, AF decided to revalue its Other intangible assets (see Note 18) and that the fair value on that date was determined to be €500 million. Amortization expense for the year already has been recorded. Prepare the journal entry to record the revaluation.

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

12

Investments

OVERVIEW

In this chapter, you will learn about various approaches we use to account for investments that companies make in the debt and equity securities of other companies. An investing company always has the option to account for these investments at fair value, with changes in fair values reported in the income statement. However, depending on the nature of a *debt* investment, investors use accounting approaches that either ignore most fair value changes (*held-to-maturity* investments) or that include fair value changes only in other comprehensive income (*available-for-sale* investments) until the debt investment is sold. For an *equity* investment, when an investor owns enough stock to “significantly influence” an investee but does not control it, the investor uses the *equity method* of accounting, which ignores fair value changes but includes a portion of the investee’s income in the investor’s income. In appendices to this chapter, we discuss other types of investments as well as how to deal with an investment whose value has been “other-than-temporarily impaired.”

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO12-1** Describe the key characteristics of a debt investment and demonstrate how to account for a purchase and for interest revenue. (p. 644)
- **LO12-2** Demonstrate how to identify and account for debt investments classified for reporting purposes as held-to-maturity. (p. 648)
- **LO12-3** Demonstrate how to identify and account for debt investments classified for reporting purposes as trading securities. (p. 649)
- **LO12-4** Demonstrate how to identify and account for debt investments classified for reporting purposes as available-for-sale securities. (p. 653)
- **LO12-5** Demonstrate how to identify and account for equity investments classified for reporting purposes as fair value through net income. (p. 667)
- **LO12-6** Demonstrate how to identify and account for equity investments accounted for under the equity method. (p. 672)
- **LO12-7** Explain the adjustments made in the equity method when the fair value of the net assets underlying an investment exceeds their book value at acquisition. (pp. 661 and 674)
- **LO12-8** Explain how electing the fair value option and how impairment recognition affect accounting for investments. (p. 661 and 679)
- **LO12-9** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to investments. (pp. 660–663, 671, 680, and 690)



© McGraw-Hill Education/Mark Dierker, photographer

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

A Case of Coke

You are the lone accounting major in your five-member group in your Business Policy class. A part of the case your group is working on is the analysis of the financial statements of **The Coca-Cola Company**.

The marketing major in the group is confused by the following disclosure note included in Coca-Cola's 2015 annual report:

NOTE 3: INVESTMENTS (in part)

Investments in debt securities that the Company has the positive intent and ability to hold to maturity are carried at amortized cost and classified as held-to-maturity. Investments in debt securities that are not classified as held-to-maturity are carried at fair value and classified as either trading or available-for-sale. Realized and unrealized gains and losses on trading securities and realized gains and losses on available-for-sale securities are included in net income. Unrealized gains and losses, net of deferred taxes, on available-for-sale securities are included in our consolidated balance sheets as a component of AOCI . . .

"So they have held-to-maturity securities, trading securities, and available-for-sale securities. What's the difference? And they say that unrealized gains and losses on available-for-sale securities are reported as part of AOCI. What's that? I don't see these gains and

losses in the income statement," he complained. "And what about equity method investments? On the balance sheet they have over \$12 billion of investments accounted for under the equity method! They made almost \$500 million on those investments in 2015. Is that cash they can use?"

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. Why are held-to-maturity securities treated differently from other investment securities? (p. 648)
2. Why are unrealized gains and losses on trading securities reported in the income statement? (p. 650)
3. Why are unrealized gains and losses on available-for-sale securities not reported in the income statement, but instead are reported in other comprehensive income, and then shown in accumulated other comprehensive income (AOCI) in the balance sheet? (p. 655)
4. Explain why Coke accounts for some of its investments by the equity method and what that means. (p. 672)

QUESTIONS

Corporations raise funds to finance their operations by selling equity securities (common and preferred stock) and debt securities (bonds and notes). These securities, also called financial instruments, are purchased as investments by individual investors, mutual funds, and also by other corporations. In later chapters we discuss equity and debt securities from the perspective of the issuing company. Our focus in this chapter is on the corporations that invest in debt and equity securities issued by other corporations as well as in debt securities issued by governmental units (bonds, Treasury bills, and Treasury bonds).

Most companies invest in financial instruments issued by other companies. For some investors, these investments represent ongoing affiliations with the companies whose securities are acquired. Recent examples of those sorts of investments include **Microsoft's**

acquisition of **LinkedIn** for over \$25 billion and **Anheuser-Busch InBev**'s acquisition of **SABMiller** for over \$100 billion. Some investments, though, are not made to obtain a favorable business relationship with another firm. Instead, companies seek only to earn a return from the dividends or interest the securities pay or from increases in the market prices of the securities—the same reasons that might motivate you to buy stocks, bonds, or other investment securities.

With such diversity in investment objectives, it's not surprising that there is diversity in the approaches used to account for investments. As you'll discover when reading this chapter, investments are accounted for in several different ways, depending on whether the investment is in a debt or equity security, the investor's purpose for holding the investment, and the nature of the investment relationship. In Part A, we discuss accounting for debt investments. In Part B, we discuss accounting for equity investments.

PART A

Accounting for Debt Investments

Example of a Debt Investment

LO12-1

Have you ever bought a CD (Certificate of Deposit) at a bank? If so, you've invested in a debt instrument. Let's say you buy a \$500, 2-year, 4% CD. What's happened is that you are lending the bank \$500 for 2 years, and the bank is promising to pay you 4% interest each year before returning your \$500 after two years. The bank's debt (the \$500 borrowed from you) is represented by a debt instrument (the CD), which specifies the maturity date (2 years), the principal (or face amount, \$500), and the annual rate of interest (4%).

Companies invest in debt too. Like a CD, a bond or other debt security has a specified date when it matures, and on that maturity date, the *principal* (also called the *face amount*) is paid to investors. In the meantime, interest equal to some *stated interest rate* multiplied by the principal is paid to investors on specified interest dates (usually twice a year). Think of the principal and interest payments of the bond as a stream of cash flows that an investor will receive in the future in exchange for purchasing the bond today. The investor values that stream of future cash flows based on the prevailing *market interest rate* for debt of similar risk and maturity at the time the investor purchases the bond.

For an example of how an investor would determine how much to pay for a bond, see Illustration 12-1.

Illustration 12-1

Example of a Debt Investment: Bonds Purchased at a Discount

Because interest is paid semiannually, the present value calculations use:

- one-half the stated rate (6%),
- one-half the market rate (7%), and
- $6 (= 3 \times 2)$ semiannual periods.

On July 1, 2018, Masterwear Industries issued \$700,000 of 12% bonds, dated July 1. Interest of \$42,000 is payable semiannually on June 30 and December 31. The bonds mature in three years, on June 30, 2021. The market interest rate for bonds of similar risk and maturity is 14%. The entire bond issue was purchased by United Intergroup, Inc.*

Calculation of the Price of the Bonds

		Present Values
Interest	$\$42,000 \times 4.76654^{**}$	= \$200,195
Principal (face amount)	$\$700,000 \times 0.66634^{\dagger}$	= 466,438
Present value (price) of the bonds		\$666,633

*The numbers in this illustration are the same as those in Illustration 14-3 in Chapter 14 (except for some differences in dates between the two chapters). This helps us to better appreciate in Chapter 14 how Masterwear's accounting for its bond liability to United compares to United's accounting for its investment in Masterwear bonds. You can find further explanation of why we calculate the bond price this way in Chapter 14.

**Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 7\%$ (Table 4).

\dagger Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 7\%$ (Table 2).

Note: Present value tables are provided at the end of this textbook. If you need to review the concept of the time value of money, refer to the discussions in Chapter 6.

Illustration 12-1 shows that United will pay Masterwear **\$666,633** on July 1, 2018. In return, United expects to receive from Masterwear \$42,000 every six months for the next

three years plus the face amount of \$700,000 when the bonds mature on June 30, 2021. Of course, if United sells the bonds to another investor, that investor will receive the remaining payments of interest and principal.

Notice that United paid \$666,633 to purchase the \$700,000 bonds. Why the difference? To determine the issue price of the bonds, it's important to understand how investors compare the bond's stated rate with the market rate. If the interest rate paid by the bond (the stated rate) is higher than the market rate, investors are willing to purchase the bond for more than its maturity value (so it's sold at a *premium*). If the bond's stated rate is lower than the market rate, then investors are willing to purchase the bond only at an amount less than its maturity value (so it's sold at a *discount*). Masterwear was offering its bonds for 12%, but investors could have obtained bonds of similar risk and maturity at a more favorable, higher rate of 14%. To attract investors, Masterwear had to sell its bonds at a discount.

The Masterwear bonds have the key characteristics of all debt investments. Over the three-year life of the bonds, United has to determine how it will account for four events:

1. Purchasing the debt investment.
2. Receiving interest every six months.
3. Holding the bonds during periods in which the bonds' fair value changes (and thus incurring *unrealized holding gains and losses*, since the bonds have not been sold).
4. Either selling the bonds before maturity or receiving the principal payment at their maturity date.

As we discuss below, companies classify debt investments as one of three types: held-to-maturity, trading, or available-for-sale. Accounting for the first two events—the purchase of a bond and the receipt of interest payments—is handled the same way regardless of how the debt investment is classified. We'll look at those events first. Then we'll look at the second two events, which are accounted for differently depending on how the debt investment is classified.

Recording the Purchase of a Debt Investment

When debt investments are purchased, they are recorded at cost—that is, the total amount paid for the investment, including any brokerage fees. Referring back to Illustration 12–1, we see that United paid **\$666,633** to purchase Masterwear's \$700,000 bonds. United would record the purchase as:

All investment securities are initially recorded at cost.

July 1, 2018

Investment in bonds (face amount)	700,000	
Discount on bond investment (difference)		33,367
Cash (price paid for the bonds)		666,633

Because United purchased the bonds for an amount that's less than their face amount, it credits *Discount on bond investment* for the difference. Discount on bond investment is a contra-asset to the investment account that serves to reduce the carrying value of the investment to its cost at the date of purchase. If United instead had purchased the bonds for an amount (say, \$725,000) that is higher than the face amount of the bond (\$700,000), it would instead debit *Premium on bond investment* (for \$25,000) to record the investment at its cost at the date of purchase.¹

Recording Interest Revenue

United will record interest revenue using the **effective interest method**. Here's how it works.

Masterwear's bonds have a *stated rate* of 12%, payable semiannually. This means that every six months, United will receive exactly \$42,000 in cash from Masterwear:

¹This is called the gross method. An alternative would be to record the cost (\$666,633 or \$725,000) directly in the investment account, called the net method.

$$\begin{array}{rclcl} \$700,000 & \times & (12\% \div 2) & = & \$42,000 \\ \text{Face amount} & & \text{Stated rate} & & \text{Interest received} \end{array}$$

However, recall that United purchased the \$700,000 bonds at a discounted amount of \$666,633. Why could United pay less than the \$700,000 face value for the bonds (and why was Masterwear willing to sell the bonds for less than \$700,000)? At the time United purchased the bonds, the *market rate* of interest for bonds of similar risk was 14%. So, United would only be willing to invest in these bonds if it could earn the 14% it could get elsewhere (not the 12% stated rate). To earn this higher rate, United needed to pay only \$666,633. Paying the lower amount means United lowered its investment cost and effectively increased its rate of return to 14% (refer back to Illustration 12–1 to see the details of this calculation). While United will receive \$42,000 (6%) in interest from Masterwear in the first six months, it will effectively earn interest revenue of \$46,664 (7%) on its investment.

$$\begin{array}{rclcl} \$666,633 & \times & (14\% \div 2) & = & \$46,664 \\ \text{Outstanding balance} & & \text{Market rate} & & \text{Interest revenue} \end{array}$$

Under the effective interest method, interest for a period equals the market rate of interest when the debt was purchased multiplied by the outstanding balance of the debt at the beginning of the period.

The amount by which interest revenue exceeds interest received (\$46,664 – \$42,000 = \$4,664 in the first six months) represents a piece of the cost savings from purchasing the investment at a discount. This piece of the cost savings increases United’s investment return from the rate the bond pays (12%) to the higher rate (14%) that investors could have earned on other similar bonds at the time they purchased the bond. In fact, this approach is called the *effective interest method* because interest revenue is based on the effective interest rate that the investment earns over its lifetime.

The journal entry to record the interest received for the first six months as investment revenue is:

December 31, 2018

Cash (stated rate × face amount).....	42,000	
Discount on bond investment (difference).....	4,664	
Interest revenue (market rate × outstanding balance).....		46,664

This entry reduces the discount by \$4,664 (from \$33,367 to \$28,703). Because the discount gets smaller, the “amortized cost” of the investment (equal to \$700,000 less discount) gets larger by the same amount (from \$666,633 to **\$671,297**).

Illustration 12–2 demonstrates interest revenue being recorded at the effective rate over the life of this investment. As you can see, amortization of the discount gradually increases the amortized cost of the investment, until the investment reaches its face amount of \$700,000, which is the amount to be received when the debt matures.

Illustration 12–2

Amortization
Schedule—Discount

If a bond is purchased at a discount, less cash is received each period than the effective interest earned by the investor, so the unpaid difference increases the outstanding balance of the investment.

Date	Cash Interest	Effective Interest (Interest Revenue)	Amortization of Discount	Discount Balance	Amortized Cost
	(6% × Face amount)	(7% × Outstanding balance)	(Difference)		(Face amount less discount)
7/1/2018				33,367	666,633
12/31/2018	42,000	0.07(666,633) = 46,664	4,664	28,703	671,297
6/30/2019	42,000	0.07(671,297) = 46,991	4,991	23,712	676,288
12/31/2019	42,000	0.07(676,288) = 47,340	5,340	18,372	681,628
6/30/2020	42,000	0.07(681,628) = 47,714	5,714	12,658	687,342
12/31/2020	42,000	0.07(687,342) = 48,114	6,114	6,544	693,456
6/30/2021	42,000	0.07(693,456) = 48,544*	6,544	0	700,000
	<u>252,000</u>	<u>285,367</u>	<u>33,367</u>		

*Rounded

If the bonds were instead purchased at a premium, a similar amortization schedule would *reduce* the premium over time until the bond’s amortized cost reached the face amount of \$700,000, which is the amount to be received when the debt matures.

Three Classifications of Debt Investments

The amortization schedule shown in Illustration 12–2 is based on the market interest rate (14%) that prevailed at the time United purchased the Masterwear bonds. United will use that amortization schedule for the life of the investment, and *won't change it* in response to changes in prevailing interest rates. However, the prevailing market rate may not always be 14%. The fair value of the bonds will change with changes in the prevailing market interest rate, because market participants will use the prevailing rate to compute the present value of the cash flows provided by the bond. United will incur **unrealized holding gains and losses** as a result of holding the bond during periods in which its fair value changes.

If the market rate of interest *rises* after a bond is purchased, the market will compute the present value of the cash flows provided by the bond using that higher discount rate, so the fair value of the bond falls. In that case, the person holding the bond suffers an *unrealized holding loss*. The fair value of the bond has decreased, but that loss hasn't been realized, because the investment has not been sold.

Conversely, if the market rate of interest *falls* after a bond is purchased, the market will calculate the present value of the cash flows provided by the bond using that lower rate, so the fair value of the bond rises. In that case, the investor holding the bond enjoys an *unrealized holding gain*. The fair value of the bond has increased but that gain hasn't yet been realized, because the investment hasn't been sold.

Accounting for changes in fair value depends on the classification of the debt investment. As shown in Illustration 12–3, debt investments are classified in one of three categories: held-to-maturity (HTM) securities, trading securities (TS), or available-for-sale (AFS) securities.

The fair value of a fixed-rate investment moves in the opposite direction of market interest rates.

Changes in fair value give rise to unrealized holding gains and losses.

Reporting Approach	Treatment of Unrealized Holding Gains and Losses	Carried in Balance Sheet at
Held-to-maturity (HTM): used for debt for which the investor has the "positive intent and ability" to hold to maturity.	Not recognized*	Amortized Cost
Trading (TS): used for debt that is held in an active trading account for immediate resale.	Recognized in net income , and therefore in retained earnings as part of shareholders' equity.	Fair Value
Available-for-sale (AFS): used for debt that does not qualify as held-to-maturity or trading.	Recognized in other comprehensive income , and therefore in accumulated other comprehensive income in shareholders' equity*.	Fair Value

*If the investor elects the *fair value option (FVO)*, this type of investment also can be accounted for using the same approach that's used for trading securities, with the investment reported at fair value and unrealized holding gains and losses included in net income.

Illustration 12–3

Accounting for Unrealized Holding Gains and Losses on Debt Investments

Illustration 12–4 provides a description from a recent annual report of how the **Bank of America** accounts for its debt investments in each of the three reporting categories.

Note 1 (in part): Securities

Debt securities which management has the intent and ability to hold to maturity are classified as held-to-maturity (HTM) and reported at amortized cost. Debt securities that are bought and held principally for the purpose of resale in the near term are classified as trading and are carried at fair value with unrealized gains and losses included in trading account profits (losses). Other debt securities are classified as AFS and carried at fair value with net unrealized gains and losses included in accumulated OCI on an after-tax basis.

Illustration 12–4

Disclosure about Investments—Bank of America

Real World Financials

**FINANCIAL
Reporting Case**

Q1, p. 643

Why treat unrealized holding gains and losses differently depending on the type of investment? As you know, the primary purpose of accounting is to provide information useful for making decisions. What's most relevant for that purpose is not necessarily the same for each investment a company might make. For example, a company might invest in corporate bonds to provide a steady return until the bonds mature, in which case day-to-day changes in fair value may not be viewed as very relevant, so the held-to-maturity approach is preferable. On the other hand, a company might invest in the same bonds because it plans to sell them at a profit in the near future, in which case the day-to-day changes in fair value could be viewed as very relevant, and the trading security or available-for-sale approach is preferable.

We'll discuss each reporting approach in turn, including how that approach accounts for unrealized holding gains and losses.

Debt Investments to Be Held to Maturity (HTM)

Unrealized Holding Gains and Losses Are Not Recognized for HTM Investments

Held to maturity (HTM) investments require the "positive intent and ability" to hold the investments to maturity.

● LO12-2

Held to maturity (HTM) investments are reported at amortized cost in the balance sheet.

Unrealized holding gains and losses are less important if sale before maturity isn't an alternative, because those gains and losses will never be realized by sale. For this reason, if an investor has the "positive intent and ability" to hold the securities to maturity, investments in debt securities typically are classified as **held-to-maturity (HTM)** and reported at their *amortized cost* in the balance sheet.² A debt security cannot be classified as held-to-maturity if the investor might sell it before maturity in response to changes in market prices or interest rates, to meet the investor's liquidity needs, or similar factors.

To consider accounting for unrealized gains and losses, suppose that on December 31, 2018, the market interest rate for securities similar to the Masterwear bonds has fallen to 11%. An investor valuing the Masterwear bonds at that time would do so considering the current market interest rate (11%) because that's the rate of return available for similar bonds. Calculating the present value of the bonds using a lower discount rate results in a higher present value (price).

Let's say that checking market prices in *The Wall Street Journal* indicates that the fair value of the Masterwear bonds on December 31, 2018, is \$714,943. As shown in Illustration 12-2, those same bonds have an amortized cost of **\$671,297**. This means there is an unrealized gain of \$43,646 for the difference. How will United account for this increase in the fair value of its debt investment? If United views the bonds as HTM investments, that change in fair value will be *ignored* so long as it is viewed as temporary.³ The investment simply will be shown in the balance sheet at amortized cost of \$671,297. United will *disclose* the fair value of its HTM investments in a note to the financial statements, but will not recognize any fair value changes in the income statement or balance sheet.⁴

Sale of HTM Investments

Typically, held-to-maturity investments are—you guessed it—held to maturity. However, suppose that due to unforeseen circumstances the company decided to sell its debt investment for \$725,000 on January 5, 2019.⁵ United would record the sale as follows (for simplicity we ignore interest earned during the first five days of 2019):⁶

²FASB ASC 320-10-25-1: Investments-Debt Securities-Overall-Recognition (previously "Accounting for Certain Investments in Debt and Equity Securities," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 115* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1993)).

³If an unrealized loss from holding an HTM investment is not viewed as temporary, an "other-than-temporary impairment" (OTT impairment) may have to be recorded. We discuss OTT impairments in more detail in Appendix 12B.

⁴If United had chosen the fair value option for this investment, it would classify the investment as a trading security rather than as an HTM security. We'll illustrate the fair value option when we discuss trading securities.

⁵GAAP [FASB ASC 320-10-25-6: Investments-Debt Securities-Overall-Recognition, previously *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 115*] lists major unforeseen events that could justify sale of an HTM investment. Sale for other reasons could call into question whether the company actually had the intent and ability to hold the investment to maturity. In that case, the company's HTM classification is viewed as "tainted," and the company can be required to reclassify *all* of its HTM investments as AFS investments and avoid using the HTM classification for two years. Similar provisions exist under IFRS for public companies.

⁶For purposes of this example, we ignore any interest accrued for the first five days of 2019. In practice, United would accrue five days of interest revenue and record five days of amortization of the discount, which would produce a revised amortized cost of the bonds that would be used to calculate any gain or loss on sale.

January 5, 2019

Cash	725,000	
Discount on bond investment (account balance)	28,703	
Investment in Masterwear bonds (account balance)		700,000
Gain on sale of investments (to balance)		53,703

In other words, United would record this sale just like any other asset sale, with a realized gain or loss determined by comparing the cash received with the carrying value (in this case, the amortized cost) of the asset sold.

Additional Consideration

Recall from Chapter 1 that GAAP identifies different ways a firm can determine fair value. If the Masterwear bonds are publicly traded, United can find the fair value by looking up the current market price (this way of obtaining fair value is consistent with “level 1” of the fair value hierarchy). On the other hand, if the bonds are not publicly traded, United can calculate the fair value by using the present value techniques shown in Illustration 12–1 (this way of obtaining fair value is consistent with “level 2” of the fair value hierarchy). With five interest periods remaining, and a current market rate of 11% (5.5% semiannually), the present value would be \$714,943.

Present Values			
Interest	\$ 42,000 × 4.27028*	=	\$179,352
Principal	\$700,000 × 0.76513*	=	535,591
Present value of the bonds			<u>\$714,943</u>

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 5$, $i = 5.5\%$. (Table 4)

*Present value of \$1: $n = 5$, $i = 5.5\%$. (Table 2)



Using Excel, enter:

=PV(.055,5, -42000,
-700000)

Output: 714,946



Using a calculator:

enter: 5 5.5
-42000 -700000
Output: = 714,946

Financial Statement Presentation

HTM securities appear in the financial statements as follows:

- **Income Statement and Statement of Comprehensive Income:** *Realized* gains and losses are shown in net income in the period in which securities are sold. *Unrealized* holding gains and losses are disclosed in the notes to financial statements. Investments in HTM securities do not affect other comprehensive income.
- **Balance Sheet:** Investments in HTM securities are reported at amortized cost. Fair values of those investments are disclosed in the notes to financial statements.
- **Cash Flow Statement:** Cash flows from buying and selling HTM securities typically are classified as investing activities.

Assuming United sold its investment on January 5, 2019, United’s 2018 and 2019 financial statements will include the amounts shown in Illustration 12–5.

Debt Investments Classified as Trading Securities

Some companies—primarily financial institutions—actively and frequently buy and sell securities, expecting to earn profits on short-term price fluctuations. Investments in debt acquired principally for the purpose of selling them in the near term are classified as **trading securities**. The holding period for trading securities generally is measured in hours and days rather than months or years. These investments typically are reported among the investor’s current assets. Usually only banks and other financial operations invest in securities in the manner and for the purpose necessary to be categorized as trading securities.

Just like HTM investments, trading securities are recorded at cost when they are purchased, and any discount or premium is amortized to interest revenue over time as periodic

Trading securities are actively managed in a trading account for the purpose of profiting from short-term price changes.

• LO12–3

Illustration 12-5

Reporting Held-to-Maturity Investments

Only realized gains and losses are included in net income.

HTM securities are reported at amortized cost.

Cash flows from buying and selling HTM securities are classified as investing activities.

(Ignoring income taxes)	2018	2019
Statement of Comprehensive Income		
Revenues	\$ ◆	\$ ◆
Expenses	◆	◆
Other income (expense):		
Interest revenue	46,664	—0—
Realized gain on sale of investments	—0—	53,703
Net income	46,664	53,703
Other comprehensive income (OCI)	—0—	—0—
Comprehensive income (Net income + OCI)	46,664	53,703
Balance Sheet		
Assets:		
HTM investments	671,297	—0—
Shareholders' equity:		
Retained Earnings	46,664	100,367*
Statement of Cash Flows (direct method)		
Operating Activities:		
Cash from interest received	42,000	—0—
Investing Activities:		
Purchase of HTM securities	(666,633)	—0—
Sale of HTM securities	—0—	725,000

*Net income of \$46,664 (2018) + \$53,703 (2019) = \$100,367 accumulates in retained earnings by the end of 2019.

interest payments are received. However, in subsequent periods, there are two important differences between trading securities and HTM investments.

1. Trading securities are written up or down to their fair value, or “marked to market”, in the balance sheet. (HTM securities are kept at amortized cost.)
2. Corresponding unrealized holding gains and losses on trading securities are included in net income in the income statement. (HTM securities do not include unrealized holdings gains and losses in net income.)

Be sure to notice that reporting trading securities at their fair value is a departure from amortized cost, which is the way many assets are reported in the balance sheet. Why the difference? For trading securities, fair value information is more relevant than for other assets intended primarily to be used in company operations, like buildings, land and equipment, or for debt investments intended to be held to maturity. Changes in fair values provide an indication of management's success in deciding when to acquire the investment, when to sell it, whether to invest in fixed-rate or variable-rate securities, and whether to invest in long-term or short-term securities. For that reason, it makes sense to report unrealized holding gains and losses on trading securities in net income during a period that fair values change, even though those gains and losses haven't yet been realized through the sale of the securities.

To see how we account for trading securities, let's return to our Masterwear bond example, but assume that those debt investments are held in an active trading portfolio. As of December 31, 2018, United has recorded the purchase of the bonds as well as receipt of the first semiannual interest payment, so the bonds have an amortized cost of \$671,297 (refer back to Illustration 12-2).

Adjust Trading Security Investments to Fair Value (2018)

Unlike HTM securities, trading securities are carried at fair value in the balance sheet, so their carrying value must be adjusted to fair value by the end of every reporting period. In fact, many companies adjust trading securities to fair value at the end of every day. Rather than increasing or decreasing the investment account itself, we use a valuation allowance, *fair value adjustment*, to increase or decrease the carrying value of the investment. At the same time, we record an unrealized holding gain or loss that is included in net income in the

FINANCIAL
Reporting Case

Q2, p. 643

Trading securities are adjusted to their fair value in each reporting period.

period in which fair value changes (remember, the gain or loss is *unrealized* because the securities haven't been sold).

Assuming the Masterwear bonds have a fair value of \$714,943 as of December 31, 2018, the next table shows the calculation of the balance in the fair value adjustment account that is required on that date.

December 31, 2018			
Security	Amortized Cost	Fair Value	Necessary Fair Value Adjustment Balance
Masterwear	\$671,297	\$714,943	\$43,646

The bonds need to be reported at their fair value of \$714,943. Because the bonds currently are recorded at their amortized cost of \$671,297, the fair value adjustment account needs a debit balance of **\$43,646**. United will recognize whatever unrealized holding gain or loss is necessary to move the fair value adjustment from its current balance of \$0 (at purchase date) to \$43,646 (on December 31, 2018). In this case, the calculation is simple:

	Fair Value Adjustment	Fair Value Adjustment
Beginning balance on 7/1/2018	\$ 0	0
± Adjustment needed to update fair value	?	43,646
Balance needed on 12/31/2018	\$43,646	43,646

The journal entry to record the **\$43,646** change in United's fair value adjustment and the corresponding unrealized holding gain is:

December 31, 2018

Fair value adjustment (calculated above)*	43,646	
Unrealized holding gain on trading securities—NI†		43,646

*Sometimes companies don't bother with a separate fair value adjustment account and simply adjust the investment account to fair value.

†We title this account "Unrealized. . .—NI" to highlight that, for trading securities, unrealized holding gains and losses are included in the income statement in the period in which they occur.

Each period United owns the Masterwear bonds, it will recognize whatever unrealized holding gain or loss is necessary to move the fair value adjustment to the value it needs to have at the end of the accounting period. Increases in the fair value adjustment produce gains on trading securities that increase net income; decreases produce losses that decrease net income.

Unrealized holding gains and losses for trading securities are included in net income in the period in which fair value changes.

Additional Consideration

Accounting for Portfolios

We have focused on accounting for an individual security, but United would use the same approach to account for a *portfolio* of trading securities. For example, assume that United has the following portfolio of trading securities as of December 31, 2018, as shown below:

Security	Amortized Cost	Fair Value	Necessary Fair Value Adjustment Balance
Miley Inc.	\$ 800,000	\$ 875,000	\$ 75,000
Perry Corp.	950,000	790,000	(160,000)
Total	<u>\$1,750,000</u>	<u>\$1,665,000</u>	<u>\$ (85,000)</u>

(continued)

(concluded)

As of December 31, 2019, the portfolio's status is as follows:

Security	Amortized Cost	Fair Value	Necessary Fair Value Adjustment Balance
Miley Inc.	\$ 600,000	\$575,000	\$ (25,000)
Swift Co.	450,000	325,000	(125,000)
Total	<u>\$1,050,000</u>	<u>\$900,000</u>	<u>\$(150,000)</u>

On December 31, 2019, the balance of the fair value adjustment needs to change from a credit of **\$85,000** to a credit of **\$150,000**, requiring an additional credit of **\$65,000** and recognition of a corresponding loss in net income.

To make that happen, United records the following journal entry:

Unrealized holding loss on trading securities—NI.....	65,000	
Fair value adjustment.....		65,000

Fair Value Adjustment
85,000
65,000
150,000

Sale of Trading Security Investments

Now assume that United sells the bonds for \$725,000 on January 5, 2019. To account for the sale, United needs to do two things. First, United needs to update the carrying value of the bonds to fair value and record in net income any unrealized holding gains and losses that occurred during 2019 up to the date of sale. Second, on the date of sale, United needs to record the receipt of cash and remove the amounts associated with the investment from the relevant balance sheet accounts. Let's record each of these entries. (As in our example for HTM investments, for simplicity we ignore interest earned during the first five days of 2019.)

1. Adjust Trading Securities to Fair Value (2019). We first need to update the fair value adjustment and recognize any unrealized holding gains or losses that have occurred during the current reporting period prior to the date of sale. We already have accounted for fair value changes that occurred during 2018. Now we need to record the additional fair value changes and their related unrealized holding gains and losses that have occurred each day in 2019 up to the moment of sale. Companies might record these changes in fair value at the end of each day, but we use a single summary entry that captures those changes in fair value up to the moment of sale.

Remember that on December 31, 2018, the amortized cost of the Masterwear bonds was \$671,297, and the fair value was \$714,943. We recorded a fair value adjustment of \$43,646 for this unrealized holding gain. Now, on January 5, 2019, the fair value has increased further to \$725,000, so we need to update the fair value adjustment for the additional **\$10,057** increase in fair value.

December 31, 2018

Security	Amortized Cost	Fair Value	Necessary Fair Value Adjustment Balance
Masterwear	\$671,297	\$725,000	\$53,703

Fair Value Adjustment
43,646
10,057
53,703

	Fair Value Adjustment
Beginning balance on 12/31/2018	\$ 43,646
± Adjustment needed to update fair value	?
Balance needed as of date of sale	<u>\$53,703</u>

United needs to record an increase in the fair value adjustment and an additional unrealized holding gain of \$10,057 that occurred during the first week of 2019. The journal entry is:

January 5, 2019

Fair value adjustment.....	10,057	
Unrealized holding gain on trading securities—NI (to balance).....		10,057

For trading securities, unrealized holding gains and losses from fair value changes are recorded up to the date an investment is sold.

2. Record the Sale Transaction. After making the previous journal entry, the investment is carried at its fair value as of the date it is being sold, and already has included in net income any gain or loss arising from the difference between amortized cost and fair value as of the date of sale. All that remains is for United to record receipt of cash and remove the investment-related accounts from the balance sheet (again, for simplicity we ignore interest earned during the first five days of 2019).

When a trading security is sold, all of the gain or loss already has been included in net income, so no additional gain or loss is recognized.

January 5, 2019

Cash	725,000	
Discount on bond investment (account balance)	28,703	
Investment in Masterwear bonds (account balance)		700,000
Fair value adjustment (account balance)		53,703

As with the sale of the HTM investment, we record the receipt of \$725,000 cash and remove all the balance sheet accounts associated with the investment. However, unlike the HTM investment, our TS investment has an additional balance sheet account, the fair value adjustment, that needs to be removed when we record the sale. Another difference between the HTM and TS approach is that, because we carry trading securities at fair value as of the date of sale and already have included in net income the entire gain associated with changes in the fair value of the investment, there is no gain or loss to recognize on the date of sale.⁷ However, over the life of the investments, United recognized the same amount of gain under the TS approach ($\$43,646 + 10,057 = \$53,703$) as it recognized upon sale under the HTM approach ($\$53,703$). The only difference is timing, with trading securities recognizing unrealized holding gains and losses from fair value changes as they occur but the HTM approach recognizing gains or losses only when they are realized upon sale.

Financial Statement Presentation

Trading securities appear in the financial statements as follows:

- **Income Statement and Statement of Comprehensive Income:** For trading securities, gains and losses are included in the income statement in the periods in which fair value changes, *regardless of whether they are realized or unrealized*. Investments in trading securities do not affect other comprehensive income.
- **Balance Sheet:** Investments in trading securities are reported at fair value, typically as current assets.
- **Cash Flow Statement:** Cash flows from buying and selling trading securities typically are classified as operating activities, because the financial institutions that routinely hold trading securities consider them as part of their normal operations.

Assuming United sold its investment on January 5, 2019, United's 2018 and 2019 financial statements will include the amounts shown in Illustration 12–6.

Debt Investments Classified as Available-for-Sale Securities

The HTM treatment assumes we hold the bonds for their entire life. The trading securities treatment assumes we are planning to sell the bonds in the very near future. Our third treatment, **available-for-sale (AFS) securities**, falls in the middle. We aren't planning to trade

• LO12–4

AFS investments aren't held for trading or designated as held to maturity.

⁷As noted in FASB ASC 320-10-40: Investments—Debt Securities—Overall—Derecognition, for expediency companies may not update the fair value adjustment to the fair value as of the date of sale before recording the sale. In that case, the investment is carried at fair value as of the last balance sheet date, and this second entry would include a gain or loss based on the difference between the cash received and the carrying value of the investment. In our example, the fair value adjustment balance was \$43,646 on December 31, 2018, and United would record the following sale entry on January 5, 2019:

Cash	725,000	
Discount on bond investment (account balance)	28,703	
Investment in Masterwear bonds (account balance)		700,000
Fair value adjustment (account balance)		43,646
Gain on trading securities - NI (to balance)		10,057

Illustration 12-6

Reporting Trading Securities

For trading securities, fair value changes affect net income in the period in which they occur.

Trading securities are reported at fair value in the balance sheet.

Cash flows from buying and selling trading securities are classified as operating activities.

AFS investments are reported at their fair values.

(Ignoring income taxes)**Statement of Comprehensive Income**

	2018	2019
Revenues	\$ ◆	\$ ◆
Expenses	◆	◆
Other income (expense):		
Interest revenue	46,664	—0—
Gains and losses on trading securities	43,646	10,057
Net income	90,310	10,057
Other comprehensive income (OCI)	—0—	—0—
Comprehensive income (Net income + OCI)	<u>\$ 90,310</u>	<u>\$ 10,057</u>

Balance Sheet

Assets:		
Trading securities	714,943	—0—
Shareholders' equity:		
Retained Earnings	90,310	100,367*

Statement of Cash Flows (direct method)

Operating Activities:		
Cash from interest received	42,000	—0—
Purchase of trading securities	(666,633)	—0—
Sale of trading securities	—0—	725,000

*Net income of \$90,310 (2018) + \$10,057 (2019) = \$100,367 accumulates in retained earnings by the end of 2019.

the debt investment actively, but the investment is available to sell if, for example, cash needs arise or the market is particularly favorable. In that case, the company classifies its debt investment as AFS. Like trading securities, we report AFS securities in the balance sheet at fair value. Unlike trading securities, though, unrealized holding gains and losses on AFS securities are *not* included in net income. Instead, they are reported in the statement of comprehensive income as other comprehensive income (OCI).

Additional Consideration

Don't Shoot the Messenger. Or, as written in *The Economist*, "Messenger, Shot: Accounting rules are under attack. Standard-setters should defend them. Politicians and banks should back off."⁸ Using fair values that are hard to estimate is controversial. For example, during the financial crisis of 2008/2009 many financial-services companies had to recognize huge unrealized losses associated with their investments. Some blamed their losses on GAAP for requiring estimates of fair value that were driven by depressed current market prices, argued that those losses worsened the financial crisis, and lobbied for a move away from fair-value accounting. Others countered that these companies were using GAAP's requirement for fair value accounting as a "scapegoat" for their bad investment decisions. "Fair value accounting . . . does not create losses but rather reflects a firm's present condition," says Georgene Palacky, director of the CFA's financial reporting group.⁹

Comprehensive Income

Recall from Chapter 4 that comprehensive income is a more all-encompassing view of operations than net income. It includes not only net income but also all other changes in equity that do not arise from transactions with owners.¹⁰ Comprehensive income therefore includes net

⁸Transactions with owners primarily include dividends and the sale or purchase of shares of the company's stock.

⁹"Messenger, Shot," *The Economist*, April 8, 2009.

¹⁰Sarah Johnson, "The Fair Value Blame Game," CFO.com, March 19, 2008.

income as well as *other comprehensive income (OCI)*. You know that net income is closed to retained earnings at the end of each accounting period, and therefore accumulates in retained earnings over time in the shareholders' equity section of the balance sheet. Similarly, OCI is closed to *accumulated other comprehensive income (AOCI)* at the end of each accounting period, and therefore accumulates in AOCI in the shareholders' equity section of the balance sheet. OCI relates to AOCI the same way that net income relates to retained earnings.

Rationale for AFS Treatment of Unrealized Holding Gains and Losses

Why use an approach for accounting for AFS securities that differs from that used for trading securities? Because AFS securities are likely to be held for multiple reporting periods, one could argue that there is sufficient time for unrealized holding gains in some periods to balance out with unrealized holding losses in other periods, so including unrealized holding gains and losses in income each period would confuse investors by making income appear more volatile than it really is over the long run.¹¹ But how can we show AFS investments at fair value in the balance sheet without recording in net income the unrealized gains and losses associated with changes in fair value? The solution is to show those unrealized gains and losses in OCI as they occur and then only include realized gains and losses in net income in the period in which an investment is actually sold.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 643

Adjust AFS Investments to Fair Value (2018)

To see how we adjust AFS investments to their fair value, let's assume the Masterwear bond investment is classified as AFS. As of December 31, 2018, United has recorded the purchase of the bonds on July 1, 2018, as well as receipt of the first semiannual interest payment, so the bonds have an amortized cost of \$671,297 (refer back to Illustration 12–2). The fair value of the bonds on December 31, 2018, is \$714,943. The next table shows the calculation of the balance in the fair value adjustment account that is required on that date.

December 31, 2018			
Security	Amortized Cost	Fair Value	Necessary Fair Value Adjustment Balance
Masterwear	\$671,297	\$714,943	\$43,646

United needs to adjust the balance of the fair value adjustment account from its current balance of \$0 (at purchase date) to a debit balance of **\$43,646** (on December 31, 2018).

	Fair Value Adjustment	Fair Value Adjustment
Beginning balance on 7/1/2018	\$ 0	0
± Adjustment needed to update fair value	?	43,646
Balance needed on 12/31/2018	\$43,646	43,646

The journal entry to record the **\$43,646** change in United's fair value adjustment and the corresponding unrealized holding gain is:

December 31, 2018

Fair value adjustment*	43,646	
Unrealized holding gain on AFS investments—OCI†		43,646

*Sometimes companies don't bother with a separate fair value adjustment account and simply adjust the investment account to fair value.

†We title this account "Unrealized . . .—OCI" to highlight that, for available-for-sale securities, unrealized holding gains and losses are included in other comprehensive income (OCI) in the period in which they occur.

For AFS securities, unrealized holding gains and losses from fair value changes are not included in net income, but instead are reported as OCI.

Notice that the amount of unrealized holding gain is the same for these AFS securities as it was for the trading securities in the previous section. What differs is that the

¹¹Of course, one could counter-argue that these unrealized holding gains and losses still are relevant, given that each period an investor has discretion over whether or not to continue holding the security or sell that security to realize a gain or loss. For that reason, many accountants would prefer that the FASB do away with the AFS approach and just treat these investments as trading securities.

unrealized holding gain is included in OCI for AFS securities instead of net income as it is for trading securities. At the end of the reporting period, the unrealized holding gain is closed to a shareholders' equity account for both approaches. What differs is that net income gets closed to retained earnings, and OCI gets closed to Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (AOCI). As with trading securities, the fair value adjustment will be adjusted up or down each period, either for individual securities or for a portfolio of securities, and a corresponding unrealized holding gain or loss reported in OCI. Net income normally is not affected by AFS investments until the period an AFS investment is sold, as we'll discuss next.

Sale of AFS Investments

Let's once again assume that United sells its Masterwear bonds for \$725,000 on January 5, 2019 (as with our HTM and TS examples, for simplicity we ignore any interest earned during 2019). For AFS securities, United needs to record three journal entries.¹²

For AFS investments, unrealized holding gains and losses from fair value changes are recorded up to the date an investment is sold.

- 1. Adjust AFS Investments to Fair Value (2019).** As with trading securities, we first need to update the fair value adjustment and recognize any unrealized holding gains or losses that have occurred during the current reporting period prior to the date of sale. Remember that on December 31, 2018, the amortized cost of the Masterwear bonds was \$671,297, and the fair value was \$714,943. We recorded a fair value adjustment of \$43,646 for this unrealized holding gain. Now, on January 5, 2019, the fair value has increased further to \$725,000, so we need to update the fair value adjustment for the additional \$10,057 increase in fair value.

January 5, 2019			
Security	Amortized Cost	Fair Value	Necessary Fair Value Adjustment Balance
Masterwear	\$671,297	\$725,000	\$53,703

Fair Value Adjustment		Fair Value Adjustment	
43,646		Balance as of 12/31/2018	\$43,646
10,057		± Adjustment needed to update fair value	?
53,703		Balance needed as of date of sale	\$53,703

United needs to record an increase in the fair value adjustment and an additional unrealized holding gain of \$10,057 that occurred during the first week of 2019. The journal entry to record the gain is:

January 5, 2019		
Fair value adjustment.....	10,057	
Unrealized holding gain on AFS investments—OCI		10,057

At this point, the investment is carried in the balance sheet at its fair value as of the date it is being sold, and all unrealized gains and losses associated with the investment have been included in OCI. Because OCI gets closed to AOCI, the unrealized gains and losses accumulate in AOCI, which acts as a sort of "holding tank" in the shareholders' equity section of the balance sheet. Unrealized holding gains in some years offset unrealized losses in other years as they accumulate in the tank.

When an AFS investment is sold, accumulated unrealized gains and losses are removed from AOCI using a reclassification entry.

- 2. Reverse Previous Fair Value Adjustments.** United has been recording changes in fair value over the life of the investment. If United now sells that investment, the effects of those fair value changes must be reversed. United reverses previous unrealized holding gains included in OCI by debiting a reclassification adjustment to OCI for the same amount. Similarly, the account balance of the fair value adjustment is eliminated.

¹²This description of accounting for sales of AFS investments is adapted from the example of journal entries and financial statement presentation shown by FASB ASC 220-10-55 (para. 24-27): Comprehensive Income—Overall—Implementation Guidance and Illustrations—Case B: Available-for-Sale Debt Securities. The three journal entries we describe could be combined into one or two entries in practice.

January 5, 2019

Reclassification adjustment—OCI	53,703	
Fair value adjustment (account balance)		53,703

After this journal entry is recorded, the fair value adjustment account has a zero balance. Also, after the reclassification adjustment is closed to AOCI, all of the unrealized gains that are associated with the investment have been removed from the AOCI holding tank in shareholders' equity.¹³ It's as if no accounting for unrealized gains and losses had ever taken place.¹⁴ That's important, because in the next entry United recognizes in net income a gain or loss on sale. If United didn't use the reclassification entry to back out the unrealized gains and losses from AOCI, it would end up having double counted them in comprehensive income and shareholders equity after it records the sale in the next entry.

3. **Record the Sale Transaction.** Now that all of the unrealized holding gains and losses and the fair value adjustment have been cleared away, the final step is to "plug" for the realized gain or loss (a gain in this case).

January 5, 2019

Cash	725,000	
Discount on bond investment (account balance)	28,703	
Investment in Masterwear bonds (account balance)		700,000
Gain on AFS investments—NI (to balance)		53,703

This entry is identical to the entry United made to record sale of the investment under the HTM approach. As with the HTM investments, no gain or loss is recognized in net income over the life of the investment. Instead, the entire gain or loss is recognized in net income at the time of the sale. So, with this entry and the one preceding it, United has reclassified its \$53,703 gain from OCI to net income. That's why the process is called reclassification.

Fair Value Adjustment

43,646	
10,057	53,703
0	

AOCI (after closing)

	43,646
53,703	10,057
	0

When an AFS investment is sold, realized gains and losses are included in net income.

Additional Consideration

More About Reclassification

Look back through the three entries that are shown for recording a sale of an AFS investment. Think about what has happened. First, United recorded unrealized holding gains in OCI each period as fair value changed over time, and at the end of each period it closed OCI to AOCI in shareholders' equity. Then, once the investment was sold, United backed those unrealized gains out of OCI (and thus out of AOCI) and included them in net income (which is closed to retained earnings in shareholders' equity). From the perspective of shareholders' equity, the unrealized gains were first accumulated in AOCI and then were reclassified from AOCI to retained earnings in the period of sale.

We can rearrange the second and third journal entries to highlight this reclassification process:

Reclassification adjustment—OCI	53,703	
Gain on AFS investments—NI (to balance)		53,703
Cash	725,000	
Discount on bond investment (account balance)	28,703	
Investment in Masterwear bonds (account balance)		700,000
Fair value adjustment (account balance)		53,703

Once the investment is sold, all the balance sheet accounts are removed and the unrealized holding gains and losses that have been accumulating in AOCI are transferred out of AOCI (via the reclassification entry) and included in net income.

¹³As noted in FASB ASC 320-10-40: Investments—Debt Securities—Overall—Derecognition, for expediency companies might not update the fair value adjustment to fair value before recording the sale. In that case, this second entry would be based on the fair value adjustment as of the last balance sheet date. In our example, the fair value adjustment balance would be \$43,646, so that is the amount by which it would be reduced and that is the amount of reclassification adjustment that would be recorded in OCI.

¹⁴Companies may choose to make this journal entry at the end of the reporting period when they update their fair value adjustment. The order doesn't matter, so long as the journal entry is recorded in the correct reporting period.

It may seem odd that we bother to put all of the unrealized holding gains and losses into OCI and then take them out again, but that approach makes it very clear when gains and losses are moving in and out of AOCI and getting recognized in net income. Here's what happens in the financial statements.

Financial Statement Presentation

AFS securities appear in the financial statements as follows:

- **Income Statement and Statement of Comprehensive Income:** Gains and losses are shown in OCI in the periods in which changes in fair value occur. Those amounts are reclassified out of OCI and recognized in net income in the periods in which securities are sold.
- **Balance Sheet:** Investments in AFS securities are reported at fair value. *Unrealized* holding gains and losses become part of AOCI in shareholders' equity, and are reclassified out of AOCI in the periods in which securities are sold.
- **Cash Flow Statement:** Cash flows from buying and selling AFS securities typically are classified as investing activities.

Assuming United sold its investment on January 5, 2019, United's 2018 and 2019 financial statements will include the amounts shown in Illustration 12-7.

Illustration 12-7

Reporting Available-for-Sale Securities

Only *realized* gains and losses are included in net income.

Other comprehensive income includes *unrealized* holding gains and losses that occur during the reporting period.

AFS securities are reported at fair value.

AOCI (in shareholders' equity) includes net unrealized holding gains or losses *accumulated* over the current and prior periods.

Cash flows from buying and selling AFS securities usually are classified as investing activities.

(Ignoring income taxes)

Statement of Comprehensive Income

	2018	2019
Revenues	\$ ◆	\$ ◆
Expenses	◆	◆
Other income (expense):		
Interest revenue	46,664	—0—
Realized gain on sale of investments	—0—	53,703
Net income	46,664	53,703
Other comprehensive income (loss) items (OCI):*		
Unrealized holding gains (losses) on investments	43,646	10,057
Reclassification adjustment for net gains and losses included in net income	—0—	(53,703)
Total OCI	43,646	(43,646)
Comprehensive income (Net income + OCI)	<u>\$ 90,310</u>	<u>\$ 10,057</u>

Balance Sheet

Assets:		
Available-for-sale securities	\$714,943	\$ —0—
Shareholders' equity:		
Accumulated other comprehensive income (AOCI)	43,646	—0—
Retained Earnings	46,664	100,367 [†]

Statement of Cash Flows (direct method)

Operating activities:		
Cash from interest received	42,000	—0—
Investing activities:		
Purchase of available-for-sale securities	(666,633)	—0—
Sale of available-for-sale securities	—0—	725,000

*As we discuss in more detail in Chapter 18, the statement of comprehensive income can be presented as a continuation of the income statement as shown here, or in a separate statement that immediately follows the income statement.

[†]Net income of \$46,664 (2018) + \$53,703 (2019) = \$100,367 accumulates in retained earnings by the end of 2019.

Individual securities available for sale are classified as either current or noncurrent assets, depending on how long they're likely to be held. An example from the 2015 annual report of **Cisco Systems** is shown in Illustration 12-8.

Item 1A: Risk Factors (in part)

We maintain an investment portfolio of various holdings, types, and maturities. These securities are generally classified as available-for-sale and, consequently, are recorded on our Consolidated Balance Sheets at fair value with unrealized gains or losses reported as a component of accumulated other comprehensive income.

Note 8: Investments (in part)

The following tables summarize the Company's available-for-sale investments (\$ in millions):

July 25, 2015	Amortized Cost	Gross Unrealized Gains	Gross Unrealized Losses	Fair Value
Fixed income securities:				
U.S. Government	\$29,904	\$41	\$ (6)	\$29,939
U.S. Government agency	3,662	2	(1)	3,663
Non-U.S. Gov't agency	1,128	1	(1)	1,128
Corporate debt securities	15,802	34	(53)	15,783
U.S. agency mortgage-backed	1,456	8	(3)	1,461
Total fixed income securities	51,952	86	(64)	51,974

Illustration 12-8

Investments in Securities
Available-for-Sale—Cisco
Systems

Real World Financials

Comparison of HTM, TS, and AFS Approaches

Illustration 12-9 compares accounting for the Masterwear bonds under the three different approaches.

Illustration 12-9 Comparison of HTM, TS, and AFS Approaches

	Held-to-Maturity (HTM)		Trading (TS)		Available-for-Sale (AFS)	
Purchase bonds at a discount	Investments	700,000				
	Discount	33,367	Same as HTM		Same as HTM	
	Cash	666,633				
Record interest revenue	Cash	42,000				
	Discount	4,664	Same as HTM		Same as HTM	
	Interest rev.	46,664				
Adjust to fair value, 2018	No entry	FV adjustment	43,646	FV adjustment	43,646	
		Holding gain—NI	43,646	Holding gain—OCI	43,646	
Sell bonds in 2019						
1. Adjust to fair value, 2019	No entry	FV adjustment	10,057	FV adjustment	10,057	
		Holding gain—NI	10,057	Holding gain—OCI	10,057	
2. Reclassify unrealized holding gains/losses	No entry	No entry		Reclassification—OCI	53,703	
				FV adjustment	53,703	
3. Record sale of bonds	Cash	725,000	Cash	725,000	Cash	725,000
	Discount	28,703	Discount	28,703	Discount	28,703
	Investments	700,000	Investments	700,000	Investments	700,000
	Gain—NI	53,703	FV Adjustment	53,703	Gain—NI	53,703
Note: Total gain of \$53,703 is recognized in net income in the period of the sale.		Note: Total gain of \$53,703 is recognized in net income over the periods in which the investment is held (43,646 + 10,057).		Note: Reclassification backs out unrealized gains from OCI (and therefore from AOCI), so total gain of \$53,703 is recognized in net income in the period of the sale.		
AOCI						
					43,646	
					10,057	
				53,703		
						0

This side-by-side comparison highlights several aspects of these accounting approaches:

- To record the purchase of an investment and the receipt of interest revenue, we use identical entries in all three approaches.
- To record changes in fair value, the entries we use for TS and AFS securities have the same effect on the investment (via the fair value adjustment valuation allowance) and the same eventual effect on total shareholders' equity. What differs is whether the unrealized holding gain or loss is recognized in net income and then in retained earnings (TS) or recognized in OCI and then in AOCI (AFS). No fair value adjustment is reported for HTM securities.
- Regardless of approach, the cash flows are the same, and the same total amount of gain or loss is recognized in the income statement (TS: \$43,646 in 2018 + \$10,057 in 2019 = \$53,703 total; AFS and HTM: \$53,703 in 2019). The question is not *how much* total net income is recognized, but *when* the amounts are recognized in net income.

Additional Consideration

Available-for-Sale Investments and Income Taxes. When comparing accounting for TS and AFS securities, we saw that total shareholders' equity ends up being the same amount, regardless of whether unrealized gains and losses are included in net income and closed to retained earnings in shareholders' equity (for TS) or included only in OCI and shown in AOCI in shareholders' equity (for AFS securities). But what about taxes? Tax expense affects net income, so retained earnings includes after-tax amounts. For AOCI to be equivalent to retained earnings, it also should include only after-tax amounts. Therefore, adjustments must be made to OCI and AOCI to account for tax effects. Typically these adjustments also give rise to deferred tax assets and liabilities, as unrealized holding gains and losses rarely affect the current period's taxes payable. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are discussed in Chapter 16.



International Financial Reporting Standards

Accounting for Debt Investments. Until recently, *IAS No. 39* was the standard that specified appropriate accounting for all investments under IFRS.¹⁵ The primary categories in *IAS No. 39* are similar to those in U.S. GAAP, consisting of Fair Value through Profit & Loss (FVPL), similar to TS, HTM, and AFS.

IFRS No. 9, amended on July 24, 2014, will be required after January 1, 2018, and earlier adoption is permitted, so until 2018 either *IAS No. 39* or *IFRS No. 9* might be in effect for a particular company.¹⁶ *IFRS No. 9* eliminates the HTM and AFS classifications, replaced by new classifications that are more restrictive. Specifically, under *IFRS No. 9*, investments in debt securities are classified either as amortized cost (accounted for like HTM investments in U.S. GAAP), fair value through other comprehensive income ("FVOCI," accounted for like AFS investments, except for different impairment recognition criteria) or fair value through profit or loss ("FVPL," accounted for like trading securities). Classification depends on two criteria: (1) whether the investment's contractual cash flows consist solely of payments of principal and interest (SPPI), and (2) whether the business purpose of the investment is to hold it for purposes of collecting contractual cash flows, sell the investment at a profit, or both. If the investment qualifies as SPPI and is held only to collect cash flows, it is classified as amortized cost. If it qualifies as SPPI and is held both to collect cash flows and potentially be sold, it is classified as FVOCI. Otherwise it is classified as FVPL.

One other difference between U.S. GAAP and IFRS is worth noting. U.S. GAAP allows specialized accounting (beyond the scope of this textbook) for particular industries like securities brokers/dealers, investment companies, and insurance companies. IFRS does not.

¹⁵"Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement," *International Accounting Standard No. 39* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2009.

¹⁶"Financial Instruments," *International Financial Reporting Standard No. 9* (IASCF), November 12, 2009, as amended effective January 1, 2016.

Transfers between Reporting Categories

At each reporting date, the appropriateness of the classification of a debt investment is reassessed. For instance, if the investor no longer has the ability to hold certain securities to maturity and will now hold them for resale, those securities would be reclassified from HTM to AFS. When a security is reclassified between two reporting categories, the security is transferred at its fair value on the date of transfer. Any unrealized holding gain or loss at reclassification should be accounted for *in a manner consistent with the classification into which the security is being transferred*. A summary is provided in Illustration 12–10.

A transfer of a security between reporting categories is accounted for at fair value and in accordance with the new reporting classification.

Illustration 12–10

Transfer between Investment Categories

Transfer from:	To:	Unrealized Gain or Loss from Transfer at Fair Value
Either HTM or AFS	Trading	Include in current net income the total unrealized gain or loss, as if it all occurred in the current period.
Trading	Either HTM or AFS	Include in current net income any unrealized gain or loss that occurred in the current period prior to the transfer. (Unrealized gains and losses that occurred in prior periods already were included in net income in those periods.)
Held-to-maturity	Available-for-sale	No current income effect. Report total unrealized gain or loss as a separate component of shareholders' equity (in AOCI).
Available-for-sale	Held-to-maturity	No current income effect. Don't write off any existing unrealized holding gain or loss in AOCI, but amortize it to net income over the remaining life of the security (fair value amount becomes the security's amortized cost basis).

Reclassifications are quite unusual, so when they occur, disclosure notes should describe the circumstances that resulted in the transfers. Other disclosure notes are described in a later section.

International Financial Reporting Standards

Transfers Between Investment Categories. IAS No. 39 allows transfers of debt investments out of the FVPL category into AFS or HTM in “rare circumstances.” Under IFRS No. 9, transfers of debt investments between the amortized cost, FVOCI, and FVPL categories occurs if and only if the company changes its business model with respect to the debt investment.



● LO12–9

Fair Value Option

You may recall from Chapter 1 that GAAP allows a **fair value option** (FVO) that permits companies to elect to account for most financial assets and liabilities at fair value. Under the FVO, HTM and AFS investments are shown in the balance sheet at their fair values, and unrealized gains and losses are recognized in net income in the period in which they occur. That accounting approach should sound familiar—it’s the same approach we use to account for trading securities. However, unlike trading securities, purchases and sales of investments accounted for under the FVO are likely to be classified as investing activities in the statement of cash flows, because those investments are not held for sale in the near term and therefore are not operational in nature.

The company decides whether to elect the FVO on the date the company purchases the investment. The company can elect the FVO for some securities and not for identical

Choosing the fair value option for HTM and AFS investments means accounting for them like trading securities.

● LO12–8

others—it's entirely up to the company, but the company has to explain in the notes why it made a partial election. The election is *irrevocable*. So, for example, if a company elects the FVO and later believes that the fair value of an investment is likely to decline, it can't change the election and discontinue use of fair value accounting to avoid recognizing a loss.

Why allow the FVO? As described in Appendix A of this book, companies sometimes enter into *hedging arrangements* that are intended to reduce earnings volatility by offsetting changes in the fair value of assets with changes in the fair value of liabilities. Complex rules apply to many hedging arrangements. The FVO simplifies this process by allowing companies to choose whether to use fair value for most types of financial assets and liabilities. Thus, when a company enters into a hedging arrangement, it just has to make sure to elect the FVO for each asset and liability in the hedging arrangement, and fair value changes of those assets and liabilities will be included in earnings.



• LO12–9

International Financial Reporting Standards

Fair Value Option. International accounting standards are more restrictive than U.S. standards for determining when firms are allowed to elect the FVO. Under both *IAS No. 39* and *IFRS No. 9*, companies can elect the FVO only in specific circumstances. For example, a firm could elect the FVO for an asset or liability in order to avoid the “accounting mismatch” that occurs when some parts of a fair value risk-hedging arrangement are accounted for at fair value and others are not. Although U.S. GAAP indicates that the intent of the FVO is to address these sorts of circumstances, it does not require that those circumstances exist.

An “other-than-temporary” impairment loss is recognized in net income even though the security hasn't been sold.

Impairment of Debt Investments

In this chapter we've seen that declines (as well as increases) in the fair value of some investments are reported in earnings. For instance, if the fair value of an investment in trading securities declines, we reduce the reported amount of that investment in the balance sheet and include the loss from the fair value decline in the income statement. Likewise, if the investor has elected the FVO for HTM or AFS investments, those investments are accounted for as trading securities, so fair value changes always are recognized in earnings. Otherwise, fair value changes for HTM and AFS investments typically are not recognized in earnings.

However, there is an exception. If the fair value of an HTM or AFS investment declines below the amortized cost of the investment, and that decline is deemed to be *other-than-temporary (OTT)*, the company recognizes an OTT impairment loss in earnings. Accounting for OTT impairments is complicated, both with respect to determining whether an impairment is OTT and in determining the amount of the impairment to include in earnings. After an OTT impairment is recognized, the ordinary treatment of unrealized gains and losses is resumed; that is, further changes in fair value are reported in OCI for AFS investments and not recognized for HTM investments.

CURRENT EXPECTED CREDIT LOSS (CECL) MODEL FOR DEBT INVESTMENTS.

Guidance in this area is changing. Starting in 2020, companies will be required to use the CECL (“Current Expected Credit Loss”) model to account for impairments of HTM and AFS investments, and companies can choose to use that approach starting in 2019.¹⁷ The CECL model uses the allowance method to account for impairments that you learned to use to account for bad debts in Chapter 7. It requires recognizing impairments of HTM and AFS investments regardless of whether they are judged to be other than temporary. Therefore impairments of debt investments are likely to be recognized sooner under the CECL model than under the current approach.

An in-depth discussion of accounting for impairments of debt investments is provided in Appendix 12B.

¹⁷“Financial Instruments--Credit Losses (Topic 326)” *Accounting Standards Update 2016-13* (Norwalk, Conn: FASB, 2016).

International Financial Reporting Standards



Impairments. IFRS No. 9, amended on July 24, 2014, will be required after January 1, 2018, and earlier adoption is permitted.¹⁸ IFRS No. 9 calculates impairment of debt investments measured at amortized cost or FVOCI using the *expected credit loss (ECL)* model, which is somewhat similar to the CECL model that will be required soon in U.S. GAAP. Both the U.S. CECL model, and the IFRS ECL model calculate expected credit losses over the remaining life of the investment if there has been a significant increase in credit risk. The U.S. CECL model also does that if there has not been a significant increase in credit risk. In contrast, under the IFRS ECL model, if the credit risk of a debt investment has not increased, the estimate of credit losses only has to include credit losses that result from default events that are possible within the *next 12 months*. For many debt investments, this approach accrues very little credit loss, because the credit risk of the investment hasn't changed and default within the next twelve months is very unlikely. Companies can elect to always recognize lifetime credit losses, but it is unlikely that many will choose to do so. That means that U.S. GAAP will tend to recognize impairment losses earlier, and in higher amounts, than are recognized under IFRS. Further convergence in this area is unlikely in the near future.

● LO12-9

Concept Review Exercise

Diversified Services, Inc. offers a variety of business services, including financial services through its escrow division. Diversified's fiscal year ends on December 31. Diversified entered into the following investment activities during the last month of 2018 and the first week of 2019:

VARIOUS INVESTMENT SECURITIES

2018

- Dec. 1 Purchased \$30 million of 12% bonds of Vince-Gill Amusement Corporation and \$24 million of 10% bonds of Eastern Waste Disposal Corporation, both at face value. The Vince-Gill bonds are to be held until they mature. The Eastern Waste bonds are to be held but might be sold if cash needs require it. Interest on each bond issue is payable semiannually on November 30 and May 31.
- 30 Purchased U.S. Treasury bonds for \$5.8 million as trading securities hoping to earn profits on short-term differences in prices.
- 31 Recorded the necessary adjusting entries relating to the investments.

As of December 31, 2018, the fair value of the Vince-Gill bonds was \$32 million, the fair value of the Eastern Waste bonds was \$25 million, and the fair value of the Treasury bonds was \$5.7 million.

2019

- Jan. 7 Sold the Eastern Waste bonds for \$22 million and sold the U.S. Treasury bonds for \$6 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entry for each transaction or event and show the amounts that would be reported in the company's 2018 income statement relative to these investments. Record interest accruing in 2018, but ignore any interest accruing in 2019.
2. Determine the effects of the Eastern Waste investment on net income, other comprehensive income, and comprehensive income for 2018, 2019, and combined over both years. Ignore interest revenue.

¹⁸"Financial Instruments," *International Financial Reporting Standard No. 9* (IASCF), November 12, 2009, as amended effective January 1, 2016.

1. Journal entries:

2018

- Dec. 1** Purchased \$30 million of 12% bonds of Vince-Gill Amusement Corporation and \$24 million of 10% bonds of Eastern Waste Disposal Corporation, both at face value. The Vince-Gill bonds are to be held until they mature, but the Eastern Waste bonds are to be held but might be sold if cash needs require it. Interest on each bond issue is payable semiannually on November 30 and May 31.

	(\$ in millions)	
Investment in HTM securities (Vince-Gill)	30	
Investment in AFS securities (Eastern Waste).....	24	
Cash.....		54

- Dec. 30** Purchased U.S. Treasury bonds for \$5.8 million as trading securities, hoping to earn profits on short-term differences in prices.

	(\$ in millions)	
Investment in trading securities (U.S. Treasury bonds).....	5.8	
Cash.....		5.8

- Dec. 31** Recorded the necessary adjusting entries relating to the investments.

Accrued Interest (one month)	(\$ in millions)	
Interest receivable—Vince-Gill		
(\$30 million × 12% × 1/12).....	0.3	
Interest receivable—Eastern Waste		
(\$24 million × 10% × 1/12).....	0.2	
Interest revenue		0.5
Fair Value Adjustments		
Unrealized holding loss—NI (\$5.7 – 5.8).....	0.1	
Fair value adjustment, TS investments.....		0.1
Fair value adjustment, AFS investments		
(\$25 million cost – 24 million fair value)	1	
Unrealized holding gain—OCI		1

Note: Securities held-to-maturity are not adjusted to fair value.

Reported in the 2018 Income Statement	(\$ in millions)
Interest revenue (\$0.5 interest)	\$0.5
Loss on investments (trading securities)	(0.1)

Note: The \$1 million unrealized holding gain for the Eastern Waste bonds is not included in net income because it pertains to available-for-sale securities rather than trading securities, and so is reflected in OCI.

2019

- Jan. 7** Sold the Eastern Waste bonds for \$22 million and sold the U.S Treasury bonds for \$6 million.

First consider the AFS investment (Eastern Waste). The fair value of the Eastern Waste bonds at the time of sale is \$22 million. Those bonds were carried at a fair value of \$25 million as of December 31, 2018, so have suffered an unrealized loss of \$3 million during the first part of 2019.

	(\$ in millions)	
Unrealized holding loss—OCI (\$25 – 22)	3	
Fair value adjustment, AFS investments.....		3

Second, given that the fair value adjustment for the Eastern Waste bonds now has a \$2 million credit balance, we need to remove that amount and record the corresponding reclassification entry for OCI:

FV Adjustment, AFS Investments		
	1	2018 unrealized gain
	3	2019 unrealized loss
	2	Preadjustment balance
		Reclassification entry
		0

	(\$ in millions)
Fair value adjustment, AFS investments (account balance).....	2
Reclassification adjustment—OCI	2

Third, we need to record the receipt of cash and the loss realized upon sale of the investment:

	(\$ in millions)
Cash	22
Loss—NI (to balance)	2
Investment in AFS securities (Eastern Waste)	24

Next consider the investment in trading securities (U.S. Treasuries). The fair value of the U.S. Treasury bonds at the time of sale is \$6 million. Those bonds were carried at a fair value of \$5.7 million as of December 31, 2018, so have enjoyed an unrealized holding gain of **\$0.3** million during the first part of 2019.

	(\$ in millions)
Fair value adjustment, trading securities	0.3
Unrealized holding gain—NI	0.3

FV Adjustment, U.S. Treasuries		
	0.1	2018 unrealized loss
	0.3	2019 unrealized gain
	0.2	Preadjustment balance
	0.2	Sale entry
		0

On the date of sale, we also need to record the receipt of cash and remove the accounts associated with the trading security from the balance sheet:

	(\$ in millions)
Cash	6
Fair value adjustment, trading securities (account balance).....	0.2
Investment in trading securities (U.S. Treasury bonds)	5.8

2. Effects of the Eastern Waste investments on net income, other comprehensive income, and comprehensive income for 2018, 2019, and combined over both years. Ignore interest revenue.

	2018	2019	Cumulatively
Net Income	\$0	(\$2)	(\$2)
OCI	\$1	(\$3) + 2 = (\$1)	\$0
Comprehensive Income	\$1	(\$3)	(\$2)

Financial Statement Presentation and Disclosure

Trading securities, held-to-maturity securities and available-for-sale securities are either current or noncurrent depending on when they are expected to mature or to be sold. However, it's not necessary that a company report individual amounts for the three categories of investments—held-to-maturity, available-for-sale, or trading—on the face of the balance sheet as long as that information is presented in the disclosure notes.¹⁹

Investors should disclose the following in the disclosure notes for each year presented:

- Aggregate fair value
- Gross realized and unrealized holding gains
- Gross realized and unrealized holding losses
- Change in net unrealized holding gains and losses
- Amortized cost basis by major security type

The notes also include disclosures designed to help financial statement users understand the quality of the inputs companies use when determining fair values and to identify parts of the financial statements that are affected by those fair value estimates. For example, the notes should include the level of the fair value hierarchy (levels 1, 2, or 3) in which all fair value measurements fall. For level 2 or 3 fair values, the notes to the financial statements must include a description of the valuation technique(s) and the inputs used in the fair value measurement process. For level 3 fair values, the notes must indicate the significant inputs used in the fair value measurement, the sensitivity of fair values to significant changes in those inputs, and information about the effect of fair value measurements on earnings, including a reconciliation of beginning and ending balances of the investment that identifies the following:

- Total gains or losses for the period (realized and unrealized), unrealized gains and losses associated with assets and liabilities still held at the reporting date, and where those amounts are included in earnings or shareholders' equity
- Purchases, sales, issuances, and settlements
- Transfers in and out of the level 3 category

All of this disclosure is designed to provide financial statement users with information about those fair values that are most vulnerable to bias or error in the estimation process. For example, as shown in Illustration 12–11, note 2 of **HP Inc.**'s 2015 annual report includes the following discussion of fair values.

Illustration 12–11

Fair Value Disclosures of
Investment Securities—HP
Incorporated

Real World Financials

Fair Value (partial)				
(\$ in millions)	As of October 31, 2015			
	Fair Value Measured Using			
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Total
Assets:				
Cash equivalents and Investments:				
Time deposits	\$ —	\$3,584	\$ —	\$ 3,584
Money market funds	8,895	—	—	8,895
Mutual funds	—	246	—	246
Marketable equity securities	52	10	—	62
Foreign bonds	8	347	—	355
Other debt securities	—	2	40	42
Derivative Instruments:				
Interest rate contracts	—	38	—	38
Foreign exchange contracts	—	1,029	2	1,031
Other derivatives	—	8	—	8
Total assets	<u>\$8,955</u>	<u>\$5,264</u>	<u>\$42</u>	<u>\$14,261</u>

¹⁹FASB ASC 320–10–45–13: Investments—Debt Securities—Overall—Other Presentation Matters (previously *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 115*, “Accounting for Certain Investments in Debt and Equity Securities” (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1993), par. 18).

We can see from these disclosures that HP has relatively few level 3 investments (which are those with the most subjectively estimated fair values). That fact should give financial statement users more faith in the reliability of HP's fair value estimates.

Accounting for Equity Investments

The critical events over the life of an investment in the equity of another company, such as shares of common stock, include the following:

1. Purchasing the equity security
2. Receiving dividends (for some equity securities)
3. Holding the investment during periods in which the investment's fair value changes (and thus incurring *unrealized holding* gains and losses, since the security has not yet been sold)
4. Selling the investment (and thus incurring *realized* gains and losses, since the security has been sold and the gains or losses actually incurred)

Also, equity investors typically get to vote on key decisions made by the company, such as who will serve on the company's board of directors. Each share of common stock gets a vote, so if an equity investor owns enough shares, the investor has enough votes to influence the operations of the company whose shares it owns. Therefore, accounting for equity investments also considers the extent to which the investor can influence the activities of the investee. As shown in Illustration 12–12, we use three different approaches to account for equity investments.

Characteristics of the Equity Investment

The investor **lacks significant influence** over the operating and financial policies of the investee (typically owns less than 20% of voting stock):

The investor **has significant influence** over the operating and financial policies of the investee (typically owns between 20% and 50% of the voting stock):

The investor **controls** the investee (typically owns more than 50% of voting stock):

Reporting Method Used by the Investor

Fair Value Through Net Income—similar to the trading-securities approach used for debt; investment reported at fair value (with unrealized holding gains and losses included in net income), unless fair value is not readily determinable*

Equity method—investment reported at cost adjusted for investor's share of subsequent earnings and dividends of the investee**

Consolidation—the financial statements of the investor and investee are combined as if they are a single company

*Later in this chapter we discuss in an Additional Consideration box the alternative approach that is used if fair value is not readily determinable.

**If the investor elects the *fair value option*, this type of investment also can be accounted for using the fair-value-through-net-income approach.

Illustration 12–12

Reporting Categories for Equity Investments

We'll first discuss the *fair value through net income* approach that is used when the investor lacks significant influence over the investee. Then we'll cover the *equity method* that's used when the investor does have significant influence. We won't cover *consolidation accounting*, which is used when the investor controls the investee, as that topic is beyond the scope of this book. However, we will discuss consolidations briefly when we discuss the equity method, as the two approaches are related.

When the Investor Lacks Significant Influence: Fair Value through Net Income

If an investor owns less than 20% of the voting shares of an investee, the investor is typically assumed to lack significant influence over the investee. In other words, the investor is in the same position you would be in if you bought a share of the company's stock—the investor

hopes to receive dividends and that the value of the shares appreciate over time, but can't really tell the company what to do.

Until very recently, those sorts of equity investments were accounted for as either trading securities or available-for-sale investments, just like we would treat debt investments that weren't intended to be held to maturity. However, starting in 2018, investors are not allowed to use the AFS approach for equity investments. Instead, all equity investments are accounted for like trading securities, using a classification commonly referred to as *fair value through net income*. That means that equity investments for which the investor lacks significant influence are reported the same way we report debt investments that are classified as trading securities (Part A of this chapter). The equity investments are carried at fair value in the balance sheet, with unrealized holding gains and losses recognized in net income in whatever period they occur.²⁰ Illustration 12–13 provides a simple example of an equity investment that we'll use throughout this section. Let's walk through the key events in the life of United's Arjent investment to see how the fair value through net income approach works for an equity investment.

Illustration 12–13

Example of an Equity Investment Accounted for as Fair Value Through Net Income

The following events during 2018 and 2019 pertain to United Intergroup's investment in the common stock of Arjent, Inc.

July 1, 2018	Purchase Arjent, Inc., common stock for \$1,500,000
December 31, 2018	Recognize investment revenue for a \$75,000 cash dividend received from Arjent.
December 31, 2018	Record a fair value adjustment to recognize a decline in the value of the Arjent stock investment to \$1,450,000.
January 5, 2019	Sell the Arjent stock for \$1,446,000.

Purchase Investments

All equity investments are recorded initially at cost.

The journal entry to record the purchase of an equity investment is simple, just exchanging one asset (cash) for another (investment):

July 1, 2018		
Investment in Arjent stock	1,500,000	
Cash.....		1,500,000

Recognize Investment Revenue

Dividends received for equity investments are included in income.

The journal entry to record the receipt of dividends related to the Arjent equity investment also is straightforward.

December 31, 2018		
Cash	75,000	
Dividend revenue.....		75,000

Adjust Equity Investments to Fair Value (2018)

Equity investments are adjusted to their fair value at each reporting date.

The carrying value of equity investments must be adjusted to fair value at the end of every reporting period. As with trading securities, we use a valuation allowance, *fair value adjustment*, to increase or decrease the carrying value of the investment, and we simultaneously record an unrealized holding gain or loss that is included in net income in the period in which fair value changes. The next table shows the calculation of the balance in the fair value adjustment that is required on December 31, 2018.

December 31, 2018			
Security	Cost	Fair Value	Necessary Fair Value Adjustment Balance
Arjent	\$1,500,000	\$1,450,000	\$(50,000)

²⁰FASB ASC 321–10–35–1: Investments—Equity Securities—Overall—General (previously *Accounting Standards Update No. 2016-1*, “Recognition and Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities” (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2016)).

United needs to move the fair value adjustment from a balance of \$0 (at purchase date) to a credit balance of **\$50,000**:

	Fair Value Adjustment	Fair Value Adjustment
Beginning balance	\$ 0	0
± Adjustment needed to update fair value	?	50,000
Balance needed on 12/31/2018	\$(50,000)	50,000

The journal entry to record United's unrealized holding loss of **\$50,000** and the corresponding decrease in United's fair value adjustment account is:

December 31, 2018

Unrealized holding loss—NI*	50,000	
Fair value adjustment†		50,000

*We title this account "Unrealized . . . —NI" to highlight that, for equity investments accounted for as fair value through net income, unrealized holding gains and losses are included in net income in the period in which they occur.

†Sometimes companies don't bother with a separate fair value adjustment account and simply adjust the investment account to fair value.

What if Arjent's investment instead had a fair value of, say, \$1,550,000 as of December 31, 2018? In that case, United would have an unrealized holding *gain* of \$50,000, which would require a *debit* to the fair value adjustment account to *increase* the carrying value of the equity to fair value.

Sell the Equity Investment

Now assume United sells the Arjent stock for \$1,446,000 on January 5, 2019. According to the FASB, "because all changes in an equity security's fair value are reported in earnings as they occur, the sale of an equity security does not necessarily give rise to a gain or loss. Generally, a debit to cash . . . is recorded for the sales proceeds, and a credit is recorded to remove the security at its fair value (or sales price)."²¹ Thus, as with trading securities, United must make two journal entries. United first records in net income any unrealized holding gains and losses that occurred during 2019 prior to the date of sale. Then, on the date of sale, United records the receipt of cash and removes the amounts associated with the investment from the relevant balance sheet accounts.

- 1. Adjust Securities to Fair Value (2019).** We first need to update the fair value adjustment and recognize any unrealized holding gains or losses that have occurred during the current reporting period prior to the date of sale.

January 5, 2019

Security	Cost	Fair Value	Necessary Fair Value Adjustment Balance
Arjent	\$1,500,000	\$1,446,000	\$(54,000)

United needs to move the fair value adjustment from a credit balance of \$50,000 to a credit balance of **\$54,000**, which requires a credit of **\$4,000** to this asset valuation account:

	Fair Value Adjustment	Fair Value Adjustment
Beginning balance on 1/1/2019	\$ (50,000)	0
± Adjustment needed to update fair value	?	4,000
Balance needed as of date of sale	\$(54,000)	54,000

The journal entry to record the investment's decrease in fair value is:

²¹FASB ASC 321-10-40: Investments—Equity Securities—Overall—Derecognition, (previously *Accounting Standards Update No. 2016-1*, "Recognition and Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities" (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2016)).

January 5, 2019

Unrealized holding loss—NI	4,000	
Fair value adjustment.....		4,000

2. **Record the Sale.** After making the previous journal entry, the investment is carried at its fair value as of the date it is being sold, and all unrealized holding gains and losses associated with the investment have been included in net income. All that remains is for United to record receipt of cash and remove the investment-related accounts from the balance sheet:

January 5, 2019

Cash	1,446,000	
Fair value adjustment (account balance).....	54,000	
Investment in Arjent stock (account balance).....		1,500,000

If all of the unrealized holding gains or losses have been included in net income, no additional gain or loss is recognized.

A realized gain or loss for the difference between carrying value and the cash received from selling an equity investment is included in net income.

Because United carries the investment at fair value as of the date of sale, and already included in net income the entire loss associated with the investment, there is no realized gain or loss to recognize on the date of sale.²² Over the life of the investment, United has recognized a total loss of \$54,000, but that loss is spread over the life of the investment, recognized as the fair value of the investment changes:

2018 loss recognized in NI:	\$(50,000)
2019 loss recognized in NI:	(4,000)
Total over 2018 and 2019:	<u><u>\$(54,000)</u></u>

Adjust Equity Investments to Fair Value (2019)

If United hadn't sold the Arjent investment during 2019, it would just keep recording whatever fair value adjustment would be necessary to carry the investment at fair value in the balance sheet. For example, if the Arjent investment had a fair value of \$1,300,000 at December 31, 2019, United would face the following situation:

December 31, 2019			
Security	Cost	Fair Value	Necessary Fair Value Adjustment Balance
Arjent	\$1,500,000	\$1,300,000	\$(200,000)

United would need to credit the fair value adjustment account by another **\$150,000** to account for the large drop in fair value that occurred during 2019.

Fair Value Adjustment		Fair Value Adjustment	
	50,000	12/31/2018 balance	\$ (50,000)
	150,000	± Adjustment needed to update fair value	?
	200,000	12/31/2019 balance	\$(200,000)

²²As noted in FASB ASC 321-10-40: Investments—Equity Securities—Overall—Derecognition, for expediency companies may not update the fair value adjustment to the fair value that exists on the date of sale before recording the sale. In that case, this second entry would include a realized gain or loss based on the difference between the cash received and the fair value of the investment recorded on the last balance sheet date. In our example, the fair value adjustment balance was \$50,000 as of December 31, 2018, and United would record the following sale entry on January 5, 2019:

Cash.....	1,446,000	
Fair value adjustment (account balance).....	50,000	
Realized loss—NI	4,000	
Investment in Arjent.....		1,500,000

The necessary journal entry is shown below:

December 31, 2019

Unrealized holding loss—NI	150,000	
Fair value adjustment (calculated above)		150,000

Additional Consideration

What if Fair Value is Not Readily Determinable? Equity investments are accounted for using the *fair value through net income* approach when the fair value of shares is *readily determinable* by referencing prices on a security exchange or over-the-counter market. But what if fair value isn't readily determinable? In that case, investors can elect to base measurement of fair value on an adjusted cost of the security. Specifically, the investor estimates fair value as cost, minus any impairments that have been recognized previously, and plus or minus adjustments indicated by changes in the prices of similar equity issued by the same investee. Every accounting period, the investor needs to reevaluate whether fair value still is not readily determinable, and also needs to assess whether the investment has been impaired. The investor considers various qualitative factors to assess whether an investment is impaired, such as whether the earnings, cash flows, or business prospects of the investee have deteriorated. If the investor concludes the investment is impaired, it recognizes in net income whatever amount of impairment loss is necessary to reduce the carrying value of the investment to fair value.

International Financial Reporting Standards



Accounting for Equity Investments When the Investor Lacks Significant Influence. As indicated previously, until recently *IAS No. 39* was the standard that specified appropriate accounting for all investments under IFRS.²³ The primary categories in *IAS No. 39* are similar to those used for debt investments in U.S. GAAP, consisting of Fair Value through Profit & Loss (FVPL), similar to TS, HTM, and AFS. *IFRS No. 9*, amended on July 24, 2014, will be required after January 1, 2018, and earlier adoption is permitted, so until 2018 either *IAS No. 39* or *IFRS No. 9* might be in effect for a particular company.²⁴ Under *IFRS No. 9*, investments in equity securities are classified as either FVPL or FVOCI (Fair Value through Other Comprehensive Income). If the equity is held for trading, it must be classified as FVPL, but otherwise the company can irrevocably elect to classify it as FVOCI. FVOCI is similar to the AFS treatment used for debt investments in U.S. GAAP, but there is an important difference. Unlike AFS, realized gains and losses are not reclassified out of OCI and into net income when the investment is later sold. Rather, the accumulated unrealized gain or loss associated with a sold investment is just transferred from AOCI to retained earnings (both shareholders' equity accounts), without passing through the income statement.

● LO12–8

Financial Statement Presentation

We present investments in equity securities in the financial statements the same way we present debt investments classified as trading securities, but they are shown on their own separate line. Equity investments that are held for trading should be classified as current assets in the balance sheet, with cash flows treated as operating activities on the statement of cash flows. On the other hand, equity investments that are held for more long-term purposes should be classified as noncurrent assets in the balance sheet, with cash flows typically treated as investing activities in the statement of cash flows. Notes to the financial

²³“Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement,” *International Accounting Standard No. 39* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2009.

²⁴“Financial Instruments,” *International Financial Reporting Standard No. 9* (IASCF), November 12, 2009, as amended effective January 1, 2016.

statements should disclose the portion of unrealized holding gains and losses for the period that relate to any equity securities still held by the company at the end of the reporting period. Notes also should provide information about how the carrying value was calculated for equity investments for which fair value is not readily determinable.

Additional Consideration

Transition from Prior GAAP. Our discussion of investments in equity securities is based on *ASU 2016-01*, which becomes effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017.²⁵ Prior to that ASU, equity investments could be treated as trading securities or AFS investments, similar to debt investments. When companies adopt *ASU 2016-01*, they will make a cumulative-effect adjustment to the balance sheet as of the beginning of the period of adoption, adjusting equity AFS investments to fair value on that date and adjusting retained earnings to appear as if those investments had been accounted for at fair value through net income all along.

When the Investor Has Significant Influence: The Equity Method

● LO12-6

Control and Significant Influence

Usually an investor can **control** the investee if it owns more than 50% of the investee's voting shares.

Consolidated financial statements combine the individual elements of the parent and subsidiary statements.

Usually an investor can exercise **significant influence** over the investee when it owns at least 20% of the investee's voting shares.

The equity method is used when an investor can't control, but can significantly influence, the investee.

Under the **equity method**, the investor recognizes on its own income statement its proportionate share of the investee's income.

If a company acquires more than 50% of the voting stock of another company, it's said to have **control**, because by voting those shares, the investor actually can control the company acquired. The investor is called the *parent*; the investee is called the *subsidiary*. Both companies continue to operate as separate legal entities, and the subsidiary reports separate financial statements. However, because of the controlling interest, the parent company reports **consolidated financial statements** which treat the parent and the subsidiary as if there were only one company. This entails an item-by-item combination of the parent and subsidiary statements (after first eliminating any amounts that are shared by the separate financial statements).²⁶ For instance, if the parent has \$8 million cash and the subsidiary has \$3 million cash, the consolidated balance sheet would report \$11 million cash.

Even if effective control is absent, the investor still may be able to exercise **significant influence** over the operating and financial policies of the investee. This would be the case if the investor owns a large percentage of the outstanding shares relative to other shareholders. By voting those shares as a block, decisions often can be swayed in the direction the investor desires. It is presumed, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, that the investor exercises significant influence over the investee when it owns at least 20% of the investee's voting shares.²⁷

When significant influence exists but the investor does not have effective control, the investment should be accounted for by the **equity method**. Under the equity method, the investment is initially recorded at cost. After that, the investment balance is:

- Increased by the investor's percentage share of the investee's net income (or decreased by its share of a loss).
- Decreased by the investor's percentage share of the investee's dividends paid.
- Potentially adjusted for other items (discussed next).

²⁵FASB ASC 321-10-35-1: Investments—Equity Securities—Overall—General (previously *Accounting Standards Update No. 2016-1*, "Recognition and Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities" (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2016)).

²⁶This avoids double counting those amounts in the consolidated statements. For example, amounts owed by one company to the other are represented by accounts payable in one set of financial statements and accounts receivable in the other. These amounts are not included in the statements of the consolidated entity because a company can't "owe itself."

²⁷Shareholders are the owners of the corporation. By voting their shares, it is they who determine the makeup of the board of directors—who, in turn, appoint officers—who, in turn, manage the company. Common stock usually is the class of shares that has voting privileges. However, a corporation can create classes of preferred shares that also have voting rights. This is discussed at greater length in Chapter 18.

Additional Consideration

It's possible that a company owns more than 20% of the voting shares but still cannot exercise significant influence over the investee. If, for instance, another company or a small group of shareholders owns 51% or more of the shares, they control the investee regardless of how other investors vote their shares. GAAP provides this and other examples of indications that an investor may be unable to exercise significant influence.

- The investee challenges the investor's ability to exercise significant influence (through litigation or complaints to regulators).
- The investor surrenders significant shareholder rights in a signed agreement.
- The investor is unable to acquire sufficient information about the investee to apply the equity method.
- The investor tries and fails to obtain representation on the board of directors of the investee.²⁸

Conversely, it's also possible that a company owns less than 20% of the voting shares but is able to exercise significant influence over the investee. Ability to exercise significant influence with less than 20% ownership might be indicated, for example, by having an officer of the investor corporation on the board of directors of the investee corporation or by having, say, 18% of the voting shares while no other single investor owns more than 50%. In such cases the equity method would be appropriate.

The rationale for this approach is the presumption that the fortunes of the investor and investee are so intertwined that, as the investee prospers, the investor prospers proportionately. Stated differently, as the investee earns additional net assets (income), the investor's share of those net assets increases. When the investee pays out assets (dividends), the investor's share of the remaining net assets decreases.

To see how the equity method works, let's turn to Illustration 12–14. In that illustration, we assume that United Intergroup purchased 30% of Arjent, Inc.'s, common stock for \$1,500,000 cash on January 2, 2018. Let's start by thinking about Arjent overall, and then we'll account for United's 30% investment.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q4, p. 643

	Book Value on Arjent's Financial Statements	Fair Value at Time of United's Investment
Total fair value of Arjent (1/2/2018)		\$5,000,000*
Buildings**	\$1,000,000	\$2,000,000
Land	500,000	1,000,000
Other net assets†	600,000	600,000
Net assets	\$2,100,000	3,600,000
Goodwill		\$1,400,000
Other information (12/31/2018):		
Arjent's 2018 net income:	\$ 500,000	
Arjent's 2018 dividends:	\$ 250,000	

*\$5,000,000 × 30% purchased = **\$1,500,000 purchase price.**
 **10-year remaining useful life, no salvage value.
 †Other net assets = other assets – total liabilities.

Illustration 12–14

Information for Arjent, Inc., at the time United Intergroup purchased 30% for \$1,500,000.

As shown in Illustration 12–14, buying 30% of Arjent for \$1,500,000 implies that the full (100%) *fair value* of Arjent's assets and liabilities is \$5,000,000 (because \$5,000,000 × 30% purchased = \$1,500,000 purchase price). However, notice that the *book value* of Arjent's net assets is only \$2,100,000. Why do fair value and book value differ? Part of the difference in total fair value and book value represents assets (in this case, buildings and

²⁸FASB ASC 323–10–15–10: Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures—Overall—Scope and Scope Exceptions (previously “Criteria for Applying the Equity Method of Accounting for Investments in Common Stock,” FASB Interpretation No. 35 (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1981)).

land) that have fair values greater than their book values. Arjent recorded those assets at historical cost and recognized depreciation of the buildings over time, so the book values of those assets don't reflect their fair values. The remaining difference is previously unrecognized goodwill (e.g., because of loyal customers, well-trained workers, etc.) that GAAP doesn't capture as separate assets but nevertheless represents value for which United was willing to pay. We will see that, under the equity method, all of these amounts are shown in a single investment account, but we still need to track their individual information to account for them correctly.

Purchase of Investment

Recording United's purchase of 30% of Arjent is straightforward. The investment is recorded at cost:

Investment in Arjent stock	1,500,000	
Cash.....		1,500,000

Recording Investment Revenue

As the investee earns additional net assets, the investor's investment in those net assets increases.

Under the equity method, the investor includes in net income its proportionate share of the investee's net income. The reasoning is that, as the investee earns additional net assets, the value of the investor's share of those net assets also increases, so the investor increases its investment by the amount of income recognized. United's entry would be:

Investment in Arjent stock	150,000	
Investment revenue (30% × \$500,000)		150,000

Of course, if Argent had recorded a net loss rather than net income, United would *reduce* its investment in Arjent and recognize a *loss* on investment for its share of the loss. You won't always see these amounts called "investment revenue" or "investment loss." Rather, United might call this line "equity in earnings (losses) of affiliate" or some other title that suggests it is using the equity method.

Receiving Dividends

As the investee distributes net assets as dividends, the investor does not recognize revenue. Rather, the investor's investment in the investee's net assets is reduced.

Because we recognize investment revenue as it is earned by the investee, it would be inappropriate to recognize revenue again when earnings are distributed as dividends. That would be double counting. Instead, we view the dividend distribution as reducing the investee's net assets. The rationale is that the investee is returning assets to its investors in the form of a cash payment, so each investor's equity interest in the remaining net assets declines proportionately.

Cash	75,000	
Investment in Arjent stock (30% × \$250,000).....		75,000

Further Adjustments

● LO12-7

When the investor's expenditure to acquire an equity-method investment exceeds the book value of the underlying net assets acquired, additional adjustments to both the investment account and investment revenue might be needed. The purpose is to approximate the effects of consolidation, without actually consolidating financial statements. More specifically, both the investment account and investment revenue are adjusted for differences between net income reported by the investee and what that amount would have been if consolidation procedures had been followed. This process is often referred to as "amortizing the differential," because it mimics the process of expensing some of the difference between the price paid for the investment and the book value of the investment. Let's look closer at what that means.

Consolidated financial statements report (a) the acquired company's assets at their fair values on the date of acquisition rather than their book values on the investee's balance sheet, and (b) goodwill for the excess of the acquisition price over the fair value of the identifiable net assets acquired. This matters because increasing asset balances to their fair values can result in higher expenses in the future. If it's land or goodwill that's increased, there is no income effect because we don't depreciate or amortize those assets over time.²⁹ On the other hand, if buildings, equipment, or other depreciable assets are recorded at higher values, depreciation expense will be higher during their remaining useful lives. Likewise, if the recorded amount of inventory is increased, cost of goods sold will be higher when the inventory is sold. When expenses rise, income falls. It is this negative effect on income that the equity method seeks to imitate.

In our example, United needs to make adjustments for the fact that, at the time it purchased its investment in Arjent, the fair values of Arjent's assets and liabilities were higher than the book values of those assets and liabilities in Arjent's balance sheet (refer back to Illustration 12-14). Illustration 12-15 shows United's 30% proportionate share of the amounts shown in Illustration 12-14:

	Investee Net Assets		Net Assets Purchased		
Purchase price	\$5,000,000	× 30% =	\$1,500,000		
Fair value (identifiable)	3,600,000	× 30% =	1,080,000		
Difference	<u>\$1,400,000</u>	× 30% =	<u>\$ 420,000</u>	Goodwill	
Fair value (identifiable)	\$3,600,000	× 30% =	\$1,080,000		
Book value (identifiable)	2,100,000	× 30% =	630,000		
Difference	<u>\$1,500,000</u>	× 30% =	<u>\$ 450,000</u>	{ Buildings	\$300,000
				{ Land	\$150,000

Illustration 12-15

Explanation for Differences Between the Investment and the Book Value of Net Assets Acquired

Notice in Illustration 12-15 that United paid \$1,500,000 for 30% of the identifiable net assets that, sold separately, would have a fair value of \$1,080,000. The \$420,000 difference between the price paid and the fair value of United's share of Arjent's identifiable net assets is attributable to goodwill. The 30% of identifiable net assets with a fair value of \$1,080,000 have a book value on Arjent's balance sheet of only \$630,000. The \$450,000 difference is attributable to undervalued buildings (\$300,000) and land (\$150,000). Now let's see what adjustments, if any, United needs to make for these differences.

Adjustments for Additional Depreciation

When Arjent determines its net income, it bases depreciation expense on the book value of its buildings on its own balance sheet. United, however, needs to depreciate its share of the *fair value* of those buildings at the time it made its investment. To account for this higher amount of depreciation expense, United reduces investment revenue as if Arjent had included the additional expense in its earnings.

As shown in Illustration 12-14, the book value of Arjent's buildings is \$1,000,000 and the fair value is \$2,000,000, which creates a difference of \$1,000,000. United will need to recognize its 30% share of additional depreciation expense for this difference, totaling \$300,000 over the remaining life of the buildings. Assuming a 10-year life of the buildings and straight-line depreciation, United must recognize \$30,000 of additional depreciation each year for ten years. Had Arjent recorded that additional depreciation in its income statement, United's portion of Arjent's net income would have been lower by \$30,000 (ignoring taxes). So, to act as if Arjent had recorded the additional depreciation, United reduces investment revenue and reduces its investment in Arjent stock by \$30,000.

The investor adjusts its share of the investee's net income to reflect revenues and expenses associated with differences between the fair value and book value of the investee's assets and liabilities that existed at the time the investment was made.

²⁹Goodwill is not amortized periodically to expense. Only if the asset's value is subsequently judged to be impaired will all or a portion of the recorded amount charged against earnings. FASB ASC 350-20-35: Intangibles—Goodwill and Other—Goodwill—Subsequent Measurement (previously “Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 141* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2001)). For review, see Chapter 11.

Investment revenue	30,000
Investment in Arjent stock	
[30% × (\$2,000,000 – 1,000,000) ÷ 10 years]	30,000

No Adjustments for Land or Goodwill

United makes no adjustments for land or goodwill. Land is not an asset we depreciate. As a result, the difference between the fair value and book value of the land would not cause higher expenses, and we have no need to adjust investment revenue or the investment in Arjent stock for the land.

Recall from Chapter 11 that goodwill, unlike most other intangible assets, is not amortized. In that sense, goodwill resembles land. Thus, acquiring goodwill will not cause higher expenses, so we have no need to adjust investment revenue or the investment in Arjent stock for goodwill.

Adjustments for Other Assets and Liabilities

Also, because in our example there is no difference between the book value and fair value of the remaining net assets, we don't need an adjustment for them either. However, that often will not be the case. For example, Arjent's inventory could have had a fair value that exceeded its book value at the time United purchased its Arjent investment. To recognize expense associated with that higher fair value, United would need to identify the period in which that inventory is sold (usually the next year) and, in that period, reduce its investment revenue and its investment in Arjent stock by its 30% share of the difference between the fair value and book value of the inventory. If, for instance, the \$1,000,000 difference between fair value and book value had been attributable to inventory rather than buildings, and that inventory was sold by Arjent in the year following United's investment, United would reduce investment revenue by its 30% share of the difference (\$300,000) in the year following the investment. More generally, an equity method investor needs to make these sorts of adjustments whenever there are revenues or expenses associated with an asset or liability that had a difference between book value and fair value at the time the investment was made.

If the fair value of purchased inventory exceeds its book value, we usually assume the inventory is sold in the next year and reduce investment revenue in the next year by the entire difference.

Additional Consideration

Effect on Deferred Income Taxes. Investment revenue is recorded by the equity method when income is earned by the investee, but that revenue is not taxed until it's actually received as cash dividends. This creates a temporary difference between book income and taxable income. You will learn in Chapter 16 that the investor must report a deferred tax liability for the income tax that ultimately will be paid when the income eventually is received as dividends.

Reporting the Investment

The fair value of the investment shares at the end of the reporting period is not reported when using the equity method. The investment account is reported at its original cost, increased by the investor's share of the investee's net income (adjusted for additional expenses like depreciation), and decreased by the portion of those earnings actually received as dividends.

The balance of United's 30% investment in Arjent at December 31, 2018, would be calculated as follows:

Investment in Arjent Stock			
Purchase price	1,500,000		
Share of income	150,000		
		75,000	Dividends
		30,000	Depreciation adjustment
	1,545,000		

The carrying amount of the investment is its initial cost plus the investor's equity in the undistributed earnings of the investee.

In the statement of cash flows, we report the purchase and sale of the investment as outflows and inflows of cash in the investing activities section, and the receipt of dividends is reported as an inflow of cash in the operating activities section.³⁰

Additional Consideration

Much like consolidation, the equity method views the investor and investee collectively as a special type of single entity (as if the two companies were one company). However, the equity method doesn't require the investor to record separate financial statement items of the investee on an item-by-item basis as in consolidation. Instead, the investor reports its equity interest in the investee as a single investment account. Also, the adjustments that investors make when applying the equity method are designed to mimic what would happen if an investment were consolidated. For those reasons, the equity method sometimes is referred to as a "one-line consolidation," because it essentially collapses the consolidation approach into single lines in the balance sheet and income statement, while having the same effect on total income and shareholders' equity.

When the Investment Is Acquired in Mid-Year

Obviously, we've simplified the illustration by assuming the investment was acquired at the beginning of 2018, entailing a full year's income, dividends, and adjustments to account for the income effects of any differences between book value and fair value on the date the investment was acquired. In the more likely event that an investment is acquired sometime after the beginning of the year, applying the equity method is easily modified to include the appropriate fraction of each of those amounts. For example, if United's purchase of 30% of Arjent had occurred on October 1 rather than January 2, we would simply record income, dividends, and adjustments for three months ($\frac{3}{12}$) of the year. This would result in the following entries to the investment account:

Investment in Arjent Stock			
Cost	1,500,000		
Share of income ($\frac{3}{12} \times \$150,000$)	37,500		
		Depreciation adjustment ($\frac{3}{12} \times \$30,000$)	7,500
		Dividends ($\frac{3}{12} \times \$75,000$)	18,750
	1,511,250		

Changes in the investment account the first year are adjusted for the fraction of the year the investor has owned the investment.

AT&T reported its 2015 investments in affiliated companies for which it exercised significant influence using the equity method as shown in Illustration 12-16.

When the Investee Reports a Net Loss

Our illustration assumed the investee earned net income. If the investee reports a *net loss* instead, the investment account would be *decreased* by the investor's share of the investee's net loss (adjusted for additional expenses).

What If Conditions Change?

A CHANGE FROM THE EQUITY METHOD TO ANOTHER METHOD. When the investor's level of influence changes, it may be necessary to change from the equity method

³⁰Most companies prepare a statement of cash flows using the indirect method of reporting operating activities. In that case, the operating section begins with net income and adjustments are made to back out the effects of accrual accounting and calculate cash from operations. For companies with equity method investments, net income will include investment revenue and gains or losses associated with sold investments, but cash from operations should include only cash dividends. As an example, because United's 2018 net income includes \$120,000 of investment revenue from Arjent (\$150,000 portion of income - \$30,000 depreciation adjustment), but United received only \$75,000 of dividends from Arjent, an indirect method statement of cash flows would include an adjustment, often titled "undistributed earnings of investee," that reduces net income by \$45,000 (\$75,000 - \$120,000) when determining cash from operations.

Illustration 12-16

Equity Method
Investments in the Balance
Sheet—AT&T

Real World Financials

	Dec 31, 2015	Dec 31, 2014
Total current assets	\$ 35,992	\$ 33,606
Property, plant, and equipment—Net	124,450	112,898
Goodwill	104,568	69,692
Licenses	93,093	60,824
Customer lists and relationships—Net	18,208	812
Other intangible assets—net	9,409	5,327
Investments in equity affiliates	1,606	250
Other assets	15,346	13,425
Total assets	<u>\$402,672</u>	<u>\$296,834</u>

Additional Consideration

It's possible that the investor's proportionate share of investee losses could exceed the carrying amount of the investment. If this happens, the investor should discontinue applying the equity method until the investor's share of subsequent investee earnings has equaled losses not recognized during the time the equity method was discontinued. This avoids reducing the investment account below zero.

to another method. For example, when **Air-France/KLM's** ownership interest in **WAM (Amadeus)** declined from 22% to 15% during the 2011 fiscal year, it had to stop using the equity method to account for its investment.

When this situation happens, *no adjustment* is made to the remaining carrying amount of the investment. Instead, the equity method is simply discontinued and the new method applied from then on. The balance in the investment account when the equity method is discontinued would serve as the new cost basis for writing the investment up or down to fair value on the next set of financial statements.

A CHANGE FROM ANOTHER METHOD TO THE EQUITY METHOD. Sometimes companies change from another method to the equity method. For example, when the **Mitsubishi UFJ Financial Group** converted its investment in the convertible preferred stock of **Morgan Stanley** into common stock, its ownership interest was large enough to qualify for accounting for the investment under the equity method. When a change *to* the equity method is appropriate, the previous method is discontinued and the balance in the investment account at the date of the change (including any unrealized holding gains or losses that occurred prior to the date the investment qualifies for the equity method) is used as the starting balance for applying the equity method. Any cost of acquiring additional shares is added to that balance, and going forward that balance is adjusted for the investor's portion of investee earnings and dividends. A disclosure note also should describe the change.³¹

IF AN EQUITY METHOD INVESTMENT IS SOLD. When an investment reported by the equity method is sold, we recognize a gain or loss if the selling price is more or less than the carrying amount (book value) of the investment. For example, let's continue our illustration and assume United sells its investment in Arjent on January 1, 2019, for \$1,446,000. A journal entry would record a loss as follows:

When an equity method investment is sold, a gain or loss is recognized for the difference between its selling price and its carrying amount.

Cash.....	1,446,000	
Loss on sale of investments (to balance).....	99,000	
Investment in Arjent stock (account balance).....		1,545,000

³¹Retroactive restatement used to be required when a company changed to the equity method, but as of 2017 that is no longer necessary, per FASB ASC 323-10-35-33: Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures—Overall—Increase in Level of Ownership or Degree of Influence (previously “Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures (Topic 323): Simplifying the Transition to the Equity Method of Accounting,” *Accounting Standards Update No. 2016-07* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2016)).

COMPARISON OF FAIR VALUE AND THE EQUITY METHOD. Illustration 12–17 compares accounting for the Arjent investment at fair value through net income and under the equity method:

Illustration 12–17 Comparison of Fair Value and Equity Methods

Fair Value Through Net Income			Equity Method		
Purchase equity investment	Investment in Arjent	1,500,000	Investment in Arjent	1,500,000	
	Cash	1,500,000	Cash		1,500,000
Recognize proportionate share of investee's net income and any related adjustments	No entry		Investment in Arjent	150,000	
			Investment revenue		150,000
			Investment revenue	30,000	
			Investment in Arjent		30,000
Adjust to fair value, 2018	Holding loss—NI	50,000	No entry		
	FV adjustment	50,000			
Receive dividend	Cash	75,000	Cash	75,000	
	Dividend revenue	75,000	Investment in Arjent		75,000
Sell equity investment					
1. Adjust to fair value, 2019	Holding loss—NI	4,000	No entry		
	FV adjustment	4,000			
2. Record sale	Cash	1,446,000	Cash	1,446,000	
	FV adjustment	54,000	Loss—IN (to balance)	99,000	
	Investment in Arjent	1,500,000	Investment in Arjent		1,545,000

This side-by-side comparison highlights several aspects of these accounting approaches.

- To record the purchase of an investment, we use identical entries for both approaches.
- The two approaches differ in whether we record investment revenue when dividends are received and whether we recognize unrealized holding gains and losses associated with changes in the fair value of the investment.
- The differences in how the two approaches account for unrealized holding gains and losses result in different carrying values for the investment at the time the investment is sold, and therefore result in different realized gains or losses when the investment is sold.
- Regardless of approach, the same cash flows occur, and the same total amount of net income is recognized over the life of the investment. In the case of Arjent:
 - **Fair value through net income:** A total of \$21,000 of net income is recognized over the life of the investment, equal to **\$75,000** of dividend revenue minus \$54,000 (**\$50,000 + \$4,000**) loss on the investment.
 - **Equity method:** A total of \$21,000 of net income is recognized over the life of the investment, equal to **\$150,000** of United's portion of Arjent's net income minus **\$30,000** depreciation adjustment and minus **\$99,000** loss realized on sale of investment.
 - Thus, the question is not how much total net income is recognized, but *when* that net income is recognized.

Fair Value Option

Companies can choose the fair value option (FVO) for “significant influence” investments that otherwise would be accounted for under the equity method. The company makes an irrevocable decision about whether to elect the FVO, and can make that election for some investments and not for others. As shown in Illustration 12–17, the company carries the

LO12–8

If the fair value option is chosen for investments otherwise accounted for by the equity method, the amount that is reported at fair value is clearly indicated.

investment at fair value in the balance sheet and includes unrealized gains and losses in earnings. These investments are shown on their own line in the balance sheet or are combined with equity method investments with the amount at fair value shown parenthetically. Also, all of the disclosures that are required when reporting fair values as well as some of those that would be required under the equity method still must be provided.³²

Exactly how a company does the bookkeeping necessary to comply with these broad requirements is up to the company. One alternative is to account for the investment using the entries that would be used if the investor lacked significant influence and accounted for it at fair value through net income. A second alternative is to record all of the accounting entries during the period under the equity method, and then record a fair value adjustment at the end of the period. Regardless of which alternative the company uses, though, the same fair value is reported in the balance sheet at the end of the period, and the same total amount is shown in the income statement (the fair value adjustment amount plus the investment revenue recorded).



International Financial Reporting Standards

Equity Method. Like U.S. GAAP, international accounting standards require the equity method for use with significant influence investees (which they call “associates”), but there are a few important differences. First, *IAS No. 28* governs application of the equity method and requires that the accounting policies of investees be adjusted to correspond to those of the investor when applying the equity method.³³ U.S. GAAP has no such requirement.

Second, IFRS does not provide the fair value option for most investments that qualify for the equity method. U.S. GAAP provides the fair value option for all investments that qualify for the equity method.

● LO12–9

Concept Review Exercise

THE EQUITY METHOD

Delta Apparatus bought 40% of Clay Crating Corp.’s outstanding common shares on January 2, 2018, for \$540 million. The carrying amount of Clay Crating’s net assets (shareholders’ equity) at the purchase date totaled \$900 million. Book values and fair values were the same for all financial statement items except for inventory and buildings, for which fair values exceeded book values by \$25 million and \$225 million, respectively. All inventory on hand at the acquisition date was sold during 2018. The buildings have average remaining useful lives of 18 years. During 2018, Clay Crating reported net income of \$220 million and paid an \$80 million cash dividend.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entries during 2018 for the investment.
2. Determine the amounts relating to the investment that Delta Apparatus should report in the 2018 financial statements
 - a. as an investment in the balance sheet
 - b. as an investment revenue in the income statement
 - c. as investing and/or operating activities in the statement of cash flows (direct method)

Solution

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entries during 2018 for the investment.

³²FASB ASC 825–10–50–28: Financial Instruments–Overall–Disclosure–Fair Value Option (previously “The Fair Value Option for Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 159* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2007), para.18.f).

³³“Investments in Associates,” *International Accounting Standard 28* (London, UK: IASCF, 2003), as amended, effective January 1, 2016.

Purchase	(\$ in millions)
Investment in Clay Crating shares	540
Cash.....	540
Net income	
Investment in Clay Crating shares (40% × \$220 million).....	88
Investment revenue.....	88
Dividends	
Cash (40% × \$80 million).....	32
Investment in Clay Crating shares.....	32
Inventory	
Investment revenue (as if 2018 cost of goods sold is higher because beginning inventory was adjusted to fair value)	10
Investment in Clay Crating shares (40% × \$25 million)	10
Buildings	
Investment revenue [(\$225 million × 40%) ÷ 18 years].....	5
Investment in Clay Crating shares.....	5

	Investee Net Assets		Net Assets Purchased
Fair value (identifiable)	\$1,150*	× 40% =	\$460
Book value (identifiable)	900	× 40% =	360
Difference	<u>\$ 250</u>	× 40% =	<u>\$100</u>
*(\$900 + 25 + 225)			

2. Determine the amounts that Delta Apparatus should report in the 2018 financial statements.

a. As an investment in the balance sheet:

Investment in Clay Crating (\$ in millions)			
Purchase price	540		
40% of Clay Crating net income	88		
		32	Dividends
		10	Cost of goods sold adjustment for inventory (all sold in 2018)
		5	Depreciation adjustment for buildings (\$90,000 ÷ 18)
Balance	<u>581</u>		

b. As investment revenue in the income statement:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \$88 \text{ million} & - & (\$10 + 5) \text{ million} = \$73 \text{ million} \\ \text{(share of income)} & & \text{(adjustments)} \end{array}$$

c. In the statement of cash flows (direct method):

- Investing activities: \$540 million cash outflow
- Operating activities: \$32 million cash inflow

Decision Makers' Perspective

The various approaches used to account for investments can have very different effects on an investor's income statement and balance sheet. Consequently, it's critical that both managers and external decision makers clearly understand those effects and make decisions accordingly.

To highlight key considerations, suppose that, on January 1, 2018, BigCo spent \$5,000,000 to purchase 20% of TechStart, a small start-up company that is developing products that apply an exciting new technology. The purchase price included \$500,000 for BigCo's share of the difference between the fair value and book value of TechStart's inventory, all of which was then sold in 2018. TechStart paid a small dividend of \$100,000 in 2018, so BigCo received 20% of it, or \$20,000. TechStart incurs and expenses large amounts of research and development costs as it develops new technology, so it had a net loss in 2018 of \$1,000,000. Yet, the future income-generating potential of the products that TechStart is developing has made TechStart a hot stock, and the fair value of BigCo's 20% investment increased to \$5,500,000 by the end of 2018. Illustration 12-18 shows how BigCo's investment would be accounted for under two alternative approaches.

Illustration 12-18

Comparison of Methods
Used to Account for
Investments

	Fair Value Through Net Income	Equity Method
Share of investee net income (loss)*	\$ -0-	\$ (700,000)
Dividend income**	20,000	-0-
Increase in investee's fair value†	500,000	-0-
Total 2018 effect on net income (loss)	\$ 520,000	\$ (700,000)
December 31, 2018 investment book value**	\$5,500,000	\$4,280,000

*Not recognized if account for the investment at fair value through net income. Under the equity method, investment revenue (loss) is $20\% \times (\$1,000,000 \text{ loss}) + (\$500,000) \text{ additional expense for fair value inventory adjustment} = (\$700,000)$.

**Not recognized for equity method investments. Instead, dividends reduce book value of the investment.

†Recognized in net income if accounted for at fair value through net income. Not recognized under the equity method.

‡Equals fair value if accounted for at fair value through net income. Equals initial cost plus income (or minus loss) and minus dividends for equity method.

The way an investment is accounted for affects net income, investment book value, and the amount of gain or loss recognized when the investment is sold.

Managers may structure equity investments to qualify for their preferred accounting approach.

A benefit of fair value accounting is that it prevents managers from timing the sale of investments to recognize gains or losses in particular accounting periods.

The accounting method does not affect cash flows, but it has a big effect on net income in current and future periods. Also, because the accounting method affects the book value of the investment, it affects gain or loss on sale of that investment. In our example, if BigCo sold its TechStart investment at the beginning of 2019 for \$5,000,000, it would recognize a \$720,000 gain on sale if the investment was accounted for under the equity method, but a \$500,000 loss if it was accounted for at fair value through net income. All of these income effects are predictable, but only if a user understands the relevant accounting methods and the fact that those methods all end up recognizing the same amount of total gain or loss over the life of an investment. Nevertheless, sometimes even experienced analysts get confused.³⁴

One strength of the equity method is that it prevents the income manipulation that would be possible if a company recognized income when it received dividends and could significantly influence an investee to pay dividends whenever the company needed an income boost. Remember, under the equity method dividends aren't income, but rather reduce the book value of the investment. Nevertheless, users still need to realize that managers may choose and apply methods in ways that make their company appear most attractive. For example, research suggests that investments sometimes are structured to avoid crossing the 20 to 25 percent threshold that typically requires using the equity method, presumably to avoid the negative effect on earnings that comes from having to recognize the investor's share of investee losses and other income adjustments.³⁵ Also, a company might smooth income by timing the sale of equity method investments to realize gains in otherwise poor periods and realize losses in otherwise good periods. While consistent with GAAP, mixing these sorts of one-time gains and losses with operating income could encourage users to think that operating income is less volatile than it really is.

³⁴For example, in 2000, analysts were accustomed to including Intel's investment gains as ordinary income, because those amounts were not particularly large and could be viewed as part of Intel's business. However, in the 2nd quarter of 2000, Intel recorded a net \$2.1 billion gain from selling securities in its available-for-sale portfolio. Analysts were surprised and confused, with some eliminating the gain from their earnings estimates but others including them ("Intel Says Net Jumped 79%; Analysts Upset," *The Wall Street Journal*, July 19, 2000, p. A3).

³⁵E. E. Comiskey and C. W. Mulford, "Investment Decisions and the Equity Accounting Standard," *The Accounting Review* 61, no. 3 (July 1986), pp. 519-525.

Regarding the fair value through net income approach, of particular concern is the potential for inaccurate fair value estimates. Even if management is trying to provide the most accurate fair value estimate possible, there is much potential for error, particularly when making estimates at level 3 of the fair value hierarchy. Also, a company conceivably could use the discretion inherent in fair value estimation to manage earnings with respect to trading securities or other investments for which they have elected the fair value option. Given this potential for error and bias, it's not surprising that investors are nervous about the accuracy of fair value estimates. To address these sorts of concerns, the FASB has required extensive note disclosure about the quality of inputs associated with estimates of fair value, but financial statement users need to know to look for those disclosures and still must understand that they cannot assess fully the accuracy of fair value estimates. ●

A concern with fair value accounting is that management has much discretion over fair values, and may not be able to estimate fair values accurately.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS AND INVESTMENT DERIVATIVES A **financial instrument** is defined as one of the following:

1. Cash
2. Evidence of an *ownership interest* in an entity³⁶
3. A contract that (a) imposes on one entity an obligation to *deliver* cash (say accounts payable) or another financial instrument and (b) conveys to the second entity a right to *receive* cash (say accounts receivable) or another financial instrument
4. A contract that (a) imposes on one entity an obligation to *exchange* financial instruments on potentially unfavorable terms (say the issuer of a stock option) and (b) conveys to a second entity a right to *exchange* other financial instruments on potentially favorable terms (say the holder of a stock option)³⁷

A complex class of financial instruments exists in financial markets in response to the desire of firms to manage risks. In fact, these financial instruments would not exist in their own right, but have been created solely to hedge against risks created by other financial instruments or by transactions that have yet to occur but are anticipated. Financial futures, interest rate swaps, forward contracts, and options have become commonplace.³⁸ These financial instruments often are called **derivatives** because they “derive” their values or contractually required cash flows from some other security or index. For instance, an option to buy an asset in the future at a preset price has a value that is dependent on, or derived from, the value of the underlying asset. Their rapid acceptance as indispensable components of the corporate capital structure has left the accounting profession scrambling to keep pace.

Derivatives are financial instruments that “derive” their values from some other security or index.

The urgency to establish accounting standards for financial instruments has been accelerated by headline stories in the financial press reporting multimillion-dollar losses on exotic derivatives by **Enron Corporation**, **Procter & Gamble**, **Orange County** (California), **Piper Jaffrey**, and **Gibson Greetings**, to mention a few. The headlines have tended to focus attention on the misuse of these financial instruments rather than their legitimate use in managing risk.

The FASB has been involved for many years in a project to provide a consistent framework for resolving financial instrument accounting issues, including those related to derivatives and other “off-balance-sheet” instruments. The financial instruments project has three separate but related parts: disclosure, recognition and measurement, and distinguishing between liabilities and equities. Unfortunately, issues to be resolved are extremely complex and will likely require several more years to resolve. To help fill the disclosure gap in the meantime, the FASB has offered a series of temporary, “patchwork” solutions. These are primarily in the form of additional disclosures for financial instruments. More recently, the FASB has tackled the issues of recognition and measurement of derivatives. We discuss these requirements in Appendix A to this book.

The FASB's ongoing financial instruments project is expected to lead to a consistent framework for accounting for all financial instruments.

³⁶This category includes not just shares of stock, but also partnership agreements and stock options.

³⁷FASB ASC Master Glossary: Financial Instrument (previously “Disclosure of Information about Financial Instruments with Off-Balance-Sheet Risk and Financial Instruments with Concentrations of Credit Risk,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards* No. 105 (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1990), par. 6).

³⁸Interest rate futures were traded for the first time in 1975 on the Chicago Board of Trade. Interest rate swaps were invented in the early 1980s. They now comprise over 70% of derivatives in use.

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© McGraw-Hill Education/
Mark Dierker, photographer

1. **How should you respond? Why are held-to-maturity securities treated differently from other investment securities?** (p. 648) You should explain that if an investor has the positive intent and ability to hold the securities to maturity, investments in debt securities are classified as held-to-maturity and reported at amortized cost in the balance sheet. Increases and decreases in fair value are not reported in the financial statements. The reasoning is that the changes are not as relevant to an investor who will hold a security to its maturity regardless of those changes. Changes in the fair value between the time a debt security is acquired and the day it matures to a prearranged maturity value aren't as important if sale before maturity isn't an alternative.
2. **Why are unrealized gains and losses on trading securities reported in the income statement?** (p. 650) Trading securities are acquired for the purpose of profiting from short-term market price changes, so gains and losses from holding these securities while prices change are often viewed as relevant performance measures that should be included in net income.
3. **Why are unrealized gains and losses on available-for-sale securities not reported in the income statement, but instead are in other comprehensive income, and then shown in accumulated other comprehensive income (AOCI) in the balance sheet?** (p. 655) Available-for-sale securities are not acquired for the purpose of profiting from short-term market price changes, so gains and losses from holding these securities while prices change are viewed as insufficiently relevant performance measures to be included in net income. Instead, those amounts are shown in other comprehensive income (OCI) and accumulated in an owners' equity account (AOCI). It's likely that holding gains in some periods will be offset by holding losses in other periods. When the investment is sold, the net amount of gain or loss is removed from AOCI and recognized in net income.
4. **Explain why Coca-Cola accounts for some of its investments by the equity method and what that means.** (p. 672) When an investor does not have "control," but still is able to exercise *significant influence* over the operating and financial policies of the investee, the investment should be accounted for by the equity method. Apparently Coke owns between 20% and 50% of the voting shares of some of the companies it invests in. By the equity method, Coke recognizes investment income in an amount equal to its percentage share of the net income earned by those companies, instead of the amount of that net income it receives as cash dividends. The rationale is that as the investee earns additional net assets, Coke's share of those net assets increases. ●

The Bottom Line

- LO12-1 Key events in the life of a debt investment are purchase, recording interest revenue, incurring unrealized holding gains and losses due to fair value changes, and recording sale or maturity. (p. 644)
- LO12-2 If an investor has the positive intent and ability to hold the securities to maturity, investments in debt securities are classified as HTM and reported at amortized cost in the balance sheet. These investments are recorded at cost, and holding gains or losses from fair value changes are ignored. (p. 648)
- LO12-3 Investments in debt securities acquired principally for the purpose of selling them in the near term are classified as trading securities. They are reported at their fair values. Holding gains and losses for trading securities are included in earnings. (p. 649)
- LO12-4 Investments in debt securities that don't fit the definitions of the other reporting categories are classified as available-for-sale. They are reported at their fair values. Holding gains and losses from retaining securities during periods of price change are not included in the determination of income for the period; they are reported as a separate component of other comprehensive income in shareholders' equity. (p. 653)
- LO12-5 Investments in equity securities for which the investor lacks the ability to exercise significant influence over the investee are accounted for using a fair value through net income approach. They are reported at their fair values. Holding gains and losses are included in earnings. (p. 667)

- **LO12-6** The equity method requires the investor to recognize investment income equal to its percentage share (based on share ownership) of the net income earned by the investee, rather than the amount received as cash dividends. The investment account is adjusted for the investor's percentage share of net income or loss reported by the investee. When the investor actually receives dividends, the investment account is reduced accordingly. (p. 672)
- **LO12-7** When the fair value of identifiable net assets acquired exceeds the book value of the underlying net assets acquired in the purchase of an equity investment, both the investment account and investment revenue are adjusted for differences between net income reported by the investee and what that amount would have been if consolidation procedures had been followed. (pp. 661 and 674)
- **LO12-8** Impairment recognition requires that, even if a debt investment is accounted for as HTM or AFS, unrealized holding losses are included in net income when the impairment is judged to be other than temporary. The fair value option allows companies to account for most financial assets and liabilities in the same way they account for trading securities, with unrealized holding gains and losses included in net income and the investment carried at fair value in the balance sheet. For equity method investments, this requires clearly identifying the portion of those investments classified in the significant-influence category that is being accounted for at fair value. (p. 661 and 679)
- **LO12-9** U.S. GAAP and IFRS are similar in most respects concerning how they account for investments, but accounting in this area is being overhauled by both the IASB and the FASB, and IFRS companies may report under two different standards (either *IAS No. 39* or *IFRS No. 9*) until 2018. IFRS allows proportionate consolidation as well as the equity method to account for joint ventures, although the option to use proportionate consolidation may be eliminated soon. IFRS is more restrictive in terms of the circumstances in which the fair-value option can be used. Finally, as discussed in Appendix 12B, IFRS recognizes different amounts of OTT impairment for HTM and AFS debt investments, and allows recovery of OTT impairments for debt investments (but not equity investments). (pp. 660–663, 671, 680, and 690) ●

Other Investments (Special Purpose Funds, Investments In Life Insurance Policies)

APPENDIX 12A

Special Purpose Funds

It's often convenient for companies to set aside money to be used for specific purposes. You learned about one such special purpose fund in Chapter 7 when we discussed petty cash funds. Recall that a petty cash fund is money set aside to conveniently make small expenditures using currency rather than having to follow the time-consuming, formal procedures normally used to process checks. Similar funds sometimes are used to pay interest, payroll, or other short-term needs. Like petty cash, these short-term special purpose funds are reported as current assets.

Special purpose funds also are sometimes established to serve longer-term needs. It's common, for instance, to periodically set aside cash into a fund designated to repay bonds and other long-term debt. Such funds usually accumulate cash over the debt's term to maturity and are composed of the company's periodic contributions plus interest or dividends from investing the money in various return-generating investments. In fact, some debt contracts require the borrower to establish such a fund to repay the debt. In similar fashion, management might voluntarily choose to establish a fund to accumulate money to expand facilities, provide for unexpected losses, buy back shares of stock, or any other special purpose that might benefit from an accumulation of funds. Of course, funds that won't be used within the upcoming operating cycle are noncurrent assets. They typically are reported as part of investments. The same criteria for classifying securities into reporting categories that we discussed previously should be used to classify securities in which funds are invested. Any investment revenue from these funds is reported as such in the income statement.

Some special purpose funds—like petty cash—are current assets.

A special purpose fund can be established for virtually any purpose.

Noncurrent special purpose funds are reported within the category investments and funds.

Certain life insurance policies can be surrendered while the insured is still alive in exchange for its cash surrender value.

Investments in Life Insurance Policies

Companies frequently buy life insurance policies on the lives of their key officers. Under normal circumstances, the company pays the premium for the policy and, as beneficiary,

receives the proceeds when the officer dies. Of course, the objective is to compensate the company for the untimely loss of a valuable resource in the event the officer dies. However, some types of life insurance policies can be surrendered while the insured is still alive in exchange for a determinable amount of money, called the **cash surrender value**. In effect, a portion of each premium payment is not used by the insurance company to pay for life insurance coverage, but instead is invested on behalf of the insured company in a fixed-income investment. Accordingly, the cash surrender value increases each year by the portion of premiums invested plus interest on the previous amount invested. This is simply a characteristic of whole life insurance, unlike term insurance that has lower premiums and provides death benefits only.

From an accounting standpoint, the periodic insurance premium should not be expensed in its entirety. Rather, part of each premium payment, the investment portion, is recorded as an asset. Illustration 12A–1 provides an example.

Part of each insurance premium represents an increase in the cash surrender value.

Illustration 12A–1
Cash Surrender Value

Part of the annual premium represents a build-up in the cash surrender value.

When the death benefit is paid, the cash surrender value becomes null and void.

Several years ago, American Capital acquired a \$1 million insurance policy on the life of its chief executive officer, naming American Capital as beneficiary. Annual premiums are \$18,000, payable at the beginning of each year. In 2018, the cash surrender value of the policy increased according to the contract from \$5,000 to \$7,000. The CEO died at the end of 2018.

Insurance expense (difference)	16,000	
Cash surrender value of life insurance (\$7,000 – 5,000).....	2,000	
Cash (2018 premium)		18,000

To record insurance expense and the increase in the investment.

The cash surrender value is considered to be a noncurrent investment and would be reported in the investments and funds section of the balance sheet. Of course when the insured officer dies, the corporation receives the death benefit of the insurance policy, and the cash surrender value ceases to exist because canceling the policy no longer is an option. The corporation recognizes a gain for the amount of the death benefit less the cash surrender value.

Cash (death benefit)	1,000,000	
Cash surrender value of life insurance (balance)		7,000
Gain on life insurance settlement (difference).....		993,000

To record the proceeds at death.

APPENDIX
12B

Impairment of Debt Investments

An “other-than-temporary” impairment loss is recognized in net income even though the security hasn’t been sold.

We saw in Chapter 11 that intangible assets and property, plant, and equipment are subject to impairment losses that reduce earnings if a decline in fair value indicates that the assets’ value has been impaired. The same is true for investments. As indicated in Chapter 12, if the fair value of an investment declines to a level below cost, and that decline is not viewed as temporary, companies typically have to recognize an other-than-temporary (OTT) impairment loss in earnings. We don’t need to worry about OTT impairments for trading securities, equity investments for which the investor lacks significant influence, or other investments for which a company has chosen the fair value option, because all changes in the fair values of those investments (whether temporary or OTT) always are recognized in earnings. However, that is not the case for held-to-maturity (HTM) and available-for-sale (AFS) debt investments. Declines in fair value typically are ignored for HTM investments and recorded in OCI for AFS investments. Therefore, companies need to evaluate HTM and AFS investments to determine whether an OTT impairment loss has occurred.

We use a three-step process to determine whether an OTT impairment loss must be recognized and how that loss is to be measured and recorded: (1) determine if the investment is

impaired, (2) determine whether any impairment is OTT, and (3) determine where to report the OTT impairment.³⁹ Illustration 12B–1 summarizes those steps.

Is the investment impaired?

Yes, if the fair value is less than the investment's amortized cost.

Is any of the impairment other-than-temporary (OTT)?

Yes, if the investor (a) intends to sell the investment, (b) believes it is "more likely than not" that the investor will be required to sell the investment prior to recovering the amortized cost of the investment, less any current-period credit loss, or (c) has incurred credit losses.

Where is the OTT impairment reported?

In net income, if the investor intends to sell the security or is "more likely than not" to be required to sell it before recovery of its amortized cost.

Otherwise:

- Credit loss portion in net income (Credit loss = amortized cost – PV of expected cash flows)
- Noncredit loss portion in OCI (Noncredit loss portion = total impairment – credit loss)

Illustration 12B–1

Other-Than-Temporary Impairment of Debt Investments

A three-step process is used to determine whether an impairment loss on debt investments must be recognized and how that loss is to be measured and recorded.⁴⁰ We'll start with the assumption that the investment is AFS, and then indicate what is different if it is HTM.

1. **Is the investment impaired?** Impairment of a debt investment occurs when fair value has declined to a level below amortized cost. It also may be necessary to split the total amount of impairment into credit losses and noncredit losses. *Credit losses* reflect expected reductions in future cash flows from anticipated defaults on interest or principal payments. We calculate credit losses as the difference between the amortized cost of the debt and the *present value of the cash flows* expected to be collected, using a discount rate equal to the effective interest rate that existed at the date the investment was acquired. *Noncredit losses* capture other reductions in fair value such as those due to changes in general economic conditions.
2. **Is any impairment other-than-temporary (OTT)?** We view a debt impairment as OTT if one of three conditions holds:
 - a. The investor intends to sell the investment,
 - b. The investor believes it is "more likely than not" that the investor will be required to sell the investment prior to recovering the amortized cost of the investment less any current-period credit losses, or
 - c. The investor determines that a credit loss exists on the investment.

The rationale for 2a and 2b is that an impairment is OTT if the investor is likely to sell the investment before fair value can recover. The rationale for 2c is that an impairment is OTT if the company believes the cash flows provided by the investment won't be enough to allow it to recover the amortized cost of the investment over the life of the investment.

3. **Where is the OTT impairment reported?** If the debt impairment is considered OTT, the investor always writes the investment down to fair value in the balance sheet, but the

Debt impairments can be divided into credit losses and noncredit losses.

Credit losses are due to anticipated reductions in cash flows from the debt investment; all others are noncredit losses.

Debt impairments are OTT if the investor:

- a. intends to sell the investment, or
- b. believes it is more likely than not that they will sell the investment prior to fair value recovery, or
- c. has suffered a credit loss.

³⁹FASB ASC 320–10–35: Investments–Debt Securities–Overall–Subsequent Measurement (originally "The Meaning of Other-Than-Temporary Impairment and Its Application to Certain Investments," FASB Staff Position No. 115-1 and 124-1 (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, November 5, 2005)).

⁴⁰FASB ASC 320–10–35: Investments–Debt Securities–Overall–Subsequent Measurement (previously "Recognition and Presentation of Other-Than-Temporary Impairments," FASB Staff Position No. 115-2 and 124-2 (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, April 9, 2009)).

If a debt impairment is OTT:

- Investment is written down to fair value.
- If OTT because of 2a or 2b, all of the OTT impairment loss is recognized in net income.
- If OTT because of 2c, only the credit loss is recognized in net income; noncredit loss in OCI.

amount included in net income or other comprehensive income depends on the reason the impairment is considered OTT:

- If the impairment is considered OTT due to reasons 2a or 2b above, the entire impairment loss is included in net income, because it is likely the company will incur a loss equal to the entire difference between fair value and amortized cost.
- If the impairment is considered OTT due to reason 2c above, *only the credit loss* component is included in net income, as that amount of amortized cost is unlikely to be recovered. Any noncredit loss component reduces OCI, similar to how we normally account for unrealized gains and losses on AFS investments.

Also, if the debt investment is classified as AFS, recognizing an OTT impairment may involve reclassifying amounts out of OCI that were recorded previously as unrealized gains or losses.

Illustration 12B–2 provides a description of the OTT debt impairment process from **Bank of America's** recent annual report.

Illustration 12B–2

Disclosure about OTT Impairments of Debt Investments—Bank of America

Real World Financials

Note 1 (in part): Securities

The Corporation regularly evaluates each AFS and HTM debt security where the value has declined below amortized cost to assess whether the decline in fair value is other-than-temporary. In determining whether an impairment is other-than-temporary, the Corporation considers the severity and duration of the decline in fair value, the length of time expected for recovery, the financial condition of the issuer, and other qualitative factors, as well as whether the Corporation either plans to sell the security or it is more likely than not that it will be required to sell the security before recovery of its amortized cost. Beginning in 2009, under new accounting guidance for impairments of debt securities that are deemed to be other-than-temporary, the credit component of an other-than-temporary impairment (OTTI) loss is recognized in earnings and the noncredit component is recognized in accumulated OCI in situations where the Corporation does not intend to sell the security and it is not more-likely-than-not that the Corporation will be required to sell the security prior to recovery. If there is an OTTI on any individual security classified as HTM, the Corporation writes down the security to fair value with a corresponding charge to other income (loss).

For an example of an OTT impairment for an AFS debt investment, see Illustration 12B–3.

In both Cases 1 and 2 of Illustration 12B–3, the amortized cost of the investment is reduced by the amount of OTT impairment that is recognized in earnings (\$50,000 for Case 1, \$30,000 for Case 2). United achieves this by crediting a contra-asset, discount on bond investment, which United amortizes over the remaining life of the debt the same way it would if it had initially purchased the debt at that discounted amount. In Case 2, the carrying value of the investment also is decreased by the *noncredit loss* component of the impairment (\$20,000). United achieves this by crediting a second contra-asset account, fair value adjustment—noncredit loss, with the offsetting loss recognized in OCI, the same way it would be if it were viewed as an unrealized loss under normal accounting for fair value declines of AFS investments.

Note that in both cases the carrying value of the debt becomes \$950,000, reduced by the entire amount of the OTT impairment. In Case 1 this occurs via the \$50,000 discount, and in Case 2 via the combination of the \$30,000 discount and \$20,000 fair value adjustment. Also, in both cases all of the OTT impairment is reflected in comprehensive income. The question is how much is reflected in net income as opposed to OCI. To clarify this distinction, GAAP requires that the entire OTT impairment be shown in the income statement, and then the portion attributed to noncredit losses backed out, such that only the credit loss portion reduces net income. That way, financial statement users are aware of the total amount as

United Intergroup, Inc., buys and sells debt securities of other companies as investments, and classifies these investments as AFS. United's fiscal year-end is December 31. The following events occurred during 2018.

Purchase Investment

July 1, 2018

Purchased \$1,000,000 of Bendac bonds, maturing on December 31, 2019.

Adjust Investment to Fair Value

December 31, 2018

Valued the Bendac bonds at \$950,000. Of the \$50,000 impairment, \$30,000 is credit loss and \$20,000 is noncredit loss.

We'll consider two cases:

- **Case 1:** United either plans to sell the investment or believes it is more likely than not that it will have to sell the investment before fair value recovers (such that the impairment is viewed as OTT under 2a or 2b above).
- **Case 2:** United does *not* intend to sell the investment and does *not* believe it is more likely than not that it will have to sell the Bendac investment before fair value recovers, but estimates that \$30,000 of credit losses have occurred (such that the impairment is viewed as OTT under 2c above).

	Case 1	Case 2
December 31, 2018		
OTT impairment loss—NI	50,000	30,000
Discount on bond investment	50,000	30,000
OTT impairment loss—OCI		20,000
Fair value adjustment—Noncredit loss		20,000

Note: If United had included unrealized gains or losses for this investment in OCI in a prior period, it also would have to make a reclassification entry, as demonstrated for an equity OTT impairment in Illustration 12B-3.

Illustration 12B-3

Other-than-temporary
Impairment of Debt
Investment

well as the amount included in net income. Continuing Illustration 12B-3, income statement presentation of the two cases would be as follows:

Income Statement Presentation, December 31, 2018	Case 1	Case 2
<i>OTT impairment of AFS investments:</i>		
Total OTT impairment loss	\$50,000	\$50,000
Less: portion recognized in OCI	-0-	20,000
Net impairment loss recognized in net income	\$50,000	\$30,000

What if a debt investment is classified as HTM rather than AFS? Most of the accounting is the same, but an important difference relates to the recognition of *noncredit* losses in OCI. HTM investments normally don't include unrealized gains and losses in OCI, so these won't routinely be adjusted up or down over time. Therefore, for HTM investments, GAAP requires that companies gradually reverse any amounts included in OCI over the remaining life of the investment, debiting the fair value adjustment and crediting OCI each period.

After an OTT impairment is recorded, the usual treatment of unrealized gains or losses is resumed. Changes in fair value are reported in OCI for AFS investments, and are ignored for HTM investments. Any impairment loss recognized in earnings is not eligible for reversal should fair value recover.

CURRENT EXPECTED CREDIT LOSS (CECL) MODEL FOR DEBT INVESTMENTS As indicated earlier in this chapter and in Chapter 7, guidance is changing with respect to accounting for impairments. These changes will be mandatory starting in 2020, and companies can choose to adopt them starting in 2019.⁴¹

⁴¹"Financial Instruments--Credit Losses (Topic 326)" *Accounting Standards Update 2016-13* (Norwalk, Conn: FASB, 2016).

For HTM investments, companies will be required to use the **CECL (“Current Expected Credit Loss”) model** to account for impairments. That means that companies will recognize bad debts for HTM investments the same way they recognize bad debts for any other note receivable. They will use a contra-asset account, the allowance for credit losses, to reduce the carrying value of HTM investments to the net amount expected to be collected, and each period will record whatever credit loss (bad debt expense) or recovery of credit loss is necessary to adjust that allowance to its appropriate balance. Unlike current practice for OTT impairments, reversal of impairments will be allowed if the fair value of the HTM investment recovers. Estimates of the allowance for credit losses will incorporate historical and current data as well as reasonable and supportable forecasts about the future.

For AFS investments, companies won’t apply the CECL model. Instead, they’ll apply a new AFS Credit Loss model that is very similar to what companies currently use for OTT impairments. It still will be the case that, if companies plan to sell the investment or think it is more likely than not that they will have to sell the investment before fair value recovers, they will recognize in net income an amount of impairment loss equal to the entire difference between amortized cost and fair value. Also, it still will be the case that, in the remaining circumstance in which companies don’t think they will have to sell the investment before fair value recovers, companies will recognize credit losses in net income and noncredit losses in OCI. The main difference is that, when companies recognize credit losses in net income using the new AFS Credit Loss model, they will credit an allowance for credit losses (an allowance for bad debts), rather than reducing the amortized cost of the investment directly by crediting a discount on investment account. Similar to HTM investments, the allowance for credit losses will be adjusted upward or downward as necessary to reflect credit losses, with the offsetting expense or recovery of expense shown in net income. However, the allowance for credit losses is not permitted to exceed the difference between amortized cost and fair value of the investment (because the company can always sell the investment at fair value to avoid additional credit losses).

International Financial Reporting Standards

LO12–8

Accounting for Impairments. Our coverage of impairments focuses on *IFRS No. 9*, which is required after 2018 and can be used in practice in periods before then. Under *IFRS No. 9*, companies recognize impairments for debt investments that are accounted for at amortized cost (rather than fair value through net income) or at fair value through other comprehensive income (FVOCI). There is no distinction made for OTT status. The impairment is calculated using the ECL model discussed previously, and is measured either as the 12-month expected credit loss (if the credit risk on the investment has increased significantly) or the lifetime expected credit loss (if the credit risk on the investment has not increased significantly). The entire impairment is recognized in earnings (there is no equivalent to recognizing in OCI any noncredit losses on debt investments), with an offsetting allowance reducing the carrying value of the investment to the appropriate amount.

IFRS allows recoveries of impairments of debt investments to be recognized in earnings. This is a difference from current U.S. GAAP, which does not allow recoveries of any OTT impairment, but not the CECL model that will be required in U.S. GAAP, which allows recoveries.

To illustrate, let’s modify our Bendac debt example from Illustration 12B–3 to assume amortized cost of €1,000,000, €30,000 of 12-month expected credit losses and €20,000 of additional credit losses expected for default events occurring after 12 months. Assuming there has not been a significant increase in credit risk, Bendac would recognize an impairment of €30,000:

Impairment loss—NI	30,000	
Allowance for credit losses		30,000

Assuming instead that there has been a significant increase in credit risk, Bendac would recognize an impairment of €50,000:

Impairment loss—NI	50,000	
Allowance for credit losses		50,000

(continued)




(concluded)



If in a subsequent period the fair value of the debt investment improved by €15,000, IFRS would allow *reversal* of that amount of impairment charge.

Allowance for credit losses.....	15,000	
Reversal of impairment loss—NI		15,000

Companies can elect to always recognize lifetime credit losses, but only have to do so when a significant increase in credit loss has occurred.

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 12-1** All investments in *debt* securities are classified for reporting purposes in one of three categories, and can be accounted for differently depending on the classification. What are these three categories?
- Q 12-2** When market rates of interest *rise* after a fixed-rate security is purchased, the value of the now-below-market, fixed-interest payments declines, so the market value of the investment falls. On the other hand, if market rates of interest *fall* after a fixed-rate security is purchased, the fixed-interest payments become relatively attractive, and the market value of the investment rises. Assuming these price changes are not viewed as giving rise to an other-than-temporary impairment, how are they reflected in the investment account for a security classified as held-to-maturity?
- Q 12-3** Does GAAP distinguish between fair values that are readily determinable from current market prices versus those needing to be calculated based on the company's own assumptions? Explain how a user will know about the reliability of the inputs used to determine fair value.
- Q 12-4** When a debt investment is acquired to be held for an unspecified period of time as opposed to being held to maturity, it is reported at the fair value of the investment securities on the reporting date. Why?
- Q 12-5** Reporting an investment at its fair value means adjusting its carrying amount for changes in fair value after its acquisition (or since the last reporting date if it was held at that time). Such changes are called unrealized holding gains and losses because they haven't yet been realized through the sale of the security. If the security is classified as available-for-sale, how are unrealized holding gains and losses typically reported?
- Q 12-6** What is "comprehensive income"? Its composition varies from company to company but may include which items related to available-for-sale investments that are not included in net income?
- Q 12-7** Why are holding gains and losses treated differently for trading securities and securities available-for-sale?
- Q 12-8** Western Die-Casting Company holds an investment in unsecured bonds of LGB Heating Equipment, Inc. When the investment was acquired, management's intention was to hold the bonds for resale. Now management has the positive intent and ability to hold the bonds to maturity. How should Western account for the reclassification of the investment?
- Q 12-9** Is it necessary for an investor to report individual amounts for the three categories of investments—held-to-maturity, available-for-sale, or trading—in the financial statements? What information should be disclosed about these investments?
-  **IFRS Q 12-10** Under *IFRS No. 9*, what reporting categories are used to account for debt investments? What about for equity investments when the investor lacks the ability to significantly influence the operations of the investee?
-  **IFRS Q 12-11** Under *IFRS No. 9*, which reporting categories are used to account for equity investments when the investor lacks the ability to significantly influence the operations of the investee?
- Q 12-12** What is the effect of a company electing the fair value option with respect to a held-to-maturity investment or an available-for-sale investment?
-  **IFRS Q 12-13** Do U.S. GAAP and IFRS differ in the amount of flexibility that companies have in electing the fair value option? Explain.
- Q 12-14** Under what circumstances is the equity method used to account for an investment in stock?
- Q 12-15** The equity method has been referred to as a *one-line consolidation*. What might prompt this description?
- Q 12-16** In the application of the equity method, how should dividends from the investee be accounted for? Why?
- Q 12-17** The fair value of depreciable assets of Penner Packaging Company exceeds their book value by \$12 million. The assets' average remaining useful life is 10 years. They are being depreciated by the straight-line method. Finest Foods Industries buys 40% of Penner's common shares. When adjusting investment revenue and the investment by the equity method, how will the situation described affect those two accounts?

- Q 12-18** Superior Company owns 40% of the outstanding stock of Bernard Company. During 2018, Bernard paid a \$100,000 cash dividend on its common shares. What effect did this dividend have on Superior's 2018 financial statements?
- Q 12-19** Sometimes an investor's level of influence changes, making it necessary to change from the equity method to another method. How should the investor account for this change in accounting method?
-  **IFRS Q 12-20** How does IFRS differ from U.S. GAAP with respect to using the equity method?
- Q 12-21** What is the effect of a company electing the fair value option with respect to an investment that otherwise would be accounted for using the equity method?
- Q 12-22** Define a financial instrument. Provide three examples of current liabilities that represent financial instruments.
- Q 12-23** Some financial instruments are called derivatives. Why?
- Q 12-24** (Based on Appendix 12A) Northwest Carburetor Company established a fund in 2015 to accumulate money for a new plant scheduled for construction in 2018. How should this special purpose fund be reported in Northwest's balance sheet?
- Q 12-25** (Based on Appendix 12A) Whole-life insurance policies typically can be surrendered while the insured is still alive in exchange for a determinable amount of money called the *cash surrender value*. When a company buys a life insurance policy on the life of a key officer to protect the company against the untimely loss of a valuable resource in the event the officer dies, how should the company account for the cash surrender value?
- Q 12-26** (Based on Appendix 12B) When market rates of interest *rise* after a fixed-rate security is purchased, the value of the now-below-market, fixed-interest payments declines, so the market value of the investment falls. If that drop in fair value is viewed as giving rise to an other-than-temporary impairment, how would it be reflected in the investment account for a security classified as held-to-maturity?
- Q 12-27** (Based on Appendix 12B) Reporting an investment at its fair value requires adjusting its carrying amount for changes in fair value after its acquisition (or since the last reporting date if it was held at that time). Such changes are called unrealized holding gains and losses because they haven't yet been realized through the sale of the security. If a security is classified as available-for-sale, and an unrealized holding loss is viewed as giving rise to an other-than-temporary (OTT) impairment, how is it reported in the financial statements?
- Q 12-28** (Based on Appendix 12B) The market value of Helig Forestry and Mining Corporation bonds dropped 6⅞ points when the federal government passed new legislation banning one of the company's primary techniques for extracting ore. Harris Corporation owns Helig bonds and classifies its investment as securities available-for-sale. How should the decline in market value be handled by Harris?
- Q 12-29** Explain how the CECL model (introduced in *ASU No. 2016-13* and required in 2020) differs from current GAAP in its calculation of impairment losses.
-  **IFRS Q 12-30** (Based on Appendix 12B) How does IFRS differ from current U.S. GAAP in accounting for other-than-temporary impairments?

Brief Exercises



BE 12-1

Securities held-to-maturity; bond investment; effective interest

• LO12-1

Lance Brothers Enterprises acquired \$720,000 of 3% bonds, dated July 1, on July 1, 2018, as a long-term investment. Management has the positive intent and ability to hold the bonds until maturity. The market interest rate (yield) was 4% for bonds of similar risk and maturity. Lance Brothers paid \$600,000 for the investment in bonds and will receive interest semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Prepare the journal entries (a) to record Lance Brothers' investment in the bonds on July 1, 2018, and (b) to record interest on December 31, 2018, at the effective (market) rate.

BE 12-2

Trading securities

• LO12-3

S&L Financial buys and sells securities expecting to earn profits on short-term differences in price. On December 27, 2018, S&L purchased **Coca-Cola** bonds at par for \$875,000 and sold the bonds on January 3, 2019, for \$880,000. At December 31, the bonds had a fair value of \$873,000. What pretax amounts did S&L include in its 2018 and 2019 net income as a result of this investment (ignoring interest)?

BE 12-3

Trading securities

• LO12-3

For the Coca-Cola bonds described in BE 12-2, prepare journal entries to record (a) any unrealized gains or losses occurring in 2018 and (b) the sale of the bonds in 2019.

BE 12-4

Available-for-sale securities

• LO12-4

S&L Financial buys and sells securities which it classifies as available-for-sale. On December 27, 2018, S&L purchased **Coca-Cola** bonds at par for \$875,000 and sold the bonds on January 3, 2019, for \$880,000. At December 31, the bonds had a fair value of \$873,000, and S&L has the intent and ability to hold the investment until fair value recovers. What pretax amounts did S&L include in its 2018 and 2019 net income as a result of this investment?

BE 12-5

Available-for-sale securities

● LO12-4

For the Coca-Cola bonds described in BE 12-4, prepare journal entries to record (a) any unrealized gains or losses occurring in 2018 and (b) the sale of the bonds in 2019, including recognition of any unrealized gains in 2019 prior to sale and reclassification of amounts out of OCI.

BE 12-6

Fair value option; available-for-sale securities

● LO12-8

S&L Financial buys and sells securities that it typically classifies as available-for-sale. On December 27, 2018, S&L purchased **Coca-Cola** bonds at par for \$875,000 and sold the bonds on January 3, 2019, for \$880,000. At December 31, the bonds had a fair value of \$873,000. When it purchased the Coca-Cola bonds, S&L Financial decided to elect the fair value option for this investment. What pretax amounts did S&L include in its 2018 and 2019 net income as a result of this investment (ignoring interest)?

BE 12-7

Available-for-sale securities

● LO12-4

For several years Fister Links Products has held **Microsoft** bonds, considered by the company to be securities available-for-sale. The bonds were acquired at a cost of \$500,000. At the end of 2018, their fair value was \$610,000 and their amortized cost was \$510,000. At the end of 2019, their fair value was \$600,000 and their amortized cost was \$520,000. At what amount will the investment be reported in the December 31, 2019, balance sheet? What adjusting entry is required to accomplish this objective (ignore interest)?

BE 12-8

Debt investments under IFRS

● LO12-4, LO12-9



IFRS

Fowler Inc. purchased \$75,000 of bonds on January 1, 2018. The bonds pay interest semiannually and mature in 20 years, at which time the \$75,000 principal will be paid. The bonds do not pay any amounts other than interest and principal. Fowler's intention is to collect contractual cash flows and eventually sell the bonds within the next couple of years if the price is right. During 2018, the fair value of the bonds increased to \$80,000. Fowler reports investments under *IFRS No. 9*. How much unrealized gain or loss will Fowler include in 2018 net income with respect to the bonds?

BE 12-9

Debt investments under IFRS

● LO12-2, LO12-9



IFRS

Assume the same facts as in BE 12-8, but that Fowler intends to hold the bonds until maturity. How much unrealized gain or loss would Fowler include in 2018 net income with respect to the bonds?

BE 12-10

Equity securities

● LO12-5

Adams Industries holds 40,000 shares of **FedEx** common stock, which is not a large enough ownership interest to allow Adams to exercise significant influence over FedEx. On December 31, 2018, and December 31, 2019, the market value of the stock is \$95 and \$100 per share, respectively. What is the appropriate reporting category for this investment and at what amount will it be reported in the 2019 balance sheet?

BE 12-11

Equity investments and dividends

● LO12-5

Turner Company owns 10% of the outstanding stock of ICA Company. During the current year, ICA paid a \$5 million cash dividend on its common shares. What effect did this dividend have on Turner's 2018 financial statements? Explain the reasoning for this effect.

BE 12-12

Equity method and dividends

● LO12-6

Turner Company owns 40% of the outstanding stock of ICA Company. During the current year, ICA paid a \$5 million cash dividend on its common shares. What effect did this dividend have on Turner's 2018 financial statements? Explain the reasoning for this effect.

BE 12-13

Equity method

● LO12-6, LO12-7

The fair value of Wallis, Inc.'s depreciable assets exceeds their book value by \$50 million. The assets have an average remaining useful life of 15 years and are being depreciated by the straight-line method. Park Industries buys 30% of Wallis's common shares. When Park adjusts its investment revenue and the investment by the equity method, how will the situation described affect those two accounts?

BE 12-14

Equity method investments

● LO12-6, LO12-9



IFRS

Kim Company bought 30% of the shares of Phelps, Inc., at the start of 2018. Kim paid \$10 million for the shares. Thirty percent of the book value of Phelps's net assets is \$8 million, and the difference of \$2 million is due to land that Phelps owns that has appreciated in value. During 2018, Phelps reported net income of \$1 million and paid a cash dividend of \$0.5 million. At what amount does Kim carry the Phelps investment on its balance sheet as of December 31, 2018?

BE 12-15

Change in principle; change to the equity method

● LO12-7

At the beginning of 2018, Pioneer Products' ownership interest in the common stock of LLB Co. increased to the point that it became appropriate to begin using the equity method of accounting for the investment. The balance in the investment account was \$44 million at the time of the change but would have been \$56 million if Pioneer had used the equity method since first investing in LLB. How should Pioneer report the change? Would your answer be the same if Pioneer is changing *from* the equity method rather than *to* the equity method?

BE 12-16

Fair value option;
equity method
investments

● LO12-8

Turner Company purchased 40% of the outstanding stock of ICA Company for \$10,000,000 on January 2, 2018. Turner elects the fair value option to account for the investment. During 2018, ICA earns \$750,000 of income and on December 30 pays a dividend of \$500,000. On December 31, 2018, the fair value of Turner's investment has increased to \$11,500,000. What journal entries would Turner make to account for this investment during 2018, assuming Turner will account for the investment similar to how it would account for a trading security?

BE 12-17

Available-for-sale
securities
and impairment
(Appendix 12B)

● LO12-4, LO12-8

LED Corporation owns \$1,000,000 of Branch Pharmaceuticals bonds and classifies its investment as securities available-for-sale. The market price of Branch's bonds fell by \$450,000, due to concerns about one of the company's principal drugs. The concerns were justified when the FDA banned the drug. \$100,000 of that decline in value already had been included in OCI as a temporary unrealized loss in a prior period. LED views \$200,000 of the \$450,000 loss as related to *credit* losses, and the other \$250,000 as *noncredit* losses. LED thinks it is more likely than not that it will have to sell the investment before fair value recovers. What journal entries should LED record to account for the decline in market value in the current period? How should the decline affect net income and comprehensive income?

BE 12-18

Impairments (AFS
Credit Loss Model)
(Appendix 12B)

● LO12-4, LO12-8

Answer BE 12-17 under the assumption that LED Corporation used the AFS Credit Loss Model introduced in *ASU 2016-13* and required after 2020.

BE 12-19

Available-for-sale
securities
and impairment
(Appendix 12B)

● LO12-4, LO12-8

LED Corporation owns \$1,000,000 of Branch Pharmaceuticals bonds and classifies its investment as securities available-for-sale. The market price of Branch's bonds fell by \$450,000, due to concerns about one of the company's principal drugs. The concerns were justified when the FDA banned the drug. \$100,000 of that decline in value already had been included in OCI as a temporary unrealized loss in a prior period. LED views \$200,000 of the \$450,000 loss as related to *credit* losses, and the other \$250,000 as *noncredit* losses. LED does not plan to sell the investment and does not think it is more likely than not that it will have to sell the investment before fair value recovers. What journal entries should LED record to account for the decline in market value in the current period? How should the decline affect net income and comprehensive income?

BE 12-20

Recovery of
impairments
under IFRS
(Appendix 12B)

● LO12-3, LO12-8,
LO12-9

Wickum Corporation reports under IFRS, and recognized a \$500,000 other-than-temporary impairment of an HTM debt investment in Right Corporation. Subsequently, the fair value of Wickum's investment in Right increased by \$300,000. How would Wickum account for that increase in fair value?

Exercises

**E 12-1**

Securities held-to-maturity; bond investment; effective interest, discount

● LO12-1

Tanner-UNF Corporation acquired as a long-term investment \$240 million of 6% bonds, dated July 1, on July 1, 2018. Company management has the positive intent and ability to hold the bonds until maturity. The market interest rate (yield) was 8% for bonds of similar risk and maturity. Tanner-UNF paid \$200 million for the bonds. The company will receive interest semiannually on June 30 and December 31. As a result of changing market conditions, the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018, was \$210 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Tanner-UNF's investment in the bonds on July 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries by Tanner-UNF to record interest on December 31, 2018, at the effective (market) rate.
3. At what amount will Tanner-UNF report its investment in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet? Why?
4. Suppose Moody's bond rating agency downgraded the risk rating of the bonds motivating Tanner-UNF to sell the investment on January 2, 2019, for \$190 million. Prepare the journal entry to record the sale.

E 12-2

Securities held-to-maturity; bond investment; effective interest, premium

● LO12-1

Mills Corporation acquired as a long-term investment \$240 million of 6% bonds, dated July 1, on July 1, 2018. Company management has the positive intent and ability to hold the bonds until maturity. The market interest rate (yield) was 4% for bonds of similar risk and maturity. Mills paid \$280 million for the bonds. The company will receive interest semiannually on June 30 and December 31. As a result of changing market conditions, the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018, was \$270 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Mills' investment in the bonds on July 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries by Mills to record interest on December 31, 2018, at the effective (market) rate.
3. At what amount will Mills report its investment in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet? Why?
4. Suppose Moody's bond rating agency upgraded the risk rating of the bonds, and Mills decided to sell the investment on January 2, 2019, for \$290 million. Prepare the journal entry to record the sale.

E 12-3

Securities
held-to-maturity

● LO12-1

FF&T Corporation is a confectionery wholesaler that frequently buys and sells securities to meet various investment objectives. The following selected transactions relate to FF&T's investment activities during the last two months of 2018. At November 1, FF&T held \$48 million of 20-year, 10% bonds of Convenience, Inc., purchased May 1, 2018, at face value. Management has the positive intent and ability to hold the bonds until maturity. FF&T's fiscal year ends on December 31.

Nov. 1	Received semiannual interest of \$2.4 million from the Convenience, Inc., bonds.
Dec. 1	Purchased 12% bonds of Facsimile Enterprises at their \$30 million face value, to be held until they mature in 2024. Semiannual interest is payable May 31 and November 30.
31	Purchased U.S. Treasury bills to be held until they mature in two months for \$8.9 million.
31	Recorded any necessary adjusting entry(s) relating to the investments.

The fair values of the investments at December 31 were:

Convenience bonds	\$44.7 million
Facsimile Enterprises bonds	30.9 million
U.S. Treasury bills	8.9 million

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entry for each transaction or event.

E 12-4

FASB codification
research

● LO12-2



The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on accounting for investments in held-to-maturity securities using the FASB's Codification Research System at the FASB website www.fasb.org.
2. What is the specific citation that describes examples of circumstances under which an investment in debt is available to be sold and therefore should not be classified as held-to-maturity?
3. List the circumstances and conditions.

E 12-5

Trading securities

● LO12-2

[This is a variation of E 12-1 focusing on trading securities.]

Tanner-UNF Corporation acquired as a long-term investment \$240 million of 6% bonds, dated July 1, on July 1, 2018. The market interest rate (yield) was 8% for bonds of similar risk and maturity. Tanner-UNF paid \$200 million for the bonds. The company will receive interest semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Company management is holding the bonds in its trading portfolio. As a result of changing market conditions, the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018, was \$210 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Tanner-UNF's investment in the bonds on July 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries by Tanner-UNF to record interest on December 31, 2018, at the effective (market) rate.
3. Prepare any additional journal entry necessary for Tanner-UNF to report its investment in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet.
4. Suppose Moody's bond rating agency downgraded the risk rating of the bonds motivating Tanner-UNF to sell the investment on January 2, 2019, for \$190 million. Prepare the journal entry to record the sale.

E 12-6

Trading securities

● LO12-1

[This is a variation of E 12-2 focusing on trading securities.]

Mills Corporation acquired as a long-term investment \$240 million of 6% bonds, dated July 1, on July 1, 2018. Company management has the positive intent and ability to hold the bonds until maturity. The market interest rate (yield) was 4% for bonds of similar risk and maturity. Mills paid \$280 million for the bonds. The company will receive interest semiannually on June 30 and December 31. As a result of changing market conditions, the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018, was \$270 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Mills' investment in the bonds on July 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries by Mills to record interest on December 31, 2018, at the effective (market) rate.

- At what amount will Mills report its investment in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet? Why?
- Suppose Moody's bond rating agency upgraded the risk rating of the bonds, and Mills decided to sell the investment on January 2, 2019, for \$290 million. Prepare the journal entry to record the sale.

E 12-7

Various transactions relating to trading securities

- LO12-1, LO12-3

Rantzow-Lear Company buys and sells debt securities expecting to earn profits on short-term differences in price. The company's fiscal year ends on December 31. The following selected transactions relating to Rantzow-Lear's trading account occurred during December 2018 and the first week of 2019.

2018

- Dec. 17 Purchased 100 Grocers' Supply Corporation bonds at par for \$350,000.
 28 Received interest of \$2,000 from the Grocers' Supply Corporation bonds.
 31 Recorded any necessary adjusting entry relating to the Grocers' Supply Corporation bonds. The market price of the stock was \$4,000 per bond.

2019

- Jan. 5 Sold the Grocers' Supply Corporation bonds for \$395,000.

Required:

- Prepare the appropriate journal entry for each transaction.
- Indicate any amounts that Rantzow-Lear Company would report in its 2018 balance sheet and income statement as a result of this investment.

E 12-8

FASB codification research

- LO12-3, LO12-4, LO12-6, LO12-7



Access the FASB's *Codification Research System* at the FASB website www.fasb.org.

Required:

Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

- Unrealized holding gains for trading securities should be included in earnings.
- Under the equity method, the investor accounts for its share of the earnings or losses of the investee in the periods they are reported by the investee in its financial statements.
- Transfers of securities between categories are accounted for at fair value.
- Disclosures for available-for-sale securities should include total losses for securities that have net losses included in accumulated other comprehensive income.

E 12-9

Securities available-for-sale; adjusting entries

- LO12-4

Loreal-American Corporation purchased several marketable securities during 2018. At December 31, 2018, the company had the investments in bonds listed below. None was held at the last reporting date, December 31, 2017, and all are considered securities available-for-sale.

	Cost	Fair Value	Unrealized Holding Gain (Loss)
Short term:			
Blair, Inc.	\$ 480,000	\$ 405,000	\$(75,000)
ANC Corporation	450,000	480,000	30,000
Totals	<u>\$ 930,000</u>	<u>\$ 885,000</u>	<u>\$(45,000)</u>
Long term:			
Drake Corporation	\$ 480,000	\$ 560,000	\$ 80,000
Aaron Industries	720,000	660,000	(60,000)
Totals	<u>\$1,200,000</u>	<u>\$1,220,000</u>	<u>\$ 20,000</u>

Required:

- Prepare appropriate adjusting entries at December 31, 2018.
- What amounts would be reported in the income statement at December 31, 2018, as a result of these adjusting entries?

E 12-10

Available-for-sale securities

- LO12-1, LO12-4

[This is a variation of E 12-1 focusing on available-for-sale securities.]

Tanner-UNF Corporation acquired as a long-term investment \$240 million of 6% bonds, dated July 1, on July 1, 2018. The market interest rate (yield) was 8% for bonds of similar risk and maturity. Tanner-UNF paid \$200 million for the bonds. The company will receive interest semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Company management has classified the bonds as available-for-sale investments. As a result of changing market conditions, the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018, was \$210 million.

Required:

- Prepare the journal entry to record Tanner-UNF's investment in the bonds on July 1, 2018.
- Prepare the journal entries by Tanner-UNF to record interest on December 31, 2018, at the effective (market) rate.

3. Prepare any additional journal entry necessary for Tanner-UNF to report its investment in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet.
4. Suppose Moody's bond rating agency downgraded the risk rating of the bonds motivating Tanner-UNF to sell the investment on January 2, 2019, for \$190 million. Prepare the journal entries necessary to record the sale, including updating the fair-value adjustment, recording any reclassification adjustment, and recording the sale.

E 12-11

Available-for-sale securities

● LO12-1, LO12-4

[This is a variation of E 12-2 focusing on available-for-sale securities.]

Mills Corporation acquired as a long-term investment \$240 million of 6% bonds, dated July 1, on July 1, 2018. Company management has the positive intent and ability to hold the bonds until maturity. The market interest rate (yield) was 4% for bonds of similar risk and maturity. Mills paid \$280 million for the bonds. The company will receive interest semiannually on June 30 and December 31. As a result of changing market conditions, the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018, was \$270 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Mills' investment in the bonds on July 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries by Mills to record interest on December 31, 2018, at the effective (market) rate.
3. At what amount will Mills report its investment in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet? Why?
4. Suppose Moody's bond rating agency upgraded the risk rating of the bonds, and Mills decided to sell the investment on January 2, 2019, for \$290 million. Prepare the journal entry to record the sale.

E 12-12

Available-for-sale securities

● LO12-1, LO12-4

Colah Company purchased \$1 million of Jackson, Inc., 5% bonds at par on July 1, 2018, with interest paid semiannually. Colah determined that it should account for the bonds as an available-for-sale investment. At December 31, 2018, the Jackson bonds had a fair value of \$1.2 million. Colah sold the Jackson bonds on July 1, 2019 for \$900,000.

Required:

1. Prepare Colah's journal entries to record:
 - a. The purchase of the Jackson bonds on July 1
 - b. Interest revenue for the last half of 2018
 - c. Any year-end 2018 adjusting entries
 - d. Interest revenue for the first half of 2019
 - e. Any entries necessary upon sale of the Jackson bonds on July 1, 2019, including updating the fair-value adjustment, recording any reclassification adjustment, and recording the sale
2. Fill out the following table to show the effect of the Jackson bonds on Colah's net income, other comprehensive income, and comprehensive income for 2018, 2019, and cumulatively over 2018 and 2019.

	2018	2019	Total
Net Income			
OCI			
Comprehensive Income			

E 12-13

Classification of securities; adjusting entries

● LO12-4

On February 18, 2018, Union Corporation purchased 10,000 shares of **IBM** bonds as a long-term investment for \$600,000. Union will hold the bonds indefinitely, and may sell them if their price increases sufficiently. On December 31, 2018, and December 31, 2019, the market value of the bonds was \$580,000 and \$610,000, respectively.

Required:

1. What is the appropriate reporting category for this investment? Why?
2. Prepare the adjusting entry for December 31, 2018.
3. Prepare the adjusting entry for December 31, 2019.

E 12-14

Various investment securities

● LO12-3, LO12-4

At December 31, 2018, Hull-Meyers Corp. had the following investments that were purchased during 2018, its first year of operations:

	Cost	Fair Value
Trading Securities:		
Security A	\$ 900,000	\$ 910,000
Security B	105,000	100,000
Totals	<u>\$1,005,000</u>	<u>\$1,010,000</u>

(continued)

(concluded)

Securities Available-for-Sale:			
Security C	\$ 700,000	\$ 780,000	
Security D	900,000	915,000	
Totals	<u>\$1,600,000</u>	<u>\$1,695,000</u>	
Securities to Be Held-to-Maturity:			
Security E	\$ 490,000	\$ 500,000	
Security F	615,000	610,000	
Totals	<u>\$1,105,000</u>	<u>\$1,110,000</u>	

No investments were sold during 2018. All securities except Security D and Security F are considered short-term investments. None of the fair value changes is considered permanent.

Required:

Determine the following amounts at December 31, 2018.

1. Investments reported as current assets
2. Investments reported as noncurrent assets
3. Unrealized gain (or loss) component of income before taxes
4. Unrealized gain (or loss) component of accumulated other comprehensive income in shareholders' equity

E 12-15

Equity investments; fair value through net income

• LO12-4

On March 31, 2018, Chow Brothers, Inc., bought 10% of KT Manufacturing's capital stock for \$50 million. KT's net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$80 million. The fair value of the shares held by Chow was \$35 million at December 31, 2018. KT did not declare or pay a dividend during 2018.

Required:

1. Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the investment during 2018.
2. Assume that Chow sold the stock on January 20, 2019 for \$30 million. Prepare the journal entry Sanborn would use to record the sale.

E 12-16

Equity investments; fair value through net income

• LO12-4

On January 2, 2018, Sanborn Tobacco Inc. bought 5% of Jackson Industry's capital stock for \$90 million. Jackson Industry's net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$120 million. The fair value of the shares held by Sanborn was \$98 million at December 31, 2018. During 2018, Jackson declared a dividend of \$60 million.

Required:

1. Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the investment during 2018.
2. Assume that Sanborn sold the stock on January 2, 2019 for \$110 million. Prepare the journal entry Sanborn would use to record the sale.

E 12-17

Equity investments; fair value through net income

• LO12-4

The accounting records of Jamaican Importers, Inc., at January 1, 2018, included the following:

Assets:		
Investment in IBM common shares		\$1,345,000
Less: Fair value adjustment		(145,000)
		<u>\$1,200,000</u>
Shareholders' Equity:		
Accumulated unrealized holding gains and losses		\$ 145,000

No changes occurred during 2018 in the investment portfolio.

Required:

Prepare appropriate adjusting entry(s) at December 31, 2018, assuming the fair value of the IBM common shares was:

1. \$1,175,000
2. \$1,275,000
3. \$1,375,000

E 12-18

Equity investments; fair value through net income

• LO12-4

The investments of Harlon Enterprises included the following cost and fair value amounts (\$ in millions):

Equity Investments	Cost	Fair Value, Dec. 31	
		2018	2019
A Corporation shares	\$ 20	\$14	na
B Corporation bonds	35	35	\$ 37
C Corporation shares	15	na	14
D Industries shares	45	46	50
Totals	<u>\$115</u>	<u>\$95</u>	<u>\$101</u>

Harlon accounts for its equity investment portfolio at fair value through net income. Harlon sold its holdings of A Corporation shares on June 1, 2019, for \$15 million. On September 12, it purchased the C Corporation shares.

Required:

1. What is the effect of the sale of the A Corporation shares and the purchase of the C Corporation shares on Harlon's 2019 pretax earnings?
2. At what amount should Harlon's securities equity investment portfolio be reported in its 2019 balance sheet?

E 12-19

Investment securities and equity method investments compared

● LO12-5, LO12-6

As a long-term investment, Painters' Equipment Company purchased 20% of AMC Supplies Inc.'s 400,000 shares for \$480,000 at the beginning of the fiscal year of both companies. On the purchase date, the fair value and book value of AMC's net assets were equal. During the year, AMC earned net income of \$250,000 and distributed cash dividends of 25 cents per share. At year-end, the fair value of the shares is \$505,000.

Required:

1. Assume no significant influence was acquired. Prepare the appropriate journal entries from the purchase through the end of the year.
2. Assume significant influence was acquired. Prepare the appropriate journal entries from the purchase through the end of the year.

E 12-20

Equity method; purchase; investee income; dividends

● LO12-6

As a long-term investment at the beginning of the 2018 fiscal year, Florists International purchased 30% of Nursery Supplies Inc.'s 8 million shares for \$56 million. The fair value and book value of the shares were the same at that time. During the year, Nursery Supplies earned net income of \$40 million and distributed cash dividends of \$1.25 per share. At the end of the year, the fair value of the shares is \$52 million.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entries from the purchase through the end of the year.

E 12-21

Error corrections; equity method investment

● LO12-6, LO12-7

On December 12, 2018, an equity investment costing \$80,000 was sold for \$100,000. The investment was carried in the balance sheet at \$75,000, and was accounted for under the equity method. An error was made in which the total of the sale proceeds was credited to the investment account.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to correct the error assuming it is discovered before the books are adjusted or closed in 2018. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Prepare the journal entry to correct the error assuming it is not discovered until early 2019. (Ignore income taxes.)

E 12-22

Equity method; adjustment for depreciation

● LO12-6, LO12-7

Fizer Pharmaceutical paid \$68 million on January 2, 2018, for 4 million shares of Carne Cosmetics common stock. The investment represents a 25% interest in the net assets of Carne and gave Fizer the ability to exercise significant influence over Carne's operations. Fizer received dividends of \$1 per share on December 21, 2018, and Carne reported net income of \$40 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The fair value of Carne's common stock at December 31, 2018, was \$18.50 per share.

- The book value of Carne's net assets was \$192 million.
- The fair value of Carne's depreciable assets exceeded their book value by \$32 million. These assets had an average remaining useful life of eight years.
- The remainder of the excess of the cost of the investment over the book value of net assets purchased was attributable to goodwill.

Required:

Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the investment during 2018.

E 12-23

Equity method

● LO12-6, LO12-7

On January 1, 2018, Cameron Inc. bought 20% of the outstanding common stock of Lake Construction Company for \$300 million cash. At the date of acquisition of the stock, Lake's net assets had a fair value of \$900 million. Their book value was \$800 million. The difference was attributable to the fair value of Lake's buildings and its land exceeding book value, each accounting for one-half of the difference. Lake's net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$150 million. During 2018, Lake declared and paid cash dividends of \$30 million. The buildings have a remaining life of 10 years.

Required:

1. Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the investment during 2018, assuming Cameron accounts for this investment by the equity method.
2. Determine the amounts to be reported by Cameron:
 - a. As an investment in Cameron's 2018 balance sheet

- b. As investment revenue in the income statement
- c. Among investing activities in the statement of cash flows

E 12-24

Equity method,
partial year

• LO12-6, LO12-7

On July 1, 2018, Gupta Corporation bought 25% of the outstanding common stock of VB Company for \$100 million cash. At the date of acquisition of the stock, VB's net assets had a total fair value of \$350 million and a book value of \$220 million. Of the \$130 million difference, \$20 million was attributable to the appreciated value of inventory that was sold during the last half of 2018, \$80 million was attributable to buildings that had a remaining depreciable life of 10 years, and \$30 million related to equipment that had a remaining depreciable life of 5 years. Between July 1, 2018, and December 31, 2018, VB earned net income of \$32 million and declared and paid cash dividends of \$24 million.

Required:

- Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the investment during 2018, assuming Gupta accounts for this investment by the equity method.
- Determine the amounts to be reported by Gupta:
 - As an investment in Gupta's December 31, 2018, balance sheet
 - As investment revenue or loss in Gupta's 2018 income statement
 - Among investing activities in Gupta's 2018 statement of cash flows

E 12-25

Fair value option;
held-to-maturity
investments

• LO12-1, LO12-2,
LO12-3, LO12-8

[This is a variation of E12-1 focusing on the fair value option.]

Tanner-UNF Corporation acquired as a long-term investment \$240 million of 6% bonds, dated July 1, on July 1, 2018. Company management has the positive intent and ability to hold the bonds until maturity, but when the bonds were acquired Tanner-UNF decided to elect the fair value option for accounting for its investment. The market interest rate (yield) was 8% for bonds of similar risk and maturity. Tanner-UNF paid \$200 million for the bonds. The company will receive interest semiannually on June 30 and December 31. As a result of changing market conditions, the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018, was \$210 million.

Required:

- Would this investment be classified on Tanner-UNF's balance sheet as held-to-maturity securities, trading securities, available-for-sale securities, significant-influence investments, or other? Explain.
- Prepare the journal entry to record Tanner-UNF's investment in the bonds on July 1, 2018.
- Prepare the journal entries by Tanner-UNF to record interest on December 31, 2018, at the effective (market) rate.
- Prepare any journal entry necessary to recognize fair value changes as of December 31, 2018.
- At what amount will Tanner-UNF report its investment in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet? Why?
- Suppose Moody's bond rating agency downgraded the risk rating of the bonds motivating Tanner-UNF to sell the investment on January 2, 2019, for \$190 million. Prepare the journal entry to record the sale.

E 12-26

Fair value option;
available-for-sale
investments

• LO12-2, LO12-3,
LO12-8

[This is a variation of E12-12 focusing on the fair value option.]

Colah Company purchased \$1 million of Jackson, Inc. 5% bonds at par on July 1, 2018, with interest paid semiannually. When the bonds were acquired Colah decided to elect the fair value option for accounting for its investment. At December 31, 2018, the Jackson bonds had a fair value of \$1.2 million. Colah sold the Jackson bonds on July 1, 2019 for \$900,000.

Required:

- Prepare Colah's journal entries to record:
 - The purchase of the Jackson bonds on July 1
 - Interest revenue for the last half of 2018
 - Any year-end 2018 adjusting entries
 - Interest revenue for the first half of 2019
 - Any entry or entries necessary upon sale of the Jackson bonds on July 1, 2019
- Fill out the following table to show the effect of the Jackson bonds on Colah's net income, other comprehensive income, and comprehensive income for 2018, 2019, and cumulatively over 2018 and 2019.

	2018	2019	Total
Net Income			
OCI			
Comprehensive Income			

E 12-27

Fair value option;
equity method
investments

● LO12-6, LO12-8

[This is a variation of E 12-20 focusing on the fair value option.]

As a long-term investment at the beginning of the 2018 fiscal year, Florists International purchased 30% of Nursery Supplies Inc.'s 8 million shares for \$56 million. The fair value and book value of the shares were the same at that time. The company realizes that this investment typically would be accounted for under the equity method, but instead chooses the fair value option. During the year, Nursery Supplies earned net income of \$40 million and distributed cash dividends of \$1.25 per share. At the end of the year, the fair value of the shares is \$52 million.

Required:

1. Would this investment be classified on Florists' balance sheet as held-to-maturity securities, trading securities, available-for-sale securities, significant-influence investments, or other? Explain.
2. Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the investment during 2018.
3. Indicate the effect of this investment on 2018 income before taxes.

E 12-28

Life insurance
policy (Appendix
12A)

Edible Chemicals Corporation owns a \$4 million whole life insurance policy on the life of its CEO, naming Edible Chemicals as beneficiary. The annual premiums are \$70,000 and are payable at the beginning of each year. The cash surrender value of the policy was \$21,000 at the beginning of 2018.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate 2018 journal entry to record insurance expense and the increase in the investment assuming the cash surrender value of the policy increased according to the contract to \$27,000.
2. The CEO died at the end of 2018. Prepare the appropriate journal entry.

E 12-29

Life insurance
policy (Appendix
12A)

Below are two unrelated situations relating to life insurance.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entry for each situation.

1. Ford Corporation owns a whole life insurance policy on the life of its president. Ford Corporation is the beneficiary. The insurance premium is \$25,000. The cash surrender value increased during the year from \$2,500 to \$4,600.
2. Petroleum Corporation received a \$250,000 life insurance settlement when its CEO died. At that time, the cash surrender value was \$16,000.

E 12-30

Held-to-maturity
securities;
impairments
(Appendix 12B)

● LO12-2, LO12-8

Bloom Corporation purchased \$1,000,000 of Taylor Company 5% bonds at par with the intent and ability to hold the bonds until they matured in 2025, so Bloom classifies their investment as HTM. Unfortunately, a combination of problems at Taylor Company and in the debt market caused the fair value of the Taylor investment to decline to \$600,000 during 2018.

Required:

For each of the following scenarios, prepare appropriate entry(s) at December 31, 2018, and indicate how the scenario will affect the 2018 income statement (ignoring income taxes).

1. Bloom now believes it is more likely than not that it will have to sell the Taylor bonds before the bonds have a chance to recover their fair value. Of the \$400,000 decline in fair value, Bloom attributes \$250,000 to credit losses, and \$150,000 to noncredit losses.
2. Bloom does not plan to sell the Taylor bonds prior to maturity, and does not believe it is more likely than not that it will have to sell the Taylor bonds before the bonds have a chance to recover their fair value. Of the \$400,000 decline in fair value, Bloom attributes \$250,000 to credit losses, and \$150,000 to noncredit losses.

E 12-31

Available-for-sale
debt securities;
impairments
(Appendix 12B)

● LO12-4, LO12-8

[Note: This exercise is a variation of E 12-30, modified to categorize the investment as securities available-for-sale.] Assume all of the same facts and scenarios as E 12-30, except that Bloom Corporation classifies their Taylor investment as AFS.

Required:

1. For each of the scenarios shown in E 12-30, prepare the appropriate entry(s) at December 31, 2018. Indicate how the scenario will affect the 2018 income statement, OCI, and comprehensive income.
2. Repeat requirement 1, but now assume that, at the end of 2017, Bloom had recorded a temporary unrealized loss (not an OTT impairment) of \$100,000 on the Taylor investment.

E 12-32

Impairments (AFS
Credit Loss Model)
(Appendix 12B)

● LO12-4, LO12-8

Answer E 12-31 under the assumption that Bloom Corporation used the AFS Credit Loss Model introduced in *ASU 2016-13* and required after 2020.

Required:

Prepare appropriate entry(s) at December 31, 2018, and for each year indicate how the scenario will affect net income, OCI, and comprehensive income.

E 12-33

Accounting for impairments under IFRS (Appendix 12B)

- LO12-2, LO12-8, LO12-9



IFRS

Rell Corporation reports under IFRS No. 9. Rell has an investment in Tirish, Inc. bonds that Rell accounts for at amortized cost, given that the bonds pay only interest and principal and Rell's business purpose is to hold the bonds to maturity. Rell purchased the bonds for €10,000,000. As of December 31, 2018, Rell calculates €750,000 of credit losses expected for default events occurring during 2019 and €450,000 of credit losses expected for default events occurring after 2019.

Required:

1. Assume the Tirish bonds have not had a significant increase in credit risk. Prepare the journal entry to record any impairment loss as of December 31, 2018.
2. Assume the Tirish bonds have had a significant increase in credit risk. Prepare the journal entry to record any impairment loss as of December 31, 2018.
3. Assume the Tirish bonds have not had a significant increase in credit risk, and that as of December 31, 2019, Rell calculates €650,000 of credit losses expected for default events occurring during 2020 and €350,000 of credit losses expected for default events occurring after 2020. Prepare the journal entry Rell would make with respect to any impairment loss as of December 31, 2019.

Problems

**P 12-1**

Securities held-to-maturity; bond investment; effective interest

- LO12-1, LO12-2

Fuzzy Monkey Technologies, Inc., purchased as a long-term investment \$80 million of 8% bonds, dated January 1, on January 1, 2018. Management has the positive intent and ability to hold the bonds until maturity. For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield was 10%. The price paid for the bonds was \$66 million. Interest is received semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Due to changing market conditions, the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018, was \$70 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Fuzzy Monkey's investment on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry by Fuzzy Monkey to record interest on June 30, 2018 (at the effective rate).
3. Prepare the journal entries by Fuzzy Monkey to record interest on December 31, 2018 (at the effective rate).
4. At what amount will Fuzzy Monkey report its investment in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet? Why?
5. How would Fuzzy Monkey's 2018 statement of cash flows be affected by this investment?

P 12-2

Trading securities; bond investment; effective interest

- LO12-1, LO12-3

[This problem is a variation of P12-1, modified to categorize the investment as trading securities.]

Fuzzy Monkey Technologies, Inc., purchased as a short-term investment \$80 million of 8% bonds, dated January 1, on January 1, 2018. Management intends to include the investment in a short-term, active trading portfolio. For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield was 10%. The price paid for the bonds was \$66 million. Interest is received semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Due to changing market conditions, the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018, was \$70 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Fuzzy Monkey's investment on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry by Fuzzy Monkey to record interest on June 30, 2018 (at the effective rate).
3. Prepare the journal entries by Fuzzy Monkey to record interest on December 31, 2018 (at the effective rate).
4. At what amount will Fuzzy Monkey report its investment in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet? Why? Prepare any entry necessary to achieve this reporting objective.
5. How would Fuzzy Monkey's 2018 statement of cash flows be affected by this investment?

P 12-3

Securities available-for-sale; bond investment; effective interest

- LO 12-1, LO12-4

(Note: This problem is a variation of P12-1, modified to categorize the investment as securities available-for-sale.)

Fuzzy Monkey Technologies, Inc., purchased as a long-term investment \$80 million of 8% bonds, dated January 1, on January 1, 2018. Management intends to have the investment available for sale when circumstances warrant. For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield was 10%. The price paid for the bonds was \$66 million. Interest is received semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Due to changing market conditions, the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018, was \$70 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Fuzzy Monkey's investment on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry by Fuzzy Monkey to record interest on June 30, 2018 (at the effective rate).
3. Prepare the journal entries by Fuzzy Monkey to record interest on December 31, 2018 (at the effective rate).
4. At what amount will Fuzzy Monkey report its investment in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet? Why? Prepare any entry necessary to achieve this reporting objective.
5. How would Fuzzy Monkey's 2018 statement of cash flows be affected by this investment?

P 12-4

Fair value option;
bond investment;
effective interest

- LO12-1, LO12-2,
LO12-3,
LO12-4, LO12-8

[This problem is a variation of P 12-3, modified to cause the investment to be accounted for under the fair value option.]

Fuzzy Monkey Technologies, Inc., purchased as a long-term investment \$80 million of 8% bonds, dated January 1, on January 1, 2018. Management intends to have the investment available for sale when circumstances warrant. When the company purchased the bonds, management elected to account for them under the fair value option. For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield was 10%. The price paid for the bonds was \$66 million. Interest is received semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Due to changing market conditions, the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018, was \$70 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Fuzzy Monkey's investment on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry by Fuzzy Monkey to record interest on June 30, 2018 (at the effective rate).
3. Prepare the journal entries by Fuzzy Monkey to record interest on December 31, 2018 (at the effective rate).
4. At what amount will Fuzzy Monkey report its investment in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet? Why? Prepare any entry necessary to achieve this reporting objective.
5. How would Fuzzy Monkey's 2018 statement of cash flows be affected by this investment?
6. How would your answers to requirements 1-5 differ if management had the intent and ability to hold the investments until maturity?

P 12-5

Various
transactions
related to trading
securities

- LO12-1, LO12-3

The following selected transactions relate to investment activities of Ornamental Insulation Corporation during 2018. The company buys debt securities, intending to profit from short-term differences in price and maintaining them in an active trading portfolio. Ornamental's fiscal year ends on December 31. No investments were held by Ornamental on December 31, 2017.

Mar. 31	Acquired 8% Distribution Transformers Corporation bonds costing \$400,000 at face value.
Sep. 1	Acquired \$900,000 of American Instruments' 10% bonds at face value.
Sep. 30	Received semiannual interest payment on the Distribution Transformers bonds.
Oct. 2	Sold the Distribution Transformers bonds for \$425,000.
Nov. 1	Purchased \$1,400,000 of M&D Corporation 6% bonds at face value.
Dec. 31	Recorded any necessary adjusting entry(s) relating to the investments. The market prices of the investments are:
	American Instruments bonds \$ 850,000
	M&D Corporation bonds \$1,460,000
	(Hint: Interest must be accrued.)

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entry for each transaction or event during 2018, as well as any adjusting entries necessary at year end.
2. Indicate any amounts that Ornamental Insulation would report in its 2018 income statement, 2018 statement of comprehensive income, and 12/31/2018 balance sheet as a result of these investments.

P 12-6

Various
transactions
related to
securities
available-for-sale

- LO12-1, LO12-4

(Note: This problem is a variation of P 12-5, modified to categorize the investments as securities available-for-sale.)

The following selected transactions relate to investment activities of Ornamental Insulation Corporation during 2018. The company buys debt securities, *not* intending to profit from short-term differences in price and *not* necessarily to hold debt securities to maturity, but to have them available for sale when circumstances warrant. Ornamental's fiscal year ends on December 31. No investments were held by Ornamental on December 31, 2017.

Mar. 31	Acquired 8% Distribution Transformers Corporation bonds costing \$400,000 at face value.
Sep. 1	Acquired \$900,000 of American Instruments' 10% bonds at face value.
Sep. 30	Received semiannual interest payment on the Distribution Transformers bonds.
Oct. 2	Sold the Distribution Transformers bonds for \$425,000.
Nov. 1	Purchased \$1,400,000 of M&D Corporation 6% bonds costing at face value.
Dec. 31	Recorded any necessary adjusting entry(s) relating to the investments. The market prices of the investments are:
	American Instruments bonds \$ 850,000
	M&D Corporation bonds \$1,460,000
	(Hint: Interest must be accrued.)

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entry for each transaction or event during 2018, as well as any adjusting entries necessary at year end. For any sales, prepare entries to update the fair-value adjustment, record any reclassification adjustment, and record the sale.
2. Indicate any amounts that Ornamental Insulation would report in its 2018 income statement, 2018 statement of comprehensive income, and 12/31/2018 balance sheet as a result of these investments.

(concluded)	1	Sold the Kansas Abstractors bonds for \$28 million because rising interest rates are expected to cause their fair value to continue to fall. No unrealized gains and losses had been recorded on these bonds previously.
Dec.	1	Purchased 12% bonds of Household Plastics Corporation at their \$60 million face value, to be held until they mature in 2028. Semiannual interest is payable May 31 and November 30.
	20	Purchased U. S. Treasury bonds for \$5.6 million as trading securities, hoping to earn profits on short-term differences in prices.
	21	Purchased 4 million common shares of NXS Corporation for \$44 million, planning to earn profits from dividends or gains if prevailing market conditions encourage sale.
	23	Sold the Treasury bonds for \$5.7 million.
	29	Received cash dividends of \$3 million from the Millwork Ventures Company preferred shares.
	31	Recorded any necessary adjusting entry(s) and closing entries relating to the investments. The market price of the Millwork Ventures Company preferred stock was \$27.50 per share and \$11.50 per share for the NXS Corporation common. The fair values of the bond investments were \$58.7 million for Household Plastics Corporation and \$16.7 million for Holistic Entertainment Enterprises.
2019		
	Jan. 7	Sold the NXS Corporation common shares for \$43 million.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entry for each transaction or event.

P 12–10

Investment securities and equity method investments compared

● LO12-6, LO12-7



On January 4, 2018, Runyan Bakery paid \$324 million for 10 million shares of Lavery Labeling Company common stock. The investment represents a 30% interest in the net assets of Lavery and gave Runyan the ability to exercise significant influence over Lavery's operations. Runyan received dividends of \$2.00 per share on December 15, 2018, and Lavery reported net income of \$160 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The market value of Lavery's common stock at December 31, 2018, was \$31 per share. On the purchase date, the book value of Lavery's net assets was \$800 million and:

- The fair value of Lavery's depreciable assets, with an average remaining useful life of six years, exceeded their book value by \$80 million.
- The remainder of the excess of the cost of the investment over the book value of net assets purchased was attributable to goodwill.

Required:

- Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the investment during 2018, assuming Runyan accounts for this investment by the equity method.
- Prepare the journal entries required by Runyan, assuming that the 10 million shares represent a 10% interest in the net assets of Lavery rather than a 30% interest.

P 12–11

Fair value option; equity method investments

● LO12-5, LO12-8

[This problem is a variation of P 12–10 focusing on the fair value option.]

On January 4, 2018, Runyan Bakery paid \$324 million for 10 million shares of Lavery Labeling Company common stock. The investment represents a 30% interest in the net assets of Lavery and gave Runyan the ability to exercise significant influence over Lavery's operations. Runyan chose the fair value option to account for this investment. Runyan received dividends of \$2.00 per share on December 15, 2018, and Lavery reported net income of \$160 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The market value of Lavery's common stock at December 31, 2018, was \$31 per share. On the purchase date, the book value of Lavery's net assets was \$800 million and:

- The fair value of Lavery's depreciable assets, with an average remaining useful life of six years, exceeded their book value by \$80 million.
- The remainder of the excess of the cost of the investment over the book value of net assets purchased was attributable to goodwill.

Required:

Assuming Runyan accounts for this investment under the fair value option, prepare all appropriate journal entries in a manner similar to accounting for securities for which there is not significant influence.

P 12–12

Fair value option; equity method investments

● LO12-5, LO12-6, LO12-7, LO12-8

[This problem is an expanded version of P 12–11 that considers alternative ways in which a firm might apply the fair value option to account for significant-influence investments that would normally be accounted for under the equity method.]

Companies can choose the fair value option for investments that otherwise would be accounted for under the equity method. If the fair value option is chosen, the investment is shown at fair value in the balance sheet, and unrealized holding gains and losses are recognized in the income statement. However, exactly how a company complies with those broad requirements is up to the company. This problem requires you to consider alternative



ways in which a company might apply the fair value option for investments that otherwise would be accounted for under the equity method.

On January 4, 2018, Runyan Bakery paid \$324 million for 10 million shares of Lavery Labeling Company common stock. The investment represents a 30% interest in the net assets of Lavery and gave Runyan the ability to exercise significant influence over Lavery's operations. Runyan chose the fair value option to account for this investment. Runyan received dividends of \$2.00 per share on December 15, 2018, and Lavery reported net income of \$160 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The market value of Lavery's common stock at December 31, 2018, was \$31 per share. On the purchase date, the book value of Lavery's net assets was \$800 million and:

- The fair value of Lavery's depreciable assets, with an average remaining useful life of six years, exceeded their book value by \$80 million.
- The remainder of the excess of the cost of the investment over the book value of net assets purchased was attributable to goodwill.

Required:

- Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the investment during 2018, assuming Runyan accounts for this investment under the fair value option, and accounts for the Lavery investment in a manner similar to what it would use for securities for which there is not significant influence. Indicate the effect of these journal entries on 2018 net income, and indicate the amount at which the investment is carried in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet.
- Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the investment during 2018, assuming Runyan accounts for this investment under the fair value option, but uses equity method accounting to account for Lavery's income and dividends, and then records a fair value adjustment at the end of the year that allows it to comply with GAAP. Indicate the effect of these journal entries on 2018 net income, and indicate the amount at which the investment is carried in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet. (Note: You should end up with the same total 2018 income effect and same carrying value on the balance sheet for requirements 1 and 2.)

P 12-13

Equity method

• LO12-6, LO12-7



Northwest Paperboard Company, a paper and allied products manufacturer, was seeking to gain a foothold in Canada. Toward that end, the company bought 40% of the outstanding common shares of Vancouver Timber and Milling, Inc., on January 2, 2018, for \$400 million.

At the date of purchase, the book value of Vancouver's net assets was \$775 million. The book values and fair values for all balance sheet items were the same except for inventory and plant facilities. The fair value exceeded book value by \$5 million for the inventory and by \$20 million for the plant facilities.

The estimated useful life of the plant facilities is 16 years. All inventory acquired was sold during 2018.

Vancouver reported net income of \$140 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. Vancouver paid a cash dividend of \$30 million.

Required:

- Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the investment during 2018.
- What amount should Northwest report as its income from its investment in Vancouver for the year ended December 31, 2018?
- What amount should Northwest report in its balance sheet as its investment in Vancouver?
- What should Northwest report in its statement of cash flows regarding its investment in Vancouver?

P 12-14

Equity method

• LO12-6, LO12-7

On January 2, 2018, Miller Properties paid \$19 million for 1 million shares of Marlon Company's 6 million outstanding common shares. Miller's CEO became a member of Marlon's board of directors during the first quarter of 2018.

The carrying amount of Marlon's net assets was \$66 million. Miller estimated the fair value of those net assets to be the same except for a patent valued at \$24 million above cost. The remaining amortization period for the patent is 10 years.

Marlon reported earnings of \$12 million and paid dividends of \$6 million during 2018. On December 31, 2018, Marlon's common stock was trading on the NYSE at \$18.50 per share.

Required:

- When considering whether to account for its investment in Marlon under the equity method, what criteria should Miller's management apply?
- Assume Miller accounts for its investment in Marlon using the equity method. Ignoring income taxes, determine the amounts related to the investment to be reported in its 2018:
 - Income statement
 - Balance sheet
 - Statement of cash flows

P 12-15

Classifying investments

• LO12-2 through LO12-6

Indicate (by letter) the way each of the investments listed below most likely should be accounted for based on the information provided.

Item	Reporting Category
____ 1. 35% of the nonvoting preferred stock of American Aircraft Company	T. Trading securities
____ 2. Treasury bills to be held to maturity	M. Securities held-to-maturity
____ 3. Two-year note receivable from affiliate	A. Securities available-for-sale
____ 4. Accounts receivable	F. Fair value through net income
____ 5. Treasury bond maturing in one week	E. Equity method
____ 6. Common stock held in an investment account for immediate resale	C. Consolidation
____ 7. Bonds acquired to profit from short-term differences in price	N. None of these
____ 8. 35% of the voting common stock of Computer Storage Devices Company	
____ 9. 90% of the voting common stock of Affiliated Peripherals, Inc	
____ 10. Corporate bonds of Primary Smelting Company to be sold if interest rates fall ½%	
____ 11. 25% of the voting common stock of Smith Foundries Corporation (51% family-owned by Smith family; fair value readily determinable)	
____ 12. 17% of the voting common stock of Shipping Barrels Corporation (Investor's CEO on the board of directors of Shipping Barrels Corporation)	

P 12-16

Fair value option;
held-to-maturity
investments

- LO12-1, LO12-2,
LO12-8



On January 1, 2018, Ithaca Corp. purchases Cortland Inc. bonds that have a face value of \$150,000. The Cortland bonds have a stated interest rate of 6%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31, and the bonds mature in 10 years. For bonds of similar risk and maturity, the market yield on particular dates is as follows:

January 1, 2018	7.0%
June 30, 2018	8.0%
December 31, 2018	9.0%

Required:

1. Calculate the price Ithaca would have paid for the Cortland bonds on January 1, 2018 (ignoring brokerage fees), and prepare a journal entry to record the purchase.
2. Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the bond investment during 2018, assuming Ithaca accounts for the bonds as a held-to-maturity investment. Ithaca calculates interest revenue at the effective interest rate as of the date it purchased the bonds.
3. Prepare all appropriate journal entries related to the bond investment during 2018, assuming that Ithaca chose the fair value option when the bonds were purchased, and that Ithaca determines fair value of the bonds semi-annually. Ithaca calculates interest revenue at the effective interest rate as of the date it purchased the bonds.

P 12-17

Accounting for
debt and equity
investments

- LO12-1, LO12-4,
LO12-5, LO12-9



IFRS

Feherty, Inc., accounts for its investments under *IFRS No. 9* and purchased the following investments during December 2018:

1. Fifty of Donald Company's \$1,000 bonds. The bonds pay semiannual interest, return principal in eight years, and include no other cash flows or other features. Feherty plans to hold 10 of the bonds to collect contractual cash flows over the life of the investment and to hold 40, both to collect contractual cash flows but also to sell them if their price appreciates sufficiently. Subsequent to Feherty's purchase of the bonds, but prior to December 31, the fair value of the bonds increased to \$1,040 per bond, and Feherty sold 10 of the 40 bonds. Feherty also sold 5 of the 10 bonds it had planned to hold to collect contractual cash flows over the life of the investment. The fair value of the bonds remained at \$1,040 as of December 31, 2018.
2. \$25,000 of Watson Company common stock. Feherty does not have the ability to significantly influence the operations of Watson. Feherty elected to account for this equity investment at fair value through OCI (FVOCI). Subsequent to Feherty's purchase of the stock, the fair value of the stock investment increased to \$30,000 as of December 31, 2018.

Required:

1. Indicate how Feherty would account for its investments when it acquired the Donald bonds and Watson stock.
2. Calculate the effect of realized and unrealized gains and losses associated with the Donald bonds and the Watson stock on Feherty's net income, other comprehensive income, and comprehensive income for the year ended December 31, 2018. Ignore interest revenue and taxes.

P 12-18

Accounting
for other-than-
temporary
impairments
(Appendix 12B)

- LO12-2, LO12-3,
LO12-4, LO12-8

Stewart Enterprises has the following investments, all purchased prior to 2018:

1. Bee Company 5% bonds, purchased at face value, with an amortized cost of \$4,000,000, and classified as held to maturity. At December 31, 2018, the Bee investment had a fair value of \$3,500,000, and Stewart calculated that \$240,000 of the fair value decline is a credit loss and \$260,000 is a noncredit loss. At December 31, 2019, the Bee investment had a fair value of \$3,700,000, and Stewart calculated that \$140,000 of the difference between fair value and amortized cost was a credit loss and \$160,000 was a noncredit loss.

- Oliver Corporation 4% bonds, purchased at face value, with an amortized cost of \$2,500,000, classified as a trading security. Because of unrealized losses prior to 2018, the Oliver bonds have a fair value adjustment account with a credit balance of \$200,000, such that the carrying value of the Oliver investment is \$2,300,000 prior to making any adjusting entries in 2018. At December 31, 2018, the Oliver investment had a fair value of \$2,200,000, and Stewart calculated that \$120,000 of the difference between amortized cost and fair value is a credit loss and \$180,000 is a noncredit loss. At December 31, 2019, the Oliver investment had a fair value of \$2,700,000.
- Jones Inc. 6% bonds, purchased at face value, with an amortized cost of \$3,500,000, and classified as an available-for-sale investment. Because of unrealized losses prior to 2018, the Jones bonds have a fair value adjustment account with a credit balance of \$400,000, such that the carrying value of the Jones investment is \$3,100,000 prior to making any adjusting entries in 2018. At December 31, 2018, the Jones investment had a fair value of \$2,700,000, and Stewart calculated that \$225,000 of the difference between amortized cost and fair value is a credit loss and \$575,000 is a noncredit loss. At December 31, 2019, the Jones investment had a fair value of \$2,900,000, and Stewart calculated that \$125,000 of the difference between amortized cost and fair value is a credit loss and \$475,000 is a noncredit loss.

Stewart does not intend to sell any of these investments and does not believe it is more likely than not that it will have to sell any of the bond investments before fair value recovers.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate adjusting journal entries to account for fair value changes during 2018 and 2019, assuming that each investment is viewed as qualifying as an other-than-temporary (OTT) impairment as of December 31, 2018, and then is accounted for normally during 2019 (with no additional OTT impairment in 2019).

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Real World Case 12-1

Intel's investments

LO12-4

The following disclosure note appeared in the December 26, 2015, annual report of the **Intel Corporation**.

Note 5: Cash and Investments (partial)

Available-for-sale investments as of December 26, 2015, and December 27, 2014, were as follows:

(\$ in millions)	December 26, 2015				December 27, 2014			
	Adjusted Cost	Gross Unrealized Gains	Gross Unrealized Losses	Fair Value	Adjusted Cost	Gross Unrealized Gains	Gross Unrealized Losses	Fair Value
Asset-backed securities	\$ 5	\$ —	\$ (1)	\$ 4	\$ 8	\$ —	\$(2)	\$ 6
Corporate debt	4,164	3	(10)	4,157	2,040	13	(5)	2,048
Financial institution instruments	11,140	1	(2)	11,139	3,146	2	(1)	3,147
Government debt	748	—	(1)	747	741	—	(1)	740
Marketable equity securities	3,254	2,706	—	5,960	3,318	3,779	—	7,097
Total available-for-sale investments	\$19,311	\$2,710	\$(14)	\$22,007	\$9,253	\$3,794	\$(9)	\$13,038

Intel also indicates the following: "During 2015, we sold available-for-sale investments for proceeds of \$2.2 billion . . . The gross realized gains on sales of available-for-sale investments were \$133 million in 2015. Intel's Note 24 (Other Comprehensive Income) indicates unrealized holding losses of \$999 million during 2015, and a reclassification adjustment of \$93 for gains that had previously been included in OCI and recorded in the fair value adjustment but which were now being included in net income after being realized upon sale. Note: Intel's 2015 financial statements were issued prior to the effective date of *ASU 2016-01*, so Intel includes equity investments among its available-for-sale investments. That difference from current GAAP will not affect your answer to the case questions.

Required:

1. Draw a T-account that shows the change between the December 27, 2014, and December 26, 2015, balances for the fair value adjustment associated with Intel's AFS investments for 2015. By how much did the fair value adjustment change during 2015?
2. Prepare a journal entry that records any unrealized holding gains and losses that occurred during 2015. Ignore income taxes.
3. Prepare a journal entry that records any reclassification adjustment for available-for-sale investments sold during 2015. Ignore income taxes.
4. Using your journal entries from requirements 2 and 3, adjust your T-account from requirement 1. Have you accounted for the entire change in the fair value adjustment that occurred during 2015? Speculate as to the cause of any difference.

Real World Case 12-2

Reporting securities available-for-sale; obtain and critically evaluate an annual report

● LO12-4

All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, to make the majority of their filings with the SEC. You can access EDGAR at www.sec.gov.

Required:

1. Locate a recent annual report of a public company that includes a footnote that describes an investment in securities available-for-sale. You can use EDGAR at www.sec.gov.
2. Under what caption are the investments reported in the comparative balance sheets? Are they reported as current or noncurrent assets?
3. Are realized gains or losses reported in the comparative income statements?
4. Are unrealized gains or losses reported in the comparative statements and shareholders' equity?
5. Are accumulated unrealized gains or losses identifiable in the comparative balance sheets? If so, under what caption? Why are unrealized gains or losses reported here rather in the income statement?
6. Are cash flow effects of these investments reflected in the company's comparative statements of cash flows? If so, what information is provided by this disclosure?

International Case 12-3

Comparison of equity method between IFRS and U.S. GAAP

● LO12-5, LO12-6, LO12-7, LO12-9

The following are excerpts from the 2015 financial statements of **Renault**, a large French automobile manufacturer.

14 – INVESTMENT IN NISSAN**A – Nissan consolidation method**

Renault's percentage interest in Nissan is 43.7% and Renault holds 43.4% of voting rights in Nissan. Renault and Nissan have chosen to develop a unique type of alliance between two distinct companies with common interests, uniting forces to achieve optimum performance. The Alliance is organized so as to preserve individual brand identities and respect each company's corporate culture.

Consequently:

- Renault is not assured of holding the majority of voting rights in Nissan's Shareholders' Meeting.
- The terms of the Renault-Nissan agreement do not entitle Renault to appoint the majority of Nissan directors, nor to hold the majority of voting rights at meetings of Nissan's Board of Directors; Renault cannot unilaterally appoint the President of Nissan; on December 31, 2015, Renault occupied two of the nine seats on Nissan's Board of Directors (unchanged since December 31, 2014).
- Renault-Nissan B.V., owned 50% by Renault and 50% by Nissan, is the Alliance's joint decision-making body for strategic issues concerning either group individually. Its decisions are applicable to both Renault and Nissan. This decision-making power was conferred on Renault-Nissan B.V. to generate synergies and bring both automakers worldwide economies of scale. This entity does not enable Renault to direct Nissan's financial and operating strategies, which are governed by Nissan's Board of Directors and cannot therefore be considered to represent contractual control by Renault over Nissan. The matters examined by Renault-Nissan B.V. since it was formed have remained strictly within this contractual framework, and are not an indication that Renault exercises control over Nissan.
- Renault can neither use nor influence the use of Nissan's assets in the same way as its own assets.
- Renault provides no guarantees in respect of Nissan's debt.

In view of this situation, Renault is considered to exercise significant influence over Nissan, and therefore uses the equity method to include its investment in Nissan in the consolidation.

Renault's Note D lists various restatements that Renault makes when accounting for its Nissan investment under the equity method. Some of those changes harmonize Nissan's accounting (under Japanese accounting standards). Others reflect adjustments to fair value of assets and liabilities applied by Renault at the time of acquisitions in 1999 and 2002.

Required:

1. Go to Deloitte's IAS Plus website and examine the summary of the IASB's *IAS No. 28* (<http://www.iasplus.com/standard/ias28.htm>), which governs application of the equity method. Focus on two areas: Identification of Associates and Applying the Equity Method of Accounting.



- Evaluate Renault's decision to use the equity method to account for its investment in Nissan. Does Renault have insignificant influence, significant influence, or control?
- Evaluate the fact that, when accounting for its investment in Nissan under the equity method, Renault makes adjustments that take into account the fair value of assets and liabilities at the time Renault invested in Nissan. Give an example of the sorts of adjustments that might be made. Are such adjustments consistent with IFRS? With U.S. GAAP? Explain.
- Evaluate the fact that, when accounting for its investment in Nissan under the equity method, Renault makes adjustments for harmonization of accounting standards. Are such adjustments consistent with IFRS? With U.S. GAAP? Explain.

International Case 12-4

Comparison of equity method and proportionate consolidation under IFRS

● LO12-6, LO12-9



IFRS

Obtain the 2015 annual report of FCA Group (www.fcagroup.com), which manufactures Fiat-brand automobiles as well as other products.

Required:

Find FCA's discussion of "Interests in other companies" in the "Significant Accounting Policies" note that follows the financial statements. Is FCA accounting for its equity investments in a way that is consistent with U.S. GAAP? Explain.

Research Case 12-5

Researching the way investments are reported; retrieving information from the Internet

● LO12-2, LO12-3, LO12-4, LO12-5, LO12-6

All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, to make the majority of their filings with the SEC. You can access EDGAR at www.sec.gov.

Required:

- Search for a public company with which you are familiar. Access its most recent 10-K filing. Search or scroll to find financial statements and related notes.
- Answer the following questions. (If the chosen company does not report investments in the securities of other companies, choose another company.)
 - What is the amount and classification of any investment securities reported in the balance sheet? Are unrealized gains or losses reported in the shareholders' equity section?
 - Are any investments reported by the equity method?
 - What amounts from these investments are reported in the comparative income statements? Has that income increased or decreased over the years reported?
 - Are any acquisitions or disposals of investments reported in the statement of cash flows?

Real World Case 12-6

Merck's investments

● LO12-4, LO12-5, LO12-6

Corporations frequently invest in securities issued by other corporations. Some investments are acquired to secure a favorable business relationship with another company. On the other hand, others are intended only to earn an investment return from the dividends or interest the securities pay or from increases in the market prices of the securities—the same motivations that might cause you to invest in stocks, bonds, or other securities. This diversity in investment objectives means no single accounting method is adequate to report every investment.

Merck & Co., Inc., invests in securities of other companies. Access Merck's 2015 10-K (which includes financial statements) using EDGAR at www.sec.gov. Note: Merck's 2015 financial statements were issued prior to the effective date of *ASU 2016-01*, so do not be surprised by the fact that Merck includes equity investments among its available-for-sale investments.

Required:

- What is the amount and classification of any investment securities reported on the balance sheet? In which current and noncurrent asset categories are investments reported by Merck? What criteria are used to determine the classifications?
- How are unrealized gains or losses reported? Realized gains and losses?
- Are any investments reported by the equity method?
- What amounts from equity method investments are reported in the comparative income statements?
- Are cash flow effects of these investments reflected in the company's comparative statements of cash flows? If so, what information is provided by this disclosure?

Real World Case 12-7

Comprehensive income—Microsoft

● LO12-4

Microsoft's 2015 10-K includes the following information in Note 20—Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income relevant to its available-for-sale investments:

(\$ in millions)	Year Ended June 30,		
	2015	2014	2013
Investments			
Accumulated other comprehensive income balance, beginning of period	\$3,531	\$1,794	\$1,431
Unrealized gains, net of tax effects of \$59, \$1,067 and \$244	110	2,053	453
Reclassification adjustments for gains included in other income (expense), net	(728)	(447)	(139)
Tax expense included in provision for income taxes	256	131	49
Amounts reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive income	(472)	(316)	(90)
Net current period other comprehensive income (loss)	(362)	1,737	363
Accumulated other comprehensive income balance, end of period	\$3,169	\$3,531	\$1,794

Required:

1. Prepare a journal entry to record unrealized gains for 2015. (*Hint:* \$110 is net tax effects, so you will need to add back tax effects to show the amount of unrealized gain gross taxes.)
2. Prepare a journal entry to record Microsoft's reclassification adjustment for 2015.

Trueblood Accounting Case 12-8

Impairments
(Appendix 12B)

- LO12-4

The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion Material, can be obtained from the Deloitte Foundation at its website: www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases.

Case: 14-9: O.T.T. Incorporated

This case gives students an opportunity to discuss accounting for other-than-temporary impairments.

Research Case 12-9

Changes in accounting for other-than-temporary impairments
(Appendix 12B)

- LO12-2,
LO12-4, LO12-8

In Appendix 12B, you learned that accounting for other-than-temporary impairments has changed recently. You also learned that these changes were controversial. In fact, two of the five members of the FASB voted against the changes and provided an explanation for their position when the standard that defined the changes was issued. That information isn't included in the FASB's Accounting Standards Codification, but you can find it in the original standard, "Recognition and Presentation of Other-Than-Temporary Impairments," FASB Staff Position (FSP) No. 115-2 and 124-2 (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, April 9, 2009), which is available under the "Reference Library" and "Superseded Standards" link at www.fasb.org.

Required:

Access the FSP, turn to page 17, and read why FASB members Linsmeier and Siegel dissented. What were their major concerns with the new approach for accounting for OTT impairments? Do you find those concerns compelling?

Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO12-4, LO12-6

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available Connect. This material also is available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com). Target does not have investments in stock or bonds. However, **CVS Health Corp.**, which purchased Target's pharmacy and clinical business during 2015, does have some investments. Access CVS's 2015 10K (issued on February 9, 2016) at investors.cvshealth.com to answer the following questions,

Required:

1. CVS indicates in Note 1 that it has some short-term investments that consist of certificates of deposit (CDs).
 - a. How has CVS classified those CDs for accounting purposes?
 - b. Per CVS's balance sheet, what was the balance in CVS's short-term investments as of December 31, 2015 and December 31, 2014?
 - c. Per CVS's statement of cash flows, what cash transactions affected short-term investments during 2015?
 - d. Prepare a T-account that summarizes transactions affecting CVS's short-term investments during 2015. Speculate as to the explanation for any "plug" figure necessary to make the T-account balance.

2. Per Note 1, CVS has equity-method investments in SureScripts, LLC and in Heartland Healthcare Services. CVS indicates that those investments are immaterial for the year ended December 31, 2015. Assuming that the Heartland investment is material,
 - a. How would Heartland's earnings affect CVS's income statement?
 - b. How would Heartland's earnings affect CVS's balance sheet?

Air France–KLM Case



Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. Read Notes 24 and 36.4. Focusing on investments accounted for at fair value through profit and loss (FVTPL):
 - a. As of December 31, 2015, what is the total balance of those investments in the balance sheet?
 - b. How much of that balance is classified as current and how much as noncurrent?
 - c. How much of the fair value of those investments is accounted for using level 1, level 2, and level 3 inputs of the fair value hierarchy? Given that information, assess the reliability (representational faithfulness) of this fair value estimate.
2. Complete Requirement 1 again, but for investments accounted for as available for sale.
3. Read Notes 4.3 and 22.
 - a. When AF can exercise significant influence over an investee, what accounting approach does it use to account for the investment? How does AF determine if it can exercise significant influence?
 - b. If AF is involved in a joint venture, what accounting approach does it use to account for the investment?
 - c. What is the carrying value of AF's equity-method investments in its December 31, 2015 balance sheet?
 - d. How did AF's equity-method investments affect AF's 2015 net income from continuing operations?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

13

Current Liabilities and Contingencies

OVERVIEW

Chapter 13 is the first of five chapters devoted to liabilities. In Part A of this chapter, we discuss liabilities that are classified appropriately as current. In Part B we turn our attention to situations in which there is uncertainty as to whether an obligation really exists. These are designated as loss contingencies. Some loss contingencies are accrued as liabilities, but others only are disclosed in the notes.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO13-1** Define liabilities and distinguish between current and long-term liabilities. (p. 716)
- **LO13-2** Account for the issuance and payment of various forms of notes and record the interest on the notes. (p. 718)
- **LO13-3** Characterize accrued liabilities and liabilities from advance collection and describe when and how they should be recorded. (p. 721)
- **LO13-4** Determine when a liability can be classified as a noncurrent obligation. (p. 727)
- **LO13-5** Identify situations that constitute contingencies and the circumstances under which they should be accrued. (p. 730)
- **LO13-6** Demonstrate the appropriate accounting treatment for contingencies, including unasserted claims and assessments. (p. 731)
- **LO13-7** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to current liabilities and contingencies. (pp. 729, 739, and 740)



© Rob Daly / age fotostock

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Debbie's Dad

"My dad is confused," your friend Debbie Hirst proclaimed at the office one morning. "You see, we're competing against each other in that investment game I told you about, and one of his hot investments is Syntel Microsystems. When he got their annual report yesterday afternoon, he started analyzing it, you know, really studying it closely. Then he asked me about this part here." Debbie pointed to the current liability section of the balance sheet and related disclosure note:

SYNTEL MICROSYSTEMS, INC.

Balance Sheet

December 31, 2018 and 2017

(\$ in millions)

Current Liabilities	2018	2017
Accounts payable	\$233.5	\$241.6
Short-term borrowings (Note 3)	187.0	176.8
Accrued liabilities	65.3	117.2
Accrued loss contingency	76.9	—
Other current liabilities	34.6	45.2
Current portion of long-term debt	44.1	40.3
Total current liabilities	\$641.4	\$621.1

Note 3: Short-Term Borrowings (in part)

The components of short-term borrowings and their respective weighted average interest rates at the end of the period are as follows:

(\$ in millions)	2018		2017	
	Amount	Average Interest Rate	Amount	Average Interest Rate
Commercial paper	\$ 34.0	5.2%	\$ 27.1	5.3%
Bank loans	218.0	5.5	227.7	5.6
Amount reclassified to long-term liabilities	(65.0)	—	(78.0)	—
Total short-term borrowings	\$187.0		\$176.8	

The Company maintains bank credit lines sufficient to cover outstanding short-term borrowings. As of December 31, 2018, the Company had \$200.0 million fee-paid lines available. At December 31, 2018 and 2017, the Company classified \$65.0 million and \$78.0 million, respectively, of commercial paper and bank notes as long-term debt. The Company has the intent and ability, through formal renewal agreements, to renew these obligations into future periods.

Note 6: Contingencies (in part)

Between 2016 and 2017, the Company manufactured cable leads that, the Company has learned, contribute to corrosion of linked components with which they are installed. At December 31, 2018, the Company accrued \$132.0 million in anticipation of remediation and claims settlement deemed probable, of which \$76.9 million is considered a current liability.

"So, what's the problem?" you asked.

"Well, he thinks I'm some sort of financial wizard because I'm in business."

"And because you tell him so all the time," you interrupted.

(continued)

(continued)

“Maybe so, but he’s been told that current liabilities are riskier than long-term liabilities, and now he’s focusing on that. He can’t see why some long-term debt is reported here in the current section. And it also looks like some is reported the other way around; some current liabilities reported as long term. Plus, the contingency amount seems like it’s not even a contractual liability. Then he wants to know what some of those terms mean. Lucky for me, I had to leave before I had to admit I didn’t know the answers. You’re the accounting graduate; help me out.”

QUESTIONS

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. What are accrued liabilities? What is commercial paper? (p. 721)
2. Why did Syntel Microsystems include some long-term debt in the current liability section? (p. 727)
3. Did they also report some current amounts as long-term debt? Explain. (p. 728)
4. Must obligations be known contractual debts in order to be reported as liabilities? (p. 731)
5. Is it true that current liabilities are riskier than long-term liabilities? (p. 742)

PART A

Liabilities and owners' equity accounts represent specific sources of a company's assets.

Most liabilities obligate the debtor to pay cash at specified times and result from legally enforceable agreements.

● LO13–1

Some liabilities are not contractual obligations and may not be payable in cash.

Current Liabilities

Before a business can invest in an asset it first must acquire the money to pay for it. This can happen in either of two ways—funds can be provided by owners or the funds must be borrowed. You may recognize this as a description of the basic accounting equation: $\text{Assets} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Owners' Equity}$. You studied assets in the chapters leading to this one and you will study owners' equity later. This chapter and the next four describe the various liabilities that constitute creditors' claims on a company's assets.

Characteristics of Liabilities

You already know what liabilities are. You encounter them every day. If you are paying for a car or a home with monthly payments, you have a personal liability. Similarly, when businesses issue notes and bonds, their creditors are the banks, individuals, and organizations that exchange cash for those securities. Each of these obligations represents the most common type of liability—one to be paid in cash and for which the amount and timing are specified by a legally enforceable contract.

However, to be reported as a **liability**, an obligation need not be payable in cash. Instead, it may require the company to transfer other assets or to provide services. A liability doesn't have to be represented by a written agreement nor be legally enforceable. Even the amount and timing of repayment need not be precisely known.

From a financial reporting perspective, a liability has three essential characteristics. Liabilities:

1. Are *probable, future* sacrifices of economic benefits.
2. Arise from *present* obligations (to transfer assets or provide services) to other entities.
3. Result from *past* transactions or events.¹

Notice that the definition of a liability involves the past, the present, and the future. It is a present responsibility to sacrifice assets in the future because of a transaction or other event that happened in the past.

¹“Elements of Financial Statements,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 6* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1985), par. 38.

What Is a Current Liability?

In a classified balance sheet, we categorize liabilities as either **current liabilities** or long-term liabilities. We often characterize current liabilities as obligations payable within one year or within the firm's operating cycle, whichever is longer. This general definition usually applies. However, a more discriminating definition identifies current liabilities as those expected to be satisfied with *current assets* or by the creation of other *current liabilities*.²

Classifying liabilities as either current or long term helps investors and creditors assess the risk that the liabilities will require expenditure of cash or other assets in the near term. Is the due date years in the future, permitting resources to be used for other purposes without risking default? Or, will payment require the use of current assets and reduce the amount of liquid funds available for other uses? If so, are sufficient liquid funds available to make necessary payments of liabilities in addition to meeting current operating needs, or must additional funds be obtained by raising capital? The answers to these questions can have significant implications. For example, a major factor contributing to the collapse of the financial giant **Bear Stearns** in 2008 was its reliance on short-term liabilities that it couldn't refinance when lenders, clients, and trading partners grew concerned about the quality of Bear's investments.³

Conceptually, liabilities should be recorded at their present values. In other words, the amount recorded is the present value of all anticipated future cash payments resulting from the debt (specifically, principal and interest payments).⁴ However, in practice, liabilities payable within one year ordinarily are recorded instead at their maturity amounts.⁵ This inconsistency usually is inconsequential because the relatively short-term maturity of current liabilities makes the interest or time value component immaterial.

The most common obligations reported as current liabilities are accounts payable, notes payable, commercial paper, income tax liability, dividends payable, and accrued liabilities. Liabilities related to income taxes are the subject of Chapter 16. We discuss the others here.

Before we examine specific current liabilities, let's use the current liability section of the balance sheet of **General Mills, Inc.**, and related disclosure notes to provide perspective on some of the liabilities we discuss (Illustration 13–1). General Mills' presentation and supplemental footnote disclosures are fairly typical.

We'll refer back to portions of Illustration 13–1 as corresponding liabilities are described later in the chapter.

Current liabilities are expected to require current assets and usually are payable within one year.

Classifying liabilities as either current or long term helps investors and creditors assess the relative risk of a business's liabilities.

Current liabilities ordinarily are reported at their maturity amounts.

Open Accounts and Notes

Many businesses buy merchandise or supplies on credit. Most also find it desirable to borrow cash from time to time to finance their activities. In this section we discuss the liabilities these borrowing activities create: trade accounts and trade notes, bank loans, and commercial paper.

Accounts Payable and Trade Notes Payable

Accounts payable are obligations to suppliers of merchandise or of services purchased on *open account*. Most trade credit is offered on open account. This means that the only formal credit instrument is the invoice. Because the time until payment usually is short (often 30, 45, or 60 days), these liabilities typically are noninterest-bearing and are reported at their face amounts. As shown in Illustration 13–1, General Mills' accounts payable in 2015 was \$1,684 million. The key accounting considerations relating to accounts payable are determining their existence and ensuring that they are recorded in the appropriate accounting period. You studied these issues and learned how cash discounts are handled during your study of inventories in Chapter 8.

Buying merchandise on account in the ordinary course of business creates accounts payable.

²FASB ASC Master Glossary (previously Committee on Accounting Procedure, American Institute of CPAs, *Accounting Research and Terminology Bulletin, Final Edition* (New York: AICPA, August 1961), p. 21).

³William D. Cohan, *House of Cards: A Tale of Hubris and Wretched Excess on Wall Street* (New York: Doubleday, 2009).

⁴The concepts of the time value of money and the mechanics of present value calculations are covered in Chapter 6.

⁵In fact, those arising in connection with suppliers in the normal course of business and due within a year are specifically exempted from present value reporting by FASB ASC 835–30–15–3: Interest–Imputation of Interest–Scope and Scope Exceptions (previously “Interest on Receivables and Payables,” *Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 21* (New York: AICPA, August 1971), par. 3).

Illustration 13-1

Current Liabilities—General Mills

Real World Financials

GENERAL MILLS, INC.
Excerpt from Consolidated Balance Sheets
May 31, 2015 and May 27, 2014

	Liabilities (\$ in millions)	
Current Liabilities	2015	2014
Accounts payable	\$1,684.0	\$1,611.3
Current portion of long-term debt	1,000.4	1,250.6
Notes payable	615.8	111.7
Other current liabilities	1,589.9	1,449.9
Total current liabilities	\$4,890.1	\$4,423.5

Note 8. Debt

Notes Payable The components of notes payable and their respective weighted-average interest rates at the end of the periods were as follows:

	2015		2014	
		Weighted Average		Weighted Average
Dollars in Millions:	Note Payable	Interest Rate	Note Payable	Interest Rate
U.S. commercial paper	\$432.0	0.3%	\$1,007.6	0.2%
Financial institutions	183.8	9.5	104.1	12.1
Total notes payable	\$615.8	3.0%	\$1,111.7	1.3%

To ensure availability of funds, we maintain bank credit lines sufficient to cover our outstanding notes payable. Commercial paper is a continuing source of short-term financing. We have commercial paper programs available to us in the United States and Europe. We also have uncommitted and asset-backed credit lines that support our foreign operations. The following table details the fee-paid committed and uncommitted credit lines we had available as of May 31, 2015:

Dollars in Billions:	Facility Amount	Borrowed Amount
Credit facility expiring:		
April 2017	\$1.7	\$ —
May 2019	1.0	—
June 2019	0.2	0.1
Total committed credit facilities	2.9	0.1
Uncommitted credit facilities	0.5	0.1
Total committed and uncommitted credit facilities	\$3.4	\$0.2

Trade notes payable differ from accounts payable in that they are formally recognized by a written promissory note. Often these are of a somewhat longer term than open accounts and bear interest.

Short-Term Notes Payable

• LO13-2

The most common way for a corporation to obtain temporary financing is to arrange a short-term bank loan. When a company borrows cash from a bank and signs a promissory note (essentially an IOU), the firm's liability is reported as *notes payable* (sometimes *bank loans* or *short-term borrowings*). About two-thirds of bank loans are short term, but because many are routinely renewed, some tend to resemble long-term debt. In fact, in some cases we report them as long-term debt (as you'll see later in the chapter).

Very often, smaller firms are unable to tap into the major sources of long-term financing to the extent necessary to provide for their working capital needs. So they must rely heavily on short-term financing. Even large companies typically utilize short-term debt as a significant and indispensable component of their capital structure. One reason is that short-term funds usually offer lower interest rates than long-term debt. Perhaps most importantly, corporations desire flexibility. Managers want as many financing alternatives as possible.

CREDIT LINES. Usually short-term bank loans are arranged under an existing **line of credit** with a bank or group of banks. A line of credit is an agreement to provide short-term financing, with amounts withdrawn by the borrower only when needed. Even though the loans are short-term, with amounts borrowed and repaid frequently, the agreement to provide a line of credit typically lasts several years. Lines of credit can be noncommitted or committed. A *noncommitted* line of credit is an informal agreement that permits a company to borrow up to a prearranged limit without having to follow formal loan procedures and paperwork. Banks sometimes require the company to maintain a compensating balance on deposit with the bank, say, 5% of the line of credit.⁶ A *committed* line of credit is a more formal agreement that usually requires the company to pay a commitment fee to the bank to keep a credit line amount available to the company. A typical annual commitment fee is $\frac{1}{4}\%$ of the total committed funds, and may also require a compensating balance. A recent annual report of **IBM Corporation** illustrates noncommitted lines of credit (Illustration 13–2).

A *line of credit* allows a company to borrow cash without having to follow formal loan procedures and paperwork.

Note J. Borrowings (in part)

LINES OF CREDIT: In 2015, the company extended the term of its five-year, \$10 billion Credit Agreement (the “Credit Agreement”) by one year to November 10, 2020. The total expense recorded by the company related to this global credit facility was \$5.3 million in 2015, \$5.4 million in 2014, and \$5.4 million in 2013. The Credit Agreement permits the company and its Subsidiary Borrowers to borrow up to \$10 billion on a revolving basis. Borrowings of the Subsidiary Borrowers will be unconditionally backed by the company. . . . As of December 31, 2015, there were no borrowings by the company, or its subsidiaries, under the Credit Agreement.

Illustration 13–2

Disclosure of Credit Lines—IBM Corporation

Real World Financials

General Mills’ disclosure notes that we looked at in Illustration 13–1 indicate that the company has both noncommitted and committed lines of credit.

INTEREST. When a company borrows money, it pays the lender **interest** in return for using the lender’s money during the term of the loan. You might think of the interest as the “rent” paid for using money. Interest is stated in terms of a percentage rate to be applied to the face amount of the loan, which makes this an interest-bearing note. Because the stated rate typically is an annual rate, when calculating interest for a short-term note we must adjust for the fraction of the annual period the loan spans. Interest on notes is calculated as:

$$\text{Face amount} \times \text{Annual rate} \times \text{Time to maturity}$$

This is demonstrated in Illustration 13–3.

On May 1, Affiliated Technologies, Inc., a consumer electronics firm, borrowed \$700,000 cash from First BancCorp under a noncommitted short-term line of credit arrangement and issued a **six-month**, 12% promissory note. Interest was payable at maturity.

May 1

Cash	700,000	
Notes payable		700,000

November 1

Interest expense ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{6}{12}$)	42,000	
Notes payable	700,000	
Cash ($\$700,000 + 42,000$)		742,000

Illustration 13–3

Note Issued for Cash

Sometimes a bank loan assumes the form of a so-called **noninterest-bearing note**. Obviously, though, no bank will lend money without interest. Noninterest-bearing loans actually do bear interest, but the interest is deducted (or discounted) from the face amount to

⁶A compensating balance is a deposit kept by a company in a low-interest or noninterest-bearing account at the bank. The required deposit usually is some percentage of the committed amount or the amount used (say, 2% to 5%). The effect of the compensating balance is to increase the borrower’s effective interest rate and the bank’s effective rate of return.

determine the cash proceeds made available to the borrower at the outset. For example, the preceding note could be packaged as a \$700,000 noninterest-bearing note, with a 12% discount rate.⁷ In that case, the \$42,000 interest would be discounted at the outset, rather than explicitly stated.⁸

The proceeds of the note are reduced by the interest in a noninterest-bearing note.

May 1		
Cash (difference)	658,000	
Discount on notes payable ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{6}{12}$)	42,000	
Notes payable (face amount)		700,000
November 1		
Interest expense	42,000	
Discount on notes payable		42,000
Notes payable (face amount)	700,000	
Cash		700,000

Notice that the amount borrowed under this arrangement is only \$658,000, but the interest is calculated as the discount rate times the \$700,000 face amount. This causes the *effective* interest rate to be higher than the 12% stated rate:

When interest is discounted from the face amount of a note, the effective interest rate is higher than the stated discount rate.

$$\frac{\$42,000 \text{ Interest for 6 months}}{\$658,000 \text{ Amount borrowed}} = 6.38\% \text{ Rate for 6 months}$$

To annualize:

$$6.38\% \times 12\% = 12.76\% \text{ Effective interest rate}$$

We studied short-term notes from the perspective of the lender (note receivable) in Chapter 7.

Inventory or accounts receivable often are pledged as security for short-term loans.

SECURED LOANS. Sometimes short-term loans are *secured*, meaning a specified asset of the borrower is pledged as collateral or security for the loan. Although many kinds of assets can be pledged, the secured loans most frequently encountered in practice are secured by inventory or accounts receivable. For example, **Smithfield Foods, Inc.**, disclosed the secured notes described in Illustration 13–4.

Illustration 13–4

Disclosure of Notes Secured by Inventory—Smithfield Foods, Inc.

Real World Financials

Note 7: Debt (in part)

Working Capital Facilities

The obligations under the Inventory Revolver Credit Agreement are guaranteed by substantially all of our subsidiary guarantors' personal property, including accounts receivable (other than those sold and financed pursuant to the Securitization Facility), inventory, cash and cash equivalents, deposit accounts, intercompany notes, intellectual property and certain capital stock and interests pledged by us and our subsidiary guarantors, and all proceeds thereof.

⁷Sometimes the terms *discount rate* and *effective interest rate* are used interchangeably, so don't be confused by the different use of the term *discount rate* with respect to noninterest-bearing notes. Here *discount rate* refers only to a rate that is multiplied by the face amount of the note (in Affiliated's case, \$700,000) to calculate how much interest is included in the note (in Affiliated's case, \$42,000). That discount rate is different from the *effective interest rate* that Affiliated pays on the outstanding payable balance, and that Affiliated would use to calculate the present value of future cash flows.

⁸Be sure to understand that we are actually recording the note at 658,000, *not* 700,000, but are recording the interest portion separately in a contra-liability account, *discount on notes payable*. The entries shown reflect the gross method. By the net method, the interest component is netted against the face amount of the note as follows:

May 1		
Cash	658,000	
Notes payable		658,000
November 1		
Interest expense ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{6}{12}$)	42,000	
Notes payable	658,000	
Cash		700,000

When accounts receivable serve as collateral, we refer to the arrangement as *pledging* accounts receivable. Sometimes, the receivables actually are sold outright to a finance company as a means of short-term financing. This is called *factoring* receivables.⁹

Commercial Paper

Some large corporations obtain temporary financing by issuing **commercial paper**, often purchased by other companies as a short-term investment. Commercial paper refers to unsecured notes sold in minimum denominations of \$25,000 with maturities ranging from 30 to 270 days (beyond 270 days the firm would be required to file a registration statement with the SEC). Interest often is discounted at the issuance of the note. Usually commercial paper is issued directly to the buyer (lender) and is backed by a line of credit with a bank. This allows the interest rate to be lower than in a bank loan. Commercial paper has become an increasingly popular way for large companies to raise funds, the total amount having expanded over fivefold in the last decade.

Illustration 13–5 includes a disclosure note from the 2015 annual report of **Comcast Corporation** that describes Comcast’s commercial paper program.

Note 9: (in part)

Commercial Paper Program

Our commercial paper programs provide a lower-cost source of borrowing to fund our short-term working capital requirements. . . . The maximum borrowing capacity under the Comcast commercial paper program is \$6.25 billion, and it is supported by the Comcast and Comcast Cable Communications, LLC \$6.25 billion revolving credit facility due June 2017 (“Comcast revolving credit facility”)

Large, highly rated firms sometimes sell *commercial paper* to borrow funds at a lower rate than through a bank loan.

Illustration 13–5

Disclosure of Commercial Paper—Comcast Corporation

Real World Financials

The name *commercial paper* refers to the fact that a paper certificate traditionally is issued to the lender to signify the obligation, although there is a trend toward total computerization so that no paper is created. Since commercial paper is a form of notes payable, recording its issuance and payment is exactly the same as our earlier illustration.

In a statement of cash flows, the cash a company receives from using short-term notes to borrow funds as well as the cash it uses to repay the notes are reported among cash flows from financing activities. Most of the other liabilities we study in this chapter, such as accounts payable, interest payable, and bonuses payable, are integrally related to a company’s primary operations and thus are part of operating activities. We discuss long-term notes in the next chapter.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 716

Accrued Liabilities

Accrued liabilities represent expenses already incurred but not yet paid (accrued expenses). These liabilities are recorded by adjusting entries at the end of the reporting period, prior to preparing financial statements. Common examples are salaries and wages payable, income taxes payable, and interest payable. Although recorded in separate liability accounts, accrued liabilities usually are combined and reported under a single caption or perhaps two accrued liability captions in the balance sheet. General Mills includes accrued liabilities in other current liabilities (totaling \$1,589.9 million as of May 31, 2015).

Accrued Interest Payable

Accrued interest payable arises in connection with notes payable (as well as other forms of debt). For example, to continue Illustration 13–3, let’s assume the fiscal period for Affiliated Technologies ends on June 30, two months after the six-month note is issued. The issuance of the note, intervening adjusting entry, and note payment would be recorded as shown in Illustration 13–6.

LO13–3

Liabilities accrue for expenses that are incurred but not yet paid.

⁹Both methods of accounts receivable financing are discussed in Chapter 7, “Cash and Receivables.”

Illustration 13-6

Note with Accrued Interest

Issuance of Note on May 1

Cash	700,000	
Note payable		700,000

Accrual of Interest on June 30

Interest expense ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{2}{12}$)	14,000	
Interest payable		14,000

Note Payment on November 1

Interest expense ($\$700,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{4}{12}$)	28,000	
Interest payable (from June 30 accrual)	14,000	
Note payable	700,000	
Cash ($\$700,000 + 42,000$)		742,000

At June 30, two months' interest has accrued and is recorded to avoid misstating expenses and liabilities on the June 30 financial statements.

Salaries, Commissions, and Bonuses

Compensation for employee services can be in the form of hourly wages, salary, commissions, bonuses, stock compensation plans, and pensions.¹⁰ Accrued liabilities arise in connection with compensation expense when employees have provided services but have not yet been paid as of a financial statement date. These accrued expenses/accrued liabilities are recorded by adjusting entries at the end of the reporting period, prior to preparing financial statements.

VACATIONS, SICK DAYS, AND OTHER PAID FUTURE ABSENCES. Suppose a firm grants two weeks of paid vacation each year to nonsalaried employees. Some employees take their vacations during the year in which the vacations are earned and are compensated then. Some wait. Should the firm recognize compensation expense during the year for only those employees who actually are paid that year for their absence? When you recall what you've learned about accrual accounting, you probably conclude otherwise.

An employer should accrue an expense and the related liability for employees' compensation for future absences (such as vacation pay) if the obligation meets *all* of the four conditions listed in Illustration 13-7.

Illustration 13-7

Conditions for Accrual of Paid Future Absences

1. The obligation is attributable to employees' services already performed.
2. The paid absence can be taken in a later year—the benefit vests (will be compensated even if employment is terminated) or the benefit can be accumulated over time.
3. Payment is probable.
4. The amount can be reasonably estimated.

If these conditions look familiar, it's because they are simply the characteristics of a liability we discussed earlier, adapted to relate to a potential obligation for future absences of employees. Also, these conditions are consistent with the requirement that we accrue loss contingencies only when the obligation is both (a) probable and (b) can be reasonably estimated, as discussed in Part B of this chapter.

The liability for paid absences usually is accrued at the existing wage rate rather than at a rate estimated to be in effect when absences occur.¹¹ So, if wage rates have risen, the difference between the accrual and the amount paid increases compensation expense that year. This situation is demonstrated in Illustration 13-8, in which vacation time carried over from 2018 is taken in 2019 and the actual amount paid to employees is \$5,700,000.

¹⁰We discuss pensions in Chapter 17 and share-based compensation plans in Chapter 19.

¹¹Actually, FASB ASC 710-10-25: Compensation—General—Overall—Recognition (previously SFAS 43, "Accounting for Compensated Absences") is silent on how the liability should be measured. In practice, most companies accrue at the current rate because it avoids estimates and usually produces a lower expense and liability. Then, later, they remeasure periodically at updated rates.

Davidson-Getty Chemicals has 8,000 employees. Each employee earns two weeks of paid vacation per year. Vacation time not taken in the year earned can be carried over to subsequent years. During 2018, 2,500 employees took both weeks' vacation, but at the end of the year, 5,500 employees had vacation time carryovers as follows:

Employees	Vacation Weeks Earned But Not Taken	Total Carryover Weeks
2,500	0	0
2,000	1	2,000
3,500	2	7,000
<u>8,000</u>		<u>9,000</u>

During 2018, compensation averaged \$600 a week per employee.

When Vacations Were Taken in 2018

Salaries and wages expense (2,500 × 2 weeks × \$600) +		
(2,000 × 1 week × \$600).....	4,200,000	
Cash (or wages payable).....		4,200,000

December 31, 2018 (adjusting entry)

Salaries and wages expense (9,000 carryover weeks × \$600).....	5,400,000	
Liability—compensated future absences.....		5,400,000

Illustration 13-8

Paid Future Absences

When the necessary conditions are met, compensated future absences are accrued in the year the compensation is earned.

Company policy and actual practice should be considered when deciding whether the rights to payment for absences have been earned by services already rendered. For example, scientists in a private laboratory are eligible for paid sabbaticals every seven years. Should a liability be accrued at the end of a scientist's sixth year? No—if sabbatical leave is granted only to perform research beneficial to the employer. Yes—if past practice indicates that sabbatical leave is intended to provide unrestricted compensated absence for past service and other conditions are met.

Customary practice should be considered when deciding whether an obligation exists.

When Year 2018 Vacations Are Taken in 2019

Liability—compensated future absences (account balance).....	5,400,000	
Salaries and wages expense (difference).....	300,000	
Cash (or salaries and wages payable) (given).....		5,700,000

Custom and practice also influence whether unused rights to paid absences expire or can be carried forward. Obviously, if rights vest (payable even if employment is terminated), they haven't expired. But holiday time, military leave, maternity leave, and jury time typically do not accumulate if unused, so a liability for those benefits usually is not accrued. On the other hand, if it's customary that a particular paid absence, say holiday time, can be carried forward—if employees work on holidays, in this case—a liability is accrued if it's probable that employees will be compensated in a future year.

Interestingly, sick pay quite often meets the conditions for accrual, but accrual is not mandatory because future absence depends on future illness, which usually is not a certainty. Similar to other forms of paid absences, the decision of whether to accrue nonvesting sick pay should be based on actual policy and practice. If company policy or custom is that employees are paid sick pay even when their absences are not due to illness, it's appropriate to record a liability for unused sick pay. For example, some companies routinely allow unused sick pay benefits to be accumulated and paid at retirement (or to beneficiaries if death comes before retirement). If each condition is met except that the company finds it impractical to reasonably estimate the amount of compensation for future absences, a disclosure note should describe the situation.

Accrual of sick pay is not required, but may be appropriate in some circumstances.

ANNUAL BONUSES. Sometimes compensation packages include annual bonuses tied to performance objectives designed to provide incentive to executives. The most common

Bonuses sometimes take the place of permanent annual raises.

performance measures are earnings per share, net income, and operating income, each being used by about a quarter of firms having bonus plans. Nonfinancial performance measures, such as customer satisfaction and product or service quality, also are used.¹² **Annual bonuses** also are popular, not just for executives, but for nonmanagerial personnel as well. Unfortunately for employees, bonuses often take the place of annual raises. This allows a company to increase employee pay without permanently locking in the increases in salaries. Bonuses are compensation expense of the period in which they are earned.

Liabilities from Advance Collections

Liabilities are created when amounts are received that will be returned or remitted to others. Deposits and advances from customers and collections for third parties are cases in point.

Deposits and Advances from Customers

Collecting cash from a customer as a refundable deposit or as an advance payment for products or services creates a liability to return the deposit or to supply the products or services.¹³

REFUNDABLE DEPOSITS. In some businesses it's typical to require customers to pay cash as a deposit that will be refunded when a specified event occurs. You probably have encountered such situations. When apartments are rented, security or damage deposits often are collected. Utility companies frequently collect deposits when service is begun. Similarly, deposits sometimes are required on returnable containers, to be refunded when the containers are returned. That situation is demonstrated in Illustration 13–9.

Illustration 13–9
Refundable Deposits

Rancor Chemical Company sells combustible chemicals in expensive, reusable containers. Customers are charged a deposit for each container delivered and receive a refund when the container is returned. Deposits collected on containers delivered during the year were \$300,000. Deposits are forfeited if containers are not returned within one year. Ninety percent of the containers were returned within the allotted time. Deposits charged are twice the actual cost of containers. The inventory of containers remains on the company's books until deposits are forfeited.

When Deposits Are Collected		
Cash.....	300,000	
Liability—refundable deposits.....		300,000
When Containers Are Returned*		
Liability—refundable deposits.....	270,000	
Cash.....		270,000
When Deposits Are Forfeited*		
Liability—refundable deposits.....	30,000	
Revenue—sale of containers		30,000
Cost of goods sold.....	15,000	
Inventory of containers.....		15,000

*Of course, not all containers are returned at the same time, nor does the allotted return period expire at the same time for all containers not returned. These entries summarize the several individual returns and forfeitures.

A customer advance produces an obligation that is satisfied when the product or service is provided.

ADVANCES FROM CUSTOMERS. At times, businesses require advance payments from customers that will be applied to the purchase price when goods are delivered or services provided. Gift certificates, magazine subscriptions, layaway deposits, special order deposits, and airline tickets are examples. These customer advances, also called *deferred revenue* or *unearned revenue*, represent liabilities until the related product or service is provided. For instance, the

¹²C. D. Ittner, D. F. Larcker, and M. V. Rajan, "The Choice of Performance Measures in Annual Bonus Contracts," *The Accounting Review*, vol. 72, No. 2 (April, 1997), pp. 231–255.
¹³*SFAC 6* specifically identifies customer advances and deposits as liabilities under the definition provided in that statement. "Elements of Financial Statements," *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 6* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1985), par. 197.

New York Times Company reports deferred revenue from unexpired subscriptions of over \$60 million in its 2015 balance sheet. Advances are demonstrated in Illustration 13–10.

Illustration 13–10
Customer Advance

Tomorrow Publications collects magazine subscriptions from customers at the time subscriptions are sold. Subscription revenue is recognized over the term of the subscription. Tomorrow collected \$20 million in subscription sales during its first year of operations. At December 31, the average subscription was one-fourth expired.

	(\$ in millions)	
When Advance Is Collected		
Cash	20	
Deferred subscriptions revenue		20
When Product Is Delivered		
Deferred subscriptions revenue.....	5	
Subscriptions revenue.....		5

This illustration highlights that deferred revenue gets reduced when the revenue associated with the advance has been recognized, either because the seller has delivered the goods or services as promised or because the buyer has forfeited the advance payment (for example, not redeeming a gift certificate before it expires). Less often, deferred revenue is reduced when an advance payment is returned by the seller to the buyer because the seller didn't deliver the goods or services as promised. This should sound familiar—recall from Chapter 5 that revenue recognition must be delayed until the seller has fulfilled its performance obligation. When revenue recognition is delayed, but some advanced payment is received, the seller reports a deferred revenue liability until delivery has occurred.

Additional Consideration

Accounting for Interest on Advances from Customers. Earlier in this chapter you saw that we calculate interest expense on “noninterest-bearing” notes. After all, there is a “time value of money,” and nobody is willing to loan money for free. The same reasoning suggests that companies should calculate interest expense when a customer pays far in advance of delivery of a product or service. As indicated in Chapter 5, that's what GAAP for revenue recognition requires.¹⁴

For example, assume that on January 1, 2018, Lewis Manufacturing Co. enters into a contract to deliver equipment to Williams Surgical Supply, Inc., on December 31, 2019. Williams pays \$907 (in thousands) to Lewis at the start of the contract (January 1, 2018). In this arrangement, Williams pays Lewis significantly in advance of delivery, so Williams can be viewed as loaning money to Lewis, and Lewis should recognize interest expense on the loan. Assuming an effective interest rate of 5%, Lewis would recognize interest expense on its deferred revenue liability as follows:

January 1, 2018

When prepayment occurs:

Cash	907*	
Deferred revenue		907

*\$907 = \$1000 × 0.90703 (present value of \$1, n = 2, i = 5%; from Table 2)

December 31, 2018

Accrual of year 1 interest expense:

Interest expense (\$907 × 5%)	45	
Accrued interest payable		45

(continued)

¹⁴FASB ASC 606-10-32-16: Revenue from Contracts with Customers – Overall – Measurement – The Existence of a Significant Financing Component in the Contract (previously “Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)” *Accounting Standards Update 2014-09* (Norwalk, Conn: FASB, 2014)).

(concluded)

December 31, 2019

When subsequent delivery occurs:

Interest expense $((\$907 + 45) \times 5\%)$	48	
Accrued interest payable.....	45	
Deferred revenue.....	907	
Revenue		1,000

Lewis recognizes revenue of \$1,000 rather than \$907 because that is the fair value it received from Williams, including the \$907 received up front and $\$45 + \$48 = \$93$ of interest that Williams is allowing Lewis to not pay. Put differently, the equipment must be worth \$1,000 for Williams to be willing to accept it in exchange for giving up \$907 cash and \$93 of interest it is owed by Lewis.

As discussed in Chapter 5, companies can ignore the interest component of advance payments if it is not significant, which is assumed to be the case if the period between payment and delivery is less than one year.

Gift Cards

Gift cards or gift certificates are particularly common forms of advanced payments. As indicated in Chapter 5, when a company sells a gift card, it initially records the cash received as deferred revenue, and then recognizes revenue either when the gift card is redeemed or when the probability of redemption is viewed as remote (called *gift card breakage*, and based on expiration or the company’s experience). The amounts involved can be significant. For example, **Best Buy**’s 2016 annual report lists a \$409 million liability for unredeemed gift cards and \$65 million of income from gift card breakage. Illustration 13–11 shows the journal entries used to account for gift cards.

Illustration 13–11
Accounting for Gift Cards

During May 2018, Great Buy, Inc., sold \$2 million of gift cards. Also during May, \$1.5 million of gift cards sold in May and in prior periods were redeemed by customers, and \$1 million of gift cards sold in prior periods expired and unused. Great Buy would make the following journal entries:

To record sale of gift cards		
Cash	2,000,000	
Deferred gift card revenue		2,000,000
To record redemption of gift cards (ignoring entries to inventory and cost of sales)		
Deferred gift card revenue	1,500,000	
Revenue—gift cards		1,500,000
To record expiration of gift cards		
Deferred gift card revenue	1,000,000	
Revenue—gift cards		1,000,000

Liabilities for deferred revenue are classified as current or long-term depending on when the obligation is expected to be satisfied.

Collections for Third Parties

Companies often make collections for third parties from customers or from employees and periodically remit these amounts to the appropriate governmental (or other) units. Amounts collected this way represent liabilities until remitted.

An example is sales taxes. For illustration, assume a state sales tax rate of 4% and local sales tax rate of 3%. Adding the tax to a \$100 sale creates a \$7 liability until the tax is paid:

Cash (or accounts receivable).....	107	
Sales revenue		100
Sales taxes payable $[(4\% + 3\%) \times \$100]$		7

Sales taxes collected from customers represent liabilities until remitted.

Additional Consideration

Escheatment laws specify the rights of a state to claim abandoned property. Unused gift cards are a type of abandoned (or unclaimed) property. While most states exempt gift cards from escheatment laws, some do not. In those states where gift cards are subject to escheatment laws, after a period of three to five years, retailers are required to turn over all or part of the unredeemed value of gift cards to the state. To see how this works, let's modify Illustration 13–11 and assume that Great Buy is subject to an escheatment law that requires payment of 100% of unredeemed gift cards to the state in which Great Buy is incorporated. The third journal entry of Illustration 13–11 would be modified as follows:

To record expiration of gift cards

Deferred gift card revenue (amount of expired gift cards).....	1,000,000	
Cash (to balance)		1,000,000

Payroll-related deductions such as withholding taxes, Social Security taxes, employee insurance, employee contributions to retirement plans, and union dues also create current liabilities until the amounts collected are paid to appropriate parties. These payroll-related liabilities are discussed further in the appendix to this chapter.

Amounts collected from employees in connection with payroll represent liabilities until remitted.

A Closer Look at the Current and Noncurrent Classification

Given a choice, do you suppose management would prefer to report an obligation as a current liability or as a noncurrent liability? Other things being equal, most would choose the noncurrent classification. The reason is that in most settings outsiders (like banks, bondholders, and shareholders) consider debt that is payable currently to be riskier than debt that need not be paid for some time, because the current payable requires the company to be able to access the necessary cash relatively soon. Also, the long-term classification enables the company to report higher working capital (current assets minus current liabilities) and a higher current ratio (current assets/current liabilities). Working capital and the current ratio often are explicitly restricted in loan contracts. As you study this section, you should view the classification choice from this perspective. That is, a manager might not so much ask the question “What amount should I report as a current liability?” but rather “What amount can I exclude from classification as a current liability?”

• LO13–4

Current Maturities of Long-Term Debt

Long-term obligations (bonds, notes, lease liabilities, deferred tax liabilities) usually are reclassified and reported as current liabilities when they become payable within the upcoming year (or operating cycle, if longer than a year). For example, a 20-year bond issue is reported as a long-term liability for 19 years but normally is reported as a current liability on the balance sheet prepared during the 20th year of its term to maturity.¹⁵ General Mills reported \$1,000.4 million of its long-term debt as a current liability in 2015 (see Illustration 13–1).

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 716

Obligations Callable by the Creditor

The requirement to classify currently maturing debt as a current liability includes debt that is *callable* (in other words, due on demand) *by the creditor* in the upcoming year (or operating cycle, if longer), even if the debt is not expected to be called. The current liability classification also is intended to include situations in which the creditor has the right to demand payment because an *existing violation* of a provision of the debt agreement makes it callable (say, working capital has fallen below a minimum covenant specified by a debt agreement). This also includes situations in which debt is not yet callable but will be callable within the

The currently maturing portion of a long-term debt must be reported as a current liability.

¹⁵Debt to be refinanced is an exception we discuss later.

year if an existing violation is not corrected within a specified grace period (unless it's probable the violation will be corrected within the grace period or waived by the creditor).¹⁶

When Short-Term Obligations Are Expected to Be Refinanced

Reconsider the 20-year bond issue we discussed earlier. Normally we would reclassify it as a current liability on the balance sheet prepared during its 20th year. But suppose a second 20-year bond issue is sold specifically to refund the first issue when it matures. Do we have a long-term liability for 19 years, then a current liability in year 20, and then another long-term liability in years 21 and beyond? Or, do we have a single 40-year, long-term liability? If we look beyond the outward form of the transactions, the substance of the events obviously supports a single, continuing, noncurrent obligation. The concept of substance over form influences the classification of obligations expected to be refinanced.

Short-term obligations (including the callable obligations we discussed in the previous section) that are expected to be refinanced on a long-term basis can be reported as noncurrent, rather than current, liabilities only if two conditions are met:

- (1) the firm must intend to refinance on a long-term basis, and
- (2) the firm must actually have demonstrated the ability to refinance on a long-term basis.

Ability to refinance on a long-term basis can be demonstrated by either an existing refinancing agreement or by actual financing prior to the issuance of the financial statements.¹⁷ Illustration 13–12 provides an example.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 716

Short-term obligations can be reported as noncurrent liabilities if the company (a) *intends to refinance on a long-term basis* and (b) *demonstrates the ability to do so by a refinancing agreement or by actual financing*.

Illustration 13–12

Short-Term Obligations that Are Expected to Be Refinanced on a Long-Term Basis

Brahm Bros. Ice Cream had \$12 million of notes that mature in May 2019 and also had \$4 million of bonds issued in 1989 that mature in February 2019. On December 31, 2018, the company's fiscal year-end, management intended to refinance both on a long-term basis.

On February 7, 2019, the company issued \$4 million of 20-year bonds, applying the proceeds to repay the bond issue that matured that month. In early March, prior to the actual issuance of the 2018 financial statements, Brahm Bros. negotiated a line of credit with a commercial bank for up to \$7 million any time during 2019. Any borrowings will mature two years from the date of borrowing. Interest is at the prime London interbank borrowing rate.*

December 31, 2018 (\$ in thousands)

Classification

Current Liabilities

Notes payable	\$5,000
---------------	---------

Long-Term Liabilities

Notes payable	\$7,000
Bonds payable	4,000

Management's ability to refinance the \$4 million of bonds on a long-term basis was demonstrated by actual financing prior to the issuance of the financial statements. Management's ability to refinance \$7 million of the \$12 million of notes was demonstrated by a refinancing agreement. The remaining \$5 million must be reported as a current liability.

*This is a widely available rate often used as a basis for establishing interest rates on lines of credit and often abbreviated as LIBOR.

If shares of stock had been issued to refinance the bonds in the illustration, the bonds still would be excluded from classification as a current liability. The specific form of the long-term refinancing (bonds, bank loans, equity securities) is irrelevant when determining the appropriate classification. Requiring companies to actually demonstrate the ability to refinance on a long-term basis in addition to merely intending to do so avoids intentional or unintentional understatements of current liabilities.

¹⁶FASB ASC 470–10–45: Debt–Overall–Other Presentation Matters (previously “Classification of Obligations That Are Callable by the Creditor,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 78* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1983)).

¹⁷FASB ASC 470–10–45–14: Debt–Overall–Other Presentation Matters (previously “Classification of Obligations Expected to Be Refinanced,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 6* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1975)).

It's important to remember that several weeks usually pass between the end of a company's fiscal year and the date the financial statements for that year actually are issued. Events occurring during that period can be used to clarify the nature of financial statement elements at the reporting date. Here we consider refinancing agreements and actual securities transactions to support a company's ability to refinance on a long-term basis. Later in the chapter we use information that becomes available during this period to decide how loss contingencies are reported.

International Financial Reporting Standards

Classification of Liabilities to be Refinanced. Under U.S. GAAP, liabilities payable within the coming year are classified as long-term liabilities if refinancing is completed before the date of issuance of the financial statements. Under IFRS, refinancing must be completed before the balance sheet date.¹⁸

• LO13–7

Concept Review Exercise

The following selected transactions relate to liabilities of Southern Communications, Inc., for portions of 2018 and 2019. Southern's fiscal year ends on December 31.

CURRENT LIABILITIES

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entries for these transactions.

2018

- July 1 Arranged an uncommitted short-term line of credit with First City Bank amounting to \$25,000,000 at the bank's prime rate (11.5% in July). The company will pay no commitment fees for this arrangement.
- Aug. 9 Received a \$30,000 refundable deposit from a major customer for copper-lined mailing containers used to transport communications equipment.
- Oct. 7 Received most of the mailing containers covered by the refundable deposit and a letter stating that the customer will retain containers represented by \$2,000 of the deposit and will forfeit that amount. The cost of the forfeited containers was \$1,500.
- Nov. 1 Borrowed \$7 million cash from First City Bank under the line of credit arranged in July and issued a nine-month promissory note. Interest at the prime rate of 12% was payable at maturity.
- Dec. 31 Recorded appropriate adjusting entries for the liabilities described above.

2019

- Feb. 12 Using the unused portion of the credit line as support, issued \$9 million of commercial paper and issued a six-month promissory note. Interest was discounted at issuance at a 10% discount rate.
- Aug. 1 Paid the 12% note at maturity.
- 12 Paid the commercial paper at maturity.

2018

July 1

No entry is made for a line of credit until a loan actually is made. The existence and terms of the line would be described in a disclosure note.

August 9

Cash.....	30,000	
Liability—refundable deposits.....		30,000

October 7

Liability—refundable deposits.....	30,000	
Cash.....		28,000
Revenue—sale of containers		2,000
Cost of goods sold.....	1,500	
Inventory of containers.....		1,500

¹⁸"Presentation of Financial Statements" *International Accounting Standard No. 1* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

November 1

Cash	7,000,000	
Notes payable		7,000,000

December 31

Interest expense ($\$7,000,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{2}{12}$)	140,000	
Interest payable		140,000

2019**February 12**

Cash [$\$9,000,000 - (\$9,000,000 \times 10\% \times \frac{6}{12})$]	8,550,000	
Discount on notes payable (difference)	450,000	
Note payable		9,000,000
Note that the effective interest rate is $[(\$9,000,000 \times 10\% \times \frac{6}{12}) \div \$8,550,000] \times \frac{12}{6} = \$450,000 \div \$8,550,000 \times 2 = 10.53\%$		

August 1

Interest expense ($\$7,000,000 \times 12\% \times \frac{7}{12}$)	490,000	
Interest payable (from adjusting entry)	140,000	
Note payable (face amount)	7,000,000	
Cash ($\$7,000,000 + \$630,000$)		7,630,000

August 12

Interest expense ($\$9,000,000 \times 10\% \times \frac{6}{12}$)	450,000	
Discount on notes payable		450,000
Note payable (face amount)	9,000,000	
Cash ($\$8,550,000 + \$450,000$)		9,000,000

PART B**Contingencies**

The feature that distinguishes the loss contingencies we discuss in this part of the chapter from the liabilities we discussed previously is uncertainty as to whether an obligation really exists. The circumstance giving rise to the contingency already has occurred, but there is uncertainty about whether a liability exists that will be resolved only when some future event occurs (or doesn't occur).

Loss Contingencies

• LO13-5

General Motors Company's 2015 financial statements indicate a variety of potential obligations, as shown in Illustration 13-13.

Illustration 13-13

Disclosure of Potential
Contingent Losses—
General Motors Company

Real World Financials**17. Commitments and Contingencies (in part)**

Various other legal actions, governmental investigations, claims and proceedings are pending against us including matters arising out of alleged product defects; employment-related matters; governmental regulations relating to safety, emissions and fuel economy; product warranties; financial services; dealer, supplier and other contractual relationships; tax-related matters not recorded pursuant to ASC 740, "Income Taxes" (indirect tax-related matters) and environmental matters.

These "legal actions, governmental investigations, claims and proceedings" all relate to situations that already have occurred. However, it isn't clear that these situations have given rise to liabilities, because GM doesn't know if it will have to make future payments. How likely is an unfavorable outcome, and how much will GM have to pay if an unfavorable outcome occurs?

A **loss contingency** is an existing, uncertain situation involving potential loss depending on whether some future event occurs. Whether a contingency is accrued and reported as a liability depends on (a) the likelihood that the confirming event will occur and (b) what

A **loss contingency** arises when there is uncertainty about whether a past event will result in a future loss. The uncertainty will be resolved only when some future event occurs.

can be determined about the amount of loss. For example, consider lawsuits filed against GM by customers who allege they suffered injuries as a result of faulty ignition switches in GM cars that were recalled in 2014. GM's note 17 discloses much information about such claims, including 121 class-action lawsuits and 235 personal-injury lawsuits filed against it, as of January 27, 2016. It may take several years for those lawsuits to be settled or litigated. When considering how to account for those lawsuits prior to their resolution, GM must assess the likelihood that it eventually will have to pay damages, and if so, what the amount of those damages will be.

Note that we only account for a loss contingency when the event that gave rise to it occurred before the financial statement date. Otherwise, regardless of the likelihood of the eventual outcome, no liability existed at the statement date. Remember, one of the essential characteristics of a liability is that it results from past transactions or events. In our GM example, GM previously sold the cars to customers, so the event giving rise to potential litigation losses has occurred. The uncertainty relates not to that past event, but to the potential litigation losses that could occur in the future.

Generally accepted accounting principles require that the likelihood that the future event(s) will confirm the incurrence of the liability be (somewhat arbitrarily) categorized as probable, reasonably possible, or remote:¹⁹

Probable	Confirming event is likely to occur.
Reasonably possible	The chance the confirming event will occur is more than remote but less than likely.
Remote	The chance the confirming event will occur is slight.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q4, p. 716

Also key to reporting a contingent liability is its dollar amount. The amount of the potential loss is classified as either known, reasonably estimable, or not reasonably estimable.

A liability is accrued if it is both probable that the confirming event will occur and the amount can be at least reasonably estimated. A general depiction of the accrual of a loss contingency is:

Loss (or expense)	X,XXX	
Liability		X,XXX

If one amount within a range of possible loss appears better than other amounts within the range, that amount is accrued. When no amount within the range appears more likely than others, the minimum amount should be recorded and the possible additional loss should be disclosed.²⁰

As an example, consider the following disclosure note from **Merck & Co.**'s 2015 financial statements (Illustration 13–14).

10. Contingencies and Environmental Liabilities (in part)

In management's opinion, the liabilities for all environmental matters that are probable and reasonably estimable have been accrued and totaled \$109 million and \$125 million at December 31, 2015 and 2014, respectively. Although it is not possible to predict with certainty the outcome of these matters, or the ultimate costs of remediation, management does not believe that any reasonably possible expenditures that may be incurred in excess of the liabilities accrued should exceed \$57 million in the aggregate.

Consistent with GAAP, Merck accrued and disclosed the \$109 million loss that is probable and reasonably estimable, and then only disclosed the \$57 million estimated range of reasonably possible losses above that amount.

LO13–6

Illustration 13–14

Accrual of a Loss
Contingency—Merck & Co.

Real World Financials

¹⁹Because FASB ASC 740–10–25: Income Taxes—Overall—Recognition (previously “Accounting for Uncertainty in Income Taxes,” *FASB Interpretation No. 48* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2006)) provides guidance on accounting for uncertainty in income taxes, FASB ASC 450–10: Contingencies—Loss Contingencies (previously *SFAS No. 5*) does not apply to income taxes. GAAP regarding uncertainty in income taxes changes the threshold for recognition of tax positions from the most probable amount to the amount that has a “more likely than not” chance of being sustained upon examination. We discuss accounting for uncertainty in income taxes in Chapter 16.

²⁰FASB ASC 450–20–30: Contingencies—Loss Contingencies—Initial Measurement (previously “Reasonable Estimation of the Amount of the Loss,” *FASB Interpretation No. 14* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1976)).

It is important to note that some contingent losses don't involve liabilities at all. Rather, these contingencies, when resolved, cause a noncash asset to be impaired, so accruing the contingency means reducing the related asset rather than recording a liability:

Loss (or expense)	X,XXX	
Asset (or valuation account).....		X,XXX

A loss contingency is disclosed in notes to the financial statements if there is at least a reasonable possibility that the loss will occur.

The most common loss contingency of this type is an uncollectible receivable. You have recorded these before without knowing you were accruing a loss contingency (*Debit*: bad debt expense; *Credit*: allowance for uncollectible accounts).²¹

Not all loss contingencies are accrued. If one or both criteria for accrual are not met, but there is at least a reasonable possibility that a loss will occur, a disclosure note should describe the contingency. It also should provide an estimate of the potential loss or range of loss, if possible. If an estimate cannot be made, a statement to that effect is needed.

As an example of only disclosing a contingent loss, consider a disclosure note accompanying a 2015 annual report of **U.S. Steel Corporation**. As shown in Illustration 13–15, U.S. Steel considered it to be impossible to estimate its potential environmental liability associated with previously sold properties and businesses, and so only disclosed that contingent loss.

Illustration 13–15

Disclosure of Loss Contingency—U.S. Steel

Real World Financials

Note 20: Contingencies and Commitments (in part)

Throughout its history, U. S. Steel has sold numerous properties and businesses and many of these sales included indemnifications and cost sharing agreements related to the assets that were divested. . . . The amount of potential environmental liability associated with these transactions and properties is not estimable due to the nature and extent of the unknown conditions related to the properties divested and deconsolidated.

Illustration 13–16 highlights the appropriate accounting treatment for each possible combination of (a) the likelihood of an obligation being confirmed and (b) the determinability of its dollar amount.

Illustration 13–16

Accounting Treatment of Loss Contingencies

Likelihood	Dollar Amount of Potential Loss		
	Known	Reasonably Estimable	Not Reasonably Estimable
Probable	Liability accrued and disclosure note	Liability accrued and disclosure note	Disclosure note only
Reasonably possible	Disclosure note only	Disclosure note only	Disclosure note only
Remote	No disclosure required*	No disclosure required*	No disclosure required*

*Except for certain guarantees and other specified off-balance-sheet risk situations discussed in the next chapter.

Product Warranties and Guarantees

Most consumer products are accompanied by a guarantee.

MANUFACTURER'S QUALITY-ASSURANCE WARRANTY. Satisfaction guaranteed! Your money back if not satisfied! If anything goes wrong in the first five years or 100,000 miles . . . ! Three-year guarantee! These and similar promises accompany most consumer goods. In Chapter 5 we called this sort of guarantee a *quality-assurance warranty*. When this type of warranty is included in a contract between a seller and a customer, it isn't a

²¹FASB ASC 310–10–35–7: Receivables—Overall—Subsequent Measurement—Losses from Uncollectible Receivables (previously “Accounting for Contingencies” SFAS No. 5, Norwalk, Conn: FASB 1975, par. 22).

separate performance obligation for the seller. Rather, it is a guarantee by the seller that the customer will be satisfied with the goods or services that the seller provided.

Why do sellers offer quality-assurance warranties? To boost sales. It follows, then, that any costs of making good on such guarantees should be estimated and recorded as expenses in the same accounting period the products are sold (matching expenses with revenues). Also, it is in the period of sale that the company becomes obligated to eventually make good on a guarantee, so it makes sense that it recognizes a liability in the period of sale. The challenge is that much of the cost of satisfying a guarantee usually occurs later, sometimes years later. So, this is a loss contingency. There may be a future sacrifice of economic benefits (cost of satisfying the guarantee) due to an existing circumstance (the guaranteed products have been sold) that depends on an uncertain future event (customer claim).

The criteria for accruing a contingent loss (rather than only disclosing it) almost always are met for product warranties (or product guarantees). While we usually can't predict the liability associated with an individual sale, reasonably accurate estimates of the *total* liability for a period usually are possible, because prior experience makes it possible to predict how many warranties or guarantees (on average) will need to be satisfied. Illustration 13–17 demonstrates accrual of the contingent liability for warranties in the reporting period in which the product under warranty is sold.

The costs of satisfying guarantees should be recorded as expenses in the same accounting period the products are sold.

The contingent liability for quality-assurance warranties almost always is accrued.

Illustration 13–17

Product Warranty

Caldor Health, a supplier of in-home health care products, introduced a new therapeutic chair carrying a two-year warranty against defects. Estimates based on industry experience indicate warranty costs of **3%** of sales during the first 12 months following the sale and **4%** the next 12 months. During December 2018, its first month of availability, Caldor sold \$2 million of chairs.

During December

Cash (and accounts receivable)	2,000,000	
Sales revenue		2,000,000

December 31, 2018 (adjusting entry)

Warranty expense [3% + 4% × \$2,000,000]	140,000	
Estimated warranty liability		140,000

When customer claims are made and costs are incurred to satisfy those claims, the liability is reduced (let's say \$61,000 in 2019):

Estimated warranty liability	61,000	
Cash, wages payable, parts and supplies, etc		61,000

Estimates of warranty costs cannot be expected to be precise. However, if the estimating method is monitored and revised when necessary, overestimates and underestimates should cancel each other over time. The estimated liability may be classified as current or as part current and part long-term, depending on when warranty claims are expected to be satisfied.

EXPECTED CASH FLOW APPROACH. In Chapter 6, you learned of a framework for using future cash flows as the basis for measuring assets and liabilities, introduced by the FASB in 2000 with *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 7*, “Using Cash Flow Information and Present Value in Accounting Measurements.”²² The approach described in the Concept Statement offers a way to take into account *any uncertainty concerning the amounts and timing of the cash flows*. Although future cash flows in many instances are contractual and certain, the amounts and timing of cash flows are less certain in other situations, such as warranty obligations.

As demonstrated in Illustration 13–17, the traditional way of measuring a warranty obligation is to report the “best estimate” of future cash flows, ignoring the time value of money on the basis of immateriality. However, when the warranty obligation spans more than one year and we can associate probabilities with possible cash flow outcomes, the approach

SFAC No. 7 provides a framework for using future cash flows in accounting measurements.

²²“Using Cash Flow Information and Present Value in Accounting Measurements,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 7* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2000). Recall that Concept Statements do not directly prescribe GAAP, but instead provide structure and direction to financial accounting.

described by *SFAC No. 7* offers a more plausible estimate of the warranty obligation. This “expected cash flow approach” incorporates specific probabilities of cash flows into the analysis. In Chapter 6, we discussed the expected cash flow approach to determining present value. Illustration 13–18 provides an example.

Illustration 13–18

Product Warranty

Probabilities are associated with possible cash outcomes.

The probability-weighted cash outcomes provide the expected cash flows.

The present value of the expected cash flows is the estimated liability.

Caldor Health, a supplier of in-home health care products, introduced a new therapeutic chair carrying a two-year warranty against defects. During December of 2018, its first month of availability, Caldor sold \$2 million of the chairs. Industry experience indicates the following probability distribution for the potential warranty costs:

Warranty Costs	Probability
2019	
\$50,000	20%
\$60,000	50%
\$70,000	30%
2020	
\$70,000	20%
\$80,000	50%
\$90,000	30%

An arrangement with a service firm requires that costs for the two-year warranty period be settled at the end of 2019 and 2020. The risk-free rate of interest is 5%. Applying the expected cash flow approach, at the end of the 2018 fiscal year, Caldor would record a warranty liability (and expense) of \$131,564, calculated as follows:

2019	{	$\$50,000 \times 20\% =$	\$10,000	
		$60,000 \times 50\% =$	30,000	
		$70,000 \times 30\% =$	21,000	
			<u>\$61,000</u>	
			$\times 0.95238^*$	\$ 58,095
2020	{	$\$70,000 \times 20\% =$	\$14,000	
		$80,000 \times 50\% =$	40,000	
		$90,000 \times 30\% =$	27,000	
			<u>\$81,000</u>	
			$\times 0.90703^+$	73,469
				<u>\$131,564</u>

*Present value of \$1, $n = 1$, $i = 5\%$ (from Table 2)

+Present value of \$1, $n = 2$, $i = 5\%$ (from Table 2)

December 31, 2018 (adjusting entry)

Warranty expense	131,564	
Estimated warranty liability (calculated above)		131,564

EXTENDED WARRANTY CONTRACTS. It’s difficult these days to buy a computer, a digital camera, a car, or almost any durable consumer product without being asked to buy an extended warranty agreement. An extended warranty provides warranty protection beyond the manufacturer’s original warranty. As discussed in Chapter 5, because an extended warranty is priced and sold separately from the warranted product, it constitutes a separate performance obligation. So, rather than only worrying about how to recognize the contingent liability associated with an extended warranty, we face another accounting question: When should the revenue from the sale of an extended warranty be recognized?

Revenue is recognized when performance obligations are satisfied, not necessarily when cash is received. Because an extended warranty provides coverage over a period of time, these arrangements typically qualify for revenue recognition over the period of coverage. However, cash typically is received up front, when the extended warranty is sold. Similar to other advanced payments for future products and services, revenue from extended warranty contracts is not recognized immediately, but instead is recorded as a

deferred revenue liability at the time of sale and recognized as revenue over the contract period, typically on a straight-line basis. We demonstrate accounting for extended warranties in Illustration 13–19.

Brand Name Appliances sells major appliances that carry a one-year manufacturer's warranty. Customers are offered the opportunity at the time of purchase to also buy a three-year extended warranty for an additional charge. On January 3, 2018, Brand Name sold a \$60 extended warranty, covering years 2019, 2020, and 2021.

January 3, 2018

Cash (or accounts receivable).....	60	
Deferred revenue—extended warranties.....		60

December 31, 2019, 2020, 2021 (adjusting entries)

Deferred revenue—extended warranties	20	
Revenue—extended warranties ($\$60 \div 3$).....		20

Illustration 13–19
Extended Warranty

The costs incurred to satisfy customer claims under the extended warranties also will be recorded during the same three-year period. That way, net income in each year of the extended warranty will reflect both the warranty revenue recognized and the costs associated with that revenue.

Additional Consideration

Accounting for Rebates, Premiums, and Coupons. Sometimes a company promotes its products in ways that obligate the company to do something in the future. For example, at the time of a sale, customers obtain cash register receipts, bar codes on the product, or other proofs of purchase that later can be mailed to the manufacturer for *cash rebates*. Also, customers sometimes can show proof of purchase to obtain noncash items (called *premiums*), like toys, small appliances, or dishes. Companies may also mail out *coupons*, which entice customers to buy a company's products and services at a discounted price at some point in the future. How should we account for the future obligations created by these promotions?

Until very recently, all of these promotions were viewed as creating a contingent liability. After all, they obligate the seller to transfer some uncertain amount of cash, goods, or services at a future date. However, with recent changes in accounting for revenue recognition, the accounting in this area has changed. Now we view promises to provide rebates and premiums to be part of agreements between sellers and customers. This means we account for them using the revenue recognition process we learned about in Chapter 5.

Cash rebates are an obligation to return cash in the future, so they represent a reduction in the net amount paid by the customer. To record these, we estimate the amount of cash rebates that customers will take and reduce revenue by the amount of that estimate in the period revenue is recognized. We also recognize a liability for the estimated rebate, similar to how we recognize a refundable deposit.

Premiums obligate a company to provide noncash items and are treated as separate performance obligations. We allocate a portion of the original sales price to the premiums (based on their relative stand-alone selling prices), record that amount as deferred revenue, and recognize that portion as revenue when premiums are delivered. No contingent liability is recognized because, as with extended warranties, we recognize the cost of premiums in the period in which we deliver them and recognize revenue.

Coupons that aren't offered as part of a sales contract aren't accounted for as part of revenue recognition. Instead, issuing coupons creates a contingent liability that is recognized in the period the coupons are issued. In practice, firms typically either (a) recognize the entire expense associated with estimated coupon redemptions in the period the coupons are issued, or (b) recognize no liability in the period the coupons are issued and instead record the expense when coupons are redeemed. The difference between these approaches typically is not viewed as material.

Litigation Claims

Pending litigation is not unusual. In fact, as you saw for **GM**, the majority of medium and large corporations annually report multiple loss contingencies due to litigation.

In practice, accrual of a loss from pending or ongoing litigation is rare. Can you guess why? Suppose you are chief financial officer of Feinz Foods. Feinz is the defendant in a \$44 million class-action suit. The company's legal counsel informally advises you that the chance the company will win the lawsuit is quite doubtful. Counsel feels the company might lose \$30 million. Now suppose you decide to accrue a \$30 million loss in your financial statements. Later, in the courtroom, your disclosure that Feinz management feels it is probable that the company will lose \$30 million would be welcome ammunition for the opposing legal counsel. Understanding this, most companies rely on the knowledge that in today's legal environment the outcome of litigation is highly uncertain, making likelihood predictions difficult.

Therefore, while companies may accrue estimated lawyer fees and other legal costs, they usually do not record a loss until after the ultimate settlement has been reached or negotiations for settlement are substantially completed. While companies should provide extensive disclosure of these contingent liabilities, they do not always do so in practice.²³ In 2010, the SEC began pressuring firms for more complete disclosure of litigation, including better descriptions of the range of losses that are reasonably possible to occur. As an example, Illustration 13–20 provides a few excerpts from the eight pages of litigation note appearing in **JP Morgan Chase & Company**'s 2015 annual report.

Illustration 13–20

Disclosure of Litigation Contingencies—JP Morgan Chase & Company

Real World Financials

Note 31: Litigation (in part)

As of December 31, 2015, the Firm and its subsidiaries are defendants or putative defendants in numerous legal proceedings, including private, civil litigations and regulatory/government investigations. . . . The Firm believes the estimate of the aggregate range of reasonably possible losses, in excess of reserves established, for its legal proceedings is from \$0 to approximately \$3.6 billion at December 31, 2015. This estimated aggregate range of reasonably possible losses is based upon currently available information for those proceedings in which the Firm believes that an estimate of reasonably possible loss can be made. For certain matters, the Firm does not believe that such an estimate can be made.

Even after a firm loses in court, it may not make an accrual. As you can see in Illustration 13–21, the **Las Vegas Sands Corporation**, in its 2015 annual report, disclosed but did not accrue damages from a lawsuit it lost, because the company was appealing the verdict.

Illustration 13–21

Disclosure of a Lawsuit—Las Vegas Sands Corporation

Real World Financials

Note 13: Commitments and Contingencies (in part): Litigation

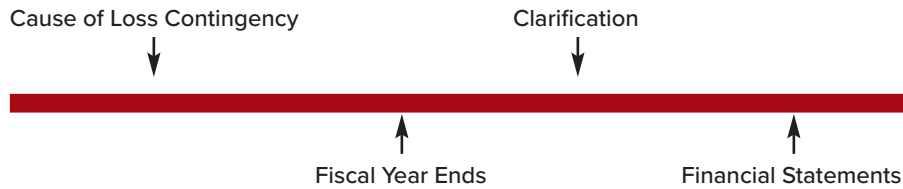
The Company believes that it has valid bases in law and fact to appeal these verdicts. As a result, the Company believes that the likelihood that the amount of the judgments will be affirmed is not probable, and, accordingly, that the amount of any loss cannot be reasonably estimated at this time. Because the Company believes that this potential loss is not probable or estimable, it has not recorded any reserves or contingencies related to this legal matter.

Subsequent Events

Several weeks usually pass between the end of a company's fiscal year and the date the financial statements for that year actually are issued or available to be issued.²⁴ As shown on the following time line, events occurring during this period can be used to clarify the nature of financial statement elements at the report date.

²³For research indicating incomplete disclosure of litigation-related contingent liabilities, see R. Desir, K. Fanning, and R. Pfeiffer, "Are Revisions to SFAS No. 5 Needed?" *Accounting Horizons* 24(4): December, 2010: 525–546.

²⁴Financial statements are viewed as *issued* if they have been widely distributed to financial statement users in a format consistent with GAAP. Some entities (for example, private companies) do not widely distribute their financial statements to users. For those entities, the key date for subsequent events is not the date of issuance but rather the date upon which the financial statements are *available to be issued*, which occurs when the financial statements are complete, in a format consistent with GAAP, and have obtained the necessary approvals for issuance. Entities must disclose the date through which subsequent events have been evaluated (FASB ASC 855: Subsequent Events (previously "Subsequent Events," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 165* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 2009)).



When the cause of a loss contingency occurs before the year-end, a clarifying event before financial statements are issued can be used to determine how the contingency is reported.

If information becomes available that sheds light on a claim that existed when the fiscal year ended, that information should be used in determining the probability of a loss contingency materializing and in estimating the amount of the loss.

The settlement of a lawsuit after **Starbucks'** September 29, 2013, fiscal year ended apparently influenced its accrual of a loss contingency (Illustration 13–22).

Note 15: Commitments and Contingencies (in part)

Legal Proceedings

On December 6, 2010, Kraft commenced a federal court action against Starbucks, entitled Kraft Foods Global, Inc. v. Starbucks Corporation, in the U.S. District Court for the Southern District of New York. On November 12, 2013, the arbitrator ordered Starbucks to pay Kraft \$2,227.5 million in damages plus prejudgment interest and attorney's fees. We have estimated prejudgment interest, which includes an accrual through the estimated payment date, and attorneys' fees to be approximately \$556.6 million. As a result, we recorded a litigation charge of \$2,784.1 million in our fiscal 2013 operating results.

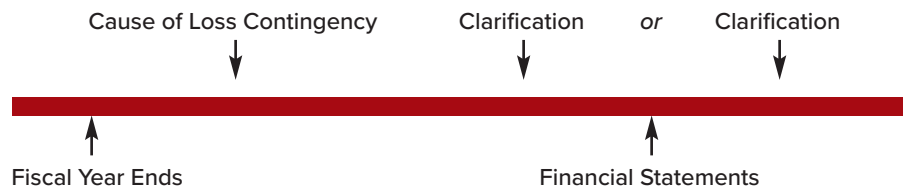
Illustration 13–22

Accrual of Litigation Contingencies—Starbucks

Real World Financials

For a loss contingency to be accrued, the cause of the lawsuit must have occurred before the accounting period ended. It's not necessary that the lawsuit actually was filed during that reporting period.

Sometimes, the cause of a loss contingency occurs after the end of the year but before the financial statements are issued:



If an event giving rise to a contingency occurs after the year-end, a liability should not be accrued.

When a contingency comes into existence after the company's fiscal year-end, a liability cannot be accrued because it didn't exist at the end of the year. However, if the failure to disclose the possible loss would cause the financial statements to be misleading, the situation should be described in a disclosure note, including the effect of the possible loss on key accounting numbers affected.²⁵

In fact, *any* event occurring after the fiscal year-end but before the financial statements are issued that has a material effect on the company's financial position must be disclosed in a subsequent events disclosure note. Examples are an issuance of debt or equity securities, a business combination, and discontinued operations.

A disclosure note from the **Coca-Cola Company's** 2015 annual report is shown in Illustration 13–23 and describes events that occurred in the first quarter of 2016.

Note 21: Subsequent events (in part)

In February 2016, additional territories in North America met the criteria to be classified as held for sale. Therefore, we are required to record the related assets and liabilities at the lower of carrying value or fair value less any costs to sell based on the estimated sale price, which will result in a noncash loss of \$296 million in 2016.

Illustration 13–23

Subsequent Events—Coca-Cola Company

Real World Financials

²⁵FASB ASC 450–20–50v9: Contingencies—Loss Contingencies—Disclosure (previously “Accounting for Contingencies,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1975), par. 11).

Additional Consideration

Contingent liabilities that a company takes on when it acquires another company may be treated differently from those that arise during the normal course of business. If the acquirer can determine the fair value of a contingent liability, the liability is measured at fair value. For example, the acquisition-date fair value of a warranty obligation often can be determined. If the acquirer cannot determine the fair value, then the acquirer uses the normal criteria that apply to contingent liabilities. That is, the contingent liability is accrued if (1) available information indicates that it is probable a liability has been incurred as of the acquisition date, and (2) the amount of the liability can be reasonably estimated. In periods subsequent to the acquisition, GAAP is vague about how the acquirer should account for these contingent liabilities, indicating that "An acquirer shall develop a systematic and rational basis for subsequently measuring and accounting for assets and liabilities arising from contingencies depending on their nature."²⁶ This lack of clear guidance suggests that there could be a lack of comparability between firms in how they account for acquired contingent liabilities.

It must be probable that an unasserted claim or assessment will be asserted before considering whether and how to report the possible loss.

Unasserted Claims and Assessments

Even if a claim has yet to be made when the financial statements are issued, a contingency may warrant accrual or disclosure. In this case, a two-step process is involved in deciding how the unasserted claim should be reported:

1. Is it probable that a claim will be asserted? If the answer to that question is "no," stop. No accrual or disclosure is necessary. If the answer is "yes," go on to step 2.
2. Treat the claim as if the claim has been asserted. That requires evaluating (a) the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome and (b) whether the dollar amount of loss can be estimated, just as we already have discussed for other loss contingencies for which a claim has already been asserted.

For example, suppose a trucking company frequently transports hazardous waste materials and is subject to environmental laws and regulations. Management has identified several sites at which it is or may be liable for remediation. For those sites for which no penalties have been asserted, management must assess the likelihood that a claim will be made, and if so, the likelihood that the company actually will be held liable. If management feels an assessment is probable, an estimated loss and contingent liability would be accrued only if an unfavorable outcome is probable and the amount can be reasonably estimated. However, a disclosure note alone would be appropriate if an unfavorable settlement is only reasonably possible or if the settlement is probable but cannot be reasonably estimated. No action is needed if chances of that outcome occurring are remote.

As described in a December 31, 2015, disclosure note (see Illustration 13–24), **Union Pacific** concluded that some unasserted claims met the criteria for accrual under this two-step decision process.

Illustration 13–24

Unasserted Claims—Union Pacific Corporation

Real World Financials

15. Commitments and Contingencies (in part)

Asserted and Unasserted Claims—Various claims and lawsuits are pending against us and certain of our subsidiaries. We cannot fully determine the effect of all asserted and unasserted claims on our consolidated results of operations, financial condition, or liquidity. To the extent possible, we have recorded a liability where asserted and unasserted claims are considered probable and where such claims can be reasonably estimated.

Notice that the treatment of contingent liabilities is consistent with the accepted definition of liabilities as (a) probable, future sacrifices of economic benefits (b) that arise from present obligations to other entities and (c) that result from past transactions or

²⁶FASB ASC 805-20-25: Business Combinations—Identifiable Assets and Liabilities, and Any Noncontrolling Interest—Recognition (previously "Accounting for Assets Acquired and Liabilities Assumed in a Business Combination that Arise from Contingencies," FASB Staff Position No. 141R-1 (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2009)).

events.²⁷ The inherent uncertainty involved with contingent liabilities means additional care is required to determine whether future sacrifices of economic benefits are probable and whether the amount of the sacrifices can be quantified.

International Financial Reporting Standards



Loss Contingencies. Accounting for contingencies is part of a broader international standard, *IAS No. 37, "Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets."* Overall, accounting for contingent losses under IFRS is quite similar to accounting under U.S. GAAP. A contingent loss is accrued if it's both probable and can be reasonably estimated, and disclosed if it's of at least a remote probability. However, there are some important differences:

- IFRS refers to accrued liabilities as "provisions," and refers to possible obligations that are not accrued as "contingent liabilities." The term "contingent liabilities" is used for all of these obligations in U.S. GAAP.
- IFRS requires disclosure (but not accrual) of two types of contingent liabilities: (1) possible obligations whose existence will be confirmed by some uncertain future events that the company does not control, and (2) a present obligation for which either it is not probable that a future outflow will occur or the amount of the future outflow cannot be measured with sufficient reliability. U.S. GAAP does not make this distinction but typically would require disclosure of the same contingencies.
- IFRS defines "probable" as "more likely than not" (greater than 50%), which is a lower threshold than typically associated with "probable" in U.S. GAAP.
- If a liability is accrued, IFRS measures the liability as the best estimate of the expenditure required to settle the present obligation. If there is a range of equally likely outcomes, IFRS would use the midpoint of the range, while U.S. GAAP requires use of the low end of the range.
- If the effect of the time value of money is material, IFRS requires the liability to be stated at present value. U.S. GAAP allows using present values under some circumstances, but liabilities for loss contingencies like litigation typically are not discounted for time value of money.²⁸
- IFRS recognizes provisions and contingencies for "onerous" contracts, defined as those in which the unavoidable costs of meeting the obligations exceed the expected benefits.²⁹ Under U.S. GAAP we generally don't disclose or recognize losses on such money-losing contracts, although there are some exceptions (for example, losses on long-term construction contracts are accrued, as are losses on contracts that have been terminated).

Here's a portion of a note from the 2015 financial statements of **Vodafone**, which reports under IFRS:

Note 17: Provisions (in part)

Provisions are recognised when the Group has a present obligation (legal or constructive) as a result of a past event, it is probable that the Group will be required to settle that obligation and a reliable estimate can be made of the amount of the obligation. Provisions are measured at the Directors' best estimate of the expenditure required to settle the obligation at the reporting date and are discounted to present value where the effect is material.

• LO13–7

Where We're Headed

The controversy over accounting for contingencies and the mixture of approaches is likely to continue. The FASB recently removed from its agenda a project to reconsider the recognition and measurement of contingent losses, and has postponed further work on a project intended to enhance note disclosures of contingent losses. The IASB has a project ongoing, but progress on this project has been slow as the IASB has focused on more pressing projects.

²⁷"Elements of Financial Statements," *Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 6* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1985).

²⁸See, for example, FASB ASC 410–30–35–12: Asset Retirements and Environmental Obligations—Environmental Obligations—Subsequent Measurement.

²⁹Paragraph 10 of "Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets", *International Accounting Standard 37* (London, UK: IASB, 2008).

Gain Contingencies

Gain contingencies are not accrued.

● LO13-7

A gain contingency is an uncertain situation that might result in a gain. For example, in a pending lawsuit, one side—the defendant—faces a loss contingency; the other side—the plaintiff—has a gain contingency. As we discussed earlier, loss contingencies are accrued when it's probable that an amount will be paid and the amount can reasonably be estimated. However, gain contingencies are not accrued. The nonparallel treatment of gain contingencies is an example of conservatism, following the reasoning that it's desirable to anticipate losses, but recognizing gains should await their realization.

Though gain contingencies are not recorded in the accounts, material ones are disclosed in notes to the financial statements. Care should be taken that the disclosure note not give “misleading implications as to the likelihood of realization.”³⁰



International Financial Reporting Standards

Gain Contingencies. Under U.S. GAAP, gain contingencies are never accrued. Under IFRS, gain contingencies are accrued if their future realization is “virtually certain” to occur. Both U.S. GAAP and IFRS *disclose* contingent gains when future realization is probable, but under IFRS “probable” is defined as “more likely than not” (greater than 50 percent), and so has a lower threshold than it does under U.S. GAAP.

Additional Consideration

Accounting for contingencies is controversial. Many accountants dislike the idea of only recognizing a liability for a contingent loss when it is probable, and then reporting the liability at the best estimate of the future expenditure. The obvious alternative is fair value, which does not incorporate probability into determining whether to *recognize* a loss but rather considers probability when *measuring* the amount of loss. Recent changes in GAAP have adopted fair value approaches for some types of events that are contingent losses (or appear to be close relatives). Consider the following examples:

- Illustration 13-18 uses a discounted expected cash flow approach to measure the contingent liability associated with a warranty. That approach approximates fair value.
- Recall from Chapter 10 that asset retirement obligations are recorded at fair value when an asset is acquired. The offsetting liability is similar to a contingent liability because it is an uncertain future amount arising from the past purchase of the asset but is recorded at fair value.
- Sometimes a company provides a guarantee that may require it to make payment to another party based on some future event. For example, a company might guarantee the debt of an affiliated company to make it easier for the affiliate to obtain financing. GAAP views this sort of guarantee as having two parts: (1) a certain “stand ready obligation” to meet the terms of the guarantee, and (2) the uncertain contingent obligation to make future payments depending on future events (for example, the affiliate defaulting on their debt). The “stand ready obligation” is recorded initially at fair value, while the contingent obligation is handled as an ordinary contingent loss.³¹

³⁰FASB ASC 450-30-50: Contingencies—Gain Contingencies—Disclosure (previously “Accounting For Contingencies,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1975), par. 17).

³¹FASB ASC 460-10-25: Guarantees—Overall—Recognition (previously “Guarantor’s Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others,” *FASB Interpretation No. 45* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 2002)).

Concept Review Exercise

CONTINGENCIES

Hanover Industries manufactures and sells food products and food processing machinery. While preparing the December 31, 2018, financial statements for Hanover, the following information was discovered relating to contingencies and possible adjustments to liabilities. Hanover's 2018 financial statements were issued on April 1, 2019.

- On November 12, 2018, a former employee filed a lawsuit against Hanover alleging age discrimination and asking for damages of \$750,000. At December 31, 2018, Hanover's attorney indicated that the likelihood of losing the lawsuit was possible but not probable. On March 5, 2019, Hanover agreed to pay the former employee \$125,000 in return for withdrawing the lawsuit.
- Hanover believes there is a possibility a service provider may claim that it has been undercharged for outsourcing a processing service based on verbal indications of the company's interpretation of a negotiated rate. The service provider has not yet made a claim for additional fees as of April 2019, but Hanover thinks it will. Hanover's accountants and legal counsel believe the charges were appropriate but that if an assessment is made, there is a reasonable possibility that subsequent court action would result in an additional tax liability of \$55,000.
- Hanover grants a two-year warranty for each processing machine sold. Past experience indicates that the costs of satisfying warranties are approximately 2% of sales. During 2018, sales of processing machines totaled \$21,300,000. 2018 expenditures for warranty repair costs were \$178,000 related to 2018 sales and \$220,000 related to 2017 sales. The January 1, 2018, balance of the warranty liability account was \$250,000.
- Hanover is the plaintiff in a \$600,000 lawsuit filed in 2017 against Ansdale Farms for failing to deliver on contracts for produce. The suit is in final appeal. Legal counsel advises that it is probable that Hanover will prevail and will be awarded \$300,000 (considered a material amount).

Required:

- Determine the appropriate reporting for each situation. Briefly explain your reasoning.
- Prepare any necessary journal entries and state whether a disclosure note is needed.

Solution:

- This is a loss contingency. Hanover can use the information occurring after the end of the year in determining appropriate disclosure. The cause for the suit existed at the end of the year. Hanover should accrue the \$125,000 loss because an agreement has been reached confirming the loss and the amount is known.

Loss—litigation	125,000	
Liability—litigation		125,000

A disclosure note also is appropriate.

- At the time financial statements are issued, a claim is as yet unasserted. However, an assessment is probable. Thus, (a) the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome and (b) whether the dollar amount can be estimated are considered. No accrual is necessary because an unfavorable outcome is not probable. But because an unfavorable outcome is reasonably possible, a disclosure note is appropriate.

Note: If the likelihood of a claim being asserted is not probable, disclosure is not required even if an unfavorable outcome is thought to be probable in the event of an assessment and the amount is estimable.

- The contingency for warranties should be accrued because it is probable that expenditures will be made and the amount can be estimated from past experience. When customer claims are made and costs are incurred to satisfy those claims the liability is reduced.

Warranty expense (2% × \$21,300,000).....	426,000	
Estimated warranty liability		426,000
Estimated warranty liability (\$178,000 + 220,000)	398,000	
Cash, wages payable, parts and supplies, etc		398,000

The liability at December 31, 2018, would be reported as \$278,000:

Warranty Liability (\$ in thousands)		
	250	Balance, Jan. 1
	426	2018 expense
2018 expenditures	398	
	278	Balance, Dec. 31

A disclosure note explaining the contingency also is appropriate.

- d. This is a gain contingency. Gain contingencies cannot be accrued even if the gain is probable and reasonably estimable. The gain should be recognized only when realized. It can be disclosed, but care should be taken to avoid misleading language regarding the realizability of the gain.

Decision Makers' Perspective

Current liabilities impact a company's liquidity. Liquidity refers to a company's cash position and overall ability to obtain cash in the normal course of business. A company is said to be liquid if it has sufficient cash (or other assets convertible to cash in a relatively short time) to pay currently maturing debts. Because the lack of liquidity can cause the demise of an otherwise healthy company, it is critical that managers as well as outside investors and creditors maintain close scrutiny of this aspect of a company's well-being.

Keeping track of the current ratio is one of the most common ways of doing this. The current ratio is intended as a measure of short-term solvency and is determined by dividing current assets by current liabilities.

When we compare liabilities that must be satisfied in the near term with assets that either are cash or will be converted to cash in the near term, we get a useful measure of a company's liquidity. A ratio of 1 to 1 or higher often is considered a rule-of-thumb standard, but like other ratios, acceptability should be evaluated in the context of the industry in which the company operates and other specific circumstances. Keep in mind, though, that industry averages are only one indication of adequacy and that the current ratio is but one indication of liquidity.

We can adjust for the implicit assumption of the current ratio that all current assets are equally liquid. The acid-test, or quick, ratio is similar to the current ratio but is based on a more conservative measure of assets available to pay current liabilities. Specifically, the numerator, quick assets, includes only cash and cash equivalents, short-term investments, and accounts receivable. By eliminating current assets such as inventories and prepaid expenses that are less readily convertible into cash, the acid-test ratio provides a more rigorous indication of a company's short-term solvency than does the current ratio.

If either of these liquidity ratios is less than that of the industry as a whole, does that mean that liquidity is a problem? Not necessarily. It does, though, raise a red flag that suggests caution when assessing other areas. It's important to remember that each ratio is but one piece of the puzzle. For example, profitability is probably the best long-run indication of liquidity. Also, management may be very efficient in managing current assets so that some current assets—receivables or inventory—are converted to cash more quickly than they otherwise would be and are more readily available to satisfy liabilities. The turnover ratios discussed in earlier chapters help measure the efficiency of asset management in this regard.

In fact, some companies view their accounts payable as a free loan from their suppliers, just as they view their accounts receivable as a free loan to their customers. These companies tend

A risk analyst should be concerned with a company's ability to meet its short-term obligations.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q5, p. 716

A manager should actively monitor a company's liquidity.

A liquidity ratio is but one indication of a company's liquidity.

Some companies maintain relatively high current liabilities as part of a cash-management strategy.

to pressure their customers to pay quickly, but try to obtain more extended terms with their suppliers. Although this would produce relatively low current assets and high current liabilities, and therefore a lower current ratio, it could be a very intelligent way to manage cash and decrease the overall amount of capital needed by the company to finance operations.

Given the actual and perceived importance of a company's liquidity in the minds of analysts, it's not difficult to adopt a management perspective and imagine efforts to manipulate the ratios that measure liquidity. For instance, a company might use its economic muscle or persuasive powers to influence the timing of accounts payable recognition by asking suppliers to change their delivery schedules. Because accounts payable is included in the denominator in most measures of liquidity, such as the current ratio, the timing of their recognition could mean the difference between an unacceptable ratio and an acceptable one, or between violating a debt covenant and compliance. For example, suppose a company with a current ratio of 1.25 (current assets of \$5 million and current liabilities of \$4 million) is in violation of a debt covenant requiring a minimum current ratio of 1.3. By delaying the delivery of \$1 million of inventory, the ratio would be 1.33 (current assets of \$4 million and current liability of \$3 million).

It is important for creditors and analysts to be attentive for evidence of activities that would indicate timing strategies, such as unusual variations in accounts payable levels. You might notice that such timing strategies are similar to earnings management techniques we discussed previously—specifically, manipulating the timing of revenue and expense recognition in order to “smooth” income over time.

Finally, all financial statement users need to keep in mind the relation between the recognition of deferred revenue associated with advance payments and the later recognition of revenue. On the one hand, increases in deferred revenue can signal future revenue recognition because the deferred revenue likely will eventually be recognized as revenue. On the other hand, research suggests that some firms that report deferred revenue may manipulate the timing of revenue recognition to manage their earnings.³²

In the next chapter, we continue our discussion of liabilities. Our focus will shift from current liabilities to long-term liabilities in the form of bonds and long-term notes. ●

Analysts should be alert for efforts to manipulate measures of liquidity.

Changes in deferred revenue provide information about future revenue, and may be used to manipulate it.

Financial Reporting Case Solution

- 1. What are accrued liabilities? What is commercial paper?** (p. 721) Accrued liabilities are reported for expenses already incurred but not yet paid (accrued expenses). These include salaries and wages payable, income taxes payable, and interest payable. Commercial paper is a form of notes payable sometimes used by large corporations to obtain temporary financing. It is sold to other companies as a short-term investment. It represents unsecured notes sold in minimum denominations of \$25,000 with maturities ranging from 30 to 270 days. Typically, commercial paper is issued directly to the buyer (lender) and is backed by a line of credit with a bank.
- 2. Why did Syntel Microsystems include some long-term debt in the current liability section?** (p. 727) Syntel Microsystems did include some long-term debt in the current liability section. The currently maturing portion of a long-term debt must be reported as a current liability. Amounts are reclassified and reported as current liabilities when they become payable within the upcoming year.
- 3. Did they also report some current amounts as long-term debt? Explain.** (p. 728) Yes they did. It is permissible to report short-term obligations as noncurrent liabilities if the company (a) intends to refinance on a long-term basis and (b) demonstrates the ability to do so by a refinancing agreement or by actual financing. As the disclosure note explains, this is the case for a portion of Syntel's currently payable debt.

(continued)



© Rob Daly / age fotostock

³²Marcus Caylor, “Strategic Revenue Recognition to Achieve Earnings Benchmarks,” *Journal of Accounting and Public Policy*, January-February 2010, pp. 82-95.

(concluded)

4. **Must obligations be known contractual debts in order to be reported as liabilities?** (p. 731) No. From an accounting perspective, it is not necessary that obligations be known, legally enforceable debts to be reported as liabilities. They must only be probable and the dollar amount reasonably estimable.
5. **Is it true that current liabilities are riskier than long-term liabilities?** (p. 742) Other things being equal, current liabilities generally are considered riskier than long-term liabilities. For that reason, management usually would rather report a debt as long term. Current debt, though, is not necessarily risky. The liquidity ratios we discussed in the chapter attempt to measure liquidity. Remember, any such measure must be assessed in the context of other factors: industry standards, profitability, turnover ratios, and risk management activities, to name a few. ●

The Bottom Line

- LO13-1 Liabilities are present obligations to sacrifice assets in the future because of something that already has occurred. Current liabilities are expected to require current assets (or the creation of other current liabilities) and usually are payable within one year. (p. 716)
- LO13-2 Short-term bank loans usually are arranged under an ongoing line of credit with a bank or group of banks. When interest is discounted from the face amount of a note (a type of noninterest-bearing note), the effective interest rate is higher than the stated discount rate. Large, highly rated firms sometimes sell commercial paper directly to the buyer (lender) to borrow funds at a lower rate than through a bank loan. (p. 718)
- LO13-3 Accrued liabilities are recorded by adjusting entries for expenses already incurred, but for which cash has yet to be paid (accrued expenses). Familiar examples are salaries and wages payable, income taxes payable, and interest payable. (p. 721)
- LO13-4 Short-term obligations can be reported as noncurrent liabilities if the company (a) intends to refinance on a long-term basis and (b) demonstrates the ability to do so by actual financing or a formal agreement to do so. (p. 727)
- LO13-5 A loss contingency is an existing, uncertain situation involving potential loss depending on whether some future event occurs. Whether a contingency is accrued and reported as a liability depends on (a) the likelihood that the confirming event will occur and (b) what can be determined about the amount of loss. It is accrued if it is both probable that the confirming event will occur and the amount can be at least reasonably estimated. (p. 730)
- LO13-6 A clarifying event before financial statements are issued, but after the year-end, can be used to determine how a contingency is reported. An unasserted suit, claim, or assessment warrants accrual or disclosure if it is probable it will be asserted. A gain contingency is a contingency that might result in a gain. A gain contingency is not recognized until it actually is realized. (p. 731)
- LO13-7 IFRS and U.S. GAAP are relatively similar with respect to current liabilities and contingencies. Relatively minor differences relate to when financing must be in place for a liability expected to be refinanced to be classified as long term. Also, with respect to contingent losses, IFRS defines “probable” at a lower threshold, requires the accrual of the expected value of loss, and requires the use of present values when measuring amounts to be accrued. Contingent gains are not accrued under U.S. GAAP, but are accrued under IFRS when they are considered to be virtually certain to occur. (pp. 729, 739, and 740) ●

APPENDIX 13

Payroll-Related Liabilities

All firms incur liabilities in connection with their payrolls. These arise primarily from legal requirements to withhold taxes from employees' paychecks and from payroll taxes on the firms themselves. Some payroll-related liabilities result from voluntary payroll deductions of amounts payable to third parties.

Employees' Withholding Taxes

Employers are required by law to withhold federal (and sometimes state) income taxes and Social Security taxes from employees' paychecks and remit these to the Internal Revenue Service.

The amount withheld for federal income taxes is determined by a tax table furnished by the IRS and varies according to the amount earned and the number of exemptions claimed by the employee. Also, the Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA) requires employers to withhold a percentage of each employee's earnings up to a specified maximum. Both the percentage and the maximum are changed intermittently. As this text went to print, the deduction for Social Security was 6.2% of the first \$118,500 an employee earns, and this ceiling amount changes each year for cost-of-living adjustments. Additionally, a deduction for Medicare tax is 1.45% with no limit on the base amount. The employer also must pay an equal (matching) amount on behalf of the employee. Self-employed persons must pay both the employer and employee portions (12.4% for Social Security and 2.9% for Medicare).

Voluntary Deductions

Besides the required deductions for income taxes and Social Security taxes, employees often authorize their employers to deduct other amounts from their paychecks. These deductions might include union dues, contributions to savings or retirement plans, and insurance premiums. Amounts deducted this way represent liabilities until paid to the appropriate organizations.

Employers' Payroll Taxes

One payroll tax mentioned previously is the employer's matching amount of FICA taxes. The employer also must pay federal and state unemployment taxes on behalf of its employees. The Federal Unemployment Tax Act (FUTA) requires a tax of 6.0% of the first \$7,000 earned by each employee. This amount is reduced by a 5.4% (maximum) credit for contributions to state unemployment programs, so the net federal rate often is 0.6%.³³ In many states, the state rate is 5.4% but may be reduced if the employer maintains relatively low employee turnover.

Fringe Benefits

In addition to salaries and wages, withholding taxes, and payroll taxes, many companies provide employees a variety of fringe benefits. Most commonly, employers pay all or part of employees' insurance premiums and/or contributions to retirement income plans.

Representative payroll-related liabilities are presented in Illustration 13A-1.

As you study the illustration, you should note the similarity among all payroll-related liabilities. Amounts withheld from paychecks—voluntarily or involuntarily—are liabilities until turned over to appropriate third parties. Payroll taxes and expenses for fringe benefits are incurred as a result of services performed by employees and also are liabilities until paid to appropriate third parties.

Crescent Lighting and Fixtures' payroll for the second week in January was \$100,000. The following deductions, fringe benefits, and taxes apply:	
Federal income taxes to be withheld	\$20,000
State income taxes to be withheld	3,000
Medical insurance premiums (Blue Cross)—70% paid by employer	1,000
Employee contribution to voluntary retirement plan (Fidelity Investments)—contributions matched by employer	4,000
Union dues (Local No. 222)—paid by employees	100
Life insurance premiums (Prudential Life)—100% paid by employer	200
Social Security tax rate	6.2%
Medicare tax rate	1.45%
Federal unemployment tax rate (after state deduction)	0.60%
State unemployment tax rate	5.40%
(continued)	

Illustration 13A-1

Payroll-Related Liabilities

³³All states presently have unemployment tax programs.

Amounts withheld from paychecks represent liabilities until remitted to third parties.

The employer's share of FICA and unemployment taxes constitute the employer's payroll tax expense.

Fringe benefits are part of salaries and wages expense and represent liabilities until remitted to third parties.






(concluded)

Crescent's journal entries to record payroll:

Salaries and wages expense (total amount earned)	100,000	
Withholding taxes payable (federal income tax)		20,000
Withholding taxes payable (state income tax)		3,000
Social Security taxes payable (employees' portion, 6.2%)		6,200
Medicare taxes payable (employees' portion, 1.45%)		1,450
Payable to Blue Cross (employee's portion of insurance premiums—30%)		300
Payable to Fidelity Investments (employees' investment)		4,000
Payable to Local No. 222 (union dues)		100
Salaries and wages payable (net pay)		64,950
Payroll tax expense (total)	13,650	
Social Security taxes payable (employer's matching amount)		6,200
Medicare taxes payable (employer's matching amount)		1,450
FUTA payable (federal unemployment tax: 0.6%)		600
State unemployment tax payable (5.4%)		5,400
Salaries and wages expense (fringe benefits)	4,900	
Payable to Blue Cross (insurance premiums—70%)		700
Payable to Fidelity Investments (employer's matching amount)		4,000
Payable to Prudential life (insurance premiums)		200

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 13-1** What are the essential characteristics of liabilities for purposes of financial reporting?
- Q 13-2** What distinguishes current liabilities from long-term liabilities?
- Q 13-3** Bronson Distributors owes a supplier \$100,000 on open account. The amount is payable in three months. What is the theoretically correct way to measure the reportable amount for this liability? In practice, how will it likely be reported? Why?
- Q 13-4** Bank loans often are arranged under existing lines of credit. What is a line of credit? How does a noncommitted line of credit differ from a committed line?
- Q 13-5** Banks sometimes loan cash under noninterest-bearing notes. Is it true that banks lend money without interest?
- Q 13-6** How does commercial paper differ from a bank loan? Why is the interest rate often less for commercial paper?
- Q 13-7** Salaries of \$5,000 have been earned by employees by the end of the period but will not be paid to employees until the following period. How should the expense and related liability be recorded? Why?
- Q 13-8** Under what conditions should an employer accrue an expense and the related liability for employees' compensation for future absences? How do company custom and practice affect the accrual decision?
- Q 13-9** How are refundable deposits and customer advances similar? How do they differ?
- Q 13-10** How do companies account for gift cards?
- Q 13-11** Amounts collected for third parties represent liabilities until remitted. Provide several examples of this kind of collection.
- Q 13-12** When companies have debt that is not due to be paid for several years but that is callable (due on demand) by the creditor, do they classify the debt as current or as long-term?
- Q 13-13** Long-term obligations usually are reclassified and reported as current liabilities when they become payable within the upcoming year (or operating cycle, if longer than a year). So, a 25-year bond issue is reported as a long-term liability for 24 years but normally is reported as a current liability on the balance sheet prepared during the 25th year of its term to maturity. Name a situation in which this would not be the case.

-  **IFRS Q 13-14** How do IFRS and U.S. GAAP differ with respect to the classification of debt that is expected to be refinanced?
- Q 13-15** Define a loss contingency. Provide three examples.
- Q 13-16** List and briefly describe the three categories of likelihood that a future event(s) will confirm the incurrence of the liability for a loss contingency.
- Q 13-17** Under what circumstances should a loss contingency be accrued?
-  **IFRS Q 13-18** What is the difference between the use of the term *contingent liability* in U.S. GAAP and IFRS?
- Q 13-19** Suppose the analysis of a loss contingency indicates that an obligation is not probable. What accounting treatment, if any, is warranted?
- Q 13-20** Name two loss contingencies that almost always are accrued.
- Q 13-21** Distinguish between the accounting treatment of a manufacturer's warranty and an extended warranty. Why the difference?
- Q 13-22** At December 31, the end of the reporting period, the analysis of a loss contingency indicates that an obligation is only reasonably possible, though its dollar amount is readily estimable. During February, before the financial statements are issued, new information indicates the loss is probable. What accounting treatment is warranted?
- Q 13-23** After the end of the reporting period, a contingency comes into existence. Under what circumstances, if any, should the contingency be reported in the financial statements for the period ended?
-  **IFRS Q 13-24** How do U.S. GAAP and IFRS differ in their treatment of a range of equally likely losses?
-  **IFRS Q 13-25** How do U.S. GAAP and IFRS differ in their use of present values when measuring contingent liabilities?
- Q 13-26** Suppose the Environmental Protection Agency is in the process of investigating Ozone Ruination Limited for possible environmental damage but has not proposed a penalty as of December 31, 2017, the company's fiscal year-end. Describe the two-step process involved in deciding how this unasserted assessment should be reported.
- Q 13-27** You are the plaintiff in a lawsuit. Your legal counsel advises that your eventual victory is inevitable. "You will be awarded \$12 million," your attorney confidently asserts. Describe the appropriate accounting treatment.
-  **IFRS Q 13-28** Answer Q 13-27, but assume that you report under IFRS.

Brief Exercises



- BE 13-1**
Bank loan;
accrued interest
● LO13-2
On October 1, Eder Fabrication borrowed \$60 million and issued a nine-month, 12% promissory note. Interest was payable at maturity. Prepare the journal entry for the issuance of the note and the appropriate adjusting entry for the note at December 31, the end of the reporting period.
- BE 13-2**
Non-interest-
bearing note;
accrued interest
● LO13-2
On October 1, Eder Fabrication borrowed \$60 million and issued a nine-month promissory note. Interest was discounted at issuance at a 12% discount rate. Prepare the journal entry for the issuance of the note and the appropriate adjusting entry for the note at December 31, the end of the reporting period.
- BE 13-3**
Determining
accrued interest
● LO13-2
On July 1, Orcas Lab issued a \$100,000, 12%, eight-month note. Interest is payable at maturity. What is the amount of interest expense that should be recorded in a year-end adjusting entry if the fiscal year-end is (a) December 31? (b) September 30?
- BE 13-4**
Commercial
paper
● LO13-2
Branch Corporation issued \$12 million of commercial paper on March 1 on a nine-month note. Interest was discounted at issuance at a 9% discount rate. Prepare the journal entry for the issuance of the commercial paper and its repayment at maturity.
- BE 13-5**
Non-interest-
bearing note;
effective interest
rate
● LO13-2
Life.com issued \$10 million of commercial paper on April 1 on a nine-month note. Interest was discounted at issuance at a 6% discount rate. What is the effective interest rate on the commercial paper?
- BE 13-6**
Advance
collection
● LO13-3
On December 12, 2018, Pace Electronics received \$24,000 from a customer toward a cash sale of \$240,000 of diodes to be completed on January 16, 2019. What journal entries should Pace record on December 12 and January 16?

BE 13-7

Advance collection

● LO13-3

In Lizzie Shoes' experience, gift cards that have not been redeemed within 12 months are not likely to be redeemed. Lizzie Shoes sold gift cards for \$18,000 during August 2018, \$4,000 of cards were redeemed in September 2018, \$3,000 in October, \$2,500 in November, and \$2,000 in December 2018. In 2019 an additional \$1,000 of cards were redeemed in January and \$500 in February. How much gift card revenue associated with the August 2018 gift card sales would Lizzie get to recognize in 2018 and 2019?

BE 13-8

Sales tax

● LO13-3

During December, Rainey Equipment made a \$600,000 credit sale. The state sales tax rate is 6% and the local sales tax rate is 1.5%. Prepare the appropriate journal entry.

BE 13-9

Classifying debt

● LO13-4

Consider the following liabilities of Future Brands, Inc., at December 31, 2018, the company's fiscal year-end. Should they be reported as current liabilities or long-term liabilities?

1. \$77 million of 8% notes are due on May 31, 2022. The notes are callable by the company's bank, beginning March 1, 2019.
2. \$102 million of 8% notes are due on May 31, 2023. A debt covenant requires Future to maintain a current ratio (ratio of current assets to current liabilities) of at least 2 to 1. Future is in violation of this requirement but has obtained a waiver from the bank until May 2019, since both companies feel Future will correct the situation during the first half of 2019.

BE 13-10

Refinancing debt

● LO13-4

Coulson Company is in the process of refinancing some long-term debt. Its fiscal year ends on December 31, 2018, and its financial statements will be issued on March 15, 2019. Under current U.S. GAAP, how would the debt be classified if the refinancing is completed on December 15, 2016? What if instead it is completed on January 15, 2019?

BE 13-11

Refinancing debt

● LO13-4, LO13-7

Fleener Company is in the process of refinancing some long-term debt. Its fiscal year ends on December 31, 2016, and its financial statements will be issued on March 15, 2019. Under current IFRS, how would the debt be classified if the refinancing is completed on December 15, 2016? What if instead it is completed on January 15, 2019?

**IFRS****BE 13-12**

Warranties

● LO13-5, LO13-6

Right Medical introduced a new implant that carries a five-year warranty against manufacturer's defects. Based on industry experience with similar product introductions, warranty costs are expected to approximate 1% of sales. Sales were \$15 million and actual warranty expenditures were \$20,000 for the first year of selling the product. What amount (if any) should Right report as a liability at the end of the year?

BE 13-13

Product recall

● LO13-5, LO13-6

Consultants notified management of Goo Goo Baby Products that a crib toy poses a potential health hazard. Counsel indicated that a product recall is probable and is estimated to cost the company \$5.5 million. How will this affect the company's income statement and balance sheet this period?

BE 13-14

Contingency

● LO13-5, LO13-6

Skill Hardware is the plaintiff in a \$16 million lawsuit filed against a supplier. The litigation is in final appeal and legal counsel advises that it is virtually certain that Skill will win the lawsuit and be awarded \$12 million. How should Skill account for this event?

BE 13-15

Contingency

● LO13-5, LO13-6

Bell International can estimate the amount of loss that will occur if a foreign government expropriates some company property. Expropriation is considered reasonably possible. How should Bell report the loss contingency?

BE 13-16

Contingencies

● LO13-5, LO13-6

Household Solutions manufactures kitchen storage products. During the year, the company became aware of potential costs due to (1) a recently filed lawsuit for patent infringement for which the probability of loss is remote and damages can be reasonably estimated, (2) another recently filed lawsuit for food contamination by the plastics used in Household Solutions' products for which a loss is probable but the amount of loss cannot be reasonably estimated, and (3) a new product warranty that is probable and can be reasonably estimated. Which, if any, of these costs should be accrued?

BE 13-17

Contingencies

● LO13-5, LO13-6, LO13-7

Quandary Corporation has a major customer who is alleging a significant product defect. Quandary engineers and attorneys have analyzed the claim and have concluded that there is a 51% chance that the customer would be successful in court and that a successful claim would result in a range of damages from \$10 million to \$20 million, with each part of the range equally likely to occur. The damages would need to be paid soon enough that time-value-of-money considerations are not material. Would a liability be accrued under U.S. GAAP? Under IFRS? If a liability were accrued, what amount would be accrued under U.S. GAAP? Under IFRS?

**IFRS****BE 13-18**

Unasserted assessment

● LO13-5, LO13-6

At March 13, 2019, the Securities Exchange Commission is in the process of investigating a possible securities law violation by Now Chemical. The SEC has not yet proposed a penalty assessment. Now's fiscal year ends on December 31, 2018, and its financial statements are published in March 2019. Management feels an assessment is *reasonably possible*, and if an assessment is made, an unfavorable settlement of \$13 million is *probable*. What, if any, action should Now take for its financial statements?

Exercises



E 13-1

Bank loan;
accrued interest

LO13-2

On November 1, 2018, Quantum Technology, a geothermal energy supplier, borrowed \$16 million cash to fund a geological survey. The loan was made by Nevada BancCorp under a noncommitted short-term line of credit arrangement. Quantum issued a nine-month, 12% promissory note. Interest was payable at maturity. Quantum's fiscal period is the calendar year.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry for the issuance of the note by Quantum Technology.
2. Prepare the appropriate adjusting entry for the note by Quantum on December 31, 2018.
3. Prepare the journal entry for the payment of the note at maturity.

E 13-2

Determining
accrued interest
in various
situations

LO13-2

On July 1, 2018, Ross-Livermore Industries issued nine-month notes in the amount of \$400 million. Interest is payable at maturity.

Required:

Determine the amount of interest expense that should be recorded in a year-end adjusting entry under each of the following independent assumptions:

	Interest Rate	Fiscal Year-End
1.	12%	December 31
2.	10%	September 30
3.	9%	October 31
4.	6%	January 31

E 13-3

Short-term notes

LO13-2

The following selected transactions relate to liabilities of United Insulation Corporation. United's fiscal year ends on December 31.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entries through the maturity of each liability.

2018

- Jan. 13 Negotiated a revolving credit agreement with Parish Bank that can be renewed annually upon bank approval. The amount available under the line of credit is \$20 million at the bank's prime rate.
- Feb. 1 Arranged a three-month bank loan of \$5 million with Parish Bank under the line of credit agreement. Interest at the prime rate of 10% was payable at maturity.
- May 1 Paid the 10% note at maturity.
- Dec. 1 Supported by the credit line, issued \$10 million of commercial paper on a nine-month note. Interest was discounted at issuance at a 9% discount rate.
- 31 Recorded any necessary adjusting entry(s).

2019

- Sept. 1 Paid the commercial paper at maturity.

E 13-4

Paid future
absences

LO13-3

JWS Transport Company's employees earn vacation time at the rate of 1 hour per 40-hour work period. The vacation pay vests immediately (that is, an employee is entitled to the pay even if employment terminates). During 2018, total wages paid to employees equaled \$404,000, including \$4,000 for vacations actually taken in 2018 but not including vacations related to 2018 that will be taken in 2019. All vacations earned before 2018 were taken before January 1, 2018. No accrual entries have been made for the vacations. No overtime premium and no bonuses were paid during the period.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate adjusting entry for vacations earned but not taken in 2018.

E 13-5

Paid future
absences

LO13-3

On January 1, 2018, Poplar Fabricators Corporation agreed to grant its employees two weeks of vacation each year, with the stipulation that vacations earned each year can be taken the following year. For the year ended December 31, 2018, Poplar Fabricators' employees each earned an average of \$900 per week. Seven hundred vacation weeks earned in 2018 were not taken during 2018.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate adjusting entry for vacations earned but not taken in 2018.
2. Suppose that, by the time vacations actually are taken in 2019, wage rates for employees have risen by an average of 5 percent from their 2018 level. Also, assume wages earned in 2019 (including vacations earned and taken in 2019) were \$31 million. Prepare a journal entry that summarizes 2019 wages and the payment for 2018 vacations taken in 2019.

E 13-6

Customer
advances; sales
taxes

● LO13-3

Bavarian Bar and Grill opened for business in November 2018. During its first two months of operation, the restaurant sold gift certificates in various amounts totaling \$5,200, mostly as Christmas presents. They are redeemable for meals within two years of the purchase date, although experience within the industry indicates that 80% of gift certificates are redeemed within one year. Certificates totaling \$1,300 were presented for redemption during 2018 for meals having a total price of \$2,100. The sales tax rate on restaurant sales is 4%, assessed at the time meals (not gift certificates) are purchased. Sales taxes will be remitted in January.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entries (in summary form) for the gift certificates sold during 2018 (keeping in mind that, in actuality, each sale of a gift certificate or a meal would be recorded individually).
2. Determine the liability for gift certificates to be reported on the December 31, 2018, balance sheet.
3. What is the appropriate classification (current or noncurrent) of the liabilities at December 31, 2018? Why?

E 13-7

Customer
deposits

● LO13-3

Diversified Semiconductors sells perishable electronic components. Some must be shipped and stored in reusable protective containers. Customers pay a deposit for each container received. The deposit is equal to the container's cost. They receive a refund when the container is returned. During 2018, deposits collected on containers shipped were \$850,000.

Deposits are forfeited if containers are not returned within 18 months. Containers held by customers at January 1, 2018, represented deposits of \$530,000. In 2018, \$790,000 was refunded and deposits forfeited were \$35,000.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entries for the deposits received and returned during 2018.
2. Determine the liability for refundable deposits to be reported on the December 31, 2018, balance sheet.

E 13-8

Various
transactions
involving advance
collections

● LO13-3

The following selected transactions relate to liabilities of Interstate Farm Implements for December 2018. Interstate's fiscal year ends on December 31.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entries for these transactions.

1. On December 15, received \$7,500 from Bradley Farms toward the purchase of a \$98,000 tractor to be delivered on January 6, 2019.
2. During December, received \$25,500 of refundable deposits relating to containers used to transport equipment parts.
3. During December, credit sales totaled \$800,000. The state sales tax rate is 5% and the local sales tax rate is 2%. (This is a summary journal entry for the many individual sales transactions for the period).

E 13-9

Gift cards

● LO13-3

CircuitTown commenced a gift card program in January 2018 and sold \$10,000 of gift cards in January, \$15,000 in February, and \$16,000 in March 2018 before discontinuing further gift card sales. During 2018, gift card redemptions were \$6,000 for the January gift cards sold, \$4,500 for the February cards, and \$4,000 for the March cards. CircuitTown considers gift cards to be "broken" (not redeemable) 10 months after sale.

Required:

1. How much revenue will CircuitTown recognize with respect to January gift card sales during 2018?
2. Prepare journal entries to record the sale of January gift cards, redemption of gift cards (ignore sales tax), and breakage (expiration) of gift cards.
3. How much revenue will CircuitTown recognize with respect to March gift card sales during 2018?
4. What liability for deferred revenue associated with gift card sales would CircuitTown show as of December 31, 2018?

E 13-10

FASB codification
research

● LO13-3,
LO13-4, LO13-5



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).

Required:

Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

1. If it is only reasonably possible that a contingent loss will occur, the contingent loss should be disclosed.
2. Criteria allowing short-term liabilities expected to be refinanced to be classified as long-term liabilities.
3. Accounting for the revenue from separately priced extended warranty contracts.
4. The criteria to determine if an employer must accrue a liability for vacation pay.

E 13-11

Current–
noncurrent
classification
of debt; Sprint
Corporation

● LO13-1, LO13-4

An annual report of **Sprint Corporation** contained a rather lengthy narrative entitled "Review of Segmental Results of Operation." The narrative noted that short-term notes payable and commercial paper outstanding at the end of the year aggregated \$756 million and that during the following year, "This entire balance will be replaced by the issuance of long-term debt or will continue to be refinanced under existing long-term credit facilities."

Required:

How did Sprint report the debt in its balance sheet? Why?

E 13-12

Current–
noncurrent
classification
of debt; Sprint
Corporation

- LO13-1,
LO13-4, LO13-7



IFRS

Consider the information presented in E 13-11.

Required:

- How would Sprint report the debt in its balance sheet if it reported under IFRS? Why?
- Would your answer to requirement 1 change if Sprint obtained its long-term credit facility after the balance sheet date? Why?

E 13-13

Current–
noncurrent
classification of
debt

- LO13-1, LO13-4

At December 31, 2018, Newman Engineering's liabilities include the following:

- \$10 million of 9% bonds were issued for \$10 million on May 31, 1999. The bonds mature on May 31, 2029, but bondholders have the option of calling (demanding payment on) the bonds on May 31, 2019. However, the option to call is not expected to be exercised, given prevailing market conditions.
- \$14 million of 8% notes are due on May 31, 2022. A debt covenant requires Newman to maintain current assets at least equal to 175% of its current liabilities. On December 31, 2018, Newman is in violation of this covenant. Newman obtained a waiver from National City Bank until June 2019, having convinced the bank that the company's normal 2 to 1 ratio of current assets to current liabilities will be reestablished during the first half of 2019.
- \$7 million of 11% bonds were issued for \$7 million on August 1, 1989. The bonds mature on July 31, 2019. Sufficient cash is expected to be available to retire the bonds at maturity.

Required:

What portion of the debt can be excluded from classification as a current liability (that is, reported as a noncurrent liability)? Explain.

E 13-14

FASB codification
research

- LO13-5



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).

Required:

- Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on recognition of contingent losses. What is the specific citation that describes the guidelines for determining when an expense and liability should be accrued for a contingent loss?
- List the guidelines.

E 13-15

Warranties

- LO13-5, LO13-6

Cupola Awning Corporation introduced a new line of commercial awnings in 2018 that carry a two-year warranty against manufacturer's defects. Based on their experience with previous product introductions, warranty costs are expected to approximate 3% of sales. Sales and actual warranty expenditures for the first year of selling the product were:

Sales	Actual Warranty Expenditures
\$5,000,000	\$37,500

Required:

- Does this situation represent a loss contingency? Why or why not? How should Cupola account for it?
- Prepare journal entries that summarize sales of the awnings (assume all credit sales) and any aspects of the warranty that should be recorded during 2018.
- What amount should Cupola report as a liability at December 31, 2018?

E 13-16

Extended
warranties

- LO13-5, LO13-6

Carnes Electronics sells consumer electronics that carry a 90-day manufacturer's warranty. At the time of purchase, customers are offered the opportunity to also buy a two-year extended warranty for an additional charge. During the year, Carnes received \$412,000 for these extended warranties (approximately evenly throughout the year).

Required:

- Does this situation represent a loss contingency? Why or why not? How should it be accounted for?
- Prepare journal entries that summarize sales of the extended warranties (assume all credit sales) and any aspects of the warranty that should be recorded during the year.

E 13-17

Contingency;
product recall

● LO13-5, LO13-6

Sound Audio manufactures and sells audio equipment for automobiles. Engineers notified management in December 2018 of a circuit flaw in an amplifier that poses a potential fire hazard. An intense investigation indicated that a product recall is virtually certain, estimated to cost the company \$2 million. The fiscal year ends on December 31.

Required:

1. Should this loss contingency be accrued, only disclosed, or neither? Explain.
2. What loss, if any, should Sound Audio report in its 2018 income statement?
3. What liability, if any, should Sound Audio report in its 2018 balance sheet?
4. Prepare any journal entry needed.

E 13-18

Impairment
of accounts
receivable

● LO13-5, LO13-6

The Manda Panda Company uses the allowance method to account for bad debts. At the beginning of 2018, the allowance account had a credit balance of \$75,000. Credit sales for 2018 totaled \$2,400,000 and the year-end accounts receivable balance was \$490,000. During this year, \$73,000 in receivables were determined to be uncollectible. Manda Panda anticipates that 3% of all credit sales will ultimately become uncollectible. The fiscal year ends on December 31.

Required:

1. Does this situation describe a loss contingency? Explain.
2. What is the bad debt expense that Manda Panda should report in its 2018 income statement?
3. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the contingency.
4. What is the net accounts receivable value Manda Panda should report in its 2018 balance sheet?

E 13-19

Unasserted
assessment

● LO13-6

At April 1, 2019, the Food and Drug Administration is in the process of investigating allegations of false marketing claims by Hulkly Muscle Supplements. The FDA has not yet proposed a penalty assessment. Hulkly's fiscal year ends on December 31, 2018. The company's financial statements are issued in April 2019.

Required:

For each of the following scenarios, determine the appropriate way to report the situation. Explain your reasoning and prepare any necessary journal entry.

1. Management feels an assessment is *reasonably possible*, and if an assessment is made, an unfavorable settlement of \$13 million is *reasonably possible*.
2. Management feels an assessment is *reasonably possible*, and if an assessment is made, an unfavorable settlement of \$13 million is *probable*.
3. Management feels an assessment is *probable*, and if an assessment is made, an unfavorable settlement of \$13 million is *reasonably possible*.
4. Management feels an assessment is *probable*, and if an assessment is made, an unfavorable settlement of \$13 million is *probable*.

E 13-20

Various
transactions
involving
contingencies

● LO13-5, LO13-6

The following selected transactions relate to contingencies of Classical Tool Makers, Inc., which began operations in July 2018. Classical's fiscal year ends on December 31. Financial statements are issued in April 2019.

Required:

Prepare the year-end entries for any amounts that should be recorded as a result of each of these contingencies and indicate whether a disclosure note is indicated.

1. Classical's products carry a one-year warranty against manufacturer's defects. Based on previous experience, warranty costs are expected to approximate 4% of sales. Sales were \$2 million (all credit) for 2018. Actual warranty expenditures were \$30,800 and were recorded as warranty expense when incurred.
2. Although no customer accounts have been shown to be uncollectible, Classical estimates that 2% of credit sales will eventually prove uncollectible.
3. In December 2018, the state of Tennessee filed suit against Classical, seeking penalties for violations of clean air laws. On January 23, 2019, Classical reached a settlement with state authorities to pay \$1.5 million in penalties.
4. Classical is the plaintiff in a \$4 million lawsuit filed against a supplier. The suit is in final appeal and attorneys advise that it is virtually certain that Classical will win the case and be awarded \$2.5 million.
5. In November 2018, Classical became aware of a design flaw in an industrial saw that poses a potential electrical hazard. A product recall appears unavoidable. Such an action would likely cost the company \$500,000.
6. Classical offered \$25 cash rebates on a new model of jigsaw. Customers must mail in a proof-of-purchase seal from the package plus the cash register receipt to receive the rebate. Experience suggests that 60% of the rebates will be claimed. Ten thousand of the jigsaws were sold in 2018. Total rebates to customers in 2018 were \$105,000 and were recorded as promotional expense when paid.

E 13-21

Various transactions involving contingencies

- LO13-5, LO13-6

The following selected circumstances relate to pending lawsuits for Erismus, Inc. Erismus's fiscal year ends on December 31. Financial statements are issued in March 2019. Erismus prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP.

Required:

Indicate the amount of asset or liability that Erismus would record, and explain your answer.

1. Erismus is defending against a lawsuit. Erismus's management believes the company has a slightly worse than 50/50 chance of eventually prevailing in court, and that if it loses, the judgment will be \$1,000,000.
2. Erismus is defending against a lawsuit. Erismus's management believes it is probable that the company will lose in court. If it loses, management believes that damages could fall anywhere in the range of \$2,000,000 to \$4,000,000, with any damage in that range equally likely.
3. Erismus is defending against a lawsuit. Erismus's management believes it is probable that the company will lose in court. If it loses, management believes that damages will eventually be \$5,000,000, with a present value of \$3,500,000.
4. Erismus is a plaintiff in a lawsuit. Erismus's management believes it is probable that the company eventually will prevail in court, and that if it prevails, the judgment will be \$1,000,000.
5. Erismus is a plaintiff in a lawsuit. Erismus's management believes it is virtually certain that the company eventually will prevail in court, and that if it prevails, the judgment will be \$500,000.

E 13-22

Various transactions involving contingencies; IFRS

- LO13-5, LO13-6, LO13-7

**E 13-23**

Disclosures of liabilities

- LO13-1 through LO13-6

[This exercise is a variation of E 13-21 focusing on reporting under IFRS]. Refer to the circumstances listed in E 13-21, but assume that Erismus prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards.

Required:

For each circumstance, indicate the amount of asset or liability that Erismus would record, and explain your answer.

Indicate (by letter) the way each of the items listed below should be reported in a balance sheet at December 31, 2018.

Item	Reporting Method
____ 1. Commercial paper	N. Not reported
____ 2. Noncommitted line of credit	C. Current liability
____ 3. Customer advances	L. Long-term liability
____ 4. Estimated quality-assurance warranty cost	D. Disclosure note only
____ 5. Accounts payable	A. Asset
____ 6. Long-term bonds that will be callable by the creditor in the upcoming year unless an existing violation is not corrected (there is a reasonable possibility the violation will be corrected within the grace period)	
____ 7. Note due March 3, 2019	
____ 8. Interest accrued on note, December 31, 2018	
____ 9. Short-term bank loan to be paid with proceeds of sale of common stock	
____ 10. A determinable gain that is contingent on a future event that appears extremely likely to occur in three months	
____ 11. Unasserted assessment of back taxes that probably will be asserted, in which case there would probably be a loss in six months	
____ 12. Unasserted assessment of back taxes with a reasonable possibility of being asserted, in which case there would probably be a loss in 13 months	
____ 13. A determinable loss from a past event that is contingent on a future event that appears extremely likely to occur in three months	
____ 14. Note payable due April 4, 2021	
____ 15. Long-term bonds callable by the creditor in the upcoming year that are not expected to be called	

E 13-24

Warranty expense; change in estimate

- LO13-5, LO13-6

Woodmier Lawn Products introduced a new line of commercial sprinklers in 2017 that carry a one-year warranty against manufacturer's defects. Because this was the first product for which the company offered a warranty, trade publications were consulted to determine the experience of others in the industry. Based on that experience, warranty costs were expected to approximate 2% of sales. Sales of the sprinklers in 2017 were \$2.5 million. Accordingly, the following entries relating to the contingency for warranty costs were recorded during the first year of selling the product:

Accrued liability and expense		
Warranty expense (2% × \$2,500,000)	50,000	
Estimated warranty liability		50,000
Actual expenditures (summary entry)		
Estimated warranty liability	23,000	
Cash, wages payable, parts and supplies, etc		23,000

In late 2018, the company's claims experience was evaluated and it was determined that claims were far more than expected—3% of sales rather than 2%.

Required:

1. Assuming sales of the sprinklers in 2018 were \$3.6 million and warranty expenditures in 2018 totaled \$88,000, prepare any journal entries related to the warranty.
2. Assuming sales of the sprinklers were discontinued after 2017, prepare any journal entry(s) in 2018 related to the warranty.

E 13-25

Change in
accounting
estimate

● LO13-3

The Commonwealth of Virginia filed suit in October 2016 against Northern Timber Corporation, seeking civil penalties and injunctive relief for violations of environmental laws regulating forest conservation. When the 2017 financial statements were issued in 2018, Northern had not reached a settlement with state authorities, but legal counsel advised Northern Timber that it was probable the ultimate settlement would be \$1,000,000 in penalties. The following entry was recorded:

Loss—litigation	1,000,000	
Liability—litigation		1,000,000

Late in 2018, a settlement was reached with state authorities to pay a total of \$600,000 to cover the cost of violations.

Required:

1. Prepare any journal entries related to the change.
2. Briefly describe other steps Northern should take to report the change.

E 13-26

Contingency;
Dow Chemical
Company
disclosure

● LO13-5, LO13-6

The **Dow Chemical Company** provides chemical, plastic, and agricultural products and services to various consumer markets. The following excerpt is taken from the disclosure notes of Dow's 2015 annual report:

In total, the Company's accrued liability for probable environmental remediation and restoration costs was \$670 million at December 31, 2015, compared with \$706 million at the end of 2014. This is management's best estimate of the costs for remediation and restoration with respect to environmental matters for which the Company has accrued liabilities, although it is reasonably possible that the ultimate cost with respect to these particular matters could range up to approximately two and a half times that amount.

Real World Financials

Required:

Does the excerpt describe a loss contingency? Under what conditions would Dow accrue such a contingency? What journal entry would Dow use to record this amount of provision (loss)?

E 13-27

Payroll-related
liabilities

● Appendix

Lee Financial Services pays employees monthly. Payroll information is listed below for January 2018, the first month of Lee's fiscal year. Assume that none of the employees exceeded any relevant wage base.

Salaries	\$500,000
Federal income taxes to be withheld	100,000
Federal unemployment tax rate	0.60%
State unemployment tax rate (after FUTA deduction)	5.40%
Social Security tax rate	6.2%
Medicare tax rate	1.45%

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record salaries and wages expense and payroll tax expense for the January 2018 pay period.

Problems



P 13-1

Bank loan;
accrued interest

• LO13-2



Blanton Plastics, a household plastic product manufacturer, borrowed \$14 million cash on October 1, 2018, to provide working capital for year-end production. Blanton issued a four-month, 12% promissory note to L&T Bank under a prearranged short-term line of credit. Interest on the note was payable at maturity. Each firm's fiscal period is the calendar year.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries to record (a) the issuance of the note by Blanton Plastics and (b) L&T Bank's receivable on October 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries by both firms to record all subsequent events related to the note through January 31, 2019.
3. Suppose the face amount of the note was adjusted to include interest (a noninterest-bearing note) and 12% is the bank's stated discount rate. (a) Prepare the journal entries to record the issuance of the noninterest-bearing note by Blanton Plastics on October 1, 2018, the adjusting entry at December 31, and payment of the note at maturity. (b) What would be the effective interest rate?

P 13-2

Various
transactions
involving liabilities

• LO13-2
through LO13-4



Camden Biotechnology began operations in September 2018. The following selected transactions relate to liabilities of the company for September 2018 through March 2019. Camden's fiscal year ends on December 31. Its financial statements are issued in April.

2018

- a. On September 5, opened checking accounts at Second Commercial Bank and negotiated a short-term line of credit of up to \$15,000,000 at the bank's prime rate (10.5% at the time). The company will pay no commitment fees.
- b. On October 1, borrowed \$12 million cash from Second Commercial Bank under the line of credit and issued a five-month promissory note. Interest at the prime rate of 10% was payable at maturity. Management planned to issue 10-year bonds in February to repay the note.
- c. Received \$2,600 of refundable deposits in December for reusable containers used to transport and store chemical-based products.
- d. For the September–December period, sales on account totaled \$4,100,000. The state sales tax rate is 3% and the local sales tax rate is 3%. (This is a summary journal entry for the many individual sales transactions for the period.)
- e. Recorded the adjusting entry for accrued interest.

2019

- f. In February, issued \$10 million of 10-year bonds at face value and paid the bank loan on the March 1 due date.
- g. Half of the storage containers covered by refundable deposits were returned in March. The remaining containers are expected to be returned during the next six months.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entries for these transactions.
2. Prepare the current and long-term liability sections of the December 31, 2018, balance sheet. Trade accounts payable on that date were \$252,000.

P 13-3

Current–
noncurrent
classification of
debt

• LO13-1, LO13-4

The balance sheet at December 31, 2018, for Nevada Harvester Corporation includes the liabilities listed below:

- a. 11% bonds with a face amount of \$40 million were issued for \$40 million on October 31, 2009. The bonds mature on October 31, 2029. Bondholders have the option of calling (demanding payment on) the bonds on October 31, 2019, at a redemption price of \$40 million. Market conditions are such that the call is not expected to be exercised.
- b. Management intended to refinance \$6 million of its 10% notes that mature in May 2019. In early March, prior to the actual issuance of the 2018 financial statements, Nevada Harvester negotiated a line of credit with a commercial bank for up to \$5 million any time during 2019. Any borrowings will mature two years from the date of borrowing.
- c. Noncallable 12% bonds with a face amount of \$20 million were issued for \$20 million on September 30, 1996. The bonds mature on September 30, 2019. Sufficient cash is expected to be available to retire the bonds at maturity.
- d. A \$12 million 9% bank loan is payable on October 31, 2024. The bank has the right to demand payment after any fiscal year-end in which Nevada Harvester's ratio of current assets to current liabilities falls below a

contractual minimum of 1.7 to 1 and remains so for six months. That ratio was 1.45 on December 31, 2018, due primarily to an intentional temporary decline in inventory levels. Normal inventory levels will be reestablished during the first quarter of 2019.

Required:

1. Determine the amount that can be excluded from classification as a current liability (that is, reported as a noncurrent liability) for each. Explain the reasoning behind your classifications.
2. Prepare the liability section of a classified balance sheet and any necessary note disclosure for Nevada Harvester at December 31, 2018. Accounts payable and accruals are \$22 million.

P 13-4

Various liabilities

- LO13-1 through LO13-4



The unadjusted trial balance of the Manufacturing Equitable at December 31, 2018, the end of its fiscal year, included the following account balances. Manufacturing's 2018 financial statements were issued on April 1, 2019.

Accounts receivable	\$ 92,500
Accounts payable	35,000
Bank notes payable	600,000
Mortgage note payable	1,200,000

Other information:

- a. The bank notes, issued August 1, 2018, are due on July 31, 2019, and pay interest at a rate of 10%, payable at maturity.
- b. The mortgage note is due on March 1, 2019. Interest at 9% has been paid up to December 31 (assume 9% is a realistic rate). Manufacturing intended at December 31, 2018, to refinance the note on its due date with a new 10-year mortgage note. In fact, on March 1, Manufacturing paid \$250,000 in cash on the principal balance and refinanced the remaining \$950,000.
- c. Included in the accounts receivable balance at December 31, 2018, were two subsidiary accounts that had been overpaid and had credit balances totaling \$18,000. The accounts were of two major customers who were expected to order more merchandise from Manufacturing and apply the overpayments to those future purchases.
- d. On November 1, 2018, Manufacturing rented a portion of its factory to a tenant for \$30,000 per year, payable in advance. The payment for the 12 months ended October 31, 2019, was received as required and was credited to rent revenue.

Required:

1. Prepare any necessary adjusting journal entries at December 31, 2018, pertaining to each item of other information (a–d).
2. Prepare the current and long-term liability sections of the December 31, 2018, balance sheet.

P 13-5

Bonus compensation; algebra

- LO13-3



Sometimes compensation packages include bonuses designed to provide performance incentives to employees. The difficulty a bonus can cause accountants is not an accounting problem, but a math problem. The complication is that the bonus formula sometimes specifies that the calculation of the bonus is based in part on the bonus itself. This occurs any time the bonus is a percentage of income because expenses are components of income, and the bonus is an expense.

Regalia Fashions has an incentive compensation plan through which a division manager receives a bonus equal to 10% of the division's net income. Division income in 2018 before the bonus and income tax was \$150,000. The tax rate is 30%.

Required:

1. Express the bonus formula as one or more algebraic equation(s).³⁴
2. Using these formulas, calculate the amount of the bonus.
3. Prepare the adjusting entry to record the bonus compensation.
4. Bonus arrangements take many forms. Suppose the bonus specifies that the bonus is 10% of the division's income before tax, but after the bonus itself. Calculate the amount of the bonus.

P 13-6

Various contingencies

- LO13-5, LO13-6

Eastern Manufacturing is involved with several situations that possibly involve contingencies. Each is described below. Eastern's fiscal year ends December 31, and the 2018 financial statements are issued on March 15, 2019.

- a. Eastern is involved in a lawsuit resulting from a dispute with a supplier. On February 3, 2019, judgment was rendered against Eastern in the amount of \$107 million plus interest, a total of \$122 million. Eastern plans to appeal the judgment and is unable to predict its outcome though it is not expected to have a material adverse effect on the company.

³⁴Remember when you were studying algebra and you wondered if you would ever use it?

- b. In November 2017, the State of Nevada filed suit against Eastern, seeking civil penalties and injunctive relief for violations of environmental laws regulating hazardous waste. On January 12, 2019, Eastern reached a settlement with state authorities. Based upon discussions with legal counsel, the Company feels it is probable that \$140 million will be required to cover the cost of violations. Eastern believes that the ultimate settlement of this claim will not have a material adverse effect on the company.
- c. Eastern is the plaintiff in a \$200 million lawsuit filed against United Steel for damages due to lost profits from rejected contracts and for unpaid receivables. The case is in final appeal and legal counsel advises that it is probable that Eastern will prevail and be awarded \$100 million.
- d. At March 15, 2019, Eastern knows a competitor has threatened litigation due to patent infringement. The competitor has not yet filed a lawsuit. Management believes a lawsuit is reasonably possible, and if a lawsuit is filed, management believes damages of up to \$33 million are reasonably possible.

Required:

1. Determine the appropriate means of reporting each situation. Explain your reasoning.
2. Prepare any necessary journal entries and disclosure notes.

P 13-7

Various liabilities

- LO13-4, LO13-5, LO13-6, LO13-7



HolmesWatson (HW) is considering what the effect would be of reporting its liabilities under IFRS rather than U.S. GAAP. The following facts apply:

- a. HW is defending against a lawsuit and believes it is virtually certain to lose in court. If it loses the lawsuit, management estimates it will need to pay a range of damages that falls between \$5,000,000 and \$10,000,000, with each amount in that range equally likely.
- b. HW is defending against another lawsuit that is identical to item (a), but the relevant losses will only occur far into the future. The present values of the endpoints of the range are \$3,000,000 and \$8,000,000, with the timing of cash flow somewhat uncertain. HW considers these effects of the time value of money to be material.
- c. HW is defending against another lawsuit for which management believes HW has a slightly worse than 50/50 chance of losing in court. If it loses the lawsuit, management estimates HW will need to pay a range of damages that falls between \$3,000,000 and \$9,000,000, with each amount in that range equally likely.
- d. HW has \$10,000,000 of short-term debt that it intends to refinance on a long-term basis. Soon after the balance sheet date, but before issuance of the financial statements, HW obtained the financing necessary to refinance the debt.

Required:

1. For each item, indicate how treatment of the amount would differ between U.S. GAAP and IFRS.
2. Consider the total effect of items a–d. If HW's goal is to show the lowest total liabilities, which set of standards, U.S. GAAP or IFRS, best helps it meet that goal?

P 13-8

Expected cash flow approach; product recall

- LO13-6



The Heinrich Tire Company recalled a tire in its subcompact line in December 2018. Costs associated with the recall were originally thought to approximate \$50 million. Now, though, while management feels it is probable the company will incur substantial costs, all discussions indicate that \$50 million is an excessive amount. Based on prior recalls in the industry, management has provided the following probability distribution for the potential loss:

Loss Amount	Probability
\$40 million	20%
\$30 million	50%
\$20 million	30%

An arrangement with a consortium of distributors requires that all recall costs be settled at the end of 2019. The risk-free rate of interest is 5%.

Required:

1. By the traditional approach to measuring loss contingencies, what amount would Heinrich record at the end of 2018 for the loss and contingent liability?
2. For the remainder of this problem, apply the expected cash flow approach of *SFAC No. 7*. Estimate Heinrich's liability at the end of the 2018 fiscal year.
3. Prepare the journal entry to record the contingent liability (and loss).
4. Prepare the journal entry to accrue interest on the liability at the end of 2019.
5. Prepare the journal entry to pay the liability at the end of 2019, assuming the actual cost is \$31 million. Heinrich records an additional loss if the actual costs are higher or a gain if the costs are lower.

P 13-9

Subsequent events

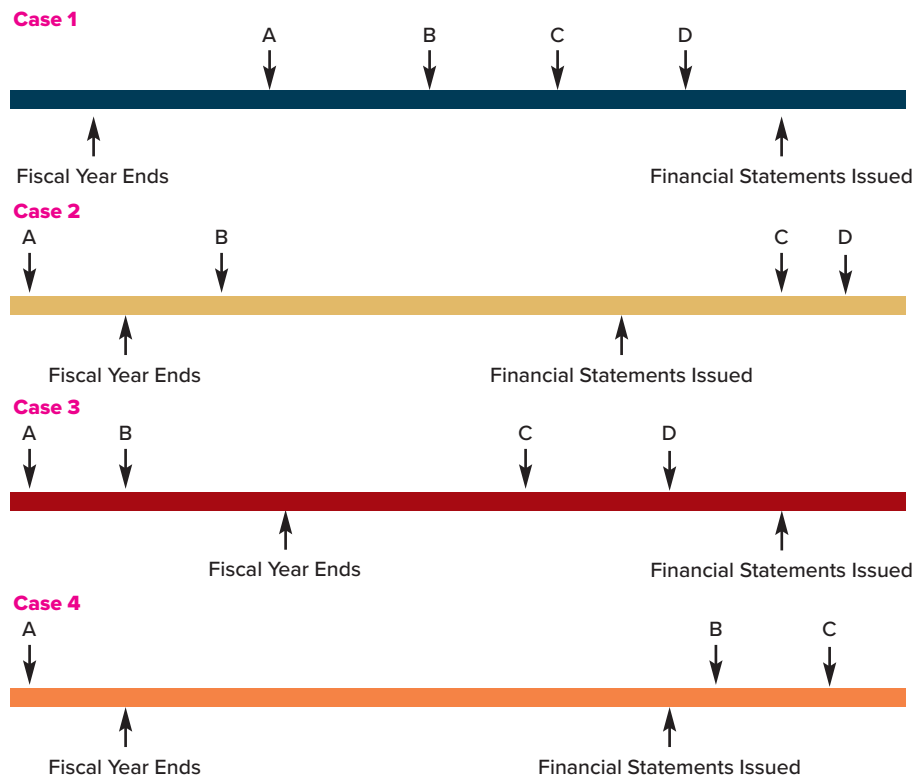
- LO13-6

Lincoln Chemicals became involved in investigations by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency in regard to damages connected to waste disposal sites. Below are four possibilities regarding the timing of (A) the alleged damage caused by Lincoln, (B) an investigation by the EPA, (C) the EPA assessment of penalties, and (D)

ultimate settlement. In each case, assume that Lincoln is unaware of any problem until an investigation is begun. Also assume that once the EPA investigation begins, it is probable that a damage assessment will ensue and that once an assessment is made by the EPA, it is reasonably possible that a determinable amount will be paid by Lincoln.

Required:

For each case, decide whether (1) a loss should be accrued in the financial statements with an explanatory note, (2) a disclosure note only should be provided, or (3) no disclosure is necessary.



P 13-10

Subsequent events; classification of debt; loss contingency; financial statement effects

• LO13-4, LO13-5

Van Rushing Hunting Goods' fiscal year ends on December 31. At the end of the 2018 fiscal year, the company had notes payable of \$12 million due on February 8, 2019. Rushing sold 2 million shares of its \$0.25 par, common stock on February 3, 2019, for \$9 million. The proceeds from that sale along with \$3 million from the maturation of some 3-month CDs were used to pay the notes payable on February 8.

Through his attorney, one of Rushing's construction workers notified management on January 5, 2019, that he planned to sue the company for \$1 million related to a work-site injury on December 20, 2018. As of December 31, 2018, management had been unaware of the injury, but reached an agreement on February 23, 2019, to settle the matter by paying the employee's medical bills of \$75,000.

Rushing's financial statements were finalized on March 3, 2019.

Required:

1. What amount(s) if any, related to the situations described should Rushing report among current liabilities in its balance sheet at December 31, 2018? Why?
2. What amount(s) if any, related to the situations described should Rushing report among long-term liabilities in its balance sheet at December 31, 2018? Why?
3. How would your answers to requirements 1 and 2 differ if the settlement agreement had occurred on March 15, 2019, instead? Why?
4. How would your answers to requirements 1 and 2 differ if the work-site injury had occurred on January 3, 2019, instead? Why?

P 13-11

Concepts; terminology

• LO13-1 through LO13-4

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with current liabilities. Pair each item from List A (by letter) with the item from List B that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A

- _____ 1. Face amount \times Interest rate \times Time
- _____ 2. Payable with current assets
- _____ 3. Short-term debt to be refinanced with common stock
- _____ 4. Present value of interest plus present value of principal
- _____ 5. Noninterest-bearing
- _____ 6. Noncommitted line of credit
- _____ 7. Pledged accounts receivable
- _____ 8. Reclassification of debt
- _____ 9. Purchased by other corporations
- _____ 10. Expenses not yet paid
- _____ 11. Liability until refunded
- _____ 12. Applied against purchase price

List B

- a. Informal agreement
- b. Secured loan
- c. Refinancing prior to the issuance of the financial statements
- d. Accounts payable
- e. Accrued liabilities
- f. Commercial paper
- g. Current liabilities
- h. Long-term liability
- i. Usual valuation of liabilities
- j. Interest on debt
- k. Customer advances
- l. Customer deposits

P 13-12

Various liabilities;
balance sheet
classification;
prepare liability
section of balance
sheet; write notes

● LO13-4, LO13-5



Transit Airlines provides regional jet service in the Mid-South. The following is information on liabilities of Transit at December 31, 2018. Transit's fiscal year ends on December 31. Its annual financial statements are issued in April.

1. Transit has outstanding 6.5% bonds with a face amount of \$90 million. The bonds mature on July 31, 2027. Bondholders have the option of calling (demanding payment on) the bonds on July 31, 2019, at a redemption price of \$90 million. Market conditions are such that the call option is not expected to be exercised.
2. A \$30 million 8% bank loan is payable on October 31, 2024. The bank has the right to demand payment after any fiscal year-end in which Transit's ratio of current assets to current liabilities falls below a contractual minimum of 1.9 to 1 and remains so for six months. That ratio was 1.75 on December 31, 2018, due primarily to an intentional temporary decline in parts inventories. Normal inventory levels will be reestablished during the sixth week of 2019.
3. Transit management intended to refinance \$45 million of 7% notes that mature in May 2019. In late February 2019, prior to the issuance of the 2018 financial statements, Transit negotiated a line of credit with a commercial bank for up to \$40 million any time during 2019. Any borrowings will mature two years from the date of borrowing.
4. Transit is involved in a lawsuit resulting from a dispute with a food caterer. On February 13, 2019, judgment was rendered against Transit in the amount of \$53 million plus interest, a total of \$54 million. Transit plans to appeal the judgment and is unable to predict its outcome though it is not expected to have a material adverse effect on the company.

Required:

1. How should the 6.5% bonds be classified by Transit among liabilities in its balance sheet? Explain.
2. How should the 8% bank loan be classified by Transit among liabilities in its balance sheet? Explain.
3. How should the 7% notes be classified by Transit among liabilities in its balance sheet? Explain.
4. How should the lawsuit be reported by Transit? Explain.
5. Prepare the liability section of a classified balance sheet for Transit Airlines at December 31, 2018. Transit's accounts payable and accruals were \$43 million.
6. Draft appropriate note disclosures for Transit's financial statements at December 31, 2018, for each of the five items described.

P 13-13

Payroll-related
liabilities

● Appendix

Alamar Petroleum Company offers its employees the option of contributing retirement funds up to 5% of their wages or salaries, with the contribution being matched by Alamar. The company also pays 80% of medical and life insurance premiums. Deductions relating to these plans and other payroll information for the first biweekly payroll period of February are listed as follows:

Wages and salaries	\$2,000,000
Employee contribution to voluntary retirement plan	84,000
Medical insurance premiums	42,000
Life insurance premiums	9,000
Federal income taxes to be withheld	400,000
Local income taxes to be withheld	53,000
Payroll taxes:	
Federal unemployment tax rate	0.60%
State unemployment tax rate (after FUTA deduction)	5.40%
Social Security tax rate	6.20%
Medicare tax rate	1.45%

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record salaries and wages expense and payroll tax expense for the biweekly pay period. Assume that no employee's cumulative wages exceed the relevant wage bases for Social Security, and that all employees' cumulative wages do exceed the relevant unemployment wage bases.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Research**Case 13-1**

Bank loan;
accrued interest

● LO13-1, LO13-2



A fellow accountant has solicited your opinion regarding the classification of short-term obligations repaid prior to being replaced by a long-term security. Cheshire Foods, Inc., issued \$5,000,000 of short-term commercial paper during 2017 to finance construction of a plant. At September 30, 2018, Cheshire's fiscal year-end, the company intends to refinance the commercial paper by issuing long-term bonds. However, because Cheshire temporarily has excess cash, in November 2018 it liquidates \$2,000,000 of the commercial paper as the paper matures. In December 2018, the company completes a \$10,000,000 long-term bond issue. Later during December, it issues its September 30, 2018, financial statements. The proceeds of the long-term bond issue are to be used to replenish \$2,000,000 in working capital, to pay \$3,000,000 of commercial paper as it matures in January 2019, and to pay \$5,000,000 of construction costs expected to be incurred later that year to complete the plant.

You initially are hesitant because you don't recall encountering a situation in which short-term obligations were repaid prior to being replaced by a long-term security. However, you are encouraged by a vague memory that this general topic is covered by GAAP literature you came across when reading an Internet article.

Required:

Determine how the \$5,000,000 of commercial paper should be classified by consulting the authoritative GAAP literature and citing the appropriate location in the FASB Codification. Before doing so, formulate your own opinion on the proper treatment.

Real World**Case 13-2**

Returnable
containers

● LO13-1, LO13-2

Real World Financials

The **Zoo Doo Compost Company** processes a premium organic fertilizer made with the help of the animals at the Memphis Zoo. Zoo Doo is sold in a specially designed plastic pail that may be kept and used for household chores or returned to the seller. The fertilizer is sold for \$12.50 per two-gallon pail (including the \$1.76 cost of the pail). For each pail returned, Zoo Doo donates \$1 to the Memphis Zoo and the pail is used again.³⁵

Required:

The founder and president of this start-up firm has asked your opinion on how to account for the donations to be made when fertilizer pails are returned. (Ignore any tax implications.)

Research**Case 13-3**

Relationship of
liabilities to assets
and owners'
equity

● LO13-1

SFAC No. 6, "Elements of Financial Statements," states that "an entity's assets, liabilities, and equity (net assets) all pertain to the same set of probable future economic benefits." Explain this statement.

Judgment**Case 13-4**

Paid future
absences

● LO13-3

Cates Computing Systems develops and markets commercial software for personal computers and workstations. Three situations involving compensation for possible future absences of Cates's employees are described below.

- Cates compensates employees at their regular pay rate for time absent for military leave, maternity leave, and jury time. Employees are allowed predetermined absence periods for each type of absence.
- Members of the new product development team are eligible for three months' paid sabbatical leave every four years. Five members of the team have just completed their fourth year of participation.
- Company policy permits employees four paid sick days each year. Unused sick days can accumulate and can be carried forward to future years.

Required:

- What are the conditions that require accrual of an expense and related liability for employees' compensation for future absences?

³⁵Case based on Kay McCullen, "Take The Zoo Home With You!" *Head Lions*, July 1991; and a conversation with the Zoo Doo Compost Company president, Pierce Ledbetter.

- For each of the three situations, indicate the circumstances under which accrual of an expense and related liability is warranted.

Ethics Case 13–5

Outdoors R Us

LO13–1

Outdoors R Us owns several membership-based campground resorts throughout the Southwest. The company sells campground sites to new members, usually during a get-acquainted visit and tour. The campgrounds offer a wider array of on-site facilities than most. New members sign a multiyear contract, pay a down payment, and make monthly installment payments. Because no credit check is made and many memberships originate on a spur-of-the-moment basis, cancellations are not uncommon.

Business has been brisk during its first three years of operations, and since going public in 2005, the market value of its stock has tripled. The first sign of trouble came in 2018 when new sales dipped sharply.

One afternoon, two weeks before the end of the fiscal year, Diane Rice, CEO, and Gene Sun, controller, were having an active discussion in Sun's office.

Sun: I've thought more about our discussion yesterday. Maybe something can be done about profits.

Rice: I hope so. Our bonuses and stock value are riding on this period's performance.

Sun: We've been recording deferred revenues when new members sign up. Rather than recording liabilities at the time memberships are sold, I think we can justify reporting sales revenue for all memberships sold.

Rice: What will be the effect on profits?

Sun: I haven't run the numbers yet, but let's just say very favorable.

Required:

- Why do you think liabilities had been recorded previously?
- Is the proposal ethical?
- Who would be affected if the proposal is implemented?

Trueblood

Case 13–6

Contingencies

LO13–5



Communication

Case 13–7

Exceptions to the general classification guideline; group interaction

LO13–4

The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion Material, can be obtained from the Deloitte Foundation at its website: www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases.

Case 13–8: Accounting for a Loss Contingency for a Verdict Overturned on Appeal

This case gives students the opportunity to apply GAAP regarding accrual and disclosure of contingencies with respect to a complex lawsuit. As an addition to the case, students should cite the appropriate location of relevant GAAP in the FASB Codification.

Domestic Transfer and Storage is a large trucking company headquartered in the Midwest. Rapid expansion in recent years has been financed in large part by debt in a variety of forms. In preparing the financial statements for 2019, questions have arisen regarding the way certain of the liabilities are to be classified in the company's classified balance sheet.

A meeting of several members of the accounting area is scheduled for tomorrow, April 8, 2019. You are confident that that meeting will include the topic of debt classification. You want to appear knowledgeable at the meeting, but realizing it's been a few years since you have dealt with classification issues, you have sought out information you think relevant. Questionable liabilities at the company's fiscal year-end (January 31, 2019) include the following:

- \$15 million of 9% commercial paper is due on July 31, 2019. Management intends to refinance the paper on a long-term basis. In early April 2019, Domestic negotiated a credit agreement with a commercial bank for up to \$12 million any time during the next three years, any borrowings from which will mature two years from the date of borrowing.
- \$17 million of 11% notes were issued on June 30, 2016. The notes are due on November 30, 2019. The company has investments of \$20 million classified as "available for sale."
- \$25 million of 10% notes were due on February 28, 2019. On February 21, 2019, the company issued 30-year, 9.4% bonds in a private placement to institutional investors.
- Recently, company management has considered reducing debt in favor of a greater proportion of equity financing. \$20 million of 12% bonds mature on July 31, 2019. Discussions with underwriters, which began on January 4, 2019, resulted in a contractual arrangement on March 15 under which new common shares will be sold in July for approximately \$20 million.

In order to make notes to yourself in preparation for the meeting concerning the classification of these items, you decide to discuss them with a colleague. Specifically, you want to know what portion of the debt can be excluded from classification as a current liability (that is, reported as a noncurrent liability) and why.

Required:

- What is the appropriate classification of each liability? Develop a list of arguments in support of your view prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.

2. In class, your instructor will pair you (and everyone else) with a classmate (who also has independently developed a position). You will be given three minutes to argue your view to your partner. Your partner likewise will be given three minutes to argue his or her view to you. During these three-minute presentations, the listening partner is not permitted to speak.
3. Then after each person has had a turn attempting to convince his or her partner, the two partners will have a three-minute discussion to decide which classifications are more convincing. Arguments will be merged into a single view for each pair.
4. After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each of the four liabilities will be selected by the instructor. Each spokesperson will field arguments from the class as to the appropriate classification. The class then will discuss the merits of the classification and attempt to reach a consensus view, though a consensus is not necessary.

Communication Case 13–8

Various contingencies

● LO13–5, LO13–6

“I see an all-nighter coming on,” Gayle grumbled. “Why did Mitch just now give us this assignment?” Your client, Western Manufacturing, is involved with several situations that possibly involve contingencies. The assignment Gayle refers to is to draft appropriate accounting treatment for each situation described below in time for tomorrow’s meeting of the audit group. Western’s fiscal year is the calendar year 2018, and the 2018 financial statements are issued on March 15, 2019.

1. During 2018, Western experienced labor disputes at three of its plants. Management hopes an agreement will soon be reached. However negotiations between the Company and the unions have not produced an acceptable settlement and, as a result, strikes are ongoing at these facilities since March 1, 2019. It is virtually certain that material costs will be incurred but the amount of possible costs cannot be reasonably ascertained.
2. In accordance with a 2016 contractual agreement with A. J. Conner Company, Western is entitled to \$37 million for certain fees and expense reimbursements. These were written off as bad debts in 2017. A. J. Conner has filed for bankruptcy. The bankruptcy court on February 4, 2019, ordered A. J. Conner to pay \$23 million immediately upon consummation of a proposed merger with Garner Holding Group.
3. Western warrants most products it sells against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of a year. Based on their experience with previous product introductions, warranty costs are expected to approximate 2% of sales. A warranty liability of \$39 million was reported at December 31, 2017. Sales of warranted products during 2018 were \$2,100 million and actual warranty expenditures were \$40 million.
4. Western is involved in a suit filed in January 2019 by Crump Holdings seeking \$88 million, as an adjustment to the purchase price in connection with the Company’s sale of its textile business in 2018. The suit alleges that Western misstated the assets and liabilities used to calculate the purchase price for the textile division. Legal counsel advises that it is reasonably possible that Western could end up losing an indeterminable amount not expected to have a material adverse effect on the Company’s financial position.

Required:

1. Determine the appropriate means of reporting each situation.
2. In a memo to the audit manager, Mitch Riley, explain your reasoning. Include any necessary journal entries and drafts of appropriate disclosure notes.

Judgment Case 13–9

Loss contingency and full disclosure

● LO13–5, LO13–6

In the March 2019 meeting of Valleck Corporation’s board of directors, a question arose as to the way a possible obligation should be disclosed in the forthcoming financial statements for the year ended December 31. A veteran board member brought to the meeting a draft of a disclosure note that had been prepared by the controller’s office for inclusion in the annual report. Here is the note:

On May 9, 2018, the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) issued a Notice of Violation (NOV) to Valleck alleging violations of the Clean Air Act. Subsequently, in June 2018, the EPA commenced a civil action with respect to the foregoing violation seeking civil penalties of approximately \$853,000. The EPA alleges that Valleck exceeded applicable volatile organic substance emission limits. The Company estimates that the cost to achieve compliance will be \$190,000; in addition the Company expects to settle the EPA lawsuit for a civil penalty of \$205,000 which will be paid in 2019.

“Where did we get the \$205,000 figure?” he asked. On being informed that this is the amount negotiated last month by company attorneys with the EPA, the director inquires, “Aren’t we supposed to report a liability for that in addition to the note?”

Required:

Explain whether Valleck should report a liability in addition to the note. Why or why not? For full disclosure, should anything be added to the disclosure note itself?

Communication Case 13–10

Change in loss contingency; write a memo

- LO13–5, LO13–6

Late in 2018, you and two other officers of Curbo Fabrications Corporation just returned from a meeting with officials of the City of Jackson. The meeting was unexpectedly favorable even though it culminated in a settlement with city authorities that required your company pay a total of \$475,000 to cover the cost of violations of city construction codes. Jackson had filed suit in November 2016 against Curbo, seeking civil penalties and injunctive relief for violations of city construction codes regulating earthquake damage standards. Alleged violations involved several construction projects completed during the previous three years. When the financial statements were issued in 2017, Curbo had not reached a settlement with state authorities, but legal counsel had advised the Company that it was probable the ultimate settlement would be \$750,000 in penalties. The following entry had been recorded:

Loss—litigation	750,000	
Liability—litigation		750,000

The final settlement, therefore, was a pleasant surprise. While returning from the meeting, your conversation turned to reporting the settlement in the 2018 financial statements. You drew the short straw and were selected to write a memo to Janet Zeno, the financial vice president, advising the proper course of action.

Required:

Write the memo. Include descriptions of any journal entries related to the change in amounts. Briefly describe other steps Curbo should take to report the settlement.

Research

Case 13–11

Researching the way contingencies are reported; retrieving information from the Internet

- LO13–5, LO13–6



EDGAR (Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system) performs automated collection, validation, indexing, acceptance, and forwarding of submissions by companies and others who are required by law to file forms with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR to make the majority of their filings. Form 10-K, which includes the annual report, is required to be filed on EDGAR. The SEC makes this information available on the Internet.

Required:

1. Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Identify the authoritative literature that provides guidance on accounting for contingent losses, and indicate the specific citations that describe the guidelines for determining when an expense and liability associated with a contingent loss should be accrued versus only disclosed in the notes?
2. Access EDGAR on the Internet at: www.sec.gov.
3. Search for a public company with which you are familiar. Access its most recent 10-K filing. Search or scroll to find the financial statements and related notes.
4. Specifically, look for any contingency(s) reported in the disclosure notes. Identify the nature of the contingency(s) described and explain the reason(s) the loss or losses was or was not accrued.
5. Repeat requirements 2 and 3 for two additional companies.

Communication Case 13–12

Accounting changes

- LO13–5, LO13–6

Kevin Brantly is a new hire in the controller's office of Fleming Home Products. Two events occurred in late 2018 that the company had not previously encountered. The events appear to affect two of the company's liabilities, but there is some disagreement concerning whether they also affect financial statements of prior years. Each change occurred during 2018 before any adjusting entries or closing entries were prepared. The tax rate for Fleming is 40% in all years.

- Fleming Home Products introduced a new line of commercial awnings in 2017 that carry a one-year warranty against manufacturer's defects. Based on industry experience, warranty costs were expected to approximate 3% of sales. Sales of the awnings in 2017 were \$3,500,000. Accordingly, warranty expense and a warranty liability of \$105,000 were recorded in 2017. In late 2018, the company's claims experience was evaluated and it was determined that claims were far fewer than expected—2% of sales rather than 3%. Sales of the awnings in 2018 were \$4,000,000 and warranty expenditures in 2018 totaled \$91,000.
- In November 2016, the State of Minnesota filed suit against the company, seeking penalties for violations of clean air laws. When the financial statements were issued in 2017, Fleming had not reached a settlement with state authorities, but legal counsel advised Fleming that it was probable the company would have to pay \$200,000 in penalties. Accordingly, the following entry was recorded:

Loss—litigation	200,000	
Liability—litigation		200,000

Late in 2018, a settlement was reached with state authorities to pay a total of \$350,000 in penalties.

Required:

Kevin's supervisor, perhaps unsure of the answer, perhaps wanting to test Kevin's knowledge, e-mails the message, "Kevin, send me a memo on how we should handle our awning warranty and that clean air suit." Wanting to be accurate, Kevin consults his reference materials. What will he find? Prepare the memo requested.

**Real World
Case 13-13**

Lawsuit
settlement;
Morgan Stanley
● LO13-5, LO13-6

Real World Financials

Morgan Stanley is a leading investment bank founded in 1935. The company's fiscal year ends December 31, 2013, and it filed its financial statements with the SEC on February 25, 2014. On February 5, 2014, *Bloomberg* reported that Morgan Stanley would make a \$1.25 billion settlement with the Federal Housing Finance Agency:

Morgan Stanley said yesterday it reached a \$1.25 billion deal to end Federal Housing Finance Agency claims the bank sold faulty mortgage bonds to Fannie Mae (FNMA) and Freddie Mac (FMCC) before the firms' losses pushed them into U.S. conservatorship. . . . Morgan Stanley, which disclosed its settlement in a regulatory filing yesterday, was among 18 banks sued by the FHFA in 2011. Authorities sought to recoup some losses taxpayers covered when the government took control of the failing mortgage-finance companies in 2008.

Required:

1. From an accounting perspective, how should Morgan Stanley have treated the settlement?
2. Relying on the information provided by the news article, re-create the journal entry Morgan Stanley recorded for the settlement. Assume it had not made any prior liability accrual with respect to this litigation.
3. Suppose the settlement had occurred after February 25, 2014. How should Morgan Stanley have treated the settlement?

Ethics**Case 13-14**

Profits
guaranteed
● LO13-5

This was Joel Craig's first visit to the controller's corner office since being recruited for the senior accountant position in May. Because he'd been directed to bring with him his preliminary report on year-end adjustments, Craig presumed he'd done something wrong in preparing the report. That he had not was Craig's first surprise. His second surprise was his boss's request to reconsider one of the estimated expenses.

S & G Fasteners was a new company, specializing in plastic industrial fasteners. All products carry a generous long-term warranty against manufacturer's defects. "Don't you think 4% of sales is a little high for our warranty expense estimate?" his boss wondered. "After all, we're new at this. We have little experience with product introductions. I just got off the phone with Blanchard (the company president). He thinks we'll have trouble renewing our credit line with the profits we're projecting. The pressure's on."

Required:

1. Should Craig follow his boss's suggestion?
2. Does revising the warranty estimate pose an ethical dilemma?
3. Who would be affected if the suggestion is followed?

IFRS Case 13-15

Current
liabilities and
contingencies;
differences
between U.S.
GAAP and IFRS
● LO13-4, LO13-5,
LO13-7

**IFRS**

As a second-year financial analyst for A.J. Straub Investments, you are performing an initial analysis on Fizer Pharmaceuticals. A difficulty you've encountered in making comparisons with its chief rival is that Fizer uses U.S. GAAP and the competing company uses International Financial Reporting Standards. Some areas of concern are the following:

1. Fizer has been designated as a potentially responsible party by the United States Environmental Protection Agency with respect to certain waste sites. These claims are in various stages of administrative or judicial proceedings and include demands for recovery of past governmental costs and for future investigations or remedial actions. Fizer accrues costs associated with environmental matters when they become probable and reasonably estimable. Counsel has advised that the likelihood of payments of about \$70 million is slightly more than 50%. Accordingly, payment is judged reasonably possible and the contingency was disclosed in a note.
2. Fizer had \$10 million of bonds issued in 1990 that mature in February 2019. On December 31, 2018, the company's fiscal year-end, management intended to refinance the bonds on a long-term basis. On February 7, 2019, Fizer issued \$10 million of 20-year bonds, applying the proceeds to repay the bond issue that matured that month. The bonds were reported in Fizer's balance sheet as long-term debt.
3. Fizer reported in its 2018 financial statements a long-term contingency at its face amount rather than its present value even though the difference was considered material. The reason the cash flows were not discounted is that their timing is uncertain.

Required:

If Fizer used IFRS as does its competitor, how would the items described be reported differently?

Analysis**Case 13–16**

Analyzing
financial
statements;
liquidity ratios

• LO13–1

IGF Foods Company is a large, primarily domestic, consumer foods company involved in the manufacture, distribution and sale of a variety of food products. Industry averages are derived from Troy's *The Almanac of Business and Industrial Financial Ratios*. Following are the 2018 and 2017 comparative balance sheets for IGF. (The financial data we use are from actual financial statements of a well-known corporation, but the company name used is fictitious and the numbers and dates have been modified slightly.)

IGF FOODS COMPANY		
Comparative Balance Sheets Years Ended		
December 31, 2018 and 2017		
(\$ in millions)		
	2018	2017
Assets		
Current assets:		
Cash	\$ 48	\$ 142
Accounts receivable	347	320
Marketable securities	358	—
Inventories	914	874
Prepaid expenses	212	154
Total current assets	\$1,879	\$1,490
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	2,592	2,291
Intangibles (net)	800	843
Other assets	74	60
Total assets	\$5,345	\$4,684
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 254	\$ 276
Accrued liabilities	493	496
Notes payable	518	115
Current portion of long-term debt	208	54
Total current liabilities	\$1,473	\$ 941
Long-term debt	534	728
Deferred income taxes	407	344
Total liabilities	\$2,414	\$2,013
Shareholders' equity:		
Common stock	180	180
Additional paid-in capital	21	63
Retained earnings	2,730	2,428
Total shareholders' equity	\$2,931	\$2,671
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$5,345	\$4,684

Liquidity refers to a company's cash position and overall ability to obtain cash in the normal course of business. A company is said to be liquid if it has sufficient cash or is capable of converting its other assets to cash in a relatively short period of time so that currently maturing debts can be paid.

Required:

1. Calculate the current ratio for IGF for 2018. The average ratio for the stocks listed on the New York Stock Exchange in a comparable time period was 1.5. What information does your calculation provide an investor?
2. Calculate IGF's acid-test or quick ratio for 2018. The ratio for the stocks listed on the New York Stock Exchange in a comparable time period was .80. What does your calculation indicate about IGF's liquidity?

Trueblood**Case 13–17**

Accounting
for litigation
contingencies

• LO13-5, LO13-6,
LO13-7

The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion Material, can be obtained from the Deloitte Foundation at its website: www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases.

Case 15-02: Burying the Hatchet: A Litigation Settlement with a Customer

This case gives students an opportunity to apply the accounting for contingencies guidance to a complex legal settlement. It also raises issues of substance over form and income statement classification.



Real World**Case 13–18**

Contingencies

● LO13–5

Real World Financials

The following is an excerpt from *USAToday.com*:

Microsoft (MSFT) on Thursday extended the warranty on its Xbox 360 video game console and said it will take a charge of more than \$1 billion to pay for “anticipated costs.” Under the new warranty, Microsoft will pay for shipping and repairs for three years, worldwide, for consoles afflicted with what gamers call “the red ring of death.” Previously, the warranty expired after a year for U.S. customers and two years for Europeans. The charge will be \$1.05 billion to \$1.15 billion for the quarter ended June 30. Microsoft reports its fourth-quarter results July 19.

Required:

1. Why must Microsoft report this charge of over \$1 billion entirely in one quarter, the last quarter of the company's fiscal year?
2. When the announcement was made, analyst Richard Doherty stated that either a high number of Xbox 360s will fail or the company is being overly conservative in its warranty estimate. From an accounting standpoint, what will Microsoft do in the future if the estimate of future repairs is overly conservative (too high)?

Real World**Case 13–19**

Contingencies

● LO13–5

Real World Financials**IFRS**

Reporting requirements for contingent liabilities under IFRS differ somewhat from those under U.S. GAAP.

Required:

For each of the following, access the online version of the indicated financial report and answer the question. Also compare reporting under IFRS to similar reporting under U.S. GAAP.

1. **AU Optronics** (Form 20-F, filed 3/21/2016): Where there is a continuous range of possible outcomes, with each point in the range as likely as any other, what amount is accrued as the estimate of the obligation?
2. **B Communications LTD** (Form 20-F, filed 4/19/2016): With respect to legal claims, at what probability level would B Communications accrue a liability for a possible litigation loss?

Real World**Case 13–20**

Contingencies and Subsequent events

● LO13–5, LO13–6

Real World Financials

The following events are indicated in note 15 of **J. Crew's** 10-K annual report for the fiscal year ended January 29, 2011, and its 10-K was filed on March 21, 2011.

Acquisition

On November 23, 2010, the Company entered into an Agreement and Plan of Merger (the “Merger Agreement”) with Chinos Holdings, Inc., a Delaware corporation (“Parent”). . . . At a special meeting of shareholders held in March 1, 2011, our shareholders voted to approve the Acquisition, and Parent acquired us on March 7, 2011 through a reverse subsidiary merger with J. Crew Group, Inc. being the surviving company. . . .

Litigation

In connection with the Acquisition, between November 24, 2010 and December 16, 2010, sixteen purported class action complaints were filed against some or all of the following: the Company, certain officers of the Company, members of the Company's Board of Directors, Holdings, the Issuer, TPG, TPG Fund VI and LGP. The plaintiffs in each of these complaints allege, among other things, (1) that certain officers of the Company and members of the Company's Board breached their fiduciary duties to the Company's public stockholders by authorizing the Acquisition for inadequate consideration and pursuant to an inadequate process, and (2) that the Company, TPG and LGP aided and abetted the other defendants' alleged breaches of fiduciary duty. The purported class action complaints sought, among other things, an order enjoining the consummation of the Acquisition or an order rescinding the Acquisition and an award of compensatory damages. Although the Company, the Company's Board, TPG, and LGP have entered into a memorandum of understanding to settle the actions filed in Delaware, they believe that the claims asserted in that action, as well as the claims asserted in New York and Federally, are without merit and intend to defend against the actions vigorously. The Company has notified its insurers of the actions and believes that any and all costs, expenses, and/or losses associated with the lawsuits are covered by its applicable insurance policies. The Company has recorded a reserve for litigation settlement of \$10 million in the consolidated financial statements as of and for the fiscal year ended January 29, 2011.

Required:

1. Is the acquisition a subsequent event? What are J. Crew's responsibilities in its financial statements with respect to disclosing it?
2. With respect to litigation:

- a. Has J. Crew recorded any journal entry with respect to the litigation associated with the acquisition? If so, prepare the journal entry.
- b. Do you believe that there is some amount associated with the litigation that J. Crew considers to be probable and reasonably estimable? What about reasonably possible, or probable but not reasonably estimable? Explain your reasoning.

Trueblood
Case 13–21
 Subsequent
 Events

● LO13–5



The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion Material, can be obtained from the Deloitte Foundation at its website: www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases.

Case 12-02: To Recognize or Not to Recognize, That is the Question

This case gives students the opportunity to apply GAAP regarding recognition of subsequent events. As an addition to the case, students should cite the appropriate location of relevant GAAP in the FASB Codification.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

● LO13–1, LO13–3,
 LO13–5

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material also is available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. Target's Consolidated Statement of Financial Position (its balance sheet) discloses its current assets and current liabilities.
 - a. What are the four components of Target's current liabilities?
 - b. Are current assets sufficient to cover current liabilities? What is the current ratio for the year ended January 30, 2016? How does the ratio compare with the prior year?
 - c. Why might a company want to avoid having its current ratio be too low? Too high?
2. Disclosure Note 2 discusses Target's accounting for gift card sales. Disclosure Note 18 indicates the amount of gift card liability that is recognized in Target's balance sheet.
 - a. By how much did Target's gift card liability change between January 30, 2016 and January 31, 2015?
 - b. How would the following affect Target's gift card liability (indicate "increase," "decrease," or "no change" for each):
 - i. Sale of a gift card
 - ii. Redemption of a gift card (the holder using it to acquire goods or services)
 - iii. Increase in breakage estimated for gift cards already sold
3. Disclosure Note 19 discusses Target's accounting for a data breach in 2013, when "an intruder stole certain payment card and other guest information from our network."
 - a. What is Target's approach for accruing losses for litigation claims associated with the data breach? Is their approach appropriate?
 - b. Prepare a journal entry to record Target's recognition of new expenses associated with the data breach litigation for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016.
 - c. Prepare a journal entry to record Target's reduction of its liability associated with the data breach litigation for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016.

Air France–KLM
Case

● LO13–7



Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. Read Notes 4.6 and 35. What do you think gave rise to total deferred income of €249 as of the end of fiscal 2015? Would transactions of this type be handled similarly under U.S. GAAP?
2. Is the threshold for recognizing a provision under IFRS different than it is under U.S. GAAP? Explain.
3. Note 32 lists "other provisions."
 - a. Do the beginning and ending balances of total provisions and retirement benefits shown in Note 32 for fiscal 2015 tie to the balance sheet? By how much has the total amount of the AF's "other provisions" increased or decreased during fiscal 2015?

- b. Prepare journal entries for the following changes in the litigation provision that occurred during fiscal 2015, assuming any amounts recorded on the income statement are recorded as “provision expense,” and any use of provision is paid for in cash. In each case, provide a brief explanation of the event your journal entry is capturing.
 - i. New provision
 - ii. Use of provision
 - c. Is AF’s treatment of its litigation provision under IFRS similar to how it would be treated under U.S. GAAP?
4. Note 32.2 lists a number of contingent liabilities. Are amounts for those items recognized as a liability on AF’s balance sheet? Explain.

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

14

Bonds and Long-Term Notes

OVERVIEW

This chapter continues the presentation of liabilities. While the discussion focuses on the accounting treatment of long-term liabilities, the borrowers' side of the same transactions is presented as well. Long-term notes and bonds are discussed, as well as the extinguishment of debt and debt convertible into stock.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO14-1** Identify the underlying characteristics of debt instruments and describe the basic approach to accounting for debt. (p. 771)
- **LO14-2** Account for bonds issued at face value, at a discount, or at a premium, recording interest using the effective interest method or using the straight-line method. (p. 773)
- **LO14-3** Characterize the accounting treatment of notes, including installment notes, issued for cash or for noncash consideration. (p. 784)
- **LO14-4** Describe the disclosures appropriate to long-term debt in its various forms and calculate related financial ratios. (p. 788)
- **LO14-5** Record the early extinguishment of debt and its conversion into equity securities. (p. 793)
- **LO14-6** Understand the option to report liabilities at their fair values. (p. 798)
- **LO14-7** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to accounting for bonds and long-term notes. (pp. 775 and 795).



© Klaus Vedfelt/Getty Images

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Service Leader, Inc.

The mood is both upbeat and focused on this cool October morning. Executives and board members of Service Leader, Inc., are meeting with underwriters and attorneys to discuss the company's first bond offering in its 20-year history. You are attending in the capacity of company controller and two-year member of the board of directors. The closely held corporation has been financed entirely by equity, internally generated funds, and short-term bank borrowings.

Bank rates of interest, though, have risen recently and the company's unexpectedly rapid, but welcome, growth has prompted the need to look elsewhere for new financing. Under consideration are 15-year, 6.25% first mortgage bonds with a principal amount of \$70 million. The bonds would be callable at

103 any time after June 30, 2020, and convertible into Service Leader common stock at the rate of 45 shares per \$1,000 bond.

Other financing vehicles have been discussed over the last two months, including the sale of additional stock, nonconvertible bonds, and unsecured notes. This morning *The Wall Street Journal* indicated that market rates of interest for debt similar to the bonds under consideration are about 6.5%.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. What does it mean that the bonds are "first mortgage" bonds? What effect does that have on financing? (p. 772)
2. From Service Leader's perspective, why are the bonds callable? What does that mean? (p. 773)
3. How will it be possible to sell bonds paying investors 6.25% when other, similar investments will provide the investors a return of 6.5%? (p. 773)
4. Would accounting differ if the debt were designated as notes rather than bonds? (p. 784)
5. Why might the company choose to make the bonds convertible into common stock? (p. 793)

QUESTIONS

The Nature of Long-Term Debt

A company must raise funds to finance its operations and often the expansion of those operations. Presumably, at least some of the necessary funding can be provided by the company's own operations, though some funds must be provided by external sources. Ordinarily, external financing includes some combination of equity and debt funding. We explore debt financing first.

In the present chapter, we focus on debt in the form of bonds and notes. The following three chapters deal with liabilities also, namely those arising in connection with leases (Chapter 15), deferred income taxes (Chapter 16), and pensions and employee benefits (Chapter 17). Some employee benefits create equity rather than debt, which are discussed in Chapter 19. In Chapter 18, we examine shareholders' interests arising from external *equity* financing. In Chapter 21, we see that cash flows from both debt and equity financing are reported together in a statement of cash flows as "cash flows from financing activities."

● LO14–1

Liabilities signify borrowers' interests in a company's assets.

As you read this chapter, you will find the focus to be on the liability side of the transactions we examine. Realize, though, that the mirror image of a liability is an asset (bonds payable/investment in bonds, note payable/note receivable, etc.). So as we discuss accounting for debts from the viewpoint of the issuers of the debt instruments (borrowers), we also will take the opportunity to see how the lender deals with the corresponding asset. Studying the two sides of the same transaction in tandem will emphasize their inherent similarities.

A note payable and a note receivable are two sides of the same coin.

Periodic interest is the effective interest rate times the amount of the debt outstanding during the interest period.

Accounting for a liability is a relatively straightforward concept. This is not to say that all debt instruments are unchallenging, “plain vanilla” loan agreements. Quite the contrary, the financial community continually devises increasingly exotic ways to flavor financial instruments in the attempt to satisfy the diverse and evolving tastes of both debtors and creditors.

Packaging aside, a liability requires the future payment of cash in specified (or estimated) amounts, at specified (or projected) dates. As time passes, interest accrues on debt. As a general rule, the periodic interest is the effective interest rate times the amount of the debt outstanding during the period. This same principle applies regardless of the specific form of the liability—note payable, bonds payable, lease liability, pension obligation, or other debt instruments. Also, as a general rule, long-term liabilities are reported at their present values. The present value of a liability is the present value of its related cash flows (principal and/or interest payments), discounted at the effective rate of interest at issuance.

We begin our study of long-term liabilities by examining accounting for bonds. We follow that section with a discussion of debt in the form of notes in Part B. It's important to note that, although particulars of the two forms of debt differ, the basic approach to accounting for each type is precisely the same. In Part C, we look at various ways bonds and notes are retired or converted into other securities. Finally, in Part D we discuss the option companies have to report liabilities at their fair values.

PART A

A bond issue divides a large liability into many smaller liabilities.

Corporations issuing bonds are obligated to repay a stated amount at a specified *maturity date* and periodic *interest* between the issue date and maturity.

A bond indenture describes the specific promises made to bondholders.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Bonds

A company can borrow cash from a bank or other financial institution by signing a promissory note. We discuss notes payable later in the chapter. Medium- and large-sized corporations often choose to borrow cash by issuing bonds to the public. In fact, the most common form of corporate debt is bonds. A bond issue, in effect, breaks down a large debt (large corporations often borrow hundreds of millions of dollars at a time) into manageable parts—usually \$1,000 or \$5,000 units. This avoids the necessity of finding a single lender who is both willing and able to loan a large amount of money at a reasonable interest rate. So rather than signing a \$400 million note to borrow cash from a financial institution, a company may find it more economical to sell 400,000 \$1,000 bonds to many lenders—theoretically up to 400,000 lenders.

Bonds obligate the issuing corporation to repay a stated amount (variously referred to as the *principal*, *par value*, *face amount*, or *maturity value*) at a specified *maturity date*. Maturities for bonds typically range from 10 to 40 years. In return for the use of the money borrowed, the company also agrees to pay *interest* to bondholders between the issue date and maturity. The periodic interest is a stated percentage of face amount (variously referred to as the *stated rate*, *coupon rate*, or *nominal rate*). Ordinarily, interest is paid semiannually on designated interest dates beginning six months after the day the bonds are “dated.”

The Bond Indenture

The specific promises made to bondholders are described in a document called a **bond indenture**. Because it would be impractical for the corporation to enter into a direct agreement with each of the many bondholders, the bond indenture is held by a trustee, usually a commercial bank or other financial institution, appointed by the issuing firm to represent the rights of the bondholders. If the company fails to live up to the terms of the bond indenture, the trustee may bring legal action against the company on behalf of the bondholders.

Most corporate bonds are debenture bonds. A **debenture bond** is secured only by the “full faith and credit” of the issuing corporation. No specific assets are pledged as security. Investors in debentures usually have the same standing as the firm's other general creditors.

So in case of bankruptcy, debenture holders and other general creditors would be treated equally. An exception is the **subordinated debenture**, which is not entitled to receive any liquidation payments until the claims of other specified debt issues are satisfied.

A **mortgage bond**, on the other hand, is backed by a lien on specified real estate owned by the issuer. Because a mortgage bond is considered less risky than debentures, it typically will command a lower interest rate.

Today most corporate bonds are registered bonds. Interest checks are mailed directly to the owner of the bond, whose name is registered with the issuing company. Years ago, it was typical for bonds to be structured as **coupon bonds** (sometimes called *bearer bonds*). The name of the owner of a coupon bond was not registered. Instead, to collect interest on a coupon bond the holder actually clipped an attached coupon and redeemed it in accordance with instructions in the indenture. A carryover effect of this practice is that we still sometimes see the term *coupon rate* in reference to the stated interest rate on bonds.

Most corporate bonds are **callable** (or redeemable). The call feature allows the issuing company to buy back, or call, outstanding bonds from bondholders before their scheduled maturity date. This feature affords the company some protection against being stuck with relatively high-cost debt in the event interest rates fall during the period before maturity. The call price must be pre-specified and often exceeds the bond's face amount (a call premium), sometimes declining as maturity is approached.

For example, financial statements of **Emhart Corporation** included this disclosure note:

The Company's 9¼% (9.65% effective interest rate, after discount) sinking fund debentures are callable at prices decreasing from 105% of face amount currently to 100%.

"No call" provisions usually prohibit calls during the first few years of a bond's life. Very often, calls are mandatory. That is, the corporation may be required to redeem the bonds on a prespecified, year-by-year basis. Bonds requiring such **sinking fund** redemptions often are labeled *sinking fund debentures*.

Serial bonds provide a more structured (and less popular) way to retire bonds on a piece-meal basis. Serial bonds are retired in installments during all or part of the life of the issue. Each bond has its own specified maturity date. So for a typical 30-year serial issue, 25 to 30 separate maturity dates might be assigned to specific portions of the bond issue.

Convertible bonds are retired as a consequence of bondholders choosing to convert them into shares of stock. We look closer at convertible bonds a little later in the chapter.

Recording Bonds at Issuance

Bonds represent a liability to the corporation that issues the bonds and an asset to an investor who buys the bonds as an investment. Each side of the transaction is the mirror image of the other.¹ This is demonstrated in Illustration 14–1.

Most bonds these days are issued on the day they are dated (date printed in the indenture contract). On rare occasions, there may be a delay in issuing bonds that causes them to be issued between interest dates, in which case the interest that has accrued since the day they are dated is added to the bonds' price. We discuss this infrequent event in Appendix 14A to this chapter.

Determining the Selling Price

The price of a bond issue at any particular time is not necessarily equal to its face amount. The \$700,000, 12% bond issue in the previous illustration, for example, may sell for more than face amount (at a **premium**) or less than face amount (at a **discount**), depending on how the 12% *stated* interest rate compares with the prevailing *market* or *effective rate* of interest (for securities of similar risk and maturity). For instance, if the 12% bonds are

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 771

Real World Financials

Mandatory sinking fund redemptions retire a bond issue gradually over its term to maturity.

● LO14–2

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 771

¹You should recall from Chapter 12 that investments in bonds that are to be held to maturity by the investor are reported at amortized cost, which is the method described here. However, also remember that investments in debt securities *not* to be held to maturity are reported at the fair value of the securities held, as described in Chapter 12, with the interest determined by the effective interest method.

Illustration 14-1

Bonds Sold at Face Amount

On January 1, 2018, Masterwear Industries issued \$700,000 of 12% bonds. Interest of \$42,000 is payable semiannually on June 30 and December 31. The bonds mature in three years (an unrealistically short maturity to shorten the illustration). The entire bond issue was sold in a private placement to United Intergroup, Inc., at the face amount.

At Issuance (January 1)

Masterwear (Issuer)

Cash	700,000	
Bonds payable (face amount)		700,000

United (Investor)

Investment in bonds (face amount)	700,000	
Cash		700,000

Other things being equal, the lower the perceived riskiness of the corporation issuing bonds, the higher the price those bonds will command.

competing in a market in which similar bonds are providing a 14% return, the bonds could be sold only at a price less than \$700,000. On the other hand, if the market rate is only 10%, the 12% stated rate would seem relatively attractive and the bonds would sell at a premium over face amount. The reason the stated rate often differs from the market rate, resulting in a *discount* or *premium*, is the inevitable delay between the date the terms of the issue are established and the date the issue comes to market.

In addition to the characteristic terms of a bond agreement as specified in the indenture, the market rate for a specific bond issue is influenced by the creditworthiness of the company issuing the bonds. To evaluate the risk and quality of an individual bond issue, investors rely heavily on bond ratings provided by **Standard & Poor's Corporation** and by **Moody's Investors Service, Inc.** See the bond ratings in Illustration 14-2.

Illustration 14-2

Bond Ratings*

	S&P	Moody's
Investment Grades:		
Highest	AAA	Aaa
High	AA	Aa
Medium	A	A
Minimum investment grade	BBB	Baa
"Junk" Ratings:		
Speculative	BB	Ba
Very speculative	B	B
Default or near default	CCC	Caa
	CC	Ca
	C	C
	D	

*Adapted from **Moodys.com** and **SPRatings.com**.

A bond issue will be priced by the marketplace to yield the market rate of interest for securities of similar risk and maturity.

Forces of supply and demand cause a bond issue to be *priced to yield the market rate*. In other words, an investor paying that price will earn an effective rate of return on the investment equal to the market rate. The price is calculated as the present value of all the cash flows required of the bonds, where the discount rate used in the present value calculation is the market rate. Specifically, the price will be the present value of the periodic cash interest payments (face amount \times stated rate) plus the present value of the principal payable at maturity, both discounted at the market rate.

Bonds priced at a discount are described in Illustration 14-3.

The calculation is illustrated in Illustration 14-4.

Although the cash flows total \$952,000, the present value of those future cash flows as of January 1, 2018, is only \$666,633. This is due to the time value of money. These bonds are issued at a discount because the present value of the cash flows is less than the face amount of the bonds.

On January 1, 2018, Masterwear Industries issued \$700,000 of 12% bonds, dated January 1. Interest of \$42,000 is payable semiannually on June 30 and December 31. The bonds mature in three years. The market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity is 14%. The entire bond issue was purchased by United Intergroup, Inc.

Calculation of the Price of the Bonds

	Present Values
Interest	$\$42,000 \times 4.76654^* = \$200,195$
Principal	$\$700,000 \times 0.66634^{\dagger} = 466,438$
Present value (price) of the bonds	<u>\$666,633</u>

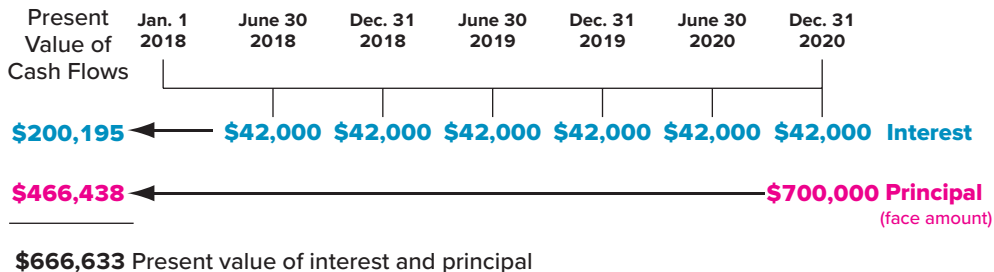
*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 7\%$ (Table 4).

[†]Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 7\%$ (Table 2).

Because interest is paid semiannually, the present value calculations use: (a) one-half the stated rate (6%) to determine cash payments, (b) one-half the market rate (7%) as the discount rate, and (c) six (3×2) semiannual periods.

Note: Present value tables are provided at the end of this textbook. If you need to review the concept of the time value of money, refer to the discussions in Chapter 6.

Rounding: Because present value tables truncate decimal places, the solution may be slightly different if you use a calculator or Excel.



Masterwear (Issuer)	
Cash (price calculated above).....	666,633
Discount on bonds payable (difference).....	33,367
Bonds payable (face amount).....	700,000
United (Investor)	
Investment in bonds (face amount).....	700,000
Discount on bond investment (difference).....	33,367
Cash (price calculated above).....	666,633

Note: A sometimes-used alternative way to record bonds is the "net method," shown next, in which the discount is included directly in the book value.

Masterwear (Issuer)	
Cash.....	666,633
Bonds payable.....	666,633
United (Investor)	
Investment in bonds.....	666,633
Cash.....	666,633

When bond prices are quoted in financial media, they typically are stated in terms of a percentage of face amounts. Thus, a price quote of 98 means a \$1,000 bond will sell for \$980; a bond priced at 101 will sell for \$1,010.

Determining Interest—Effective Interest Method

Interest accrues on an outstanding debt at a constant percentage of the debt each period. Of course, under the concept of accrual accounting, the periodic effective interest is not affected by the time at which the cash interest actually is paid. Recording interest each

Illustration 14-3

Bonds Sold at a Discount



Using a calculator:

Enter: N 6 I 7

PMT -42000

FV -700000

Output: PV 666,634



Using Excel, enter:

=PV(.07,6,-42000,-700000)

Output: 666,634

Illustration 14-4

Cash Flows from a Bond Issue

Journal Entries at Issuance—Bonds Sold at a Discount

• LO14-7

The effective interest on debt is the market rate of interest multiplied by the outstanding balance of the debt.

period as the *effective market rate of interest multiplied by the outstanding balance of the debt* (during the interest period) is referred to as the **effective interest method**. Although giving this a label—the effective interest method—implies some specialized procedure, this simply is an application of the accrual concept, consistent with accruing all expenses as they are incurred.

Continuing our example, we determined that the amount of debt when the bonds are issued is \$666,633. Since the effective interest rate is 14%, interest recorded (as expense to the issuer and revenue to the investor) for the first six-month interest period is \$46,664:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \$666,633 & \times & (14\% \div 2) \\ \text{Outstanding balance} & \times & \text{Effective rate} \end{array} = \begin{array}{r} \$46,664 \\ \text{Effective interest} \end{array}$$

However, the bond indenture calls for semiannual interest payments of only \$42,000—the *stated rate* (6%) times the *face amount* (\$700,000). The remainder, \$4,664, increases the liability and is reflected as a reduction in the discount (a contra-liability account). This is illustrated in Illustration 14–5.

Illustration 14–5

Change in Debt When
Effective Interest Exceeds
Cash Paid

The difference between
the effective interest
and the interest paid
increases the existing
liability.

	Outstanding Balance		Account Balances		
			Bonds Payable (face amount)		Discount on Bonds Payable
January 1	\$666,633	=	\$700,000	less	\$33,367
Interest accrued at 7%	46,664				
Portion of interest paid	(42,000)				(4,664)
June 30	\$671,297	=	\$700,000	less	\$28,703

Interest expense (issuer) and revenue (investor) are calculated on the outstanding debt balance at the effective (or market) rate. Interest *paid* is the amount specified in the bond indenture—the *stated rate* times the face amount. These amounts and the change in the outstanding debt are recorded as follows:

Journal Entries—The Interest Method

The effective interest is
calculated each period
as the market rate times
the amount of the debt
outstanding during the
interest period.

At the First Interest Date (June 30)			
Masterwear (Issuer)			
Interest expense (effective rate × outstanding balance)	46,664		
Discount on bonds payable (difference)			4,664
Cash (stated rate × face amount)			42,000
United (Investor)			
Cash (stated rate × face amount)		42,000	
Discount on bond investment (difference)		4,664	
Interest revenue (effective rate × outstanding balance)			46,664

In this example and others in the chapter we look at the investor's entries as well as the issuer's to see both sides of the same transactions.

Because the balance of the debt changes each period, the dollar amount of interest (balance × rate) also will change each period. To keep up with the changing amounts, it usually is convenient to prepare a schedule that reflects the changes in the debt over its term to maturity. An amortization schedule for the situation under discussion is shown in Illustration 14–6.

Amounts for the journal entries each interest date are found in the second, third, and fourth columns of the schedule. The essential point to remember is that the effective interest method is a straightforward application of the accrual concept, whereby interest expense (or revenue) is accrued periodically at the effective rate. We record that amount of interest expense or revenue accrued even though the cash interest is a different amount.

Determining interest in this manner has a convenient side effect. It results in reporting the liability at the present value of future cash payments—the appropriate valuation method

Illustration 14-6

Amortization
Schedule—Discount

Date	Cash Interest (6% × Face amount)	Effective Interest (7% × Outstanding balance)	Increase in Balance (Discount reduction)	Outstanding Balance
1/1/18				666,633
6/30/18	42,000	0.07 (666,633) = 46,664	4,664	671,297
12/31/18	42,000	0.07 (671,297) = 46,991	4,991	676,288
6/30/19	42,000	0.07 (676,288) = 47,340	5,340	681,628
12/31/19	42,000	0.07 (681,628) = 47,714	5,714	687,342
6/30/20	42,000	0.07 (687,342) = 48,114	6,114	693,456
12/31/20	42,000	0.07 (693,456) = 48,544*	6,544	700,000
	252,000	285,367	33,367	

*Rounded

for any liability. This is obvious at issuance; we actually calculated the present value to be \$666,633. What perhaps is not quite as obvious is that the outstanding amount of debt each subsequent period (shown in the right-hand column of the amortization schedule) is still the present value of the remaining cash flows, discounted at the original rate. The outstanding amount of the debt is its book value, sometimes called carrying value or carrying amount, which is the face amount minus the balance in the discount.

Before moving on, notice some key characteristics of the amortization schedule. As mentioned earlier, the unpaid interest each period (\$4,664 the first period) adds to the balance. Since this happens each period, the balance continually increases, eventually becoming the face amount at maturity. Conveniently, that's the amount to be paid at maturity. Also, because the balance increases each period, so does the effective interest. That's because effective interest is the same percentage rate times a higher balance each period.

Now look at the column totals. The total interest expense (from the issuer's perspective) is equal to the sum of the total cash interest plus the total change in the balance (the discount). One way we might view this is to say the total interest paid (\$285,367) is the \$252,000 cash interest paid during the term to maturity plus the "extra" amount paid at maturity. That \$33,367 amount is extra in the sense that, by selling the bonds, we borrow \$666,633 but must repay \$700,000 at maturity. That's why the effective interest on the bonds is 14% even though the cash interest is only 12% annually; the extra interest at maturity makes up the difference.

Additional Consideration

Although the reported amount each period is the present value of the bonds, at any date after issuance this amount is not necessarily equal to the market value (fair value) of the bonds. This is because the market rate of interest will not necessarily remain the same as the rate implicit in the original issue price (the effective rate). Of course, for negotiable financial instruments, the issue price is the market price at any given time. Differences between market values and present values based on the original rate are holding gains and losses. If we were to use the market rate to revalue bonds on each reporting date—that is, recalculate the present value using the market rate—the reported amount always would be the market value. As we will see later, companies have the option to report their liabilities at fair value.

Zero-Coupon Bonds

A zero-coupon bond pays no interest. Instead, it offers a return in the form of a "deep discount" from the face amount. For illustration, let's look at the zero-coupon bonds issued by **General Mills, Inc.** Two billion, two hundred thirty million dollars face amount of the

20-year securities sold for one billion, five hundred one million dollars. As the amortization schedule in Illustration 14–7 demonstrates, they were priced to yield 2%.²

Illustration 14–7

Zero-Coupon Securities—
General Mills, Inc.

Real World Financials

(\$ in millions)	Cash Interest	Effective Interest	Increase in Balance	Outstanding Balance*
	(0% × Face amount)	(2% × Outstanding debt)	(Discount reduction)	
				1,501
2002	0	0.02 (1,501) = 30	30	1,531
2003	0	0.02 (1,531) = 31	31	1,561
2004	0	0.02 (1,561) = 31	31	1,593
♦	♦	♦	♦	♦
♦	♦	♦	♦	♦
♦	♦	♦	♦	♦
2021	0	0.02 (2,143) = 43	43	2,186
2022	0	0.02 (2,186) = 44	44	2,230
		729	729	

*Some numbers appear not to total because the underlying calculations are not rounded. Note that the final number in the schedule (\$2,230 million) is the face amount payable at maturity.

Zero-coupon bonds provide us with a convenient opportunity to reinforce a key concept we just learned: that we accrue the interest expense (or revenue) each period at the effective rate regardless of how much cash interest actually is paid (zero in this case). An advantage of issuing zero-coupon bonds or notes is that the corporation can deduct for tax purposes the annual interest expense (see schedule) but has no related cash outflow until the bonds mature. However, the reverse is true for investors in “zeros.” Investors receive no periodic cash interest, even though annual interest revenue is reportable for tax purposes. So those who invest in zero-coupon bonds usually have tax-deferred or tax-exempt status, such as pension funds, individual retirement accounts (IRAs), and charitable organizations. Zero-coupon bonds and notes have popularity but still constitute a relatively small proportion of corporate debt.

Bonds Sold at a Premium

In Illustration 14–3, Masterwear Industries sold the bonds at a price that would yield an effective rate higher than the stated rate. The result was a discount. On the other hand, if the 12% bonds had been issued when the market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity was *lower* than the stated rate, say 10%, the issue would have been priced at a *premium*. Because the 12% rate would seem relatively attractive in a 10% market, the bonds would command an issue price of more than \$700,000, calculated in Illustration 14–8.

Illustration 14–8

Bonds Sold at a Premium

Because interest is paid
semiannually, the present
value calculations use:

- one-half the stated rate (6%),
- one-half the market rate (5%), and
- 6 (3 × 2) semiannual periods.

On January 1, 2018, Masterwear Industries issued \$700,000 of 12% bonds, dated January 1. Interest of \$42,000 is payable semiannually on June 30 and December 31. The bonds mature in three years. The market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity is 10%. The entire bond issue was purchased by United Intergruop, Inc.

Calculation of the Price of the Bonds

	Present Values
Interest	\$42,000 × 5.07569* = \$213,179
Principal	\$700,000 × 0.74622† = 522,354
Present value (price) of the bonds	\$735,533

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 5\%$.

†Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 5\%$.

²The present value of \$2,230M, discounted at 2% for 20 years, is \$1,501M.

Interest on bonds issued at a premium is determined in precisely the same manner as on bonds issued at a discount. Again, interest is the effective interest rate applied to the debt balance outstanding during each period (balance at the end of the previous interest period), and the cash paid is the stated rate times the face amount, as shown in Illustration 14–9. The difference between the two is the reduction (amortization) of the premium.

Masterwear (Issuer)

Cash (price calculated above).....	735,533	
Bonds payable (face amount).....		700,000
Premium on bonds payable (difference).....		35,533

United (Investor)

Investment in bonds (face amount).....	700,000	
Premium on bond investment (difference).....	35,533	
Cash (price calculated above).....		735,533

Journal Entries at Issuance—Bonds Sold at Premium

Date	Cash Interest (6% × Face amount)	Effective Interest (5% × Outstanding balance)	Decrease in Balance (Premium reduction)	Outstanding Balance
1/1/18				735,533
6/30/18	42,000	0.05 (735,533) = 36,777	5,223	730,310
12/31/18	42,000	0.05 (730,310) = 36,516	5,484	724,826
6/30/19	42,000	0.05 (724,826) = 36,241	5,759	719,067
12/31/19	42,000	0.05 (719,067) = 35,953	6,047	713,020
6/30/20	42,000	0.05 (713,020) = 35,651	6,349	706,671
12/31/20	42,000	0.05 (706,671) = 35,329*	6,671	700,000
	252,000	216,467	35,533	

*Rounded

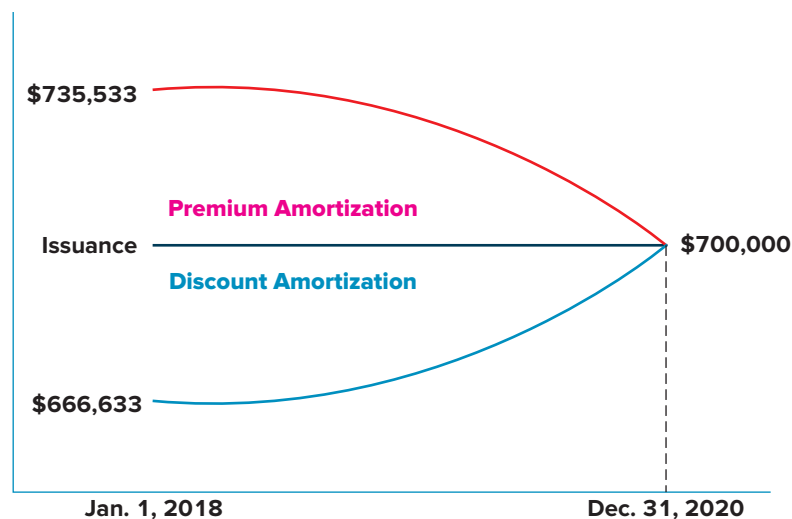
Illustration 14–9

Amortization
Schedule—Premium

Since **more cash is paid each period than the effective interest**, the debt outstanding is reduced by the overpayment.

Notice that the debt declines each period. As the premium is reduced by amortization, the book value of the bonds declines toward face value. This is because the effective interest each period is less than the cash interest paid. Remember, this is precisely the opposite of when the bonds are at a discount, when the effective interest each period is more than the cash paid. As the discount is reduced by amortization, the book value of the bonds increases toward face value. This is illustrated in Illustration 14–10.

Whether bonds are issued at a premium or a discount, the outstanding balance becomes zero at maturity.


Illustration 14–10

Premium and Discount
Amortization Compared

In practice, corporate bonds rarely are issued at a premium.³ Because of the delay between the date the terms of the bonds are established and when the bonds are issued, it's difficult to set the stated rate equal to the ever-changing market rate. Knowing that, for marketing reasons, companies deliberately set the terms to more likely create a small discount rather than a premium at the issue date. Some investors are psychologically prone to prefer buying at a discount rather than a premium even if the yield is the same (the market rate).

Additional Consideration

The preceding illustrations describe bonds sold at a discount and at a premium. The same concepts apply to bonds sold at face amount. But some of the procedures would be unnecessary. For instance, calculating the present value of the interest and the principal always will give us the face amount when the effective rate and the stated rate are the same:

Calculation of the Price of the Bonds

	Present Values
Interest	\$ 42,000 × 4.91732* = \$206,528
Principal	\$700,000 × 0.70496† = 493,472
Present value (price) of the bonds	\$700,000

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 6\%$.

†Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 6\%$.

Any interest that has accrued since the last interest date must be recorded by an adjusting entry prior to preparing financial statements.

When Financial Statements are Prepared between Interest Dates

When an accounting period ends between interest dates, it is necessary to record interest that has accrued since the last interest date. As an example, refer again to Illustration 14–3. If the fiscal years of Masterwear and United end on October 31 and interest was last paid and recorded on June 30, four months' interest must be accrued in a year-end adjusting entry. Because interest is recorded for only a portion of a semiannual period, amounts recorded are simply the amounts shown in the amortization schedule (Illustration 14–6) times the appropriate fraction of the semiannual period (in this case $\frac{4}{6}$).

Adjusting Entries—To Accrue Interest

To avoid understating interest in the financial statements, four months' interest is recorded at the end of the reporting period.

At October 31			
Masterwear (Issuer)			
Interest expense ($\frac{4}{6} \times 46,991$)	31,327		
Discount on bonds payable ($\frac{4}{6} \times 4,991$)		3,327	
Interest payable ($\frac{4}{6} \times 42,000$)		28,000	
United (Investor)			
Interest receivable ($\frac{4}{6} \times 42,000$)	28,000		
Discount on bond investment ($\frac{4}{6} \times 4,991$)	3,327		
Interest revenue ($\frac{4}{6} \times 46,991$)			31,327

Two months later, when semiannual interest is paid next, the remainder of the interest is allocated to the first two months of the next fiscal year—November and December:

Of the six months' interest paid December 31, only the November and December interest is expensed in the new fiscal year.

At the December 31 Interest Date			
Masterwear (Issuer)			
Interest expense ($\frac{2}{6} \times 46,991$)	15,664		
Interest payable (from adjusting entry)	28,000		
Discount on bonds payable ($\frac{2}{6} \times 4,991$)		1,664	
Cash (stated rate × face amount)		42,000	

³Only about 1% of corporate bonds are issued at a premium. Amiram, Dan, A. Kalay, and B. Ozel, "The Bond Discount Puzzle," *Financial Accounting eJournal*, March 25, 2013.

United (Investor)

Cash (stated rate \times face amount)	42,000	
Discount on bond investment ($\frac{3}{4}\% \times 4,991$)	1,664	
Interest receivable (from adjusting entry)		28,000
Interest revenue ($\frac{3}{4}\% \times 46,991$)		15,664

The Straight-Line Method—A Practical Expediency

In some circumstances the profession permits an exception to the conceptually appropriate method of determining interest for bond issues. A company is allowed to determine interest indirectly by allocating a discount or a premium equally to each period over the term to maturity—if doing so produces results that are not materially different from the usual (and preferable) interest method. The decision should be guided by whether the **straight-line method** would tend to mislead investors and creditors in the particular circumstance.

By the straight-line method, the discount in Illustration 14–3 and Illustration 14–6 would be allocated equally to the six semiannual periods (three years):

$$\$33,367 \div 6 \text{ periods} = \$5,561 \text{ per period}$$

At Each of the Six Interest Dates**Masterwear (Issuer)**

Interest expense (to balance)	47,561	
Discount on bonds payable (discount \div 6 periods)		5,561
Cash (stated rate \times face amount)		42,000

United (Investor)

Cash (stated rate \times face amount)	42,000	
Discount on bond investment (discount \div 6 periods)	5,561	
Interest revenue (to balance)		47,561

**Journal Entries—
Straight-Line Method**

By the straight-line method, interest (expense and revenue) is a plug figure, resulting from calculating the amount of discount reduction.

Allocating the discount or premium equally over the life of the bonds by the straight-line method results in a constant dollar amount of interest each period. An amortization schedule, then, would serve little purpose. For example, if we prepared one for the straight-line method in this situation, it would provide the same amounts each period as shown in Illustration 14–11.

	Cash Interest	Recorded Interest	Increase in Balance	Outstanding Balance
	(6% \times Face amount)	(Cash + Discount reduction)	(\$33,367 \div 6)	
1/1/18				666,633
6/30/18	42,000	(42,000 + 5,561) = 47,561	5,561	672,194
12/31/18	42,000	(42,000 + 5,561) = 47,561	5,561	677,755
6/30/19	42,000	(42,000 + 5,561) = 47,561	5,561	683,316
12/31/19	42,000	(42,000 + 5,561) = 47,561	5,561	688,877
6/30/20	42,000	(42,000 + 5,561) = 47,561	5,561	694,438
12/31/20	42,000	(42,000 + 5,561) = 47,561	5,561	700,000*
	252,000	285,366	33,366	

*Rounded

Illustration 14–11

Amortization Schedule—
Straight-Line Method

By the straight-line method, the amount of the discount to be reduced periodically is calculated, and the recorded interest is the plug figure.

Remember, constant dollar amounts are not produced when the effective interest method is used. By that method, the dollar amounts of interest vary over the term to maturity because the percentage rate of interest remains constant but is applied to a changing debt balance.

Also, be sure to realize that the straight-line method is not an alternative method of determining interest in a conceptual sense. Instead, it is an application of the materiality concept, by which an appropriate application of GAAP (e.g., the effective interest method) can be

Determining interest by allocating the discount (or premium) on a straight-line basis is a practical expediency permitted in some situations by the materiality concept.

bypassed for reasons of practical expediency in situations when doing so has no material effect on the results. Based on the frequency with which the straight-line method is used in practice, we can infer that managers very frequently conclude that its use has no material impact on investors' decisions.

Concept Review Exercise

ISSUING BONDS AND RECORDING INTEREST

On January 1, 2018, the Meade Group issued \$8,000,000 of 11% bonds, dated January 1. Interest is payable semiannually on June 30 and December 31. The bonds mature in four years. The market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity is 10%.

Required:

1. Determine the price these bonds issued to yield the 10% market rate and record their issuance by the Meade Group.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule that determines interest at the effective rate and record interest on the first interest date, June 30, 2018.

Solution:

1. Determine the price these bonds sold for to yield the 10% market rate and record their issuance by the Meade Group.

Calculation of the Price of the Bonds

There are eight semiannual periods and one-half the market rate is 5%.		
Interest	\$ 440,000 × 6.46321*	\$2,843,812
Principal	\$8,000,000 × 0.67684*	5,414,720
Present value (price) of the bonds		\$8,258,532

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 8$, $i = 5\%$.

*Present value of \$1: $n = 8$, $i = 5\%$.

Journal Entries at Issuance

Cash (price calculated above).....	8,258,532	
Bonds payable (face amount).....		8,000,000
Premium on bonds payable (difference).....		258,532

2. Prepare an amortization schedule that determines interest at the effective rate and record interest on the first interest date, June 30, 2018.

Amortization Schedule

Date	Cash Interest	Effective Interest	Decrease in Balance	Outstanding Balance
	(5.5% × Face amount)	(5% × Outstanding balance)	(Premium reduction)	
1/1/18				8,258,532
6/30/18	440,000	0.05 (8,258,532) = 412,927	27,073	8,231,459
12/31/18	440,000	0.05 (8,231,459) = 411,573	28,427	8,203,032
6/30/19	440,000	0.05 (8,203,032) = 410,152	29,848	8,173,184
12/31/19	440,000	0.05 (8,173,184) = 408,659	31,341	8,141,843
6/30/20	440,000	0.05 (8,141,843) = 407,092	32,908	8,108,935
12/31/20	440,000	0.05 (8,108,935) = 405,447	34,553	8,074,382
6/30/21	440,000	0.05 (8,074,382) = 403,719	36,281	8,038,101
12/31/21	440,000	0.05 (8,038,101) = 401,899*	38,101	8,000,000
	3,520,000	3,261,468	258,532	

*Rounded

Interest expense (5% × \$8,258,532)	412,927	
Premium on bonds payable (difference)	27,073	
Cash (5.5% × \$8,000,000).....		440,000
To record interest for six months.		

More cash is paid each period than the effective interest, so the debt outstanding is reduced by the "overpayment."

Debt Issue Costs

Rather than sell bonds directly to the public, corporations usually sell an entire issue to an underwriter who then resells them to other security dealers and the public. By committing to purchase bonds at a set price, investment banks such as **JPMorgan Chase** and **Goldman Sachs** are said to underwrite any risks associated with a new issue. The underwriting fee is the spread between the price the underwriter pays and the resale price.

Alternatively, the issuing company may choose to sell the debt securities directly to a single investor (as we assumed in previous illustrations)—often a pension fund or an insurance company. This is referred to as *private placement*. Issue costs are less because privately placed securities are not subject to the costly and lengthy process of registering with the SEC that is required of public offerings. Underwriting fees also are avoided.⁴

When issuing bonds or notes, the issuing company will incur costs, such as legal and accounting fees, printing costs, and registration and underwriting fees. These costs are recorded by combining them with any discount (or subtracting them from any premium) on the debt. The combined valuation account is reported in the balance sheet as a direct deduction from the liability and then amortized over the life of the debt.⁵

This approach has the appeal of reflecting the effect that debt issue costs have on the effective interest rate. **Debt issue costs** reduce the cash proceeds from the issuance of debt, so it makes sense that they should reflect a higher cost of borrowing. By deducting debt issue costs, we lower the carrying amount of the debt, which effectively increases the interest rate on that debt. In other words, with debt issue costs, the net amount borrowed is less, but interest payments are the same, so the effective rate of borrowing is higher.

For example, let's assume that in Illustration 14–11, we had debt issue costs of \$14,000. The debt issue costs reduce the net cash the issuing company receives from the issuance of the bonds. The entry for the issuance would reflect the lower net cash proceeds and the higher valuation account for the discount and the debt issue costs:

Masterwear (Issuer)

Cash (\$666,633 price minus \$14,000 issue costs).....	652,633	
Discount and debt issue costs (difference).....	47,367	
Bonds payable (face amount).....		700,000

Costs of issuing debt securities are called “**debt issue costs**” and are accounted for the same way as bond discount.

The price discount and the debt issue costs reduce the cash proceeds from the issuance of the bonds.

Interest expense is determined in the usual way; that is, the effective interest rate times the outstanding balance. The outstanding balance is the “net” liability, the face amount reduced by the discount and debt issue costs (\$652,633 for the first interest period).⁶ The debt issue costs of \$14,000 have the effect of increasing the effective rate from 7% semiannually (as in Illustration 14–4) to 7.4389% semiannually (rounded). To see how the effective rate is determined, see the next Additional Consideration box. The first semiannual interest payment would be recorded as follows:

Interest expense ($652,633 \times 7.4389\%$).....	48,549	
Discount and debt issue costs (difference).....		6,549
Cash ($\$700,000 \times 6\%$ stated rate).....		42,000

The corporate bond is the basic long-term debt instrument for most large companies. But for many firms, the debt instrument often used is a *note*. We discuss notes next.

⁴Rule 144A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, allows for the private resale of unregistered securities to “qualified institutional buyers,” which are generally large institutional investors with assets exceeding \$100 million.

⁵Accounting Standards Update 2015-03: “Interest—Imputation of Interest (Subtopic 835-30) Simplifying the Presentation of Debt Issuance Costs,” FASB, April 2015. This approach is consistent with the treatment of issue costs when equity securities are sold. You will see in Chapter 18 that the effect of share issue costs is to reduce the amount credited to stock accounts. It also is consistent with IFRS.

⁶If we have a premium instead of a discount, the valuation account is the premium reduced by the debt issue costs.

Additional Consideration

One important effect of the debt issue costs is that they reduce the amount of cash Masterwear is borrowing with the bond issuance (from \$666,633 to \$652,633). A lower (net) amount is borrowed at the same cost, making the *effective* interest rate higher than it would be without the debt issue costs. Previously, in Illustration 14–4 when we had no debt issue costs, the effective (market) rate was 14% (7% semiannually). That was the discount rate that caused the present value of the six interest payments and the maturity amount of \$700,000 to be \$666,633. Now, though, the effective rate is the one that would cause the present value of the six interest payments and the maturity amount of \$700,000 to be \$652,633. That annual rate is 14.8778% instead of 14%, and thus is a semiannual rate of 7.4389%, up from 7%. The following amortization schedule demonstrates this:

Cash Payments	Effective Interest	Increase or (decrease) in Balance	Balance
6.0%	7.4389%		
			652,633
42,000	$7.4389\% \times (652,633) = 48,549$	6,549	659,182
42,000	$7.4389\% \times (659,182) = 49,036$	7,036	666,218
42,000	$7.4389\% \times (666,218) = 49,559$	7,559	673,777
42,000	$7.4389\% \times (673,777) = 50,122$	8,122	681,898
42,000	$7.4389\% \times (681,898) = 50,726$	8,726	690,624
42,000	$7.4389\% \times (690,624) = 51,376^*$	9,376	700,000

*Rounded

PART B

• LO14–3

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q4, p. 771

Long-Term Notes

When a company borrows cash from a bank and signs a promissory note (essentially an IOU), the firm's liability is reported as a *note payable*. Or a note might be issued in exchange for a noncash asset—perhaps to purchase equipment on credit. In concept, notes are accounted for in precisely the same way as bonds. In fact, we could properly substitute notes payable for bonds payable in each of our previous illustrations. For comparison, we continue to also present the lenders' entries (in blue) in the illustrations to follow.

As we discuss accounting for the borrower's notes *payable*, we also will consider the lender's perspective and look at notes *receivable* at the same time. By considering both sides of each transaction at the same time, we will see that the two sides are essentially mirror images of one another. This coverage of long-term notes complements our Chapter 7 discussion of *short-term* notes receivable.

Note Issued for Cash

The interest rate stated in a note is likely to be equal to the market rate because the rate usually is negotiated at the time of the loan. So discounts and premiums are less likely for notes than for bonds. Accounting for a note issued for cash is demonstrated in Illustration 14–12.

Note Exchanged for Assets or Services

Occasionally the *stated* interest rate is not indicative of the *market* rate at the time a note is negotiated. The value of the asset (cash or noncash) or service exchanged for the note establishes the market rate.⁷ For example, let's assume Skill Graphics purchased a package-labeling machine from Hughes–Barker Corporation by issuing a 12%, \$700,000, three-year note that requires interest to be paid semiannually. Let's also assume that the machine could have been purchased at a cash price of \$666,633. You probably recognize this numerical situation

⁷If the debt instrument is negotiable and a dependable exchange price is readily available, the market value of the debt may be better evidence of the value of the transaction than the value of a noncash asset, particularly if it has no established cash selling price. The value of the asset or the debt, whichever is considered more reliable, should be used to record the transaction.

Illustration 14-12

Note Issued for Cash

On January 1, 2018, Skill Graphics, Inc., a product-labeling and graphics firm, borrowed \$700,000 cash from First BancCorp and issued a three-year, \$700,000 promissory note. Interest of \$42,000 was payable semiannually on June 30 and December 31.

At Issuance

Skill Graphics (Borrower)		
Cash.....	700,000	
Notes payable (face amount).....		700,000
First BancCorp (Lender)		
Notes receivable (face amount).....	700,000	
Cash.....		700,000

At Each of the Six Interest Dates

Skill Graphics (Borrower)		
Interest expense.....	42,000	
Cash (stated rate \times face amount).....		42,000
First BancCorp (Lender)		
Cash (stated rate \times face amount).....	42,000	
Interest revenue.....		42,000

At Maturity

Skill Graphics (Borrower)		
Notes payable.....	700,000	
Cash (face amount).....		700,000
First BancCorp (Lender)		
Cash (face amount).....	700,000	
Notes receivable.....		700,000

as the one used earlier to illustrate bonds sold at a discount (Illustration 14-3). Reference to the earlier example will confirm that exchanging this \$700,000 note for a machine with a cash price of \$666,633 implies an annual market rate of interest of 14%. That is, 7% is one-half the discount rate that yields a present value of \$666,633 for the note's cash flows (interest plus principal):

Present Values

Interest	\$ 42,000 \times 4.76654* = \$200,195
Principal	\$700,000 \times 0.66634† = 466,438
Present value of the note	\$666,633

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 7\%$.

†Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 7\%$.

This is referred to as the **implicit rate of interest**—the rate implicit in the agreement. It may be that the implicit rate is not apparent. Sometimes the value of the asset (or service) is not readily determinable, but the interest rate stated in the transaction is unrealistic relative to the rate that would be expected in a similar transaction under similar circumstances. Deciding what the appropriate rate should be is called *imputing* an interest rate.

For example, suppose the machine exchanged for the 12% note is custom-made for Skill Graphics so that no customary cash price is available with which to work backwards to find the implicit rate. In that case, the appropriate rate would have to be found externally. It might be determined, for instance, that a more realistic interest rate for a transaction of this type, at this time, would be 14%. Then it would be apparent that Skill Graphics actually paid less than \$700,000 for the machine and that part of the face amount of the note in effect makes up for the lower than normal interest rate. You learned early in your study of accounting that the economic essence of a transaction should prevail over its outward appearance. In keeping with this basic precept, the accountant should look beyond the *form* of this transaction and record its *substance*. The amount actually paid for the machine is the present value of the cash flows called for by the loan agreement, discounted at the market

A basic concept of accounting is substance over form.

rate—imputed in this case to be 14%. So both the asset acquired and the liability used to purchase it should be recorded at the real cost, \$666,633.

Additional Consideration

For another example, let's assume the more realistic interest rate for a transaction of this type is, say, 16%. In that case we would calculate the real cost of the machine by finding the present value of both the interest and the principal, discounted at half the 16% rate (because interest is paid semiannually):

Present Values	
Interest	\$ 42,000 \times 4.62288* = \$ 194,161
Principal	\$700,000 \times 0.63017† = 441,119
Present value of the note	\$ 635,280

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 8\%$.

†Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 8\%$.

Both the asset acquired and the liability used to purchase it would be recorded at \$635,280.

The accounting treatment is the same whether the amount is determined directly from the market value of the machine (and thus the note) or indirectly as the present value of the note (and thus the value of the asset):⁸

Journal Entries at Issuance—Note with Unrealistic Interest Rate

Skill Graphics (Buyer/Issuer)		
Machinery (cash price)	666,633	
Discount on notes payable (difference)	33,367	
Notes payable (face amount)		700,000
Hughes-Barker (Seller/Lender)		
Notes receivable (face amount)	700,000	
Discount on notes receivable (difference)		33,367
Sales revenue (cash price)		666,633

Likewise, whether the effective interest rate is determined as the rate implicit in the agreement, given the asset's market value, or whether the effective rate is imputed as the appropriate interest rate if the asset's value is unknown, both parties to the transaction should record periodic interest (interest expense to the borrower, interest revenue to the lender) at the effective rate, rather than the stated rate.

Journal Entries—The Interest Method

The effective interest (expense to the issuer; revenue to the investor) is calculated each period as the effective rate times the amount of the debt outstanding during the interest period.

At the First Interest Date (June 30)		
Skill Graphics (Borrower)		
Interest expense (effective rate \times outstanding balance)	46,664	
Discount on notes payable (difference)		4,664
Cash (stated rate \times face amount)		42,000
Hughes-Barker (Seller/Lender)		
Cash (stated rate \times face amount)	42,000	
Discount on notes receivable (difference)	4,664	
Interest revenue (effective rate \times outstanding balance)		46,664

⁸The method shown is the *gross method*. Alternatively, the *net method* can be used as follows:

Skill Graphics (Buyer/Issuer)		
Machinery (cash price)	666,633	
Notes payable		666,633
Hughes-Barker (Seller/Lender)		
Notes receivable	666,633	
Sales revenue (cash price)		666,633

Under the net method, the note is recorded at the face amount reduced by the discount on notes payable, which is the difference between face value and present value. As cash interest is paid, the note balance increases by the difference between the cash interest payment and the interest revenue (and interest expense). After the last payment, the note account balance will be equal to the face amount of the note.

The interest expense (interest revenue for the lender) varies as the balance of the note changes over time. See the amortization schedule in Illustration 14–13.⁹ Be sure to notice that this amortization schedule is identical to the one in Illustration 14–6 for bonds issued at a discount.

Date	Cash Interest	Effective Interest	Increase in Balance	Outstanding Balance
	(6% × Face amount)	(7% × Outstanding balance)	(Discount reduction)	
1/1/18				666,633
6/30/18	42,000	0.07 (666,633) = 46,664	4,664	671,297
12/31/18	42,000	0.07 (671,297) = 46,991	4,991	676,288
6/30/19	42,000	0.07 (676,288) = 47,340	5,340	681,628
12/31/19	42,000	0.07 (681,628) = 47,714	5,714	687,342
6/30/20	42,000	0.07 (687,342) = 48,114	6,114	693,456
12/31/20	42,000	0.07 (693,456) = 48,544*	6,544	700,000
	252,000	285,367	33,367	

*Rounded

Illustration 14–13

Amortization
Schedule—Note

Since less cash is paid each period than the effective interest, the unpaid difference (the discount reduction) increases the outstanding balance (book value) of the note.

Installment Notes

You may have recently purchased a car, or maybe a house. If so, unless you paid cash, you signed a note promising to pay a portion of the purchase price over, say, five years for the car, or 30 years for the house. Car and house notes usually call for payment in monthly installments rather than by a single amount at maturity. Corporations, too, often borrow using installment notes. Typically, installment payments are equal amounts each period. Each payment includes both an amount that represents interest and an amount that represents a reduction of the outstanding balance (principal reduction). The periodic reduction of the balance is sufficient that at maturity the note is completely paid. This amount is easily calculated by dividing the amount of the loan by the appropriate discount factor for the present value of an annuity. The installment payment amount that would pay the note described in the previous section is:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \$666,633 & \div & 4.76654 = \$139,857 \\ \text{Amount of loan} & \text{(from Table 4)} & \text{Installment} \\ & n = 6, i = 7.0\% & \text{payment} \end{array}$$

Consider Illustration 14–14.

Date	Cash Payment	Effective Interest	Decrease in Debt	Outstanding Balance
		(7% × Outstanding balance)		
1/1/18				666,633
6/30/18	139,857	0.07 (666,633) = 46,664	93,193	573,440
12/31/18	139,857	0.07 (573,440) = 40,141	99,716	473,724
6/30/19	139,857	0.07 (473,724) = 33,161	106,696	367,028
12/31/19	139,857	0.07 (367,028) = 25,692	114,165	252,863
6/30/20	139,857	0.07 (252,863) = 17,700	122,157	130,706
12/31/20	139,857	0.07 (130,706) = 9,151*	130,706	0
	839,142	172,509	666,633	

*Rounded

Illustration 14–14

Amortization Schedule—
Installment Note

Each installment payment includes interest on the outstanding debt at the effective rate. The remainder of each payment reduces the outstanding balance.

⁹The creation of amortization schedules is simplified by an electronic spreadsheet such as Microsoft Excel.

For installment notes, the outstanding balance of the note does not eventually become its face amount as it does for notes with designated maturity amounts. Instead, at the maturity date the balance is zero. The procedure is the same as for a note whose principal is paid at maturity, but the periodic cash payments are larger and there is no lump-sum payment at maturity. We calculated the amount of the payments so that after covering the interest on the existing debt each period, the excess would exactly amortize the debt to zero at maturity (rather than to a designated maturity amount).

Consequently, the significance is lost of maintaining separate balances for the face amount (in a note account) and the discount (or premium). So an installment note typically is recorded at its net book value in a single note payable (or receivable) account:

Journal Entries at Issuance—Installment Note

Skill Graphics (Buyer/Issuer)

Machinery	666,633	
Note payable		666,633

Hughes-Barker (Seller/Lender)

Note receivable	666,633	
Sales revenue		666,633

Each payment includes both an amount that represents interest and an amount that represents a reduction of principal.

At the First Interest Date (June 30)

Skill Graphics (Borrower)

Interest expense (effective rate \times outstanding balance)	46,664	
Notes payable (difference)	93,193	
Cash (installment payment calculated above)		139,857

Hughes-Barker (Seller/Lender)

Cash (installment payment calculated above)	139,857	
Notes receivable (difference)		93,193
Interest revenue (effective rate \times outstanding balance)		46,664

Additional Consideration

You will learn in the next chapter that the liability associated with a lease is accounted for the same way as this installment note. In fact, if the asset described above had been leased rather than purchased, the cash payments would be designated lease payments rather than installment loan payments, and a virtually identical amortization schedule would apply.

The reason for the similarity is that we view a finance lease as being, in substance, equivalent to an installment purchase of the right to use an asset. Naturally, then, accounting treatment of the two essentially identical transactions should be consistent. Be sure to notice the parallel treatment as you study leases in the next chapter.

Financial Statement Disclosures

● LO14-4

In the balance sheet, long-term debt (liability for the debtor; asset for the creditor) typically is reported as a single amount, net of any discount or increased by any premium, rather than at its face amount accompanied by a separate valuation account for the discount or premium. Any portion of the debt to be paid (received) during the upcoming year, or operating cycle if longer, should be reported as a current amount.

The fair value of financial instruments must be disclosed either in the body of the financial statements or in disclosure notes.¹⁰ These fair values are available for bonds and other securities traded on market exchanges in the form of quoted market prices. On the other hand, financial instruments not traded on market exchanges require other evidence of market value. For example, the market value of a note payable might be approximated by the

Note disclosure is required of the fair value of bonds, notes, and other financial instruments.

¹⁰FASB ASC 825-10-50-10: Financial Instruments—Overall—Disclosure (previously “Disclosures About Fair Values of Financial Instruments,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 107* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1991)).

present value of principal and interest payments using a current discount rate commensurate with the risks involved.

The disclosure note for debt includes the nature of the company's liabilities, interest rates, maturity dates, call provisions, conversion options, restrictions imposed by creditors, and any assets pledged as collateral. For all long-term borrowings, disclosures also should include the aggregate amounts payable for each of the next five years. To comply, **Microsoft**'s annual report for the fiscal year ended June 30, 2015, included the disclosure shown in Illustration 14–15.

Maturities of our long-term debt for each of the next five years and thereafter are as follows:

Year Ending June 30,	(\$ in millions)
2016	\$ 2,500
2017	0
2018	1,050
2019	2,250
2020	1,500
Thereafter	23,163
Total	\$30,463

Illustration 14–15

Debt Disclosures—
Microsoft Corporation
Real World Financials

In a statement of cash flows, issuing bonds or notes are reported as cash flows from financing activities by the issuer (borrower) and cash flows from investing activities by the investor (lender). Similarly, as the debt is repaid, the issuer (borrower) reports a financing activity while the investor (lender) reports an investing activity. However, because both interest expense and interest revenue are components of the income statement, both parties to the transaction report interest among operating activities. We discuss the cash flow reporting process in more depth in Chapter 21.

Borrowing is a financing activity; lending is an investing activity.

Paying or receiving interest is an operating activity.

Decision Makers' Perspective

Business decisions involve risk. Failure to properly consider risk in those decisions is one of the most costly, yet one of the most common mistakes investors and creditors can make. Long-term debt is one of the first places decision makers should look when trying to get a handle on risk.

In general, debt increases risk. As an owner, debt would place you in a subordinate position relative to creditors because the claims of creditors must be satisfied first in case of liquidation. In addition, debt requires payment, usually on specific dates. Failure to pay debt interest and principal on a timely basis may result in default and perhaps even bankruptcy. The debt to equity ratio, total liabilities divided by shareholders' equity, often is calculated to measure the degree of risk. Other things being equal, the higher the debt to equity ratio, the higher the risk. The type of risk this ratio measures is called *default risk* because it presumably indicates the likelihood a company will default on its obligations.

Generally speaking, debt increases risk.

Debt also can be an advantage. It can be used to enhance the return to shareholders. This concept, known as leverage, was described and illustrated in Chapter 3. If a company earns a return on borrowed funds in excess of the cost of borrowing the funds, shareholders are provided with a total return greater than what could have been earned with equity funds alone. This desirable situation is called *favorable financial leverage*. Unfortunately, leverage is not always favorable. Sometimes the cost of borrowing the funds exceeds the returns they generate. This illustrates the typical risk-return trade-off faced by shareholders.

To evaluate a firm's risk, you might start by calculating its debt to equity ratio.

As a manager, you would try to create favorable financial leverage to earn a return on borrowed funds in excess of the cost of borrowing the funds.

Creditors demand interest payments as compensation for the use of their capital. Failure to pay interest as scheduled may cause several adverse consequences, including bankruptcy. Therefore, another way to measure a company's ability to pay its obligations is by comparing interest payments with income available to pay those charges. The times interest earned ratio does this by dividing income, before subtracting interest expense or income tax expense, by interest expense.

As an external analyst or a manager, you are concerned with a company's ability to repay debt.

Two points about this ratio are important. First, because interest is deductible for income tax purposes, income before interest and taxes is a better indication of a company's ability to

pay interest than is income after interest and taxes (i.e., net income). Second, income before interest and taxes is a rough approximation for cash flow generated from operations. The primary concern of decision makers is, of course, the cash available to make interest payments. In fact, this ratio often is computed by dividing cash flow generated from operations by interest payments.

For illustration, let's compare the ratios for **Coca-Cola** and **PepsiCo**. Illustration 14–16 provides condensed financial statements adapted from 2015 annual reports of those companies.

Illustration 14–16

Condensed Financial
Statements—Coca-Cola,
PepsiCo

Real World Financials

Balance Sheets		
	(\$ in millions)	
	Coca-Cola	PepsiCo
Assets		
Current assets	\$33,395	\$23,031
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	12,571	16,317
Intangibles and other assets	44,127	30,319
Total assets	<u>\$90,093</u>	<u>\$69,667</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Current liabilities	\$26,930	\$17,578
Long-term liabilities	37,399	40,059
Total liabilities	<u>\$64,329</u>	<u>\$57,637</u>
Shareholders' equity	25,764	12,030
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$90,093</u>	<u>\$69,667</u>
Income Statements		
Net sales	\$44,294	\$63,056
Cost of goods sold	(17,482)	(28,384)
Gross profit	<u>\$26,812</u>	<u>\$34,672</u>
Operating and other expenses	(16,366)	(26,309)
Interest expense	(856)	(970)
Income before taxes	<u>\$ 9,590</u>	<u>\$ 7,393</u>
Tax expense	(2,239)	(1,941)
Net income	<u>\$ 7,351</u>	<u>\$ 5,452</u>

The debt to equity ratio is much higher for PepsiCo:

$$\text{Debt to equity ratio} = \frac{\text{Total liabilities}}{\text{Shareholders' equity}}$$

$$\text{Coca-Cola} = \frac{\$64,329}{\$25,764} = 2.5$$

$$\text{PepsiCo} = \frac{\$57,637}{\$12,030} = 4.8$$

Remember, that's not necessarily a positive or a negative. Let's look closer. When the return on shareholders' equity is greater than the return on assets, management is using debt funds to enhance the earnings for shareholders. Both firms do this. We calculate return on assets for 2015 as follows:

$$\text{Rate of return on assets}^{11} = \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Total assets}}$$

$$\text{Coca-Cola} = \frac{\$7,351}{\$90,093} = 8.2\%$$

$$\text{PepsiCo} = \frac{\$5,452}{\$69,667} = 7.8\%$$

The debt to equity ratio indicates the extent of trading on the equity, or financial leverage.

The rate of return on assets indicates profitability without regard to how resources are financed.

¹¹A more accurate way to calculate this ratio is: Rate of return on assets = Net income + Interest expense (1 – tax rate) ÷ Average total assets. The reason for adding back interest expense (net of tax) is that interest represents a return to suppliers of debt capital and should not be deducted in the computation of net income when computing the return on total assets. In other words, the numerator is the total amount of income available to both debt and equity capital.

The return on assets indicates a company's overall profitability, ignoring specific sources of financing. In this regard, Coca-Cola's profitability is slightly higher than PepsiCo's. That advantage, though, disappears when we compare the return to shareholders:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Rate of return on shareholder's equity} &= \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Shareholder's equity}} \\ \text{Coca-Cola} &= \frac{\$7,351}{\$25,764} = 28.5\% \\ \text{PepsiCo} &= \frac{\$5,452}{\$12,030} = 45.3\%\end{aligned}$$

The rate of return on shareholders' equity indicates the effectiveness of employing resources provided by owners.

Coca-Cola's return on assets is 5% higher than PepsiCo's, but its return on shareholders' equity is 37% less. The reason is that higher leverage has been used by Pepsi to provide a relatively greater return to shareholders. PepsiCo increased its return to shareholders 5.8 times (45.3% / 7.8%) the return on assets. Coca-Cola increased its return to shareholders 3.5 times (28.5% / 8.2%) the return on assets. Interpret this with caution, though. PepsiCo's higher leverage means higher risk as well. In down times, PepsiCo's return to shareholders will suffer proportionally more than will Coca-Cola's.

From the perspective of a creditor, we might look at which company offers the most comfortable margin of safety in terms of its ability to pay fixed interest charges:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Times interest earned ratio} &= \frac{\text{Net income plus interest plus taxes}}{\text{Interest}} \\ \text{Coca-Cola} &= \frac{\$7,351 + 856 + 2,239}{\$856} = 12.2 \text{ times} \\ \text{PepsiCo} &= \frac{\$5,452 + 970 + 1,941}{\$970} = 8.6 \text{ times}\end{aligned}$$

The times interest earned ratio indicates the margin of safety provided to creditors.

In this regard, Coca-Cola provides a greater margin of safety. And, Pepsi has more debt in its capital structure relative to Coca-Cola. However, Pepsi clearly is able to pay the cost of borrowing and provide an impressive return to its shareholders. Both firms, though, trade quite favorably on their leverage.

Liabilities also can have misleading effects on the income statement. Decision makers should look carefully at gains and losses produced by early extinguishment of debt. These have nothing to do with a company's normal operating activities. Unchecked, corporate management can be tempted to schedule debt buybacks to provide discretionary income in down years or even losses in up years to smooth income over time.

Decision makers should be alert to gains and losses that have nothing to do with a company's normal operating activities.

Alert investors and lenders also look outside the financial statements for risks associated with "off-balance-sheet" financing and other commitments that don't show up on the face of financial statements but nevertheless expose a company to risk. Relatedly, most companies attempt to actively manage the risk associated with these and other obligations. It is important for top management to understand and closely monitor risk management strategies. Some of the financial losses that have grabbed headlines in recent years were permitted by a lack of oversight and scrutiny by senior management of companies involved. It is similarly important for investors and creditors to become informed about risks companies face and how well-equipped those companies are in managing that risk. The supplemental disclosures designed to communicate the degree of risk associated with the financial instruments we discuss in this chapter contribute to that understanding. We examine the significance of lease commitments in the next chapter. ●

Outside analysts as well as managers should actively monitor risk management activities.

Concept Review Exercise

Cameron-Brown, Inc., constructed for Harmon Distributors a warehouse that was completed and ready for occupancy on January 2, 2018. Harmon paid for the warehouse by issuing a \$900,000, four-year note that required 7% interest to be paid on December 31 of each year. The warehouse was custom-built for Harmon, so its cash price was not known. By comparison with similar transactions, it was determined that an appropriate interest rate was 10%.

NOTE WITH AN UNREALISTIC INTEREST RATE

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry for Harmon's purchase of the warehouse on January 2, 2018.
2. Prepare (a) an amortization schedule for the four-year term of the note and (b) the journal entry for Harmon's first interest payment on December 31, 2018.
3. Suppose Harmon's note had been an installment note to be paid in four equal payments. What would be the amount of each installment if payable (a) at the end of each year, beginning December 31, 2018? or (b) at the beginning of each year, beginning on January 2, 2018?

Solution:

1. Prepare the journal entry for Harmon's purchase of the warehouse on January 2, 2018.

Present Values	
Interest	\$ 63,000 × 3.16987* = \$199,702
Principal	\$900,000 × 0.68301† = 614,709
Present value of the note	\$814,411

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 4$, $i = 10\%$.

†Present value of \$1: $n = 4$, $i = 10\%$.

Warehouse (price determined above)	814,411	
Discount on notes payable (difference)	85,589	
Notes payable (face amount)		900,000

2. Prepare (a) an amortization schedule for the four-year term of the note and (b) the journal entry for Harmon's first interest payment on December 31, 2018.

Each period the unpaid interest increases the outstanding balance of the debt.

Dec. 31	Cash (7% × Face amount)	Effective Interest (10% × Outstanding balance)	Increase in Balance (Discount reduction)	Outstanding Balance
				814,411
2018	63,000	0.10 (814,411) = 81,441	18,441	832,852
2019	63,000	0.10 (832,852) = 83,285	20,285	853,137
2020	63,000	0.10 (853,137) = 85,314	22,314	875,451
2021	63,000	0.10 (875,451) = 87,549*	24,549	900,000
	<u>252,000</u>	<u>337,589</u>	<u>85,589</u>	

*Rounded

The effective interest is the market rate times the amount of the debt outstanding during the year.

Interest expense (effective rate × outstanding balance)	81,441	
Discount on notes payable (difference)		18,441
Cash (stated rate × face amount)		63,000

Because money has a time value, installment payments delayed until the end of each period must be higher than if the payments are made at the beginning of each period.

3. Suppose Harmon's note had been an installment note to be paid in four equal payments. What would be the amount of each installment if payable (a) at the end of each year, beginning December 31, 2018? or (b) at the beginning of each year, beginning on January 2, 2018?

$$\begin{array}{lclcl} \text{a.} & \$814,411 & \div & 3.16987 & = & \$256,923 \\ & \text{Amount of loan} & & \text{(from Table 4 } n = 4, i = 10\%) & & \text{Installment payment} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{lclcl} \text{b.} & \mathbf{\$814,411} & \div & 3.48685 & = & \$233,566 \\ & \text{Amount of loan} & & \text{(from Table 6 } n = 4, i = 10\%) & & \text{Installment payment} \end{array}$$

Debt Retired Early, Convertible Into Stock, or Providing an Option to Buy Stock

PART C

Early Extinguishment of Debt

As we saw in the previous section, debt paid in installments is systematically retired over the term to maturity so that at the designated maturity date the outstanding balance is zero. On the other hand, when a maturity amount is specified as in our earlier illustrations, any discount or premium has been systematically reduced to zero as of the maturity date and the debt is retired simply by paying the maturity amount. Sometimes, though, companies choose to retire debt before its scheduled maturity. In that case, a gain or a loss may result.

Earlier we noted that a call feature accompanies most bonds to protect the issuer against declining interest rates. Even when bonds are not callable, the issuing company can retire bonds early by purchasing them on the open market. Regardless of the method, when debt of any type is retired prior to its scheduled maturity date, the transaction is referred to as **early extinguishment of debt**.

To record the extinguishment, the account balances pertinent to the debt obviously must be removed from the books. Of course cash is credited for the amount paid—the call price or market price. The difference between the book value of the debt and the reacquisition price represents either a gain or a loss on the early extinguishment of debt. When the debt is retired for less than book value, the debtor is in a favorable position and records a gain. The opposite occurs for a loss. Let's continue an earlier example to illustrate the retirement of debt prior to its scheduled maturity (Illustration 14–17).

LO14–5

Any difference between the outstanding debt and the amount paid to retire that debt represents either a gain or a loss.

On January 1, 2019, Masterwear Industries called its \$700,000, 12% bonds when their book value was \$676,288. The indenture specified a call price of \$685,000. The bonds were issued previously at a price to yield 14%.

Bonds payable (face amount)	700,000
Loss on early extinguishment (\$685,000 – 676,288)	8,712
Discount on bonds payable (\$700,000 – 676,288)	23,712
Cash (call price)	685,000

Illustration 14–17

Early Extinguishment of Debt

For instance, in its 2015 income statement, **Levi Strauss & Co.** reported a \$20.3 million loss on the early extinguishment of debt.

Convertible Bonds

Sometimes corporations include a convertible feature as part of a bond offering. **Convertible bonds** can be converted into (that is, exchanged for) shares of stock at the option of the bondholder. Among the reasons for issuing convertible bonds rather than straight debt are (a) to sell the bonds at a higher price (which means a lower effective interest cost),¹² (b) to use as a medium of exchange in mergers and acquisitions, and (c) to enable smaller firms or debt-heavy companies to obtain access to the bond market. Sometimes convertible bonds serve as an indirect way to issue stock when there is shareholder resistance to direct issuance of additional equity.

Central to each of these reasons for issuing convertible debt is that the conversion feature is attractive to investors. This hybrid security has features of both debt and equity. The owner has a fixed-income security that can become common stock if and when the firm's prosperity makes that feasible. This increases the investor's upside potential while limiting the downside risk. The conversion feature has monetary value. Just how valuable it is depends on both the conversion terms and market conditions. But from an accounting perspective the question raised is how to account for its value. To evaluate the question, consider Illustration 14–18.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q5, p. 771

Convertible bonds can be exchanged for shares of stock at the option of the investor.

Convertible bonds have features of both debt and equity.

¹²Remember, there is an inverse relationship between bond prices and interest rates. When the price is higher, the rate (yield) is lower, and vice versa.

Illustration 14–18

Convertible Bonds

Because of the inseparability of their debt and equity features, the entire issue price of convertible bonds is recorded as debt, as if they are nonconvertible bonds.

Journal Entry at Issuance—Convertible Bonds

On January 1, 2018, HTL Manufacturers issued \$100 million of 8% convertible debentures due 2038 at 103 (103% of face value). The bonds are convertible at the option of the holder into no par common stock at a conversion ratio of 40 shares per \$1,000 bond. HTL recently issued nonconvertible, 20-year, 8% debentures at 98.

It would appear that the conversion feature is valued by the market at \$5 million—the difference between the market value of the convertible bonds, \$103 million, and the market value of the nonconvertible bonds, \$98 million. Some accountants argue that we should record the value of the conversion option in a shareholders' equity account (\$5 million in this case) and the debt value in the bond accounts (\$100 million bonds payable less \$2 million discount). However, counter to that intuitive argument, the currently accepted practice is to record the entire issue price as debt in precisely the same way as for nonconvertible bonds.¹³ Treating the features as two inseparable parts of a single security avoids the practical difficulty of trying to measure the separate values of the debt and the conversion option.

	(\$ in millions)
Cash (103% × \$100 million)	103
Convertible bonds payable (face amount)	100
Premium on bonds payable (difference)	3

The value of the conversion feature is not separately recorded.

Since we make no provision for the separate value of the conversion option, all subsequent entries, including the periodic reduction of the premium, are exactly the same as if these were nonconvertible bonds. So the illustrations and examples of bond accounting we discussed earlier would pertain equally to nonconvertible or convertible bonds.

Additional Consideration

While we normally don't separate the conversion option from the debt for convertible bonds, an exception is when the conversion option is deemed to be a "beneficial conversion feature." That's the case when the conversion option has a positive "intrinsic value" at the time the bonds are issued, meaning the fair value of the stock into which the bonds are convertible exceeds the face amount of the bonds.¹⁴ Suppose, for instance, that HTL's stock in Illustration 14–18 has a fair value of \$30 per share when the bonds are issued. This implies an intrinsic value of the conversion feature of **\$5** per share:

Price per share to convert: \$1,000 ÷ 40 shares = \$25 per share	
Fair value of stock at issue date	\$30
Conversion price for shares	25
Intrinsic value of beneficial conversion option per share	\$ 5

Intrinsic value of beneficial conversion feature:

100,000 bonds × 40 shares = 4,000,000 shares × **\$5** per share = **\$20,000,000**

The intrinsic value of the conversion option is recorded separately:

	(\$ in millions)
Cash (103% × \$100 million)	103
Discount on bonds (to balance)	17
Convertible bonds payable (face amount)	100
Equity—conversion option (intrinsic value)	20

¹³FASB ASC 470–20–25: Debt—Debt with Conversion Options—Recognition (previously "Accounting for Convertible Debt and Debt Issued with Stock Purchase Warrants," *Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 14* (New York: APB, 1969)).

¹⁴FASB ASC 470–20–25–5: Debt—Debt with Conversion and Other Options—Recognition—Beneficial Conversion Features (previously "Accounting for Convertible Securities with Beneficial Conversion Features or Contingently Adjustable Conversion Ratios," *EITF Issue No. 98-5* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1998)).

Where We're Headed



Accounting for convertible debt is likely to change. In fact, the FASB and IASB have worked on a joint project on “Financial Instruments with Characteristics of Equity.”¹⁵ A pre-Codification FASB Staff Position gives us another hint, perhaps, of the direction the project might take. For a limited subset of convertible securities not within the scope of current GAAP—those that could possibly be settled in cash rather than shares—companies must divide the proceeds from convertible securities into its two components and record the fair value of the debt as a liability and the conversion option in an equity account. Lending credence to that projection is the fact that international standards already require that convertible debt be divided into its liability and equity elements, so moving in that direction would be a step closer to convergence of U.S. GAAP and IFRS.

International Financial Reporting Standards



Convertible bonds. Under IFRS, unlike U.S. GAAP, convertible debt is divided into its liability and equity elements. In Illustration 14–18, if HTL prepared its financial statements in accordance with IFRS, it would record the convertible bonds as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
Cash ($103\% \times \$100$ million)	103
Convertible bonds payable (value of the debt only)	98*
Equity—conversion option (to balance)	5

*Notice that the discount is combined with the face amount of the bonds. This is the “net method”. Using the “gross method” we would credit Convertible bonds payable \$100 and debit Discount on bonds \$2.

In essence, HTL is selling two securities—(1) bonds and (2) an option to convert to stock—for one package price. The bonds represent a liability; the option is shareholders’ equity. Compound instruments such as this one are separated into their liability and equity components in accordance with IAS No. 32.¹⁶ Because the bonds have a separate fair value of \$98 million, we record that amount as the liability and the remaining \$5 million (the difference between the fair value of the convertible bonds, \$103 million, and the \$98 million) as equity. If the fair value of the bonds cannot be determined from an active trading market, that value can be calculated as the present value of the bonds’ cash flows, using the market rate of interest.

Journal Entry at Issuance—Convertible Bonds

● LO14–7

The components of compound financial instruments such as convertible bonds are valued and reported separately under IFRS.

When the Conversion Option Is Exercised

If and when the bondholder exercises his or her option to convert the bonds into shares of stock, the bonds are removed from the accounting records and the new shares issued are recorded at the same amount (in other words, at the book value of the bonds). To illustrate, assume that half the convertible bonds issued by HTL Manufacturers are converted at a time when the remaining unamortized premium is \$2 million:

	(\$ in millions)
Convertible bonds payable (½ the account balance)	50
Premium on bonds payable (½ the account balance)	1
Common stock (to balance)	51

Journal Entry at Conversion

¹⁵The Boards developed a classification model that includes consideration of which financial instruments might be divided into separate components of liabilities and equity. In its tentative decisions reached earlier, the Boards had decided that “A bond (or other debt instrument) should be separated into a liability component and an equity component if it is convertible at the option of the holder into a specified number of instruments that will be equity in their entirety when issued.” That project is classified as “inactive” as of the time this textbook was printed.

¹⁶“Financial Statements: Presentation,” *International Accounting Standard (IAS) No. 32* (IASCF) as amended effective January 1, 2016.

Additional Consideration

The method just described is referred to as the *book value method*, since the new shares are recorded at the book value of the redeemed bonds. It is by far the most popular method in practice. Another acceptable approach, the *market value method*, records the new shares at the market value of the shares themselves or of the bonds, whichever is more determinable. Because the market value most likely will differ from the book value of the bonds, a gain or loss on conversion will result. Assume for illustration that the market value of HTL's stock is **\$30** per share at the time of the conversion:

	(\$ in millions)
Convertible bonds payable (½ the account balance)	50
Premium on bonds payable (½ the account balance)	1
Loss on conversion of bonds (to balance)	9
Common stock [(50,000 bonds × 40 shares) × \$30]	60

If the 50,000 convertible bonds were held by a single investor, that company would record the conversion as follows:

The 2 million shares issued are recorded at the \$51 million book value of the bonds retired.

	(\$ in millions)
Investment in common stock	51
Investment in convertible bonds (account balance)	50
Premium on bond investment (account balance)	1

Induced Conversion

Investors often are reluctant to convert bonds to stock, even when share prices have risen significantly since the convertible bonds were purchased. This is because the market price of the convertible bonds will rise along with market prices of the stock. So companies sometimes try to induce conversion. The motivation might be to reduce debt and become a better risk to potential lenders or achieve a lower debt-to-equity ratio.

One way is through the call provision. As we noted earlier, most corporate bonds are callable by the issuing corporation. When the specified call price is less than the conversion value of the bonds (the market value of the shares), calling the convertible bonds provides bondholders with incentive to convert. Bondholders will choose the shares rather than the lower call price.

Occasionally, corporations may try to encourage voluntary conversion by offering an added inducement in the form of cash, stock warrants, or a more attractive conversion ratio. When additional consideration is provided to induce conversion, the fair value of that consideration is considered an expense incurred to bring about the conversion.¹⁷

Any additional consideration provided to induce conversion of convertible debt is recorded as an expense of the period.

Bonds with Detachable Warrants

Another (less common) way to sweeten a bond issue is to include **detachable stock purchase warrants** as part of the security issue. A stock warrant gives the investor an option to purchase a stated number of shares of common stock at a specified *option price*, often within a given period of time. Like a conversion feature, warrants usually mean a lower interest rate and often enable a company to issue debt when borrowing would not be feasible otherwise.

However, unlike the conversion feature for convertible bonds, warrants can be separated from the bonds. This means they can be exercised independently or traded in the market separately from bonds, having their own market price. In essence, two different securities—the bonds and the warrants—are sold as a package for a single issue price. Accordingly, the

¹⁷FASB ASC 470–20–40: Debt–Debt with Conversion Options–Derecognition (previously “Induced Conversions of Convertible Debt,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 84* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1985)).

issue price is allocated between the two different securities on the basis of their fair values. If the independent market value of only one of the two securities is reliably determinable, that value establishes the allocation. This is demonstrated in Illustration 14–19.

On January 1, 2018, HTL Manufacturers issued \$100 million of 8% debentures due 2022 at 103 (103% of face value). Accompanying each \$1,000 bond were 20 warrants. Each warrant permitted the holder to buy one share of no par common stock at \$25 per share. Shortly after issuance, the warrants were listed on the stock exchange at **\$3 per warrant**.

	(\$ in millions)
Cash (103% × \$100 million)	103
Discount on bonds payable (difference)	3
Bonds payable (face amount)	100
Equity—stock warrants* (100,000 bonds × 20 warrants × \$3)	6

*Reported as part of shareholders' equity rather than as a liability.

Illustration 14–19

Bonds with Detachable Warrants

The issue price of bonds with detachable warrants is allocated between the two different securities on the basis of their fair values.

Additional Consideration

Market imperfections may cause the separate market values not to sum to the issue price of the package. In this event, allocation is achieved on the basis of the **relative market values** of the two securities. Let's say the bonds have a separate market price of \$940 per bond (priced at 94):

Market Values	Dollars (\$ in millions)	Percent
Bonds (100,000 bonds × \$940)	\$ 94	94%
Warrants (100,000 bonds × 20 warrants × \$3)	6	6
Total	\$100	100%

Proportion of Issue Price Allocated to Bonds:

$$\$103 \text{ million} \times 94\% = \$96,820,000$$

Proportion of Issue Price Allocated to Warrants:

$$\$103 \text{ million} \times 6\% = \$6,180,000$$

	(\$ in millions)
Cash (103% × \$100 million)	103.00
Discount on bonds payable (\$100 million – \$96.82 million)	3.18
Bonds payable (face amount)	100.00
Equity—stock warrants (\$103 million × 6% = \$6,180,000)	6.18

Notice that this is the same approach we used in Chapter 10 to allocate a single purchase price to two or more assets bought for that single price. We also will allocate the total selling price of two equity securities sold for a single issue in proportion to their relative market values in Chapter 18.

If one-half of the warrants (1 million) in Illustration 14–19 are exercised when the market value of HTL's common stock is \$30 per share, 1 million shares would be issued for one warrant each plus the exercise price of \$25 per share.

	(\$ in millions)
Cash (1,000,000 warrants × \$25)	25
Equity—stock warrants (1,000,000 warrants × \$3)	3
Common stock (to balance)	28

Journal Entry at Exercise of Detachable Warrants

The \$30 market value at the date of exercise is not used in valuing the additional shares issued. The new shares are recorded at the total of the previously measured values of both the warrants and the shares.

Concept Review Exercise

ISSUANCE AND EARLY EXTINGUISHMENT OF DEBT

The disclosure notes to the 2018 financial statements of Olswanger Industries included the following:

NOTE 12: BONDS

On September 15, 2017, the Corporation sold bonds with an aggregate principal amount of \$500,000,000 bearing a 14% interest rate. The bonds will mature on September 15, 2027, and are unsecured subordinated obligations of the Corporation. Interest is payable semiannually on March 15 and September 15. The Corporation may redeem the bonds at any time beginning September 15, 2017, as a whole or from time to time in part, through maturity, at specified redemption prices ranging from 112% of principal in declining percentages of principal amount through 2024 when the percentage is set at 100% of principal amount. The cost of issuing the bonds, totaling \$11,000,000, and the discount of \$5,000,000 are being amortized over the life of the bonds. Amortization of these items for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$1,212,000.

During the year ended December 31, 2018, the Corporation repurchased, in open market transactions, \$200,000,000 in face amount of the bonds for \$219,333,000. The unamortized cost of issuing these bonds and the unamortized discount, totaling \$5,864,000 have been deducted in the current period.

From the information provided by Olswanger in Note 12, you should be able to recreate some of the journal entries the company recorded in connection with this bond issue.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry for the issuance of these bonds on September 15, 2017.
2. Prepare the journal entry for the repurchase of these bonds, assuming the date of repurchase was September 15, 2018. The cash paid to repurchase the bonds was \$219,333,000.

Solution:

1. Prepare the journal entry for the issuance of these bonds on September 15, 2017.

	(\$ in thousands)
Cash (to balance).....	484,000
Discount and debt issue costs (given in note).....	16,000
Bonds payable (face amount—given in note).....	500,000

2. Prepare the journal entry for the repurchase of these bonds, assuming the date of repurchase was September 15, 2018.

	(\$ in thousands)
Bonds payable (face amount repurchased).....	200,000
Loss on early extinguishment (to balance).....	25,197
Discount and debt issue costs (given in note).....	5,864
Cash (given in requirement 2).....	219,333

PART D

LO14-6

A company has the option to value financial assets and liabilities at fair value.

Option to Report Liabilities at Fair Value

Companies are not required to, but have the option to, value some or all of their financial assets and liabilities at fair value.¹⁸ In Chapter 12, we saw examples of the option applied to financial assets—specifically, companies reporting their investments in securities at fair value. Now, we see how liabilities, too, can be reported at fair value.

¹⁸FASB ASC 825-10-25-1: Financial Instruments—Overall—Recognition—Fair Value Option (previously “The Fair Value Option for Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 159* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2007)).

How does a liability's fair value change? Remember that there are two sides to every investment. For example, if a company has an investment in **General Motors'** bonds, that investment is an asset to the investor, and the same bonds are a liability to GM. So, the same market forces that influence the fair value of an investment in debt securities (interest rates, credit risk, etc.) influence the fair value of liabilities. For bank loans or other debts that aren't traded on a market exchange, the mix of factors will differ, but in any case, changes in the current market rate of interest often are a major contributor to changes in fair value.

Determining Fair Value

For demonstration, we revisit the Masterwear Industries bonds that sold at a discount in Illustration 14–3. Now, suppose it's six months later, the market rate of interest has fallen to 11%, and June 30 is the end of Masterwear's fiscal year. A decline in market interest rates means bond prices rise. Let's say that checking market prices in *The Wall Street Journal* indicates that the fair value of the Masterwear bonds on June 30, 2018, is **\$714,943**. Referring to the amortization schedule, we see that on the same date, with five periods remaining to maturity, the present value of the bonds—their price—would have been \$671,297 if the market rate still had been 14% (7% semiannually).

Changes in interest rates cause changes in the fair value of liabilities.

Additional Consideration

If the bonds are not traded on an open-market exchange, their fair value would not be readily observable. In that case, the next most preferable way to determine fair value would be to calculate the fair value as the present value of the remaining cash flows discounted at the current interest rate. If the rate is 11% (5.5% semiannually),¹⁹ as we're assuming now, that present value would be \$714,943:

	Present Values
Interest	\$ 42,000 × 4.27028* = \$179,352
Principal	\$700,000 × 0.76513† = 535,591
Present value of the bonds	\$714,943

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 5$, $i = 5.5\%$.

†Present value of \$1: $n = 5$, $i = 5.5\%$

When the bonds were issued, Masterwear had a choice—report this liability (a) at its amortized initial measurement throughout the term to maturity or (b) at its current fair value on each reporting date. Had the company not elected the fair value option, on June 30 it would report the \$671,297 we calculated earlier for the amortization schedule. On the other hand, if Masterwear had elected the fair value option, it would report the bonds at their current fair value, **\$714,943**.

Reporting Changes in Fair Value

If a company chooses the option to report at fair value, a change in fair value will create a gain or loss. Any portion of that gain or loss that is a result of a change in the “credit risk” of the debt, rather than a change in general interest rates, is reported, not as part of net income, but instead as other comprehensive income (OCI). Credit risk is the risk that the investor in the bonds will not receive the promised interest and maturity amounts at the times they are due. Companies can assume that any change in fair value that exceeds the amount caused by a change in the general (risk-free) interest rate is the result of credit risk changes.

In our example, Masterwear would report the increase in fair value from \$666,633 to **\$714,943**, or \$48,310. Note, though, that part of the change is due to the unpaid interest we discussed earlier. Here's a recap.

Electing the FVO means reporting unrealized holding gains and losses in OCI to the extent the change is due to credit risk.

¹⁹The current market rate would consist of the general risk-free rate at the time, increased by a risk premium for the credit risk of the bonds.

At June 30, 2018, the interest that accrued during the first six months was \$46,664, but only \$42,000 of that was paid in cash; so the book value increased by the \$4,664 unpaid interest. We recorded the following entry:

Interest expense	46,664	
Discount on bonds payable.....		4,664
Cash.....		42,000

Amortizing the discount in this entry increased the book value of the liability by \$4,664 to \$671,297:

Bonds payable
Less: Discount
Book value

January 1 book value and fair value	\$666,633
Increase from discount amortization	4,664
June 30 book value (amortized initial amount)	<u>\$671,297</u>

FAIR VALUE RISES. Comparing that book value with the fair value of the bonds on that date provides the amount needed to adjust the bonds to their fair value.

June 30 fair value	\$714,943
June 30 book value (amortized initial amount)	<u>671,297</u>
Fair value adjustment needed	\$ 43,646

Rather than increasing the bonds payable account itself, though, we instead adjust it *indirectly* with a credit to a valuation allowance (or contra) account. If general interest rates have not changed, we assume the change in fair value is due to the credit risk associated with the bonds and report the loss in OCI:

When the fair value option is elected, we report changes in fair value in OCI to the extent caused by changes in credit risk.

The credit balance in the fair value adjustment increases the book value; the discount reduces it.

Unrealized holding loss—OCI.....	43,646	
Fair value adjustment (\$714,943 – 671,297)		43,646

If any portion of the fair value change is due to a change in general interest rates, that portion would be reported in net income. For instance, if interest rate declines alone would have created a \$20,000 increase in fair value, we would report \$20,000 of the loss in the income statement and \$23,646 as OCI.

The new book value of the bonds is now the fair value:

Bonds payable	\$700,000
Less: Discount (\$33,367 – 4,664)	<u>(28,703)</u>
Amortization schedule value	\$671,297
Plus: Fair value adjustment	<u>43,646</u>
Book value, June 30	\$714,943

FAIR VALUE FALLS. Suppose the fair value at June 30, 2018, had been **\$650,000** instead of **\$714,943**. In that case, Masterwear would record a *reduction* in the liability from \$671,297 to **\$650,000**, or \$21,297. Again assuming no change in interest rates, the entry would be:

Fair value adjustment (\$671,297 – \$650,000)	21,297	
Unrealized holding gain—OCI.....		21,297

The new book value of the bonds is the fair value:

The debit balance in the fair value adjustment reduces the book value; as does the discount.

Bonds payable	\$ 700,000
Less: Discount (\$33,367 – 4,664)	<u>(28,703)</u>
Amortization schedule value	\$ 671,297
Less: Fair value adjustment	<u>(21,297)</u>
Book value, June 30	\$650,000

The outstanding balance in the last column of the amortization schedule at any date up to and including the balance at maturity will be the bonds payable less the discount (for instance \$671,297 at June 30, 2018). But the amount we report in the balance sheet at any reporting date, the fair value, will be that amortized initial amount from the amortization schedule, plus or minus the fair value adjustment. That's the **\$714,943** or the **\$650,000** in the two scenarios above.

To understand why we report credit risk-related fair value changes as OCI, it's useful to consider the consequence of reporting them in the income statement, which was the prescribed treatment prior to the FASB mandating their classification as OCI beginning in 2015. Here's one example. As a result of adjusting for fair value changes in its debt, **J.P. Morgan Chase & Co.** reported an impressive \$1.9 billion gain in its 2011 third-quarter income statement. This was reason for the company's shareholders and creditors to celebrate, right? Not so fast. It's true that the company followed the proper procedure for recording a decline in the fair value of its debt, which was to record a gain in the income statement. As it turned out, though, the reason the fair value declined was that the company's financial situation had worsened, resulting in increased credit risk, and the increased credit risk caused the fair value of liabilities to decline. This, in fact, is the reason for most if not all of J.P. Morgan's huge gain. Does it make sense to you that worsening credit ratings should result in higher net income? Most observers, including the FASB, saw that as counterintuitive, and as a result, credit risk-related fair value changes are now reported as part of OCI rather than as part of net income.

Mix and Match

Remember from our discussions in prior chapters that if a company elects the fair value option, it's not necessary that the company elect the option to report all of its financial instruments at fair value or even all instruments of a particular type at fair value. They can "mix and match" on an instrument-by-instrument basis. So Masterwear, for instance, might choose to report these bonds at fair value but all its other liabilities at their amortized initial measurement. However, the company must make the election when the item originates, in this case when the bonds are issued, and is not allowed to switch methods once a method is chosen.

Here's an excerpt from the notes to the financial statements of **Citigroup Inc.** describing its fair value option election for some of its liabilities (omitting the portion of the note related to the fair value option election for financial assets):

Companies choose which financial instruments to report at fair value.

23. FAIR VALUE ELECTIONS (In part)

The Company may elect to report most financial instruments and certain other items at fair value on an instrument-by-instrument basis. . . . The election is made upon the initial recognition of an eligible financial asset, financial liability or firm commitment or when certain specified reconsideration events occur. The fair value election may not be revoked once made. The changes in fair value are recorded in current earnings, other than DVA [Debit Valuation Adjustments], which from January 1, 2016 is reported in AOCI.

(\$ in millions)	Changes in fair value gains (losses) for the Three Months Ended March 31,	
	2016	2015
Liabilities		
Interest-bearing deposits	\$ (50)	\$ 10
Federal funds purchased and securities loaned or sold under agreements to repurchase selected portfolios of securities	(6)	2
Trading account liabilities	94	29
Short-term borrowings	80	(1)
Long-term debt	(423)	189
Total liabilities	<u>\$(305)</u>	<u>\$229</u>

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© Klaus Vedfelt/Getty Images.

1. **What does it mean that the bonds are “first mortgage” bonds? What effect does that have on financing?** (p. 772) A mortgage bond is backed by a lien on specified real estate owned by the issuer. This makes it less risky than unsecured debt, so Service Leader can expect to be able to sell the bonds at a higher price (lower interest rate).
2. **From Service Leader’s perspective, why are the bonds callable? What does that mean?** (p. 773) The call feature gives Service Leader some protection against being stuck with relatively high-cost debt in case interest rates fall during the 15 years to maturity. Service Leader can buy back, or call, the bonds from bondholders before the 15-year maturity date, after June 30, 2017. The call price is prespecified at 103 percent of the face value—\$1,030 per \$1,000 bond.
3. **How will it be possible to sell bonds paying investors 6.25% when other, similar investments will provide the investors a return of 6.5%?** (p. 773) Service Leader will be able to sell its 6.25% bonds in a 6.5% market only by selling them at a discounted price, below face amount. Bonds are priced by the marketplace to yield the market rate of interest for securities of similar risk and maturity. The price will be the present value of all the periodic cash interest payments (face amount \times stated rate) plus the present value of the principal payable at maturity, both discounted at the market rate.
4. **Would accounting differ if the debt were designated as notes rather than bonds?** (p. 784) No. Other things being equal, whether they’re called bonds, notes, or some other form of debt, the same accounting principles apply. They will be recorded at present value and interest will be recorded at the market rate over the term to maturity.
5. **Why might the company choose to make the bonds convertible into common stock?** (p. 793) Convertible bonds can be converted at the option of the bondholders into shares of stock. Sometimes the motivation for issuing convertible bonds rather than straight debt is to use the bonds as a medium of exchange in mergers and acquisitions, as a way for smaller firms or debt-heavy companies to obtain access to the bond market, or as an indirect way to issue stock when there is shareholder resistance to direct issuance of additional equity. None of these seems pertinent to Service Leader. The most likely reason is to sell at a higher price. The conversion feature is attractive to investors. Investors have a fixed-income security that can become common stock if circumstances make that attractive. The investor has additional possibilities for higher returns, with downside risk limited by the underlying debt. ●

The Bottom Line

- LO14–1 A liability requires the future payment of cash in specified amounts at specified dates. As time passes, interest accrues on debt at the effective interest rate times the amount of the debt outstanding during the period. This same principle applies regardless of the specific form of the liability. (p. 771)
- LO14–2 Forces of supply and demand cause a bond to be priced to yield the market rate, calculated as the present value of all the cash flows required, where the discount rate is the market rate. Interest expense is calculated as the effective market rate of interest multiplied by the outstanding balance (during the interest period). A company is permitted to allocate a discount or a premium equally to each period over the term to maturity if doing so produces results that are not materially different from the interest method. (p. 773)
- LO14–3 In concept, notes are accounted for in precisely the same way as bonds. When a note is issued with an unrealistic interest rate, the effective market rate is used both to determine the amount recorded in the transaction and to record periodic interest thereafter. (p. 784)
- LO14–4 In the balance sheet, disclosure should include, for all long-term borrowings, the aggregate amounts maturing and sinking fund requirements (if any) for each of the next five years. Supplemental disclosures are needed for (a) off-balance-sheet credit or market risk, (b) concentrations of credit risk, and (c) the fair value of financial instruments. (p. 788)

- **LO14-5** A gain or loss on early extinguishment of debt should be recorded for the difference between the reacquisition price and the book value of the debt. Convertible bonds are accounted for as straight debt, but the value of the equity feature is recorded separately for bonds issued with detachable warrants. (p. 793)
- **LO14-6** Companies are not required to, but have the option to, value some or all of their liabilities at fair value. If the option is elected, an increase (or decrease) in fair value from one balance sheet to the next is reported as a loss (or gain) as other comprehensive income to the extent it's related to credit risk. Otherwise, it's reported in net income. It's a one-time election for each liability when the liability is created. (p. 798)
- **LO14-7** U.S. GAAP and IFRS are generally compatible with respect to accounting for bonds and long-term notes. Some differences exist in determining which securities are reported as debt, the way convertible securities are accounted for, and when the fair value option can be elected. (pp. 775 and 795). ●

Bonds Issued Between Interest Dates

In Part A of this chapter, we assumed that the bonds were issued on the day they were dated (date printed in the indenture contract). But suppose a weak market caused a delay in selling the bonds until two months after that date (four months before semiannual interest was to be paid). In that case, the buyer would be asked to pay the seller **accrued interest** for two months in addition to the price of the bonds.

When Bonds are Issued at Face Amount between Interest Dates

For illustration, assume that in Illustration 14-1, Masterwear was unable to sell the bonds in the previous example until March 1—two months after they are dated. This variation is shown in Illustration 14A-1. United would pay the price of the bonds (\$700,000) plus **\$14,000** accrued interest:

$$\begin{array}{rcll} \$700,000 & \times & 12\% & \times \frac{2}{12} = \$14,000 \\ \text{Face amount} & \times & \text{Annual rate} & \times \text{Fraction of the annual period} & \text{Accrued interest} \end{array}$$

All bonds sell at their price plus any interest that has accrued since the last interest date.

Illustration 14A-1

Bonds Sold at Face Amount between Interest Dates

At Issuance (March 1)		
Masterwear (Issuer)		
Cash (price plus accrued interest).....	714,000	
Bonds payable (face amount).....		700,000
Interest payable (accrued interest determined above).....		14,000
United (Investor)		
Investment in bonds (face amount).....	700,000	
Interest receivable (accrued interest determined above).....	14,000	
Cash (price plus accrued interest).....		714,000

When Masterwear pays semiannual interest on June 30, a full six months' interest is paid. But having received two months' accrued interest in advance, Masterwear's net interest expense will be four months' interest, for the four months the bonds have been outstanding at that time. Likewise, when United receives six months' interest—after holding the bonds for only four months—United will net only the four months' interest to which it is entitled:

Since the investor will hold the bonds for only four months before receiving six months' interest, two months' accrued interest must be added to the price paid.

At the First Interest Date (June 30)		
Masterwear (Issuer)		
Interest expense (6 mo. – 2 mo. = 4 mo.).....	28,000	
Interest payable* (accrued interest determined above).....	14,000	
Cash (stated rate × face amount).....		42,000
(continued)		

The issuer incurs interest expense, and the investor recognizes interest revenue, for only the four months the bonds are outstanding.

United (Investor)

Cash (stated rate \times face amount).....	42,000	
Interest receivable (accrued interest determined above).....		14,000
Interest revenue (6 mo. – 2 mo. = 4 mo.).....		28,000

*Some accountants prefer to credit interest expense, rather than interest payable, when the bonds are sold. When that is done, this entry would require a debit to interest expense and a credit to cash for \$42,000. The interest expense account would then reflect the same *net* debit of four months' interest (\$42,000 – \$14,000).

Interest Expense	
	2 months
6 months	
4 months	

Similarly, the investor could debit interest revenue, rather than interest receivable when buying the bonds. ●

All bonds sell at their price plus any interest that has accrued since the last interest date.

Illustration 14A–2

Bonds Sold at a Discount between Interest Dates

When Bonds are Issued at a Discount between Interest Dates

Our objective is the same when the bonds are not issued at their face amount. For instance, in Illustration 14–3, the \$700,000 of 12% bonds were issued when the market rate was 14% and thus were priced at a discount, \$666,633. If those bonds were issued March 1, two months after they are dated, the investor would pay the price of the bonds (\$666,633) plus \$14,000 accrued interest²⁰:

Masterwear (Issuer)

Cash (price plus accrued interest).....	680,633	
Discount on bonds payable (difference).....	33,367	
Bonds payable (face amount).....		700,000
Interest payable (accrued interest determined above).....		14,000

United (Investor)

Investment in bonds (face amount).....	700,000	
Interest receivable (accrued interest determined above).....	14,000	
Discount on bond investment (difference).....		33,367
Cash (price plus accrued interest).....		680,633

By contract, a full six months' interest is paid on June 30 at the *stated* rate times the face amount. But having received two months' accrued interest in advance, Masterwear's *net* interest expense will be four months' interest, for the four months the bonds have been outstanding at that time. Interest is calculated on the outstanding debt balance at the effective (or market) rate. Interest for the first six months, then, would be $\$666,633 \times 14\% \times \frac{1}{2} = \$46,664$. But because on June 30 only four months have passed, only four months' interest, $\frac{4}{6} \times \$46,664$, or \$31,109, is recorded as interest expense. Similarly, the reduction of the discount, which for a full six-month interest period would be $\$46,664 - \$14,000$, or \$32,664, will be only $\frac{4}{6}$ of that amount. These amounts are recorded as follows:

Journal Entries—Interest between Interest Dates

Only four months' interest is recorded because the bonds were outstanding only four months.

At the First Interest Date (June 30)**Masterwear (Issuer)**

Interest expense ($\frac{4}{6} \times \$46,664$).....	31,109	
Interest payable (accrued interest determined above).....	14,000	
Discount on bonds payable ($\frac{4}{6} \times \$46,664$).....		3,109
Cash (stated rate \times face amount).....		42,000

United (Investor)

Cash (stated rate \times face amount).....	42,000	
Discount on bond investment ($\frac{4}{6} \times \$46,664$).....	3,109	
Interest receivable (accrued interest determined above).....		14,000
Interest revenue ($\frac{4}{6} \times \$46,664$).....		31,109

²⁰This assumes the price of the bonds still is \$666,633, which assumes the effective market interest rate still is 7% semiannually. The proceeds will be the price of the bonds based on effective market interest rate on March 1 plus accrued interest.

Troubled Debt Restructuring

APPENDIX 14B

A respected real estate developer, Brillard Properties, was very successful developing and managing a number of properties in the southeastern United States. To finance these investments, the developer had borrowed hundreds of millions of dollars from several regional banks. For years, events occurred as planned. The investments prospered. Cash flow was high. Interest payments on the debt were timely and individual loans were repaid as they matured.

Almost suddenly, however, the real estate climate soured. Investments that had provided handsome profits now did not provide the cash flow necessary to service the debt. Bankers who had loaned substantial funds to Brillard now faced a dilemma. Because contractual interest payments were unpaid, the bankers had the legal right to demand payment, which would force the developer to liquidate all or a major part of the properties to raise the cash. Sound business practice? Not necessarily.

If creditors force liquidation, they then must share among themselves the cash raised from selling the properties—at forced sale prices. Believing the developer's financial difficulties were caused by temporary market forces, not by bad management, the bankers felt they could minimize their losses by *restructuring* the debt agreements, rather than by forcing liquidation.

When changing the original terms of a debt agreement is motivated by financial difficulties experienced by the debtor (borrower), the new arrangement is referred to as a **troubled debt restructuring**. By definition, a troubled debt restructuring involves some concessions on the part of the creditor (lender). In the first half of 2009, the economic crisis prompted nearly 40 companies to negotiate such deals with their creditors, a huge increase over the handful that normally would do so during a six-month period.²¹ A troubled debt restructuring may be achieved in either of two ways:

1. The debt may be *settled* at the time of the restructuring.
2. The debt may be *continued*, but with *modified terms*.

Debt Is Settled

In the situation described above, one choice the bankers had was to try to actually settle the debt outright at the time of the troubled debt restructuring. For instance, a bank holding a \$30 million note from the developer might agree to accept a property valued at, let's say, \$20 million as final settlement of the debt. In that case, the developer has a \$10 million gain equal to the difference between the book value of the debt and the fair value of the property transferred. The debtor may need to adjust the book value of an asset to its fair value prior to recording its exchange for a debt. The developer in our example, for instance, would need to change the recorded amount for the property specified in the exchange agreement if it is carried at an amount other than its \$20 million fair value. In such an instance, an ordinary gain or loss on disposition of assets should be recorded as shown in Illustration 14B-1.

A sharp rise in debt restructurings accompanied the 2008/2009 economic crisis.

In all areas of accounting, a noncash transaction is recorded at fair value.

First Prudent Bank agrees to settle Brillard's \$30 million debt in exchange for property having a fair value of \$20 million. The book value of the property on Brillard's books is \$17 million:

	(\$ in millions)	
Land (\$20 million minus \$17 million).....	3	
Gain on disposition of assets.....		3
Note payable (book value).....	30	
Gain on troubled debt restructuring.....		10
Land (fair value).....		20

Illustration 14B-1

Debt Settled

An asset is adjusted to fair value prior to recording its exchange for a debt.

²¹David Henry, "The Time Bomb in Corporate Debt," *BusinessWeek*, July 15, 2009.

The payment to settle a debt in a troubled debt restructuring might be cash, or a noncash asset (as in the example here), or even shares of the debtor's stock. An example of shares of stock given in exchange for debt forgiveness is the celebrated reorganization of TWA in 1992 (since acquired by American Airlines), when creditors received a 55% stake in the company's common shares in return for forgiving about \$1 billion of the airline's \$1.5 billion debt. In any case, the debtor's gain is the difference between the book value of the debt and the fair value of the asset(s) or equity securities transferred.

Debt Is Continued, but with Modified Terms

The book value of a debt is the current balance of the primary debt plus any accrued (unpaid) interest.

We assumed in the previous example that First Prudent Bank agreed to accept property in full settlement of the debt. A more likely occurrence would be that the bank allows the debt to continue, but modifies the terms of the debt agreement to make it easier for the debtor to comply. The bank might agree to reduce or delay the scheduled *interest payments*. Or, it may agree to reduce or delay the *maturity amount*. Often a troubled debt restructuring will call for some combination of these concessions. Distressed by the 2008/2009 economic downturn, amusement park operator **Six Flags** persuaded a group of creditors to trim its debt by 5%, or \$130 million, a restructuring designed to give Six Flags a financial cushion going into its busy 2009 summer season and an opportunity to recover its interest-paying ability.

Let's say the stated interest rate on the note in question is 10% and annual interest payments of \$3 million (10% × \$30 million) are payable in December of each of two remaining years to maturity. Also assume that the developer was unable to pay the \$3 million interest payment for the year just ended. This means that the amount owed—the carrying amount (or book value) of the debt—is \$33 million (\$30 million plus one year's accrued interest).

Two quite different situations are created when the terms of a debt are modified, depending on whether the cash payments are reduced to the extent that interest is eliminated.

The way the debtor accounts for the restructuring depends on the extent of the reduction in cash payments called for by the restructured arrangement. More specifically, the accounting procedure depends on whether, under the new agreement, total cash payments (a) are *less than* the book value of the debt or (b) still *exceed* the book value of the debt.

WHEN TOTAL CASH PAYMENTS ARE LESS THAN THE BOOK VALUE OF THE DEBT By the original agreement, the debtor was to pay at maturity the \$30 million loaned, plus enough periodic interest to provide a 10% effective rate of return. If the new agreement calls for less cash than the \$33 million now owed, interest is presumed to have been eliminated.

As one of many possibilities, suppose the bank agrees to (1) forgive the interest accrued from last year, (2) reduce the two remaining interest payments from \$3 million each to \$2 million each, and (3) reduce the face amount from \$30 million to \$25 million. Clearly, the debtor will pay less by the new agreement than by the original one. In fact, if we add up the total payments called for by the new agreement, the total [(2 million × 2) plus \$25 million] is less than the \$33 million book value. Because the \$29 million does not exceed the amount owed, the restructured debt agreement no longer provides interest on the debt. Actually, the new payments are \$4 million short of covering the debt itself. So, after the debt restructuring, no interest expense is recorded. All subsequent cash payments are considered to be payment of the debt itself. Consider Illustration 14B–2.

After restructuring, no interest expense is recorded. All cash payments are considered to be payment of the note itself.

When the total future cash payments are less than the book value of the debt, the difference is recorded as a gain at the date of restructure. No interest should be recorded thereafter. That is, all subsequent cash payments result in reductions of principal.

The \$25 million payment at maturity reduces the note to zero.

At Each of the Two Interest Dates		(\$ in millions)
Note payable	2	
Cash (revised "interest" amount)		2
At Maturity		
Note payable	25	
Cash (revised principal amount)		25

WHEN TOTAL CASH PAYMENTS EXCEED THE BOOK VALUE OF THE DEBT Let's modify the example in the previous section. Now suppose the bank agrees to delay the due

Brillard Properties owes First Prudent Bank \$30 million under a 10% note with two years remaining to maturity. Due to financial difficulties of the developer, the previous year's interest (\$3 million) was not paid. First Prudent Bank agrees to:

1. Forgive the interest accrued from last year.
2. Reduce the remaining two interest payments to \$2 million each.
3. Reduce the principal to \$25 million.

Analysis:	Book value	\$30 million + \$3 million = \$33 million	
	Future payments	(\$2 million × 2) + \$25 million =	29 million
	Gain		\$ 4 million
			(\$ in millions)
	Accrued interest payable (10% × \$30 million).....	3	
	Note payable (\$30 million – 29 million).....	1	
	Gain on debt restructuring.....		4

date for all cash payments until maturity and accept \$34,333,200 at that time in full settlement of the debt. Rather than just reducing the cash payments as in the previous illustration, the payments are delayed. It is not the nature of the change that creates the need to account differently for this situation, but the amount of the total cash payments under the agreement relative to the book value of the debt. This situation is demonstrated in Illustration 14B–3.

Brillard Properties owes First Prudent Bank \$30 million under a 10% note with two years remaining to maturity. Due to Brillard's financial difficulties, the previous year's interest (\$3 million) was not paid. First Prudent Bank agrees to:

1. Delay the due date for all cash payments until maturity.
2. Accept \$34,333,200 at that time in full settlement of the debt.

Analysis:	Future payments	\$34,333,200
	Book value	\$30 million + \$3 million = 33,000,000
	Interest	\$ 1,333,200

Calculation of the New Effective Interest Rate

- $\$33,000,000 \div \$34,333,200 = 0.9612$, the Table 2 value for $n = 2$, $i = ?$
- In row 2 of Table 2, the number 0.9612 is in the **2%** column. So, this is the new effective interest rate.

Now the total payments called for by the new agreement, \$34,333,200, exceed the \$33 million book value. Because the payments exceed the amount owed, the restructured debt agreement still provides interest on the debt—but less than before the agreement was revised. No longer is the effective rate 10%. The accounting objective now is to determine what the new effective rate is and *record interest for the remaining term of the loan at that new, lower rate*, as shown in Illustration 14B–3.

Because the total future cash payments are not less than the book value of the debt, no reduction of the existing debt is necessary and no entry is required at the time of the debt restructuring. Even though no cash is paid until maturity under the restructured debt agreement, interest expense still is recorded annually—but at the new rate.

At the End of the First Year

Interest expense [2% × (\$30,000,000 + 3,000,000)].....	660,000	
Accrued interest payable.....		660,000

At the End of the Second Year

Interest expense [2% × (\$30,000,000 + 3,660,000)].....	673,200	
Accrued interest payable.....		673,200

(continued)

Illustration 14B–2

Cash Payments Less than the Debt

Book Value		
Before Restr.	Adj.	After Restr.
\$30	(1)	\$29
3	(3)	0
\$33	(4)	\$29

Illustration 14B–3

Cash Payments More than the Debt

The discount rate that equates the present value on the debt (\$33 million) and its future value (\$34,333,200) is the effective rate of interest.

As long as cash payments exceed the amount owed there will be interest—although at a lower effective rate.

Unpaid interest is accrued at the effective rate times the book value of the note.

The book value of the debt is increased by the unpaid interest from the previous year.

The total of the accrued interest account plus the note account is equal to the amount scheduled to be paid at maturity.

(concluded)

At Maturity (End of the Second Year)

Note payable	30,000,000	
Accrued interest payable (\$3,000,000 + 660,000 + 673,200)	4,333,200	
Cash (required by new agreement)		34,333,200

Additional Consideration

To keep up with the changing amounts, it may be convenient to prepare an amortization schedule for the debt.

Year	Cash Interest	Effective Interest	Increase in Balance	Outstanding Balance
		(2% × Outstanding balance)		
				33,000,000
1	0	0.02 (33,000,000) = 660,000	660,000	33,660,000
2	0	0.02 (33,660,000) = 673,200	673,200	34,333,200
	0	1,333,200	1,333,200	


An amortization schedule is particularly helpful if there are several years remaining to maturity.

In our example, the restructured debt agreement called for a single cash payment at maturity (\$34,333,200). If more than one cash payment is required (as in the agreement in our earlier example), calculating the new effective rate is more difficult. The concept would remain straightforward: (1) determine the interest rate that provides a present value of all future cash payments that is equal to the current book value and (2) record the interest at that rate thereafter. Mechanically, though, the computation by hand would be cumbersome, requiring a time-consuming trial-and-error calculation. Since our primary interest is understanding the concepts involved, we will avoid the mathematical complexities of such a situation.

You also should be aware that when a restructuring involves modification of terms, accounting for a liability by the debtor, as described in this section, and accounting for a receivable by the creditor (essentially an impairment of a receivable), which was described in Chapter 7, are inconsistent. You may recall that when a creditor's investment in a receivable becomes impaired, due to a troubled debt restructuring or for any other reason, the receivable is remeasured based on the discounted present value of currently expected cash flows at the loan's original effective rate (regardless of the extent to which expected cash receipts have been reduced). For ease of comparison, the example in this chapter (Illustration 14B-3) describes the same situation as the example in Chapter 7 (Illustration 7B-2). There is no conceptual justification for the asymmetry between debtors' and creditors' accounting for troubled debt restructurings. ●

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 14-1** How is periodic interest determined for outstanding liabilities? For outstanding receivables? How does the approach compare from one form of debt instrument (say bonds payable) to another (say notes payable)?
- Q 14-2** As a general rule, how should long-term liabilities be reported on the debtor's balance sheet?
- Q 14-3** How are bonds and notes the same? How do they differ?
- Q 14-4** What information is contained in a bond indenture? What purpose does it serve?
- Q 14-5** On January 1, 2018, Brandon Electronics issued \$85 million of 11.5% bonds, dated January 1. The market yield for bonds of maturity issued by similar firms in terms of riskiness is 12.25%. How can Brandon sell debt paying only 11.5% in a 12.25% market?

- Q 14-6** How is the price determined for a bond (or bond issue)?
- Q 14-7** A zero-coupon bond pays no interest. Explain.
- Q 14-8** When bonds are issued at a premium the debt declines each period. Explain.
- Q 14-9** Compare the two commonly used methods of determining interest on bonds.
- Q 14-10** What are debt issue costs and how should they be reported?
- Q 14-11** When a note's stated rate of interest is unrealistic relative to the market rate, the concept of substance over form should be employed. Explain.
- Q 14-12** How does an installment note differ from a note for which the principal is paid as a single amount at maturity?
- Q 14-13** Long-term debt can be reported either (a) as a single amount, net of any discount or increased by any premium or (b) at its face amount accompanied by a separate valuation account for the discount or premium. Any portion of the debt to be paid during the upcoming year, or operating cycle if longer, should be reported as a current amount. Regarding amounts to be paid in the future, what additional disclosures should be made in connection with long-term debt?
- Q 14-14** Early extinguishment of debt often produces a gain or a loss. How is the gain or loss determined?
- Q 14-15** Air Supply issued \$6 million of 9%, 10-year convertible bonds at 101. The bonds are convertible into 24,000 shares of common stock. Bonds that are similar in all respects except that they are nonconvertible, currently are selling at 99 (that is, 99% of face amount). What amount should Air Supply record as equity and how much as a liability when the bonds are issued?
- Q 14-16** Both convertible bonds and bonds issued with detachable warrants have features of both debt and equity. How does the accounting treatment differ for the two hybrid securities? Why is the accounting treatment different?
- Q 14-17** At times, companies try to induce voluntary conversion by offering an added incentive—maybe cash, stock warrants, or a more favorable conversion ratio. How is such an inducement accounted for? How is it measured?
- Q 14-18** Cordova Tools has bonds outstanding during a year in which the market rate of interest has risen. If Cordova has elected the fair value option for the bonds, will it report a gain or a loss on the bonds for the year? Explain.
-  **IFRS Q 14-19** If a company prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards, how would it account for convertible bonds it issues for \$12.5 million? What is the conceptual justification?
- Q 14-20** (Based on Appendix 14A) Why will bonds always sell at their price plus any interest that has accrued since the last interest date?
- Q 14-21** (Based on Appendix 14B) When the original terms of a debt agreement are changed because of financial difficulties experienced by the debtor (borrower), the new arrangement is referred to as a *troubled debt restructuring*. Such a restructuring can take a variety of forms. For accounting purposes, these possibilities are categorized. What are the accounting classifications of troubled debt restructurings?
- Q 14-22** (Based on Appendix 14B) Pratt Industries owes First National Bank \$5 million but, due to financial difficulties, is unable to comply with the original terms of the loan. The bank agrees to settle the debt in exchange for land having a fair value of \$3 million. The book value of the property on Pratt's books is \$2 million. For the reporting period in which the debt is settled, what amount(s) will Pratt report on its income statement in connection with the troubled debt restructuring?
- Q 14-23** (Based on Appendix 14B) The way a debtor accounts for the restructuring depends on the extent of the reduction in cash payments called for by the restructured arrangement. Describe, in general, the accounting procedure for the two basic cases: when, under the new agreement, total cash payments (a) are less than the book value of the debt or (b) still exceed the book value of the debt.

Brief Exercises



- BE 14-1** Holiday Brands issued \$30 million of 6%, 30-year bonds for \$27.5 million. What is the amount of interest that Holiday will pay semiannually to bondholders?
Bond interest
● LO14-1
- BE 14-2** A company issued 5%, 20-year bonds with a face amount of \$80 million. The market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity is 6%. Interest is paid semiannually. At what price did the bonds sell?
Determining the price of bonds
● LO14-2
- BE 14-3** A company issued 6%, 15-year bonds with a face amount of \$75 million. The market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity is 6%. Interest is paid semiannually. At what price did the bonds sell?
Determining the price of bonds
● LO14-2

BE 14-4

Determining the price of bonds

• LO14-2

A company issued 5%, 20-year bonds with a face amount of \$100 million. The market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity is 4%. Interest is paid semiannually. At what price did the bonds sell?

BE 14-5

Effective interest on bonds

• LO14-2

On January 1, a company issued 7%, 15-year bonds with a face amount of \$90 million for \$82,218,585 to yield 8%. Interest is paid semiannually. What was interest expense at the effective interest rate on June 30, the first interest date?

BE 14-6

Effective interest on bonds

• LO14-2

On January 1, a company issued 3%, 20-year bonds with a face amount of \$80 million for \$69,033,776 to yield 4%. Interest is paid semiannually. What was the interest expense at the effective interest rate on the December 31 annual income statement?

BE 14-7

Straight-line interest on bonds

• LO14-2

On January 1, a company issued 3%, 20-year bonds with a face amount of \$80 million for \$69,033,776 to yield 4%. Interest is paid semiannually. What was the straight-line interest expense on the December 31 annual income statement?

BE 14-8

Investment in bonds

• LO14-2

On January 1, a company purchased 3%, 20-year corporate bonds for \$69,033,776 as an investment. The bonds have a face amount of \$80 million and are priced to yield 4%. Interest is paid semiannually. Prepare the journal entry to record revenue at the effective interest rate on December 31, the second interest payment date.

BE 14-9

Note issued for cash; borrower and lender

• LO14-3

On January 1, 2018, Nantucket Ferry borrowed \$14,000,000 cash from BankOne and issued a four-year, \$14,000,000, 6% note. Interest was payable annually on December 31. Prepare the journal entries for both firms to record interest at December 31, 2018.

BE 14-10

Note with unrealistic interest rate

• LO14-3

On January 1, Snipes Construction paid for earth-moving equipment by issuing a \$300,000, 3-year note that specified 2% interest to be paid on December 31 of each year. The equipment's retail cash price was unknown, but it was determined that a reasonable interest rate was 5%. At what amount should Snipes record the equipment and the note? What journal entry should it record for the transaction?

BE 14-11

Installment note

• LO14-3

On January 1, a company borrowed cash by issuing a \$300,000, 5%, installment note to be paid in three equal payments at the end of each year beginning December 31. What would be the amount of each installment? Prepare the journal entry for the second installment payment.

BE 14-12

Early extinguishment; effective interest

• LO14-5

A company retired \$60 million of its 6% bonds at 102 (\$61.2 million) before their scheduled maturity. At the time, the bonds had a remaining discount of \$2 million. Prepare the journal entry to record the redemption of the bonds.

BE 14-13

Bonds with detachable warrants

• LO14-5

Hoffman Corporation issued \$60 million of 5%, 20-year bonds at 102. Each of the 60,000 bonds was issued with 10 detachable stock warrants, each of which entitled the bondholder to purchase, for \$20, one share of \$1 par common stock. At the time of sale, the market value of the common stock was \$25 per share and the market value of each warrant was \$5. Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds.

BE 14-14

Convertible bonds

• LO14-5

Hoffman Corporation issued \$60 million of 5%, 20-year bonds at 102. Each of the 60,000 bonds was convertible into one share of \$1 par common stock. Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds.

BE 14-15

Reporting bonds at fair value

• LO14-6

AI Tool and Dye issued 8% bonds with a face amount of \$160 million on January 1, 2018. The bonds sold for \$150 million. For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield was 9%. Upon issuance, AI elected the option to report these bonds at their fair value. On June 30, 2018, the fair value of the bonds was \$145 million as determined by their market value on the NASDAQ. Will AI report a gain or will it report a loss when adjusting the bonds to fair value? If the change in fair value is attributable to a change in the interest rate, did the rate increase or decrease? Will the gain or loss be reported in net income or as OCI?

Exercises



E 14-1

Bond valuation

• LO14-2

Your investment department has researched possible investments in corporate debt securities. Among the available investments are the following \$100 million bond issues, each dated January 1, 2018. Prices were determined by underwriters at different times during the last few weeks.

	Company	Bond Price	Stated Rate
1.	BB Corp.	\$109 million	11%
2.	DD Corp.	\$100 million	10%
3.	GG Corp.	\$ 91 million	9%

Each of the bond issues matures on December 31, 2037, and pays interest semiannually on June 30 and December 31. For bonds of similar risk and maturity, the market yield at January 1, 2018, is 10%.

Required:

Other things being equal, which of the bond issues offers the most attractive investment opportunity if it can be purchased at the prices stated? The least attractive? Why?

E 14-2

Determine the price of bonds in various situations

• LO14-2

Determine the price of a \$1 million bond issue under each of the following independent assumptions:

	Maturity	Interest Paid	Stated Rate	Effective (Market) Rate
1.	10 years	annually	10%	12%
2.	10 years	semiannually	10%	12%
3.	10 years	semiannually	12%	10%
4.	20 years	semiannually	12%	10%
5.	20 years	semiannually	12%	12%

E 14-3

Determine the price of bonds; issuance; effective interest

• LO14-2

The Bradford Company issued 10% bonds, dated January 1, with a face amount of \$80 million on January 1, 2018. The bonds mature on December 31, 2027 (10 years). For bonds of similar risk and maturity, the market yield is 12%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31.

Required:

1. Determine the price of the bonds at January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record their issuance by The Bradford Company on January 1, 2018.
3. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on June 30, 2018 (at the effective rate).
4. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on December 31, 2018 (at the effective rate).

E 14-4

Investor; effective interest

• LO14-2

(Note: This is a variation of E 14-3 modified to consider the investor's perspective.) The Bradford Company sold the entire bond issue described in the previous exercise to Saxton-Bose Corporation.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the purchase of the bonds by Saxton-Bose on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record interest revenue on June 30, 2018 (at the effective rate).
3. Prepare the journal entry to record interest revenue on December 31, 2018 (at the effective rate).

E 14-5

Bonds; issuance; effective interest; financial statement effects

• LO14-2

Myriad Solutions, Inc., issued 10% bonds, dated January 1, with a face amount of \$320 million on January 1, 2018, for \$283,294,720. The bonds mature on December 31, 2027 (10 years). For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield is 12%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31.

Required:

1. What would be the net amount of the liability Myriad would report in its balance sheet at December 31, 2018?
2. What would be the amount related to the bonds that Myriad would report in its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018?
3. What would be the amount(s) related to the bonds that Myriad would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?

E 14-6

Bonds; issuance; effective interest

• LO14-2

The Gorman Group issued \$900,000 of 13% bonds on June 30, 2018, for \$967,707. The bonds were dated on June 30 and mature on June 30, 2038 (20 years). The market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity is 12%. Interest is paid semiannually on December 31 and June 30.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record their issuance by The Gorman Group on June 30, 2018.

2. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on December 31, 2018 (at the effective rate).
3. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on June 30, 2019 (at the effective rate).

E 14-7

Determine the price of bonds; issuance; straight-line method

● LO14-2

Universal Foods issued 10% bonds, dated January 1, with a face amount of \$150 million on January 1, 2018. The bonds mature on December 31, 2032 (15 years). The market rate of interest for similar issues was 12%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Universal uses the straight-line method.

Required:

1. Determine the price of the bonds at January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record their issuance by Universal Foods on January 1, 2018.
3. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on June 30, 2018.
4. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on December 31, 2025.

E 14-8

Investor; straight-line method

● LO14-2

(Note: This is a variation of E 14-7 modified to consider the investor's perspective.) Universal Foods sold the entire bond issue described in the previous exercise to Wang Communications.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the purchase of the bonds by Wang Communications on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record interest revenue on June 30, 2018.
3. Prepare the journal entry to record interest revenue on December 31, 2025.

E 14-9

Issuance of bonds; effective interest; amortization schedule; financial statement effects

● LO14-2

When Patey Pontoons issued 6% bonds on January 1, 2018, with a face amount of \$600,000, the market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity was 7%. The bonds mature December 31, 2021 (4 years). Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31.

Required:

1. Determine the price of the bonds at January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record their issuance by Patey on January 1, 2018.
3. Prepare an amortization schedule that determines interest at the effective rate each period.
4. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on June 30, 2018.
5. What is the amount(s) related to the bonds that Patey will report in its balance sheet at December 31, 2018?
6. What is the amount(s) related to the bonds that Patey will report in its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018? (Ignore income taxes.)
7. Prepare the appropriate journal entries at maturity on December 31, 2021.

E 14-10

Issuance of bonds; effective interest; amortization schedule

● LO14-2

National Orthopedics Co. issued 9% bonds, dated January 1, with a face amount of \$500,000 on January 1, 2018. The bonds mature on December 31, 2021 (4 years). For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield was 10%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31.

Required:

1. Determine the price of the bonds at January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record their issuance by National on January 1, 2018.
3. Prepare an amortization schedule that determines interest at the effective rate each period.
4. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on June 30, 2018.
5. Prepare the appropriate journal entries at maturity on December 31, 2021.

E 14-11

Bonds; effective interest; adjusting entry

● LO14-2

On February 1, 2018, Strauss-Lombardi issued 9% bonds, dated February 1, with a face amount of \$800,000. The bonds sold for \$731,364 and mature on January 31, 2038 (20 years). The market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity was 10%. Interest is paid semiannually on July 31 and January 31. Strauss-Lombardi's fiscal year ends December 31.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record their issuance by Strauss-Lombardi on February 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on July 31, 2018 (at the effective rate).
3. Prepare the adjusting entry to accrue interest on December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on January 31, 2019.

E 14-12

Bonds; straight-line method; adjusting entry

● LO14-2

On March 1, 2018, Stratford Lighting issued 14% bonds, dated March 1, with a face amount of \$300,000. The bonds sold for \$294,000 and mature on February 28, 2038 (20 years). Interest is paid semiannually on August 31 and February 28. Stratford uses the straight-line method and its fiscal year ends December 31.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds by Stratford Lighting on March 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on August 31, 2018.
3. Prepare the journal entry to accrue interest on December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on February 28, 2019.

E 14-13

Issuance of
bonds; effective
interest

● LO14-2

Federal Semiconductors issued 11% bonds, dated January 1, with a face amount of \$800 million on January 1, 2018. The bonds sold for \$739,814,813 and mature on December 31, 2037 (20 years). For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield was 12%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record their issuance by Federal on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on June 30, 2018 (at the effective rate).
3. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on December 31, 2018 (at the effective rate).
4. At what amount will Federal report the bonds among its liabilities in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet?

E 14-14

New debt
issues; offerings
announcements

● LO14-2

When companies offer new debt security issues, they publicize the offerings in the financial press and on Internet sites. Assume the following were among the debt offerings reported in December 2018:

New Securities Issues**Corporate**

National Equipment Transfer Corporation—\$200 million bonds via lead managers Second Tennessee Bank N.A. and Morgan, Dunavant & Co., according to a syndicate official. Terms: maturity, Dec. 15, 2024; coupon 7.46%; issue price, par; yield, 7.46%; noncallable; debt ratings: Ba-1 (Moody's Investors Service, Inc.), BBB+ (Standard & Poor's).

IgWig Inc.—\$350 million of notes via lead manager Stanley Brothers, Inc., according to a syndicate official. Terms: maturity, Dec. 1, 2026; coupon, 6.46%; Issue price, 99; yield, 6.56%; call date, NC; debt ratings: Baa-1 (Moody's Investors Service, Inc.), A (Standard & Poor's).

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record the sale of both issues to underwriters. Ignore share issue costs and assume no accrued interest.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record the first semiannual interest payment for both issues.

E 14-15

Error correction;
accrued interest
on bonds

● LO14-2

At the end of 2017, Majors Furniture Company failed to accrue \$61,000 of interest expense that accrued during the last five months of 2017 on bonds payable. The bonds mature in 2031. The discount on the bonds is amortized by the straight-line method. The following entry was recorded on February 1, 2018, when the semiannual interest was paid:

Interest expense	73,200	
Discount on bonds payable		1,200
Cash.....		72,000

Required:

Prepare any journal entry necessary to correct the errors as of February 2, 2018, when the errors were discovered. Also, prepare any adjusting entry at December 31, 2018, related to the situation described. (Ignore income taxes.)

E 14-16

Error in
amortization
schedule

● LO14-3

Wilkins Food Products, Inc., acquired a packaging machine from Lawrence Specialists Corporation. Lawrence completed construction of the machine on January 1, 2016. In payment for the machine Wilkins issued a three-year installment note to be paid in three equal payments at the end of each year. The payments include interest at the rate of 10%.

Lawrence made a conceptual error in preparing the amortization schedule, which Wilkins failed to discover until 2018. The error had caused Wilkins to understate interest expense by \$45,000 in 2016 and \$40,000 in 2017.

Required:

1. Determine which accounts are incorrect as a result of these errors at January 1, 2018, before any adjustments. Explain your answer. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Prepare a journal entry to correct the error.
3. What other step(s) would be taken in connection with the error?

E 14-17

Note with unrealistic interest rate; borrower; amortization schedule

● LO14-3

Amber Mining and Milling, Inc., contracted with Truax Corporation to have constructed a custom-made lathe. The machine was completed and ready for use on January 1, 2018. Amber paid for the lathe by issuing a \$600,000, three-year note that specified 4% interest, payable annually on December 31 of each year. The cash market price of the lathe was unknown. It was determined by comparison with similar transactions that 12% was a reasonable rate of interest.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry on January 1, 2018, for Amber Mining and Milling's purchase of the lathe.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule for the three-year term of the note.
3. Prepare the journal entries to record (a) interest for each of the three years and (b) payment of the note at maturity.

E 14-18

Note with unrealistic interest rate; lender; amortization schedule

● LO14-3

Refer to the situation described in E 14-17.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry on January 1, 2018, for Truax Corporation's sale of the lathe.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule for the three-year term of the note.
3. Prepare the journal entries to record (a) interest for each of the three years and (b) payment of the note at maturity for Truax.

E 14-19

Installment note; lender; amortization schedule

● LO14-3

FinanceCo lent \$8 million to Corbin Construction on January 1, 2018, to construct a playground. Corbin signed a three-year, 6% installment note to be paid in three equal payments at the end of each year.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry for FinanceCo's lending the funds on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule for the three-year term of the installment note.
3. Prepare the journal entry for the first installment payment on December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare the journal entry for the third installment payment on December 31, 2020.

E 14-20

Installment note; amortization schedule

● LO14-3

American Food Services, Inc., acquired a packaging machine from Barton and Barton Corporation. Barton and Barton completed construction of the machine on January 1, 2018. In payment for the \$4 million machine, American Food Services issued a four-year installment note to be paid in four equal payments at the end of each year. The payments include interest at the rate of 10%.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry for American Food Services' purchase of the machine on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule for the four-year term of the installment note.
3. Prepare the journal entry for the first installment payment on December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare the journal entry for the third installment payment on December 31, 2020.

E 14-21

Installment note

● LO14-3

LCD Industries purchased a supply of electronic components from Entel Corporation on November 1, 2018. In payment for the \$24 million purchase, LCD issued a 1-year installment note to be paid in equal monthly payments at the end of each month. The payments include interest at the rate of 12%.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry for LCD's purchase of the components on November 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry for the first installment payment on November 30, 2018.
3. What is the amount of interest expense that LCD will report in its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018?

E 14-22

FASB codification research

● LO14-2, LO14-3, LO14-4

Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

1. Disclosure requirements for maturities of long-term debt.
2. How to estimate the value of a note when a note having no ready market and no interest rate is exchanged for a noncash asset without a readily available fair value.
3. When the straight-line method can be used as an alternative to the interest method of determining interest.



E 14-23

Early
extinguishment

- LO14-5

The balance sheet of Indian River Electronics Corporation as of December 31, 2017, included 12.25% bonds having a face amount of \$90 million. The bonds had been issued in 2010 and had a remaining discount of \$3 million at December 31, 2017. On January 1, 2018, Indian River Electronics called the bonds before their scheduled maturity at the call price of 102.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry by Indian River Electronics to record the redemption of the bonds at January 1, 2018.

E 14-24

Convertible
bonds

- LO14-5

On January 1, 2018, Gless Textiles issued \$12 million of 9%, 10-year convertible bonds at 101. The bonds pay interest on June 30 and December 31. Each \$1,000 bond is convertible into 40 shares of Gless's no par common stock. Bonds that are similar in all respects, except that they are nonconvertible, currently are selling at 99 (that is, 99% of face amount). Century Services purchased 10% of the issue as an investment.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries for the issuance of the bonds by Gless and the purchase of the bond investment by Century.
2. Prepare the journal entries for the June 30, 2022, interest payment by both Gless and Century assuming both use the straight-line method.
3. On July 1, 2023, when Gless's common stock had a market price of \$33 per share, Century converted the bonds it held. Prepare the journal entries by both Gless and Century for the conversion of the bonds (book value method).

E 14-25

IFRS; convertible
bonds

- LO14-5, LO14-7

Refer to the situation described in E 14-24.

Required:

How might your solution to requirement 1 for the issuer of the bonds differ if Gless Textiles prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards? Include any appropriate journal entry in your response.

E 14-26

Convertible
bonds; induced
conversion

- LO14-5

On January 1, 2018, Madison Products issued \$40 million of 6%, 10-year convertible bonds at a net price of \$40.8 million. Madison recently issued similar, but nonconvertible, bonds at 99 (that is, 99% of face amount). The bonds pay interest on June 30 and December 31. Each \$1,000 bond is convertible into 30 shares of Madison's no par common stock. Madison records interest by the straight-line method.

On June 1, 2020, Madison notified bondholders of its intent to call the bonds at face value plus a 1% call premium on July 1, 2020. By June 30, all bondholders had chosen to convert their bonds into shares as of the interest payment date. On June 30, Madison paid the semiannual interest and issued the requisite number of shares for the bonds being converted.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry for the issuance of the bonds by Madison.
2. Prepare the journal entry for the June 30, 2018, interest payment.
3. Prepare the journal entries for the June 30, 2020, interest payment by Madison and the conversion of the bonds (book value method).

E 14-27

IFRS; convertible
bonds

- LO14-5, LO14-7

Refer to the situation described in E 14-26.

Required:

How might your solution for the issuer of the bonds differ if Madison Products prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards? Include any appropriate journal entries in your response.



IFRS

E 14-28

Bonds with
detachable
warrants

- LO14-5

On August 1, 2018, Limbaugh Communications issued \$30 million of 10% nonconvertible bonds at 104. The bonds are due on July 31, 2038. Each \$1,000 bond was issued with 20 detachable stock warrants, each of which entitled the bondholder to purchase, for \$60, one share of Limbaugh Communications' no par common stock. Interstate Containers purchased 20% of the bond issue. On August 1, 2018, the market value of the common stock was \$58 per share and the market value of each warrant was \$8.

In February 2029, when Limbaugh's common stock had a market price of \$72 per share and the unamortized discount balance was \$1 million, Interstate Containers exercised the warrants it held.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries on August 1, 2018, to record (a) the issuance of the bonds by Limbaugh and (b) the investment by Interstate.
2. Prepare the journal entries for both Limbaugh and Interstate in February 2029, to record the exercise of the warrants.

E 14-29

Reporting bonds
at fair value

● LO14-6

(Note: This is a variation of E 14-13 modified to consider the fair value option for reporting liabilities.) Federal Semiconductors issued 11% bonds, dated January 1, with a face amount of \$800 million on January 1, 2018. The bonds sold for \$739,814,813 and mature on December 31, 2037 (20 years). For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield was 12%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Federal determines interest at the effective rate. Federal elected the option to report these bonds at their fair value. On December 31, 2018, the fair value of the bonds was \$730 million as determined by their market value in the over-the-counter market.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to adjust the bonds to their fair value for presentation in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet. Federal determined that none of the change in fair value was due to a decline in general interest rates.
2. Assume the fair value of the bonds on December 31, 2019, had risen to \$736 million. Prepare the journal entry to adjust the bonds to their fair value for presentation in the December 31, 2019, balance sheet. Federal determined that one-half of the increase in fair value was due to a decline in general interest rates.

E 14-30

Reporting bonds
at fair value

● LO14-6

On January 1, 2018, Rapid Airlines issued \$200 million of its 8% bonds for \$184 million. The bonds were priced to yield 10%. Interest is payable semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Rapid Airlines records interest at the effective rate and elected the option to report these bonds at their fair value. On December 31, 2018, the fair value of the bonds was \$188 million as determined by their market value in the over-the-counter market. Rapid determined that \$1,000,000 of the increase in fair value was due to a decline in general interest rates.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on June 30, 2018 (the first interest payment).
2. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on December 31, 2018 (the second interest payment).
3. Prepare the journal entry to adjust the bonds to their fair value for presentation in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet.

E 14-31

Reporting bonds
at fair value;
calculate fair
value

● LO14-6

On January 1, 2018, Essence Communications issued \$800,000 of its 10-year, 8% bonds for \$700,302. The bonds were priced to yield 10%. Interest is payable semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Essence Communications records interest at the effective rate and elected the option to report these bonds at their fair value. On December 31, 2018, the market interest rate for bonds of similar risk and maturity was 9%. The bonds are not traded on an active exchange. The increase in the market interest rate was due to a 1% increase in general (risk-free) interest rates.

Required:

1. Using the information provided, estimate the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on June 30, 2018 (the first interest payment).
3. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on December 31, 2018 (the second interest payment).
4. Prepare the journal entry to adjust the bonds to their fair value for presentation in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet.

E 14-32

Accrued interest
Appendix A

● Appendix A

On March 1, 2018, Brown-Ferring Corporation issued \$100 million of 12% bonds, dated January 1, 2018, for \$99 million (plus accrued interest). The bonds mature on December 31, 2037, and pay interest semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Brown-Ferring's fiscal period is the calendar year.

Required:

1. Determine the amount of accrued interest that was included in the proceeds received from the bond sale.
2. Prepare the journal entry for the issuance of the bonds by Brown-Ferring.

E 14-33

Troubled debt
restructuring;
debt settled

● Appendix B

At January 1, 2018, Transit Developments owed First City Bank Group \$600,000, under an 11% note with three years remaining to maturity. Due to financial difficulties, Transit was unable to pay the previous year's interest.

First City Bank Group agreed to settle Transit's debt in exchange for land having a fair value of \$450,000. Transit purchased the land in 2014 for \$325,000.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry(s) to record the restructuring of the debt by Transit Developments.

E 14-34

Troubled debt restructuring; modification of terms

● Appendix B

At January 1, 2018, Brainard Industries, Inc., owed Second BancCorp \$12 million under a 10% note due December 31, 2020. Interest was paid last on December 31, 2016. Brainard was experiencing severe financial difficulties and asked Second BancCorp to modify the terms of the debt agreement. After negotiation Second BancCorp agreed to:

- Forgive the interest accrued for the year just ended.
- Reduce the remaining two years' interest payments to \$1 million each and delay the first payment until December 31, 2019.
- Reduce the unpaid principal amount to \$11 million.

Required:

Prepare the journal entries by Brainard Industries, Inc., necessitated by the restructuring of the debt at (1) January 1, 2018; (2) December 31, 2019; and (3) December 31, 2020.

E 14-35

Troubled debt restructuring; modification of terms; unknown effective rate

● Appendix B

At January 1, 2018, NCI Industries, Inc., was indebted to First Federal Bank under a \$240,000, 10% unsecured note. The note was signed January 1, 2014, and was due December 31, 2019. Annual interest was last paid on December 31, 2016. NCI was experiencing severe financial difficulties and negotiated a restructuring of the terms of the debt agreement. First Federal agreed to reduce last year's interest and the remaining two years' interest payments to \$11,555 each and delay all payments until December 31, 2019, the maturity date.

Required:

Prepare the journal entries by NCI Industries, Inc., necessitated by the restructuring of the debt at: (1) January 1, 2018; (2) December 31, 2018; and (3) December 31, 2019.

E 14-36

FASB codification research; legal fees in a troubled debt restructuring

● Appendix B

In negotiating and effecting a troubled debt restructuring, the creditor usually incurs various legal costs. The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

- Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on the accounting treatment of legal fees incurred by a creditor to effect a troubled debt restructuring using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).
- What is the specific citation that describes the guidelines for reporting legal costs?
- What is the appropriate accounting treatment?



Problems

**P 14-1**

Determining the price of bonds; discount and premium; issuer and investor

● LO14-2

On January 1, 2018, Instaform, Inc., issued 10% bonds with a face amount of \$50 million, dated January 1. The bonds mature in 2037 (20 years). The market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity is 12%. Interest is paid semiannually.

Required:

- Determine the price of the bonds at January 1, 2018, and prepare the journal entry to record their issuance by Instaform.
- Assume the market rate was 9%. Determine the price of the bonds at January 1, 2018, and prepare the journal entry to record their issuance by Instaform.
- Assume Broadcourt Electronics purchased the entire issue in a private placement of the bonds. Using the data in requirement 2, prepare the journal entry to record the purchase by Broadcourt.

P 14-2

Effective interest; financial statement effects

● LO14-2

On January 1, 2018, Baddour, Inc., issued 10% bonds with a face amount of \$160 million. The bonds were priced at \$140 million to yield 12%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Baddour's fiscal year ends September 30.

Required:

- What amount(s) related to the bonds would Baddour report in its balance sheet at September 30, 2018?
- What amount(s) related to the bonds would Baddour report in its income statement for the year ended September 30, 2018?
- What amount(s) related to the bonds would Baddour report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended September 30, 2018? In which section(s) should the amount(s) appear?

P 14-3

Straight-line and effective interest compared

• LO14-2



On January 1, 2018, Bradley Recreational Products issued \$100,000, 9%, four-year bonds. Interest is paid semi-annually on June 30 and December 31. The bonds were issued at \$96,768 to yield an annual return of 10%.

Required:

1. Prepare an amortization schedule that determines interest at the effective interest rate.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule by the straight-line method.
3. Prepare the journal entries to record interest expense on June 30, 2020, by each of the two approaches.
4. Explain why the pattern of interest differs between the two methods.
5. Assuming the market rate is still 10%, what price would a second investor pay the first investor on June 30, 2020, for \$10,000 of the bonds?

P 14-4

Bond amortization schedule

• LO14-2

On January 1, 2018, Tennessee Harvester Corporation issued debenture bonds that pay interest semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Portions of the bond amortization schedule appear below:

Payment	Cash Payment	Effective Interest	Increase in Balance	Outstanding Balance
				6,627,273
1	320,000	331,364	11,364	6,638,637
2	320,000	331,932	11,932	6,650,569
3	320,000	332,528	12,528	6,663,097
4	320,000	333,155	13,155	6,676,252
5	320,000	333,813	13,813	6,690,065
6	320,000	334,503	14,503	6,704,568
~	~	~	~	~
~	~	~	~	~
~	~	~	~	~
38	320,000	389,107	69,107	7,851,247
39	320,000	392,562	72,562	7,923,809
40	320,000	396,191	76,191	8,000,000

Required:

1. What is the face amount of the bonds?
2. What is the initial selling price of the bonds?
3. What is the term to maturity in years?
4. Interest is determined by what approach?
5. What is the stated annual interest rate?
6. What is the effective annual interest rate?
7. What is the total cash interest paid over the term to maturity?
8. What is the total effective interest expense recorded over the term to maturity?

P 14-5

Issuer and investor; effective interest; amortization schedule; adjusting entries

• LO14-2



On February 1, 2018, Cromley Motor Products issued 9% bonds, dated February 1, with a face amount of \$80 million. The bonds mature on January 31, 2022 (4 years). The market yield for bonds of similar risk and maturity was 10%. Interest is paid semiannually on July 31 and January 31. Barnwell Industries acquired \$80,000 of the bonds as a long-term investment. The fiscal years of both firms end December 31.

Required:

1. Determine the price of the bonds issued on February 1, 2018.
2. Prepare amortization schedules that indicate (a) Cromley's effective interest expense and (b) Barnwell's effective interest revenue for each interest period during the term to maturity.
3. Prepare the journal entries to record (a) the issuance of the bonds by Cromley and (b) Barnwell's investment on February 1, 2018.
4. Prepare the journal entries by both firms to record all subsequent events related to the bonds through January 31, 2020.

P 14-6

Issuer and investor; straight-line method; adjusting entries

- LO14-2, Appendix A

On April 1, 2018, Western Communications, Inc., issued 12% bonds, dated March 1, 2018, with face amount of \$30 million. The bonds sold for \$29.3 million and mature on February 28, 2021. Interest is paid semiannually on August 31 and February 28. Stillworth Corporation acquired \$30,000 of the bonds as a long-term investment. The fiscal years of both firms end December 31, and both firms use the straight-line method.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries to record (a) issuance of the bonds by Western and (b) Stillworth's investment on April 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries by both firms to record all subsequent events related to the bonds through maturity.

P 14-7

Issuer and investor; effective interest

- LO14-2



McWherter Instruments sold \$400 million of 8% bonds, dated January 1, on January 1, 2018. The bonds mature on December 31, 2037 (20 years). For bonds of similar risk and maturity, the market yield was 10%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Blanton Technologies, Inc., purchased \$400,000 of the bonds as a long-term investment.

Required:

1. Determine the price of the bonds issued on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries to record (a) their issuance by McWherter and (b) Blanton's investment on January 1, 2018.
3. Prepare the journal entries by (a) McWherter and (b) Blanton to record interest on June 30, 2018 (at the effective rate).
4. Prepare the journal entries by (a) McWherter and (b) Blanton to record interest on December 31, 2018 (at the effective rate).

P 14-8

Bonds; effective interest; partial period interest; financial statement effects

- LO14-2



The fiscal year ends December 31 for Lake Hamilton Development. To provide funding for its Moonlight Bay project, LHD issued 5% bonds with a face amount of \$500,000 on November 1, 2018. The bonds sold for \$442,215, a price to yield the market rate of 6%. The bonds mature October 31, 2038 (20 years). Interest is paid semiannually on April 30 and October 31.

Required:

1. What amount of interest expense related to the bonds will LHD report in its income statement for the year ending December 31, 2018?
2. What amount(s) related to the bonds will LHD report in its balance sheet at December 31, 2018?
3. What amount of interest expense related to the bonds will LHD report in its income statement for the year ending December 31, 2019?
4. What amount(s) related to the bonds will LHD report in its balance sheet at December 31, 2019?

P 14-9

Zero-coupon bonds

- LO14-2

On January 1, 2018, Darnell Window and Pane issued \$18 million of 10-year, zero-coupon bonds for \$5,795,518.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the bond issue.
2. Determine the effective rate of interest.
3. Prepare the journal entry to record annual interest expense at December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare the journal entry to record annual interest expense at December 31, 2019.
5. Prepare the journal entry to record the extinguishment at maturity.

P 14-10

Notes exchanged for assets; unknown effective rate

- LO14-3

At the beginning of the year, Lambert Motors issued the three notes described below. Interest is paid at year-end.

1. The company issued a two-year, 12%, \$600,000 note in exchange for a tract of land. The current market rate of interest is 12%.
2. Lambert acquired some office equipment with a fair value of \$94,643 by issuing a one-year, \$100,000 note. The stated interest on the note is 6%.
3. The company purchased a building by issuing a three-year installment note. The note is to be repaid in equal installments of \$1 million per year beginning one year hence. The current market rate of interest is 12%.

Required:

Prepare the journal entries to record each of the three transactions and the interest expense at the end of the first year for each.

P 14-11

Note with unrealistic interest rate

• LO14-3

At January 1, 2018, Brant Cargo acquired equipment by issuing a five-year, \$150,000 (payable at maturity), 4% note. The market rate of interest for notes of similar risk is 10%.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry for Brant Cargo to record the purchase of the equipment.
2. Prepare the journal entry for Brant Cargo to record the interest at December 31, 2018.
3. Prepare the journal entry for Brant Cargo to record the interest at December 31, 2019.

P 14-12

Noninterest-bearing installment note

• LO14-3

At the beginning of 2018, VHF Industries acquired a machine with a fair value of \$6,074,700 by issuing a four-year, noninterest-bearing note in the face amount of \$8 million. The note is payable in four annual installments of \$2 million at the end of each year.

Required:

1. What is the effective rate of interest implicit in the agreement?
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the purchase of the machine.
3. Prepare the journal entry to record the first installment payment at December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare the journal entry to record the second installment payment at December 31, 2019.
5. Suppose the market value of the machine was unknown at the time of purchase, but the market rate of interest for notes of similar risk was 11%. Prepare the journal entry to record the purchase of the machine.

P 14-13

Note and installment note with unrealistic interest rate

• LO14-3



Braxton Technologies, Inc., constructed a conveyor for A&G Warehouse that was completed and ready for use on January 1, 2018. A&G paid for the conveyor by issuing a \$100,000, four-year note that specified 5% interest to be paid on December 31 of each year, and the note is to be repaid at the end of four years. The conveyor was custom-built for A&G, so its cash price was unknown. By comparison with similar transactions it was determined that a reasonable interest rate was 10%.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry for A&G's purchase of the conveyor on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule for the four-year term of the note.
3. Prepare the journal entry for A&G's third interest payment on December 31, 2020.
4. If A&G's note had been an installment note to be paid in four equal payments at the end of each year beginning December 31, 2018, what would be the amount of each installment?
5. Prepare an amortization schedule for the four-year term of the installment note.
6. Prepare the journal entry for A&G's third installment payment on December 31, 2020.

P 14-14

Early extinguishment of debt

• LO14-5

Three years ago American Insulation Corporation issued 10%, \$800,000, 10-year bonds for \$770,000. American Insulation exercised its call privilege and retired the bonds for \$790,000. The corporation uses the straight-line method to determine interest.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry to record the call of the bonds.

P 14-15

Early extinguishment; effective interest

• LO14-5

The long-term liability section of Twin Digital Corporation's balance sheet as of December 31, 2017, included 12% bonds having a face amount of \$20 million and a remaining discount of \$1 million. Disclosure notes indicate the bonds were issued to yield 14%.

Interest expense is recorded at the effective interest rate and paid on January 1 and July 1 of each year. On July 1, 2018, Twin Digital retired the bonds at 102 (\$20.4 million) before their scheduled maturity.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry by Twin Digital to record the semiannual interest on July 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry by Twin Digital to record the redemption of the bonds on July 1, 2018.

P 14-16

Debt issue costs; issuance; expensing; early extinguishment; straight-line amortization

• LO14-2, LO14-5

Cupola Fan Corporation issued 10%, \$400,000, 10-year bonds for \$385,000 on June 30, 2018. Debt issue costs were \$1,500. Interest is paid semiannually on December 31 and June 30. One year from the issue date (July 1, 2019), the corporation exercised its call privilege and retired the bonds for \$395,000. The corporation uses the straight-line method both to determine interest expense and to amortize debt issue costs.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds.

2. Prepare the journal entries to record the payment of interest and amortization of debt issue costs on December 31, 2018.
3. Prepare the journal entries to record the payment of interest and amortization of debt issue costs on June 30, 2019.
4. Prepare the journal entry to record the call of the bonds.

P 14–17

IFRS; transaction costs

- LO14–2, LO14–7



IFRS

Refer to the situation described in P 14–16.

Required:

How might your solution for the issuer of the bonds differ if Cupola prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards? Include any appropriate journal entries in your response.

P 14–18

Early extinguishment

- LO14–5

The long-term liability section of Eastern Post Corporation's balance sheet as of December 31, 2017, included 10% bonds having a face amount of \$40 million and a remaining premium of \$6 million. On January 1, 2018, Eastern Post retired some of the bonds before their scheduled maturity.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry by Eastern Post to record the redemption of the bonds under each of the independent circumstances below:

1. Eastern Post called half the bonds at the call price of 102 (102% of face amount).
2. Eastern Post repurchased \$10 million of the bonds on the open market at their market price of \$10.5 million.

P 14–19

Convertible bonds; induced conversion; bonds with detachable warrants

- LO14–5



Bradley-Link's December 31, 2018, balance sheet included the following items:

Long-Term Liabilities	(\$ in millions)
9.6% convertible bonds, callable at 101 beginning in 2019, due 2022 (net of unamortized discount of \$2) [note 8]	\$198
10.4% registered bonds callable at 104 beginning in 2028, due 2032 (net of unamortized discount of \$1) [note 8]	49
Shareholders' Equity	
Equity—stock warrants	4

Note 8: Bonds (in part)

The 9.6% bonds were issued in 2005 at 97.5 to yield 10%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Each \$1,000 bond is convertible into 40 shares of the Company's no par common stock.

The 10.4% bonds were issued in 2009 at 102 to yield 10%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Each \$1,000 bond was issued with 40 detachable stock warrants, each of which entitles the holder to purchase one share of the Company's no par common stock for \$25, beginning 2019.

On January 3, 2019, when Bradley-Link's common stock had a market price of \$32 per share, Bradley-Link called the convertible bonds to force conversion. 90% were converted; the remainder were acquired at the call price. When the common stock price reached an all-time high of \$37 in December of 2017, 40% of the warrants were exercised.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries that were recorded when each of the two bond issues was originally sold in 2005 and 2009.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record (book value method) the conversion of 90% of the convertible bonds in January 2019 and the retirement of the remainder.
3. Assume Bradley-Link induced conversion by offering \$150 cash for each bond converted. Prepare the journal entry to record (book value method) the conversion of 90% of the convertible bonds in January 2019.
4. Assume Bradley-Link induced conversion by modifying the conversion ratio to exchange 45 shares for each bond rather than the 40 shares provided in the contract. Prepare the journal entry to record (book value method) the conversion of 90% of the convertible bonds in January 2019.
5. Prepare the journal entry to record the exercise of the warrants in December 2019.

P 14-20

Convertible bonds; zero coupon; potentially convertible into cash; FASB codification research

● LO14-5

The 2018 annual report of **MLS Corporation** included the following disclosure note:

Note 10: Borrowings (in part)
Convertible Debt

On June 15, 2018, we issued \$125 million of zero coupon convertible unsecured debt due on June 15, 2020 in a private placement offering, priced to yield 1.85%. Proceeds from the offering were \$118.3115 million. Initially, each \$1,000 principal amount of bonds was convertible into 30 shares of MLS common stock at a conversion price of \$35 per share.

The bonds are convertible at any time. Upon conversion, we will pay cash up to the aggregate principal amount of the bonds and pay or deliver cash, shares of our common stock, or a combination of cash and shares of our common stock, at our election.

Because the convertible debt may be wholly or partially settled in cash, we are required to separately account for the liability and equity components of the bonds in a manner that reflects our nonconvertible debt borrowing rate when interest costs are recognized in subsequent periods. The net proceeds of \$118.3 million were allocated between debt for \$117.2 million and shareholders' equity for \$1.1 million with the portion in shareholders' equity representing the fair value of the option to convert the debt.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry that was recorded when the bonds were issued on June 15, 2018.
2. What amount of interest expense, if any, did MLS record the first year the bonds were outstanding?
3. Normally under U.S. GAAP, we record the entire issue price of convertible debt as a liability. However, MLS separately recorded the liability and equity components of the notes. Why?
4. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on classification of debt expected to be financed using the FASB's Codification Research System. You might gain access from the FASB website (www.fasb.org), from your school library, or some other source. Determine the criteria for reporting debt potentially convertible into cash. What is the specific codification citation that MLS would rely on in applying that accounting treatment?

P 14-21

Concepts; terminology

● LO14-1
through LO14-5

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with long-term debt. Pair each item from List A with the item from List B (by letter) that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. Effective rate times balance	a. Straight-line method
_____ 2. Promises made to bondholders	b. Discount
_____ 3. Present value of interest plus present value of principal	c. Liquidation payments after other claims satisfied
_____ 4. Call feature	d. Name of owner not registered
_____ 5. Debt issue costs	e. Premium
_____ 6. Market rate higher than stated rate	f. Checks are mailed directly
_____ 7. Coupon bonds	g. No specific assets pledged
_____ 8. Convertible bonds	h. Bond indenture
_____ 9. Market rate less than stated rate	i. Backed by a lien
_____ 10. Stated rate times face amount	j. Interest expense
_____ 11. Registered bonds	k. May become stock
_____ 12. Debenture bond	l. Legal, accounting, printing
_____ 13. Mortgage bond	m. Protection against falling rates
_____ 14. Materiality concept	n. Periodic cash payments
_____ 15. Subordinated debenture	o. Bond price

P 14-22

Determine bond price; record interest; report bonds at fair value

● LO14-6

On January 1, 2018, NFB Visual Aids issued \$800,000 of its 20-year, 8% bonds. The bonds were priced to yield 10%. Interest is payable semiannually on June 30 and December 31. NFB Visual Aids records interest expense at the effective rate and elected the option to report these bonds at their fair value. On December 31, 2018, the fair value of the bonds was \$668,000 as determined by their market value in the over-the-counter market.

Required:

1. Determine the price of the bonds at January 1, 2018, and prepare the journal entry to record their issuance.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on June 30, 2018 (the first interest payment).
3. Prepare the journal entry to record interest on December 31, 2018 (the second interest payment).
4. Prepare the journal entry to adjust the bonds to their fair value for presentation in the December 31, 2018, balance sheet.



P 14-23

Report bonds at fair value; quarterly reporting

• LO14-6



Appling Enterprises issued 8% bonds with a face amount of \$400,000 on January 1, 2018. The bonds sold for \$331,364 and mature in 2037 (20 years). For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield was 10%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Appling determines interest expense at the effective rate. Appling elected the option to report these bonds at their fair value. The fair values of the bonds at the end of each quarter during 2018 as determined by their market values in the over-the-counter market were the following:

March 31	\$350,000
June 30	340,000
September 30	335,000
December 31	342,000

General (risk-free) interest rates did not change during 2018.

Required:

1. By how much will Appling's comprehensive income be increased or decreased by the bonds (ignoring taxes) in the March 31 *quarterly* financial statements?
2. By how much will Appling's comprehensive income be increased or decreased by the bonds (ignoring taxes) in the June 30 *quarterly* financial statements?
3. By how much will Appling's comprehensive income be increased or decreased by the bonds (ignoring taxes) in the September 30 *quarterly* financial statements?
4. By how much will Appling's comprehensive income be increased or decreased by the bonds (ignoring taxes) in the December 31 *annual* financial statements?

P 14-24

Investments in bonds; accrued interest; sale; straight-line interest

• LO14-2, Appendix A



The following transactions relate to bond investments of Livermore Laboratories. The company's fiscal year ends on December 31. Livermore uses the straight-line method to determine interest.

2018

- | | |
|--------|--|
| July 1 | Purchased \$16 million of Bracecourt Corporation 10% debentures, due in 20 years (June 30, 2038), for \$15.7 million. Interest is payable on January 1 and July 1 of each year. |
| Oct. 1 | Purchased \$30 million of 12% Framm Pharmaceuticals debentures, due May 31, 2028, for \$31,160,000 plus accrued interest. Interest is payable on June 1 and December 1 of each year. |
| Dec. 1 | Received interest on the Framm bonds. |
| 31 | Accrued interest. |

2019

- | | |
|---------|--|
| Jan. 1 | Received interest on the Bracecourt bonds. |
| June 1 | Received interest on the Framm bonds. |
| July 1 | Received interest on the Bracecourt bonds. |
| Sept. 1 | Sold \$15 million of the Framm bonds at 101 plus accrued interest. |
| Dec. 1 | Received interest on the remaining Framm bonds. |
| 31 | Accrued interest. |

2020

- | | |
|---------|---|
| Jan. 1 | Received interest on the Bracecourt bonds. |
| Feb. 28 | Sold the remainder of the Framm bonds at 102 plus accrued interest. |
| Dec. 31 | Accrued interest. |

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entries for these long-term bond investments.
2. By how much will Livermore Labs' earnings increase in each of the three years as a result of these investments? (Ignore income taxes.)

P 14-25

Accrued interest; effective interest; financial statement effects

• Appendix A



On March 1, 2018, Baddour, Inc., issued 10% bonds, dated January 1, with a face amount of \$160 million. The bonds were priced at \$140 million (plus accrued interest) to yield 12%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Baddour's fiscal year ends September 30.

Required:

1. What would be the amount(s) related to the bonds Baddour would report in its balance sheet at September 30, 2018?
2. What would be the amount(s) related to the bonds that Baddour would report in its income statement for the year ended September 30, 2018?
3. What would be the amount(s) related to the bonds that Baddour would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended September 30, 2018?

P 14–26

Troubled debt restructuring

● Appendix B

At January 1, 2018, Rothschild Chair Company, Inc., was indebted to First Lincoln Bank under a \$20 million, 10% unsecured note. The note was signed January 1, 2015, and was due December 31, 2021. Annual interest was last paid on December 31, 2016. Rothschild Chair Company was experiencing severe financial difficulties and negotiated a restructuring of the terms of the debt agreement.

Required:

Prepare all journal entries by Rothschild Chair Company, Inc., to record the restructuring and any remaining transactions relating to the debt under each of the independent circumstances below:

1. First Lincoln Bank agreed to settle the debt in exchange for land having a fair value of \$16 million but carried on Rothschild Chair Company's books at \$13 million.
2. First Lincoln Bank agreed to (a) forgive the interest accrued from last year, (b) reduce the remaining four interest payments to \$1 million each, and (c) reduce the principal to \$15 million.
3. First Lincoln Bank agreed to defer all payments (including accrued interest) until the maturity date and accept \$27,775,000 at that time in settlement of the debt.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Communication**Case 14–1**

Convertible securities and warrants; concepts

● LO14–5

It is not unusual to issue long-term debt in conjunction with an arrangement under which lenders receive an option to buy common stock during all or a portion of the time the debt is outstanding. Sometimes the vehicle is convertible bonds; sometimes warrants to buy stock accompany the bonds and are separable. Interstate Chemical is considering these options in conjunction with a planned debt issue.

"You mean we have to report \$7 million more in liabilities if we go with convertible bonds? Makes no sense to me," your CFO said. "Both ways seem pretty much the same transaction. Explain it to me, will you?"

Required:

Write a memo. Include in your explanation each of the following:

1. The differences in accounting for proceeds from the issuance of convertible bonds and of debt instruments with separate warrants to purchase common stock.
2. The underlying rationale for the differences.
3. Arguments that could be presented for the alternative accounting treatment.

Real World**Case 14–2**

Zero-coupon debt; HP Inc.

● LO14–2

HP Inc. (formerly Hewlett-Packard Company) issued zero-coupon notes at the end of its 1997 fiscal year that mature at the end of its 2017 fiscal year. One billion, eight hundred million dollars face amount of 20-year debt sold for \$968 million, a price to yield 3.149%. In fiscal 2002, HP repurchased \$257 million in face value of the notes for a purchase price of \$127 million, resulting in a gain on the early extinguishment of debt.

Required:

1. What journal entry did HP Inc. use to record the sale in 1997?
2. Using an electronic spreadsheet, prepare an amortization schedule for the notes. Assume interest is calculated annually and use numbers expressed in millions of dollars; that is, the face amount is \$1,800.
3. What was the effect on HP's earnings in 1998? Explain.
4. From the amortization schedule, determine the book value of the debt at the end of 2002.
5. What journal entry did HP Inc. use to record the early extinguishment of debt in 2002, assuming the purchase was made at the end of the year?
6. If none of the notes is repaid prior to maturity, what entry would HP use to record their repayment at the end of 2017?

Communication**Case 14–3**

Is convertible debt a liability or is it shareholders' equity? Group Interaction

● LO14–5

Some financial instruments can be considered compound instruments in that they have features of both debt and shareholders' equity. The most common example encountered in practice is convertible debt—bonds or notes convertible by the investor into common stock. A topic of debate for several years has been whether:

View 1: Issuers should account for an instrument with both liability and equity characteristics entirely as a liability or entirely as an equity instrument depending on which characteristic governs.

View 2: Issuers should account for an instrument as consisting of a liability component and an equity component that should be accounted for separately.

In considering this question, you should disregard what you know about the current position of the FASB on the issue. Instead, focus on conceptual issues regarding the practicable and theoretically appropriate treatment, unconstrained by GAAP. Also, focus your deliberations on convertible bonds as the instrument with both liability and equity characteristics.

Required:

1. Which view do you favor? Develop a list of arguments in support of your view prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.
2. In class, your instructor will pair you (and everyone else) with a classmate (who also has independently developed an argument).
 - a. You will be given three minutes to argue your view to your partner. Your partner likewise will be given three minutes to argue his or her view to you. During these three-minute presentations, the listening partner is not permitted to speak.
 - b. After each person has had a turn attempting to convince his or her partner, the two partners will have a three-minute discussion in which they will decide which view is more convincing. Arguments will be merged into a single view for each pair.
3. After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each of the two views will be selected by the instructor. Each spokesperson will field arguments from the class in support of that view's position and list the arguments on the board. The class then will discuss the merits of the two lists of arguments and attempt to reach a consensus view, though a consensus is not necessary.

Analysis

Case 14–4

Issuance of bonds

• LO14–2

The following appeared in the October 15, 2018, issue of the *Financial Smarts Journal*:

This announcement is not an offer of securities for sale or an offer to buy securities.

New Issue

October 15, 2018

\$750,000,000

CRAFT FOODS, INC.

7.75% Debentures Due October 1, 2028

Price 99.57%

plus accrued interest if any from date of issuance

Copies of the prospectus and the related prospectus supplement may be obtained from such of the undersigned as may legally offer these securities under applicable securities laws.

Keegan Morgan & Co. Inc.

Coldwell Bros. & Co.

Robert Stacks & Co.

Sherwin-William & Co.

Required:

1. Explain what is being described by the announcement.
2. Can you think of a psychological reason for the securities to be priced as they are?
3. What are the accounting considerations for Craft Foods, Inc.? Describe how Craft recorded the sale.

Judgment

Case 14–5

Noninterest-bearing debt

• LO14–3

While reading a recent issue of *Health & Fitness*, a trade journal, Brandon Wilde noticed an ad for equipment he had been seeking for use in his business. The ad offered oxygen therapy equipment under the following terms:

Model BL 44582

\$204,000 zero interest loan

Quarterly payments of \$17,000 for only 3 years

The ad captured Wilde's attention, in part, because he recently had been concerned that the interest charges incurred by his business were getting out of line. The price, though, was somewhat higher than prices for this model he had seen elsewhere.

Required:

Advise Mr. Wilde on the purchase he is considering.

Judgment**Case 14–6**

Noninterest-bearing note exchanged for cash and other privileges

● LO14–3

The Jaecke Group, Inc., manufactures various kinds of hydraulic pumps. In June 2018, the company signed a four-year purchase agreement with one of its main parts suppliers, Hydraulics, Inc. Over the four-year period, Jaecke has agreed to purchase 100,000 units of a key component used in the manufacture of its pumps. The agreement allows Jaecke to purchase the component at a price lower than the prevailing market price at the time of purchase. As part of the agreement, Jaecke will lend Hydraulics \$200,000 to be repaid after four years with no stated interest (the prevailing market rate of interest for a loan of this type is 10%).

Jaecke's chief accountant has proposed recording the note receivable at \$200,000. The parts inventory purchase from Hydraulics over the next four years will then be recorded at the actual prices paid.

Required:

Do you agree with the accountant's valuation of the note and his intention to value the parts inventory acquired over the four-year period of the agreement at actual prices paid? If not, how would you account for the initial transaction and the subsequent inventory purchases?

Communication**Case 14–7**

Note receivable exchanged for cash and other services

● LO14–3

The Pastel Paint Company recently loaned \$300,000 to KIX 96, a local radio station. The radio station signed a noninterest-bearing note requiring the \$300,000 to be repaid in three years. As part of the agreement, the radio station will provide Pastel with a specified amount of free radio advertising over the three-year term of the note.

The focus of this case is the valuation of the note receivable by Pastel Paint Company and the treatment of the "free" advertising provided by the radio station. Your instructor will divide the class into two to six groups depending on the size of the class. The mission of your group is to reach consensus on the appropriate note valuation and accounting treatment of the free advertising.

Required:

1. Each group member should deliberate the situation independently and draft a tentative argument prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.
2. In class, each group will meet for 10 to 15 minutes in different areas of the classroom. During that meeting, group members will take turns sharing their suggestions for the purpose of arriving at a single group treatment.
3. After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each group (selected during the group meetings) will share the group's solution with the class. The goal of the class is to incorporate the views of each group into a consensus approach to the situation.

Ethics Case 14–8

Debt for equity swaps; have your cake and eat it too

● LO14–5

The cloudy afternoon mirrored the mood of the conference of division managers. Claude Meyer, assistant to the controller for Hunt Manufacturing, wore one of the gloomy faces that were just emerging from the conference room. "Wow, I knew it was bad, but not that bad," Claude thought to himself. "I don't look forward to sharing those numbers with shareholders."

The numbers he discussed with himself were fourth-quarter losses which more than offset the profits of the first three quarters. Everyone had known for some time that poor sales forecasts and production delays had wreaked havoc on the bottom line, but most were caught off guard by the severity of damage.

Later that night he sat alone in his office, scanning and rescanning the preliminary financial statements on his computer monitor. Suddenly his mood brightened. "This may work," he said aloud, though no one could hear. Fifteen minutes later he congratulated himself, "Yes!"

The next day he eagerly explained his plan to Susan Barr, controller of Hunt for the last six years. The plan involved \$300 million in convertible bonds issued three years earlier.

Meyer: By swapping stock for the bonds, we can eliminate a substantial liability from the balance sheet, wipe out most of our interest expense, and reduce our loss. In fact, the book value of the bonds is significantly more than the market value of the stock we'd issue. I think we can produce a profit.

Barr: But Claude, our bondholders are not inclined to convert the bonds.

Meyer: Right. But, the bonds are callable. As of this year, we can call the bonds at a call premium of 1%. Given the choice of accepting that redemption price or converting to stock, they'll all convert. We won't have to pay a cent. And, since no cash will be paid, we won't pay taxes either.

Required:

Do you perceive an ethical dilemma? What would be the impact of following up on Claude's plan? Who would benefit? Who would be injured?

Judgment**Case 14–9**

Analyzing financial statements; financial leverage; interest coverage

● LO14–1, LO14–4

AGF Foods Company is a large, primarily domestic, consumer foods company involved in the manufacture, distribution, and sale of a variety of food products. Industry averages are derived from Troy's *The Almanac of Business and Industrial Financial Ratios*. Following are the 2018 and 2017 comparative income statements and balance sheets for AGF. (The financial data we use are from actual financial statements of a well-known corporation, but the company name is fictitious and the numbers and dates have been modified slightly to disguise the company's identity.)

AGF FOODS COMPANY
Years Ended December 31, 2018 and 2017
(\$ in millions)

Comparative Income Statements	2018	2017
Net sales	\$6,440	\$5,800
Cost of goods sold	(3,667)	(3,389)
Gross profit	2,773	2,411
Operating expenses	(1,916)	(1,629)
Operating income	857	782
Interest expense	(54)	(53)
Income from operations before tax	803	729
Income taxes	(316)	(287)
Net income	<u>\$ 487</u>	<u>\$ 442</u>
Comparative Balance Sheets		
Assets		
Total current assets	\$1,879	\$1,490
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	2,592	2,291
Intangibles (net)	800	843
Other assets	74	60
Total assets	<u>\$5,345</u>	<u>\$4,684</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Total current liabilities	\$1,473	\$ 941
Long-term debt	534	728
Deferred income taxes	407	344
Total liabilities	<u>2,414</u>	<u>2,013</u>
Shareholders' equity:		
Common stock	180	180
Additional paid-in capital	21	63
Retained earnings	2,730	2,428
Total shareholders' equity	<u>2,931</u>	<u>2,671</u>
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$5,345</u>	<u>\$4,684</u>

Long-term solvency refers to a company's ability to pay its long-term obligations. Financing ratios provide investors and creditors with an indication of this element of risk.

Required:

1. Calculate the debt to equity ratio for AGF for 2018. The average ratio for the stocks listed on the New York Stock Exchange in a comparable time period was 1.0. What information does your calculation provide an investor?
2. Is AGF experiencing favorable or unfavorable financial leverage?
3. Calculate AGF's times interest earned ratio for 2018. The coverage for the stocks listed on the New York Stock Exchange in a comparable time period was 5.1. What does your calculation indicate about AGF's risk?

**Research
Case 14–10**

FASB codification research; researching the way long-term debt is reported; Macy's, Inc.

- LO14–1 through LO14–4

Real World Financials

EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, performs automated collection, validation, indexing, acceptance and forwarding of submissions by companies and others who are required by law to file forms with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR to make the majority of their filings. (Some foreign companies do so voluntarily.) Form 10-K, including the annual report, is required to be filed on EDGAR. The SEC makes this information available on the Internet.

Required:

1. Access EDGAR on the Internet at www.sec.gov or from Investor Relations at the **Macy's, Inc.** (www.macys.com).
2. Search for Macy's. Access its 10-K filing for the year ended January 30, 2016. Search or scroll to find the financial statements and related notes.
3. What is the total debt (including current liabilities and deferred taxes) reported in the balance sheet? How has that amount changed over the most recent two years?
4. Compare the total liabilities (including current liabilities and deferred taxes) with the shareholders' equity and calculate the debt to equity ratio for the most recent two years. Has the proportion of debt financing and equity financing changed recently?



- Does Macy's obtain more financing through notes, bonds, or commercial paper? Are required debt payments increasing or decreasing over time? Is any short-term debt classified as long-term? Why?
- Note 6: Financing** includes the following statement: "On November 18, 2014, the Company issued \$550 million aggregate principal amount of 4.5% senior notes due 2034. This debt was used to pay for the redemption of the \$407 million of 7.875% senior notes due 2015 described above." Under some circumstances, Macy's could have reported the amounts due in 2015 as long-term debt at the end of the previous year even though these amounts were due within the coming year. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on classification of debt expected to be financed using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*. You might gain access from the FASB website (www.fasb.org), from your school library, or some other source. Determine the criteria for reporting currently payable debt as long-term. What is the specific codification citation that Macy's would rely on in applying that accounting treatment?

Analysis

Case 14–11

Bonds;
conversion;
extinguishment

LO14–5

On August 31, 2015, Chickasaw Industries issued \$25 million of its 30-year, 6% convertible bonds dated August 31, priced to yield 5%. The bonds are convertible at the option of the investors into 1,500,000 shares of Chickasaw's common stock. Chickasaw records interest expense at the effective rate. On August 31, 2018, investors in Chickasaw's convertible bonds tendered 20% of the bonds for conversion into common stock that had a market value of \$20 per share on the date of the conversion. On January 1, 2017, Chickasaw Industries issued \$40 million of its 20-year, 7% bonds dated January 1 at a price to yield 8%. On December 31, 2018, the bonds were extinguished early through acquisition in the open market by Chickasaw for \$40.5 million.

Required:

- Using the book value method, would recording the conversion of the 6% convertible bonds into common stock affect earnings? If so, by how much? Would earnings be affected if the market value method is used? If so, by how much?
- Were the 7% bonds issued at face value, at a discount, or at a premium? Explain.
- Would the amount of interest expense for the 7% bonds be higher in the first year or second year of the term to maturity? Explain.
- How should gain or loss on early extinguishment of debt be determined? Does the early extinguishment of the 7% bonds result in a gain or loss? Explain.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

LO14–4

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Target's share-based compensation includes several long-term incentive plans.

Long-term solvency refers to a company's ability to pay its long-term obligations. Financing ratios provide investors and creditors with an indication of this element of risk.

Required:

- Calculate the debt to equity ratio for Target at January 30, 2016. The average ratio for companies in the General Retailers industry sector in a comparable time period was 1.6. What information does your calculation provide an investor?
- Calculate Target's times interest earned ratio for the year ended January 30, 2016. The coverage for companies in the General Retailers industry sector in a comparable time period was 10.6. What does your calculation indicate about Target's risk?

Air France–KLM Case

LO14–7



IFRS

Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material also is available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm-finance.com).

Required:

- Examine the long-term borrowings in AF's balance sheet and the related note (33.2.2). Note that AF has convertible bonds outstanding that it issued in 2013. Prepare the journal entry AF would use to record the issue of convertible bonds. Prepare the journal entry AF would use to record the issue of the convertible bonds if AF used U.S. GAAP.
- AF does not elect the fair value option (FVO) to report its financial liabilities. Examine Note 36.3 "Market value of financial instruments." If the company had elected the FVO for all of its debt measured at amortized cost, what would be the balance at December 31, 2015, in the fair value adjustment account?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

15

Leases

OVERVIEW

In Chapter 14, we saw how companies account for their long-term debt. The focus of that discussion was *bonds* and *notes*. In this chapter, we continue our discussion of debt, but we now turn our attention to liabilities arising in connection with *leases*. A lease is a contract that gives a lessee (user) the right to control the use of an asset for a period of time. The lessee pays the lessor (owner) for that right, typically with a series of payments made over the lease term. The lessee initially accounts for this arrangement by recording a “right-of-use” asset and a lease liability at the beginning of the lease. Subsequent accounting depends on the nature of the lease contract. When the substance of the lease contract represents a temporary rental agreement between the lessee and lessor, we classify those as operating leases. However, in situations where the lease contract essentially represents the sale of an asset, the lessee has a finance lease, and the lessor has a sales-type lease. As we’ll see in this chapter, the way we account for a lease contract depends on how the lease is classified.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO15-1** Explain the basis for each of the criteria used to classify leases. (p. 832)
- **LO15-2** Describe and demonstrate how the lessee accounts for a finance lease and the lessor accounts for a sales-type lease with no selling profit. (p. 836)
- **LO15-3** Describe and demonstrate how the lessor accounts for a sales-type lease with a selling profit. (p. 841)
- **LO15-4** Describe and demonstrate how the lessor and lessee account for all transactions associated with operating leases. (p. 843)
- **LO15-5** Explain when and how a lessee accounts for a lease by the short-cut method. (p. 849)
- **LO15-6** Explain the impact on lease accounting of uncertainties, including uncertain lease terms, variable lease payments, residual values, purchase options, and termination penalties. (p. 850)
- **LO15-7** Explain the impact on lease accounting of other payments, including nonlease payments, initial direct costs, and leasehold improvements. (p. 861)
- **LO15-8** Describe the impact of leases on the statement of cash flows and disclosure requirements pertaining to leases. (p. 867)
- **LO15-9** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to leases. (pp. 849 and 853)



© Pressmaster/Shutterstock

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Lease or Buy?

“The days of off-balance-sheet financing are over,” said Aaron Sanchez, controller for your new employer, Higher Graphics. “Now that we have to report liabilities for both finance and operating leases, maybe we shouldn’t keep limiting our leases to short-term arrangements that would be considered operating leases. In fact, maybe we should start buying our equipment rather than leasing it.”

Like most companies in your industry, HG leases much of the electronic equipment it uses to develop and test the software it produces. Eager to understand the implications of your new supervisor’s concerns, you turn to the Internet to bolster your knowledge of the new lease accounting standards.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. Are there advantages of leasing its equipment that HG should consider? (p. 834)
2. Would the effect on HG’s income statement be the same if HG used finance leases instead of operating leases? (p. 841)

QUESTIONS

Accounting by the Lessor and Lessee

If you ever have leased an apartment, you know that a lease is a contractual arrangement by which a **lessor** (owner) provides a **lessee** (user) the right to use an asset for a specified period of time. In return for this right, the lessee agrees to make periodic cash payments during the term of the lease. An apartment lease is a typical rental agreement in which the fundamental rights and responsibilities of ownership are retained by the lessor; the lessee merely uses the asset temporarily. Businesses, too, lease assets under similar arrangements. These are referred to as **operating leases**. Many contracts, though, are formulated outwardly as leases, but in reality are installment purchases/sales. These are called **finance leases** by the lessee and **sales-type leases** by the lessor. Illustration 15–1 compares the classification possibilities.

PART A

An apartment lease is a typical rental agreement referred to as an **operating lease**.

Lessee

- Finance lease
- Operating lease

Lessor

- Sales-type lease
 - without selling profit
 - with selling profit
- Operating lease*

*In a very specific situation described in Part B, a lease that doesn’t qualify as a sales-type lease might be classified as a “direct financing” lease rather than an operating lease.

Illustration 15–1

Basic Lease Classifications

Lease Classification

- LO15-1 A lease is accounted for in one of two ways. It is viewed as either a finance/sales-type lease (a purchase/sale accompanied by debt financing) or as an operating lease (a rental).¹ The accounting method we use hinges on the nature of the leasing contract.

A basic concept of accounting is substance over form.

Accounting for leases attempts to see through the legal form of the agreements to determine their economic substance.

Sometimes the true nature of the contract is obvious. For example, a 10-year noncancelable lease of a computer with a 10-year useful life, by which title passes to the lessee at the end of the lease term, obviously more nearly represents a purchase than a rental agreement, and should be treated as a finance lease. A 10-day rental of the same computer, with no passage of title to the lessee, obviously represents a rental and not a sale. But what about the gray area between the obvious cases? What if the terms of the contract don't transfer title, and the lease term is for only seven years of the asset's 10-year life? What if contractual terms permit the lessee to obtain title under certain prearranged conditions? What if the present value of payments provided by the lease contract is nearly equal to the value of the asset under lease? These situations are less clear-cut.

Professional judgment is needed to differentiate between leases that in essence are installment purchases/sales and those that are not. It's important to note that from an accounting perspective *legal ownership is irrelevant* in the decision. A finance lease is not the same as the purchase of an asset. The rights a lease grants a lessee under any lease, whether classified as a finance lease or an operating lease, are different from the rights transferred in the outright purchase of an asset. As one example, a lessee can't sell the leased asset.

Nonetheless, a finance lease is economically similar to a purchase of the asset because the terms of a finance lease (a) normally allow the lessee to *direct the use* of the asset in a way that the lessee receives *substantially all of the remaining benefits* from the asset and (b) creates obligations for the lessee that are similar to those that financing the purchase of an asset would impose. An operating lease lacks those characteristics. Thus, the essential question when determining lease classification is whether a particular lease arrangement has the characteristics of a finance lease.

Determining lease classification based on judgment alone is likely to lead to inconsistencies in practice. The desire to encourage consistency in practice motivated the FASB to provide guidance for distinguishing between the two fundamental types of leases. As you study the classification criteria in the following paragraphs, keep in mind that some leases clearly fit the classifications we give them, but others fall in a gray area somewhere between the two extremes. For those, we end up classifying according to the best evidence available.

CLASSIFICATION CRITERIA. We classify a lease transaction as a *finance lease* (*sales-type lease* from the lessor's perspective) if one or more of the five criteria listed in Illustration 15-2 is met. Otherwise, it is an *operating lease*.

Illustration 15-2

Criteria for Classification as a Finance Lease

1. The agreement specifies that ownership of the asset transfers to the lessee.
2. The agreement contains a purchase option that the lessee is reasonably certain to exercise.
3. The lease term is for the "major part" of the remaining economic life of the underlying asset.*
4. The present value of the total of the lease payments[†] equals or exceeds "substantially all" of the fair value of the underlying asset.
5. The underlying asset is of such a specialized nature that it is expected to have no alternative use to the lessor at the end of the lease term.

*If the lease begins at or near the end of the economic life of the asset, this criterion shouldn't be used for purposes of classifying the lease.

[†]This total includes any residual value of the asset at the end of the lease term that is guaranteed by the lessee. We discuss residual values, guaranteed and unguaranteed, later in the chapter.

¹An "Additional Consideration" in Part B describes a very specific situation in which a lease that doesn't qualify as a sales-type lease might be classified as a "direct financing" lease rather than an operating lease.

Let's look closer at these criteria.

Criterion 1. Since our objective is to determine whether the lessor has, in substance, sold the asset to the lessee, the first criterion is self-evident. If legal title passes to the lessee during, or at the end of, the lease term, obviously ownership attributes are transferred.

Criterion 1: Transfer of ownership.

Criterion 2. A **purchase option** is a provision in the lease contract that gives the lessee the option of purchasing the leased property at a specified exercise price. Criterion 2 is met if the exercise price is sufficiently lower than the expected fair value of the property when the option becomes exercisable that the exercise of the option by the lessee appears “reasonably certain” at the beginning of the lease.

Criterion 2: Purchase option the lessee is reasonably certain to exercise.

For example, suppose instead of purchasing farmland for its fair value of \$100,000, the farmland is leased for \$20,000 per year for five years with an option at the end of the lease period to purchase it for an additional \$25,000. Because \$25,000 is likely to be a bargain price for the farmland in five years, the lessee is reasonably certain to exercise the purchase option, and transfer of ownership is expected.

Although the lease accounting guidance (ASC Topic 842: “Leases”) does not use the term, in this chapter, we will refer to this as a “Bargain Purchase Option” (BPO). So the logic of the second criterion is similar to that of the first. Applying criterion 2 in practice, though, often is more difficult because it's necessary to make a judgment *now* about whether a *future* fair value will be sufficiently higher than the exercise price so that exercise is “reasonably certain.”

Criterion 3. The third criterion considers whether the asset is leased for the “major part” of its useful life. If that criterion is met, then most of the risks and rewards of ownership are deemed to have been transferred to the lessee. The lease accounting guidance (ASC Topic 842: “Leases”) suggests that one reasonable approach to assessing this criterion would be to conclude that 75% or more of the remaining economic life of the underlying asset constitutes a “major part” of the remaining economic life of that underlying asset. Note, though, that this is only one approach and not a precise indication.

Criterion 3: Lease term is for the major part of economic life.

Although the intent of this criterion is fairly straightforward, implementation sometimes is troublesome. First, the lease term may be uncertain. It may be renewable beyond its initial term. Or, the lease may be cancelable after a designated noncancelable period. If the lease includes these provisions, we need to consider whether a change in the lease term is reasonably certain to occur.

Additional Consideration

Periods covered by renewal options are not included in the lease term if a bargain purchase option (BPO) is present. This is because the lease term cannot extend beyond the date a purchase option is exercised. For example, assume a bargain purchase option allows a lessee to buy a leased delivery truck at the end of a noncancelable five-year lease term. Even if an option to renew the lease beyond that date is considered to be reasonably certain to be exercised in the event of not exercising the purchase option, that renewal period would not be included as part of the lease term. Remember, we presume the purchase option will be exercised after the initial five-year term, making the renewal option irrelevant.

A second implementation issue is estimating, at the beginning of the lease, the economic life of the leased property. This is the estimated remaining time the property is expected to be economically usable for its intended purpose, with normal maintenance and repairs. Estimates of the economic life of leased property are subject to the same uncertainty limitations of most estimates. This uncertainty presents the opportunity to arrive at estimates that cause this third criterion not to be met.

Finally, if the lease begins “at or near the end” of an asset's economic life, this third criterion does not apply. That's because most of the risks and rewards of ownership occur prior to that time.²

²ASC Topic 842: “Leases” specifies that one reasonable approach to determining whether this exception should be applied would be to conclude that a lease that commences in the final 25% of an asset's economic life is “at or near the end” of the underlying asset's economic life.

Criterion 4: Present value of payments is substantially all of fair value.

Criterion 5: Leased asset is so specialized that it cannot reasonably be repurposed.

Criterion 4. The fourth criterion indicates that, if the **lease payments** have a total value that represents “substantially all” of the asset’s fair value, it’s logical to identify the lease contract as equivalent to a sale. The lease accounting guidance suggests that one reasonable approach to assessing this criterion would be to conclude that payments with a present value of 90% or more of the fair value of the underlying asset represent “substantially all” of the fair value. In general, lease payments for the purpose of classifying a lease are payments the lessee is *required* to make in connection with the lease. We look closer at the make-up of lease payments later in the chapter when we discuss various uncertainties in lease transactions in more detail.

Criterion 5. The fifth criterion recognizes that, if the underlying asset is of such a specialized nature that it is expected to have *no alternative use* to the lessor at the end of the lease term, then only the lessee can derive the usual risks and rewards of ownership of the asset. Likewise, the lessor will achieve its desired return on investment only through the lease payments from that particular lease, indicating that the lessor intends a sale of ownership rights.

Decision Makers' Perspective—Advantages of Leasing

Consider the decision being made by each of the following three individuals.

When a young entrepreneur started a computer training center a few years ago, she had no idea how fast her business would grow. While she knows computers are needed, she doesn’t know how many. Just starting out, she also has little cash with which to buy them.

The mutual funds department of a large investment firm often needs new computers and peripherals—fast. The department manager knows he can’t afford to wait up to a year, the time it sometimes takes to go through company channels to obtain purchase approval.

An established computer software publisher recently began developing a new line of business software. The senior programmer has to be certain he’s testing the company’s products on the latest versions of computer hardware and mobile devices. And yet he views large expenditures on equipment subject to rapid obsolescence as risky business.

Each of these individuals is faced with different predicaments and concerns. The entrepreneur is faced with uncertainty and cash flow problems, the department manager with time constraints and bureaucratic control systems, and the programmer with fear of obsolescence. Though their specific concerns differ, these individuals have all met their firms’ information technology needs with the same solution: each has decided to lease the computers rather than buy them.

Computers are by no means the only assets obtained through leasing arrangements. To the contrary, leasing has grown to be the most popular method of external financing of corporate assets in America. The airplane in which you last flew probably was leased, as was the gate from which it departed. Your favorite retail outlet at the local shopping mall likely leases the space in which it operates. Many companies actually exist for the sole purpose of acquiring assets and leasing them to others. This kind of leasing is a thriving industry. It is a profitable part of operations for banks and other financial institutions (**Citicorp** is one of the largest). Some leasing companies do nothing else. Leasing companies, like **IBM Credit Corporation**, often are subsidiaries of larger corporations, formed for the sole purpose of conducting financing activities for their parent corporations. And, leasing often is a primary method of “selling” a firm’s products. **IBM** and **Boeing** are familiar examples.

In light of its popularity, you may be surprised that leasing usually is more expensive than buying. The higher apparent cost of leasing compensates the lessor for shouldering at least some of the financial and risk burdens that a purchaser normally would assume. So, why the popularity?

The lease decisions described above are motivated by operational incentives. Tax and market considerations also motivate firms to lease. Sometimes leasing offers tax savings over outright purchases. For instance, a company with little or no taxable income—maybe a business just getting started, or one experiencing an economic downturn—will get little benefit from depreciation deductions for an owned asset. But the company can benefit *indirectly* by leasing assets rather than buying. By allowing the *lessor* to retain ownership and thus benefit from depreciation deductions, the lessee often can negotiate lower lease payments. Lessees

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 831

Leasing can facilitate asset acquisition.

The number one method of external financing by U.S. businesses is leasing.

Tax incentives often motivate leasing.

with sufficient taxable income to take advantage of the depreciation deductions, but still in lower tax brackets than lessors, also can achieve similar indirect tax benefits.

Prior to recent lease accounting guidance, another reason to lease rather than buy was to obtain “off-balance-sheet financing.”³ When funds are borrowed to purchase an asset, the liability has a detrimental effect on the company’s debt to equity ratio and other quantifiable indicators of riskiness. Similarly, the purchased asset increases total assets and correspondingly lowers calculations of the rate of return on assets. To avoid looking more risky and less profitable, managers previously were able to keep assets and liabilities “off balance sheet” by leasing them rather than buying them. That way, managers could avoid surpassing contractual limits on designated financial ratios (such as the debt to equity ratio).⁴ Also, despite research that indicates otherwise, some managers might have thought they were fooling the financial markets into thinking their strategies were less risky and more profitable than actually was the case. However, GAAP now requires lessees to record assets and liabilities for all but short-term leases. In fact, the primary impetus for the new guidance was to curtail off-balance-sheet financing. Still, even without the incentive of off-balance-sheet financing, when the operational, tax, and financial advantages are considered, the *net* cost of leasing often is less than the cost of purchasing, so leasing arrangements are still very popular. ●

Traditionally, leasing was used as a means of off-balance-sheet financing.

Operational, tax, and financial incentives often make leasing an attractive alternative to purchasing.

Before we apply the classification criteria to identify a finance lease, it’s useful to see how accounting for a finance lease is similar to the way we accounted for installment notes in the previous chapter.

Finance Leases and Installment Notes Compared

You learned in Chapter 14 how to account for an installment note. To a great extent, then, you already have learned how to account for a finance lease. Finance leases are agreements that we identify as being formulated outwardly as leases, but which in reality are essentially installment purchases.

To illustrate, let’s recall a situation described in the previous chapter. We assumed that Skill Graphics purchased a package-labeling machine from Hughes–Barker Corporation by issuing a three-year installment note that required six semiannual installment payments of \$139,857 each. That arrangement provided for the purchase of the \$666,633 machine as well as interest at an annual rate of 14% (7% twice each year). Remember, too, that each installment payment consisted of part interest (7% times the outstanding balance) and part payment for the machine (the remainder of each payment).

Now let’s suppose that Skill Graphics instead acquired control of the package-labeling machine from Hughes–Barker Corporation under a three-year *lease* that required six semiannual lease payments of \$139,857 each. The fundamental nature of the transaction remains the same regardless of whether it is negotiated as an installment purchase or as a lease. So, we account for this lease in fundamentally the same way as an installment purchase. To see this, let’s first compare how we account for an installment note versus a finance lease at the beginning (or commencement) of the lease (see Illustration 15–3):

At Beginning (January 1)		
Installment Note		
Machinery	666,633	
Note payable		666,633
Finance Lease		
Leased machinery	666,633	
Lease payable		666,633

Illustration 15–3

Comparison of a Note and Finance Lease

In keeping with the basic accounting concept of substance over form, accounting for a finance lease parallels that for an installment purchase.

³Accounting Standards Update 2016-02: Leases (Topic 842) (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2016).

⁴It is common for debt agreements, particularly long-term ones, to include restrictions on the debtor as a way to provide some degree of protection to the creditor. Sometimes a minimum level is specified for current assets relative to current liabilities, debt as a ratio of equity, return on net assets or many other financial ratios. Typically, the debt becomes due on demand when the debtor becomes in violation of such a debt covenant, often after a specified grace period.

Notice that we debit an asset account and credit a liability, regardless of whether the machinery is acquired through financing with a note payable or through a finance lease.

With each periodic payment, interest expense accrues at the effective rate times the outstanding balance, and the balance of the liability is reduced for the difference as shown in Illustration 15–3A.

Illustration 15–3A

Interest Compared for a Note and Finance Lease

Each payment includes both an amount that represents interest and an amount that represents a reduction of principal.

At the First Semiannual Payment Date (June 30)

(7% × Outstanding balance)

Installment Note

Interest expense (7% × \$666,633)	46,664	
Note payable (difference)	93,193	
Cash (installment payment)		139,857

Finance Lease

Interest expense (7% × \$666,633)	46,664	
Lease payable (difference)	93,193	
Cash (lease payment)		139,857

Because the lease payable balance declines with each payment, the amount of interest expense decreases each period. An amortization schedule is convenient to track the changing amounts as shown in Illustration 15–3B.

Illustration 15–3B

Lease Amortization Schedule

Each lease payment includes interest on the outstanding balance at the effective rate. The remainder of each payment reduces the outstanding balance.

Date	Payments	Effective Interest	Decrease in Balance	Outstanding Balance
		(7% × Outstanding balance)	(Pmt. – Interest)	
				666,633
1	139,857	0.07(666,633) = 46,664	93,193	573,440
2	139,857	0.07(573,440) = 40,141	99,716	473,724
3	139,857	0.07(473,724) = 33,161	106,696	367,028
4	139,857	0.07(367,028) = 25,692	114,165	252,863
5	139,857	0.07(252,863) = 17,700	122,157	130,706
6	139,857	0.07(130,706) = 9,151*	130,706	0
	839,142	172,509	666,633	

*Rounded

You should recognize this as essentially the same amortization schedule we used in the previous chapter in connection with our installment note example. The reason for the similarity is that we view a finance lease as being, in substance, equivalent to an installment purchase. So naturally the accounting treatment of the two essentially identical transactions should be consistent.

In the remaining sections of Part A of this chapter, we'll apply the lease classification criteria to a basic lease situation and consider, in order, (a) finance leases to the lessee/sales-type leases to the lessor and (b) operating leases.

Finance/Sales-Type Leases

LO15–2

Let's look at an example that illustrates the application of the classification criteria listed in Illustration 15–2. The earlier example in Illustration 15–3B comparing a finance lease to an installment purchase assumed lease payments at the *end* of each period. A more typical leasing contract requires lease payments at the *beginning* of each period. This more realistic payment schedule is assumed in Illustration 15–4.

Let's first think about this contract from the perspective of Sans Serif, the lessee. Because at least one of the five classification criteria is met, Sans Serif would classify the lease as a finance

On January 1, 2018, Sans Serif Publishers, leased printing equipment from First LeaseCorp. First LeaseCorp purchased the equipment from CompuDec Corporation at a cost of \$479,079.

The lease agreement specifies six annual payments of \$100,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 from 2018 through 2022. The six-year lease term ending December 31, 2023, is equal to the estimated useful life of the equipment. First LeaseCorp routinely acquires electronic equipment for lease to other firms. The interest rate in these financing arrangements is 10%.

How should this lease be classified by the lessee (finance or operating)? By the lessor (sales-type or operating)? We apply the five classification criteria:

1. Does the agreement specify that ownership of the asset transfers to the lessee?	No
2. Does this agreement contain a purchase option reasonably certain to be exercised?	No
3. Is the lease term for the “major part” of the estimated economic life of the asset?	Yes (6-year lease term; 6-year life)
4. Is the present value of the lease payments equal to or greater than “substantially all” of the fair value of the asset?	Yes (\$479,079 present value; \$479,079 fair value) $\$100,000 \times 4.79079^* = \$479,079$
5. Is the asset of such a specialized nature that it is expected to have no alternative use to the lessor at the end of the lease term?	No (First LeaseCorp routinely leases this type of equipment)

Decision: Since at least one (two in this case) of the five classification criteria is met, this is a finance lease to the lessee and a sales-type lease to the lessor.

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$. Recall from Chapter 6 that we refer to periodic payments at the beginning of each period as an *annuity due*.

Illustration 15-4

Finance Lease/Sales-Type
Lease: No Selling Profit

If at least one of the five classification criteria is met, this is a finance/sales-type lease.

lease. While Sans Serif does not have legal ownership of the printing equipment as with a typical purchase, Sans Serif did acquire the right to use the printing equipment. That's why Sans Serif records a “right-of-use asset.” In addition, just as if it were an installment purchase, Sans Serif also would record a liability for the present value of the lease payments. The entry by Sans Serif to record the finance lease is shown in Illustration 15-4A.

On the flip side of the transaction, just as if it were an installment sale, First LeaseCorp records a lease receivable for the present value of the payments to be received and removes from its balance sheet (derecognizes) the asset being leased. Later, we'll look at situations in which the lease receivable (reflecting the ‘selling price’) exceeds the asset's carrying value, creating the need to also record a selling profit for the difference. Indeed, some lessors use leasing as an alternative way to sell their assets and have no intention of reusing or re-leasing assets leased under a sales-type lease.

In the journal entries in Illustrations 15-4A and 15-4B and throughout the chapter, we often look at the entries of the lessee and the lessor together. This way, we can be reminded that, usually, the entries for the lessor are essentially the mirror image of those for the lessee, the other side of the same coin.⁵

Recording Interest Expense/Interest Revenue

As lease payments are made over the term of the lease, both the lessee and lessor record interest at the effective interest rate. In addition, the lessee, Sans Serif, will record amortization expense on its right-of-use asset over the term of the lease. Let's first consider interest.

As shown in Illustration 15-4B, the entire \$100,000 first lease payment is applied to principal (lease payable/receivable) reduction.⁶ That's because the payment occurred at the beginning of the lease, so no interest had yet accrued. Subsequent lease payments, though,

Interest accrues at the effective rate on the balance outstanding during the period.

⁵We see later in the chapter that sometimes the lessee and lessor have accounting that is not a mirror image, particularly when the lease is either a sales-type lease with a selling profit or an operating lease. However, even when the two sides are not mirror images, there are many similarities, so the comparison still is helpful.

⁶Another way to view this is to think of the first \$100,000 as a down payment with the remaining \$379,079 financed by 5 (i.e., $6 - 1$) year-end lease payments.

Illustration 15-4A

Finance Lease/Sales-Type
Lease: No Selling Profit



Using Excel, enter:

=PV(10%, 6, -100000, 1)

Output: 479079



Using a calculator,

enter: BEG mode \boxed{N} 6

\boxed{I} 10

\boxed{PMT} - 100000 \boxed{FV}

Output: \boxed{PV} 479079

An asset and liability are recorded by the lessee at the present value of the lease payments.

Notice that the lessor's entries are the flip side or mirror image of the lessee's entries.

On January 1, 2018, Sans Serif Publishers leased printing equipment from First LeaseCorp. First LeaseCorp purchased the equipment from CompuDec Corporation at a cost of \$479,079.

The lease agreement specifies six annual payments of \$100,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 from 2018 through 2022. The six-year lease term ending December 31, 2023, is equal to the estimated useful life of the equipment. First Lease Corp routinely acquires electronic equipment for lease to other firms. The interest rate in these financing contracts is 10%.

The price Sans Serif pays for the right to control the use of the equipment is the present value of the lease payments:

$$\$100,000 \times 4.79079^* = \$479,079$$

Lease Payments Right-of-Use Asset

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

Beginning of the Lease (January 1, 2018)

Sans Serif (Lessee)

Right-of-use asset (present value of lease payments)	479,079	
Lease payable (present value of lease payments)		479,079

First LeaseCorp (Lessor)

Lease receivable (present value of lease payments)	479,079	
Equipment (lessor's cost: carrying amount)		479,079

include interest of 10% on the outstanding balance as well as a portion that reduces that outstanding balance. As of the second lease payment twelve months later, one year's interest of **\$37,908** has accrued on the \$379,079 (\$479,079 - 100,000) balance outstanding during 2018. After recording that interest, **\$62,092** of the \$100,000 payment remains to reduce the outstanding balance to \$316,987 (\$379,079 - 62,092).

Illustration 15-4B

Journal Entries for the
First and Second Lease
Payment

Lease payable/receivable

\$479,079

(100,000) 1st payment

\$379,079

(62,092) 2nd payment

\$316,987

First Lease Payment (January 1, 2018)

Sans Serif (Lessee)

Lease payable	100,000	
Cash (lease payment)		100,000

First LeaseCorp (Lessor)

Cash (lease payment)	100,000	
Lease receivable		100,000

Second Lease Payment (December 31, 2018)

Sans Serif (Lessee)

Interest expense [$10\% \times (\$479,079 - 100,000)$]	37,908	
Lease payable (difference)	62,092	
Cash (lease payment)		100,000

First LeaseCorp (Lessor)

Cash (lease payment)	100,000	
Lease receivable		62,092
Interest revenue [$10\% \times (\$479,079 - 100,000)$]		37,908

Because the outstanding balance declines with each payment, the amount of interest decreases each period. An amortization schedule is convenient to track the changing amounts, as shown in Illustration 15-4C. That schedule shows how the lease balance and the effective interest change over the six-year lease term, using an effective interest rate of 10%. Each lease payment after the first one includes both an amount that represents

interest and an amount that represents a reduction of the outstanding balance. The periodic reduction is sufficient that, at the end of the lease term, the outstanding balance is zero.

	Payments	Effective Interest (10% × Outstanding balance)	Decrease in Balance*	Outstanding Balance
1/1/18				479,079
1/1/18	100,000		100,000	379,079
12/31/18	100,000	0.10 (379,079) = 37,908	62,092	316,987
12/31/19	100,000	0.10 (316,987) = 31,699	68,301	248,686
12/31/20	100,000	0.10 (248,686) = 24,869	75,131	173,555
12/31/21	100,000	0.10 (173,555) = 17,355	82,645	90,910
12/31/22	100,000	0.10 (90,910) = 9,090*	90,910	0
	600,000	120,921†	479,079	

*Payment in first column minus the interest in the second column.
†Adjusted for rounding of other numbers in the schedule.

Illustration 15-4C

Lease Amortization Schedule

The first lease payment includes no interest.

The total of the cash payments (\$600,000) provides for:

1. Payment for the equipment's use (\$479,079).
2. Interest (\$120,921) at an effective rate of 10%.

Both the lessee and lessor would use this same amortization schedule. The lessee amortizes its lease payable and records interest *expense*. Similarly, the lessor amortizes its lease receivable and records interest *revenue*, reflecting the opposite side of the same transaction.

That's how the lessee accounts for its lease liability. Now, let's see how the lessee amortizes its right-of-use asset over the term of the lease.

Recording Amortization of the Right-of-Use Asset

Like other noncurrent assets, the lessee's right-of-use asset provides an economic benefit (the right to use a productive asset) over the period covered by the lease term. So, the lessee amortizes its right-of-use asset over the lease term. The amortization process usually is on a straight-line basis unless the lessee's pattern of using the asset is different.⁷ That amortization results in an *expense* for the lessee. In Sans Serif's case, it amortizes its right-of-use asset over the six-year lease term.

December 31, 2018, and End of Next Five Years		
Amortization expense (\$479,079 ÷ 6 years).....	79,847	
Right-of-use asset		79,847

The lessee incurs an expense as it uses the asset.

AMORTIZATION PERIOD. The lessee normally should amortize a leased asset over the term of the lease. However, if ownership transfers, or exercise of a purchase option is reasonably certain (i.e., either of the first two classification criteria is met), the asset should be amortized over its useful life. Meeting either of those two criteria means the lessee will have the asset beyond the lease term, and thus the asset is amortized over the useful life of the asset *to the lessee* whether or not that useful life is limited by the term of the lease.

The amortization period is restricted to the lease term unless the lease provides for transfer of title or a BPO.

Concept Review Exercise

United Cellular Systems leased a satellite transmission device from Pinnacle Leasing Services on January 1, 2018. Pinnacle paid \$625,483 for the transmission device. Its fair value is \$625,483.

**FINANCE LEASE/
SALES-TYPE LEASE: NO
SELLING PROFIT**

⁷Output measures such as units produced or input measures such as hours used might provide a better indication of the reduction in some leased assets.

Terms of the Lease Agreement and Related Information:

Lease term	3 years (6 semiannual periods)
Semiannual lease payments	\$120,000 at beginning of each period
Economic life of asset	3 years
Interest rate	12%

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for both United Cellular Systems and Pinnacle Leasing Services on January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule that shows the pattern of interest expense for United Cellular Systems and interest revenue for Pinnacle Leasing Services over the lease term.
3. Prepare the appropriate entries to record the second lease payment on July 1, 2018, and adjusting entries on December 31, 2018 (the end of both companies' fiscal years).

Solution:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for both United Cellular Systems and Pinnacle Leasing Services on January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease.

Calculation of the present value of lease payments.

Present value of periodic lease payments:

$$(\$120,000 \times 5.21236^*) = \$625,483$$

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 6\%$.

January 1, 2018			
United Cellular Systems (Lessee)			
Right-of-use asset (calculated above).....	625,483		
Lease payable (calculated above).....		625,483	
Lease payable	120,000		
Cash (lease payment).....		120,000	
Pinnacle Leasing Services (Lessor)			
Lease receivable (calculated above).....	625,483		
Equipment (lessor's cost)		625,483	
Cash (lease payment).....	120,000		
Lease receivable		120,000	

2. Prepare an amortization schedule that shows the pattern of interest expense for United Cellular Systems and interest revenue for Pinnacle Leasing Services over the lease term.

Date	Payments	Effective Interest	Decrease in Balance	Outstanding Balance
		(6% × Outstanding balance)		
1/1/18				625,483
1/1/18	120,000		120,000	505,483
7/1/18	120,000	0.06 (505,483) = 30,329	89,671	415,812
1/1/19	120,000	0.06 (415,812) = 24,949	95,051	320,761
7/1/19	120,000	0.06 (320,761) = 19,246	100,754	220,007
1/1/20	120,000	0.06 (220,007) = 13,200	106,800	113,207
7/1/20	120,000	0.06 (113,207) = 6,793*	113,207	0
	720,000	94,517	625,483	

*Adjusted for rounding of other numbers in the schedule.

3. Prepare the appropriate entries to record the second lease payment on July 1, 2018, and adjusting entries on December 31, 2018 (the end of both companies' fiscal years).

July 1, 2018		
United Cellular Systems (Lessee)		
Interest expense $[6\% \times (\$625,483 - 120,000)]$	30,329	
Lease payable (difference).....	89,671	
Cash (lease payment).....		120,000
Pinnacle Leasing Services (Lessor)		
Cash (lease payment).....	120,000	
Lease receivable (difference).....		89,671
Interest revenue $[6\% \times (\$625,483 - 120,000)]$		30,329
December 31, 2018		
United Cellular Systems (Lessee)		
Interest expense $(6\% \times \$415,812: \text{from schedule})$	24,949	
Interest payable.....		24,949
Amortization expense $(\$625,483 \div 3 \text{ years})$	208,494	
Right-of-use asset.....		208,494
Pinnacle Leasing Services (Lessor)		
Interest receivable.....	24,949	
Interest revenue $(6\% \times \$415,812: \text{from schedule})$		24,949

In our illustrations above, the present value of the lease payments, or “selling price,” is the same as the cost or carrying value of the asset “sold.” For example, in Illustration 15–4A, we assumed that First LeaseCorp bought the equipment for \$479,079 and then leased it for the same price. There was no profit on the “sale” itself. The only income derived by the lessor was interest revenue earned over the lease term. In effect, First LeaseCorp financed the acquisition of the equipment by Sans Serif Publishers.⁸ That’s usually the case when the lessor is a financial intermediary that provides financing by acquiring the asset and then leasing it to the lessee. In that case, the lessor records the “flip side” of the lessee’s transaction. That is, the lessor records a receivable corresponding to the lessee’s liability and removes the asset from its books as the lessee adds the asset to its books.

In some cases, though, the lessor is not a financial intermediary, but is a manufacturer or retailer using leases as a means of “selling” its products. In addition to interest revenue earned over the lease term, the lessor receives a selling profit on the “sale” of the asset. We look at this situation next.

Sales-Type Leases with Selling Profit

Selling profit exists when the fair value of the asset (usually the present value of the lease payments, or “selling price”) exceeds the cost or carrying value of the asset sold. In addition to interest revenue earned over the lease term, the lessor recognizes a selling profit on the “sale” of the asset. Accounting is the same as for a sales-type lease without a selling profit except that profit is recognized at the beginning.⁹

As in the sale of any product, gross profit is the difference between sales revenue and cost of goods sold. **Dell, Inc.** “sells” some of its products using sales-type leases and disclosed its accounting policy in a recent annual report shown in Illustration 15–5.

When there is a selling profit, all lessor entries, other than the entry at the beginning of the lease to include the selling profit, are precisely the same as the entries for a sales-type lease without a selling profit. On the other side of the transaction, accounting by the *lessee* is not affected by whether the *lessor* recognizes a profit or not. All lessee entries are exactly the same as in our previous illustration of a lessee’s finance lease.

⁸Under the GAAP in place prior to ASU 2016-02, this type of lease (no selling profit) was referred to as a *direct financing lease*. While that label still exists in the new lease guidance, it now refers to a situation that happens only when the lease includes a residual value and the residual value is *guaranteed by a third party* (not the lessee). We consider guaranteed residual values later in the chapter when we look at uncertainties in lease accounting.

⁹It’s possible that the asset’s carrying value will exceed its fair value, in which case a selling loss should be recorded.

• LO15–3

**FINANCIAL
Reporting Case**

Q2, p. 831

Illustration 15-5

Sales-Type Leases—Dell, Inc.

Real World Financials

Note 1 (in part)

Dell records revenue from the sale of equipment under sales-type leases as product revenue at the inception of the lease. Sales-type leases also produce financing income, which Dell recognizes at consistent rates of return over the lease term.

To illustrate accounting for sales-type leases with selling profit, let's modify our previous illustration. Assume all facts are the same except Sans Serif Publishers leased the equipment directly from CompuDec Corporation rather than through First LeaseCorp, the financing intermediary. Also assume that CompuDec's cost of the equipment was **\$300,000**. If you recall that the lease payments (their present value) provide a selling price of \$479,079, you see that CompuDec earns a gross profit on the sale of $\$479,079 - \$300,000 = \$179,079$. This sales-type lease that provides a selling profit is demonstrated in Illustration 15-6.

Illustration 15-6

Finance Lease/Sales-Type Lease: With Selling Profit

Because the PV of lease payments > cost, the lessor has a profit that is recorded at the beginning of the lease.

Sales revenue	\$479,079
– COGS	300,000
Selling profit	\$179,079

Remember, no interest has yet accrued when the first payment is made at the beginning of the lease.

Recording a sales-type lease is similar to recording a sale of merchandise on account:

A/R	(price)	
Sales rev	(price)	
COGS	(cost)	
Inventory	(cost)	

On January 1, 2018, Sans Serif Publishers leased printing equipment from CompuDec Corporation. The lease agreement specifies six annual payments of \$100,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 from 2018 through 2022. The six-year lease term ending December 31, 2023, is equal to the estimated useful life of the equipment. CompuDec manufactured the equipment at a cost of **\$300,000**.

Using an interest rate of 10% for financing this transaction, CompuDec calculates the present value of the lease payments to be received as **\$479,079** ($\$100,000 \times 4.79079^*$).

Beginning of the Lease (January 1, 2018)

CompuDec Corporation (Lessor)

Lease receivable (present value of lease payments).....	479,079	
Cost of goods sold (lessor's cost).....	300,000	
Sales revenue (present value of lease payments)		479,079
Equipment (lessor's cost).....		300,000

First Lease Payment (January 1, 2018)

CompuDec Corporation (Lessor)

Cash	100,000	
Lease receivable.....		100,000

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6, i = 10\%$.

You should recognize the similarity between recording both the revenue and cost components of this “sale by lease” and recording the same components of other sales transactions. Remember, when a company sells a product on account, two entries are recorded: one to record the receivable and sales revenue, and another to record the cost of goods sold and corresponding reduction in inventory. Let's say you purchase a TV from **Best Buy** for \$479 and pay for it with your Best Buy credit card. And, assume Best Buy paid the wholesale price of \$300 to **Samsung** to acquire the TV. Here's the way Best Buy would record the sale to you:

Accounts receivable (price)	479	
Sales revenue (price)		479
Cost of goods sold (cost).....	300	
Inventory (cost)		300

Now compare those entries to the entry to record our sale by lease. We'll reorder a few lines in the entry to make that comparison easier:

Lease receivable (price).....	479,079	
Sales revenue (price)		479,079
Cost of goods sold (cost).....	300,000	
Equipment (cost).....		300,000

In both cases, the seller is recording revenue and cost, and gross profit from the transaction will appear on the seller's income statement. Economically, leases are just one of the arrangements that sellers can use to help customers buy their products. Sales-type leases must be separately distinguished from nonlease sales in the financial statements.

Let's turn our attention now to situations in which at least one of the classification criteria is *not* met, so that the lease is classified as an operating lease.

Operating Leases

In the finance/sales-type leases we've looked at, the lease is economically similar to the purchase of an asset, because the lessee has the ability to direct the use of the asset and obtain substantially all of its remaining benefits. If a lease doesn't meet any of the criteria for a finance/sales-type lease in Illustration 15–2, then it's considered to be more in the nature of a rental agreement for a period of time. We refer to this second type of arrangement as an **operating lease**.¹⁰

To demonstrate accounting for operating leases, we need to change our example so none of the finance lease classification criteria in Illustration 15–2 is met. We'll do that by changing the lease term. In the previous illustrations, the lease term is equal to the expected useful life of the asset (six years). Now, in Illustration 15–7, the lease term is for only *four* years of the asset's six-year life, which is less than the "major part" of approximately 75%. Assuming none of the other criteria are met, the arrangement is classified as an operating lease. (See Illustration 15–7.)

LO15–4

On January 1, 2018, Sans Serif Publishers leased printing equipment from First LeaseCorp. First LeaseCorp purchased the equipment from CompuDec Corporation at a cost of \$479,079. Sans Serif's borrowing rate for similar transactions is 10%.

The lease agreement specifies **four** annual payments of \$100,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 from 2018 through 2020. The useful life of the equipment is estimated to be six years. The present value of those four payments at a discount rate of 10% is **\$348,685**.

The price Sans Serif pays for the right to control the use of the equipment is the present value of the lease payments:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \$100,000 \times 3.48685^* & = & \mathbf{\$348,685} \\ \text{Lease Payments} & & \text{Lessee's cost} \\ \text{*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: } n = 4, i = 10\%. \end{array}$$

The lease doesn't meet any of the criteria listed in Illustration 15–2, so it is accounted for as an operating lease.

Beginning of the Lease (January 1, 2018)

Sans Serif (Lessee)

Right-of-use asset (present value of lease payments)	348,685
Lease payable (present value of lease payments)	348,685

First LeaseCorp (Lessor)

(No entry to record a receivable or to derecognize asset)

Illustration 15–7
Operating Lease

How do we account for an operating lease? The lessee still records an asset and a liability at the beginning of the lease. The reason is that Sans Serif, although not having effectively purchased the asset via the lease agreement, still has acquired the *right to use the asset* for four years of the asset's six-year useful life. Just as in the case of a finance lease, the right to use the leased asset can be a significant benefit, even if for a shorter period of time, and the promise to make the lease payments can be a significant obligation. So, just like our prior example in which the asset was leased for its entire life, Sans Serif still recognizes a right-of-use asset and lease liability. The only difference in the initial entry is that, because the lease includes fewer payments, a smaller present value is recorded at the beginning of the lease.

By signing a lease, the lessee has an obligation to make payments (a liability), and in exchange for those payments, the lessee is receiving the right to use a specified asset (a right-of-use asset).

¹⁰The term *operating lease* got its name long ago when a lessee routinely received from the lessor an operator along with leased equipment.

Although an operating lease liability is reported in the balance sheet of the lessee, it is designated as a “non-debt liability” in order to distinguish it from traditional liabilities, including finance lease liabilities. That separate classification is intended to prevent operating lease liabilities from causing companies to violate debt covenants, such as restrictions that the debt to equity ratio not exceed a preset limit.

The lessor does not record a lease receivable. Instead, the lessor views an operating lease as simply renting the asset to the lessee, and as we'll see next, records rent revenue on a straight-line basis over the lease term.

Recording Interest Expense/Lease Revenue

For an operating lease, the *lessee* will *report* a single lease expense. This amount includes two components that the lessee will *calculate and record* separately, and then combine for purposes of reporting. The first component is the interest expense on the lease liability and the second component is the amortization of the right-of-use asset. On the other hand, the *lessor* in an operating lease determines a single straight-line lease revenue.

Sans Serif (the lessee) determines interest expense on the lease payable in an operating lease the same way as in a finance lease, as demonstrated in Illustration 15–7A.

Illustration 15–7A

Journal Entries for the First and Second Lease Payment

Lease payable

\$348,685
(100,000) 1st payment
\$248,685
(75,131) 2nd payment
\$173,554

The lessor earns the lease revenue during the year after it is received.

First Lease Payment (January 1, 2018)			
Sans Serif (Lessee)			
Lease payable	100,000		
Cash (lease payment).....		100,000	
First LeaseCorp (Lessor)			
Cash (lease payment).....	100,000		
Deferred lease revenue (lease revenue in 2018).....		100,000	
Second Lease Payment (December 31, 2018)			
Sans Serif (Lessee)			
Interest expense [10% × (\$348,685 – 100,000)]	24,869		
Lease payable (difference).....	75,131		
Cash (lease payment).....		100,000	
First LeaseCorp (Lessor)			
Deferred lease revenue (Jan. 1 lease payment).....	100,000		
Lease revenue		100,000	
Cash (second lease payment).....	100,000		
Deferred lease revenue (lease revenue in 2019).....		100,000	
Depreciation expense (\$479,079 ÷ 6 years).....	79,847		
Accumulated depreciation		79,847	

The amortization schedule in Illustration 15–7B shows how the lease liability balance and the effective interest expense change over the four-year lease term.

Illustration 15–7B

Lease Amortization Schedule

The first lease payment includes no interest.

The total of the cash payments (\$400,000) provides for:

1. Payment for the equipment's use (\$348,685).
2. Interest (\$51,315) at an effective rate of 10%.

	Payments	Effective Interest	Decrease in Balance	Outstanding Balance
		(10% × Outstanding balance)		
1/1/18				348,685
1/1/18	100,000		100,000	248,685
12/31/18	100,000	0.10 (248,685) = 24,869	75,131	173,554
12/31/19	100,000	0.10 (173,554) = 17,355	82,645	90,909
12/31/20	100,000	0.10 (90,909) = 9,091	90,909	0
	400,000	51,315	348,685	

Recording Amortization of the Right-of-Use Asset

In an operating lease we amortize the right-of-use asset differently from the way we amortize it in a finance lease. The disparity considers the nature of finance leases and operating leases.

We can think of lease expenses in a *finance lease* as reflecting (a) the right to use the asset (amortization) plus (b) the financing of that right (interest). On the other hand, in an *operating lease*, lease expense is recorded in a manner that is designed to mirror *straight-line rental* of the asset during the lease term. The way the lessee accomplishes that is to determine interest expense as in Illustration 15–7A and 15–7B and then to determine amortization of the right-of-use asset as the *amount needed to cause the total lease expense (interest plus amortization) to be an equal, straight-line amount over the lease term*. In other words, the lessee records interest the normal way and then “plugs” the right-of-use asset amortization at whatever amount is needed for interest plus amortization to equal the straight-line lease payment. So, in Illustration 15–7C, Sans Serif, having determined interest expense to be **\$24,869**, plugs an amortization expense of **\$75,131** to cause the total of the two components of the lease expense to be \$100,000.

In an operating lease, the lessee records interest the normal way and then “plugs” the right-of-use asset amortization at whatever amount is needed for interest plus amortization to equal the straight-line lease payment.

Interest expense	\$ 24,869
Amortization expense	75,131
Lease expense	\$100,000

Second Lease Payment (December 31, 2018)		
Interest expense [10% × (\$348,685 – 100,000)]	24,869	
Lease payable (difference)	75,131	
Cash (second lease payment)		100,000
Amortization expense (\$100,000 – 24,869)	75,131	
Right-of-use asset		75,131

Illustration 15–7C

Lessee Entries for the Second Lease Payment: Interest and Amortization

Total lease expense (amortization plus interest) for Sans Serif will equal \$100,000 each year over the lease term. On the flip side of the transaction, the lessor in an operating lease does not record a lease receivable at the beginning of the lease and does not remove from its balance sheet the asset being leased. With no receivable to accrue interest, First LeaseCorp simply records straight-line revenue as a single lease revenue amount equal to the \$100,000 lease payments and equal to the \$100,000 amount the lessee reports as lease expense. First LeaseCorp also depreciates the asset over the asset’s useful life (six years in this example), just as it would any other asset it owns and keeps on its books.

The lessor earns the lease revenue during the year for which payment is received at the beginning of the year.

Reporting Lease Expense and Lease Revenue

After recording these entries, the lessee will have two lease-related expenses—interest expense and amortization expense. However, the lessee combines these two accounts into a single *lease expense* and reports a single \$100,000 amount each year in its income statement. This is in keeping with the key objective of reporting a straight-line lease expense for an operating lease. In a finance lease, the lessee will report interest expense and amortization expense separately in the income statement.

In an operating lease, the lessee combines interest expense and amortization expense to report a single lease expense in the income statement.

First LeaseCorp, the lessor, has only a single lease revenue account in an operating lease and reports that straight-line amount, \$100,000, each year in its income statement. Thus, in keeping with the presumption that an operating lease is considered to be more in the nature of a rental agreement, the lessee reports *lease expense on a straight-line basis* and the lessor reports *lease revenue on a straight-line basis* over the lease term. Illustration 15–7D shows this accounting for both the lessee and the lessor over the life of the lease.

Now, let’s turn to Illustration 15–8 to compare how the lessee reports its lease expense for a finance lease and an operating lease. Reflecting back to our illustrations for a finance lease, you should note that the lessee records more expense and the lessor records more revenue early in the life of a finance lease. This “front loading” of lease expense/revenue occurs due to the fact that interest is higher initially than it is in the later stages of a lease, while amortization expense for the lessee’s right-of-use asset remains the same each period.¹¹ Operating leases avoid front loading. As you might imagine, lessees tend to prefer the operating lease classification. It defers expense recognition, making net income higher in the early years of the lease.

¹¹Because the lessor, First LeaseCorp, removed the asset from its records at the beginning of the finance lease, it would not have depreciation (amortization) to record.

Illustration 15-7D Operating Lease—Determining Lease Expenses and Revenue

	Jan. 1, 2018	Dec. 31, 2018	Dec. 31, 2019	Dec. 31, 2020	Dec. 31, 2021
Sans Serif (Lessee)					
Right-of-use asset	348,685				
Lease payable	348,685				
Interest expense	0	24,869	17,355	9,091	0
Lease payable	100,000	75,131	82,645	90,909	0
Cash	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	0
Amortization expense*		75,131	82,645	90,909	100,000
Right-of-use asset		75,131	82,645	90,909	100,000
Total lease expenses each year =		100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000
First LeaseCorp (Lessor)					
[No entry to record receivable or to derecognize asset]					
Cash	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	
Deferred revenue**	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	
Deferred revenue**		100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000
Lease revenue		100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000
Depreciation expense†		79,847	79,847	79,847	79,847
Accumulated depreciation		79,847	79,847	79,847	79,847

*Plug to cause the total lease expense to equal the straight-line amount: \$100,000 minus interest.
 **When the \$100,000 is received at the beginning of the lease year, it is not yet earned and should be recorded as deferred lease revenue. When it has been earned by the end of the year, it becomes lease revenue.
 †(\$479,079/6). Depreciation expense also is recognized in 2022 and 2023, because the asset has a six-year useful life.

Illustration 15-8 Comparison of Lessee's Expense Recognition between Finance and Operating Leases

In an operating lease, it's the **total** lease expense, not the amortization component, that's a straight-line amount.

	Finance Lease Financing Approach			Operating Lease Straight-Line Approach		
	Interest Expense	Amortization Expense	Total Expense	Interest Expense	Amortization Expense	Total Expense
2018	24,869	87,171	112,040	24,869	75,131	100,000
2019	17,355	87,171	104,526	17,355	82,645	100,000
2020	9,091	87,171	96,262	9,091	90,909	100,000
2021	0	87,171	87,171	0	100,000	100,000
	51,315	348,685*	400,000*	51,315	348,685	400,000

*Adjusted for rounding of other numbers in the schedule.

International Financial Reporting Standards



No Operating Leases for Lessees under IFRS. Under *IFRS No. 16*, all leases are accounted for as finance leases by the lessee (one-model approach). Only lessors apply the classification criteria to distinguish between finance and operating leases. Thus, even for leases that qualify under U.S. GAAP (two-model approach) as operating leases, the lessee amortizes the right-of-use asset on a straight-line basis rather than “plugging” that amount to cause the total of interest and amortization to be a straight-line amount. This means that those leases under IFRS will have a front-loaded expense profile (because interest expense is more at the beginning than at the end).

Decision Makers' Perspective—Financial Statement Impact

As indicated in the Decision Makers' Perspective at the beginning of the chapter, leasing can allow a firm to conserve assets, to avoid some risks of owning assets, and to obtain favorable tax benefits. These advantages are desirable. Accounting guidelines are designed to limit the ability of firms to obscure the realities of their financial position through off-balance-sheet financing or by avoiding violating terms of contracts that limit the amount of debt a company can have. Nevertheless, investors and creditors should be alert to the impact leases can have on a company's financial position and on its risk. Disclosure requirements include reporting finance lease liabilities and operating lease liabilities separately.

A noteworthy benefit to lessees of operating lease accounting is that expenses are recognized straight line, rather than front-loaded as in the case of finance leases for which interest expense and amortization are separately reported. In fact, the leasing industry lobbied the FASB extensively to make sure operating lease accounting was allowed. From the perspective of an analyst, though, it's unclear why expenses associated with operating leases should be treated any differently than are expenses associated with finance leases. Consequently, even though a goal of ASC Topic 842: "Leases" was to reduce the need for investors to restate financial statements "as if" leased assets and their related liabilities were on the balance sheet, it is likely that some sophisticated users now will restate financial statements to back out the straight-line recognition afforded operating leases and treat them like finance leases, similar to how they are treated under IFRS. ●

Discount Rate

An important factor in lease calculations that we've glossed over until now is the discount (interest) rate used in present value calculations. Because lease payments occur in future periods, we must consider the time value of money when evaluating their present value. The rate is important because it influences virtually every amount reported by both the lessor and the lessee in connection with the lease.

One discount rate is implicit in the lease agreement. This is the effective interest *rate of return the lease payments provide the lessor* under the lease. It is the desired rate of return the lessor has in mind when deciding the size of the lease payments. (Refer to our earlier calculations of the periodic lease payments.) If known by the lessee, the lessee also should make its calculations using the lessor's rate implicit in the lease agreement.

What if the lessee is unaware of the lessor's implicit rate? This is frequently the case in practice. This might happen, for example, if the leased asset has a relatively high residual value. As we will discuss later, if there's a residual value (guaranteed or not), it is an ingredient in the lessor's calculation of the lease payments. Sometimes it may be hard for the lessee to identify the residual value estimated by the lessor if the lessor chooses not to make it known.¹² However, as the lease term and risk of obsolescence increase, the residual value typically is less of a factor.

When the lessor's implicit rate is not known, the lessee should use its own incremental borrowing rate. This is the rate the lessee would expect to pay a bank if funds were borrowed to buy the asset.¹³

The lessee uses the interest rate implicit in the lease if known; otherwise the lessee uses its own incremental borrowing rate.

Concept Review Exercise

United Cellular Systems leased a satellite transmission device from Pinnacle Leasing Services on January 1, 2018. Pinnacle paid \$800,000 for the transmission device. Its fair value is \$800,000.

OPERATING LEASE

Terms of the Lease Agreement and Related Information:

Lease term	3 years (6 semiannual periods)
Semiannual lease payments	\$120,000 at beginning of each period
Economic life of asset	5 years
Interest rate	12%

¹²Disclosure requirements provide that the lessor must disclose the components of its investments in nonoperating leases, which would include any estimated residual values. But the disclosures are aggregate amounts, not amounts of individual leased assets.

¹³*Incremental borrowing rate* refers to the fact that lending institutions tend to view debt as being increasingly risky as the level of debt increases. Thus, additional (i.e., incremental) debt is likely to be loaned at a higher interest rate than existing debt, other things being equal.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for both United Cellular Systems and Pinnacle Leasing Services on January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule that shows the pattern of interest expense for United Cellular Systems and interest revenue for Pinnacle Leasing Services over the lease term.
3. Prepare the appropriate entries to record the second lease payment on July 1, 2018, and adjusting entries on December 31, 2018 (the end of both companies' fiscal years).

Solution:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for both United Cellular Systems and Pinnacle Leasing Services on January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease.

Present value of periodic lease payments:

$$(\$120,000 \times 5.21236^*) = \$625,483$$

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 6\%$.

Calculation of the present value of lease payments.

January 1, 2018			
United Cellular Systems (Lessee)			
Right-of-use asset (calculated above).....	625,483		
Lease payable (calculated above).....		625,483	
Lease payable.....	120,000		
Cash (lease payment).....		120,000	
Pinnacle Leasing Services (Lessor)			
[No entry to record a receivable or to remove asset]			
Cash (lease payment).....	120,000		
Deferred lease revenue			120,000

2. Prepare an amortization schedule that shows the pattern of interest expense for United Cellular Systems and interest revenue for Pinnacle Leasing Services over the lease term.

Date	Payments	Effective Interest	Decrease in Balance	Outstanding Balance
		(6% × Outstanding balance)		
1/1/18				625,483
1/1/18	120,000		120,000	505,483
7/1/18	120,000	0.06 (505,483) = 30,329	89,671	415,812
1/1/19	120,000	0.06 (415,812) = 24,949	95,051	320,761
7/1/19	120,000	0.06 (320,761) = 19,246	100,754	220,007
1/1/20	120,000	0.06 (220,007) = 13,200	106,800	113,207
7/1/20	120,000	0.06 (113,207) = 6,793*	113,207	0
	<u>720,000</u>	<u>94,517</u>	625,483	

*Adjusted for rounding of other numbers in the schedule.

3. Prepare the appropriate entries to record the second lease payment on July 1, 2018, and adjusting entries on December 31, 2018 (the end of both companies' fiscal years).

July 1, 2018			
United Cellular Systems (Lessee)			
Interest expense [6% × (\$625,483 – 120,000)].....	30,329		
Lease payable (difference).....	89,671		
Cash (lease payment).....		120,000	
Amortization expense (\$120,000 – 30,329).....	89,671		
Right-of-use asset		89,671	
Pinnacle Leasing Services (Lessor)			
Deferred lease revenue (Jan. 1 lease payment).....	120,000		
Lease revenue			120,000
Cash (second lease payment).....	120,000		
Deferred lease revenue			120,000

(continued)

(concluded)

December 31, 2018**United Cellular Systems (Lessee)**

Interest expense (6% × \$415,812: from schedule).....	24,949	
Interest payable.....		24,949
Amortization expense (\$120,000 – 24,949).....	95,051	
Right-of-use asset.....		95,051

Pinnacle Leasing Services (Lessor)

Deferred lease revenue (July 1 lease payment).....	120,000	
Lease revenue.....		120,000
Depreciation expense (\$800,000 ÷ 5 years).....	160,000	
Accumulated depreciation.....		160,000

Short-Term Leases – A Shortcut Method

It's not unusual to simplify accounting for situations in which doing so has no material effect on the financial statements. One such situation that permits a simpler application is a short-term lease. A lease is considered a "short-term lease" if it:

1. Has a lease term (including any options to renew or extend) of twelve months or less, *and*
2. Does not contain a purchase option that the lessee is reasonably certain to exercise, which would extend the term beyond twelve months.

The shortcut approach for short-term leases permits the lessee to choose *not* to record an asset and related liability associated with the lease at the beginning of the lease term. Instead, the lessee can simply record lease payments as rent expense over the lease term. Yes, this is the approach used by the lessor for lease revenue on the flip side of the transaction.

Let's look at an example that illustrates the relatively straightforward accounting for short-term leases. To do this, in Illustration 15–9 we modify Illustration 15–4A to assume the lease term is *twelve months*.

● LO15–5

In a short-term lease, the lessee can elect not to record a right-of-use asset and lease payable at the beginning of the lease term, but instead to simply record lease payments as expense as they occur.

On January 1, 2018, Sans Serif Publishers leased printing equipment from First LeaseCorp. The lease agreement specifies four **quarterly** payments of \$25,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at the first day of each of the next three quarters. The useful life of the equipment is estimated to be six years.

Beginning of the Lease (January 1, 2018)

No entry to record a right-of-use asset and liability (lease term ≤ one year)

Lease Payments (January 1, April 1, July 1, October 1, 2018)

Lease expense.....	25,000	
Cash.....		25,000

Illustration 15–9

Short-Term Lease

International Financial Reporting Standards

Shortcut Method.

As in the case for short-term leases in U.S. GAAP, IFRS allows the lessee to elect not to record a right-of-use asset and lease payable at the beginning of the lease term, but instead to simply record lease payments as an expense as they occur. U.S. GAAP, though, defines a short-term lease as a lease that has a lease term of 12 months or less and does not include a purchase option *that the lessee is reasonably certain to exercise*. IFRS precludes a lease from being considered short term if the lease includes a purchase option regardless of whether the lessee is reasonably certain to exercise it.

In addition, though, unlike U.S. GAAP, IFRS allows "small ticket leases" also to apply this shortcut method. Small ticket leases are defined as those having a value of \$5,000 or less.

● LO15–9



PART B

● LO15–6

The lease term is the contractual lease term modified by any renewal or termination options that are reasonably certain to be exercised.

The lease term is reassessed only when a significant event or change in circumstances indicates a change in the economic incentive for extension or termination of the lease.

Uncertainty in Lease Transactions

Let's turn our attention now to several issues related to uncertainty in lease transactions that impact lessee and lessor accounting. Among those issues are variable lease terms, variable lease payments, residual values, purchase options, and termination penalties.

What if the Lease Term is Uncertain?

Sometimes the actual term of a lease is not obvious. Suppose, for instance, that the lease term is specified as four years, but it can be renewed at the option of the lessee for two additional years. Or, maybe either party can terminate the lease after, say, three years. In such situations, we consider the lease term to be the contractual lease term adjusted for any periods covered by options to extend or terminate the lease for which there is a significant economic incentive to exercise the options. A company adjusts the lease term for an option only if it is "reasonably certain" that the lessee will exercise the option after considering the relevant economic factors.¹⁴ In other words, if the benefits of exercising an option are sufficiently high that we think the lessee will exercise it, we adjust the contractual term by adding the additional period of renewal, or by subtracting the period that follows a termination option.

REASSESSMENT OF THE LEASE TERM. Circumstances can change that require reassessment of how long the lease term will be. Reassessment requires a "triggering event" such that the lessee now has an economic incentive to exercise an option that extends or terminates the lease. For example, assume that a lessee had no significant economic incentive as of the beginning of a 6-year lease to exercise a 2-year extension option. However, by the end of the third year, the lessee has made significant improvements to the asset whose cost could be recovered only if it exercises the extension option, making extension of the lease "reasonably certain." In that case, the full term of the lease is now expected to be a total of eight years with five years remaining.

At the end of the third year, the lessee would remeasure the lease liability as the present value of the remaining five lease payments. Importantly, the discount rate for the new term is the incremental borrowing rate of the lessee using market interest rates *at the time of the reassessment*, rather than the rate used at the beginning of the lease. Assuming the present value of the remaining five lease payments totaled \$400,000, while the current balance of the lease liability before remeasurement is \$250,000, the lessee would make the following adjustment:

Reassessment of the Lease Term

Right-of-use asset.....	150,000	
Lease payable (increase in balance*)		150,000
*PV of remaining 5 payments, discounted at the current rate		
\$400,000		
Liability balance after 3 years based on initial lease terms	250,000	
Increase [†] in balance	\$150,000	

[†]In situations when the lease term is shortened (termination option), the journal entry would be reversed to reduce the account balances.

Also, when there is a change in the lease term, lessees are required to reassess the *classification* of a lease. In the current example, because, with the assumed renewal, the lease term is for the entire useful life of the asset, the lease classification might need to be changed. Suppose, for instance, that the lease had been classified initially as an operating lease. Now, with the increase in the lease term, it might meet the criteria for a finance lease rather than an operating lease as previously classified. If so, we would have had an operating lease for three years, and now have a five-year finance lease. That would mean amortizing the

¹⁴Reasonably certain is a high threshold, essentially the same as "reasonably assured."

right-of-use asset as a straight-line allocation of the balance in that account at this point over the next five years, rather than “plugging” amortization as we would for an operating lease.

The discussion above pertains to a lessee. A lessor is not permitted to reassess its initial determination of the lease term or discount rate.

Decision Makers' Perspective—Considering the Economic Incentive for Exercising Options

What if we did not have the requirement to consider renewal options and the economic incentive for exercising them when we determine the lease term? Management might be tempted to structure leases with artificially short initial terms and numerous renewal options as a scheme to be able to use the shortcut method (which we discussed earlier) or to reduce significantly the amount of the lease liability to be reported (off-balance-sheet financing). ●

What if the Lease Payments are Uncertain?

Sometimes lease payments are scheduled to be increased (or decreased) at some future date during the lease term, depending on whether or not some specified event occurs. Usually the contingency is related to revenues, profitability, or asset usage above some designated level. For example in Illustration 15–10, a recent annual report of **The Gap** included the following note:

Rent Expense (in part)

Certain leases provide for contingent rents that are not measurable at inception. These contingent rents are primarily based on a percentage of sales that are in excess of a predetermined level and/or rent increase based on a change in the consumer price index or fair market value. These amounts are excluded from minimum rent and are included in the determination of rent expense when it is probable that the expense has been incurred and the amount can be reasonably estimated.

Illustration 15–10

Contingent Lease Payments—The Gap
Real World Financials

Why would a lease include a contingent payment provision? It's a way for lessees and lessors to share the risk associated with the asset's productivity. For example, let's assume a store owner, like at Gap, who pays for a premium mall location is doing so anticipating higher revenue. If the mall attracts a sufficiently higher number of shoppers, the lessee pays the lessor part of the resulting higher profits, but if not, the lessee makes only the normal lease payments. This arrangement also provides the lessor an incentive to attract shoppers to the mall, which is in the lessee's best interest. Because the amounts of future lease payments are uncertain and often avoidable, we don't consider them as part of the lease payments used to calculate the lessee's lease liability and the lessor's lease receivable. If and when lease payments increase, the change in the lease payments has no effect on balance sheet accounts and simply is reported as a separate lease expense (lessee) and lease revenue (lessor).¹⁵

There are two exceptions to not including variable payments in the calculation of the lease liability recorded at the beginning of the lease. Let's take a look at both exceptions.

WHEN VARIABLE LEASE PAYMENTS ARE IN-SUBSTANCE FIXED PAYMENTS. The first exception to not including variable payments is when apparent “variable” payments actually are in-substance fixed payments. We include these “fixed payments in disguise” as part of the lessee's lease payments. For example, assume a retail store's monthly lease payments will increase next year by the higher of \$250 or 0.5% of monthly store revenue. In that case, we know that the lease payment will increase by at least \$250, so those payments are deemed to be in-substance fixed payments and are included in the lease payments used in present value calculations.

Most variable lease payments are recognized when incurred rather than being estimated at lease commencement and included in the lessee's right-of-use asset and lease liability.

If future lease payments are uncertain, we consider them as part of the lease payments only if they are “in-substance fixed payments” or if payments vary solely when an index or rate changes.

¹⁵The lease payment can also decrease. The decrease in the lease payments is reported as a reduction in lease expense (lessee) and a reduction in lease revenue (lessor).

WHEN VARIABLE LEASE PAYMENTS DEPEND ON AN INDEX OR RATE. Another exception to not including variable payments when initially recording the lease is when the amount of the lease payments depends on an index or a rate, such as the Consumer Price Index or current interest rates. Even though lease payments will vary in the future, we use the initial lease payment amount, based on the current index (or rate), to discount to present value when determining the right of use asset, lease liability, and lease receivable. When lease payments do change in the future (because the index or rate changes), we don't remeasure the lease liability or leased asset at that time, but simply report the additional amount as a separate lease payment that produces expense for the lessee and revenue for the lessor.

Only if the lease asset and lease liability are later remeasured for another reason will a change in payments based on the CPI or market interest rates affect the right-of-use asset and liability.

Only if and when the lessee remeasures the lease liability for reasons other than a change in the index or rate should the lessee adjust the right-of-use asset and lease liability for changes in the amount of the payments. This might happen, for example, because of a reassessment of the lease term (as described in the previous section) or a modification of the lease (as described in the next section). In that case, the leased asset and lease liability are recalculated by determining the present value of future lease payments using (a) the new lease payments as adjusted for changes in the index or rate and (b) the discount rate that applies as of the date of the reassessment.

The lessor never reassesses its lease receivable for variable lease payments.

What if Lease Terms are Modified?

Sometimes the lessee and lessor will agree to modify the terms of a lease before the lease term ends. This creates two possibilities. (1) The modification might grant the lessee an *additional right of use*. This would mean terminating the original lease and accounting for the modified arrangement as a new lease. (2) The modification might *alter the lessee's right to use* the asset rather than grant an additional right of use. This would mean adjusting, adding to, or deleting what has been recorded in order to conform to the new terms of the contract (say, a change in the lease term or lease payments) and perhaps reclassifying the lease from one type to another.

If a modification grants the lessee an *additional right of use*, the original lease is terminated and a new lease is created based on the modified arrangement.

As an example, assume a four-year operating lease of equipment with a useful life of six years. Let's say that after two years, the lessee and lessor agree to extend the lease term by two years, and to alter the amount of the lease payments. The additional two years were not originally an option. In this case, the modification alters the lessee's right to use the equipment; it doesn't grant the lessee an additional right to use another asset. In addition, the modified lease term of two additional years (six years total) is now for a "major part" of the asset's six-year economic life, so classification changes from an operating lease to a finance/sales-type lease. Illustration 15-11 demonstrates how modifications to the contract would be recorded.

Modifying lease terms sometimes requires reclassifying operating leases to finance/sales-type leases, or vice versa.

Sans Serif, the lessee, updates the balances of the right-of-use asset and lease liability for the increase in present value. In addition, because the lease is now classified as a finance lease, Sans Serif no longer will recognize straight-line lease expense of \$100,000. Instead, at the end of each remaining year, Sans Serif will record interest expense and amortization of the right-of-use asset in the usual way for a finance lease.

First LeaseCorp, the lessor, records a lease receivable for the present value of the remaining lease payments and removes the equipment (and related accumulated depreciation) from its books. Because the sales revenue is higher than the carrying amount of the equipment, First LeaseCorp also recognizes selling profit for the difference: Sales revenue of **\$329,068** minus cost of goods sold of **\$319,386** equals **\$9,682**. In addition, at the end of each remaining year, First LeaseCorp will record interest revenue at the now current effective rate of 9% for a sales-type lease (instead of straight-line rent revenue of \$100,000 for an operating lease).

Residual Value

The **residual value** of leased property is an estimate of what its commercial value will be at the end of the lease term. Typically, we will have a residual value in an *operating* lease because the lease term usually ends before the lease asset's value has been depleted. A residual value is less likely, but certainly not unusual, when the lease qualifies as a sales-type lease, because the lease term is for most, if not all, of the asset's life.

The residual value is an estimate of what a leased asset's commercial value will be at the end of the lease term.

Illustration 15-11

Lease Modifications: Term, Payments, and Classification

On January 1, 2018, Sans Serif Publishers leased printing equipment from First LeaseCorp. First LeaseCorp purchased the equipment from CompuDec Corporation at a cost of \$479,079. Sans Serif's borrowing rate for similar transactions is 10%. The lease agreement specifies four annual payments of \$100,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 from 2018 through 2020. The useful life of the equipment is estimated to be six years. The present value of those four payments at a discount rate of 10% is \$348,685.

On January 1, 2020 (after three payments*), the lessee and lessor agreed to (1) extend the lease term by two years and (2) increase the remaining three payments from \$100,000 to \$130,000 each. The market rate of interest at that time has decreased from 10% to 9%. The table below summarizes the effect of four important contract modifications:

Contract	Original Lease	Modified Lease	Effect
1. Term	4 years	6 years	Increase in present value
2. Payments	\$100,000	\$130,000	Increase in present value
3. Discount rate	10%	9%	Increase in present value
PV on Jan. 1, 2020	\$90,909**	\$329,068[†]	Lessee: Increase PV balances by \$238,159^{††}
4. Classification	Operating	Finance/Sales-type	Lessor: Record sale of asset for \$329,068 (and remove asset's carrying amount)

Modification of the Lease (January 1, 2020)**Sans Serif (Lessee)**

Right-of-use asset (present value of lease payments).....	238,159	
Lease payable (present value of lease payments).....		238,159

First LeaseCrop (Lessor)

Lease receivable (PV of 3 remaining lease payments)	329,068	
Sales revenue (PV of 3 remaining lease payments)		329,068 } profit 9,682
Cost of goods sold (cost minus accumulated depreciation)	319,386	
Accumulated depreciation [(\$479,079 ÷ 6 years) × 2 years].....	159,693	
Asset (cost)		479,079

*The modification occurs two years into the lease, but there have been three payments since payments are at the beginning of each year.

**See Illustration 15-7B.

[†]Present value of remaining three lease payments = \$130,000 × 2.53129. (Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1: $n = 3$, $i = 9\%$.)

^{††}\$329,068 – 90,909

International Financial Reporting Standards

Reassessment of the Right-of-Use Asset and Lease Liability.

Under IFRS, a lessee will remeasure the variable lease payments that depend on an index or a rate not just when the lessee remeasures the right-of-use asset and lease liability for other reasons, but also whenever there is a change in the cash flows resulting from a change in the reference index or rate.

● LO15-9



Sometimes a lease agreement includes a guarantee by the lessee that the lessor will recover a specified residual value when custody of the asset reverts back to the lessor at the end of the lease term. This not only reduces the lessor's risk, but also provides an incentive for the lessee to exercise a higher degree of care in maintaining the leased asset to preserve the residual value. The lessee promises to return not only the property but also sufficient cash to provide the lessor with a minimum combined value.

A residual value affects several aspects of lease accounting, including the size of the periodic lease payments, the classification of a lease, and the amounts recorded by both the lessee and lessor.

A lessee sometimes will guarantee that the lessor will recover a specified residual value when custody of the asset reverts back to the lessor.

EFFECT OF A RESIDUAL VALUE ON THE SIZE OF LEASE PAYMENTS. Suppose the printing equipment leased in our finance/sales-type lease (Illustration 15-4) was expected

to be worth **\$60,000** at the end of the six-year lease term. Should this influence the lessor's (First LeaseCorp) calculation of periodic rental payments? Yes! Here's why.

The leasing company purchased the equipment for \$479,079. That's the amount the company needs to recover through the leasing contract along with interest revenue sufficient to achieve its business objectives. We are assuming that means a 10% return on investment. Where does that return come from? In some leases (our finance/sales-type lease in Illustration 15–4, for instance) the entire return comes from the lessee's lease payments, which must be enough over the lease term to pay the lessor its investment in the lease asset plus the desired amount of interest (**10%**).

In that situation the lessor calculated the lease payments as:

Amount to be recovered (present value)	\$479,079
	÷ 4.79079*
Lease payments at the beginning of each of the next 6 years.....	<u>\$100,000</u>

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

However, if the lessor gets the asset back at the end of the lease, and the asset has commercial value at that time, the lessor has another source of return. The value of the asset itself, the residual value, will provide another source of recovery of the lessor's investment. That reduces the amount needed from periodic lessee payments for the lessor to generate its **10%** return. To see how, in Illustration 15–12 let's assume a **\$60,000** residual value at the end of the six-year lease term.

Illustration 15–12

Effect of Residual Value on the Calculation of Lease Payments

On January 1, 2018, Sans Serif Publishers leased printing equipment from First LeaseCorp. First LeaseCorp purchased the equipment from CompuDec Corporation at a cost of \$479,079. Assume the lease includes six annual payments beginning January 1, 2018, and at each December 31 from 2018 through 2022. At the end of the six-year lease term ending December 31, 2023, the equipment is expected to have a **residual value of \$60,000**. The estimated useful life of the equipment is **seven years**. If the six lease payments are of an equal amount, what payment amount would provide First LeaseCorp with a return of 10%?

Amount to be recovered* (fair value).....	\$479,079
Less: Present value of the residual value (\$60,000 × 0.56447**)	(33,868)
Amount to be recovered through periodic rental payments.....	\$445,211
	÷ 4.79079†
Lease payments at the beginning of each of the six years	<u>\$ 92,931††</u>

*The amount to be recovered would also include "initial direct costs" paid by the lessor. We discuss initial direct costs in Part C of this chapter.

**Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

†Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

††For another example, recall our four-year *operating* lease (Illustration 15–7) in which the lease payments are \$100,000 each. Although not stated at the time, First LeaseCorp anticipated that the fair value of the equipment at the end of the lease term (residual value) would be **\$190,911**, which is why the lease payments were \$100,000:

Amount to be recovered (fair value).....	\$479,079
Less: Present value of the residual value (\$190,911 × 0.68301†).....	(130,394)
To be recovered through periodic lease payments (present value).....	\$348,685
	÷ 3.48685††
Lease payments at the beginning of each of the four years	<u>\$100,000</u>

†Present value of \$1: $n = 4$, $i = 10\%$.

††Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 4$, $i = 10\%$.

The present value of the residual value of a lease asset is called a **residual asset**. The lessee doesn't view the residual asset as *its* asset, since the residual asset will revert to the lessor. However, from the lessor's perspective, even if a residual value is not guaranteed, the lessor still expects to receive it. So, the lessor will view the residual asset as contributing to the amount needed to recover its \$479,079 investment, causing the lessee's lease payments to be \$92,931 rather than \$100,000. *As the expected residual value increases, the size of the lease payments decreases.*

We calculated the necessary payments by dividing the \$479,079 investment by the present value of an annuity due of \$1, discounted at 10% for six years. That calculation by the lessor yielded \$100,000 for each of the six payments.

EFFECT OF A RESIDUAL VALUE ON AMOUNTS RECORDED BY THE LESSOR.

Sales-Type Lease with Residual Value. The *lessee's accounting is unaffected* by the residual value other than its causing the payments to be lower. In the situation described in Illustration 15–12, Sans Serif, the lessee, would record a right-of-use asset and lease liability for the present value of the six lease payments (\$445,211). Then, over the term of the lease, it would record interest expense and amortization in the usual way for this finance-type lease.

The *lessor's accounting is affected* by the residual value. In Illustration 15–12A we see how the lessor will record the lease introduced in Illustration 15–12.

Beginning of the Lease (January 1, 2018)

First LeaseCorp (Lessor)

Lease receivable (PV of lease payments plus PV of \$60,000 residual value)*	479,079	
Equipment (lessor's cost: carrying amount)		479,079
*Alternatively, the lessor could record the receivable and the residual asset separately:		
Lease receivable (PV of lease payments)	445,211	
Residual asset (PV of \$60,000 unguaranteed residual value)	33,868	
Equipment (lessor's cost: carrying amount)		479,079

Illustration 15–12A

Sales-Type Lease with Residual Value: Lessor

The lessor's lease receivable includes the value of the asset expected at the end of the lease term.

Both (a) the present value of the lease payments and (b) the present value of the unguaranteed residual value combine to allow the lessor to recover its \$479,079 investment and are recorded as the lease receivable at the beginning of the lease. The lessor includes the \$60,000 residual value in its amortization schedule, along with the lease payments as demonstrated in Illustration 15–12B.

	Receipts	Effective Interest	Decrease in Balance	Outstanding Balance
		(10% × Outstanding balance)		
1/1/18				479,079
1/1/18	92,931		92,931	386,148
12/31/18	92,931	0.10 (386,148) = 38,615	54,316	331,832
12/31/19	92,931	0.10 (331,832) = 33,183	59,748	272,084
12/31/20	92,931	0.10 (272,084) = 27,208	65,723	206,361
12/31/21	92,931	0.10 (206,361) = 20,636	72,295	134,066
12/31/22	92,931	0.10 (134,066) = 13,407	79,524	54,542
12/31/23	60,000	0.10 (54,542) = 5,458*	54,542	0
	617,586	138,507	479,079	

*Adjusted for rounding of other numbers in the schedule.

Illustration 15–12B

Lessor's Amortization Schedule—with Residual Value

The lessor expects to receive the residual value (\$60,000) in the form of equipment at the end of the lease term.

The amortization schedule reveals several important points. First, the six periodic cash payments are now \$92,931, as we calculated previously. Notice also that we now include the \$60,000 residual value. Despite the different composition of the amounts the lessor will receive, their present value (\$479,079) is the same as when we assumed \$100,000 periodic payments and no residual value. However, a greater amount of interest revenue will be recognized over the lease term: \$138,507. (It was \$120,921 before.) The higher interest reflects the fact that payments are farther in the future, causing the outstanding lease balances (and interest on those balances) to be higher during the lease term. Also, note that a greater total amount of lease receipts is collected: \$617,586. (It was \$600,000 before.) This total is referred to as the lessor's gross investment in the lease and is included in the lessor's lease disclosure note. The present value of those same payments (\$479,079) is referred to as the net investment in the lease and is the amount recorded as the lease receivable in the journal entry at the beginning of the lease.

The lessor's gross investment in the lease is the total of periodic lease payments and any residual value.

Remember, the final periodic cash payment on December 31, 2023, is at the beginning of the final year. Then, at the end of the year of the lease on December 31, 2023, the equipment is returned to the lessor and is reinstated on the lessor's books at its fair value, which we assume to be **\$60,000**, the amount predicted when the lease began.

If the actual residual value at December 31, 2023, is less (or more) than **\$60,000**, the lessor would record a loss (or gain). Notice, too, that the residual asset is returned to the lessor.

Illustration 15–12C

End of Lease Term—Actual Residual Value Equals the Estimated Amount: **Lessor**

End of the Lease (December 31, 2023)	
First LeaseCorp (Lessor)	
Equipment (residual value).....	60,000
Lease receivable (account balance).....	54,542
Interest revenue (10% × outstanding balance)	5,458

Sales-Type Lease with Selling Profit and Residual Value. When a sales-type lease that includes a residual value also has a selling profit, we need to take that into consideration when the lease is recorded initially. Recall that the lessor records both sales revenue and cost of goods sold to account for the selling profit. The sales revenue is the present value of only the periodic lease payments, not including the residual value. To visualize this, let's assume that our sales-type lease with a selling profit (Illustration 15–6) had included a residual value of **\$60,000**. In that case, the initial lessor entry would be modified as shown in Illustration 15–13.

Illustration 15–13

Sales-Type Lease with Selling Profit and Residual Value: Lessor

Sales revenue	\$445,211
– COGS	266,132
Selling profit	\$179,079

The lease provides the lessor with a selling profit if the PV of payments exceeds the asset's cost.

On January 1, 2018, Sans Serif Publishers leased printing equipment from CompuDec Corporation. The lease agreement specifies six annual payments of \$92,931 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 from 2018 through 2022. At the end of the six-year lease term ending December 31, 2023, the equipment will be returned to the lessor and is expected to have a **residual value of \$60,000**. The estimated useful life of the equipment is **seven years**. The interest rate in these financing arrangements is 10%. CompuDec manufactured the equipment at a cost of **\$300,000**.

Beginning of the Lease (January 1, 2018)	
CompuDec Corporation (Lessor)	
Lease receivable (PV of lease payments* plus PV of \$60,000 residual value**)	479,079
Cost of goods sold (\$300,000 – 33,868 **).....	266,132
Sales revenue (\$479,079 – 33,868 **).....	445,211
Equipment (lessor's cost)	300,000

*\$92,931 × 4.79079[†] = \$445,211 present value of lease payments

****\$60,000** × 0.56447^{††} = \$33,868 present value of residual value

[†]Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

^{††}Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

Sales revenue does not include the residual value because the revenue to be recovered from the lessee is lease payments only. The remainder of the lessor's investment is to be recovered—not from payment by the lessee, but by selling, releasing, or otherwise obtaining value from the asset when it reverts back to the lessor. Think of it this way: The portion of the asset sold is the portion not represented by the residual value. So, both the asset's cost of goods sold and its selling price are reduced by the present value of the portion *not sold*.

When a Cash Payment is Predicted Due to a Lessee-Guaranteed Residual Value. We saw in Illustration 15–4 that without a residual value contributing to the lessor recovering its investment, the amount of the six payments needed to recover the \$479,079 investment would have been \$100,000. We also saw in Illustration 15–12 that *with* a residual value guaranteed to the lessor at the end of the lease, the payments would be reduced to \$92,931. Other than this reduction of lease payments, should the *lessee* (Sans Serif Publishers) be

concerned with the residual value of the leased asset? The answer is maybe. It depends on whether the lessee has arranged to guarantee a specific value of the residual asset at the conclusion of the lease and, even then, how that value compares to the prediction of its actual value. We explore that possibility next.

As we discussed earlier, a lease agreement sometimes includes a guarantee by the lessee that the lessor will recover a specified residual value when custody of the asset reverts back to the lessor at the end of the lease term. The lessee promises to return not only the property but also sufficient cash to provide the lessor with a minimum combined value. That doesn't necessarily mean, though, that the lessee will be required to make any cash payment. A cash payment would be expected as of the beginning of a lease only if the guaranteed amount exceeds the estimated residual value of the asset.

If a cash payment under a lessee-guaranteed residual value is predicted, the present value of that payment is added to the present value of the periodic lease payments that the lessee records as both a right-of-use asset and a lease liability. For instance, let's assume that in the situation described in Illustration 15–12 when the estimated residual value was \$60,000, negotiations led to Sans Serif guaranteeing an \$80,000 residual value. That means that if the property's value is less than \$80,000 at the end of the six-year lease term, the lessee will pay cash for the difference. Since that value is expected to be \$60,000, the expected *excess* guaranteed residual value is $\$80,000 - \$60,000 = \$20,000$. The lessee views the expected excess guaranteed residual value as an additional cash flow to be paid to the lessor (addition to lease payments). The present value of the expected excess guaranteed residual is \$11,289 ($\$20,000 \times 0.56447$), and the lessee would add this amount to the present value of the periodic lease payments to record the right-of-use asset and lease liability at the beginning of the lease.¹⁶

A cash payment that's predicted because of a lessee-guaranteed residual value is treated the same as another lease payment.

Looking at it from the other side of the transaction, does the lessor also view the expected *excess* guaranteed residual value as an additional amount to be collected? Yes. In fact, the lessor expects to receive that payment (\$20,000) *as well as the residual value itself* (60,000). Those two amounts combine to equal the \$80,000 guaranteed residual value that, if in a *sales-type* lease, the lessor includes in the lease receivable.¹⁷

Situations in which the lessee-guaranteed residual value exceeds the estimate of the actual residual value are rare in practice. It makes little economic sense for a lessee to agree to guarantee an amount greater than the estimated residual value, virtually ensuring an additional cash payment at the conclusion of the lease. The requirement to account for it in this way, though, serves as a deterrent to lessees and lessors who might be inclined to manipulate reported numbers by reducing lease payments while creating an excess *lessee-guaranteed* residual value to compensate for the reduced lease payments.

Additional Consideration

If a residual value is not guaranteed by the lessee or is guaranteed by the lessee but the guaranteed amount does not differ from the estimate of the actual fair value at the end of the lease term, it does not affect the lessee's calculation of the right-of-use asset or lease liability, other than influencing the amount of each lease payment as we saw in Illustration 15–12.

EFFECT OF A RESIDUAL VALUE ON LEASE CLASSIFICATION We classify a lease as a finance/sales-type lease if, in substance, the lessor is transferring control of the asset to the lessee. Recall that one of the classification criteria is a comparison of the fair value of an asset with the present value of the payments coming from the lessee. Payments from the lessee are the periodic lease payments plus any portion of the residual value the lessee has guaranteed. That's the basis for classification criterion 4 (Illustration 15–2): If the present value of the lease payments, including any *lessee-guaranteed* residual value, constitutes “substantially all” of the fair value of the asset, it's a finance lease from the lessee's perspective and a sales-type lease from the lessor's perspective.

¹⁶Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

¹⁷Remember, in an *operating* lease, the lessor doesn't record a receivable nor remove the asset from its books.

Additional Consideration

When the lessee does not control substantially all of the remaining benefits of the underlying asset, the lease usually is considered an operating lease.

When control is not transferred to the lessee, but the present value of lease payments constitutes substantially all of the asset's fair value due to a third-party guaranteed residual value and it's probable that the lessor will collect the lease payments, the lease is considered a direct financing lease.

In the unlikely event of a profit in a direct financing lease, the revenue (and profit) must be deferred.

Recall that by one of the lease classification criteria, we have a finance/sales-type lease if the sum of the present value of the lease payments and any residual value guaranteed by the lessee amounts to substantially all of the fair value of the underlying asset. When that's the case, the lessee, through its contractually obligated payments, guarantees recovery of substantially all the lessor's investment in the asset, so the lessee controls substantially all of the remaining benefits of the underlying asset. This control is consistent with the principle of a sale in ASC Topic 606: *Revenue from Contracts with Customers* for the lessor to recognize sales revenue on the lease.¹⁸ On the other hand, when the lessee lacks that control, the lease is considered an operating lease.

An exception is when the lease qualifies as a **direct financing lease**. We have a direct financing lease only when a third party (typically an insurance company) is paid to guarantee all or part of the residual value. When that happens, it's possible that the combined present value of (a) the *lessee's* periodic payments, (b) the *lessee-guaranteed* residual value, and (c) the *third-party* guaranteed residual value will constitute substantially all of the asset's fair value, but that the lessee's obligated payments, (a) and (b), are insufficient to do so. That situation would indicate that the lessee *does not* control substantially all of the remaining benefits of the underlying asset, so from the lessee's perspective the lease is an operating lease. However, from the lessor's perspective, the *total* of the obligated payments guarantees recovery of substantially all the lessor's investment in the asset (assuming collection is probable) indicating that it shouldn't be an operating lease, but the lessee's portion of the total is insufficient to indicate control, so it shouldn't be a sales-type lease either.

A lease is considered a direct financing lease if:

- 1. It doesn't qualify as a sales-type lease.
- 2. The combined present value of (a) the *lessee's* periodic payments, (b) the *lessee-guaranteed* residual value, and (c) the *third-party* guaranteed residual value will constitute substantially all of the asset's fair value.
- 3. It's probable that the lessor will collect the lease payments.

When a lease is a direct financing lease rather than a sales-type lease, the lessor's primary involvement in the lease is providing financing of the asset in exchange for interest revenue. The lessor records the lease the same as it would a sales-type lease with no selling profit:

Lease receivable (present value of lease payments*).....	xxx
Asset (carrying value).....	xxx

¹⁸Including the lessee's periodic payments, any lessee-guaranteed residual value, and the third-party guaranteed residual value.

Although rare, if a direct financing lease gives rise to selling profit, the lessor does not recognize the profit at the beginning of the lease. Instead, the lessor would credit deferred profit (considered a contra asset reduction in the receivable) in the entry above. The lessor then would recognize the profit over the lease term in such a manner that the total of that profit and the interest revenue on the remainder of the lease receivable is a constant periodic rate of return on the lease. This can be accomplished by not recording the "deferred profit" separately, but subtracting it from the lease receivable. Decreasing the receivable causes the implicit rate (the interest rate that causes the present value of the lease payments to equal the receivable) to be higher. Determining interest revenue at this higher rate accomplishes the purpose of increasing interest revenue (actually interest plus a portion of profit) each period by a portion of the deferred revenue.

Purchase Option

A **purchase option** is a provision of some lease contracts that gives the lessee the option to purchase the lease asset during, or at the end of, the lease term at a specified exercise price. If it is "reasonably certain" that the lessee will exercise the purchase option, the accounting

¹⁸As explained in more detail in Chapter 5, "control" requires that the customer has direct influence over the use of the good or service and obtains its benefits.

for the lease is affected in three ways: (1) the lease is classified as a finance/sales-type lease, (2) both the lessee and the lessor consider the exercise price of the option to be an additional cash payment, and (3) we assume the lease term ends on the date that the option is expected to be exercised. Both the additional cash payment and the shortened lease term impact the calculation of the lessee's right-of-use asset and lease liability and the lessor's lease receivable. Another implication is that, since the lessee is predicted to own the asset after the lease term, the right-of-use asset recognized by the lessee should be amortized over the economic life of the asset, rather than over the lease term.

In practice, a purchase option whose exercise is reasonably certain is often referred to as a "bargain" purchase option (BPO), and we'll use that term in this book. BPOs are so named because the exercise price of the purchase option is a good deal (a bargain) to the lessee, making it reasonably certain that the lessee will exercise the option. To see the accounting for a BPO, let's again modify Illustration 15–4, this time to assume the lease agreement allows Sans Serif the option to purchase the leased equipment for \$60,000 at the end of the lease term. At this time, the fair value is expected to be sufficiently high (\$75,000) to indicate reasonable certainty that Sans Serif will exercise the option. This situation is assumed in Illustration 15–14.

The exercise price of a purchase option is considered to be an additional cash payment if exercise of the option is "reasonably certain."

On January 1, 2018, Sans Serif Publishers leased printing equipment from First LeaseCorp. First LeaseCorp purchased the equipment from CompuDec Corporation at a cost of \$479,079.

The lease agreement specifies six annual payments of \$92,931 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 from 2018 through 2022. On December 31, 2023, at the end of the six-year lease term, the equipment is expected to be worth \$75,000, and Sans Serif has the option to purchase it for \$60,000 on that date. The residual value after seven years is zero.* First LeaseCorp routinely acquires electronic equipment for lease to other firms. The interest rate in these financing arrangements is 10%.

Lessor's calculation of lease payments:

Amount to be recovered (fair value).....	\$479,079
Less: Present value of the exercise price (\$60,000 × 0.56447**)	(33,868)
Amount to be recovered through periodic rental payments	445,211
	÷ 4.79079*
Lease payments at the beginning of each of the six years:.....	<u>\$ 92,931</u>

Lessee's calculation of PV of lease payments:

Present value of periodic lease payments (\$92,931 × 4.79079†).....	\$445,211
Plus: Present value of the exercise price (\$60,000 × 0.56447**)	33,868
Present value of lease payments.....	<u>\$479,079</u>
(Recorded as a leased asset and a lease liability)	

*Our discussion of the effect of a bargain purchase option (BPO) would be exactly the same if our illustration were of a sales-type lease with a selling profit (for instance, if the lessor's cost were \$300,000) except that, of course, sales revenue and cost of goods sold would be recorded.

**Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

†Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

Illustration 15–14

Bargain Purchase Option

The lessor *subtracts* the PV of the exercise price to determine lease payments.

The lessee *adds* the PV of the exercise price to determine its asset and liability.

The lessor's calculation of periodic lease payments is precisely the same as when we had the \$60,000 residual value in the previous illustration. In fact, the amortization schedule is exactly the same as in Illustration 15–12B when we had a residual value. This is because the exercise price is a component of the lease payments for both the lessor and lessee as was the residual value.

A question you might have at this point is: Why do we ignore the residual value now when we have a bargain purchase option? The reason is obvious when you recall an essential characteristic of such an option—it's expected to be exercised. So, when it is exercised, title to the leased asset passes to the lessee and, with title, any residual value also passes. When that happens, the residual value cannot be considered an additional lease payment to the lessor.

If the lessee obtains title, the lessor's computation of rental payments is unaffected by any residual value.

Recording the exercise of the option is similar to recording the periodic lease payments. That is, a portion of the payment covers interest for the year, and the remaining portion reduces the outstanding liability/receivable balance (to zero with this last payment), as shown in Illustration 15–14A.

Illustration 15–14A

Journal Entries—with Purchase Option

The cash payment expected when the BPO is exercised represents part interest and part principal just like the other cash payments.

Exercise of Purchase Option (December 31, 2023)		
Sans Serif Publishers (Lessee)		
Interest expense (10% × \$54,542*)	5,458	
Lease payable (difference)	54,542	
Cash (exercise price)		60,000
CompuDec Corporation (Lessor)		
Cash (exercise price)	60,000	
Lease receivable (account balance)		54,542
Interest revenue (10% × outstanding balance)		5,458

*\$54,542 is the balance of lease payable after all periodic lease payments have been made (see Illustration 15–12B).

Note also that amortization is affected by the BPO. As pointed out earlier, the lessee normally amortizes its right-of-use asset over the term of the lease. But if ownership transfers by contract or by the expected exercise of a purchase option, the lessee will have the asset beyond the lease term, and will amortize it over the longer useful life. This reflects the fact that the lessee anticipates using the leased equipment for its full useful life. In Illustration 15–14B, the lease term is six years but the equipment is expected to be useful for **seven years**, so amortization each year is \$68,440 ($\$479,079 \div 7 \text{ years}$).

Illustration 15–14B

Amortization Expense with Purchase Option

Each December 31 over the life of the asset		
Sans Serif Publishers (Lessee)		
Amortization expense ($\$479,079^* \div 7 \text{ years}$)	68,440	
Right-of-use asset		68,440

*The residual value is zero after the full seven-year useful life.

When we have a BPO, the length of the lease term is limited to the time up to when the purchase option becomes exercisable.

PURCHASE OPTION EXERCISABLE BEFORE THE END OF THE LEASE TERM. In Illustration 15–14 we assumed that the purchase option was exercisable on December 31, 2023—the end of the lease term. Sometimes, though, the lease contract specifies that an option becomes exercisable before the designated lease term ends. If the option is reasonably certain to be exercised, *the lease term ends for accounting purposes when the option becomes exercisable*. Lease payments include only the periodic cash payments specified in the agreement that occur prior to the date a BPO becomes exercisable. We assume the option is exercised at that time and the lease ends.

TERMINATION PENALTIES. Similar to a lease with a purchase option, if a lease contract includes a penalty payment if the lessee chooses to terminate the lease at a time specified in the contract, we consider the termination penalty to be an additional cash payment if the lessee is “reasonably certain” to terminate the lease. Again, if termination is predicted, we consider the lease term to be from the beginning of the lease to the expected termination date.

In Illustration 15–15, we see the factors that are included in the lease term and the lease payments used in accounting for leases.

Summary of the Lease Uncertainties

Illustration 15–16 provides a summary of various uncertainties concerning lease arrangements that might influence the way lessees and lessors determine lease payments, the lessee’s right-of-use asset and lease liability, and the lessor’s lease receivable.

LEASE TERM INCLUDES:	LEASE PAYMENTS INCLUDE:
Noncancelable period	Fixed payments
PLUS: Periods covered by renewal options if exercise is “reasonably certain”	PLUS: Exercise price for purchase option if exercise is “reasonably certain”
MINUS: Periods following date of purchase option if exercise is “reasonably certain”	PLUS: Termination penalty for termination option if exercise is “reasonably certain”
PLUS: Periods covered by renewal options if <i>under control of lessor</i>	PLUS: Variable lease payments only if (a) deemed in-substance fixed payments or (b) based on an index or rate (with any changes in payments included only if and when the lessee remeasures the lease liability for another reason)
PLUS: Periods following date of termination option if it’s “reasonably certain” the option will not be exercised	PLUS: Excess of guaranteed residual value over expected residual value

Illustration 15–15

Composition of Lease Term and Payments

Illustration 15–16 Summary of Effects of Uncertainties

The lease term	Noncancelable period for which a lessee has the right to use an underlying asset, modified by any renewal or termination options that are “reasonably certain” to be exercised, or not exercised. Options whose exercise is under the control of the lessor are automatically included. Reassessed only when a significant occurrence indicates a change in the economic incentive.
Variable lease payments	Included only if payments are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • in-substance fixed payments or • based on an index or rate, with changes due to the index or rate considered only if and when the lessee remeasures the lease liability for another reason.
Unguaranteed residual value	Present value (called residual asset): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • influences the size of lease payments • added to lease receivable • subtracted from sales revenue and COGS in sales-type lease
Lessee guaranteed residual value	Present value: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • considered when determining lease classification (criterion 4) • added to lease receivable • added to sales revenue
Excess of guaranteed residual value over expected residual value	Present value: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • influences the size of lease payments • added to right-of-use asset and lease liability
Purchase options	If exercise is “reasonably certain:” <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • limits lease term • PV of exercise price added to right-of-use asset and lease liability • PV of exercise price added to lease receivable
Termination penalties	If exercise is “reasonably certain:” <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • limits lease term • PV of penalty amount added to right-of-use asset and lease liability • PV of penalty amount added to lease receivable
Modification of a lease	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If a modification grants the lessee an <i>additional right of use</i>, the original lease is terminated and a new lease is created • Otherwise, it means adjusting, adding, or deleting accounts to conform with the new terms and perhaps reclassifying it from one type of lease to another

Remeasurement of the Lease Liability

When considering the various uncertainties surrounding leases in the previous sections, we've encountered several situations that cause us to remeasure a lease liability (and right-of-use asset). Illustration 15–17 provides us with a summary.

In each case, we compare the remeasured liability with its current balance to see the adjustment needed, calculating the new amount as the present value of the *remaining* lease payments:

Present value of <i>remaining</i> payments	\$xxx
Liability balance (current)	xxx
Increase (or decrease) in balance	\$xxx

Illustration 15–17 Situations Requiring Remeasurement of the Lease Liability

SITUATIONS REQUIRING REMEASUREMENT OF THE LEASE LIABILITY		Discount rate used in present value calculation updated from rate used at the beginning of the lease to rate current at remeasurement
1. There is a change in the assessment of:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> the lease term* whether exercise of a purchase or termination option is reasonably certain* any cash payment because of a guaranteed residual value whether a variable payment is now a fixed payment 	<p>Yes</p> <p>Yes</p> <p>No</p> <p>No</p>
2. There is a modification of the terms of the lease:†	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> not accounted for as a new lease 	Yes

*We reassess the lease term or exercise of an option only when some new event, like a leasehold improvement, triggers a reassessment.
†Under prior GAAP, a modification was the only time the lease liability was remeasured.

Ethical Dilemma



"I know we had discussed that they're supposed to be worth \$24,000 when our purchase option becomes exercisable," Ferris insisted. "That's why we agreed to the lease terms. But, Jenkins, you know how uncertain technology changes are. We can make a good case that they'll be worth \$40,000 in three years."

The computers to which Ferris referred were leased to a customer this week. The lease meets none of the criteria for classification as a sales-type lease except that it contains a purchase option that is reasonably certain to be exercised if the computers could be purchased for \$24,000 after three years.

"We could record revenue earlier that way," Jenkins agreed.

How could revenue be recorded earlier?

Do you perceive an ethical problem?

PART C

Other Lease Accounting Issues and Reporting Requirements

• LO15–7

Nonlease Components of Lease Payments

Service contracts, maintenance, hazard insurance, and property taxes are costs often associated with owning and operating an asset. Frequently, for convenience, a lease contract will specify that the lessor is to pay some or all of these costs, but in reality these additional

costs are embedded in the periodic payments made by the lessee. The accounting question is whether to include these costs as separate components of the lease contract (to be expensed by the lessee) or, instead, as amounts to be capitalized as part of the right-of-use asset. The determining factor is whether the charge represents a *transfer of a good or service to the lessee*. If so, it qualifies as a “nonlease component” of the payment and is separated from the lease payments.

On January 1, 2018, Sans Serif Publishers leased equipment from First LeaseCorp. First LeaseCorp purchased the equipment from CompuDec Corporation at a cost of \$479,079.

- Six annual payments of \$102,000 beginning January 1, 2018.
- Payments include **\$2,000** which First LeaseCorp will use to pay an annual maintenance fee.
- The interest rate in these financing arrangements is 10%.
- Finance lease to Sans Serif Publishers.
- Sales-type lease to First LeaseCorp.

First Payment (January 1, 2018)

Sans Serif Publishers (Lessee)

Maintenance expense (2018 fee).....	2,000	
Lease payable	100,000	
Cash (lease payment).....		102,000

First LeaseCorp (Lessor)

Cash (lease payment).....	102,000	
Lease receivable		100,000
Maintenance fee payable*		2,000

*This assumes the **\$2,000** maintenance fee hasn't yet been paid to the outside maintenance service.

Illustration 15-18

Lease Payments That Include NonLease Components Paid by the Lessor

For demonstration, let's modify Illustration 15-4A. Recall that the lease payments in that illustration were \$100,000 each year. Now, let's assume the periodic lease payments were increased to \$102,000 with the provision that the lessor (First LeaseCorp) pays an annual maintenance fee of \$2,000 to a third-party maintenance firm. Illustration 15-18 demonstrates how the lessee and lessor would account for the maintenance portion of the lease payment.

Sans Serif receives two separate benefits in the lease contract—the right to use equipment as well as maintenance on that equipment. Thus, payments specified in the lease contract contain a lease component (use of equipment for \$100,000) and a nonlease component (maintenance service of \$2,000).

At the beginning of the lease, Sans Serif would record a right-of-use asset and lease liability for the present value of the six \$100,000 lease payments, \$479,079 (see Illustration 15-4A). For the first payment of \$102,000, **\$2,000** is recorded as maintenance expense and the remaining \$100,000 reduces the lease liability.

On the other hand, if the \$2,000 had been a payment for *hazard insurance or property taxes*, that payment does not transfer to the lessee a separate good or service. Instead, payments for hazard insurance and property taxes are specifically identified in the lease accounting guidance as part of the lease payments rather than nonlease components. So, in that case, the right-of-use asset and lease liability (and the lessor's lease receivable) would be measured as the present value of the \$102,000 lease payments, not \$100,000.

As a practical expedient, the lessee is given the *option* to elect *not* to exclude nonlease components (like maintenance). For example, the lessee in our illustration could elect to treat the \$2,000 maintenance cost, not as maintenance expense as shown, but instead as part of the lease payment like for insurance or taxes. If the amounts are material, the lessee likely will not elect this option because the effect is to increase the lease liability, something most lessees try to avoid.

Nonlease components that are included in periodic lease payments to be paid by the lessor are, in effect, indirectly paid by the lessee—and expensed by the lessee.

Initial Direct Costs

The costs that (a) are associated directly with consummating a lease, (b) are essential to acquire the lease, and (c) would not have been incurred had the lease agreement not occurred are referred to as **initial direct costs**. They include legal fees, commissions, and preparing and processing lease documents. While legal and processing fees for executing the lease document are included, legal fees for negotiations and drafting documents are not initial direct costs and are expensed as incurred.

For the lessee, initial direct costs incurred are added to the right-of-use asset. For the lessor, accounting for indirect costs incurred depends on the classification of the lease.

If initial direct costs are incurred by the lessor:

- (a) recorded as a **selling expense** in a sales-type lease that **includes selling profit**.
- (b) deferred and expensed over the lease term in a **sales-type lease with no selling profit**.
- (c) deferred and expensed over the lease term in an **operating lease**.

- In a sales-type lease *that includes selling profit*, initial direct costs are expensed in the period of “sale”—that is, at the beginning of the lease. This treatment assumes that in a sales-type lease the primary reason for incurring these costs is to facilitate the sale of the leased asset.
- In a sales-type lease *with no selling profit*, initial direct costs are deferred and expensed over the lease term. This can be accomplished by not recording the “prepaid expense” separately, but including it in the lease receivable. Increasing the receivable causes the implicit rate (the interest rate that causes the present value of the lease payments to equal the receivable) to be lower. Determining interest revenue at this lower rate accomplishes the purpose of reducing interest revenue each period by a portion of the prepaid expense.
- In an operating lease, initial direct costs are deferred and expensed over the lease term, generally on a straight-line basis.

Advance Payments

Often lease agreements call for **advance payments** to be made at the beginning of the lease. Those payments represent prepaid rent (lease costs). Such payments are included with other payments when the lessee determines the present value of lease payments to determine the right-of-use asset and lease liability and when the lessor calculates its lease receivable in a sales-type lease. Remember, though, the lessor doesn't record a lease receivable for an operating lease. So, in that case, these advance payments are recorded as deferred rent revenue and allocated (normally on a straight-line basis) to rent revenue over the lease term. The rent that is periodically reported in those cases consists of the periodic rent payments themselves plus an allocated portion of deferred rent revenue.

Advance payments represent prepaid rent.

Leasehold Improvements

Sometimes a lessee will make improvements to leased property that reverts back to the lessor at the end of the lease. If a lessee constructs a new building or makes modifications to existing structures, that cost represents an asset just like any other capital expenditure. Like other assets, its cost is allocated as amortization or depreciation expense over its useful life to the lessee, which will be the shorter of the lease term or the physical life of the asset. Theoretically, such assets can be recorded in accounts descriptive of their nature, such as buildings or plant. In practice, the traditional account title used is **leasehold improvements**.¹⁹ In any case, the undepreciated cost usually is reported in the balance sheet under the caption *property, plant, and equipment*. Movable assets like office furniture and equipment that are not attached to the leased property are not considered leasehold improvements.

As discussed previously in Part B of this chapter, the existence of leasehold improvements can affect the determination of the lease term. For instance, let's say a company leased a building for a noncancellable term of six years with a two-year renewal option. Before it takes possession of the building, the company pays for leasehold improvements that are expected to have significant value at the end of six years. Because that value can be realized only through continued occupancy of the leased building, at the beginning of the lease the company would determine that it is reasonably certain to exercise the renewal

The cost of a **leasehold improvement** is depreciated over its useful life to the lessee.

¹⁹ Also, traditionally, depreciation sometimes is labeled amortization when in connection with leased assets and leasehold improvements. This is of little consequence. Remember, both depreciation and amortization refer to the process of allocating an asset's cost over its useful life.

option because it would suffer a significant economic penalty if the leasehold improvements were abandoned at the end of the initial lease term. As a result, at the beginning of the lease, the company would conclude that the lease term is eight years. Similarly, if the leasehold improvement is made during the lease term, that additional cost might trigger a reconsideration of whether a purchase or renewal option is reasonably certain to be exercised, and thus a reassessment of the lease term.

Additional Consideration

During 2005, hundreds of companies, particularly in the retail and restaurant industries, underwent one of the most widespread accounting correction events ever. Corrections were required because of the way these companies, including **Pep Boys**, **Ann Taylor**, **Target**, and **Domino's Pizza**, had allocated the cost of leasehold improvements. Rather than expensing leasehold improvements properly over the lease terms, these firms for years had inappropriately expensed the cost over the longer estimated useful lives of the properties. Prompting the sweeping revisions was a Securities and Exchange Commission letter on February 7, 2005, urging companies to follow long-standing accounting standards in this area. A result of the improper practices was to defer expense, thereby accelerating earnings. For instance, **McDonald's Corp.** recorded a charge of \$139 million to adjust for the difference.

Hundreds of firms in 2005 corrected the way they accounted for leases.

Concept Review Exercise

(This is an extension of the previous Concept Review Exercise.)

United Cellular Systems leased a satellite transmission device from Satellite Technology Corporation on January 1, 2018. Satellite Technology paid \$500,000 for the transmission device. Its retail value is \$653,681. The lease qualifies as a finance lease to the lessee and a sales-type lease with a selling profit to the lessor.

VARIOUS LEASE ACCOUNTING ISSUES: FINANCE/SALES-TYPE LEASE

Terms of the Lease Agreement and Related Information:

Lease term	3 years (6 semiannual periods)
Semiannual lease payments	\$123,000 at the beginning of each period
Economic life of asset	4 years
Interest rate	12%
Unguaranteed residual value	\$40,000
Maintenance fees paid by lessor	\$3,000/twice each year (included in lease payments)
Lessor's initial direct costs	\$4,500
Contingent lease payments	Additional \$4,000 if revenues exceed a specified base

Required:

1. Prepare an amortization schedule that describes the pattern of interest expense over the lease term for United Cellular Systems.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule that describes the pattern of interest revenue over the lease term for Satellite Technology.
3. Prepare the appropriate entries for both United Cellular Systems and Satellite Technology on January 1 and June 30, 2018. (Amortization is recorded only at year-end.)
4. Prepare the appropriate entries for both United Cellular Systems and Satellite Technology on December 31, 2020 (the end of the lease term), assuming the device is returned to the lessor and its actual residual value is \$14,000 on that date.

Solution:

1. Prepare an amortization schedule that describes the pattern of interest expense over the lease term for United Cellular Systems.

Calculation of the Present Value of Lease Payments:

Present value of periodic lease payments excluding maintenance costs of \$3,000:

$$(\$120,000 \times 5.21236^*) = \$625,483$$

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 6\%$.

Note: The residual value is excluded from lease payments for both the lessee and lessor but was influential in establishing the size of the lease payments.

Date	Payments	Effective Interest	Decrease in Balance	Outstanding Balance
		(6% × Outstanding balance)		
1/1/18				625,483
1/1/18	120,000		120,000	505,483
6/30/18	120,000	0.06 (505,483) = 30,329	89,671	415,812
1/1/19	120,000	0.06 (415,812) = 24,949	95,051	320,761
6/30/19	120,000	0.06 (320,761) = 19,246	100,754	220,007
1/1/20	120,000	0.06 (220,007) = 13,200	106,800	113,207
6/30/20	120,000	0.06 (113,207) = 6,793*	113,207	0
	<u>720,000</u>	<u>94,517</u>	<u>625,483</u>	

*Adjusted for rounding of other numbers in the schedule.

2. Prepare an amortization schedule that describes the pattern of interest revenue over the lease term for Satellite Technology.

Calculation of the Lessor's Net Investment:

Present value of periodic lease payments excluding maintenance costs of \$3,000 ($\$120,000 \times 5.21236^*$)	\$625,483
Plus: Present value of the residual value ($\$40,000 \times 0.70496^\dagger$)	28,198
Lessor's net investment in lease	<u>\$653,681</u>

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 6\%$.

†Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 6\%$.

Note: The residual value is excluded from lease payments, but is part of the lessor's gross and net investment in the lease.

Date	Payments	Effective Interest	Decrease in Balance	Outstanding Balance
		(6% × Outstanding balance)		
1/1/18				653,681
1/1/18	120,000		120,000	533,681
6/30/18	120,000	0.06 (533,681) = 32,021	87,979	445,702
1/1/19	120,000	0.06 (445,702) = 26,742	93,258	352,444
6/30/19	120,000	0.06 (352,444) = 21,147	98,853	253,591
1/1/20	120,000	0.06 (253,591) = 15,215	104,785	148,806
6/30/20	120,000	0.06 (148,806) = 8,928*	111,072	37,734
12/31/20	40,000	0.06 (37,734) = 2,266*	37,734	0
	<u>760,000</u>	<u>106,319</u>	<u>653,681</u>	

*Adjusted for rounding of other numbers in the schedule.

3. Prepare the appropriate entries for both United Cellular Systems and Satellite Technology on January 1 and June 30, 2018. (Amortization is only recorded at year-end.)

January 1, 2018			
United Cellular Systems (Lessee)			
Right-of-asset (calculated above).....	625,483		
Lease payable (calculated above).....			625,483
Lease payable (payment less maintenance costs).....	120,000		
Maintenance expense.....	3,000		
Cash (lease payment).....			123,000

(continued)

(concluded)

Satellite Technology (Lessor)

Lease receivable (PV of lease payments).....	653,681	
Cost of goods sold [$\$500,000 - (\$40,000 \times 0.70496)$].....	471,802	
Sales revenue (present value of lease payments)		625,483
Equipment (lessor's cost)		500,000
Selling expense	4,500	
Cash (initial direct costs [†])		4,500
Cash (lease payment).....	123,000	
Maintenance fee payable (or cash)		3,000
Lease receivable (payment less maintenance costs)		120,000

*This is the unguaranteed residual value.

[†]If incurred by the lessor, initial direct costs are recorded as a selling expense at the beginning of a sales-type lease.**June 30, 2018****United Cellular Systems (Lessee)**

Interest expense [$6\% \times (\$625,483 - 120,000)$].....	30,329	
Lease payable (difference).....	89,671	
Maintenance expense (annual fee)	3,000	
Cash (lease payment).....		123,000

Satellite Technology (Lessor)

Cash (lease payment).....	123,000	
Maintenance fee payable (or cash)		3,000
Lease receivable (to balance).....		87,979
Interest revenue [$6\% \times (\$653,681 - 120,000)$].....		32,021

4. Prepare the appropriate entries for both United Cellular Systems and Satellite Technology on December 31, 2020, (the end of the lease term) assuming the device is returned to the lessor and its actual residual value is \$14,000 on that date.

December 31, 2020**United Cellular Systems (Lessee)**

Amortization expense ($\$625,483 \div 3$ years).....	208,494	
Right-of-use asset.....		208,494

Satellite Technology (Lessor)

Equipment (actual residual value).....	14,000	
Loss on leased assets ($\$40,000 - 14,000$).....	26,000	
Lease receivable (account balance).....		37,734
Interest revenue ($6\% \times \$37,734$: from schedule).....		2,266

Statement of Cash Flow Impact

Operating Leases

Remember, lease payments for operating leases represent rent—expense to the lessee, revenue for the lessor. These amounts are included in net income, so both the lessee and lessor report cash payments for operating leases in a statement of cash flows as cash flows from operating activities.

Finance Leases—Lessee

You've learned in this chapter that finance leases are agreements that we identify as being formulated outwardly as leases, but which are in reality installment purchases, so we account for them as such. Each lease payment (except the first if paid at beginning) includes both an

● LO15–8

Both the lessee and lessor report cash payments for operating leases as operating activities.

The interest portion of a finance lease payment is a cash flow from operating activities and the principal portion is a cash flow from financing activities.

amount that represents interest and an amount that represents a reduction of principal. In a statement of cash flows, then, the lessee reports the interest portion as a cash outflow from operating activities and the principal portion as a cash outflow from financing activities.

At the beginning of the lease, the lessee reports the right-of-use asset and lease liability as a noncash investing/financing activity in the disclosure notes to the financial statements.

Sales-Type Leases—Lessor

In a sales-type lease we assume the lessor is actually selling its product. Consistent with reporting sales of products under installment sales agreements rather than lease agreements, the lessor reports cash receipts from a sales-type lease as cash inflows from operating activities.

At the beginning of the lease, the lessor reports the lease as a noncash investing activity (acquiring one asset and disposing of another) in the disclosure notes to the financial statements.

Cash receipts from a sales-type lease are cash flows from operating activities.

Lease Disclosures

Lease disclosure requirements are quite extensive for both the lessor and lessee. Virtually all aspects of the lease agreement must be disclosed. The guiding objective is that lessees and lessors provide disclosures that enable users of financial statements to assess the *amount*, *timing*, and *uncertainty* of cash flows arising from leases. Information disclosed is both qualitative and quantitative.

Qualitative Disclosures

A general description of the leasing arrangement is required, including information about variable lease payments, options, nonlease payments, and residual values. A reason for excluding variable lease payments from the measurement of the lessee's lease liability and the lessor's receivable is that they could result in unreliable measurements in the financial statements. Disclosing information in notes to financial statements about variable lease payments would be more useful than estimating and including the payments in assets and liabilities.

Quantitative Disclosures

LESSEE

- Finance lease costs, with separate disclosure of interest and amortization. (The total of these two is reported together in the income statement as lease expense.)
- Operating lease cost.
- Short term lease cost.
- Variable lease cost.
- Weighted average lease term of operating leases and finance leases.
- Weighted average discount rate.
- A reconciliation of opening and closing balances of the right-of-use asset.
- Contractual obligations (and options that the lessee is "reasonably certain" to exercise) for each of the five succeeding fiscal years, plus a total for the remaining years.
- Table of future lease payments, segregated by type of lease, for each of the next five years, and total of payments for the remaining years, and (for finance leases) reconciled with the balance sheet liabilities.

LESSOR

- Information about lease contracts and significant assumptions and judgments.
- Table of lease revenues received.
- Lease sales disclosed separately from regular sales.

- Table of future lease payments, segregated by type of lease, for each of the next five years, and total of payments thereafter and (for sales-type leases) reconciled with the balance sheet receivables.
- Information about assets under operating lease.
- Information about risks associated with residual values.
- Information about significant changes in unguaranteed residual values.
- The gross investment and net investment in leases.

Financial Reporting Case Solution

1. **Are there advantages of leasing its equipment that HG should consider?** (p. 834) Leasing can offer many benefits. Leasing allows a company to acquire the use of an asset without having to pay the entire purchase price upfront. Leasing also can avoid a time-consuming purchase process. Also, if obsolescence is a concern, as it is for HG, leasing facilitates frequent replacement of assets.
2. **Would the effect on HG's income statement be the same if finance leases replace operating leases?** (p. 841) Finance leases involve the "front loading" of lease expense due to the fact that interest expense is higher initially than it is in the later years of a lease, while amortization expense for the right-of-use asset remains the same each period. Straight-line lease expense that occurs with operating leases defers expense recognition, making net income higher in the early years of the lease. ●



© Pressmaster/Shutterstock

The Bottom Line

- **LO15-1** In keeping with the concept of substance over form, a lease is accounted for as either a rental agreement or a purchase/sale accompanied by debt financing. A lessee should classify a lease transaction as a finance lease if one or more of five classification criteria is met, and a lessor should record the lease as a sales-type lease. If none of the five criteria is met, both the lessee and the lessor classify the lease as an operating lease. The criteria are used to identify situations when the lease is economically similar to the purchase of an asset because the lessee obtains control of the underlying asset, meaning the ability to direct the use of the asset and obtain substantially all of its remaining benefits, in contrast to merely obtaining control over the use of the asset for a period of time. (p. 832)
- **LO15-2** When a lease is classified as a finance lease from the lessee's perspective and a sales-type lease from the lessor's perspective, (1) the lessee records a right-of-use asset and lease liability for the present value of the lease payments, and (2) the lessor records a lease receivable for the same amount and removes the asset from its books. The lessor recognizes interest revenue and the lessee recognizes interest expense at the effective rate times the outstanding balance. The lessee amortizes the right-of-use asset on a straight line basis. For an operating lease, the two components, interest and amortization, are shown as one lease expense in the income statement (p. 836)
- **LO15-3** The lessor records sales revenue and cost of goods sold for a sales-type lease with a selling profit. That happens when the present value of the lease payments exceeds the asset's carrying value. (p. 841)
- **LO15-4** In an operating lease, a sale is not recorded by the lessor. Instead, the periodic lease payments are accounted for as rent revenue by the lessor. The lessee records a right-of-use asset and lease liability at the present value of the lease payments. Interest expense is recognized at the effective rate times the outstanding balance. Amortization of the right-of-use asset is determined as the amount needed to cause the total lease expense (interest plus amortization) to be a straight-line amount equal to the lease payment. (p. 843)
- **LO15-5** In a lease of 12 months or less, the lessee can elect not to record a right-of-use asset and lease payable at the beginning of the lease term, but instead simply record lease payments as expense as they occur (short-cut method). (p. 849)
- **LO15-6** The lease term is the contractual lease term modified by any renewal or termination options that are reasonably certain to be exercised or not exercised. Options whose exercise is under the control of the

lessor are automatically included. Lease payments include payments resulting from those options as well as excess guaranteed residual values. The calculation of the present value of lease payments at the beginning of the lease does not include any variable lease payments, unless those payments are “in-substance fixed payments” or if they are based solely on an index or rate. (p. 850)

- **LO15–7** Nonlease components that are included in periodic lease payments (like maintenance) to be paid by the lessor are, in effect, indirectly paid by the lessee—and are expensed by the lessee. Insurance and property taxes included in periodic lease payments, however, do not transfer a good or service to the lessee and thus are considered part of lease payments. Initial direct costs incurred by the lessee are added to the right-of-use asset. If incurred by the lessor, they are recorded as a selling expense in a sales-type lease with a selling profit or expensed over the lease term in a sales-type lease with no selling profit or in an operating lease. The cost of a leasehold improvement is depreciated over its useful life to the lessee. (p. 861)
- **LO15–8** We report all cash flows as operating cash flows, except the principal portion of each payment in a finance lease, which is a cash flow from financing activities. Extensive disclosure requirements for lessees and lessors are designed to enable users of financial statements to assess the amount, timing, and uncertainty of cash flows arising from leases. (p. 867)
- **LO15–9** Accounting for leases is similar in most respects under U.S. GAAP or IFRS. The primary difference is that IFRS treats all leases as finance leases by the lessee. (pp. 849 and 853) ●

APPENDIX 15

Sale-Leaseback Arrangements

In a **sale-leaseback transaction**, the owner of an asset sells it and immediately leases it back from the new owner. Sound strange? Maybe, but this arrangement is common. In a sale-leaseback transaction two things happen:

1. The seller-lessee receives cash from the sale of the asset.
2. The seller-lessee pays periodic rent payments to the buyer-lessor to retain the use of the asset.

What motivates this kind of arrangement? The two most common reasons are: (a) if the asset had been financed originally with debt and interest rates have fallen, the sale-leaseback transaction can be used to effectively refinance at a lower rate; or (b) the most likely motivation for a sale-leaseback transaction is to generate cash.

We account for this type of arrangement in one of two ways.

- **Sale-Leaseback Approach.** Record the sale of the asset (with any accompanying gain or loss) and then record a lease for the leaseback portion in accordance with the lease guidance described earlier in this chapter. As we see below, though, if the leaseback qualifies as a finance lease, no sale has occurred and this approach cannot be applied. Thus, the sale-leaseback approach is allowed only if the leaseback qualifies as an operating lease.
- **Financing Arrangement.** View the arrangement, not as a sale, but as a loan by the lessor to the lessee for the “sale” price. The asset remains on the lessee’s books, and the leaseback is accounted for as debt. The “lease” payments are deemed to be repayment of the loan.

We apply the sale-leaseback approach only if the usual requirements for revenue recognition (Chapter 5) are met (so the sale can be recorded), and it’s not a finance lease, which would indicate the asset is effectively sold back to the lessee.²⁰

²⁰More specifically, **none** of the following conditions can be present if sale-leaseback accounting is to be used:

- The seller-lessee has an option to buy back the asset at any price other than fair value (and other similar items must be available to buy).
- The buyer-lessor has the option to sell the asset back to the seller-lessee that the buyer-lessor is “reasonably certain” to exercise.
- The leaseback term is for 75% of the remaining economic life of the asset.
- The present value of the lease payments accounts for 90% of the fair value of the asset.

If the transaction does not qualify for sale-leaseback accounting, both the companies account for it as a financing arrangement. The reasoning for allowing sale-leaseback accounting only for situations in which the leaseback qualifies as an operating lease is quite logical when we remember the primary distinction between a finance lease and an operating lease. A finance lease is substantively a “sale,” so if this is the nature of a leaseback, then we have a sale by the lessee and then a sale back to the lessee, so we really have no sale at all. Essentially, the asset still belongs to the lessee, and cash comes to the lessee at the time of the transaction which is paid back in the form of periodic “lease payments.” Of course, this is the nature of a loan, so we account for it that way.

Illustration 15–A1 demonstrates a sale-leaseback involving a leaseback that qualifies as an operating lease.

Recording a sale-leaseback transaction follows the basic accounting concept of substance over form.

Illustration 15–A1

Sale-Leaseback

Teledyne Distribution Center was in need of cash. Its solution: sell its four warehouses for \$1,000,000, their fair value, and then lease back the warehouses to continue using them. The warehouses had a carrying value on Teledyne’s books of \$900,000 (original cost \$1,200,000). Other information:

1. The sale date is December 31, 2018.
2. The noncancelable lease term is 10 years and requires annual payments of \$118,360 beginning December 31, 2018. The estimated remaining useful life of the warehouses is 15 years.
3. The annual lease payments (present value \$800,000) provides the lessor with a 10% rate of return on the financing arrangement.*

December 31, 2018

Cash.....	1,000,000	
Accumulated depreciation (\$1,200,000 – 900,000).....	300,000	
Warehouses (cost)		1,200,000
Gain on sale-leaseback (difference).....		100,000
Right-of-use asset (present value of lease payments).....	800,000	
Lease payable (present value of lease payments).....		800,000
Lease payable	118,360	
Cash.....		118,360

December 31, 2019

Interest expense [10% × (\$800,000 – 118,360)].....	68,164	
Lease payable (difference).....	50,196	
Cash (lease payment).....		118,360
Amortization expense (\$118,360 – 68,164)	50,196	
Right-of-use asset.....		50,196

*\$118,360 × 6.75902 = \$800,000 (\$799,997.61 rounded)
 lease payments (from Table 6) Present value
 n = 10, i = 10%

The gain (or loss) on a sale-leaseback is recognized at the time of the sale.

In an operating lease, the lessee records interest the normal way and then “plugs” the amortization at whatever amount is needed for interest plus amortization to equal the straight-line lease payment.

Since none of the criteria for a finance lease is met, the leaseback is recorded by the lessee as an operating lease.²¹ The sale-leaseback, then, is deemed to be two distinct transactions: a legitimate sale creating a \$100,000 gain and then an operating lease. On the flip side of the transaction, the lessor would record the purchase of a \$1,000,000 asset and then record lease revenue of \$118,360 each year over the term of the lease.

But now suppose the remaining useful life is 12 years instead of 15 and that the ten lease payments are \$147,950, creating a present value of \$1,000,000 instead of \$800,000. According to the criteria in Illustration 15–2, either of those circumstances would require that the arrangement be accounted for as a finance lease, instead of an operating lease. As such, the transaction does not qualify for sale-leaseback accounting. We would view the arrangement,

²¹The lease term is less than the major part of the expected useful life of the warehouses (67%). Also, the present value of lease payments (\$800,000) is less than substantially all of the fair value of the warehouses (\$1,000,000). None of the other three of the five criteria is present.

not as a sale, but as a loan by the lessor to the lessee for the \$1,000,000 “sale” price. The asset remains on the lessee’s books. The “lease” payments would be considered to be repayment of the loan. It would be recorded as shown in Illustration 15–A2. ●

Illustration 15–A2

Sale-Leaseback Deemed to Be a Loan

Though structured as a sale and then a lease, in substance, the lessee is actually borrowing \$1,000,000.

The “lease” payments would be considered to be repayment of the loan.

December 31, 2018		
Cash.....	1,000,000	
Note payable.....		1,000,000
Note payable	147,950	
Cash.....		147,950
December 31, 2019		
Interest expense [10% × (\$1,000,000 – 147,950)].....	85,205	
Note payable (difference).....	62,745	
Cash (lease payment).....		147,950

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 15–1** The basic concept of “substance over form” influences lease accounting. Explain.
- Q 15–2** How is interest expense determined in a finance lease transaction? How does the approach compare to other forms of debt (such as bonds payable or notes payable)?
- Q 15–3** How are leases and installment notes the same? How do they differ?
- Q 15–4** A lessee should classify a lease transaction as a finance lease if it is noncancelable and one or more of five classification criteria are met. Otherwise, it is an operating lease. What are these criteria?
- Q 15–5** Lukawitz Industries leased non-specialized equipment to Seminole Corporation for a four-year period, at which time possession of the leased asset will revert back to Lukawitz. The equipment cost Lukawitz \$4 million and has an expected useful life of six years. Its normal sales price is \$5.6 million. The present value of the lease payments for both the lessor and lessee is \$5.2 million. The first payment was made at the beginning of the lease. How should this lease be classified (a) by Lukawitz Industries (the lessor) and (b) by Seminole Corporation (the lessee)? Why?
- Q 15–6** In accounting for a finance lease/sales-type lease, how are the lessee’s and lessor’s income statements affected?
- Q 15–7** What is selling profit on a sales-type lease? How do we account for a sales-type lease with a selling profit?
- Q 15–8** At the beginning of an operating lease, the lessee will record what asset and liability, if any?
- Q 15–9** At the beginning of an operating lease, the lessor will record what asset or assets, if any?
- Q 15–10** In accounting for an operating lease, how are the lessee’s and lessor’s income statements affected?
- Q 15–11** Briefly describe the conceptual basis for asset and liability recognition under the right-of-use approach used by the lessee in a lease transaction.
- Q 15–12** In a financing lease, “front loading” of lease expense and lease revenue occurs. What does this mean, and how is it avoided in an operating lease?
- Q 15–13** The discount rate influences virtually every amount reported in connection with a lease by both the lessor and the lessee. What is the lessor’s discount rate when determining the present value of lease payments? What is the lessee’s discount rate?
- Q 15–14** A lease that has a lease term (including any options to terminate or renew that are reasonably certain) of twelve months or less is considered a “short-term lease.” How does a lessee record a lease using the short-cut approach available as an option for short-term leases?
- Q 15–15** A lease might specify that lease payments may be increased (or decreased) at some future time during the lease term depending on whether or not some specified event occurs such as revenues or profits exceeding some designated level. Under what circumstances are contingent rentals included or excluded from lease payments? If excluded, how are they recognized in income determination?
- Q 15–16** What is a purchase option? How does it affect accounting for a lease?
- Q 15–17** A six-year lease can be renewed for two additional three-year periods, and it also can be terminated after only three years. How do the lessee and lessor decide the lease term to be used in accounting for the lease?

- Q 15-18** Culinary Creations leased kitchen equipment under a five-year lease with an option to renew for three years at the end of five years and an option to renew for an additional three years at the end of eight years. The first three-year renewal option can be exercised for one-half the original and usual rate. What is the length of the lease term that Culinary Creations should assume in recording the transactions related to the lease?
- Q 15-19** What situations cause us to remeasure a lease liability and right-of-use asset? How is that accomplished?
- Q 15-20** Occasionally, a lease agreement includes a guarantee by the lessee that the lessor will recover a specified residual value when custody of the asset reverts back to the lessor at the end of the lease term. Under what circumstance can the guaranteed residual value influence the amounts recorded by the lessee and lessor? In that circumstance, how are the amounts affected?
- Q 15-21** Compare the way a purchase option that is reasonably certain to be exercised and a lessee-guaranteed residual value are treated by the lessee and lessor when determining lease payments.
- Q 15-22** What nonlease costs might be included as part of lease payments? How are they accounted for by the lessee in a finance lease when paid by the lessee? When paid by the lessor? Explain.
- Q 15-23** The lessor's initial direct costs often are substantial. What are initial direct costs?
- Q 15-24** When are initial direct costs recognized in an operating lease? In a sales-type lease with selling profit? In a sales-type lease with no selling profit? Why?
- Q 15-25** What is the primary objective of the required lease disclosures for the lessor and lessee?
- Q 15-26** Where can we find authoritative guidance for accounting for leases under IFRS?
- Q 15-27** Could a finance lease under IFRS be classified as an operating lease under U.S. GAAP? Explain.
- Q 15-28** When a company sells an asset and simultaneously leases it back, what criteria must be met to apply sale-leaseback accounting rather than accounting for the transaction as a loan?
- Q 15-29** Zimmern Machines sold equipment with a 10-year economic life to Bourdain Acres, while concurrently entering into an 8-year leaseback. Eight years is considered a major part of the economic life of the equipment. The sale agreement contains no option for Zimmern to repurchase the equipment or any other provision that would prevent its sale. Can Zimmern Machines account for the transaction as a sale-leaseback? Why?

Brief Exercises



BE 15-1

Lease classification

● LO15-1

(Note: Brief Exercises 1 and 2 are two variations of the same basic situation.)

Corinth Co. leased nonspecialized equipment to Athens Corporation for an eight-year period, at which time possession of the equipment will revert back to Corinth. The equipment cost Corinth \$16 million and has an expected useful life of 12 years. Its normal sales price is \$22.4 million. The present value of the lease payments for both the lessor and lessee is \$20.6 million. The first payment was made at the beginning of the lease. How should Corinth classify this lease? Why?

BE 15-2

Lease classification

● LO15-1, LO15-2

Corinth Co. leased nonspecialized equipment to Athens Corporation for an eight-year period, at which time possession of the equipment will revert back to Corinth. The equipment cost Corinth \$16 million and has an expected useful life of 12 years. Its normal sales price is \$22.4 million. The present value of the lease payments for both the lessor and lessee is \$20.6 million. The first payment was made at the beginning of the lease. How should Athens classify this lease? Why?

BE 15-3

Lessee and lessor; calculate interest; finance/sales-type lease

● LO15-2

A finance lease agreement calls for quarterly lease payments of \$5,376 over a 10-year lease term, with the first payment on July 1, the beginning of the lease. The annual interest rate is 8%. Both the present value of the lease payments and the cost of the asset to the lessor are \$150,000. What would be the amount of interest expense the lessee would record in conjunction with the second quarterly payment on October 1? What would be the amount of interest revenue the lessor would record in conjunction with the second quarterly payment on October 1?

BE 15-4

Finance lease; lessee; balance sheet effects

● LO15-2

(Note: Brief Exercises 4, 5, and 6 are three variations of the same basic situation.)

A lease agreement that qualifies as a finance lease calls for annual lease payments of \$26,269 over a six-year lease term (also the asset's useful life), with the first payment at January 1, the beginning of the lease. The interest rate is 5%. If the lessee's fiscal year is the calendar year, what would be the amount of the lease liability that the lessee would report in its balance sheet at the end of the first year? What would be the interest payable?

BE 15-5

Finance lease; lessee; income statement effects

● LO15-2

A lease agreement that qualifies as a finance lease calls for annual lease payments of \$26,269 over a six-year lease term (also the asset's useful life), with the first payment at January 1, the beginning of the lease. The interest rate is 5%. If the lessee's fiscal year is the calendar year, what would be the amounts related to the lease that the lessee would report in its income statement for the year ended December 31 (ignore taxes)?

BE 15-6

Sales-type lease;
lessor; income
statement effects

● LO15-3

A lease agreement that qualifies as a finance lease calls for annual lease payments of \$26,269 over a six-year lease term (also the asset's useful life), with the first payment at January 1, the beginning of the lease. The interest rate is 5%. The lessor's fiscal year is the calendar year. The lessor manufactured this asset at a cost of \$125,000. What would be the amounts related to the lease that the lessor would report in its income statement for the year ended December 31 (ignore taxes)?

BE 15-7

Sales-type lease;
lessor; calculate
lease payments

● LO15-3

Manning Imports is contemplating an agreement to lease equipment to a customer for five years. Manning normally sells the asset for a cash price of \$100,000. Assuming that 8% is a reasonable rate of interest, what must be the amount of quarterly lease payments (beginning at the commencement of the lease) in order for Manning to recover its normal selling price as well as be compensated for financing the asset over the lease term?

BE 15-8

Operating lease

● LO15-4

(Note: Brief Exercises 8 and 9 are two variations of the same basic situation.)

At the beginning of its fiscal year, Lakeside Inc. leased office space to LTT Corporation under a seven-year operating lease agreement. The contract calls for quarterly rent payments of \$25,000 each. The office building was acquired by Lakeside at a cost of \$2 million and was expected to have a useful life of 25 years with no residual value. What will be the effect of the lease on LTT's earnings for the first year (ignore taxes)?

BE 15-9

Operating lease

● LO15-4

At the beginning of its fiscal year, Lakeside Inc. leased office space to LTT Corporation under a seven-year operating lease agreement. The contract calls for quarterly rent payments of \$25,000 each. The office building was acquired by Lakeside at a cost of \$2 million and was expected to have a useful life of 25 years with no residual value. What will be the effect of the lease on Lakeside's earnings for the first year (ignore taxes)?

BE 15-10

Short-term lease

● LO15-5

King Cones leased ice cream-making equipment from Ace Leasing. Ace earns interest under such arrangements at a 6% annual rate. The lease term is eight months with monthly payments of \$10,000 due at the end of each month. King Cones elected the short-term lease option. What is the effect of the lease on King Cones' earnings during the eight-month term (ignore taxes)?

BE 15-11

Uncertain lease
term

● LO15-6

Java Hut leased a specialty espresso machine for a 10-year noncancelable term. At the end of the 10-year term, Java Hut has four consecutive one-year renewal options. A replacement machine can be acquired, but due to an expensive installation process and Java Hut's lease term for its store, Java Hut expects to lease the machine for 12 years. What is the lease term?

BE 15-12

Uncertain lease
payments

● LO15-6

On January 1, Espinoza Moving and Storage leased a truck for a four-year period, at which time possession of the truck will revert back to the lessor. Annual lease payments are \$10,000 due on December 31 of each year, calculated by the lessor using a 5% discount rate. If Espinoza's revenues exceed a specified amount during the lease term, Espinoza will pay an additional \$4,000 lease payment at the end of the lease. Espinoza estimates a 60% probability of meeting the target revenue amount. What amount, if any, should be added to the right-of-use asset and lease liability under the contingent rent agreement?

BE 15-13

Purchase option;
lessor; sales-type
lease

● LO15-2, LO15-3,
LO15-6

Ace Leasing acquires equipment and leases it to customers under long-term sales-type leases. Ace earns interest under these arrangements at a 6% annual rate. Ace leased a machine it purchased for \$600,000 under an arrangement that specified annual payments beginning at the commencement of the lease for five years. The lessee had the option to purchase the machine at the end of the lease term for \$100,000 when it was expected to have a residual value of \$160,000. Calculate the amount of the annual lease payments.

BE 15-14

Residual value;
sales-type lease

● LO15-2, LO15-3,
LO15-6

On January 1, James Industries leased equipment to a customer for a four-year period, at which time possession of the leased asset will revert back to James. The equipment cost James \$700,000 and has an expected useful life of six years. Its normal sales price is \$700,000. The residual value after four years is \$100,000. Lease payments are due on December 31 of each year, beginning with the first payment at the end of the first year. The interest rate is 5%. Calculate the amount of the annual lease payments.

BE 15-15

Guaranteed
residual value

● LO15-6

On January 1, Garcia Supply leased a truck for a four-year period, at which time possession of the truck will revert back to the lessor. Annual lease payments are \$10,000 due on December 31 of each year, calculated by the lessor using a 5% discount rate. Negotiations led to Garcia guaranteeing a \$36,000 residual value at the end of the lease term. Garcia estimates that the residual value after four years will be \$35,000. What is the amount to be added to the right-of-use asset and lease liability under the residual value guarantee?

BE 15-16

Lessor's initial
direct costs;
sales-type lease

● LO15-3, LO15-7

Bryant leased equipment that had a retail cash selling price of \$600,000 and a useful life of five years with no residual value. The lessor paid \$530,000 to acquire the equipment and used an implicit rate of 8% when calculating annual lease payments of \$139,142 beginning January 1, the beginning of the lease. Lease payments will be

made January 1 each year of the lease. Incremental costs of consummating the lease transaction incurred by the lessor were \$15,000. What is the effect of the lease on the lessor's earnings during the first year (ignore taxes)?

BE 15-17

Nonlease
payments

- LO15-2, LO15-7

On January 1, 2018, Jasperse Corporation leased equipment under a finance lease designed to earn the lessor a 12% rate of return for providing long-term financing. The lease agreement specified ten annual payments of \$75,000 beginning January 1, and each December 31 thereafter through 2026. A 10-year service agreement was scheduled to provide maintenance of the equipment as required for a fee of \$5,000 per year. Insurance premiums of \$4,000 annually are related to the equipment. Both amounts were to be paid by the lessor and lease payments reflect both expenditures. At what amount will Jasperse record a right-of-use asset?

Exercises

**E 15-1**

Lease
classification

- LO15-1

Each of the four independent situations below describes a lease requiring annual lease payments of \$10,000. For each situation, determine the appropriate lease classification by the lessee and indicate why.

	Situation			
	1	2	3	4
Lease term (years)	4	4	4	4
Asset's useful life (years)	6	5	6	6
Asset's fair value	\$44,000	\$43,000	\$41,000	\$39,000
Purchase option that is reasonably certain to be exercised?	No	Yes	No	No
Annual lease payments	Beg. of yr.	End of yr.	Beg. of yr.	End of yr.
Lessor's implicit rate (known by lessee)	5%	6%	5%	6%
Lessee's incremental borrowing rate	5%	5%	5%	5%

E 15-2

Finance lease;
calculate lease
payments

- LO15-2

American Food Services, Inc. leased a packaging machine from Barton and Barton Corporation. Barton and Barton completed construction of the machine on January 1, 2018. The lease agreement for the \$4 million (fair value and present value of the lease payments) machine specified four equal payments at the end of each year. The useful life of the machine was expected to be four years with no residual value. Barton and Barton's implicit interest rate was 10%.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry for American Food Services at the beginning of the lease on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule for the four-year term of the lease.
3. Prepare the appropriate entries related to the lease on December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare the appropriate entries related to the lease on December 31, 2020.

(Note: You may wish to compare your solution to this exercise with that of E 14-18 which deals with a parallel situation in which the packaging machine was acquired with an installment note.)

E 15-3

Finance lease;
lessee; balance
sheet and income
statement effects

- LO15-2

(Note: Exercises 3, 4, and 5 are three variations of the same situation.)

On June 30, 2018, Georgia-Atlantic, Inc. leased a warehouse facility from IC Leasing Corporation. The lease agreement calls for Georgia-Atlantic to make semiannual lease payments of \$562,907 over a three-year lease term, payable each June 30 and December 31, with the first payment at June 30, 2018. Georgia-Atlantic's incremental borrowing rate is 10%, the same rate IC uses to calculate lease payment amounts. Depreciation is recorded on a straight-line basis at the end of each fiscal year. The fair value of the warehouse is \$3 million.

Required:

1. Determine the present value of the lease payments at June 30, 2018 (to the nearest \$000) that Georgia-Atlantic uses to record the right-of-use asset and lease liability.
2. What amounts related to the lease would Georgia-Atlantic report in its balance sheet at December 31, 2018 (ignore taxes)?
3. What amounts related to the lease would Georgia-Atlantic report in its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018 (ignore taxes)?

E 15-4

Sales-type lease; lessor; balance sheet and income statement effects

• LO15-2

On June 30, 2018, Georgia-Atlantic, Inc. leased warehouse equipment from IC Leasing Corporation. The lease agreement calls for Georgia-Atlantic to make semiannual lease payments of \$562,907 over a three-year lease term, payable each June 30 and December 31, with the first payment at June 30, 2018. Georgia-Atlantic's incremental borrowing rate is 10%, the same rate IC used to calculate lease payment amounts. IC purchased the warehouse from Builders, Inc. at a cost of \$3 million.

Required:

1. What amounts related to the lease would IC report in its balance sheet at December 31, 2018 (ignore taxes)?
2. What amounts related to the lease would IC report in its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018 (ignore taxes)?

E 15-5

Sales-type lease; lessor; balance sheet and income statement effects

• LO15-3

On June 30, 2018, Georgia-Atlantic, Inc. leased warehouse equipment from Builders, Inc. The lease agreement calls for Georgia-Atlantic to make semiannual lease payments of \$562,907 over a three-year lease term, payable each June 30 and December 31, with the first payment at June 30, 2018. Georgia-Atlantic's incremental borrowing rate is 10%, the same rate Builders used to calculate lease payment amounts. Builders manufactured the equipment at a cost of \$2.5 million.

Required:

1. Determine the price at which Builders is "selling" the equipment (present value of the lease payments) at June 30, 2018 (to the nearest \$000).
2. What amounts related to the lease would Builders report in its balance sheet at December 31, 2018 (ignore taxes)?
3. What amounts related to the lease would Builders report in its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018 (ignore taxes)?

E 15-6

Finance lease; lessee

• LO15-2

(Note: Exercises 6, 7, and 8 are three variations of the same basic situation.)

Manufacturers Southern leased high-tech electronic equipment from Edison Leasing on January 1, 2018. Edison purchased the equipment from International Machines at a cost of \$112,080.

Related Information:

Lease term	2 years (8 quarterly periods)
Quarterly rental payments	\$15,000 at the beginning of each period
Economic life of asset	2 years
Fair value of asset	\$112,080
Implicit interest rate	8%
(Also lessee's incremental borrowing rate)	

Required:

Prepare a lease amortization schedule and appropriate entries for Manufacturers Southern from the beginning of the lease through January 1, 2019. Depreciation is recorded at the end of each fiscal year (December 31) on a straight-line basis.

E 15-7

Sales-type lease with no selling profit; lessor

• LO15-2

Edison Leasing leased high-tech electronic equipment to Manufacturers Southern on January 1, 2018. Edison purchased the equipment from International Machines at a cost of \$112,080.

Related Information:

Lease term	2 years (8 quarterly periods)
Quarterly rental payments	\$15,000 at the beginning of each period
Economic life of asset	2 years
Fair value of asset	\$112,080
Implicit interest rate	8%
(Also lessee's incremental borrowing rate)	

Required:

Prepare a lease amortization schedule and appropriate entries for Edison Leasing from the beginning of the lease through January 1, 2019. Edison's fiscal year ends December 31.

E 15-8

Sales-type lease with selling profit; lessor; calculate lease payments

• LO15-3

Manufacturers Southern leased high-tech electronic equipment from International Machines on January 1, 2018. International Machines manufactured the equipment at a cost of \$85,000. Manufacturers Southern's fiscal year ends December 31.

Related Information:

Lease term	2 years (8 quarterly periods)
Quarterly rental payments	\$15,000 at the beginning of each period
Economic life of asset	2 years
Fair value of asset	\$112,080
Implicit interest rate	8%

Required:

1. Show how International Machines determined the \$15,000 quarterly lease payments.
2. Prepare appropriate entries for International Machines to record the lease at its beginning, January 1, 2018, and the second lease payment on April 1, 2018.

E 15-9

Lessor calculation of annual lease payments; lessee calculation of asset and liability

• LO15-2

Each of the three independent situations below describes a finance lease in which annual lease payments are payable at the beginning of each year. The lessee is aware of the lessor's implicit rate of return.

	Situation		
	1	2	3
Lease term (years)	10	20	4
Lessor's rate of return (known by lessee)	11%	9%	12%
Lessee's incremental borrowing rate	12%	10%	10%
Fair value of lease asset	\$600,000	\$980,000	\$185,000

Required:

For each situation, determine:

- a. The amount of the annual lease payments as calculated by the lessor.
- b. The amount the lessee would record as a right-of-use asset and a lease liability.

E 15-10

Lessor calculation of annual lease payments; lessee calculation of asset and liability

• LO15-2

(Note: This is a variation of E 15-9 modified to assume lease payments are at the end of each period.)

Each of the three independent situations below describes a finance lease in which annual lease payments are payable at the *end* of each year. The lessee is aware of the lessor's implicit rate of return.

	Situation		
	1	2	3
Lease term (years)	10	20	4
Lessor's rate of return	11%	9%	12%
Lessee's incremental borrowing rate	12%	10%	10%
Fair value of lease asset	\$600,000	\$980,000	\$185,000

Required:

For each situation, determine:

- a. The amount of the annual lease payments as calculated by the lessor.
- b. The amount the lessee would record as a right-of-use asset and a lease liability.

E 15-11

Lessee and lessor; sales-type lease with selling profit

• LO15-2, LO15-3

Eye Deal Optometry leased vision-testing equipment from Insight Machines on January 1, 2018. Insight Machines manufactured the equipment at a cost of \$200,000 and lists a cash selling price of \$250,177. Appropriate adjusting entries are made quarterly.

Related Information:

Lease term	5 years (20 quarterly periods)
Quarterly lease payments	\$15,000 at Jan. 1, 2018, and at Mar. 31, June 30, Sept. 30, and Dec. 31 thereafter
Economic life of asset	5 years
Interest rate charged by the lessor	8%

Required:

1. Prepare appropriate entries for Eye Deal to record the arrangement at its beginning, January 1, 2018, and on March 31, 2018.
2. Prepare appropriate entries for Insight Machines to record the arrangement at its beginning, January 1, 2018, and on March 31, 2018.

E 15-12

Lessee; finance lease; effect on financial statements

• LO15-2

(Note: Exercises 12, 13, 14, and 25 are variations of the same situation.)

At January 1, 2018, Café Med leased restaurant equipment from Crescent Corporation under a nine-year lease agreement. The lease agreement specifies annual payments of \$25,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 thereafter through 2025. The equipment was acquired recently by Crescent at a cost of \$180,000 (its fair value) and was expected to have a useful life of 12 years with no salvage value at the end of its life. (Because the lease term is only nine years, the asset does have an expected residual value at the end of the lease term of \$90,995.) Crescent seeks a 10% return on its lease investments. By this arrangement, the lease is deemed to be a finance lease.

Required:

1. What will be the effect of the lease on Café Med's earnings for the first year (ignore taxes)?
2. What will be the balances in the balance sheet accounts related to the lease at the end of the first year of Café Med (ignore taxes)?

E 15-13

Lessee; operating lease; effect on financial statements

● LO15-4

At January 1, 2018, Café Med leased restaurant equipment from Crescent Corporation under a nine-year lease agreement. The lease agreement specifies annual payments of \$25,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 thereafter through 2025. The equipment was acquired recently by Crescent at a cost of \$180,000 (its fair value) and was expected to have a useful life of 13 years with no salvage value at the end of its life. (Because the lease term is only nine years, the asset does have an expected residual value at the end of the lease term of \$90,995.) Crescent seeks a 10% return on its lease investments. By this arrangement, the lease is deemed to be an operating lease.

Required:

1. What will be the effect of the lease on Café Med's earnings for the first year (ignore taxes)?
2. What will be the balances in the balance sheet accounts related to the lease at the end of the first year for Café Med (ignore taxes)?

E 15-14

Lessor; operating lease; effect on financial statements

● LO15-4

At January 1, 2018, Café Med leased restaurant equipment from Crescent Corporation under a nine-year lease agreement. The lease agreement specifies annual payments of \$25,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 thereafter through 2025. The equipment was acquired recently by Crescent at a cost of \$180,000 (its fair value) and was expected to have a useful life of 13 years with no salvage value at the end of its life. (Because the lease term is only nine years, the asset does have an expected residual value at the end of the lease term of \$90,995.) Crescent seeks a 10% return on its lease investments. By this arrangement, the lease is deemed to be an operating lease.

Required:

1. What will be the effect of the lease on Crescent's (lessor's) earnings for the first year (ignore taxes)?
2. What will be the balances in the balance sheet accounts related to the lease at the end of the first year for Crescent (ignore taxes)?

E 15-15

Sales-type lease; lessor; income statement effects

● LO15-3

King Company leased equipment from Mann Industries. The lease agreement qualifies as a finance lease and requires annual lease payments of \$52,538 over a six-year lease term (also the asset's useful life), with the first payment at January 1, the beginning of the lease. The interest rate is 5%. The asset being leased cost Mann \$230,000 to produce.

Required:

1. Determine the price at which the lessor is "selling" the asset (present value of the lease payments).
2. What would be the amounts related to the lease that the lessor would report in its income statement for the year ended December 31 (ignore taxes)?

E 15-16

Lessee; operating lease

● LO15-4

Grichuk Power leased high-tech electronic equipment from Kolten Leasing on January 1, 2018. Kolten purchased the equipment from Wong Machines at a cost of \$250,000, its fair value.

Related Information:

Lease term	2 years (8 quarterly periods)
Quarterly lease payments	\$15,000 at Jan. 1, 2018, and at Mar. 31, June 30, Sept. 30, and Dec. 31 thereafter
Economic life of asset	5 years
Interest rate charged by the lessor	8%

Required:

Prepare appropriate entries for Grichuk Power from the beginning of the lease through December 31, 2018. December 31 is the fiscal year end for each company. Appropriate adjusting entries are recorded at the end of each quarter.

E 15-17

Lessee and lessor; operating lease

● LO15-4

On January 1, 2018, Nath-Langstrom Services, Inc. a computer software training firm, leased several computers under a two-year operating lease agreement from ComputerWorld Leasing, which routinely finances equipment for other firms at an annual interest rate of 4%. The contract calls for four rent payments of \$10,000 each, payable semiannually on June 30 and December 31 each year. The computers were acquired by ComputerWorld at a cost of \$90,000 and were expected to have a useful life of five years with no residual value. Both firms record amortization and depreciation semiannually.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate entries for both (a) the lessee and (b) the lessor from the beginning of the lease through the end of 2018.

E 15-18
Short-term lease
● LO15-5

Chance Enterprises leased equipment from Third Bank Leasing on January 1, 2018. Chance purchased the equipment at a cost of \$1,000,000. Chance elected the short-term lease option. Appropriate adjusting entries are made annually.

Related Information:

Lease term	1 year (4 quarterly periods)
Quarterly lease payments	\$40,000 at Jan. 1, 2018, and at Mar. 31, June 30, and Sept. 30
Economic life of asset	5 years
Interest rate charged by the lessor	8%

Required:

Prepare appropriate entries for Chance from the beginning of the lease through December 31, 2018.

E 15-19
Lessee; renewal option
● LO15-2, LO15-6

Natick Industries leased high-tech instruments from Framingham Leasing on January 1, 2018. Natick has the option to renew the lease at the end of two years for an additional three years. Natick is subject to a \$45,000 penalty after two years if it fails to renew the lease. Framingham Leasing purchased the equipment from Waltham Machines at a cost of \$250,177.

Related Information:

Lease term	3 years (12 quarterly periods)
Lease renewal option for an additional	2 years (8 quarterly periods)
Quarterly lease payments	\$15,000 at Jan. 1, 2018, and at Mar. 31, June 30, Sept. 30, and Dec. 31 thereafter
Economic life of asset	5 years
Interest rate charged by the lessor	8%

Required:

Prepare appropriate entries for Natick Industries from the beginning of the lease through March 31, 2018. Appropriate adjusting entries are made quarterly.

E 15-20
Variable lease payments
● LO15-2, LO15-6

On January 1, 2018, Wetick Optometrists leased diagnostic equipment from Southern Corp., which had purchased the equipment at a cost of \$1,437,237. The lease agreement specifies six annual payments of \$300,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 thereafter through 2022. The six-year lease term ending December 31, 2023 (a year after the final payment), is equal to the estimated useful life of the equipment. The contract specifies that lease payments for each year will increase on the basis of the increase in the Consumer Price Index for the year just ended. Thus, the first payment will be \$300,000, and the second and subsequent payments might be different. The CPI at the beginning of the lease is 120. Southern routinely acquires diagnostic equipment for lease to other firms. The interest rate in these financing arrangements is 10%.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entries for Wetick and Southern to record the lease at its beginning.
2. Assuming the CPI is 124 at that time, prepare the appropriate journal entries related to the lease for Wetick at December 31, 2018,.

E 15-21
Lessee; variable lease payments
● LO15-2, LO15-6

On January 1, 2018, QuickStream Communications leased telephone equipment from Digium, Inc. Digium's cash selling price for the equipment is \$1,306,578. The lease agreement specifies six annual payments of \$300,000 beginning December 31, 2018, and at each December 31 thereafter through 2023. The six-year lease is equal to the estimated useful life of the equipment. The contract specifies that lease payments for each year will increase by the higher of (a) the increase in the Consumer Price Index for the preceding year or (b) 3%. The CPI at the beginning of the lease is 120. Digium routinely leases equipment to other firms. The interest rate in these lease arrangements is 10%.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entries for QuickStream to record the lease at its beginning date of January 1, 2018.

E 15-22
Lessee; variable lease payments
● LO15-2, LO15-6

On January 1, 2018, Taco King leased retail space from Fogelman Properties. The 10-year finance lease requires quarterly variable lease payments equal to 3% of Taco King's sales revenue, with a quarterly sales minimum of \$400,000. Payments at the beginning of each quarter are based on previous quarter sales. During the previous 5-year period, Taco King has generated quarterly sales of over \$650,000. Fogelman's interest rate, known by Taco King, was 4%.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entries for Taco King at the beginning of the lease at January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries for Taco King at April 1, 2018. First quarter sales were \$660,000. Amortization is recorded quarterly.

E 15-23

Lessee; renewal options

● LO15-2, LO15-6

On January 1, 2018, Rick's Pawn Shop leased a truck from Corey Motors for a six-year period with an option to extend the lease for three years. Rick's had no significant economic incentive as of the beginning of the lease to exercise the 3-year extension option. Annual lease payments are \$10,000 due on December 31 of each year, calculated by the lessor using a 5% interest rate. The agreement is considered an operating lease.

Required:

1. Prepare Rick's journal entry to record for the right-of-use asset and lease liability at January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries to record interest and amortization at December 31, 2018.

E 15-24

Calculation of annual lease payments; residual value

● LO15-2, LO15-6

Each of the four independent situations below describes a finance lease in which annual lease payments are payable at the beginning of each year. The lessee is aware of the lessor's implicit rate of return.

	Situation			
	1	2	3	4
Lease term (years)	4	7	5	8
Lessor's rate of return	10%	11%	9%	12%
Fair value of lease asset	\$50,000	\$350,000	\$75,000	\$465,000
Lessor's cost of lease asset	\$50,000	\$350,000	\$45,000	\$465,000
Residual value:				
Estimated fair value	0	\$ 50,000	\$ 7,000	\$ 45,000
Guaranteed fair value	0	0	\$ 7,000	\$ 50,000

Required:

For each situation, determine:

- a. The amount of the annual lease payments as calculated by the lessor.
- b. The amount the lessee would record as a right-of-use asset and a lease liability.

E 15-25

Lessor; sales-type lease; residual value effect on financial statements

● LO15-2, LO15-6

At January 1, 2018, Café Med leased restaurant equipment from Crescent Corporation under a nine-year lease agreement. The lease agreement specifies annual payments of \$25,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 thereafter through 2025. The equipment was acquired recently by Crescent at a cost of \$180,000 (its fair value) and was expected to have a useful life of 12 years with no salvage value at the end of its life. (Because the lease term is only 9 years, the asset does have an expected residual value at the end of the lease term of \$50,995.). Both (a) the present value of the lease payments and (b) the present value of the residual value (i.e., the residual asset) are included in the lease receivable because the two amounts combine to allow the lessor to recover its net investment. Crescent seeks a 10% return on its lease investments. By this arrangement, the lease is deemed to be a finance lease.

Required:

1. What will be the effect of the lease on Crescent's earnings for the first year (ignore taxes)?
2. What will be the balances in the balance sheet accounts related to the lease at the end of the first year for Crescent (ignore taxes)?

E 15-26

Lease concepts; finance/sales-type leases; guaranteed and unguaranteed residual value

● LO15-2, LO15-6

Each of the four independent situations below describes a sales-type lease in which annual lease payments of \$100,000 are payable at the beginning of each year. Each is a finance lease for the lessee. Determine the following amounts at the beginning of the lease:

- A. The lessor's:
 1. Lease payments
 2. Gross investment in the lease
 3. Net investment in the lease
- B. The lessee's:
 4. Lease payments
 5. Right-of-use asset
 6. Lease liability

	Situation			
	1	2	3	4
Lease term (years)	7	7	8	8
Lessor's and lessee's interest rate	9%	11%	10%	12%
Residual value:				
Estimated fair value	0	\$50,000	\$8,000	\$50,000
Guaranteed by lessee	0	0	\$8,000	\$60,000

E 15-27

Lessee; lessee
guaranteed
residual value

• LO15-2, LO15-6

On January 1, 2018, Maywood Hydraulics leased drilling equipment from Aqua Leasing for a four-year period ending December 31, 2021, at which time possession of the leased asset will revert back to Aqua. The equipment cost Aqua \$412,184 and has an expected economic life of five years. Aqua expects the residual value at December 31, 2021, to be \$50,000. Negotiations led to Maywood guaranteeing a \$70,000 residual value.

Equal payments under the lease are \$100,000 and are due on December 31 of each year with the first payment being made on December 31, 2018. Maywood is aware that Aqua used a 5% interest rate when calculating lease payments.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entry for Maywood on January 1, 2018, to record the lease.
2. Prepare all appropriate entries for Maywood on December 31, 2018, related to the lease.

E 15-28

Calculation of
annual lease
payments;
purchase option

• LO15-2, LO15-6

For each of the three independent situations below determine the amount of the annual lease payments. Each describes a finance lease in which annual lease payments are payable at the beginning of each year. Each lease agreement contains an option that permits the lessee to acquire the leased asset at an option price that is sufficiently lower than the expected fair value that the exercise of the option appears reasonably certain.

	Situation		
	1	2	3
Lease term (years)	5	5	4
Lessor's rate of return	12%	11%	9%
Fair value of leased asset	\$60,000	\$420,000	\$185,000
Lessor's cost of leased asset	\$50,000	\$420,000	\$145,000
Purchase option:			
Exercise price	\$10,000	\$ 50,000	\$ 22,000
Exercisable at end of year:	5	5	3
Reasonably certain?	yes	no	yes

E 15-29

Finance lease;
purchase options;
lessee

• LO15-2, LO15-6

Federated Fabrications leased a tooling machine on January 1, 2018, for a three-year period ending December 31, 2020. The lease agreement specified annual payments of \$36,000 beginning with the first payment at the beginning of the lease, and each December 31 through 2019. The company had the option to purchase the machine on December 30, 2020, for \$45,000 when its fair value was expected to be \$60,000, a sufficient difference that exercise seems reasonably certain. The machine's estimated useful life was six years with no salvage value. Federated was aware that the lessor's implicit rate of return was 12%.

Required:

1. Calculate the amount Federated should record as a right-of-use asset and lease liability for this finance lease.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule that describes the pattern of interest expense for Federated over the lease term.
3. Prepare the appropriate entries for Federated from the beginning of the lease through the end of the lease term.

E 15-30

Purchase option;
lessor; sales-type
lease; no selling
profit

• LO15-2, LO15-6

Universal Leasing leases electronic equipment to a variety of businesses. The company's primary service is providing alternate financing by acquiring equipment and leasing it to customers under long-term sales-type leases. Universal earns interest under these arrangements at a 10% annual rate.

The company leased an electronic typesetting machine it purchased for \$30,900 to a local publisher, Desktop Inc. on December 31, 2017. The lease contract specified annual payments of \$8,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and each December 31 through 2019 (three-year lease term). The publisher had the option to purchase the machine on December 30, 2020, the end of the lease term, for \$12,000 when it was expected to have a residual value of \$16,000, a sufficient difference that exercise seems reasonably certain.

Required:

1. Show how Universal calculated the \$8,000 annual lease payments for this sales-type lease.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule that describes the pattern of interest revenue for Universal Leasing over the lease term.
3. Prepare the appropriate entries for Universal Leasing from the beginning of the lease through the end of the lease term.

E 15-31

Nonlease
payments; lessor
and lessee

• LO15-2, LO15-7

On January 1, 2018, NRC Credit Corporation leased equipment to Brand Services under a finance/sales-type lease designed to earn NRC a 12% rate of return for providing long-term financing. The lease agreement specified:

- a. Ten annual payments of \$55,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease and each December 31 thereafter through 2026.
- b. The estimated useful life of the leased equipment is 10 years with no residual value. Its cost to NRC was \$316,412.

- c. The lease qualifies as a finance lease/sales-type lease.
- d. A 10-year service agreement with Quality Maintenance Company was negotiated to provide maintenance of the equipment as required. Payments of \$5,000 per year are specified, beginning January 1, 2018. NRC was to pay this cost as incurred, but lease payments reflect this expenditure.
- e. A partial amortization schedule, appropriate for both the lessee and lessor, follows:

	Payments	Effective Interest	Decrease in Balance	Outstanding Balance
		(12% × Outstanding balance)		
				316,412
1/1/2018	50,000		50,000	266,412
12/31/2018	50,000	0.12 (266,412) = 31,969	18,031	248,381
12/31/2019	50,000	0.12 (248,381) = 29,806	20,194	228,187

Required:

Prepare the appropriate entries for both the lessee and lessor related to the lease on:

1. January 1, 2018
2. December 31, 2018

E 15-32

Lessor's initial direct costs; sales-type lease

• LO15-2, LO15-7

Terms of a lease agreement and related facts were:

- a. Incremental costs of commissions for brokering the lease and consummating the completed lease transaction incurred by the lessor were \$4,242.
- b. The retail cash selling price of the leased asset was \$500,000. Its useful life was three years with no residual value.
- c. The lease term is three years and the lessor paid \$500,000 to acquire the asset.
- d. Annual lease payments at the beginning of each year were \$184,330.
- e. Lessor's implicit rate when calculating annual rental payments was 11%.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for the lessor to record the lease and related payments at its beginning, January 1, 2018.
2. Calculate the effective rate of interest revenue after adjusting the net investment by initial direct costs.
3. Record any entry(s) necessary at December 31, 2018, the fiscal year-end.

E 15-33

Lessor's initial direct costs; sales-type lease

• LO15-3, LO15-7

The lease agreement and related facts indicate the following:

- a. Leased equipment had a retail cash selling price of \$300,000. Its useful life was five years with no residual value.
- b. The lease term is five years and the lessor paid \$265,000 to acquire the equipment (thus, selling profit).
- c. Lessor's implicit rate when calculating annual lease payments was 8%.
- d. Annual lease payments beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, were \$69,571.
- e. Incremental costs of commissions for brokering the lease and consummating the completed lease transaction incurred by the lessor were \$7,500.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate entries for the lessor to record:

1. The lease and the initial payment at its commencement.
2. Any entry(s) necessary at December 31, 2018, the fiscal year-end.

E 15-34

Lessor's initial direct costs; operating lease

• LO15-4, LO15-7

The following relate to an operating lease agreement:

- a. The lease term is 3 years, beginning January 1, 2018.
- b. The leased asset cost the lessor \$800,000 and had a useful life of eight years with no residual value. The lessor uses straight-line depreciation for its depreciable assets.
- c. Annual lease payments at the beginning of each year were \$137,000.
- d. Incremental costs of negotiating and consummating the completed lease transaction incurred by the lessor were \$2,400.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate entries for the lessor from the beginning of the lease through the end of the lease term.

E 15-35

Concepts;
terminology

- LO15-2 through LO15-8

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with leases. Pair each item from List A with the item from List B (by letter) that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. Effective rate times balance	a. PV of purchase option exercise price
_____ 2. Revenue recognition issues	b. Lessor's net investment
_____ 3. Lease payments plus residual value	c. Lessor's gross investment
_____ 4. Periodic lease payments plus excess lessee-guaranteed residual value	d. Operating lease
_____ 5. PV of lease payments plus PV of residual value	e. Depreciable assets
_____ 6. Initial direct costs	f. Component of lease payments
_____ 7. Rent revenue	g. Nonlease payments
_____ 8. Purchase option	h. Depreciation longer than lease term
_____ 9. Leasehold improvements	i. Disclosure only
_____ 10. Cash expected to satisfy residual value guarantee	j. Interest expense
_____ 11. Finance lease expense	k. Control passed to lessee
_____ 12. Deducted in lessor's computation of lease payments	l. Lessee's lease payments
_____ 13. Title transfers to lessee	m. Might shorten lease term
_____ 14. Contingent rentals	n. Sales-type lease selling expense

E 15-36

FASB codification
research;
reassessment of
lease terms

- LO15-8



The lease term is the noncancelable period for which a lessee has the right to use an underlying asset, modified by any renewal or termination options that are “reasonably certain” to be exercised, or not exercised. Options whose exercise is under the control of the lessor are automatically included. The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*[®] represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on when the lessee should reassess the term of the lease. Use your institution's Academic Accounting Access to the FASB's Codification Research System (www.fasb.org) or through your school library's subscription to a research database that includes the Codification. What is the specific citation that describes the guidelines for determining when the lessee should reassess the term of the lease?
2. List the disclosure requirements.

E 15-37

FASB codification
research

- LO15-8



Access the FASB's Codification Research System at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

1. Definition of initial direct costs.
2. When a modification to a contract is reported as a separate contract (that is, separate from the original contract).
3. The disclosures required in the notes to the financial statements for a lessor.
4. The classification criteria for when a lessee classifies a lease as a finance lease and a lessor classifies a lease as a sales-type lease.

E 15-38

Sale-leaseback
Appendix 15

To raise operating funds, Signal Aviation sold an airplane on January 1, 2018, to a finance company for \$770,000. Signal immediately leased the plane back for a 13-year period, at which time ownership of the airplane will transfer to Signal. The airplane has a fair value of \$800,000. Its cost and its book value were \$600,000. Its useful life is estimated to be 15 years. The lease requires Signal to make payments of \$102,771 to the finance company each January 1. Signal depreciates assets on a straight-line basis. The lease has an implicit rate of 11%.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate entries for Signal on:

1. January 1, 2018, to record the transaction
2. December 31, 2018, to record necessary adjustments

E 15–39

Sale-leaseback;
operating lease
Appendix 15

To raise operating funds, National Distribution Center sold its office building to an insurance company on January 1, 2018, for \$800,000 and immediately leased the building back. The operating lease is for the final 12 years of the building's estimated 20-year remaining useful life. The building has a fair value of \$800,000 and a book value of \$650,000 (its original cost was \$1 million). The rental payments of \$100,000 are payable to the insurance company each December 31. The lease has an implicit rate of 9%.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate entries for National Distribution Center on:

1. January 1, 2018, to record the sale-leaseback
2. December 31, 2018, to record necessary adjustments

Problems

**P 15–1**

Integrating
problem; bonds;
note; lease

• LO15–2



You are the new controller for Moonlight Bay Resorts. The company CFO has asked you to determine the company's interest expense for the year ended December 31, 2018. Your accounting group provided you the following information on the company's debt:

1. On July 1, 2018, Moonlight Bay issued bonds with a face amount of \$2,000,000. The bonds mature in 20 years and interest of 9% is payable semiannually on June 30 and December 31. The bonds were issued at a price to yield investors 10%. Moonlight Bay records interest at the effective rate.
2. At December 31, 2017, Moonlight Bay had a 10% installment note payable to Third Mercantile Bank with a balance of \$500,000. The annual payment is \$60,000, payable each June 30.
3. On January 1, 2018, Moonlight Bay leased a building under a finance lease calling for four annual lease payments of \$40,000 beginning January 1, 2018. Moonlight Bay's incremental borrowing rate on the date of the lease was 11% and the lessor's implicit rate, which was known by Moonlight Bay, was 10%.

Required:

Calculate interest expense for the year ended December 31, 2018.

P 15–2

Finance lease

• LO15–2

At the beginning of 2018, VHF Industries acquired a machine with a fair value of \$6,074,700 by signing a four-year lease. The lease is payable in four annual payments of \$2 million at the end of each year.

Required:

1. What is the effective rate of interest implicit in the agreement?
2. Prepare the lessee's journal entry at the beginning of the lease.
3. Prepare the journal entry to record the first lease payment at December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare the journal entry to record the second lease payment at December 31, 2019.
5. Suppose the fair value of the machine and the lessor's implicit rate were unknown at the time of the lease, but that the lessee's incremental borrowing rate of interest for notes of similar risk was 11%. Prepare the lessee's entry at the beginning of the lease.

(Note: You may wish to compare your solution to Problem 15–2 with that of Problem 14–12, which deals with a parallel situation in which the machine was acquired with an installment note.)

P 15–3

Lease
amortization
schedule

• LO15–2

On January 1, 2018, Majestic Mantles leased a lathe from Equipment Leasing under a finance lease. Lease payments are made annually. Title does not transfer to the lessee and there is no purchase option or guarantee of a residual value by Majestic. Portions of the Equipment Leasing's lease amortization schedule appear below:

Jan. 1	Payments	Effective Interest	Decrease in Balance	Outstanding Balance
				187,298
2018	20,000		20,000	167,298
2018	20,000	16,730	3,270	164,028
2019	20,000	16,403	3,597	160,431
2020	20,000	16,043	3,957	156,474
2021	20,000	15,647	4,353	152,122
2022	20,000	15,212	4,788	147,334
2023	20,000	14,733	5,267	142,067

—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
2035	20,000	4,974	15,026	34,711
2036	20,000	3,471	16,529	18,182
2037	20,000	1,818	18,182	0

Required:

1. What is Majestic's lease liability at the beginning of the lease (after the first payment)?
2. What amount would Majestic record as a right-of-use asset?
3. What is the lease term in years?
4. What is the effective annual interest rate?
5. What is the total amount of lease payments?
6. What is the total effective interest expense recorded over the term of the lease?

P 15-4

Finance/sales-type lease; lessee and lessor

- LO15-1, LO15-2, LO15-3

Rand Medical manufactures lithotripters. Lithotripsy uses shock waves instead of surgery to eliminate kidney stones. Physicians' Leasing purchased a lithotripter from Rand for \$2,000,000 and leased it to Mid-South Urologists Group, Inc. on January 1, 2018.

Lease Description:

Quarterly lease payments	\$130,516—beginning of each period
Lease term	5 years (20 quarters)
No residual value; no purchase option	
Economic life of lithotripter	5 years
Implicit interest rate and lessee's incremental borrowing rate	12%
Fair value of asset	\$2,000,000

1. How should this lease be classified by Mid-South Urologists Group and by Physicians' Leasing?
2. Prepare appropriate entries for both Mid-South Urologists Group and Physicians' Leasing from the beginning of the lease through the second rental payment on April 1, 2018. Adjusting entries are recorded at the end of each fiscal year (December 31).
3. Assume Mid-South Urologists Group leased the lithotripter directly from the manufacturer, Rand Medical, which produced the machine at a cost of \$1.7 million. Prepare appropriate entries for Rand Medical from the beginning of the lease through the second lease payment on April 1, 2018.

P 15-5

Lessee; operating lease; advance payment; leasehold improvement

- LO15-4

On January 1, 2018, Winn Heat Transfer leased office space under a three-year operating lease agreement. The arrangement specified three annual rent payments of \$80,000 each, beginning December 31, 2018, and at each December 31 through 2020. The lessor, HVAC Leasing calculates lease payments based on an annual interest rate of 5%. Winn also paid a \$100,000 advance payment at the beginning of the lease in addition to the first \$80,000 rent payment. With permission of the owner, Winn made structural modifications to the building before occupying the space at a cost of \$180,000. The useful life of the building and the structural modifications were estimated to be 30 years with no residual value.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate entries for Winn Heat Transfer from the beginning of the lease through the end of 2020. Winn's fiscal year is the calendar year.

P 15-6

Operating lease; scheduled rent increases

- LO15-4

On January 1, 2018, Sweetwater Furniture Company leased office space under a 21-year operating lease agreement. The contract calls for annual rent payments on December 31 of each year. The payments are \$10,000 the first year and increase by \$500 per year. Benefits expected from using the office space are expected to remain constant over the lease term.

Required:

Record Sweetwater's rent payment at December 31, 2022 (the fifth rent payment) and December 31, 2032 (the fifteenth rent payment).

**P 15-7**

Lease amortization schedule

- LO15-2, LO15-6

On January 1, 2018, National Insulation Corporation (NIC) leased equipment from United Leasing under a finance lease. Lease payments are made annually. Title does not transfer to the lessee and there is no purchase option or guarantee of a residual value by NIC. Portions of the United Leasing's lease amortization schedule appear below:

Jan. 1	Payments	Effective Interest	Decrease in Balance	Outstanding Balance
2018				192,501
2018	20,000		20,000	172,501
2019	20,000	17,250	2,750	169,751
2020	20,000	16,975	3,025	166,726
2021	20,000	16,673	3,327	163,399
2022	20,000	16,340	3,660	159,739
2023	20,000	15,974	4,026	155,713
—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
2035	20,000	7,364	12,636	61,006
2036	20,000	6,101	13,899	47,107
2037	20,000	4,711	15,289	31,818
2038	35,000	3,182	31,818	0

Required:

1. What is the lease term in years?
2. What is the asset's residual value expected at the end of the lease term?
3. What is the effective annual interest rate?
4. What is the total amount of lease payments for United?
5. What is the total amount of lease payments for NIC?
6. What is United's net investment at the beginning of the lease (after the first payment)?
7. What is United's total effective interest revenue recorded over the term of the lease?
8. What amount would NIC record as a right-of-use asset at the beginning of the lease?

P 15-8

Reassessment of lease term

- LO15-2, LO15-4, LO15-6

On January 1, 2018, Rick's Pawn Shop leased a truck from Corey Motors for a six-year period with an option to extend the lease for three years. Rick's had no significant economic incentive as of the beginning of the lease to exercise the 3-year extension option. Annual lease payments are \$10,000 due on December 31 of each year, calculated by the lessor using a 5% discount rate. Assume that at the beginning of the third year, January 1, 2020, Rick's had made significant improvements to the truck whose cost could be recovered only if it exercises the extension option, creating an expectation that extension of the lease was "reasonably certain." The relevant interest rate at that time was 6%.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry, if any, at the end of the second year for the lessee to account for the reassessment.
2. Prepare the journal entry, if any, at the end of the second year for the lessor to account for the reassessment.

P 15-9

Lease concepts; sales-type leases; guaranteed and unguaranteed residual value

- LO15-2, LO15-6

Each of the four independent situations below describes a sales-type lease in which annual lease payments of \$10,000 are payable at the beginning of each year. Each is a finance lease for the lessee. Determine the following amounts at the beginning of the lease.

A. The lessor's:

1. Lease payments
2. Gross investment in the lease
3. Net investment in the lease

B. The lessee's:

4. Lease payments
5. Right-of-use asset
6. Lease liability

	Situation			
	1	2	3	4
Lease term (years)	4	4	4	4
Asset's useful life (years)	4	5	5	7
Lessor's implicit rate (known by lessee)	11%	11%	11%	11%
Residual value:				
Guaranteed by lessee	0	\$4,000	\$2,000	0
Unguaranteed	0	0	\$2,000	\$4,000
Purchase option:				
After (years)	none	3	4	3
Exercise price	n/a	\$7,000	\$1,000	\$3,000
Reasonably certain?	n/a	no	no	yes

P 15-10

Sales-type lease;
purchase option
reasonably
certain to be
exercised before
lease term ends;
lessor and lessee

● LO15-3, LO15-6



Mid-South Auto Leasing leases vehicles to consumers. The attraction to customers is that the company can offer competitive prices due to volume buying and requires an interest rate implicit in the lease that is one percent below alternate methods of financing. On September 30, 2018, the company leased a delivery truck to a local florist, Anything Grows.

The lease agreement specified quarterly payments of \$3,000 beginning September 30, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and each quarter (December 31, March 31, and June 30) through June 30, 2021 (three-year lease term). The florist had the option to purchase the truck on September 29, 2020, for \$6,000 when it was expected to have a residual value of \$10,000. The estimated useful life of the truck is four years. Mid-South Auto Leasing's quarterly interest rate for determining payments was 3% (approximately 12% annually). Mid-South paid \$25,000 for the truck. Both companies use straight-line depreciation or amortization. Anything Grows' incremental interest rate is 12%.

Hint: A lease term ends for accounting purposes when an option becomes exercisable if it's expected to be exercised (i.e., a BPO).

Required:

1. Calculate the amount of selling profit that Mid-South would recognize in this sales-type lease. (Be careful to note that, although payments occur on the last calendar day of each quarter, since the first payment was at the beginning of the lease, payments represent an annuity due.)
2. Prepare the appropriate entries for Anything Grows and Mid-South on September 30, 2018.
3. Prepare an amortization schedule(s) describing the pattern of interest expense for Anything Grows and interest revenue for Mid-South Auto Leasing over the lease term.
4. Prepare the appropriate entries for Anything Grows and Mid-South Auto Leasing on December 31, 2018.
5. Prepare the appropriate entries for Anything Grows and Mid-South on September 29, 2020, assuming the purchase option was exercised on that date.

P 15-11

Change in lease
term; operating
lease; lessor

● LO15-4, LO15-6

Universal Leasing leases electronic equipment to a variety of businesses. The company's primary service is providing alternate financing by acquiring equipment and leasing it to customers under long-term leases. Universal earns interest under these arrangements at a 10% annual rate.

Universal purchased an electronic typesetting machine on December 31, 2017, for \$90,000 and then leased it to Desktop, Inc. a local publisher. The six-year operating lease term commenced January 1, 2018, and the lease contract specified annual payments of \$8,000 beginning December 31, 2018, and on each December 31 through 2023. The machine's estimated useful life is 15 years with no estimated residual value.

The publisher had the option to terminate the lease after four years. At the beginning of the lease, there was no reason to believe the lease would be terminated.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for Universal Leasing from the beginning of the lease through the end of 2018.
2. At the beginning of 2019, there was a significant indication that Desktop's economic incentive to terminate the lease had changed causing both companies to believe termination of the lease at the end of four years (three years remaining) is "reasonably certain." Prepare any appropriate entries for Universal Leasing at January 1, 2019, to reflect the change in the lease term.
3. Prepare the appropriate entries pertaining to the lease for Universal Leasing at December 31, 2019.

P 15-12

Lessee; renewal
option

● LO15-2, LO15-6



High Time Tours leased rock-climbing equipment from Adventures Leasing on January 1, 2018. High Time has the option to renew the lease at the end of two years for an additional three years for \$8,000 per quarter. Adventures purchased the equipment at a cost of \$198,375.

Related Information:

Lease term	2 years (8 quarterly periods)
Lease renewal option for an additional	3 years at \$8,000 per quarter
Quarterly lease payments	\$15,000 at Jan. 1, 2018, and at Mar. 31, June 30, Sept. 30, and Dec. 31 thereafter
Economic life of asset	5 years
Interest rate charged by the lessor	8%

P 15-13

Lessee and
lessor; lessee
guaranteed
residual value

● LO15-2, LO15-6

**Required:**

1. Prepare appropriate entries for High Time Tours from the beginning of the lease through March 31, 2018. Appropriate adjusting entries are made quarterly.
2. Prepare an amortization schedule for the term of the lease.

On January 1, 2018, Allied Industries leased a high-performance conveyor to Karrier Company for a four-year period ending December 31, 2021, at which time possession of the leased asset will revert back to Allied. The equipment cost Allied \$956,000 and has an expected useful life of five years. Allied expects the residual value at December 31, 2022, will be \$300,000. Negotiations led to the lessee guaranteeing a \$340,000 residual value.

Equal payments under the finance/sales-type lease are \$200,000 and are due on December 31 of each year with the first payment being made on December 31, 2018. Karrier is aware that Allied used a 5% interest rate when calculating lease payments.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for both Karrier and Allied on January 1, 2018, to record the lease.
2. Prepare all appropriate entries for both Karrier and Allied on December 31, 2018, related to the lease.

P 15-14

Lessee and lessor; lessor; sales-type lease with selling profit; residual value

● LO15-2, LO15-3

Newton Labs leased chronometers from Brookline Instruments on January 1, 2018. Brookline Instruments manufactured the chronometers at a cost of \$200,000. The chronometers have a fair value of \$260,000. Appropriate adjusting entries are made quarterly.

Related Information:

Lease term	5 years (20 quarterly periods)
Quarterly lease payments	\$14,547 at Jan. 1, 2018, and at Mar. 31, June 30, Sept. 30, and Dec. 31 thereafter
Economic life of asset	6 years
Estimated residual value of chronometers at end of lease term	\$11,228
Interest rate charged by the lessor	8%

Required:

1. Prepare appropriate entries for Newton Labs to record the arrangement at its commencement, January 1, 2018, and on March 31, 2018.
2. Prepare appropriate entries for Brookline Instruments to record the arrangement at its commencement, January 1, 2018, and on March 31, 2018.

P 15-15

Nonlease payments; lessor and lessee

● LO15-2, LO15-7

On January 1, 2018, Lesco Leasing leased equipment to Quality Services under a finance/sales-type lease designed to earn NRC a 12% rate of return for providing long-term financing. The lease agreement specified:

- a. Ten annual payments of \$56,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease and each December 31 thereafter through 2026.
- b. The estimated useful life of the leased equipment is 10 years with no residual value. Its cost to Lesco was \$322,741.
- c. The lease qualifies as a finance lease/sales-type lease.
- d. A 10-year service agreement with Quality Maintenance Company was negotiated to provide maintenance of the equipment as required. Payments of \$5,000 per year are specified, beginning January 1, 2018. Lesco was to pay this cost as incurred, but lease payments reflect this expenditure. Also included in the \$56,000 payments is an insurance premium of \$4,000 providing coverage for the equipment.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for both the lessee and lessor related to the lease on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the appropriate entries for both the lessee and lessor related to the lease on December 31, 2018.

P 15-16

Lessor's initial direct costs; operating and sales-type leases

● LO15-2, LO15-3, LO15-4, LO15-7

Terms of a lease agreement and related facts were:

- a. The lease asset had a retail cash selling price of \$100,000. Its useful life was six years with no residual value (straight-line depreciation).
- b. Annual lease payments at the beginning of each year were \$20,873, beginning January 1.
- c. Lessor's implicit rate when calculating annual rental payments was 10%.
- d. Costs of \$2,062 for legal fees for the lease execution were the responsibility of the lessor.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate entries for the lessor to record the lease, the initial payment at its beginning, and at the December 31 fiscal year-end under each of the following three independent assumptions:

1. The lease term is three years and the lessor paid \$100,000 to acquire the asset (operating lease).

- The lease term is six years and the lessor paid \$100,000 to acquire the asset. Also assume that adjusting the lease receivable (net investment) by initial direct costs reduces the effective rate of interest to 9%.
- The lease term is six years and the lessor paid \$85,000 to acquire the asset.

P 15-17

Nonlease costs;
lessor and lessee

● LO15-2, LO15-7

Branif Leasing leases mechanical equipment to industrial consumers under sales-type leases that earn Branif a 10% rate of return for providing long-term financing. A lease agreement with Branson Construction specified 20 annual payments beginning December 31, 2018, the beginning of the lease. The estimated useful life of the leased equipment is 20 years with no residual value. Its cost to Branif was \$936,492. The lease qualifies as a finance lease to Branson. Maintenance of the equipment was contracted for through a 20-year service agreement with Midway Service Company requiring 20 annual payments of \$3,000 beginning December 31, 2018. Progressive Insurance Company charges Branif \$3,000 annually for hazard insurance coverage on the equipment. Both companies use straight-line depreciation or amortization.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate entries for both the lessee and lessor to record the second lease payment and depreciation on December 31, 2019, under each of three independent assumptions:

- The lessee pays maintenance costs as incurred. The lessor pays insurance premiums as incurred. The lease agreement requires annual payments of \$100,000.
- The contract specifies that the lessor pays maintenance costs as incurred. The lessee's lease payments were increased to \$103,000 to include an amount sufficient to reimburse these costs.
- The lessee's lease payments of \$103,000 included \$3,000 for hazard insurance on the equipment rather than maintenance.

P 15-18

Lessee-
guaranteed
residual value;
unguaranteed
residual value;
nonlease costs;
different interest
rates for lessor
and lessee

● LO15-3, LO15-6,
LO15-7

On December 31, 2018, Yard Art Landscaping leased a delivery truck from Branch Motors. Branch paid \$40,000 for the truck. Its retail value is \$45,114.

The lease agreement specified annual payments of \$11,000 beginning December 31, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 through 2021. Branch Motors' interest rate for determining payments was 10%. At the end of the four-year lease term (December 31, 2022) the truck was expected to be worth \$15,000. The estimated useful life of the truck is five years with no salvage value. Both companies use straight-line amortization or depreciation.

Yard Art guaranteed a residual value of \$6,000. Yard Art's incremental borrowing rate is 9% and is unaware of Branch's implicit rate.

A \$1,000 per year maintenance agreement was arranged for the truck with an outside service firm. As an expedient, Branch Motors agreed to pay this fee. It is, however, reflected in the \$11,000 lease payments.

Required:

- How should this lease be classified by Yard Art Landscaping (the lessee)? Why?
- Calculate the amount Yard Art Landscaping would record as a right-of-use asset and a lease liability.
- How should this lease be classified by Branch Motors (the lessor)? Why?
- Show how Branch Motors calculated the \$11,000 annual lease payments.
- Calculate the amount Branch Motors would record as sales revenue.
- Prepare the appropriate entries for both Yard Art and Branch Motors on December 31, 2018.
- Prepare an amortization schedule that describes the pattern of interest expense over the lease term for Yard Art.
- Prepare an amortization schedule that describes the pattern of interest revenue over the lease term for Branch Motors.
- Prepare the appropriate entries for both Yard Art and Branch Motors on December 31, 2019.
- Prepare the appropriate entries for both Yard Art and Branch Motors on December 31, 2021 (the final lease payment).
- Prepare the appropriate entries for both Yard Art and Branch Motors on December 31, 2022 (the end of the lease term), assuming the truck is returned to the lessor and the actual residual value of the truck was \$4,000 on that date.

**P 15-19**

Initial direct costs;
sales-type lease

● LO15-2, LO15-7

Bidwell Leasing purchased a single-engine plane for its fair value of \$645,526 and leased it to Red Baron Flying Club on January 1, 2018.

Terms of the lease agreement and related facts were:



- a. Eight annual payments of \$110,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 through 2024. Bidwell Leasing's implicit interest rate was 10%. The estimated useful life of the plane is eight years. Payments were calculated as follows:

Amount to be recovered (fair value)	\$645,526
Lease payments at the beginning of each of the next eight years: $(\$645,526 \div 5.86842^*)$	<u>\$110,000</u>

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 8$, $i = 10\%$.

- b. Red Baron's incremental borrowing rate is 11%.
c. Incremental costs of negotiating and consummating the completed lease transaction incurred by Bidwell Leasing were \$18,099.

Required:

- How should this lease be classified (a) by Bidwell Leasing (the lessor) and (b) by Red Baron (the lessee)?
- Prepare the appropriate entries for both Red Baron Flying Club and Bidwell Leasing on January 1, 2018.
- Prepare an amortization schedule that describes the pattern of interest expense over the lease term for Red Baron Flying Club.
- Determine the effective rate of interest for Bidwell Leasing for the purpose of recognizing interest revenue over the lease term.
- Prepare an amortization schedule that describes the pattern of interest revenue over the lease term for Bidwell Leasing.
- Prepare the appropriate entries for both Red Baron and Bidwell Leasing on December 31, 2018 (the second lease payment). Both companies use straight-line depreciation.
- Prepare the appropriate entries for both Red Baron and Bidwell Leasing on December 31, 2024 (the final lease payment).

P 15-20

Initial direct costs;
sales-type lease
with a selling
profit

• LO15-3, LO15-7

(Note: This problem is a variation of the preceding problem, modified to cause the lease to be a sales-type lease with a selling profit.)

Bidwell Leasing purchased a single-engine plane for \$400,000 and leased it to Red Baron Flying Club for its fair value of \$645,526 on January 1, 2018.

Terms of the lease agreement and related facts were:

- a. Eight annual payments of \$110,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 through 2024. Bidwell Leasing's implicit interest rate was 10%. The estimated useful life of the plane is eight years. Payments were calculated as follows:

Amount to be recovered (fair value)	\$645,526
Lease payments at the beginning of each of the next eight years: $(\$645,526 \div 5.86842^*)$	<u>\$110,000</u>

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 8$, $i = 10\%$.

- b. Red Baron's incremental borrowing rate is 11%.
c. Incremental costs of consummating the completed lease transaction incurred by Bidwell Leasing were \$18,099.

Required:

- How should this lease be classified (a) by Bidwell Leasing (the lessor) and (b) by Red Baron (the lessee)?
- Prepare the appropriate entries for both Red Baron Flying Club and Bidwell Leasing on January 1, 2018.
- Prepare an amortization schedule that describes the pattern of interest expense over the lease term for Red Baron Flying Club.
- Prepare the appropriate entries for both Red Baron and Bidwell Leasing on December 31, 2018 (the second lease payment). Both companies use straight-line depreciation.
- Prepare the appropriate entries for both Red Baron and Bidwell Leasing on December 31, 2024 (the final lease payment).

P 15-21

Guaranteed
residual value;
sales-type lease

• LO15-2, LO15-5,
LO15-6

(Note: Problems 21, 22, and 23 are three variations of the same basic situation.)

On December 31, 2018, Rhone-Metro Industries leased equipment to Western Soya Co. for a four-year period ending December 31, 2022, at which time possession of the leased asset will revert back to Rhone-Metro. The equipment cost Rhone-Metro \$365,760 and has an expected useful life of six years. Its normal sales price is \$365,760. The lessee-guaranteed residual value at December 31, 2022, is \$25,000. Equal payments under the lease are \$100,000 and are due on December 31 of each year. The first payment was made on December 31, 2018.



Western Soya's incremental borrowing rate is 12%. Western Soya knows the interest rate implicit in the lease payments is 10%. Both companies use straight-line depreciation.

Required:

1. Show how Rhone-Metro calculated the \$100,000 annual lease payments.
2. How should this lease be classified (a) by Western Soya Co. (the lessee) and (b) by Rhone-Metro Industries (the lessor)? Why?
3. Prepare the appropriate entries for both Western Soya Co. and Rhone-Metro on December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare an amortization schedule(s) describing the pattern of interest over the lease term for the lessee and the lessor.
5. Prepare all appropriate entries for both Western Soya and Rhone-Metro on December 31, 2019 (the second lease payment and depreciation).
6. Prepare the appropriate entries for both Western Soya and Rhone-Metro on December 31, 2022 assuming the equipment is returned to Rhone-Metro and the actual residual value on that date is \$1,500.

P 15-22

Unguaranteed residual value; nonlease payments; sales-type lease

- LO15-2, LO15-6, LO15-7



Rhone-Metro Industries manufactures equipment that is sold or leased. On December 31, 2018, Rhone-Metro leased equipment to Western Soya Co. for a four-year period ending December 31, 2022, at which time possession of the leased asset will revert back to Rhone-Metro. The equipment cost \$300,000 to manufacture and has an expected useful life of six years. Its normal sales price is \$365,760. The expected residual value of \$25,000 at December 31, 2022, is not guaranteed. Equal payments under the lease are \$104,000 (including \$4,000 maintenance costs) and are due on December 31 of each year. The first payment was made on December 31, 2018. Western Soya's incremental borrowing rate is 12%. Western Soya knows the interest rate implicit in the lease payments is 10%. Both companies use straight-line depreciation.

Required:

1. Show how Rhone-Metro calculated the \$104,000 annual lease payments.
2. How should this lease be classified (a) by Western Soya Co. (the lessee) and (b) by Rhone-Metro Industries (the lessor)? Why?
3. Prepare the appropriate entries for both Western Soya Co. and Rhone-Metro on December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare an amortization schedule(s) describing the pattern of interest over the lease term for the lessee and the lessor.
5. Prepare the appropriate entries for both Western Soya and Rhone-Metro on December 31, 2019 (the second lease payment and amortization).
6. Prepare the appropriate entries for both Western Soya and Rhone-Metro on December 31, 2022, assuming the equipment is returned to Rhone-Metro and the actual residual value on that date is \$1,500.

P 15-23

Purchase option reasonably certain to be exercised before lease term ends; nonlease payments; sales-type lease

- LO15-3, LO15-6, LO15-7



Rhone-Metro Industries manufactures equipment that is sold or leased. On December 31, 2018, Rhone-Metro leased equipment to Western Soya Co. for a noncancelable stated lease term of four years ending December 31, 2022, at which time possession of the leased asset will revert back to Rhone-Metro. The equipment cost \$300,000 to manufacture and has an expected useful life of six years. Its normal sales price is \$365,760. The expected residual value of \$25,000 at December 31, 2022, is not guaranteed. Western Soya Co. is reasonably certain to exercise a purchase option on December 30, 2021, at an option price of \$10,000. Equal payments under the lease are \$134,960 (including \$4,000 annual maintenance costs) and are due on December 31 of each year. The first payment was made on December 31, 2018. Western Soya's incremental borrowing rate is 12%. Western Soya knows the interest rate implicit in the lease payments is 10%. Both companies use straight-line depreciation.

Hint: A lease term ends for accounting purposes when an option becomes exercisable if it's expected to be exercised (i.e., a BPO).

Required:

1. Show how Rhone-Metro calculated the \$134,960 annual lease payments.
2. How should this lease be classified (a) by Western Soya Co. (the lessee) and (b) by Rhone-Metro Industries (the lessor)? Why?
3. Prepare the appropriate entries for both Western Soya Co. and Rhone-Metro on December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare an amortization schedule(s) describing the pattern of interest over the lease term for the lessee and the lessor.
5. Prepare the appropriate entries for both Western Soya and Rhone-Metro on December 31, 2019 (the second rent payment and depreciation).
6. Prepare the appropriate entries for both Western Soya and Rhone-Metro on December 30, 2021, assuming the purchase option is exercised on that date.

P 15-24

Lessee and
lessor; lessee
guaranteed
residual value

● LO15-2, LO15-7

On January 1, 2018, Nguyen Electronics leased equipment from Nevells Leasing for a four-year period ending December 31, 2021, at which time possession of the leased asset will revert back to Nevells. The equipment cost Nevells \$824,368 and has an expected economic life of five years. Nevells expects the residual value at December 31, 2021, will be \$100,000. Negotiations led to the lessee guaranteeing a \$140,000 residual value.

Equal payments under the lease are \$200,000 and are due on December 31 of each year with the first payment being made on December 31, 2018. Nguyen is aware that Nevells used a 5% interest rate when calculating lease payments.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for both Nguyen and Nevells on January 1, 2018, to record the lease.
2. Prepare all appropriate entries for both Nguyen and Nevells on December 31, 2018, related to the lease.

P 15-25

Operating lease;
uneven lease
payments

● LO15-4, LO15-7

On January 1, 2018, Harlon Consulting entered into a three-year lease for new office space agreeing to lease payments of: \$5,000 in 2018, \$6,000 in 2019 and \$7,000 in 2020. Payments are due on December 31 of each year with the first payment being made on December 31, 2018. Harlon is aware that the lessor used a 5% interest rate when calculating lease payments.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for Harlon Consulting on January 1, 2018, to record the lease.
2. Prepare all appropriate entries for Harlon Consulting on December 31, 2018, related to the lease.
3. Prepare all appropriate entries for Harlon Consulting on December 31, 2019, related to the lease.
4. Prepare all appropriate entries for Harlon Consulting on December 31, 2020, related to the lease.

**P 15-26**

Operating lease;
uneven lease
payments

● LO15-4, LO15-7

On January 1, 2018, Harlon Consulting entered into a three-year lease for new office space agreeing to lease payments of: \$7,000 in 2018, \$6,000 in 2019 and \$5,000 in 2020. Payments are due on December 31 of each year with the first payment being made on December 31, 2018. Harlon is aware that the lessor used a 5% interest rate when calculating lease payments.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for Harlon Consulting on January 1, 2018, to record the lease.
2. Prepare all appropriate entries for Harlon Consulting on December 31, 2018, related to the lease.
3. Prepare all appropriate entries for Harlon Consulting on December 31, 2019, related to the lease.
4. Prepare all appropriate entries for Harlon Consulting on December 31, 2020, related to the lease.

**P 15-27**

Modification of a
lease

● LO15-2, LO15-3,
LO15-6

On January 1, 2018, Worchester Construction leased International Harvester equipment from Newton LeaseCorp. Newton LeaseCorp purchased the equipment from Wellesley Harvester at a cost of \$958,158. Worchester borrowing rate for similar transactions is 10%.

The lease agreement specified four annual payments of \$200,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and on each December 31 thereafter through 2020. The useful life of the equipment is estimated to be six years. The present value of those four payments at a discount rate of 10% is \$697,370.

On January 1, 2020 (after two years and three payments), Worchester and Newton agreed to extend the lease term by two years. The market rate of interest at that time was 9%.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for Worchester Construction on January 1, 2020, to adjust its lease liability for the lease modification.
2. Prepare all appropriate entries for Newton LeaseCorp on January 1, 2020, to record the lease modification.
3. Prepare all appropriate entries for Worchester Construction on December 31, 2020, related to the lease.
4. Prepare all appropriate entries for Newton LeaseCorp on December 31, 2020, related to the lease.

P 15-28

Finance lease;
lessee; financial
statement effects

● LO15-2, LO15-8

(Note: Problems 28, 29, and 30 are three variations of the same basic situation.) Werner Chemical, Inc. leased a protein analyzer on September 30, 2018. The five-year lease agreement calls for Werner to make quarterly lease payments of \$391,548, payable each September 30, December 31, March 31, June 30, with the first payment at September 30, 2018. Werner's incremental borrowing rate is 12%. Amortization is recorded on a straight-line basis at the end of each fiscal year. The useful life of the equipment is five years.

Required:

1. Determine the present value of the lease payments at September 30, 2018 (to the nearest \$000).
2. What pretax amounts related to the lease would Werner report in its balance sheet at December 31, 2018?
3. What pretax amounts related to the lease would Werner report in its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018?
4. What pretax amounts related to the lease would Werner report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?

P 15-29

Sales-type lease;
lessor; financial
statement effects

● LO15-2, LO15-8

Abbott Equipment leased a protein analyzer to Werner Chemical, Inc. on September 30, 2018. Abbott purchased the machine from NutraLabs, Inc. at a cost of \$6 million. The five-year lease agreement calls for Werner to make quarterly lease payments of \$391,548, payable each September 30, December 31, March 31, and June 30, with the first payment at September 30, 2018. Abbott's implicit interest rate is 12%.

Required:

1. What pretax amounts related to the lease would Abbott report in its balance sheet at December 31, 2018?
2. What pretax amounts related to the lease would Abbott report in its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018?
3. What pretax amounts related to the lease would Abbott report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?

P 15-30

Sales-type lease;
lessor; financial
statement effects

● LO15-3, LO15-8

NutraLabs, Inc. leased a protein analyzer to Werner Chemical, Inc. on September 30, 2018. NutraLabs manufactured the machine at a cost of \$5 million. The five-year lease agreement calls for Werner to make quarterly lease payments of \$391,548, payable each September 30, December 31, March 31, June 30, with the first payment at September 30, 2018. NutraLabs' implicit interest rate is 12%.

Required:

1. Determine the price at which NutraLabs is "selling" the equipment (present value of the lease payments) at September 30, 2018 (to the nearest \$000).
2. What pretax amounts related to the lease would NutraLabs report in its balance sheet at December 31, 2018?
3. What pretax amounts related to the lease would NutraLabs report in its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2018?
4. What pretax amounts related to the lease would NutraLabs report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?

P 15-31

Sale-leaseback
Appendix

To raise operating funds, North American Courier Corporation sold its building on January 1, 2018, to an insurance company for \$500,000 and immediately leased the building back. The lease is for a 10-year period ending December 31, 2027, at which time ownership of the building will revert to North American Courier. The building has a carrying amount of \$400,000 (original cost \$1,000,000). The lease requires North American to make payments of \$88,492 to the insurance company each December 31. The building had a total original useful life of 30 years with no residual value and is being depreciated on a straight-line basis. The lease has an implicit rate of 12%.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for North American (a) on January 1, 2018, to record the transaction and (b) on December 31, 2018, to record necessary adjustments.
2. Show how North American's December 31, 2018, balance sheet and income statement would reflect the sale-leaseback.

Broaden Your Perspective

**Research****Case 15-1**

FASB codification;
locate and
extract relevant
information and
authoritative
support for a
financial reporting
issue; finance
lease; sublease of
a leased asset

● LO15-2, LO15-8

Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

"I don't see that in my intermediate accounting text I saved from college," you explain to another member of the accounting division of Dowell Chemical Corporation. "This will take some research." Your comments pertain to the appropriate accounting treatment of a proposed sublease of warehouses Dowell has used for product storage.

Dowell leased the warehouses one year ago on December 31. The five-year lease agreement called for Dowell to make quarterly lease payments of \$2,398,303, payable each December 31, March 31, June 30, and September 30, with the first payment at the lease's beginning. As a finance lease, Dowell had recorded the right-of-use asset and liability at \$40 million, the present value of the lease payments at 8%. Dowell records depreciation on a straight-line basis at the end of each fiscal year.

Today, Jason True, Dowell's controller, explained a proposal to sublease the underused warehouses to American Tankers, Inc. for the remaining four years of the lease term. American Tankers would be substituted as lessee under the original lease agreement. As the new lessee, it would become the primary obligor under the agreement, and Dowell would not be secondarily liable for fulfilling the obligations under the lease agreement. "Check on how we would need to account for this and get back to me," he had said.

**Required:**

1. After the first full year under the warehouse lease, what is the balance in Dowell's lease liability? An amortization schedule will be helpful in determining this amount.
2. After the first full year under the warehouse lease, what is the carrying amount (after accumulated depreciation) of Dowell's leased warehouses?
3. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on accounting for derecognition of finance leases by lessees using the FASB's Codification Research System. You might gain access from the FASB website (www.fasb.org), from your school library, or some other source. Determine the appropriate accounting treatment for the proposed sublease. What is the specific Codification citation that Dowell would rely on to determine:
 - a. if the proposal to sublease will qualify as a termination of a finance lease, and
 - b. the appropriate accounting treatment for the sublease?
4. What, if any, journal entry would Dowell record in connection with the sublease?

Communication
Case 15-2

Classification issues; lessee accounting; group interaction

- LO15-1, LO15-2, LO15-3, LO15-6, LO15-7

Interstate Automobiles Corporation leased 40 vans to VIP Transport under a four-year noncancelable lease on January 1, 2018. Information concerning the lease and the vans follows:

- a. Equal annual lease payments of \$300,000 are due on January 1, 2018, and thereafter on December 31 each year. The first payment was made January 1, 2018. Interstate's implicit interest rate is 10% and known by VIP.
- b. VIP has the option to purchase all of the vans at the end of the lease for a total of \$290,000. The vans' estimated residual value is \$300,000 at the end of the lease term and \$50,000 at the end of 7 years, the estimated life of each van.
- c. VIP estimates the fair value of the vans to be \$1,240,000. Interstate's cost was \$1,050,000.
- d. VIP's incremental borrowing rate is 9%.
- e. VIP will pay the maintenance fees not included in the annual lease payments of \$1,000 per year. The depreciation method is straight-line.

Your instructor will divide the class into two to six groups depending on the size of the class. The mission of your group is to assess the proper recording and reporting of the lease described.

Required:

1. Each group member should deliberate the situation independently and draft a tentative argument prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.
2. In class, each group will meet for 10 to 15 minutes in different areas of the classroom. During that meeting, group members will take turns sharing their suggestions for the purpose of arriving at a single group treatment.
3. After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each group (selected during the group meetings) will share the group's solution with the class. The goal of the class is to incorporate the views of each group into a consensus approach to the situation.

Specifically, you should address:

- a. Identify potential advantages to VIP of leasing the vans rather than purchasing them.
- b. How should the lease be classified by VIP? by Interstate?
- c. Regardless of your response to previous requirements, suppose VIP recorded the lease on January 1, 2018, as a finance lease in the amount of \$1,100,000. What would be the appropriate journal entries related to the finance lease for the second lease payment on December 31, 2018?

Ethics Case 15-3

Leasehold improvements

- LO15-3

American Movieplex, a large movie theater chain, leases most of its theater facilities. In conjunction with recent operating leases, the company spent \$28 million for seats and carpeting. The question being discussed over breakfast on Wednesday morning was the length of the depreciation period for these leasehold improvements. The company controller, Sarah Keene, was surprised by the suggestion of Larry Person, her new assistant.

Keene: Why 25 years? We've never depreciated leasehold improvements for such a long period.
Person: I noticed that in my review of back records. But during our expansion to the Midwest, we don't need expenses to be any higher than necessary.
Keene: But isn't that a pretty rosy estimate of these assets' actual life? Trade publications show an average depreciation period of 12 years.

Required:

1. How would increasing the depreciation period affect American Movieplex's earnings?
2. Does revising the estimate pose an ethical dilemma?
3. Who would be affected if Person's suggestion is followed?

Analysis
Case 15–4

Lease concepts;
Walmart
● LO15–1 through
LO15–4

Real World Financials

Walmart Stores, Inc. is the world's largest retailer. A large portion of the premises that the company occupies are leased. Its financial statements and disclosure notes revealed the following information:

	Balance Sheet (\$ in millions)	
	2016	2015
Assets		
Property:		
Property under capital lease	\$11,096	\$5,239
Less: Accumulated amortization	(4,751)	(2,864)
Liabilities		
Current liabilities:		
Obligations under finance leases due within one year	551	287
Long-term debt:		
Long-term obligations under finance leases	5,816	2,606

Required:

1. Discuss some possible reasons why Walmart leases rather than purchases most of its premises.
2. The net asset "property under finance lease" has a 2016 balance of \$6,345 million (\$11,096 – 4,751). Liabilities for finance leases total \$6,367 (\$551 + 5,816). Why do the asset and liability amounts differ?
3. Prepare a 2016 summary entry to record Walmart's lease payments, which were \$600 million.
4. What is the approximate average interest rate on Walmart's finance leases? (Hint: See Req. 3)

Communication
Case 15–5

Where's the gain?
Appendix

General Tools is seeking ways to maintain and improve cash balances. As company controller, you have proposed the sale and leaseback of much of the company's equipment. As seller-lessee, General Tools would retain the right to essentially all of the remaining use of the equipment. The term of the lease would be six years.

You previously convinced your CFO of the cash flow benefits of the arrangement, but now he doesn't understand the way you will account for the transaction. "I really had counted on that gain on the sale portion of the transaction to bolster this period's earnings. What gives?" he wondered. "Put it in a memo, will you? I'm having trouble following what you're saying to me."

Required:

Write a memo to your CFO. Include discussion of each of these points:

1. How the transaction should be accounted for.
2. Why General Tools will not get the gain the CFO had counted on.

Trueblood
Case 15–6

Lease

The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion Material, can be obtained from the Deloitte foundation at its website (www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases).

Case 15–4: All-in

This case gives students the opportunity to extend their knowledge beyond chapter coverage by determining the accounting for leases when the lessee is involved with construction of the leased asset

IFRS Case 15–7
Lease
classification; U.S.
GAAP

- LO15–1, LO15–2,
LO15–4, LO15–9

Security Devices Inc. (SDI) needs additional office space to accommodate expansion. SDI wants to avoid income statement effects that would disrupt its attempts to "smooth" income over time.

Required:

1. Which lease classification would management prefer? Explain.
2. Would meeting its reporting objective be more or less difficult under IFRS? Explain.



Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO15–2, LO15–4

Real World Financials

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

In its Analysis of “Financial Condition: New Accounting Pronouncements,” Target’s financial statements for the year ended January 30, 2016, the company indicates that:

In February 2016, the FASB issued *ASU No. 2016-02, Leases*, to require organizations that lease assets to recognize the rights and obligations created by those leases on the balance sheet. The new standard is effective in 2019, with early adoption permitted. We are currently evaluating the effect the new standard will have on our financial statements.

Refer to *Note 22: Leases*. When Target applies the new standard, what will be the primary effect on its financial statements? Explain.

**Air France–KLM
Case**


● LO15–9

Real World Financials

Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF’s financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company’s website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. In *Note 4: Summary of accounting policies*, part 4.14: Leases, AF states that “leases are classified as finance leases when the lease arrangement transfers substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership to the lessee. All other leases are classified as operating leases. Is this the policy companies using U.S. GAAP follow?”
2. Is this the policy AF will follow when it begins applying the new lease guidance in the 2015 update to *IFRS 16*? Explain.

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

LEASES:

GAAP in Effect Prior to ASU No. 2016-02

A Chapter Supplement

Chapter 15 is based on the lease accounting approach established in Accounting Standards Update No. 2016-02: “Leases” (Topic 842), which is effective for fiscal years (and interim periods within those fiscal years) beginning after December 15, 2018. *Early adoption was permitted for all companies and organizations upon issuance of the standard.* In this Supplement we discuss GAAP that is eliminated by the ASU that established Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 842—“Leases,” but will be relevant until ASC 842 becomes effective, and students taking the CPA or CMA exams will be responsible for this GAAP until six months after the effective date of the ASC.

PREFACE

Accounting by the Lessor and Lessee

Over \$3.3 trillion of existing assets were acquired with leases. The vast majority of those assets and the obligations to pay for them are not included in corporate balance sheets.²² Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2016-02 changes that. The ASU requires lessees to recognize a right-of-use asset and a lease liability for all leases, including operating leases (other than those of 12 months or less). This and other differences between preexisting GAAP and the new lease guidance are summarized in Illustration 15–S1.

PART A

Illustration 15–S1 Some Significant Differences between Preexisting Guidance in Lease Accounting and ASC 842

	Preexisting GAAP	New GAAP Under ASC 842
Changes in terminology	Minimum lease payments Bargain purchase option Capital lease Direct financing lease	Lease payments Purchase option the lessee is reasonably certain to exercise Finance lease Sales-type lease with no selling profit
Balance sheet presentation	Lessees recognize a lease asset and a lease liability only for capital leases. Operating leases are off-balance sheet.	Lessees recognize a right-of-use asset and a lease liability for all leases (except those with a lease term of 12 months or less).
Income statement presentation—Lessee	Capital leases: Interest expense and amortization expense Operating leases: Straight-line lease expense	Finance leases: Interest expense and amortization expense Operating leases: Straight-line lease expense (by plugging amortization to cause interest plus amortization to equal the straight-line lease payment)

(continued)

²²Balance Sheets to Swell \$2.8 Trillion as Leasing Rules Tighten,” Jon Glover, *Bloomberg.com*, January 12, 2016.

Income statement presentation—Lessor	Direct financing leases: Interest revenue Sales-type leases: Interest revenue and selling profit Operating leases: Straight-line lease revenue	Sales-type leases with no selling profit: Interest revenue Sales-type leases with selling profit: Interest revenue and selling profit Operating leases: Straight-line lease revenue
Definition of a lease	An arrangement can contain a lease even without “control” of the use of the asset if the lessee receives substantially all of the benefits over the term of the arrangement.	An arrangement contains a lease only when it conveys to the lessee the right to “control” the use of an “identified asset.”
Lease classification	Four criteria and “bright lines:” 1. The agreement specifies that ownership of the asset transfers to the lessee. 2. The agreement contains a purchase option that the lessee is reasonably certain to exercise. 3. The lease term is for the 75% or more of the remaining economic life of the underlying asset.* 4. The present value of the total of the lease payments† equals or exceeds 90% of the fair value of the underlying asset.	Five criteria and no “bright lines:” 1. The agreement specifies that ownership of the asset transfers to the lessee. 2. The agreement contains a purchase option that the lessee is reasonably certain to exercise. 3. The lease term is for the “major part” of the remaining economic life of the underlying asset.** 4. The present value of the total of the lease payments equals or exceeds “substantially all” of the fair value of the underlying asset. 5. The underlying asset is of such a specialized nature that it is expected to have no alternative use to the lessor at the end of the lease term.
Lessors: Additional conditions to be a capital lease	No important uncertainties surround the amount of unreimbursable costs yet to be incurred by the lessor. The collectibility of the minimum lease payments is reasonably assured (i.e., predictable).	Both of these conditions have been removed from the new guidance.
Sales-type lease or direct financing lease	The difference between a sales-type lease and a direct finance lease is the presence of selling profit.	Equivalents are sales-type leases with a selling profit and sales-type leases without a selling profit. A direct finance lease only if (a) the “substantially all” criterion has been met in part due to a <i>third-party residual value guarantee</i> and (b) payments are collectible.

*If the lease begins at or near the end of the economic life of the asset, this criterion shouldn't be used for purposes of classifying the lease.

**Balance Sheets to Swell \$2.8 Trillion as Leasing Rules Tighten,” Jon Glover, Bloomberg.com, January 12, 2016.

†This total includes any residual value of the asset at the end of the lease term that is guaranteed by the lessee.

Let's take a closer look at these differences.

Classification Criteria

In both preexisting GAAP and new GAAP both the lessee and lessor distinguish between operating leases and non-operating leases. With preexisting GAAP the intent is to determine whether the usual *risks and rewards of ownership* are transferred. Illustration 15–S2a compares the classification possibilities.

Illustration 15–S2a

Basic Lease Classifications:
Preexisting GAAP

Lessee

- Operating lease
- Capital lease

Lessor

- Operating lease
- Capital lease
 - ➡ Direct financing lease
 - ➡ Sales-type lease

The goal is similar under new GAAP, but the essential question is whether the lease is economically similar to the purchase of an asset because the lessee *obtains substantially all of its remaining benefits* by controlling the use of the asset, in contrast to merely obtaining control over the use of the asset for a period of time. Illustration 15–S2b compares the classification possibilities by the new lease guidance.

Lessee

- Operating lease
- Finance lease

Lessor

- Operating lease
- Sales-type lease:
 - With no selling profit
 - With selling profit

Illustration 15–S2b

Basic Lease Classifications:
ASC 842

Leases labeled as capital leases under preexisting GAAP are called finance leases under the new guidance. Direct financing leases under preexisting GAAP are essentially equivalent to *sales-type leases with no selling profit* under the new guidance.²³

The criteria we use to make the distinction are similar under both approaches. In preexisting lease accounting, a lessee should classify a lease transaction as a *capital lease* if it includes a noncancelable lease term and one or more of the four criteria listed in Illustration 15–S3a are met. Otherwise, it is an *operating lease*.

1. The agreement specifies that ownership of the asset transfers to the lessee.
2. The agreement contains a bargain purchase option.
3. The noncancelable lease term is equal to **75% or more** of the expected economic life of the asset.
4. The present value of the “minimum lease payments”* is **equal to or greater than 90%** of the fair value of the asset.

*Minimum lease payments are referred to simply as lease payments in ASC 842.

Illustration 15–S3a

Criteria for Classification as
a Capital Lease: Preexisting
GAAP

By ASC 842, classification is based on criteria quite similar to those applied in current lease accounting, but *without explicit “bright lines”* (75%; 90%), and adding a *fifth criterion*. A lease is viewed as a finance lease if any one of the criteria in Illustration 15–S3b is satisfied:

1. The agreement specifies that ownership of the asset transfers to the lessee.
2. The agreement contains a purchase option that the lessee is reasonably certain to exercise.
3. The lease term is for the “major part” of the remaining economic life of the underlying asset.
4. The present value of the sum of the lease payments equals or exceeds “substantially all” of the fair value of the underlying asset.
5. The underlying asset is of such a specialized nature that it is expected to have no alternative use to the lessor at the end of the lease term.

Illustration 15–S3b

Criteria for Classification as
a Capital Lease: ASC 842

ADDITIONAL LESSOR CONDITIONS. The four classification criteria listed in Illustration 15–S3a apply to both parties to the transaction, lessees and lessors. However, a fundamental difference is that for a lessor to record the sale side of the transaction, it is necessary also to satisfy the conditions needed for revenue recognition. Preexisting GAAP bases those conditions on revenue recognition criteria prior to the current ASC 606—Revenue from Contracts with Customers discussed in Chapter 5.

In preexisting GAAP, additional lessor conditions for classification as a capital lease are consistent with criteria of the previous revenue realization principle.

²³While the direct financing label still exists in the new lease guidance, it is used in a different context. It now refers to a situation that happens only when the lease includes a residual value and at least some of the residual value is *guaranteed by a third party* (not the lessee).

Consistent with the *previous* revenue realization principle, preexisting GAAP specifies that for the lessor to record a lease as a direct financing lease or a sales-type lease, two conditions must be met in addition to one of the four classification criteria. These are listed in Illustration 15–S4.

Illustration 15–S4

Additional Conditions for Classification as a Capital Lease by the Lessor

1. The collectibility of the lease payments must be reasonably predictable.
2. If any costs to the lessor have yet to be incurred, they are reasonably predictable. (Performance by the lessor is substantially complete.)

Both of these conditions have been removed from the new guidance.

Financial Statement Presentation

Under preexisting GAAP, a lease is accounted for as either a purchase/sale accompanied by debt financing or as a rental agreement. The accounting method used hinges on the nature of the leasing arrangement.

Capital leases (called finance leases in the new guidance) are agreements that we identify as being formulated outwardly as leases, but which are in reality essentially installment purchases. The essential question is whether the usual *risks and rewards of ownership have been transferred* to the lessee. Otherwise it's an operating lease. Our focus here is on the differences in accounting for operating leases because capital (financial) leases are accounted for essentially the same way under preexisting and new GAAP (other than the new label for the lease asset discussed below).

Balance Sheet

The most significant impact of the distinction is its effect on the balance sheet. A capital lease adds to both the asset and liability side of the balance sheet; operating leases don't affect the balance sheet at all.

Most lessees strongly prefer a lease to be an operating lease for this very reason—to keep the liability off the balance sheet. Why? It's because for most analysts, liabilities signify risk. The more obligations to make timely interest and principle payments that a company has, the riskier the company appears. Designing leases to qualify as operating leases as a way to achieve “off balance sheet financing” for decades has been a popular and successful practice. Stopping this practice was the driving force behind the new Accounting Standard Update.

In Illustration 15–S5, we compare preexisting GAAP and the new GAAP as to the way a lessee accounts for an operating lease.

Notice a couple differences. The primary distinction is that we record an asset and a liability when following the new guidance, but not under preexisting GAAP. Note, too, that the lease asset is referred to as a “right-of-use asset.” This is consistent with the philosophy of ASC 842 that all leases (finance or operating) convey to the lessee the right to use the asset, and that right meets the definition of an asset. In fact, even for a finance lease, we use the right-of-use asset label under the new GAAP.

Income Statement

Another difference is how we determine lease expense. We see that in Illustration 15–S5a.

Although the operating lease is reported in the balance sheet under the new lease guidance, but not under preexisting GAAP, *by either approach, lease expense is \$100,000 in each of the four years*. That is by design. In ASC 842, lease expense is recorded in a manner that's designed to mirror *straight-line rental* of the asset during the lease term, which is the notion of an operating lease under preexisting GAAP as well. However, because we do record a right-of-use asset and a lease liability in the new approach, it's necessary to force that outcome. The way the lessee does that is to determine interest expense in the usual way, and then determine amortization of the right-of-use asset as the amount needed to cause

Accounting for leases attempts to see through the legal form of the agreements to determine their economic substance.

By the ASC, amortization is a balancing amount, calculated to cause the total lease expense (interest plus amortization) to be a straight-line amount over the lease term.

On January 1, 2018, Sans Serif Publishers, Inc. a computer services and printing firm, leased printing equipment from First LeaseCorp. The lease agreement specifies four annual payments of \$100,000 beginning January 1, 2018, the beginning of the lease, and at each December 31 thereafter through 2020. The useful life of the copier is estimated to be six years.

Before deciding to lease, Sans Serif considered purchasing the equipment for its cash price of \$479,079. The interest rate First LeaseCorp used in establishing lease payments was 10%.

Since none of the classification criteria is met, this is an operating lease.

Preexisting GAAP

January 1, 2018

No entry

Prepaid rent (first payment) 100,000

Cash..... 100,000

ASC 842

January 1, 2018

Right-of-use asset..... 348,685

Lease liability..... 348,685*

Lease liability 100,000

Cash (lease payment)... 100,000

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 4$, $i = 10\%$.

Illustration 15-S5

Operating Leases: Balance Sheet; Preexisting GAAP and ASC 842

Lessees recognize a right-of-use asset and a lease liability for operating leases under ASC 842, but not under preexisting GAAP.

Illustration 15-S5a

Operating Leases: Income Statement; Preexisting GAAP and ASC 842

Interest expense	\$ 24,869
Amortization exp.	75,131
Lease expense	\$100,000

Preexisting GAAP

December 31, 2018

Rent expense 100,000

Prepaid rent (first payment) 100,000

Prepaid rent (second payment) 100,000

Cash..... 100,000

ASC 842

December 31, 2018

Interest expense.....

$[10\% \times (\$348,685 - 100,000)]$ 24,869

Lease payable 75,131

Cash (lease payment)..... 100,000

Amortization expense
 $(\$100,000 - 24,869)$ 75,131

Right-of-use asset..... 75,131

the *total* lease expense (interest plus amortization) to be an equal, *straight-line amount over the lease term*. In other words, the lessee records interest and then “plugs” the right-of-use asset amortization at whatever amount is needed for interest plus amortization to equal the straight-line lease payment. So, in Illustration 15-S5a, Sans Serif, having determined interest to be \$24,869, plugs an amortization expense of \$75,131 to cause the total of the two expenses to be \$100,000.

After recording these entries, the lessee will have two lease-related expenses—interest expense and amortization expense. The lessee combines these two accounts into a single *lease expense* and reports a single \$100,000 amount each year in its income statement. This is in keeping with the key objective of reporting a straight-line lease expense for an operating lease. In a finance lease, the lessee reports interest expense and amortization expense separately in the income statement.

Under preexisting GAAP, the lessee has only a single lease expense account for an operating lease and reports that straight-line amount, \$100,000, each year in its income statement. Thus, in keeping with the presumption that an operating lease is considered to be more in the nature of a rental agreement, the lessee reports *lease expense on a straight-line basis* over the lease term using both preexisting GAAP and the new ASC. Illustration 15-S6 compares how this occurs under preexisting GAAP and the new guidance.

In an operating lease, the lessee combines interest expense and amortization expense to report a single lease expense in the income statement.

Illustration 15–S6

Comparison of Lessee's Expense Recognition between Preexisting GAAP and ASC 842 for Operating Leases

	Preexisting GAAP Operating Lease	ASC 842 Operating Lease		
	Lease Expense	Interest Expense	Amortization Expense	Total Expense
2018	100,000	24,869	75,131	100,000
2019	100,000	17,355	82,645	100,000
2020	100,000	9,091	90,909	100,000
2021	100,000	0	100,000	100,000
	400,000	51,315	348,685	400,000

PART B**Additional Differences**

Some additional differences between preexisting GAAP and the new lease guidance are summarized in Illustration 15–S7.

Appreciating some of these differences will benefit from the additional discussion that follows.

Lease Term

Similar to preexisting GAAP, the term of a lease in the new guidance includes the noncancelable lease term, adjusted for periods represented by options that are reasonably certain to be exercised by the lessee or within the control of the lessor.

For instance, a company adjusts the lease term for an option only if it is “reasonably certain” that the lessee will exercise the option after considering the relevant economic factors. Under both preexisting and new GAAP, if the benefits of exercising an option are high enough that we think the lessee will exercise it, we add the additional period that follows a purchase option, or subtract the period that follows a termination option.

Circumstances can change that require reassessment of how long the lease term will be. Under preexisting GAAP, we don't reassess the lease term unless (a) the provisions of the lease are modified by the lessee and lessor or (b) an option is exercised. Following the Accounting Standard Update, either of those would require reassessment as well, but other “triggering events” also can require reassessment. That happens if the event suggests that a lessee now has an economic incentive to exercise an option that extends or terminates the lease. For example, if the lessee has made significant improvements to the asset whose cost could be recovered only if it exercises an extension option, such that extension of the lease is “reasonably certain,” the lease term would be adjusted.

Lease Payments

Sometimes lease payments might be increased (or decreased) at some future time during the lease term, depending on whether or not some specified event occurs. Usually the contingency is related to revenues, profitability, or usage above some designated level. For example, a quarterly report of **Dollar General Corporation** included the note recreated in Illustration 15–S8.

Using preexisting GAAP, contingent payments are *not* included in the minimum lease payments because they are not determinable at the beginning of the lease. Instead, they are included as components of income when (and if) they occur or when they are considered probable.

Under the new guidance, lease payments generally exclude variable lease payments, except those (a) that are in-substance fixed payments or (b) based on an index (e.g., Consumer Price Index) or rate (e.g., market interest rate). In the second exception, initial measurement of the right-of-use asset, lease liability, and lease receivable are based on the payment amounts prior to any changes due to the index or rate. Payment *changes* are included only if and when the lease is reassessed.

In both preexisting and new GAAP, we adjust the lease term for periods represented by options that are reasonably certain to be exercised by the lessee.

Under both preexisting GAAP and ASC 842, we reassess the lease term if (a) the provisions of the lease are modified or (b) an option is exercised.

Under ASC 842, though, other “triggering events” also can require reassessment.

Measurement decisions are made at the *beginning* of the lease under preexisting GAAP and at the *commencement* of the lease under new GAAP.

Illustration 15–S7

Additional Differences between Preexisting Guidance in Lease Accounting and ASC 842

	Preexisting GAAP	New GAAP Under ASC 842
Reassessment of lease term	No reassessment unless the lease is modified or an option is exercised.	A lessee is required to reassess the lease term if a triggering event occurs that is under the lessee's control. A change to the lease term will lead to <i>remeasurement</i> of the right-of-use asset and liability using the current discount rate changes in lease payments based on an index or rate and might cause <i>reclassification</i> of the lease.
Discount rate	Lessee uses the lessor's implicit rate or its own incremental borrowing rate, whichever is lower.	Lessee uses the lessor's implicit rate if known, otherwise its own incremental borrowing rate.
Variable lease payments	Variable payments, such as those based on performance (e.g., a percentage of sales) are recognized in income when they are incurred (lessee) or earned (lessor).	Variable payments (not changes in those payments) that depend on an index or rate or are in-substance fixed payments are included as lease payments. Others, such as those based on performance (e.g., a percentage of sales) are recognized in income when they occur.
Lessee-guaranteed residual value	Total amount of a lessee-guaranteed residual value is included in the lease payments whose present value the lessee records as both a lease asset and a lease liability.	Only if a cash payment is predicted under a lessee-guaranteed residual value, the present value of that payment is added to the present value of the lease payments that the lessee records as both a right-of-use asset and a lease liability.
Lease versus non-lease payments	Property taxes and insurance are considered "executory costs" rather than lease payments. Land is separately classified when the fair value of the land is 25% or more of the combined fair value of the land and building.	Property taxes and insurance are not for a service provided by the lessor to the lessee and are therefore a part of lease payments rather than "nonlease payments." The right to use land is considered a separate lease component.
Commencement date and inception date	Lease-related assets and liabilities are measured on the inception date. The inception date is the date on which the principal terms of the lease are agreed to.	Lease-related assets and liabilities are measured on the commencement date. The lease commencement date is the date on which the lessor makes an underlying asset available for use by the lessee.
Sale-leasebacks (Appendix)	A gain on the sale of an asset in a sale leaseback arrangement is deferred and amortized over the lease term (or asset life if title is expected to transfer to the lessee). The lease portion of the transaction is evaluated and accounted for like any lease.	Sale is recorded only if the usual requirements for revenue recognition (Chapter 5) are met, it's not a financing lease (which would indicate the asset is effectively sold back to the lessee), and no repurchase option, unless the repurchase price is at the asset's fair value at the time of exercise. Any gain or loss is recognized at the time of the sale. If not a sale, transaction is accounted for as a loan.

... approximately 35% of our stores had provisions for contingent rentals based upon a percentage of defined sales volume. We recognize contingent rental expense when the achievement of specified sales targets is considered probable.

Illustration 15–S8

Disclosure of Contingent Rentals—Dollar General

Real World Financials

Reassessment of the lease payments may be triggered by a reassessment of the lease term, and requires a remeasurement of the lease liability and right-of-use asset. When remeasuring the lease liability, the lessee will use whatever interest rate prevails on the remeasurement date. Under preexisting GAAP, we don't reassess lease payments unless the lease is modified or an option is exercised.

Lessor accounting for a residual value is the same under either preexisting GAAP or new GAAP.

Preexisting GAAP: The lessee considers a guaranteed residual value to be an additional lease payment.

Illustration 15–S9a

Lessee's Calculation of the Present Value of Minimum Lease Payments Including a Guaranteed Residual Value: Preexisting GAAP

New GAAP: The lessee includes an additional lease payment only if a cash payment is predicted.

Illustration 15–S9b

Lessee's Calculation of the Present Value of Lease Payments Including an Excess Lessee-Guaranteed Residual Value: ASC 842

Residual Value

The **lessee-guaranteed residual value** of leased property is an estimate of what its commercial value will be at the end of the lease term.

Lessor. From the *lessor's* perspective, the residual value affects lease accounting the same way under either preexisting GAAP or new GAAP:

1. It contributes to the total amount to be recovered by the lessor and thus *reduces the amount of the periodic lease payments*.
2. Its present value is included along with the present value of the periodic lease payments as the lessor's net investment (that we record as a lease receivable), and
3. It is a component of *lease payments* when classifying a lease (present value of lease payments constitutes 90% under preexisting GAAP/"substantially all" of the assets fair value under new GAAP) only if it is guaranteed (by either the lessee or a third-party guarantor).

Lessee. The lessee views a residual value the same way under either preexisting GAAP or new GAAP *with one exception*. Sometimes a lease agreement includes a guarantee by the lessee that the lessor will recover a specified residual value when custody of the asset reverts back to the lessor at the end of the lease term. The lessee promises to return not only the property but also sufficient cash to provide the lessor with a minimum combined value. In effect, the guaranteed residual value is an additional lease payment that is to be paid in property, or cash, or both. If the lessee does not guarantee the residual value, it has no effect on lease accounting. If the lessee does guarantee all or part of a residual value:

- A. In *preexisting GAAP*, any lessee-guaranteed residual value is included in the minimum lease payments, so its present value is included in the amount the lessee records as both a lease asset and a lease liability. If we assume six annual payments of \$100,000 each, a 10% interest rate, and a **\$60,000** lessee-guaranteed residual value, the lease asset and lease liability are calculated as shown in Illustration 15–S9a.

Present value of periodic lease payments ($\$100,000 \times 4.79079^*$)	\$479,079
Plus: Present value of the residual value ($\\$60,000 \times 0.56447^†$)	33,868
Present value of minimum lease payments (recorded as a lease asset and a lease liability)	<u>\$512,947</u>

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

†Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

- B. In *new GAAP*, any lessee-guaranteed residual value is *not* included in the lease payments *unless* a cash payment is predicted. In that case, the present value of that cash payment is added to the present value of the periodic lease payments that the lessee records as both a right-of-use asset and a lease liability.

Let's assume that in the situation described in A. above that negotiations led to the lessee guaranteeing an \$80,000 residual value. That means that if the property's value is less than \$80,000 at the end of the six-year lease term, the lessee will pay cash for the difference. Since that value is expected to be **\$60,000**, the expected excess guaranteed residual value is $\$80,000 - \$60,000 = \$20,000$. The lessee views the expected excess guaranteed residual value as an additional cash flow to be paid to the lessor (addition to lease payments), and the right-of-use asset and lease liability are calculated as shown in Illustration 15–S9b.

Present value of periodic lease payments ($\$100,000 \times 4.79079^*$)	\$479,079
Plus: Present value of the residual value ($\\$20,000 \times 0.56447^†$)	11,289
Present value of minimum lease payments (recorded as a lease asset and a lease liability)	<u>\$490,368</u>

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

†Present value of \$1: $n = 6$, $i = 10\%$.

Executory Costs

Preexisting GAAP: Executory costs

New GAAP: Nonlease payments

Service contracts, maintenance, hazard insurance, and property taxes are costs often associated with owning and operating an asset. Often, for convenience, a lease contract specifies that the lessor is to pay some or all of these costs, when these additional costs actually are embedded in the periodic payments made by the lessee to the lessor. The accounting question is whether to include these costs as separate components of the lease contract (to be expensed by the lessee) or, instead, as amounts to be capitalized as part of the lease asset.

Under preexisting GAAP, these are referred to as **executory costs** and are treated as separate components of the lease contract (to be expensed by the lessee) rather than capitalized as part of the lease asset. Let's say that a **\$2,000** per year maintenance agreement was arranged with an outside service for some leased equipment. The lessor will pay this amount annually to the maintenance firm. The lessee expenses the **\$2,000** annually as shown in Illustration 15–S10.

Executory costs that are included in periodic rental payments to be paid by the lessor are, in effect, indirectly paid by the lessee—and expensed by the lessee.

Equipment was leased under a capital lease specifying annual payments of \$102,000 that include **\$2,000** that the lessor will use to pay an annual maintenance fee.

Lessee

Maintenance expense.....	2,000	
Lease payable	100,000	
Cash (lease payment).....		102,000

Lessor

Cash (lease payment).....	102,000	
Lease receivable		100,000
Maintenance fee payable*		2,000

*This assumes the **\$2,000** maintenance fee has not yet been paid to the outside maintenance service.

Illustration 15–S10

Lease Payments Including Executory Costs Paid by the Lessor: Preexisting GAAP

The \$2,000 executory cost is excluded from the lease payments used to determine the lease asset and lease liability, which would be recorded at the present value of the \$100,000 net payments. Other executory costs that are treated this way include repairs, insurance, and taxes.

ASC 842 treats these costs similarly, but with important differences, both conceptual and practical. Conceptually, the determining factor under the new guidance is whether the charge represents a *transfer of a good or service to the lessee*. If so, it qualifies as a “non-lease component” (executory cost under preexisting GAAP) of the payment and is separated from the lease payments as an expense.

In application, if the **\$2,000** had been a fixed payment for *hazard insurance or property taxes*, that payment does not transfer to the lessee a separate good or service. Payments for hazard insurance and property taxes are specifically identified in the lease accounting guidance as part of the lease payments rather than nonlease components. So, in that case, the right-of-use asset and lease liability (and the lessor's lease receivable) would be measured as the present value of the **\$102,000** lease payments, not \$100,000.

Payments for taxes and insurance are executory costs under preexisting GAAP, but do not qualify as nonlease components, under new GAAP and thus must be included in the right-of-use asset and lease liability.

Lessor Accounting

Lessor accounting is relatively unchanged by ASC 842 other than the terminology differences and its being updated to align with the new revenue recognition standard as we discussed.

16

Accounting for Income Taxes

OVERVIEW

In this chapter we explore financial accounting and reporting for the effects of income taxes. The discussion defines and illustrates temporary differences, which are the basis for recognizing deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities, as well as permanent differences, which have no deferred tax consequences. You will learn how to adjust deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities when tax laws or rates change. We also discuss accounting for net operating loss carrybacks and carryforwards as well as intraperiod tax allocation.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO16-1** Describe the types of temporary differences that cause deferred tax liabilities and determine the amounts needed to record periodic income taxes. (p. 908)
- **LO16-2** Describe the types of temporary differences that cause deferred tax assets and determine the amounts needed to record periodic income taxes. (p. 915)
- **LO16-3** Describe when and how a valuation allowance is recorded for deferred tax assets. (p. 918)
- **LO16-4** Explain why permanent differences have no deferred tax consequences. (p. 922)
- **LO16-5** Explain how a change in tax rates affects the measurement of deferred tax amounts. (p. 926)
- **LO16-6** Determine income tax amounts when multiple temporary differences exist. (p. 928)
- **LO16-7** Describe when and how a net operating loss carryforward and a net operating loss carryback are recognized in the financial statements. (p. 929)
- **LO16-8** Explain how deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities are reported in a classified balance sheet and describe related disclosures. (p. 934)
- **LO16-9** Demonstrate how to account for uncertainty in income tax decisions. (p. 935)
- **LO16-10** Explain intraperiod tax allocation. (p. 937)
- **LO16-11** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to accounting for income taxes. (pp. 920 and 924)



© Image Source

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

What's the Difference?

The board of directors for Times-Lehrer Industries is meeting for the first time since Laura Drake was asked to join the board. Laura was the director of the regional office of United Charities. Although she has broad experience with the tax advantages of charitable giving and the vast array of investment vehicles available to donors, her 15 years of experience with not-for-profit organizations has not exposed her to the issues involved with corporate taxation. This gap in her considerable business knowledge causes her to turn to you, Times-Lehrer's CFO and a long-time friend, who recommended Laura for appointment to the board.

"I must say," Laura confided, "I've looked long and hard at

these statements, and I can't quite grasp why the amount reported for income tax expense is not the same as the amount of income taxes we paid. What's the difference?"

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. What's the difference? Explain to Laura how differences between financial reporting standards and income tax rules might cause the income tax expense and the amount of income tax paid to differ. (p. 907)
2. What is the conceptual advantage of determining income tax expense as we do? (p. 908)
3. Are there differences between financial reporting standards and income tax rules that will not cause a difference between income tax expense and the amount of income taxes paid? (p. 922)

QUESTIONS

Deferred Tax Assets and Deferred Tax Liabilities

A manufacturer of leather accessories in the Midwest is obligated to pay the Internal Revenue Service \$24 million in income taxes as determined by its 2018 income tax return. Another \$9 million in income taxes also is attributable to 2018 activities. However, tax laws permit the company to postpone paying the additional \$9 million until subsequent tax years because the company reports some revenues and expenses on the tax return in years other than when those amounts are reported in the income statement. In other words, before-tax income on the income statement is different from before-tax income on the company's tax return.

Here's the accounting question: Does the company only have a current income tax liability of \$24 million? Or does it also have a deferred income tax liability for the other \$9 million? To phrase the question differently: Should the company report a 2018 income tax expense of only the \$24 million tax payable for the current year, or should it report expense of \$33 million to include the future tax effects of events already recognized? For perspective on this question, we should look closer at the circumstances that might create the situation. Such circumstances are called *temporary differences*.

PART A

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 907

Conceptual Underpinning

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 907

The goals of financial accounting and tax accounting are not the same.

Accounting for income taxes is consistent with the accrual concept of accounting.

When a company prepares its tax return for a particular year, the revenues and expenses (and gains and losses) included on the return are, by and large, the same as those reported on the company's income statement for the same year. However, in some instances tax laws and financial accounting standards differ. The reason they differ is that the fundamental objectives of financial reporting and those of taxing authorities are not the same. Financial accounting standards are established to provide useful information to investors and creditors. Congress, on the other hand, establishes tax regulations to allow it to raise funds in a socially acceptable manner, as well as to influence the behavior of taxpayers. In pursuing the latter objective, Congress uses tax laws to encourage activities it deems desirable, such as investment in productive assets, and to discourage activities it deems undesirable, such as violations of law.

A consequence of differences between GAAP and tax rules is that tax payments frequently occur in years different from when the revenues and expenses that cause the taxes are generated. For example, in many situations, revenue is not recognized on the tax return until it is collected, but GAAP requires revenue to be recognized when performance obligations are satisfied. One way to deal with these timing differences would be to ignore them, and simply report tax expense in the income statement each period equal to whatever tax is paid in that period. However, that approach would not communicate to investors that the company's current activities have resulted in future tax consequences.

Companies should recognize income tax expense based on the "accrual concept," just like other expenses. That is, income tax expense reported each period should be the amount caused by that period's activities, regardless of *when* the tax laws require that the tax be paid. If tax laws allow a company to avoid a current tax payment by postponing when an amount is included in taxable income, the company must report a **deferred tax liability** based on the **future taxable amount**. On the other hand, if tax laws require the company to wait until a future period to take a tax deduction that *reduces* taxable income, the company reports a **deferred tax asset** reflecting the benefit of that **future deductible amount**. That means that tax expense includes not only current tax payable but also changes in the deferred tax assets and liabilities that represent taxes due in other periods but that resulted from the current period's operations.

To understand how that works, let's consider deferred tax liabilities and deferred tax assets in more detail, as well as the "temporary differences" that give rise to them.

Temporary Differences

• LO16-1

The differences in the rules for computing taxable income and those for financial reporting often cause amounts to be included in taxable income in a year later—or earlier—than the year in which they are recognized for financial reporting purposes. For example, you learned in Chapter 4 that income from selling properties on an installment basis is reported for financial reporting purposes in the year of the sale. But tax laws permit installment income to be reported on the tax return as it actually is received. This means taxable income might be less than accounting income in the year of an installment sale but higher than accounting income in later years when installment income is collected.

Temporary differences arise when tax rules and accounting rules recognize income in different periods.

The situation just described creates what's referred to as a **temporary difference** between pretax *accounting* income and *taxable* income and, consequently, between the amount of an asset or liability that is reported in the financial statements and the equivalent amount, called the *tax basis* of an asset or a liability, that is included in the company's tax records. In our example, the asset for which the temporary difference exists is the installment receivable that's recognized for financial reporting purposes, but not for tax purposes.

Deferred Tax Liabilities

It's important to understand that a temporary difference *originates* in one period and *reverses*, or turns around, in one or more subsequent periods. The temporary difference described above originates in the year the installment sales are made and are reported in the

income statement. The temporary difference reverses in a future period when the installments are collected and income is reported on the *tax return*. An example is provided in Illustration 16-1.

Kent Land Management reported pretax accounting income in 2018, 2019, and 2020 of \$100 million, plus additional 2018 income of \$40 million from installment sales of property. However, the installment sales income is reported on the tax return when collected, in 2019 (\$10 million) and 2020 (\$30 million).^{*} The enacted tax rate is 40% each year.

(\$ in millions)	2018	2019	2020	Total
Pretax accounting income	\$140	\$100	\$100	\$340
Installment sale income on the income statement	(40)	0	0	(40)
Installment sale income on the tax return	0	10	30	40
Taxable income (tax return)	<u>\$100</u>	<u>\$110</u>	<u>\$130</u>	<u>\$340</u>

^{*}The installment method is not available to accrual method taxpayers. H.R. 1180, sec. 536, 1999.

Illustration 16-1

Revenue Reported on the Tax Return *after* the Income Statement

In 2018, taxable income is less than accounting income because income from installment sales is not reported on the tax return until 2019–2020.

Notice that pretax accounting income and taxable income total the same amount over the three-year period but are different in each individual year. In 2018, taxable income is \$40 million *less* than accounting income because it does not include income from installment sales. The difference is temporary, though. That situation reverses over the next two years. In 2019 and 2020 taxable income is *more* than accounting income because income from the installment sales, reported in the income statement in 2018, becomes taxable during the next two years as installments are collected.

The 2018 deferred tax liability will become tax payable in the next two years.

Because tax laws permit the company to delay reporting this income as part of taxable income, the company is able to defer paying the tax on that income. As shown in Illustration 16-1A, that tax is not avoided, just deferred.

	Current Year 2018	Future Taxable Amounts		Future Taxable Amounts (total)
(\$ in millions)		2019	2020	
Pretax accounting income	\$140			
Temporary difference:				
Installment income	(40)	\$10	\$30	\$40
Taxable income (tax return)	<u>\$100</u>			
Enacted tax rate	40%	Reported in the income statement, not on the tax return		40%
Tax payable currently	<u>\$ 40</u>			
Deferred Tax Liability				
	0 beg. bal.			
	16			
	16 end. bal.			
Deferred Tax Liability				
	Desired ending balance			\$ 16
	Less: Beginning balance			0
	Change in balance			<u>\$ 16</u>
Journal Entry at the End of 2018				
Income tax expense (to balance)			56	
Income tax payable (determined above)				40
Deferred tax liability (determined above)				16

Illustration 16-1A

Determining and Recording Income Taxes—2018

With **future taxable amounts** of \$40 million, taxable at 40%, a \$16 million **deferred tax liability** should be recognized as of the end of 2018. Because no previous balance exists, we credit deferred tax liability for the entire \$16 million.

Each year, income tax expense comprises both the current and the deferred tax consequences of events and transactions already recognized. This means we:

1. Calculate the income tax that is payable currently.
2. Calculate what the ending balance in the deferred tax liability (or asset) should be.
3. Determine the change (debit or credit) in the deferred tax liability (or asset) necessary to reach that ending balance.
4. Combine that change with tax payable to determine income tax expense.

Tax expense is a “plug” determined by changes in the tax payable, deferred tax assets, and deferred tax liability accounts.

Notice that, under this approach, tax expense is not calculated directly, but rather is the result of the combination of income tax payable and any changes in deferred tax assets and liabilities. In other words, tax expense is a “plug” in the journal entry that is debited or credited to make the rest of the journal entry balance. That perspective will be important throughout this chapter.

Using the 2019 and 2020 income numbers, the change in deferred tax liability and journal entries to record income taxes for those years would be:

Deferred tax liability	
1/1/2019	16 beg. bal.
change 4	
12/31/2019	12 ending bal.

2019		(\$ in millions)
Income tax expense (to balance)	40	
Deferred tax liability [(\$30 million × 40%) – 16 million].....	4	
Income tax payable (\$110 million × 40%)		44

Deferred tax liability	
1/1/2020	12 beg. bal.
change 12	
12/31/2020	0 ending bal.

2020		
Income tax expense (to balance)	40	
Deferred tax liability (\$0 million – 12 million).....	12	
Income tax payable (\$130 million × 40%)		52

Now look at the activity in the deferred tax liability account over the life of the installment receivable. See how the temporary difference originates in 2018 and reverses in 2019 and 2020?

Deferred Tax Liability		
(\$ in millions)		
	16	2018 (\$40 × 40%)
2019 (\$10 × 40%)	4	
2020 (\$30 × 40%)	12	
	0	Balance after 3 years

Balance Sheet and Income Statement Perspectives

Deferred tax assets and liabilities can be computed from temporary book-tax differences.

The tax basis of an asset or liability is its original value for tax purposes reduced by any amounts included to date on tax returns.

Our perspective in this example so far has centered around the income effects of the installment sales and thus on the changes in the deferred tax liability as the temporary difference reverses. Another perspective starts with the balance sheet effect. An assumption underlying a balance sheet is that assets will be recovered (used or sold to produce cash) and liabilities will be settled (typically paid with cash). So, for example, receivables will be collected, machines will be used or sold, and liabilities will be paid when they are due. Those assets and liabilities typically create taxable or deductible amounts in the future when they are recovered (an installment receivable is collected and taxable income is increased; a machine is used and depreciation is deducted) or settled (a warranty liability is paid and warranty expense is deducted). Before that occurs, there is a temporary difference between the *book value* (also called the *carrying value* or *carrying amount*) of those assets and liabilities on the balance sheet and the tax basis of those assets and liabilities for the tax return. The **tax basis** of an asset or liability is its original value for tax purposes reduced by any amounts included to date on tax returns. We can calculate the related deferred tax asset or liability balance by multiplying the *temporary book-tax difference* by the applicable tax rate.

In our example, the company reports an installment receivable in the balance sheet in 2018 when it makes an installment sale. However, the tax return doesn't recognize a sale until cash has been collected, so there is no receivable for 2018 tax purposes. Therefore, as shown in Illustration 16-1B, we have a temporary book-tax difference in 2018 between the receivable's book value (\$40) and its tax basis (\$0), so we recognize a deferred tax liability to reflect the tax that will be paid when that difference reverses in the future. The book-tax difference (and the deferred tax liability) declines in 2019 and 2020 as the receivable is collected.

December 31						
(\$ in millions)	2018		2019		2020	
Receivable from installment sales:						
Accounting book value	\$40	\$40	\$(10)	\$30	\$(30)	\$0
Tax basis	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Temporary difference	\$40	\$40	\$(10)	\$30	\$(30)	\$0
Tax rate		× 40%		× 40%		× 40%
Deferred tax liability		\$16		\$12		\$0

Originating Difference

Reversing Differences

Illustration 16-1B

Temporary Book-Tax Difference

The deferred tax liability each year is the tax rate times the temporary difference between the financial statement book value of the receivable and its tax basis.

Of course, we should get to the same deferred tax asset or liability if we base our calculations on (a) future deductible and taxable amounts or (b) present temporary book-tax differences. They are two different perspectives of the same basic event. We consider both perspectives in subsequent examples in this chapter.

Types of Temporary Differences

Examples of temporary differences are provided in Illustration 16-2.

	Revenues (or gains)	Expenses (or losses)
Reported in the income statement now, but on the tax return later	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Installment sales of property (installment method for taxes) • Unrealized gain from recording investments at fair value (taxable when asset is sold) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Estimated expenses and losses (tax-deductible when paid) • Unrealized loss from recording investments at fair value or inventory at LCM (tax-deductible when asset is sold)
Reported on the tax return now, but in the income statement later	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rent collected in advance • Subscriptions collected in advance • Other revenue collected in advance 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Accelerated depreciation on the tax return in excess of straight-line depreciation in the income statement • Prepaid expenses (tax-deductible when paid)

Illustration 16-2

Types of Temporary Differences

- The temporary differences shown in the diagonal purple areas create *deferred tax liabilities* because they result in *taxable* amounts in some future year(s) when the related assets are recovered or the related liabilities are settled (when the temporary differences reverse).
- The temporary differences in the opposite diagonal blue areas create *deferred tax assets* because they result in *deductible* amounts in some future year(s) when the related assets are recovered or the related liabilities are settled (when the temporary differences reverse).

Additional Consideration

As shown in Illustration 16–2, temporary differences between the reported amount of an asset or liability in the financial statements and its tax basis are primarily caused by revenues, expenses, gains, and losses being included in taxable income in a year other than the year in which they are recognized for financial reporting purposes. Other events also can cause temporary differences between the reported amount of an asset or liability in the financial statements and its tax basis. Other such events that are beyond the scope of this textbook are briefly described in FASB ASC 740–10–25: Income Taxes—Overall—Recognition (previously “Accounting for Income Taxes,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 109* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1992), par. 11 e–h). Our discussions in this chapter focus on temporary differences caused by the timing of revenue and expense recognition, but it’s important to realize that the concept of temporary differences embraces all differences that will result in taxable or deductible amounts in future years.

Be sure to notice that deferred tax liabilities can arise from either (a) a revenue being reported on the tax return after the income statement or (b) an expense being reported on the tax return before the income statement. Illustration 16–1 was of the first type. We look at the second type in Illustration 16–3, which examines deferred tax liabilities associated with depreciation.

Illustration 16–3

Expense Reported on the Tax Return before the Income Statement

To determine taxable income, we add back to accounting income the actual depreciation taken in the income statement and then subtract the depreciation deduction allowed on the tax return.

Courts Temporary Services reported pretax accounting income in 2018, 2019, 2020, and 2021 of \$100 million. In 2018, an asset was acquired for \$100 million. The asset is depreciated for financial reporting purposes over four years on a straight-line basis (no residual value). For tax purposes the asset’s cost is deducted (by MACRS) over 2018–2021 as follows: \$33 million, \$44 million, \$15 million, and \$8 million. No other depreciable assets were acquired. The enacted tax rate is 40% each year.

	Temporary Difference				
	Originates		Reverses		
(\$ in millions)	2018	2019	2020	2021	Total
Pretax accounting income	\$100	\$100	\$100	\$100	\$400
Depreciation on the income statement	25	25	25	25	100
Depreciation on the tax return	(33)	(44)	(15)	(8)	(100)
Taxable income (tax return)	\$ 92	\$ 81	\$110	\$117	\$400

Notice that the temporary difference shown in Illustration 16–3 originates during more than a single year before it begins to reverse. This usually is true when depreciation is the cause of the temporary difference. Tax laws typically permit the cost of a depreciable asset to be deducted on the tax return sooner than it is reported as depreciation in the income statement.¹ This means taxable income will be less than pretax accounting income in the income statement during the years the tax deduction is higher than income statement depreciation, but higher than pretax accounting income in later years when the situation reverses. 2018 income taxes would be recorded as shown in Illustration 16–3A.

Let’s follow the determination of income taxes for this illustration all the way through the complete reversal of the temporary difference. We assume accounting income is \$100 million each year and that the only difference between pretax accounting income and taxable income is caused by depreciation. 2019 income taxes would be determined as shown in Illustration 16–3B.

¹The accelerated depreciation method prescribed by the tax code is the modified accelerated cost recovery system (MACRS). The method is described in the Chapter 11 appendix.

(\$ in millions)	Current Year	Future Taxable Amounts			Future Taxable												
	2018	2019	2020	2021	Amounts (total)												
Pretax accounting income	\$ 100																
Temporary difference:																	
Depreciation	(8)	\$(19)	\$10	\$17	\$ 8												
Taxable income	\$ 92																
Enacted tax rate	40%				40%												
Tax payable currently	\$36.8																
<div>Tax depreciation is \$8 million more than in the income statement.</div>																	
<div>Deferred Tax Liability</div> <table><tr><td></td><td>0 beg. bal.</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>3.2</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>3.2 end. bal.</td></tr></table>			0 beg. bal.		3.2		3.2 end. bal.	<div>Deferred Tax Liability</div> <table><tr><td>Ending balance needed</td><td>\$3.2</td></tr><tr><td>Less: Beginning balance</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Change in balance</td><td>\$3.2</td></tr></table>				Ending balance needed	\$3.2	Less: Beginning balance	0	Change in balance	\$3.2
	0 beg. bal.																
	3.2																
	3.2 end. bal.																
Ending balance needed	\$3.2																
Less: Beginning balance	0																
Change in balance	\$3.2																
<div>Journal Entry at the End of 2018</div> <table><tr><td>Income tax expense (to balance)</td><td>40</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Income tax payable (determined above)</td><td></td><td>36.8</td></tr><tr><td>Deferred tax liability (determined above)</td><td></td><td>3.2</td></tr></table>						Income tax expense (to balance)	40		Income tax payable (determined above)		36.8	Deferred tax liability (determined above)		3.2			
Income tax expense (to balance)	40																
Income tax payable (determined above)		36.8															
Deferred tax liability (determined above)		3.2															

Illustration 16-3A

Determining and Recording
Income Taxes—2018

Taxable income is \$8 million less than accounting income because that much more depreciation is deducted on the 2018 tax return (\$33 million) than is reported in the income statement (\$25 million).

Income tax expense is comprised of two components: the amount payable currently and the amount deferred until later.

(\$ in millions)	2018	Current Year 2019	Future Taxable Amounts		Future Taxable Amounts (total)												
			2020	2021													
Pretax accounting income		\$ 100															
Temporary difference:																	
Depreciation	\$(8)	(19)	\$10	\$17	\$ 27												
Taxable income (tax return)		81															
Enacted tax rate		40%			40%												
Tax payable currently		\$32.4															
<div><div><div>Deferred Tax Liability</div><table><tr><td></td><td>3.2 beg. bal.</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>7.6</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>10.8 end. bal.</td></tr></table></div><div><div>Deferred Tax Liability</div><table><tr><td>Ending balance needed</td><td>\$ 10.8</td></tr><tr><td>Less: Beginning balance</td><td>(3.2)</td></tr><tr><td>Change in balance</td><td>\$ 7.6</td></tr></table></div></div>							3.2 beg. bal.		7.6		10.8 end. bal.	Ending balance needed	\$ 10.8	Less: Beginning balance	(3.2)	Change in balance	\$ 7.6
	3.2 beg. bal.																
	7.6																
	10.8 end. bal.																
Ending balance needed	\$ 10.8																
Less: Beginning balance	(3.2)																
Change in balance	\$ 7.6																
<div>Journal Entry at the End of 2019</div> <table><tr><td>Income tax expense (to balance)</td><td>40</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Income tax payable (determined above)</td><td></td><td>32.4</td></tr><tr><td>Deferred tax liability (determined above)</td><td></td><td>7.6</td></tr></table>						Income tax expense (to balance)	40		Income tax payable (determined above)		32.4	Deferred tax liability (determined above)		7.6			
Income tax expense (to balance)	40																
Income tax payable (determined above)		32.4															
Deferred tax liability (determined above)		7.6															

Illustration 16-3B

Determining and Recording
Income Taxes—2019

The cumulative temporary difference (\$27 million) is both (a) the sum of the amounts originating in 2018 (\$8 million) and in 2019 (\$19 million) and (b) the sum of the amounts reversing in 2020 (\$10 million) and in 2021 (\$17 million).

Since a balance of \$3.2 million already exists, \$7.6 million must be added.

Notice that each year the appropriate balance is determined for the deferred tax liability. That amount is compared with any existing balance to determine whether the account must be either increased or decreased.

Income taxes for 2020 would be recorded as shown in Illustration 16-3C.

Deferred Tax Liability			
(\$ in millions)			
		3.2	2018 (\$ 8 × 40%)
2020 (\$10 × 40%)	4.0	7.6	2019 (\$19 × 40%)
2021 (\$17 × 40%)	6.8		
		0	Balance after 4 years

We also can calculate this deferred tax liability each year using the alternate perspective of looking at the temporary book–tax difference that exists for the depreciable asset. Its book value is its cost minus accumulated straight-line depreciation. Its tax basis is its cost minus accumulated depreciation deductions taken on its tax return.

December 31									
(\$ in millions)	2018		2019		2020		2021		
Depreciable asset:									
Accounting book value	\$100	\$(25)	\$75	\$(25)	\$ 50	\$(25)	\$ 25	\$(25)	\$ 0
Tax basis	100	(33)	67	(44)	23	(15)	8	(8)	0
Temporary difference		\$ 8	\$ 8	\$ 19	\$ 27	\$(10)	\$ 17	\$(17)	\$ 0
Tax rate			40%		40%		40%		40%
Deferred tax liability			\$3.2		\$10.8		\$6.8		\$ 0

Deferred Tax Assets

The temporary differences illustrated to this point produce future taxable amounts when the temporary differences reverse. Future taxable amounts mean taxable income will be increased relative to pretax accounting income in one or more future years, so we recognize a deferred tax liability to reflect the tax that will be due in those years. Sometimes, though, the future tax consequence of a temporary difference will be to *decrease* taxable income relative to accounting income. Such situations produce what's referred to as **future deductible amounts**. These have favorable future tax consequences that are recognized as **deferred tax assets**. Unlike most assets, management views deferred tax assets to be *less* desirable than deferred tax liabilities. The reason is that deferred tax liabilities result from having lower taxable income (and thus lower tax) now. As we see in this section, deferred tax assets result from taxable income (and tax) being higher now than later. It's more desirable to delay paying taxes as long as possible.

As noted in Illustration 16–2, one circumstance that requires recognition of a deferred tax asset is when estimated expenses are recognized in income statements when incurred but deducted on tax returns in later years when the expenses are actually paid. Illustration 16–4 provides an example: a quality-assurance warranty.

LO16–2

Deferred tax assets are recognized for the future tax benefits of temporary differences that create future deductible amounts.

RDP Networking reported pretax accounting income in 2018, 2019, and 2020 of \$70 million, \$100 million, and \$100 million, respectively. The 2018 income statement includes a \$30 million warranty expense that is deducted for tax purposes when paid in 2019 (\$15 million) and 2020 (\$15 million). The income tax rate is 40% each year.

(\$ in millions)	Temporary Difference			
	Originates	Reverses		Total
	2018	2019	2020	
Pretax accounting income	\$ 70	\$100	\$100	\$270
Warranty expense in the income statement	30			30
Warranty expense on the tax return		(15)	(15)	(30)
Taxable income (tax return)	\$100	\$ 85	\$ 85	\$270

Illustration 16–4

Expense Reported on the Tax Return after the Income Statement

In 2018, taxable income is more than pretax accounting income because the warranty expense is not deducted on the tax return until paid.

(\$ in millions)	December 31					
	2018		2019		2020	
Warranty liability:						
Accounting book value	\$30	\$30	\$(15)	\$15	\$(15)	\$0
Tax basis	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Temporary difference	\$30	\$30	\$(15)	\$15	\$(15)	\$0
Tax rate		× 40%		× 40%		× 40%
Deferred tax asset		\$12		\$ 6		\$0

↑ Originating Difference
 ↑ Reversing Differences
 ↑

A warranty liability is recognized for financial reporting purposes when the product is sold:

2018 Warr. exp Liability 30 30

and reduced when the expense is paid:

2019 Liability Cash 15 15

2020 Liability Cash 15 15

The preceding is an example of an estimated expense that is reported in the income statement when incurred but deducted on tax returns in later years when actually paid. A second type of temporary difference that gives rise to a deferred tax asset is a *revenue* that is taxed when collected but recognized on income statements in later years when actually earned. Illustration 16–5 demonstrates this second type with a common example: deferred revenue.

Tomorrow Publications reported pretax accounting income in 2018, 2019, and 2020 of \$80 million, \$115 million, and \$105 million, respectively. The 2018 income statement does not include \$20 million of magazine subscriptions received that year for one- and two-year subscriptions. The subscription revenue is reported for tax purposes in 2018. The revenue will be recognized in 2019 (\$15 million) and 2020 (\$5 million). The income tax rate is 40% each year.

(\$ in millions)	Temporary Difference			
	Originates	Reverses		Total
	2018	2019	2020	
Pretax accounting income	\$ 80	\$115	\$105	\$300
Subscription revenue in the income statement		(15)	(5)	(20)
Subscription revenue on the tax return	20	0	0	20
Taxable income (tax return)	<u>\$100</u>	<u>\$100</u>	<u>\$100</u>	<u>\$300</u>

Illustration 16–5

Revenue Reported on the Tax Return before the Income Statement

In 2018, taxable income is more than accounting income because subscription revenue is not reported in the income statement until 2019 and 2020.

Notice that this temporary difference produces future *deductible* amounts. In 2018, taxable income is \$20 million *more* than pretax accounting income because it includes the deferred subscription revenue not yet reported in the income statement. However, in 2019 and 2020 taxable income is *less* than accounting income because the subscription revenue is recognized and reported in the income statements but not on the tax returns of those two years.

In effect, tax laws require the company to prepay the income tax on this revenue, which is a sacrifice now but will benefit the company later when the revenue is recognized but not taxed. In the meantime, the company has an asset representing this future income tax benefit.

At the end of 2018, the amounts needed to record income tax for 2018 would be determined as shown in Illustration 16–5A.

At the end of 2018 and 2019, the company reports a deferred tax asset for future tax benefits. That deferred tax asset is reduced to zero by the end of 2020.

A deferred tax asset is recognized when an existing temporary difference will produce future deductible amounts.

Deferred Tax Asset			
		(\$ in millions)	
2018 (\$20 × 40%)	8	6	2019 (\$15 × 40%)
		2	2020 (\$5 × 40%)
Balance after 3 years	0		

Income taxes payable in 2019 and 2020 are less because of the taxes prepaid in 2018.

Illustration 16-5A

Determining and Recording
Income Taxes—2018

(\$ in millions)	2018	Future Deductible Amounts		Future Deductible Amounts (total)
		2019	2020	
Pretax accounting income	\$ 80			
Temporary difference:				
Subscription revenue	20	\$(15)	\$(5)	\$(20)
Taxable income	\$100			
Enacted tax rate	40%			40%
Tax payable currently	<u>\$ 40</u>			
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> Deferred Tax Asset beg. bal. 0 change 8 end. bal. 8 </div>				
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> Deferred Tax Asset Ending balance needed \$ 8 Less: Beginning balance 0 Change in balance <u>\$ 8</u> </div>				
Journal Entry at the End of 2018 Income tax expense (to balance) 32 Deferred tax asset (determined above) 8 Income tax payable (determined above) 40				

Again, we instead could determine the deferred tax asset as the future tax benefit from the reversal of a temporary difference between the balance sheet's book value of the subscription liability (a deferred revenue account) and its tax basis.²

A liability is recognized for financial reporting purposes when the cash is received:

2018 Cash 20
Liability 20

and reduced when the revenue is recognized:

2019 Liability 15
Revenue 15

2020 Liability 5
Revenue 5

From a tax perspective, there is no liability.

(\$ in millions)	December 31					
	2018		2019		2020	
Liability—subscriptions:						
Accounting book value	\$20	\$20	\$(15)	\$ 5	\$(5)	\$ 0
Tax basis	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)
Temporary difference	\$20	\$20	\$(15)	\$ 5	\$(5)	\$ 0
Tax rate		× 40%		× 40%		× 40%
Deferred tax asset		\$ 8		\$ 2		\$ 0
	↑		↑		↑	
	Originating Difference		Reversing Differences			

Valuation Allowance

We recognize deferred tax assets for all deductible temporary differences.³ However, we then reduce a deferred tax asset by a valuation allowance if it is “more likely than not” that some portion or all of the deferred tax asset will not be realized.⁴ Remember, a future deductible amount reduces taxable income in the future and saves taxes only if there is taxable income to be reduced when that deduction is available. So, a **valuation allowance** is needed if taxable income is anticipated to be insufficient to realize the tax benefit.

²It is less intuitive to view deferred revenue (Illustration 16-5) as producing future deductible amounts when the deferred revenue liability is settled than it is to view the future deductibility of an estimated expense (Illustration 16-4) as a future deductible amount. Nevertheless, the recognition of deferred tax assets for the future tax benefits of deferred revenue liability temporary differences is consistent with GAAP because these deferred revenue liabilities are reported as if they represent future refundable amounts and therefore future deductible amounts.

³Unless the deductibility itself is uncertain. In that case, whether we recognize a deferred tax asset (and if so, its amount) is determined in accordance with FASB ASC 740-10-25: Income Taxes—Overall—Recognition (previously FIN 48), discussed later in the chapter.

⁴“More likely than not” means a likelihood of more than 50%, FASB ASC 740-10-30: Income Taxes—Overall—Initial Measurement (previously “Accounting for Income Taxes,” Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 109 (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1992), par. 17).

For example, let's say that in the previous illustration management determines that it's more likely than not that **\$3 million** of the deferred tax asset ultimately will not be realized. The deferred tax asset would be reduced by the creation of a valuation allowance as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
Income tax expense	3
Valuation allowance—deferred tax asset	3

A valuation allowance is needed if it is more likely than not that some portion or all of a deferred tax asset will not be realized.

The effect is to increase the income tax expense as a result of reduced expectations of future tax savings. In the 2018 balance sheet, the deferred tax asset would be reported at its estimated net realizable value:

Deferred tax asset	\$8
Less: Valuation allowance—deferred tax asset	(3)
	<u>\$5</u>

This is not a new concept for you. You've reduced assets before using a valuation allowance. Suppose, for example, that you have accounts receivable of \$8 million but expect that \$3 million of that amount will not ultimately be collected from your customers. You would reduce the asset indirectly using a valuation allowance:

Accounts receivable	\$8
Less: Allowance for uncollectible accounts	(3)
	<u>\$5</u>

Additional Consideration

The decision as to whether a valuation allowance is needed should be based on the weight of all available evidence. The real question is whether or not there will be sufficient taxable income in future years for the anticipated tax benefit to be realized. The benefit of future deductible amounts can be realized only if future income is at least equal to the deferred deductions. After all, a deduction reduces taxes only if it reduces taxable income.

All evidence—both positive and negative—should be considered. For instance, operating losses in recent years or anticipated circumstances that would adversely affect future operations would constitute negative evidence. On the other hand, a strong history of profitable operations or sizable, existing contracts would constitute positive evidence of sufficient taxable income to be able to realize the deferred tax asset.

Managerial actions that could be taken to reduce or eliminate a valuation allowance when deferred tax assets are not otherwise expected to be realized must be considered. These tax-planning strategies include any prudent and feasible actions management might take to realize a tax benefit while it is available.

This having been said, it should be clear that the decision as to whether or not a valuation allowance is used, as well as how large the allowance should be, rests squarely on managerial judgment. Because that decision directly impacts the amount of income tax expense and therefore reported income, it has obvious implications for earnings quality assessment from an analyst's perspective.

At the end of each reporting period, the valuation allowance is reevaluated. The appropriate balance is decided on and the valuation allowance is adjusted—up or down—to create that balance. For instance, let's say that at the end of the following year, 2019, available evidence now indicates that **\$500,000** of the deferred tax asset at the end of 2019 ultimately will not be realized. We would adjust the valuation allowance to reflect the indicated amount:

	(\$ in millions)
Valuation allowance—deferred tax asset (\$3 – 0.5)	2.5
Income tax expense	2.5

Valuation Allowance—Deferred Tax Asset

1/1/2019	3
	2.5
12/31/2019	0.5

The disclosure note shown in Illustration 16–6 accompanied the January 30, 2016, annual report of **Sears Holdings Corporation**, which operates a variety of retailers including Sears, Kmart, and Lands' End. Sears disclosed that it had deferred tax assets of \$5 billion, offset by a valuation allowance of \$4.8 billion. Why such a large valuation allowance? Illustration 16–6 provides Sears's depressing explanation.

Illustration 16–6

Explanation for Valuation Allowance—Sears Holding Corporation

Real World Financials

Note 10 – Income Taxes (in part)

Management assesses the available positive and negative evidence to estimate if sufficient future taxable income will be generated to use the existing deferred tax assets. A significant piece of objective negative evidence evaluated was the cumulative loss incurred over the three-year periods ended January 30, 2016, January 31, 2015, and February 1, 2014.

Given its large recent losses, Sears cannot argue that it's more likely than not that it will have sufficient future income to utilize its deferred tax assets, so it must record a large valuation allowance.



International Financial Reporting Standards

Valuation Allowances. Under U.S. GAAP, companies recognize deferred tax assets and then reduce those assets with an offsetting valuation allowance if it is not “more likely than not” that the asset will be realized. In contrast, under IFRS, deferred tax assets only are recognized if it is probable (defined as “more likely than not”) that they will be realized. Thus, while the end result is the same, under U.S. GAAP, gross deferred tax assets may be larger and offset with valuation allowances as compared to how the same company would appear under IFRS.

Disclosures Linking Tax Expense with Changes in Deferred Tax Assets and Liabilities

We've now worked through four examples that illustrate revenue-related and expense-related deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities. In each example, the journal entry to recognize tax expense included three items: income tax payable, the change in the deferred tax asset or liability, and (to balance) the debit to tax expense (or credit to tax benefit). We've also seen that changes in the valuation allowance against deferred tax assets have an offsetting effect on tax expenses. Companies provide disclosure in the notes that help investors see these relationships. As an example, let's look at the tax note that appeared in the January 31, 2015, annual report of **Shoe Carnival, Inc.**, a large footwear retailer.

Illustrations 16–7A shows enough of Shoe Carnival's tax note to reproduce a journal entry that summarizes the company's 2014 tax expense. We just have to understand that “total current” in the note refers to income tax payable, “total deferred” refers to the total change in deferred tax assets and liabilities, “valuation allowance” refers to the change in the valuation allowance, and “total provision” refers to income tax expense:

Income tax expense	16,175		
Deferred tax assets and liabilities.....	2,493		
Valuation allowance		1,943	} \$2,493 – 1,943 = \$550
Income tax payable		16,725	

We can see from this journal entry that Shoe Carnival's operations caused total deferred tax assets and liabilities to change by a debit of \$2,493 during 2014, and its valuation allowance against deferred tax assets changed by an offsetting credit of \$1,943, so the total change in these accounts was \$550. Let's verify that change by comparing the 2014 fiscal year end (January 31, 2015) and 2013 fiscal year end (February 1, 2014) balances of

Note 7 – Income Taxes (in part)

The provision for income taxes consisted of:

(\$ in thousands)	2014	2013	2012
Current:			
Federal	\$ 14,575	\$15,366	\$19,581
State	1,800	1,805	2,601
Puerto Rico	350	185	79
Total current	<u>16,725</u>	<u>17,356</u>	<u>22,261</u>
Deferred:			
Federal	(1,229)	(139)	(2,692)
State	(115)	(138)	(304)
Puerto Rico	(1,149)	(444)	(350)
Total deferred	<u>(2,493)</u>	<u>(721)</u>	<u>(3,346)</u>
Valuation allowance	<u>1,943</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
Total provision	<u>\$16,175</u>	<u>\$ 16,635</u>	<u>\$18,915</u>

Illustration 16–7A

Disclosure of Tax Expense—Shoe Carnival, Inc.

Real World Financials

Shoe Carnival's deferred tax assets, valuation allowance and deferred tax liabilities, shown in Illustration 16–7B.

Note 7 – Income Taxes (in part)

Deferred income taxes are the result of temporary differences in the recognition of revenue and expense for tax and financial reporting purposes. The sources of these differences and the tax effect of each are as follows:

(\$ in thousands)	January 31, 2015	February 1, 2014	
Deferred tax assets:			
Accrued rent	\$ 4,045	\$ 3,543	
Accrued compensation	5,896	5,625	
Accrued employee benefits	523	506	
Inventory	740	411	
Self-insurance reserves	592	593	
Lease incentives	12,073	10,003	
Net operating loss carry forward	1,943	449	
Other	367	396	
Total deferred tax assets	<u>26,179</u>	<u>21,526</u>	
Valuation allowance	<u>(1,943)</u>	<u>0</u>	
Total deferred tax assets—net of valuation allowance	<u>24,236</u>	<u>21,526</u>	
Deferred tax liabilities:			
Depreciation	17,767	15,625	
Capitalized costs	1,284	1,180	
Puerto Rico net operating loss carry forward impact to federal taxes	0	444	
Other	1	3	
Total deferred tax liabilities	<u>19,052</u>	<u>16,892</u>	
Net deferred tax asset	<u>\$ 5,184</u>	<u>\$4,634</u>	= \$550

Illustration 16–7B

Disclosure of Deferred Tax Assets and Liabilities—Shoe Carnival, Inc.

Real World Financials

We can see from Illustration 16–7B that Shoe Carnival has a net deferred tax asset of **\$5,184** as of January 31, 2015 (the end of its 2014 fiscal year), equal to its total deferred tax asset of \$26,179 less its valuation allowance of \$1,943 and its total deferred tax liability of \$19,052. Compared to the net deferred tax asset of **\$4,634** at February 1, 2014, we see that the net deferred tax asset has increased by **\$5,184 – \$4,634 = \$550**. Now look back at our journal entry following

Illustration 16–7A. That entry showed an increase in net deferred tax assets (\$2,493) with an offsetting increase in valuation allowance (\$1,943), again totaling \$550. See how the tax expense journal entry ties to the changes in deferred tax assets, liabilities and valuation allowance?

Additional Consideration

The amount of change in deferred taxes reconciles perfectly between the tables shown in Illustrations 16–7A and 16–7B. That won't always be the case in practice because the table shown in Illustration 16–7A focuses on taxes from *continuing operations*, but the deferred tax assets and liabilities listed in Illustration 16–7B relate to all aspects of the company. For example, if Shoe Carnival had deferred taxes associated with discontinued operations or other comprehensive income items, or if it had added deferred tax assets and liabilities from an acquisition during the year, the change in deferred taxes from continuing operations wouldn't capture everything that affected deferred tax assets and liabilities.

Permanent Differences

● LO16–4

So far, we've dealt with temporary differences between the reported amount of an asset or liability in the financial statements and its tax basis. However, some differences aren't temporary. Rather, they are caused by transactions and events that under existing tax law will *never* affect taxable income or taxes payable. Interest received from investments in bonds issued by state and municipal governments, for instance, is exempt from taxation. Interest revenue of this type is, of course, reported as revenue on the recipient's income statement but not on its tax return—not now, not later. So, there is a **permanent difference** between pretax accounting income and taxable income. This situation will *not* reverse in a later year—the tax-free income will *never* be reported on the tax return.

Illustration 16–8 provides examples of permanent differences that commonly occur in practice.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 907

Illustration 16–8

Differences without
Deferred Tax
Consequences

Provisions of the tax laws, in some instances, dictate that the amount of a revenue that is taxable or expense that is deductible permanently differs from the amount reported in the income statement.

- Interest received from investments in bonds issued by state and municipal governments (not taxable).
- Investment expenses incurred to obtain tax-exempt income (not tax deductible).
- Life insurance proceeds on the death of an insured executive (not taxable).
- Premiums paid for life insurance policies when the payer is the beneficiary (not tax deductible).
- Compensation expense pertaining to some employee stock option plans (not tax deductible).
- Expenses due to violations of the law (not tax deductible).
- Difference in tax paid on foreign income permanently reinvested in the foreign country and the amount that would have been paid if taxed at U.S. rates.
- Portion of dividends received from U.S. corporations that is not taxable due to the dividends received deduction.*
- Tax deduction for depletion of natural resources (percentage depletion) that is allowed in excess of an already full-depleted asset's cost.†

*When a corporation owns shares of another U.S. corporation, a percentage of the dividends from those shares is exempt from taxation due to the dividends received deduction. The percentage is 70% if the investor owns less than 20% of the investee's shares, 80% for 20% to 80% ownership, and 100% for more than 80% ownership.

†The cost of natural resources is reported as depletion expense over their extraction period for financial reporting purposes, but tax rules prescribe sometimes different percentages of cost to be deducted for tax purposes. There usually is a difference between the cost depletion and percentage depletion that doesn't eventually reverse.

Accounting for permanent differences is less complex than is accounting for temporary differences. We calculate taxes payable according to the tax law, and, since permanent differences are not temporary, we don't create a deferred tax asset or liability. Therefore, tax

expense is determined by tax payable. The term *permanent difference* doesn't refer to a difference between tax payable and tax expense—those are the same with respect to this item. Rather, it refers to a difference between taxable income and pretax accounting income. That's why we adjust pretax accounting income in the illustrations that follow to eliminate permanent differences when calculating tax payable.

To compare temporary and permanent differences, we can modify Illustration 16–1 to include nontaxable income in Kent Land Management’s 2019 pretax accounting income. We do this in Illustration 16–9.

Kent Land Management reported pretax accounting income in 2018 of \$100 million except for additional income of \$40 million from installment sales of property and **\$5 million interest from investments in municipal bonds** in 2018. The installment sales income is reported for tax purposes in 2019 (\$10 million) and 2020 (\$30 million). The enacted tax rate is 40% each year.

	Current Year	Future Taxable Amounts		Future Taxable Amounts (total)
(\$ in millions)	2018	2019	2020	
Pretax accounting income	\$145			
Permanent difference:				
Municipal bond interest	(5)			
Temporary difference:				
Installment income	(40)	\$10	\$30	\$40
Taxable income (tax return)	\$100			
Enacted tax rate	40%			40%
Tax payable currently	\$ 40			
				↓

		Deferred Tax Liability			Deferred Tax Liability	
		0 beg. bal.			Ending balance needed	\$16
		16			Less: Beginning balance	0
		16 end. bal.			Change in balance	\$16

Journal Entry at the End of 2018

Income tax expense (to balance)	56	
Income tax payable (determined above).....		40
Deferred tax liability (determined above).....		16

Illustration 16-9

Temporary and Permanent Differences

Because interest on municipal bonds is tax exempt, it is reported only in the income statement. This difference between pretax accounting income and taxable income does not reverse later.

A company's **effective tax rate** is calculated by dividing the company's tax expense by its pretax accounting income. Permanent differences affect the effective tax rate because they affect pretax accounting income. Let's look at Illustration 16-9 to understand why that's the case. In Illustration 16-9, the effective tax rate is \$56 million ÷ \$145 million, or 38.6%. That's with **\$5 million** of municipal bond interest included in the \$145 million of pretax accounting income. If, instead, pretax accounting income hadn't included the **\$5 million** of municipal bond interest, it would have been only \$140 million, and the effective tax rate would have been \$56 million ÷ \$140 million, or 40%. Including the municipal bond interest in pretax accounting income increased the denominator of the effective tax rate, so it produced a lower effective tax rate.

More generally, nontaxable revenues and gains like municipal bond interest are permanent differences that result in *higher* pretax accounting income, so they produce effective tax rates that are *lower* than the statutory tax rate. Likewise, nondeductible expenses and losses are permanent differences that result in *lower* pretax accounting income, so they produce effective tax rates that are *higher* than the statutory tax rate. Companies are required to

The effective tax rate equals tax expense divided by pretax accounting income.

Permanent differences affect a company's effective tax rate.

report a reconciliation between their effective and statutory tax rates in disclosure notes, as shown in Illustration 16–10's example from **Walmart's** financial statements for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2016.

Illustration 16–10

Effective Tax
Rate—Walmart

Real World Financials

Note 9: Taxes (in part)

Effective Tax Rate Reconciliation

	Fiscal Year Ended January 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
U.S. statutory tax rate	35.0%	35.0%	35.0%
U.S. state income taxes, net of federal income tax benefit	1.8%	1.8%	2.0%
Income taxed outside the U.S.	(4.0)%	(2.7)%	(2.8)%
Net impact of repatriated international earnings	0.1%	(1.5)%	(1.4)%
Other, net	(2.6)%	(0.4)%	0.1%
Effective income tax rate	30.3%	32.2%	32.9%

Additional Consideration

Accounting for taxes on unrepatriated foreign earnings. The biggest “permanent difference” in many companies’ effective tax rate reconciliation relates to taxes on foreign earnings. Companies often seek to minimize their tax bills by arranging their operations so their income is recognized outside the United States in jurisdictions that have low tax rates. Those lower tax bills are viewed as creating permanent differences so long as the company does not intend to “repatriate” the foreign earnings by transferring those earnings back to the United States. A company still must include the foreign income in pretax accounting income on the income statement, but that income is taxed at the lower foreign rate, so income tax payable is lower, tax expense is lower, and the company’s effective tax rate is lower.

What if management changes its mind and decides to repatriate foreign earnings? In that case, the company must pay tax at the higher U.S. rate, making up the tax previously avoided. Companies usually don’t want to pay that tax, so you will hear companies talk about having cash “trapped” overseas and needing to raise cash in other ways. For example, in 2013 **Apple** announced that it would be returning \$60 billion to shareholders by repurchasing stock. Apple had \$145 billion of cash and short-term investments at its disposal, so no problem, right? Wrong. Only \$45 billion of Apple’s cash was in the United States, so it issued \$17 billion in bonds to make up the shortfall instead of paying tax to repatriate cash from foreign operations.

If a company does repatriate foreign earnings and repatriates cash, they have a higher tax bill and higher tax expense. Pretax accounting income is unaffected (remember, that income was recognized in the period in which it was earned), so the higher tax expense results in a higher effective tax rate. The company’s original choice not to repatriate created a “permanent” difference that reduced the effective tax rate, and the company’s later decision to repatriate creates an offsetting “permanent” difference that goes in the other direction.



• LO16–11

International Financial Reporting Standards

Non-Tax Differences Affect Taxes. Despite the similar approaches for accounting for taxation under IAS No. 12, “Income Tax,” and U.S. GAAP, differences in reported amounts for deferred taxes are among the most frequent between the two reporting approaches.⁵ The reason is that a great many of the nontax differences between IFRS and U.S. GAAP affect deferred taxes as well.

For example, we noted in Chapter 13 that we accrue a loss contingency under U.S. GAAP if it’s both probable and can be reasonably estimated and that IFRS guidelines are similar, but the threshold is “more likely than not.” This is a lower threshold than “probable.” In this

(continued)

⁵“Income Taxes,” International Accounting Standard No. 12 (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2014.

(concluded)

chapter, we noted that accruing a loss contingency (like warranty expense) in the income statement leads to a deferred tax asset if it can't be deducted on the tax return until a later period. As a result, under the lower threshold of IFRS, we might record a loss contingency and thus a deferred tax asset, but under U.S. GAAP we might record neither. So, even though accounting for deferred taxes is the same, accounting for loss contingencies is different, causing a difference in the reported amounts of deferred taxes under IFRS and U.S. GAAP.

Concept Review Exercise

Mid-South Cellular Systems began operations in 2018. That year the company reported pretax accounting income of \$70 million, which included the following amounts:

1. Compensation expense of \$3 million related to employee stock option plans granted to organizers was reported in the 2018 income statement. This expense is not deductible for tax purposes.
2. An asset with a four-year useful life was acquired at the beginning of 2018. It is depreciated by the straight-line method in the income statement. MACRS is used on the tax return, causing deductions for depreciation to be more than straight-line depreciation the first two years but less than straight-line depreciation the next two years (\$ in millions):

Depreciation			
	Income Statement	Tax Return	Difference
2018	\$150	\$198	\$ (48)
2019	150	264	(114)
2020	150	90	60
2021	150	48	102
	<u>\$600</u>	<u>\$600</u>	<u>\$ 0</u>

The enacted tax rate is 40%.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry to record Mid-South Cellular's income taxes for 2018.

Solution

Because the compensation expense is not tax deductible, taxable income does not include the \$3 million deduction and is higher than accounting income by that amount.

	Current Year 2018	Future Taxable Amounts			Future Taxable Amounts (total)
(\$ in millions)		2019	2020	2021	
Pretax accounting income	\$70				
Permanent difference:					
Compensation expense	3				
Temporary difference:					
Depreciation	(48)	\$(114)	\$60	\$102	\$ 48
Taxable income (tax return)	\$25				
Enacted tax rate	40%				40%
Tax payable currently	<u>\$10</u>				

Because the compensation expense is not tax deductible, taxable income does not include the \$3 million deduction and is higher than accounting income by that amount.

Deferred Tax Liability	
	0 beg. bal.
	<u>19.2</u>
	19.2 end. bal.

Deferred Tax Liability	\$19.2
Ending balance needed	<u>0.0</u>
Less: Beginning balance	<u>\$19.2</u>
Change in balance	

The necessary journal entry is:

Journal Entry at the End of 2018

Income tax expense (to balance)	29.2	
Income tax payable (determined above)		10.0
Deferred tax liability (determined above)		19.2

PART B

Other Tax Accounting Issues

Tax Rate Considerations

LO16-5

To measure the deferred tax liability or asset, we multiply the temporary difference by the currently *enacted* tax rate that will be effective in the year(s) the temporary difference reverses⁶ We do not base calculations on *anticipated* legislation that would alter the company's tax rate. A conceptual case can be made that expected rate changes should be anticipated when measuring the deferred tax liability or asset. However, this is one of many examples of the frequent trade-off between relevance and reliability. In this case, the FASB chose to favor reliability by waiting until an anticipated change actually is enacted into law before recognizing its tax consequences.

When Enacted Tax Rates Differ

A deferred tax liability (or asset) is based on enacted tax rates and laws.

Existing tax laws may call for enacted tax rates to be different in future years in which a temporary difference is expected to reverse. When a phased-in change in rates is scheduled to occur, the specific tax rates of each future year are multiplied by the amounts reversing in each of those years. The total is the deferred tax liability or asset.

To illustrate, let's again modify our Kent Land Management illustration, this time to assume a scheduled change in tax rates. See Illustration 16-11.

Illustration 16-11

Scheduled Change in Tax Rates

The tax effects of the future taxable amounts depend on the tax rates at which those amounts will be taxed.

Kent Land Management reported pretax accounting income in 2018 of \$100 million except for additional income of \$40 million from installment sales of property and \$5 million interest from investments in municipal bonds in 2018. The installment sales income is reported for tax purposes in 2019 (\$10 million) and 2020 (\$30 million). The enacted tax rates are 40% for 2018 and 2019, and 35% for 2020.

(\$ in millions)	Current Year 2018	Future Taxable Amounts		(total)
		2019	2020	
Pretax accounting income	\$145			
Permanent difference:				
Municipal bond interest	(5)			
Temporary difference:				
Installment income	(40)	\$10	\$ 30	
Taxable income (tax return)	\$100			
Enacted tax rate	40%	40%	35%	
Tax payable currently	<u>\$ 40</u>			
Deferred tax liability		\$ 4	+ \$10.5	= \$14.5

Deferred Tax Liability		Deferred Tax Liability	
	0 beg. bal.	Ending balance needed	\$14.5
	14.5	Less: Beginning balance	<u>0.0</u>
	14.5 end. bal.	Change in balance	<u>\$14.5</u>

(continued)

⁶The current U.S. federal corporate tax rate is 35%. Most states tax corporate income at rates less than 10%. We use 40% in most of our illustrations to simplify calculations.

Reversal of Temporary Difference with a Tax Rate Change

The deferred tax liability would have been \$10.5 million ($30 \text{ million} \times 35\%$) if the tax rate had not changed.

account by recalculating the balance needed in the deferred tax liability each period and comparing that amount with any previously existing balance.

Also notice that income tax expense (\$38.5 million) is \$1.5 million less than it would have been without the tax rate change (\$40 million). This is highlighted if we separate the previous entry into its component parts: (1) record the income tax expense without the tax rate change, and (2) separately record the adjustment of the deferred tax liability for the change.

When a tax rate changes, the deferred tax liability or asset should be adjusted and the effect shown in tax expense in the year of the change.

The tax consequence of a change in a tax law or rate is recognized in the period the change is enacted. In this case, the consequence of a lower tax rate is a reduced deferred tax liability, recognized as a reduction in income tax expense in 2019 when the change occurs.

Multiple Temporary Differences

It would be unusual for any but a very small company to have only a single temporary difference in any given year. Having multiple temporary differences, though, doesn't change any of the principles you've learned so far in connection with single differences. We categorize all temporary differences according to whether they create (a) future taxable amounts or (b) future deductible amounts. The total of the future taxable amounts then is multiplied by the future tax rate to determine the appropriate balance for the deferred tax liability, and the total of the future deductible amounts is multiplied by the future tax rate to determine the appropriate balance for the deferred tax asset. This is demonstrated in Illustration 16-12.

Illustration 16-12

Multiple Temporary Differences

2018

During 2018, its first year of operations, Eli-Wallace Distributors reported pretax accounting income of \$200 million, which included the following amounts:

1. Income (net) from installment sales of warehouses in 2018 of \$9 million will be reported for tax purposes in 2019 (\$5 million) and 2020 (\$4 million).
2. Depreciation is reported by the straight-line method on an asset with a four-year useful life. On the tax return, deductions for depreciation will be more than straight-line depreciation the first two years but less than straight-line depreciation the next two years (\$ in millions):

	Income Statement	Tax Return	Difference
2018	\$ 50	\$ 66	\$(16)
2019	50	88	(38)
2020	50	30	20
2021	50	16	34
	<u>\$200</u>	<u>\$200</u>	<u>\$ 0</u>

3. Estimated warranty expense will be deductible on the tax return when actually paid during the next two years. Estimated deductions are as follows (\$ in millions):

	Income Statement	Tax Return	Difference
2018	\$7		\$7
2019		\$4	(4)
2020		3	(3)
	<u>\$7</u>	<u>\$7</u>	<u>\$0</u>

2019

During 2019, pretax accounting income of \$200 million included an estimated loss of \$1 million from having accrued a loss contingency. The loss is expected to be paid in 2021, at which time it will be tax deductible.

The enacted tax rate is 40% each year.

Look at Illustration 16-12A to see how Eli-Wallace determines the income tax amounts for 2018. Then look at Illustration 16-12B to see how those amounts are determined for 2019.

Of course, if a phased-in change in rates is scheduled to occur, it would be necessary to determine the total of the future taxable amounts and the total of the future deductible amounts for each future year, as outlined previously. Then the specific tax rates of each future year would be multiplied by the two totals in each of those years. Those annual tax effects then would be summed to find the balances for the deferred tax liability and the deferred tax asset.

Net Operating Losses

A **net operating loss** (NOL) is negative taxable income: tax-deductible expenses exceed taxable revenues. Of course, there is no tax payable for the year a net operating loss occurs because there's no taxable income. In addition, tax laws permit a net operating loss to be used to reduce taxable income in other, profitable years. Why do the tax laws permit that offsetting? Well, let's consider two imaginary companies. Volatile Co. has negative income some years and positive income other years that averages out to \$0 income over time. Stable Co. has \$0 income each year. It wouldn't be fair to tax Volatile in the good years and provide no relief in the bad years, while not taxing Stable at all, because Volatile and Stable generate the same total amount of income over time. It's more fair to allow Volatile to offset the income in its good years with the losses in its bad years when determining how much tax it should pay.

• LO16-7

Illustration 16-12A

Multiple Temporary Differences—2018

Temporary differences are grouped according to whether they create future *taxable* amounts or future *deductible* amounts.

The balances needed in the deferred tax liability and the deferred tax asset are separately determined.

Income tax expense is composed of three components: (1) the tax payable currently plus (2) the tax deferred until later, reduced by (3) the deferred tax benefit.

	Current Year 2018	Future Taxable (Deductible) Amounts			Future Taxable Amounts (total)	Future Deductible Amounts (total)
(\$ in millions)	2018	2019	2020	2021		
Pretax accounting income	\$ 200					
Temporary differences:						
Installment sales	(9)	\$ 5	\$ 4		\$ 9	
Depreciation	(16)	(38)	20	\$34	16	
Warranty expense	7	(4)	(3)			\$ (7)
Taxable income (tax return)	\$ 182				\$25	(7)
Enacted tax rate	40%				40%	40%
Tax payable currently	<u>\$72.8</u>					
		Deferred tax liability			\$10	
		Deferred tax asset				\$(2.8)
					↓	↓
					Deferred Tax Liability	Deferred Tax Asset
Ending balances:					\$10	\$ 2.8
Less: Beginning balances:					(0)	(0.0)
Change in balances					<u>\$10</u>	<u>\$ 2.8</u>
Journal Entry at the End of 2018						
Income tax expense (to balance)					80.0	
Deferred tax asset (determined above)					2.8	
Deferred tax liability (determined above)						10.0
Income tax payable (determined above)						72.8

Offsetting operating profits with NOLs is achieved by either a carryback of the NOL to prior years or a carryforward of the NOL to later years, or both. In essence, the tax deductible expenses that can't be deducted this year because they exceed taxable revenues can be deducted in other years. A net operating loss can be carried back 2 years and forward for up to 20 years:



Tax laws permit a choice. A company can use a **net operating loss carryback** if taxable income was reported in either of the two previous years.⁸ By reducing taxable income of a previous year, the company can receive an immediate refund of taxes paid that year.

If taxable income was not reported in either of the two previous years or higher tax rates are anticipated in the future, a company might elect to forgo the net operating loss carryback and instead carry the NOL forward for up to 20 years to offset taxable income of those years. The carryforward election is a choice that must be made in the year the NOL occurs, and the choice is irrevocable. Even if an NOL carryback is used, any NOL that remains after the two-year carryback can be carried forward. It usually is advantageous to carry back NOLs because a company can realize the benefit much sooner by filing an amended tax return to get a refund, than if the NOL is carried forward.

The accounting question is: When should the tax benefit created by a net operating loss be recognized in the income statement? The answer is: In the year the loss occurs.

⁸Actually, a carryback is automatic unless a company elects to forgo the carryback in favor of a carryforward.

Illustration 16-12B

Multiple Temporary Differences—2019

The future taxable amount of installment sales (\$4 million) is equal to the cumulative temporary difference (\$9 million – 5 million).

Similarly, the total of other future taxable and deductible amounts is equal to the cumulative temporary differences in the related assets and liabilities.

Analysis indicates that the deferred tax liability should be increased further and the deferred tax asset should be reduced.

(\$ in millions)	2018	Current Year 2019	Future Taxable (Deductible) Amounts		Future Taxable Amounts (total)*	Future Deductible Amounts (total)*
			2020	2021		
Pretax accounting income		\$200				
Temporary differences:						
Installment sales	\$ (9)	\$ 5	\$ 4		\$ 4	
Depreciation	(16)	(38)	20	\$34	54	
Warranty expense	7	(4)	(3)			\$ (3)
Estimated loss		1		(1)		(1)
Taxable income (tax return)		\$ 164			\$58	\$ (4)
Enacted tax rate		40%			40%	40%
Tax payable currently		\$ 65.6				
			Deferred tax liability		\$23.2	
			Deferred tax asset			\$(1.6)
					↓	↓
					Deferred Tax Liability	Deferred Tax Asset
Deferred Tax Liability		Deferred Tax Asset	Deferred Tax Liability			
10.0 beg. bal.		beg. bal. 2.8	Ending balance:		\$23.2	\$ 1.6
13.2		1.2	Less: Beginning balance:		(10.0)	(2.8)
23.2 end. bal.		end. bal. 1.6	Change in balances		\$13.2	\$(1.2)
Journal Entry at the End of 2019						
Income tax expense (to balance)					80.0	
Deferred tax asset (determined above)						1.2
Deferred tax liability (determined above)						13.2
Deferred tax payable (determined above)						65.6
*Total future taxable and deductible amounts also are equal to the cumulative temporary differences in the related assets and liabilities.						

Net Operating Loss Carryforward

First consider an NOL carryforward. You have learned in this chapter that a deferred tax asset is recognized for the future tax benefit of temporary differences that create future deductible amounts. A **net operating loss carryforward** also creates future deductible amounts. Logically, then, a deferred tax asset is recognized for a net operating loss carryforward also. This is demonstrated in Illustration 16-13.

The income tax benefit of a net operating loss carryforward is recognized for accounting purposes in the year the net operating loss occurs. Just as we reduce pretax income by tax expense to calculate net income, we reduce a pretax loss by its tax benefit to calculate a net loss. That way, the net after-tax operating loss shown on the income statement reflects the tax savings that the operating loss is expected to create.

Income Statement (partial)

	(\$ in millions)
Operating loss before income taxes	\$(125)
Less: Income tax benefit—net operating loss	50
Net loss	\$ (75)

VALUATION ALLOWANCE. Just as for all deductible temporary differences, deferred tax assets are recognized for any net operating loss without regard to the likelihood of having taxable income in future years sufficient to absorb future deductible amounts. However, the deferred tax asset is then reduced by a valuation allowance if it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax asset will not be realized. Valuation allowances

The income tax benefit of a net operating loss carryback, like a carryforward, is recognized in the year the net operating loss occurs.

Illustration 16-13

Net Operating Loss
Carryforward

A net operating loss (NOL) carryforward can be deducted from taxable income in future years.

The tax benefit of being able to deduct amounts in the future represents a deferred tax asset.

During 2018, its first year of operations, American Laminating Corporation reported an operating loss of \$125 million for financial reporting and tax purposes. The enacted tax rate is 40%.

(\$ in millions)	Current Year 2018	Future Deductible Amounts (total)																
Net operating loss	\$(125)																	
NOL carryforward	125	\$(125)																
	<u>\$ 0</u>																	
Enacted tax rate	40%	40%																
Tax payable	<u><u>\$ 0</u></u>																	
		↓																
<table><tr><th colspan="2">Deferred Tax Asset</th></tr><tr><td>0 beg. bal.</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>50</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>50 end. bal.</td><td></td></tr></table>		Deferred Tax Asset		0 beg. bal.		50		50 end. bal.		<table><tr><th colspan="2">Deferred Tax Asset</th></tr><tr><td>Ending balance</td><td>\$ 50</td></tr><tr><td>Less: Beginning balance</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Change in balance</td><td><u>\$ 50</u></td></tr></table>	Deferred Tax Asset		Ending balance	\$ 50	Less: Beginning balance	0	Change in balance	<u>\$ 50</u>
Deferred Tax Asset																		
0 beg. bal.																		
50																		
50 end. bal.																		
Deferred Tax Asset																		
Ending balance	\$ 50																	
Less: Beginning balance	0																	
Change in balance	<u>\$ 50</u>																	

Journal Entry at the End of 2018

Deferred tax asset (determined above)	50	
Income tax benefit—operating loss (to balance)		50

often accompany NOLs because the same problems that give rise to current operating losses also make it less likely the company will earn enough taxable income in the future to be able to utilize its deferred tax assets. Remember, a valuation allowance both reduces the net deferred tax asset and increases the income tax expense, just as if that portion of the deferred tax asset had not been recognized.

Net Operating Loss Carryback

To compare the treatment of a net operating loss carryback, let's modify the illustration to assume that there was taxable income in the two years prior to the net operating loss and that American Laminating will utilize the NOL carryback (see Illustration 16-14). Note that the net operating loss must be applied to the earlier year first and then brought forward to the next year. If any of the NOL remains after reducing taxable income to zero in the two previous years, the remainder is carried forward to future years as a net operating loss carryforward.

	(\$ in millions)
Operating loss before income taxes	\$(125)
Income tax benefit:	
Tax refund from net operating loss carryback	\$29
Future tax savings from net operating loss carryforward	20
Net loss	<u>49</u> \$ (76)

The income tax benefit of both a net operating loss carryback and a net operating loss carryforward is recognized for accounting purposes in the year the NOL occurs. The net after-tax loss reflects the reduction of past taxes from the NOL carryback and future tax savings that the NOL carryforward is expected to create.

Notice that the income tax benefit (\$49 million) is less than it was when we assumed a carryforward only (\$50 million). This is because the tax rate in one of the carryback years (2016) was lower than the carryforward rate (40%).

Let's extend the illustration one year (see Illustration 16-14A) and assume a performance turnaround in 2019 resulted in pretax accounting income of \$15 million.

During 2018, American Laminating Corporation reported a net operating loss of \$125 million for financial reporting and tax purposes. The enacted tax rate is 40% for 2018. Taxable income, tax rates, and income taxes paid in the two previous years were as follows:

	Taxable Income	Taxable Rates	Income Taxes Paid
2016	\$20 million	35%	\$ 7 million
2017	55 million	40%	22 million

Here's how the income tax benefit of the net operating loss carryback and the net operating loss carryforward is determined:

	Prior Years		Current Year	Future Deductible
(\$ in millions)	2016	2017	2018	Amounts (total)
Net operating loss			\$(125)	
NOL carryback	\$(20)	\$(55)	75	
NOL carryforward			50	\$(50)
			\$ 0	
Enacted tax rate	35%	40%	40%	40%
Tax payable (refundable)	<u>\$ (7)</u>	<u>\$(22)</u>	<u>\$ 0</u>	
				↓
	Deferred Tax Asset		Deferred Tax Asset	
	beg. bal. 0		Ending balance	\$ 20
	20		Less: Beginning balance	0
	end. bal. 20		Change in balance	<u>\$ 20</u>

Journal Entry at the End of 2018

Receivable—income tax refund (\$7 + 22)	29	
Deferred tax asset (determined above)	20	
Income tax benefit—operating loss (to balance)		49

Illustration 16-14

Net Operating Loss
Carryback and
Carryforward

A net operating loss (NOL) carryback can be deducted from taxable income in the two prior years, creating a refund of taxes paid for those years.

The portion of a net operating loss that remains after a carryback is carried forward.

The income tax benefit of a net operating loss carryforward is recognized in the year the operating loss occurs.

(\$ in millions)	2018	Current Year 2019	Future Deductible Amounts (total)
Pretax accounting income		\$15	
Temporary difference:			
NOL carryforward	\$50	(15)	\$(35)
Taxable income (tax return)		\$ 0	
Enacted tax rate		40%	40%
Tax payable currently		<u>\$ 0</u>	<u> </u> ↓
Deferred Tax Asset		Deferred Tax Asset	
beg. bal. 20		Ending balance	\$ 14.0
	6	Less: Beginning balance	<u>(20.0)</u>
end. bal. 14		Change in balance	\$ (6.0)

Journal Entry at the End of 2019

Income tax expense (to balance)	6
Deferred tax asset (determined above)	6

Illustration 16-14A

Determining and Recording Income Taxes—2019

\$15 million of the NOL carryforward can be used to offset 2019 income. The remaining \$35 million is carried forward up to 19 more years.

The \$20 million deferred tax asset is reduced to \$14 million.

Financial Statement Presentation

Balance Sheet Classification

LO16-8

All deferred tax liabilities, deferred tax assets, and any valuation allowance against deferred tax assets are classified as noncurrent in the balance sheet.⁹ If these deferred tax accounts relate to the same tax-paying component of the company and the same tax jurisdiction, they are netted against each other and shown as a single net number in the balance sheet. For example, a company with a deferred tax liability of \$10 million, a deferred tax asset of \$5 million, and a valuation allowance of \$2 million would show a net noncurrent deferred tax liability of \$7 million [\$10 million – (\$5 million – \$2 million)].

Sometimes components of a single company are viewed as different companies for tax purposes, or pay tax in different jurisdictions. If deferred tax liabilities and assets relate to components of a company that are separate for tax purposes, or relate to different tax jurisdictions, they should not be offset. So, in the prior illustration, if the deferred tax assets (and related valuation allowance) applied to a separate tax jurisdiction from the deferred tax liabilities, the company would show a noncurrent deferred tax liability of \$10 million and a noncurrent deferred tax asset of \$3 million (\$5 million – \$2 million).

Disclosure Notes

We've already seen many of the disclosures that companies have to present in the tax note, but there are a few we haven't yet covered.

INCOME TAX EXPENSE Illustration 16-7A shows **Shoe Carnival's** disclosure of current tax payable, deferred tax, and tax expense. More generally, disclosure notes should indicate the following:

- Current portion of the tax expense (or tax benefit); that's new tax payable this period
- Deferred portion of the tax expense (or tax benefit), with separate disclosure of amounts attributable to:
 - Portions that do not include the effect of separately disclosed amounts
 - Operating loss carryforwards
- Adjustments due to changes in tax laws or rates
- Adjustments to the beginning-of-the-year valuation allowance due to revised estimates
- Tax credits

DEFERRED TAX ASSETS AND DEFERRED TAX LIABILITIES Illustration 16-7B shows **Shoe Carnival's** disclosure of its deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities. It shows a total net deferred tax asset of \$5,184 thousand, which would appear in its January 31, 2015 balance sheet. More generally, companies must disclose the following:

- Total of all deferred tax liabilities
- Total of all deferred tax assets
- Total valuation allowance recognized for deferred tax assets
- Net change in the valuation allowance
- Approximate tax effect of each type of temporary difference (and carryforward)

EFFECTIVE TAX RATE RECONCILIATION Illustration 16-10 shows **Walmart's** effective tax rate reconciliation. Companies are required to provide that reconciliation, indicating the amount and nature of each significant reconciling item.

NET OPERATING LOSS (NOL) CARRYFORWARDS The amounts and expiration dates should be revealed for any net operating loss carryforwards. Remember, net operating losses can be carried forward for reduction of future taxable income for 20 years. This potential

⁹Prior to 2017, companies were required to classify deferred tax assets and liabilities as current or noncurrent. To simplify presentation, the FASB required that all deferred tax items be classified as noncurrent when it issued "Balance Sheet Classification of Deferred Taxes," *Accounting Standards Update No. 2015-17: (Topic 740)* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2015).

tax benefit can foreshadow desirable cash savings for the company if earnings sufficient to absorb the NOL carryforwards are anticipated before their expiration date. The presence of large net operating loss carryforwards also can make an unprofitable company an attractive target for acquisition by a company that could use those NOL carryforwards to shelter its own earnings from taxes with that loss deduction. If the IRS determines that an acquisition is made solely to obtain the tax benefits of net operating loss carryforwards, the deductions will not be allowed. However, motivation is difficult to determine, so it is not uncommon for companies to purchase other companies to obtain their net operating loss carryforwards.

Coping with Uncertainty in Income Taxes

Few expense items in the income statement rival the size of the income tax expense line, and few are subject to the complexities and differing interpretations inherent in reporting income tax expense. As you might imagine, most companies strive to legitimately reduce their overall tax burden and to reduce or delay cash outflows for taxes.

Even without additional efforts to reduce taxes, most companies' tax returns will include many tax positions that are subject to multiple interpretations. That is, the position management takes with respect to an element of tax expense might differ from the position the IRS or the tax court might take on that same item. Despite good faith positions taken in preparing tax returns, those judgments may not ultimately prevail if challenged by the IRS. Managements' tax positions frequently are subjected to legal scrutiny before the uncertainty ultimately is resolved.

For example, assume that if Derrick Company claims on its tax return a particular deduction it believes is legitimate, that position will save the company \$8 million in 2018 income taxes. Derrick knows that, historically, the IRS has challenged many deductions of this type. Since tax returns usually aren't examined for one, two, or more years, uncertainty exists.

TWO-STEP DECISION PROCESS To deal with that uncertainty, companies are allowed to recognize in the financial statements the tax benefit of a position it takes, such as the reduction in tax expense from Derrick's decision to take the 2018 deduction, only if it is "more likely than not" (greater than 50% chance) to be sustained if challenged.¹⁰ Guidance also prescribes how to *measure* the amount to be recognized if, in fact, it can be recognized. The decision, then, is a "two-step" process.

- Step 1.** A tax benefit may be reflected in the financial statements only if it is "more likely than not" that the company will be able to sustain the tax return position, based on its technical merits.
- Step 2.** A tax benefit should be measured as the largest amount of benefit that is "cumulatively greater than 50 percent likely to be realized" (demonstrated later).

For the Step 1 decision as to whether the position can be sustained, companies must assume that the position will be reviewed by the IRS or other taxing authority and litigated to the "highest court possible," and that the taxing authority has knowledge of all relevant facts.

NOT "MORE LIKELY THAN NOT" Let's say that in the Step 1 decision, Derrick believes the more-likely-than-not criterion is *not* met. This means that none of the tax benefit (reduction in tax expense) can be recorded in 2018. The income tax expense must be recorded at the same amount as if the tax deduction was not taken.

Suppose, for instance, that Derrick's current income tax payable is \$24 million after being reduced by the full \$8 million tax benefit.¹¹ However, if it's *more likely than not* that the tax benefit isn't sustainable upon examination, the benefit can't be recognized as a reduction of tax expense. So, Derrick would record (a) current income tax payable that reflects the entire \$8 million benefit of the deduction, (b) an additional tax liability that represents the obligation to pay an additional \$8 million of taxes under the assumption that the deduction ultimately will not be upheld, and (c) tax expense as if the deduction had never been taken.

● LO16-9

The IRS frequently disagrees with the position a company takes on its tax return.

If there's a 50% chance or less of the company's position being sustained on examination, tax expense can't be reduced to reflect the tax benefit.

¹⁰FASB ASC 740: Income Taxes—Overall (previously "Accounting for Uncertainty in Income Taxes, an Interpretation of FASB Statement No. 109," FASB Interpretation No. 48 (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, June 2006)), commonly called FIN 48.

¹¹For illustration, if pretax accounting income is \$80 million, the tax rate is 40%, and the questionable deduction is \$20 million, income tax payable would be $(\$80 \text{ million} - 20 \text{ million}) \times 40\% = \24 million .

The \$8 million liability is recognized to account for the fact that it is probable that tax officials will disallow the tax treatment used to compute income tax payable.

	(\$ in millions)
Income tax expense (without \$8 tax benefit).....	32
Income tax payable (with \$8 tax benefit).....	24
Liability—projected additional tax.....	8

The \$8 million difference is the tax that Derrick didn't pay because Derrick took the deduction. That amount is potentially due if the deduction is not upheld later. Because the ultimate outcome probably won't be determined within the upcoming year, the *Liability—projected additional tax* is reported as a long-term liability unless it's known to be current.¹²

MEASURING THE TAX BENEFIT Now, let's say that even though Derrick is aware of the IRS's tendency to challenge deductions of this sort, management believes it is more likely than not that the position will be upheld if later challenged. Since Derrick has determined in Step 1 that yes, a tax benefit can be recognized, it now needs to decide how much. That's Step 2.

Suppose the following table represents management's estimates of the likelihood of various amounts of tax benefit that would be upheld:

Likelihood Table	(\$ in millions)				
Amount of the tax benefit that management expects to be sustained	\$8	\$7	\$6	\$5	\$4
Percentage likelihood that the tax position will be sustained at this level	10%	20%	25%	25%	20%
Cumulative probability that at least that much tax position will be sustained	10%	30%	55%	80%	100%

The largest amount that has a cumulative greater-than-50%-chance of being realized is \$6 million (10% + 20% + 25% = 55%).

The amount of tax benefit that Derrick can recognize in the financial statements (reduce tax expense) is \$6 million because it represents the largest amount of benefit that is more likely than not (greater than 50% probability) to be sustained. So, Derrick would record (a) current income tax payable that reflects the entire \$8 million benefit of the deduction, (b) an additional tax liability that represents the obligation to pay an additional \$2 million of taxes under the assumption that \$6 million of tax benefit ultimately will be upheld, and (c) tax expense as if there is a \$6 million tax benefit.

	(\$ in millions)
Income tax expense (with \$6 tax benefit).....	26
Income tax payable (with \$8 tax benefit).....	24
Liability—projected additional tax (\$8 – 6).....	2

Only \$6 million of the tax benefit is recognized in income tax expense.

In summary, the highest amount Derrick might have to pay is the full \$8 million benefit of the 2018 deduction; the least amount, of course, is zero. The most likely amount (the largest amount of benefit that is cumulatively greater than 50 percent likely to be realized) is \$6 million.

Because the most likely amount not to be paid is \$6 million, the most likely additional liability is \$2 million (\$8 – 6 = \$2). That's the amount we record as a *Liability—projected additional tax*, along with the current income tax payable of \$24 million.

RESOLUTION OF THE UNCERTAINTY Now let's consider what happens in the future, when the uncertainty associated with the tax position has been resolved. We'll consider three scenarios. Note that, in each scenario, the "Liability—projected additional tax" gets reduced to zero in the period in which the uncertainty is resolved.

- 1. Worst case scenario.** The entire position is disallowed, such that Derrick owes \$8 million tax (plus any interest and penalties, which we are ignoring).

	(\$ in millions)
Income tax expense	6
Liability—projected additional tax.....	2
Income tax payable (or cash)	8

¹²If a company has any deferred tax assets from net operating loss carryforwards, it generally nets the liability for uncertain tax positions against those deferred tax assets for presentation in the balance sheet, rather than presenting the liability separately. Why? The liability indicates that future tax will be *paid*, and the operating loss carryforward indicates that future tax will be *saved*, so the two are netted.

2. **Best case scenario.** The entire position is upheld, so Derrick owes no additional tax.

	(\$ in millions)
Liability—projected additional tax.....	2
Income tax expense	2

3. **Expected scenario.** The \$6 million position is allowed as expected, so Derrick owes the expected \$2 million tax (plus any interest and penalties, which we are ignoring).

	(\$ in millions)
Liability—projected additional tax.....	2
Income tax payable (or cash)	2

Companies are required to include in the disclosure notes a clear reconciliation of the beginning and ending balance of their liability for unrecognized tax benefits. As an example, Illustration 16–15 includes an excerpt from the tax note of **Staples, Inc.**, for its fiscal year ended January 30, 2016.

The following summarizes the activity related to the Company's unrecognized tax benefits, including those related to discontinued operations (\$ in millions):

	2015	2014	2013
Balance at beginning of fiscal year	\$216	\$281	\$255
Additions for tax positions related to current year	19	22	28
Additions for tax positions of prior years	5	36	4
Reductions for tax positions of prior years	(5)	(88)	—
Reduction for statute of limitations expiration	(69)	(17)	(6)
Settlements	(30)	(18)	—
Balance at end of fiscal year	<u>\$136</u>	<u>\$216</u>	<u>\$281</u>

Illustration 16–15

Disclosure of Deferred Taxes—Staples, Inc.

Real World Financials

Intraperiod Tax Allocation

You should recall that an income statement reports discontinued operations separately from income (or loss) from continuing operations to better allow the user of the statement to isolate irregular components of net income from those that represent recurring business operations.¹³ This helps the user to more accurately project future operations. Because taxes are an important part of operations, the total income tax expense for a reporting period should be allocated between continuing and discontinued operations.

The related tax effect can be either a tax expense or a tax benefit. A gain on disposal of a discontinued operation increases taxable income, so it produces tax expense, while a loss on disposal reduces taxable income, so it produces a tax benefit.¹⁴ For example, a company with a tax rate of 40% would report \$100 million pretax income that includes a \$10 million gain on disposal of a discontinued operation this way:

	(\$ in millions)
Income before tax and discontinued operation (\$100 – 10)	\$ 90
Less: Income tax expense (\$90 × 40%)	(36)
Income before discontinued operation	54
Gain on disposal of discontinued operation (net of \$4 income tax expense)	6
Net income	<u>\$ 60</u>

¹³Until recently, GAAP included another category, extraordinary items, for which income was shown separately net of tax. The FASB eliminated the concept of extraordinary items starting in 2016 when it issued “Income Statement-Extraordinary and Unusual Items,” *Accounting Standards Update No. 2015-01*: (Subtopic 225-20) (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2015).

¹⁴As discussed in Chapter 4, companies separately report (a) any gain or loss from running a discontinued operation prior to disposal, and (b) any gain or loss on disposal of a discontinued operation's assets. For simplicity we focus on reporting taxes for (b), but the same separate net-of-tax presentation is used for (a).

● LO16–10

Additional Consideration

The Balance Sheet Focus of Income Tax Accounting. The way we account for income taxes is a useful example of the FASB's balance sheet emphasis. Rather than calculating tax expense directly, it always is calculated as whatever amount is implied by the combination of income tax payable and the changes that occurred during the period in deferred tax assets, deferred tax liabilities, the valuation allowance for deferred tax assets, and the liability for uncertain tax positions. In fact, we can summarize virtually everything in this chapter by visualizing the journal entry implied by the changes in those accounts. Let's draw some T-accounts to see how that works:

	Deferred Tax Assets		Val. Allowance— Deferred Tax Assets		Deferred Tax Liabilities		Liability for Uncertain Tax Positions	
Beg. bal.	S			U		W		Y
	B	or B	C	or C	D	or D	E	or E
End. Bal.	T			V		X		Z

With these T-accounts in mind, think of a company's tax accounting as including the following steps:

1. Determine income tax payable (tax rate times taxable income). We'll call that number "A."
2. Determine T, V, X, and Z, the ending balances needed in the tax-related balance sheet accounts, as we do in the chapter.
3. Determine whatever changes in those accounts, B, C, D, and E, are needed to reach their required ending balances. We already know the beginning balances in those accounts because they are the same as the ending balances reported in the prior period.
4. Finally, calculate tax expense, **F**, as the amount necessary to balance the journal entry. For example:

Tax expense (to balance)	F	
Deferred tax asset (amount needed to achieve needed balance)	B	
Deferred tax liability (amount needed to achieve needed balance)		D
Valuation allowance—deferred tax asset (amount needed to achieve needed balance)		C
Liability for uncertain tax positions (amount needed to achieve needed balance)		E
Taxes payable (tax rate × taxable income)		A

Tax expense (F) always is a "plug" figure to make the journal entry balance. Usually the plug is a debit, but sometimes its a credit to recognize a tax benefit. Depending on a company's particular circumstances, a debit or a credit could be required to reach the appropriate ending balance in each of the tax-related balance sheet accounts, B, C, D, and E. To the extent these accounts changed because of other transactions (for example, an acquisition), we would account for those effects first and then determine the amounts necessary to reach the appropriate ending balances.

If the \$100 million pretax income included a \$10 million loss, the loss would be reported net of associated tax savings:

	(\$ in millions)
Income before tax and discontinued operation (\$100 + 10)	\$110
Less: Income tax expense (\$110 × 40%)	(44)
Income before discontinued operation	66
Loss on disposal of discontinued operation (net of \$4 income tax benefit)	(6)
Net income	<u>\$ 60</u>

Additional Consideration

If the gain in the earlier example had been of a type taxable at a capital gains tax rate of 30%, it would have been reported net of the specific tax associated with that gain:

Gain on disposal of discontinued operation (net of \$3 income tax expense)	\$7
--	-----

Allocating income taxes among financial statement components in this way within a particular reporting period is referred to as *intraproduct tax allocation*. You should recognize the contrast with *inter* period tax allocation—terminology sometimes used to describe allocating income taxes between two or more reporting periods by recognizing deferred tax assets and liabilities. While interperiod tax allocation is challenging and controversial, intraproduct tax allocation is relatively straightforward and substantially free from controversy.

Allocating income taxes within a particular reporting period is intraproduct tax allocation.

OTHER COMPREHENSIVE INCOME Allocating income tax expense or benefit also applies to components of comprehensive income reported separately from net income. You should recall from our discussions in Chapters 4 and 12 that “comprehensive income” extends our view of income beyond conventional net income to include four types of gains and losses that traditionally haven’t been included in income statements. The other comprehensive income (OCI) items relate to investments, postretirement benefit plans, derivatives, and foreign currency translation. When these OCI items are reported in a statement of comprehensive income and then accumulated in shareholders’ equity, they are reported net of their respective income tax effects.¹⁵

Decision Makers’ Perspective

Income taxes represent one of the largest expenditures that many firms incur. When state, local, and foreign taxes are considered along with federal taxes, the total bite can easily consume 40% of income. A key factor, then, in any decision that managers make should be the impact on taxes. Decision makers must constantly be alert to options that minimize or delay taxes. During the course of this chapter, we encountered situations that avoid taxes (for example, interest on municipal bonds) and those that delay taxes (for example, using accelerated depreciation on the tax return). Astute managers make investment decisions that consider the tax effect of available alternatives. Similarly, outside analysts should consider how effectively management has managed its tax exposure and monitor the current and prospective impact of taxes on their interests in the company.

Consider an example. Large, capital-intensive companies with significant investments in buildings and equipment often have sizable deferred tax liabilities from temporary differences in depreciation. If new investments cause the level of depreciable assets to at least remain the same over time, the deferred tax liability can be effectively delayed indefinitely. Investors and creditors should be watchful for situations that might cause material pay-downs of that deferred tax liability, such as impending plant closings or investment patterns that suggest declining levels of depreciable assets. Unexpected additional tax expenditures can severely diminish an otherwise attractive prospective rate of return.

You also learned in the chapter that deferred tax assets represent future tax benefits. One such deferred tax asset that often reflects sizable future tax deductions is a net operating loss (NOL) carryforward. When a company has a large net operating loss carryforward, a large amount of future income can be earned tax-free. This tax shelter can be a huge advantage, not to be overlooked by careful analysts.

Investment patterns and other disclosures can indicate potential tax expenditures.

¹⁵This can be accomplished by (a) presenting components of other comprehensive income net of related income tax effects or (b) presenting a single tax amount for all, and individual components shown before income tax effects with disclosure of the income taxes allocated to each component either in a disclosure note or parenthetically in the statement.

Net operating loss carryforwards can indicate significant future tax savings.

Deferred tax liabilities increase risk as measured by the debt to equity ratio.

Managers and outsiders are aware that increasing debt increases risk. Deferred tax liabilities increase reported debt. As discussed and demonstrated in the previous chapter, financial risk often is measured by the debt to equity ratio, total liabilities divided by shareholders' equity. Other things being equal, the higher the debt to equity ratio, the higher the risk. Should the deferred tax liability be included in the computation of this ratio? Some analysts will argue that it should be excluded, observing that in many cases the deferred tax liability account remains the same or continually grows larger. Their contention is that no future tax payment will be required. Others, though, contend that is no different from the common situation in which long-term borrowings tend to remain the same or continually grow larger. Research supports the notion that deferred tax liabilities are, in fact, viewed by investors as real liabilities and investors appear to discount them according to the timing and likelihood of the liabilities' settlement.¹⁶

Whenever managerial discretion can materially impact reported earnings, analysts should be wary of the implications for earnings quality assessment. We indicated earlier that the decision as to whether or not a valuation allowance is used, as well as the size of the allowance, is largely discretionary. Research indicates that an increase in a valuation allowance provides useful information, signaling that management is pessimistic about its ability to generate enough future income to benefit from the tax deductions provided by deferred tax assets.¹⁷ However, research also indicates that some companies do use the deferred tax asset valuation allowance account to manage earnings upward to meet analyst forecasts.¹⁸ More generally, a recent survey of nearly 600 corporate tax executives provides evidence that most top management care at least as much about tax expense and its effect on earnings per share as they do about the actual cash taxes that are paid by their companies, and that an important consideration in tax planning is increasing earnings per share.¹⁹ Alert investors should not overlook the potential for companies using tax expense to manage their earnings.

In short, managers who make decisions based on estimated pretax cash flows and outside investors and creditors who make decisions based on pretax income numbers are perilously ignoring one of the most important aspects of those decisions. Taxes should be a primary consideration in any business decision. ●

Concept Review Exercise

MULTIPLE DIFFERENCES AND NET OPERATING LOSS

Mid-South Cellular Systems began operations in 2018. That year, the company reported taxable income of \$25 million. In 2019, its second year of operations, pretax accounting income was \$88 million, which included the following amounts:

1. Insurance expense of \$14 million, representing one-third of a \$42 million, three-year casualty and liability insurance policy that is deducted for tax purposes entirely in 2019.
2. Insurance expense for a \$1 million premium on a life insurance policy for the company president. This is not deductible for tax purposes.
3. An asset with a four-year useful life was acquired last year. It is depreciated by the straight-line method in the income statement. MACRS is used on the tax return, causing deductions for depreciation to be more than straight-line depreciation the first two years but less than straight-line depreciation the next two years (\$ in millions):

	Income Statement	Tax Return	Difference
2018	\$150	\$198	\$ (48)
2019	150	264	(114)
2020	150	90	60
2021	150	48	102
	<u>\$600</u>	<u>\$600</u>	<u>0</u>

¹⁶See Dan Givoly and Carla Hayn, "The Valuation of the Deferred Tax Liability: Evidence from the Stock Market," *The Accounting Review*, April 1992, pp. 394–410.

¹⁷See Greg Miller and Doug Skinner, "Determinants of the Valuation Allowance for Deferred Tax Assets under SFAS No. 109," *The Accounting Review*, April 1998, pp. 213–233.

¹⁸See Sonia O. Rego and Mary Margaret Frank, "Do Managers Use the Valuation Allowance Account to Manage Earnings Around Certain Earnings Targets?" *Journal of the American Taxation Association* 28 (1), 2006, pp. 43–65.

¹⁹See John Graham, Michelle Hanlon, Terry Shevlin, and Nemit Shroff, "Incentives for Tax Planning and Avoidance: Evidence from the Field," *The Accounting Review*, May 2014, pp. 999–1023.

4. Equipment rental revenue of \$80 million, which does not include an additional \$20 million of advance payment for 2020 rent. \$100 million of rental revenue is reported on the 2019 income tax return.

The enacted tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Mid-South Cellular's income taxes for 2019.
2. What is Mid-South Cellular's 2019 net income?

Solution

1. Prepare the journal entry to record Mid-South Cellular's income taxes for 2019.

(\$ in millions)	2018	Current Year 2019	Future Taxable (Deductible) Amounts		Future Taxable Amounts (total)	Future Deductible Amounts (total)
			2020	2021		
Pretax accounting income		\$ 88				
Permanent difference:						
Life insurance premium		1				
Temporary differences:						
Prepaid insurance		(28)	\$ 14	\$ 14	\$ 28	
Depreciation	\$(48)	(114)	60	102	162	
Advance rent received		20	(20)			\$(20)
Net operating loss		\$ (33)				
Loss carryback	(25)	← 25				
Loss carryforward		8 →				(8)
		\$ 0			\$ 190	\$(28)
Enacted tax rate	40%	40%			40%	40%
Tax payable (refundable)	\$(10)	\$ 0				
Deferred tax liability					\$ 76.0	
Deferred tax asset						\$(11.2)
					↓	↓
					Deferred Tax Liability	Deferred Tax Asset
Ending balances:					\$ 76.0	\$ 11.2
Less: Beginning balance					(19.2)	(0.0)
(\$48* × 40%)						
Change in balances					\$ 56.8	\$ 11.2

Differences in tax reporting and financial reporting of both the prepaid insurance and the depreciation create future taxable amounts.

Both the advance rent and the net operating loss carryforward create future deductible amounts.

*2018's only temporary difference.

Journal Entry at the End of 2019

Income tax expense (to balance)	35.6
Receivable—income tax refund (determined above)	10.0
Deferred tax asset (determined above)	11.2
Deferred tax liability (determined above)	56.8

Note: Adjusting pretax accounting income by the permanent difference and the three temporary differences creates a negative taxable income, which is a net operating loss.

2. What is Mid-South Cellular's 2019 net income?

Pretax accounting income	\$88.0
Income tax expense	(35.6)
Net income	<u>\$52.4</u>

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© Image Source

1. **What's the difference? Explain to Laura how differences between financial reporting standards and income tax rules might cause the income tax expense and the amount of income tax paid to differ.** (p. 907) The differences in the rules for computing taxable income and those for financial reporting often cause amounts to be included in taxable income in a different year(s) from the year in which they are recognized for financial reporting purposes. Temporary differences result in future taxable or deductible amounts when the temporary differences reverse. As a result, tax payments frequently occur in years different from the years in which the revenues and expenses that cause the taxes are generated.
2. **What is the conceptual advantage of determining income tax expense as we do?** (p. 908) Income tax expense is the combination of the current tax effect and the deferred tax consequences of the period's activities. Under the asset-liability approach, the objective of accounting for income taxes is to recognize a deferred tax liability or deferred tax asset for the tax consequences of amounts that will become taxable or deductible in future years as a result of transactions or events that already have occurred. A result is to recognize both the current and the deferred tax consequences of the operations of a reporting period.
3. **Are there differences between financial reporting standards and income tax rules that will not cause a difference between income tax expense and the amount of income taxes paid?** (p. 922) Yes. Some differences between accounting income and taxable income are caused by transactions and events that will never affect taxable income or taxes payable. These differences between accounting income and taxable income do not reverse later. These are permanent differences that are disregarded when determining (a) the tax payable currently, (b) the deferred tax effect, and therefore (c) the income tax expense. ●

The Bottom Line

- **LO16-1** Temporary differences produce future taxable amounts when the taxable income will be increased relative to pretax accounting income in one or more future years. These produce deferred tax liabilities for the taxes to be paid on the future taxable amounts. Income tax expense for the year includes an amount for which payment (or receipt) is deferred in addition to the amount for which payment is due currently. The deferred amount is the change in the tax liability (or asset). (p. 908)
- **LO16-2** When the future tax consequence of a temporary difference will be to decrease taxable income relative to pretax accounting income, future deductible amounts are created. These have favorable tax consequences that are recognized as deferred tax assets. (p. 915)
- **LO16-3** Deferred tax assets are recognized for all deductible temporary differences. However, a deferred tax asset is then reduced by a valuation allowance if it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax asset will not be realized. (p. 918)
- **LO16-4** Permanent differences between the reported amount of an asset or liability in the financial statements and its tax basis are those caused by transactions and events that under existing tax law will never affect taxable income or taxes payable. These are disregarded when determining both the tax payable currently, the deferred tax effect, and tax expense. (p. 922)
- **LO16-5** Deferred tax liabilities (and assets) are calculated by multiplying future taxable (and deductible) amounts by the currently enacted tax rates that will apply to them. If a change in a tax law or rate occurs, the deferred tax liability or asset is adjusted to reflect the change in the amount to be paid or recovered. That effect is reflected in tax expense in the year of the enactment of the change in the tax law or rate. (p. 926)
- **LO16-6** When multiple temporary differences exist, the total of the future *taxable* amounts is multiplied by the future tax rate to determine the appropriate balance for the deferred tax liability, and the total of the future *deductible* amounts is multiplied by the future tax rate to determine the appropriate balance for the deferred tax asset. (p. 928)

- **LO16-7** Tax laws permit a net operating loss (NOL) to be used to reduce taxable income in other, profitable years by either a carryback of the loss to up to two prior years or a carryforward of the loss to up to 20 later years. The tax benefit of a net operating loss carryback or a net operating loss carryforward is recognized in the year of the loss. (p. 929)
- **LO16-8** Deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities are classified as noncurrent. If they relate to the same taxable component of the company and the same tax jurisdiction, they are netted against each other and shown as a single noncurrent net deferred tax asset or liability. Otherwise they are not offset against each other for purposes of balance-sheet presentation. Disclosure notes should reveal additional relevant information pertaining to deferred tax amounts reported on the balance sheet, the components of income tax expense, and available operating loss carryforwards. (p. 934)
- **LO16-9** A tax benefit associated with an uncertain tax position may be reflected in the financial statements only if it is “more likely than not” that the company will be able to sustain the tax return position, based on its technical merits. It should be measured as the largest amount of benefit that is cumulatively greater than 50 percent likely to be realized. (p. 935)
- **LO16-10** Through intraperiod tax allocation, the total income tax expense for a reporting period is allocated among the financial statement items that gave rise to it: specifically income (or loss) from continuing operations, discontinued operations, and prior period adjustments (to the beginning retained earnings balance). (p. 937)
- **LO16-11** Despite the similar approaches for accounting for taxation under IFRS and U.S. GAAP, differences in reported amounts for deferred taxes are among the most frequent between the two approaches because a great many of the *nontax* differences between IFRS and U.S. GAAP affect deferred taxes. (pp. 920 and 924) ●

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 16-1** A member of the board of directors is concerned that the company’s income statement reports income tax expense of \$12.3 million, but the income tax obligation to the government for the year is only \$7.9 million. How might the corporate controller explain this difference?
- Q 16-2** A deferred tax liability (or asset) is described as the tax effect of the temporary difference between the financial statement carrying amount (book value) of an asset or liability and its tax basis. Explain this tax effect of the temporary difference. How might it produce a deferred tax liability? A deferred tax asset?
- Q 16-3** Sometimes a temporary difference will produce future deductible amounts. Explain what is meant by future deductible amounts. Describe two general situations that have this effect. How are such situations recognized in the financial statements?
- Q 16-4** The benefit of future deductible amounts can be achieved only if future income is sufficient to take advantage of the deferred deductions. For that reason, not all deferred tax assets will ultimately be realized. How is this possibility reflected in the way we recognize deferred tax assets?
- Q 16-5** Temporary differences result in future taxable or deductible amounts when the related asset or liability is recovered or settled. Some differences, though, are not temporary. What events create permanent differences? What effect do these have on the determination of income taxes payable? Of deferred income taxes? Of tax expense?
- Q 16-6** Identify three examples of differences with no deferred tax consequences.
- Q 16-7** The income tax rate for Hudson Refinery has been 35% for each of its 12 years of operation. Company forecasters expect a much-debated tax reform bill to be passed by Congress early next year. The new tax measure would increase Hudson’s tax rate to 42%. When measuring this year’s deferred tax liability, which rate should Hudson use?
- Q 16-8** Suppose a tax reform bill is enacted that causes the corporate tax rate to change from 34% to 36%. How would this affect an existing deferred tax liability? How would the change be reflected in income?
- Q 16-9** A net operating loss occurs when tax-deductible expenses exceed taxable revenues. Tax laws permit the net operating loss to be used to reduce taxable income in other, profitable years by either a carryback of the loss to prior years or a carryforward of the loss to later years. How are loss carrybacks and loss carryforwards recognized for financial reporting purposes?
- Q 16-10** How are deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities reported in a classified balance sheet?
- Q 16-11** Additional disclosures are required pertaining to deferred tax amounts reported on the balance sheet. What are the needed disclosures?
- Q 16-12** Additional disclosures are required pertaining to the income tax expense reported in the income statement. What are the needed disclosures?

Q 16-13 Accounting for uncertainty in tax positions is prescribed by GAAP in FASB ASC 740-10: Income Taxes—Overall (previously *FASB Interpretation No. 48 (FIN 48)*). Describe the two-step process required by GAAP.

Q 16-14 What is intraperiod tax allocation?



IFRS

Q 16-15 IFRS and U.S. GAAP follow similar approaches to accounting for taxation. Nevertheless, differences in reported amounts for deferred taxes are among the most frequent between IFRS and U.S. GAAP. Why?

Brief Exercises



BE 16-1

Temporary difference

• LO16-1

A company reports *pretax accounting income* of \$10 million, but because of a single temporary difference, *taxable income* is only \$7 million. No temporary differences existed at the beginning of the year, and the tax rate is 40%. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record income taxes.

BE 16-2

Temporary difference;
determine taxable income;
determine prior year deferred tax amount

• LO16-1

Kara Fashions uses straight-line depreciation for financial statement reporting and MACRS for income tax reporting. Three years after its purchase, one of Kara's buildings has a book value of \$400,000 and a tax basis of \$300,000. There were no other temporary differences and no permanent differences. Taxable income was \$4 million and Kara's tax rate is 40%. What is the deferred tax liability to be reported in the balance sheet? Assuming that the deferred tax liability balance was \$32,000 the previous year, prepare the appropriate journal entry to record income taxes this year.

BE 16-3

Temporary difference

• LO16-2

A company reports *pretax accounting income* of \$10 million, but because of a single temporary difference, *taxable income* is \$12 million. No temporary differences existed at the beginning of the year, and the tax rate is 40%. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record income taxes.

BE 16-4

Temporary difference;
income tax payable given

• LO16-2

In 2018, Ryan Management collected rent revenue for 2019 tenant occupancy. For financial reporting, the rent is recorded as deferred revenue and then recognized as income in the period tenants occupy rental property, but for income tax reporting it is taxed when collected. The deferred portion of the rent collected in 2018 was \$50 million. Taxable income is \$180 million. No temporary differences existed at the beginning of the year, and the tax rate is 40%. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record income taxes.

BE 16-5

Temporary difference;
income tax payable given

• LO16-2

Refer to the situation described in BE 16-4. Suppose the deferred portion of the rent collected was \$40 million at the end of 2019. Taxable income is \$200 million. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record income taxes.

BE 16-6

Valuation allowance

• LO16-2, LO16-3

At the end of the year, the deferred tax asset account had a balance of \$12 million attributable to a cumulative temporary difference of \$30 million in a liability for estimated expenses. Taxable income is \$35 million. No temporary differences existed at the beginning of the year, and the tax rate is 40%. Prepare the journal entry(s) to record income taxes, assuming it is more likely than not that one-fourth of the deferred tax asset will not ultimately be realized.

BE 16-7

Valuation allowance

• LO16-2, LO16-3

VeriFone Systems is a provider of electronic card payment terminals, peripherals, network products, and software. In its 2015 annual report, the company reported deferred tax assets totaling about \$398 million. The company also reported valuation allowances totaling about \$332 million. What would motivate VeriFone to have a valuation allowance almost equal to its deferred tax assets?

BE 16-8

Temporary and permanent differences;
determine deferred tax consequences

• LO16-1, LO16-4

Differences between financial statement and taxable income were as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
Pretax accounting income	\$300
Permanent difference	(24)
	<u>276</u>
Temporary difference	(18)
Taxable income	<u>\$258</u>

The cumulative temporary difference to date is \$40 million (also the future taxable amount). The enacted tax rate is 40%. What is deferred tax asset or liability to be reported in the balance sheet?

BE 16-9

Calculate taxable income

- LO16-1, LO16-4

Shannon Polymers uses straight-line depreciation for financial reporting purposes for equipment costing \$800,000 and with an expected useful life of four years and no residual value. For tax purposes, the deduction is 40%, 30%, 20%, and 10% in those years. Pretax accounting income the first year the equipment was used was \$900,000, which includes interest revenue of \$20,000 from municipal bonds. Other than the two described, there are no differences between accounting income and taxable income. The enacted tax rate is 40%. Prepare the journal entry to record income taxes.

BE 16-10

Multiple tax rates

- LO16-5

J-Matt, Inc., had pretax accounting income of \$291,000 and taxable income of \$300,000 in 2018. The only difference between accounting and taxable income is estimated product warranty costs for sales this year. Warranty payments are expected to be in equal amounts over the next three years. Recent tax legislation will change the tax rate from the current 40% to 30% in 2020. Determine the amounts necessary to record J-Matt's income taxes for 2018 and prepare the appropriate journal entry.

BE 16-11

Change in tax rate

- LO16-5

Superior Developers sells lots for residential development. When lots are sold, Superior recognizes income for financial reporting purposes in the year of the sale. For some lots, Superior recognizes income for tax purposes when collected. In the *prior* year, income recognized for financial reporting purposes for lots sold this way was \$20 million, which would be collected equally over the next two years. The enacted tax rate was 40%. This year, a new tax law was enacted, revising the tax rate from 40% to 35% beginning next year. Calculate the amount by which Superior should reduce its deferred tax liability this year.

BE 16-12

Net operating loss carryforward

- LO16-7

During its first year of operations, **Nile.com** reported a net operating loss of \$15 million for financial reporting and tax purposes. The enacted tax rate is 40%. Prepare the journal entry to recognize the income tax benefit of the net operating loss.

BE 16-13

Net operating loss carryback

- LO16-7

AirParts Corporation reported a net operating loss of \$25 million for financial reporting and tax purposes. Taxable income last year and the previous year, respectively, was \$20 million and \$15 million. The enacted tax rate each year is 40%. Prepare the journal entry to recognize the income tax benefit of the net operating loss. AirParts elects the carryback option.

BE 16-14

Tax uncertainty

- LO16-9

First Bank has some question as to the tax-free nature of \$5 million of its municipal bond portfolio. This amount is excluded from First Bank's taxable income of \$55 million. Management has determined that there is a 65% chance that the tax-free status of this interest can't withstand scrutiny of taxing authorities. Assuming a 40% tax rate, what amount of income tax expense should the bank report?

BE 16-15

Intraperiod tax allocation

- LO16-10

Southeast Airlines had pretax earnings of \$65 million, including a gain on disposal of a discontinued operation of \$10 million. The company's tax rate is 40%. What is the amount of income tax expense that Southeast should report in its income statement? How should the gain on disposal of a discontinued operation be reported?

Exercises

**E 16-1**

Temporary difference; taxable income given

- LO16-1

Alvis Corporation reports *pretax accounting income* of \$400,000, but due to a single temporary difference, *taxable income* is only \$250,000. At the beginning of the year, no temporary differences existed.

Required:

1. Assuming a tax rate of 35%, what will be Alvis's net income?
2. What will Alvis report in the balance sheet pertaining to income taxes?

E 16-2

Determine taxable income; determine prior year deferred tax amount

- LO16-1

On January 1, 2013, Ameen Company purchased a building for \$36 million. Ameen uses straight-line depreciation for financial statement reporting and MACRS for income tax reporting. At December 31, 2017, the book value of the building was \$30 million and its tax basis was \$20 million. At December 31, 2018, the book value of the building was \$28 million and its tax basis was \$13 million. There were no other temporary differences and no permanent differences. Pretax accounting income for 2018 was \$45 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record Ameen's 2018 income taxes. Assume an income tax rate of 40%.
2. What is Ameen's 2018 net income?

E 16-3
Taxable income given; calculate deferred tax liability
● LO16-1

Ayres Services acquired an asset for \$80 million in 2018. The asset is depreciated for financial reporting purposes over four years on a straight-line basis (no residual value). For tax purposes the asset's cost is depreciated by MACRS. The enacted tax rate is 40%. Amounts for pretax accounting income, depreciation, and taxable income in 2018, 2019, 2020, and 2021 are as follows:

	(\$ in millions)			
	2018	2019	2020	2021
Pretax accounting income	\$330	\$350	\$365	\$400
Depreciation on the income statement	20	20	20	20
Depreciation on the tax return	(25)	(33)	(15)	(7)
Taxable income	<u>\$325</u>	<u>\$337</u>	<u>\$370</u>	<u>\$413</u>

Required:
For December 31 of each year, determine (a) the temporary book-tax difference for the depreciable asset and (b) the balance to be reported in the deferred tax liability account.

E 16-4
Temporary difference; income tax payable given
● LO16-2

In 2018, DFS Medical Supply collected rent revenue for 2019 tenant occupancy. For income tax reporting, the rent is taxed when collected. For financial statement reporting, the rent is recorded as deferred revenue and then recognized as income in the period tenants occupy the rental property. The deferred portion of the rent collected in 2018 amounted to \$300,000 at December 31, 2018. DFS had no temporary differences at the beginning of the year.

Required:
Assuming an income tax rate of 40% and 2018 income tax payable of \$950,000, prepare the journal entry to record income taxes for 2018.

E 16-5
Temporary difference; future deductible amounts; taxable income given
● LO16-2

Lance Lawn Services reports warranty expense by estimating the amount that eventually will be paid to satisfy warranties on its product sales. For tax purposes, the expense is deducted when the cost is incurred. At December 31, 2018, Lance has a warranty liability of \$1 million and taxable income of \$75 million. At December 31, 2017, Lance reported a deferred tax asset of \$435,000 related to this difference in reporting warranties, its only temporary difference. The enacted tax rate is 40% each year.

Required:
Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record Lance's income tax provision for 2018.

E 16-6
Identify future taxable amounts and future deductible amounts
● LO16-1, LO16-2

Listed below are 10 causes of temporary differences. For each temporary difference, indicate (by letter) whether it will create future deductible amounts (D) or future taxable amounts (T).

Temporary Difference	
_____	1. Accrual of loss contingency; tax-deductible when paid
_____	2. Newspaper subscriptions; taxable when received, recognized for financial reporting when the performance obligation is satisfied
_____	3. Prepaid rent; tax-deductible when paid
_____	4. Accrued bond interest expense; tax-deductible when paid
_____	5. Prepaid insurance; tax-deductible when paid
_____	6. Unrealized loss from recording investments at fair value; tax-deductible when investments are sold
_____	7. Warranty expense; estimated for financial reporting when products are sold; deducted for tax purposes when paid
_____	8. Advance rent receipts on an operating lease as the lessor; taxable when received
_____	9. Straight-line depreciation for financial reporting; accelerated depreciation for tax purposes
_____	10. Accrued expense for employee postretirement benefits; tax-deductible when subsequent payments are made

E 16-7
Identify future taxable amounts and future deductible amounts
● LO16-1, LO16-2

(This is a variation of E 16-6, modified to focus on the balance sheet accounts related to the deferred tax amounts.)
Listed below are 10 causes of temporary differences. For each temporary difference indicate the balance sheet account for which the situation creates a temporary difference.

Temporary Difference	
_____	1. Accrual of loss contingency; tax-deductible when paid
_____	2. Newspaper subscriptions; taxable when received, recognized for financial reporting when the performance obligation is satisfied
_____	3. Prepaid rent; tax-deductible when paid
_____	4. Accrued bond interest expense; tax-deductible when paid
_____	5. Prepaid insurance; tax-deductible when paid

(continued)

(concluded)

- _____ 6. Unrealized loss from recording investments at fair value; tax-deductible when investments are sold
- _____ 7. Warranty expense; estimated for financial reporting when products are sold; deducted for tax purposes when paid
- _____ 8. Advance rent receipts on an operating lease as the lessor; taxable when received
- _____ 9. Straight-line depreciation for financial reporting; accelerated depreciation for tax purposes
- _____ 10. Accrued expense for employee postretirement benefits; tax-deductible when subsequent payments are made

E 16-8

Calculate income tax amounts under various circumstances

• LO16-1, LO16-2

Four independent situations are described below. Each involves future deductible amounts and/or future taxable amounts produced by temporary differences:

	(\$ in thousands)			
	Situation			
	1	2	3	4
Taxable income	\$85	\$215	\$195	\$260
Future deductible amounts	15		20	20
Future taxable amounts		15	15	30
Balance(s) at beginning of the year:				
Deferred tax asset	2		9	4
Deferred tax liability		2	2	

The enacted tax rate is 40%.

Required:

For each situation, determine the:

- Income tax payable currently
- Deferred tax asset—balance
- Deferred tax asset—change (dr) cr
- Deferred tax liability—balance
- Deferred tax liability—change (dr) cr
- Income tax expense

E 16-9

Determine taxable income

• LO16-1, LO16-2

Eight independent situations are described below. Each involves future deductible amounts and/or future taxable amounts (\$ in millions).

	Temporary Differences Reported First on:			
	The Income Statement		The Tax Return	
	Revenue	Expense	Revenue	Expense
1.		\$20		
2.	\$20			
3.			\$20	
4.				\$20
5.	15	20		
6.		20	15	
7.	15	20		10
8.	15	20	5	10

Required:

For each situation, determine taxable income, assuming pretax accounting income is \$100 million.

E 16-10

Deferred tax asset; taxable income given; valuation allowance

• LO16-3

At the end of 2017, Payne Industries had a deferred tax asset account with a balance of \$30 million attributable to a temporary book-tax difference of \$75 million in a liability for estimated expenses. At the end of 2018, the temporary difference is \$70 million. Payne has no other temporary differences and no valuation allowance for the deferred tax asset. Taxable income for 2018 is \$180 million and the tax rate is 40%.

Required:

- Prepare the journal entry(s) to record Payne's income taxes for 2018, assuming it is more likely than not that the deferred tax asset will be realized.
- Prepare the journal entry(s) to record Payne's income taxes for 2018, assuming it is more likely than not that one-fourth of the deferred tax asset will ultimately be realized.

E 16-11

Deferred tax asset; income tax payable given; previous balance in valuation allowance

• LO16-3

(This is a variation of E 16-10, modified to assume a previous balance in the valuation allowance.)

At the end of 2017, Payne Industries had a deferred tax asset account with a balance of \$30 million attributable to a temporary book-tax difference of \$75 million in a liability for estimated expenses. At the end of 2018, the temporary difference is \$70 million. Payne has no other temporary differences. Taxable income for 2018 is \$180 million and the tax rate is 40%.

Payne has a valuation allowance of \$10 million for the deferred tax asset at the beginning of 2018.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry(s) to record Payne's income taxes for 2018, assuming it is more likely than not that the deferred tax asset will be realized.
2. Prepare the journal entry(s) to record Payne's income taxes for 2018, assuming it is more likely than not that one-fourth of the deferred tax asset will ultimately be realized.

E 16-12

FASB codification research; valuation allowance

• LO16-3



When a company records a deferred tax asset, it may need to also report a valuation allowance if it is "more likely than not" that some portion or all of the deferred tax asset will not be realized. The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on disclosure requirements pertaining to how a firm should determine whether a valuation allowance for deferred tax assets is needed using the FASB's Codification Research System at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). What is the specific citation that describes the guidelines for determining the disclosure requirements?
2. What are the guidelines?

E 16-13

Multiple differences; calculate taxable income

• LO16-1, LO16-4, LO16-6

Southern Atlantic Distributors began operations in January 2018 and purchased a delivery truck for \$40,000. Southern Atlantic plans to use straight-line depreciation over a four-year expected useful life for financial reporting purposes. For tax purposes, the deduction is 50% of cost in 2018, 30% in 2019, and 20% in 2020. Pretax accounting income for 2018 was \$300,000, which includes interest revenue of \$40,000 from municipal bonds. The enacted tax rate is 40%.

Required:

Assuming no differences between accounting income and taxable income other than those described above:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record income taxes in 2018.
2. What is Southern Atlantic's 2018 net income?

E 16-14

Multiple differences

• LO16-4, LO16-6

For the year ended December 31, 2018, Fidelity Engineering reported pretax accounting income of \$977,000. Selected information for 2018 from Fidelity's records follows:

Interest income on municipal bonds	\$32,000
Depreciation claimed on the 2018 tax return in excess of depreciation on the income statement	55,000
Carrying amount of depreciable assets in excess of their tax basis at year-end	85,000
Warranty expense reported on the income statement	26,000
Actual warranty expenditures in 2018	16,000

Fidelity's income tax rate is 40%. At January 1, 2018, Fidelity's records indicated balances of zero and \$12,000 in its deferred tax asset and deferred tax liability accounts, respectively.

Required:

1. Determine the amounts necessary to record income taxes for 2018, and prepare the appropriate journal entry.
2. What is Fidelity's 2018 net income?

E 16-15

Multiple tax rates

• LO16-2, LO16-5

Allmond Corporation, organized on January 3, 2018, had pretax accounting income of \$14 million and taxable income of \$20 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The 2018 tax rate is 35%. The only difference between accounting income and taxable income is estimated product warranty costs. Expected payments and scheduled tax rates (based on recent tax legislation) are as follows:

2019	\$2 million	30%
2020	1 million	30%
2021	1 million	30%
2022	2 million	25%

Required:

1. Determine the amounts necessary to record Allmond's income taxes for 2018 and prepare the appropriate journal entry.
2. What is Allmond's 2018 net income?

E 16-16

Change in tax rates; calculate taxable income

• LO16-1, LO16-5

Arnold Industries has pretax accounting income of \$33 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The tax rate is 40%. The only difference between accounting income and taxable income relates to an operating lease in which Arnold is the lessee. The inception of the lease was December 28, 2018. An \$8 million advance rent payment at the inception of the lease is tax-deductible in 2018 but, for financial reporting purposes, represents prepaid rent expense to be recognized equally over the four-year lease term.

Required:

1. Determine the amounts necessary to record Arnold's income taxes for 2018, and prepare the appropriate journal entry.
2. Determine the amounts necessary to record Arnold's income taxes for 2019, and prepare the appropriate journal entry. Pretax accounting income was \$50 million for the year ended December 31, 2019.
3. Assume a new tax law is enacted in 2019 that causes the tax rate to change from 40% to 30% beginning in 2020. Determine the amounts necessary to record Arnold's income taxes for 2019, and prepare the appropriate journal entry.
4. Why is Arnold's 2019 income tax expense different when the tax rate change occurs from what it would be without the change?

E 16-17

Deferred taxes; change in tax rates

• LO16-1, LO16-5

Bronson Industries reported a deferred tax liability of \$8 million for the year ended December 31, 2017, related to a temporary difference of \$20 million. The tax rate was 40%. The temporary difference is expected to reverse in 2019, at which time the deferred tax liability will become payable. There are no other temporary differences in 2017-2019. Assume a new tax law is enacted in 2018 that causes the tax rate to change from 40% to 30% beginning in 2019. (The rate remains 40% for 2018 taxes.) Taxable income in 2018 is \$30 million.

Required:

Determine the effect of the change and prepare the appropriate journal entry to record Bronson's income tax expense in 2018. What adjustment, if any, is needed to revise retained earnings as a result of the change?

E 16-18

Multiple temporary differences; record income taxes

• LO16-6

The information that follows pertains to Esther Food Products:

- a. At December 31, 2018, temporary differences were associated with the following future taxable (deductible) amounts:

Depreciation	\$ 60,000
Prepaid expenses	17,000
Warranty expenses	(12,000)

- b. No temporary differences existed at the beginning of 2018.
- c. Pretax accounting income was \$80,000 and taxable income was \$15,000 for the year ended December 31, 2018.
- d. The tax rate is 40%.

Required:

Determine the amounts necessary to record income taxes for 2018, and prepare the appropriate journal entry.

E 16-19

Multiple temporary differences; record income taxes

• LO16-6

The information that follows pertains to Richards Refrigeration, Inc.:

- a. At December 31, 2018, temporary differences existed between the financial statement carrying amounts and the tax bases of the following (\$ in millions):

	Carrying Amount	Tax Basis	Future Taxable (Deductible) Amount
Buildings and equipment (net of accumulated depreciation)	\$120	\$90	\$ 30
Prepaid insurance	50	0	50
Liability—loss contingency	25	0	(25)

- b. No temporary differences existed at the beginning of 2018.
- c. Pretax accounting income was \$200 million and taxable income was \$145 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Determine the amounts necessary to record income taxes for 2018, and prepare the appropriate journal entry.
2. What is the 2018 net income?

E 16-20

Net operating loss
carryforward

• LO16-7

During 2018, its first year of operations, Baginski Steel Corporation reported a net operating loss of \$375,000 for financial reporting and tax purposes. The enacted tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to recognize the income tax benefit of the net operating loss. Assume the weight of available evidence suggests future taxable income sufficient to benefit from future deductible amounts from the net operating loss carryforward.
2. Show the lower portion of the 2018 income statement that reports the income tax benefit of the net operating loss.

E 16-21

Net operating
loss carryback

• LO16-7

Wynn Sheet Metal reported a net operating loss of \$100,000 for financial reporting and tax purposes in 2018. The enacted tax rate is 40%. Taxable income, tax rates, and income taxes paid in Wynn's first four years of operation were as follows:

	Taxable Income	Tax Rates	Income Taxes Paid
2014	\$60,000	30%	\$18,000
2015	70,000	30	21,000
2016	80,000	40	32,000
2017	60,000	45	27,000

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to recognize the income tax benefit of the net operating loss. Wynn elects the carryback option.
2. Show the lower portion of the 2018 income statement that reports the income tax benefit of the net operating loss.

E 16-22

Net operating loss
carryback and
carryforward

• LO16-7

(This exercise is based on the situation described in E 16-21, modified to include a carryforward in addition to a carryback.)

Wynn Sheet Metal reported a net operating loss of \$160,000 for financial reporting and tax purposes in 2018. The enacted tax rate is 40%. Taxable income, tax rates, and income taxes paid in Wynn's first four years of operation were as follows:

	Taxable Income	Tax Rates	Income Taxes Paid
2014	\$60,000	30%	\$18,000
2015	70,000	30	21,000
2016	80,000	40	32,000
2017	60,000	45	27,000

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to recognize the income tax benefit of the net operating loss. Wynn elects the carryback option.
2. Show the lower portion of the 2018 income statement that reports the income tax benefit of the net operating loss.

E 16-23

Identifying
income tax
deferrals

• LO16-1, LO16-2,
LO16-4, LO16-7

Listed below are ten independent situations. For each situation indicate (by letter) whether it will create a deferred tax asset (A), a deferred tax liability (L), or neither (N).

Situation

1. Advance payments on insurance, deductible when paid
2. Estimated warranty costs; tax deductible when paid
3. Rent revenue collected in advance; cash basis for tax purposes
4. Interest received from investments in municipal bonds
5. Prepaid expenses, tax deductible when paid
6. Net operating loss carryforward
7. Net operating loss carryback
8. Straight-line depreciation for financial reporting; MACRS for tax purposes
9. Organization costs expensed when incurred; tax deductible over 15 years
10. Life insurance proceeds received upon the death of the company president

E 16-24

Multiple temporary differences; balance sheet presentation

- LO16-4, LO16-5, LO16-6, LO16-8

At December 31, DePaul Corporation had a \$16 million balance in its deferred tax asset account and a \$68 million balance in its deferred tax liability account. The balances were due to the following cumulative temporary differences:

1. Estimated warranty expense, \$15 million: expense recorded in the year of the sale; tax-deductible when paid (one-year warranty).
2. Depreciation expense, \$120 million: straight-line in the income statement; MACRS on the tax return.
3. Income from installment sales of properties, \$50 million: income recorded in the year of the sale; taxable when received equally over the next five years.
4. Rent revenue collected in advance, \$25 million; taxable in the year collected; recorded as income when the performance obligation is satisfied in the following year.

Required:

Assuming DePaul will show a single noncurrent net amount in its December 31 balance sheet, indicate that amount and whether it is a net deferred tax asset or liability. The tax rate is 40%.

E 16-25

Multiple tax rates

- LO16-1, LO16-4, LO16-5

Case Development began operations in December 2018. When property is sold on an installment basis, Case recognizes installment income for financial reporting purposes in the year of the sale. For tax purposes, installment income is reported by the installment method. 2018 installment income was \$600,000 and will be collected over the next three years. Scheduled collections and enacted tax rates for 2019–2021 are as follows:

2019	\$150,000	30%
2020	250,000	40
2021	200,000	40

Pretax accounting income for 2018 was \$810,000, which includes interest revenue of \$10,000 from municipal bonds. The enacted tax rate for 2018 is 30%.

Required:

1. Assuming no differences between accounting income and taxable income other than those described above, prepare the appropriate journal entry to record Case's 2018 income taxes.
2. What is Case's 2018 net income?

E 16-26

Multiple differences; multiple tax rates

- LO16-1, LO16-2, LO16-4, LO16-5, LO16-6

(This exercise is a variation of E 16-25, modified to include a second temporary difference.)

Case Development began operations in December 2018. When property is sold on an installment basis, Case recognizes installment income for financial reporting purposes in the year of the sale. For tax purposes, installment income is reported by the installment method. 2018 installment income was \$600,000 and will be collected over the next three years. Scheduled collections and enacted tax rates for 2019–2021 are as follows:

2019	\$150,000	30%
2020	250,000	40
2021	200,000	40

Case also had product warranty costs of \$80,000 expensed for financial reporting purposes in 2018. For tax purposes, only the \$20,000 of warranty costs actually paid in 2018 was deducted. The remaining \$60,000 will be deducted for tax purposes when paid over the next three years as follows:

2019	\$20,000
2020	25,000
2021	15,000

Pretax accounting income for 2018 was \$810,000, which includes interest revenue of \$10,000 from municipal bonds. The enacted tax rate for 2018 is 30%.

Required:

1. Assuming no differences between accounting income and taxable income other than those described above, prepare the appropriate journal entry to record Case's 2018 income taxes.
2. What is Case's 2018 net income?

E 16-27

Balance sheet classification

- LO16-8

As of December 31, 2016, Lange Company has the following deferred tax assets and liabilities:

Deferred tax assets	
Pension plans	\$300,000
Inventory	200,000
Total deferred tax assets	\$500,000

(continued)

(concluded)

Deferred tax liabilities	
Property, plant and equipment	\$100,000
Unrealized gains on investments	350,000
Total deferred tax liabilities.....	<u>\$450,000</u>

Required:

1. Assume that all of Lange's deferred tax assets and liabilities are in the same tax jurisdiction. How would deferred taxes be shown on Lange's balance sheet?
2. Assume that the deferred tax effects of Lange's pension plans and unrealized gains on investments occurred in a different tax jurisdiction from Lange's other deferred tax effects. How would deferred taxes be shown on Lange's balance sheet?

E 16-28Concepts;
terminology

- LO16-1 through LO16-8

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with accounting for income taxes. Pair each item from List A with the item from List B (by letter) that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. No tax consequences	a. Deferred tax liability
_____ 2. Originates, then reverses	b. Deferred tax asset
_____ 3. Reverse deferred tax amounts	c. 2 years
_____ 4. Operating loss	d. Current and deferred tax consequence combined
_____ 5. Future tax effect of prepaid expenses; tax deductible when paid	e. Temporary difference
_____ 6. Loss carryback	f. Specific tax rates times amounts reversing each year
_____ 7. Future tax effect of estimated warranty expense	g. Nontemporary differences
_____ 8. Valuation allowance	h. When enacted tax rate changes
_____ 9. Phased-in change in rates	i. Net deferred tax asset or liability
_____ 10. Balance sheet presentation	j. "More likely than not" test
_____ 11. Individual tax consequences of financial statement components	k. Intraproduct tax allocation
_____ 12. Income tax expense	l. Negative taxable income

E 16-29Tax credit;
uncertainty
regarding
sustainability

- LO16-9

Delta Catfish Company has taken a position in its tax return to claim a tax credit of \$10 million (direct reduction in taxes payable) and has determined that its sustainability is "more likely than not," based on its technical merits. Delta has developed the probability table shown below of all possible material outcomes (\$ in millions):

Probability Table

Amount of the tax benefit that management expects to receive	\$10	\$8	\$6	\$4	\$2
Percentage likelihood that the tax benefit will be sustained at this level	10%	20%	25%	20%	25%

Delta's taxable income is \$85 million for the year. Its effective tax rate is 40%. The tax credit would be a direct reduction in current taxes payable.

Required:

1. At what amount would Delta measure the tax benefit in its income statement?
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entry for Delta to record its income taxes for the year.

E 16-30Intraproduct tax
allocation

- LO16-10

The following income statement does not reflect intraproduct tax allocation.

Required:

Recast the income statement to reflect intraproduct tax allocation.

INCOME STATEMENT
For the Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2018
(\$ in millions)

Revenues	\$830
Cost of goods sold	<u>(350)</u>
Gross profit	480
Operating expenses	<u>(180)</u>
Income tax expense	<u>(86)</u>
Income before discontinued operations	214
Loss from discontinued operations	<u>(85)</u>
Net income	<u>\$129</u>

The company's tax rate is 40%.

E 16-31

FASB codification research

- LO16-5, LO16-8, LO16-10



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

- The specific items to which income tax expense is allocated for intraperiod tax allocation.
- The tax rate used to calculate deferred tax assets and liabilities.
- The required disclosures in the notes to financial statements for the components of income tax expense.

Problems

**P 16-1**

Single temporary difference originates each year for four years

- LO16-1



Alsup Consulting sometimes performs services for which it receives payment at the conclusion of the engagement, up to six months after services commence. Alsup recognizes service revenue for financial reporting purposes when the services are performed. For tax purposes, revenue is reported when fees are collected. Service revenue, collections, and pretax accounting income for 2017–2020 are as follows:

	Service Revenue	Collections	Pretax Accounting Income
2017	\$650,000	\$620,000	\$186,000
2018	750,000	770,000	250,000
2019	715,000	700,000	220,000
2020	700,000	720,000	200,000

There are no differences between accounting income and taxable income other than the temporary difference described above. The enacted tax rate for each year is 40%.

Required:

- Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record Alsup's 2018 income taxes.
- Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record Alsup's 2019 income taxes.
- Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record Alsup's 2020 income taxes.

(Hint: You may find it helpful to prepare a schedule that shows the balances in service revenue receivable at December 31, 2017–2020.)

P 16-2

Temporary difference; determine deferred tax amount for three years

- LO16-2

Times-Roman Publishing Company reports the following amounts in its first three years of operation:

(\$ in thousands)	2018	2019	2020
Pretax accounting income	\$250	\$240	\$230
Taxable income	290	220	260

The difference between pretax accounting income and taxable income is due to subscription revenue for one-year magazine subscriptions being reported for tax purposes in the year received, but reported in the income statement in later years when the performance obligation is satisfied. The income tax rate is 40% each year. Times-Roman anticipates profitable operations in the future.

Required:

- What is the balance sheet account for which a temporary difference is created by this situation?
- For each year, indicate the cumulative amount of the temporary difference at year-end.
- Determine the balance in the related deferred tax account at the end of each year. Is it a deferred tax asset or a deferred tax liability?

P 16-3

Change in tax rate; single temporary difference

- LO16-1, LO16-5

Dixon Development began operations in December 2018. When lots for industrial development are sold, Dixon recognizes income for financial reporting purposes in the year of the sale. For some lots, Dixon recognizes income for tax purposes when collected. Income recognized for financial reporting purposes in 2018 for lots sold this way was \$12 million, which will be collected over the next three years. Scheduled collections for 2019–2021 are as follows:

2019	\$ 4 million
2020	5 million
2021	3 million
	<u>\$12 million</u>

Pretax accounting income for 2018 was \$16 million. The enacted tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Assuming no differences between accounting income and taxable income other than those described above, prepare the journal entry to record income taxes in 2018.
2. Suppose a new tax law, revising the tax rate from 40% to 35%, beginning in 2020, is enacted in 2019, when pretax accounting income was \$15 million. No 2019 lot sales qualified for the special tax treatment. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record income taxes in 2019.
3. If the new tax rate had not been enacted, what would have been the appropriate balance in the deferred tax liability account at the end of 2019? Why?

P 16-4

Change in tax rate; record taxes for four years

• LO16-1, LO16-5



Zekany Corporation would have had identical income before taxes on both its income tax returns and income statements for the years 2018 through 2021 except for differences in depreciation on an operational asset. The asset cost \$120,000 and is depreciated for income tax purposes in the following amounts:

2018	\$39,600
2019	52,800
2020	18,000
2021	9,600

The operational asset has a four-year life and no residual value. The straight-line method is used for financial reporting purposes.

Income amounts before depreciation expense and income taxes for each of the four years were as follows:

	2018	2019	2020	2021
Accounting income before taxes and depreciation	\$60,000	\$80,000	\$70,000	\$70,000

Assume the average and marginal income tax rate for 2018 and 2019 was 30%; however, during 2019, tax legislation was passed to raise the tax rate to 40% beginning in 2020. The 40% rate remained in effect through the years 2020 and 2021. Both the accounting and income tax periods end December 31.

Required:

Prepare the journal entries to record income taxes for the years 2018 through 2021.

P 16-5

Change in tax rate; record taxes for four years

• LO16-1, LO16-4, LO16-5



The DeVille Company reported pretax accounting income on its income statement as follows:

2018	\$350,000
2019	270,000
2020	340,000
2021	380,000

Included in the income of 2018 was an installment sale of property in the amount of \$50,000. However, for tax purposes, DeVille reported the income in the year cash was collected. Cash collected on the installment sale was \$20,000 in 2019, \$25,000 in 2020, and \$5,000 in 2021.

Included in the 2020 income was \$15,000 interest from investments in municipal bonds.

The enacted tax rate for 2018 and 2019 was 30%, but during 2019, new tax legislation was passed reducing the tax rate to 25% for the years 2020 and beyond.

Required:

Prepare the year-end journal entries to record income taxes for the years 2018–2021.

P 16-6

Multiple differences; temporary difference yet to originate; multiple tax rates

• LO16-5, LO16-6



You are the new accounting manager at the Barry Transport Company. Your CFO has asked you to provide input on the company's income tax position based on the following:

1. Pretax accounting income was \$41 million and taxable income was \$8 million for the year ended December 31, 2018.
2. The difference was due to three items:
 - a. Tax depreciation exceeds book depreciation by \$30 million in 2018 for the business complex acquired that year. This amount is scheduled to be \$60 million in 2019 and to reverse as (\$50 million) and (\$40 million) in 2020 and 2021, respectively.
 - b. Insurance of \$9 million was paid in 2018 for 2019 coverage.
 - c. A \$6 million loss contingency was accrued in 2018, to be paid in 2018.

3. No temporary differences existed at the beginning of 2018.
4. The tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Determine the amounts necessary to record income taxes for 2018, and prepare the appropriate journal entry.
2. Assume the enacted federal income tax law specifies that the tax rate will change from 40% to 35% in 2020. When scheduling the reversal of the depreciation difference, you were uncertain as to how to deal with the fact that the difference will continue to originate in 2019 before reversing the next two years. Upon consulting **PricewaterhouseCoopers'** *Comperio* database, you found:

.441 Depreciable and amortizable assets

Only the reversals of the temporary difference at the balance sheet date would be scheduled. Future originations are not considered in determining the reversal pattern of temporary differences for depreciable assets. *FAS 109* [FASB ASC 740—Income Taxes] is silent as to how the balance sheet date temporary differences are deemed to reverse, but the FIFO pattern is intended.

You interpret that to mean, when future taxable amounts are being scheduled, and a portion of a temporary difference has yet to originate, only the reversals of the *temporary difference at the balance sheet date* can be scheduled and multiplied by the tax rate that will be in effect when the difference reverses. Future originations (like the depreciation difference the second year) are not considered when determining the timing of the reversal. For the existing temporary difference, it is assumed that the difference will reverse the first year the difference begins reversing.

Determine the amounts necessary to record income taxes for 2018, and prepare the appropriate journal entry.

P 16-7

Multiple differences; calculate taxable income; balance sheet classification

- LO16-4, LO16-6, LO16-8

Sherrod, Inc., reported pretax accounting income of \$76 million for 2018. The following information relates to differences between pretax accounting income and taxable income:

- a. Income from installment sales of properties included in pretax accounting income in 2018 exceeded that reported for tax purposes by \$3 million. The installment receivable account at year-end had a balance of \$4 million (representing portions of 2017 and 2018 installment sales), expected to be collected equally in 2019 and 2020.
- b. Sherrod was assessed a penalty of \$2 million by the Environmental Protection Agency for violation of a federal law in 2018. The fine is to be paid in equal amounts in 2018 and 2019.
- c. Sherrod rents its operating facilities but owns one asset acquired in 2017 at a cost of \$80 million. Depreciation is reported by the straight-line method, assuming a four-year useful life. On the tax return, deductions for depreciation will be more than straight-line depreciation the first two years but less than straight-line depreciation the next two years (\$ in millions):

	Income Statement	Tax Return	Difference
2017	\$20	\$26	\$(6)
2018	20	35	(15)
2019	20	12	8
2020	20	7	13
	<u>\$80</u>	<u>\$80</u>	<u>\$ 0</u>

- d. Warranty expense of \$3 million is reported in 2018. For tax purposes, the expense is deducted when costs are incurred, \$2 million in 2018. At December 31, 2018, the warranty liability was \$2 million (after adjusting entries). The balance was \$1 million at the end of 2017.
- e. In 2018, Sherrod accrued an expense and related liability for estimated paid future absences of \$7 million relating to the company's new paid vacation program. Future compensation will be deductible on the tax return when actually paid during the next two years (\$4 million in 2019; \$3 million in 2020).
- f. During 2017, accounting income included an estimated loss of \$2 million from having accrued a loss contingency. The loss is paid in 2018, at which time it is tax deductible.

Balances in the deferred tax asset and deferred tax liability accounts at January 1, 2018, were \$1.2 million and \$2.8 million, respectively. The enacted tax rate is 40% each year.

Required:

1. Determine the amounts necessary to record income taxes for 2018, and prepare the appropriate journal entry.

- What is the 2018 net income?
- Show how any deferred tax amounts should be classified and reported in the 2018 balance sheet.

P 16-8

Multiple differences; taxable income given; two years; balance sheet classification; change in tax rate

- LO16-4, LO16-6, LO16-8



Arndt, Inc., reported the following for 2018 and 2019 (\$ in millions):

	2018	2019
Revenues	\$888	\$983
Expenses	760	800
Pretax accounting income (income statement)	\$128	\$183
Taxable income (tax return)	\$120	\$200
Tax rate: 40%		

- Expenses each year include \$30 million from a two-year casualty insurance policy purchased in 2018 for \$60 million. The cost is tax deductible in 2018.
- Expenses include \$2 million insurance premiums each year for life insurance on key executives.
- Arndt sells one-year subscriptions to a weekly journal. Subscription sales collected and taxable in 2018 and 2019 were \$33 million and \$35 million, respectively. Subscriptions included in 2018 and 2019 financial reporting revenues were \$25 million (\$10 million collected in 2017 but not recognized as revenue until 2018) and \$33 million, respectively. Hint: View this as two temporary differences—one reversing in 2018; one originating in 2018.
- 2018 expenses included a \$17 million unrealized loss from reducing investments (classified as trading securities) to fair value. The investments were sold in 2019.
- During 2017, accounting income included an estimated loss of \$5 million from having accrued a loss contingency. The loss was paid in 2018, at which time it is tax deductible.
- At January 1, 2018, Arndt had a deferred tax asset of \$6 million and no deferred tax liability.

Required:

- Which of the five differences described are temporary and which are permanent differences? Why?
- Prepare a schedule that (a) reconciles the difference between pretax accounting income and taxable income and (b) determines the amounts necessary to record income taxes for 2018. Prepare the appropriate journal entry.
- Show how any 2018 deferred tax amounts should be classified and reported on the 2018 balance sheet.
- Prepare a schedule that (a) reconciles the difference between pretax accounting income and taxable income and (b) determines the amounts necessary to record income taxes for 2019. Prepare the appropriate journal entry.
- Explain how any 2019 deferred tax amounts should be classified and reported on the 2019 balance sheet.
- Suppose that during 2019, tax legislation was passed that will lower Arndt's effective tax rate to 35% beginning in 2020. Repeat requirement 4.

P 16-9

Determine deferred tax assets and liabilities

- LO16-6

Corning-Howell reported taxable income in 2018 of \$120 million. At December 31, 2018, the reported amount of some assets and liabilities in the financial statements differed from their tax bases as indicated below:

	Carrying Amount	Tax Basis
Assets		
Current		
Net accounts receivable	\$ 10 million	\$ 12 million
Prepaid insurance	20 million	0
Prepaid advertising	6 million	0
Noncurrent		
Investments at fair value with changes in OCI*	4 million	0
Buildings and equipment (net)	360 million	280 million
Liabilities		
Current		
Liability—subscriptions received	14 million	0
Long-term		
Liability—postretirement benefits	594 million	0

*Gains and losses taxable when investments are sold.

The total deferred tax asset and deferred tax liability amounts at January 1, 2018, were \$250 million and \$40 million, respectively. The enacted tax rate is 40% each year.

Required:

- Determine the total deferred tax asset and deferred tax liability amounts at December 31, 2018.

- Determine the increase (decrease) in the deferred tax asset and deferred tax liability accounts at December 31, 2018.
- Determine the income tax payable currently for the year ended December 31, 2018.
- Prepare the journal entry to record income taxes for 2018.

P 16-10

Net operating loss carryback and carryforward; multiple differences

- LO16-2, LO16-4, LO16-7



Fores Construction Company reported a pretax operating loss of \$135 million for financial reporting purposes in 2018. Contributing to the loss were (a) a penalty of \$5 million assessed by the Environmental Protection Agency for violation of a federal law and paid in 2018 and (b) an estimated loss of \$10 million from accruing a loss contingency. The loss will be tax deductible when paid in 2019.

The enacted tax rate is 40%. There were no temporary differences at the beginning of the year and none originating in 2018 other than those described above. Taxable income in Fores's two previous years of operation was as follows:

2016	\$75 million
2017	30 million

Required:

- Prepare the journal entry to recognize the income tax benefit of the net operating loss in 2018. Fores elects the carryback option.
- Show the lower portion of the 2018 income statement that reports the income tax benefit of the net operating loss.
- Prepare the journal entry to record income taxes in 2019 assuming pretax accounting income is \$60 million. No additional temporary differences originate in 2019.

P 16-11

Valuation allowance; Delta Air Lines

- LO16-3

Real World Financials

Delta Air Lines revealed in its 10-K filing that its valuation allowance for deferred tax assets at the end of 2013 was \$177 million, dramatically lower than the over \$10 billion recorded at the end of 2012. Here is an excerpt from a press report from Bloomberg in January 2014, regarding this allowance:

Delta Air Lines Inc. (DAL) led shares of U.S. carriers higher after posting fourth-quarter profit that topped analysts' estimates and forecasting an operating margin of as much as 8 percent in this year's initial three months. . . . Airlines are benefiting from lower fuel prices, constraints on capacity growth, controls on operating costs and demand that's keeping planes full, said Ray Neidl of Nexa Capital Partners LLC, a Washington-based aerospace and transportation consulting firm. . . . Net income was \$8.48 billion, including an \$8 billion non-cash gain from the reversal of a tax valuation allowance.²⁰

The following is an excerpt from a disclosure note to Delta's 2013 financial statements:

NOTE 12. INCOME TAXES (In part)**Deferred Taxes**

The components of deferred tax assets and liabilities at December 31 were as follows (\$ in millions):

	December 31,	
	2013	2012
Deferred tax assets:		
Net operating loss carryforwards	\$ 6,024	\$ 6,414
Pension, postretirement and other benefits	4,982	6,415
AMT credit carryforward	378	402
Deferred revenue	1,965	2,133
Other	698	881
Valuation allowance	(177)	(10,963)
Total deferred tax assets	<u>\$13,870</u>	<u>\$ 5,282</u>
Deferred tax liabilities:		
Depreciation	\$ 4,799	\$ 4,851
Intangible assets	1,704	1,730
Other	639	285
Total deferred tax liabilities	<u>\$ 7,142</u>	<u>\$ 6,866</u>

²⁰Mary Schlangenhein, "Delta Leads Airline Stock Gains as Profit Beats Estimates," *Bloomberg*, January 21, 2014.

Required:

1. What is a valuation allowance against deferred tax assets? When must such an allowance be recorded? Use Delta's situation to help illustrate your response.
2. Is an amount recorded in a valuation allowance for a deferred tax asset permanent? Explain why Delta is able to reclaim its valuation allowance.
3. Consider the excerpt from Bloomberg's press release. Recalculate the effect on Delta's 2013 net income of the change in Delta's valuation allowance for its deferred tax assets.

P 16-12

Integrating
problem—bonds,
leases, taxes

- LO16-1,
LO16-5, LO16-8



The long-term liabilities section of CPS Transportation's December 31, 2017, balance sheet included the following:

- a. A lease liability with 15 remaining lease payments of \$10,000 each, due annually on January 1:

Lease liability	\$76,061
Less: current portion	2,394
	<u>\$73,667</u>

The incremental borrowing rate at the inception of the lease was 11% and the lessor's implicit rate, which was known by CPS Transportation, was 10%.

- b. A deferred income tax liability due to a single temporary difference. The only difference between CPS Transportation's taxable income and pretax accounting income is depreciation on a machine acquired on January 1, 2017, for \$500,000. The machine's estimated useful life is five years, with no salvage value. Depreciation is computed using the straight-line method for financial reporting purposes and the MACRS method for tax purposes. Depreciation expense for tax and financial reporting purposes for 2018 through 2021 is as follows:

Year	MACRS Depreciation	Straight-line Depreciation	Difference
2018	\$160,000	\$100,000	\$60,000
2019	80,000	100,000	(20,000)
2020	70,000	100,000	(30,000)
2021	60,000	100,000	(40,000)

The enacted federal income tax rates are 35% for 2017 and 40% for 2018 through 2021. For the year ended December 31, 2018, CPS's income before income taxes was \$900,000.

On July 1, 2018, CPS Transportation issued \$800,000 of 9% bonds. The bonds mature in 20 years, and interest is payable each January 1 and July 1. The bonds were issued at a price to yield the investors 10%. CPS records interest at the effective interest rate.

Required:

1. Determine CPS Transportation's income tax expense and net income for the year ended December 31, 2018.
2. Determine CPS Transportation's interest expense for the year ended December 31, 2018.
3. Prepare the long-term liabilities section of CPS Transportation's December 31, 2018, balance sheet.

P 16-13

Multiple
differences;
uncertain tax
position

- LO16-3, LO16-4,
LO16-6, LO16-9



Tru Developers, Inc., sells plots of land for industrial development. Tru recognizes income for financial reporting purposes in the year it sells the plots. For some of the plots sold this year, Tru took the position that it could recognize the income for tax purposes when the installments are collected. Income that Tru recognized for financial reporting purposes in 2018 for plots in this category was \$60 million. The company expected to collect 60% of each sale in 2019 and 40% in 2020. This amount over the next two years is as follows:

2019	\$36 million
2020	24 million
	<u>\$60 million</u>

Tru's pretax accounting income for 2018 was \$90 million. In its income statement, Tru reported interest income of \$15 million, unrelated to the land sales, for which the company's position is that the interest is not taxable. Accordingly, the interest was not reported on the tax return. There are no differences between accounting income and taxable income other than those described above. The enacted tax rate is 40 percent.

Management believes the tax position taken on the land sales has a greater than 50% chance of being upheld based on its technical merits, but the position taken on the interest has a less than 50% chance of being upheld. It is further believed that the following likelihood percentages apply to the tax treatment of the land sales (\$ in millions):

Amount Qualifying for Installment Sales Treatment	Percentage Likelihood of Tax Treatment Being Sustained
\$60	20%
50	20%
40	20%
30	20%
20	20%

Required:

1. What portion of the tax benefit of tax-free interest will Tru recognize on its 2018 tax return?
2. What portion of the tax benefit of tax-free interest will Tru recognize on its 2018 financial statements?
3. What portion of the tax on the \$60 million income from the plots sold on an installment basis will Tru defer on its 2018 tax return? What portion of the tax on the \$60 million income from the plots sold on an installment basis will Tru defer in its 2018 financial statements? How is the difference between these two amounts reported?
4. Prepare the journal entry to record income taxes in 2018, assuming full recognition of the tax benefits in the financial statements of both differences between pretax accounting income and taxable income.
5. Prepare the journal entry to record income taxes in 2018, assuming the recognition of the tax benefits in the financial statements you indicated in requirements 1–3.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Analysis**Case 16–1**

Basic concepts

- LO16–1 through LO16–8

One of the longest debates in accounting history is the issue of deferred taxes. The controversy began in the 1940s and has continued, even after the FASB issued *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 109* [FASB ASC 740: Income Taxes] in 1992. At issue is the appropriate treatment of tax consequences of economic events that occur in years other than that of the events themselves.

Required:

1. Distinguish between temporary differences and permanent differences. Provide an example of each.
2. Distinguish between *intra-period* tax allocation and *inter-period* tax allocation (deferred tax accounting). Provide an example of each.
3. How are deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities classified and reported in the financial statements?

Integrating**Case 16–2**

Postretirement benefits

- LO16–2

FASB ASC 715–60: Compensation–Retirement Benefits–Defined Benefit Plans–Other Postretirement (previously *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 106*) establishes accounting standards for postretirement benefits other than pensions, most notably postretirement health care benefits. Essentially, the standard requires companies to accrue compensation expense each year employees perform services, for the expected cost of providing future postretirement benefits that can be attributed to that service. Typically, companies do not prefund these costs for two reasons: (a) unlike pension liabilities, no federal law requires companies to fund nonpension postretirement benefits, and (b) funding contributions, again unlike for pension liabilities, are not tax deductible. (The costs aren't tax deductible until paid to, or on behalf of, employees.)

Required:

1. As a result of being required to record the periodic postretirement expense and related liability, most companies now report lower earnings and higher liabilities. How might many companies also report higher assets as a result of GAAP for postretirement plans?
2. One objection to current GAAP as cited in the chapter is the omission of requirements to discount deferred tax amounts to their present values. This objection is inappropriate in the context of deferred tax amounts necessitated by accounting for postretirement benefits. Why?

Integrating**Case 16–3**

Tax effects of accounting changes and error correction; six situations

- LO16–1, LO16–2, LO16–8

Williams-Santana Inc. is a manufacturer of high-tech industrial parts that was started in 2004 by two talented engineers with little business training. In 2018, the company was acquired by one of its major customers. As part of an internal audit, the following facts were discovered. The audit occurred during 2018 before any adjusting entries or closing entries were prepared. The income tax rate is 40% for all years.

- a. A five-year casualty insurance policy was purchased at the beginning of 2016 for \$35,000. The full amount was debited to insurance expense at the time.
- b. On December 31, 2017, merchandise inventory was overstated by \$25,000 due to a mistake in the physical inventory count using the periodic inventory system.
- c. The company changed inventory cost methods to FIFO from LIFO at the end of 2018 for both financial statement and income tax purposes. The change will cause a \$960,000 increase in the beginning inventory at January 1, 2017.
- d. At the end of 2017, the company failed to accrue \$15,500 of sales commissions earned by employees during 2017. The expense was recorded when the commissions were paid in early 2018.

- e. At the beginning of 2016, the company purchased a machine at a cost of \$720,000. Its useful life was estimated to be 10 years with no salvage value. The machine has been depreciated by the double declining-balance method. Its carrying amount on December 31, 2017, was \$460,800. On January 1, 2018, the company changed to the straight-line method.
- f. Additional industrial robots were acquired at the beginning of 2013 and added to the company's assembly process. The \$1,000,000 cost of the equipment was inadvertently recorded as repair expense. Robots have 10-year useful lives and no material salvage value. This class of equipment is depreciated by the straight-line method for both financial reporting and income tax reporting.

Required:

For each situation:

1. Identify whether it represents an accounting change or an error. If an accounting change, identify the type of change.
2. Prepare any journal entry necessary as a direct result of the change or error correction, as well as any adjusting entry for 2018 related to the situation described. Any tax effects should be adjusted for through the deferred tax liability account.
3. Briefly describe any other steps that should be taken to appropriately report the situation.

Communication
Case 16-4

Deferred taxes;
changing rates;
write a memo

- LO16-1, LO16-4,
LO16-5

You are the new controller for Engineered Solutions. The company treasurer, Randy Patey, believes that as a result of pending legislation, the current 40% income tax rate will be decreased for 2019 to 35% and is uncertain which tax rate to apply in determining deferred taxes for 2018. Patey also is uncertain which differences should be included in that determination and has solicited your help. Your accounting group provided you the following information.

Two items are relevant to the decisions. One is the \$50,000 insurance premium the company pays annually for the CEO's life insurance policy, for which the company is the beneficiary. The second is that Engineered Solutions purchased a building on January 1, 2017, for \$6,000,000. The building's estimated useful life is 30 years from the date of purchase, with no salvage value. Depreciation is computed using the straight-line method for financial reporting purposes and the MACRS method for tax purposes. As a result, the building's tax basis is \$5,200,000 at December 31, 2018.

Required:

Write a memo to Patey that:

- a. Identifies the objectives of accounting for income taxes.
- b. Differentiates temporary differences and permanent differences.
- c. Explains which tax rate to use.
- d. Calculates the deferred tax liability at December 31, 2018.

Real World
Case 16-5

Disclosure issues;
balance sheet
classifications;
Walmart

- LO16-1, LO16-2,
LO16-8

Real World Financials

The income tax disclosure note accompanying the January 31, 2016, financial statements of **Walmart** is reproduced below:

Note 9. Taxes (in part)			
<i>Income from Continuing Operations</i>			
	Fiscal Year Ended January 31,		
(\$ in millions)	2016	2015	2014
Current:			
U.S. federal	\$ 5,562	\$ 6,165	\$ 6,377
U.S. state and local	622	810	719
International	1,400	1,529	1,523
Total current tax provision	7,584	8,504	8,619
Deferred:			
U.S. federal	(704)	(387)	(72)
U.S. state and local	(106)	(55)	37
International	(216)	(77)	(479)
Total deferred tax expense (benefit)	(1,026)	(519)	(514)
Total provision for income taxes	\$ 6,558	\$ 7,985	\$ 8,105

(continued)

(concluded)

Deferred Taxes

The significant components of the Company's deferred tax account balances are as follows:

	January 31,	
(\$ in millions)	2016	2015
Deferred tax assets:		
Loss and tax credit carryforwards	\$ 3,313	\$ 3,255
Accrued liabilities	3,763	3,395
Share-based compensation	192	184
Other	1,390	1,119
Total deferred tax assets	8,658	7,953
Valuation allowances	(1,456)	(1,504)
Deferred tax assets, net of valuation allowance	\$ 7,202	\$ 6,449
Deferred tax liabilities:		
Property and equipment	\$ 5,813	\$ 5,972
Inventories	1,790	1,825
Other	1,452	1,618
Total deferred tax liabilities	9,055	9,415
Net deferred tax liabilities	\$ 1,853	\$ 2,966

Required:

1. Focusing on only the first part of Note 9, relating current, deferred, and total provision for income taxes, prepare a summary journal entry that records Walmart's 2016 tax expense associated with income from continuing operations.
2. Compare the change in deferred taxes you recorded in your summary journal entry to the actual change in Walmart's net deferred tax liability for fiscal 2016. Do they reconcile? What besides continuing operations might affect deferred taxes?

Research**Case 16-6**

Researching the way tax deductions are reported on a corporation tax return; retrieving a tax form from the Internet

- LO16-1, LO16-2, LO16-3, LO16-8

The U.S. Treasury maintains an information site on the Internet. As part of this site, the Internal Revenue Service provides tax information and services. Among those services is a server for publications and forms which allows a visitor to download a variety of IRS forms and publications.

Required:

1. Access the Treasury site on the Internet. The web address is www.ustreas.gov. After exploring the information available there, navigate to the IRS server for forms and publications via the IRS home page.
2. Download the corporation tax return, Form 1120.
3. Note the specific deductions listed that are deductible from total income to arrive at taxable income. Are any deductions listed that might not also be included among expenses in the income statement?
4. One of the deductions indicated is "net operating loss deduction." Under what circumstances might a company report an amount for this item?
5. Based on how taxable income is determined, how might temporary differences be created between taxable income and pretax income in the income statement?

Analysis**Case 16-7**

Reporting deferred taxes; Ford Motor Company

- LO16-1, LO16-2, LO16-3, LO16-7

Access the 2015 financial statements and related disclosure notes of **Ford Motor Company** from its website at corporate.ford.com.

Required:

1. In Note 21, find Ford's net deferred tax asset or liability. What is that number?
2. Does Ford show a valuation allowance against deferred tax assets? If so, what is the number, and what is Ford's explanation for it?
3. Does Ford have any NOL carryforwards? What is the amount of any carryforward, what deferred tax asset or liability is associated with it, and what effective tax rate does that imply was used to calculate its deferred tax effect?

Real World Financials**Analysis****Case 16-8**

Reporting deferred taxes; Kroger Co.

- LO16-1, LO16-2, LO16-3, LO16-7, LO16-8

Kroger Co. is one of the largest retail food companies in the United States as measured by total annual sales. The Kroger Co. operates supermarkets, convenience stores, and manufactures and processes food that its supermarkets sell.

Using EDGAR (www.sec.gov) or the company's website, check the company's annual report for the year ended January 30, 2016.

Required:

1. From the income statement, determine the income tax expense for the most recent year. Tie that number to the first table in disclosure Note 5: "Taxes Based on Income," and prepare a summary journal entry that records Kroger's tax expense from continuing operations in the most recent year.

Real World Financials

2. In 2015 companies were required to classify their deferred tax assets and liabilities as current or noncurrent. From Kroger's Note 5, calculate the total (current + noncurrent) net deferred tax asset or liability as of January 30, 2016, and January 31, 2015. By how much did that amount change? To what extent did you account for that change in the journal entry you wrote for the first requirement of this case? Speculate as to the explanation of any difference.

Judgment Case 16–9

Analyzing the effect of deferred tax liabilities on firm risk; Macy's, Inc.

• LO16–8

Real World Financials

The following is a portion of the balance sheets of **Macy's, Inc.** for the years ended January 30, 2016 and January 31, 2015:

	January 30, 2016	January 31, 2015
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY		
Current Liabilities:		
Short-term debt	\$ 642	\$ 76
Merchandise accounts payable	1,526	1,594
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	3,333	3,109
Income taxes	227	296
Total Current Liabilities	5,728	5,075
Long-Term debt	6,995	7,233
Deferred Income Taxes	1,477	1,443
Other Liabilities	2,123	2,201
Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock (310.3 and 340.6 shares outstanding)	3	4
Additional paid-in capital	621	1,048
Accumulated equity	6,334	7,340
Treasury stock	(1,665)	(1,942)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(1,043)	(1,072)
Total Macy's, Inc. Shareholders' Equity	4,250	5,378
Noncontrolling interest	3	—
Total Shareholders' Equity	4,253	5,378
Total Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity	<u>\$20,576</u>	<u>\$21,330</u>

Macy's debt to equity ratio for the year ended January 30, 2016, was 3.84, calculated as $(\$20,576 - 4,253) \div 4,253$. Some analysts argue that long-term deferred tax liabilities should be excluded from liabilities when computing the debt to equity ratio.

Required:

1. What is the rationale for the argument that long-term deferred tax liabilities should be excluded from liabilities when computing the debt to equity ratio?
2. What would be the effect on Macy's debt to equity ratio of excluding deferred tax liabilities from its calculation? What would be the percentage change?
3. What might be the rationale for not excluding long-term deferred tax liabilities from liabilities when computing the debt to equity ratio?

Trueblood Accounting Case 16–10

Valuation allowances against deferred tax assets

• LO16–3

The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion material, can be obtained from the Deloitte foundation at its website: www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases.

Case 13-10: LOL – Income Taxes

This case gives students an opportunity to better understand how valuation allowances against deferred tax assets are estimated and calculated. Students consider the sources of taxable income that can be used to determine whether a deferred tax asset is more likely than not to be realized in the future.

Trueblood Accounting Case 16–11

Uncertain tax positions

• LO16–9

The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion Material, can be obtained from the Deloitte Foundation at its website: www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases.

Case 15-9: Settled or Not Settled

This case gives the students an opportunity to better understand accounting for uncertain tax positions. The case illustrates the judgments involved in applying FASB ASC 740 (formerly FIN 48).

Judgment**Case 16–12**

Intraperiod tax allocation

• LO16–10

Russell-James Corporation is a diversified consumer products company. During 2018, Russell-James discontinued its line of cosmetics, which constituted discontinued operations for financial reporting purposes. As vice president of the food products division, you are interested in the effect of the discontinuance on the company's profitability. One item of information you requested was an income statement. The income statement you received was labeled *preliminary* and *unaudited*:

RUSSELL-JAMES CORPORATION		
Income Statement		
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018		
(\$ in millions, except per share amounts)		
Revenues		\$ 300
Cost of goods sold		90
Gross profit		210
Selling and administrative expenses		(60)
Income from continuing operations before income taxes		150
Income taxes		(26)
Income from continuing operations		124
Discontinued operations:		
Loss from operations of cosmetics division	\$(100)	
Gain from disposal of cosmetics division	15	(85)
Net income		\$ 39
Per Share of Common Stock (100 million shares):		
Income from continuing operations		\$1.24
Loss from operations of cosmetics division		(1.00)
Gain from disposal of cosmetics division		0.15
Net income		\$0.39

You are somewhat surprised at the magnitude of the loss incurred by the cosmetics division prior to its disposal. Another item that draws your attention is the apparently low tax rate indicated by the statement ($\$26 \div 150 = 17.3\%$). Upon further investigation, you are told the company's tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Recast the income statement to reflect intraperiod tax allocation.
2. How would you reconcile the income tax expense shown on the statement above with the amount your recast statement reports?

Continuing Cases

Target Case

• LO16-1, LO16-2,
LO16-4, LO16-8,
LO16-9

Real World Financials

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material also is available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. From the income statement, determine the income tax expense for the most recent year. Tie that number to the second table in disclosure Note 23, "Provision for Income Taxes," and prepare a summary journal entry that records Target's tax expense from continuing operations for the year ended January 30, 2016.
2. Focusing on the third table in disclosure Note 23, "Net Deferred Tax Asset/(Liability)," calculate the change in net deferred tax assets or liability. By how much did that amount change? To what extent did you account for that change in the journal entry you wrote for the first requirement of this case? List possible causes of any difference.
3. Target's Note 23 indicates that "We have not recorded deferred taxes when earnings from foreign operations are considered to be indefinitely invested outside the U.S. These accumulated net earnings relate to certain ongoing operations and were \$685 million at January 30, 2016, and \$328 million at January 31, 2015." Are these amounts treated as temporary or permanent differences by Target? If Target decides to repatriate earnings in the future, what will be the effect on net income in the year of the repatriation?
4. What is Target's liability for unrecognized tax benefits as of January 30, 2016? If Target were to prevail in court and realize \$50 million more in tax savings than it thought more likely than not to occur, what would be the effect on the liability for unrecognized tax benefits and on net income?

**Air France–KLM
Case****IFRS**

● LO16–11

Real World Financials

Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. Where in its December 31, 2015, balance sheet does AF report deferred taxes? How does this approach differ from the way deferred taxes are reported using U.S. GAAP? Using the Internet, determine how deferred taxes would be reported using IFRS at the time of your research. Explain why that approach might differ from the way AF reported deferred taxes at December 31, 2015.
2. Here's an excerpt from AF's notes to its financial statements:

Deferred taxes (in part)

The Group records deferred taxes using the balance sheet liability method, providing for any temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts used for taxation purposes, except for exceptions described in IAS 12 "Income taxes." The tax rates used are those enacted or substantively enacted at the balance sheet date.

Is this policy consistent with U.S. GAAP? Explain.

3. Here's an excerpt from one of AF's notes to its financial statements:

Deferred taxes (in part)

Deferred tax assets related to temporary differences and tax losses carried forward are recognized only to the extent it is probable that a future taxable profit will be available against which the asset can be utilized at the tax entity level.

Is this policy consistent with U.S. GAAP? Explain.

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

17

Pensions and Other Postretirement Benefits

OVERVIEW

Employee compensation comes in many forms. Salaries and wages, of course, provide direct and current payment for services provided. However, it's commonplace for compensation also to include benefits payable after retirement. We discuss pension benefits and other postretirement benefits in this chapter. Accounting for pension benefits recognizes that they represent deferred compensation for current service. Accordingly, the cost of these benefits is recognized on an accrual basis during the years that employees earn the benefits.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO17-1** Explain the fundamental differences between a defined contribution pension plan and a defined benefit pension plan. (p. 968)
- **LO17-2** Distinguish among the vested benefit obligation, the accumulated benefit obligation, and the projected benefit obligation (PBO). (p. 973)
- **LO17-3** Describe the five events that might change the balance of the PBO. (p. 974)
- **LO17-4** Explain how plan assets accumulate to provide retiree benefits and understand the role of the trustee in administering the fund. (p. 979)
- **LO17-5** Describe the funded status of pension plans and how that amount is reported. (p. 981)
- **LO17-6** Describe how pension expense is a composite of periodic changes that occur in both the pension obligation and the plan assets. (p. 981)
- **LO17-7** Record for pension plans the periodic expense and funding as well as new gains and losses and new prior service cost as they occur. (p. 986)
- **LO17-8** Understand the interrelationships among the elements that constitute a defined benefit pension plan. (p. 992)
- **LO17-9** Describe the nature of postretirement benefit plans other than pensions and identify the similarities and differences in accounting for those plans and pensions. (p. 997)
- **LO17-10** Explain how the obligation for postretirement benefits is measured and how the obligation changes. (p. 999)
- **LO17-11** Determine the components of postretirement benefit expense. (p. 1000)
- **LO17-12** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to accounting for postretirement benefit plans. (pp. 987, 989, 993, and 995)



© Stockbyte/PunchStock

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

United Dynamics

You read yesterday that many companies in the United States have pension plans that are severely underfunded in the wake of the recent economic crisis. This caught your attention in part because you have your office interview tomorrow with United Dynamics. You hadn't really thought that much about the pension plan of your potential future employer, in part because your current employer has a defined contribution 401(k) plan, for which funding is not a concern. However, United Dynamics is an older firm with a defined benefit plan, for which funding is the employer's responsibility.

To prepare for your interview, you obtained a copy of United Dynamics' financial statements. Unfortunately, the

financial statements themselves are of little help. You are unable to find any pension liability in the balance sheet, but the statement does report a relatively small "pension asset." The income statement reports pension expense for each of the years reported. For help, you search the disclosure notes. In part, the pension disclosure note reads as follows:

Note 7: Pension Plan

United Dynamics has a defined benefit pension plan covering substantially all of its employees. Plan benefits are based on years of service and the employee's compensation during the last three years of employment. The company's funding policy is consistent with the funding requirements of federal law and regulations. The net periodic pension expense for the company included the following components. The company's pension expense was as follows (\$ in millions):

	2018	2017	2016
Current service costs	\$ 43	\$ 47	\$ 42
Interest cost on projected benefit obligation	178	164	152
Return on assets	(213)	(194)	(187)
Amortization of prior service cost	43	43	43
Amortization of net gain	(2)	(1)	—
Net pension costs	<u>\$ 49</u>	<u>\$ 59</u>	<u>\$ 50</u>

The following table describes the change in projected benefit obligation for the plan years ended December 31, 2018, and December 31, 2017 (\$ in millions):

	2018	2017
Projected benefit obligation at beginning of year	\$2,194	\$2,121
Service cost	43	47
Interest cost	178	164
Actuarial (gain) loss	319	(40)
Benefits paid	(106)	(98)
Projected benefit obligation at end of year	<u>\$2,628</u>	<u>\$2,194</u>

The weighted-average discount rate and rate of increase in future compensation levels used in determining the actuarial present value of the projected benefit obligations in the above table were 8.1% and 4.3%, respectively, at December 31, 2018, and 7.73% and 4.7%, respectively, at December 31, 2017. The expected long-term rate of return on assets was 9.1% at December 31, 2018 and 2017.

(continued)

(concluded)

The following table describes the change in the fair value of plan assets for the plan years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 (\$ in millions):

	2018	2017
Fair value of plan assets at beginning of year	\$2,340	\$ 2,133
Actual return on plan assets	215	178
Employer contributions	358	127
Benefits paid	(106)	(98)
Fair value of plan assets at end of year	<u>\$2,807</u>	<u>\$2,340</u>

“Ouch! I can’t believe how much of my accounting I forgot,” you complain to yourself. “I’d better get out my old intermediate accounting book.”

QUESTIONS

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. Why is pension plan underfunding not a concern in your present employment? (p. 971)
2. Were you correct that the pension liability is not reported in the balance sheet? What is the liability? (p. 973)
3. What is the amount of the plan assets available to pay benefits? What are the factors that can cause that amount to change? (p. 979)
4. What does the “pension asset” represent? Are you interviewing with a company whose pension plan is severely underfunded? (p. 981)
5. How is the pension expense influenced by changes in the pension liability and plan assets? (p. 982)

PART A

The Nature of Pension Plans

• LO17–1

United States pension funds total more than \$15 trillion, over three times the size of Japan’s gross national product. This powerful investment base now controls a sizable portion of the stock market. At the company level, the enormous size of pension funds is reflected in a periodic pension cost that constitutes one of the largest expenses many companies report. The corporate liability for providing pension benefits is huge. Obviously, then, the financial reporting responsibility for pensions has important social and economic implications.

Pension plans are designed to provide income to individuals during their retirement years. This is accomplished by setting aside funds during an employee’s working years so that at retirement the accumulated funds plus earnings from investing those funds are available to replace wages. Actually, an individual who periodically invests in stocks, bonds, certificates of deposit (CDs), or other investments for the purpose of saving for retirement is establishing a personal pension fund. Often, such individual plans take the form of individual retirement accounts (IRAs) to take advantage of tax breaks offered by that arrangement. In employer plans, some or all of the periodic contributions to the retirement fund often are provided by the employer.

Corporations establish pension plans for a variety of reasons. Sponsorship of pension plans provides employees with a degree of retirement security and fulfills a moral obligation felt by many employers. This security also can induce a degree of job satisfaction and perhaps loyalty that might enhance productivity and reduce turnover. Motivation to sponsor a plan sometimes comes from union demands and often relates to being competitive in the labor market.

Pension plans often enhance productivity, reduce turnover, satisfy union demands, and allow employers to compete in the labor market.

Additional Consideration

When established according to tight guidelines, a pension plan gains important tax advantages. Such arrangements are called *qualified plans* because they qualify for favorable tax treatment. In a qualified plan, the employer is permitted an immediate tax deduction for amounts paid into the pension fund (within specified limits). The employees, on the other hand, are not taxed at the time employer contributions are made—only when retirement benefits are received. Moreover, earnings on the funds set aside by the employer are not taxed while in the pension fund, so the earnings accumulate tax free. If you are familiar with the tax advantages of IRAs, you probably recognize the similarity between those individual plans and corporate pension arrangements.

For a pension plan to be qualified for special tax treatment it must meet these general requirements.

1. It must cover at least 70% of employees.
2. It cannot discriminate in favor of highly compensated employees.
3. It must be funded in advance of retirement through contributions to an irrevocable trust fund.
4. Benefits must vest after a specified period of service, commonly five years. (We discuss this in more detail later.)
5. It complies with specific restrictions on the timing and amount of contributions and benefits.

Qualified pension plans offer important tax benefits.

Sometimes, employers agree to annually contribute a specific (defined) amount to a pension fund on behalf of employees but make no commitment regarding benefit amounts at retirement. In other arrangements, employers don't specify the amount of annual contributions but promise to provide determinable (defined) amounts at retirement. These two arrangements describe defined contribution pension plans and defined benefit pension plans, respectively:

- **Defined contribution pension plans** promise fixed annual contributions to a pension fund (say, 5% of the employees' pay or, more often, to match contributions by workers). Employees choose (from designated options) where funds are invested—usually stocks or fixed-income securities. Retirement pay depends on the size of the fund at retirement.
- **Defined benefit pension plans** promise fixed retirement benefits defined by a designated formula. Typically, the pension formula bases retirement pay on the employees' (a) years of service, (b) annual compensation (often final pay or an average for the last few years), and sometimes (c) age. Employers are responsible for ensuring that sufficient funds are available to provide promised benefits.

Today, approximately three-fourths of workers covered by pension plans are covered by defined contribution plans, roughly one-fourth by defined benefit plans. This represents a radical shift from previous years when the traditional defined benefit plan was far more common. However, very few *new* pension plans are of the defined benefit variety. In fact, many companies are terminating long-standing defined benefit plans and substituting defined contribution plans. Why the shift? There are three main reasons:

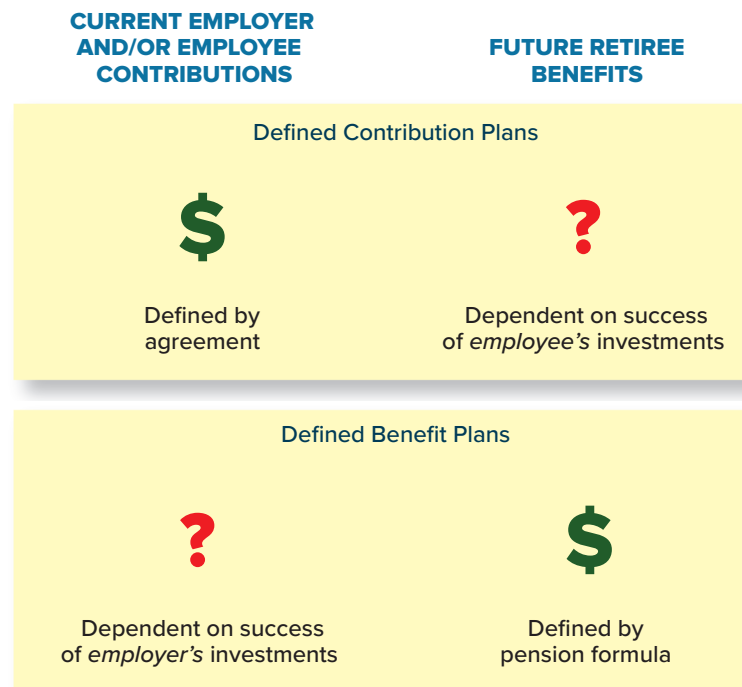
Virtually all *new* pension plans are defined contribution plans.

1. Government regulations make defined benefit plans cumbersome and costly to administer.
2. Employers are increasingly unwilling to bear the risk of defined benefit plans; with defined contribution plans, the company's obligation ends when contributions are made.
3. There has been a shift among many employers from trying to "buy long-term loyalty" (with defined benefit plans) to trying to attract new talent (with more mobile defined contribution plans).

The two categories of pension plans are depicted in Illustration 17-1.

Illustration 17-1

Defined Contribution and
Defined Benefit Pension
Plans



Both types of plans have a common goal: to provide income to employees during their retirement years. Still, the two types of plans differ regarding who bears the risk—the employer or the employees—for whether the retirement objectives are achieved. The two types of plans also have entirely different implications for accounting and financial reporting. Our discussion of defined contribution plans will be brief. Although these are now the most popular type of corporate pension plan, their relative simplicity permits a rather straightforward accounting treatment that requires little explanation. On the other hand, defined benefit plans require considerably more complex accounting treatment and constitute the primary focus of this chapter.

Defined Contribution Pension Plans

Defined contribution plans promise defined periodic contributions to a pension fund, without further commitment regarding benefit amounts at retirement.

Defined contribution pension plans are becoming increasingly popular vehicles for employers to provide retirement income without the paperwork, cost, and risk generated by the more traditional defined benefit plans. Defined contribution plans promise fixed periodic contributions to a pension fund. Retirement income depends on the size of the fund at retirement. No further commitment is made by the employer regarding benefit amounts at retirement.

These plans have several variations. In money purchase plans, employers contribute a fixed percentage of employees' salaries. Thrift plans, savings plans, and 401(k) plans (named after the Tax Code section that specifies the conditions for the favorable tax treatment of these plans) permit voluntary contributions by employees. These contributions typically are matched to a specified extent by employers. Many employers match up to 50% of employee contributions up to the first 5% or 6% of salary.

Approximately two-thirds of American workers participate in 401(k) plans. More than six trillion dollars are invested in these plans.

When plans link the amount of contributions to company performance, labels include profit sharing plans, incentive savings plans, 401(k) profit sharing plans, and similar titles. When employees make contributions to the plan in addition to employer contributions, it's called a *contributory* plan. Sometimes the amount the employer contributes is tied to the amount of the employee contribution.¹ Variations are seemingly endless. An example from a recent annual report of **Microsoft Corporation** is shown in Illustration 17-2.

¹One popular way for employer companies to provide contributions is with shares of its own common stock. If so, the arrangements usually are designed to comply with government requirements to be designated an employee stock ownership plan (ESOP).

Note 20 (in part)
Savings plan

We have a savings plan in the U.S. that qualifies under Section 401(k) of the Internal Revenue Code, and a number of savings plans in international locations. Participating U.S. employees may contribute up to 75% of their salary, but not more than statutory limits. We contribute fifty cents for each dollar of the first 6% a participant contributes in this plan, with a maximum contribution of the lesser of 3% of a participant's earnings or 3% of the IRS compensation limit for the given year. Matching contributions for all plans were \$454 million, \$420 million, and \$393 million in fiscal years 2015, 2014, and 2013, respectively, and were expensed as contributed.

Illustration 17-2

Defined Contribution
Plan—Microsoft
Corporation

Real World Financials

Accounting for these plans is quite easy. Each year, the employer simply records pension expense equal to the amount of the annual contribution. Suppose a plan promises an annual contribution equal to 3% of an employee's salary. If an employee's salary is \$110,000 in a particular year, the employer would simply recognize pension expense in the amount of the contribution:

Pension expense	3,300	
Cash (\$110,000 × 3%)		3,300

The employee's retirement benefits are totally dependent upon how well investments perform. Who bears the risk (or reward) of that uncertainty? The employee would bear the risk of uncertain investment returns and, potentially, settle for far less at retirement than at first expected.² On the other hand, the employer would be free of any further obligation. Because the actual investments are held by an independent investment firm, the employer is free of that record-keeping responsibility as well.

Risk is reversed in a defined benefit plan. Because specific benefits are promised at retirement, the employer would be responsible for making up the difference when investment performance is less than expected. We look at defined benefit plans next.

FINANCIAL
Reporting Case

Q1, p. 968

For defined contribution plans, the employer simply records pension expense equal to the cash contribution.

Defined Benefit Pension Plans

When setting aside cash to fund a pension plan, the uncertainty surrounding the rate of return on plan assets is but one of several uncertainties inherent in a defined benefit plan. Employee turnover affects the number of employees who ultimately will become eligible for retirement benefits. The age at which employees will choose to retire as well as life expectancies will impact both the length of the retirement period and the amount of the benefits. Inflation, future compensation levels, and interest rates also have obvious influence on eventual benefits.

This is particularly true when pension benefits are defined by a pension formula, as usually is the case. A typical formula might specify that a retiree will receive annual retirement benefits based on the employee's years of service and annual pay at retirement (say, pay level in the final year, highest pay achieved, or average pay in the last two or more years). For example, a pension formula might define annual retirement benefits as:

$$1\frac{1}{2}\% \times \text{Years of service} \times \text{Final year's salary}$$

By this formula, the annual benefits to an employee who retires after 30 years of service, with a final salary of \$100,000, would be:

$$1\frac{1}{2}\% \times 30 \text{ years} \times \$100,000 = \$45,000$$

Typically, a firm will hire an **actuary**, a professional trained in a particular branch of statistics and mathematics, to assess the various uncertainties (employee turnover, salary levels, mortality, etc.) and to estimate the company's obligation to employees in connection

Defined benefit plans promise fixed retirement benefits defined by a designated formula.

Uncertainties complicate determining how much to set aside each year to ensure that sufficient funds are available to provide promised benefits.

A pension formula typically defines retirement pay based on the employees' (a) years of service, (b) annual compensation, and sometimes (c) age.

Pension gains and losses occur when the pension obligation is lower or higher than expected.

²Of course, this is not entirely unappealing to the employee. Defined contribution plans allow an employee to select investments in line with his or her own risk preferences and often provide greater retirement benefits and flexibility than defined benefit plans.

with its pension plan. Such estimates are inherently subjective, so regardless of the skill of the actuary, estimates invariably deviate from the actual outcome to one degree or another.³ For instance, the return on assets can turn out to be more or less than expected. These deviations are referred to as *gains* and *losses* on pension assets. When it's necessary to revise estimates related to the pension obligation because it's determined to be more or less than previously thought, these revisions are referred to as *losses* and *gains*, respectively, on the pension liability. Later, we will discuss the accounting treatment of gains and losses from either source. The point here is that the risk of the pension obligation changing unexpectedly or the pension funds being inadequate to meet the obligation is borne by the employer with a defined benefit pension plan.

The key elements of a defined benefit pension plan are listed below:

1. The *employer's obligation* to pay retirement benefits in the future.
2. The *plan assets* set aside by the employer from which to pay the retirement benefits in the future.
3. The *periodic expense* of having a pension plan.

As you will learn in this chapter, the first two of these elements are not reported individually in the employer's financial statements. This may seem confusing at first because it is inconsistent with the way you're accustomed to treating assets and liabilities. Even though they are not separately reported, it's critical that you understand the composition of both the pension obligation and the plan assets because (a) they are reported as a net amount in the balance sheet, and (b) their balances are reported in disclosure notes. And, importantly, the pension expense reported in the income statement is a direct composite of periodic changes that occur in both the pension obligation and the plan assets.

For this reason, we will devote a considerable portion of our early discussion to understanding the composition of the pension obligation and the plan assets before focusing on the derivation of pension expense and required financial statement disclosures. We will begin with a quick overview of how periodic changes that occur in both the pension obligation and the plan assets affect pension expense. Next, we will explore how those changes occur, beginning with changes in the pension obligation followed by changes in plan assets. We'll then return to pension expense for a closer look at how those changes influence its calculation. After that, we will bring together the separate but related parts by using a simple spreadsheet to demonstrate how each element of the pension plan articulates with the other elements.

Pension Expense—An Overview

The annual pension expense reflects changes in both the pension obligation and the plan assets. Illustration 17–3 provides a brief overview of how these changes are included in pension expense. After the overview, we'll look closer at each of the components.

Illustration 17–3

Components of Pension Expense—Overview (More Later)

Interest and investment return are financing aspects of the pension cost.

The recognition of some elements of the pension expense is delayed.

Components of Pension Expense

+	Service cost ascribed to employee service during the period
+	Interest accrued on the pension liability
–	Return on the plan assets*
<i>Amortized portion of:</i>	
+	Prior service cost attributed to employee service before an amendment to the pension plan
+ or (–)	Losses or (gains) from revisions in the pension liability or from investing plan assets
<hr/>	
=	Pension expense

*The actual return is adjusted for any difference between actual and expected return, resulting in the expected return being reflected in pension expense. This loss or gain from investing plan assets is combined with losses and gains from revisions in the pension liability for deferred inclusion in pension expense. (See the last component of pension expense.)

³We discuss changes in more detail in Chapter 20.

Next we explore each of these pension expense components in the context of its being a part of either (a) the pension obligation or (b) the plan assets. After you learn how the expense components relate to these elements of the pension plan, we'll return to explore further how they are included in the pension expense.

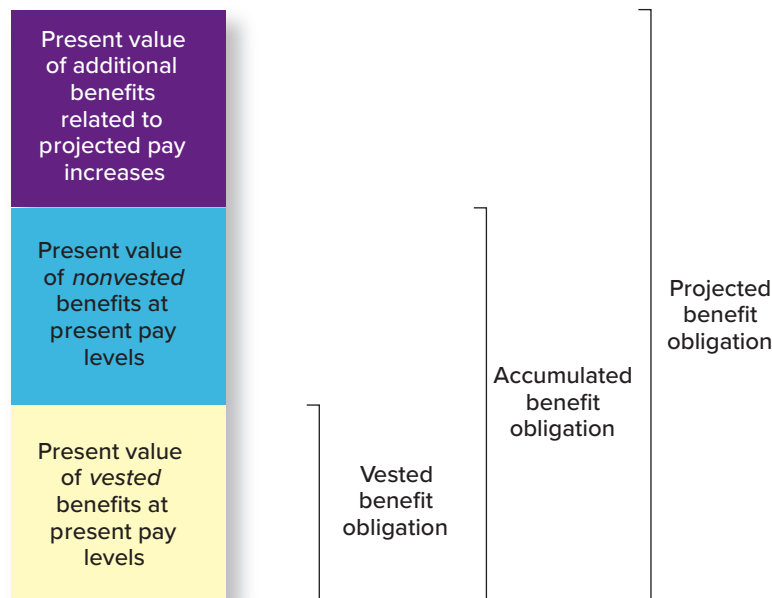
The Pension Obligation and Plan Assets

The Pension Obligation

Now we consider more precisely what is meant by the pension obligation. Unfortunately, there's not just one definition, nor is there uniformity concerning which definition is most appropriate for pension accounting. Actually, three different ways to measure the pension obligation have meaning in pension accounting, as shown in Illustration 17-4.

1. **Accumulated benefit obligation (ABO)** The actuary's estimate of the total retirement benefits (at their discounted present value) earned so far by employees, applying the pension formula using **existing** compensation levels.
2. **Vested benefit obligation (VBO)** The portion of the accumulated benefit obligation that plan participants are entitled to receive regardless of their continued employment.
3. **Projected benefit obligation (PBO)** The actuary's estimate of the total retirement benefits (at their discounted present value) earned so far by employees, applying the pension formula using **estimated future** compensation levels. (If the pension formula does not include future compensation levels, the PBO and the ABO are the same.)

Later you will learn that the projected benefit obligation is the basis for some elements of the periodic pension expense. Remember, there is but one obligation; these are three ways to measure it. The relationship among the three is depicted in Illustration 17-5.



Now let's look closer at how the obligation is measured in each of these three ways. Keep in mind, though, that it's not the accountant's responsibility to actually derive the measurement; a professional actuary provides these numbers. However, for the accountant to effectively use the numbers provided, she or he must understand their derivation.

PART B

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 968

• LO17-2

Illustration 17-4

Ways to Measure the
Pension Obligation

Illustration 17-5

Alternative Measures of
the Pension Obligation

Accumulated Benefit Obligation

The *accumulated benefit obligation* ignores possible pay increases in the future.

The **accumulated benefit obligation (ABO)** is an estimate of the discounted present value of the retirement benefits earned so far by employees, applying the plan's pension formula using existing compensation levels. When we look at a detailed calculation of the projected benefit obligation later, keep in mind that simply substituting the employee's existing compensation in the pension formula for her projected salary at retirement would give us the accumulated benefit obligation.

Vested Benefit Obligation

The benefits of most pension plans vest after five years.

Suppose an employee leaves the company to take another job. Will she still get earned benefits at retirement? The answer depends on whether the benefits are vested under the terms of this particular pension plan. If benefits are fully vested—yes. **Vested benefits** are those that employees have the right to receive even if their employment were to cease today.

Pension plans typically require some minimum period of employment before benefits vest. Before the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (ERISA) was passed in 1974, horror stories relating to lost benefits were commonplace. It was possible, for example, for an employee to be dismissed a week before retirement and be left with no pension benefits. Vesting requirements were tightened drastically to protect employees. These requirements have been changed periodically since then. Today, benefits must vest (a) fully within five years or (b) 20% within three years with another 20% vesting each subsequent year until fully vested after seven years. Five-year vesting is most common. ERISA also established the Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation (PBGC) to impose liens on corporate assets for unfunded pension liabilities in certain instances and to administer terminated pension plans. The PBGC provides a form of insurance for employees similar to the role of the FDIC for bank accounts and is financed by premiums from employers equal to specified amounts for each covered employee. It makes retirement payments for terminated plans and guarantees basic vested benefits when pension liabilities exceed assets. The vested benefit obligation is actually a subset of the ABO, the portion attributable to benefits that have vested.

Projected Benefit Obligation

● LO17-3

The *PBO* estimates retirement benefits by applying the pension formula using projected future compensation levels.

As described earlier, when the ABO is estimated, the most recent salary is included in the pension formula to estimate future benefits, even if the pension formula specifies the final year's salary. No attempt is made to forecast what that salary would be the year before retirement. Of course, the most recent salary certainly offers an objective number to measure the obligation, but is it realistic? Since it's unlikely that there will be no salary increases between now and retirement, a more meaningful measurement should include a projection of what the salary might be at retirement.⁴ Measured this way, the liability is referred to as the **projected benefit obligation (PBO)**. Hereafter in the chapter, when we mention the "pension obligation," we are referring to the PBO. The PBO measurement may be less reliable than the ABO but is more relevant and representationally faithful.

To understand the concepts involved, it's helpful to look at a numerical example. We'll simplify the example (Illustration 17-6) by looking at how pension amounts would be determined for a single employee. Keep in mind though, that in actuality, calculations would be made (by the actuary) for the entire employee pool rather than on an individual-by-individual basis.

If the actuary's estimate of the final salary hasn't changed, the PBO a year later at the end of 2017 would be \$139,715 as demonstrated in Illustration 17-6A.

CHANGES IN THE PBO. Notice that the PBO increased during 2017 (Illustration 17-6A) from \$119,822 to \$139,715 for two reasons:

1. One more service year is included in the pension formula calculation (service cost).
2. The employee is one year closer to retirement, causing the present value of benefits to increase due to the time value of future benefits (interest cost).

⁴To project future salaries for a group of employees, actuaries usually assume some percentage rate of increase in compensation levels in upcoming years. Recent estimates of the rate of compensation increase have ranged from 0.8% to 5.99% with 4% being the most commonly reported expectation (Pension/OPEB 2015 Assumption and Disclosure Survey, PWC, 2015).

Jessica Farrow was hired by Global Communications at the beginning of 2007. The company has a defined benefit pension plan that specifies annual retirement benefits equal to:

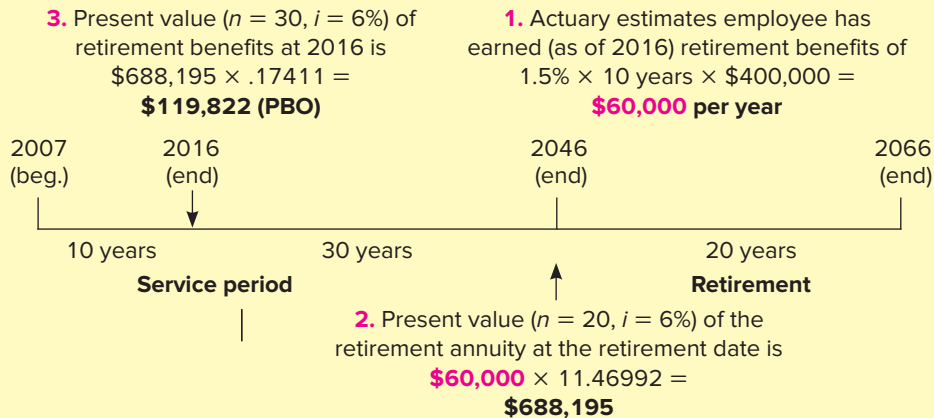
$$1.5\% \times \text{Service years} \times \text{Final year's salary}$$

Farrow is expected to retire at the end of 2046 after 40 years service. Her retirement period is expected to be 20 years. At the end of 2016, 10 years after being hired, her salary is \$100,000. The interest rate is 6%. The company's actuary projects Farrow's salary to be \$400,000 at retirement.*

What is the company's projected benefit obligation with respect to Jessica Farrow?

Steps to calculate the projected benefit obligation:

1. Use the pension formula (including a projection of future salary levels) to determine the retirement benefits earned to date.
2. Find the present value of the retirement benefits as of the retirement date (end of 2046).
3. Find the present value of retirement benefits as of the current date (end of 2016).



*This salary reflects an estimated compound rate of increase of about 5% and should take into account expectations concerning inflation, promotions, productivity gains, and other factors that might influence salary levels.

Illustration 17-6

Projected Benefit Obligation

The actuary includes projected salaries in the pension formula. The projected benefit obligation is the present value of those benefits.



Using Excel, enter:

=PV(.06,20,-60000)

Output: 688195



Using a calculator:

enter: N 20 I 6

PMT - 60000 FV

Output: PV 688195

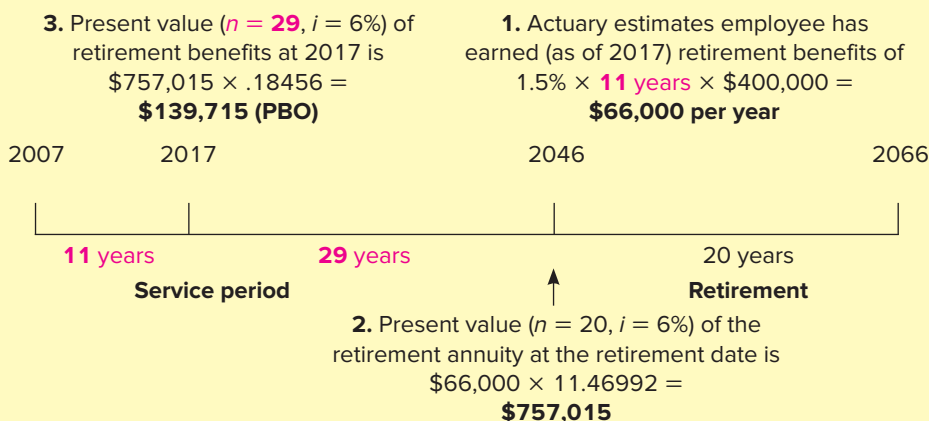


Illustration 17-6A

PBO in 2017

In 2017 the pension formula includes one more service year.

Also, 2017 is one year closer to the retirement date for the purpose of calculating the present value.

These represent two of the events that might possibly cause the balance of the PBO to change. Let's elaborate on these and the three other events that might change the balance of the PBO. The five events are (1) service cost, (2) interest cost, (3) prior service cost, (4) gains and losses, and (5) payments to retired employees.

Each year's service adds to the obligation to pay benefits.

Interest accrues on the PBO each year.

1. Service cost. As we just witnessed in the illustration, the PBO increases each year by the amount of that year's **service cost**. This represents the increase in the projected benefit obligation attributable to employee service performed during the period. As we explain later, it also is the primary component of the annual pension expense.

2. Interest cost. The second reason the PBO increases is called the **interest cost**. Even though the projected benefit obligation is not formally recognized as a liability in the company's balance sheet, it is a liability nevertheless. And, as with other liabilities, interest accrues on its balance as time passes. The amount can be calculated directly as the assumed discount rate multiplied by the projected benefit obligation at the beginning of the year.⁵

Additional Consideration

We can verify the increase in the PBO as being caused by the service cost and interest cost as follows:

PBO at the beginning of 2017 (end of 2016)				\$119,822
Service cost: $(1.5\% \times 1 \text{ yr.} \times \$400,000)$	\times	11.46992*	\times	0.18456†
Annual retirement benefits from 2017 service		To discount to 2046		To discount to 2017
				12,701
Interest cost: $\$119,822 \times 6\%$				7,189
PBO at the end of 2017				<u>\$139,712‡</u>

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1; $n = 20$, $i = 6\%$.

†Present value of \$1; $n = 29$, $i = 6\%$.

‡Differs from \$139,715 due to rounding.

3. Prior service cost. Another reason the PBO might change is when the pension plan itself is *amended* to revise the way benefits are determined. For example, Global Communications in our illustration might choose to revise the pension formula by which benefits are calculated. Let's back up and assume the formula's salary percentage is increased in 2017 from 1.5% to **1.7%**:

$$1.7\% \times \text{Service years} \times \text{Final year's salary} \\ (\text{revised pension formula})$$

Obviously, the annual service cost from this date forward will be higher than it would have been without the amendment. This will cause a more rapid future expansion of the PBO. But it also might cause an immediate increase in the PBO as well. Here's why.

Suppose the amendment becomes effective for future years' service only, without consideration of employee service to date. As you might imagine, the morale and dedication of long-time employees of the company could be expected to suffer. So, for economic as well as ethical reasons, most companies choose to make amendments retroactive to prior years. In other words, the more beneficial terms of the revised pension formula are not applied just to future service years, but benefits attributable to all prior service years also are recomputed under the more favorable terms. Obviously, this decision is not without cost to the company. Making the amendment retroactive to prior years adds an extra layer of retirement benefits, increasing the company's benefit obligation. The increase in the PBO attributable to making a plan amendment retroactive is referred to as **prior service cost**.⁶

⁵Assumed discount rates should reflect rates used currently in annuity contracts. Discount rates recently reported have ranged from 3.5% to 4.52% with 4% being the most commonly assumed rate (Pension/OPEB 2015 Assumption and Disclosure Survey, PWC, 2015).

⁶Prior service cost also is created if a defined benefit pension plan is initially adopted by a company that previously did not have one, and the plan itself is made retroactive to give credit for prior years' service. Prior service cost is created by plan amendments far more often than by plan adoptions because most companies already have pension plans, and new pension plans in recent years have predominantly been defined contribution plans.

When a pension plan is amended, credit often is given for employee service rendered in prior years. The cost of doing so is called **prior service cost**.

For instance, Illustration 17–7 presents an excerpt from an annual report of **Ecolab, Inc.** describing the increase in its PBO as a result of making an amendment retroactive:

Note 1: Retirement Plans (in part)

... The Company amended its U.S. pension plan to change the formula for pension benefits and to provide a more rapid vesting schedule. The plan amendments resulted in a \$6 million increase in the projected benefits obligation.

Illustration 17–7

Prior Service Cost—
Ecolab, Inc.

Real World Financials

Let's put prior service cost in the context of our illustration.

At the end of 2016, and therefore the beginning of 2017, the PBO is \$119,822. If the plan is amended on January 3, 2017, the PBO for that date could be recomputed as:

PBO without Amendment		PBO with Amendment	
1.	$1.5\% \times 10 \text{ yrs.} \times \$400,000 = \$60,000$	$1.7\% \times 10 \text{ yrs.} \times \$400,000 = \$68,000$	
2.	$\$60,000 \times 11.46992 = 688,195$	$\$68,000 \times 11.46992 = 779,955$	
3.	$\$688,195 \times .17411 = 119,822$	$\$779,955 \times .17411 = 135,798$	
		\$15,976	
		Prior service cost	

Retroactive benefits from an amendment add additional costs, increasing the company's PBO. This increase is the prior service cost.

The **\$15,976** increase in the PBO attributable to applying the more generous terms of the amendment to prior service years is the prior service cost. And, because we assumed the amendment occurred at the beginning of 2017, both the 2017 service cost and the 2017 interest cost would change as a result of the prior service cost. This is how:

PBO at the beginning of 2017 (end of 2016)	\$119,822	
Prior service cost (determined above)	15,976	
PBO including prior service cost at the beginning of 2017	135,798	
Service cost: (1.7% × 1yr. × \$400,000) × 11.46992* × 0.18456†	14,395	
Annual retirement benefits from 2017 service	To discount to 2046	To discount to 2017
Interest cost: \$135,798‡ × 6%		8,148
PBO at the end of 2017		\$158,341

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1; $n = 20$, $i = 6\%$.

†Present value of \$1; $n = 29$, $i = 6\%$.

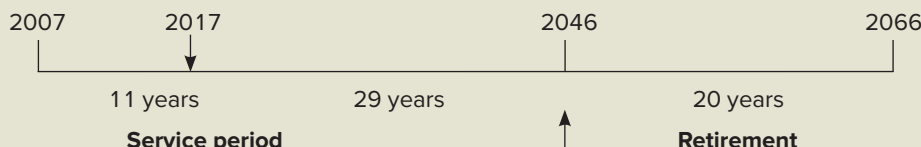
‡Includes the beginning balance plus the prior service cost because the amendment occurred at the beginning of the year.

Additional Consideration

We can verify the PBO balance by calculating it directly:

3. Present value ($n = 29$, $i = 6\%$) of retirement benefits at 2017 is
 $\$857,950 \times .18456 =$
\$158,341* (PBO)

1. Actuary estimates employee has earned (as of 2017) retirement benefits of
 $1.7\% \times 11 \text{ years} \times \$400,000 =$
\$74,800 per year



2. Present value ($n = 20$, $i = 6\%$) of the retirement annuity at the retirement date is
 $\$74,800 \times 11.46992 =$ **\$857,950**

The pension formula reflects the plan amendment.

*Adjusted by \$2 to compensate for the rounding of present value factors.

The plan amendment would affect not only the year in which it occurs, but also each subsequent year because the revised pension formula determines each year's service cost. Continuing our illustration to 2018 demonstrates this:

During 2018, the PBO increased as a result of service cost and interest cost.

PBO at the beginning of 2018 (end of 2017)				\$158,341
Service cost: $(1.7\% \times 1\text{yr.} \times \$400,000) \times 11.46992^* \times 0.19563^+$				
Annual retirement benefits from 2018 service	To discount to 2046	To discount to 2018		15,258
Interest cost : $\$158,341 \times 6\%$				9,500
PBO at the end of 2018				<u>\$183,099</u>

*Present value of an ordinary annuity of \$1; $n = 20$, $i = 6\%$.

*Present value of \$1; $n = 28$, $i = 6\%$.

4. Gain or loss on the PBO. We mentioned earlier that a number of estimates are necessary to derive the PBO. When one or more of these estimates requires revision, the estimate of the PBO also will require revision. The resulting decrease or increase in the PBO is referred to as a *gain* or *loss*, respectively. Let's modify our illustration to imitate the effect of revising one of the several possible estimates involved. Suppose, for instance, that new information at the end of 2018 about inflation and compensation trends suggests that the estimate of Farrow's final salary should be increased by 5% to **\$420,000**. This would affect the estimate of the PBO as follows:

Decreases and increases in estimates of the PBO because of periodic re-evaluation of uncertainties are called gains and losses.

Changing the final salary estimate changes the PBO.

PBO <i>without</i> Revised Estimate				PBO <i>with</i> Revised Estimate			
1.	$1.7\% \times 12 \text{ yrs.} \times \$400,000$	= \$	81,600	$1.7\% \times 12 \text{ yrs.} \times$	\$420,000	= \$	85,680
2.	$\$81,600 \times 11.46992$	=	935,945	$\$85,680 \times 11.46992$	=		982,743
3.	$\$935,945 \times .19563$	=	<u>183,099</u>	$\$982,743 \times .19563$	=	<u>192,254</u>	

5. Payment of retirement benefits. We've seen how the PBO will change due to the accumulation of service cost from year to year, the accrual of interest as time passes, making plan amendments retroactive to prior years, and periodic adjustments when estimates change. Another change in the PBO occurs when the obligation is reduced as benefits actually are paid to retired employees.

The payment of such benefits is not applicable in our present illustration because we've limited the situation to calculations concerning an individual employee who is several years from retirement. Remember, though, in reality the actuary would make these calculations for the entire pool of employees covered by the pension plan. But the concepts involved would be the same. Illustration 17–8 summarizes the five ways the PBO can change.

Payment of retirement benefits reduces the PBO.

The Projected Benefits Obligation Changes as a Result of:

Cause	Effect	Frequency
Service cost	+	Each period
Interest cost	+	Each period (except the first period of the plan, when no obligation exists to accrue interest)
Prior service cost	+	Only if the plan is amended (or initiated) that period
Loss or gain on PBO	+ or –	Whenever revisions are made in the pension liability estimate
Retiree benefits paid	–	Each period (unless no employees have yet retired under the plan)

Illustration 17–8

Components of Change in the PBO

Illustration Expanded to Consider the Entire Employee Pool

For our single employee, the PBO at the end of 2018 is \$192,254. Let's say now that Global Communications has 2,000 active employees covered by the pension plan and 100 retired employees receiving retirement benefits. Illustration 17–9 expands the numbers to represent all covered employees.

The PBO is not formally recognized in the balance sheet.

The changes in the PBO for Global Communications during 2018 were as follows:*

	(\$ in millions)
PBO at the beginning of 2018 [†] (amount assumed)	\$400
Service cost, 2018 (amount assumed)	41
Interest cost: \$400 × 6%	24
Loss (gain) on PBO (amount assumed)	23
Less: Retiree benefits paid (amount assumed)	(38)
PBO at the end of 2018	<u>\$450</u>

*Of course, these expanded amounts are not simply the amounts for Jessica Farrow multiplied by 2,000 employees because her years of service, expected retirement date, and salary are not necessarily representative of other employees. Also, the expanded amounts take into account expected employee turnover and current retirees.

[†]Includes the prior service cost that increased the PBO when the plan was amended in 2017.

Illustration 17–9

The PBO Expanded to Include All Employees

Pension Plan Assets

So far our focus has been on the employer's obligation to provide retirement benefits in the future. We turn our attention now to the resources with which the company will satisfy that obligation—the **pension plan assets**. Like the PBO, the pension plan assets are not reported separately in the employer's balance sheet but are netted together with the PBO to report either a net pension asset (debit balance) or a net pension liability (credit balance). Its separate balance, too, must be reported in the disclosure notes to the financial statements (as does the separate PBO balance), and as explained below, the return on these assets is included in the calculation of the periodic pension expense.

● LO17–4

**FINANCIAL
Reporting Case**

Q3, p. 968

We assumed in the previous section that Global Communications' obligation is \$450 million for service performed to date. When employees retire, will there be sufficient funds to provide the anticipated benefits? To ensure sufficient funding, Global will contribute cash each year to a pension fund.

A trustee manages pension plan assets.

The assets of a pension fund must be held by a **trustee**. A trustee accepts employer contributions, invests the contributions, accumulates the earnings on the investments, and pays benefits from the plan assets to retired employees or their beneficiaries. The trustee can be an individual, a bank, or a trust company. Plan assets are invested in stocks, bonds, and other income-producing assets. The accumulated balance of the annual employer contributions plus the return on the investments (dividends, interest, market price appreciation) must be sufficient to pay benefits as they come due.

When an employer estimates how much it must set aside each year to accumulate sufficient funds to pay retirement benefits as they come due, it's necessary to estimate the return those investments will produce. This is the **expected return on plan assets**. The higher the return, the less the employer must actually contribute. On the other hand, a relatively low return means the difference must be made up by higher contributions. In practice, recent estimates of the rate of return have ranged from 4.6% to 9%, with 7.3% being the most commonly reported expectation.⁸ In Illustration 17–10, we shift the focus of our numerical illustration to emphasize Global's pension plan assets.

Illustration 17–10

How Plan Assets Change

A trustee accepts employer contributions, invests the contributions, accumulates the earnings on the investments, and pays benefits from the plan assets.

Global Communications funds its defined benefit pension plan by contributing each year the year's service cost plus a portion of the prior service cost. Cash of \$48 million was contributed to the pension fund at the end of 2018.

Plan assets at the beginning of 2018 were valued at \$300 million. The expected rate of return on the investment of those assets was 9%, but the actual return in 2018 was 10%. Retirement benefits of \$38 million were paid at the end of 2018 to retired employees.

What is the value of the company's pension plan assets at the end of 2018?

	(\$ in millions)
Plan assets at the beginning of 2018	\$300
Actual return on plan assets (10% × \$300)	30
Cash contributions	48
Less: Retiree benefits paid	(38)
Plan assets at the end of 2018	<u>\$340</u>

An underfunded pension plan means the PBO exceeds plan assets.

Recall that Global's PBO at the end of 2018 is \$450 million. Because the plan assets are only \$340 million, the pension plan is said to be *underfunded*. One reason is that we assumed Global incurred a \$60 million prior service cost from amending the pension plan at the beginning of 2017, and that cost is being funded over several years. Another factor is the loss from increasing the PBO due to the estimate revision, since funding has been based on the previous estimate. Later, we'll assume earlier revisions also have increased the PBO. Of course, actual performance of the investments also impacts a plan's funded status.

An overfunded pension plan means plan assets exceed the PBO.

It is not unusual for pension plans today to be underfunded. Historically, the funded status of pension plans has varied considerably. Prior to the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (ERISA) in 1974, many plans were grossly underfunded. The law established minimum funding standards among other matters designed to protect plan participants. The new standards brought most plans closer to full funding. Then the stock market boom of the 1980s caused the value of plan assets for many pension funds to swell to well in excess of their projected benefit obligations. More than 80% of pension plans were overfunded. As a result, managers explored ways to divert funds to other areas of operations. Today, a majority of plans again are underfunded. The economic crisis has taken its toll. Stock market

⁸Pension/OPEB 2015 Assumption and Disclosure Survey, PWC, 2015.

declines reduced the funded status of pension plans from 108% at the end of 2007 to 79% at the end of 2008.⁹ Despite positive stock market returns since, the funded status for plans at the 1,500 largest U.S. companies tracked by Standard & Poor's was 89% in 2015. One culprit was low interest rates. Low interest rates hurt plans' funded status because the pension obligation is a present value calculation that increases with a lower discount rate. Even small interest rate changes have big effects on funded status. Many of the underfunded plans are with troubled companies, placing employees at risk. The PBGC guarantees are limited to about \$5,000 per month, often less than promised pension benefits.

Reporting the Funded Status of the Pension Plan

A company's PBO is not reported separately among liabilities in the balance sheet. Similarly, the plan assets a company sets aside to pay those benefits are not separately reported among assets in the balance sheet. However, firms do report the net difference between those two amounts, referred to as the "funded status" of the plan.¹⁰ From our previous discussion, we see the funded status for Global to be the following at December 31, 2018, and December 31, 2017:

(\$ in millions)	2018	2017
Projected benefit obligation (PBO)	\$450	\$400
Fair value of plan assets	340	300
Underfunded status	<u>\$110</u>	<u>\$100</u>

Because the plan is underfunded, Global reports a net pension liability of \$110 million in its 2018 balance sheet and \$100 million in 2017. Be sure to note that the "net pension liability" is not an actual account balance. Instead, it's the PBO account balance and the Plan assets account balance simply reported in the balance sheet as a single net amount. If the plan becomes overfunded in the future, Global will report a net pension asset instead.

Now, let's look at all the ways that changes in the PBO and the pension plan assets affect pension expense.

● LO17-5

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q4, p. 968

A company must report in its balance sheet a liability for the underfunded (or asset for the overfunded) status of its postretirement plans.

Determining Pension Expense

The Relationship between Pension Expense and Changes in the PBO and Plan Assets

Like wages, salaries, commissions, and other forms of pay, pension expense is part of a company's compensation for employee services each year. Accordingly, the accounting objective is to achieve a matching of the costs of providing this form of compensation with the benefits of the services performed. However, the fact that this form of compensation actually is paid to employees many years after the service is performed means that other elements in addition to the annual service cost will affect the ultimate pension cost. These other elements are related to changes that occur over time in both the pension obligation and the pension plan assets. Illustration 17-11 provides a summary of how some of these changes influence pension expense.

We've examined each of the components of pension expense from the viewpoint of its effect on the PBO or on plan assets, using the Global Communications illustration to demonstrate that effect. Now, let's expand the same illustration to see how these changes affect *pension expense*. Illustration 17-12 provides this expanded example.

PART C

● LO17-6

The costs are allocated to the periods the services are performed.

⁹Goldman Sachs, "Global Markets Institute Accounting Policy Update: Pension review 2009—Fallout from funded status decline just beginning," Global Markets Institute, June 4, 2009.

¹⁰FASB 715-30-25: Compensation—Retirement Benefits—Defined Benefit Plans—Pension—Recognition (previously "Employers' Accounting for Defined Benefit Pension and Other Postretirement Plans—an amendment of FASB Statements No. 87, 88, 106, and 132(R)," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 158* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 2006)).

Illustration 17-11

Components of the
Periodic Pension Expense**FINANCIAL
Reporting Case**

Q5, p. 968

The pension expense reported in the income statement is a composite of periodic changes that occur in both the pension obligation and the plan assets.

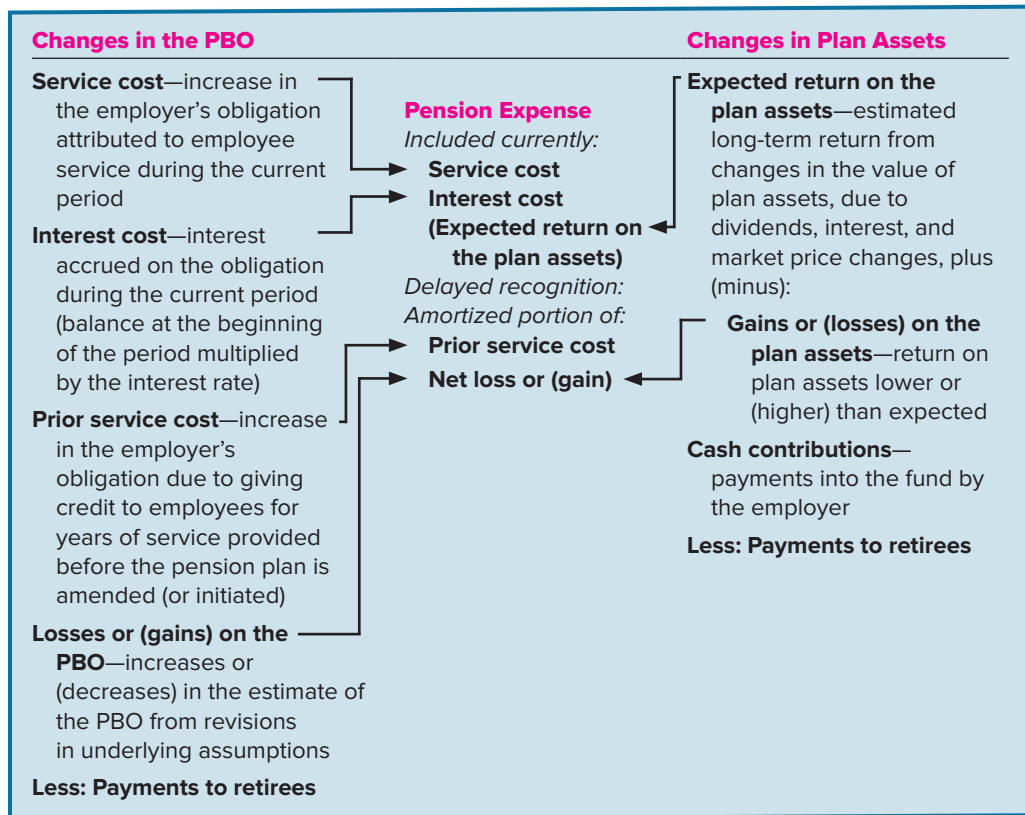


Illustration 17-12

Pension Expense

These are the changes in the PBO and in the plan assets we previously discussed (Illustration 17-9 and Illustration 17-10).

Reports from the actuary and the trustee of plan assets indicate the following changes during 2018 in the PBO and plan assets of Global Communications (\$ in millions).

	PBO		Plan Assets
<i>Beginning of 2018</i>	\$400	<i>Beginning of 2018</i>	\$300
Service cost	41	Actual return on plan assets,	
Interest cost, 6%	24	10% (9% expected)*	30
Loss (gain) on PBO	23	Cash contributions	48
Less: Retiree benefits	(38)	Less: Retiree benefits	(38)
<i>End of 2018</i>	<u>\$450</u>	<i>End of 2018</i>	<u>\$340</u>

Assume a *prior service cost* of \$60 million was incurred at the beginning of the previous year (2017) due to a plan amendment increasing the PBO. Also assume that at the beginning of 2018, Global had a *net loss* of \$55 million (previous losses exceeded previous gains). The average remaining service life of employees is estimated at 15 years.

Global's 2018 Pension Expense Is Determined as Follows:	(\$ in millions)
Service cost	\$41
Interest cost	24
Expected return on the plan assets (\$30 actual, less \$3 gain)	(27)
Amortization of prior service cost (calculated later)	4
Amortization of net loss (calculated later)	1
Pension expense	<u>\$43</u>

*Expected rates of return anticipate the performance of various investments of plan assets. This is not necessarily the same as the discount rate used by the actuary to estimate the pension obligation. Assumed rates of return recently reported have ranged from 4.6% to 9%, with 7.3% being the most commonly assumed rate (Pension/OPEB 2015 Assumption and Disclosure Survey, PWC, 2015).

2018 Pension Expense

Components of Pension Expense

Illustration 17–12 demonstrates the relationship between some of the changes in the PBO and in plan assets and the components of pension expense: service cost, interest cost, the return on plan assets, prior service cost amortization, and net gain or loss amortization. Let's look at these five components of pension expense one at a time.

1. SERVICE COST. The \$41 million service cost represents the increase in the projected benefit obligation attributable to employee service performed during 2018 (benefits earned by employees during the year). Each year, this is the first component of the pension expense.

2. INTEREST COST. The interest cost is calculated as the interest rate (discount rate) multiplied by the projected benefit obligation at the beginning of the year. In 2018, this is 6% times \$400 million, or \$24 million.

Interest cost is the discount rate times the PBO balance at the beginning of the year.

The PBO balance is not separately reported as a liability in the company's balance sheet, but it is a liability nevertheless.¹¹ The interest expense that accrues on its balance is not separately reported in the income statement but instead becomes the second component of the annual pension expense.

3. RETURN ON PLAN ASSETS. Remember, plan assets comprise funds invested in stocks, bonds, and other securities that presumably will generate dividends, interest, and capital gains. Each year, these earnings represent the return on plan assets during that year. When accounting for the return, we need to differentiate between its two modes: the *expected* return and the *actual* return.

The return earned on investment securities increases the plan asset balance.

Actual versus expected return. We've assumed Global's expected rate of return is 9%, so its expected return on plan assets in 2018 was 9% times \$300 million, or \$27 million. But, as previously indicated, the actual rate of return in 2018 was 10%, producing an actual return on plan assets of 10% times \$300 million, or \$30 million.

Obviously, investing plan assets in income-producing assets lessens the amounts employers must contribute to the fund. So, the return on plan assets reduces the net cost of having a pension plan. Accordingly, the return on plan assets each year *reduces* the amount recorded as pension expense. Just as the interest expense that accrues on the PBO is included as a component of pension expense rather than being separately reported, the investment revenue on plan assets is not separately reported either. In actuality, both the interest and return-on-assets components of pension expense do not directly represent employee compensation. Instead, they are financial items created only because the future obligation to retirees must be funded currently.

The interest and return-on-assets components are financial items created rather than direct employee compensation.

Adjustment for loss or gain. A controversial question is *when* differences between the actual and expected return should be recognized in pension expense. It seems logical that since the net cost of having a pension plan is reduced by the actual return on plan assets, the charge to pension expense should be the actual return on plan assets. However, the FASB concluded that the actual return should first be adjusted by any difference between that return and the return amount that had been expected. So, it's actually the *expected* return that is included in the calculation of pension expense. In our illustration, Global's pension expense is reduced by the expected return of \$27 million.

The return on plan assets reduces the net cost of having a pension plan.

The difference between the actual and expected return is considered a loss or gain on plan assets. Although we don't include these losses and gains as part of pension expense when they occur, it's possible they will affect pension expense at a later time. Soon, we will discuss how that might happen.

Any loss or gain is not included in pension expense right away.

4. AMORTIZATION OF PRIOR SERVICE COST. Recall that the \$60 million increase in Global's PBO due to recalculating benefits employees earned in prior years as a result of a plan amendment is referred to as the prior service cost. Obviously, prior service cost adds to the cost of having a pension plan. But when should this cost be recognized as pension expense? An argument can be made that the cost should be recognized as expense in the year of the amendment when the cost increases the company's pension obligation. In fact,

¹¹As we discussed earlier and will revisit later, the PBO is combined with pension assets with the net difference reported in the balance sheet as either a net pension liability or a net pension asset.

Prior service cost is recognized as pension expense over the future service period of the employees whose benefits are recalculated.

some members of the FASB have advocated this approach. At present, though, we amortize the cost gradually to pension expense. Here's the rationalization.

Amending a pension plan, and especially choosing to make that amendment retroactive, typically is done with the idea that future operations will benefit from those choices. For that reason, the cost is not recognized as pension expense in the year the plan is amended. Instead, it is recognized as pension expense over the time that the employees who benefited from the retroactive amendment will work for the company in the future. Presumably, this future service period is when the company will receive the benefits of its actions.

In our illustration, the amendment occurred in 2017, increasing the PBO at that time. For the individual employee, Jessica Farrow, the prior service cost was calculated to be \$15,976. Our illustration assumes that, for *all* plan participants, the prior service cost was \$60 million at the beginning of 2017. The prior service cost at the beginning of 2018 is \$56 million. The following section explains how this amount was computed.

One assumption in our illustration is that the average remaining service life of the active employee group is 15 years. To recognize the \$60 million prior service cost in equal annual amounts over this period, the amount amortized as an increase in pension expense each year is **\$4 million**.¹²

By the straight-line method, prior service cost is recognized over the average remaining service life of the active employee group.

Amortization of Prior Service Cost	(\$ in millions)
Service cost	\$41
Interest cost	24
Expected return on the plan assets	(27)
Amortization of prior service cost—AOCI	4
Amortization of net loss—AOCI	1
Pension expense	<u>\$43</u>

Prior service cost is not expensed as it is incurred. Instead, it is reported as a component of AOCI to be amortized over time.

Be sure to note that, even though we're amortizing it, the prior service cost is not an asset, but instead a part of *accumulated other comprehensive income* (AOCI), a shareholders' equity account. This is a result of the FASB's disinclination to treat the cost as an expense as it is incurred. The Board, instead, prefers to consider it to be *other comprehensive income* (OCI) like the handful of losses and gains also categorized the same way and not reported among the gains and losses in the traditional income statement. You first learned about comprehensive income in Chapter 4 and again in Chapter 12. We'll revisit it again later in this chapter.

The prior service cost balance in AOCI declines by \$4 million each year:

Prior Service Cost—AOCI	(\$ in millions)
Prior service cost at the beginning of 2018	\$56
Less: 2018 amortization	(4)
Prior service cost at the end of 2018	<u>\$52</u>

5. AMORTIZATION OF A NET LOSS OR NET GAIN. You learned previously that gains and losses can occur when expectations are revised concerning either the PBO or the return on plan assets. Illustration 17–13 summarizes the possibilities.

Like the prior service cost we just discussed, we don't include these gains and losses as part of pension expense in the income statement, but instead report them as OCI in the statement of comprehensive income as they occur. We then report the gains and losses (net of subsequent amortization) on a cumulative basis as a net loss—AOCI or a net gain—AOCI, depending on whether we have greater losses or gains over time. We report this amount in the balance sheet as a part of *accumulated other comprehensive income* (AOCI), a shareholders' equity account.

There is no conceptual justification for not including losses and gains in earnings. After all, these increases and decreases in either the PBO or plan assets immediately impact the net cost of providing a pension plan and, conceptually, should be included in pension expense as they occur.

Nevertheless, the FASB requires that income statement recognition of gains and losses from either source be delayed. Why? For practical reasons.

We report gains and losses as OCI in the statement of comprehensive income.

¹²An alternative to this straight-line approach, called the *service method*, attempts to allocate the prior service cost to each year in proportion to the fraction of the total remaining service years worked in each of those years. This method is described in the chapter appendix.

	Projected Benefit Obligation	Return on Plan Assets
Higher than expected	Loss	Gain
Lower than expected	Gain	Loss

Illustration 17-13

Gains and Losses

Gains and losses occur when either the PBO or the return on plan assets turns out to be different than expected.

Income Smoothing

The FASB acknowledged the conceptual shortcoming of delaying the recognition of a gain or a loss while opting for this more politically acceptable approach. Delayed recognition was favored by a dominant segment of corporate America that was concerned with the effect of allowing gains and losses to immediately impact reported earnings.

The practical justification for delayed recognition is that, over time, gains and losses might cancel one another out. Given this possibility, why create unnecessary fluctuations in reported income by letting temporary gains and losses decrease and increase (respectively) pension expense? Of course, as years pass there may be more gains than losses, or vice versa, preventing their offsetting one another completely. So, if a net gain or a net loss gets “too large,” pension expense must be adjusted.

The FASB defines too large rather arbitrarily as being when a net gain or a net loss at the beginning of a year exceeds an amount equal to 10% of the PBO, or 10% of plan assets, whichever is higher.¹³ This threshold amount is referred to as the “corridor.” When the corridor is exceeded, the excess is not charged to pension expense all at once. Instead, as a further concession to income smoothing, only a portion of the excess is included in pension expense. The minimum amount that should be included is the excess divided by the average remaining service period of active employees expected to receive benefits under the plan.¹⁴

In our illustration, we’re assuming a net loss–AOCI of \$55 million at the beginning of 2018. Also recall that the PBO and plan assets are \$400 million and \$300 million, respectively, at that time. The amount amortized to 2018 pension expense is **\$1 million**, calculated as follows:

Determining Net Loss Amortization—2018	(\$ in millions)
Net loss (previous losses exceeded previous gains)	\$ 55
10% of \$400 (\$400 is greater than \$300): the “corridor”	(40)
Excess at the beginning of the year	\$ 15
Average remaining service period	÷ 15 years
Amount amortized to 2018 pension expense	\$ 1

A net gain or a net loss affects pension expense only if it exceeds an amount equal to 10% of the PBO, or 10% of plan assets, whichever is higher.

Because the net loss exceeds an amount equal to the greater of 10% of the PBO or 10% of plan assets, part of the excess is amortized to pension expense.

The pension expense is increased because a net loss is being amortized. If a net *gain* were being amortized, the amount would be *deducted* from pension expense because a gain would indicate that balance of the net cost of providing the pension plan had decreased.

Amortization of the Net Loss–AOCI	(\$ in millions)
Service cost	\$41
Interest cost	24
Expected return on the plan assets	(27)
Amortization of prior service cost–AOCI	4
Amortization of net loss–AOCI	1
Pension expense	\$43

Amortization of a net gain would decrease pension expense.

Amortization of a net loss increases pension expense.

¹³For this purpose, the FASB specifies the market-related value of plan assets. This can be either the fair value or a weighted-average fair value over a period not to exceed five years. We will uniformly assume fair value in this chapter.

¹⁴Companies are permitted to amortize the entire net loss (or gain) rather than just the excess, but few choose that option. (FASB ASC 715–30–35–25: Compensation–Retirement Benefits–Defined Benefit Plans–Pension–Subsequent Measurement–Gains and Losses (previously “Employers’ Accounting for Pensions,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 87* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1985))).

This amortization reduces the net loss–AOCI in 2018 by **\$1** million. Also recall that Global incurred (a) a \$23 million loss in 2018 from revising estimates relating to the PBO and (b) a \$3 million gain when the 2018 return on plan assets was higher than expected. These three changes affected the net loss–AOCI in 2018 as follows:

New losses add to a net loss; new gains reduce a net loss.

Net Loss–AOCI	(\$ in millions)
Net loss–AOCI at the beginning of 2018	\$55
Less: 2018 amortization	(1)
Plus: 2018 loss on PBO	23
Less: 2018 gain on plan assets	(3)
Net loss–AOCI at the end of 2018	<u>\$74</u>

Additional Consideration

The \$74 million balance in net loss–AOCI at the end of 2018 would be the beginning balance in 2019. It would be compared with the 2019 beginning balances in the PBO and plan assets to determine whether amortization would be necessary in 2019. If you were to look back to our analyses of the changes in those two balances, you would see the 2019 beginning balances in the PBO and plan assets to be \$450 million and \$340 million, respectively. The amount amortized to 2019 pension expense will be \$1.93 million, calculated as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
Net loss (previous losses exceeded previous gains)	\$ 74
10% of \$450 (\$450 is greater than \$340)	<u>(45)</u>
Excess at the beginning of the year	\$ 29
Average remaining service period	÷ 15 years*
Amount amortized to 2019 pension expense	<u>\$1.93</u>

*Assumes the average remaining service period of active employees is still 15 years in 2019, due to new employees joining the firm.

PART D

Reporting Issues

Recording Gains and Losses

● LO17–7

As we discussed earlier, gains and losses (either from changing assumptions regarding the PBO or from the return on assets being higher or lower than expected) are deferred and not immediately included in pension expense and net income. Instead, we report them as *other comprehensive income (OCI)* in the statement of comprehensive income. So Global records a *loss–OCI* for the **\$23 million** loss that occurs in 2018 when it revises its estimate of future salary levels causing its PBO estimate to increase. Global also records a **\$3 million** *gain–OCI* that occurred when the \$30 million actual return on plan assets exceeded the \$27 million expected return. Here's the entry:

Losses and gains (as well as any new prior service cost should it occur) are reported as OCI.

To Record Gains and Losses	(\$ in millions)
Loss–OCI (from change in assumption).....	23
PBO.....	23
Plan assets.....	3
Gain–OCI (\$30 actual return on assets — \$27 expected return).....	3

The loss is an increase in the PBO due to a change in an assumption. In this entry, we are recording that increase in the PBO account balance. If the change in assumption had caused the PBO to be reduced instead, we would debit the PBO here and credit a gain–OCI.

Similarly, the gain due to the actual return on plan assets exceeding the expected return is an increase in plan assets. In the next section, we increase plan assets for the expected return (as a component of pension expense) so the two adjustments together cause the plan assets

account balance to reflect the actual return (expected increase plus the additional increase represented by the gain). Of course, if the actual return had been less than expected, we would debit a loss-OCI and credit plan assets here.

Additional Consideration

Just as we record new losses and gains as they occur, we also will record a change in the prior service cost account for any new prior service cost should it occur. For instance, if Global revised its pension formula again and recalculated its PBO using the more generous formula, causing a \$40 million increase in the PBO, the company would record the new prior service cost this way:

To Record New Prior Service Cost		(\$ in millions)
Prior service cost-OCI (increase in PBO due to plan amendment).....	40	
PBO.....		40

If an amendment *reduces* rather than increases the PBO, the *negative prior service cost* would reduce both the prior service cost and pension liability.

International Financial Reporting Standards



Accounting for Gains and Losses. Accounting for gains and losses in defined benefit plans (called “remeasurement” gains and losses under IFRS) under *IAS No. 19* is similar to U.S. GAAP, but there are two important differences.

The first difference relates to the make-up of the gain or loss on plan assets. As we know from the chapter, this amount under U.S. GAAP is the difference between the actual and expected returns, where the expected return is different from company to company and usually different from the interest rate used to determine the interest cost. Not so under IFRS, which requires that we use the same rate (the rate for “high grade corporate bonds”) for both the interest cost on the defined benefit obligation (called projected benefit obligation or PBO under U.S. GAAP) and the interest revenue on the plan assets. In fact, under IFRS, we multiply that rate, say 6%, times the net difference between the defined benefit obligation (DBO) and plan assets and report the **net interest cost/income**:

	(\$ in millions)
Net interest cost $[6\% \times (\$400 - \$300)]$	6
Plan assets $(6\% \times \$300)$: interest income.....	18
DBO $(6\% \times \$400)$: interest cost.....	24

As a result, the remeasurement gain (or loss) under IFRS usually is an amount different from the gain (or loss) on plan assets under GAAP:

To Record Gains and Losses

U.S. GAAP	
Actual return = 10%	Expected return = 9%
Plan assets.....	3
Gain-OCI $[(10\% - 9\%) \times \$300]$	3
IFRS	
Plan assets (actual interest income in excess of 6%).....	12
Remeasurement gain-OCI $[(10\% - 6\%) \times \$300]$	12
Actual return = 10%	High grade corporate bond rate = 6%

(continued)

● LO17-12

Under IFRS, we have a **remeasurement gain** when the actual return on plan assets exceeds the “high grade corporate bond rate” we use to determine the net interest cost/income.

Remeasurement gains and losses under IFRS are reported as OCI but, unlike under U.S. GAAP, are *not* subsequently amortized to expense and recycled into net income.

(concluded)

A second difference relates to the treatment of gains and losses *after* they are initially recorded in OCI. We've seen that U.S. GAAP requires that gains and losses (either from the actual return exceeding an assumed amount [*entries above*] or from changing assumptions regarding the pension obligation [*entries below*]) are to be (a) included among OCI items in the statement of comprehensive income when they first arise and then (b) gradually amortized or recycled out of OCI and into expense (when the accumulated net gain or net loss exceeds the 10% threshold). Similar to U.S. GAAP, under IFRS these gains and losses are included in OCI when they first arise, but unlike U.S. GAAP those amounts are *not* subsequently amortized out of OCI and into expense.* Instead, under IFRS those amounts remain in the balance sheet as accumulated other comprehensive income. The initial entries, then, are the same:

U.S. GAAP		
Loss—OCI [†]	23	
PBO		23
IFRS		
Remeasurement loss—OCI ^{††}	23	
DBO		23

*"Employee Benefits," *International Accounting Standard No. 19* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

[†]Subsequently amortized to expense and recycled from other comprehensive income to net income.

^{††}Not subsequently amortized to expense; remains in accumulated other comprehensive income.

Recording the Pension Expense

Recall from Illustration 17–12 that Global's 2018 pension expense is \$43 million. The expense includes the \$41 million service cost and the \$24 million interest cost, both of which, as we learned earlier, add to Global's PBO. Similarly, the expense includes a \$27 million expected return on plan assets, which adds to the plan assets.¹⁵ These changes are reflected in the following entry:

Each component of the pension expense is recorded in the journal entry to record pension expense.

Service cost and interest cost increase the PBO. The return on assets increases plan assets.

Service cost	\$41
Interest cost	24
Expected return on assets	(27)
Amortization of prior service cost	4
Amortization of net loss	1
Pension expense	\$43

To Record Pension Expense	(\$ in millions)
Pension expense (total)	43
Plan assets (\$27 expected return on assets)	27
PBO (\$41 Service Cost + \$24 Interest Cost)	65
Amortization of prior service cost—OCI (2018 amortization)	4
Amortization of net loss—OCI (2018 amortization)	1

The pension expense also includes the \$4 million amortization of the prior service cost and the \$1 million amortization of the net loss. As we discussed earlier, we report prior service cost when it arises, as well as gains and losses as they occur as *other comprehensive income* (OCI) in the statement of comprehensive income. These OCI items accumulate as Prior service cost—AOCI and Net loss (or gain)—AOCI. So, when we amortize these AOCI accounts, we report the amortization amounts as OCI items in the statement of comprehensive income as well. These amortized amounts are being "reclassified" from OCI to net income.

Amortization reduces the Prior service cost—AOCI and the Net loss—AOCI. Since these accounts have debit balances, we credit the accounts for the amortization. If we were amortizing a net gain, we would *debit* the account because a net gain has a credit balance.

New gains and losses and prior service cost are reported as OCI. So is the amortization of their accumulated balances.

¹⁵The increase in plan assets is the \$30 million *actual* return, but the \$27 million *expected* return is the component of pension expense because the \$3 million gain isn't included in expense. We saw in the previous section that the \$3 million gain also increases plan assets.

Remember, we report the funded status of the plan in the balance sheet. That's the difference between the PBO and plan assets. In this case, it's a net pension liability since the plan is underfunded; that is, the PBO exceeds plan assets.

Reporting Pension Expense in the Income Statement

The service cost represents benefits earned by employees during the year as part of their compensation. Consistent with that characteristic, companies report the service cost component of pension expense in the income statement as part of the total *compensation costs* arising from services rendered by the employees during the period, separate from the other components of pension expense. This presentation reflects the nature of service cost being different from that of the other elements of pension cost. The other components of pension expense are presented in the income statement also, but separate from the service cost component and outside the subtotal of income from operations.¹⁶ In our illustration, then, Global will report the \$41 million service cost as one of the elements of compensation expense and the \$2 million net amount of the remaining components of pension expense on a separate line below income from operations.

In addition, the components of pension expense are itemized in disclosure notes. For instance, **Kellogg Company** described the composition of its pension expense in the disclosure note in its annual report for the year ended January 2, 2016, shown in Illustration 17–14.

The service cost component of pension expense is reported separate from the other components of pension expense in the income statement as part of the total compensation costs.

Components of Pension Expense			
(\$ in millions)	2015	2014	2013
Service cost	\$ 114	\$106	\$133
Interest cost	206	225	203
Expected return on plan assets	(399)	(415)	(359)
Amortization of losses (gains)	303	782	(854)
Amortization of prior service costs (credits)	13	14	16
Curtailment and special termination benefits	(1)	4	34
Net expense	\$ 236	\$716	\$(827)

Illustration 17–14

Disclosure of Pension Expense—**Kellogg Company**
Real World Financials

The components of pension expense are itemized in the disclosure note.

International Financial Reporting Standards

Prior Service Cost. Under IAS No. 19, prior service cost (called past service cost under IFRS) is combined with the current service cost and reported within the income statement rather than as a component of other comprehensive income as it is under U.S. GAAP.¹⁷ For Global, the service cost would be recorded under IFRS in 2017 when the plan amendment occurred as follows (\$ in millions):

Service cost (service cost–2017 plus \$60).....	xxx	
DBO (service cost–2017)		xxx
DBO (past service cost)		60*

*From Illustration 17–12.

● LO17–12

Recording the Funding of Plan Assets

When Global adds its annual cash investment to its plan assets, the value of those plan assets increases by \$48 million:

To Record Funding	(\$ in millions)
Plan assets	48
Cash (contribution to plan assets)	48

¹⁶Accounting Standards Update, *Compensation—Retirement Benefits (Topic 715): Improving the Presentation of Net Periodic Pension Cost and Net Periodic Postretirement Benefit Cost*, FASB: December, 2016).

¹⁷“Employee Benefits,” *International Accounting Standard No. 19* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

It's not unusual for the cash contribution to differ from that year's pension expense. After all, determining the periodic pension expense and the funding of the pension plan are two separate processes. Pension expense is an accounting decision. How much to contribute each year is a financing decision affected by cash flow and tax considerations, as well as minimum funding requirements. The Pension Protection Act of 2006 and the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (ERISA) establish the pension funding requirements. Subject to these considerations, cash contributions are actuarially determined with the objective of accumulating (along with investment returns) sufficient funds to provide promised retirement benefits.

We saw earlier that when pension benefits are paid to retired employees, those payments reduce the plan assets established to pay the benefits and also reduce the obligation to pay the benefits, the PBO:

To Record Payment of Benefits		(\$ in millions)
PBO		38
Plan assets (payments to retired employees).....		38

Now that we've recorded these entries for the funding of the pension plan and payment of benefits, we have recorded all the changes in the PBO and plan assets:

(\$ in millions)		PBO	Plan Assets	
		400 Balance	Balance	300
		23 Loss	Gain	3
		41 Service cost	Expected return	27
		24 Interest cost	Funding	48
Benefits paid	38			38
		450 Balance	Balance	340

Remember, though, we don't report either of these balances separately in the balance sheet. Instead, we net the two and report a net pension liability of $\$450 = 340 - \110 million, the funded status of the pension plan.

Additional Consideration

Rather than recording each of these changes in the PBO and Plan Asset accounts, we could have recorded them in a single Net pension (liability) asset account. For example, we could have recorded the gains and losses, pension expense, and funding as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
Loss—OCI (from change in assumption).....	23
Net pension (liability) asset.....	23
Net pension (liability) asset.....	3
Gain—OCI (\$30 actual return on assets – \$27 expected return).....	3
Pension expense	43
Net pension (liability) asset.....	38
Amortization of prior service cost—OCI*	4
Amortization of net loss—OCI*	1
Net pension (liability) asset.....	48
Cash.....	48

In fact many companies use this abbreviated approach. However, recording the changes in the accounts they affect (PBO and Plan assets) and then combining the two accounts for balance sheet reporting as we do in our illustrations has two advantages. First, we need the separate balances for the required disclosure in the pension disclosure note. Second, it is a more logical approach. It's easier to see that the return on plan assets is an increase in plan assets than it is to see it as a reduction in Net pension (liability) asset.

*Because Prior service cost—OCI and Net loss—OCI have debit balances, we amortize them with credits. We would amortize a Net gain—OCI (credit balance) with a debit.

Comprehensive Income

Comprehensive income, as you may recall from Chapter 4, is a more expansive view of income than traditional net income. In fact, it encompasses all changes in equity other than from transactions with owners.¹⁸ So, in addition to net income, comprehensive income includes up to four other changes in equity. A statement of comprehensive income is demonstrated in Illustration 17–15, highlighting the presentation of the components of OCI pertaining to Global’s pension plan.

	(\$ in millions)
Net income	\$xxx
Other comprehensive income:	
Unrealized holding gains (losses) on investments*	\$ x
Pension plan:	
Loss—due to revising a PBO estimate[†]	(23)
Gain—return on plan assets exceeds expected[†]	3
Amortization of net loss	1
Amortization of prior service cost	4
Deferred gains (losses) from derivatives	x
Gains (losses) from foreign currency transactions and exchange rate adjustments	x xx
Comprehensive income	<u>\$xxx</u>

Note: These amounts are shown without considering taxes. Actually each of the elements of comprehensive income should be reported net of tax. For instance, if the tax rate is 40%, the loss would be reported as \$13.8 million: \$23 million less a \$9.2 million tax benefit.

*An unrealized loss also might occur from recording an impairment of a debt security investment as described in Chapter 12 and, as discussed in Chapter 14, applying the “fair value option” to a liability entails reporting in OCI any part of the change in the liability’s fair value that’s due to the liability’s credit risk.

[†]From Illustration 17–12.

Illustration 17–15

Statement of Comprehensive Income

Gains and losses, as well as any new prior service cost should it arise, are among the OCI items reported in the period they occur.

Other comprehensive income (OCI) items are reported both (a) as they occur and then (b) as an accumulated balance within shareholder’s equity in the balance sheet as shown in Illustration 17–16.¹⁹

In addition to reporting the gains or losses (and other elements of comprehensive income) that occur in the current reporting period, we also report these amounts on a *cumulative* basis in the balance sheet. Comprehensive income includes (a) net income and (b) OCI. Remember that we report net income that occurs in the current reporting period in the income statement and also report accumulated net income (that hasn’t been distributed as dividends) in the balance sheet as retained earnings. Similarly, we report OCI as it occurs in the current reporting period (see Illustration 17–15) and also report *accumulated other comprehensive income* in the balance sheet. In its 2018 balance sheet, Global will report the amounts as shown in Illustration 17–16.

Look back to the schedule shown earlier to see how the net loss–AOCI increased from **\$55 million** to **\$74 million** during 2018 and another schedule also shown earlier to see how the prior service cost–AOCI decreased from **\$56 million** to **\$52 million**. The pension liability represents the underfunded status of Global’s pension plan on the two dates.

Reporting OCI as it occurs and also as an accumulated balance is consistent with the way we report net income and its accumulated counterpart, retained earnings.

Income Tax Considerations

We have ignored the income tax effects of the amounts in order to focus on the core issues. Note, though, that as gains and losses occur, they are reported along with their tax effects (tax expense for a gain, tax savings for a loss) in the statement of comprehensive income. This can be accomplished by presenting components of other comprehensive income either net of related income tax effects or *before* income tax effects with disclosure of the income

OCI items are reported net of tax, in both the (a) statement of comprehensive income and (b) AOCI.

¹⁸Transactions with owners primarily include dividends and the sale or purchase of shares of the company’s stock.

¹⁹Companies can present net income and other comprehensive income either in a single continuous statement of comprehensive income or in two separate but consecutive statements.

Illustration 17-16

Balance Sheet
Presentation of Pension
Amounts

If the plan had been overfunded, Global would have reported a pension asset among its assets rather than this pension liability.

The net loss and prior service cost reduce shareholders' equity.

Global Communication Balance Sheets For Years Ended December 31		
	2018	2017
Assets		
Current assets	\$xxx	\$xxx
Property, plant, and equipment	xxx	xxx
Liabilities		
Current liabilities	\$xxx	\$xxx
Net pension liability	110	100
Other long-term liabilities	xxx	xxx
Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock	\$xxx	\$xxx
Retained earnings	xxx	xxx
Accumulated other comprehensive income:		
Net unrealized holding gains and losses on investments—AOCI	xxx	xxx
Net loss—AOCI*	(74)	(55)
Prior service cost—AOCI*	(52)	(56)

*These are debit balances and therefore negative components of accumulated other comprehensive income; a net gain—AOCI would have a credit balance and be a positive component of accumulated other comprehensive income.

taxes allocated to each component either in a disclosure note or parenthetically in the statement.²⁰ Likewise, AOCI in the balance sheet also is reported net of tax.

Putting the Pieces Together

LO17-8

In preceding sections, we've discussed (1) the projected benefit obligation (including changes due to periodic service cost, accrued interest, revised estimates, plan amendments, and the payment of benefits); (2) the plan assets (including changes due to investment returns, employer contributions, and the payment of benefits); (3) prior service cost; (4) gains and losses; (5) the periodic pension expense (comprising components of each of these); and (6) the funded status of the plan. These elements of a pension plan are interrelated. It's helpful to see how each element relates to the others. One way is to bring each part together in a *pension spreadsheet*. We do this for Global Communications in Illustration 17-17.

You should spend several minutes studying this spreadsheet, focusing on the relationships among the elements that constitute a pension plan. Notice that the first numerical column simply repeats the actuary's report of how the PBO changed during the year, as explained previously (Illustration 17-9). Likewise, the second column reproduces the changes in plan assets we discussed earlier (Illustration 17-10). We've also previously noted the changes in the prior service cost—AOCI and the net loss—AOCI that are duplicated in the third and fourth columns. The fifth column repeats the calculation of the 2018 pension expense we determined earlier, and the cash contribution to the pension fund is the sole item in the next column.

The last column shows the changes in the funded status of the plan. Be sure to notice that the funded status is the difference between the PBO (column 1) and the plan assets (column 2). That means that each of the changes we see in either of the first two columns also is reflected as a change in the funded status in the last column. The net pension liability (or net pension asset) balance is not carried in company records. Instead, we use this label to report the PBO and plan assets in the balance sheet as a single net amount.

Rather than report the PBO and plan asset balances separately, we combine those balances and report a single net pension liability or net pension asset in the balance sheet.

²⁰Similarly, if any new prior service cost should arise due to a plan amendment, it too would be reported net of tax or with tax effects shown parenthetically.

Illustration 17-17

Pension Spreadsheet

When the PBO exceeds plan assets, we have a net pension liability. If plan assets exceed the PBO we have a net pension asset.

The net pension liability (or net pension asset) is not recorded in a journal entry but is the amount reported in the balance sheet as the PBO and plan assets combined.

	Recorded in Accounts					Reported Only	
	PBO	Plan Assets	Prior Service Cost —AOCI	Net Loss —AOCI	Pension Expense	Cash	Net Pension (Liability)/ Asset
Balance, Jan. 1, 2018	(400)	300	56	55			(100)
Service cost	(41)				41		(41)
Interest cost	(24)				24		(24)
Expected return on assets		27			(27)		27
Adjust for: Gain on assets		3		(3)			3
Amortization of:							
Prior service cost—AOCI			(4)		4		
Net loss—AOCI				(1)	1		
Loss on PBO	(23)			23			(23)
Prior service cost (new)*	0		0				0
Contributions to fund		48				(48)	48
Retiree benefits paid	38	(38)					
Balance, Dec. 31, 2018	(450)	340	52	74	43		(110)

Note: ()s represent credits to accounts, not necessarily decreases.
 *This amount was \$60 million in the 2015 pension spreadsheet.

Notice that each change in a formal account (light-shaded columns) is reflected in exactly two of those columns with one debit and one credit.

International Financial Reporting Standards

Reporting Pension Expense. Under IFRS we separately report (a) the service cost component (including past service cost) and (b) the net interest cost/income component in the *income statement* and (c) remeasurement gains and losses as *other comprehensive income*.



● LO17-12

Decision Makers' Perspective

Although financial statement items are casualties of the political compromises of GAAP guidance, information provided in the disclosure notes fortunately makes up for some of the deficiencies.²¹ Foremost among the useful disclosures are changes in the projected benefit obligation, changes in the fair value of plan assets, and a breakdown of the components of the annual pension expense. Other information also is made available to make it possible for interested analysts to reconstruct the financial statements with pension assets and liabilities included. We'll look at specific disclosures after we discuss postretirement benefits other than pensions because the two types of plans are reported together.

Investors and creditors must be cautious of the nontraditional treatment of pension information when developing financial ratios as part of an analysis of financial statements. The various elements of pensions that are not reported separately on the balance sheet and income statement (PBO, plan assets, gains and losses) can be included in ratios such as the debt to equity ratio or return on assets, but only by deliberately obtaining those numbers

Pension amounts reported in the disclosure notes fill a reporting gap left by the minimal disclosures in the primary financial statements.

²¹FASB ASC 715-20-50: Compensation-Retirement Benefits-Defined Benefit Plans-General-Disclosure (previously "Employers' Disclosures about Pensions and Other Postretirement Benefits," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 132* (revised 2003), (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 2003)).

from the disclosure notes and adjusting the computation of the ratios. Similarly, without adjustment, profitability ratios and the times interest earned ratio will be distorted because pension expense includes the financial components of interest and return on assets.

Earnings quality (as defined in Chapter 4 and discussed in other chapters) also can be influenced by amounts reported in pension disclosures. Companies with relatively sizeable unrecognized pension costs (prior service cost, net gain or loss) can be expected to exhibit a relatively high “temporary” earnings component. Recall that temporary earnings are expected to be less predictive of future earnings than the “permanent” earnings component. ●

Settlement or Curtailment of Pension Plans

Companies sometimes terminate defined benefit plans to reduce costs and lessen risk.

To cut down on cumbersome paperwork and lessen their exposure to the risk posed by defined benefit plans, many companies are providing defined contribution plans instead. When a plan is terminated, a change in earnings is reported at that time.²² For instance, **Melville Corporation** described the termination of its pension plan in the following disclosure note:

Illustration 17–18

Gain on the Termination of a Defined Benefit Plan—
Melville Corporation
Real World Financials

Retirement Plans (in part)

... As a result of the termination of the defined benefit plans, and after the settlement of the liability to plan participants through the purchase of nonparticipating annuity contracts or lump-sum rollovers into the new 401(k) profit sharing plan, the Company recorded a nonrecurring gain of approximately \$4,000,000 which was the amount of plan assets that reverted to the Company. This was accounted for in accordance with Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 88, “Employers’ Accounting for Settlements and Curtailments of Defined Benefit Pension Plans and for Termination Benefits.” (FASB ASC 715–30–35)

Concept Review Exercise

PENSION PLANS

Allied Services, Inc., has a noncontributory, defined benefit pension plan. Pension plan assets had a fair value of \$900 million at December 31, 2017.

On January 3, 2018, Allied amended the pension formula to increase benefits for each service year. By making the amendment retroactive to prior years, Allied incurred a prior service cost of \$75 million, adding to the previous projected benefit obligation of \$875 million. The prior service cost is to be amortized (expensed) over 15 years. The service cost is \$31 million for 2018. Both the actuary’s discount rate and the expected rate of return on plan assets were 8%. The actual rate of return on plan assets was 10%.

At December 31, 2018, \$16 million was contributed to the pension fund and \$22 million was paid to retired employees. Also, at that time, the actuary revised a previous assumption, increasing the PBO estimate by \$10 million. The net loss AOCI at the beginning of the year was \$13 million.

Required:

Determine each of the following amounts as of December 31, 2018, the fiscal year-end for Allied: (1) projected benefit obligation; (2) plan assets; and (3) pension expense.

Solution:

(\$ in millions)	Projected Benefit Obligation	Plan Assets	Pension Expense
Balances at Jan. 1	\$ 875	\$900	\$ 0
Prior service cost	75		
Service cost	31		31
Interest cost $[(\$875 + 75) \times 8\%]$	76		76

(continued)

²²FASB ASC 715–30–35: Compensation—Retirement Benefits—Defined Benefit Plans—Pension—Subsequent Measurement (previously “Employers’ Accounting for Settlements and Curtailments of Defined Benefit Pension Plans and for Termination Benefits,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 88* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1985)).

(concluded)

(\$ in millions)	Projected Benefit Obligation	Plan Assets	Pension Expense
Return on plan assets:			
Actual (\$900 × 10%)		90	
Expected (\$900 × 8%)			(72)
Amortization of prior service cost (\$75 ÷ 15)			5
Amortization of net loss			0 [†]
Loss on PBO	10		
Cash contribution		16	
Retirement payments	(22)	(22)	
Balance at Dec. 31	<u>\$1,045</u>	<u>\$984</u>	<u>\$40</u>

Note: The \$18 million gain on plan assets (\$90 – 72 million) is not recognized yet; it is carried forward to be combined with previous and future gains and losses, which will be recognized only if the net gain or net loss exceeds 10% of the higher of the PBO or plan assets.

^{*}Since the plan was amended at the beginning of the year, the prior service cost increased the PBO at that time.

[†]Since the net loss (\$13) does not exceed 10% of \$900 (higher than \$875), no amortization is required for 2018.

International Financial Reporting Standards



Accounting for pensions and other postretirement benefits under IFRS is specified in a recent IASB amendment to its postemployment benefit standard, *IAS No. 19*.

Under the update, the changes that constitute the components of the net pension cost are separated into (a) the cost of service, (b) the cost of financing that cost, and (c) gains or losses from occasional remeasurement of the cost:

Components	Include:	Recognized immediately in:
Service cost	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Current service costs Past service costs (if any) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> the balance sheet income statement
Net interest cost/income	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Net interest cost/income [(Interest rate* × net pension liability) ÷ asset] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> the balance sheet income statement
Remeasurement cost	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remeasurements of service costs caused by changes in assumptions (i.e., assumptions like salary expectations, length of service, length of retirement, etc.) Gains and losses arising from experience differing from what was assumed Investment gains and losses on plan assets 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> the balance sheet statement of comprehensive income as OCI

*High-quality corporate bond rate.

Classifying the Components of the Net Pension Cost

Using the amounts from our Global Communications illustration, the changes in 2018 would be classified as follows:

	Profit & Loss (Income Statement)	
Service cost:		(\$ in millions)
Service cost—2018		\$41
Past service cost		0 [*] \$41
Net interest cost/income:		
Net interest cost [6% × (\$400 – 300)]		6
		<u>\$47</u>

(continued)

• LO17–12

(concluded)

Other Comprehensive Income (OCI)

Remeasurement cost:

Loss (gain) on DBO—change in salary estimate	\$23	
Loss (gain) on plan assets: $(10\% - 6\%) \times \$300$	(12)	11
Net pension cost		<u>\$58</u>

*Last year (2017), this amount was \$60 million.

Notice that there is no separate interest cost and there is no “expected” return on plan assets. Instead, those two are essentially combined into a single measure, net interest cost/income. Because they’re combined, the same rate (6% in this case) is used for both, rather than having one rate for interest cost and another for expected return on assets.

Recording the Components of the Net Pension Cost

We report the (a) service cost and (b) net interest cost/income in *net income* and (c) remeasurement costs in *OCI*, as each of those amounts occurs. By recording each component, we record the total pension expense. Remember, each component is a change in either plan assets (the return on assets) or the defined benefit obligation (all others), so as we record each component we also record its effect on plan assets and the defined benefit obligation, as follows:

To Record Net Pension Cost	(\$ in millions)	
Service cost	41	
DBO (service cost-2018)		41
DBO (past service cost: none in 2018)		0
Net interest cost $[6\% \times (\$400 - 300)]$	6	
Plan assets $(6\% \times \$300$: interest income)	18	
DBO $(6\% \times \$400$: interest cost)		24
Plan assets (actual return in excess of 6%)	12	
Remeasurement gain on plan assets—OCI $[(10\% - 6\%) \times \$300]$		12
Remeasurement loss from change in assumption—OCI	23	
DBO (change in future salary estimate)		23

When Global adds its annual cash investment to its plan assets, the value of those plan assets increases by \$48 million:

To Record Funding	(\$ in millions)	
Plan assets	48	
Cash (contribution to plan assets)		48

In our illustration, Global’s retired employees were paid benefits of \$38 million in 2018. Paying those benefits, of course, reduces the obligation to pay benefits (the DBO), and since the payments are made from the plan assets, that balance is reduced as well:

To Record Payment of Benefits	(\$ in millions)	
DBO	38	
Plan assets		38

Reporting the Components of the Net Pension Cost

We report the components of the total pension cost in the **statement of comprehensive income** as follows:

Revenue	\$xxx
Operating expenses (including \$41 pension service cost)	(xx)
Finance costs (including \$6 net interest cost on pensions)	xx
Profit before tax	<u>\$xxx</u>
Tax expense	(xx)
Net income	<u>\$xxx</u>
Other comprehensive income	

(continued)

We record (a) individual components of the net pension cost (in net income or OCI) and (b) the balance sheet accounts they affect.

We report separately the three costs of having a defined benefit plan:

In net income:

- service cost
- net interest cost

In OCI:

- remeasurement cost

(concluded)

Remeasurement loss arising from change in pension assumption	\$ 23
Remeasurement gain from the return on plan assets exceeding the interest rate	(12)
Comprehensive income	\$xxx

Notice in the journal entries that we have no “pension expense” being recorded as we had using U.S. GAAP in the chapter. Instead, individual components of the net pension cost are recorded. The reason is that the amendment calls for components, not the net total, to be reported in the income statement and statement of comprehensive income.

Postretirement Benefits Other Than Pensions

As we just discussed, most companies have pension plans that provide for the future payments of retirement benefits to compensate employees for their current services. Many companies also furnish *other postretirement benefits* to their retired employees. These may include medical coverage, dental coverage, life insurance, group legal services, and other benefits. By far the most common is health care benefits. One of every three U.S. workers in medium- and large-size companies participates in health care plans that provide for coverage that continues into retirement. The aggregate impact is considerable; the total obligation for all U.S. corporations is about \$500 billion.

Prior to 1993, employers accounted for postretirement benefit costs on a pay-as-you-go basis, meaning the expense each year was simply the amount of insurance premiums or medical claims paid, depending on the way the company provided health care benefits. The FASB revised GAAP to require a completely different approach. The expected future health care costs for retirees now must be recognized as an expense over the years necessary for employees to become entitled to the benefits.²³ This is the accrual basis that also is the basis for pension accounting.

In fact, accounting for postretirement benefits is similar in most respects to accounting for pension benefits. This is because the two forms of benefits are fundamentally similar. Each is a form of deferred compensation earned during the employee’s service life and each can be estimated as the present value of the cost of providing the expected future benefits.

General Motors described its plan as shown in Illustration 17–19.

Note 5: Other Postretirement Benefits (in part)

The Corporation and certain of its domestic subsidiaries maintain hourly and salaried benefit plans that provide postretirement medical, dental, vision, and life insurance to retirees and eligible dependents. . . . [GAAP] requires that the cost of such benefits be recognized in the financial statements during the period employees provide service to the Corporation.

Despite the similarities, though, there are a few differences in the characteristics of the benefits that necessitate differences in accounting treatment. Because accounting for the two types of retiree benefits is so nearly the same, our discussion in this portion of the chapter will emphasize the differences. This will allow you to use what you learned earlier in the chapter regarding pension accounting as a foundation for learning how to account for other postretirement benefits, supplementing that common base only when necessary. Focusing on the differences also will reinforce your understanding of pension accounting.

²³ASB ASC 715–60: Compensation–Retirement Benefits–Defined Benefit Plans–Postretirement (previously “Employers’ Accounting for Postretirement Benefits Other Than Pensions,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 106* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1990)). The Standard became effective (with some exceptions) in 1993.

PART E

• LO17–9

Illustration 17–19

Disclosures—General Motors

Real World Financials

What Is a Postretirement Benefit Plan?

Before addressing the accounting ramifications, let's look at a typical retiree health care plan.²⁴ First, it's important to distinguish retiree health care benefits from health care benefits provided during an employee's working years. The annual cost of providing *preretirement* benefits is simply part of the annual compensation expense. However, many companies offer coverage that continues into retirement. It is the deferred aspect of these *postretirement* benefits that creates an accounting issue.

Eligibility usually is based on age and/or years of service.

Usually a plan promises benefits in exchange for services performed over a designated number of years, or reaching a particular age, or both. For instance, a plan might specify that employees are eligible for postretirement benefits after both working 20 years and reaching age 62 while in service. Eligibility requirements and the nature of benefits usually are specified by a written plan, or sometimes only by company practice.

Postretirement Health Benefits and Pension Benefits Compared

Keep in mind that retiree health benefits differ fundamentally from pension benefits in some important respects:

1. The amount of *pension* benefits generally is based on the number of years an employee works for the company so that the longer the employee works, the higher are the benefits. On the other hand, the amount of *postretirement health care* benefits typically is unrelated to service. It's usually an all-or-nothing plan in which a certain level of coverage is promised upon retirement, independent of the length of service beyond that necessary for eligibility.
2. Although coverage might be identical, the cost of providing the coverage might vary significantly from retiree to retiree and from year to year because of differing medical needs.
3. Postretirement health care plans often require the retiree to share in the cost of coverage through monthly contribution payments. For instance, a company might pay 80% of insurance premiums, with the retiree paying 20%. The net cost of providing coverage is reduced by these contributions as well as by any portion of the cost paid by Medicare or other insurance.
4. Coverage often is provided to spouses and eligible dependents.

Determining the Net Cost of Benefits

To determine the postretirement benefit obligation and the postretirement benefit expense, the company's actuary first must make estimates of what the postretirement benefit costs will be for current employees. Then, as illustrated in Illustration 17–20, contributions to those costs by employees are deducted, as well as Medicare's share of the costs (for retirement years when the retiree will be 65 or older), to determine the estimated net cost of benefits to the employer:

Illustration 17–20

Estimating the Net Cost of Benefits



Remember, postretirement health care benefits are anticipated actual costs of providing the promised health care, rather than an amount estimated by a defined benefit formula. This makes these estimates inherently more intricate, particularly because health care costs in general are notoriously difficult to forecast. And, since postretirement health care benefits are partially paid by the retiree and by Medicare, these cost-sharing amounts must be estimated as well.

²⁴For convenience, our discussion focuses on health care benefits because these are by far the most common type of postretirement benefits other than pensions. But the concepts we discuss apply equally to other forms of postretirement benefits.

On the other hand, estimating postretirement benefits costs is similar in many ways to estimating pension costs. Both estimates entail a variety of assumptions to be made by the company's actuary. Many of these assumptions are the same; for instance, both require estimates of:

1. A discount rate
2. Expected return on plan assets (if the plan is funded)
3. Employee turnover
4. Expected retirement age
5. Expected compensation increases (if the plan is pay-related)
6. Expected age of death
7. Number and ages of beneficiaries and dependents

Of course, the relative importance of some estimates is different from that for pension plans. Dependency status, turnover, and retirement age, for example, take on much greater significance. Also, additional assumptions become necessary as a result of differences between pension plans and other postretirement benefit plans. Specifically, it's necessary to estimate:

1. The current cost of providing health care benefits at each age that participants might receive benefits
2. Demographic characteristics of plan participants that might affect the amount and timing of benefits
3. Benefit coverage provided by Medicare, other insurance, or other sources that will reduce the net cost of employer-provided benefits
4. The expected health care cost trend rate²⁵

Taking these assumptions into account, the company's actuary estimates what the net cost of postretirement benefits will be for current employees in each year of their expected retirement. The discounted present value of those costs is the expected postretirement benefit obligation.

Many of the assumptions needed to estimate postretirement health care benefits are the same as those needed to estimate pension benefits.

Some additional assumptions are needed to estimate postretirement health care benefits besides those needed to estimate pension benefits.

The postretirement benefit obligation is the discounted present value of the benefits during retirement.

Postretirement Benefit Obligation

There are two related obligation amounts. As indicated in Illustration 17–21, one measures the total obligation and the other refers to a specific portion of the total:

● LO17–10

1. **Expected Postretirement Benefit Obligation (EPBO):** The actuary's estimate of the total postretirement benefits (at their discounted present value) expected to be received by plan participants.
2. **Accumulated Postretirement Benefit Obligation (APBO):** The portion of the EPBO attributed to employee service to date.

Illustration 17–21

Two Views of the Obligation for Postretirement Benefits Other Than Pensions

The accumulated postretirement benefit obligation (APBO) is analogous to the projected benefit obligation (PBO) for pensions. Like the PBO, the APBO is reported in the balance sheet only to the extent that it exceeds plan assets.

Measuring the Obligation

To illustrate, assume the actuary estimates that the net cost of providing health care benefits to Jessica Farrow (our illustration employee from earlier in the chapter) during her retirement years has a present value of \$10,842 as of the end of 2016. This is the EPBO. If the

²⁵Health care cost trend rates recently reported have ranged from 3% to 8.7%, with 7% being the most commonly assumed rate. (Pension/OPEB 2015 Assumption and Disclosure Survey, PWC, 2015).

benefits (and therefore the costs) relate to an estimated 35 years of service and 10 of those years have been completed, the APBO would be:²⁶

\$3,098 represents the portion of the EPBO related to the first 10 years of the 35-year service period.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \$10,842 & \times & \frac{10}{35} & = & \$3,098 \\ \text{EPBO} & & \text{Fraction attributed} & & \text{APBO} \\ & & \text{to service to date} & & \end{array}$$

If the assumed discount rate is 6%, a year later the EPBO will have grown to **\$11,493** simply because of a year's interest accruing at that rate ($\$10,842 \times 1.06 = \$11,493$). Notice that there is no increase in the EPBO for service because, unlike the obligation in most pension plans, the total obligation is not increased by an additional year's service.

The APBO, however, is the portion of the EPBO related to service up to a particular date. Consequently, the APBO will have increased both because of interest and because the service fraction will be higher (service cost):

\$3,612 represents the portion of the EPBO related to the first 11 years of the 35-year service period.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \$11,493 & \times & \frac{11}{35} & = & \$3,612 \\ \text{EPBO} & & \text{Fraction attributed} & & \text{APBO} \\ & & \text{to service to date} & & \end{array}$$

The two elements of the increase in 2017 can be separated as follows:

The APBO increases each year due to (a) interest accrued on the APBO and (b) the portion of the EPBO attributed to that year.

APBO at the beginning of the year	\$3,098
Interest cost: $\$3,098 \times 6\%$	186
Service cost: (\$11,493 $\times \frac{1}{35}$) portion of EPBO attributed to the year	328
APBO at the end of the year	<u>\$3,612</u>

Attribution

Attribution is the process of assigning the cost of benefits to the years during which those benefits are assumed to be earned by employees. We accomplish this by assigning an equal fraction of the EPBO to each year of service from the employee's date of hire to the employee's full eligibility date.²⁷ This is the date the employee has performed all the service necessary to have earned all the retiree benefits estimated to be received by the employee.²⁸ In our earlier example, we assumed the attribution period was 35 years and accordingly accrued $\frac{1}{35}$ of the EPBO each year. The amount accrued each year increases both the APBO and the postretirement benefit expense. In Illustration 17–22 we see how the 35-year attribution (accrual) period was determined.

Some critics of this approach feel there is a fundamental inconsistency between the way we measure the benefits and the way we assign the benefits to specific service periods. The benefits (EPBO) are measured with the concession that the employee may work beyond the full eligibility date; however, the attribution period does not include years of service after that date. The counterargument is the fact that at the full eligibility date the employee will have earned the right to receive the full benefits expected under the plan and the amount of the benefits will not increase with service beyond that date.²⁹

The attribution period does not include years of service beyond the full eligibility date even if the employee is expected to work after that date.

Accounting for Postretirement Benefit Plans Other Than Pensions

As we just discussed, it's necessary to attribute a portion of the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation to each year as the service cost for that year as opposed to measuring the actual benefits employees earn during the year as we did for pension plans. That's due to the

LO17–11 We account for pensions and for other postretirement benefits essentially the same way.

²⁶Assigning the costs to particular service years is referred to as the *attribution* of the costs to the years the benefits are assumed earned. We discuss attribution in the next section.

²⁷If the plan specifically grants credit only for service from a date after employee's date of hire, the beginning of the attribution period is considered to be the beginning of that credited service period, rather than the employee's date of hire.

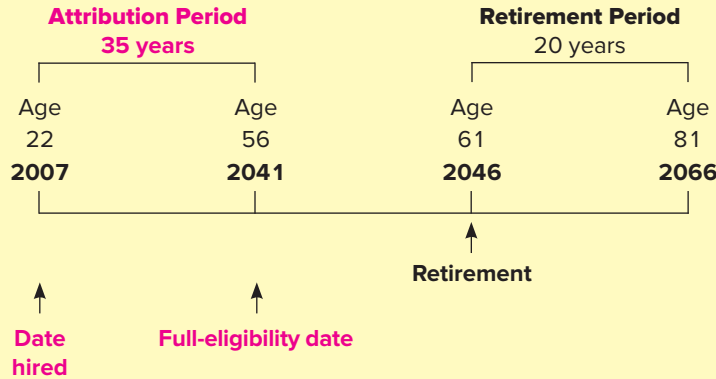
²⁸Or any beneficiaries and covered dependents.

²⁹FASB ASC 715–60: Compensation–Retirement Benefits–Defined Benefit Plans–Other Postretirement (previously “Employers’ Accounting for Postretirement Benefits Other Than Pensions,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 106* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1990), par. 219–239. These specific paragraphs are not codified in the FASB Research System as they contain bases for conclusions and are therefore what codifiers consider “nonessential” material.

Jessica Farrow was hired by Global Communications at age 22 at the beginning of 2007 and is expected to retire at the end of 2046 at age 61. The retirement period is estimated to be 20 years.*

Global's employees are eligible for postretirement health care benefits after both reaching age 56 while in service and having worked 20 years.

Since Farrow becomes fully eligible at age 56 (the end of 2041), retiree benefits are attributed to the 35-year period from her date of hire through that date. Graphically, the situation can be described as follows:



*You probably recognize this as the situation used earlier in the chapter to illustrate pension accounting.

Illustration 17-22

Determining the Attribution Period

The attribution period spans each year of service from the employee's date of hire to the employee's full eligibility date.

fundamental nature of these other postretirement plans under which employees are ineligible for benefits until specific eligibility criteria are met, at which time they become 100% eligible. This contrasts with pension plans under which employees earn additional benefits each year until they retire.

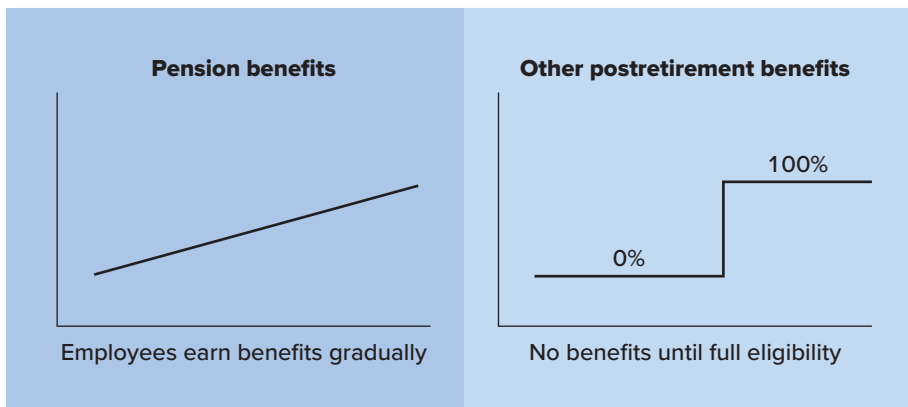


Illustration 17-23

Measuring Service Cost

Measuring the service cost differs, though, due to a fundamental difference in the way employees acquire benefits under the two types of plans.

The way we measure service cost is the primary difference between accounting for pensions and for other postretirement benefits. Otherwise, though, accounting for the two is virtually identical. For example, a company with an underfunded postretirement benefit plan with existing prior service cost and net loss—AOCI would record the following journal entries annually:

To Record Postretirement Benefit Expense

Postretirement benefit expense (total)	XX
Plan assets (expected return on assets)	XX
Amortization of net gain—OCI (current amortization)	XX
APBO (service cost + interest cost)	XX
Amortization of net loss—OCI (current amortization)	XX
Amortization of prior service cost—OCI* (current amortization)	XX

(continued)

We record the annual expense and funding for other postretirement benefit plans the same way we do for pensions.

(concluded)

To Record Cash Funding of Plan Assets

Plan assets	XX	
Cash (contribution to plan assets)		XX

To Record Gains and Losses

Loss—OCI (from change in assumption)	XX	
APBO		XX
or		
APBO	XX	
Gain—OCI (from change in assumption)		XX
Plan assets	XX	
Gain—OCI (actual return on assets — expected return)		XX
or		
Loss—OCI (expected return on assets — actual return)	XX	
Plan assets		XX

*The prior service cost for other postretirement benefits is amortized over the average remaining time until “full eligibility” for employees rather than until retirement, as is the case for pension plans. This is consistent with recording “regular” service cost over the time to full eligibility.

We record losses and gains (as well as any new prior service cost should it occur) the same way we do for pensions.

Ethical Dilemma



Earlier this year, you were elected to the board of directors of Champion International, Inc. Champion has offered its employees postretirement health care benefits for 35 years. The practice of extending health care benefits to retirees began modestly. Most employees retired after age 65, when most benefits were covered by Medicare. Costs also were lower because life expectancies were shorter and medical care was less expensive. Because costs were so low, little attention was paid to accounting for these benefits. The company simply recorded an expense when benefits were provided to retirees. The FASB changed all that. Now, the obligation for these benefits must be anticipated and reported in the annual report. Worse yet, the magnitude of the obligation has grown enormously, almost unnoticed. Health care costs have soared in recent years. Medical technology and other factors have extended life expectancies. Of course, the value to employees of this benefit has grown parallel to the growth of the burden to the company.

Without being required to anticipate future costs, many within Champion's management were caught by surprise at the enormity of the company's obligation. Equally disconcerting was the fact that such a huge liability now must be exposed to public view. Now you find that several board members are urging the dismantling of the postretirement plan altogether.

A Comprehensive Illustration

We assumed earlier that the EPBO at the end of 2016 was determined by the actuary to be \$10,842. This was the present value on that date of all anticipated future benefits. Then we noted that the EPBO at the end of the next year would have grown by 6% to \$11,493. This amount, too, would represent the present value of the same anticipated future benefits, but as of a year later. The APBO, remember, is the portion of the EPBO attributed to service performed to a particular date. So, we determined the APBO at the end of 2017 to be $\$11,493 \times \frac{11}{35}$, or \$3,612. We determined the \$328 service cost noted earlier for 2017 as the portion of the EPBO attributed to that year: $\$11,493 \times \frac{1}{35}$.

Now, let's review our previous discussion of how the EPBO, the APBO, and the postretirement benefit expense are determined by calculating those amounts a year later, at the end of 2018. Before doing so, however, we can anticipate (a) the EPBO to be $\$11,493 \times 1.06$, or \$12,182, (b) the APBO to be $\frac{12}{35}$ of that amount, or \$4,177, and (c) the 2018 service cost to be $\frac{1}{35}$ of that amount, or \$348. In Illustration 17–24 we see if our expectations are borne out by direct calculation.

Assume the actuary has estimated the net cost of retiree benefits in each year of Jessica Farrow's 20-year expected retirement period to be the amounts shown in the calculation below. She is fully eligible for benefits at the end of 2041 and is expected to retire at the end of 2046.

Calculating the APBO and the postretirement benefit expense at the end of 2018, 12 years after being hired, begins with estimating the EPBO. Steps to calculate (a) the EPBO, (b) the APBO, and (c) the annual service cost at the end of 2018, 12 years after being hired, are:

- (a). 1. Estimate the cost of retiree benefits in each year of the expected retirement period and deduct anticipated Medicare reimbursements and retiree cost-sharing to derive the net cost to the employer in each year of the expected retirement period.
2. Find the present value of each year's net benefit cost as of the retirement date.
3. Find the present value of the total net benefit cost as of the current date. This is the **EPBO**.
- (b). Multiply the EPBO by the attribution factor (service to date/total attribution period). This is the **APBO**. The **service cost** in any year is simply one year's worth of the EPBO.
- (c). Multiply the EPBO by $\frac{1}{\text{total attribution period}}$.

Illustration 17-24

Determining the Postretirement Benefit Obligation

The EPBO is the discounted present value of the total benefits expected to be earned.

The fraction of the EPBO considered to be earned this year is the service cost.

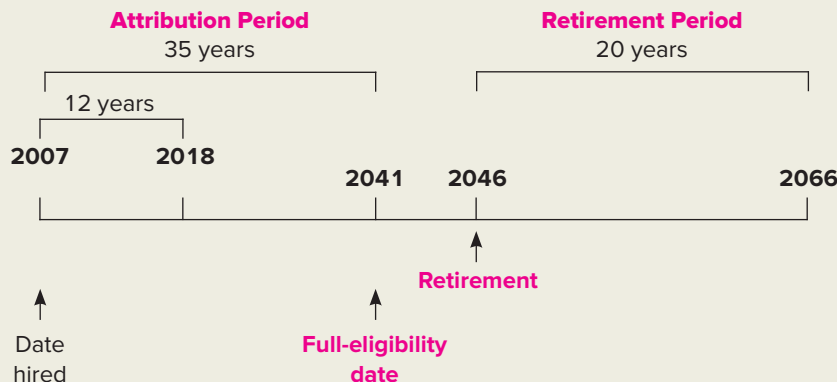
The fraction of the EPBO considered to be earned so far is the APBO.

The steps are demonstrated in Illustration 17-24A.

(a.1). Actuary estimates the net cost of benefits paid during retirement years:

(a.2). Present value [$n = 1, 2, 3, 4, \dots, 19, 20; i = 6\%$] of the net benefits as of the retirement date:

Year	Age	Net Benefit	Present Value at 2046
2047	62	5,000	\$ 4,717
2048	63	5,600	4,984
2049	64	6,300	5,290
2050	65	3,000	2,376
~	~	~	~
2065	80	9,550	3,156
2066	81	10,300	3,212
			<u>\$62,269</u>



(a.3). Present value ($n = 28, i = 6\%$) of postretirement benefits at 2018 is

$\$62,269 \times 0.19563 = \mathbf{\$12,182}$ (EPBO)

(b). $\$12,182 \times \frac{12}{35} = \mathbf{\$4,177}$ (APBO)

(c). $\$12,182 \times \frac{1}{35} = \mathbf{\$348}$ (Service Cost)

Illustration 17-24A

EPBO, APBO, and Service Cost in 2016

The actuary estimates the net cost to the employer in each year the retiree is expected to receive benefits.

As of the retirement date, the lump-sum equivalent of the expected yearly costs is \$62,269.

The EPBO in 2018 is the present value of those benefits.

The APBO is the portion of the EPBO attributed to service to date.

The service cost is the portion of the EPBO attributed to a particular year's service.

Decision Makers' Perspective

Postretirement benefit amounts reported in the disclosure notes fill a reporting gap left by the minimal disclosures in the primary financial statements.

When they analyze financial statements, investors and creditors should be wary of the non-standard way companies report pension and other postretirement information. Recall that in the balance sheet, firms do not separately report the benefit obligation and the plan assets. Also, companies have considerable latitude in making the several assumptions needed to estimate the components of postretirement benefit plans. Fortunately, information provided in the disclosure notes makes up for some of the deficiency in balance sheet information and makes it possible for interested analysts to modify their analysis. As for pensions, the choices companies make for the discount rate, expected return on plan assets, and the compensation growth rate can greatly impact postretirement benefit expense and earnings quality. The disclosures required are very similar to pension disclosures. In fact, disclosures for the two types of retiree benefits typically are combined.³⁰ Disclosures include:

- Descriptions of the plans.
- Estimates of the obligations (PBO, ABO, vested benefit obligation, EPBO, and APBO).
- The percentage of total plan assets for each major category of assets (equity securities, debt securities, real estate, other) as well as a description of investment strategies, including any target asset allocations and risk management practices.
- A breakdown of the components of the annual pension and postretirement benefit expenses for the years reported.
- The discount rates, the assumed rate of compensation increases used to measure the PBO, the expected long-term rate of return on plan assets, and the expected rate of increase in future medical and dental benefit costs.
- Estimated benefit payments presented separately for the next five years and in the aggregate for years 6–10.
- Estimate of expected contributions to fund the plan for the next year.
- (a) Any changes to the net gain or net loss and prior service cost arising during the period, (b) the accumulated amounts of these components of accumulated other comprehensive income, and (c) the amounts of those balances expected to be amortized in the next year.
- Other information to make it possible for interested analysts to reconstruct the financial statements with plan assets and liabilities included. ●

Concept Review Exercise

OTHER POSTRETIREMENT BENEFITS

Technology Group, Inc., has an unfunded retiree health care plan. The actuary estimates the net cost of providing health care benefits to a particular employee during his retirement years to have a present value of \$24,000 as of the end of 2018 (the EPBO). The benefits, and therefore the expected postretirement benefit obligation, relate to an estimated 36 years of service, and 12 of those years have been completed. The interest rate is 6%.

Required:

Pertaining to the one employee only:

1. What is the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2018?
2. What is the expected postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2019?
3. What is the service cost to be included in 2019 postretirement benefit expense?
4. What is the interest cost to be included in 2019 postretirement benefit expense?
5. What is the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2019?

³⁰FASB ASC 715–60–50: Compensation–Retirement Benefits–Defined Benefit Plans–Other Postretirement–Disclosure (previously “Employers’ Disclosures about Pensions and Other Postretirement Benefits,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 132* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1998)).

6. Show how the APBO changed during 2019 by reconciling the beginning and ending balances.
7. What is the 2019 postretirement benefit expense, assuming no net gains or losses and no prior service cost?

Solution:

1. What is the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2018?

$$\begin{array}{rcccl} \$24,000 & \times & \frac{12}{36} & = & \$8,000 \\ \text{EPBO} & & \text{Fraction} & & \text{APBO} \\ \text{2018} & & \text{earned} & & \text{2018} \end{array}$$

2. What is the expected postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2019?

$$\begin{array}{rcccl} \$24,000 & \times & 1.06 & = & \$25,440 \\ \text{EPBO} & & \text{To accrue} & & \text{EPBO} \\ \text{2018} & & \text{interest} & & \text{2019} \end{array}$$

3. What is the service cost to be included in 2019 postretirement benefit expense?

$$\begin{array}{rcccl} \$25,440 & \times & \frac{1}{36} & = & \$707 \\ \text{EPBO} & & \text{Attributed to} & & \text{Service} \\ \text{2019} & & \text{2019} & & \text{cost} \end{array}$$

4. What is the interest cost to be included in 2019 postretirement benefit expense?

$$\$8,000 \text{ (beginning APBO)} \times 6\% = \$480$$

5. What is the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2019?

$$\begin{array}{rcccl} \$25,440 & \times & \frac{13}{36} & = & \$9,187 \\ \text{EPBO} & & \text{Fraction attributed} & & \text{APBO} \\ \text{2019} & & \text{to service to date} & & \text{2019} \end{array}$$

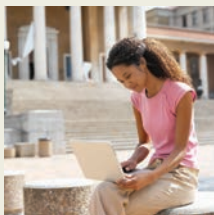
6. Show how the APBO changed during 2019 by reconciling the beginning and ending balances.

APBO at the beginning of 2019 (from req. 1)	\$8,000
Service cost (from req. 3)	707
Interest cost (from req. 4)	480
APBO at the end of 2019 (from req. 5)	<u>\$9,187</u>

7. What is the 2019 postretirement benefit expense, assuming no net gains or losses and no prior service cost?

Service cost	\$ 707
Interest cost	480
Actual return on the plan assets	(not funded)
Adjusted for: gain or loss on the plan assets	(not funded)
Amortization of prior service cost	none
Amortization of net gain or loss	none
Postretirement benefit expense	<u>\$1,187</u>

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© Stockbyte/PunchStock

1. **Why is pension plan underfunding not a concern in your present employment?** (p. 971) In a defined contribution plan, the employer is not obliged to provide benefits beyond the annual contribution to the employees' plan. No liability is created. Unlike retirement benefits paid in a defined benefit plan, the employee's retirement benefits in a defined contribution plan are totally dependent on how well invested assets perform in the marketplace.
2. **Were you correct that the pension liability is not reported in the balance sheet? What is the liability?** (p. 973) Yes and no. The pension liability is not reported separately in the balance sheet. It is, however, combined with pension assets with the net difference reported in the balance sheet. The separate balance is disclosed, though, in the notes. For United Dynamics, the PBO at the end of 2018 is \$2,628 million.
3. **What is the amount of the plan assets available to pay benefits? What are the factors that can cause that amount to change?** (p. 979) The plan assets at the end of 2018 total \$2,807 million. A trustee accepts employer contributions, invests the contributions, accumulates the earnings on the investments, and pays benefits from the plan assets. So the amount is increased each year by employer cash contributions and (hopefully) a return on assets invested. It is decreased by amounts paid out to retired employees.
4. **What does the "pension asset" represent? Are you interviewing with a company whose pension plan is severely underfunded?** (p. 981) The pension asset is not the plan assets available to pay pension benefits. Instead, it's the net difference between those assets and the pension obligation. United Dynamics' plan assets exceed the pension obligation in each year presented, and therefore it is one of the few companies whose pension plan is overfunded.
5. **How is the pension expense influenced by changes in the pension liability and plan assets?** (p. 982) The pension expense reported on the income statement is a composite of periodic changes that occur in both the pension obligation and the plan assets. For United Dynamics in 2018, the pension expense included the service cost and interest cost, which are changes in the PBO, and the return on plan assets. It also included an amortized portion of prior service costs (a previous change in the PBO) and of net gains (gains and losses result from changes in both the PBO and plan assets). ●

The Bottom Line

- LO17-1 Pension plans are arrangements designed to provide income to individuals during their retirement years. *Defined contribution* plans promise fixed annual contributions to a pension fund, without further commitment regarding benefit amounts at retirement. *Defined benefit* plans promise fixed retirement benefits defined by a designated formula. The employer sets aside cash each year to provide sufficient funds to pay promised benefits. (p. 968)
- LO17-2 The *accumulated benefit obligation* is an estimate of the discounted present value of the retirement benefits earned so far by employees, applying the plan's pension formula to *existing* compensation levels. The vested benefit obligation is the portion of the accumulated benefit obligation that plan participants are entitled to receive regardless of their continued employment. The *projected benefit obligation* estimates retirement benefits by applying the pension formula to *projected future* compensation levels. (p. 973)
- LO17-3 The PBO can change due to the accumulation of *service cost* from year to year, the accrual of *interest* as time passes, making plan amendments retroactive to prior years (prior service cost), and periodic adjustments when estimates change (gains and losses). The obligation is reduced as benefits actually are paid to retired employees. (p. 974)
- LO17-4 The plan assets consist of the accumulated balance of the annual employer contributions plus the return on the investments less benefits paid to retirees. (p. 979)

- **LO17-5** The difference between an employer's obligation (PBO for pensions, APBO for other postretirement benefit plans) and the resources available to satisfy that obligation (plan assets) is the funded status of the pension plan. The employer must report the "funded status" of the plan in the balance sheet as a net pension liability if the obligation exceeds the plan assets or as a net pension asset if the plan assets exceed the obligation. (p. 981)
- **LO17-6** The pension expense is a composite of periodic changes in both the projected benefit obligation and the plan assets. Service cost is the increase in the PBO attributable to employee service and is the primary component of pension expense. The interest and return-on-assets components are financial items created only because the pension payment is delayed and the obligation is funded currently. Prior service cost is recognized over employees' future service period. Also, neither a loss (gain) on the PBO nor a loss (gain) on plan assets is immediately recognized in pension expense; they are recognized on a delayed basis to achieve income smoothing. (p. 981)
- **LO17-7** Recording pension expense causes the net pension liability/asset to change by the service cost, the interest cost, and the expected return on plan assets. Any amortization amounts included in the expense will reduce the *accumulated other comprehensive income* balances being amortized, e.g., net loss—AOCI and prior service cost—AOCI. Similarly, the plan assets are increased by the annual cash investment. New losses and gains (as well as any new prior service cost should it occur) are recognized as other comprehensive income. (p. 986)
- **LO17-8** The various elements of a pension plan—projected benefit obligation, plan assets, prior service cost, gains and losses, pension expense, and the funded status of the plan—are interrelated. One way to see how each element relates to the other is to bring each part together in a *pension spreadsheet*. (p. 992)
- **LO17-9** Accounting for postretirement benefits is similar in most respects to accounting for pension benefits. Like pensions, other postretirement benefits are a form of deferred compensation. Unlike pensions, their cost is attributed to the years from the employee's date of hire to the full eligibility date. (p. 997)
- **LO17-10** The expected postretirement benefit obligation (EPBO) is the actuary's estimate of the total postretirement benefits (at their discounted present value) expected to be received by plan participants. The accumulated postretirement benefit obligation (APBO) is the portion of the EPBO attributed to employee service to date. (p. 999)
- **LO17-11** The components of postretirement benefit expense are essentially the same as those for pension expense. (p. 1000)
- **LO17-12** Under both U.S. GAAP and IFRS we report all changes in the obligation and in the value of plan assets as they occur. The ways the changes are determined and reported are different, though, for some of the changes. The changes that constitute the components of the net pension cost are reported separately as (a) the service cost, (b) the net interest cost/income, and (c) remeasurement gains or losses. Under IFRS, *past service cost* is combined with current service cost and reported as service cost within the income statement rather than as a component of other comprehensive income as it is under U.S. GAAP. Under IFRS, gains and losses are not recycled from other comprehensive income as is required under U.S. GAAP (when the accumulated net gain or net loss exceeds the 10% threshold). Also, the interest cost and return on plan assets are replaced by net interest cost/income (interest rate times the difference between the DBO and plan assets). (pp. 987, 989, 993, and 995) ●

Service Method of Allocating Prior Service Cost

APPENDIX 17

When amortizing prior service cost, our objective is to match the cost with employee service. The straight-line method described in this chapter allocates an equal amount of the prior service cost to each year of the 15-year average service period of affected employees. But consider this: fewer of the affected employees will be working for the company toward the end of that period than at the beginning. Some probably will retire or quit in each year following the amendment.

An allocation approach that reflects the declining service pattern is called the **service method**. This method allocates the prior service cost to each year in proportion to the fraction of the total remaining service years worked in each of those years. To do this, it's necessary to estimate how many of the 2,000 employees working at the beginning of 2017 when the amendment is made will still be employed in each year after the amendment.

Let's suppose, for example, that the actuary estimates that a declining number of these employees still will be employed in each of the next 28 years as indicated in the abbreviated schedule below. The portion of the prior service cost amortized to pension expense each year is \$60 million times a declining fraction. Each year's fraction is that year's service divided by the 28-year total (30,000). This is demonstrated in Illustration 17A-1.

Illustration 17A-1

Service Method of
Amortizing Prior Service
Cost

By the service method,
prior service cost is
recognized each year in
proportion to the fraction
of the total remaining
service years worked that
year.

		(\$ in millions)				
Year	Number of Employees Still Employed (assumed for the illustration)	Fraction of Total Service Years		Prior Service Cost		Amount Cost Amortized
2017	2,000	$\frac{2,000}{30,000}$	×	\$60	=	\$ 4.0
2018	2,000	$\frac{2,000}{30,000}$	×	60	=	4.0
2019	1,850	$\frac{1,850}{30,000}$	×	60	=	3.7
2020	1,700	$\frac{1,700}{30,000}$	×	60	=	3.4
2021	1,550	$\frac{1,550}{30,000}$	×	60	=	3.1
—	—	—	×	—	=	—
2042	400	$\frac{400}{30,000}$	×	60	=	0.8
2043	250	$\frac{250}{30,000}$	×	60	=	0.5
2044	100	$\frac{100}{30,000}$	×	60	=	0.2
Totals	30,000	$\frac{30,000}{30,000}$				\$60.0
	Total number of service years					Total amount amortized

The service method
amortized an equal
amount *per employee*
each year.



Conceptually, the service method achieves a better matching of the cost and benefits. In fact, this is the FASB's recommended approach. However, GAAP permits the consistent use of any method that amortizes the prior service cost at least as quickly.³¹ The straight-line method meets this condition and is the approach most often used in practice. In our illustration, the cost is completely amortized over 15 years rather than the 28 years required by the service method. The 15-year average service life is simply the total estimated service years divided by the total number of employees in the group:

$$\begin{array}{rcccl} 30,000 \text{ years} & \div & 2,000 & = & 15 \text{ years} \\ \text{Total number} & & \text{Total number} & & \text{Average} \\ \text{of service years} & & \text{of employees} & & \text{service years} \end{array}$$

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 17-1** What is a pension plan? What motivates a corporation to offer a pension plan for its employees?
- Q 17-2** Qualified pension plans offer important tax benefits. What is the special tax treatment and what qualifies a pension plan for these benefits?
- Q 17-3** Lamont Corporation has a pension plan in which the corporation makes all contributions and employees receive benefits at retirement based on the balance in their accumulated pension fund. What type of pension plan does Lamont have?
- Q 17-4** What is the vested benefit obligation?
- Q 17-5** Differentiate between the accumulated benefit obligation and the projected benefit obligation.
- Q 17-6** Name five events that might change the balance of the PBO.
- Q 17-7** Name three events that might change the balance of the plan assets.

³¹FASB ASC 715-30-35-13: Compensation-Retirement Benefits-Defined Benefit Plans-Pension-Subsequent Measurement-Prior Service Costs (previously "Employers' Accounting for Pensions," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 87* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1985), par. 26).

- Q 17-8** What are the components that might be included in the calculation of net pension cost recognized for a period by an employer sponsoring a defined benefit pension plan?
- Q 17-9** Define the service cost component of the periodic pension expense.
- Q 17-10** Define the interest cost component of the periodic pension expense.
- Q 17-11** The return on plan assets is the increase in plan assets (at fair value), adjusted for contributions to the plan and benefits paid during the period. How is the return included in the calculation of the periodic pension expense?
- Q 17-12** Define prior service cost. How is it reported in the financial statements? How is it included in pension expense?
- Q 17-13** How should gains or losses related to pension plan assets be recognized? How does this treatment compare to that for gains or losses related to the pension obligation?
- Q 17-14** Is a company's PBO reported in the balance sheet? Its plan assets? Explain.
- Q 17-15** What two components of pension expense may be negative (i.e., reduce pension expense)?
- Q 17-16** Which are the components of pension expense that involve delayed recognition?
- Q 17-17** Evaluate this statement: The excess of the actual return on plan assets over the expected return decreases the employer's pension cost.
- Q 17-18** When accounting for pension costs, how should the payment into the pension fund be recorded? How does it affect the funded status of the plan?
- Q 17-19** TFC Inc. revises its estimate of future salary levels, causing its PBO estimate to increase by \$3 million. How is the \$3 million reflected in TFC's financial statements?
- Q 17-20** A pension plan is underfunded when the employer's obligation (PBO) exceeds the resources available to satisfy that obligation (plan assets) and overfunded when the opposite is the case. How is this funded status reported on the balance sheet if plan assets exceed the PBO? If the PBO exceeds plan assets?
- Q 17-21** What are two ways to measure the obligation for postretirement benefits other than pensions? Define these measurement approaches.
- Q 17-22** How are the costs of providing postretirement benefits other than pensions expensed?
- Q 17-23** The components of postretirement benefit expense are similar to the components of pension expense. In what fundamental way does the service cost component differ between these two expenses?
- Q 17-24** The EPBO for Branch Industries at the end of 2018 was determined by the actuary to be \$20,000 as it relates to employee Will Lawson. Lawson was hired at the beginning of 2004. He will be fully eligible to retire with health care benefits after 15 more years but is expected to retire in 25 years. What is the APBO as it relates to Will Lawson?
-  **IFRS Q 17-25** The income statement of Mid-South Logistics includes \$12 million for amortized prior service cost. Does Mid-South Logistics prepare its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP or IFRS? Explain.
-  **IFRS Q 17-26** How do U.S. GAAP and IFRS differ with regard to reporting gains and losses from changing assumptions used to measure the pension obligation?

Brief Exercises



BE 17-1

Changes in the projected benefit obligation

● LO17-3

The projected benefit obligation was \$80 million at the beginning of the year. Service cost for the year was \$10 million. At the end of the year, pension benefits paid by the trustee were \$6 million and there were no pension-related other comprehensive income accounts requiring amortization. The actuary's discount rate was 5%. What was the amount of the projected benefit obligation at year-end?

BE 17-2

Changes in the projected benefit obligation

● LO17-3

The projected benefit obligation was \$80 million at the beginning of the year and \$85 million at the end of the year. At the end of the year, pension benefits paid by the trustee were \$6 million and there were no pension-related other comprehensive income accounts requiring amortization. The actuary's discount rate was 5%. What was the amount of the service cost for the year?

BE 17-3

Changes in the projected benefit obligation

● LO17-3

The projected benefit obligation was \$80 million at the beginning of the year and \$85 million at the end of the year. Service cost for the year was \$10 million. At the end of the year, there was no prior service cost and a negligible net loss-AOCI. The actuary's discount rate was 5%. What was the amount of the retiree benefits paid by the trustee?

BE 17-4

Changes in the projected benefit obligation

● LO17-3

The projected benefit obligation was \$80 million at the beginning of the year and \$85 million at the end of the year. Service cost for the year was \$10 million. At the end of the year, pension benefits paid by the trustee were \$6 million. The actuary's discount rate was 5%. At the end of the year, the actuary revised the estimate of the

percentage rate of increase in compensation levels in upcoming years. What was the amount of the gain or loss the estimate change caused?

BE 17-5

Changes in pension plan assets

● LO17-4

Pension plan assets were \$80 million at the beginning of the year. The return on plan assets was 5%. At the end of the year, retiree benefits paid by the trustee were \$6 million and cash invested in the pension fund was \$7 million. What was the amount of the pension plan assets at year-end?

BE 17-6

Changes in pension plan assets

● LO17-4

Pension plan assets were \$80 million at the beginning of the year and \$83 million at the end of the year. The return on plan assets was 5%. At the end of the year, cash invested in the pension fund was \$7 million. What was the amount of the retiree benefits paid by the trustee?

BE 17-7

Changes in pension plan assets

● LO17-4

Pension plan assets were \$100 million at the beginning of the year and \$104 million at the end of the year. At the end of the year, retiree benefits paid by the trustee were \$6 million and cash invested in the pension fund was \$7 million. What was the percentage rate of return on plan assets?

BE 17-8

Reporting the funded status of pension plans

● LO17-5

JDS Foods' projected benefit obligation, accumulated benefit obligation, and plan assets were \$40 million, \$30 million, and \$25 million, respectively, at the end of the year. What, if any, pension liability must be reported in the balance sheet? What would JDS report if the plan assets were \$45 million instead?

BE 17-9

Pension expense

● LO17-6

The projected benefit obligation was \$80 million at the beginning of the year. Service cost for the year was \$10 million. At the end of the year, pension benefits paid by the trustee were \$6 million and there were no pension-related other comprehensive income accounts requiring amortization. The actuary's discount rate was 5%. The actual return on plan assets was \$5 million although it was expected to be only \$4 million. What was the pension expense for the year?

BE 17-10

Pension expense; prior service cost

● LO17-6

The pension plan was amended last year, creating a prior service cost of \$20 million. Service cost and interest cost for the year were \$10 million and \$4 million, respectively. At the end of the year, there was a negligible balance in the net gain-pensions account. The actual return on plan assets was \$4 million although it was expected to be \$6 million. On average, employees' remaining service life with the company is 10 years. What was the pension expense for the year?

BE 17-11

Net gain

● LO17-6

The projected benefit obligation and plan assets were \$80 million and \$100 million, respectively, at the beginning of the year. Due primarily to favorable stock market performance in recent years, there also was a net gain of \$30 million. On average, employees' remaining service life with the company is 10 years. As a result of the net gain, what was the increase or decrease in pension expense for the year?

BE 17-12

Recording pension expense

● LO17-7

The Warren Group's pension expense is \$67 million. This amount includes a \$70 million service cost, a \$50 million interest cost, a \$55 million reduction for the expected return on plan assets, and a \$2 million amortization of a prior service cost. How is the net pension liability affected when the pension expense is recorded?

BE 17-13

Recording pension expense

● LO17-7

Andrews Medical reported a net loss-AOCI in last year's balance sheet. This year, the company revised its estimate of future salary levels causing its PBO estimate to decline by \$4 million. Also, the \$8 million actual return on plan assets fell short of the \$9 million expected return. How does this gain and loss affect Andrews' income statement, statement of comprehensive income, and balance sheet?

BE 17-14

Postretirement benefits; determine the APBO and service cost

● LO17-9, LO17-10

Prince Distribution Inc. has an unfunded postretirement benefit plan. Medical care and life insurance benefits are provided to employees who render 10 years service and attain age 55 while in service. At the end of 2018, Jim Lukawitz is 31. He was hired by Prince at age 25 (6 years ago) and is expected to retire at age 62. The expected postretirement benefit obligation for Lukawitz at the end of 2018 is \$50,000 and \$54,000 at the end of 2019. Calculate the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2018 and 2019 and the service cost for 2018 and 2019, as pertaining to Lukawitz.

BE 17-15

Postretirement benefits; changes in the APBO

● LO17-11

On January 1, 2018, Medical Transport Company's accumulated postretirement benefit obligation was \$25 million. At the end of 2018, retiree benefits paid were \$3 million. Service cost for 2018 is \$7 million. Assumptions regarding the trend of future health care costs were revised at the end of 2018, causing the actuary to revise downward the estimate of the APBO by \$1 million. The actuary's discount rate is 8%. Determine the amount of the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at December 31, 2018.

Exercises



E 17-1

Changes in the PBO

• LO17-3

Indicate by letter whether each of the events listed below increases (I), decreases (D), or has no effect (N) on an employer's projected benefit obligation.

Events

- _____ 1. Interest cost
- _____ 2. Amortization of prior service cost
- _____ 3. A decrease in the average life expectancy of employees
- _____ 4. An increase in the average life expectancy of employees
- _____ 5. A plan amendment that increases benefits is made retroactive to prior years
- _____ 6. An increase in the actuary's assumed discount rate
- _____ 7. Cash contributions to the pension fund by the employer
- _____ 8. Benefits are paid to retired employees
- _____ 9. Service cost
- _____ 10. Return on plan assets during the year are lower than expected
- _____ 11. Return on plan assets during the year are higher than expected

E 17-2

Determine the projected benefit obligation

• LO17-3

On January 1, 2018, Burleson Corporation's projected benefit obligation was \$30 million. During 2018, pension benefits paid by the trustee were \$4 million. Service cost for 2018 is \$12 million. Pension plan assets (at fair value) increased during 2018 by \$6 million as expected. At the end of 2018, there was no prior service cost and a negligible balance in net loss—AOCI. The actuary's discount rate was 10%.

Required:

Determine the amount of the projected benefit obligation at December 31, 2018.

E 17-3

Components of pension expense

• LO17-6

Indicate by letter whether each of the events listed below increases (I), decreases (D), or has no effect (N) on an employer's periodic pension expense in the year the event occurs.

Events

- _____ 1. Interest cost
- _____ 2. Amortization of prior service cost—AOCI
- _____ 3. Excess of the expected return on plan assets over the actual return
- _____ 4. Expected return on plan assets
- _____ 5. A plan amendment that increases benefits is made retroactive to prior years
- _____ 6. Actuary's estimate of the PBO is increased
- _____ 7. Cash contributions to the pension fund by the employer
- _____ 8. Benefits are paid to retired employees
- _____ 9. Service cost
- _____ 10. Excess of the actual return on plan assets over the expected return
- _____ 11. Amortization of net loss—AOCI
- _____ 12. Amortization of net gain—AOCI

E 17-4

Recording pension expense

• LO17-6, LO17-7

Harrison Forklift's pension expense includes a service cost of \$10 million. Harrison began the year with a pension liability of \$28 million (underfunded pension plan).

Required:

Prepare the appropriate general journal entries to record Harrison's pension expense in each of the following independent situations regarding the other components of pension expense (\$ in millions):

1. Interest cost, \$6; expected return on assets, \$4; amortization of net loss, \$2.
2. Interest cost, \$6; expected return on assets, \$4; amortization of net gain, \$2.
3. Interest cost, \$6; expected return on assets, \$4; amortization of net loss, \$2; amortization of prior service cost, \$3 million.

E 17-5

Determine pension plan assets

• LO17-4

The following data relate to Voltaire Company's defined benefit pension plan:

	(\$ in millions)
Plan assets at fair value, January 1	\$600
Expected return on plan assets	60
Actual return on plan assets	48
Contributions to the pension fund (end of year)	100
Amortization of net loss	10
Pension benefits paid (end of year)	11
Pension expense	72

Required:

Determine the amount of pension plan assets at fair value on December 31.

E 17-6

Changes in the pension obligation; determine service cost

• LO17-3, LO17-6



Pension data for Millington Enterprises include the following:

	(\$ in millions)
Discount rate, 10%	
Projected benefit obligation, January 1	\$360
Projected benefit obligation, December 31	465
Accumulated benefit obligation, January 1	300
Accumulated benefit obligation, December 31	415
Cash contributions to pension fund, December 31	150
Benefit payments to retirees, December 31	54

Required:

Assuming no change in actuarial assumptions and estimates, determine the service cost component of pension expense for the year ended December 31.

E 17-7

Changes in plan assets; determine cash contributions

• LO17-4

Pension data for Fahy Transportation Inc. include the following:

	(\$ in millions)
Discount rate, 7%	
Expected return on plan assets, 10%	
Actual return on plan assets, 11%	
Projected benefit obligation, January 1	\$730
Plan assets (fair value), January 1	700
Plan assets (fair value), December 31	750
Benefit payments to retirees, December 31	66

Required:

Assuming cash contributions were made at the end of the year, what was the amount of those contributions?

E 17-8

Components of pension expense

• LO17-6

Pension data for Sterling Properties include the following:

	(\$ in thousands)
Service cost, 2018	\$112
Projected benefit obligation, January 1, 2018	850
Plan assets (fair value), January 1, 2018	900
Prior service cost—AOCI (2018 amortization, \$8)	80
Net loss—AOCI (2018 amortization, \$1)	101
Interest rate, 6%	
Expected return on plan assets, 10%	
Actual return on plan assets, 11%	

Required:

Determine pension expense for 2018.

E 17-9

Components of pension expense; IFRS

• LO17-6, LO17-12



IFRS

Refer to the situation described in E 17-8.

Required:

How might your answer differ if we assume Sterling Properties prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards? 6% is the interest rate on high grade corporate bonds.

E 17-10

Determine pension expense

• LO17-6, LO17-7

Abbott and Abbott has a noncontributory, defined benefit pension plan. At December 31, 2018, Abbott and Abbott received the following information:

Projected Benefit Obligation	(\$ in millions)
Balance, January 1	\$120
Service cost	20
Interest cost	12
Benefits paid	(9)
Balance, December 31	<u>\$143</u>

(continued)

(concluded)

Plan Assets	
Balance, January 1	\$ 80
Actual return on plan assets	9
Contributions 2018	20
Benefits paid	(9)
Balance, December 31	<u>\$100</u>

The expected long-term rate of return on plan assets was 10%. There was no prior service cost and a negligible net loss—AOCI on January 1, 2018.

Required:

1. Determine Abbott and Abbott's pension expense for 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries to record Abbott and Abbott's pension expense, funding, and payment for 2018.

E 17-11

Components of pension expense; journal entries

- LO17-6, LO17-7

Pension data for Barry Financial Services Inc. include the following:

	(\$ in thousands)
Discount rate, 7%	
Expected return on plan assets, 10%	
Actual return on plan assets, 9%	
Service cost, 2018	\$ 310
January 1, 2018:	
Projected benefit obligation	2,300
Accumulated benefit obligation	2,000
Plan assets (fair value)	2,400
Prior service cost—AOCI (2018 amortization, \$25)	325
Net gain—AOCI (2018 amortization, \$6)	330
There were no changes in actuarial assumptions.	
December 31, 2018:	
Cash contributions to pension fund, December 31, 2018	245
Benefit payments to retirees, December 31, 2018	270

Required:

1. Determine pension expense for 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entries to record pension expense, gains and losses (if any), funding, and retiree benefits for 2018.

E 17-12

PBO calculations; ABO calculations; present value concepts

- LO17-1, LO17-2, LO17-3



Clark Industries has a defined benefit pension plan that specifies annual retirement benefits equal to:

$$1.2\% \times \text{Service years} \times \text{Final year's salary}$$

Stanley Mills was hired by Clark at the beginning of 1999. Mills is expected to retire at the end of 2043 after 45 years of service. His retirement is expected to span 15 years. At the end of 2018, 20 years after being hired, his salary is \$80,000. The company's actuary projects Mills's salary to be \$270,000 at retirement. The actuary's discount rate is 7%.

Required:

1. Estimate the amount of Stanley Mills's annual retirement payments for the 15 retirement years earned as of the end of 2018.
2. Suppose Clark's pension plan permits a lump-sum payment at retirement in lieu of annuity payments. Determine the lump-sum equivalent as the present value as of the retirement date of annuity payments during the retirement period.
3. What is the company's projected benefit obligation at the end of 2018 with respect to Stanley Mills?
4. Even though pension accounting centers on the PBO calculation, the ABO still must be disclosed in the pension disclosure note. What is the company's accumulated benefit obligation at the end of 2018 with respect to Stanley Mills?
5. If we assume no estimates change in the meantime, what is the company's projected benefit obligation at the end of 2019 with respect to Stanley Mills?
6. What portion of the 2019 increase in the PBO is attributable to 2019 service (the service cost component of pension expense) and to accrued interest (the interest cost component of pension expense)?

E 17-13

Determining the amortization of net loss or net gain

• LO17-6

Hicks Cable Company has a defined benefit pension plan. Three alternative possibilities for pension-related data at January 1, 2018, are shown below:

	(\$ in thousands)		
	Case 1	Case 2	Case 3
Net loss (gain)—AOCI, Jan. 1	\$ 320	\$ (330)	\$ 260
2018 loss (gain) on plan assets	(11)	(8)	2
2018 loss (gain) on PBO	(23)	16	(265)
Accumulated benefit obligation, Jan. 1	(2,950)	(2,550)	(1,450)
Projected benefit obligation, Jan. 1	(3,310)	(2,670)	(1,700)
Fair value of plan assets, Jan. 1	2,800	2,700	1,550
Average remaining service period of active employees (years)	12	15	10

Required:

- For each independent case, calculate any amortization of the net loss or gain that should be included as a component of pension expense for 2018.
- For each independent case, determine the net loss—AOCI or net gain—AOCI as of January 1, 2019.

E 17-14

Effect of pension expense components on balance sheet accounts

• LO17-7, LO17-8



Warrick Boards calculated pension expense for its underfunded pension plan as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
Service cost	\$224
Interest cost	150
Expected return on the plan assets (\$100 actual, less \$10 gain)	(90)
Amortization of prior service cost	8
Amortization of net loss	2
Pension expense	<u>\$294</u>

Required:

Which elements of Warrick's balance sheet are affected by the components of pension expense? What are the specific changes in these accounts?

E 17-15

Pension spreadsheet

• LO17-8



A partially completed pension spreadsheet showing the relationships among the elements that comprise the defined benefit pension plan of Universal Products is given below. The actuary's discount rate is 5%. At the end of 2016, the pension formula was amended, creating a prior service cost of \$120,000. The expected rate of return on assets was 8%, and the average remaining service life of the active employee group is 20 years in the current year as well as the previous two years.

Required:

Copy the incomplete spreadsheet and fill in the missing amounts.

()s indicate credits; debits otherwise (\$ in thousands)	PBO	Plan Assets	Prior Service Cost	Net Loss	Pension Expense	Cash	Net Pension (Liability)/ Asset
Balance, Jan. 1, 2018	(800)	600	114	80			(200)
Service cost					84		
Interest cost, 5%	(40)						
Expected return on assets					(48)		
Adjust for:							
Loss on assets				6			
Amortization:							
Prior service cost							
Amortization:							
Net loss							
Gain on PBO							12
Prior service cost	0						
Cash funding						(68)	
Retiree benefits							
Balance, Dec. 31, 2018	(862)		108				

E 17-16

Determine and record pension expense and gains and losses; funding and retiree benefits

● LO17-6, LO17-7

Actuary and trustee reports indicate the following changes in the PBO and plan assets of Douglas-Roberts Industries during 2018:

Prior service cost at Jan. 1, 2018, from plan amendment at the beginning of 2015 (amortization: \$4 million per year)	\$28 million
Net loss—AOCI at Jan. 1, 2018 (previous losses exceeded previous gains)	\$80 million
Average remaining service life of the active employee group	10 years
Actuary's discount rate	7%

(\$ in millions)

PBO		Plan Assets	
<i>Beginning of 2018</i>	\$600	<i>Beginning of 2018</i>	\$400
Service cost	80	Return on plan assets,	
Interest cost, 7%	42	8% (10% expected)	32
Loss (gain) on PBO	(14)	Cash contributions	90
Less: Retiree benefits	<u>(38)</u>	Less: Retiree benefits	<u>(38)</u>
<i>End of 2018</i>	<u>\$670</u>	<i>End of 2018</i>	<u>\$484</u>

Required:

1. Determine Douglas-Roberts's pension expense for 2018, and prepare the appropriate journal entries to record the expense.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entry(s) to record any 2018 gains and losses.
3. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the cash contribution to plan assets.
4. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record retiree benefits.

E 17-17

Concepts; terminology

● LO17-2 through LO17-8

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with pensions. Pair each item from List A with the item from List B (by letter) that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
_____ 1. Future compensation levels estimated	a. Actual return exceeds expected
_____ 2. All funding provided by the employer	b. Net gain—AOCI
_____ 3. Credit to OCI and debit to plan assets	c. Vested benefit obligation
_____ 4. Retirement benefits specified by formula	d. Projected benefit obligation
_____ 5. Trade-off between being relevant and representationally faithful	e. Choice between PBO and ABO
_____ 6. Cumulative gains in excess of losses	f. Noncontributory pension plan
_____ 7. Current pay levels implicitly assumed	g. Accumulated benefit obligation
_____ 8. Created by the passage of time	h. Plan assets
_____ 9. Not contingent on future employment	i. Interest cost
_____ 10. Risk borne by employee	j. Delayed recognition in earnings
_____ 11. Increased by employer contributions	k. Defined contribution plan
_____ 12. Caused by plan amendment	l. Defined benefit plan
_____ 13. Loss on plan assets	m. Prior service cost
_____ 14. Excess over 10% of plan assets or PBO	n. Amortize net loss—AOCI

E 17-18

IFRS; actuarial gains and losses

● LO17-7, LO17-12



IFRS

Patel Industries has a noncontributory, defined benefit pension plan. Since the inception of the plan, the actuary has used as the discount rate the rate on high quality corporate bonds, which recently has been 7%. During 2018, changing economic conditions caused the rate to change to 6%, and the actuary decided that 6% is the appropriate rate.

Required:

1. Does the change in discount rate create a gain, or does it create a loss for Patel under U.S. GAAP? Why?
2. Assume the magnitude of the change is \$13 million. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record any 2018 gain or loss under U.S. GAAP. If Patel prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP, how will the company report the gain or loss?
3. Would your response to requirement 2 differ if Patel prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards?

E 17–19

Record pension expense, funding, and gains and losses; determine account balances

- LO17–6, LO17–7, LO17–8

Beale Management has a noncontributory, defined benefit pension plan. On December 31, 2018 (the end of Beale's fiscal year), the following pension-related data were available:

Projected Benefit Obligation	(\$ in millions)
Balance, January 1, 2018	\$480
Service cost	82
Interest cost, discount rate, 5%	24
Gain due to changes in actuarial assumptions in 2018	(10)
Pension benefits paid	(40)
Balance, December 31, 2018	\$536
Plan Assets	
Balance, January 1, 2018	\$500
Actual return on plan assets	40
(Expected return on plan assets, \$45)	
Cash contributions	70
Pension benefits paid	(40)
Balance, December 31, 2018	\$570
January 1, 2018, balances:	
Pension asset	\$ 20
Prior service cost—AOCI (amortization \$8 per year)	48
Net gain—AOCI (any amortization over 15 years)	80

Required:

1. Prepare the 2018 journal entry to record pension expense.
2. Prepare the journal entry(s) to record any 2018 gains and losses.
3. Prepare the 2018 journal entries to record the contribution to plan assets and benefit payments to retirees.
4. Determine the balances at December 31, 2018, in the PBO, plan assets, the net gain—AOCI, and prior service cost—AOCI. Show how the balances changed during 2018. [Hint: You might find T-accounts useful.]
5. What amount will Beale report in its 2018 balance sheet as a net pension asset or net pension liability for the funded status of the plan?

E 17–20

Pension spreadsheet

- LO17–8

Refer to the data provided in E 17–19.

Required:

Prepare a pension spreadsheet to show the relationship among the PBO, plan assets, prior service cost, the net gain, pension expense, and the net pension asset.

E 17–21

Determine pension expense; prior service cost

- LO17–6, LO17–7

Lacy Construction has a noncontributory, defined benefit pension plan. At December 31, 2018, Lacy received the following information:

Projected Benefit Obligation	(\$ in millions)
Balance, January 1	\$360
Service cost	60
Prior service cost	12
Interest cost (7.5%)	27
Benefits paid	(37)
Balance, December 31	\$422
Plan Assets	
Balance, January 1	\$240
Actual return on plan assets	27
Contributions 2018	60
Benefits paid	(37)
Balance, December 31	\$290

The expected long-term rate of return on plan assets was 10%. There were no AOCI balances related to pensions on January 1, 2018. At the end of 2018, Lacy amended the pension formula creating a prior service cost of \$12 million.

Required:

1. Determine Lacy's pension expense for 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry(s) to record Lacy's pension expense, gains or losses, prior service cost, funding, and payment of retiree benefits for 2018.

E 17-22

IFRS; prior service cost

LO17-7, LO17-12



Refer to the situation described in E 17-21.

Required:

How might your solution differ if Lacy Construction prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards? Assume the actuary's discount rate is the rate on high quality corporate bonds. Include any appropriate journal entries in your response.

E 17-23

Classifying accounting changes and errors

LO17-8

Indicate with the appropriate letter the nature of each adjustment described below:

Type of Adjustment

- A. Change in principle
B. Change in estimate
C. Correction of an error
D. Neither an accounting change nor an error

- _____ 1. Change in actuarial assumptions for a defined benefit pension plan.
_____ 2. Determination that the projected benefit obligation under a pension plan exceeded the fair value of plan assets at the end of the previous year by \$17,000. The only pension-related amount on the balance sheet was a net pension liability of \$30,000.
_____ 3. Pension plan assets for a defined benefit pension plan achieving a rate of return in excess of the amount anticipated.
_____ 4. Instituting a pension plan for the first time and adopting GAAP for employers' accounting for defined benefit pension and other postretirement plans.

E 17-24

Postretirement benefits; determine APBO, EPBO

LO17-10

Classified Electronics has an unfunded retiree health care plan. Each of the company's three employees has been with the firm since its inception at the beginning of 2017. As of the end of 2018, the actuary estimates the total net cost of providing health care benefits to employees during their retirement years to have a present value of \$72,000. Each of the employees will become fully eligible for benefits after 28 more years of service but aren't expected to retire for 35 more years. The interest rate is 6%.

Required:

- What is the expected postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2018?
- What is the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2018?
- What is the expected postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2019?
- What is the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2019?

E 17-25

Postretirement benefits; determine APBO, service cost, interest cost; prepare journal entry

LO17-10, LO17-11

The following data are available pertaining to Household Appliance Company's retiree health care plan for 2018:

Number of employees covered	2
Years employed as of January 1, 2018	3 (each)
Attribution period	25 years
Expected postretirement benefit obligation, Jan. 1	\$50,000
Expected postretirement benefit obligation, Dec. 31	\$53,000
Interest rate	6%
Funding	none

Required:

- What is the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at the beginning of 2018?
- What is interest cost to be included in 2018 postretirement benefit expense?
- What is service cost to be included in 2018 postretirement benefit expense?
- Prepare the journal entry to record the postretirement benefit expense for 2018.

E 17-26

Postretirement benefits; determine EPBO; attribution period

LO17-10, LO17-11

Lorin Management Services has an unfunded postretirement benefit plan. On December 31, 2018, the following data were available concerning changes in the plan's accumulated postretirement benefit obligation with respect to one of Lorin's employees:

APBO at the beginning of 2018	\$16,364
Interest cost: (\$16,364 × 10%)	1,636
Service cost: (\$44,000 × 1/22)	2,000
Portion of EPBO attributed to 2018	
APBO at the end of 2018	<u>\$20,000</u>

Required:

- Over how many years is the expected postretirement benefit obligation being expensed (attribution period)?

2. What is the expected postretirement benefit obligation at the *end* of 2018?
3. When was the employee hired by Lorin?
4. What is the expected postretirement benefit obligation at the *beginning* of 2018?

E 17-27

Postretirement benefits; components of postretirement benefit expense

● LO17-11

Data pertaining to the postretirement health care benefit plan of Sterling Properties include the following for 2018:

	(\$ in thousands)
Service cost	\$124
Accumulated postretirement benefit obligation, January 1	700
Plan assets (fair value), January 1	50
Prior service cost—AOCI	none
Net gain—AOCI (2018 amortization, \$1)	91
Retiree benefits paid (end of year)	87
Contribution to health care benefit fund (end of year)	185
Discount rate, 7%	
Return on plan assets (actual and expected), 10%	

Required:

1. Determine the postretirement benefit expense for 2018.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record the postretirement benefit expense, funding, and retiree benefits for 2018.

E 17-28

Postretirement benefits; amortization of net loss

● LO17-11

Cahal-Michael Company has a postretirement health care benefit plan. On January 1, 2018, the following plan-related data were available:

	(\$ in thousands)
Net loss—AOCI	\$ 336
Accumulated postretirement benefit obligation	2,800
Fair value of plan assets	500
Average remaining service period to retirement	14 years (same in previous 10 years)

The rate of return on plan assets during 2018 was 10%, although it was expected to be 9%. The actuary revised assumptions regarding the APBO at the end of the year, resulting in a \$39,000 increase in the estimate of that obligation.

Required:

1. Calculate any amortization of the net loss that should be included as a component of postretirement benefit expense for 2018.
2. Assume the postretirement benefit expense for 2018, not including the amortization of the net loss component, is \$212,000. What is the expense for the year?
3. Determine the net loss or gain as of December 31, 2018.

E 17-29

Postretirement benefits; determine and record expense

● LO17-11

Gorky-Park Corporation provides postretirement health care benefits to employees who provide at least 12 years of service and reach age 62 while in service. On January 1, 2018, the following plan-related data were available:

	(\$ in millions)
Accumulated postretirement benefit obligation	\$130
Fair value of plan assets	none
Average remaining service period to retirement	25 years (same in previous 10 years)
Average remaining service period to full eligibility	20 years (same in previous 10 years)

On January 1, 2018, Gorky-Park amends the plan to provide certain dental benefits in addition to previously provided medical benefits. The actuary determines that the cost of making the amendment retroactive increases the APBO by \$20 million. Management chooses to amortize the prior service cost on a straight-line basis. The service cost for 2018 is \$34 million. The interest rate is 8%.

Required:

1. Calculate the postretirement benefit expense for 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the expense.

E 17-30

Postretirement benefits; negative plan amendment

• LO17-11

Southeast Technology provides postretirement health care benefits to employees. On January 1, 2018, the following plan-related data were available:

	(\$ in thousands)
Prior service cost—originated in 2013	\$ 50
Accumulated postretirement benefit obligation	530
Fair value of plan assets	none
Average remaining service period to retirement	20 years (same in previous 10 years)
Average remaining service period to full eligibility	15 years (same in previous 10 years)

On January 1, 2018, Southeast amends the plan in response to spiraling health care costs. The amendment establishes an annual maximum of \$3,000 for medical benefits that the plan will provide. The actuary determines that the effect of this amendment is to decrease the APBO by \$80,000. Management amortizes prior service cost on a straight-line basis. The interest rate is 8%. The service cost for 2018 is \$114,000.

Required:

1. Calculate the prior service cost amortization for 2018.
2. Calculate the postretirement benefit expense for 2018.

E 17-31

Prior service cost; service method; straight-line method (Based on Appendix)

Frazier Refrigeration amended its defined benefit pension plan on December 31, 2018, to increase retirement benefits earned with each service year. The consulting actuary estimated the prior service cost incurred by making the amendment retroactive to prior years to be \$110,000. Frazier's 100 present employees are expected to retire at the rate of approximately 10 each year at the end of each of the next 10 years.

Required:

1. Using the service method, calculate the amount of prior service cost to be amortized to pension expense in each of the next 10 years.
2. Using the straight-line method, calculate the amount of prior service cost to be amortized to pension expense in each of the next 10 years.

E 17-32

FASB codification research; postretirement benefit plan

• LO17-11



When a company sponsors a postretirement benefit plan other than a pension plan, benefits typically are not earned by employees on the basis of a formula, so assigning the service cost to specific periods is more difficult. The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on how a firm should attribute the expected postretirement benefit obligation to years of service using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Find the specific citations that describe the guidelines for each of the following questions:
 - a. What is the objective for attributing expected postretirement benefit obligations to years of service?
 - b. When does the attribution period for expected postretirement benefits begin for an employee?
 - c. When does the attribution period for expected postretirement benefits end for an employee?
2. What are the guidelines for each?

E 17-33

FASB codification research

• LO17-1, LO17-2, LO17-5



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

1. The disclosure required in the notes to the financial statements for pension plan assets.
2. Recognition of the net pension asset or net pension liability.
3. Disclosures required in the notes to the financial statements for pension cost for a defined contribution plan.

Problems



(Note: Problems 1–5 are variations of the same situation, designed to focus on different elements of the pension plan.)

P 17-1

ABO calculations; present value concepts

• LO17-2, LO17-3

Sachs Brands defined benefit pension plan specifies annual retirement benefits equal to: $1.6\% \times \text{service years} \times \text{final year's salary}$, payable at the end of each year. Angela Davenport was hired by Sachs at the beginning of 2004 and is expected to retire at the end of 2038 after 35 years' service. Her retirement is expected to span

18 years. Davenport's salary is \$90,000 at the end of 2018 and the company's actuary projects her salary to be \$240,000 at retirement. The actuary's discount rate is 7%.

Required:

1. Draw a time line that depicts Davenport's expected service period, retirement period, and a 2018 measurement date for the pension obligation.
2. Estimate by the accumulated benefits approach the amount of Davenport's annual retirement payments earned as of the end of 2018.
3. What is the company's accumulated benefit obligation at the end of 2018 with respect to Davenport?
4. If no estimates are changed in the meantime, what will be the accumulated benefit obligation at the end of 2021 (three years later), when Davenport's salary is \$100,000?

P 17-2

PBO calculations;
present value
concepts

● LO17-3

Sachs Brands defined benefit pension plan specifies annual retirement benefits equal to: $1.6\% \times \text{service years} \times \text{final year's salary}$, payable at the end of each year. Angela Davenport was hired by Sachs at the beginning of 2004 and is expected to retire at the end of 2038 after 35 years' service. Her retirement is expected to span 18 years. Davenport's salary is \$90,000 at the end of 2018 and the company's actuary projects her salary to be \$240,000 at retirement. The actuary's discount rate is 7%.

Required:

1. Draw a time line that depicts Davenport's expected service period, retirement period, and a 2018 measurement date for the pension obligation.
2. Estimate by the projected benefits approach the amount of Davenport's annual retirement payments earned as of the end of 2018.
3. What is the company's projected benefit obligation at the end of 2018 with respect to Davenport?
4. If no estimates are changed in the meantime, what will be the company's projected benefit obligation at the end of 2021 (three years later) with respect to Davenport?

P 17-3

Service cost,
interest, and
PBO calculations;
present value
concepts

● LO17-3

Sachs Brands defined benefit pension plan specifies annual retirement benefits equal to: $1.6\% \times \text{service years} \times \text{final year's salary}$, payable at the end of each year. Angela Davenport was hired by Sachs at the beginning of 2004 and is expected to retire at the end of 2038 after 35 years' service. Her retirement is expected to span 18 years. Davenport's salary is \$90,000 at the end of 2018 and the company's actuary projects her salary to be \$240,000 at retirement. The actuary's discount rate is 7%.

Required:

1. What is the company's projected benefit obligation at the beginning of 2018 (after 14 years' service) with respect to Davenport?
2. Estimate by the projected benefits approach the portion of Davenport's annual retirement payments attributable to 2018 service.
3. What is the company's service cost for 2018 with respect to Davenport?
4. What is the company's interest cost for 2018 with respect to Davenport?
5. Combine your answers to requirements 1, 3, and 4 to determine the company's projected benefit obligation at the end of 2018 (after 15 years' service) with respect to Davenport.

P 17-4

Prior service cost;
components of
pension expense;
present value
concepts

● LO17-3, LO17-6

Sachs Brands defined benefit pension plan specifies annual retirement benefits equal to: $1.6\% \times \text{service years} \times \text{final year's salary}$, payable at the end of each year. Angela Davenport was hired by Sachs at the beginning of 2004 and is expected to retire at the end of 2038 after 35 years' service. Her retirement is expected to span 18 years. Davenport's salary is \$90,000 at the end of 2018 and the company's actuary projects her salary to be \$240,000 at retirement. The actuary's discount rate is 7%.

At the beginning of 2019, the pension formula was amended to:

$$1.75\% \times \text{Service years} \times \text{Final year's salary}$$

The amendment was made retroactive to apply the increased benefits to prior service years.

Required:

1. What is the company's prior service cost at the beginning of 2019 with respect to Davenport after the amendment described above?
2. Since the amendment occurred at the *beginning* of 2019, amortization of the prior service cost begins in 2019. What is the prior service cost amortization that would be included in pension expense?
3. What is the service cost for 2019 with respect to Davenport?
4. What is the interest cost for 2019 with respect to Davenport?

5. Calculate pension expense for 2019 with respect to Davenport, assuming plan assets attributable to her of \$150,000 and a rate of return (actual and expected) of 10%.

P 17-5

Gain on PBO;
present value
concepts

- LO17-3, LO17-6

Sachs Brands defined benefit pension plan specifies annual retirement benefits equal to: $1.6\% \times \text{service years} \times \text{final year's salary}$, payable at the end of each year. Angela Davenport was hired by Sachs at the beginning of 2004 and is expected to retire at the end of 2038 after 35 years' service. Her retirement is expected to span 18 years. Davenport's salary is \$90,000 at the end of 2018 and the company's actuary projects her salary to be \$240,000 at retirement. The actuary's discount rate is 7%.

At the beginning of 2019, changing economic conditions caused the actuary to reassess the applicable discount rate. It was decided that 8% is the appropriate rate.

Required:

Calculate the effect of the change in the assumed discount rate on the PBO at the beginning of 2019 with respect to Davenport.

P 17-6

Determine the
PBO; plan assets;
pension expense;
two years

- LO17-3, LO17-4,
LO17-6



Stanley-Morgan Industries adopted a defined benefit pension plan on April 12, 2018. The provisions of the plan were not made retroactive to prior years. A local bank, engaged as trustee for the plan assets, expects plan assets to earn a 10% rate of return. A consulting firm, engaged as actuary, recommends 6% as the appropriate discount rate. The service cost is \$150,000 for 2018 and \$200,000 for 2019. Year-end funding is \$160,000 for 2018 and \$170,000 for 2019. No assumptions or estimates were revised during 2018.

Required:

Calculate each of the following amounts as of both December 31, 2018, and December 31, 2019:

- Projected benefit obligation
- Plan assets
- Pension expense
- Net pension asset or net pension liability

P 17-7

Determining the
amortization of
net gain

- LO17-6

Herring Wholesale Company has a defined benefit pension plan. On January 1, 2018, the following pension-related data were available:

	(\$ in thousands)
Net gain—AOCI	\$ 170
Accumulated benefit obligation	1,170
Projected benefit obligation	1,400
Fair value of plan assets	1,100
Average remaining service period of active employees (expected to remain constant for the next several years)	15 years

The rate of return on plan assets during 2018 was 9%, although it was expected to be 10%. The actuary revised assumptions regarding the PBO at the end of the year, resulting in a \$23,000 decrease in the estimate of that obligation.

Required:

- Calculate any amortization of the net gain that should be included as a component of net pension expense for 2018.
- Assume the net pension expense for 2018, not including the amortization of the net gain component, is \$325,000. What is pension expense for the year?
- Determine the net loss—AOCI or net gain—AOCI as of January 1, 2019.

P 17-8

Pension
spreadsheet;
record pension
expense and
funding; new
gains and losses

- LO17-7, LO17-8

A partially completed pension spreadsheet showing the relationships among the elements that constitute Carney, Inc., defined benefit pension plan follows. Six years earlier, Carney revised its pension formula and recalculated benefits earned by employees in prior years using the more generous formula. The prior service cost created by the recalculation is being amortized at the rate of \$5 million per year. At the end of 2018, the pension formula was amended again, creating an additional prior service cost of \$40 million. The expected rate of return on assets and the actuary's discount rate were 10%, and the average remaining service life of the active employee group is 10 years.

()s indicate credits; debits otherwise (\$ in millions)	PBO	Plan Assets	Prior Service Cost	Net Loss	Pension Expense	Cash	Net Pension (Liability)/ Asset
Balance, Jan. 1, 2018	(830)	680	20	93			(150)
Service cost	?				74		?

(continued)

(concluded)	Interest cost	?		?	?
	Expected return on asset		?		
	Adjust for:				
	Loss on assets	(7)	?		?
	Amortization of:				
	Prior service cost		?	?	
	Net loss		?	?	
	Loss on PBO	?		?	(13)
	Prior service cost	?	?		?
	Cash funding	?		?	84
	Retiree benefits	?	?		
	Balance, Dec. 31, 2018	?	775	?	?

Required:

1. Copy the incomplete spreadsheet and fill in the missing amounts.
2. Prepare the 2018 journal entry to record pension expense.
3. Prepare the journal entry(s) to record any 2018 gains and losses and new prior service cost in 2018.
4. Prepare the 2018 journal entries to record the cash contribution to plan assets and payment of retiree benefits.

P 17-9

Determine pension expense; PBO; plan assets; net pension asset or liability; journal entries

• LO17-3 through LO17-8

U.S. Metallurgical Inc. reported the following balances in its financial statements and disclosure notes at December 31, 2017.

Plan assets	\$400,000
Projected benefit obligation	320,000

U.S.M.'s actuary determined that 2018 service cost is \$60,000. Both the expected and actual rate of return on plan assets are 9%. The interest (discount) rate is 5%. U.S.M. contributed \$120,000 to the pension fund at the end of 2018, and retirees were paid \$44,000 from plan assets.

Required:

1. What is the pension expense at the end of 2018?
2. What is the projected benefit obligation at the end of 2018?
3. What is the plan assets balance at the end of 2018?
4. What is the net pension asset or net pension liability at the end of 2018?
5. Prepare journal entries to record the pension expense, funding of plan assets, and retiree benefit payments.

P 17-10

Prior service cost; calculate pension expense; journal entries; determine net pension asset or liability

• LO17-5 through LO17-7

Electronic Distribution has a defined benefit pension plan. Characteristics of the plan during 2018 are as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
PBO balance, January 1	\$480
Plan assets balance, January 1	300
Service cost	75
Interest cost	45
Gain from change in actuarial assumption	22
Benefits paid	(36)
Actual return on plan assets	20
Contributions 2018	60

The expected long-term rate of return on plan assets was 8%. There were no AOCI balances related to pensions on January 1, 2018, but at the end of 2018, the company amended the pension formula, creating a prior service cost of \$12 million.

Required:

1. Calculate the pension expense for 2018.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record pension expense, gains or losses, prior service cost, funding, and payment of benefits for 2018.
3. What amount will Electronic Distribution report in its 2018 balance sheet as a net pension asset or net pension liability?

P 17-11

IFRS; calculate pension expense; journal entries; determine net pension asset or liability

- LO17-5 through LO17-7, LO17-12



IFRS

Refer to the situation described in P 17-10. Assume Electronic Distribution prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). Also assume that 10% is the current interest rate on high-quality corporate bonds.

Required:

1. Calculate the net pension cost for 2018, separating its components into appropriate categories for reporting.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the components of net pension cost, gains or losses, past service cost, funding, and payment of benefits for 2018.
3. What amount will Electronic Distribution report in its 2018 balance sheet as a net pension asset or net pension liability?

P 17-12

Determine pension expense; journal entries; two years

- LO17-3 through LO17-8



The Kollar Company has a defined benefit pension plan. Pension information concerning the fiscal years 2018 and 2019 are presented below (\$ in millions):

Information Provided by Pension Plan Actuary:

- a. Projected benefit obligation as of December 31, 2017 = \$1,800
- b. Prior service cost from plan amendment on January 2, 2018 = \$400 (straight-line amortization for 10-year average remaining service period)
- c. Service cost for 2018 = \$520
- d. Service cost for 2019 = \$570
- e. Discount rate used by actuary on projected benefit obligation for 2018 and 2019 = 10%
- f. Payments to retirees in 2018 = \$380
- g. Payments to retirees in 2019 = \$450
- h. No changes in actuarial assumptions or estimates
- i. Net gain—AOCI on January 1, 2018 = \$230
- j. Net gains and losses are amortized for 10 years in 2018 and 2019

Information Provided by Pension Fund Trustee:

- a. Plan asset balance at fair value on January 1, 2018 = \$1,600
- b. 2018 contributions = \$540
- c. 2019 contributions = \$590
- d. Expected long-term rate of return on plan assets = 12%
- e. 2018 actual return on plan assets = \$180
- f. 2019 actual return on plan assets = \$210

Required:

1. Calculate pension expense for 2018 and 2019.
2. Prepare the journal entries for 2018 and 2019 to record pension expense.
3. Prepare the journal entries for 2018 and 2019 to record any gains and losses and new prior service cost.
4. Prepare the journal entries for 2018 and 2019 to record the cash contribution to plan assets and benefit payments to retirees.

P 17-13

Determine the PBO, plan assets, pension expense; prior service cost

- LO17-3, LO17-4, LO17-6

Lewis Industries adopted a defined benefit pension plan on January 1, 2018. By making the provisions of the plan retroactive to prior years, Lewis incurred a prior service cost of \$2 million. The prior service cost was funded immediately by a \$2 million cash payment to the fund trustee on January 2, 2018. However, the cost is to be amortized (expensed) over 10 years. The service cost—\$250,000 for 2018—is fully funded at the end of each year. Both the actuary's discount rate and the expected rate of return on plan assets were 9%. The actual rate of return on plan assets was 11%. At December 31, the trustee paid \$16,000 to an employee who retired during 2018.

Required:

Determine each of the following amounts as of December 31, 2018, the fiscal year-end for Lewis:

1. Projected benefit obligation
2. Plan assets
3. Pension expense

P 17-14

Relationship
among pension
elements

- LO17-3 through LO17-8



The funded status of Hilton Paneling Inc.'s defined benefit pension plan and the balances in prior service cost and the net gain—pensions, are given below (\$ in thousands):

	2018 Beginning Balances	2018 Ending Balances
Projected benefit obligation	\$2,300	\$2,501
Plan assets	2,400	2,591
Funded status	100	90
Prior service cost—AOCI	325	300
Net gain—AOCI	330	300

Retirees were paid \$270,000, and the employer contribution to the pension fund was \$245,000 at the end of 2018. The expected rate of return on plan assets was 10%, and the actuary's discount rate is 7%. There were no changes in actuarial estimates and assumptions regarding the PBO.

Required:

Determine the following amounts for 2018:

1. Actual return on plan assets
2. Loss or gain on plan assets
3. Service cost
4. Pension expense
5. Average remaining service life of active employees (used to determine amortization of the net gain)

P 17-15

Comprehensive—
pension elements;
spreadsheet

- LO17-8



The following pension-related data pertain to Metro Recreation's noncontributory, defined benefit pension plan for 2018 (\$ in thousands):

	Jan. 1	Dec. 31
Projected benefit obligation	\$4,100	\$4,380
Accumulated benefit obligation	3,715	3,950
Plan assets (fair value)	4,530	4,975
Interest (discount) rate, 7%		
Expected return on plan assets, 10%		
Prior service cost—AOCI (from Dec. 31, 2017, amendment)	840	
Net loss—AOCI	477	
Average remaining service life: 12 years		
Gain due to changes in actuarial assumptions		44
Contributions to pension fund (end of year)		340
Pension benefits paid (end of year)		295

Required:

Prepare a pension spreadsheet that shows the relationships among the various pension balances, shows the changes in those balances, and computes pension expense for 2018.

P 17-16

Comprehensive—
reporting
a pension
plan; pension
spreadsheet;
determine
changes in
balances; two
years

- LO17-3 through LO17-8



Actuary and trustee reports indicate the following changes in the PBO and plan assets of Lakeside Cable during 2018:

Prior service cost at Jan. 1, 2018, from plan amendment at the beginning of 2016 (amortization: \$4 million per year)	\$32 million
Net loss—pensions at Jan. 1, 2018 (previous losses exceeded previous gains)	\$40 million
Average remaining service life of the active employee group	10 years
Actuary's discount rate	8%

(\$ in millions)

	PBO		Plan Assets
Beginning of 2018	\$300	Beginning of 2018	\$200
Service cost	48	Return on plan assets, 7.5% (10% expected)	15
Interest cost, 8%	24	Cash contributions	45
Loss (gain) on PBO	(2)	Less: Retiree benefits	(20)
Less: Retiree benefits	(20)		
End of 2018	\$350	End of 2018	\$240

Required:

1. Determine Lakeside's pension expense for 2018, and prepare the appropriate journal entries to record the expense as well as the cash contribution to plan assets and payment of benefits to retirees.
2. Determine the new gains and/or losses in 2018 and prepare the appropriate journal entry(s) to record them.
3. Prepare a pension spreadsheet to assist you in determining end of 2018 balances in the PBO, plan assets, prior service cost—AOCI, the net loss—AOCI, and the pension liability.
4. Assume the following actuary and trustee reports indicating changes in the PBO and plan assets of Lakeside Cable during 2019 (\$ in millions):

	PBO		Plan Assets
<i>Beginning of 2019</i>	\$350	<i>Beginning of 2019</i>	\$240
Service cost	38	Return on plan assets,	
Interest cost at 8%	28	15% (10% expected)	36
Loss (gain) on PBO	5	Cash contributions	30
Less: Retiree benefits	(16)	Less: Retiree benefits	(16)
<i>End of 2019</i>	<u>\$405</u>	<i>End of 2019</i>	<u>\$290</u>

Determine Lakeside's pension expense for 2019, and prepare the appropriate journal entries to record the expense, the cash funding of plan assets, and payment of benefits to retirees.

5. Determine the new gains and/or losses in 2019, and prepare the appropriate journal entry(s) to record them.
6. Using T-accounts, determine the balances at December 31, 2019, in the net loss—AOCI and prior service cost—AOCI.
7. Confirm the balances determined in Requirement 6 by preparing a pension spreadsheet.

P 17-17

Integrating
Problem—
Deferred tax
effects of pension
entries; integrate
concepts learned
in Chapter 16

● LO17-7



Reproduced below are the journal entries related to Illustration 17-12 in this chapter that Global Communications used to record its pension expense and funding in 2018 and the new gain and loss that occurred that year. To focus on the core issues, we ignored the income tax effects of the pension amounts.

	(\$ in millions)
To Record Pension Expense	
Pension expense (total)	43
Plan assets (expected return on plan assets)	27
PBO (\$41 service cost + \$24 interest cost)	65
Amortization of prior service cost—OCI (2018 amortization)	4
Amortization of net loss—OCI (2018 amortization)	1
To Record Funding	
Plan assets	48
Cash (contribution to plan assets)	48
To Record Payment of Benefits	
PBO	38
Plan assets (retiree benefits)	38
To Record Gains and Losses	
Loss—OCI (from change in assumption)	23
PBO	23
Plan assets	3
Gain—OCI (from actual return exceeding expected return)	3

Required:

1. Recast these journal entries to include the income tax effects of the events being recorded. Assume that Global's tax rate is 40%. [Hint: Costs are incurred and recognized for financial reporting purposes now, but the tax impact comes much later—when these amounts are deducted for tax purposes as actual payments for retiree benefits occur in the future. As a result, the tax effects are deferred, creating the need to record deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities. So, you may want to refer back to Chapter 16 to refresh your memory on these concepts.]
2. Prepare a statement of comprehensive income for 2018, assuming Global's only other sources of comprehensive income were net income of \$300 million and a \$30 million unrealized holding gain on investments in securities available for sale.

P 17-18

Postretirement benefits; EPBO calculations; APBO calculations; components of postretirement benefit expense; present value concepts

- LO17-9, LO17-10



Century-Fox Corporation's employees are eligible for postretirement health care benefits after both being employed at the end of the year in which age 60 is attained and having worked 20 years. Jason Snyder was hired at the end of 1995 by Century-Fox at age 34 and is expected to retire at the end of 2023 (age 62). His retirement is expected to span five years (unrealistically short in order to simplify calculations). The company's actuary has estimated the net cost of retiree benefits in each retirement year as shown below. The discount rate is 6%. The plan is not prefunded. Assume costs are incurred at the end of each year.

Year	Expected Age	Net Cost
2024	63	\$4,000
2025	64	4,400
2026	65	2,300
2027	66	2,500
2028	67	2,800

Required:

1. Draw a time line that depicts Snyder's attribution period for retiree benefits and expected retirement period.
2. Calculate the present value of the net benefits as of the expected retirement date.
3. With respect to Snyder, what is the company's expected postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2018?
4. With respect to Snyder, what is the company's accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2018?
5. With respect to Snyder, what is the company's accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at the end of 2019?
6. What is the service cost to be included in 2019 postretirement benefit expense?
7. What is the interest cost to be included in 2019 postretirement benefit expense?
8. Show how the APBO changed during 2019 by reconciling the beginning and ending balances.

P 17-19

Postretirement benefits; schedule of postretirement benefit costs

- LO17-9 through LO17-11



Stockton Labeling Company has a retiree health care plan. Employees become fully eligible for benefits after working for the company eight years. Stockton hired Misty Newburn on January 1, 2018. As of the end of 2018, the actuary estimates the total net cost of providing health care benefits to Newburn during her retirement years to have a present value of \$18,000. The actuary's discount rate is 10%.

Required:

Prepare a schedule that shows the EPBO, the APBO, the service cost, the interest cost, and the postretirement benefit expense for each of the years 2018–2025.

P 17-20

Postretirement benefits; relationship among elements of postretirement benefit plan

- LO17-9 through LO17-11

The information below pertains to the retiree health care plan of Thompson Technologies:

(\$ in thousands)	2018 Beginning Balances	2018 Ending Balances
Accumulated postretirement benefit obligation	\$460	\$485
Plan assets	0	75
Funded status	(460)	(410)
Prior service cost—AOCI	120	110
Net gain—AOCI	(50)	(49)

Thompson began funding the plan in 2018 with a contribution of \$127,000 to the benefit fund at the end of the year. Retirees were paid \$52,000. The actuary's discount rate is 5%. There were no changes in actuarial estimates and assumptions.

Required:

Determine the following amounts for 2018:

1. Service cost
2. Postretirement benefit expense
3. Net benefit liability

P 17-21

Pension disclosure; amortization of actuarial gain or loss; Office Depot, Inc.

- LO17-3 through LO17-7

Real World Financials



Office Depot, Inc. is a leading global provider of products, services, and solutions for workplaces. The following is an excerpt from a disclosure note in the company's annual report for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2015:

NOTE 13. EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS (in part)

(\$ in millions)	Pension Benefits	
	2015	2014
Changes in projected benefit obligation:		
Obligation at beginning of period	\$1,218	\$1,122
Service cost	3	3
Interest cost	46	52
Actuarial (gain) loss	(78)	138
Benefits paid	(95)	(97)
Obligation at end of period	\$1,094	\$1,218
Change in plan assets:		
Fair value of plan assets at beginning of period	\$1,039	\$ 986
Actual return (loss) on plan assets*	(30)	107
Employer contribution	8	43
Benefits paid	(95)	(97)
Fair value of plan assets at end of period	922	1,039
Net liability recognized at end of period	\$ (172)	\$ (179)

*Expected return \$56 and \$62 in 2015 and 2014, respectively

Required:

1. What amount did Office Depot report in its balance sheet related to the pension plan at December 31, 2015?
2. When calculating pension expense at December 31, what amount did Office Depot include as the amortization of unrecognized net actuarial loss (net loss–AOCI), which was \$67 million at the beginning of the year and the only AOCI account related to pensions? The average remaining service life of employees was 10 years.
3. What was the pension expense?
4. What were the appropriate journal entries to record Office Depot's pension expense and to record gains and/or losses related to the pension plan?

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Judgment Case 17-1

Choose your retirement option

- LO17-1, LO17-3, LO17-4, LO17-5

"I only get one shot at this?" you wonder aloud. Mrs. Montgomery, human resources manager at Covington State University, has just explained that newly hired assistant professors must choose between two retirement plan options. "Yes, I'm afraid so," she concedes. "But you do have a week to decide."

Mrs. Montgomery's explanation was that your two alternatives are: (1) the state's defined benefit plan and (2) a defined contribution plan under which the university will contribute each year an amount equal to 8% of your salary. The defined benefit plan will provide annual retirement benefits determined by the following formula: $1.5\% \times \text{years of service} \times \text{salary at retirement}$.

"It's a good thing I studied pensions in my accounting program," you tell her. "Now let's see. You say the state is currently assuming our salaries will rise about 3% a year, and the interest rate they use in their calculations is 6%? And, for someone my age, you say they assume I'll retire after 40 years and draw retirement pay for 20 years. I'll do some research and get back to you."

Required:

1. You were hired at the beginning of 2018 at a salary of \$100,000. If you choose the state's defined benefit plan and projections hold true, what will be your annual retirement pay? What is the present value of your retirement annuity as of the anticipated retirement date (end of 2057)?
2. Suppose instead that you choose the defined contribution plan. Assuming that the rate of increase in salary is the same as the state assumes and that the rate of return on your retirement plan assets will be 6% compounded annually, what will be the future value of your plan assets as of the anticipated retirement date (end

of 2057)? What will be your annual retirement pay (assuming continuing investment of remaining assets at 6%)?

3. Based on this numerical comparison, which plan would you choose? What other factors must you also consider in making the choice?

Hint: The calculations are greatly simplified using an electronic spreadsheet such as Excel. There are many ways to set up the spreadsheet. One relatively easy way is to set up the first few rows with the formulas as shown below, then use the “fill down” function to fill in the remaining 38 rows, and use the Insert: Name: Define: function to name column B “n”. Since contributions are assumed made at the end of each year, there are 39 years remaining to maturity at the end of 2018. Note that multiplying each contribution by $(1.06)^n$, where n equals the remaining number of years to retirement, calculates the future value of each contribution invested at 6% until retirement.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	End of	Years to			Future Value
2	Year	Retirement	Salary	Contribution	at Retirement
3	2018	39	100,000	=C3*0.08	=D3*1.06^n
4	=A3+1	=B3-1	=C3*1.03	=C4*0.08	=D4*1.06^n

Communication Case 17-2

Pension concepts

- LO17-2 through LO17-8

Stacy Persoff is the newly hired assistant controller of Kemp Industries, a regional supplier of hardwood derivative products. The company sponsors a defined benefit pension plan that covers its 420 employees. On reviewing last year's financial statements, Persoff was concerned about some items reported in the disclosure notes relating to the pension plan. Portions of the relevant note follow:

Note 8: Pensions

The company has a defined benefit pension plan covering substantially all of its employees. Pension benefits are based on employee service years and the employee's compensation during the last two years of employment. The company contributes annually the maximum amount permitted by the federal tax code. Plan contributions provide for benefits expected to be earned in the future as well as those earned to date. The following reconciles the plan's funded status and amount recognized in the balance sheet at December 31, 2018 (\$ in thousands).

Actuarial Present Value Benefit Obligations:	
Accumulated benefit obligation (including vested benefits of \$318)	<u>\$ (1,305)</u>
Projected benefit obligation	<u>(1,800)</u>
Plan assets at fair value	<u>1,575</u>
Projected benefit obligation in excess of plan assets	<u>\$ (225)</u>

Kemp's comparative income statements reported net periodic pension expense of \$108,000 in 2018 and \$86,520 in 2017. Since employment has remained fairly constant in recent years, Persoff expressed concern over the increase in the pension expense. She expressed her concern to you, a three-year senior accountant at Kemp. "I'm also interested in the differences in these liability measurements," she mentioned.

Required:

Write a memo to Persoff. In the memo, do the following:

1. Explain to Persoff how the composition of the net periodic pension expense can create the situation she sees. Briefly describe the components of pension expense.
2. Briefly explain how pension gains and losses are recognized in earnings.
3. Describe for her the differences and similarities between the accumulated benefit obligation and the projected benefit obligation.
4. Explain how the "Projected benefit obligation in excess of plan assets" is reported in the financial statements.

Judgment Case 17-3

Barlow's wife; relationship among pension elements

- LO17-8

LGD Consulting is a medium-sized provider of environmental engineering services. The corporation sponsors a noncontributory, defined benefit pension plan. Alan Barlow, a new employee and participant in the pension plan, obtained a copy of the 2018 financial statements, partly to obtain additional information about his new employer's obligation under the plan. In part, the pension disclosure note reads as follows:

Note 8: Retirement Benefits

The Company has a defined benefit pension plan covering substantially all of its employees. The benefits are based on years of service and the employee's compensation during the last two years of employment. The company's funding policy is consistent with the funding requirements of federal law and regulations. Generally, pension costs accrued are funded. Plan assets consist primarily of stocks, bonds, commingled trust funds, and cash.

The change in projected benefit obligation for the plan years ended December 31, 2018, and December 31, 2017.

(\$ in thousands)	2018	2017
Projected benefit obligation at beginning of year	\$3,786	\$3,715
Service cost	103	94
Interest cost	287	284
Actuarial (gain) loss	302	(23)
Benefits paid	(324)	(284)
Projected benefit obligation at end of year	<u>\$4,154</u>	<u>\$3,786</u>

The weighted average discount rate and rate of increase in future compensation levels used in determining the actuarial present value of the projected benefit obligations in the above table were 7.0% and 4.3%, respectively, at December 31, 2018, and 7.75% and 4.7%, respectively, at December 31, 2017. The expected long-term rate of return on assets was 10.0% at December 31, 2018 and 2017.

The change in the fair value of plan assets for the plan years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017.

(\$ in thousands)	2018	2017
Fair value of plan assets at beginning of year	\$3,756	\$3,616
Actual return on plan assets	1,100	372
Employer contributions	27	52
Benefits paid	(324)	(284)
Fair value of plan assets at end of year	<u>\$4,559</u>	<u>\$3,756</u>

Included in the Consolidated Balance Sheets are the following components of accumulated other comprehensive income.

(\$ in thousands)	2018	2017
Net actuarial gain	\$(620)	\$(165)
Prior service cost	44	46

Net periodic defined benefit pension cost for fiscal 2018, 2017, and 2016 included the following components.

(\$ in thousands)	2018	2017	2016
Service cost	\$ 103	\$ 94	\$ 112
Interest cost	287	284	263
Expected return on plan assets	(342)	(326)	(296)
Amortization of prior service cost	2	2	1
Recognized net actuarial (gain) loss	(2)	2	4
Net periodic pension cost	<u>\$ 48</u>	<u>\$ 56</u>	<u>\$ 84</u>

In attempting to reconcile amounts reported in the disclosure note with amounts reported in the income statement and balance sheet, Barlow became confused. He was able to find the pension expense on the income statement but was unable to make sense of the balance sheet amounts. Expressing his frustration to his wife, Barlow said, "It appears to me that the company has calculated pension expense as if they have the pension liability and pension assets they include in the note, but I can't seem to find those amounts in the balance sheet. In fact, there are several amounts here I can't seem to account for. They also say they've made some assumptions about interest rates, pay increases, and profits on invested assets. I wonder what difference it would make if they assumed other numbers."

Barlow's wife took accounting courses in college and remembers most of what she learned about pension accounting. She attempts to clear up her husband's confusion.

Required:

Assume the role of Barlow's wife. Answer the following questions for your husband.

1. Is Barlow's observation correct that the company has calculated pension expense on the basis of amounts not reported in the balance sheet?
2. What amount would the company report as a pension liability in the balance sheet?
3. What amount would the company report as a pension asset in the balance sheet?
4. Which of the other amounts reported in the disclosure note would the company report in the balance sheet?
5. The disclosure note reports a net actuarial gain as well as an actuarial loss. How are these related? What do the amounts mean?
6. Which components of the pension expense represent deferred recognition? Where are these deferred amounts reported prior to amortization?

Communication Case 17-4

Barlow's wife;
relationship
among pension
elements

● LO17-8

The focus of this case is question 1 in the previous case. Your instructor will divide the class into two to six groups, depending on the size of the class. The mission of your group is to assess the correctness of Barlow's observation and to suggest the appropriate treatment of the pension obligation. The suggested treatment need not be that required by GAAP.

Required:

1. Each group member should deliberate the situation independently and draft a tentative argument prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.
2. In class, each group will meet for 10 to 15 minutes in different areas of the classroom. During that meeting, group members will take turns sharing their suggestions for the purpose of arriving at a single group treatment.
3. After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each group (selected during the group meetings) will share the group's solution with the class. The goal of the class is to incorporate the views of each group into a consensus approach to the situation.

Real World Case 17-5

Types of pension
plans; disclosures

● LO17-1

Refer to the financial statements and related disclosure notes of **Microsoft Corporation** (www.microsoft.com).

Required:

1. What type of pension plan does Microsoft sponsor for its employees? Explain.
2. Who bears the "risk" of factors that might reduce retirement benefits in this type of plan? Explain.
3. Assuming that employee and employer contributions vest immediately, suppose a Microsoft employee contributes \$1,000 to the pension plan during her first year of employment and directs investments to a bond mutual fund. If she leaves Microsoft early in her second year, after the mutual fund's value has increased by 2%, how much will she be entitled to roll over into an Individual Retirement Account (IRA)?
4. How did Microsoft account for its participation in the pension plan in fiscal 2015?

Ethics Case 17-6

401(k) plan

contributions

● LO17-1

You are in your third year as internal auditor with VXI International, manufacturer of parts and supplies for jet aircraft. VXI began a defined contribution pension plan three years ago. The plan is a so-called 401(k) plan (named after the Tax Code section that specifies the conditions for the favorable tax treatment of these plans) that permits voluntary contributions by employees. Employees' contributions are matched with one dollar of employer contribution for every two dollars of employee contribution. Approximately \$500,000 of contributions is deducted from employee paychecks each month for investment in one of three employer-sponsored mutual funds.

While performing some preliminary audit tests, you happen to notice that employee contributions to these plans usually do not show up on mutual fund statements for up to two months following the end of pay periods from which the deductions are drawn. On further investigation, you discover that when the plan was first begun, contributions were invested within one week of receipt of the funds. When you question the firm's investment manager about the apparent change in the timing of investments, you are told, "Last year Mr. Maxwell (the CFO) directed me to initially deposit the contributions in the corporate investment account. At the close of each quarter, we add the employer matching contribution and deposit the combined amount in specific employee mutual funds."

Required:

1. What is Mr. Maxwell's apparent motivation for the change in the way contributions are handled?
2. Do you perceive an ethical dilemma?

Real World Case 17-7

Types of pension
plans; reporting
postretirement
plans; disclosures

● LO17-5, LO17-8

Refer to the 2015 financial statements and related disclosure notes of **FedEx Corporation**. The financial statements can be found at the company's website (www.fedex.com).

Required:

1. What pension and other postretirement benefit plans does FedEx sponsor for its employees? Explain.
2. What amount does FedEx report in its balance sheet for its pension and other postretirement benefit plans? Explain.
3. FedEx reports three actuarial assumptions used in its pension calculations. Did reported changes in those assumptions from the previous year increase or decrease the projected benefit obligation? Why?

Real World Financials

Analysis**Case 17–8**

Pension
amendment

- LO17–5, LO17–8

Charles Rubin is a 30-year employee of **Amalgamated Motors**. Charles was pleased with recent negotiations between his employer and the United Auto Workers. Among other favorable provisions of the new agreement, the pact also includes a 14% increase in pension payments for workers under 64 with 30 years of service who retire during the agreement. Although the elimination of a cap on outside income earned by retirees has been generally viewed as an incentive for older workers to retire, Charles sees promise for his dream of becoming a part-time engineering consultant after retirement. What has caught Charles's attention is the following excerpt from an article in the financial press:

Amalgamated Motors Corp. will record a \$240 million charge due to increases in retirement benefits for hourly United Auto Workers employees.

The charge stems from AM's new tentative labor contract with the UAW. According to a filing with the Securities and Exchange Commission, the charge amounts to 26 cents a share.

The company warned that its "unfunded pension obligation and pension expense are expected to be unfavorably impacted as a result of the recently completed labor negotiations."

Taking advantage of an employee stock purchase plan, Charles has become an active AM stockholder as well as employee. His stockholder side is moderately concerned by the article's reference to the unfavorable impact of the recently completed labor negotiations.

Required:

1. When a company modifies its pension benefits the way Amalgamated Motors did, what name do we give the added cost? How is it accounted for?
2. What does AM mean when it says its "unfunded pension obligation and pension expense are expected to be unfavorably impacted as a result of the recently completed labor negotiations"?

Analysis**Case 17–9**

Effect of pensions
on earnings

- LO17–7

While doing some online research concerning a possible investment you come across an article that mentions in passing that a representative of **Morgan Stanley** had indicated that a company's pension plan had benefited its reported earnings. Curiosity piqued, you seek your old Intermediate Accounting text.

Required:

1. Can the net periodic pension "cost" cause a company's reported earnings to increase? Explain.
2. Companies must report the actuarial assumptions used to make estimates concerning pension plans. Which estimate influences the earnings effect in requirement 1? Can any of the other estimates influence earnings? Explain.

Research**Case 17–10**

Researching the
way employee
benefits are
tested on the CPA
Exam; retrieving
information from
the Internet

- LO17–9, LO17–10, LO17–11

The board of examiners of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) is responsible for preparing the CPA examination. The boards of accountancy of all 50 states, the District of Columbia, Guam, Puerto Rico, the U.S. Virgin Islands, and the Mariana Islands use the examination as the primary way to measure the technical competence of CPA candidates. The content for each examination section is specified by the AICPA and described in outline form.

Required:

1. Access the AICPA website on the Internet. The web address is www.aicpa.org.
2. Access the CPA exam section within the site. Locate the exam content portion of the section.
3. In which of the four separately graded sections of the exam are postretirement benefits tested?
4. From the AICPA site, access the Board of Accountancy for your state. What are the education requirements in your state to sit for the CPA exam?

Analysis**Case 17–11**

Pensions
and other
postretirement
benefit plans;
analysis of
disclosure notes

- LO17–6, LO17–11

Real World Financials

Macy's, Inc., operates about 840 Macy's and Bloomingdale's department stores and furniture galleries in 45 states and U.S. territories as well as Bloomingdale's Outlet stores, macys.com, and bloomingdales.com. Refer to the financial statements for the year ended January 30, 2016 and related disclosure notes of the company. The financial statements can be found at the company's website (www.macys.com).

Required:

1. From the information provided in various portions of Note 9, reconcile the beginning balance (\$1,397) and ending balances for Net loss–AOCI associated with Macy's pension plan. Clearly label each reconciling amount.
2. Macy's was required to amortize a portion of its Net loss–AOCI associated with its pension plan in 2015. Based on the calculation of that amount, determine the average remaining service life of the company's employees used in that calculation.
3. From the information provided in various portions of Note 10, reconcile the beginning balance (\$349) and ending balances for Net loss–AOCI associated with Macy's *Other postretirement employee benefit plan*. Clearly label each reconciling amount.
4. Suppose you believe that Macy's should have assumed a 1% lower health care cost trend during 2015. What would 2015 net income have been under that assumption? Assume a 35% income tax rate.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO17-3, LO17-4, LO17-5, LO17-6

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material also is available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com).

Target has both defined contribution and defined benefit pension plan. In Note 28 "Pension and Postretirement Health Care Plans," Target describes its defined benefit plans.

Required:

1. What were the changes in Target's Projected Benefits Obligation in the fiscal years ended January 30, 2016 (fiscal 2015) and January 31, 2015 (fiscal 2014), for its qualified pension plans?
2. What were the changes in Target's Pension Plan Assets in the fiscal years ended January 30, 2016 and January 31, 2015, for its qualified pension plans?
3. Were these pension plans overfunded or underfunded for the fiscal years ended January 30, 2016 and January 31, 2015?
4. What were the components of Target's Pension Expense in the fiscal years ended January 30, 2016, January 31, 2015, and February 1, 2014?

Air France-KLM Case



- LO17-12

Air France-KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material also is available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm-finance.com).

Required:

1. AF reported past service cost (called prior service cost under U.S. GAAP) in its income statement as part of net periodic pension cost. Is that reporting method the same or different from the way we report prior service cost under U.S. GAAP?
2. Look at note 31.2, "Retirement Benefits." AF incorporates estimates regarding staff turnover, life expectancy, salary increase, retirement age, and discount rates. How did AF report changes in these assumptions? Is that reporting method the same or different from the way we report changes under U.S. GAAP?
3. AF does not report remeasurement gains and losses in its income statement. Where did AF report these amounts? Is that reporting method the same or different from the way we report pension expense under U.S. GAAP?
4. See Note 23. Did AF report net interest cost or net interest income in 2015? How is that amount determined?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

18

Shareholders' Equity

OVERVIEW

We turn our attention from liabilities, which represent the creditors' interests in the assets of a corporation, to the shareholders' residual interest in those assets. The discussions distinguish between the two basic sources of shareholders' equity: (1) *invested capital* and (2) *earned capital*. We explore the expansion of corporate capital through the issuance of shares and the contraction caused by the retirement of shares or the purchase of treasury shares. In our discussions of retained earnings, we examine cash dividends, property dividends, stock dividends, and stock splits.

LEARNING
OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO18-1** Describe the components of shareholders' equity and explain how they are reported in a statement of shareholders' equity. (p. 1035)
- **LO18-2** Describe comprehensive income and its components. (p. 1038)
- **LO18-3** Understand the corporate form of organization and the nature of stock. (p. 1039)
- **LO18-4** Record the issuance of shares when sold for cash and for noncash consideration. (p. 1046)
- **LO18-5** Distinguish between accounting for retired shares and for treasury shares. (p. 1050)
- **LO18-6** Describe retained earnings and distinguish it from paid-in capital. (p. 1056)
- **LO18-7** Explain the basis of corporate dividends, including the similarities and differences between cash and property dividends. (p. 1056)
- **LO18-8** Explain stock dividends and stock splits and how we account for them. (p. 1058)
- **LO18-9** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to accounting for shareholders' equity. (pp. 1040 and 1046)



© Peathegee Inc/Blend Images

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Nike, Inc.

Finally, you have some uninterrupted time to get back on the net. Earlier today you noticed on the Internet that the market price of Nike's common stock was up almost 10%. You've been eager to look into why this happened, but have had one meeting after another all day.

You've been a stockholder of **Nike** since the beginning of the year when you bought your last pair of running shoes and saw how much they sell for these days. The dividends that you receive quarterly are nice, but that's not why you bought the stock; you were convinced at the time that the stock price was poised to rise rapidly. A few well-placed clicks of the mouse and you come across the following news article:

BEAVERTON, Ore.--(BUSINESS WIRE) 11/19/2015 -- NIKE, Inc. (NYSE:NKE) announced today that its Board of Directors approved a new four-year, \$12 billion program to repurchase shares of NIKE's Class B Common Stock. The Company anticipates that the current \$8 billion share repurchase program will be completed before the end of fiscal 2016.

"In a growing sports industry, NIKE is the clear leader," said Mark Parker, President and CEO of NIKE, Inc. "We are built for growth, while also staying committed to creating shareholder value over the long term. We've proven it time and again, having returned over \$23 billion to shareholders over the last 14 years through share repurchases and dividends."

The Board of Directors also declared a quarterly cash dividend on the Company's outstanding Class A and Class B Common Stock of \$0.32 per share, on a pre-split basis, payable on January 4, 2016 to shareholders of record at the close of business on December 9, 2015. The dividend represents a 14 percent increase over the previous pre-split quarterly rate of \$0.28 per share.

The Board of Directors also approved a two-for-one split of both NIKE's Class A and Class B Common shares. The stock split will be in the form of a 100 percent stock dividend payable on December 23, 2015 to shareholders of record at the close of business December 9, 2015.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. Do you think the stock price increase is related to Nike's share repurchase plan? (p. 1050)
2. What are Nike's choices in accounting for the share repurchases? (p. 1051)
3. What effect does the quarterly cash dividend of 32 cents a share have on Nike's assets? Its liabilities? Its shareholders' equity? (p. 1057)
4. What effect does the stock split have on Nike's assets? Its liabilities? Its shareholders' equity? (p. 1060)

QUESTIONS

The Nature of Shareholders' Equity

A corporation raises money to fund its business operations by some mix of debt and equity financing. In earlier chapters, we examined debt financing in the form of notes, bonds, leases, and other liabilities. Amounts representing those liabilities denote *creditors' interest* in the company's assets. Now we focus on various forms of equity financing. Specifically, in this chapter we consider transactions that affect shareholders' equity—those accounts that represent the *ownership interests* of shareholders.

PART A

● LO18-1

In principle, shareholders' equity is a relatively straightforward concept. Shareholders' equity is a residual amount—what's left over after creditor claims have been subtracted from assets (in other words, net assets). You probably recall the residual nature of shareholders' equity from the basic accounting equation:

$$\frac{\text{Assets} - \text{Liabilities}}{\text{Net Assets}} = \text{Shareholders' Equity}$$

Net assets equal shareholders' equity.

Shareholders' equity accounts denote the ownership interests of shareholders.

Ownership interests of shareholders arise primarily from two sources: (1) amounts *invested* by shareholders in the corporation and (2) amounts *earned* by the corporation on behalf of its shareholders. These two sources are reported as (1) paid-in capital and (2) retained earnings.

Despite being a seemingly clear-cut concept, shareholders' equity and its component accounts often are misunderstood and misinterpreted. As we explore the transactions that affect shareholders' equity and its component accounts, try not to allow yourself to be overwhelmed by unfamiliar terminology or to be overly concerned with precise account titles. Terminology pertaining to shareholders' equity accounts is notoriously diverse. Every shareholders' equity account has several aliases. Indeed, shareholders' equity itself is often referred to as *stockholders' equity* (**WalMart**), *shareowners' equity* (**General Electric**), *shareholders' investment* (**Target**), *stockholders' investment* (**FedEx**), *shareholders' equity* (**Apple**), *equity* (**Air France–KLM**), and many other similar titles.

Complicating matters, transactions that affect shareholders' equity are influenced by corporation laws of individual states in which companies are located. And, as we see later, generally accepted accounting principles provide companies with considerable latitude when choosing accounting methods in this area.

Legal requirements and disclosure objectives make it preferable to separate a corporation's capital into several separate shareholders' equity accounts.

Keeping this perspective in mind while you study the chapter should aid you in understanding the essential concepts. At a very basic level, each transaction we examine can be viewed simply as an increase or decrease in shareholders' equity, per se, without regard to specific shareholders' equity accounts. In fact, for a business organized as a single proprietorship, all capital changes are recorded in a single owner's equity account. The same concepts apply to a corporation. But for corporations, additional considerations make it desirable to separate owners' equity into several separate shareholders' equity accounts. These additional considerations—legal requirements and disclosure objectives—are discussed in later sections of this chapter. So, as you study the separate effects of transactions on retained earnings and specific paid-in capital accounts, you may find it helpful to ask yourself frequently, “What is the net effect of this transaction on shareholders' equity?” or, equivalently, “By how much are net assets (assets minus liabilities) affected by this transaction?”

Financial Reporting Overview

Before we examine the events that underlie specific shareholders' equity accounts, let's summarize how individual accounts relate to each other. The condensed balance sheet in Illustration 18–1 of Exposition Corporation, a hypothetical company, provides that perspective.

Illustration 18–1 depicts a rather comprehensive situation. It's unlikely that any one company would have shareholders' equity from all of these sources at any one time. Remember that, at this point, our objective is only to get a general perspective of the items constituting shareholders' equity. Although company records would include separate accounts for each of these components of shareholders' equity in the balance sheet, in practice, Exposition would report a more condensed version similar to that in Illustration 18–1A and the one we will see later in the chapter when we look at the presentation by Abercrombie & Fitch (in Illustration 18–3).

The four classifications within shareholders' equity are paid-in capital, retained earnings, accumulated other comprehensive income, and treasury stock. We discuss these now in the context of Exposition Corporation.

Paid-in Capital

Paid-in capital consists primarily of amounts invested by shareholders when they purchase shares of stock from the corporation or arise from the company buying back some of those

EXPOSITION CORPORATION**Balance Sheet****December 31, 2018**

(\$ in millions)

Assets

\$3,000

Liabilities

\$1,000

Shareholders' Equity**Paid-in capital:**

Capital stock (par):

Preferred stock, 10%, \$10 par, cumulative,
nonparticipating

\$100

Common stock, \$1 par

55

Common stock dividends distributable

5

Additional paid-in capital:

Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred

50

Paid-in capital—excess of par, common

260

Paid-in capital—share repurchase

8

Paid-in capital—conversion of bonds

7

Paid-in capital—stock options

9

Paid-in capital—restricted stock

5

Paid-in capital—lapse of stock options

1

Total paid-in capital

\$ 500

Retained earnings

1,670

Accumulated other comprehensive income:

Net unrealized holding gains (losses) on investments

(85)

Net unrecognized gain (loss) on pensions

(75)

Deferred gains (losses) on derivatives*

(4)

Adjustments from foreign currency translation**

-0-

(164)

Treasury stock (at cost)

(6)

Total shareholders' equity

\$2,000

*When a derivative designated as a cash flow hedge is adjusted to fair value, the gain or loss is deferred as a component of other comprehensive income and included in earnings later, at the same time as earnings are affected by the hedged transaction (described in Appendix A at the end of this textbook).

**Changes in foreign currency exchange rates are discussed elsewhere in your accounting curriculum. The amount could be an addition to or reduction in shareholders' equity.

Illustration 18-1

Detailed Shareholders' Equity Presentation

Assets minus Liabilities equals Shareholders' Equity.

The primary source of paid-in capital is the investment made by shareholders when buying preferred and common stock.

Several other events also affect paid-in capital.

Retained earnings represents earned capital.

Preferred stock, 10%, \$10 par, cumulative, nonparticipating	\$ 100
Common stock, \$1 par	60
Additional paid-in capital	340
Retained earnings	1,670
Accumulated other comprehensive income:	
Net unrealized holding losses on investments	(85)
Net unrealized loss on pensions	(75)
Deferred losses on derivatives	(4)
Treasury stock	(6)
Total shareholders' equity	<u>\$2,000</u>

Illustration 18-1A

Typical Shareholders' Equity Presentation

shares or from share-based compensation activities. Later in this chapter and the next, we consider in more detail the events and transactions that affect paid-in capital.

Retained Earnings

Retained earnings is accumulated on behalf of shareholders and reported as a single amount. We discuss retained earnings in Part C of this chapter.

Treasury Stock

We discuss the final component of shareholders' equity—treasury stock—later in the chapter. It indicates that some of the shares previously sold were bought back by the corporation from shareholders.

● LO18–2 Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income

Comprehensive income includes net income as well as other gains, losses, and adjustments that change shareholders' equity but are not included in traditional net income.

Also notice that shareholders' equity of Exposition Corporation is adjusted for three events that are not included in net income and so don't affect retained earnings but are part of "other comprehensive income" and therefore are included as a separate component of shareholders' equity: accumulated comprehensive income.¹ **Comprehensive income** provides a more expansive view of the change in shareholders' equity than does traditional net income. It is the total *nonowner* change in equity for a reporting period. In fact, it encompasses all changes in equity other than those from transactions with *owners*. Transactions between the corporation and its shareholders primarily include dividends and the issuance or purchase of shares of the company's stock. Most nonowner changes are reported in the income statement. So, the nonowner changes other than those that are part of traditional net income are the ones reported as "other comprehensive income."

Comprehensive income extends our view of income beyond net income reported in an income statement to include four types of gains and losses not included in income statements.

1. Net holding gains (losses) on available-for-sale investments in debt securities
2. Gains (losses) from and amendments to postretirement benefit plans
3. Deferred gains (losses) on derivatives
4. Adjustments from foreign currency translation

The first of these are the gains and losses on some securities that occur when the fair values of these investments increase or decrease. As you learned in Chapters 12 and 14, gains and losses on available-for-sale investments in debt securities aren't included in earnings until they are realized through the sale of the securities but are considered a component of *other comprehensive income (OCI)* in the meantime. Similarly, as we discussed in Chapter 17, net gains and losses as well as "prior service cost" on pensions sometimes affect other comprehensive income rather than net income as they occur. You have not yet studied the third and fourth potential components of other comprehensive income. As described in Appendix A, "Derivatives," at the back of this textbook, when a derivative designated as a "*cash flow hedge*" is adjusted to fair value, the gain or loss is deferred as a component of other comprehensive income and included in earnings later, at the same time as earnings are affected by the hedged transaction. Adjustments from changes in foreign currency exchange rates are discussed elsewhere in your accounting curriculum. These, too, are included in other comprehensive income (OCI) but not net income.

OCI is reported in the statement of comprehensive income.

AOCI is reported in the balance sheet.

OCI shares another trait with net income. Just as net income is reported periodically in the income statement and also on a *cumulative* basis as part of retained earnings, OCI too, is reported periodically in the statement of comprehensive income and also as **accumulated other comprehensive income (AOCI)** in the balance sheet along with retained earnings. In other words, we report two attributes of OCI: (1) components of comprehensive income *created during the reporting period* and (2) the comprehensive income *accumulated* over the current and prior periods.

The first attribute—components of comprehensive income *created during the reporting period*—can be reported either as (a) an expanded version of the income statement or (b) a separate statement immediately following the income statement. Regardless of the placement a company chooses, the presentation is similar. It will report net income, other components of comprehensive income, and total comprehensive income, similar to the presentation in Illustration 18–2. Note that each component is reported net of its related income tax expense or income tax benefit.²

¹Comprehensive income was introduced in Chapter 4 and revisited in Chapters 12 and 17.

²This can be accomplished by presenting components of other comprehensive income, either net of related income tax effects (as in this presentation) or before income tax effects with disclosure of the income taxes allocated to each component either in a disclosure note or parenthetically in the statement.

Illustration 18-2

Statement of
Comprehensive Income

	(\$ in millions)
Net income	\$xxx
Other comprehensive income:	
Net unrealized holding gains (losses) on available-for-sale investments in debt securities (net of tax)*	\$ x
Gains (losses) from and amendments to postretirement benefit plans (net of tax)†	(x)
Deferred gains (losses) on derivatives (net of tax)‡	(x)
Adjustments from foreign currency translation (net of tax)§	x
Comprehensive income	<u>xx</u> <u>\$xxx</u>

*Changes in the fair value of some investments in debt securities (described in Chapter 12). An unrealized loss also might occur from recording an "other than temporary" impairment in excess of a credit loss for a debt investment. And, as discussed in Chapter 14, applying the "fair value option" to a liability entails reporting in OCI any part of the change in the liability's fair value that's due to the liability's credit risk.

†Gains and losses due to revising assumptions or market returns differing from expectations and prior service cost from amending the plan (described in Chapter 17).

‡When a derivative designated as a cash flow hedge is adjusted to fair value, the gain or loss is deferred as a component of comprehensive income and included in earnings later, at the same time as earnings are affected by the hedged transaction (described in the Derivatives Appendix to the text).

§Changes in foreign currency exchange rates when translating financial statements of foreign subsidiaries to U.S. dollars. The amount could be an addition to or reduction in shareholders' equity. (This item is discussed elsewhere in your accounting curriculum.)

The second measure—the comprehensive income *accumulated* over the current and prior periods—is reported as a separate component of shareholders' equity following retained earnings, similar to the presentation by Exposition Corporation in Illustration 18-1. Note that amounts reported here—accumulated other comprehensive income (AOCI)—represent the *cumulative* sum of the changes in each component of other comprehensive income created during each reporting period (Illustration 18-2) throughout all prior years.

Reporting Shareholders' Equity

You seldom, if ever, will see the numerous list of items shown in Illustration 18-1 reported in the presentation of paid-in capital. Instead, companies keep track of individual additional paid-in capital accounts in company records but ordinarily report these amounts as a single subtotal: additional paid-in capital. Pertinent rights and privileges of various securities outstanding, such as dividend and liquidation preferences, call and conversion information, and voting rights, are summarized in disclosure notes.³ The shareholders' equity portion of the balance sheet of **Abercrombie & Fitch**, shown in Illustration 18-3, is a typical presentation format.

The balance sheet reports annual balances of shareholders' equity accounts. However, companies also should disclose the sources of the changes in those accounts.⁴ This is the purpose of the **statement of shareholders' equity**. To illustrate, Illustration 18-4 shows how **Walmart** reported the changes in its shareholders' equity balances.

The current year changes that Walmart statements of shareholders' equity reveal are net income, other comprehensive income, the purchase of common stock, and dividends declared.

A statement of shareholders' equity reports the transactions that cause changes in its shareholders' equity account balances.

The Corporate Organization

A company may be organized in any of three ways: (1) a sole proprietorship, (2) a partnership, or (3) a corporation. In your introductory accounting course, you studied each form. In this course, we focus exclusively on the corporate form of organization.

● LO18-3

³FASB ACS 505-10-50: Equity—Overall—Disclosure (previously "Disclosure of Information about Capital Structure," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 129* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1997)).

⁴FASB ASC 505-10-50-2: Equity—Overall—Disclosure (previously "Omnibus Opinion," *APB Opinion No. 12* (New York: AICPA, 1967)).

Illustration 18-3

Typical Presentation
Format—Abercrombie &
Fitch

Real World Financials

Details of each class of
stock are reported on the
face of the balance sheet
or in disclosure notes.

ABERCROMBIE & FITCH CO.		
Consolidated Balance Sheets		
(\$ in thousands, except par value amounts)		
	January 30, 2016	January 31, 2015
Stockholders' Equity:		
Class A common stock—\$0.01 par value: 150,000 shares authorized and 103,300 shares issued at each of January 30, 2016, and January 31, 2015	1,033	1,033
Paid-in capital	407,029	434,137
Retained earnings	2,530,196	2,550,673
Accumulated other comprehensive (loss), net of tax	(114,619)	(83,580)
Treasury stock, at average cost—35,952 and 33,948 shares at January 30, 2016, and January 31, 2015, respectively	(1,532,576)	(1,512,562)
Total Stockholders' Equity	\$1,291,063	\$1,389,701



International Financial Reporting Standards

Use of the term “reserves” and other terminology differences. Shareholders' equity is classified under IFRS into two categories: share capital and “reserves.” The term reserves is considered misleading and thus is discouraged under U.S. GAAP. Here are some other differences in equity terminology:

U.S. GAAP	IFRS
Capital stock:	Share capital:
Common stock	Ordinary shares
Preferred stock	Preference shares
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common	Share premium, ordinary shares
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred	Share premium, preference shares
Accumulated other comprehensive income:	Reserves:
Net gains (losses) on investments—AOCI	Investment revaluation reserve
Net gains (losses) foreign currency translation—AOCI	Translation reserve
<i>(N/A: adjusting P, P, & E to fair value not permitted)</i>	Revaluation reserve
Retained earnings	Retained earnings
Total shareholders' equity	Total equity
Presented after Liabilities	Often presented before Liabilities

● LO18-9

Corporations are the
dominant form of business
organization.

Accounting for most
transactions is the same
regardless of the form of
business organization.

Most well-known companies, such as **Microsoft**, **Google**, and **General Electric**, are corporations. Also, many smaller companies—even one-owner businesses—are corporations. Although fewer in number than proprietorships and partnerships, in terms of business volume, corporations are the predominant form of business organization.

In most respects, transactions are accounted for in the same way regardless of the form of business organization. Assets and liabilities are unaffected by the way a company is organized. The exception is the method of accounting for capital, the ownership interest in the company. Rather than recording all changes in ownership interests in a single capital account for each owner, as we do for sole proprietorships and partnerships, we use the several capital accounts described in the previous section to record those changes for a corporation. Before discussing how we account for specific ownership changes, let's look at the characteristics of a corporation that make this form of organization distinctive and require special accounting treatment.

Illustration 18-4

Statement of Shareholders' Equity—Walmart

Real World Financials

(\$ in millions)	Common Stock		Capital in Excess of Par Value	Retained Earnings	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)	Total Walmart Shareholders' Equity
	Shares	Amount				
Balances as of February 1, 2013	3,314	\$332	\$ 3,620	\$72,978	\$ (587)	\$76,343
Consolidated net income	—	—	—	16,022	—	16,022
Other comprehensive income, net of income taxes	—	—	—	—	(2,409)	(2,409)
Cash dividends declared (\$1.88 per share)	—	—	—	(6,139)	—	(6,139)
Purchase of Company stock	(87)	(9)	(294)	(6,254)	—	(6,557)
Redemption value adjustment of redeemable noncontrolling interest	—	—	(1,019)	—	—	(1,019)
Other	6	—	55	(41)	—	14
Balances as of January 31, 2014	3,233	323	2,362	76,566	(2,996)	76,255
Consolidated net income	—	—	—	16,363	—	16,363
Other comprehensive loss, net of income taxes	—	—	—	—	(4,172)	(4,172)
Cash dividends declared (\$1.92 per share)	—	—	—	(6,185)	—	(6,185)
Purchase of Company stock	(13)	(1)	(29)	(950)	—	(980)
Other	8	1	129	(17)	—	113
Balances as of January 31, 2015	3,228	323	2,462	85,777	(7,168)	81,394
Consolidated net income	—	—	—	14,694	—	14,694
Other comprehensive income, net of income taxes	—	—	—	—	(4,429)	(4,429)
Cash dividends declared (\$1.96 per share)	—	—	—	(6,294)	—	(6,294)
Purchase of Company stock	(65)	(6)	(102)	(4,148)	—	(4,256)
Cash dividend declared to noncontrolling interest	—	—	—	—	—	—
Other	(1)	—	(555)	(8)	—	(563)
Balances as of January 31, 2016	3,162	\$317	\$ 1,805	\$90,021	\$(11,597)	\$80,546

Limited Liability

The owners are not personally liable for debts of a corporation. Unlike a proprietorship or a partnership, a corporation is a separate legal entity, responsible for its own debts. Shareholders' liability is limited to the amounts they invest in the company when they purchase shares (unless the shareholder also is an officer of the corporation). The limited liability of shareholders is perhaps the single most important advantage of corporate organization. In other forms of business, creditors may look to the personal assets of owners for satisfaction of business debt.

Ease of Raising Capital

A corporation is better suited to raising capital than is a proprietorship or a partnership. All companies can raise funds by operating at a profit or by borrowing. However, attracting equity capital is easier for a corporation. Because corporations sell ownership interest in the

A corporation is a separate legal entity—separate and distinct from its owners.

Ownership interest in a corporation is easily transferred.

Shareholders do not have a mutual agency relationship.

Corporations are subject to extensive government regulation.

Corporations create double taxation.

Not-for-profit corporations may be owned:

1. By the public sector.
2. By a governmental unit.

Corporations organized for profit may be:

1. Publicly held and traded:
 - a. On an exchange.
 - b. Over-the-counter.
2. Privately held.

Privately held companies' shares are held by only a few individuals and are not available to the general public.

form of shares of stock, ownership rights are easily transferred. An investor can sell his/her ownership interest at any time and without affecting the corporation or its operations.

From the viewpoint of a potential investor, another favorable aspect of investing in a corporation is the lack of mutual agency. Individual partners in a partnership have the power to bind the business to a contract. Therefore, an investor in a partnership must be careful regarding the character and business savvy of fellow co-owners. On the other hand, shareholders' participation in the affairs of a corporation is limited to voting at shareholders' meetings (unless the shareholder also is a member of management). Consequently, a shareholder needn't exercise the same degree of care that partners must in selecting co-owners.

Obviously, then, a corporation offers advantages over the other forms of organization, particularly in its ability to raise investment capital. As you might guess, though, these benefits do not come without a price.

Disadvantages

Paperwork! To protect the rights of those who buy a corporation's stock or who loan money to a corporation, the state in which the company is incorporated and the federal government impose extensive reporting requirements. Primarily, the required paperwork is intended to ensure adequate disclosure of information needed by investors and creditors.

You read earlier that corporations are separate legal entities. As such, they also are separate taxable entities. Often this causes what is referred to as *double taxation*. Corporations first pay income taxes on their earnings. Then, when those earnings are distributed as cash dividends, shareholders pay personal income taxes on the previously taxed earnings. Proprietorships and partnerships are not taxed at the business level; each owner's share of profits is taxed only as personal income.

Types of Corporations

When referring to corporations in this text, we are referring to corporations formed by private individuals for the purpose of generating profits. These corporations raise capital by selling stock. There are, however, other types of corporations.

Some corporations, such as churches, hospitals, universities, and charities do not sell stock and are not organized for profit. Also, some not-for-profit corporations are government-owned—the **Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC)**, for instance. Accounting for not-for-profit corporations is discussed elsewhere in the accounting curriculum.

Corporations organized for profit may be publicly held or privately (or closely) held. The stock of publicly held corporations is available for purchase by the general public. You can buy shares of **General Electric**, **Ford Motor Company**, or **Walmart** through a stockbroker. These shares are traded on the New York Stock Exchange. Other publicly held stock, like **Intel** and **Microsoft**, are available through Nasdaq (National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotations).

On the other hand, shares of privately held companies are owned by only a few individuals (perhaps a family) and are not available to the general public. Corporations whose stock is privately held do not need to register those shares with the Securities and Exchange Commission and are spared the voluminous, annual reporting requirements of the SEC. Of course, new sources of equity financing are limited when shares are privately held, as is the market for selling existing shares.

Frequently, companies begin as smaller, privately held corporations. Then as success broadens opportunities for expansion, the corporation goes public. For example, in 2012, the shareholders of **Facebook** decided to take public the privately held company. The result was the largest initial public offering since **Visa** in 2008.

Hybrid Organizations

A corporation can elect to comply with a special set of tax rules and be designated an **S corporation**. S corporations have characteristics of both regular corporations and partnerships. Owners have the limited liability protection of a corporation, but income and expenses are passed through to the owners as in a partnership, avoiding double taxation.

Two particular business structures have evolved in response to liability issues and tax treatment—limited liability companies and limited liability partnerships.

A **limited liability company** offers several advantages. Owners are not liable for the debts of the business, except to the extent of their investment. Unlike a limited partnership, all members of a limited liability company can be involved with managing the business without losing liability protection. Like an S corporation, income and expenses are passed through to the owners as in a partnership, avoiding double taxation, but there are no limitations on the number of owners as in an S corporation.

A **limited liability partnership** is similar to a limited liability company, except it doesn't offer all the liability protection available in the limited liability company structure. Partners are liable for their own actions but not entirely liable for the actions of other partners.

The Model Business Corporation Act

Corporations are formed in accordance with the corporation laws of individual states. State laws are not uniform, but share many similarities, thanks to the widespread adoption of the **Model Business Corporation Act**.⁵ This act is designed to serve as a guide to states in the development of their corporation statutes. It presently serves as the model for the majority of states.

State laws regarding the nature of shares that can be authorized, the issuance and repurchase of those shares, and conditions for distributions to shareholders obviously influence actions of corporations. Naturally, differences among state laws affect how we account for many of the shareholders' equity transactions discussed in this chapter. For that reason, we will focus on the normal case, as described by the Model Business Corporation Act, and note situations where variations in state law might require different accounting. Your goal is not to learn diverse procedures caused by peculiarities of state laws, but to understand the broad concepts of accounting for shareholders' equity that can be applied to any specific circumstance.

The process of incorporating a business is similar in all states. The **articles of incorporation** (sometimes called the *corporate charter*) describe (a) the nature of the firm's business activities, (b) the shares to be issued, and (c) the composition of the initial **board of directors**. The board of directors establishes corporate policies and appoints officers who manage the corporation.

The number of shares authorized is the maximum number of shares that a corporation is legally permitted to issue, as specified in its articles of incorporation. The number of authorized shares is determined at the company's creation and can only be increased by a vote of the shareholders. At least some of the shares authorized by the articles of incorporation are sold (issued) at the inception of the corporation. Frequently, the initial shareholders include members of the board of directors or officers (who may be one and the same). Ultimately, it is the corporation's shareholders that control the company. Shareholders are the owners of the corporation. By voting their shares, they determine the makeup of the board of directors—who in turn appoint officers, who in turn manage the company.

Shareholders' investment in a corporation ordinarily is referred to as paid-in capital. In the next section, we examine the methods normally used to maintain records of shareholders' investment and to report such paid-in capital in financial statements.

The Model Business Corporation Act serves as the model for the corporation statutes of most states.

Variations among state laws influence GAAP pertaining to shareholders' equity transactions.

Paid-in Capital

Fundamental Share Rights

In reading the previous paragraphs, you noted that corporations raise equity funds by selling shares of the corporation. Shareholders are the owners of a corporation. If a corporation has only one class of shares, no designation of the shares is necessary, but they typically are labeled *common shares*. Ownership rights held by common shareholders, unless specifically withheld by agreement with the shareholders, are as follows:

PART B

⁵Model Business Corporation Act, the American Bar Association, 2011.

1. The right to vote on matters that come before the shareholders, including the election of corporate directors. Each share represents one vote.
2. The right to share in profits when dividends are declared. The percentage of shares owned by a shareholder determines his/her share of dividends distributed.
3. The right to share in the distribution of assets if the company is liquidated. The percentage of shares owned by a shareholder determines his/her share of assets after creditors and preferred shareholders are paid.

Another right sometimes given to common shareholders is the right to maintain one's percentage share of ownership when new shares are issued. This is referred to as a *preemptive right*. Each shareholder is offered the opportunity to buy a percentage of any new shares issued equal to the percentage of shares he/she owns at the time. In most states, this right must be specifically granted; in others, it is presumed unless contractually excluded.

However, this right usually is not explicitly stated because of the inconvenience it causes corporations when they issue new shares. The exclusion of the preemptive right ordinarily is inconsequential because few shareholders own enough stock to be concerned about their ownership percentage.

Distinguishing Classes of Shares

It is not uncommon for a firm to have more than one, and perhaps several, classes of shares, each with different rights and limitations. To attract investors, companies have devised quite a variety of ownership securities.

If more than one class of shares is authorized by the articles of incorporation, the specific rights of each (for instance, the right to vote, residual interest in assets, and dividend rights) must be stated. Also, some designation must be given to distinguish each class.

Some of the distinguishing designations often used are these:

1. Class A, class B, and so on (**Tyson Foods**)
2. Preferred stock, common stock, and class B stock (**Hershey's**)
3. Common and preferred (**HP**)
4. Capital stock (**Reader's Digest**)
5. Common and serial preferred (**Smucker's**)

In your introductory study of accounting, you probably became most familiar with the common stock–preferred stock distinction. That terminology has deep roots in tradition. Early English corporate charters provided for shares that were preferred over others as to dividends and liquidation rights. These provisions were reflected in early American corporation laws. But as our economy developed, corporations increasingly felt the need for innovative ways of attracting investment capital. The result has been a gradual development of a wide range of share classifications that cannot easily be identified by these historical designations.

To reflect the flexibility that now exists in the creation of equity shares, the Model Business Corporation Act, and thus many state statutes, no longer mention the words common and preferred. But the influence of tradition lingers. Most corporations still designate shares as common or preferred. For consistency with practice, the illustrations you study in this chapter use those designations. As you consider the examples, keep in mind that the same concepts apply regardless of the language used to distinguish shares.

Typical Rights of Preferred Shares

An issue of shares with certain preferences or features that distinguish it from the class of shares customarily called common shares may be assigned any of the several labels mentioned earlier. Very often the distinguishing designation is **preferred shares**. The special rights of preferred shareholders usually include one or both of the following:

1. Preferred shareholders typically have a preference to a specified amount of dividends (stated dollar amount per share or % of par value per share). That is, if the board of

Terminology varies in the way companies differentiate among share types.

It often is difficult to predict the rights and privileges of shares on the basis of whether they are labeled *common* or *preferred*.

directors declares dividends, preferred shareholders will receive the designated dividend before any dividends are paid to common shareholders.

2. Preferred shareholders customarily have a preference (over common shareholders) as to the distribution of assets in the event the corporation is dissolved.

Preferred shareholders sometimes have the **right of conversion**, which allows them to exchange shares of preferred stock for common stock at a specified conversion ratio. For instance, in 2016, **Xerox Corporation** had outstanding 300,000 shares of convertible preferred stock. Alternatively, a **redemption privilege** might allow preferred shareholders the option, under specified conditions, to return their shares for a predetermined redemption price. Preferred shareholders have preference over common stockholders in dividends and liquidation rights. Each Xerox preferred share is convertible into 90 common shares. Similarly, shares may be redeemable at the option of the issuing corporation (sometimes referred to as *callable*).

Preferred shares may be **cumulative** or **noncumulative**. Typically, preferred shares are cumulative, which means that if the specified dividend is not paid for a given year, the unpaid dividends (called *dividends in arrears*) accumulate and must be made up in a later dividend year before any dividends are paid on common shares. We see this illustrated in Part B of the chapter.

Preferred shares may be **participating** or **nonparticipating**. A participating feature allows preferred shareholders to receive additional dividends beyond the stated amount. If the preferred shares are fully participating, the distribution of dividends to common and preferred shareholders is a pro rata allocation based on the relative par amounts of common and preferred stock outstanding. Participating preferred stock, previously quite common, is rare today.

Remember that the designations of common and preferred imply no necessary rights, privileges, or limitations of the shares so designated. Such relative rights must be specified by the contract with shareholders. A corporation can create classes of preferred shares that are indistinguishable from common shares in voting rights and/or the right to participate in assets (distributed as dividends or distributed upon liquidation). Likewise, it is possible to devise classes of common shares that possess preferential rights, superior to those of preferred shares.

Is It Equity or Is It Debt?

You probably also can imagine an issue of preferred shares that is almost indistinguishable from a bond issue. Let's say, for instance, that preferred shares call for annual cash dividends of 10% of the par value, dividends are cumulative, and the shares must be redeemed for cash in 10 years. Although the declaration of dividends rests in the discretion of the board of directors, the contract with preferred shareholders can be worded in such a way that directors are compelled to declare dividends each year the company is profitable. For a profitable company, it would be difficult to draw the line between this issue of preferred shares and a 10%, 10-year bond issue. Even in a more typical situation, preferred shares are somewhat hybrid securities—a cross between equity and debt.

Sometimes the similarity to debt is even more obvious. Suppose shares are mandatorily redeemable—the company is obligated to buy back the shares at a specified future date. The fact that the company is obligated to pay cash (or other assets) at a fixed or determinable date in the future makes this financial instrument tantamount to debt. A mandatorily redeemable financial instrument must be reported in the balance sheet as a liability, not as shareholders' equity.⁶ **Extended Stay America**, for instance, reported its mandatorily redeemable preferred shares as a liability in its 2016 balance sheet.

Shares may be:

1. **Convertible into a specified number of another class of shares.**
2. **Redeemable at the option of:**
 - a. Shareholders.
 - b. The corporation.

The line between debt and equity is hard to draw.

Mandatorily redeemable shares are classified as liabilities.

The Concept of Par Value

Another prevalent practice (besides labeling shares as common and preferred) that has little significance other than historical is assigning a par value to shares. The concept of par value dates back as far as the concept of owning shares of a business. Par value originally indicated the real value of shares. All shares were issued at that price.

We have inherited the archaic concept of par value from early corporate law.

⁶FASB ASC 480-10-25-4: Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity—Overall—Recognition (previously “Accounting for Certain Financial Instruments with Characteristics of Both Liabilities and Equity,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 150* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2005)).



International Financial Reporting Standards

• LO18–9

Distinction between Debt and Equity for Preferred Stock. Differences in the definitions and requirements can result in the same instrument being classified differently between debt and equity under IFRS and U.S. GAAP. Under U.S. GAAP, preferred stock normally is reported as equity, but is reported as debt with the dividends reported in the income statement as interest expense if it is “mandatorily redeemable” preferred stock. Under IFRS, most non-mandatorily redeemable preferred stock (preference shares) also is reported as debt as well as some preference shares that aren’t redeemable. Under IFRS (IAS No. 32), the critical feature that distinguishes a liability is if the issuer is or can be required to deliver cash (or another financial instrument) to the holder.⁷ **Unilever** describes such a difference in a disclosure note:

Additional Information for U.S. Investors (in part)

Preference Shares

Under IAS 32, Unilever recognizes preference shares that provide a fixed preference dividend as borrowings with preference dividends recognized in the income statement. Under U.S. GAAP such preference shares are classified in shareholders’ equity with dividends treated as a deduction to shareholder’s equity.

During the late 19th and early 20th centuries, many cases of selling shares for less than par value—known as *watered shares*—received a great deal of attention and were the subject of a number of lawsuits. Investors and creditors contended that they relied on the par value as the permanent investment in the corporation and therefore net assets must always be at least that amount. Not only was par value assumed to be the amount invested by shareholders, but it also was defined by early corporation laws as the amount of net assets not available for distribution to shareholders (as dividends or otherwise).

Shares with nominal par value became common to dodge elaborate statutory rules pertaining to par value shares.

Many companies began turning to par value shares with very low par values—often pennies—to escape the watered shares liability of issuing shares below an arbitrary par value and to limit the restrictions on distributions. This practice is common today.

Accountants and attorneys have been aware for decades that laws pertaining to par value and legal capital not only are bewildering but fail in their intent to safeguard creditors from payments to shareholders. Actually, to the extent that creditors are led to believe that they are afforded protection, they are misled. Like the designations of common and preferred shares, the concepts of par value and legal capital have been eliminated entirely from the Model Business Corporation Act.⁸

Many states already have adopted these provisions of the Model Act. But most established corporations issued shares prior to changes in the state statutes. Consequently, most companies have par value shares outstanding and continue to issue previously authorized par value shares. The evolution will be gradual to the simpler, more meaningful provisions of the Model Act.

Most shares continue to bear arbitrarily designated par values.

In the meantime, accountants must be familiar with the outdated concepts of par value and legal capital in order to properly record and report transactions related to par value shares. For that reason, most of the discussion in this chapter centers on par value shares. Largely, this means only that proceeds from shareholders’ investment is allocated between stated capital and additional paid-in capital. Be aware, though, that in the absence of archaic laws that prompted the creation of par value shares, there is no theoretical reason to do so.

Accounting for the Issuance of Shares

Shares Issued For Cash

• LO18–4

When shares are sold for cash (see Illustration 18–5), the capital stock account (usually common or preferred) is credited for the amount representing stated capital. When shares have a designated par value, that amount denotes stated capital and is credited to the stock

⁷“Financial Instruments: Presentation,” *International Accounting Standard No. 32* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2016.

⁸American Bar Association, official comment to Section 6.21 of the *Model Business Corporation Act*, 2011.

account. Proceeds in excess of this amount are credited to paid-in capital—excess of par (also called additional paid-in capital).

Dow Industrial sells 100,000 of its common shares, \$1 par per share, for \$10 per share:

	(\$ in thousands)
Cash (100,000 shares at \$10 price per share).....	1,000
Common stock (100,000 shares at \$1 par per share).....	100
Paid-in capital—excess of par (remainder)	900

The entire proceeds from the sale of no-par stock are deemed stated capital and recorded in the stock account. If the shares are no-par, the entry is as follows:

Cash (100,000 shares at \$10 price per share).....	1,000
Common stock.....	1,000

Illustration 18-5

Shares Sold for Cash

The total amount received from the sale of no-par shares is credited to the stock account.

Shares Issued for Noncash Consideration

Occasionally, a company might issue its shares for consideration other than cash. It is not uncommon for a new company, yet to establish a reliable cash flow, to pay for promotional and legal services with shares rather than with cash. Similarly, shares might be given in payment for land, or for equipment, or for some other noncash asset.

Even without a receipt of cash to establish the fair value of the shares at the time of the exchange, the transaction still should be recorded at fair value. Best evidence of fair value might be one or more of the following:

- A quoted market price for the shares
- A selling price established in a recent issue of shares for cash
- The amount of cash that would have been paid in a cash purchase of the asset or service
- An independent appraisal of the value of the asset received
- Other available evidence

Whichever evidence of fair value seems more clearly evident should be used.⁹

Illustration 18-6 demonstrates a situation where the quoted market price is the best evidence of fair value.

DuMont Chemicals issues 1 million of its common shares, \$1 par per share, in exchange for a custom-built factory for which no cash price is available. Today's issue of *The Wall Street Journal* lists DuMont's stock at **\$10 per share**:

	(\$ in millions)
Property, plant, and equipment (1 million shares at \$10 per share).....	10
Common stock (1 million shares at \$1 par per share).....	1
Paid-in capital—excess of par (remainder)	9

Illustration 18-6

Shares Sold for Noncash Consideration

The quoted market price for the shares issued might be the best evidence of fair value.

More Than One Security Issued for a Single Price

Although uncommon, a company might sell more than one security—perhaps common shares and preferred shares—for a single price. As you might expect, the cash received usually is the sum of the separate market values of the two securities. Of course, each is then recorded at its market value. However, if only one security's value is known, the second security's market value is inferred from the total selling price, as demonstrated in Illustration 18-7.

Because the shares sell for a total of \$100 million, and the market value of the common shares is known to be **\$40 million** (4 million × \$10), the preferred shares are inferred to have a market value of \$60 million.

⁹Although stock issuances are not specifically mentioned in FASB ASC 845-10-30: Nonmonetary Transactions—Overall—Initial Measurement (previously *APB Opinion No. 29*), this treatment is consistent with the general rule for accounting for noncash transactions as described in that pronouncement, pars. 18 and 25.

Illustration 18-7

More than One Security
Sold for a Single Price

When only one security's value is known (\$40 million), the second security's market value (\$60 million) is assumed from the total selling price (\$100 million).

AP&P issues 4 million of its common shares, \$1 par per share, and 4 million of its preferred shares, \$10 par, for \$100 million. Today's issue of *The Wall Street Journal* lists AP&P's common at \$10 per share. There is no established market for the preferred shares.

	(\$ in millions)
Cash	100
Common stock (4 million shares × \$1 par)	4
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common	36
Preferred stock (4 million shares × \$10 par)	40
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred	20

Additional Consideration

In the unlikely event that the total selling price is not equal to the sum of the two market prices (when both market values are known), the total selling price is allocated between the two securities, in proportion to their relative market values. You should note that this is the same approach we use (a) when more than one asset is purchased for a single purchase price to allocate the single price to the various assets acquired, (b) when detachable warrants and bonds are issued for a single price, and (c) in any other situation when more than one item is associated with a single purchase price or selling price.

Share Issue Costs

Share issue costs reduce the net cash proceeds from selling the shares and thus paid-in capital—excess of par.

When a company sells shares, it obtains the legal, promotional, and accounting services necessary to effect the sale. The cost of these services reduces the net proceeds from selling the shares. Since paid-in capital—excess of par is credited for the excess of the proceeds over the par value of the shares sold, the effect of share issue costs is to reduce the amount credited to that account. For example, in June 2016, **Spark Therapeutics, Inc.** sold 3,025,000 shares of its \$0.001 par common stock at \$45.00 per share, “for aggregate gross proceeds of \$136.1 million. The Company received net proceeds from the public offering of \$127.6 million, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and other offering expenses.” Spark Therapeutics’ entry to record the sale was:

The cash proceeds is the net amount received after paying share issue costs.

	(\$ in millions)
Cash	127.6
Common stock (3,025,000 shares at \$0.001 par per share)	0.0
Paid-in capital—excess of par (remainder)	127.6

Concept Review Exercise

EXPANSION OF CORPORATE CAPITAL

Situation: The shareholders’ equity section of the balance sheet of National Foods, Inc., included the following accounts at December 31, 2016:

Shareholders’ Equity	(\$ in millions)
Paid-in capital:	
Common stock, 120 million shares at \$1 par	\$ 120
Paid-in capital—excess of par	836
Retained earnings	<u>2,449</u>
Total shareholders’ equity	<u><u>\$3,405</u></u>

Required:

- During 2017, several transactions affected the stock of National Foods. Prepare the appropriate entries for these events.
 - On March 11, National Foods issued 10 million of its 9.2% preferred shares, \$1 par per share, for \$44 per share.
 - On November 22, 1 million common shares, \$1 par per share, were issued in exchange for eight labeling machines. Each machine was built to custom specifications so no cash price was available. National Food's stock was listed at \$10 per share.
 - On November 23, 1 million of the common shares and 1 million preferred shares were sold for \$60 million. The preferred shares had not traded since March and their market value was uncertain.
- Prepare the shareholders' equity section of the comparative balance sheets for National Foods at December 31, 2017 and 2016. Assume that net income for 2017 was \$400 million and the only other transaction affecting shareholders' equity was the payment of the 9.2% dividend on the 11 million preferred shares (\$1 million).

Solution:

- During 2017 several transactions affected the stock of National Foods. Prepare the appropriate entries for these events.
 - On March 11, National Foods issued 10 million of its preferred shares, \$1 par per share, for \$44 per share.

	(\$ in millions)
Cash.....	440
Preferred stock (10 million shares × \$1 par per share)	10
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred.....	430

- On November 22, 1 million common shares, \$1 par per share, were issued in exchange for eight labeling machines:

	(\$ in millions)
Machinery (fair value of shares).....	10
Common stock (1 million shares × \$1 par per share)	1
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common (1 million shares × \$9).....	9

The transaction was recorded at the fair value of the shares exchanged for the machinery.

- On November 23, 1 million of the common shares and 1 million preferred shares were sold for \$60 million:

	(\$ in millions)
Cash.....	60
Common stock (1 million shares × \$1 par per share)	1
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common.....	9
Preferred stock (1 million shares × \$1 par per share).....	1
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred (to balance)	49

Since the value of only the common stock was known, the preferred stock's market value (\$50 per share) was inferred from the total selling price.

- Prepare the shareholders' equity section of the comparative balance sheets for National Foods at December 31, 2017 and 2016.

NATIONAL FOODS, INC. Balance Sheet (Shareholders' Equity Section)		
(\$ in millions)	2017	2016
Shareholders' Equity		
Preferred stock, 9.2%, \$1 par (2017: \$10 million + 1 million)	\$ 11	\$ —
Common stock, \$1 par (2017: \$120 million + 1 million + 1 million)	122	120
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred (2017: \$430 million + 49 million)	479	—
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common (2017: \$836 million + 9 million + 9 million)	854	836
Retained earnings (2016: \$2,449 million + 400 million — 1 million)	2,848	2,449
<i>Total shareholders' equity</i>	<u>\$4,314</u>	<u>\$3,405</u>
Note: This situation is continued in the next Concept Review Exercise.		

Share Buybacks

LO18–5

In the previous section we examined various ways stock might be issued. In this section, we look at situations in which companies reacquire shares previously sold. Most medium- and large-size companies buy back their own shares. Many have formal share repurchase plans to buy back stock over a series of years.

Decision Makers' Perspective

Decreasing the supply of shares in the marketplace supports the price of remaining shares.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 1035

Unlike an investment in another firm's shares, the acquisition of a company's own shares does not create an asset.

Companies buy back shares to offset the increase in shares issued to employees.

When a company's management feels the market price of its stock is undervalued, it may attempt to support the price by decreasing the supply of stock in the marketplace. A **Johnson & Johnson** announcement that it planned to buy back up to \$5 billion of its outstanding shares triggered a buying spree that pushed the stock price up by more than 3 percent.

When announcing plans to expand its stock buyback program to \$90 billion, **Apple** chief executive Tim Cook said it “views its shares as undervalued.”¹⁰ Although clearly a company may attempt to increase net assets by buying its shares at a low price and selling them back later at a higher price, that investment is not viewed as an asset. Similarly, increases and decreases in net assets from that activity are not reported as gains and losses in the company's income statement. Instead, buying and selling its shares are transactions between the corporation and its owners, analogous to retiring shares and then selling previously unissued shares. You should note the contrast between a company's purchasing of its own shares and its purchasing of shares in another corporation as an investment.

Though not considered an investment, the repurchase of shares often is a judicious use of a company's cash. By increasing per share earnings and supporting share price, shareholders benefit. To the extent this strategy is effective, a share buyback can be viewed as a way to “distribute” company profits without paying dividends. Capital gains from any stock price increase are taxed at lower capital gains tax rates than ordinary income tax rates on dividends.

Perhaps the primary motivation for most stock repurchases is to offset the increase in shares that routinely are issued to employees under stock award and stock option compensation programs. **Microsoft** reported its stock buyback program designed to offset the effect of its stock option and stock purchase plans, as shown in Illustration 18–8.

¹⁰Daisuke Wakabayashi, “Apple Boosts Buyback, Splits Stock to Reward Investors,” Dow Jones Business Report, www.nasdaq.com, April 23, 2014.

Note 11: Stockholders' Equity (in part)

Our board of directors has approved a program to repurchase shares of our common stock to reduce the dilutive effect of our stock option and stock purchase plans.

Illustration 18-8

Disclosure of
Share Repurchase
Program—Microsoft

Real World Financials

Similarly, shares might be reacquired to distribute in a stock dividend, a proposed merger, or as a defense against a hostile takeover.¹¹

The usual pattern of stock buybacks was interrupted by the recent economic decline. With corporate profits down and cash in short supply, companies drastically reduced their share repurchases. For some companies, the decision was a choice between cutting buybacks or cutting dividends, and dividend reductions are more obvious and less palatable than curtailing a buyback program.

Whatever the reason shares are repurchased, a company has a choice of how to account for the buyback.

1. The shares can be formally retired.
2. The shares can be called treasury stock.

Unfortunately, the choice is not dictated by the nature of the buyback, but by practical motivations of the company. ●

Shares Formally Retired or Viewed as Treasury Stock

When a corporation retires its own shares, those shares assume the same status as authorized but unissued shares, just the same as if they never had been issued. We saw earlier in the chapter that when shares are sold, both cash (usually) and shareholders' equity are increased; the company becomes larger. Conversely, when cash is paid to **retire stock**, the effect is to decrease both cash and shareholders' equity; the size of the company literally is reduced.

Out of tradition and for practical reasons, companies usually reacquire shares of previously issued stock without formally retiring them.¹² Shares repurchased and not retired are referred to as **treasury stock**. Because reacquired shares are essentially the same as shares that never were issued at all, treasury shares have no voting rights nor do they receive cash dividends. As demonstrated in Illustration 18-9, when shares are repurchased as treasury stock, we reduce shareholders' equity with a debit to a negative (or contra) shareholders' equity account labeled treasury stock. That entry is reversed later through a credit to treasury stock when the treasury stock is resold. Like the concepts of par value and legal capital, the concept of treasury shares no longer is recognized in most state statutes.¹³ Some companies, in fact, are eliminating treasury shares from their financial statements as corporate statutes are modernized. **Microsoft** retires the shares it buys back rather than labeling them treasury stock. Still, you will see treasury shares reported in the balance sheets of many companies.

Accounting for Retired Shares

When shares are formally retired, we should reduce precisely the same accounts that previously were increased when the shares were sold, namely, common (or preferred) stock and paid-in capital—excess of par. The first column of Illustration 18-9 demonstrates this.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 1035

Reacquired shares are
equivalent to authorized
but unissued shares.

¹¹A corporate takeover occurs when an individual or group of individuals acquires a majority of a company's outstanding common stock from present shareholders. Corporations that are the object of a hostile takeover attempt—a public bid for control of a company's stock against the company's wishes—often take evasive action involving the reacquisition of shares.

¹²The concept of treasury shares originated long ago when new companies found they could sell shares at an unrealistically low price equal to par value to incorporators, who then donated those shares back to the company. Since these shares already had been issued (though not outstanding), they could be sold at whatever the real market price was without adjusting stated capital. Because treasury shares are already issued, different rules apply to their purchase and resale than to unissued shares. Companies can:

1. Issue shares without regard to preemptive rights of shareholders.
2. Distribute shares as a dividend to shareholders even without a balance in retained earnings.

¹³The Revised Model Business Corporation Act eliminated the concept of treasury shares in 1984, after 1980 revisions had eliminated the concepts of par value and legal capital. Most state laws have since followed suit.

Illustration 18-9

Comparison of Share Retirement and Treasury Stock Accounting—Share Buybacks

Formally retiring shares restores the balances in both the Common stock account and Paid-in capital—excess of par to what those balances would have been if the shares never had been issued.

When we view a buyback as treasury stock, the cost of acquiring the shares is debited to the treasury stock account.

American Semiconductor's balance sheet included the following:

Shareholders' Equity		(\$ in millions)	
Common stock, 100 million shares at \$1 par		\$	100
Paid-in capital—excess of par			900
Paid-in capital—share repurchase			2
Retained earnings			2,000

Retirement		Treasury Stock	
Reacquired 1 million of its common shares			
Case 1: Shares repurchased at \$7 per share			
Common stock (\$1 par × 1 million shares).....	1	Treasury stock (cost).....	7
Paid-in capital—excess of par (\$9 per share).....	9		
Paid-in capital—share repurchase (difference).....	3		
Cash.....	7	Cash.....	7
OR			
Case 2: Shares repurchased at \$13 per share			
Common stock (\$1 par × 1 million shares).....	1	Treasury stock (cost).....	13
Paid-in capital—excess of par (\$9 per share).....	9		
Paid-in capital—share repurchase	2*		
Retained earnings (difference).....	1		
Cash.....	13	Cash.....	13

*Because there is a \$2 million credit balance.

The paid-in capital—excess of par account for American Semiconductor shows a balance of \$900 million while the common stock account shows a balance of \$100 million. Thus the 100 million outstanding shares were originally sold for an average of \$9 per share above par, or \$10 per share. Consequently, when 1 million shares are retired (regardless of the retirement price), American Semiconductor should reduce its common stock account by \$1 per share and its paid-in capital—excess of par by \$9 per share. Another way to view the reduction is that because 1% of the shares are retired, both share account balances (common stock and paid-in capital—excess of par) are reduced by 1%.

How we treat the difference between the cash paid to buy the shares and the amount the shares originally sold for (amounts debited to common stock and paid-in capital—excess of par) depends on whether the cash paid is *less* than the original issue price (credit difference) or the cash paid is *more* than the original issue price (debit difference):

1. If a *credit* difference is created (as in Case 1 of Illustration 18-9), we credit paid-in capital—share repurchase.
2. If a *debit* difference is created (as in Case 2 of Illustration 18-9), we debit paid-in capital—share repurchase, but only if that account already has a credit balance. Otherwise, we debit retained earnings. (Reducing the account beyond its previous balance would create a negative balance.)

Why is paid-in capital credited in Case 1 and retained earnings debited in Case 2? The answer lies in the fact that the payments made by a corporation to repurchase its own shares are a distribution of corporate assets to shareholders.

In Case 1, only \$7 million is distributed to shareholders to retire shares that originally provided \$10 million of paid-in capital. Thus, some of the original investment (\$3 million in this case) remains and is labeled *paid-in capital—share repurchase*.

In Case 2, more cash (\$13 million) is distributed to shareholders to retire shares than originally was paid in. The amount paid in comprises the original investment of \$10 million for the shares being retired, plus \$2 million of paid-in capital created by previous repurchase transactions—\$12 million total. Thirteen million is returned to shareholders. The additional

Paid-in capital—share repurchase is debited to the extent of its credit balance before debiting retained earnings.

Payments made by a corporation to retire its own shares are viewed as a distribution of corporate assets to shareholders.

\$1 million paid is viewed as a dividend on the shareholders' investment, and thus a reduction of retained earnings.¹⁴

Additional Consideration

Some companies choose to debit retained earnings for the entire debit difference between the cash paid to repurchase shares and the par amount of those shares rather than allocate that difference in the prescribed way. **Target Corporation** is an example of a company that follows this approach. While this method lacks conceptual merit by itself, it's permitted by ASC 505-30-30-8, which states that "a corporation can always capitalize or allocate retained earnings for such purposes."

Accounting for Treasury Stock

We view the purchase of treasury stock as a temporary reduction of shareholders' equity, to be reversed later when the treasury stock is resold. The cost of acquiring the shares is "temporarily" debited to the treasury stock account (second column of Illustration 18–9). At this point, the shares are considered to be *issued, but not outstanding*.

Recording the effects on specific shareholders' equity accounts is delayed until later when the shares are reissued. In the meantime, the shares assume the fictional status we discussed earlier of being neither unissued nor outstanding. Effectively, we consider the purchase of treasury stock and its subsequent resale to be a "single transaction."

Additional Consideration

The approach to accounting for treasury stock we discuss in this chapter is referred to as the "cost method." Another permissible approach is the "par value method." It is essentially identical to formally retiring shares, which is why it sometimes is referred to as the *retirement method of accounting for treasury stock*. In fact, if we substitute Treasury stock for Common stock in each of the journal entries we used to account for retirement of shares in Illustrations 18–9 and 18–11, we have the par value method. Because the method has virtually disappeared from practice, we do not discuss it further in this chapter.

BALANCE SHEET EFFECT. Formally retiring shares restores the balances in both the Common stock account and Paid-in capital—excess of par to what those balances would have been if the shares never had been issued at all. As discussed above, any net increase in assets resulting from the sale and subsequent repurchase is reflected as Paid-in capital—share repurchase. On the other hand, any net decrease in assets resulting from the sale and subsequent repurchase is reflected as a reduction in retained earnings.

In contrast, when a share repurchase is viewed as treasury stock, the cost of the treasury stock is simply reported as a reduction in total shareholders' equity. Reporting under the two approaches is compared in Illustration 18–10, using the situation described above for American Semiconductor after the purchase of treasury stock in Illustration 18–9 (Case 2). Notice that either way total shareholders' equity is the same.

Resale of Shares

After shares are formally retired, any subsequent sale of shares is simply the sale of new, unissued shares and is accounted for accordingly. This is demonstrated in the first column of Illustration 18–11.

The resale of treasury shares is viewed as the consummation of the single transaction begun when the treasury shares were repurchased. The effect of the single transaction of

Allocating the cost of treasury shares occurs when the shares are resold.

¹⁴In the next section of this chapter, you will be reminded that dividends reduce retained earnings. (You first learned this in your introductory accounting course.)

Illustration 18–10

Reporting Share Buyback
in the Balance Sheet

Retirement reduces
common stock and
associated shareholders'
equity accounts.

(\$ in millions)	Shares Retired	Treasury Stock
Shareholders' Equity		
Paid-in capital:		
Common stock, 100 million shares at \$1 par	\$ 99	\$ 100
Paid-in capital—excess of par	891	900
Paid-in capital—share repurchase		2
Retained earnings	1,999	2,000
Less: Treasury stock, 1 million shares (at cost)		(13)
Total shareholders' equity	<u>\$2,989</u>	<u>\$2,989</u>

Illustration 18–11

Comparison of Share
Retirement and Treasury
Stock Accounting—
Subsequent Sale of Shares

After formally retiring
shares, we record a
subsequent sale of shares
exactly like any sale of
shares.

The resale of treasury
shares is viewed as the
consummation of the
“single transaction” begun
when the treasury shares
were purchased.

American Semiconductor sold 1 million shares after reacquiring shares at \$13 per share (Case 2 in Illustration 18–9).

Retirement		Treasury Stock	
Sold 1 million shares			
Case A: Shares sold at \$14 per share			
Cash.....	14	Cash	14
Common stock (par)	1	Treasury stock (cost).....	13
Paid-in capital—excess of par	13	Paid-in capital—share repurchase...	1
Or			
Case B: Shares sold at \$10 per share			
Cash.....	10	Cash.....	10
Common stock (par)	1	Retained earnings (to balance)	1
Paid-in capital—excess of par	9	Paid-in capital—share repurchase	2*
		Treasury stock (cost).....	13

*Because there is a \$2 million credit balance.

purchasing treasury stock and reselling it for more than cost (Case 2 of Illustration 18–9 and Case A of Illustration 18–11) is to *increase* both cash and shareholders' equity (by \$1 million). The effect of the single transaction of purchasing treasury stock and reselling it for less than cost (Case 2 of Illustration 18–9 and Case B of Illustration 18–11) is to *decrease* both cash and shareholders' equity (by \$3 million).

Note that retained earnings may be debited in a treasury stock transaction, but not credited. Also notice that transactions involving treasury stock have no impact on the income statement. This follows the reasoning discussed earlier that a corporation's buying and selling of its own shares are transactions between the corporation and its owners and not part of the revenue recognition process.

Additional Consideration

Determining the cost of
treasury stock sold is
similar to determining the
cost of goods sold.

Treasury Shares Acquired at Different Costs

Notice that the treasury stock account always is credited for the cost of the reissued shares (\$13 million in Illustration 18–11). When shares are reissued, if treasury stock on hand has been purchased at different per share prices, the cost of the shares sold must be determined using a cost flow assumption—FIFO, LIFO, or weighted average—similar to determining the cost of goods sold when inventory items are acquired at different unit costs.

Concept Review Exercise

Situation: The shareholders' equity section of the balance sheet of National Foods, Inc. **TREASURY STOCK** included the following accounts at December 31, 2017.

Shareholders' Equity	(\$ in millions)
Paid-in capital:	
Preferred stock, 11 million shares at \$1 par	\$ 11
Common stock, 122 million shares at \$1 par	122
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred	479
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common	854
Retained earnings	2,848
Total shareholders' equity	\$4,314

Required:

- National Foods reacquired common shares during 2018 and sold shares in two separate transactions later that year. Prepare the entries for both the purchase and subsequent sale of shares during 2018, assuming that the shares were (a) retired and (b) considered to be treasury stock.
 - National Foods purchased 6 million shares at \$10 per share.
 - National Foods sold 2 million shares at \$12 per share.
 - National Foods sold 2 million shares at \$7 per share.
- Prepare the shareholders' equity section of National Foods' balance sheet at December 31, 2018, assuming the shares were both (a) retired and (b) viewed as treasury stock. Net income for 2018 was \$400 million, and preferred shareholders were paid \$1 million cash dividends.

Solution:

- National Foods reacquired common shares during 2018 and sold shares in two separate transactions later that year. Prepare the entries for both the purchase and subsequent sale of shares during 2018, assuming that the shares were (a) retired and (b) considered to be treasury stock.

- National Foods **purchased** 6 million shares at **\$10** per share:

Retirement (\$ in millions)		Treasury Stock (\$ in millions)	
Common stock (6 million shares × \$1).....	6	Treasury stock	
Paid-in capital—excess of par		(6 million shares × \$10).....	60
(6 million shares × \$7*).....	42	Cash	60
Retained earnings (to balance)	12		
Cash	60		

*\$854 million ÷ 122 million shares

- National Foods **sold** 2 million shares at **\$12** per share (\$ in millions):

Cash	24	Cash	24
Common stock		Treasury stock	
(2 million shares × \$1)	2	(2 million shares × \$10)....	20
Paid-in capital—excess of par	22	Paid-in capital—share	
		repurchase	4

- National Foods **sold** 2 million shares at **\$7** per share (\$ in millions):

Cash	14	Cash	14
Common stock		Paid-in capital—share	
(2 million shares × \$1 par)	2	repurchase	4
Paid-in capital—excess of par	12	Retained earnings (to balance) ...	2
		Treasury stock	
		(2 million shares × \$10)....	20

2. Prepare the shareholders' equity section of National Foods' balance sheet at December 31, 2018, assuming the shares were both (a) retired and (b) viewed as treasury stock.

NATIONAL FOODS, INC. Balance Sheet (Shareholders' Equity Section) At December 31, 2018		
(\$ in millions)	Shares Retired	Treasury Stock
Shareholders' Equity		
Preferred stock, 11 million shares at \$1 par	\$ 11	\$ 11
Common stock, 122 million shares at \$1 par	120	122
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred	479	479
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common	846*	854
Retained earnings	3,235†	3,245‡
Treasury stock, at cost; 2 million common shares	—	(20)
Total shareholders' equity	<u>\$4,691</u>	<u>\$4,691</u>
Note: This situation is continued in the next Concept Review Exercise.		
* $\$854 - 42 + 22 + 12$		
† $\$2,848 - 12 + 400 - 1$		
‡ $\$2,848 - 2 + 400 - 1$		

PART C

Retained Earnings

Characteristics of Retained Earnings

LO18-6

In the previous section we examined *invested* capital. Now we consider *earned* capital, that is, retained earnings. In general, retained earnings represents a corporation's accumulated, undistributed net income (or net loss). A more descriptive title used by some companies is reinvested earnings. A credit balance in this account indicates a dollar amount of assets previously earned by the firm but not distributed as dividends to shareholders. We refer to a debit balance in retained earnings as a **deficit**. **Microsoft** reported a deficit for several years until retained earnings grew to a positive balance in 2013.

You saw in the previous section that the buyback of shares (as well as the resale of treasury shares in some cases) can decrease retained earnings. We examine in this section the effect on retained earnings of dividends and stock splits.¹⁵

Dividends

LO18-7

Shareholders' initial investments in a corporation are represented by amounts reported as paid-in capital. One way a corporation provides a return to its shareholders on their investments is to pay them a **dividend**, typically cash.¹⁶

Dividends are distributions of assets the company has earned on behalf of its shareholders. If dividends are paid that exceed the amount of assets earned by the company, then management is, in effect, returning to shareholders a portion of their investments, rather than providing them a return on that investment. So most companies view retained earnings as the amount available for dividends.¹⁷

¹⁵Retained earnings also can be affected by some changes in accounting principles and for some corrections of errors, as we will see in chapter 20. And, too, retained earnings can be affected by the repurchase of shares as we discussed in Part A of this chapter.

¹⁶Dividends are not the only return shareholders earn; when market prices of their shares rise, shareholders benefit also. Indeed, many companies have adopted policies of never paying dividends but reinvesting all assets they earn. The motivation is to accommodate more rapid expansion and thus, presumably, increases in the market price of the stock.

¹⁷Ordinarily, this is not the legal limitation. Most states permit a company to pay dividends so long as, after the dividend, its assets would not be "less than the sum of its total liabilities plus the amount that would be needed, if the corporation were to be dissolved at the time of the distribution, to satisfy the preferential rights upon dissolution of shareholders whose preferential rights are superior to those receiving the distribution." (Revised Model Business Corporation Act, American Bar Association, 2011.) Thus, legally, a corporation can distribute amounts equal to total shareholders' equity less dissolution preferences of senior equity securities (usually preferred stock).

Liquidating Dividend

In unusual instances in which a dividend exceeds the balance in retained earnings, the excess is referred to as a **liquidating dividend** because some of the invested capital is being liquidated. This might occur when a corporation is being dissolved and assets (not subject to a superior claim by creditors) are distributed to shareholders. Any portion of a dividend not representing a distribution of earnings should be debited to additional paid-in capital rather than retained earnings.

Any dividend not representing a distribution of earnings should be debited to paid-in capital.

Retained Earnings Restrictions

Sometimes the amount available for dividends purposely is reduced by management. A restriction of retained earnings designates a portion of the balance in retained earnings as being *unavailable for dividends*. A company might restrict retained earnings to indicate management's intention to withhold for some specific purpose the assets represented by that portion of the retained earnings balance. For example, management might anticipate the need for a specific amount of assets in upcoming years to repay a maturing debt, to cover a contingent loss, or to finance expansion of the facilities. Be sure to understand that the restriction itself does not set aside cash for the designated event but merely communicates management's intention not to distribute the stated amount as a dividend.

A restriction of retained earnings communicates management's intention to withhold assets represented by a specified portion of the retained earnings balance.

A restriction of retained earnings normally is indicated by a disclosure note to the financial statements. Although instances are rare, a formal journal entry may be used to reclassify a portion of retained earnings to an "appropriated" retained earnings account.

Normally a restriction of retained earnings is indicated by a disclosure note.

Cash Dividends

You learned in Chapter 14 that paying interest to creditors is a contractual obligation. No such legal obligation exists for paying dividends to shareholders. A liability is not recorded until a company's board of directors votes to declare a dividend. In practice, though, corporations ordinarily try to maintain a stable dividend pattern over time.

When directors declare a cash dividend, we reduce retained earnings and record a liability. Before the payment actually can be made, a listing must be assembled of shareholders entitled to receive the dividend. A specific date is stated as to when the determination will be made of the recipients of the dividend. This date is called the **date of record**. Registered owners of shares of stock on this date are entitled to receive the dividend—even if they sell those shares prior to the actual cash payment. To be a registered owner of shares on the date of record, an investor must purchase the shares before the **ex-dividend date**. This date usually is two business days before the date of record. Shares purchased on or after that date are purchased ex dividend—without the right to receive the declared dividend. As a result, the market price of a share typically will decline by the amount of the dividend, other things being equal, on the ex-dividend date. Consider Illustration 18–12.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 1035

On June 1, the board of directors of Craft Industries declares a cash dividend of \$2 per share on its 100 million shares, payable to shareholders of record June 15, to be paid July 1.

June 1—Declaration Date		(\$ in millions)
Retained earnings	200	
Cash dividends payable (100 million shares at \$2 per share).....		200
June 13—Ex-Dividend Date		
No entry		
June 15—Date of Record		
No entry		
July 1—Payment Date		
Cash dividends payable	200	
Cash.....		200

Illustration 18–12

Cash Dividends

At the declaration date, retained earnings is reduced and a liability is recorded.

Registered owners of shares on the date of record are entitled to receive the dividend.

A sufficient balance in retained earnings permits a dividend to be declared. Remember, though, that retained earnings is a shareholders' equity account representing a dollar claim on assets in general, but not on any specific asset in particular. Sufficient retained earnings does not ensure sufficient cash to make payment. These are two separate accounts having no necessary connection with one another. When a dividend is "paid from retained earnings," this simply means there are sufficient assets to pay the dividend without returning invested assets to shareholders.

DIVIDENDS ON PREFERRED SHARES. As mentioned in Part A, preferred shares can be cumulative or noncumulative. Cumulative means that if the specified dividend is not paid for a given year, the unpaid dividends (called *dividends in arrears*) accumulate and must be made up in a later dividend year before any dividends are paid on common shares. Illustration 18–13 provides an example.

Illustration 18–13

Distribution of Dividends to Preferred Shareholders

If preferred shares are not cumulative, dividends not declared in any given year need never be paid.

The shareholders' equity section of Corbin Enterprises includes the items shown below. The board of directors declared cash dividends of \$360,000, \$500,000, and \$700,000 in its first three years of operation—2017, 2018, and 2019, respectively.

Common stock	\$3,000,000
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common	9,800,000
Preferred stock, 8%	6,000,000
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred	780,000

Determine the amount of dividends to be paid to preferred and common shareholders in each of the three years, assuming that the preferred stock is cumulative and nonparticipating.

	Preferred	Common
2017	\$360,000*	\$0
2018	500,000**	0
2019	580,000†	120,000 (remainder)

*The preferred shareholders are entitled to dividends of \$480,000 ($8\% \times \$6,000,000$), but only \$360,000 dividends are declared in 2017 so dividends in arrears are \$120,000.

**\$120,000 dividends in arrears plus \$380,000 of the \$480,000 current preference.

†\$100,000 dividends in arrears ($\$480,000 - \$380,000$) plus the \$480,000 current preference

Property Dividends

The fair value of the assets to be distributed is the amount recorded for a property dividend.

Because cash is the asset most easily divided and distributed to shareholders, most corporate dividends are cash dividends. In concept, though, any asset can be distributed to shareholders as a dividend. When a noncash asset is distributed, it is referred to as a **property dividend** (often called a *dividend in kind* or a *nonreciprocal transfer to owners*). **Gold Resource Corp.**, a Colorado gold mining company, announced in 2014 that it would make dividend payments in gold bullion instead of cash.

RFM Corporation conferred a property dividend to its shareholders when it distributed shares of **Philippine Townships, Inc.**, stock that RFM was holding as an investment. Securities held as investments are the assets most often distributed in a property dividend due to the relative ease of dividing these assets among shareholders and determining their fair values.

A property dividend should be recorded at the fair value of the assets to be distributed, measured at the date of declaration. This may require revaluing the asset to fair value prior to recording the dividend. If so, a gain or loss is recognized for the difference between book value and fair value. This is demonstrated in Illustration 18–14.

Stock Dividends and Splits

Stock Dividends

A **stock dividend** is the distribution of additional shares of stock to current shareholders of the corporation. Be sure to note the contrast between a stock dividend and either a cash or

On October 1 the board of directors of Craft Industries declares a property dividend of 2 million shares of Beaman Corporation's preferred stock that Craft had purchased in March as an investment (book value: \$9 million). The investment shares have a fair value of \$5 per share, **\$10 million**, and are payable to shareholders of record October 15, to be distributed November 1.

	(\$ in millions)	
October 1—Declaration Date		
Investment in Beaman Corporation preferred stock.....	1	
Gain on appreciation of investment (\$10 – 9).....		1
Retained earnings (2 million shares at \$5 per share).....	10	
Property dividends payable		10
October 15—Date of Record		
No entry		
November 1—Payment Date		
Property dividends payable.....	10	
Investment in Beaman Corporation preferred stock		10

Illustration 18–14

Property Dividends

Before recording the property dividend, the asset first must be written up to fair value.

property dividend. A stock dividend affects neither the assets nor the liabilities of the firm. Also, because each shareholder receives the same percentage increase in shares, shareholders' proportional interest in (percentage ownership of) the firm remains unchanged. For example, if a 5% stock dividend is declared, every shareholder will receive additional shares of stock to equal 5% of the shares they currently own.

The prescribed accounting treatment of a stock dividend requires that shareholders' equity items be reclassified by reducing one or more shareholders' equity accounts and simultaneously increasing one or more paid-in capital accounts. The amount reclassified depends on the size of the stock dividend. For a small stock dividend, typically less than 25%, the fair value of the additional shares distributed is transferred from retained earnings to paid-in capital, as demonstrated in Illustration 18–15.¹⁸

Craft declares and distributes a 10% common stock dividend (10 million shares) when the market value of the \$1 par common stock is \$12 per share.

	(\$ in millions)	
Retained earnings (10 million shares at \$12 per share).....	120	
Common stock (10 million shares at \$1 par per share).....		10
Paid-in capital—excess of par (remainder)		110

Illustration 18–15

Stock Dividend

A small stock dividend requires reclassification to paid-in capital of retained earnings equal to the fair value of the additional shares distributed.

Additional Consideration

The entry above is recorded on the declaration date. Since the additional shares are not yet issued, some accountants would prefer to credit "common stock dividends issuable" at this point, instead of common stock. In that case, when the shares are issued, common stock dividends issuable is debited and common stock credited. The choice really is inconsequential; either way the \$10 million amount would be reported as part of paid-in capital on a balance sheet prepared between the declaration and distribution of the shares.

STOCK MARKET REACTION TO STOCK DISTRIBUTIONS. As a Craft shareholder owning 10 shares at the time of the 10% stock dividend, you would receive an 11th share. Since each is worth \$12, would you benefit by \$12 when you receive the additional share from Craft? Of course not. If the value of each share were to remain \$12 when the

¹⁸FASB ASC 505–20: Equity—Stock Dividends and Stock Splits (previously "Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research Bulletins," *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43* (New York: AICPA, 1961), Chap. 7, sec. B, pars. 10–14). In this pronouncement, a small stock dividend is defined as one 20% to 25% or less. For filings with that agency, the SEC has refined the definition to comprise stock distributions of less than 25%.

The market price per share will decline in proportion to the increase in the number of shares distributed in a stock dividend.

Early rule-makers felt that per share market prices do not adjust in response to an increase in the number of shares.

Capitalizing retained earnings for a stock dividend artificially reclassifies earned capital as invested capital.

Companies sometimes declare a stock dividend in lieu of a real dividend.

Companies sometimes declare a stock dividend so they can capitalize retained earnings.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q4, p. 1035

A large stock dividend is known as a stock split.

10 million new shares are distributed, the total market value of the company would grow by \$120 million (10 million shares \times \$12 per share).

A corporation cannot increase its market value simply by distributing additional stock certificates. Because all shareholders receive the same percentage increase in their respective holdings, you, and all other shareholders, still would own the same percentage of the company as before the distribution. Accordingly, the per share value of your shares should decline from \$12 to \$10.91 so that your 11 shares would be worth \$120—precisely what your 10 shares were worth prior to the stock dividend. You might compare Craft Industries to a pizza. Cutting the pizza into 16 slices instead of 12 doesn't create more to eat; you still have the same pizza, just a higher number of smaller slices. Any failure of the stock price to actually adjust in proportion to the additional shares issued probably would be due to information other than the distribution reaching shareholders at the same time.

Then, what justification is there for recording the additional shares at market value? In 1941 (and reaffirmed in 1953), accounting rule-makers felt that many shareholders are deceived by small stock dividends, believing they benefit by the market value of their additional shares. Furthermore they erroneously felt that these individual beliefs are collectively reflected in the stock market by per share prices that remain unchanged by stock dividends. Consequently, their prescribed accounting treatment is to reduce retained earnings by the same amount as if cash dividends were paid equal to the market value of the shares issued.¹⁹

This obsolete reasoning is inconsistent with our earlier conclusion that the market price per share *will* decline in approximate proportion to the increase in the number of shares distributed. Our intuitive conclusion is supported also by formal research.²⁰

Besides being based on fallacious reasoning, accounting for stock dividends by artificially reclassifying “earned” capital as “invested” capital conflicts with the reporting objective of reporting shareholders' equity by source. Despite these limitations, this outdated accounting standard still applies.

REASONS FOR STOCK DIVIDENDS. Since neither the corporation nor its shareholders apparently benefits from stock dividends, why do companies declare them?²¹ Occasionally, a company tries to give shareholders the illusion that they are receiving a real dividend.

Another reason is merely to enable the corporation to take advantage of the accepted accounting practice of capitalizing retained earnings. Specifically, a company might wish to reduce an existing balance in retained earnings—otherwise available for *cash* dividends—so it can reinvest the earned assets represented by that balance without carrying a large balance in retained earnings.

Stock Splits

A frequent reason for issuing a stock dividend is actually to induce the per share market price decline that follows. For instance, after a company declares a 100% stock dividend on 100 million shares of common stock, with a per share market price of \$12, it then has 200 million shares, each with an approximate market value of \$6. The motivation for reducing the per share market price is to increase the stock's *marketability* by making it attractive to a larger number of potential investors.

A stock distribution of 25% or higher can be accounted for in one of two ways: (1) as a “large” stock dividend or (2) as a **stock split**.²² Thus, a 100% stock dividend could be labeled a 2-for-1 stock split and accounted for as such. Conceptually, the proper accounting treatment of a stock distribution is to make no journal entry. This, in fact, is the prescribed accounting treatment for a stock split.

¹⁹FASB ASC 505–20–30–3: Equity—Stock Dividends and Stock Splits—Initial Measurement (previously “Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research Bulletins,” *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43* (New York: AICPA, 1961), chap. 7).

²⁰Foster and Vickrey, “The Information Content of Stock Dividend Announcements,” *Accounting Review* (April 1978); and Spiceland and Winters, “The Market Reaction to Stock Distributions: The Effect of Market Anticipation and Cash Returns,” *Accounting and Business Research* (Summer 1986).

²¹After hitting a high in the 1940s, the number of stock dividends has declined significantly. Currently, about 3% of companies declare stock dividends in any given year.

²²FASB ASC 505–20–25–2: Equity—Stock Dividends and Stock Splits—Recognition (previously “Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research Bulletins,” *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43* (New York: AICPA, 1961), Chap. 7, sec. B, par. 11).

Additional Consideration

No cash dividends are paid on treasury shares. Usually stock dividends aren't paid on treasury shares either. Treasury shares are essentially equivalent to shares that never have been issued. In some circumstances, though, the intended use of the repurchased shares will give reason for the treasury shares to participate in a stock dividend. For instance, if the treasury shares have been specifically designated for issuance to executives in a stock option plan or stock award plan, it would be appropriate to adjust the number of shares by the stock distribution.

Since the same common stock account balance (total par) represents twice as many shares in a 2-for-1 stock split, the par value per share will be reduced by one-half. In the previous example, if the par were \$1 per share before the stock distribution, then after the 2-for-1 stock split, the par would be \$0.50 per share.

As you might expect, having the par value per share change in this way is cumbersome and expensive. All records, printed or electronic, that refer to the previous amount must be changed to reflect the new amount. The practical solution is to account for the large stock distribution as a stock dividend rather than a stock split.

Stock Splits Effected in the Form of Stock Dividends (Large Stock Dividends)

To avoid changing the per share par value of the shares, the stock distribution is referred to as a *stock split effected in the form of a stock dividend*, or simply a *stock dividend*. In that case, a journal entry increases the common stock account by the par value of the additional shares. To avoid reducing retained earnings in these instances, most companies reduce (debit) paid-in capital—excess of par to offset the credit to common stock (Illustration 18–16).

Craft declares and distributes a 2-for-1 stock split effected in the form of a 100% stock dividend (100 million shares) when the market value of the \$1 par common stock is \$12 per share.

	(\$ in millions)
Paid-in capital—excess of par	100
Common stock (100 million shares at \$1 par per share)	100

Illustration 18–16

Stock Split Effected in the Form of a Stock Dividend

If a *stock split* is effected in the form of a stock dividend, a journal entry prevents the par per share from changing.

Notice that this entry does not reclassify earned capital as invested capital. Some companies, though, choose to debit retained earnings instead.

	(\$ in millions)
Retained earnings	100
Common stock (10 million shares × \$1 par per share)	100

Some companies capitalize retained earnings when recording a stock split effected in the form of a stock dividend.

Netflix described a stock split in its disclosure notes as shown in Illustration 18–17.

Note 8 — Stock Split

On June 23, 2015, the Company's Board of Directors declared a seven-for-one stock split in the form of a stock dividend that was paid on July 14, 2015 to all shareholders of record as of July 2, 2015. Outstanding share and per-share amounts disclosed for all periods presented have been retroactively adjusted to reflect the effects of the stock split.

Illustration 18–17

Stock Split
Disclosure—Netflix

Real World Financials

In 2015, Netflix distributed a rare 7-for-1 stock split that dropped the price of Netflix shares from about \$700 all the way down to about \$100.

Additional Consideration

A company choosing to capitalize retained earnings when recording a stock split effected in the form of a stock dividend may elect to capitalize an amount other than par value. Accounting guidelines are vague in this regard, stating only that legal amounts are minimum requirements and do not prevent the capitalization of a larger amount per share.

Source: FASB ASC 505–20–30–4: Equity—Stock Dividends and Stock Splits—Initial Measurement (previously “Restatement and Revision of Accounting Research Bulletins,” *Accounting Research Bulletin No. 43* (New York: AICPA, 1961), Chap. 7, sec. B, par. 14).

REVERSE STOCK SPLIT. A **reverse stock split** occurs when a company decreases, rather than increases, its outstanding shares. After a 1-for-4 reverse stock split, for example, 100 million shares, \$1 par per share, would become 25 million shares, \$4 par per share. No journal entry is necessary. Of course the market price per share theoretically would quadruple, which usually is the motivation for declaring a reverse stock split. Companies that reverse split their shares frequently are struggling companies trying to accomplish with the split what the market has been unwilling to do—increase the stock price. Often this is to prevent the stock’s price from becoming so low that it is delisted from a market exchange. Reverse splits are not unusual occurrences, particularly during stock market downturns. In 2014, **Great American Group** declared a 1-for-20 reverse split.

FRACTIONAL SHARES. Typically, a stock dividend or stock split results in some shareholders being entitled to fractions of whole shares. For example, if a company declares a 25% stock dividend, or equivalently a 5-for-4 stock split, a shareholder owning 10 shares would be entitled to $2\frac{1}{2}$ shares. Another shareholder with 15 shares would be entitled to $3\frac{3}{4}$ shares.

Cash payments usually are made when shareholders are entitled to fractions of whole shares.

Cash payments usually are made to shareholders for *fractional* shares and are called “cash in lieu of payments.” In the situation described above, for instance, if the market price at declaration is \$12 per share, the shareholder with 15 shares would receive 3 additional shares and \$9 in cash ($\$12 \times \frac{3}{4}$).

Decision Maker’s Perspective

The return on shareholders’ equity is a popular measure of profitability.

Book value measures have limited use in financial analysis.

Profitability is the key to a company’s long-run survival. A summary measure of profitability often used by investors and potential investors, particularly common shareholders, is the return on shareholders’ equity. This ratio measures the ability of company management to generate net income from the resources that owners provide. The ratio is computed by dividing net income by average shareholders’ equity. A variation of this ratio often is used when a company has both preferred and common stock outstanding. The return to common shareholders’ equity is calculated by subtracting dividends to preferred shareholders from the numerator and using average common shareholders’ equity as the denominator. The modified ratio focuses on the profits generated on the assets provided by common shareholders.

Although the ratio is useful when evaluating the effectiveness of management in employing resources provided by owners, analysts must be careful not to view it in isolation or without considering how the ratio is derived. Keep in mind that shareholders’ equity is a measure of the book value of equity, equivalent to the book value of net assets. Book value measures quickly become out of line with market values. An asset’s book value usually equals its market value on the date it’s purchased; the two aren’t necessarily the same after that. Equivalently, the market value of a share of stock (or of total shareholders’ equity) usually is different from its book value. As a result, to supplement the return on

shareholders' equity ratio, analysts often relate earnings to the market value of equity, calculating the earnings-price ratio. This ratio is simply the earnings per share divided by the market price per share.

To better understand the differences between the book value ratio and the market value ratio, let's consider the following condensed information reported by Sharp-Novell Industries for 2018 and 2017:

(\$ in thousands, except per share amounts)	2018	2017
Sales	\$3,500	\$3,100
Net income	125	114
Current assets	\$ 750	\$ 720
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	900	850
Total assets	<u>\$1,650</u>	<u>\$1,570</u>
Current liabilities	\$ 550	\$ 530
Long-term liabilities	540	520
Paid-in capital	210	210
Retained earnings	350	310
Liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$1,650</u>	<u>\$1,570</u>
Shares outstanding	50,000	50,000
Stock price (average)	\$42.50	\$42.50

The 2018 return on shareholders' equity is computed by dividing net income by average shareholders' equity:

$$\$125 \div [(\$560 + 520) \div 2] = \underline{\underline{23.1\%}}$$

The earnings-price ratio is the earnings per share divided by the market price per share:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Earnings per share (2018)} &= \$125 \div 50 = \$2.50 \\ \text{Earnings-price ratio} &= \$2.50 \div 42.50 = \underline{\underline{5.9\%}}\end{aligned}$$

Obviously, the return on the market value of equity is much lower than on the book value of equity. This points out the importance of looking at more than a single ratio when making decisions. While 23.1% may seem like a desirable return, 5.9% is not nearly so attractive. Companies often emphasize the return on shareholders' equity in their annual reports. Alert investors should not accept this measure of achievement at face value. For some companies this is a meaningful measure of performance; but for others, the market-based ratio means more, particularly for a mature firm whose book value and market value are more divergent.

Decisions managers make with regard to shareholders' equity transactions can significantly impact the return to shareholders. For example, when a company buys back shares of its own stock, the return on shareholders' equity goes up. Net income is divided by a smaller amount of shareholders' equity. On the other hand, the share buy-back uses assets, reducing the resources available to earn net income in the future. So, managers as well as outside analysts must carefully consider the decision to reacquire shares in light of the current economic environment, the firm's investment opportunities, and cost of capital to decide whether such a transaction is in the long-term best interests of owners. Investors should be wary of buybacks during down times because the resulting decrease in shares and increase in earnings per share can be used to mask a slowdown in earnings growth.

The decision to pay dividends requires similar considerations. When earnings are high, are shareholders better off receiving substantial cash dividends or having management reinvest those funds to finance future growth (and future dividends)? The answer, of course, depends on the particular circumstances involved. Dividend decisions should reflect managerial strategy concerning the mix of internal versus external financing, alternative investment opportunities, and industry conditions. High dividends often are found in mature industries and low dividends in growth industries. ●

Share retirement and treasury stock transactions can affect the return to owners.

Dividend decisions should be evaluated in light of prevailing circumstances.

Ethical Dilemma



Interworld Distributors has paid quarterly cash dividends since 1985. The dividends have steadily increased from \$.25 per share to the latest dividend declaration of \$2.00 per share. The board of directors is eager to continue this trend despite the fact that revenues fell significantly during recent months as a result of worsening economic conditions and increased competition. The company founder and member of the board proposes a solution. He suggests a 5% stock dividend in lieu of a cash dividend to be accompanied by the following press announcement:

"In lieu of our regular \$2.00 per share cash dividend, Interworld will distribute a 5% stock dividend on its common shares, currently trading at \$40 per share. Changing the form of the dividend will permit the Company to direct available cash resources to the modernization of physical facilities in preparation for competing in the 21st century."

What do you think?

Concept Review Exercise

CHANGES IN RETAINED EARNINGS

Situation: The shareholders' equity section of the balance sheet of National Foods, Inc., included the following accounts at December 31, 2018:

Shareholders' Equity	(\$ in millions)
Paid-in capital	
Preferred stock, 9.09%, 11 million shares at \$1 par	\$ 11
Common stock, 122 million shares at \$1 par	122
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred	479
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common	854
Retained earnings	3,245
Treasury stock, at cost, 2 million common shares	(20)
Total shareholders' equity	\$4,691

Required:

- During 2019, several events and transactions affected the retained earnings of National Foods. Prepare the appropriate entries for these events.
 - On March 1, the board of directors declared a cash dividend of \$1 per share on its 120 million outstanding shares (122 million – 2 million treasury shares), payable on April 3 to shareholders of record March 11.
 - On March 5, the board of directors declared a property dividend of 120 million shares of **Kroger** common stock that National Foods had purchased in February as an investment (book value: \$900 million). The investment shares had a fair value of \$8 per share and were distributed March 30 to shareholders of record March 15.
 - On April 13, a 3-for-2 stock split was declared and distributed. The stock split was effected in the form of a 50% stock dividend. The market value of the \$1 par common stock was \$20 per share.
 - On October 13, a 10% common stock dividend was declared and distributed when the market value of the \$1 par common stock was \$12 per share. Cash in lieu of payments was distributed for fractional shares equivalent to 1 million whole shares.
 - On December 1, the board of directors declared the 9.09% cash dividend on the 11 million preferred shares, payable on December 23 to shareholders of record December 11.
- Prepare a statement of shareholders' equity for National Foods reporting the changes in shareholders' equity accounts for 2017, 2018, and 2019. Refer to the previous two Concept Reviews in this chapter for the 2017 and 2018 changes. For 2018, assume that shares were reacquired as treasury stock. Also, look back to the statement of shareholders' equity in Illustration 18–4 for the format of the statement. Assume that net income for 2019 is \$225 million.

Solution:

- During 2019, several events and transactions affected the retained earnings of National Foods. Prepare the appropriate entries for these events.

- a. Cash dividend of \$1 per share on its 120 million *outstanding* common shares (122 million – 2 million treasury shares), payable on April 3 to shareholders of record March 11. (Note: Dividends aren't paid on treasury shares.)

March 1—Declaration Date	(\$ in millions)	
Retained earnings	120	
Cash dividends payable (120 million shares at \$1 per share).....		120
March 11—Date of Record		
No entry		
April 3—Payment Date		
Cash dividends payable	120	
Cash.....		120

The declaration of a dividend reduces retained earnings and creates a liability.

- b. Property dividend of 120 million shares of Kroger common stock:

March 5—Declaration Date	(\$ in millions)	
Investment in Kroger common stock	60	
Gain on appreciation of investment (\$960 – 900).....		60
Retained earnings (fair value of asset to be distributed)	960	
Property dividends payable		960
March 15—Date of Record		
No entry		
March 30—Payment Date		
Property dividends payable.....	960	
Investment in Kroger common stock.....		960

The investment first must be written up to the \$960 million fair value (\$8 × 120 million shares).

The liability is satisfied when the Kroger shares are distributed to shareholders.

- c. 3-for-2 stock split effected in the form of a 50% stock dividend:

April 13	(\$ in millions)	
Paid-in capital—excess of par*	60	
Common stock (60 million shares at \$1 par per share).....		60

*Alternatively, retained earnings may be debited.

120 million shares times 50% equals 60 million new shares—recorded at par.

- d. 10% common stock dividend—with cash in lieu of payments for shares equivalent to 1 million whole shares:

October 13	(\$ in millions)	
Retained earnings (18 million shares* at \$12 per share).....	216	
Common stock (17 million shares at \$1 par per share).....		17
Paid-in capital—excess of par (17 million shares at \$11 per share above par).....		187
Cash (1 million equivalent shares at \$12 market price per share)		12

*(120 million + 60 million) × 10% = 18 million shares

The stock dividend occurs after the 3-for-2 stock split; thus 18 million shares are distributed.

The \$12 fair value of the additional shares is capitalized in this small stock dividend.

- e. 9.09% cash dividend on the 11 million preferred shares, payable on December 23 to shareholders of record December 11:

December 1—Declaration Date	(\$ in millions)	
Retained earnings	1	
Cash dividends payable (\$11 million par × 9.09%).....		1
December 11—Date of Record		
No entry		
December 23—Payment Date		
Cash dividends payable	1	
Cash.....		1

Preferred shareholders annually receive the designated percentage (9.09%) of the preferred's par value (\$1 million), if dividends are declared.

- f. Prepare a statement of shareholders' equity for National Foods reporting the changes in shareholders' equity accounts for 2017, 2018, and 2019.

NATIONAL FOODS
Statement of Shareholders' Equity
For the Years Ended December 31, 2019, 2018, and 2017
(\$ in millions)

	Preferred Stock	Common Stock	Additional Paid-In Capital	Retained Earnings	Treasury Stock (at cost)	Total Share- holders' Equity
Balance at January 1, 2017		120	836	2,449		3,405
Sale of preferred shares	10		430			440
Issuance of common shares		1	9			10
Issuance of common and preferred shares	1	1	58			60
Net income				400		400
Cash dividends, preferred	—	—	—	(1)	—	(1)
Balance at December 31, 2017	11	122	1,333	2,848		4,314
Purchase of treasury shares					(60)	(60)
Sale of treasury shares			4		20	24
Sale of treasury shares			(4)	(2)	20	14
Net income				400		400
Cash dividends, preferred	—	—	—	(1)	—	(1)
Balance at December 31, 2018	11	122	1,333	3,245	(20)	4,691
Cash dividends, common				(120)		(120)
Property dividends, common				(960)		(960)
3-for-2 split effected in the form of a stock dividend		60	(60)			
10% stock dividend		17	187	(216)		(12)
Cash dividends, preferred				(1)		(1)
Net income				225		225
Balance at December 31, 2019	11	199	1,460	2,173	(20)	3,823

These are the transactions from Concept Review Exercise—Expansion of Corporate Capital.

These are the transactions from Concept Review Exercise—Treasury Stock.

These are the transactions from Concept Review Exercise—Changes in Retained Earnings.

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© Peathegee Inc/Blend Images

- Do you think the stock price increase is related to Nike's share repurchase plan?** (p. 1050) The stock price increase probably is related to Nike's buyback plan. The marketplace realizes that decreasing the supply of shares supports the price of remaining shares. However, the repurchase of shares is not necessarily the best use of a company's cash. Whether it is in the shareholders' best interests depends on what other opportunities the company has for the cash available.
- What are Nike's choices in accounting for the share repurchases?** (p. 1051) When a corporation reacquires its own shares, those shares assume the same status as authorized but unissued shares, just as if they never had been issued. However, for exactly the same transaction, companies can choose between two accounting alternatives: (a) formally retiring them or (b) accounting for the shares repurchased as treasury stock. In actuality, Nike uses alternative (a).
- What effect does the quarterly cash dividend of 32 cents share have on Nike's assets? Its liabilities? Its shareholders' equity?** (p. 1057) Each quarter, when directors declare a cash dividend, retained earnings are reduced and a liability is recorded. The liability is

paid with cash on the payment date. So, the net effect is a decrease in Nike's assets and its shareholders' equity. The effect on liabilities is temporary.

- 4. What effect does the stock split have on Nike's assets? Its liabilities? Its shareholders' equity?** (p. 1060) Conceptually, the proper accounting treatment of a stock split is to make no journal entry. However, since Nike refers to the stock distribution as a stock split "in the form of a 100% stock dividend," a journal entry would increase the common stock account by the par value of the additional shares and would reduce paid-in capital—excess of par. This merely moves an amount from one part of shareholders' equity to another. Regardless of the accounting method, there is no change in Nike's assets, liabilities, or total shareholders' equity. ●

The Bottom Line

- **LO18-1** Shareholders' equity is the owners' residual interest in a corporation's assets. It arises primarily from (1) amounts invested by shareholders and (2) amounts earned by the corporation on behalf of its shareholders. These are reported as (1) paid-in capital and (2) retained earnings in a balance sheet. A statement of shareholders' equity reports the sources of the changes in individual shareholders' equity accounts. (p. 1035)
- **LO18-2** Comprehensive income encompasses all changes in equity except those caused by transactions with owners (like dividends and the sale or purchase of shares). It includes traditional net income as well as "other comprehensive income." (p. 1038)
- **LO18-3** A corporation is a separate legal entity—separate and distinct from its owners. A corporation is well suited to raising capital and has limited liability. However, it gives rise to "double taxation." Common shareholders usually have voting rights; preferred shareholders usually have a preference to a specified amount of dividends and to assets in the event of liquidation. (p. 1039)
- **LO18-4** Shares sold for consideration other than cash (maybe services or a noncash asset) should be recorded at the fair value of the shares or the noncash consideration, whichever seems more clearly evident. (p. 1046)
- **LO18-5** When a corporation retires previously issued shares, those shares assume the same status as authorized but unissued shares—just the same as if they had never been issued. Payments made to retire shares are viewed as a distribution of corporate assets to shareholders. When reacquired shares are viewed as treasury stock, the cost of acquiring the shares is temporarily debited to the treasury stock account. Recording the effects on specific shareholders' equity accounts is delayed until later when the shares are reissued. (p. 1050)
- **LO18-6** Retained earnings represents, in general, a corporation's accumulated, undistributed, or reinvested net income (or net loss). Distributions of assets are dividends. (p. 1056)
- **LO18-7** Most corporate dividends are paid in cash. When a noncash asset is distributed, it is referred to as a property dividend. The fair value of the assets to be distributed is the amount recorded for a property dividend. (p. 1056)
- **LO18-8** A stock dividend is the distribution of additional shares of stock to current shareholders. For a small stock dividend (25% or less), the fair value of the additional shares distributed is transferred from retained earnings to paid-in capital. For a stock distribution of 25% or higher, the par value of the additional shares is reclassified within shareholders' equity if referred to as a stock split effected in the form of a stock dividend, but if referred to merely as a stock split, no journal entry is recorded. (p. 1058)
- **LO18-9** U.S. GAAP and IFRS are generally compatible with respect to accounting for shareholders' equity. Some differences exist in presentation format and terminology. (pp. 1040 and 1046) ●

Quasi Reorganizations

A firm undergoing financial difficulties, but with favorable future prospects, may use a **quasi reorganization** to write down inflated asset values and eliminate an accumulated deficit (debit balance in retained earnings). To effect the reorganization, these procedures are followed:

1. The firm's assets (and perhaps liabilities) are revalued (up or down) to reflect fair values, with corresponding credits or debits to retained earnings. This process typically increases the deficit.

APPENDIX 18

- The debit balance in retained earnings (deficit) is eliminated against additional paid-in capital. If additional paid-in capital is not sufficient to absorb the entire deficit, a reduction in stock may be necessary (with an appropriate restating of the par amount per share).
- Retained earnings is dated. That is, disclosure is provided to indicate the date the deficit was eliminated and when the new accumulation of earnings began.

The procedure is demonstrated in Illustration 18A–1. The shareholders approved the quasi reorganization effective January 1, 2018. The plan was to be accomplished by a reduction of inventory by \$75 million, a reduction in property, plant, and equipment (net) of \$175 million, and appropriate adjustments to shareholders' equity.

Illustration 18A–1

Quasi Reorganization

When assets are revalued to reflect fair values, the process often increases the deficit.

The deficit, \$550 (\$300 + 75 + 175), can be only partially absorbed by the balance of additional paid-in capital.

The remaining deficit, \$400 (\$300 + 75 + 175 – 150), must be absorbed by reducing the balance in common stock.

Assets and liabilities reflect current values.

Because a reduced balance represents the same 800 million shares, the par amount per share must be reduced.

The deficit is eliminated.

The Emerson-Walsch Corporation has incurred operating losses for several years. A newly elected board of directors voted to implement a quasi reorganization, subject to shareholder approval. The balance sheet, on December 31, 2017, immediately prior to the restatement, includes the data shown below.

	(\$ in millions)	
Cash	\$	75
Receivables		200
Inventory		375
Property, plant, and equipment (net)		400
		<u>\$1,050</u>
Liabilities	\$	400
Common stock (800 million shares at \$1 par)		800
Additional paid-in capital		150
Retained earnings (deficit)		(300)
		<u><u>\$1,050</u></u>
To Revalue Assets:		
Retained earnings	75	
Inventory		75
Retained earnings	175	
Property, plant, and equipment		175
To Eliminate a Portion of the Deficit against Available Additional Paid-In Capital:		
Additional paid-in capital	150	
Retained earnings		150
To Eliminate the Remainder of the Deficit against Common Stock:		
Common stock	400	
Retained earnings		400

The balance sheet immediately after the restatement would include the following:

	(\$ in millions)	
Cash	\$	75
Receivables		200
Inventory		300
Property, plant, and equipment (net)		225
		<u>\$800</u>
Liabilities		\$400
Common stock (800 million shares at \$0.50 par)		400
Additional paid-in capital		0
Retained earnings (deficit)		0
		<u><u>\$800</u></u>

Note A: Upon the recommendation of the board of directors and approval by shareholders, a quasi reorganization was implemented January 1, 2018. The plan was accomplished by a reduction of inventory by \$75 million, a reduction in property, plant, and equipment (net) of \$175 million, and appropriate adjustments to shareholders' equity. The balance in retained earnings reflects the elimination of a \$300 million deficit on that date.

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 18-1** Identify and briefly describe the two primary sources of shareholders' equity.
- Q 18-2** Identify the three common forms of business organization and the primary difference between the way they are accounted for.
- Q 18-3** Corporations offer the advantage of limited liability. Explain what is meant by that statement.
- Q 18-4** Distinguish between not-for-profit and for-profit corporations.
- Q 18-5** Distinguish between publicly held and privately (or closely) held corporations.
- Q 18-6** How does the Model Business Corporation Act affect the way corporations operate?
- Q 18-7** The owners of a corporation are its shareholders. If a corporation has only one class of shares, they typically are labeled common shares. Indicate the ownership rights held by common shareholders, unless specifically withheld by agreement.
- Q 18-8** What is meant by a shareholder's preemptive right?
- Q 18-9** Terminology varies in the way companies differentiate among share types. But many corporations designate shares as common or preferred. What are the two special rights usually given to preferred shareholders?
- Q 18-10** Most preferred shares are cumulative. Explain what this means.
- Q 18-11** The par value of shares historically indicated the real value of shares and all shares were issued at that price. The concept has changed with time. Describe the meaning of par value as it has evolved to today.
- Q 18-12** What is comprehensive income? How does comprehensive income differ from net income? Where do companies report it in a balance sheet?
- Q 18-13** How do we report components of comprehensive income *created during the reporting period*?
- Q 18-14** The balance sheet reports the balances of shareholders' equity accounts. What additional information is provided by the statement of shareholders' equity?
- Q 18-15** At times, companies issue their shares for consideration other than cash. What is the measurement objective in those cases?
- Q 18-16** Companies occasionally sell more than one security for a single price. How is the issue price allocated among the separate securities?
- Q 18-17** The costs of legal, promotional, and accounting services necessary to effect the sale of shares are referred to as share issue costs. How are these costs recorded? Compare this approach to the way debt issue costs are recorded.
- Q 18-18** When a corporation acquires its own shares, those shares assume the same status as authorized but unissued shares, as if they never had been issued. Explain how this is reflected in the accounting records if the shares are formally retired.
- Q 18-19** Discuss the conceptual basis for accounting for a share buyback as treasury stock.
- Q 18-20** The prescribed accounting treatment for stock dividends implicitly assumes that shareholders are fooled by small stock dividends and benefit by the market value of their additional shares. Explain this statement. Is it logical?
- Q 18-21** Brandon Components declares a 2-for-1 stock split. What will be the effects of the split, and how should it be recorded?
- Q 18-22** What is a reverse stock split? What would be the effect of a reverse stock split on one million \$1 par shares? On the accounting records?
- Q 18-23** Suppose you own 80 shares of **Facebook** common stock when the company declares a 4% stock dividend. What will you receive as a result?
- Q 18-24** (Based on Appendix 18) A quasi reorganization is sometimes employed by a firm undergoing financial difficulties but with favorable future prospects. What are two objectives of this procedure? Briefly describe the procedural steps.

Brief Exercises



- BE 18-1** Comprehensive income
 ● LO18-1 Schaeffer Corporation reports \$50 million accumulated other comprehensive income in its balance sheet as a component of shareholders' equity. In a related statement reporting comprehensive income for the year, the company reveals net income of \$400 million and other comprehensive income of \$15 million. What was the balance in accumulated other comprehensive income in last year's balance sheet?
- BE 18-2** Stock issued
 ● LO18-4 Penne Pharmaceuticals sold 8 million shares of its \$1 par common stock to provide funds for research and development. If the issue price is \$12 per share, what is the journal entry to record the sale of the shares?

BE 18-3

Stock issued

● LO18-4

Lewelling Company issued 100,000 shares of its \$1 par common stock to the Michael Morgan law firm as compensation for 4,000 hours of legal services performed. Morgan's usual rate is \$240 per hour. By what amount should Lewelling's paid-in capital—excess of par increase as a result of this transaction?

BE 18-4

Stock issued

● LO18-4

Hamilton Boats issued 175,000 shares of its no par common stock to Sudoku Motors in exchange for 1,000 four-stroke outboard motors that normally sell in quantity for \$3,500 each. By what amount should Hamilton's shareholders' equity increase as a result of this transaction?

BE 18-5

Retirement of shares

● LO18-5

Horton Industries' shareholders' equity included 100 million shares of \$1 par common stock and a balance in paid-in capital—excess of par of \$900 million. Assuming that Horton retires shares it reacquires (restores their status to that of authorized but unissued shares), by what amount will Horton's total paid-in capital decline if it reacquires 2 million shares at \$8.50 per share?

BE 18-6

Retirement of shares

● LO18-5

Agee Storage issued 35 million shares of its \$1 par common stock at \$16 per share several years ago. Last year, for the first time, Agee reacquired 1 million shares at \$14 per share. Assuming that Agee retires shares it reacquires (restores their status to that of authorized but unissued shares), by what amount will Agee's total paid-in capital decline if it now reacquires 1 million shares at \$19 per share?

BE 18-7

Treasury stock

● LO18-5

The Jennings Group reacquired 2 million of its shares at \$70 per share as treasury stock. Last year, for the first time, Jennings sold 1 million treasury shares at \$71 per share. By what amount will Jennings' retained earnings decline if it now sells the remaining 1 million treasury shares at \$67 per share?

BE 18-8

Treasury stock

● LO18-5

In previous years, Cox Transport reacquired 2 million treasury shares at \$20 per share and, later, 1 million treasury shares at \$26 per share. By what amount will Cox's paid-in capital—share repurchase increase if it now sells 1 million treasury shares at \$29 per share and determines cost as the weighted-average cost of treasury shares?

BE 18-9

Treasury stock

● LO18-5

Refer to the situation described in BE 18-9. By what amount will Cox's paid-in capital—share repurchase increase if it determines the cost of treasury shares by the FIFO method?

BE 18-10

Cash dividend

● LO18-8

Real World Financials

Following is a recent **Microsoft** press release:

REDMOND, Wash.—March 16, 2016 —Microsoft today announced that its board of directors have declared a quarterly dividend of \$0.36 per share. The dividend will be payable on June 9, 2016, to shareholders of record on May 19, 2016. The ex-dividend date will be May 17, 2016.

Prepare the journal entries Microsoft used to record the declaration and payment of the cash dividend for its 7,870 million shares.

BE 18-11

Effect of preferred stock on dividends

● LO18-7

The shareholders' equity of MLS Enterprises includes \$200 million of no par common stock and \$400 million of 6% cumulative preferred stock. The board of directors of MLS declared cash dividends of \$50 million in 2018 after paying \$20 million cash dividends in both 2017 and 2016. What is the amount of dividends common shareholders will receive in 2018?

BE 18-12

Property dividend

● LO18-7

Adams Moving and Storage, a family-owned corporation, declared a property dividend of 1,000 shares of **GE** common stock that Adams had purchased in February for \$37,000 as an investment. GE's shares had a market value of \$35 per share on the declaration date. Prepare the journal entries to record the property dividend on the declaration and payment dates.

BE 18-13

Stock dividend

● LO18-8

On June 13, the board of directors of Siewert Inc. declared a 5% stock dividend on its 60 million, \$1 par, common shares, to be distributed on July 1. The market price of Siewert common stock was \$25 on June 13. Prepare the journal entry to record the stock dividend.

BE 18-14

Stock split

● LO18-8

Refer to the situation described in BE 18-13, but assume a 2-for-1 stock split instead of the 5% stock dividend. Prepare the journal entry to record the stock split if it is *not* to be effected in the form of a stock dividend. What is the par per share after the split?

BE 18-15

Stock split

● LO18-8

Refer to the situation described in BE 18-13, but assume a 2-for-1 stock split instead of the 5% stock dividend. Prepare the journal entry to record the stock split if it is to be effected in the form of a 100% stock dividend. What is the par per share after the split?

BE 18-16

IFRS; reporting shareholders' equity

• LO18-9



Nestlé S.A., the largest food and beverage company in the world, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. Its financial statements include ordinary share capital, translation reserve, and share premium. If Nestlé used U.S. GAAP, what would be the likely account titles for these accounts?

Exercises

**E 18-1**

Comprehensive income

• LO18-2

The following is from the 2018 annual report of Kaufman Chemicals, Inc.:

Statements of Comprehensive Income	Years Ended December 31		
	2018	2017	2016
Net income	\$856	\$766	\$594
Other comprehensive income:			
Change in net unrealized gains on investments, net of tax of \$22, (\$14), and \$15 in 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively	34	(21)	23
Other	(2)	(1)	1
<i>Total comprehensive income</i>	<u>\$888</u>	<u>\$744</u>	<u>\$618</u>

Kaufman reports accumulated other comprehensive income in its balance sheet as a component of shareholders' equity as follows:

(\$ in millions)	2018	2017
Shareholders' equity:		
Common stock	355	355
Additional paid-in capital	8,567	8,567
Retained earnings	6,544	5,988
Accumulated other comprehensive income	107	75
<i>Total shareholders' equity</i>	<u>\$15,573</u>	<u>\$14,985</u>

Required:

1. What is comprehensive income and how does it differ from net income?
2. How is comprehensive income reported in a balance sheet?
3. Why is Kaufman's 2018 balance sheet amount different from the 2018 amount reported in the disclosure note? Explain.
4. From the information provided, determine how Kaufman calculated the \$107 million accumulated other comprehensive income in 2018.

E 18-2

FASB codification research; reporting other comprehensive income in shareholders' equity

• LO18-2

Companies are required to transfer "other comprehensive income" each period to shareholders' equity. The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on reporting other comprehensive income in shareholders' equity using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). What is the specific citation that describes the guidelines for reporting that component of shareholders' equity?
2. What is the specific citation that describes the guidelines for presenting accumulated other comprehensive income on the statement of shareholders' equity?



E 18-3

Earnings or OCI?

● LO18-2

Indicate by letter whether each of the items listed below most likely is reported in the income statement as Net Income (NI) or in the statement of comprehensive income as Other Comprehensive Income (OCI).

	Items
_____	1. Increase in the fair value of available-for-sale debt securities
_____	2. Gain on sale of land
_____	3. Loss on pension plan assets (actual return less than expected)
_____	4. Adjustment for foreign currency translation
_____	5. Increase in the fair value of investments in common stock securities
_____	6. Loss from revising an assumption related to a pension plan
_____	7. Loss on sale of patent
_____	8. Prior service cost in defined benefit pension plan
_____	9. Increase in the fair value of bonds outstanding due to change in general interest rates; fair value option
_____	10. Gain on postretirement plan assets (actual return more than expected)

E 18-4

Stock issued
for cash; Wright
Medical Group

● LO18-4

Real World Financials

The following is a news item reported by Reuters:

WASHINGTON, Jan 29 (Reuters)—**Wright Medical Group**, a maker of reconstructive implants for knees and hips, on Tuesday filed to sell 3 million shares of common stock.

In a filing with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, it said it plans to use the proceeds from the offering for general corporate purposes, working capital, research and development, and acquisitions.

After the sale there will be about 31.5 million shares outstanding in the Arlington, Tennessee-based company, according to the SEC filing.

Wright shares closed at \$17.15 on Nasdaq.

The common stock of Wright Medical Group has a par of \$0.01 per share.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry to record the sale of the shares assuming the price existing when the announcement was made and ignoring share issue costs.

E 18-5

Issuance of
shares; noncash
consideration

● LO18-4

During its first year of operations, Eastern Data Links Corporation entered into the following transactions relating to shareholders' equity. The articles of incorporation authorized the issue of 8 million common shares, \$1 par per share, and 1 million preferred shares, \$50 par per share.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record each transaction.

- | | |
|---------|---|
| Feb. 12 | Sold 2 million common shares, for \$9 per share. |
| 13 | Issued 40,000 common shares to attorneys in exchange for legal services. |
| 13 | Sold 80,000 of its common shares and 4,000 preferred shares for a total of \$945,000. |
| Nov. 15 | Issued 380,000 of its common shares in exchange for equipment for which the cash price was known to be \$3,688,000. |

E 18-6

Redeemable
shares

● LO18-4

Williams Industries has outstanding 30 million common shares, 20 million Class A shares, and 20 million Class B shares. Williams has the right but not the obligation to repurchase the Class A shares if a change in ownership of the voting common shares causes J. P. Williams, founder and CEO, to have less than 50% ownership. Williams has the unconditional obligation to repurchase the Class B shares upon the death of J. P. Williams.

Required:

Which, if any, of the shares should be reported in Williams's balance sheet as liabilities? Explain.

E 18-7

Share issue costs;
issuance

● LO18-4

ICOT Industries issued 15 million of its \$1 par common shares for \$424 million on April 11. Legal, promotional, and accounting services necessary to effect the sale cost \$2 million.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the shares.
2. Explain how recording the share issue costs differs from the way debt issue costs are recorded.

E 18-8

Reporting
preferred shares

● LO18-4, LO18-7

Ozark Distributing Company is primarily engaged in the wholesale distribution of consumer products in the Ozark Mountain regions. The following disclosure note appeared in the company's 2018 annual report:

Note 5. Convertible Preferred Stock (in part):

The Company has the following Convertible Preferred Stock outstanding as of September 2018:

Date of issuance:	June 17, 2015
Optionally redeemable beginning:	June 18, 2017
Par value (gross proceeds):	\$2,500,000
Number of shares:	100,000
Liquidation preference per share:	\$25.00
Conversion price per share:	\$30.31
Number of common shares in which to be converted:	82,481
Dividend rate:	6.785%

The Preferred Stock is convertible at any time by the holders into a number of shares of Ozark's common stock equal to the number of preferred shares being converted times a fraction equal to \$25.00 divided by the conversion price. The conversion prices for the Preferred Stock are subject to customary adjustments in the event of stock splits, stock dividends and certain other distributions on the Common Stock. Cumulative dividends for the Preferred Stock are payable in arrears, when, as, and if declared by the Board of Directors, on March 31, June 30, September 30, and December 31 of each year.

The Preferred Stock is optionally redeemable by the Company beginning on various dates, as listed above, at redemption prices equal to 112% of the liquidation preference. The redemption prices decrease 1% annually thereafter until the redemption price equals the liquidation preference, after which date it remains the liquidation preference.

Required:

1. What amount of dividends is paid annually to a preferred shareholder owning 100 shares of the Series A preferred stock?
2. If dividends are not paid in 2019 and 2020, but are paid in 2021, what amount of dividends will the shareholder receive?
3. If the investor chooses to convert the shares in 2019, how many shares of common stock will the investor receive for his/her 100 shares?
4. If Ozark chooses to redeem the shares on June 18, 2019, what amount will the investor be paid for his/her 100 shares?

E 18-9

New equity issues; offerings announcements

● LO18-4

When companies offer new equity security issues, they publicize the offerings in the financial press and on Internet sites. Assume the following were among the equity offerings reported in December 2018:

New Securities Issues**Equity**

American Materials Transfer Corporation (AMTC)—7.5 million common shares, \$.001 par, priced at \$13.546 each through underwriters led by Second Tennessee Bank N.A. and Morgan, Dunavant & Co., according to a syndicate official.

Proactive Solutions Inc. (PSI)—Offering of 9 million common shares, \$0.01 par, was priced at \$15.20 a share via lead manager Stanley Brothers, Inc., according to a syndicate official.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record the sale of both issues to underwriters. Ignore share issue costs.

E 18-10

Retirement of shares

● LO18-5

Borner Communications' articles of incorporation authorized the issuance of 130 million common shares. The transactions described below effected changes in Borner's outstanding shares. Prior to the transactions, Borner's shareholders' equity included the following:

Shareholders' Equity	(\$ in millions)
Common stock, 100 million shares at \$1 par	\$100
Paid-in capital—excess of par	300
Retained earnings	210

Required:

Assuming that Borner Communications retires shares it reacquires (restores their status to that of authorized but unissued shares), record the appropriate journal entry for each of the following transactions:

1. On January 7, 2018, Borner reacquired 2 million shares at \$5 per share.
2. On August 23, 2018, Borner reacquired 4 million shares at \$3.50 per share.
3. On July 25, 2019, Borner sold 3 million common shares at \$6 per share.

E 18-11

Retirement of shares

• LO18-5

In 2018, Borland Semiconductors entered into the transactions described below. In 2015, Borland had issued 170 million shares of its \$1 par common stock at \$34 per share.

Required:

Assuming that Borland retires shares it reacquires, record the appropriate journal entry for each of the following transactions:

1. On January 2, 2018, Borland reacquired 10 million shares at \$32.50 per share.
2. On March 3, 2018, Borland reacquired 10 million shares at \$36 per share.
3. On August 13, 2018, Borland sold 1 million shares at \$42 per share.
4. On December 15, 2018, Borland sold 2 million shares at \$36 per share.

E 18-12

Treasury stock

• LO18-5

In 2018, Western Transport Company entered into the treasury stock transactions described below. In 2016, Western Transport had issued 140 million shares of its \$1 par common stock at \$17 per share.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entry for each of the following transactions:

1. On January 23, 2018, Western Transport reacquired 10 million shares at \$20 per share.
2. On September 3, 2018, Western Transport sold 1 million treasury shares at \$21 per share.
3. On November 4, 2018, Western Transport sold 1 million treasury shares at \$18 per share.

E 18-13

Treasury stock; weighted-average and FIFO cost

• LO18-5

At December 31, 2017, the balance sheet of Meca International included the following shareholders' equity accounts:

Shareholders' Equity	(\$ in millions)
Common stock, 60 million shares at \$1 par	\$ 60
Paid-in capital—excess of par	300
Retained earnings	410

Required:

Assuming that Meca International views its share buybacks as treasury stock, record the appropriate journal entry for each of the following transactions:

1. On February 12, 2018, Meca reacquired 1 million common shares at \$13 per share.
2. On June 9, 2019, Meca reacquired 2 million common shares at \$10 per share.
3. On May 25, 2020, Meca sold 2 million treasury shares at \$15 per share. Determine cost as the weighted-average cost of treasury shares.
4. For the previous transaction, assume Meca determines the cost of treasury shares by the FIFO method.

E 18-14

Reporting shareholders' equity after share repurchase

• LO18-5

On two previous occasions, the management of Dennison and Company, Inc., repurchased some of its common shares. Between buyback transactions, the corporation issued common shares under its management incentive plan. Shown below is shareholders' equity following these share transactions, as reported by two different methods of accounting for reacquired shares.

(\$ in millions)	Method A	Method B
Shareholders' equity		
Paid-in capital:		
Preferred stock, \$10 par	\$ 150	\$ 150
Common stock, \$1 par	200	197
Additional paid-in capital	1,204	1,201
Retained earnings	2,994	2,979
Less: Treasury stock	(21)	
Total shareholders' equity	\$4,527	\$4,527

Required:

1. Infer from the presentation which method of accounting for reacquired shares is represented by each of the two columns.
2. Explain why presentation formats are different and why some account balances are different for the two methods.

E 18-15

Change from
treasury stock to
retired stock

● LO18-5

In keeping with a modernization of corporate statutes in its home state, UMC Corporation decided in 2018 to discontinue accounting for reacquired shares as treasury stock. Instead, shares repurchased will be viewed as having been retired, reassuming the status of unissued shares. As part of the change, treasury shares held were reclassified as retired stock. At December 31, 2017, UMC's balance sheet reported the following shareholders' equity:

	(\$ in millions)
Common stock, \$1 par	\$ 200
Paid-in capital—excess of par	800
Retained earnings	956
Treasury stock (4 million shares at cost)	(25)
<i>Total shareholders' equity</i>	<u><u>\$1,931</u></u>

Required:

Identify the type of accounting change this decision represents, and prepare the journal entry to effect the reclassification of treasury shares as retired shares.

E 18-16

Stock buyback;
Ford press
announcement

● LO18-5

Real World Financials

The following excerpt is from an article reported in an online issue of **Bloomberg**.

(Bloomberg) **Ford Motor Co.** (F) said it will repurchase \$1.8 billion of its shares to reduce dilution from recent stock grants to executives.

The par amount per share for Ford's common stock is \$0.01. Paid-in capital—excess of par is \$5.39 per share on average. The market price was \$16.

Required:

1. Suppose Ford reacquires 112 million shares through repurchase on the open market at \$16 per share. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the purchase. Ford considers the shares it buys back to be treasury stock.
2. Suppose Ford considers the shares it buys back to be retired rather than treated as treasury stock. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the purchase.
3. What does the company mean by saying that the buyback will serve “to offset dilution from executive compensation?”

E 18-17

Transactions
affecting retained
earnings

● LO18-6, LO18-7

Shown below in T-account format are the changes affecting the retained earnings of Brenner-Jude Corporation during 2018. At January 1, 2018, the corporation had outstanding 105 million common shares, \$1 par per share.

Retained Earnings (\$ in millions)		
	90	Beginning balance
Retirement of 5 million common shares for \$22 million	2	
	88	Net income for the year
Declaration and payment of a \$0.33 per share cash dividend	33	
Declaration and distribution of a 4% stock dividend	20	
	123	Ending balance

Required:

1. From the information provided by the account changes, you should be able to recreate the transactions that affected Brenner-Jude's retained earnings during 2018. Prepare the journal entries that Brenner-Jude must have recorded during the year for these transactions.
2. Prepare a statement of retained earnings for Brenner-Jude for the year ended 2018.

E 18-18

Effect of cumulative, nonparticipating preferred stock on dividends—3 years

• LO18-7

The shareholders' equity of ILP Industries includes the items shown below. The board of directors of ILP declared cash dividends of \$8 million, \$20 million, and \$150 million in its first three years of operation—2018, 2019, and 2020, respectively.

	(\$ in millions)
Common stock	\$100
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common	980
Preferred stock, 8%	200
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred	555

Required:

Determine the amount of dividends to be paid to preferred and common shareholders in each of the three years, assuming that the preferred stock is cumulative and nonparticipating.

	Preferred	Common
2018		
2019		
2020		

E 18-19

Stock dividend

• LO18-8

The shareholders' equity of Core Technologies Company on June 30, 2017, included the following:

Common stock, \$1 par; authorized, 8 million shares; issued and outstanding, 3 million shares	\$ 3,000,000
Paid-in capital—excess of par	12,000,000
Retained earnings	14,000,000

On April 1, 2018, the board of directors of Core Technologies declared a 10% stock dividend on common shares, to be distributed on June 1. The market price of Core Technologies' common stock was \$30 on April 1, 2018, and \$40 on June 1, 2018.

Required:

Prepare the journal entry to record the declaration and distribution of the stock dividend on the declaration date.

E 18-20

Stock split;
Hanmi Financial Corporation

• LO18-8

Real World Financials

Hanmi Financial Corporation is the parent company of Hanmi Bank. The company's stock split was announced in the following wire:

LOS ANGELES Jan. 20 BUSINESS WIRE —Hanmi Financial Corporation (Nasdaq), announced that the Board of Directors has approved a two-for-one stock split, to be effected in the form of a 100 percent common stock dividend. Hanmi Financial Corporation stockholders of record at the close of business on January 31 will receive one additional share of common stock for every share of common stock then held. Distribution of additional shares issued as a result of the split is expected to occur on or about February 15.

At the time of the stock split, 24.5 million shares of common stock, \$.001 par per share, were outstanding.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry, if any, that Hanmi recorded at the time of the stock split.
2. What is the probable motivation for declaring the 2-for-1 stock split to be effected by a dividend payable in shares of common stock?
3. If Hanmi's stock price had been \$36 at the time of the split, what would be its approximate value after the split (other things equal)?

E 18-21

Cash in lieu of fractional share rights

• LO18-8

Douglas McDonald Company's balance sheet included the following shareholders' equity accounts at December 31, 2017:

	(\$ in millions)
Paid-in capital:	
Common stock, 900 million shares at \$1 par	\$ 900
Paid-in capital—excess of par	15,800
Retained earnings	14,888
Total shareholders' equity	\$31,588

On March 16, 2018, a 4% common stock dividend was declared and distributed. The market value of the common stock was \$21 per share. Fractional share rights represented 2 million equivalent whole shares. Cash was paid in lieu of the fractional share rights.

Required:

1. What is a fractional share right?
2. Prepare the appropriate entries for the declaration and distribution of the stock dividend.

E 18-22

FASB codification research

- LO18-1, LO18-5, LO18-8



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

1. Requirements to disclose within the financial statements the pertinent rights and privileges of the various securities outstanding.
2. Requirement to record a “small” stock dividend at the fair value of the shares issued.
3. Requirement to exclude from the determination of net income gains and losses on transactions in a company’s own stock.

E 18-23

Transactions affecting retained earnings

- LO18-6 through LO18-8

The balance sheet of Consolidated Paper, Inc., included the following shareholders’ equity accounts at December 31, 2017:

	(\$ in millions)
Paid-in capital:	
Preferred stock, 8.8%, 90,000 shares at \$1 par	\$ 90,000
Common stock, 364,000 shares at \$1 par	364,000
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred	1,437,000
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common	2,574,000
Retained earnings	9,735,000
Treasury stock, at cost; 4,000 common shares	(44,000)
Total shareholders’ equity	\$14,156,000

During 2018, several events and transactions affected the retained earnings of Consolidated Paper.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entries for these events:
 - a. On March 3, the board of directors declared a property dividend of 240,000 shares of Leasco International common stock that Consolidated Paper had purchased in January as an investment (book value: \$700,000). The investment shares had a fair value of \$3 per share and were distributed March 31 to shareholders of record March 15.
 - b. On May 3, a 5-for-4 stock split was declared and distributed. The stock split was effected in the form of a 25% stock dividend. The market value of the \$1 par common stock was \$11 per share.
 - c. On July 5, a 2% common stock dividend was declared and distributed. The market value of the common stock was \$11 per share.
 - d. On December 1, the board of directors declared the 8.8% cash dividend on the 90,000 preferred shares, payable on December 28 to shareholders of record December 20.
 - e. On December 1, the board of directors declared a cash dividend of \$0.50 per share on its common shares, payable on December 28 to shareholders of record December 20.
2. Prepare the shareholders’ equity section of the balance sheet for Consolidated Paper, Inc., at December 31, 2018. Net income for the year was \$810,000.

E 18-24

Profitability ratio

- LO18-1

Comparative balance sheets for Softech Canvas Goods for 2018 and 2017 are shown below. Softech pays no dividends and instead reinvests all earnings for future growth.

Comparative Balance Sheets (\$ in thousands)		
	December 31	
	2018	2017
Assets:		
Cash	\$ 50	\$ 40
Accounts receivable	100	120
Short-term investments	50	40
Inventory	200	140
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	600	550
	<u>\$1,000</u>	<u>\$890</u>

(continued)

(concluded)

Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity:

Current liabilities	\$ 240	\$210
Bonds payable	160	160
Paid-in capital	400	400
Retained earnings	200	120
	<u>\$1,000</u>	<u>\$890</u>

Required:

1. Determine the return on shareholders' equity for 2018.
2. What does the ratio measure?

E 18–25

IFRS; equity terminology

LO18–9

**IFRS**

Indicate by letter whether each of the terms or phrases listed below is more associated with financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP (**U**) or International Financial Reporting Standards (**I**).

Terms and phrases

1. Common stock
2. Preference shares
3. Liabilities often listed before equity in the balance sheet (statement of financial position)
4. Asset revaluation reserve
5. Accumulated other comprehensive income
6. Share premium
7. Equity often listed before liabilities in the balance sheet (statement of financial position)
8. Translation reserve
9. Ordinary shares
10. Paid-in capital—excess of par
11. Net gains (losses) on investments—AOCI
12. Investment revaluation reserve
13. Preferred stock

Problems**P 18–1**

Various stock transactions; correction of journal entries

LO18–4

**IFRS****Part A**

During its first year of operations, the McCollum Corporation entered into the following transactions relating to shareholders' equity. The corporation was authorized to issue 100 million common shares, \$1 par per share.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record each transaction.

- Jan. 9 Issued 40 million common shares for \$20 per share.
 Mar. 11 Issued 5,000 shares in exchange for custom-made equipment. McCollum's shares have traded recently on the stock exchange at \$20 per share.

Part B

A new staff accountant for the McCollum Corporation recorded the following journal entries during the second year of operations. McCollum retires shares that it reacquires (restores their status to that of authorized but unsold shares).

			(\$ in millions)
Jan. 12	Land.....	2	
	Paid-in capital—donation of land		2
Sept. 1	Common stock	2	
	Retained earnings.....	48	
	Cash		50
Dec. 1	Cash	26	
	Common stock		1
	Gain on sale of previously issued shares.....		25

Required:

Prepare the journal entries that should have been recorded for each of the transactions.

P 18-2

Share buyback—
comparison of
retirement and
treasury stock
treatment

● LO18-5

The shareholders' equity section of the balance sheet of TNL Systems Inc. included the following accounts at December 31, 2017:

Shareholders' Equity	(\$ in millions)
Common stock, 240 million shares at \$1 par	\$ 240
Paid-in capital—excess of par	1,680
Paid-in capital—share repurchase	1
Retained earnings	1,100

Required:

- During 2018, TNL Systems reacquired shares of its common stock and later sold shares in two separate transactions. Prepare the entries for both the purchase and subsequent resale of the shares assuming the shares are (a) retired and (b) viewed as treasury stock.
 - On February 5, 2018, TNL Systems purchased 6 million shares at \$10 per share.
 - On July 9, 2018, the corporation sold 2 million shares at \$12 per share.
 - On November 14, 2020, the corporation sold 2 million shares at \$7 per share.
- Prepare the shareholders' equity section of TNL Systems' balance sheet at December 31, 2020, comparing the two approaches. Assume all net income earned in 2018–2020 was distributed to shareholders as cash dividends.

P 18-3

Reacquired
shares—
comparison of
retired shares and
treasury shares

● LO18-5



National Supply's shareholders' equity included the following accounts at December 31, 2017:

Shareholders' Equity	(\$ in millions)
Common stock, 6 million shares at \$1 par	\$ 6,000,000
Paid-in capital—excess of par	30,000,000
Retained earnings	86,500,000

Required:

- National Supply reacquired shares of its common stock in two separate transactions and later sold shares. Prepare the entries for each of the transactions under each of two separate assumptions: the shares are (a) retired and (b) accounted for as treasury stock.

February 15, 2018	Reacquired 300,000 shares at \$8 per share.
February 17, 2019	Reacquired 300,000 shares at \$5.50 per share.
November 9, 2020	Sold 200,000 shares at \$7 per share (assume FIFO cost).
- Prepare the shareholders' equity section of National Supply's balance sheet at December 31, 2020, assuming the shares are (a) retired and (b) accounted for as treasury stock. Net income was \$14 million in 2018, \$15 million in 2019, and \$16 million in 2020. No dividends were paid during the three-year period.

P 18-4

Statement of
retained earnings

● LO18-5, LO18-7

Comparative statements of retained earnings for Renn-Dever Corporation were reported in its 2018 annual report as follows.

RENN-DEVER CORPORATION			
Statements of Retained Earnings			
For the Years Ended December 31			
	2018	2017	2016
Balance at beginning of year	\$6,794,292	\$5,464,052	\$5,624,552
Net income (loss)	3,308,700	2,240,900	(160,500)
Deductions:			
Stock dividend (34,900 shares)	242,000		
Common shares retired (110,000 shares)		212,660	
Common stock cash dividends	889,950	698,000	0
Balance at end of year	\$8,971,042	\$6,794,292	\$5,464,052

At December 31, 2015, common shares consisted of the following:

Common stock, 1,855,000 shares at \$1 par	\$1,855,000
Paid-in capital—excess of par	7,420,000

Required:

Infer from the reports the events and transactions that affected Renn-Dever Corporation's retained earnings during 2016, 2017, and 2018. Prepare the journal entries that reflect those events and transactions.

P 18-5

Shareholders' equity transactions; statement of shareholders' equity

LO18-6 through LO18-8



Listed below are the transactions that affected the shareholders' equity of Branch-Rickie Corporation during the period 2018–2020. At December 31, 2017, the corporation's accounts included:

	(\$ in thousands)
Common stock, 105 million shares at \$1 par	\$105,000
Paid-in capital—excess of par	630,000
Retained earnings	970,000

- November 1, 2018, the board of directors declared a cash dividend of \$0.80 per share on its common shares, payable to shareholders of record November 15, to be paid December 1.
- On March 1, 2019, the board of directors declared a property dividend consisting of corporate bonds of Warner Corporation that Branch-Rickie was holding as an investment. The bonds had a fair value of \$1.6 million, but were purchased two years previously for \$1.3 million. Because they were intended to be held to maturity, the bonds had not been previously written up. The property dividend was payable to shareholders of record March 13, to be distributed April 5.
- On July 12, 2019, the corporation declared and distributed a 5% common stock dividend (when the market value of the common stock was \$21 per share). Cash was paid in lieu of fractional shares representing 250,000 equivalent whole shares.
- On November 1, 2019, the board of directors declared a cash dividend of \$0.80 per share on its common shares, payable to shareholders of record November 15, to be paid December 1.
- On January 15, 2020, the board of directors declared and distributed a 3-for-2 stock split effected in the form of a 50% stock dividend when the market value of the common stock was \$22 per share.
- On November 1, 2020, the board of directors declared a cash dividend of \$0.65 per share on its common shares, payable to shareholders of record November 15, to be paid December 1.

Required:

- Prepare the journal entries that Branch-Rickie recorded during the three-year period for these transactions.
- Prepare comparative statements of shareholders' equity for Branch-Rickie for the three-year period (\$ in 000s). Net income was \$330 million, \$395 million, and \$455 million for 2018, 2019, and 2020, respectively.

P 18-6

Statement of shareholders' equity

LO18-1, LO18-3 through LO18-8



Comparative statements of shareholders' equity for Anaconda International Corporation were reported as follows for the fiscal years ending December 31, 2018, 2019, and 2020.

ANACONDA INTERNATIONAL CORPORATION
Statements of Shareholders' Equity
For the Years Ended Dec. 31, 2018, 2019, and 2020
(\$ in millions)

	Preferred Stock \$10 par	Common Stock \$1 par	Additional Paid-In Capital	Retained Earnings	Total Shareholders' Equity
Balance at January 1, 2018		55	495	1,878	2,428
Sale of preferred shares	10		470		480
Sale of common shares		7	63		70
Cash dividend, preferred				(1)	(1)
Cash dividend, common				(16)	(16)
Net income				290	290
Balance at December 31, 2018	10	62	1,028	2,151	3,251
Retirement of shares		(3)	(27)	(20)	(50)
Cash dividend, preferred				(1)	(1)
Cash dividend, common				(20)	(20)
3-for-2 split effected in the form of a dividend	5		(5)		
Net income				380	380
Balance at December 31, 2019	15	59	996	2,490	3,560
Common stock dividend		6	59	(65)	
Cash dividend, preferred				(1)	(1)
Cash dividend, common				(22)	(22)
Net income				412	412
Balance at December 31, 2020	15	65	1,055	2,814	3,949

Required:

1. Infer from the statements the events and transactions that affected Anaconda International Corporation's shareholders' equity during 2018, 2019, and 2020. Prepare the journal entries that reflect those events and transactions.
2. Prepare the shareholders' equity section of Anaconda's comparative balance sheets at December 31, 2020 and 2019.

P 18-7

Reporting shareholders' equity; comprehensive income; Cisco Systems

- LO18-1 through LO18-4

Real World Financials

The following is a portion of the Statement of Shareholders' Equity from **Cisco Systems'** January 23, 2016, quarterly report.

CISCO SYSTEMS, INC.					
Consolidated Statements of Equity (in part)					
(\$ in millions)	Shares of Common Stock	Common Stock and Additional Paid-In Capital	Retained Earnings	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income	Total Shareholder' Equity
Balance at July 25, 2015	5,085	\$43,592	\$16,045	\$ 61	\$59,698
Net income			5,577		5,577
Other comprehensive income (loss)				(868)	(868)
Issuance of common stock	76	701			701
Repurchase of common stock	(93)	(801)	(1,668)		(2,469)
Shares repurchased for tax withholdings on vesting of restricted stock units	(16)	(412)			(412)
Cash dividends declared (\$0.42 per common share)			(2,133)		(2,133)
Tax effects from employee stock incentive plans		28			28
Share-based compensation expense		706			706
Purchase acquisitions		43			43
Balance at January 23, 2016	5,052	\$43,857	\$17,821	\$(807)	\$60,871

Required:

1. What is the purpose of the statement of shareholders' equity?
2. How does Cisco account for its share buybacks?
3. For its share buybacks in the period shown, was the price Cisco paid for the shares repurchased more or less than the average price at which Cisco had sold the shares previously? Reconstruct the journal entry Cisco used to record the buyback. The par amount of Cisco's shares is \$0.001.
4. What is comprehensive income? What is other comprehensive income?
5. What caused the change in Cisco's comprehensive income for the period shown? What was the amount of Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) that Cisco reported in its January 23, 2016, balance sheet? Be specific.

P 18-8

Share issue costs; issuance; dividends; early retirement

- LO18-3, LO18-4, LO18-7

During its first year of operations, Cupola Fan Corporation issued 30,000 of \$1 par Class B shares for \$385,000 on June 30, 2018. Share issue costs were \$1,500. One year from the issue date (July 1, 2019), the corporation retired 10% of the shares for \$39,500.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the shares.
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the declaration of a \$2 per share dividend on December 1, 2018.
3. Prepare the journal entry to record the payment of the dividend on December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare the journal entry to record the retirement of the shares.

(Note: You may wish to compare your solution to this problem with that of P 14-16, which deals with parallel issues of debt issue costs and the retirement of debt.)

P 18-9

Effect of preferred stock characteristics on dividends

• LO18-7

The shareholders' equity of Kramer Industries includes the data shown below. During 2019, cash dividends of \$150 million were declared. Dividends were not declared in 2017 or 2018.

	(\$ in millions)
Common stock	\$200
Paid-in capital—excess of par, common	800
Preferred stock, 10%, nonparticipating	100
Paid-in capital—excess of par, preferred	270

Required:

Determine the amount of dividends payable to preferred shareholders and to common shareholders under each of the following two assumptions regarding the characteristics of the preferred stock.

Assumption A —The preferred stock is noncumulative.

Assumption B —The preferred stock is cumulative.

P 18-10

Transactions affecting retained earnings

• LO18-4 through LO18-8

Indicate by letter whether each of the transactions listed below increases (**I**), decreases (**D**), or has no effect (**N**) on retained earnings. Assume the shareholders' equity of the transacting company includes only common stock, paid-in capital—excess of par, and retained earnings at the time of each transaction. (Some transactions have two possible answers. Indicate both.)

	Transactions
N	1. Sale of common stock
_____	2. Purchase of treasury stock at a cost <i>less</i> than the original issue price
_____	3. Purchase of treasury stock at a cost <i>greater</i> than the original issue price
_____	4. Declaration of a property dividend
_____	5. Sale of treasury stock for <i>more</i> than cost
_____	6. Sale of treasury stock for <i>less</i> than cost
_____	7. Net income for the year
_____	8. Declaration of a cash dividend
_____	9. Payment of a previously declared cash dividend
_____	10. Issuance of convertible bonds for cash
_____	11. Declaration and distribution of a 5% stock dividend
_____	12. Retirement of common stock at a cost <i>less</i> than the original issue price
_____	13. Retirement of common stock at a cost <i>greater</i> than the original issue price
_____	14. A stock split effected in the form of a stock dividend
_____	15. A stock split in which the par value per share is reduced (not effected in the form of a stock dividend)
_____	16. A net loss for the year

P 18-11

Stock dividends received on investments; integrative problem

• LO18-8

Ellis Transport Company acquired 1.2 million shares of stock in L&K Corporation at \$44 per share. They are classified by Ellis as "available for sale." Ellis sold 200,000 shares at \$46, received a 10% stock dividend, and then later in the year sold another 100,000 shares at \$43.

Hint: There is no entry for the stock dividend, but a new investment per share must be calculated for use later when the shares are sold.

Required:

Prepare journal entries to record these transactions.

P 18-12

Various shareholders' equity topics; comprehensive

• LO18-1, LO18-4 through LO18-8

Part A

In late 2017, the Nicklaus Corporation was formed. The corporate charter authorizes the issuance of 5,000,000 shares of common stock carrying a \$1 par value, and 1,000,000 shares of \$5 par value, noncumulative, nonparticipating preferred stock. On January 2, 2018, 3,000,000 shares of the common stock are issued in exchange for cash at an average price of \$10 per share. Also on January 2, all 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock are issued at \$20 per share.

Required:

1. Prepare journal entries to record these transactions.
2. Prepare the shareholders' equity section of the Nicklaus balance sheet as of March 31, 2018. (Assume net income for the first quarter 2018 was \$1,000,000.)



**Part B**

During 2018, the Nicklaus Corporation participated in three treasury stock transactions:

- On June 30, 2018, the corporation reacquires 200,000 shares for the treasury at a price of \$12 per share.
- On July 31, 2018, 50,000 treasury shares are reissued at \$15 per share.
- On September 30, 2018, 50,000 treasury shares are reissued at \$10 per share.

Required:

- Prepare journal entries to record these transactions.
- Prepare the Nicklaus Corporation shareholders' equity section as it would appear in a balance sheet prepared at September 30, 2018. (Assume net income for the second and third quarter was \$3,000,000.)

Part C

On October 1, 2018, Nicklaus Corporation receives permission to replace its \$1 par value common stock (5,000,000 shares authorized, 3,000,000 shares issued, and 2,900,000 shares outstanding) with a new common stock issue having a \$0.50 par value. Since the new par value is one-half the amount of the old, this represents a 2-for-1 stock split. That is, the shareholders will receive two shares of the \$0.50 par stock in exchange for each share of the \$1 par stock they own. The \$1 par stock will be collected and destroyed by the issuing corporation.

On November 1, 2018, the Nicklaus Corporation declares a \$0.05 per share cash dividend on common stock and a \$0.25 per share cash dividend on preferred stock. Payment is scheduled for December 1, 2018, to shareholders of record on November 15, 2018.

On December 2, 2018, the Nicklaus Corporation declares a 1% stock dividend payable on December 28, 2018, to shareholders of record on December 14. At the date of declaration, the common stock was selling in the open market at \$10 per share. The dividend will result in 58,000 ($0.01 \times 5,800,000$) additional shares being issued to shareholders.

Required:

- Prepare journal entries to record the declaration and payment of these stock and cash dividends.
- Prepare the December 31, 2018, shareholders' equity section of the balance sheet for the Nicklaus Corporation. (Assume net income for the fourth quarter was \$2,500,000.)
- Prepare a statement of shareholders' equity for Nicklaus Corporation for 2018.

P 18-13

Quasi
reorganization
(based on
Appendix 18)

● Appendix

A new CEO was hired to revive the floundering Champion Chemical Corporation. The company had endured operating losses for several years, but confidence was emerging that better times were ahead. The board of directors and shareholders approved a quasi reorganization for the corporation. The reorganization included devaluing inventory for obsolescence by \$105 million and increasing land by \$5 million. Immediately prior to the restatement, at December 31, 2018, Champion Chemical Corporation's balance sheet appeared as follows (in condensed form):

**CHAMPION CHEMICAL CORPORATION****Balance Sheet****At December 31, 2018**

(\$ in millions)

Cash	\$ 20
Receivables	40
Inventory	230
Land	40
Buildings and equipment (net)	90
	<u>\$ 420</u>
Liabilities	\$ 240
Common stock (320 million shares at \$1 par)	320
Additional paid-in capital	60
Retained earnings (deficit)	(200)
	<u>\$ 420</u>

Required:

- Prepare the journal entries appropriate to record the quasi reorganization on January 1, 2019.
- Prepare a balance sheet as it would appear immediately after the restatement.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Real World

Case 18-1

Initial public offering of common stock; Dolby Laboratories

• LO18-4

Real World Financials

Ray Dolby started **Dolby Laboratories** and since then has been a leader in the entertainment industry and consumer electronics. Closely held since its founding in 1965, Dolby decided to go public. Here's an AP news report:

DOLBY'S IPO EXPECTED TO PLAY SWEET MUSIC—The initial public offering market is hoping for a big bang this week from Dolby Laboratories Inc. The San Francisco company, whose sound systems and double-D logo are ubiquitous in the movie industry as well as in consumer electronics, plans to sell 27.5 million shares for \$13.50 to \$15.50 each. Founded by Cambridge-trained scientist Ray Dolby 39 years ago, the company started out manufacturing noise-reduction equipment for the music industry that eliminated the background "hiss" on recordings, and has since expanded to encompass everything from digital audio systems to Dolby Surround sound. The company's IPO, which is lead-managed by underwriters Morgan Stanley and Goldman Sachs Group Inc., is expected to do well not only because of its brand recognition, but also because of its strong financials. (AP)

Required:

1. Assuming the shares are issued at the midpoint of the price range indicated, how much capital did the IPO raise for Dolby Laboratories before any underwriting discount and offering expenses?
2. If the par amount is \$.01 per share, what journal entry did Dolby use to record the sale?

Analysis

Case 18-2

Statement of shareholders' equity

• LO18-1, LO18-3, LO18-6, LO18-7

The shareholders' equity portion of the balance sheet of Sessel's Department Stores, Inc., a large regional specialty retailer, is as follows:

SESSEL'S DEPARTMENT STORES, INC. Comparative Balance Sheets Shareholders' Equity Section		
(\$ in thousands, except per share amounts)	Dec. 31, 2019	Dec. 31, 2018
Shareholders' Equity		
Preferred stock—\$1 par value; 20,000 total shares authorized, Series A—600 shares authorized, issued, and outstanding,	\$ 57,700	\$ —
\$50 per share liquidation preference		
Series B—33 shares authorized, no shares outstanding		
Common stock—\$0.10 par; 200,000 shares authorized, 19,940 and 18,580 shares issued and outstanding at Dec. 31, 2019, and Dec. 31, 2018, respectively	1,994	1,858
Additional paid-in capital	227,992	201,430
Retained income	73,666	44,798
Total shareholders' equity	\$361,352	\$248,086

Disclosures elsewhere in Sessel's annual report revealed the following changes in shareholders' equity accounts for 2019, 2018, 2017:

2019:

1. The only changes in retained earnings during 2019 were preferred dividends on preferred stock of \$3,388,000 and net income.
2. The preferred stock is convertible. During the year, 6,592 shares were issued. All shares were converted into 320,000 shares of common stock. No gain or loss was recorded on the conversion.
3. Common shares were issued in a public offering and upon the exercise of stock options. On the statement of shareholders' equity, Sessel's reports these two items on a single line entitled: "Issuance of shares."

2018:

1. Net income: \$12,126,000.
2. Issuance of common stock: 5,580,000 shares at \$112,706,000.

2017:

1. Net income: \$13,494,000.
2. Issuance of common stock: 120,000 shares at \$826,000.

Required:

From these disclosures, prepare comparative statements of shareholders' equity for 2019, 2018, and 2017.

Communication
Case 18–3

IFRS; Is preferred stock debt or equity?; Group interaction

LO18–1, LO18–9



An unsettled question in accounting for stock is this: Should preferred stock be recognized as a liability, or should it be considered equity? Under International Financial Reporting Standards, preferred stock (preference shares) often is reported as debt with the dividends reported in the income statement as interest expense. Under U.S. GAAP, that is the case only for “mandatorily redeemable” preferred stock.

Two opposing viewpoints are:

View 1: Preferred stock should be considered equity.

View 2: Preferred stock should be reported as a liability.

In considering this question, focus on conceptual issues regarding the practicable and theoretically appropriate treatment, unconstrained by GAAP.

Required:

1. Which view do you favor? Develop a list of arguments in support of your view prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.
2. In class, your instructor will pair you (and everyone else) with a classmate (who also has independently developed an argument).
 - a. You will be given three minutes to argue your view to your partner. Your partner likewise will be given three minutes to argue his or her view to you. During these three-minute presentations, the listening partner is not permitted to speak.
 - b. Then after each person has had a turn attempting to convince his or her partner, the two partners will have a three-minute discussion in which they will decide which view is more convincing and arguments will be merged into a single view for each pair.
3. After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each of the two views will be selected by the instructor. Each spokesperson will field arguments from the class in support of that view's position and list the arguments on the board. The class then will discuss the merits of the two lists of arguments and attempt to reach a consensus view, though a consensus is not necessary.

Research**Case 18–4**

FASB codification; comprehensive income; locate and extract relevant information and authoritative support for a financial reporting issue; integrative; Cisco Systems

LO18–2



Real World Financials

Titan Networking became a public company through an IPO (initial public offering) two weeks ago. You are looking forward to the challenges of being assistant controller for a publicly owned corporation. One such challenge came in the form of a memo in this morning's in-box. “We need to start reporting comprehensive income in our financials,” the message from your boss said. “Do some research on that, will you? That concept didn't exist when I went to school.” In response, you sought out the financial statements of **Cisco Systems**, the networking industry leader. The following are excerpts from disclosure notes from Cisco's 2015 annual report:

	Years Ended		
	July 25, 2015	July 26, 2014	July 27, 2013
Net income	\$8,981	\$7,853	\$9,983
Other comprehensive income (loss):			
Available-for-sale investments:			
Change in net unrealized gains, net of tax	(12)	233	(6)
Net gains reclassified into earnings, net of tax	(100)	(189)	(31)
	(112)	44	(37)
Cash flow hedging instruments:			
Change in unrealized gains and losses, net of tax	(158)	48	73
Net (gains) losses reclassified into earnings	154	(68)	(12)
	(4)	(20)	61
Net change in cumulative translation adjustment and actuarial gains and losses, net of tax	(498)	44	(84)
Other comprehensive income (loss)	(614)	68	(60)
Comprehensive income	<u>\$8,367</u>	<u>\$7,921</u>	<u>\$9,923</u>

Required:

1. Locate the financial statements of Cisco at www.sec.gov or Cisco's website. Search the 2015 annual report for information about how Cisco accounts for comprehensive income. What does Cisco report in its balance sheet regarding comprehensive income?

2. Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Identify the specific citation from the authoritative literature that describes the two alternative formats for reporting comprehensive income.
3. What is comprehensive income? How does it differ from net income? Where is it reported in a balance sheet?
4. One component of Other comprehensive income for Cisco is “net unrealized gains on investments.” What does this mean? From the information Cisco’s financial statements provide, determine how the company calculated the \$61 million accumulated other comprehensive income at the end of fiscal 2015.
5. What might be possible causes for the “Other” component of Cisco’s Other comprehensive income?

Judgment Case 18–5

Treasury stock;
stock split; cash
dividends; Alcoa

- LO18–5 through
LO18–8

Real World Financials

Alcoa is the world’s leading producer of primary aluminum, fabricated aluminum, and alumina. The following is a press release from the company:

ALCOA ANNOUNCES 33% INCREASE IN BASE DIVIDEND, 2-FOR-1 STOCK SPLIT

PITTSBURGH—Alcoa today announced that its Board of Directors approved a base quarterly dividend increase of 33.3%.

Alcoa’s announcement indicated that the new quarterly dividend would be \$0.25 per share. It also stated that the Board of Directors declared a two-for-one stock split and reaffirmed its commitment to a share repurchase program.

Required:

1. What are the two primary reporting alternatives Alcoa has in accounting for the repurchase of its shares? What would be the effect of the optional courses of action on total shareholders’ equity? Explain. What would be the effect of the optional courses of action on how stock would be presented in Alcoa’s balance sheet? If the shares are later resold for an amount greater than cost, how should Alcoa account for the sale?
2. What are the two primary courses of action Alcoa has in accounting for the stock split, and how would the choice affect Alcoa’s shareholders’ equity? Why?
3. How should Alcoa account for the cash dividend, and how would it affect Alcoa’s balance sheet? Why?

Communication Case 18–6

Issuance of
shares; share
issue costs;
prepare a report

- LO18–4

You are the newest member of the staff of Brinks & Company, a medium-size investment management firm. You are supervised by Les Kramer, an employee of two years. Les has a reputation as being technically sound but has a noticeable gap in his accounting education. Knowing you are knowledgeable about accounting issues, he requested you provide him with a synopsis of accounting for share issue costs.

“I thought the cost of issuing securities is recorded separately and expensed over time,” he stated in a handwritten memo. “But I don’t see that for IBR’s underwriting expenses. What gives?”

He apparently was referring to a disclosure note on a page of a prospective investee’s annual report, photocopied and attached to his memo. To raise funds for expansion, the company sold additional shares of its \$0.10 par common stock. The following disclosure note appeared in the company’s most recent annual report:

NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Note 10—Stock Transactions (in part)

In February and March, the Company sold 2,395,000 shares of Common Stock at \$22.25 per share in a public offering. Net proceeds to the Company were approximately \$50.2 million after the underwriting discount and offering expenses.

Required:

Write a formal memo to your supervisor. Briefly explain how share issue costs are accounted for and how that accounting differs from that of debt issue costs. To make sure your explanation is understood in context of the footnote, include in your memo the following:

- a. At what total amount did the shares sell to the public? How is the difference between this amount and the \$50.2 million net proceeds accounted for?
- b. The appropriate journal entry to record the sale of the shares.

Analysis Case 18–7

Analyzing
financial
statements; price-
earnings ratio;
dividend payout
ratio

- LO18–1

AGF Foods Company is a large, primarily domestic, consumer foods company involved in the manufacture, distribution, and sale of a variety of food products. Industry averages are derived from Troy’s *The Almanac of Business and Industrial Financial Ratios* and Dun and Bradstreet’s *Industry Norms and Key Business Ratios*. Following are the 2018 and 2017 comparative income statements and balance sheets for AGF. The market price of AGF’s common stock is \$47 during 2018. (The financial data we use are from actual financial statements of a well-known corporation, but the company name used in our illustration is fictitious and the numbers and dates have been modified slightly to disguise the company’s identity.)

Profitability is the key to a company’s long-run survival. Profitability measures focus on a company’s ability to provide an adequate return relative to resources devoted to company operations.

AGF FOODS COMPANY
Years Ended December 31, 2018 and 2017

(\$ in millions)	2018	2017
Comparative Income Statements		
Net sales	\$ 6,440	\$ 5,800
Cost of goods sold	(3,667)	(3,389)
Gross profit	2,773	2,411
Operating expenses	(1,916)	(1,629)
Operating income	857	782
Interest expense	(54)	(53)
Income from operations before tax	803	729
Income taxes	(316)	(287)
Net income	\$ 487	\$ 442
Average shares outstanding	181 million	181 million
Comparative Balance Sheets		
Assets		
Current assets:		
Cash	\$ 48	\$ 142
Accounts receivable	347	320
Marketable securities	358	—
Inventories	914	874
Prepaid expenses	212	154
Total current assets	1,879	1,490
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	2,592	2,291
Intangibles (net)	800	843
Other assets	74	60
Total assets	\$ 5,345	\$ 4,684
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 254	\$ 276
Accrued liabilities	493	496
Notes payable	518	115
Current portion of long-term debt	208	54
Total current liabilities	1,473	941
Long-term debt	534	728
Deferred income taxes	407	344
Total liabilities	2,414	2,013
Shareholders' equity:		
Common stock, \$1 par	180	180
Additional paid-in capital	21	63
Retained earnings	2,730	2,428
Total shareholders' equity	2,931	2,671
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$ 5,345	\$ 4,684

Required:

1. Calculate the return on shareholders' equity for AGF. The average return for the stocks listed on the New York Stock Exchange in a comparable period was 18.8%. What information does your calculation provide an investor?
2. Calculate AGF's earnings per share and earnings-price ratio. The average return for the stocks listed on the New York Stock Exchange in a comparable time period was 5.4%. What does your calculation indicate about AGF's earnings?

Ethics Case 18–8

The Swiss label maker; value of shares issued for equipment

Bricker Graphics is a privately held company specializing in package labels. Representatives of the firm have just returned from Switzerland, where a Swiss firm is manufacturing a custom-made high speed, color labeling machine. Confidence is high that the new machine will help rescue Bricker from sharply declining profitability. Bricker's chief operating officer, Don Benson, has been under fire for not reaching the company's performance goals of achieving a rate of return on assets of at least 12%.

The afternoon of his return from Switzerland, Benson called Susan Sharp into his office. Susan is Bricker's Controller.

Benson: I wish you had been able to go. We have some accounting issues to consider.

Sharp: I wish I'd been there, too. I understand the food was marvelous. What are the accounting issues?

Benson: They discussed accepting our notes at the going rate for a face amount of \$12.5 million. We also discussed financing with stock.

Sharp: I thought we agreed; debt is the way to go for us now.

Benson: Yes, but I've been thinking. We can issue shares for a total of \$10 million. The labeler is custom made and doesn't have a quoted selling price, but the domestic labelers we considered went for around \$10 million. It sure would help our rate of return if we keep the asset base as low as possible.

Required:

1. How will Benson's plan affect the return measure? What accounting issue is involved?
2. Is the proposal ethical?
3. Who would be affected if the proposal is implemented?

Research

Case 18–9

Researching the way shareholders' equity transactions are reported; retrieving financial statements from the Internet

● LO18–1, LO18–6

EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system, performs automated collection, validation, indexing, and forwarding of submissions by companies and others who are required by law to file forms with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All publicly traded domestic companies use EDGAR to make the majority of their filings. (Filings by foreign companies are not required to be filed on EDGAR, but some of these companies do so voluntarily.) Form 10-K, which includes the annual report, is required to be filed on EDGAR. The SEC makes this information available on the Internet.

Required:

1. Access EDGAR on the Internet at www.sec.gov.
2. Search for a public company with which you are familiar. Access its most recent 10-K filing. Search or scroll to find the statement of shareholders' equity and related note(s). If a statement of shareholders' equity is not provided, try another company.
3. Determine from the statement the transactions that occurred during the most recent three years that affected retained earnings.
4. Determine from the statement the transactions that occurred during the most recent three years that affected common stock. Were any of these transactions identified in requirement 3 also?
5. Cross-reference your findings with amounts reported on the balance sheet. How do these two statements articulate with one another?

Communication

Case 18–10

Should the present two-category distinction between liabilities and equity be retained? Group interaction.

● LO18–1

The current conceptual distinction between liabilities and equity defines liabilities independently of assets and equity, with equity defined as a residual amount. The present proliferation of financial instruments that combine features of both debt and equity and the difficulty of drawing a distinction have led many to conclude that the present two-category distinction between liabilities and equity should be eliminated. Two opposing viewpoints are:

View 1: The distinction should be maintained.

View 2: The distinction should be eliminated and financial instruments should instead be reported in accordance with the priority of their claims to enterprise assets.

One type of security that often is mentioned in the debate is convertible bonds. Although stock in many ways, such a security also obligates the issuer to transfer assets at a specified price and redemption date. Thus it also has features of debt. In considering this question, focus on conceptual issues regarding the practicable and theoretically appropriate treatment, unconstrained by GAAP.

Required:

1. Which view do you favor? Develop a list of arguments in support of your view prior to the class session for which the case is assigned.
2. In class, your instructor will pair you (and everyone else) with a classmate (who also has independently developed an argument).
 - a. You will be given three minutes to argue your view to your partner. Your partner likewise will be given three minutes to argue his or her view to you. During these three-minute presentations, the listening partner is not permitted to speak.
 - b. Then after each person has had a turn attempting to convince his or her partner, the two partners will have a three-minute discussion in which they will decide which view is more convincing and arguments will be merged into a single view for each pair.
3. After the allotted time, a spokesperson for each of the two views will be selected by the instructor. Each spokesperson will field arguments from the class in support of that view's position and list the arguments on

the board. The class then will discuss the merits of the two lists of arguments and attempt to reach a consensus view, though a consensus is not necessary.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO18–1, LO18–5

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material also is available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com). Target refers to its Shareholders' Equity as Shareholders' Investment.

Required:

1. Refer to Target's Consolidated Statements of Shareholders' Investment. What are the five types of events and transactions that affected one or more of the Shareholders' Investment accounts in the year ended January 30, 2016?
2. Note 25, "Share Repurchase," provides the information we need to reconstruct the journal entry that summarizes Target's share repurchases in the year ended January 30, 2016. Provide that entry. Does Target account for share repurchases as treasury stock or retired shares? Explain.

Air France–KLM Case



- LO18–9

Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm.com).

Required:

1. AF lists four items in the shareholders' equity section of its balance sheet. If AF used U.S. GAAP, what would be the likely account titles for the first and fourth of those components?
2. Locate Note 29.5 in AF's financial statements. What items comprise "Reserves and retained earnings" as reported in the balance sheet? If AF used U.S. GAAP, what would be different for the reporting of these items?
3. Describe the apparent differences in the order of presentation of the components of liabilities and shareholders' equity between IFRS as applied by AF and a typical balance sheet prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP.

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

19

Share-Based Compensation and Earnings Per Share

OVERVIEW

We've discussed a variety of employee compensation plans in prior chapters, including pension and other postretirement benefits in Chapter 17. In this chapter we look at some common forms of compensation in which the amount of the compensation employees receive is tied to the market price of company stock. We will see that these *share-based* compensation plans—restricted stock awards, restricted stock units, stock options, and stock appreciation rights—create shareholders' equity, which was the topic of the previous chapter, and which also often affects the way we calculate earnings per share, the topic of the second part of the current chapter. Specifically, we view these as *potential common shares* along with convertible securities, and we calculate earnings per share as if the securities already had been exercised or converted into additional common shares.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO19-1** Explain and implement the accounting for restricted stock plans. (p. 1092)
- **LO19-2** Explain and implement the accounting for stock options. (p. 1094)
- **LO19-3** Explain and implement the accounting for employee share purchase plans. (p. 1104)
- **LO19-4** Distinguish between a simple and a complex capital structure. (p. 1106)
- **LO19-5** Describe what is meant by the weighted-average number of common shares. (p. 1107)
- **LO19-6** Differentiate the effect on EPS of the sale of new shares, a stock dividend or stock split, and the reacquisition of shares. (p. 1108)
- **LO19-7** Describe how preferred dividends affect the calculation of EPS. (p. 1110)
- **LO19-8** Describe how options, rights, and warrants are incorporated in the calculation of EPS. (p. 1111)
- **LO19-9** Describe how convertible securities are incorporated in the calculation of EPS. (p. 1113)
- **LO19-10** Determine whether potential common shares are antidilutive. (p. 1116)
- **LO19-11** Describe the two components of the proceeds used in the treasury stock method and how restricted stock is incorporated in the calculation of EPS. (p. 1120)
- **LO19-12** Explain the way contingently issuable shares are incorporated in the calculation of EPS. (p. 1122)
- **LO19-13** Describe the way EPS information should be reported in an income statement. (p. 1124)
- **LO19-14** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to accounting for share-based compensation and earnings per share. (pp. 1099, 1101, and 1106)



© Cultura RM/Alamy Stock Photo

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Proper Motivation?

The coffee room discussion Thursday morning was particularly lively. Yesterday's press release describing National Electronic Ventures' choice of Sandra Veres as its president and chief operating officer was today's hot topic in all the company's departments. The press release noted that Ms. Veres's compensation package includes elements beyond salary that are intended to not only motivate her to accept the offer, but also to remain with the company and work to increase shareholder value. Excerpts from the release follow:

National Electronic Ventures, Inc., today announced it had attracted G. Sandra Veres, respected executive from the wireless communications industry, to succeed chairman Walter Kovac. Veres will assume the new role as CEO on Jan. 1, 2018. Ms. Veres will receive a compensation package at NEV of more than \$1 million in salary, stock options to buy more than 800,000 shares of NEV stock and a grant of restricted stock.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. How can a compensation package such as this serve as an incentive to Ms. Veres? (p. 1091)
2. Ms. Veres received a "grant of restricted stock." How should NEV account for the grant? (p. 1092)
3. Included were stock options to buy more than 800,000 shares of NEV stock. How will the options affect NEV's compensation expense? (p. 1094)
4. How will the presence of these and other similar stock options affect NEV's earnings per share? (p. 1111)

QUESTIONS

Share-Based Compensation

Employee compensation plans frequently include share-based awards. These awards are forms of payment whose value is dependent on the value of the company's stock. These may be outright awards of shares, stock options, or cash payments tied to the market price of shares. Sometimes only key executives participate in a stock benefit plan. Typically, an executive compensation plan is tied to performance in a strategy that uses compensation to motivate its recipients. Some firms pay their directors entirely in shares. Actual compensation depends on the market value of the shares. Obviously, that's quite an incentive to act in the best interests of shareholders.

Although the variations of share-based compensation plans are seemingly endless, each shares common goals. Whether the plan is a stock award plan, a stock option plan, a stock appreciation rights (SARs) plan, or one of the several similar plans, the goals are to provide compensation to designated employees, while sometimes providing those employees with some sort of performance incentive. Likewise, our goals in accounting for each of these plans are the same for each: (1) to determine the fair value of the compensation and (2) to expense that compensation over the periods in which participants perform services. The issue is not trivial. Salary often is a minor portion of executive pay relative to stock awards and stock options.

PART A

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 1091

The accounting objective is to record compensation expense over the periods in which related services are performed.

Restricted Stock Plans

- LO19-1 Executive compensation sometimes includes a grant of shares of stock or the right to receive shares. Usually, such shares are restricted in such a way as to provide some incentive to the recipient. Typically, restricted stock award plans are tied to continued employment. The two primary types of restricted stock plans are (a) restricted stock awards and (b) restricted stock units. Let's compare the two.

Usually, restricted shares are subject to forfeiture if the employee doesn't remain with the company.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q2, p. 1091

Restricted Stock Awards

In a **restricted stock award**, shares actually are awarded in the name of the employee, although the company might retain physical possession of the shares. The employee has all rights of a shareholder, subject to certain restrictions or forfeiture. Ordinarily, the shares are subject to forfeiture by the employee if employment is terminated within some specified number of years from the date of grant. The employee usually is not free to sell the shares during the restriction period, and a statement to that effect often is inscribed on the stock certificates. These restrictions give the employee incentive to remain with the company until rights to the shares vest.

The compensation associated with a share of restricted stock is the market price at the grant date of an unrestricted share of the same stock. This amount is accrued as compensation expense with a credit to paid-in capital—restricted stock, over the service period for which participants receive the shares, usually from the date of grant to when restrictions are lifted (the vesting date).¹ Once the shares vest and the restrictions are lifted, paid-in capital—restricted stock is replaced by common stock and paid-in capital—excess of par. Any market price changes that might occur after that don't affect the total compensation. This is essentially the same as accounting for restricted stock units to be settled in shares, as demonstrated in the next section.

Restricted Stock Units

An increasingly popular variation of **restricted stock** awards is **restricted stock units (RSUs)**. In fact, RSUs have become a much more popular form of compensation than their restricted stock award cousins. A restricted stock unit is a right to receive a specified number of shares of company stock. It could be a performance bonus, a signing bonus, or regular compensation. The employee doesn't receive the stock right away. Instead, the shares are distributed as the recipient of RSUs satisfies the vesting requirement.² So, like restricted stock awards, the recipient benefits by the value of the shares at the end of the vesting period. Unlike restricted stock awards, though, the shares are not issued at the time of the grant. Delaying the increase in outstanding shares is more acceptable to other shareholders. As part of its share-based compensation plan, **Apple Inc.** provides compensation to executives in the form of RSUs as we see in Illustration 19-1.

Illustration 19-1

Restricted Stock Units (RSUs); Apple Inc.

Real World Financials

Share-Based Compensation (in part)

Share-based compensation cost for RSUs is measured based on the closing fair market value of the Company's common stock on the date of grant . . . The Company recognizes share-based compensation cost over the award's requisite service period on a straight-line basis.

Terms of RSUs vary.³ Sometimes, the recipient is given the *cash equivalent* of the number of shares used to value the RSUs. Or, the terms might stipulate that either the recipient or the company is allowed to choose whether to settle in stock or cash.

¹Restricted stock plans usually are designed to comply with Tax Code Section 83 to allow employee compensation to be nontaxable to the employee until the date the shares become substantially vested, which is when the restrictions are lifted. Likewise, the employer gets no tax deduction until the compensation becomes taxable to the employee.

²Sometimes, the shares to be issued depend upon achieving specific performance targets.

³Typically, but not always, RSUs have no voting privileges and receive no dividends until the shares are issued at vesting. Sometimes, restricted stock does have voting privileges and receives dividends during the vesting period even though recipients are restricted from selling the shares until vesting.

Although RSUs delay the issuance of shares and avoid some administrative complexities of outright awards of restricted stock, accounting for RSUs to be settled in stock is essentially the same as for restricted stock awards. We see accounting for award plans or units of restricted stock demonstrated in Illustration 19–2.

Under its restricted stock unit (RSU) plan, Universal Communications grants RSUs representing 5 million of its \$1 par common shares to certain key executives at January 1, 2018. The shares are subject to forfeiture if employment is terminated within four years. Shares have a current market price of \$12 per share.

January 1, 2018

No entry

Calculate total compensation expense:

$$\begin{array}{r} \$12 \\ \times 5 \text{ million} \\ \hline = \$60 \text{ million} \end{array}$$

The total compensation is to be allocated to expense over the four-year service (vesting) period: 2018–2021.

$$\$60 \text{ million} \div 4 \text{ years} = \$15 \text{ million per year}$$

December 31, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021	(\$ in millions)	
Compensation expense (\$60 million ÷ 4 years)	15	
Paid-in capital—restricted stock		15
December 31, 2021		
Paid-in capital—restricted stock (5 million shares at \$12)	60	
Common stock (5 million shares at \$1 par)		5
Paid-in capital—excess of par (difference)		55

Illustration 19–2

Restricted Stock Award Plans or Restricted Stock Units (RSUs)

The total compensation is the market value of the shares (\$12) times 5 million shares.

The \$60 million is accrued to compensation expense over the four-year service period.

When restrictions are lifted, paid-in capital—restricted stock, is replaced by common stock and paid-in capital—excess of par.

On the other hand, *if the employee will receive cash* or can elect to receive cash, we consider the award to be a *liability* rather than equity, as is the case in Illustration 19–2. When an RSU is considered to be a liability, we determine its fair value at the grant date and recognize that amount as compensation expense over the requisite service period consistent with the way we account for restricted stock awards, RSUs, and other share-based compensation. However, because these plans are considered to be liabilities payable in cash, the credit portion of the entry as we recognize compensation expense each year is to Liability—restricted stock. And, it's necessary to periodically adjust the liability (and corresponding compensation) based on the change in the stock's fair value until the liability is paid. Note that this is consistent with the way we account for other liabilities. Accounting for share-based compensation that's considered to be a liability is demonstrated in Appendix B of the chapter.

If restricted stock shares or RSUs are forfeited because, say, the employee leaves the company, entries previously made related to that specific employee would simply be reversed. This would result in a decrease in compensation expense in the year of forfeiture. The total compensation, adjusted for the forfeited amount, is then allocated over the remaining service period.

Additional Consideration

An alternative way of accomplishing the same result is to debit deferred compensation for the full value of the RSUs (\$60 million in the illustration) on the date they are granted.

	(\$ in millions)
Deferred compensation (5 million shares at \$12)	60
Common stock (5 million shares at \$1 par)	5
Paid-in capital—excess of par (difference)	55

If so, deferred compensation (a term used for delayed recognition of compensation expense) is reported as a reduction in shareholders' equity, resulting in a zero net effect on shareholders' equity. Then, deferred compensation is credited when compensation expense is debited over the service period. Just as in Illustration 19–2, the result is an increase in both compensation expense and shareholders' equity each year over the vesting period.

Stock Option Plans

Often, employees aren't actually awarded shares, but rather are given the option to buy shares in the future. In fact, **stock options** have become an integral part of the total compensation package for key officers of most medium and large companies. As with any compensation plan, the accounting objective is to report compensation expense during the period of service for which the compensation is given.

● LO19–2

Expense—The Great Debate

Stock option plans give employees the option to purchase (a) a specified number of shares of the firm's stock, (b) at a specified price, (c) during a specified period of time. One of the most heated controversies in standard-setting history has been the debate over the amount of compensation to be recognized as expense for stock options. At issue is how the value of stock options is measured, which for most options determines whether any expense at all is recognized.

Historically, options were measured at their **intrinsic values**—the simple difference between the market price of the shares and the option price at which they can be acquired. For instance, an option that permits an employee to buy a \$25-per-share stock for \$10 per share has an intrinsic value of \$15. However, plans in which the exercise price equals the market value of the underlying stock at the date of grant (which describes most executive stock option plans) have no intrinsic value and therefore result in zero compensation when measured this way, even though the fair value of the options can be quite significant. **Facebook** CEO Mark Zuckerberg reaped a \$3.3 billion gain in 2013 alone by exercising stock options.⁴ To many, it seems counterintuitive to not recognize compensation expense for plans that routinely provide executives with a substantial part of their total compensation.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 1091

After lengthy debate, the FASB consented to encourage, rather than require, that the fair value of options be recognized as expense.

FAILED ATTEMPT TO REQUIRE EXPENSING. This is where the controversy ensues. In 1993, the FASB issued an Exposure Draft of a new standard that would have required companies to measure options at their *fair values* at the time they are granted and to expense that amount over the appropriate service period. To jump straight to the punch line, the FASB bowed to public pressure and agreed to withdraw the requirement before it became a standard. The FASB consented to encourage, rather than require, that fair value compensation be recognized as expense. Companies were permitted to continue accounting under prior GAAP (the intrinsic value method referred to in the previous paragraph).⁵ Before we discuss the details of accounting for stock options, it's helpful to look back at what led the FASB to first propose fair value accounting and later rescind that proposal.

As the 1990s began, the public was becoming increasingly aware of the enormity of executive compensation in general and compensation in the form of stock options in particular. The lack of accounting for this compensation was apparent, prompting the SEC to encourage the FASB to move forward on its stock option project. Even Congress got into the fray when, in 1992, a bill was introduced that would require firms to report compensation expense based on the fair value of options. Motivated by this encouragement, the FASB issued its exposure draft in 1993. The real disharmony began then. Opposition to the proposed standard was broad and vehement, and that perhaps is an understatement. Critics based their opposition on one or more of these three objections:

1. *Options with no intrinsic value at issue have zero fair value and should not give rise to expense recognition.* The FASB, and even some critics of the proposal, were adamant that options provide valuable compensation at the grant date to recipients.
2. *It is impossible to measure the fair value of the compensation on the grant date.*

The FASB argued vigorously that value can be approximated using one of several **option pricing models**. These are statistical models that use computers to incorporate

⁴San Jose Mercury News, April 1, 2014.

⁵"Accounting for Stock Issued to Employees," *Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board No. 25* (New York: AICPA, 1972). This pronouncement is superseded and therefore is not codified in the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*.

information about a company's stock and the terms of the stock option to estimate the options' fair value. We might say the FASB position is that it's better to be approximately right than precisely wrong.

3. *The proposed standard would have unacceptable economic consequences.* Essentially, this argument asserted that requiring this popular means of compensation to be expensed would cause companies to discontinue the use of options.

The opposition included corporate executives, auditors, members of Congress, and the SEC.⁶ Ironically, the very groups that provided the most impetus for the rule change initially—the SEC and Congress—were among the most effective detractors in the end. The only group that offered much support at all was the academic community, and that was by-and-large nonvocal support. In reversing its decision, the FASB was not swayed by any of the specific arguments of any opposition group. Dennis Beresford, chair of the FASB at the time, indicated that it was fear of government control of the standard-setting process that prompted the Board to modify its position. The Board remained steadfast that the proposed change was appropriate.

There were consistent criticisms of the FASB's requirement to expense option compensation.

VOLUNTARY EXPENSING. Prior to 2002, only two companies—**Boeing** and **Winn-Dixie**—reported stock option compensation expense at fair value. However, in 2002, public outrage mounted amid high-profile accounting scandals at **Enron**, **WorldCom**, **Tyco**, and others. Some degree of consensus emerged that greed on the part of some corporate executives contributed to the fraudulent and misleading financial reporting at the time. In fact, many in the media were pointing to the proliferation of stock options as a primary form of compensation as a culprit in fueling that greed. An episode of the PBS series *Frontline* argued that not expensing the value of stock options contributed to the collapse of Enron. For these reasons, renewed interest surfaced in requiring stock option compensation to be reported in income statements.

CURRENT REQUIREMENT TO EXPENSE. Emerging from the rekindled debate was a GAAP revision that now requires fair value accounting for employee stock options, eliminating altogether the intrinsic value approach.⁷ As you might expect, the proposal did not come without opposition. Many of the same groups that successfully blocked the FASB from enacting a similar requirement in 1995 led the opposition. Not surprisingly, at the forefront of the resistance were the high-tech companies that extensively use stock options as a primary form of compensating employees and thus are most susceptible to a reduction in reported earnings when that compensation is included in income statements. For example, consider **Apple Inc.**'s earnings for the 12 months ending March 27, 2004. Reported net income of \$179 million would have been only \$56 million, or 69% less, if the GAAP revision had been in effect then.⁸

Current GAAP now requires companies to record the value of options in their income statements.

It's important to note that the way we account for stock options has no effect whatsoever on cash flows, only on whether the value of stock options is included among expenses. This is not to say that companies haven't altered their compensation strategies. Already, we have seen a shift in the way some companies compensate their employees. Partly due to the negative connotation that has become associated with executive stock options, we've seen fewer options and more bonuses and restricted stock awards. Let's examine the way stock options are accounted for now.

We've witnessed a discernable shift in the way executives are compensated—fewer options, more stock awards and bonuses.

Recognizing the Fair Value of Options

Accounting for stock options parallels the accounting for restricted stock we discussed in the first part of this chapter. That is, we measure compensation as the fair value of the stock options at the grant date and then record that amount as compensation expense over the

⁶All of the then "Big Six" CPA firms lobbied against the proposal. Senator Lieberman of Connecticut introduced a bill in Congress that, if passed, would have forbidden the FASB from passing a requirement to expense stock option compensation.

⁷FASB ASC 718—Compensation (previously "Share-Based Payment," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 123 (revised 2004)*, (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB 2004)).

⁸Alex Salkever, "What Could Crunch Apple Shares," *BusinessWeek*, July 12, 2004, p. 11.

The fair value of a stock option can be determined by employing a recognized option pricing model.

An option pricing model takes into account several variables.

The techniques for estimating fair value have been among the most controversial issues in the debate.

service period for which employees receive the options. Estimating the fair value requires the use of one of several option pricing models. These mathematical models assimilate a variety of information about a company's stock and the terms of the stock option to estimate the option's fair value. The model should take into account the following:

- Exercise price of the option
- Expected term of the option
- Current market price of the stock
- Expected dividends
- Expected risk-free rate of return during the term of the option
- Expected volatility of the stock

The current GAAP for accounting for employee stock options modified the way companies actually measure fair value. It calls for using models that permit greater flexibility in modeling the ways employees are expected to exercise options and their expected employment termination patterns after options vest.⁹ Option-pricing theory, on which the pricing models are based, is a topic explored in depth in finance courses and is subject to active empirical investigation and development. A simplified discussion is provided in Appendix 19A.¹⁰

The total compensation, as estimated by the options' fair value, is reported as compensation expense over the period of service for which the options are given. Recipients normally are not allowed to exercise their options for a specified number of years. This delay provides added incentive to remain with the company. The time between the date options are granted and the first date they can be exercised is the vesting period and usually is considered to be the service period over which the compensation expense is reported. The process is demonstrated in Illustration 19–3.

Illustration 19–3

Stock Options

Fair value is estimated at the date of grant.

The value of the award is expensed over the service period for which the compensation is provided.

Option compensation expense is based on the number of options expected to vest.

At January 1, 2018, Universal Communications grants 10 million options that permit key executives to acquire 10 million of the company's \$1 par common shares within the next eight years, but not before December 31, 2021 (the vesting date). The exercise price is the market price of the shares on the date of grant, \$35 per share. The fair value of the options, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$8 per option.

January 1, 2018

No entry

Calculate total compensation expense:

\$ 8	Estimated fair value per option
× 10 million	Options granted
= \$80 million	Total compensation

The total compensation is allocated to expense over the four-year service (vesting) period: 2018–2021.

$$\text{\$80 million} \div 4 \text{ years} = \text{\$20 million per year}$$

December 31, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021

	(\$ in millions)
Compensation expense (\\$80 million ÷ 4 years)	20
Paid-in capital—stock options	20

FORFEITURES. If previous experience indicates that a material number of the options will be forfeited before they vest (due to employee turnover or violation of other terms of the options), we adjust the amount of compensation recorded (a) by estimating forfeitures or (b) as forfeitures occur.

⁹FASB ASC 718–10–55–30 to 32: Compensation—Stock Compensation—Overall—Implementation and Guidance Illustrations—Selecting or Estimating the Expected Term (previously “Share-Based Payment,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 123* (revised 2004), (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB 2004), par. A27–A29)).

¹⁰An expanded discussion is provided in FASB ASC 718–10–55: Compensation—Stock Compensation—Overall—Implementation and Guidance Illustrations (previously *SFAS No. 123* (revised 2004)).

The default approach is to *estimate the percentage* of options that will be forfeited and adjust grant date calculation of the fair value of the options to reflect that expectation. For instance, if a forfeiture rate of 5% is expected, Universal's estimated total compensation would be 95% of \$80 million, or \$76 million. In that case, the annual compensation expense in Illustration 19–3 would have been **\$19 million** ($\$76 \div 4$) instead of \$20 million. We see the effect of that possibility in Illustration 19–3A.

What if that expectation changes later? Universal should adjust the cumulative amount of compensation expense recorded to date in the year the estimate changes. Suppose, for instance, that during the third year, Universal revises its estimate of forfeitures from 5% to 10%. The new estimate of total compensation would then be $\$80 \text{ million} \times 90\%$, or \$72 million. For the first three years, the portion of the total compensation that should have been reported would be $\$72 \text{ million} \times \frac{3}{4}$, or \$54 million, and since \$38 million ($\19×2) of that was recorded in 2018–2019 before the estimate changed, an additional \$16 million would now be recorded in 2020. Then if the estimate isn't changed again, the remaining \$18 million ($\$72 - 54$) would be recorded in 2021.

When forfeiture estimates change, the cumulative effect on compensation is reflected in current earnings.

Initial Expectation:		(\$ in millions)
2018		
Compensation expense $[(\$80 \times 95\%) \div 4]$	19	
Paid-in capital—stock options		19
2019		
Compensation expense $[(\$80 \times 95\%) \div 4]$	19	
Paid-in capital—stock options		19
Estimate Revision after 2 Years:		
2020		
Compensation expense $[(\$80 \times 90\% \times \frac{3}{4}) - (\$19 + \$19)]$	16	
Paid-in capital—stock options		16
2021		
Compensation expense $[(\$80 \times 90\% \times \frac{1}{4}) - (\$19 + \$19 + \$16)]$	18	
Paid-in capital—stock options		18

Illustration 19–3A

Default Approach:
Forfeiture Estimates with
Revisions

The value of the compensation is originally estimated to be \$76 million, or \$19 million per year.

The expense each year is the current estimate of total compensation that should have been recorded to date less the amount already recorded.

Additional Consideration

Notice that the \$18 million in 2021 is the amount that would have been reported in each of the four years if Universal had assumed a 10% forfeiture rate from the beginning. Also be aware that this approach is contrary to the usual way companies account for changes in estimates. For instance, assume a company acquires a four-year depreciable asset having an estimated residual value of 5% of cost. The \$76 million depreciable cost would be depreciated straight line at **\$19 million** over the four-year useful life. If the estimated residual value changes after two years to 10%, the new estimated depreciable cost of \$72 would be reduced by the \$38 million depreciation recorded the first two years, and the remaining \$34 million would be depreciated equally, \$17 million per year, over the remaining two years.

In an alternative approach, as a practical expedient, companies can elect to account for forfeitures of stock options (or restricted stock) when forfeitures actually occur, rather than estimate forfeitures that will occur during the vesting period. So rather than recording compensation expense and paid-in capital for the *net* amount of awards expected to vest, companies can choose to initially record compensation based on the total amount and then reduce compensation expense and paid-in capital only if and when forfeitures occur.¹¹ Once a

Companies can elect to account for forfeitures when forfeitures actually occur rather than estimate them.

¹¹Accounting Standards Update 2016-09: Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718), Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting (Norwalk, CT: FASB, March 2016).

forfeiture occurs, we adjust the cumulative amount of compensation expense recorded to date in the year the forfeiture occurs and thereafter in a manner similar to the way estimates are adjusted as demonstrated in Illustration 19–3A.

This election applies only to forfeitures related to employee turnover. A company must disclose its policy election for forfeitures (estimated or recorded as they occur). To demonstrate the alternative approach, let's say Universal Communications recorded compensation of \$20 million in both 2018 and 2019 based on the \$80 million fair value of the stock options issued at the beginning of 2018. Then, in 2020, options with a fair value of \$8 million when granted are forfeited due to executive turnover. Universal's journal entries would look like those in Illustration 19–3B.

Illustration 19–3B

Optional Approach:
Revisions as Forfeitures
Occur

December 31, 2018		(\$ in millions)
Compensation expense (\$80 million ÷ 4 years).....	20	
Paid-in capital—stock options		20
December 31, 2019 (\$ in millions)		
Compensation expense (\$80 million ÷ 4 years).....	20	
Paid-in capital—stock options		20
When Actual Forfeitures Occur in the Third Year:		
December 31, 2020 (\$ in millions)		
Compensation expense [(\$80 – \$8 × $\frac{3}{4}$) – 20 – 20].....	14	
Paid-in capital—stock options		14
December 31, 2021 (\$ in millions)		
Compensation expense [(\$80 – \$8 × $\frac{4}{4}$) – 20 – 20 – 14].....	18	
Paid-in capital—stock options		18

This election applies only to forfeitures related to employee *turnover*. For share-based plans with performance conditions (which we discuss later), companies must assess the probability that such conditions will be achieved. A company must disclose its policy election for forfeitures (estimated, or recorded as they occur).

When Options are Exercised

If half the options in Illustration 19–3 (for 5 million shares) are exercised on July 11, 2024, when the market price is \$50 per share, the following journal entry is recorded:

Recording the exercise of options is not affected by the market price on the exercise date.

July 11, 2024		(\$ in millions)
Cash (\$35 exercise price × 5 million shares).....	175	
Paid-in capital—stock options (½ account balance).....	40	
Common stock (5 million shares at \$1 par per share).....		5
Paid-in capital—excess of par (to balance)		210

Notice that the market price at exercise is irrelevant. Changes in the market price of underlying shares do not influence the previously measured fair value of options.

When Unexercised Options Expire

If options that have vested expire without being exercised, the following journal entry is made (assuming the remaining 5 million options in our illustration are allowed to expire):

Paid-in capital—stock options becomes paid-in capital—expiration of stock options when options expire without being exercised.

		(\$ in millions)
Paid-in capital—stock options (account balance).....	40	
Paid-in capital—expiration of stock options.....		40

In effect, we rename the paid-in capital attributable to the stock option plan. Compensation expense for the four years' service, as of the measurement date, is not affected.

Additional Consideration

Tax Consequences of Stock-Based Compensation Plans. In Illustration 19–3 we ignored the tax effect. To illustrate the effect of taxes, let's assume Universal Communications' income tax rate is 40%.

For tax purposes, plans can either qualify as "incentive stock option plans" under the Tax Code or be "nonqualified plans." Among the requirements of a qualified option plan is that the exercise price be equal to the market price at the grant date. Under a qualified **incentive plan**, the recipient pays no income tax until any shares acquired from exercise of stock options are subsequently sold. On the other hand, the company gets no tax deduction at all. With a **nonqualified plan** the employee can't delay paying income tax, but the employer is permitted to deduct the difference between the exercise price and the market price at the exercise date. Let's consider both.

Case 1. With an incentive plan, the employer receives no tax deduction at all. If Universal's plan qualifies as an incentive plan, the company will receive no tax deduction upon exercise of the options and thus no tax consequences.

Case 2. On the other hand, if we assume the plan does not qualify as an incentive plan, Universal will deduct from taxable income the difference between the exercise price and the market price at the exercise date. Recall from Chapter 16 that this creates a temporary difference between accounting income (for which compensation expense is recorded currently) and taxable income (for which the tax deduction is taken later upon the exercise of the options). We assume the temporary difference is the cumulative amount expensed for the options. The following entries would be recorded on the dates shown:

December 31, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021	(\$ in millions)	
Compensation expense (\$80 million ÷ 4 years)	20	
Paid-in capital—stock options		20
Deferred tax asset (40% × \$20 million)	8	
Income tax expense		8

The after-tax effect on earnings is thus \$12 million each year (\$20 – 8).

If all of the options (for 10 million shares) are exercised on April 4, 2023, when the stock's market price is **\$50** per share:

Cash (\$35 exercise price × 10 million shares)	350	
Paid-in capital—stock options (account balance)	80	
Common stock (10 million shares at \$1 par per share)		10
Paid-in capital—excess of par (to balance)		420
Income taxes payable [(\$50 – 35) × 10 million shares × 40%]	60	
Deferred tax asset (4 years × \$8 million)		32
Income tax expense (remainder)*		28

*This treatment is consistent with ASU 2016-09, "Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting," which amends ASC Topic 718, Compensation – Stock Compensation.

The tax consequences of all nonqualifying stock options as well as restricted stock plans also are accounted for in the manner demonstrated above.

Tax treatment favors the employer in a nonqualified stock option plan.

Because an incentive plan provides no tax deduction, it has no deferred tax consequences.

A deferred tax asset is recognized now for the future tax savings from the tax deduction when the nonqualified stock options are exercised.

The difference between the market price at exercise and the eventual tax savings is recognized in income tax expense.

International Financial Reporting Standards

Recognition of Deferred Tax Asset for Stock Options. Under U.S. GAAP, a deferred tax asset (DTA) is created for the cumulative amount of the fair value of the options the company has recorded for compensation expense. The DTA is the tax rate times the amount of compensation.

(continued)



● LO19–14

(concluded)

Under IFRS, the deferred tax asset isn't created until the award is "in the money;" that is, it has intrinsic value. When it is in the money, the addition to the DTA is the portion of the intrinsic value earned to date times the tax rate.

IFRS ILLUSTRATION

For illustration, refer to Case 2 in the Additional Consideration example above. Now assume the share price, which was equal to the \$35 exercise price on January 1, 2018, was \$35, \$37, \$37, and \$37.50 on December 31, 2018, 2019, 2020, and 2021, respectively. We need this information to determine the intrinsic value for IFRS.

The addition to the DTA and reduction in the tax expense (tax benefit) is calculated in the following table for both U.S. GAAP and IFRS (\$ in millions):

Dec. 31	Comp- ensation expense	Addition to DTA and reduction in tax expense at 40% U.S. GAAP	Cumulative reduction in tax expense	Intrinsic value (price – \$35) × 10M shares	Cumulative percent of services received	Percent × Intrinsic value	Addition to DTA and reduction in tax expense at 40%* IFRS
2018	\$20	\$ 8	\$ 8	\$ 0	25%	\$ 0	\$ 0
2019	20	8	16	20	50	10	4
2020	20	8	24	20	75	15	2
2021	20	8	32	25	100	25	4

December 31, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021 (\$ in millions)	U.S. GAAP	IFRS
Compensation expense (\$80 million ÷ 4 years)	20	20
Paid-in capital—stock options	20	20
Deferred tax asset	8	0
Income tax expense	8	0
Deferred tax asset	8	4
Income tax expense	8	4
Deferred tax asset	8	2
Income tax expense	8	2
Deferred tax asset	8	4
Income tax expense	8	4

*The tax benefit recorded in earnings (cumulative amount in this column) cannot exceed the cumulative tax effect of the compensation (4th column). Any tax benefit in excess of that amount is recorded in equity. In 2021, \$10 (\$0 + 4 + 2 + 4) does not exceed \$32.

Plans with Graded Vesting

The stock option plans we've discussed so far vest (become exercisable) on one single date (e.g., four years from date of grant). This is referred to as *cliff vesting*. More frequently, though, awards specify that recipients gradually become eligible to exercise their options rather than all at once. This is called *graded vesting*. For instance, a company might award stock options that vest 25% the first year, 25% the second year, and 50% the third year, or maybe 25% each year for four years.

In such a case, the company can choose to account for the options essentially the same as the cliff-vesting plans we've discussed to this point. It can estimate a single fair value for each of the options, even though they vest over different time periods, using a single weighted-average expected life of the options. The company then allocates that total compensation cost (fair value per option times number of options) over the entire vesting period.

Most companies, though, choose a slightly more complex method because it usually results in a lower expense.¹² In this approach, we view each vesting group (or tranche) separately, as if it were a separate award. See Illustration 19–4.

Illustration 19–4 Stock Options; Graded Vesting; Separate Valuation Approach

At January 1, 2018, Taggart Mobility issued 10 million executive stock options permitting executives to buy 10 million shares of stock for \$25. The vesting schedule is 20% the first year, 30% the second year, and 50% the third year (graded-vesting). The value of the options that vest over the 3-year period is estimated at January 1, 2018, by separating the total award into three groups (or tranches) according to the year in which they vest (because the expected life for each group differs). The fair value of the options as of January 1, 2018 is *estimated* as follows:

Vesting Date	Amount Vesting	Fair Value per Option
Dec. 31, 2018	20%	\$3.50
Dec. 31, 2019	30%	\$4.00
Dec. 31, 2020	50%	\$6.00

We allocate the compensation cost for each of the three groups (tranches) evenly over its *individual* vesting (service) period:

Shares Vesting at	Compensation Expense in (\$ in millions)				
	2018	2019	2020	Total	
Dec. 31, 2018	\$ 7			\$ 7	(10 M × 20% × \$3.50)
Dec. 31, 2019	6	\$ 6		12	(10 M × 30% × \$4.00)
Dec. 31, 2020	10	10	\$10	30	(10 M × 50% × \$6.00)
Expensed	\$23	\$16	\$10	= \$49	

At any given date, a company must have recognized at least the amount vested by that date. The allocation in this instance meets that constraint:

- The \$23 million recognized in 2018 exceeds the \$7 million vested.
- The \$39 million (\$23 + \$16) recognized by 2019 exceeds the \$19 million (\$7 + \$12) vested by the same time.

Companies also can choose to use the straight-line method, which would allocate the \$49 million total compensation cost equally to 2018, 2019, and 2020 at \$16.333 million per year.

International Financial Reporting Standards

When options have graded vesting, U.S. GAAP permits companies to account for each vesting amount separately, for instance as if there were three separate awards as in the previous illustration, but also allows companies the option to account for the entire award on

(continued)



• LO19–14

¹²The fair value of the options usually is higher when estimated using a single weighted-average expected life of the options rather than when estimated as the total of fair values of the multiple vesting groups.

(concluded)

a straight-line basis over the entire vesting period. Either way, the company must recognize at least the amount of the award that has vested by that date.

Under IFRS, the straight-line choice is not permitted. Also, there's no requirement that the company must recognize at least the amount of the award that has vested by each reporting date.

The terms of performance options vary with some measure of performance that ties rewards to productivity.

Plans with Performance or Market Conditions

Stock option (and other share-based) plans often specify a performance condition or a market condition that must be satisfied before employees are allowed the benefits of the award. The objective is to provide employees with additional incentive for managerial achievement. For instance, an option might not be exercisable until a performance target is met. The target could be divisional revenue, earnings per share, sales growth, or rate of return on assets. The possibilities are limitless. On the other hand, the target might be market-related, perhaps a specified stock price or a stock price change exceeding a particular index. The way we account for such plans depends on whether the condition is performance-based or market-based.

If compensation from a stock option depends on meeting a performance target, compensation is recorded only if we feel it's probable the target will be met.

PLANS WITH PERFORMANCE CONDITIONS. Whether we recognize compensation expense for performance-based options depends (a) initially on whether it's probable¹³ that the performance target will be met and (b) ultimately on whether the performance target actually is met. Accounting is as described earlier for other stock options. Initial estimates of compensation cost, as well as subsequent revisions of that estimate, take into account the likelihood of both forfeitures and achieving performance targets. For example, in Illustration 19–3, if the options described also had included a condition that the options would become exercisable only if sales increase by 10% after four years, we would estimate the likelihood of that occurring; specifically, is it probable? Let's say we initially estimate that it is probable that sales will increase by 10% after four years. Then, our initial estimate of the total compensation would have been unchanged at

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 10 \text{ million} & \times & \$8 \\
 \text{Options} & & \text{Fair value} \\
 \text{expected} & & \text{per option} \\
 \text{to vest} & & \\
 & = & \$80 \text{ million} \\
 & & \text{Estimated} \\
 & & \text{total} \\
 & & \text{compensation}
 \end{array}$$

Suppose, though, that after two years, we estimate that it is *not* probable that sales will increase by 10% after four years. Then, our new estimate of the total compensation would change to

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 0 & \times & \$8 \\
 \text{Options} & & \text{Fair value} \\
 \text{expected} & & \text{per option} \\
 \text{to vest} & & \\
 & = & 0 \\
 & & \text{Estimated} \\
 & & \text{total} \\
 & & \text{compensation}
 \end{array}$$

If it later becomes probable that a performance target will not be met, we reverse any compensation expense already recorded.

When we revise our estimate of total compensation because our expectation of probability changes, we record the effect of the change in the current period.

In that case, we would reverse the \$40 million expensed in 2018–2019. No compensation can be recognized for options that don't vest due to performance targets not being met, and that's our expectation.

Conversely, assume that our initial expectation is that it is *not* probable that sales will increase by 10% after four years and so we record no annual compensation expense. But then, in the third year, we estimate that it is probable that sales will increase by 10% after four years. At that point, our revised estimate of the total compensation would change to

¹³"Probable" means the same as it did in Chapter 13, when we were estimating the likelihood that payment would be made for a loss contingency, and elsewhere when making accounting estimates. Probable is a matter of professional judgement (often 70–75%).

\$80 million, and we would reflect the cumulative effect on compensation in 2020 earnings and record compensation thereafter:

2020		
Compensation expense $[(\$80 \times \frac{3}{4}) - \$0]$	60	
Paid-in capital—stock options		60
2021		
Compensation expense $[(\$80 \times \frac{1}{4}) - \$60]$	20	
Paid-in capital—stock options		20

If we had begun with our new estimate of total compensation, \$20 million would have been expensed in each of the first three years.

Additional Consideration

Suppose an executive who is granted some of the performance-based options in this example is eligible to retire on January 1, 2018. So, when the options are granted she would be eligible to receive the options even if the performance target (sales increase by 10%) is met after she retires. In that case, the service period needed to receive compensation effectively is one day. Should compensation for her be measured and expensed over the vesting period as in the example, or should that compensation be measured and recorded all at once (full amount if probable, zero otherwise) on the grant date?

It should be treated the same as the compensation for the other options. It should be treated as a performance condition consistent with those for which the requisite service period is not met prior to the performance target being met. So, we would record no compensation expense until meeting the performance target is probable, even if this is not until *after* the requisite vesting period is completed. An important secondary benefit of this treatment is that the employer doesn't need to assess at the grant date whether certain employees are retirement-eligible or will become retirement-eligible during the performance period in order to value the awards.¹⁴

This treatment differs from that of International Financial Reporting Standards, which specifies that if the performance target can be met *after* the requisite vesting period is completed, compensation should be measured and recorded all at once (full amount if probable, zero otherwise) on the grant date.

PLANS WITH MARKET CONDITIONS. If the award contains a market condition (e.g., a share option with an exercisability requirement based on the stock price reaching a specified level), then no special accounting is required. The fair value estimate of the share option already implicitly reflects market conditions due to the nature of share option pricing models. So, we recognize compensation expense regardless of when, if ever, the market condition is met.

If the target is based on changes in the market rather than on performance, we record compensation as if there were no target.

DECLINE IN POPULARITY OF OPTIONS. Recent years have witnessed a steady shift in the way companies compensate their top executives. At their peak in 1999, stock options represented about 78% of the average executive's incentive pay. In 2013, they accounted for just 31%, expected to shrink to 25% by 2015.¹⁵ In the wake of recent accounting scandals, the image of stock options has been tarnished in the view of many who believe that the potential to garner millions in stock option gains created incentives for executives to boost company stock prices through risky or fraudulent behavior. That image has motivated many firms to move away from stock options in favor of other forms of share-based compensation, particularly restricted stock awards and, increasingly, restricted stock units. Also

¹⁴FASB Emerging Issues Task Force, *Accounting Standards Update No. 2014-12*, "Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Accounting for Share-Based Payments When the Terms of an Award Provide That a Performance Target Could Be Achieved after the Requisite Service Period," June 2014.

¹⁵According to an analysis of the 200 largest U.S. public companies by compensation consulting firm James F. Reda & Associates, as reported by Emily Chasan, "Last Gasp for Stock Options?" *USA Today*, August 26, 2013.

contributing to the rise of restricted stock is the feeling by many that it better aligns pay with performance. From the executive's perspective, restricted stock is a more certain, though potentially less lucrative, form of compensation.

Employee Share Purchase Plans

Share purchase plans permit employees to buy shares directly from the corporation.

● LO19-3

Employee share purchase plans often permit all employees to buy shares directly from their company at favorable terms. The primary intent of these plans is to encourage employee ownership of the company's shares. Presumably loyalty is enhanced among employee-shareholders. The employee also benefits because, typically, these plans allow employees to buy shares from their employer without brokerage fees and, perhaps, at a slight discount. Some companies even encourage participation by matching or partially matching employee purchases.

When accounting for employee share purchase plans (ESPPs), we need to determine whether or not they provide compensation to employees. If not, we simply record the sale of new shares as employees buy them and do not record compensation expense. An ESPP is considered noncompensatory as long as:

1. substantially all employees can participate,
2. employees have no longer than one month after the price is fixed to decide whether to participate, and
3. the discount is no greater than 5% (or can be justified as reasonable).

If these criteria for the plan being noncompensatory are *not* met, say the discount is 15%, accounting is similar to other share-based plans. The 15% discount to employees, then, is considered to be compensation, and that amount is recorded as expense.¹⁶ Compensation expense replaces the cash debit for any employer-provided portion. Say an employee buys shares (no par) under the plan for \$850 rather than the current market price of \$1,000. The \$150 discount is recorded as compensation expense.

Cash (discounted price).....	850	
Compensation expense (\$1,000 × 15%).....	150	
Common stock (market value).....		1,000

Decision Makers' Perspective

Analysts should be aware of the possibility of earnings management as a way to increase managers' compensation.

In several previous chapters, we have revisited the concept of "earnings quality" (as first defined in Chapter 4). We also have noted that one rather common practice that negatively influences earnings quality is earnings management, which refers to companies' use of one or more of several techniques designed to artificially increase (or decrease) earnings. A frequent objective of earnings management is to meet analysts' expectations regarding projections of income. The share-based compensation plans we discuss in this chapter suggest another motive managers sometimes have to manipulate income. If a manager's personal compensation includes company stock, stock options, or other compensation based on the value of the firm's stock, it's not hard to imagine an increased desire to ensure that market expectations are met and that reported earnings have a positive effect on stock prices. In fact, as we discussed earlier, that is precisely the reaction these incentive compensation plans are designed to elicit. Investors and creditors, though, should be alert to indications of attempts to artificially manipulate income and realize that the likelihood of earnings management is probably higher for companies with generous share-based compensation plans.

¹⁶FASB ASC 718-50-25-1 and 2: Compensation—Stock Compensation—Employee Share Purchase Plans—Recognition (previously "Share-Based Payment," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 123 (revised 2004)*, (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB 2004), par. 12-13).

One way managers might manipulate numbers is to low-ball the data that go into the option-pricing models. The models used to estimate fair value are built largely around subjective assumptions. That possibility emphasizes the need for investors to look closely at the assumptions reported in the stock option disclosure note, and particularly at how those assumptions change from year to year. ●

Concept Review Exercise

Listed below are transactions dealing with various stock benefit plans of Fortune-Time Corporation during the period 2018–2020. The market price of the stock is \$45 at January 1, 2018.

SHARE-BASED COMPENSATION PLANS

- On January 1, 2018, the company issued 10 million common shares to divisional managers under its restricted stock award plan. The shares are subject to forfeiture if employment is terminated within three years.
- On January 1, 2018, the company granted incentive stock options to its senior management, exercisable for 1.5 million common shares. The options must be exercised within five years, but not before January 1, 2020. The exercise price of the stock options is equal to the fair value of the common stock on the date the options are granted. An option pricing model estimates the fair value of the options to be \$4 per option. All recipients are expected to remain employed through the vesting date.
- Recorded compensation expense on December 31, 2018.
- A divisional manager holding 1 million of the restricted shares left the company to become CEO of a competitor on September 15, 2019, before the required service period ended.
- Recorded compensation expense on December 31, 2019.

Required:

Prepare the journal entries that Fortune-Time recorded for each of these transactions. (Ignore any tax effects.)

Solution:

January 1, 2018

Restricted Stock Award Plan

No entry.

Total compensation is measured as 10 million shares \times \$45 = \$450 million.

Stock Options

No entry.

Total compensation is measured as 1.5 million shares \times \$4 = \$6 million.

December 31, 2018

Restricted Stock

		(\$ in millions)
Compensation expense (\$450 million \div 3 years)	150	
Paid-in capital—restricted stock		150

Stock Options

Compensation expense (\$6 million \div 2 years)	3	
Paid-in capital—stock options		3

September 15, 2019

Restricted Stock

Paid-in capital—restricted stock (10% \times \$150)	15	
Compensation expense		15

(continued)

(concluded)

December 31, 2019**Restricted Stock**

Compensation expense [$\$450 - (0.10 \times \$450) - 150 + 15$] \div 2 years	135	
Paid-in capital—restricted stock		135

Stock Options

Compensation expense ($\$6$ million \div 2 years)	3	
Paid-in capital—stock options		3

PART B

Earnings per share is the single accounting number that receives the most media attention.

Comparability is an enhancing characteristic of relevant accounting information (Conceptual Framework).

Earnings Per Share

A typical corporate annual report contains four comparative financial statements, an extensive list of disclosure notes and schedules, and several pages of charts, tables, and textual descriptions. Of these myriad facts and figures, the single accounting number that is reported most frequently in the media and receives by far the most attention by investors and creditors is **earnings per share** (EPS). The reasons for the considerable attention paid to earnings per share certainly include the desire to find a way to summarize the performance of business enterprises into a single number.

Summarizing performance in a way that permits comparisons is difficult because the companies that report the numbers are different from one another. And yet, the desire to condense performance to a single number has created a demand for EPS information. The profession has responded with rules designed to maximize the comparability of EPS numbers by minimizing the inconsistencies in their calculation from one company to the next.¹⁷

Keep in mind as you study the requirements that a primary goal is comparability. As a result, many of the rules devised to achieve consistency are unavoidably arbitrary, meaning that other choices the FASB might have made in many instances would be equally adequate.



● LO19–14

International Financial Reporting Standards

Earnings per Share. The earnings per share requirements of U.S. GAAP, *FASB ASC 260: Earnings per Share*, are a result of the FASB's cooperation with the IASB to narrow the differences between IFRS and U.S. GAAP. A few differences remain. The differences that remain are the result of differences in the application of the treasury stock method, the treatment of contracts that may be settled in shares or cash, and contingently issuable shares.

A firm has a simple capital structure if it has no potential common shares.

● LO19–4

Basic Earnings Per Share

A firm is said to have a **simple capital structure** if it has no outstanding securities that could potentially dilute earnings per share. In this context, to dilute means to *reduce* earnings per share. For instance, if a firm has convertible bonds outstanding and those bonds are converted, the resulting increase in common shares could decrease (or dilute) earnings per share. That is, the new shares replaced by the converted bonds might participate in future earnings. So convertible bonds are referred to as **potential common shares**. Other potential common shares are convertible preferred stock, stock options, and contingently issuable shares. We will see how the potentially dilutive effects of these securities are included in the calculation of EPS later in this chapter. Now, though, our focus is on the calculation of EPS for a simple capital structure—when no potential common shares are present. In these cases,

¹⁷FASB ASC 260: Earnings per Share (previously “Earnings per Share,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 128* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 1997)). The guidance is applicable only for public companies.

the calculation is referred to as **basic EPS**, and is simply earnings available to common shareholders divided by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding.

In the most elemental setting, earnings per share (or net loss per share) is merely a firm's net income (or net loss) divided by the number of shares of common stock outstanding throughout the year. The calculation becomes more demanding (a) when the number of shares has changed during the reporting period, (b) when the earnings available to common shareholders are diminished by dividends to preferred shareholders, or (c) when we attempt to take into account the impending effect of potential common shares (which we do in a later section of the chapter). To illustrate the calculation of EPS in each of its dimensions, we will use only one example in this chapter. We'll start with the most basic situation and then add one new element at a time until we have considered all the principal ways the calculation can be affected. In this way, you can see the effect of each component of earnings per share, not just in isolation, but in relation to the effects of other components as well. The basic calculation is shown in Illustration 19–5.

Basic EPS reflects no dilution, only shares now outstanding.

EPS expresses a firm's profitability on a per share basis.

Sovran Financial Corporation reported net income of \$154 million in 2018 (tax rate 40%). Its capital structure consisted of the following:

Common Stock

Jan. 1 60 million common shares were outstanding
(\$ in millions, except per share amount)

Basic EPS:

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \text{Net income} \\ \$154 \\ \hline 60 \\ \text{Shares} \\ \text{outstanding} \end{array}}{60} = \$2.57$$

Illustration 19–5

Fundamental Calculation

In the most elemental setting, earnings per share is simply a company's earnings divided by the number of shares outstanding.

Issuance of New Shares

Because the shares discussed in Illustration 19–5 remained unchanged throughout the year, the denominator of the EPS calculation is simply the number of shares outstanding. But if the number of shares has changed, it's necessary to find the *weighted average* of the shares outstanding during the period the earnings were generated. For instance, if an additional 12 million shares had been issued on March 1 of the year just ended, we calculate the weighted-average number of shares to be 70 million, as demonstrated in Illustration 19–6.

Because the new shares were outstanding only 10 months, or $\frac{10}{12}$ of the year, we increase the 60 million shares already outstanding by the additional shares—weighted by the fraction

• LO19–5

Sovran Financial Corporation reported net income of \$154 million for 2018 (tax rate 40%). Its capital structure included the following:

Common Stock

Jan. 1 60 million common shares were outstanding
Mar. 1 12 million new shares were sold
(\$ in millions, except per share amount)

Basic EPS:

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \text{Net income} \\ \$154 \\ \hline 60 \quad + \quad 12 \left(\frac{10}{12}\right) \\ \text{Shares} \quad \quad \quad \text{New} \\ \text{at Jan. 1} \quad \quad \quad \text{shares} \end{array}}{70} = \frac{\$154}{70} = \$2.20$$

Illustration 19–6

Weighted Average

Any new shares issued are time-weighted by the fraction of the period they were outstanding and then added to the number of shares outstanding for the entire period.

of the year ($^{10}_{12}$) they were outstanding. The weighted average is $60 + 12 (^{10}_{12}) = 60 + 10 = 70$ shares. The reason for time-weighting the shares issued is that the resources the stock sale provides the company are available for generating income only after the date the shares are sold. So, weighting is necessary to make the shares in the fraction's denominator consistent with the income in its numerator (see Illustration 19–6).

Stock Dividends and Stock Splits

- LO19–6 Recall that a stock dividend or a stock split is a distribution of additional shares to existing shareholders. But there's an important and fundamental difference between the increase in shares caused by a stock dividend and an increase from selling new shares. When new shares are sold, both assets and shareholders' equity are increased by an additional investment in the firm by shareholders. On the other hand, a stock dividend or stock split merely increases the number of shares without affecting the firm's assets. In effect, the same pie is divided into more pieces. The result is a larger number of less valuable shares. This fundamental change in the nature of the shares is reflected in a calculation of EPS by simply increasing the number of shares.

In Illustration 19–7, notice that the additional shares created by the stock dividend are *not* weighted for the time period they were outstanding. Instead, the increase is treated as if it occurred at the beginning of the year.

Illustration 19–7

Stock Dividends and Stock Splits

Shares outstanding prior to the stock dividend are retroactively restated to reflect the 10% increase in shares—that is, treated as if the distribution occurred at the beginning of the period.

Sovran Financial Corporation reported net income of \$154 million in 2018 (tax rate 40%). Its capital structure included the following:

Common Stock

Jan. 1	60 million common shares were outstanding
Mar. 1	12 million new shares were sold
June 17	A 10% stock dividend was distributed
	(\$ in millions, except per share amount)

Basic EPS:

$$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Shares at Jan. 1} + \text{New shares}} = \frac{\$154}{60 + 12 (^{10}_{12})} = \frac{\$154}{77} = \$2.00$$

(1.10)
(1.10)

↑
↑

Stock dividend adjustment

The number of shares outstanding after a 10% stock dividend is **1.10** times higher than before. This multiple is applied to both the beginning shares and the new shares sold before the stock distribution. If this had been a 25% stock dividend, the multiple would have been 1.25; a 2-for-1 stock split means a multiple of 2, and so on.

Notice that EPS without the 10% stock dividend (\$2.20) is 10% more than it is with the stock distribution (\$2). This is caused by the increase in the number of shares. But, unlike a sale of new shares, this should not be interpreted as a “dilution” of earnings per share. Shareholders' interests in their company's earnings have not been diluted. Instead, each shareholder's interest is represented by more—though less valuable—shares.

A simplistic but convenient way to view the effect is to think of the predistribution shares as having been “blue.” After the stock dividend, the more valuable “blue” shares are gone, replaced by a larger number of, let's say, “green” shares. From now on, we compute the earnings per “green” share, whereas we previously calculated earnings per “blue” share. We restate the number of shares retroactively to reflect the stock dividend, as if the shares always had been “green.” After all, our intent is to let the calculation reflect the fundamental change in the nature of the shares.

Additional Consideration

When last year's EPS is reported in the current year's comparative income statements, it too should reflect the increased shares from the stock dividend. For instance, suppose EPS was \$2.09 for 2017: \$115 million net income divided by 55 million weighted-average shares. When reported again for comparison purposes in the 2018 comparative income statements, that figure would be restated to reflect the 10% stock dividend [$\$115 \div (55 \times 1.10) = \1.90], as shown:

Earnings per Share:	2018	2017
	\$2.00	\$1.90

The EPS numbers now are comparable—both reflect the stock dividend. Otherwise we would be comparing earnings per “green” share with earnings per “blue” share; this way both are earnings per “green” share.

Reacquired Shares

If shares were reacquired during the period (either retired or as treasury stock), the weighted-average number of shares is reduced. The number of reacquired shares is time-weighted for the *fraction of the year they were not outstanding*, prior to being *subtracted* from the number of shares outstanding during the period. Let's modify our continuing illustration to assume 8 million shares were reacquired on October 1 as treasury stock (Illustration 19–8).

Sovran Financial Corporation reported net income of \$154 million in 2018 (tax rate 40%). Its capital structure included the following:

Common Stock

Jan. 1	60 million common shares outstanding
Mar. 1	12 million new shares were sold
June 17	A 10% stock dividend was distributed
Oct. 1	8 million shares were reacquired as treasury stock

(\$ in millions, except per share amounts)

Basic EPS:

$$\frac{\text{Net income } \$154}{\begin{array}{c} 60 \quad (1.10) + 12 \left(\frac{10}{12}\right) (1.10) - 8 \left(\frac{3}{12}\right) \\ \text{Shares at Jan. 1} \quad \text{New shares} \quad \text{Treasury shares} \end{array}} = \frac{\$154}{75} = \$2.05$$

Stock dividend adjustment*

*Not necessary for the treasury shares since they were reacquired after the stock dividend and thus already reflect the adjustment (that is, the shares repurchased are **8 million** “new green” shares).

Illustration 19–8

Reacquired Shares

The **8 million shares** reacquired as treasury stock are weighted by **(3/12)** to reflect the fact they were not outstanding the last three months of the year.

Compare the adjustment for treasury shares with the adjustment for new shares sold. Each is time-weighted for the fraction of the year the shares were or were not outstanding. But also notice two differences. The new shares are added, while the reacquired shares are subtracted. The second difference is that the reacquired shares are not multiplied by 1.10 to adjust for the 10% stock dividend. The reason is the shares were repurchased after the June 17 stock dividend; the reacquired shares are 8 million of the new post-distribution shares. (To use our earlier representation, these are 8 million “green” shares.) To generalize, when a stock distribution occurs during the reporting period, any sales or purchases of shares that occur *before* the distribution are increased by the distribution. But the stock distribution does not increase the number of shares sold or purchased, if any, *after* the distribution.

The adjustment for reacquired shares is the same as for new shares sold, except the shares are deducted rather than added.

Any sales or purchases of shares that occur before, but not after, a stock dividend or split are affected by the distribution.

Earnings Available to Common Shareholders

- LO19-7 The denominator in an EPS calculation is the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding. Logically, the numerator should similarly represent earnings available to common shareholders. This was automatic in our illustrations to this point because the only shares outstanding were common shares. But when a senior class of shareholders (like preferred shareholders) is entitled to a specified allocation of earnings (like preferred dividends), those amounts are subtracted from earnings before calculating earnings per share.¹⁸ This is demonstrated in Illustration 19-9.

Illustration 19-9

Preferred Dividends

Preferred dividends are subtracted from net income so that “earnings available to common shareholders” is divided by the weighted-average number of common shares.

Preferred dividends reduce earnings available to common shareholders unless the preferred stock is noncumulative and no dividends were declared that year.

Sovran Financial Corporation reported net income of \$154 million in 2018 (tax rate 40%). Its capital structure included the following:

Common Stock

January 1	60 million common shares were outstanding
March 1	12 million new shares were sold
June 17	A 10% stock dividend was distributed
October 1	8 million shares were reacquired as treasury stock

Preferred Stock Nonconvertible

January 1–December 31 5 million shares 8%, \$10 par

(\$ in millions, except per share amount)

Basic EPS:

$$\begin{array}{rcccl}
 \text{Net income} & & \text{Preferred dividends} & & \\
 \$154 & & -\$4^* & & \\
 \hline
 60 & (1.10) & + & 12 \left(\frac{10}{12}\right) (1.10) & - 8 \left(\frac{3}{12}\right) \\
 \text{Shares} & \text{New} & & \text{Treasury} & \\
 \text{at Jan. 1} & \text{shares} & & \text{shares} & \\
 & \text{Stock dividend} & & & \\
 & \text{adjustment} & & &
 \end{array}
 = \frac{\$150}{75} = \$2.00$$

* $8\% \times \$10 \text{ par} \times 5 \text{ million shares}$.

Suppose no dividends were declared for the year. Should we adjust for preferred dividends? Yes, if the preferred stock is cumulative—and most preferred stock is. This means that when dividends are not declared, the unpaid dividends accumulate to be paid in a future year when (if) dividends are subsequently declared. Obviously, the presumption is that although the year’s dividend preference isn’t distributed this year, it eventually will be paid.

We have encountered no potential common shares to this point in our continuing illustration. As a result, we have what is referred to as a simple capital structure. (Although, at this point, you may question this label.) For a simple capital structure, a single presentation of basic earnings per common share is appropriate. We turn our attention now to situations described as complex capital structures. In these situations, two separate presentations are required: basic EPS and diluted EPS.

Diluted Earnings Per Share

Potential Common Shares

Imagine a situation in which convertible bonds are outstanding that will significantly increase the number of common shares if bondholders exercise their options to exchange their bonds for shares of common stock. Should these potential shares be ignored when

¹⁸You learned in Chapter 18 that when dividends are declared, preferred shareholders have a preference (over common shareholders) to a specified amount.

earnings per share is calculated? After all, they haven't been converted as yet, so to assume an increase in shares for a conversion that may never occur might mislead investors and creditors. On the other hand, if conversion is imminent, not taking into account the dilutive effect of the share increase might mislead investors and creditors. The profession's solution to the dilemma is to calculate earnings per share twice.

Securities such as these convertible bonds, while not being common stock, may become common stock through their exercise or conversion. Therefore, they may dilute (reduce) earnings per share and are called **potential common shares**. A firm is said to have a **complex capital structure** if potential common shares are outstanding. Besides convertible bonds, other potential common shares are convertible preferred stock, stock options, and contingently issuable securities. (We'll discuss each of these shortly.) A firm with a complex capital structure reports two EPS calculations. **Basic EPS** ignores the dilutive effect of such securities; **diluted EPS** incorporates the dilutive effect of all potential common shares.

In a complex capital structure, a second EPS computation takes into account the assumed effect of *potential common shares*, essentially a "worst case scenario."

Options, Rights, and Warrants

Stock options, stock rights, and stock warrants are similar. Each gives its holders the right to exercise their option to purchase common stock, usually at a specified exercise price. The dilution that would result from their exercise should be reflected in the calculation of diluted EPS, but not basic EPS.

● LO19–8

To include the dilutive effect of a security means to calculate EPS *as if* the potential increase in shares already has occurred (even though it hasn't yet). So, for stock options (or rights, or warrants), we pretend the options have been exercised. In fact, we assume the options were exercised at the beginning of the reporting period, or when the options were issued if that's later. We then assume the cash proceeds from selling the new shares at the exercise price are used to buy back as many shares as possible at the shares' average market price during the year. This is demonstrated in Illustration 19–10.

Stock options are assumed to have been exercised when calculating diluted EPS.

When we simulate the exercise of the stock options, we calculate EPS as if 15 million shares were sold at the beginning of the year. This obviously increases the number of shares in the denominator by 15 million shares. But it is insufficient to simply add the additional shares without considering the accompanying consequences. Remember, if this hypothetical scenario had occurred, the company would have had \$300 million cash proceeds from the exercise of the options (15 million shares \times \$20 exercise price per share). What would have been the effect on earnings per share? This depends on what the company would have done with the \$300 million cash proceeds. Would the proceeds have been used to buy more equipment? Increase the sales force? Expand facilities? Pay dividends?

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q4, p. 1091

Obviously, there are literally hundreds of choices, and it's unlikely that any two firms would spend the \$300 million exactly the same way. But remember, our objective is to create some degree of uniformity in the way firms determine earnings per share so the resulting numbers are comparable. So, standard-setters decided on a single assumption for all firms to enhance comparability.

For diluted EPS, we assume the proceeds from exercise of the options were used to reacquire shares as treasury stock at the average market price of the common stock during the reporting period. Consequently, the weighted-average number of shares is increased by the difference between the shares assumed issued and those assumed reacquired. In our illustration, 15 million shares issued minus 12 million shares reacquired (\$300 million \times \$25 per share) equals 3 million net increase in shares.

The way we take into account the dilutive effect of stock options is called the *treasury stock method* because of our assumption that treasury shares are purchased with the cash proceeds of the exercise of the options. Besides providing comparability, this assumption actually is plausible because, if the options were exercised, more shares would be needed to issue to option-holders. And, as discussed in the previous chapter, many firms routinely buy back shares either to issue to option-holders or, equivalently, to offset the issuance of new shares.

Illustration 19-10

Stock Options

Stock options give their holders (company executives in this case) the right to purchase common stock at a specified exercise price (\$20 in this case).

The stock options do not affect the calculation of *basic EPS*.

The calculation of diluted EPS assumes that the shares specified by stock options were issued at the exercise price and that the proceeds were used to buy back (as treasury stock) as many of those shares as can be purchased at the market price during the period.

Sovran Financial Corporation reported net income of \$154 million in 2018 (tax rate 40%). Its capital structure included the following:

Common Stock

January 1 60 million common shares outstanding
 March 1 12 million new shares were sold
 June 17 A 10% stock dividend was distributed
 October 1 8 million shares were reacquired as treasury stock
 (The average market price of the common shares during 2018 was \$25 per share.)

Preferred Stock Nonconvertible

January 1–December 31 5 million shares 8%, \$10 par

Incentive Stock Options

Executive stock options granted in 2013, exercisable after 2017 for 15 million common shares* at an exercise price of \$20 per share

(\$ in millions, except per share amounts)

Basic EPS (unchanged)

$$\frac{\text{Net income } \$154}{\text{Shares at Jan. 1 } 60 + \text{New shares } 12 \left(\frac{10}{12}\right) - \text{Treasury shares } 8 \left(\frac{3}{12}\right)} - \frac{\text{Preferred dividends } \$4}{(1.10)} = \frac{\$150}{75} = \$2.00$$

Stock dividend adjustment

Diluted EPS

$$\frac{\text{Net income } \$154}{\text{Shares at Jan. 1 } 60 + \text{New shares } 12 \left(\frac{10}{12}\right) - \text{Treasury shares } 8 \left(\frac{3}{12}\right) + \text{Exercise of options } (15^* - 12')} - \frac{\text{Preferred dividends } \$4}{(1.10)} = \frac{\$150}{78} = \$1.92$$

Stock dividend adjustment

*Adjusted for the stock dividend. Prior to the stock dividend, the options were exercisable for 13 $\frac{3}{4}$ million of the "old" shares. Upon the stock dividend, the new equivalent of 13 $\frac{3}{4}$ became 15 million (13 $\frac{3}{4}$ × 1.10) of the "new" shares.

***Shares Assumed Reacquired for Diluted EPS**

15 million shares
 × \$ 20 (exercise price)
 \$300 million
 ÷ \$ 25 (average market price)
 12 million shares reacquired

Additional Consideration

Actual Exercise of Options. What if options are actually exercised during the reporting period? In that case, we include in the denominator of both basic and diluted EPS the actual shares issued upon the exercise of the options, time-weighted for the fraction of the year the new shares actually are outstanding. This is consistent with the way we include new shares sold under any circumstances.

In addition, we include in diluted EPS only the incremental shares that would have been issued prior to the actual exercise of the options if we pretend the options were exercised

(continued)

(concluded)

at the beginning of the period. We time-weight those shares by the fraction of the year the shares would be outstanding prior to the actual exercise of the options.

Let's say the options in our illustration were exercised on September 1 and that the average per-share price of the stock from the beginning of the year until September 1 was \$24. In that case, we add 5 million shares to the denominator of both basic and diluted EPS: the 15 million shares actually issued $\times 4/12$ of the year actually outstanding = 5 million shares. Then, for *diluted EPS only*, we add the incremental shares that would have been issued *prior to* the actual exercise of the options if we pretend the options were exercised at the beginning of the period. We assume the proceeds (15 million shares \times \$20 = \$300 million) are used to buy shares back at \$24.

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 15 & \text{million shares} & \\
 \times \$ 20 & \text{(exercise price)} & \\
 \hline
 \$300 & \text{million} & \\
 \div \$ 24 & \text{(average market price prior to exercise)} & \\
 \hline
 12.5 & \text{million shares} &
 \end{array}$$

The incremental number of shares to be included in the computation of diluted EPS, then, is weighted for the period the options were outstanding prior to exercise, the 8 months from January 1 to September 1, or $\frac{8}{12}$ of a year.

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 & \text{No adjustment to the numerator} & \\
 & + (15 - 12.5)(\frac{8}{12}) &
 \end{array}$$

Convertible Securities

Sometimes corporations include a conversion feature as part of a bond offering, a note payable, or an issue of preferred stock. Convertible securities can be converted into (exchanged for) shares of stock at the option of the holder of the security. For that reason, convertible securities are potentially dilutive. EPS will be affected if and when such securities are converted and new shares of common stock are issued. In the previous section you learned that the potentially dilutive effect of stock options is reflected in diluted EPS calculations by assuming the options were exercised. Similarly, the potentially dilutive effect of convertible securities is reflected in diluted EPS calculations by assuming they were converted.

By the *if converted method*, as it's called, we assume the conversion into common stock occurred at the beginning of the period (or at the time the convertible security is issued, if that's later). We increase the denominator of the EPS fraction by the additional common shares that would have been issued upon conversion. We increase the numerator by the interest (after-tax) on bonds or other debt or the preferred dividends that would have been avoided if the convertible securities had not been outstanding due to having been converted.

CONVERTIBLE BONDS. Now, let's return to our continuing illustration and modify it to include the existence of convertible bonds (Illustration 19–11).

Sovran Financial Corporation reported net income of \$154 million in 2018 (tax rate 40%). Its capital structure included the following:

Common Stock

Jan. 1 60 million common shares were outstanding
 Mar. 1 12 million new shares were sold
 June 17 A 10% stock dividend was distributed
 Oct. 1 8 million shares were reacquired as treasury stock

(The average market price of the common shares during 2018 was \$25 per share.)

(continued)

● LO19–9

When we assume conversion, the denominator of the EPS fraction is increased by the additional common shares that would have been issued upon conversion.

The numerator is increased by the after-tax interest that would have been avoided.

Illustration 19–11

Convertible Bonds

Illustration 19-11

(concluded)

The convertible bonds do not affect the calculation of basic EPS.

If the bonds had been converted, 12 million more common shares would have been issued, and net income would have been higher by the interest saved (after tax) from not having the bonds outstanding.

Preferred Stock, Nonconvertible

January 1–December 31 5 million shares 8%, \$10 par

Incentive Stock Options

Executive stock options granted in 2013, exercisable after 2017 for 15 million common shares* at an exercise price of \$20 per share

Convertible Bonds**10%, \$300 million face amount issued in 2017, convertible into 12 million common shares**

(\$ in millions, except per share amounts)

Basic EPS (unchanged)

$$\frac{\text{Net income } \$154}{\text{Shares at Jan. 1 } 60} - \frac{\text{Preferred dividends } \$4}{\text{New shares } 12 \left(\frac{10}{12}\right)} - \frac{\text{Treasury shares } 8 \left(\frac{3}{12}\right)}{\text{Stock dividend adjustment}} = \frac{\$150}{75} = \$2.00$$

Diluted EPS

$$\frac{\text{Net income } \$154}{\text{Shares at Jan. 1 } 60} - \frac{\text{Preferred dividends } \$4}{\text{New shares } 12 \left(\frac{10}{12}\right)} - \frac{\text{Treasury shares } 8 \left(\frac{3}{12}\right)}{\text{Stock dividend adjustment}} + \frac{\text{Exercise of options } (15^* - 12)}{\text{Conversion of bonds } +12^*} - \frac{\text{After-tax interest savings } +30 - 40\%(30)}{\text{Conversion of bonds } +12^*} = \frac{\$168}{90} = \$1.87$$

*Adjusted for the stock dividend. For example, prior to the stock dividend, the bonds were exercisable for 10¹⁰/₄ million of the "old" shares, which became 12 million (10¹⁰/₄ × 1.10) of the "new" shares after the stock dividend.

We increase the denominator by the **12 million** shares that would have been issued if the bonds had been converted. However, if that hypothetical conversion had occurred, the bonds would not have been outstanding during the year. What effect would the absence of the bonds have had on income? Obviously, the bond interest expense (10% × \$300 million = **\$30 million**) would have been saved, causing income to be higher. But saving the interest paid would also have meant losing a **\$30 million** tax deduction on the income tax return. With a 40% tax rate that would mean paying \$12 million more income taxes. So, to reflect in earnings the \$18 million after-tax interest that would have been avoided in the event of conversion, we add back the **\$30 million** of interest expense, but deduct 40% × **\$30 million** for the higher tax expense.

Additional Consideration

The \$300 million of convertible bonds in our illustration were issued at face value. Suppose the bonds had been issued for \$282 million. In that case, the adjustment to earnings would be modified to include the amortization of the **\$18 million** bond discount. Assuming straight-line amortization and a **10-year** maturity, the adjustment to the diluted EPS calculation would have been

$$\frac{+ [\text{\$30} + (\text{\$18} \div \text{10 years})] \times (1 - 40\%)*}{+12}$$

(continued)

(concluded)

to reflect the fact that the interest expense would include the \$30 million stated interest plus one-tenth of the bond discount.¹⁹

*This is an alternative way to represent the after-tax adjustment to interest since subtracting 40% of the interest expense is the same as multiplying interest expense by 60%.

Our illustration describes the treatment of convertible bonds. The same treatment pertains to other debt that is convertible into common shares such as convertible notes payable. Remember from our discussion of debt in earlier chapters that all debt is similar, whether in the form of bonds, notes, or other configurations.

Additional Consideration

Notice that we assumed the bonds were converted at the beginning of the reporting period since they were outstanding all year. However, if the convertible bonds had been issued during the reporting period, we would assume their conversion occurred on the date of issue. It would be illogical to assume they were converted before they were issued. If the convertible bonds in our illustration had been sold on **September 1**, for instance, the adjustment to the EPS calculation would have been

$$\frac{+ [\$30 - 40\%(\$30)] (\frac{9}{12})}{+12 (\frac{9}{12})}$$

to reflect the fact that the net increase in shares would have been effective for only four months of the year.

We assume convertible securities were converted (or options exercised) at the beginning of the reporting period or at the time the securities are issued, if later.

CONVERTIBLE PREFERRED STOCK. The potentially dilutive effect of convertible preferred stock is reflected in EPS calculations in much the same way as convertible debt. That is, we calculate EPS as if conversion already had occurred. Specifically, we add shares to the denominator of the EPS fraction. We do not subtract the preferred dividends in the numerator because those dividends would have been avoided if the preferred stock had been converted. In Illustration 19–12, we assume our preferred stock is convertible into 3 million shares of common stock.

Sovran Financial Corporation reported net income of \$154 million in 2018 (tax rate 40%). Its capital structure included the following:

Common Stock

Jan. 1 60 million common shares were outstanding
Mar. 1 12 million new shares were sold
June 17 A 10% stock dividend was distributed
Oct. 1 8 million shares were reacquired as treasury stock

(The average market price of the common shares during 2018 was \$25 per share.)

Preferred Stock, Convertible into 3 million common shares*

January 1–December 31 5 million shares 8%, \$10 par

Incentive Stock Options

Executive stock options granted in 2013, exercisable after 2017 for 15 million common shares* at an exercise price of \$20 per share

(continued)

Illustration 19–12

Convertible Preferred Stock

¹⁹See Chapter 14 if you need to refresh your memory about bond discount amortization.

Illustration 19-12

(concluded)

Since diluted EPS is calculated as if the preferred shares had been converted, there are no dividends.

Convertible Bonds

10%, \$300 million face amount issued in 2017, convertible into 12 million common shares
(\$ in millions, except per share amounts)

Basic EPS

$$\frac{\text{Net income } \$154 - \text{Preferred dividends } \$4}{\text{Shares at Jan. 1 } 60 + \text{New shares } 12 \left(\frac{1}{10}\right) - \text{Treasury shares } 8 \left(\frac{3}{12}\right)} = \frac{\$150}{75} = \$2.00$$

\uparrow Stock dividend adjustment \uparrow

Diluted EPS

$$\frac{\text{Net income } \$154 - \text{Preferred dividends } \$4 + \text{After-tax interest savings } \$30 - 40\% (30)}{\text{Shares at Jan. 1 } 60 + \text{New shares } 12 \left(\frac{1}{10}\right) - \text{Treasury shares } 8 \left(\frac{3}{12}\right) + \text{Exercise of options } (15 - 12) + \text{Conversion of bonds } +12 + \text{Conversion of preferred shares } +3^*} = \frac{\$172}{93} = \$1.85$$

\uparrow Stock dividend adjustment \uparrow

*Adjusted for the stock dividend. For example, prior to the stock dividend, the preferred shares were convertible into 2% million of the "old" shares, which became 3 million (2% × 1.10) of the "new" shares after the stock dividend.

The adjustment for the conversion of the preferred stock is applied only to diluted EPS computations. Basic EPS is unaffected.

However, when diluted EPS is calculated, we hypothetically assume the convertible preferred stock was *not* outstanding. Accordingly, no preferred dividends on these shares would have been paid.

Antidilutive Securities

At times, the effect of the conversion or exercise of potential common shares would be to increase, rather than decrease, EPS. These we refer to as **antidilutive securities**. Such securities are ignored when calculating both basic and diluted EPS.

● LO19-10 **Options, Warrants, Rights**

For illustration, recall the way we treated the stock options in our continuing illustration. In applying the treasury stock method, the number of shares assumed repurchased is fewer than the number of shares assumed sold. This is the case any time the buyback (average market) price is higher than the exercise price. Consequently, there will be a net increase in the number of shares, so earnings per share will decline.

On the other hand, when the exercise price is *higher* than the market price, to assume shares are sold at the exercise price and repurchased at the market price would mean buying back *more* shares than were sold. This would produce a net decrease in the number of shares. So EPS would increase, not decrease. These would have an antidilutive effect and would not be considered exercised. In fact, a rational investor would not exercise options at an exercise price higher than the current market price anyway. Let's look at the example provided by Illustration 19-13.

To assume 4 million shares were sold at the \$32.50 exercise price and repurchased at the lower market price (\$25) would mean reacquiring 5.2 million shares. That's *more* shares than were assumed sold. Because the effect would be antidilutive, we would simply ignore the warrants in the calculations.

Antidilutive securities are ignored when calculating both basic and diluted EPS.

Sovran Financial Corporation reported net income of \$154 million in 2018 (tax rate 40%). Its capital structure included the following:

Common Stock

Jan. 1 60 million common shares were outstanding
 Mar. 1 12 million new shares were sold
 June 17 A 10% stock dividend was distributed
 Oct. 1 8 million shares were reacquired as treasury stock
 (The average market price of the common shares during 2018 was **\$25** per share.)

Preferred Stock, Convertible into 3 million common shares

January 1–December 31 5 million shares 8%, \$10 par

Incentive Stock Options

Executive stock options granted in 2013, exercisable after 2017 for 15 million common shares at an exercise price of \$20 per share

Convertible Bonds

10%, \$300 million face amount issued in 2017, convertible into 12 million common shares

Stock Warrants

Warrants granted in 2017, exercisable for 4 million common shares* at an exercise price of \$32.50 per share

Calculations

The calculations of both basic and diluted EPS are unaffected by the warrants because the effect of exercising the warrants would be antidilutive

*Adjusted for the stock dividend. For example, prior to the stock dividend, the warrants were exercisable for $3\frac{3}{4}$ million of the "old" shares, which became 4 million ($3\frac{3}{4} \times 1.10$) of the "new" shares after the stock dividend.

Illustration 19-13

Antidilutive Warrants

The \$32.50 exercise price is higher than the market price, \$25, so to assume shares are sold at the exercise price and repurchased at the market price would mean reacquiring more shares than were sold.

In our continuing illustration, only the stock warrants were antidilutive. The other potential common shares caused EPS to decline when we considered them exercised or converted. In the case of the executive stock options, it was readily apparent that their effect would be dilutive because the exercise price was less than the market price, indicating that fewer shares could be repurchased (at the average market price) than were assumed issued (at the exercise price). As a result, the denominator increased. When only the denominator of a fraction increases, the fraction itself decreases. On the other hand, in the case of the warrants, it was apparent that their effect would be antidilutive because the exercise price was higher than the market price, which would have decreased the denominator and therefore increased the fraction.

When a company has a *net loss*, rather than net income, it reports a loss per share. In that situation, stock options that otherwise are dilutive will be antidilutive. Here's why. Suppose we have a loss per share of \$2.00 calculated as $(\$150 \text{ million}) \div 75 \text{ million shares} = (\$2.00)$. Now suppose stock options are outstanding that, if exercised, will increase the number of shares by 5 million. If that increase is included in the calculation, the loss per share will be \$1.88 calculated as $(\$150 \text{ million}) \div 80 \text{ million shares} = (\$1.88)$. The *loss* per share *declines*. This represents an *increase* in performance—not a dilution of performance. The options would be considered antidilutive, then, and not included in the calculation of the net loss per share. Any potential common shares not included in dilutive EPS because they are antidilutive should be revealed in the disclosure notes.

Convertible Securities

For convertible securities, though, it's not immediately obvious whether the effect of their conversion would be dilutive or antidilutive because the assumed conversion would affect both the numerator and the denominator of the EPS fraction. We discovered each was dilutive only after including the effect in the calculation and observing the result—a decline in EPS. But there's an easier way.

To determine whether convertible securities are dilutive and should be included in a diluted EPS calculation, we can compare the “incremental effect” of the conversion (expressed as a fraction) with the EPS fraction before the effect of any convertible security is considered. This, of course is our basic EPS. Recall from Illustration 19–12 that basic EPS is \$2.00.

For comparison, we determine the “earnings per incremental share” of the two convertible securities.

Conversion of bonds

The incremental effect (of conversion) of the bonds is the after-tax interest saved divided by the additional common shares from conversion.

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \text{After-tax} \\ \text{interest savings} \end{array} + \$30 - 40\% (\$30)}{\begin{array}{c} \text{Conversion} \\ \text{of bonds} \end{array} + 12} = \frac{\$18}{12} = \$1.50$$

Conversion of preferred stock

The incremental effect (of conversion) of the preferred stock is the dividends that wouldn't be paid divided by the additional common shares from conversion.

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \text{Preferred} \\ \text{dividends} \end{array} + \$4}{\begin{array}{c} \text{Conversion of} \\ \text{preferred shares} \end{array} + 3} = \$1.33$$

If the incremental effect of a security is *higher* than basic EPS, it is antidilutive. That's not the case in our illustration.

Order of Entry for Multiple Convertible Securities

A convertible security might seem to be dilutive when looked at individually but, in fact, may be antidilutive when included in combination with other convertible securities. This is because the *order of entry* for including their effects in the EPS calculation determines by how much, or even whether, EPS decreases as a result of their assumed conversion. Because our goal is to reveal the maximum potential dilution that might result, theoretically we should calculate diluted EPS using every possible combination of potential common shares to find the combination that yields the lowest EPS. But that's not necessary.

We can use the earnings per incremental share we calculated to determine the sequence of including securities' effects in the calculation. We include the securities in reverse order, beginning with the lowest incremental effect (that is, most dilutive), followed by the next lowest, and so on. This is, in fact, the order in which we included the securities in our continuing illustration.

Additional Consideration

Actually, the order of inclusion made no difference in our example, but would in many instances. For example, suppose the preferred stock had been convertible into 2.1 million shares, rather than 3 million shares. The incremental effect of its conversion would have been as follows:

Conversion of Preferred Stock

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \text{Preferred dividends} \\ + \$4 \\ \hline \text{Conversion of} \\ \text{preferred shares} \end{array} + 2.1}{\text{Conversion of preferred shares}} = \$1.90$$

(continued)

(concluded)

On the surface, the effect would seem to be dilutive because \$1.90 is less than \$2.00, basic EPS. In fact, if this were the only convertible security, it would be dilutive. But, after the convertible bonds are assumed converted first, then the assumed conversion of the preferred stock would be *antidilutive*.

With Conversion of Bonds

Net income	Preferred dividends	After-tax interest savings	
\$154	−\$4	+ \$30 − 40% (\$30)	= $\frac{\$168}{90} = \1.867
60	(1.10) + 12 ($\frac{10}{2}$)	(1.10) − 8 ($\frac{3}{2}$) + (15 − 12)	+ 12
Shares at Jan. 1	New shares	Treasury shares	Exercise of options
	Stock dividend adjustment		Conversion of bonds

With Conversion of Preferred Stock

Net income	Preferred dividends	After-tax interest savings	
\$154	−\$4	+ \$30 − 40% (\$30)	= $\frac{\$172}{92.1} = \1.868
60	(1.10) + 12 ($\frac{10}{2}$)	(1.10) − 8 ($\frac{3}{2}$) + (15 − 12)	+ 12
Shares at Jan. 1	New shares	Treasury shares	Exercise of options
	Stock dividend adjustment		Conversion of bonds
			+ 2.1
			Conversion of preferred shares

Although the incremental effect of the convertible preferred stock (\$1.90) is lower than basic EPS (\$2.00), when included in the calculation after the convertible bonds, the effect is antidilutive (EPS increases).

Because the incremental effect of the convertible bonds (\$1.50) is lower than the incremental effect of the convertible preferred stock (\$1.90), it is included first.

A convertible security might seem to be dilutive when looked at individually but may be antidilutive when included in combination with other convertible securities.

Concept Review Exercise

At December 31, 2018, the financial statements of Clevenger Casting Corporation included the following:

BASIC AND DILUTED EPS

Net income for 2018	\$500 million
Common stock, \$1 par:	
Shares outstanding on January 1	150 million shares
Shares retired for cash on February 1	24 million shares
Shares sold for cash on September 1	18 million shares
2-for-1 split on July 23	
Preferred stock, 10%, \$70 par, cumulative, nonconvertible	\$ 70 million
Preferred stock, 8%, \$50 par, cumulative, convertible into 4 million shares of common stock	\$100 million
Incentive stock options outstanding, fully vested, for 4 million shares of common stock; the exercise price is \$15	
Bonds payable, 12.5%, convertible into 20 million shares of common stock	\$200 million

Additional data:

The market price of the common stock averaged \$20 during 2018.

The convertible preferred stock and the bonds payable had been issued at par in 2016. The tax rate for the year was 40%.

Required:

Compute basic and diluted earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

(\$ in millions, except per share amounts)

Solution:**Basic EPS**

Net income			Preferred dividends		Preferred dividends		
\$500			-\$7 ^a		-\$8 ^b		
150	(2.00)	-	24 (1½)	(2.00)	+	18 (½)	= \$485
Shares at Jan. 1			Retired shares			New shares	262 = \$1.85
			Stock split adjustment				

Diluted EPS

Net income			Preferred dividends		Preferred dividends		After-tax interest savings		
\$500			-\$7 ^a		-\$8 ^b		+ 25 ^d - 40% (\$25 ^d)		
150	(2.00)	-	24 (1½)	(2.00)	+	18 (½)	+	(4 - 3) ^c	+ 20
Shares at Jan. 1			Retired shares			New shares	Exercise of warrants	Conversion of bonds	
			Stock split adjustment						
									= \$500
									283 = \$1.77

^a10% × \$70 million = \$7 million

^b8% × \$100 million = \$8 million

***Exercise of warrants:**

4 million shares
× \$15 (exercise price)
\$60 million
÷ \$20 (average market price)
3 million shares

^d12.5% × \$200 million = \$25 million

Dilution:

Conversion of Bonds	Conversion of 8% Preferred Stock
After-tax interest savings	Preferred dividends
+ \$25 - 40% (\$25)	+ \$8
+ 20	+ 4
Conversion of bonds	Conversion of preferred shares
= \$0.75	= \$2.00*

*Because the incremental effect of conversion of the preferred stock (\$2) is higher than EPS without the conversion of the preferred stock, the conversion would be *antidilutive* and is *not* considered in the calculation of diluted EPS.

Additional EPS Issues

Components of the “Proceeds” in the Treasury Stock Method

• LO19-11

In calculating diluted EPS when stock options are outstanding, we assume the options have been exercised. That is, we pretend the company sold the shares specified by the options at the exercise price and that the “proceeds” were used to buy back (as treasury stock) as many shares as can be purchased at the average market price of the stock during the year. The proceeds for the calculation should include the amount received from the hypothetical

exercise of the options (\$300 million in Illustration 19–10). But that’s only the first of two possible components.

The second component of the proceeds is the total compensation from the award that’s *not yet expensed*. If the fair value of an option had been \$4 at the grant date, the total compensation would have been 15 million shares times \$4, or \$60 million. In our illustration, though, we assumed the options were fully vested before 2018, so all \$60 million already had been expensed and this second component of the proceeds was zero. If the options had been only half vested, half the compensation would have been unexpensed and \$30 million would have been added to the \$300 million proceeds. This would have been the case, for instance, if our calculation was made after two years of a four-year vesting period.

Why do the proceeds include these two components? We might think of it like this. The “proceeds” include everything the firm will receive from the award: (1) cash, if any, at exercise and (2) services from the recipient (value of award given as compensation). The reason we *exclude the expensed portion* is that, when it’s expensed, earnings are reduced, so that portion of the dilution already is reflected in EPS. Excluding that expensed portion from the proceeds avoids the additional dilution that would occur if we included those additional proceeds in our hypothetical buyback of shares. Hence, we avoid double-counting the dilutive effect of the compensation.

For the treasury stock method, “proceeds” include:

1. The amount, if any, received from the hypothetical exercise of options or vesting of restricted stock.
2. The total compensation from the award that’s not yet expensed.

Restricted Stock Awards in EPS Calculations

As we discussed earlier, restricted stock awards and their cousins, restricted stock units (RSUs), have replaced stock options as the share-based compensation plan of choice. Like stock options, they represent potential common shares and their dilutive effect is included in diluted EPS. In fact, they too are included using the treasury stock method. That is, the shares are added to the denominator and then reduced by the number of shares that can be bought back with the “proceeds” at the average market price of the company’s stock during the year. Unlike stock options, though, the first component of the proceeds usually is absent; employees don’t pay to acquire their shares.

Also, only *unvested* restricted stock award shares and RSU shares are included in EPS calculations; fully vested shares are actually distributed and thus outstanding. The proceeds for the EPS calculation include the total compensation from the unvested restricted stock that’s not yet expensed, the second component. For an example, refer back to the restricted stock in Illustration 19–2. The total compensation for the award is \$60 million (\$12 market price per share \times 5 million shares). Because the restricted stock vests over four years, it is expensed as \$15 million each year for four years. At the end of 2018, the first year, \$45 million remains unexpensed, so \$45 million would be the assumed proceeds in an EPS calculation. If we assume the average market price that year was, say, \$15, the \$45 million will buy back 3 million shares and we would add to the denominator of diluted EPS 2 million common shares:

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{No adjustment to the numerator} \\ \hline 5 \text{ million} - 3^* \text{ million} = 2 \text{ million} \\ \text{*Assumed purchase of treasury shares} \\ \$45 \text{ million} \\ \div \$15 \text{ average market price} \\ \hline 3 \text{ million shares} \end{array}$$

At the end of 2019, the *second* year, \$30 million remains unexpensed, so assuming the average market price that year was, say, \$12, we would add to the denominator of diluted EPS 2.5 million common shares:

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{No adjustment to the numerator} \\ \hline 5 \text{ million} - 2.5^* \text{ million} = 2.5 \text{ million} \\ \text{*Assumed purchase of treasury shares} \\ \$30 \text{ million} \\ \div \$12 \text{ average market price} \\ \hline 2.5 \text{ million shares} \end{array}$$

Contingently Issuable Shares

- LO19–12 Sometimes an agreement specifies that additional shares of common stock will be issued, contingent on the occurrence of some future circumstance. For instance, in the disclosure note reproduced in Illustration 19–14, **Hunt Manufacturing Co.** reported contingent shares in connection with its acquisition of **Feeny Manufacturing Company**.

Illustration 19–14

Contingently Issuable
Shares—Hunt
Manufacturing Company

Real World Financials

Note 12: Acquisitions (in part)

The Company acquired Feeny Manufacturing Company of Muncie, Indiana, for 135,000 shares of restricted common stock with a value of \$7.71 per share. Feeny Manufacturing Company is a manufacturer of kitchen storage products. The purchase agreement calls for the issuance of up to 135,000 additional shares of common stock in the next fiscal year based on the earnings of Feeny Manufacturing Company. . . .

At times, contingent shares are issuable to shareholders of an acquired company, certain key executives, or others in the event a certain level of performance is achieved. Contingent performance may be a desired level of income, a target stock price, or some other measurable activity level.

Contingently issuable
shares are considered
outstanding in the
computation of diluted
EPS.

When calculating EPS, **contingently issuable shares** are considered to be outstanding in the computation of diluted EPS if the target performance level already is being met (assumed to remain at existing levels until the end of the contingency period). For example, if shares will be issued at a future date if a certain level of income is achieved and that level of income or more was already reported this year, those additional shares are simply added to the denominator of the diluted EPS fraction.²⁰

For clarification, refer to our continuing illustration of diluted EPS and assume 3 million additional shares will become issuable to certain executives in the following year (2019) if net income that year is \$150 million or more. Recall that net income for Sovran Financial in 2018 was \$154 million, so the additional shares would be considered outstanding in the computation of diluted EPS by simply adding **3 million** additional shares to the denominator of the EPS fraction. Obviously, the 2019 condition (\$150 million net income or more) has not been met yet since it's only 2018. But because that level of income was achieved in 2018, the presumption is that it's likely to be achieved in 2019 as well.

If a level of income must
be attained before the
shares will be issued,
and income already is
that amount or more,
the additional shares
are simply added to the
denominator.

Assumed Issuance of Contingently Issuable Shares (diluted EPS):

No adjustment to the numerator
+3
Additional shares

On the other hand, if the target income next year is \$160 million, the contingent shares would simply be ignored in our calculation.

Summary of the Effect of Potential Common Shares on Earnings Per Share

You have seen that under certain circumstances, securities that have the potential of reducing earnings per share by becoming common stock are assumed already to have become common stock for the purpose of calculating EPS. The table in Illustration 19–15 summarizes the circumstances under which the dilutive effect of these securities is reflected in the calculation of basic and diluted EPS.

Illustration 19–16 summarizes the specific effects on the diluted EPS fraction when the dilutive effect of a potentially dilutive security is reflected in the calculation.

²⁰The shares should be included in both basic and diluted EPS if all conditions have actually been met so that there is no *circumstance* under which those shares would not be issued. In essence, these are *no longer contingent shares*.

Potential Common Shares	Is the Dilutive Effect Reflected in the Calculation of EPS?*	
	Basic EPS	Diluted EPS
• Stock options (or warrants, rights)	no	yes
• Restricted stock	no	yes
• Convertible securities (bonds, notes, preferred stock)	no	yes
• Contingently issuable shares	no	yes [†]

*The effect is not included for any security if its effect is antidilutive.
[†]Unless shares are contingent upon some level of performance not yet achieved.

Illustration 19-15

When Potential Common Shares Are Reflected in EPS

Potential Common Shares	Modification to the Diluted EPS Fractions	
	Numerator	Denominator
• Stock options (or warrants, rights)	None	Add the shares that would be created by their exercise,* reduced by shares repurchased at the average share price.
• Restricted stock	None	Add shares that would be created by their vesting,* reduced by shares repurchased at the average share price.
• Convertible bonds (or notes)	Add the interest (after-tax) that would have been avoided if the debt had been converted.	Add shares that would be created by the conversion* of the bonds (or notes).
• Convertible preferred stock	Do not deduct the dividends that would have been avoided if the preferred stock had been converted.	Add shares that would have been created by the conversion* of the preferred stock.
• Contingently issuable shares: Issuable when specified conditions are met, and those conditions currently are being met	None	Add shares that are issuable.
• Contingently issuable shares: Issuable when specified conditions are met, and those conditions are not currently being met	None	None

*At the beginning of the year or when potential common shares were issued, whichever is later (time-weight the increase in shares if assumed exercised or converted in midyear).

Illustration 19-16

How Potential Common Shares Are Reflected in a Diluted EPS Calculation

Actual Conversions

When calculating EPS in our example, we “pretended” the convertible bonds had been converted at the beginning of the year. What if they actually had been converted, let’s say on November 1? Interestingly, diluted EPS would be precisely the same. Here’s why:

1. The actual conversion would cause an actual increase in shares of 12 million on November 1. These would be time-weighted so the denominator would increase by $12 (\frac{2}{12})$. Also, the numerator would be higher because net income actually would be

increased by the after-tax interest saved on the bonds for the last two months, $[\$30 - 40\% (\$30)] \times (\frac{2}{12})$. Be sure to note that this would not be an adjustment in the EPS calculation. Instead, net income would actually have been higher by $[\$30 - 40\% (\$30)] \times (\frac{2}{12}) = \3 . That is, reported net income would have been \$157 rather than \$154.

2. We would assume conversion for the period before November 1 because they were potentially dilutive during that period. The 12 million shares assumed outstanding from January 1 to November 1 would be time-weighted for that 10-month period: $12 (\frac{10}{12})$. Also, the numerator would be increased by the after-tax interest assumed saved on the bonds for the first 10 months, $[\$30 - 40\% (\$30)] \times (\frac{10}{12})$.

Notice that the incremental effect on diluted EPS is the same either way.

Not Actually Converted:

Converted on November 1:

EPS would be precisely the same whether convertible securities were actually converted or not.

Assumed after-tax interest savings	Actual after-tax interest savings	Assumed after-tax interest savings
$+ \$30 - 40\% (\$30)$	$+ [\$30 - 40\% (\$30)] \times (\frac{2}{12}) + [\$30 - 40\% (\$30)] \times (\frac{10}{12})$	
+ 12	+ 12 ($\frac{2}{12}$)	+ 12 ($\frac{10}{12}$)
Assumed conversion of bonds	Actual conversion of bonds	Assumed conversion of bonds
\$18	\$3	\$15
12	2	10

Illustration 19–17 shows the disclosure note **Clorox Company** reported after the conversion of convertible notes during the year.

Illustration 19–17

Conversion of Notes—The Clorox Company

Real World Financials

Note 1: Significant Accounting Policies—Earnings Per Common Share (in part)

A \$9,000,000 note payable to Henkel Corporation was converted into 1,200,000 shares of common stock on August 1. . . . Earnings per common share and weighted-average shares outstanding reflect this conversion as if it were effective during all periods presented.

LO19–13

Financial Statement Presentation of Earnings Per Share Data

Recall from Chapter 4 that if a company disposes of a component of its operations, the company will report “discontinued operations” as a separate item within the income statement as follows:

Income from Continuing Operations

Discontinued operations

Net income

When the income statement includes discontinued operations, EPS data (both basic and diluted) must also be reported separately for income from continuing operations and net income. Per share amounts for discontinued operations would be disclosed either on the face of the income statement or in the notes to financial statements. Presentation on the face of the income statement is illustrated by the partial income statements of **H&R Block, Inc.**, from its annual report for the year ended April 30, 2016, and exhibited in Illustration 19–18.

Basic and diluted EPS data should be reported on the face of the income statement for all reporting periods presented in the comparative statements. Businesses without potential common shares present basic EPS only. Disclosure notes should provide additional disclosures including:

1. A reconciliation of the numerator and denominator used in the basic EPS computations to the numerator and the denominator used in the diluted EPS computations. An example of this is presented in Illustration 19–19 using the situation described previously in Illustration 19–12.

Consolidated Income Statements (partial)
For the Years Ended April 30, 2016 and 2015

	2016	2015
Net income from continuing operations	\$383,553	\$486,744
Net loss from discontinued operations	(9,286)	(13,081)
Net income	\$374,267	\$473,663
Basic Earnings (Loss) Per Share:		
Continuing operations	\$ 1.54	\$ 1.77
Discontinued operations	(0.04)	(0.05)
Consolidated	\$ 1.50	\$ 1.72
Diluted Earnings (Loss) Per Share:		
Continuing operations	\$ 1.53	\$ 1.75
Discontinued operations	(0.04)	(0.04)
Consolidated	\$ 1.49	\$ 1.71

Illustration 19-18

EPS Disclosure—H&R
Block

Real World Financials

2. Any adjustments to the numerator for preferred dividends.
3. Any potential common shares that weren't included because they were antidilutive.
4. Any transactions that occurred after the end of the most recent period that would materially affect earnings per share.

Earnings per Share Reconciliation

(\$ in millions)	Income (Numerator)	Share (Denominator)	Per Share Amount
Net income	\$ 154		
Preferred dividends	(4)		
Basic earnings per share	150	75	\$2.00
Stock options	None	3*	
Convertible debt	18	12	
Convertible preferred stock	4	3	
Diluted earnings per share	\$ 172	93	\$1.85

Note: Stock warrants to purchase an additional 4 million shares at \$32.50 per share were outstanding throughout the year but were not included in diluted EPS because the warrants' exercise price is greater than the average market price of the common shares.

*15 million - [(15 million × \$20) ÷ \$25] = 3 million net additional shares.

Illustration 19-19

Reconciliation of Basic EPS
Computations to Diluted
EPS Computations

Additional Consideration

It's possible that potential common shares would have a dilutive effect on one component of net income but an antidilutive effect on another. When the inclusion of the potential common shares has a dilutive effect on "income from continuing operations," the effect should be included in all calculations of diluted EPS. In other words, the same number of potential common shares used in computing the diluted per-share amount for income from continuing operations is used in computing all other diluted per-share amounts, even when amounts are antidilutive to the individual per-share amounts.

Decision Makers' Perspective

We noted earlier in the chapter that investors and creditors pay a great deal of attention to earnings per share information. Because of the importance analysts attach to earnings announcements, companies are particularly eager to meet earnings expectations. As we first noted in Chapter 4, this desire has contributed to a relatively recent trend, especially among technology firms, to report **pro forma** earnings per share. What exactly are pro forma earnings? Unfortunately there is no answer to that question. Essentially, pro forma earnings are actual (GAAP) earnings reduced by any expenses the reporting company feels are unusual and should be excluded. Always, though, the pro forma results of a company look better than the real results. **Broadcom Corporation**, a provider of broadband and network products, reported pro forma *earnings* of \$0.49 per share. However on a GAAP basis, it actually had a *loss* of \$3.29 per share. This is not an isolated example.

Make sure you pay lots of attention to the man behind the curtain. If any earnings figure says pro forma, you should immediately look for a footnote or explanation telling you just what is and is not included in the calculation.

When companies report pro forma results, they argue they are trying to help investors by giving them numbers that more accurately reflect their normal business activities, because they exclude unusual expenses. Analysts should be skeptical, though. Because of the purely discretionary nature of pro forma reporting and several noted instances of abuse, analysts should, at a minimum, find out precisely what expenses are excluded and what the actual GAAP numbers are.

Another way management might enhance the appearance of EPS numbers is by massaging the denominator of the calculation. Reducing the number of shares increases earnings *per share*. Some companies judiciously use share buyback programs to manipulate the number of shares and therefore EPS. There is nothing inherently wrong with share buybacks and, as we noted in Chapter 18, they can benefit shareholders. The motivation for buybacks, though, can sometimes be detected in the year-to-year pattern of net income and EPS. Companies whose growth rates in earnings per share routinely exceed their growth in net income may be using buybacks to artificially increase EPS.

One way analysts use EPS data is in connection with the price-earnings ratio. This ratio is simply the market price per share divided by the earnings per share. It measures the market's perception of the quality of a company's earnings by indicating the price multiple the capital market is willing to pay for the company's earnings. Presumably, this ratio reflects the information provided by all financial information in that the market price reflects analysts' perceptions of the company's growth potential, stability, and relative risk. The price-earnings ratio relates these performance measures with the external judgment of the marketplace concerning the value of the firm.

The ratio measures the quality of earnings in the sense that it represents the market's expectation of future earnings as indicated by current earnings. Caution is called for in comparing price-earnings ratios. For instance, a ratio might be low, not because earnings expectations are low, but because of abnormally elevated current earnings. On the contrary, the ratio might be high, not because earnings expectations are high, but because the company's current earnings are temporarily depressed. Similarly, an analyst should be alert to differences among accounting methods used to measure earnings from company to company when making comparisons.

Another ratio frequently calculated by shareholders and potential shareholders is the dividend payout ratio. This ratio expresses the percentage of earnings that is distributed to shareholders as dividends. The ratio is calculated by dividing dividends per common share by the earnings per share.

This ratio provides an indication of a firm's reinvestment strategy. A low payout ratio suggests that a company is retaining a large portion of earnings for reinvestment for new facilities and other operating needs. Low payouts often are found in growth industries and high payouts in mature industries. Often, though, the ratio is merely a reflection of managerial strategy concerning the mix of internal versus external financing. The ratio also is considered by investors who, for tax or other reasons, prefer current income over market price appreciation, or vice versa. ●

The price-earnings ratio measures the quality of a company's earnings.

The dividend payout ratio indicates the percentage of earnings that is distributed to shareholders as dividends.

Concept Review Exercise

At December 31, 2018, the financial statements of Bahnson General, Inc., included the following:

ADDITIONAL EPS ISSUES

Net income for 2018 (including a net-of-tax loss from discontinued operations of \$10 million) \$180 million

Common stock, \$1 par:

Shares outstanding on January 1 44 million

The share price was \$25 and \$28 at the beginning and end of the year, respectively.

Additional data:

- At January 1, 2018, \$200 million of 10% convertible notes were outstanding. The notes were converted on April 1 into 16 million shares of common stock.
- An agreement with company executives calls for the issuance of up to 12 million additional shares of common stock in 2019 and 2020 based on Bahnson's net income in those years. Executives will receive 2 million shares at the end of each of those two years if the company's stock price is at least \$26 and another 4 million shares each year if the stock price is at least \$29.50.

The tax rate is 40%.

Required:

Compute basic and diluted earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

Solution:

(\$ in millions, except per share amounts)

Basic EPS

$$\frac{\text{Net income } \$180}{44 \text{ Shares at Jan. 1} + 16 \text{ (} \frac{2}{12} \text{) Actual conversion of notes}} = \frac{\$180}{56} = \$3.21$$

Diluted EPS

$$\frac{\text{Net income } \$180}{44 \text{ Shares at Jan. 1} + 16 \text{ (} \frac{2}{12} \text{) Actual conversion of notes} + 16 \text{ (} \frac{2}{12} \text{) Assumed conversion of notes} + (2 + 2) \text{ Contingent shares}} + \frac{[\$20 - 40\%(\$20)] \times (\frac{2}{12})}{64} = \frac{\$183}{64} = \$2.86$$

Convertible Notes: Notice that the effect on diluted EPS would be precisely the same whether the convertible notes were actually converted or not.

Converted on April 1:

$$\frac{\text{Net income including actual after-tax interest savings } \$180}{44 \text{ Shares at Jan. 1} + 16 \text{ (} \frac{2}{12} \text{) Actual conversion of notes} + 16 \text{ (} \frac{2}{12} \text{) Assumed conversion of notes}} + \frac{\text{Assumed after-tax interest savings } + [\$20 - 40\%(\$20)] \times (\frac{2}{12})}{60} = \frac{\$183}{60}$$

Not Actually Converted:

Net income without actual after-tax interest savings		Assumed after-tax interest savings	
\$171*		+ [\$20 - 40% (\$20)]	\$183
44	+	16	60
Shares at Jan. 1		Assumed conversion of notes	

*\$180 - [[\$20 - 40% (\$20)] × (½)] = \$171; after-tax interest from Apr. 1 to Dec. 31.

Contingently Issuable Shares:

Because the conditions are met for issuing 4 million shares (2 million for each of two years), those shares are simply added to the denominator of diluted EPS. The current share price (\$28) is projected to remain the same throughout the contingency period, so the other 8 million shares (4 million for each of two years) are excluded.

Income Statement Presentation:

To determine the per share amounts for income before discontinued operations, we substitute that amount for net income in the numerator (in this case, that means adding back the \$10 million loss from discontinued operations):

$$\text{Basic: } \frac{\$180 + 10}{56} = \$3.39 \quad \text{Diluted: } \frac{\$183 + 10}{56} = \$3.02$$

Earnings per Share:	Basic*	Diluted
Income before discontinued operations	\$3.39	\$3.02
Loss from discontinued operations	(0.18)	(0.16)
Net income	\$3.21	\$2.86

*Only diluted EPS is required on the face of the income statement. Basic EPS is reported in the EPS reconciliation shown in the disclosure note (below).

Disclosure Note:**Earnings per Share Reconciliation:**

	Income (Numerator)	Shares (Denominator)	Per Share Amount
Basic Earnings per Share			
Income before discontinued operations	\$190	56	\$3.39
Loss from discontinued operations	(10)	56	(0.18)
Net income	\$180	56	\$3.21
Convertible debt	3	4	
Contingently issuable shares	—	4	
Diluted Earnings per Share			
Income before discontinued operations	\$193	64	\$3.02
Loss from discontinued operations	(10)	64	(0.16)
Net income	\$183	64	\$2.86

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© Cultura RM/Alamy Stock Photo

1. How can a compensation package such as this serve as an incentive to Ms. Veres? (p. 1091) Stock-based plans like the restricted stock and stock options that Ms. Veres is receiving are designed to motivate recipients. If the shares awarded are restricted so that Ms. Veres is not free to sell the shares during the restriction period, she has an incentive to remain with the company until rights to the shares vest. Likewise, stock options can be made exercisable only after a specified period of employment. An additional incentive

of stock-based plans is that the recipient will be motivated to take actions that will maximize the value of the shares.

2. **Ms. Veres received a “grant of restricted stock.” How should NEV account for the grant?** (p. 1092) The compensation associated with restricted stock is the market price of unrestricted shares of the same stock. NEV will accrue this amount as compensation expense over the service period from the date of grant to when restrictions are lifted.
3. **Included were stock options to buy more than 800,000 shares of NEV stock. How will the options affect NEV’s compensation expense?** (p. 1094) Similar to the method used for restricted stock, the value of the options is recorded as compensation over the service period, usually the vesting period.
4. **How will the presence of these and other similar stock options affect NEV’s earnings per share?** (p. 1111) If outstanding stock options were exercised, the resulting increase in shares would reduce or dilute EPS. If we don’t take into account the dilutive effect of the share increase, we might mislead investors and creditors. So, in addition to basic EPS, we also calculate diluted EPS to include the dilutive effect of options and other potential common shares. This means calculating EPS as if the potential increase in shares already has occurred (even though it hasn’t yet). ●

The Bottom Line

- LO19-1 We measure the fair value of stock issued in a restricted stock plan and expense it over the service period, usually from the date of grant to the vesting date. (p. 1092)
- LO19-2 Similarly, we estimate the fair value of stock options at the grant date and expense it over the service period, usually from the date of grant to the vesting date. Fair value is estimated at the grant date using an option-pricing model that considers the exercise price and expected term of the option, the current market price of the underlying stock and its expected volatility, expected dividends, and the expected risk-free rate of return. (p. 1094)
- LO19-3 Employee share purchase plans allow employees to buy company stock under convenient or favorable terms. Most such plans are considered compensatory and require any discount to be recorded as compensation expense. (p. 1104)
- LO19-4 A company has a simple capital structure if it has no outstanding securities that could potentially dilute earnings per share. For such a firm, EPS is simply earnings available to common shareholders divided by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding. When potential common shares are outstanding, the company is said to have a complex capital structure. In that case, two EPS calculations are reported. Basic EPS assumes no dilution. Diluted EPS assumes maximum potential dilution. (p. 1106)
- LO19-5 EPS calculations are based on the weighted-average number of shares outstanding during the period. Any new shares issued during the period are time-weighted by the fraction of the period they were outstanding and then added to the number of shares outstanding for the period. (p. 1107)
- LO19-6 For a stock dividend or stock split, shares outstanding prior to the stock distribution are retroactively restated to reflect the increase in shares. When shares are reacquired, as treasury stock or to be retired, they are time-weighted for the fraction of the period they were not outstanding, prior to being subtracted from the number of shares outstanding during the reporting period. (p. 1108)
- LO19-7 The numerator in the EPS calculation should reflect earnings available to common shareholders. So, any dividends on preferred stock outstanding should be subtracted from reported net income. This adjustment is made for cumulative preferred stock whether or not dividends are declared that period. (p. 1110)
- LO19-8 For diluted EPS, it is assumed that stock options, rights, and warrants are exercised at the beginning of the period (or at the time the options are issued, if later) and the cash proceeds received are used to buy back (as treasury stock) as many of those shares as can be acquired at the average market price during the period. (p. 1111)
- LO19-9 To incorporate convertible securities into the calculation of diluted EPS, the conversion is assumed to have occurred at the beginning of the period (or at the time the convertible security is issued, if later). The denominator of the EPS fraction is adjusted for the additional common shares assumed, and the numerator

is increased by the interest (after-tax) on bonds and not reduced by the preferred dividends that would have been avoided in the event of conversion. (p. 1113)

- LO19-10 If including potential common shares in the EPS calculation causes EPS to *increase* rather than decrease, then those potential common shares are considered *antidilutive* and are omitted from the calculation. (p. 1116)
- LO19-11 For the treasury stock method, “proceeds” include (1) the amount, if any, received from the hypothetical exercise of options or vesting of restricted stock and (2) the total compensation from the award that’s not yet expensed. (p. 1120)
- LO19-12 Contingently issuable shares are considered outstanding in the computation of diluted EPS when they will later be issued upon the mere passage of time or because of conditions that currently are met. (p. 1122)
- LO19-13 EPS data (both basic and diluted) must be reported for (a) income before any discontinued operations, (b) the discontinued operations, and (c) net income. Disclosures also should include a reconciliation of the numerator and denominator used in the computations. (p. 1124)
- LO19-14 When options have graded vesting, unlike under U.S. GAAP, IFRS does not permit the straight-line method for allocating compensation or require that the company recognize at least the amount of the award that has vested by each reporting date. The earnings per share requirements of IFRS and U.S. GAAP are similar. The few differences that remain are the result of differences in the application of the treasury stock method, the treatment of contracts that may be settled in shares or cash, and contingently issuable shares. (pp. 1099, 1101, and 1106) ●

APPENDIX 19A

Option-Pricing Theory

Option values have two essential components: (1) intrinsic value and (2) time value.

Intrinsic Value

Intrinsic value is the benefit the holder of an option would realize by exercising the option rather than buying the underlying stock directly. An option that permits an employee to buy \$25 stock for \$10 has an intrinsic value of \$15. An option that has an exercise price equal to or exceeding the market price of the underlying stock has zero intrinsic value.

Time Value

In addition to their intrinsic value, options also have a time value due to the fact that (a) the holder of an option does not have to pay the exercise price until the option is exercised and (b) the market price of the underlying stock may yet rise and create additional intrinsic value. All options have time value so long as time remains before expiration. The longer the time until expiration, other things being equal, the greater the time value. For instance, the option described above with an intrinsic value of \$15, might have a fair value of, say, \$22 if time still remains until the option expires. The \$7 difference represents the time value of the option. Time value can be subdivided into two components: (1) the effects of time value of money and (2) volatility value.

TIME VALUE OF MONEY

The time value of money component arises because the holder of an option does not have to pay the exercise price until the option is exercised. Instead, the holder can invest funds elsewhere while waiting to exercise the option. For measurement purposes, the time value of money component is assumed to be the rate of return available on risk-free U.S. Treasury Securities. The higher the time value of money, the higher the value of being able to delay payment of the exercise price.

When the underlying stock pays no dividends, the time value of money component is the difference between the exercise price (a future amount) and its discounted present value. Let’s say the exercise price is \$30. If the present value (discounted at the risk-free rate) is \$24, the time value of money component is \$6. On the other hand, if the stock pays a

An option’s value is enhanced by the delay in paying cash for the shares.

dividend (or is expected to during the life of the option), the time value of money component is lower. The value of being able to delay payment of the exercise price would be partially off-set by the cost of forgoing the dividend in the meantime. For instance, if the stock underlying the options just described were expected to pay dividends and the discounted present value of the expected dividends were \$2, the time value of money component in that example would be reduced from \$6 to \$4.

The time value of money component is the difference between the exercise price and its discounted present value minus the present value of expected dividends.

VOLATILITY VALUE

The volatility value represents the possibility that the option holder might profit from market price appreciation of the underlying stock while being exposed to the loss of only the value of the option, rather than the full market value of the stock. For example, fair value of an option to buy a share at an exercise price of \$30 might be measured as \$7. The potential profit from market price appreciation is conceptually unlimited. And yet, the potential loss from the stock's value failing to appreciate is only \$7.

A stock's volatility is the amount by which its price has fluctuated previously or is expected to fluctuate in the future. The greater a stock's volatility, the greater the potential profit. It usually is measured as one standard deviation of a statistical distribution. Statistically, if the expected annualized volatility is 25%, the probability is approximately 67% that the stock's year-end price will fall within roughly plus or minus 25% of its beginning-of-year price. Stated differently, the probability is approximately 33% that the year-end stock price will fall outside that range.

Volatility enhances the likelihood of stock price appreciation.

Option-pricing models make assumptions about the likelihood of various future stock prices by making assumptions about the statistical distribution of future stock prices that take into account the expected volatility of the stock price. One popular option pricing model, the Black–Scholes model, for instance, assumes a log-normal distribution. This assumption posits that the stock price is as likely to fall by half as it is to double and that large price movements are less likely than small price movements. The higher a stock's volatility, the higher the probability of large increases or decreases in market price. Because the cost of large decreases is limited to the option's current value, but the profitability from large increases is unlimited, an option on a highly volatile stock has a higher probability of a large profit than does an option on a less volatile stock.

Summary

In summary, the fair value of an option is (a) its intrinsic value plus (b) its time value of money component plus (c) its volatility component. The variables that affect an option's fair value and the effect of each are indicated in Illustration 19A–1.

All Other Factors Being Equal, If the:	The Option Value Will Be:
Exercise price is higher	Lower
Term of the option is longer	Higher
Market price of the stock is higher	Higher
Dividends are higher	Lower
Risk-free rate of return is higher	Higher
Volatility of the stock is higher	Higher

Illustration 19A–1

Effect of Variables on an Option's Fair Value

Stock Appreciation Rights

Stock appreciation rights (SARs) overcome a major disadvantage of stock option plans that require employees to actually buy shares when the options are exercised. Even though the options' exercise price may be significantly lower than the market value of the shares, the employee still must come up with enough cash to take advantage of the bargain. This can

APPENDIX 19B

In an SAR plan, the employer pays compensation equal to the increase in share price from a specified level.

Illustration 19B-1

Stock Appreciation Rights—IBM Corporation
Real World Financials

If an employer can elect to settle in shares of stock rather than cash, the award is considered to be equity.

If an employee can elect to receive cash, the award is considered to be a liability.

The cash settlement of an equity award is considered the repurchase of an equity instrument.

Compensation expense reported to date is the estimated total compensation multiplied by the fraction of the service period that has expired.

be quite a burden if the award is sizable. In a nonqualified stock option plan, income taxes also would have to be paid when the options are exercised.²¹

SARs offer a solution. Unlike stock options, these awards enable an employee to benefit by the amount that the market price of the company's stock rises without having to buy shares. Instead, the employee is awarded the share appreciation, which is the amount by which the market price on the exercise date exceeds a prespecified price (usually the market price at the date of grant). For instance, if the share price rises from \$35 to \$50, the employee receives \$15 cash for each SAR held. The share appreciation usually is payable in cash or the recipient has the choice between cash and shares. A plan of this type offered by IBM is described in Illustration 19B-1.

Long-Term Performance Plan (in part)

SARs offer eligible optionees the alternative of electing not to exercise the related stock option, but to receive payment in cash and/or stock, equivalent to the difference between the option price and the average market price of IBM stock on the date of exercising the right.

IS IT DEBT OR IS IT EQUITY?

In some plans, the employer chooses whether to issue shares or cash at exercise. In other plans, the choice belongs to the employee.²² Who has the choice determines the way it's accounted for. More specifically, the accounting treatment depends on whether the award is considered an equity instrument or a liability. If the employer can elect to settle in shares of stock rather than cash, the award is considered to be equity. On the other hand, if the employee will receive cash or can elect to receive cash, the award is considered to be a liability.

The distinction between share-based awards that are considered equity and those that are considered liabilities is based on whether the employer is obligated to transfer assets to the employee. A cash SAR requires the transfer of assets, and therefore is a liability. A stock option, on the other hand, is an equity instrument if it requires only the issuance of stock. This does not mean that a stock option whose issuer may later choose to settle in cash is not an equity instrument. Instead, cash settlement would be considered equivalent to repurchasing an equity instrument for cash.

SARS PAYABLE IN SHARES (EQUITY)

When a SAR is considered to be equity (because the employer can elect to settle in shares of stock rather than cash), we estimate the fair value of the SARs at the grant date and accrue that compensation to expense over the service period. Normally, the fair value of a SAR is the same as the fair value of a stock option with the same terms. The fair value is determined at the grant date and accrued to compensation expense over the service period the same way as for other share-based compensation plans. The total compensation is not revised for subsequent changes in the price of the underlying stock. This is demonstrated in Case 1 of Illustration 19-B2.

SARS PAYABLE IN CASH (LIABILITY)

When a SAR is considered to be a liability (because the employee can elect to receive cash upon settlement), we estimate the fair value of the SARs and recognize that amount as compensation expense over the requisite service period consistent with the way we account for options and other share-based compensation. However, because these plans are considered to be liabilities, it's necessary to periodically re-estimate the fair value in order to continually adjust the liability (and corresponding compensation) until it is paid. Be sure to note that this is consistent with the way we account for other liabilities. Recall from our discussions in Chapter 16, for instance, that when a tax rate change causes a change in the eventual liability for deferred income taxes, we adjust that liability.

²¹The tax treatment of share-based plans is discussed in an earlier Additional Consideration box.

²²Many such plans are called tandem plans and award an employee both a cash SAR and an SAR that calls for settlement in an equivalent amount of shares. The exercise of one cancels the other.

The periodic expense (and adjustment to the liability) is the fraction of the total compensation earned to date by recipients of the SARs (based on the elapsed fraction of the service period) reduced by any amounts expensed in prior periods. For example, if the fair value of SARs at the end of a period is \$8, the total compensation would be **\$80 million** if 10 million SARs are expected to vest. Let's say two years of a four-year service period have elapsed, and \$21 million was expensed the first year. Then, compensation expense the second year would be \$19 million, calculated as ($\frac{2}{4}$ of **\$80 million**) minus \$21. An example spanning several years is provided in Illustration 19B–2, Case 2.

We make up for incorrect previous estimates by adjusting expense in the period the estimate is revised.

Illustration 19B–2

Stock Appreciation Rights
Case 1: Equity

At January 1, 2018, Universal Communications issued SARs that, upon exercise, entitle key executives to receive compensation equal in value to the excess of the market price at exercise over the share price at the date of grant. The SARs vest at the end of 2021 (cannot be exercised until then) and expire at the end of 2025. The fair value of the SARs, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$8 per SAR at January 1, 2018. The fair value re-estimated at December 31, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, and 2022, is \$8.40, \$8, \$6, \$4.30, and \$5, respectively.

Case 1: SARs considered to be equity because Universal can elect to settle in shares of Universal stock at exercise

January 1, 2018

No entry

Calculate total compensation expense:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \$ 8 & \text{Estimated fair value per SAR} \\ \times 10 \text{ million} & \text{SARs granted} \\ \hline = \$80 \text{ million} & \text{Total compensation} \end{array}$$

The total compensation is allocated to expense over the four-year service (vesting) period: 2018–2021

$$\text{\$80 million} \div 4 \text{ years} = \$20 \text{ million per year}$$

December 31, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021

(\$ in millions)

Compensation expense (\\$80 million \div 4 years)	20	
Paid-in capital—SAR plan		20

Case 2: SARs considered to be a liability because employees can elect to receive cash at exercise

January 1, 2018

No entry

December 31, 2018

(\$ in millions)

Compensation expense ($\$8.40 \times 10 \text{ million} \times \frac{1}{4}$)	21	
Liability—SAR plan		21

December 31, 2019

Compensation expense $[(\$8 \times 10 \text{ million} \times \frac{2}{4}) - 21]$	19	
Liability—SAR plan		19

December 31, 2020

Compensation expense $[(\$6 \times 10 \text{ million} \times \frac{3}{4}) - 21 - 19]$	5	
Liability—SAR plan		5

December 31, 2021

Liability—SAR plan	2	
Compensation expense $[(\$4.30 \times 10 \text{ million} \times \frac{4}{4}) - 21 - 19 - 5]$		2

Fair value is estimated at the date of grant.

The value of the award is expensed over the service period for which the compensation is provided.

The value of the compensation is estimated each year at the fair value of the SARs.

The expense each year is the current estimate of total compensation that should have been recorded to date less the amount already recorded.

If the fair value falls below the amount expensed to date, both the liability and expense are reduced.

Note that the way we treat changes in compensation estimates entails a catch-up adjustment in the period of change, *inconsistent* with the usual treatment of a change in estimate.

Remember that for most changes in estimate, revisions are allocated over remaining periods, rather than all at once in the period of change. The treatment is, however, consistent with the way we treat changes in forfeiture rate estimates, as we discussed earlier in the chapter.

The liability continues to be adjusted after the service period if the rights haven’t been exercised yet.

Compensation expense and the liability continue to be adjusted until the SARs expire or are exercised.

December 31, 2022	(\$ in millions)
Compensation expense $[(\$5 \times 10 \text{ million} \times \text{all}) - 21 - 19 - 5 + 2]$	7
Liability—SAR plan	7

It’s necessary to continue to adjust both compensation expense and the liability until the SARs ultimately either are exercised or lapse.²³ Assume, for example, that the SARs are exercised on October 11, 2023, when their fair value is \$4.50, and executives choose to receive the market price appreciation in cash.

Adjustment continues after the service period if the SARs have not yet been exercised.

October 11, 2023	(\$ in millions)
Liability—SAR plan	5
Compensation expense $[(\$4.50 \times 10 \text{ million} \times \text{all}) - 50]$	5
Liability—SAR plan (balance)	45
Cash	45

Let’s look at the changes in the liability—SAR plan account during the 2018–2023 period:

The liability is adjusted each period as changes in the fair value estimates cause changes in the liability.

Liability—SAR Plan	
	(\$ in millions)
	21 2018
	19 2019
	5 2020
2021	2
	7 2022
2023	5
2023	45
	0 Balance after exercise

RESTRICTED STOCK UNITS PAYABLE IN CASH (LIABILITY)

Recall from our discussion in the chapter that restricted stock units (RSUs) give the recipient the right to receive a set number of shares of company stock after the vesting requirement is satisfied. But, sometimes the recipient is given the *cash equivalent* of those shares instead. *If the employee will receive cash* or can elect to receive cash, as in the case of an SAR, we consider the award to be a *liability*. We determine its fair value at the grant date and recognize that amount as compensation expense over the requisite service period and, like SARs payable in cash, we periodically adjust the liability (and corresponding compensation) based on the change in the stock’s fair value until the liability is paid. Accounting for RSUs payable in cash (sometimes called phantom shares or phantom performance shares) is quite similar to accounting for the SARs payable in cash in case 2 of Illustration 19B–2. Of course, though, we would label the liability “Liability—restricted stock.” And, we would determine the periodic value of the liability (and compensation) as the actual fair value of the shares, rather than an *estimated* fair value as is necessary when valuing SARs. ●

Accounting for RSUs payable in cash is essentially the same as accounting for the SARs payable in cash.

²³Except that the cumulative compensation expense cannot be negative; that is, the liability cannot be reduced below zero.

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 19-1** What is restricted stock? How do restricted stock awards differ from restricted stock units (RSUs)? Describe how compensation expense is determined and recorded for a restricted stock award plan.
- Q 19-2** Stock option plans provide employees the option to purchase: (a) a specified number of shares of the firm's stock, (b) at a specified price, (c) during a specified period of time. One of the most controversial aspects of accounting for stock-based compensation is how the fair value of stock options should be measured. Describe the general approach to measuring fair value.
- Q 19-3** The Tax Code differentiates between qualified option plans, including incentive plans, and nonqualified plans. What are the major differences in tax treatment between incentive plans and nonqualified plans?
- Q 19-4** Stock option (and other share-based) plans often specify a performance condition or a market condition that must be satisfied before employees are allowed the benefits of the award. Describe the general approach we use to account for performance-based options and options with market-related conditions.
- Q 19-5** What is a simple capital structure? How is EPS determined for a company with a simple capital structure?
- Q 19-6** When calculating the weighted average number of common shares, how are stock dividends and stock splits treated? Compare this treatment with that of additional shares sold for cash at midyear.
- Q 19-7** Blake Distributors had 100,000 common shares outstanding at the beginning of the year, January 1. On May 13, Blake distributed a 5% stock dividend. Blake retired 1,200 shares on August 1. What is the weighted average number of shares for calculating EPS?
- Q 19-8** Why are preferred dividends deducted from net income when calculating EPS? Are there circumstances when this deduction is not made?
- Q 19-9** Distinguish between basic and diluted EPS.
- Q 19-10** The treasury stock method is used to incorporate the dilutive effect of stock options, stock warrants, and similar securities. Describe this method as it applies to diluted EPS.
- Q 19-11** The potentially dilutive effect of convertible securities is reflected in EPS calculations by the if-converted method. Describe this method as it relates to convertible bonds.
- Q 19-12** How is the potentially dilutive effect of convertible preferred stock reflected in EPS calculations by the if-converted method? How is this different from the way convertible bonds are considered?
- Q 19-13** A convertible security may appear to be dilutive when looked at individually but might be antidilutive when included in combination with other convertible securities. How should the order be determined for inclusion of convertible securities in an EPS calculation to avoid including an antidilutive security?
- Q 19-14** If stock options and restricted stock are outstanding when calculating diluted EPS, what are the components of the "proceeds" available for the repurchase of shares under the treasury stock method?
- Q 19-15** Wiseman Electronics has an agreement with certain of its division managers that 50,000 contingently issuable shares will be issued next year in the event operating income exceeds \$2.1 million that year. In what way, if any, is the calculation of EPS affected by these contingently issuable shares, assuming this year's operating income was \$2.2 million? \$2.0 million?
- Q 19-16** Diluted EPS would be precisely the same whether convertible securities were actually converted or not. Why?
- Q 19-17** When the income statement includes discontinued operations, which amounts require per share presentation?
- Q 19-18** In addition to EPS numbers themselves, what additional disclosures should be provided concerning the EPS information?
- Q 19-19** (Based on Appendix A) The fair value of stock options can be considered to comprise two main components. What are they?
- Q 19-20** (Based on Appendix B) LTV Corporation grants SARs to key executives. Upon exercise, the SARs entitle executives to receive either cash or stock equal in value to the excess of the market price at exercise over the share price at the date of grant. How should LTV account for the awards?

Brief Exercises

BE 19-1

Restricted stock award

● LO19-1

First Link Services granted 8 million of its \$1 par common shares to executives, subject to forfeiture if employment is terminated within three years. The common shares have a market price of \$6 per share on the grant date of the restricted stock award. Ignoring taxes, what is the total compensation cost pertaining to the restricted shares? What is the effect on earnings in the year after the shares are granted to executives?

BE 19-2

Restricted stock units

● LO19-1

Second Link Services granted restricted stock units (RSUs) representing 16 million of its \$1 par common shares to executives, subject to forfeiture if employment is terminated within four years. After the recipients of the RSUs satisfy the vesting requirement, the company will distribute the shares. The common shares had a market price of \$10 per share on the grant date. Ignoring taxes, what is the total compensation cost pertaining to the restricted stock units? What is the effect on earnings in the year after the shares are granted to executives?

BE 19-3

Stock options

● LO19-2

Under its executive stock option plan, National Corporation granted 12 million options on January 1, 2018, that permit executives to purchase 12 million of the company's \$1 par common shares within the next six years, but not before December 31, 2020 (the vesting date). The exercise price is the market price of the shares on the date of grant, \$17 per share. The fair value of the options, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$5 per option. No forfeitures are anticipated. Ignoring taxes, what is the total compensation cost pertaining to the stock options? What is the effect on earnings in the year after the options are granted to executives?

BE 19-4

Stock options;
forfeiture

● LO19-2

Refer to the situation described in BE 19-3. Suppose that unexpected turnover during 2019 caused the forfeiture of 5% of the stock options. What is the effect on earnings in 2019? In 2020?

BE 19-5

Stock options;
forfeitures

● LO19-2

On January 1, 2018, Hugh Morris Comedy Club (HMCC) granted 1 million stock options to key executives exercisable for 1 million shares of the company's common stock at \$20 per share. The stock options are intended as compensation for the next three years. The options are exercisable within a four-year period beginning January 1, 2021, by the executives still in the employ of the company. No options were terminated during 2018. The market price of the common stock was \$25 per share at the date of the grant. HMCC estimated the fair value of the options at \$9 each. 1% of the options are forfeited during 2019 due to executive turnover. What amount should HMCC record as compensation expense for the year ended December 31, 2019, assuming HMCC chooses the option to record forfeitures as they actually occur?

BE 19-6

Stock options;
exercise

● LO19-2

Refer to the situation described in BE 19-3. Suppose that the options are exercised on April 3, 2021, when the market price is \$19 per share. What journal entry will National record?

BE 19-7

Stock options;
expiration

● LO19-2

Refer to the situation described in BE 19-3. Suppose that the options expire without being exercised. What journal entry will National record?

BE 19-8

Performance-based options

● LO19-2

On October 1, 2018, Farmer Fabrication issued stock options for 100,000 shares to a division manager. The options have an estimated fair value of \$6 each. To provide additional incentive for managerial achievement, the options are not exercisable unless divisional revenue increases by 5% in three years. Farmer initially estimates that it is probable the goal will be achieved. How much compensation will be recorded in each of the next three years?

BE 19-9

Performance-based options

● LO19-2

Refer to the situation described in BE 19-8. Suppose that after one year, Farmer estimates that it is *not* probable that divisional revenue will increase by 5% in three years. What action will be taken to account for the options in 2019?

BE 19-10

Performance-based options

● LO19-2

Refer to the situation described in BE 19-8. Suppose that Farmer initially estimates that it is *not* probable the goal will be achieved, but then after one year, Farmer estimates that it *is* probable that divisional revenue will increase by 5% by the end of 2020. What action will be taken to account for the options in 2019 and thereafter?

BE 19-11

Options with
market-based
conditions

● LO19-2

On October 1, 2018, Farmer Fabrication issued stock options for 100,000 shares to a division manager. The options have an estimated fair value of \$6 each. To provide additional incentive for managerial achievement, the options are not exercisable unless Farmer Fabrication's stock price increases by 5% in three years. Farmer initially estimates that it is not probable the goal will be achieved. How much compensation will be recorded in each of the next three years?

BE 19-12

EPS; shares issued; shares retired

● LO19-5, LO19-6

McDonnell-Myer Corporation reported net income of \$741 million. The company had 544 million common shares outstanding at January 1 and sold 36 million shares on Feb. 28. As part of an annual share repurchase plan, 6 million shares were retired on April 30 for \$47 per share. Calculate McDonnell-Myer's earnings per share for the year.

BE 19-13

EPS; nonconvertible preferred shares

● LO19-7

At December 31, 2017 and 2018, Funk & Noble Corporation had outstanding 820 million shares of common stock and 2 million shares of 8%, \$100 par value cumulative preferred stock. No dividends were declared on either the preferred or common stock in 2017 or 2018. Net income for 2018 was \$426 million. The income tax rate is 40%. Calculate earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

BE 19-14

EPS; stock options

● LO19-8

Fully vested incentive stock options exercisable at \$50 per share to obtain 24,000 shares of common stock were outstanding during a period when the average market price of the common stock was \$60 and the ending market price was \$60. By how many shares will the assumed exercise of these options increase the weighted-average number of shares outstanding when calculating diluted earnings per share?

BE 19-15

EPS; convertible preferred shares

● LO19-9

Ahnberg Corporation had 800,000 shares of common stock issued and outstanding at January 1. No common shares were issued during the year, but on January 1, Ahnberg issued 100,000 shares of convertible preferred stock. The preferred shares are convertible into 200,000 shares of common stock. During the year Ahnberg paid \$60,000 cash dividends on the preferred stock. Net income was \$1,500,000. What were Ahnberg's basic and diluted earnings per share for the year?

BE 19-16

EPS; restricted stock award

● LO19-11

Niles Company granted 9 million of its no par common shares to executives, subject to forfeiture if employment is terminated within three years. The common shares have a market price of \$5 per share on January 1, 2017, the grant date of the restricted stock award. When calculating diluted EPS at December 31, 2018, what will be the net increase in the denominator of the EPS fraction if the market price of the common shares averaged \$5 per share during 2018?

Exercises

**E 19-1**

Restricted stock award plan

● LO19-1

Allied Paper Products, Inc. offers a restricted stock award plan to its vice presidents. On January 1, 2018, the company granted 16 million of its \$1 par common shares, subject to forfeiture if employment is terminated within two years. The common shares have a market price of \$5 per share on the grant date.

Required:

1. Determine the total compensation cost pertaining to the restricted shares.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entries related to the restricted stock through December 31, 2019.

E 19-2

Restricted stock units

● LO19-1

On January 1, 2018, VKI Corporation awarded restricted stock units (RSUs) representing 12 million of its \$1 par common shares to key personnel, subject to forfeiture if employment is terminated within three years. After the recipients of the RSUs satisfy the vesting requirement, the company will distribute the shares. On the grant date, the shares had a market price of \$2.50 per share.

Required:

1. Determine the total compensation cost pertaining to the RSUs.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the award of RSUs on January 1, 2018.
3. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2019.
5. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2020.
6. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the lifting of restrictions on the RSUs and issuing shares at December 31, 2020.

E 19-3

Restricted stock units; Facebook

• LO19-1

Real World Financials

Facebook Inc. included the following disclosure note in an annual report:

Share-Based Compensation (in part)

... compensation expense related to these grants is based on the grant date fair value of the RSUs and is recognized on a straight-line basis over the applicable service period.

The following table summarizes the activities for our unvested RSUs for the year ended December 31, 2015:

	Number of Shares	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value
Unvested at December 31, 2014	138,055	\$ 55.89
Granted	31,507	82.15
Vested	(46,434)	49.19
Forfeited	(6,719)	51.19
Unvested at September 30, 2015	116,409	\$ 65.95

Required:

1. Assuming a four-year vesting period, how much compensation expense did Facebook report in the year ended December 31, 2016, for the restricted stock units granted during the year ended December 31, 2015? (Round dollar amounts to the nearest million.)
2. Based on the information provided in the disclosure note, prepare the journal entry that summarizes the vesting of RSUs during the year ended December 31, 2015. (Facebook's common shares have a par amount per share of \$0.000006. Round dollar amounts to the nearest million.)

E 19-4

Restricted stock units; forfeitures anticipated

• LO19-1

Magnetic-Optical Corporation offers a variety of share-based compensation plans to employees. Under its restricted stock unit plan, the company on January 1, 2018, granted restricted stock units (RSUs) representing 4 million of its \$1 par common shares to various division managers. The shares are subject to forfeiture if employment is terminated within three years. The common shares have a market price of \$22.50 per share on the grant date. Management's policy is to estimate forfeitures.

Required:

1. Determine the total compensation cost pertaining to the RSUs.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the RSUs on January 1, 2018.
3. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2018.
4. Suppose Magnetic-Optical expected a 10% forfeiture rate on the RSUs prior to vesting. Determine the total compensation cost.

E 19-5

Restricted stock units; forfeitures

• LO19-1

On January 1, 2018, David Mest Communications granted restricted stock units (RSUs) representing 30 million of its \$1 par common shares to executives, subject to forfeiture if employment is terminated within three years. After the recipients of the RSUs satisfy the vesting requirement, the company will distribute the shares. The common shares had a market price of \$12 per share on the grant date. At the date of grant, Mest anticipated that 6% of the recipients would leave the firm prior to vesting. On January 1, 2019, 5% of the RSUs are forfeited due to executive turnover. Mest chooses the option to account for forfeitures when they actually occur.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2018.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2019.
3. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2020.

E 19-6

Stock options

• LO19-2

American Optical Corporation provides a variety of share-based compensation plans to its employees. Under its executive stock option plan, the company granted options on January 1, 2018, that permit executives to acquire 4 million of the company's \$1 par common shares within the next five years, but not before December 31, 2019 (the vesting date). The exercise price is the market price of the shares on the date of grant, \$14 per share. The fair value of the 4 million options, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$3 per option. No forfeitures are anticipated. Ignore taxes.

Required:

1. Determine the total compensation cost pertaining to the options.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the award of options on January 1, 2018.

3. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2018.
4. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2019.

E 19-7

Stock options;
forfeiture of
options

● LO19-2

On January 1, 2018, Adams-Meneke Corporation granted 25 million incentive stock options to division managers, each permitting holders to purchase one share of the company's \$1 par common shares within the next six years, but not before December 31, 2020 (the vesting date). The exercise price is the market price of the shares on the date of grant, currently \$10 per share. The fair value of the options, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$3 per option. Management's policy is to estimate forfeitures. No forfeitures are anticipated. Ignore taxes.

Required:

1. Determine the total compensation cost pertaining to the options on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2018.
3. Unexpected turnover during 2019 caused an estimate of the forfeiture of 6% of the stock options. Determine the adjusted compensation cost, and prepare the appropriate journal entry(s) on December 31, 2019 and 2020.

E 19-8

Stock options
exercise;
expirations

● LO19-2

Walters Audio Visual Inc. offers an incentive stock option plan to its regional managers. On January 1, 2018, options were granted for 40 million \$1 par common shares. The exercise price is the market price on the grant date—\$8 per share. Options cannot be exercised prior to January 1, 2020, and expire December 31, 2024. The fair value of the 40 million options, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$1 per option.

Required:

1. Determine the total compensation cost pertaining to the incentive stock option plan.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2018.
3. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record compensation expense on December 31, 2019.
4. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the exercise of 75% of the options on March 12, 2020, when the market price is \$9 per share.
5. Prepare the appropriate journal entry on December 31, 2024, when the remaining options that have vested expire without being exercised.

E 19-9

Stock options;
exercise

● LO19-2

SSG Cycles manufactures and distributes motorcycle parts and supplies. Employees are offered a variety of share-based compensation plans. Under its nonqualified stock option plan, SSG granted options to key officers on January 1, 2018. The options permit holders to acquire 12 million of the company's \$1 par common shares for \$11 within the next six years, but not before January 1, 2021 (the vesting date). The market price of the shares on the date of grant is \$13 per share. The fair value of the 12 million options, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$3 per option.

Required:

1. Determine the total compensation cost pertaining to the incentive stock option plan.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record compensation expense on December 31, 2018, 2019, and 2020.
3. Record the exercise of the options if all of the options are exercised on May 11, 2022, when the market price is \$14 per share.

E 19-10

Employee share
purchase plan

● LO19-3

In order to encourage employee ownership of the company's \$1 par common shares, Washington Distribution permits any of its employees to buy shares directly from the company through payroll deduction. There are no brokerage fees and shares can be purchased at a 15% discount. During March, employees purchased 50,000 shares at a time when the market price of the shares on the New York Stock Exchange was \$12 per share.

Required:

Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the March purchases of shares under the employee share purchase plan.

E 19-11

Employee share
purchase plan;
Tesla Motors

● LO19-3

Tesla Motor's disclosure notes for the year ending December 31, 2015, included the following regarding its \$0.001 par common stock:

EMPLOYEE STOCK PURCHASE PLAN—Employees are eligible to purchase common stock through payroll deductions of up to 15% of their eligible compensation, subject to any plan limitations. The purchase price of the shares on each purchase date is equal to 85% of the lower of the fair market value of our common stock on the first and last trading days of each six-month offering period. During the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013, 220,571, 163,600 and 518,743 shares were issued under the ESPP for \$37.5 million, \$28.6 million and \$13.8 million, respectively. A total of 3,615,749 shares of common stock have been reserved for issuance under the ESPP, and there were 2,115,851 shares available for issuance under the ESPP as of December 31, 2015.

Real World Financials

Required:

Describe the way compensation expense for employee stock purchase plans is recognized. Include in your explanation the journal entry that summarizes employee share purchases for the year ending December 31, 2015.

E 19-12

EPS; shares issued; stock dividend

For the year ended December 31, 2018, Norstar Industries reported net income of \$655,000. At January 1, 2018, the company had 900,000 common shares outstanding. The following changes in the number of shares occurred during 2018:

● LO19-5, LO19-6	Apr. 30	Sold 60,000 shares in a public offering
	May 24	Declared and distributed a 5% stock dividend
	June 1	Issued 72,000 shares as part of the consideration for the purchase of assets from a subsidiary

Required:

Compute Norstar's earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

E 19-13

EPS; treasury stock; new shares; stock dividends; two years

The Alford Group had 202,000 shares of common stock outstanding at January 1, 2018. The following activities affected common shares during the year. There are no potential common shares outstanding.

● LO19-5, LO19-6

2018	
Feb. 28	Purchased 6,000 shares of treasury stock
Oct. 31	Sold the treasury shares purchased on February 28
Nov. 30	Issued 24,000 new shares
Dec. 31	Net income for 2018 is \$400,000
2019	
Jan. 15	Declared and issued a 2-for-1 stock split
Dec. 31	Net income for 2019 is \$400,000

Required:

1. Determine the 2018 EPS.
2. Determine the 2019 EPS.
3. At what amount will the 2018 EPS be presented in the 2019 comparative financial statements?

E 19-14

EPS; stock dividend; nonconvertible preferred stock

Hardaway Fixtures' balance sheet at December 31, 2017, included the following:

● LO19-5, LO19-6, LO19-7

Shares issued and outstanding:	
Common stock, \$1 par	\$800,000
Nonconvertible preferred stock, \$50 par	20,000

On July 21, 2018, Hardaway issued a 25% stock dividend on its common stock. On December 12, it paid \$50,000 cash dividends on the preferred stock. Net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$2,000,000.

Required:

Compute Hardaway's earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

E 19-15

EPS; net loss; nonconvertible preferred stock; shares sold

At December 31, 2017, Albrecht Corporation had outstanding 373,000 shares of common stock and 8,000 shares of 9.5%, \$100 par value cumulative, nonconvertible preferred stock. On May 31, 2018, Albrecht sold for cash 12,000 shares of its common stock. No cash dividends were declared for 2018. For the year ended December 31, 2018, Albrecht reported a net loss of \$114,000.

Required:

Calculate Albrecht's net loss per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

● LO19-5, LO19-6, LO19-7

E 19-16

EPS; stock dividend; nonconvertible preferred stock; treasury shares; shares sold

On December 31, 2017, Berclair Inc. had 200 million shares of common stock and 3 million shares of 9%, \$100 par value cumulative preferred stock issued and outstanding. On March 1, 2018, Berclair purchased 24 million shares of its common stock as treasury stock. Berclair issued a 5% common stock dividend on July 1, 2018. Four million treasury shares were sold on October 1. Net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$150 million.

Required:

Compute Berclair's earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

● LO19-5, LO19-6, LO19-7

E 19-17

EPS; stock dividend; nonconvertible preferred stock; treasury shares; shares sold; stock options

- LO19-5 through LO19-8

(Note: This is a variation of E 19-16, modified to include stock options.) On December 31, 2017, Berclair Inc. had 200 million shares of common stock and 3 million shares of 9%, \$100 par value cumulative preferred stock issued and outstanding. On March 1, 2018, Berclair purchased 24 million shares of its common stock as treasury stock. Berclair issued a 5% common stock dividend on July 1, 2018. Four million treasury shares were sold on October 1. Net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$150 million.

Also outstanding at December 31 were 30 million incentive stock options granted to key executives on September 13, 2013. The options were exercisable as of September 13, 2017, for 30 million common shares at an exercise price of \$56 per share. During 2018, the market price of the common shares averaged \$70 per share.

Required:

Compute Berclair's basic and diluted earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

E 19-18

EPS; stock dividend; nonconvertible preferred stock; treasury shares; shares sold; stock options exercised

- LO19-5 through LO19-8

(Note: This is a variation of E 19-16, modified to include the exercise of stock options.)

On December 31, 2017, Berclair Inc. had 200 million shares of common stock and 3 million shares of 9%, \$100 par value cumulative preferred stock issued and outstanding. On March 1, 2018, Berclair purchased 24 million shares of its common stock as treasury stock. Berclair issued a 5% common stock dividend on July 1, 2018. Four million treasury shares were sold on October 1. Net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$150 million.

Also outstanding at December 31 were 30 million incentive stock options granted to key executives on September 13, 2013. The options were exercisable as of September 13, 2017, for 30 million common shares at an exercise price of \$56 per share. During 2018, the market price of the common shares averaged \$70 per share.

The options were exercised on September 1, 2018.

Required:

Compute Berclair's basic and diluted earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

E 19-19

EPS; stock dividend; nonconvertible preferred stock; treasury shares; shares sold; stock options; convertible bonds

- LO19-5 through LO19-9

(Note: This is a variation of E 19-17 modified to include convertible bonds.)

On December 31, 2017, Berclair Inc. had 200 million shares of common stock and 3 million shares of 9%, \$100 par value cumulative preferred stock issued and outstanding. On March 1, 2018, Berclair purchased 24 million shares of its common stock as treasury stock. Berclair issued a 5% common stock dividend on July 1, 2018. Four million treasury shares were sold on October 1. Net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$150 million. The income tax rate is 40%.

Also outstanding at December 31 were incentive stock options granted to key executives on September 13, 2013. The options are exercisable as of September 13, 2017, for 30 million common shares at an exercise price of \$56 per share. During 2018, the market price of the common shares averaged \$70 per share.

In 2014, \$62.5 million of 8% bonds, convertible into 6 million common shares, were issued at face value.

Required:

Compute Berclair's basic and diluted earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

E 19-20

EPS; shares issued; stock options

- LO19-6 through LO19-9

Stanley Department Stores reported net income of \$720,000 for the year ended December 31, 2018.

Additional Information:

Common shares outstanding at Jan. 1, 2018	80,000
Incentive stock options (vested in 2017) outstanding throughout 2018	24,000
(Each option is exercisable for one common share at an exercise price of \$37.50.)	
During the year, the market price of Stanley's common stock averaged \$45 per share.	
On Aug. 30, Stanley sold 15,000 common shares.	
Stanley's only debt consisted of \$50,000 of 10% short term bank notes.	
The company's income tax rate is 40%.	

Required:

Compute Stanley's basic and diluted earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

E 19-21

EPS; convertible preferred stock; convertible bonds; order of entry

- LO19-7, LO19-9

Information from the financial statements of Ames Fabricators, Inc., included the following:

	December 31	
	2018	2017
Common shares	100,000	100,000
Convertible preferred shares		
(convertible into 32,000 shares of common)	12,000	12,000
10% convertible bonds		
(convertible into 30,000 shares of common)	\$1,000,000	\$1,000,000

Ames's net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, is \$500,000. The income tax rate is 40%. Ames paid dividends of \$5 per share on its preferred stock during 2018.

Required:

Compute basic and diluted earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

E 19-22

EPS; restricted stock

• LO19-11

As part of its executive compensation plan, Vertovec Inc. granted 54,000 of its no par common shares to executives, subject to forfeiture if employment is terminated within three years. Vertovec's common shares have a market price of \$5 per share on January 1, 2017, the grant date of the restricted stock award, as well as on December 31, 2018. 800,000 shares were outstanding at January 1, 2018. Net income for 2018 was \$120,000.

Required:

Compute Vertovec's basic and diluted earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

E 19-23

Record restricted stock; effect on EPS

• LO19-1, LO19-11

PHN Foods granted 18 million of its no par common shares to executives, subject to forfeiture if employment is terminated within three years. The common shares have a market price of \$5 per share on January 1, 2017, the grant date.

Required:

1. What journal entry will PHN Foods prepare to record executive compensation regarding these restricted shares at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2018?
2. When calculating diluted EPS at December 31, 2018, what will be the net increase in the denominator of the EPS fraction if the market price of the common shares averages \$5 per share during 2018?

E 19-24

New shares; contingently issuable shares

• LO19-6, LO19-12

During 2018, its first year of operations, McCollum Tool Works entered into the following transactions relating to shareholders' equity. The corporation was authorized to issue 100 million common shares, \$1 par per share.

Jan. 2	Issued 35 million common shares for cash.
3	Entered an agreement with the company president to issue up to 2 million additional shares of common stock in 2019 based on the earnings of McCollum in 2019. If net income exceeds \$140 million, the president will receive 1 million shares; 2 million shares if net income exceeds \$150 million.
Mar. 31	Issued 4 million shares in exchange for plant facilities.

Net income for 2018 was \$148 million.

Required:

Compute basic and diluted earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

E 19-25

EPS; new shares; contingent agreements

• LO19-6, LO19-12

Anderson Steel Company began 2018 with 600,000 shares of common stock outstanding. On March 31, 2018, 100,000 new shares were sold at a price of \$45 per share. The market price has risen steadily since that time to a high of \$50 per share at December 31. No other changes in shares occurred during 2018, and no securities are outstanding that can become common stock. However, there are two agreements with officers of the company for future issuance of common stock. Both agreements relate to compensation arrangements reached in 2017. The first agreement grants to the company president a right to 10,000 shares of stock each year the closing market price is at least \$48. The agreement begins in 2019 and expires in 2022. The second agreement grants to the controller a right to 15,000 shares of stock if she is still with the firm at the end of 2026. Net income for 2018 was \$2,000,000.

Required:

Compute Anderson Steel Company's basic and diluted EPS for the year ended December 31, 2018.

E 19-26

EPS; concepts; terminology

• LO19-5 through LO19-13

Listed below are several terms and phrases associated with earnings per share. Pair each item from List A with the item from List B (by letter) that is most appropriately associated with it.

List A	List B
____ 1. Subtract preferred dividends	a. Options exercised
____ 2. Time-weighted by $\frac{5}{12}$	b. Simple capital structure
____ 3. Time-weighted shares assumed issued plus time-weighted actual shares	c. Basic EPS
____ 4. Midyear event treated as if it occurred at the beginning of the reporting period	d. Convertible preferred stock
____ 5. Preferred dividends do not reduce earnings	e. Earnings available to common shareholders
____ 6. Single EPS presentation	f. Antidilutive
____ 7. Stock split	g. Increased marketability
____ 8. Potential common shares	h. Discontinued operations
____ 9. Exercise price exceeds market price	i. Stock dividend
____ 10. No dilution assumed	j. Add after-tax interest to numerator
	k. Diluted EPS
	l. Noncumulative, undeclared preferred dividends

(continued)

(concluded)

List A	List B
____ 11. Convertible bonds	m. Common shares retired at the beginning of August
____ 12. Contingently issuable shares	n. Include in diluted EPS when conditions for issuance are met
____ 13. Maximum potential dilution	
____ 14. Shown between per share amounts for net income and for income from continuing operations	

E 19-27

FASB codification research

- LO19-2



The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on stock compensation using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). What is the specific citation that describes the information that companies must disclose about the exercise prices for their stock option plans?
2. List the disclosure requirements.

E 19-28

FASB codification research

- LO19-2, LO19-3, LO19-7, LO19-13



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

1. Initial measurement of stock options.
2. The measurement date for share-based payments classified as liabilities.
3. The formula to calculate diluted earnings per share.
4. The way stock dividends or stock splits in the current year affect the presentation of EPS in the income statement.

E 19-29

Stock appreciation rights; settlement in shares

- Appendix B

As part of its stock-based compensation package, International Electronics granted 24 million stock appreciation rights (SARs) to top officers on January 1, 2018. At exercise, holders of the SARs are entitled to receive stock equal in value to the excess of the market price at exercise over the share price at the date of grant. The SARs cannot be exercised until the end of 2021 (vesting date) and expire at the end of 2023. The \$1 par common shares have a market price of \$46 per share on the grant date. The fair value of the SARs, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$3 per SAR at January 1, 2018. The fair value reestimated at December 31, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, and 2022, is \$4, \$3, \$4, \$2.50, and \$3, respectively. All recipients are expected to remain employed through the vesting date.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the award of SARs on January 1, 2018. Will the SARs be reported as debt or equity?
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entries pertaining to the SARs on December 31, 2018–December 31, 2021.
3. The SARs remain unexercised on December 31, 2022. Prepare the appropriate journal entry on that date.
4. The SARs are exercised on June 6, 2023, when the share price is \$50. Prepare the appropriate journal entry(s) on that date.

E 19-30

Stock appreciation rights; cash settlement

- Appendix B

(Note: This is a variation of E 19-29, modified to allow settlement in cash.)

As part of its stock-based compensation package, International Electronics granted 24 million stock appreciation rights (SARs) to top officers on January 1, 2018. At exercise, holders of the SARs are entitled to receive cash or stock equal in value to the excess of the market price at exercise over the share price at the date of grant. The SARs cannot be exercised until the end of 2021 (vesting date) and expire at the end of 2023. The \$1 par common shares have a market price of \$46 per share on the grant date. The fair value of the SARs, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$3 per SAR at January 1, 2018. The fair value re-estimated at December 31, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, and 2022, is \$4, \$3, \$4, \$2.50, and \$3, respectively. All recipients are expected to remain employed through the vesting date.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the award of SARs on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entries pertaining to the SARs on December 31, 2018–December 31, 2021.
3. The SARs remain unexercised on December 31, 2022. Prepare the appropriate journal entry on that date.
4. The SARs are exercised on June 6, 2023, when the share price is \$50, and executives choose to receive the market price appreciation in cash. Prepare the appropriate journal entry(s) on that date.

E 19–31

Restricted stock units; cash settlement

● Appendix B

As part of its stock-based compensation package, on January 1, 2018, International Electronics granted restricted stock units (RSUs) representing 50 million \$1 par common shares. At exercise, holders of the RSUs are entitled to receive cash or stock equal in value to the market price of those shares at exercise. The RSUs cannot be exercised until the end of 2021 (vesting date) and expire at the end of 2023. The \$1 par common shares have a market price of \$6 per share on the grant date. The fair value at December 31, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, and 2022, is \$8, \$6, \$8, \$5, and \$6, respectively. All recipients are expected to remain employed through the vesting date. After the recipients of the RSUs satisfy the vesting requirement, the company will distribute the shares.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate journal entry to record the award of RSUs on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entries pertaining to the RSUs on December 31, 2018–December 31, 2021.
3. The RSUs remain unexercised on December 31, 2022. Prepare the appropriate journal entry on that date.
4. The RSUs are exercised on June 6, 2023, when the share price is \$6.50, and executives choose to receive cash. Prepare the appropriate journal entry(s) on that date.

Problems

**P 19–1**

Stock options; forfeiture; exercise

● LO19–2

On October 15, 2017, the board of directors of Ensor Materials Corporation approved a stock option plan for key executives. On January 1, 2018, 20 million stock options were granted, exercisable for 20 million shares of Ensor's \$1 par common stock. The options are exercisable between January 1, 2021, and December 31, 2023, at 80% of the quoted market price on January 1, 2018, which was \$15. The fair value of the 20 million options, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$6 per option. Ensor chooses the option to recognize forfeitures only when they occur.

Ten percent (2 million) of the options were forfeited when an executive resigned in 2019. All other options were exercised on July 12, 2022, when the stock's price jumped unexpectedly to \$19 per share.

Required:

1. When is Ensor's stock option measurement date?
2. Determine the compensation expense for the stock option plan in 2018. (Ignore taxes.)
3. What is the effect of forfeiture of the stock options on Ensor's financial statements for 2019 and 2020?
4. Is this effect consistent with the general approach for accounting for changes in estimates? Explain.
5. How should Ensor account for the exercise of the options in 2022?

P 19–2

Stock options; graded vesting

● LO19–2

Pastner Brands is a calendar-year firm with operations in several countries. As part of its executive compensation plan, at January 1, 2018, the company issued 400,000 executive stock options permitting executives to buy 400,000 shares of Pastner stock for \$34 per share. One-fourth of the options vest in each of the next four years beginning at December 31, 2018 (graded vesting). Pastner elects to separate the total award into four groups (or tranches) according to the year in which they vest and measures the compensation cost for each vesting date as a separate award. The fair value of each tranche is estimated at January 1, 2018, as follows:

Vesting Date	Amount Vesting	Fair Value per Option
Dec. 31, 2018	25%	\$3.50
Dec. 31, 2019	25%	\$4.00
Dec. 31, 2020	25%	\$4.50
Dec. 31, 2021	25%	\$5.00

Required:

1. Determine the compensation expense related to the options to be recorded each year 2018–2021, assuming Pastner allocates the compensation cost for each of the four groups (tranches) separately.
2. Determine the compensation expense related to the options to be recorded each year 2018–2021, assuming Pastner uses the straight-line method to allocate the total compensation cost.

P 19–3

Stock options; graded vesting; measurement using a single fair value per option

● LO19–2

Refer to the situation described in P 19–2. Assume Pastner measures the fair value of all options on January 1, 2018, to be \$4.50 per option using a single weighted-average expected life of the options assumption.

Required:

1. Determine the compensation expense related to the options to be recorded each year 2018–2021, assuming Pastner allocates the compensation cost for each of the four groups (tranches) separately.
2. Determine the compensation expense related to the options to be recorded each year 2018–2021, assuming Pastner uses the straight-line method to allocate the total compensation cost.

P 19–4

Stock options;
graded vesting;
IFRS

● LO19–2, LO19–14



IFRS

Refer to the situation described in P 19–2. Assume Pastner prepares its financial statements using International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS).

Required:

How might your responses to requirement 1 and requirement 2 differ using IFRS? Explain.

P 19–5

Stock option
plan; deferred tax
effect recognized

● LO19–2



Walters Audio Visual, Inc. offers a stock option plan to its regional managers. On January 1, 2018, 40 million options were granted for 40 million \$1 par common shares. The exercise price is the market price on the grant date, \$8 per share. Options cannot be exercised prior to January 1, 2020, and expire December 31, 2024. The fair value of the options, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$2 per option. Because the plan does not qualify as an incentive plan, Walters will receive a tax deduction upon exercise of the options equal to the excess of the market price at exercise over the exercise price. The income tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Determine the total compensation cost pertaining to the stock option plan.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record compensation expense and its tax effect on December 31, 2018.
3. Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record compensation expense and its tax effect on December 31, 2019.
4. Record the exercise of the options and their tax effect if *all* of the options are exercised on March 20, 2023, when the market price is \$12 per share.
5. Assume the option plan qualifies as an incentive plan. Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record compensation expense and its tax effect on December 31, 2018.
6. Assuming the option plan qualifies as an incentive plan, record the exercise of the options and their tax effect if *all* of the options are exercised on March 20, 2023, when the market price is \$11 per share.

P 19–6

Stock option
plan; deferred
tax effect of a
nonqualifying
plan

● LO19–2



JBL Aircraft manufactures and distributes aircraft parts and supplies. Employees are offered a variety of share-based compensation plans. Under its nonqualified stock option plan, JBL granted options to key officers on January 1, 2018. The options permit holders to acquire 6 million of the company's \$1 par common shares for \$22 within the next six years, but not before January 1, 2021 (the vesting date). The market price of the shares on the date of grant is \$26 per share. The fair value of the 6 million options, estimated by an appropriate option pricing model, is \$6 per option. Because the plan does not qualify as an incentive plan, JBL will receive a tax deduction upon exercise of the options equal to the excess of the market price at exercise over the exercise price. The tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Determine the total compensation cost pertaining to the incentive stock option plan.
2. Prepare the appropriate journal entries to record compensation expense and its tax effect on December 31, 2018, 2019, and 2020.
3. Record the exercise of the options and their tax effect if *all* of the options are exercised on August 21, 2022, when the market price is \$27 per share.

P 19–7

Performance
option plan

● LO19–2

LCI Cable Company grants 1 million performance stock options to key executives at January 1, 2018. The options entitle executives to receive 1 million of LCI \$1 par common shares, subject to the achievement of specific financial goals over the next four years. Attainment of these goals is considered probable initially and throughout the service period. The options have a current fair value of \$12 per option.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate entry when the options are awarded on January 1, 2018.
2. Prepare the appropriate entries on December 31 of each year 2018–2021.
3. Suppose at the beginning of 2020, LCI decided it is not probable that the performance objectives will be met. Prepare the appropriate entries on December 31 of 2020 and 2021.

P 19–8

Net loss; stock dividend; nonconvertible preferred stock; treasury shares; shares sold; discontinued operations

- LO19–5 through LO19–7, LO19–13

On December 31, 2017, Ainsworth, Inc., had 600 million shares of common stock outstanding. Twenty million shares of 8%, \$100 par value cumulative, nonconvertible preferred stock were sold on January 2, 2018. On April 30, 2018, Ainsworth purchased 30 million shares of its common stock as treasury stock. Twelve million treasury shares were sold on August 31. Ainsworth issued a 5% common stock dividend on June 12, 2018. No cash dividends were declared in 2018. For the year ended December 31, 2018, Ainsworth reported a net loss of \$140 million, including an after-tax loss from discontinued operations of \$400 million.

Required:

- Determine Ainsworth's net loss per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.
- Determine the per share amount of income or loss from continuing operations for the year ended December 31, 2018.
- Prepare an EPS presentation that would be appropriate to appear on Ainsworth's 2018 and 2017 comparative income statements. Assume EPS was reported in 2017 as \$0.75, based on net income (no discontinued operations) of \$450 million and a weighted-average number of common shares of 600 million.

P 19–9

EPS from statement of retained earnings

- LO19–4 through LO19–6

(Note: This problem is based on the same situation described in P 18–4 in Chapter 18, modified to focus on EPS rather than recording the events that affected retained earnings.)

Comparative Statements of Retained Earnings for Renn-Dever Corporation were reported as follows for the fiscal years ending December 31, 2016, 2017, and 2018.

RENN-DEVER CORPORATION
Statements of Retained Earnings

	For the Years Ended December 31		
	2018	2017	2016
Balance at beginning of year	\$6,794,292	\$5,464,052	\$5,624,552
Net income (loss)	3,308,700	2,240,900	(160,500)
Deductions:			
Stock dividend (34,900 shares)	242,000		
Common shares retired, September 30 (110,000 shares)		212,660	
Common stock cash dividends	889,950	698,000	0
Balance at end of year	<u>\$8,971,042</u>	<u>\$6,794,292</u>	<u>\$5,464,052</u>

At December 31, 2015, paid-in capital consisted of the following:

Common stock, 1,855,000 shares at \$1 par	\$1,855,000
Paid in capital—excess of par	7,420,000

No preferred stock or potential common shares were outstanding during any of the periods shown.

Required:

Compute Renn-Dever's earnings per share as it would have appeared in income statements for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2017, and 2018.

P 19–10

EPS from statement of shareholders' equity

- LO19–4 through LO19–6

Comparative Statements of Shareholders' Equity for Locke Intertechnology Corporation were reported as follows for the fiscal years ending December 31, 2016, 2017, and 2018.

LOCKE INTERTECHNOLOGY CORPORATION
Statements of Shareholders' Equity
For the Years Ended Dec. 31, 2016, 2017, and 2018
(\$ in millions)

	Preferred Stock, \$10 par	Common Stock, \$1 par	Additional Paid-in Capital	Retained Earnings	Total Shareholders' Equity
Balance at January 1, 2016		\$ 55	\$ 495	\$1,878	\$2,428
Sale of preferred shares	10		470		480
Sale of common shares, 7/1		9	81		90
Cash dividend, preferred				(1)	(1)
Cash dividend, common				(16)	(16)
Net income				290	290
Balance at December 31, 2016	<u>10</u>	<u>64</u>	<u>1,046</u>	<u>2,151</u>	<u>3,271</u>
Retirement of common shares, 4/1		(4)	(36)	(20)	(60)

(continued)

(concluded)

LOCKE INTERTECHNOLOGY CORPORATION
Statements of Shareholders' Equity
For the Years Ended Dec. 31, 2016, 2017, and 2018
(\$ in millions)

	Preferred Stock, \$10 par	Common Stock, \$1 par	Additional Paid-in Capital	Retained Earnings	Total Shareholders' Equity
Cash dividend, preferred				(1)	(1)
Cash dividend, common				(20)	(20)
3-for-2 split effected in the form of a common stock dividend, 8/12		30	(30)		
Net income				380	380
Balance at December 31, 2017	10	90	980	2,490	3,570
10% common stock dividend, 5/1		9	90	(99)	
Sale of common shares, 9/1		3	31		34
Cash dividend, preferred				(2)	(2)
Cash dividend, common				(22)	(22)
Net income				412	412
Balance at December 31, 2018	\$10	\$102	\$1,101	\$2,779	\$3,992

Required:

Infer from the statements the events and transactions that affected Locke Intertechnology Corporation's shareholders' equity and compute earnings per share as it would have appeared on the income statements for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2017, and 2018. No potential common shares were outstanding during any of the periods shown.

P 19-11

EPS;
nonconvertible
preferred stock;
treasury shares;
shares sold; stock
dividend

- LO19-4 through
LO19-7

On December 31, 2017, Dow Steel Corporation had 600,000 shares of common stock and 300,000 shares of 8%, noncumulative, nonconvertible preferred stock issued and outstanding. Dow issued a 4% common stock dividend on May 15 and paid cash dividends of \$400,000 and \$75,000 to common and preferred shareholders, respectively, on December 15, 2018.

On February 28, 2018, Dow sold 60,000 common shares. In keeping with its long-term share repurchase plan, 2,000 shares were retired on July 1. Dow's net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$2,100,000. The income tax rate is 40%.

Required:

Compute Dow's earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

P 19-12

EPS;
nonconvertible
preferred stock;
treasury shares;
shares sold; stock
dividend; options

- LO19-4 through
LO19-8, LO19-10

(Note: This is a variation of P 19-11, modified to include stock options.)

On December 31, 2017, Dow Steel Corporation had 600,000 shares of common stock and 300,000 shares of 8%, noncumulative, nonconvertible preferred stock issued and outstanding. Dow issued a 4% common stock dividend on May 15 and paid cash dividends of \$400,000 and \$75,000 to common and preferred shareholders, respectively, on December 15, 2018.

On February 28, 2018, Dow sold 60,000 common shares. In keeping with its long-term share repurchase plan, 2,000 shares were retired on July 1. Dow's net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$2,100,000. The income tax rate is 40%.

As part of an incentive compensation plan, Dow granted incentive stock options to division managers at December 31 of the current and each of the previous two years. Each option permits its holder to buy one share of common stock at an exercise price equal to market value at the date of grant and can be exercised one year from that date. Information concerning the number of options granted and common share prices follows:

Date Granted	Options Granted	Share Price
	(adjusted for the stock dividend)	
December 31, 2016	8,000	\$24
December 31, 2017	3,000	\$33
December 31, 2018	6,500	\$32

The market price of the common stock averaged \$32 per share during 2018.



Required:

Compute Dow's earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

P 19–13

EPS; nonconvertible preferred stock; treasury shares; shares sold; stock dividend; options; convertible bonds; contingently issuable shares

- LO19–4 through LO19–11

(Note: This is a variation of P 19–12, modified to include convertible bonds and contingently issuable shares.) On December 31, 2017, Dow Steel Corporation had 600,000 shares of common stock and 300,000 shares of 8%, noncumulative, nonconvertible preferred stock issued and outstanding. Dow issued a 4% common stock dividend on May 15 and paid cash dividends of \$400,000 and \$75,000 to common and preferred shareholders, respectively, on December 15, 2018.

On February 28, 2018, Dow sold 60,000 common shares. In keeping with its long-term share repurchase plan, 2,000 shares were retired on July 1. Dow's net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$2,100,000. The income tax rate is 40%. Also, as a part of a 2017 agreement for the acquisition of Merrill Cable Company, another 23,000 shares (already adjusted for the stock dividend) are to be issued to former Merrill shareholders on December 31, 2019, if Merrill's 2019 net income is at least \$500,000. In 2018, Merrill's net income was \$630,000.

As part of an incentive compensation plan, Dow granted incentive stock options to division managers at December 31 of the current and each of the previous two years. Each option permits its holder to buy one share of common stock at an exercise price equal to market value at the date of grant and can be exercised one year from that date. Information concerning the number of options granted and common share prices follows:

Date Granted	Options Granted	Share Price
	(adjusted for the stock dividend)	
December 31, 2016	8,000	\$24
December 31, 2017	3,000	\$33
December 31, 2018	6,500	\$32

The market price of the common stock averaged \$32 per share during 2018.

On July 12, 2016, Dow issued \$800,000 of convertible 10% bonds at face value. Each \$1,000 bond is convertible into 30 common shares (adjusted for the stock dividend).

Required:

Compute Dow's basic and diluted earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

P 19–14

EPS; convertible preferred stock; convertible bonds; order of entry

- LO19–7, LO19–9, LO19–10

Information from the financial statements of Henderson-Niles Industries included the following at December 31, 2018:

Common shares outstanding throughout the year	100 million
Convertible preferred shares (convertible into 32 million shares of common)	60 million
Convertible 10% bonds (convertible into 13.5 million shares of common)	\$900 million

Henderson-Niles's net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, is \$520 million. The income tax rate is 40%. Henderson-Niles paid dividends of \$2 per share on its preferred stock during 2018.

Required:

Compute basic and diluted earnings per share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

P 19–15

EPS; antidilution

- LO19–4 through LO19–10, LO19–13

Alciatore Company reported a net income of \$150,000 in 2018. The weighted-average number of common shares outstanding for 2018 was 40,000. The average stock price for 2018 was \$33. Assume an income tax rate of 40%.

Required:

For each of the following independent situations, indicate whether the effect of the security is antidilutive for diluted EPS.

- 10,000 shares of 7.7% of \$100 par convertible, cumulative preferred stock. Each share may be converted into two common shares.
- 8% convertible 10-year, \$500,000 of bonds, issued at face value. The bonds are convertible to 5,000 shares of common stock.
- Stock options exercisable at \$30 per share after January 1, 2020.
- Warrants for 1,000 common shares with an exercise price of \$35 per share.
- A contingent agreement to issue 5,000 shares of stock to the company president if net income is at least \$125,000 in 2019.

P 19–16

EPS; convertible bonds; treasury shares

- LO19–4 through LO19–6, LO19–9

At December 31, 2018, the financial statements of Hollingsworth Industries included the following:

Net income for 2018	\$560 million
Bonds payable, 10%, convertible into 36 million shares of common stock	\$300 million
Common stock:	
Shares outstanding on January 1	400 million
Treasury shares purchased for cash on September 1	30 million

Additional data:

The bonds payable were issued at par in 2016. The tax rate for 2018 was 40%.

Required:

Compute basic and diluted EPS for the year ended December 31, 2018.

P 19–17

EPS; options; convertible preferred; additional shares

- LO19–4 through LO19–9

On January 1, 2018, Tonge Industries had outstanding 440,000 common shares (\$1 par) that originally sold for \$20 per share, and 4,000 shares of 10% cumulative preferred stock (\$100 par), convertible into 40,000 common shares.

On October 1, 2018, Tonge sold and issued an additional 16,000 shares of common stock at \$33. At December 31, 2018, there were 20,000 incentive stock options outstanding, issued in 2017, and exercisable after one year for 20,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$30. The market price of the common stock at year-end was \$48. During the year, the price of the common shares had averaged \$40.

Net income was \$650,000. The tax rate for the year was 40%.

Required:

Compute basic and diluted EPS for the year ended December 31, 2018.

P 19–18

EPS; stock options; nonconvertible preferred; convertible bonds; shares sold

- LO19–4 through LO19–9

At January 1, 2018, Canaday Corporation had outstanding the following securities:

600 million common shares
20 million 6% cumulative preferred shares, \$50 par
8% convertible bonds, \$2,000 million face amount, convertible into 80 million common shares

The following additional information is available:

- On September 1, 2018, Canaday sold 72 million additional shares of common stock.
- Incentive stock options to purchase 60 million shares of common stock after July 1, 2017, at \$12 per share, were outstanding at the beginning and end of 2018. The average market price of Canaday's common stock was \$18 per share during 2018.
- Canaday's net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$1,476 million. The effective income tax rate was 40%.

Required:

1. Calculate basic earnings per common share for the year ended December 31, 2018.
2. Calculate the diluted earnings per common share for the year ended December 31, 2018.

P 19–19

EPS; options; restricted stock; additional components for "proceeds" in treasury stock method

- LO19–1, LO19–2, LO19–4, LO19–8, LO19–11

Witter House is a calendar-year firm with 300 million common shares outstanding throughout 2018 and 2019. As part of its executive compensation plan, at January 1, 2017, the company had issued 30 million executive stock options permitting executives to buy 30 million shares of stock for \$10 within the next eight years, but not prior to January 1, 2020. The fair value of the options was estimated on the grant date to be \$3 per option.

In 2018, Witter House began granting employees stock awards rather than stock options as part of its equity compensation plans and granted 15 million restricted common shares to senior executives at January 1, 2018. The shares vest four years later. The fair value of the stock was \$12 per share on the grant date. The average price of the common shares was \$12 and \$15 during 2018 and 2019, respectively.

The stock options qualify for tax purposes as an incentive plan. The restricted stock does not. The company's net income was \$150 million and \$160 million in 2018 and 2019, respectively. Its income tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Determine basic and diluted earnings per share for Witter House in 2018.
2. Determine basic and diluted earnings per share for Witter House in 2019.



Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Real World

Case 19–1

Restricted stock awards; Microsoft

● LO19–1

Real World Financials

Microsoft provides compensation to executives in the form of a variety of incentive compensation plans, including restricted stock award grants. The following is an excerpt from a disclosure note from Microsoft's 2015 annual report:

Note 20 Employee Stock and Savings Plans (in part)

Stock awards are grants that entitle the holder to shares of common stock as the award vests. Our stock awards generally vest over a five-year period . . . During fiscal year 2015, the following activity occurred under our plans:

	Shares (\$ in millions)	Weighted Average Grant- Date Fair Value
Stock awards:		
Nonvested balance, beginning of year	259	\$ 27.88
Granted	75	42.36
Vested	(94)	27.47
Forfeited	(24)	31.81
Nonvested balance, end of year	216	\$32.72

Required:

1. What is the “incentive” provided by Microsoft's restricted stock grants?
2. If all awards are granted, vested, and forfeited evenly throughout the year, what is the compensation expense in fiscal 2015 pertaining to the previous and current stock awards? Explain. Assume forfeited shares were granted evenly throughout the three previous years.

Communication

Case 19–2

Stock options; basic concepts; prepare a memo

● LO19–2

You are assistant controller of Stamos & Company, a medium-size manufacturer of machine parts. On October 22, 2017, the board of directors approved a stock option plan for key executives. On January 1, 2018, a specific number of stock options were granted. The options were exercisable between January 1, 2020, and December 31, 2024, at 100% of the quoted market price at the grant date. The service period is for 2018 through 2020.

Your boss, the controller, is one of the executives to receive options. Neither he nor you have had occasion to deal with GAAP on accounting for stock options. He and you are aware of the traditional approach your company used years ago but do not know the newer method. Your boss understands how options might benefit him personally but wants to be aware also of how the options will be reported in the financial statements. He has asked you for a one-page synopsis of accounting for stock options under the fair value approach. He instructed you, “I don't care about the effect on taxes or earnings per share—just the basics, please.”

Required:

Prepare such a report that includes the following:

1. At what point should the compensation cost be measured? How should it be measured?
2. How should compensation expense be measured for the stock option plan in 2018 and later?
3. If options are forfeited because an executive resigns before vesting, what is the effect of that forfeiture of the stock options on the financial statements?
4. If options are allowed to lapse after vesting, what is the effect on the financial statements?

Ethics Case 19–3

Stock options

● LO19–2

You are in your second year as an auditor with Dantly and Regis, a regional CPA firm. One of the firm's long-time clients is Mayberry-Cleaver Industries, a national company involved in the manufacturing, marketing, and sales of hydraulic devices used in specialized manufacturing applications. Early in this year's audit, you discover that Mayberry-Cleaver has changed its method of determining inventory from LIFO to FIFO. Your client's explanation is that FIFO is consistent with the method used by some other companies in the industry. Upon further investigation, you discover an executive stock option plan whose terms call for a significant increase in the shares available to executives if net income this year exceeds \$44 million. Some quick calculations convince you that without the change in inventory methods, the target will not be reached; with the change, it will.

Required:

Do you perceive an ethical dilemma? What would be the likely impact of following the controller's suggestions? Who would benefit? Who would be injured?

**Trueblood
Accounting
Case 19-4**

Share-based
awards

● LO19-1, LO19-2

The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion Material, can be obtained from the Deloitte Foundation at its website: www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases.

Case 13-5: Occupy Mall Street

This case gives students the opportunity to consider the accounting treatment for different aspects of a share-based compensation plan.

**Real World
Case 19-5**

Share-based
plans; Walmart

● LO19-1, LO19-2

Walmart offers its employees a variety of share-based compensation plans including stock options, performance share awards, restricted stock, and restricted stock units. The following is an excerpt from a disclosure note from Walmart's 2015 financial statements:

Real World Financials

Share-Based Compensation

The Company has awarded share-based compensation to associates and nonemployee directors of the Company. The compensation expense recognized for all plans was \$448 million, \$462 million and \$388 million for fiscal 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. Share-based compensation expense is included in operating, selling, general and administrative expenses in the Company's Consolidated Statements of Income. The total income tax benefit recognized for share-based compensation was \$151 million, \$173 million and \$145 million for fiscal 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The following table summarizes the Company's share-based compensation expense by award type:

(\$ in millions)	Fiscal Years Ended January 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
Restricted stock and performance share units	\$134	\$157	\$141
Restricted stock units	292	277	224
Other	22	28	23
Share-based compensation expense	\$448	\$462	\$388

Required:

1. Walmart's share-based compensation includes stock options, restricted stock units, restricted stock awards, and performance-based awards. What is the general financial reporting objective when recording compensation expense for these forms of compensation?
2. Walmart reported share-based expense of \$448 million in 2015. Without referring to specific numbers and ignoring other forms of share-based compensation, describe how this amount reflects the value of stock options.

Ethics Case 19-6

International
Network Solutions

● LO19-6

International Network Solutions provides products and services related to remote access networking. The company has grown rapidly during its first 10 years of operations. As its segment of the industry has begun to mature, though, the fast growth of previous years has begun to slow. In fact, this year revenues and profits are roughly the same as last year.

One morning, nine weeks before the close of the fiscal year, Rob Mashburn, CFO, and Jessica Lane, controller, were sharing coffee and ideas in Lane's office.

Lane: About the Board meeting Thursday. You may be right. This may be the time to suggest a share buyback program.

Mashburn: To begin this year, you mean?

Lane: Right! I know Barber will be lobbying to use the funds for our European expansion. She's probably right about the best use of our funds, but we can always issue more notes next year. Right now, we need a quick fix for our EPS numbers.

Mashburn: Our shareholders are accustomed to increases every year.

Required:

1. How will a buyback of shares provide a "quick fix" for EPS?
2. Is the proposal ethical?
3. Who would be affected if the proposal is implemented?

Real World**Case 19–7**

Per share data;
stock options;
antidilutive
securities; Best
Buy Co.

• LO19–8

Real World Financials

The 2016 annual report of **Best Buy Co., Inc.** reported profitable operations for the most recent three years. However, the company suffered a net loss in 2012. Best Buy reported the following for the twelve months ended March 3, 2012:

Basic (loss) earnings per share:	
Continuing operations	\$(2.89)
Discontinued operations	(0.47)
Basic (loss) earnings per share	\$(3.36)
Diluted (loss) earnings per share:	
Continuing operations	\$(2.89)
Discontinued operations	(0.47)
Diluted (loss) earnings per share	\$(3.36)
Dividends declared per Best Buy Co., Inc. common share	\$ 0.62
Weighted average common shares outstanding (in millions)	
Basic	366.3
Diluted	366.3

Note: The calculation of diluted earnings per share assumes the conversion of the company's previously outstanding convertible debentures due in 2024 into 8.8 million shares common stock . . . and adds back the related after-tax interest expense of \$1.5. . . . The calculation of diluted (loss) per share for the twelve months ended March 3, 2012, does not include potential dilutive shares of common stock because their inclusion would be antidilutive (i.e., reduce the net loss per share).

Required:

1. The note indicates that Best Buy does not include potentially dilutive shares when calculating EPS for the twelve months ended March 3, 2012. What are potentially dilutive shares?
2. The note indicates that "diluted earnings per share assumes the conversion of the company's *previously outstanding* convertible debentures due in 2024 into 8.8 million shares common stock . . . and adds back the related after-tax interest expense of \$1.5." Apparently, these bonds were actually converted during the year. Would diluted EPS have been different if the bonds had not been converted and were still outstanding? Explain.
3. Best Buy does not include potentially dilutive shares when calculating EPS for the twelve months ended March 3, 2012. Why not? Assume Best Buy had 40 million common equivalent shares and included them in the calculation, what would have been the amount of diluted loss per share for the twelve months ended March 3, 2012?

Analysis**Case 19–8**

EPS concepts

• LO19–4 through
LO19–8

The shareholders' equity of Proactive Solutions, Inc., included the following at December 31, 2018:

Common stock, \$1 par
Paid-in capital—excess of par on common stock
7% cumulative convertible preferred stock, \$100 par value
Paid-in capital—excess of par on preferred stock
Retained earnings

Additional Information:

- Proactive had 7 million shares of preferred stock authorized of which 2 million were outstanding. All 2 million shares outstanding were issued in 2012 for \$112 a share. The preferred stock is convertible into common stock on a two-for-one basis until December 31, 2020, after which the preferred stock no longer is convertible. None of the preferred stock has been converted into common stock at December 31, 2018. There were no dividends in arrears.
- Of the 13 million common shares authorized, there were 8 million shares outstanding at January 1, 2018. Proactive also sold 3 million shares at the beginning of September 2018 at a price of \$52 a share.
- The company has an employee stock option plan in which certain key employees and officers may purchase shares of common stock at the market price at the date of the option grant. All options are exercisable beginning one year after the date of the grant and expire if not exercised within five years of the grant date. On January 1, 2018, options for 2 million shares were outstanding at prices ranging from \$45 to \$53 a share. Options for 1 million shares were exercised at \$49 a share at the end of June 2018. No options expired during 2018. Additional options for 1.5 million shares were granted at \$55 a share during the year. The 2.5 million options outstanding at December 31, 2018, were exercisable at \$45 to \$55 a share.

The only changes in the shareholders' equity for 2018 were those described above, 2018 net income, and cash dividends paid.

Required:

Explain how each of the following amounts should be determined when computing earnings per share for presentation in the income statements. For each, be specific as to the treatment of each item.

1. Numerator for basic EPS
2. Denominator for basic EPS
3. Numerator for diluted EPS
4. Denominator for diluted EPS

Analysis**Case 19–9****EPS**

- LO19–5 through LO19–8

“I guess I’ll win that bet!” you announced to no one in particular.

“What bet?” Renee asked. Renee Patey was close enough to overhear you.

“When I bought my REC stock last year Randy insisted it was a mistake, that they were going to collapse. I bet him a Coke he was wrong. This press release says they have positive earnings,” you bragged. Renee was looking over your shoulder now at the article you were pointing at:

CHICAGO (ACCOUNTING WIRE)—July 1, 2018—Republic Enterprise Companies, Inc. (REC) today reported net income attributable to REC of \$3.6 billion for the quarter ended May 31, 2018 . . . Diluted earnings per share attributable to REC were \$1.52 for the second quarter of 2018, compared with \$1.21 for the second quarter of 2017.

Our Board of Directors . . . authorized the repurchase of shares of REC Common Stock, with an aggregate purchase price of up to \$2.0 billion.

“A dollar fifty-two a share, huh?” Renee asked. “How many shares do you have? When do you get the check?”

Required:

1. Renee’s questions imply that she thinks you will get cash dividends of \$1.52 a share. What does earnings per share really tell you?
2. A previous press release indicated that “Share and per share amounts prior to the second quarter of 2016 have been restated to reflect the 1-for-20 reverse stock split effective June 30, 2016.” What does that mean?
3. The press release indicates plans to repurchase shares of its own stock. Would the reduction in shares from a stock repurchase be taken into account when EPS is calculated? How?

Judgment**Case 19–10**

Where are the profits?

- LO19–4 through LO19–7, LO19–9

Del Conte Construction Company has experienced generally steady growth since its inception in 1953. Management is proud of its record of having maintained or increased its earnings per share in each year of its existence.

The economic downturn has led to disturbing dips in revenues the past two years. Despite concerted cost-cutting efforts, profits have declined in each of the two previous years. Net income in 2016, 2017, and 2018 was as follows:

2016	\$145 million
2017	\$134 million
2018	\$ 95 million

A major shareholder has hired you to provide advice on whether to continue her present investment position or to curtail that position. Of particular concern is the declining profitability, despite the fact that earnings per share has continued a pattern of growth:

	Basic	Diluted
2016	\$2.15	\$1.91
2017	\$2.44	\$2.12
2018	\$2.50	\$2.50

She specifically asks you to explain this apparent paradox. During the course of your investigation you discover the following events:

- For the decade ending December 31, 2015, Del Conte had 60 million common shares and 20 million shares of 8%, \$10 par nonconvertible preferred stock outstanding. Cash dividends have been paid quarterly on both.
- On July 1, 2017, half the preferred shares were retired in the open market. The remaining shares were retired on December 30, 2017.
- \$55 million of 8% nonconvertible bonds were issued at the beginning of 2018, and a portion of the proceeds were used to call and retire \$50 million of 10% debentures (outstanding since 2013) that were convertible into 9 million common shares.
- In 2016, management announced a share repurchase plan by which up to 24 million common shares would be retired. 12 million shares were retired on March 1 of both 2016 and 2017.
- Del Conte’s income tax rate is 40% and has been for the last several years.

Required:

Explain the apparent paradox to which your client refers. Include calculations that demonstrate your explanation.

Communication**Case 19–11**

Dilution

• LO19–9

“I thought I understood earnings per share,” lamented Brad Dawson, “but you’re telling me we need to pretend our convertible bonds have been converted! Or maybe not?”

Dawson, your boss, is the new manager of the Fabricating division of BVT Corporation. His background is engineering and he has only a basic understanding of earnings per share. Knowing you are an accounting graduate, he asks you to explain the questions he has about the calculation of the company’s EPS. His reaction is to your explanation that the company’s convertible bonds might be included in this year’s calculation.

“Put it in a memo!” he grumbled as he left your office.

Required:

Write a memo to Dawson. Explain the effect on earnings per share of each of the following:

1. Convertible securities.
2. Antidilutive securities.

Real World**Case 19–12**

Reporting EPS;
discontinued
operations; Kaman
Corporation

• LO19–13

Kaman Corporation, headquartered in Bloomfield, Connecticut, was incorporated in 1945. It is a diversified company that conducts business in the aerospace and distribution markets. The following is an excerpt from the comparative income statements (beginning with earnings from continuing operations) from Kaman’s 2015 annual report (\$ in thousands). A disclosure note from Kaman’s 2015 annual report is shown below.

An income statement sometimes includes discontinued operations. Kaman Corporation reports income from discontinued operations.

17. COMPUTATION OF EARNINGS PER SHARE (in part)

The computation of basic earnings per share is based on net earnings divided by the weighted average number of shares of common stock outstanding for each year. The computation of diluted earnings per share includes the common stock equivalency of dilutive options granted to employees under the Stock Incentive Plan.

Excluded from the diluted earnings per share calculation for the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013, respectively, are 487,071, 342,994 and 391,717 shares associated with equity awards granted to employees that are anti-dilutive based on the average stock price. Convertible Notes for the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013, shares issuable under the Convertible Notes that were dilutive during the period were included in the calculation of earnings per share as the conversion price for the Convertible Notes was less than the average share price of the Company’s stock. Warrants excluded from the diluted earnings per share calculation for the years ended December 31, 2015, 2014 and 2013, respectively were 3,422,477, 3,411,539, and 3,404,626 shares, issuable under the warrants sold in connection with the Company’s Convertible Note offering as they would be anti-dilutive.

(\$ in thousands, except per share amounts)	For the year ended December 31,		
	2015	2014	2013
Earnings from continuing operations	\$60,438	\$65,780	\$59,066
Loss from discontinued operations, net of tax	—	(2,924)	(2,386)
Gain (loss) on disposal of discontinued operations, net of tax	—	(4,984)	420
Net earnings	\$60,438	\$57,872	\$57,100
Basic:			
Weighted average number of shares outstanding	27,177	27,053	26,744
Diluted:			
Weighted average number of shares outstanding	27,177	27,053	26,744
Weighted average shares issuable on exercise of dilutive stock options	133	147	159
Weighted average shares issuable on exercise of convertible notes	588	577	240
Total	27,868	27,777	27,143

Required:

1. The disclosure note shows adjustments for “shares issuable under the Convertible Notes that were dilutive during the period were included in the calculation of earnings per share.” What other adjustments might be needed? Explain why and how these adjustments are made to the weighted-average shares outstanding.
2. The disclosure note indicates that the effect of some of the equity awards granted to employees were not included because they would be antidilutive. What does that mean? Why not include antidilutive securities?
3. Based on the information provided, prepare the presentation of basic and diluted earnings per share for 2015, 2014, and 2013 that Kaman reports in its 2015 annual report.

Real World Financials

Analysis**Case 19–13**

Analyzing financial statements; price-earnings ratio; dividend payout ratio

● LO19–13

IGF Foods Company is a large, primarily domestic, consumer foods company involved in the manufacture, distribution, and sale of a variety of food products. Industry averages are derived from Troy's *The Almanac of Business and Industrial Financial Ratios* and Dun and Bradstreet's *Industry Norms and Key Business Ratios*. Following are the 2018 and 2017 comparative income statements and balance sheets for IGF. The market price of IGF's common stock is \$47 during 2018. (The financial data we use are from actual financial statements of a well-known corporation, but the company name used in our illustration is fictitious and the numbers and dates have been modified slightly to disguise the company's identity.)

IGF FOODS COMPANY		
Years Ended December 31, 2018 and 2017		
(\$ in millions)	2018	2017
Comparative Income Statements		
Net sales	\$6,440	\$5,800
Cost of goods sold	(3,667)	(3,389)
Gross profit	2,773	2,411
Operating expenses	(1,916)	(1,629)
Operating income	857	782
Interest expense	(54)	(53)
Income from operations before tax	803	729
Income taxes	(316)	(287)
Net income	\$ 487	\$ 442
Net income per share	\$ 2.69	\$ 2.44
Average shares outstanding	181 million	181 million
(\$ in millions)	2018	2017
Comparative Balance Sheets		
Assets		
Total current assets	\$1,879	\$1,490
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	2,592	2,291
Intangibles (net)	800	843
Other assets	74	60
Total assets	\$5,345	\$4,684
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Total current liabilities	\$1,473	\$ 941
Long term debt	534	728
Deferred income taxes	407	344
Total liabilities	2,414	2,013
Shareholders' equity:		
Common stock	180	180
Additional paid-in capital	21	63
Retained earnings	2,730	2,428
Total shareholders' equity	2,931	2,671
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$5,345	\$4,684

Some ratios express income, dividends, and market prices on a per share basis. As such, these ratios appeal primarily to common shareholders, particularly when weighing investment possibilities. These ratios focus less on the fundamental soundness of a company and more on its investment characteristics.

Required:

1. Earnings per share expresses a firm's profitability on a per share basis. Calculate 2018 earnings per share for IGF.
2. Calculate IGF's 2018 price-earnings ratio. The average price-earnings ratio for the stocks listed on the New York Stock Exchange in a comparable time period was 18.5. What does your calculation indicate about IGF's earnings?
3. Calculate IGF's 2018 dividend payout ratio. What information does the calculation provide an investor?

Research**Case 19–14**

Determining and comparing price-earnings ratios; retrieving stock prices and earnings per share numbers from the Internet

• LO19–13

Analysis**Case 19–15**

Kellogg's EPS; PE ratio; dividend payout

• LO19–13

Real World Financials

Many sites on the Internet allow the retrieval of current stock price information. Among those sites are Marketwatch (marketwatch.com) and Quicken (www.quicken.com).

Required:

1. Access any site on the Internet that permits you to get a current stock quote. Determine the current price of **Microsoft Corporation's** common stock (MSFT) and that of **Intel Corporation** (INTC).
2. Access EDGAR on the Internet at www.sec.gov. Search for Microsoft and access its most recent 10-K filing. Search or scroll to find the income statement and related note(s). Determine the most recent earnings per share. Repeat this step for Intel.
3. Calculate the price-earnings ratio for each company.
4. Compare the PE ratios of Microsoft and Intel. What information might be gleaned from your comparison?

While eating his **Kellogg's** Frosted Flakes one January morning, Tony noticed the following article in his local paper:

Kellogg Company Reports Fourth-Quarter and Full-Year Results and Provides Guidance For 2016 (in part)

BATTLE CREEK, Mich., Feb. 11, 2016 /PRNewswire/—Kellogg Company (NYSE: K) Reported full-year 2015 net earnings \$614 million, or \$1.72 per share.

As a shareholder, Tony is well aware that Kellogg pays a regular cash dividend of \$0.50 per share quarterly. A quick click on a price quote service indicated that Kellogg's shares closed at \$72.27 on December 31.

Required:

1. Using the numbers provided, determine the price-earnings ratio for Kellogg Company for 2015. What information does this ratio impart?
2. What is the dividend payout ratio for Kellogg? What does it indicate?

Research**Case 19–16**

FASB codification; locate and extract relevant information and cite authoritative support for a financial reporting issue; change in classification of a share-based compensation instrument

• LO19–13



"Now what do I do?" moaned your colleague, Matt. "This is a first for me," he confided. You and Matt are recent hires in the Accounting Division of National Paper. A top executive in the company has been given share-based incentive instruments that permit her to receive shares of National Paper equal in value to the amount the company shares rise above the shares' value two years ago when the instruments were issued to her as compensation. The instruments vest in three years. A clause was included in the compensation agreement that would permit her to receive cash rather than shares upon exercise if sales revenue in her division were to double by that time. Because that contingency was considered unlikely, the instruments have been accounted for as equity, with the grant date fair value being expensed over the five-year vesting period.

Now, though, surging sales of her division indicate that the contingent event has become probable, and the instruments should be accounted for as a liability rather than equity. The fair value of the award was estimated at \$5 million on the grant date, but now is \$8 million. Matt has asked your help in deciding what to recommend to your controller as the appropriate action to take at this point.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on accounting for a change in classification due to a change in probable settlement outcome using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Explain to Matt the basic treatment of the situation described. What is the specific citation that you would rely on in applying that accounting treatment?
2. Prepare the journal entry to record the change in circumstance.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

• LO3–2, LO3–3, LO3–8

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com). Target's share-based compensation includes several long-term incentive plans.

Required:

1. Over how many years is the compensation associated with Target's share-based awards expensed?
2. Based on the fair value of the awards, what was Target's primary form of share-based compensation for the year ended January 30, 2016?

3. If projecting Target's earnings per share based solely on EPS reported over the most recent three years, would you project increasing or decreasing EPS?
4. How many shares were included in diluted earnings per share but not basic earnings per share due to share-based compensation awards?

**Air France–KLM
Case**



● LO19–9

Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm-finance.com).

Required:

1. AF provides share-based compensation in the form of PPSs, Phantom Performance Shares. Recipients receive compensation in what form? How are such plans reported in the balance sheet? [Hint: See Note 30: "Share-Based Compensation."] Are AF's PPSs cliff vesting or graded vesting? How does accounting differ between U.S. GAAP and IFRS for graded-vesting plans?
2. What amount(s) of earnings per share did AF report in its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2015? If AF used U.S. GAAP, would it have reported EPS using the same classification?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

20

Accounting Changes and Error Corrections

OVERVIEW

Chapter 4 provided a brief overview of accounting changes and error correction. Later, we discussed changes encountered in connection with specific assets and liabilities as we dealt with those topics in subsequent chapters.

Here we revisit accounting changes and error correction to synthesize the way these are handled in a variety of situations that might be encountered in practice. We see that most changes in accounting principle are reported retrospectively. Changes in estimates are accounted for prospectively. A change in depreciation methods is considered a change in estimate resulting from a change in principle. Both changes in reporting entities and the correction of errors are reported retrospectively.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO20-1** Differentiate among the three types of accounting changes and distinguish among the retrospective, modified retrospective, and prospective approaches to accounting for and reporting accounting changes. (p. 1160)
- **LO20-2** Describe how changes in accounting principle typically are reported. (p. 1162)
- **LO20-3** Explain how and why some changes in accounting principle are reported prospectively. (p. 1166)
- **LO20-4** Explain how and why changes in estimates are reported prospectively. (p. 1168)
- **LO20-5** Describe the situations that constitute a change in reporting entity. (p. 1171)
- **LO20-6** Understand and apply the four-step process of correcting and reporting errors, regardless of the type of error or the timing of its discovery. (p. 1174)
- **LO20-7** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to accounting changes and error corrections. (pp. 1167, 1174, and 1181)



© REUTERS/Alamy Stock Photo

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

In a Jam

“What the heck!” Martin yelled as he handed you the annual report of **J.M. Smucker** he’d received in the mail today. “It looks like Smucker found a bunch of lost jelly. It says here that their inventory was \$54 million last year. I distinctly remember them reporting that number last year as \$52 million because my dad was born in ’52, and I did a little wordplay in my mind about him ‘taking inventory’ of his life when he bought the red Mustang.” He had circled the number in the comparative balance sheets. “When I bought Smucker shares last year, I promised myself I would monitor things pretty closely, but it’s not as easy as I thought it would be.”

As an accounting graduate, you can understand Martin’s confusion. Flipping to the disclosure note on accounting changes, you proceed to clear things up for him.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. How can an accounting change cause a company to increase a previously reported inventory amount? (p. 1163)
2. Are all accounting changes reported this way? (p. 1169)

QUESTIONS

You learned early in your study of accounting that two of the qualitative characteristics of accounting information that contribute to its relevance and representational faithfulness are *consistency* and *comparability*. Though we strive to achieve and maintain these financial reporting attributes, we cannot ignore the forces of change. Ours is a dynamic business environment. The economy is increasingly a global one. Technological advances constantly transform both day-to-day operations and the flow of information about those operations. The accounting profession’s response to the fluid environment often means issuing new standards that require companies to change accounting methods. Often, developments within an industry or the economy will prompt a company to voluntarily switch methods of accounting or to revise estimates or expectations. In short, change is inevitable. The question then becomes a matter of how best to address change when reporting financial information from year to year.

In the first part of this chapter, we differentiate among the various types of accounting changes that businesses face, with a focus on the most meaningful and least disruptive ways to report those changes. Then, in the second part of the chapter, we direct our attention to a closely related circumstance—the correction of errors.

Accounting Changes

Accounting changes fall into one of the three categories listed in Illustration 20–1.¹

PART A

¹FASB ASC 250: Accounting Changes and Error Corrections (previously “Accounting Changes and Error Corrections—A Replacement of APB Opinion No. 20 and FASB Statement No. 3,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 154* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2005)).

Illustration 20-1

Types of Accounting Changes

• LO20-1

Type of Change	Description	Examples
Change in accounting principle	Change from one generally accepted accounting principle to another.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adopt a new Accounting Standard. • Change methods of inventory costing. • Change from cost method to equity method, or vice versa.
Change in accounting estimate	Revise an estimate because of new information or new experience.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change depreciation methods.* • Change estimate of useful life of depreciable asset. • Change estimate of residual value of depreciable asset. • Change estimate of periods benefited by intangible assets. • Change actuarial estimates pertaining to a pension plan.
Change in reporting entity	Change from reporting as one type of entity to another type of entity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consolidate a subsidiary not previously included in consolidated financial statements. • Report consolidated financial statements in place of individual statements.

*A change in depreciation methods is a change in estimate that is achieved by a change in accounting principle.

The correction of an error is another adjustment sometimes made to financial statements that is not actually an accounting change but is accounted for similarly. Errors occur when transactions are either recorded incorrectly or not recorded at all, as shown in Illustration 20-2.

Illustration 20-2

Correction of Errors

Type of Change	Description	Examples
Error correction	Correct an error caused by a transaction being recorded incorrectly or not at all.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mathematical mistakes. • Inaccurate physical count of inventory. • Change from the cash basis of accounting to the accrual basis. • Failure to record an adjusting entry. • Recording an asset as an expense, or vice versa. • Fraud or gross negligence.

Three approaches to reporting accounting changes and error corrections are used, depending on the situation.

The retrospective approach offers consistency and comparability.

1. Using the **retrospective approach**, financial statements issued prior to the change are adjusted to reflect the impact of the change whenever those statements are presented again for comparative purposes (comparative financial statements). For each year reported in the comparative statements, the balance of each account affected is adjusted to incorporate the change. So for the first period presented in the comparative statements, the adjusted balances include the cumulative effect of the change prior to that date. In other words, those statements are made to appear as if the newly adopted accounting method had been applied all along or that the error had never occurred. Then, a journal entry is created to adjust all account balances affected to what those amounts would have been. In addition, if retained earnings is one of the accounts that requires adjustment, that adjustment is made

to the beginning balance of retained earnings for the earliest period reported in the comparative statements of shareholders' equity. An advantage of this approach is that it achieves comparability among financial statements. All financial statements presented are prepared on the same basis. However, some argue that public confidence in the integrity of financial data suffers when numbers previously reported as correct are later superseded. On the other hand, proponents argue the opposite—that it's impossible to maintain public confidence unless the financial statements are comparable.

2. The **modified retrospective approach** requires application of the new standard only to the adoption period (that is, the current period) as well as adjustment of the balance of retained earnings at the beginning of the adoption period to capture the cumulative effects of prior periods without actually adjusting the numbers in the prior periods reported.
3. The **prospective approach** requires neither a modification of prior years' financial statements nor a journal entry to adjust account balances. Instead, the change is simply implemented in the period of the change, and its effects are reflected in the financial statements of the period of the change and future periods only.

Now, let's look at each type of accounting change, one at a time, focusing on the selective application of these approaches.

The effects of a change are reflected in the financial statements of only the year of the change and future years under the **prospective approach**.

Change in Accounting Principle

Accounting is not an exact science. Professional judgment is required to apply a set of principles, concepts, and objectives to specific sets of circumstances. This means choices must be made. In your study of accounting to date, you've encountered many areas where choices are necessary. For example, management must choose whether to use accelerated or straight-line depreciation. Is FIFO, LIFO, or average cost most appropriate to measure inventories? Should we adopt a new accounting standard early or wait until it's mandatory? These are but a few of the accounting choices management makes.

You also probably recall that comparability is an enhancing qualitative characteristic of financial reporting. To achieve this attribute of information, accounting choices, once made, should be consistently followed from year to year. This doesn't mean, though, that methods can never be changed. Changing circumstances might make a new method more appropriate. A change in economic conditions, for instance, might prompt a company to change accounting methods. The most extensive voluntary accounting change ever—a switch by hundreds of companies from FIFO to LIFO in the mid-1970s, for example—was a result of heightened inflation. Changes within a specific industry, too, can lead a company to switch methods, often to adapt to new technology or to be consistent with others in the industry. And, of course, a change might be mandated when the FASB codifies a new accounting standard. For these reasons, it's not uncommon for a company to switch from one accounting method to another. This is called a **change in accounting principle**.

Although consistency and comparability are desirable, changing to a new method sometimes is appropriate.

Decision Makers' Perspective—Motivation for Accounting Choices

It would be nice to think that all accounting choices are made by management in the best interest of fair and consistent financial reporting. Unfortunately, other motives influence the choices among accounting methods and whether to change methods. It has been suggested that the effect of choices on management compensation, on existing debt agreements, and on union negotiations each can affect management's selection of accounting methods.² For instance, research has suggested that managers of companies with bonus plans are more likely to choose accounting methods that maximize their bonuses (often those that increase net income).³ Other research has indicated that the existence and nature of debt agreements

²R. L. Watts and J. L. Zimmerman, "Towards a Positive Theory of the Determination of Accounting Standards," *The Accounting Review*, January 1978, and "Positive Accounting Theory: A Ten Year Perspective," *The Accounting Review*, January 1990.

³For example, see P. M. Healy, "The Effect of Bonus Schemes on Accounting Decisions," *Journal of Accounting and Economics*, April 1985; and D. Dhaliwal, G. Salamon, and E. Smith, "The Effect of Owner versus Management Control on the Choice of Accounting Methods," *Journal of Accounting and Economics*, July 1992.

and other aspects of a firm's capital structure can influence accounting choices.⁴ Whether a company is forbidden from paying dividends if retained earnings fall below a certain level, for example, can affect the choice of accounting methods.

A financial analyst must be aware that different accounting methods used by different firms, and by the same firm in different years, complicate comparisons. Financial ratios, for example, will differ when different accounting methods are used, even when there are no differences in attributes being compared.

Investors and creditors also should be alert to instances in which companies change accounting methods. They must consider not only the effect on comparability but also possible hidden motivations for making the changes. Are managers trying to compensate for a downturn in actual performance with a switch to methods that artificially inflate reported earnings? Is the firm in danger of violating debt covenants or other contractual agreements regarding financial position? Are executive compensation plans tied to reported performance measures? Fortunately, the nature and effect of changes are reported in the financial statements. Although a justification for a change is provided by management, analysts should be wary of accepting the reported justification at face value without considering a possible hidden agenda.

Choices are not always those that tend to increase income. As you learned in Chapter 8, many companies use the LIFO inventory method because it reduces income and therefore reduces the amount of income taxes that must be paid currently. Also, some very large and visible companies might be reluctant to report high income that might render them vulnerable to union demands, government regulations, or higher taxes.⁵

Another reason managers sometimes choose accounting methods that don't necessarily increase earnings was mentioned earlier. Most managers tend to prefer to report earnings that follow a regular, smooth trend from year to year. The desire to "smooth" earnings means that any attempt to manipulate earnings by choosing accounting methods is not always in the direction of higher income. Instead, the choice might be to avoid irregular earnings, particularly those with wide variations from year to year, a pattern that might be interpreted by analysts as denoting a risky situation.

Obviously, any time managers make accounting choices for any of the reasons discussed here, when the motivation is an objective other than to provide useful information, earnings quality suffers. As mentioned frequently throughout this text, earnings quality refers to the ability of reported earnings (income) to predict a company's future earnings.

A notable example of alleged "cooking the books" involved **General Electric**. The company was often suspected of using "cookie jar accounting," the practice of using unrealistic estimates and strategic choices of accounting methods to smooth out its earnings. In 2009, GE appeared to get its hand caught in the cookie jar for going beyond acceptable limits. GE paid a \$50 million civil penalty to settle charges by the Securities and Exchange Commission accusing the company of violating U.S. securities laws four times between 2002 and 2003 to help it maintain a succession of earnings reports that beat Wall Street expectations each quarter from 1995 through 2004.

Let's turn our attention now to situations involving changes in methods and how we account for those changes. ●

The Retrospective Approach: Most Changes in Accounting Principle

● LO20-2

We report most voluntary changes in accounting principles retrospectively.⁶ This means reporting all previous periods' financial statements as if the new method had been used in all prior periods. An example is provided in Illustration 20-3.

⁴R. M. Bowen, E. W. Noreen, and J. M. Lacy, "Determinants of the Corporate Decision to Capitalize Interest," *Journal of Accounting and Economics*, August 1981.

⁵This political cost motive is suggested by R. L. Watts and J. L. Zimmerman, "Positive Accounting Theory: A Ten Year Perspective," *The Accounting Review*, January 1990, and M. Zmijewski and R. Hagerman, "An Income Strategy Approach to the Positive Theory of Accounting Standard Setting/Choice," *Journal of Accounting and Economics*, August 1981.

⁶FASB ASC 250-10-45: Accounting Changes and Error Corrections—Overall—Other Presentation Matters (previously "Accounting Changes and Error Corrections—A Replacement of APB Opinion No. 20 and FASB Statement No. 3," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 154* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2005)).

Air Parts Corporation used the LIFO inventory costing method. At the beginning of 2018, Air Parts decided to change to the FIFO method. Income components for 2018 and prior years were as follows:

(\$ in millions)	2018	2017	2016	Previous Years
Cost of goods sold (LIFO)	\$430	\$420	\$405	\$2,000
Cost of goods sold (FIFO)	370	365	360	1,700
Difference	<u>\$ 60</u>	<u>\$ 55</u>	<u>\$ 45</u>	<u>\$ 300</u>
Revenues	\$950	\$900	\$875	\$4,500
Operating expenses	230	210	205	1,000

Air Parts has paid dividends of \$40 million each year beginning in 2011. Its income tax rate is 40%. Retained earnings on January 1, 2016, was \$700 million; inventory was \$500 million.

Illustration 20-3

Change in Accounting Principle

LIFO usually produces higher cost of goods sold than does FIFO because more recently purchased goods (usually higher priced) are assumed sold first.

1. REVISE COMPARATIVE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS. For each year reported in the comparative statements, Air Parts makes those statements appear as if the newly adopted accounting method (FIFO) had been applied all along. As you learned in Chapter 1, comparability is one of the important qualitative characteristics of accounting information.

When accounting changes occur, the usefulness of the comparative financial statements is enhanced with retrospective application of those changes.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 1159

Income Statements

(\$ in millions)	2018	2017	2016
Revenues	\$950	\$900	\$875
Cost of goods sold (FIFO)	(370)	(365)	(360)
Operating expenses	(230)	(210)	(205)
Income before tax	350	325	310
Income tax expense (40%)	(140)	(130)	(124)
Net income	<u>\$210</u>	<u>\$195</u>	<u>\$186</u>

The company recasts the comparative statements to appear as if the accounting method adopted in 2018 (FIFO) had been used in 2017 and 2016 as well.

Earnings per share each year, of course, also will be based on the revised net income numbers.

Balance Sheets

Inventory. In its comparative balance sheets, Air Parts will report 2018 **inventory** by its newly adopted method, FIFO, and also will revise the amounts it reported last year for its 2017 and 2016 inventory. Each year, inventory will be higher than it would have been by LIFO. Here's why:

Since the cost of goods *available for sale* each period is the sum of the cost of goods *sold* and the cost of goods *unsold* (inventory), a difference in cost of goods sold resulting from having used LIFO rather than FIFO means there also is an opposite difference in inventory. Because cost of goods sold by the FIFO method is *less* than by LIFO, inventory by FIFO is *greater* than by LIFO. The amounts of the differences and also the cumulative differences over the years are calculated in Illustration 20-3A.

FIFO usually produces lower cost of goods sold and thus higher inventory than does LIFO.

Retained earnings. Similarly, Air Parts will report **retained earnings** by FIFO each year as well. Retained earnings is different because the two inventory methods affect income differently. Because cost of goods sold by FIFO is *less* than by LIFO, income and therefore retained earnings by FIFO are *greater* than by LIFO.

Comparative balance sheets, then, will report retained earnings for 2018, 2017, and 2016 at amounts \$276, \$240, and \$207 million higher than would have been reported if the switch from LIFO had not occurred. These are the cumulative net income differences shown in Illustration 20-3A.

When costs are rising, FIFO produces lower cost of goods sold than does LIFO and thus higher net income and retained earnings.

Retained earnings is revised each year to reflect FIFO.

Illustration 20-3A

Effects of Switch to FIFO

By FIFO, cost of goods sold is lower.

The cumulative income effect increases each year by the annual after-tax difference in COGS.

Inventory, pretax income, income taxes, net income, and retained earnings all are higher.

(\$ in millions)	Years Ending Dec. 31			Previous Years
	2018	2017	2016	
Cost of goods sold (LIFO)	\$430	\$420	\$405	\$2,000
Cost of goods sold (FIFO)	370	365	360	1,700
Differences	\$ 60	\$ 55	\$ 45	\$ 300
Cumulative differences:				
Cost of goods sold	\$460	\$400	\$345	\$ 300
Income taxes (40%)	184	160	138	120
Net income and retained earnings	\$276	\$240	\$207	\$ 180

Comparative balance sheets, then, will report 2016 inventory **\$345 million** higher than it was reported in last year's statements. Likewise, 2017 inventory will be increased by **\$400 million**. Inventory for 2018, being reported for the first time, is **\$460 million** higher than it would have been if the switch from LIFO had not occurred.

Because it's the earliest year reported, 2016's beginning retained earnings is increased by the **\$180 million** cumulative income effect of the difference in inventory methods that occurred before 2016.

Statements of shareholders' equity. Recall that a statement of shareholders' equity reports changes that occur in each shareholders' equity account starting with the beginning balances in the earliest year reported.

So, if retained earnings is one of the accounts whose balance requires adjustment due to a change in accounting principle (and it usually is), we must adjust the beginning balance of retained earnings for the earliest period reported in the comparative statements of shareholders' equity. The amount of the revision is the cumulative effect of the change on years prior to that date. Air Parts will revise its 2016 beginning retained earnings since that's the earliest year in its comparative statements. That balance had been reported in prior statements as \$700 million. If FIFO had been used for inventory rather than LIFO, that amount would have been higher by **\$180 million**, as calculated in Illustration 20-3A. The disclosure note pertaining to the inventory change should point out the amount of the adjustment. The January 1, 2016, retained earnings balance reported in the comparative statements of shareholders' equity in Illustration 20-3B has been adjusted from \$700 million to **\$880 million**.

Illustration 20-3B

Comparative Statements of Shareholders' Equity

A disclosure note should indicate that the beginning retained earnings balance has been increased by **\$180 million**, from **\$700 million** to **\$880 million**.

(\$ in millions)	Common Stock	Additional Paid-In Capital	Retained Earnings	Total Shareholders' Equity
Jan. 1, 2016			\$ 880	
Net income (revised to FIFO)			186	
Dividends			(40)	
Dec. 31, 2016			<u>\$1,026</u>	
Net income (revised to FIFO)			195	
Dividends			(40)	
Dec. 31, 2017			<u>\$1,181</u>	
Net income (using FIFO)			210	
Dividends			(40)	
Dec. 31, 2018			<u><u>\$1,351</u></u>	

2. ADJUST ACCOUNTS FOR THE CHANGE. Besides reporting revised amounts in the comparative financial statements, Air Parts must also adjust the book balances of affected accounts. It does so by creating a journal entry to change those balances from their current amounts (from using LIFO) to what those balances would have been using the newly adopted method (FIFO). As discussed in the previous section, differences in cost of goods sold and income are reflected in retained earnings, as are the income tax effects of changes in income. So, the journal entry updates inventory, retained earnings, and the income tax liability for revisions resulting from differences in the LIFO and FIFO methods prior to the

switch, pre-2018. Repeating a portion of the calculation we made in Illustration 20–3A, we determine the difference in cost of goods sold and therefore in inventory.

(\$ in millions)	2017	2016	Cumulative Difference pre-2016	Cumulative Difference pre-2018
Cost of goods sold (LIFO).....	\$420	\$405	\$1,000	
Cost of goods sold (FIFO).....	365	360	700	
Difference	\$ 55	\$ 45	\$ 300	\$400

Cost of goods sold would have been **\$400 million** less if FIFO rather than LIFO had been used in years before the change.

The **\$400 million** cumulative difference in cost of goods sold also is the difference between the balance in inventory and what that balance would have been if the FIFO method, rather than LIFO, had been used before 2018. Inventory must be increased by that amount. Retained earnings must be increased also, but by only 60% of that amount because income taxes would have been higher by 40% of the change in pretax income.

Journal entry to record the change in principle

January 1, 2018

Inventory (additional inventory if FIFO had been used).....	400	
Retained earnings (additional net income if FIFO had been used).....		240
Income tax payable (\$400 × 40%)		160

Inventory would have been **\$400 million** more and cumulative prior earnings **\$240 million** more if FIFO rather than LIFO had been used.

Notice that the income tax effect is reflected in the income tax payable account. The reason is that, unlike for other accounting method changes, the Internal Revenue Code requires that the inventory costing method used for tax purposes must be the same as that used for financial reporting. For that reason, the tax code allows a retrospective change in an inventory method, but then requires that taxes saved previously (\$160 million in this case) from having used another inventory method must now be repaid. However, taxpayers are given up to six years to pay the tax due. As a result, this liability has both a current portion (payable within one year) and a noncurrent portion (payable after one year), but is not a deferred tax liability.

Additional Consideration

What if the tax law did not require a recapture of the tax difference? Then there would be a credit to a deferred tax liability. That's because retrospectively increasing accounting income, but not taxable income, creates a temporary difference between the two that will reverse over time as the unsold inventory becomes cost of goods sold. Recall from Chapter 16 that in the meantime, there is a temporary difference, reflected in the deferred tax liability.

If we were switching from FIFO to, say, the average method, we would record a deferred tax asset instead. For financial reporting purposes, but not for tax, we would be retrospectively decreasing accounting income, but not taxable income. This creates a temporary difference between the two that will reverse over time as the unsold inventory becomes cost of goods sold. When that happens, taxable income will be less than accounting income. When taxable income will be less than accounting income as a temporary difference reverses, we have a "future deductible amount" and record a deferred tax asset.

3. DISCLOSURE NOTES. To achieve consistency and comparability, accounting choices once made should be consistently followed from year to year. Any change, then, requires that the new method be justified as clearly more appropriate. In the first set of financial statements after the change, a disclosure note is needed to provide that justification. The note also should point out that comparative information has been revised, or that retrospective revision has not been made because it is impracticable, and report any per share amounts affected for the current period and all prior periods presented. Disclosure of a recent change

Note disclosure explains why the change was needed as well as its effects on items not reported on the face of the primary statements.

by **Abercrombie & Fitch** in a recent annual report provides us the example shown in Illustration 20–4.

Illustration 20–4

Disclosure of a Change
in Inventory Method—
Abercrombie & Fitch

Real World Financials

4. CHANGE IN ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLE

The Company elected to change its method of accounting for inventory from the lower of cost or market utilizing the retail method to the weighted average cost method. . . . In accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, all periods have been retroactively adjusted to reflect the period-specific effects of the change to the weighted average cost method. The Company believes that accounting under the weighted average cost method is preferable as it better aligns with the Company's focus on realized selling margin and improves the comparability of the Company's financial results with those of its competitors. Additionally, it will improve the matching of cost of goods sold with the related net sales and reflect the acquisition cost of inventory outstanding at each balance sheet date. The cumulative adjustment . . . was an increase in its inventory of \$73.6 million and an increase in retained earnings of \$47.3 million.

The Modified Retrospective Approach

When a new FASB accounting standard update mandates a change in accounting principle, the Board typically specifies the way companies should implement the change and often allows companies to choose among multiple ways of accounting for the change. One approach usually allowed is the retrospective approach we discussed for voluntary changes in accounting principle, by which the new standard is applied retrospectively to all periods presented in the financial statements. And, as we discuss in the next section, sometimes the prospective approach is allowed or mandated for a new standard. A third approach the FASB sometimes allows is a *modified retrospective approach*. By this approach, we apply the new standard only to the adoption period (that is, the current period) and then adjust the balance of retained earnings at the beginning of the adoption period to capture the cumulative effects of prior periods without actually adjusting the numbers in the prior periods reported.

The Prospective Approach

- LO20–3 Although we usually report voluntary changes in accounting principles retrospectively, it's not always practicable or appropriate to do so.

THE PROSPECTIVE APPROACH: WHEN RETROSPECTIVE APPLICATION IS IMPRACTICABLE.

For some changes in principle, insufficient information is available for retrospective application to be practicable. Revising balances in prior years means knowing what those balances should be. But suppose we're switching from the FIFO method of inventory costing to the LIFO method. Recall from your study of inventory costing methods that LIFO inventory consists of "layers" added in prior years at costs existing in those years. If another method has been used, though, the company likely hasn't kept track of those costs. So, accounting records of prior years usually are inadequate to report the change retrospectively. In that case, a company changing *to* LIFO usually reports the change prospectively, and the beginning inventory in the year the LIFO method is adopted becomes the base year inventory for all future LIFO calculations. A disclosure note should indicate reasons why retrospective application was impracticable. Prospective changes usually are accounted for as of the beginning of the year of change.

When **Books A Million, Inc.**, adopted the LIFO cost flow assumption for valuing its inventories, the change was reported in a disclosure note as shown in Illustration 20–5.

Sometimes a lack of information makes it impracticable to report a change retrospectively so the new method is simply applied prospectively.

If it's impracticable to adjust each year reported, the change is applied retrospectively as of the earliest year practicable.

When it is impracticable to determine some period-specific effects. A company may have some, but not all, the information it needs to account for a change retrospectively. For instance, let's say a company changes to the LIFO inventory method effective as of the beginning of 2018. It has information that would allow it to revise all assets and liabilities on the basis of the newly adopted method for 2017 in its comparative

Inventories (in part)

... the Company changed from the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method of accounting for inventories to the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method. Management believes this change was preferable in that it achieves a more appropriate matching of revenues and expenses. The impact of this accounting change was to increase “Costs of Products Sold” in the consolidated statements of operations by \$0.7 million for the fiscal year. ... The cumulative effect of a change in accounting principle from the FIFO method to LIFO method is not determinable. Accordingly, such change has been accounted for prospectively.

Illustration 20-5

Disclosure of a Change to LIFO—Books A Million, Inc.
Real World Financials

statements, but not for 2016. In that case, the company should report 2017 statement amounts (revised) and 2018 statement amounts (reported without restatement for the first time) based on LIFO, but not revise 2016 numbers. Then, account balances should be retrospectively adjusted at the beginning of 2017 since that’s the earliest date it’s practicable to do so.

When it is impracticable to determine the cumulative effect of prior years. Another possibility is that the company doesn’t have the information necessary to retrospectively adjust retained earnings, but does have information that would allow it to revise all assets and liabilities for one or more specific years. Let’s say the records of inventory purchases and sales are not available for some previous years, which would have allowed it to determine the cumulative effect of applying this change to LIFO retrospectively. However, it does have all of the information necessary to apply the LIFO method on a prospective basis beginning in, say, 2016. In that case, the company should report numbers for years beginning in 2016 as if it had carried forward the 2015 ending balance in inventory (measured on the previous inventory costing basis) and then had begun applying LIFO as of January 1, 2016. Of course there would be no adjustment to retained earnings for the cumulative income effect of not using LIFO prior to that.

If full retrospective application isn’t possible, the new method is applied prospectively beginning in the earliest year practicable.

THE PROSPECTIVE APPROACH: WHEN MANDATED BY AUTHORITATIVE ACCOUNTING LITERATURE.

Another exception to retrospective application of voluntary changes in accounting principle is when authoritative literature requires prospective application for specific changes in accounting methods. For instance, for a change from the equity method to another method of accounting for long-term investments, GAAP requires the prospective application of the new method.⁷ Recall from Chapter 12 that when an investor’s level of influence changes, it may be necessary to change from the equity method to another method. This could happen, for instance, if a sale of shares causes the investor’s ownership interest to fall from, say, 25% to 15%, resulting in the equity method no longer being appropriate. When this situation happens, no adjustment is made to the remaining book value, sometimes called carrying value or carrying amount of the investment. Instead, the equity method is simply discontinued and the new method applied from then on. The balance in the investment account when the equity method is discontinued would serve as the new “cost” basis for writing the investment up or down to fair value on the next set of financial statements.

If a new accounting standards update specifically requires prospective accounting, that requirement is followed.

International Financial Reporting Standards

In previous chapters we discussed the possibility that U.S. companies will be required to or may choose to switch from U.S. GAAP to international financial reporting standards. When a company moves for the first time from U.S. GAAP to IFRS it should follow the requirements of *IFRS No. 1: “First-time Adoption of International Financial Reporting Standards.”*

(continued)



● LO20-7

⁷FASB ACS 323-10-35-36: Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures—Overall—Subsequent Measurement—Decrease in Level of Ownership or Degree of Influence (previously “The Equity Method of Accounting for Investments in Common Stock,” *Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 18* (New York: AICPA, 1971)).

(concluded)

The basic requirement is full retrospective application of IFRS for the company's first IFRS financial statements. A company's first IFRS financial statements must include at least three balance sheets and two of each of the other financial statements. For instance, if the company's first IFRS reporting period is for the year ended December 31, 2020, the first balance sheet will be the opening balance sheet of 2019, which is the ending balance sheet of 2018. The other two balance sheets and each of the other statements—income statement, statement of comprehensive income, statement of cash flows, statements of changes in equity—are for the years ended December 31, 2019, and December 31, 2020. The date of transition to IFRS is the date of the opening balance sheet, January 1, 2019, in this situation.

First-time application of IFRS entails:

- Recording some assets and liabilities not permitted under U.S. GAAP, such as some provisions (contingent liabilities) permitted under IFRS but not U.S. GAAP.
- *Not* recording (derecognizing) some assets and liabilities, for example, an intangible asset for research expenditures, permitted under U.S. GAAP but not IFRS.
- Reclassifying items that are classified differently under the two sets of standards, for instance, reclassifying some preferred shares from shareholder equity classification under U.S. GAAP to liability classification under IFRS.
- Providing disclosures (in notes to the financial statements) required under IFRS but not U.S. GAAP.
- Providing extensive disclosures to explain how the transition to IFRS affected the company's financial position, financial performance, and cash flows. These disclosures include (a) providing explanations of material adjustments to the balance sheet, income statement, and cash flow statement; and (b) reconciliations of equity and total comprehensive income reported under previous GAAP to equity under IFRS.

THE PROSPECTIVE APPROACH: CHANGING DEPRECIATION, AMORTIZATION, AND DEPLETION METHODS.

A change in depreciation methods is considered to be a change in accounting estimate that is achieved by a change in accounting principle. As a result, we account for such a change prospectively—precisely the way we account for changes in estimates. We discuss that approach in the next section.

Change in Accounting Estimate

LO20-4

You've encountered many instances during your study of accounting in which it's necessary to make estimates of uncertain future events. Depreciation, for example, entails estimates not only of the useful lives of depreciable assets, but their anticipated residual values as well. Anticipating uncollectible accounts receivable, predicting warranty expenses, amortizing intangible assets, and making actuarial assumptions for pension benefits are but a few of the accounting tasks that require estimates.

Accordingly, estimates are an inherent aspect of accounting. Unfortunately, though, estimates routinely turn out to be wrong. No matter how carefully known facts are considered and forecasts are prepared, new information and experience frequently force the revision of estimates. Of course, if the original estimate was based on erroneous information or calculations or was not made in good faith, the revision of that estimate constitutes the correction of an error.

Changes in accounting estimates are accounted for prospectively. When a company revises a previous estimate, prior financial statements are *not* revised. Instead, the company merely incorporates the new estimate in any related accounting determinations from then on. So, it usually will affect some aspects of both the balance sheet and the income statement in the current period and future periods. A disclosure note should describe the effect of a change in estimate on income from continuing operations, net income, and related per share amounts for the current period.

When **Owens-Corning Fiberglass** revised estimates of the useful lives of some of its depreciable assets, the change was disclosed in its annual report as shown in Illustration 20-6.

Revisions are viewed as a natural consequence of making estimates.

A change in estimate is reflected in the financial statements of the current period and future periods.

Note 6: Depreciation of Plant and Equipment (in part)

... the Company completed a review of its fixed asset lives. The Company determined that as a result of actions taken to increase its preventative maintenance and programs initiated with its equipment suppliers to increase the quality of their products, actual lives for certain asset categories were generally longer than the useful lives for depreciation purposes. Therefore, the Company extended the estimated useful lives of certain categories of plant and equipment, effective. ... The effect of this change in estimate reduced depreciation expense for the year ended ... , by \$14 million and increased income before cumulative effect of accounting change by \$8 million (\$.19 per share).

Illustration 20-6

Change in Estimate—
Owens-Corning Fiberglass
Corporation

Real World Financials

An example of another change in estimate is provided in Illustration 20-7.

Universal Semiconductors estimates warranty expense as 2% of sales. After a review during 2018, Universal determined that 3% of sales is a more realistic estimate of its payment experience. Sales in 2018 are \$300 million. The effective income tax rate is 40%.

No account balances are adjusted. The cumulative effect of the estimate change is not reported in current income. Rather, in 2018 and later years, the adjusting entry to record warranty expense simply will reflect the new percentage. In 2018, the entry would be:

	(\$ in millions)
Warranty expense (3% × \$300 million).....	9
Warranty liability	9

Illustration 20-7

Change in Accounting
Estimate

The after-tax effect of the change in estimate is **\$1.8 million** [\$300 million × (3% – 2%) = \$3 million, less 40% of \$3 million]. Assuming 100 million outstanding shares of common stock, the effect is described in a disclosure note to the financial statements as follows:

Note A: Warranties

In 2018, the company revised the percentage used to estimate warranty expense. The change provides a better indication of cost experience. The effect of the change was to decrease 2018 net income by **\$1.8 million**, or \$0.018 per share.

Changing Depreciation, Amortization, and Depletion Methods

When a company acquires an asset that will provide benefits for several years, it allocates the cost of the asset over the asset's useful life. If the asset is a building, equipment, or other tangible asset, the allocation process is called *depreciation*. It's referred to as *amortization* if an intangible asset or *depletion* if a natural resource. In each case, estimates are essential to the allocation process. How long will benefits accrue? What will be the value of the asset when its use is discontinued? Will the benefits be realized evenly over the asset's life or will they be higher in some years than in others?

The choice of depreciation method and application reflects these estimates. Likewise, when a company changes the way it depreciates an asset in midstream, the change would be made to reflect a change in (a) estimated future benefits from the asset, (b) the pattern of receiving those benefits, or (c) the company's knowledge about those benefits. For instance, suppose Universal Semiconductors originally chose an accelerated depreciation method because it expected greater benefits in the earlier years of an asset's life. Then, two years later, when it became apparent that remaining benefits would be realized approximately evenly over the remaining useful life, Universal Semiconductor switched to straight-line depreciation. Even though the company is changing its depreciation method, it is doing so to reflect changes in its estimates of future benefits. As a result, we report a change in depreciation method as a change in estimate, rather than as a change in accounting principle.

For this reason, a company reports a change in depreciation method (say to straight-line) prospectively; previous financial statements are not revised. Instead, the company simply

**FINANCIAL
Reporting Case**

Q2, p. 1159

An exception to retrospective application of a change in accounting principle is a change in the method of depreciation (or amortization or depletion).

Companies report a change in depreciation prospectively.

employs the straight-line method from then on. The undepreciated cost remaining at the time of the change would be depreciated straight-line over the remaining useful life. Illustration 20–8 provides an example.

Illustration 20–8

Change in Depreciation Methods

The \$24 million depreciable cost not yet depreciated is spread over the asset's remaining three years.

Universal Semiconductors switched from the SYD depreciation method to straight-line depreciation in 2018. The change affects its precision equipment purchased at the beginning of 2016 at a cost of \$63 million. The machinery has an expected useful life of five years and an estimated residual value of \$3 million.

The depreciation prior to the change is as follows:

Sum-of-the-Years'-Digits Depreciation	(\$ in millions)
2016 depreciation	\$20 ($\$60 \times \frac{5}{15}$)
2017 depreciation	16 ($\$60 \times \frac{4}{15}$)
Accumulated depreciation	<u>\$36</u>

A change in depreciation method is considered a change in accounting estimate resulting from a change in accounting principle. So, Universal Semiconductors reports the change prospectively; previous financial statements are not revised. Instead, the company simply employs the straight-line method from 2018 on. The undepreciated cost remaining at the time of the change is depreciated straight-line over the remaining useful life.

Calculation of Straight-Line Depreciation	(\$ in millions)
Asset's cost	\$63
Accumulated depreciation to date (calculated above)	(36)
Undepreciated cost, Jan. 1, 2018	\$27
Estimated residual value	(3)
To be depreciated over remaining 3 years	\$24
	3 years
Annual straight-line depreciation 2018–2020	<u>\$ 8</u>

Adjusting entry (2018, 2019, and 2020 depreciation)	(\$ in millions)
Depreciation expense (calculated above)	8
Accumulated depreciation	8

A company must justify any change in principle as preferable to the previous method.

Is a change in depreciation method a change in accounting principle, or is it a change in estimate? As we've seen, it's both. Even though it's considered to reflect a change in estimate and is accounted for as such, a change to a new depreciation method requires the company to justify the new method as being preferable to the previous method, just as for any other change in principle. A disclosure note should justify that the change is preferable and describe the effect of a change on any financial statement line items and per share amounts affected for all periods reported.

In practice, the situation arises infrequently. Most companies changing depreciation methods do not apply the change to existing assets, but instead to assets placed in service after that date. In those cases, of course, the new method is simply applied prospectively (see Illustration 20–9).

Illustration 20–9

Change in Depreciation Method for Newly Acquired Assets—Rohm and Haas Company

Real World Financials

When it's not possible to distinguish between a change in principle and a change in estimate, the change should be treated as a change in estimate.

Note 12: Land, Buildings, and Equipment, Net (in part)

... the company changed its method of depreciation for newly acquired buildings and equipment to the straight-line method. The change had no cumulative effect on prior years' earnings but did increase [current year] net earnings by \$9 million, or \$0.14 per share ...

Sometimes, it's not easy to distinguish between a change in principle and a change in estimate. For example, if a company begins to capitalize rather than expense the cost of tools because their benefits beyond one year become apparent, the change could be construed as either a change in principle or a change in the estimated life of the asset. When the distinction

is not possible, the change should be treated as a change in estimate. This treatment also is appropriate when both a change in principle and a change in estimate occur simultaneously.

Change in Reporting Entity

A reporting entity can be a single company, or it can be a group of companies that reports a single set of financial statements. For example, the consolidated financial statements of **PepsiCo Inc.** report the financial position and results of operations not only for the parent company, but also for its subsidiaries which include **Frito-Lay** and **Gatorade**. A **change in reporting entity** occurs as a result of (1) presenting consolidated financial statements in place of statements of individual companies or (2) changing specific companies that constitute the group for which consolidated or combined statements are prepared.⁸

Some changes in reporting entity are a result of changes in accounting rules. For example, companies like **Ford**, **General Motors**, and **General Electric** must consolidate their manufacturing operations with their *financial* subsidiaries, creating a new entity that includes them both.⁹ For those changes in entity, the prior-period financial statements that are presented for comparative purposes must be restated to appear as if the new entity existed in those periods.

However, the more frequent change in entity occurs when one company acquires another one. In those circumstances, the financial statements of the acquirer include the acquiree as of the date of acquisition, and the acquirer's prior-period financial statements that are presented for comparative purposes are not restated. This makes it difficult to make year-to-year comparisons for a company that frequently acquires other companies. Acquiring companies are required to provide a footnote that presents key financial statement information as if the acquisition had occurred before the beginning of the previous year. At a minimum, the supplemental pro forma information should display revenue, income from continuing operations, net income, and earnings per share.

A change in reporting entity is reported by recasting all previous periods' financial statements as if the new reporting entity existed in those periods.¹⁰ In the first set of financial statements after the change, a disclosure note should describe the nature of the change and the reason it occurred. Also, the effect of the change on net income, income from continuing operations, and related per share amounts should be indicated for all periods presented. These disclosures aren't necessary in subsequent financial statements. **Hartford Life Insurance Company**, a financial services company, changed the composition of its reporting entity and described it this way (see Illustration 20–10):

1. Basis of Presentation and Accounting Policies (in part)

Hartford Life changed its reporting entity structure to contribute certain wholly owned subsidiaries, including Hartford Life's European insurance operations, several broker dealer entities and investment advisory and service entities from Hartford Life and Accident to the Company. The contribution of subsidiaries was effected to more closely align servicing entities with the writing company issuing the business they service as well as to more efficiently deploy capital across the organization. The change in reporting entity was retrospectively applied to the financial statements of the Company for all periods presented. The contributed subsidiaries resulted in an increase in stockholder's equity of approximately \$1.3 billion.

● LO20–5

A change in reporting entity requires that financial statements of prior periods be retrospectively revised to report the financial information for the new reporting entity in all periods.

Illustration 20–10

Change in Reporting Entity—Hartford Life Insurance

Real World Financials

Errors

The correction of an error is not actually an accounting change but is accounted for similarly. In fact, it's accounted for retrospectively, like a change in reporting entity and like most changes in accounting principle.

⁸FASB ASC 810: Consolidation (previously "Consolidation of All Majority-Owned Subsidiaries," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 94* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1987)).

⁹The issuance of *SFAS No. 94*, "Consolidation of All Majority-Owned Subsidiaries," [FASB ASC 810: Consolidation and 840: Leases] resulted in hundreds of entities consolidating previously unconsolidated finance subsidiaries.

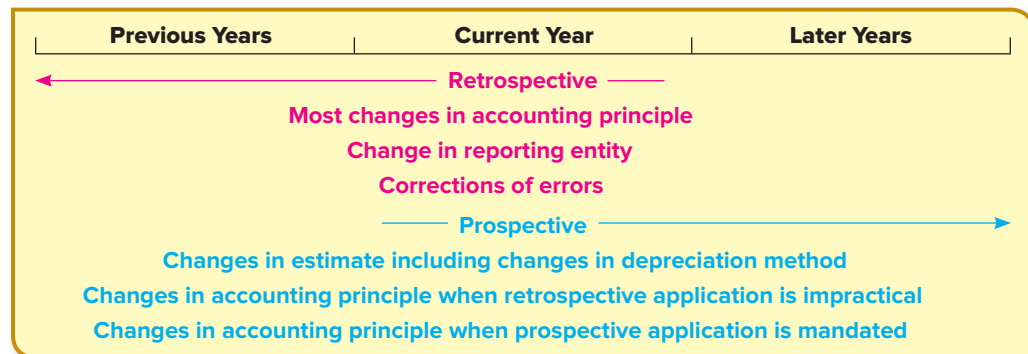
¹⁰Any prior periods' statements are recast when those statements are presented again for comparative purposes.

Previous years' financial statements are retrospectively restated to reflect the correction of an error.

More specifically, previous years' financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the error are retrospectively restated to reflect the correction. And, of course, any account balances that are incorrect as a result of the error are corrected by a journal entry. If retained earnings is one of the incorrect accounts, the correction is reported as a prior period adjustment to the beginning balance in a statement of shareholders' equity (or statement of retained earnings if that's presented instead).¹¹ And, as for accounting changes, a disclosure note is needed to describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on operations. We discuss the correction of errors in more detail in Part B of this chapter. But first, let's compare the two approaches for reporting accounting changes and error corrections (see Illustration 20–11).

Illustration 20–11

Approaches to Reporting Accounting Changes and Error Corrections



A comparison of accounting treatments is provided by Illustration 20–12.

Illustration 20–12 Accounting Changes and Errors: A Summary

	Change in Accounting Principle		Change in Estimate (including depreciation changes)	Change in Reporting Entity	Error
	Most Changes*	Exceptions†			
Method of accounting:	Retrospective	Prospective	Prospective	Retrospective	Retrospective
• Restate prior years' statements?	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes
• Cumulative effect on prior years' income reported:	As adjustment to retained earnings of earliest year reported‡	Not reported	Not reported	As adjustment to retained earnings** of earliest year reported‡	As adjustment to retained earnings of earliest year reported‡
• Journal entry:	To adjust affected balances to new method	None, but subsequent accounting is affected by the change	None, but subsequent accounting is affected by the new estimate	Involves consolidated financial statements discussed in other courses	To correct any balances that are incorrect as a result of the error
• Disclosure note?	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

*Changes in depreciation, amortization, and depletion methods are considered changes in estimates.
†When retrospective application is impracticable, such as most changes to LIFO and certain mandated changes.
‡In the statement of shareholders' equity or statement of retained earnings.
**Except when one company acquires another one. Then the acquirer's prior-period financial statements that are presented for comparative purposes are not restated.

¹¹FASB ASC 250–10–45: Accounting Changes and Error Corrections—Overall—Other Presentation Matters (previously “Prior Period Adjustments,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 16* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1977)).

Concept Review Exercise

Modern Business Machines recently conducted an extensive review of its accounting and reporting policies. The following accounting changes are an outgrowth of that review:

ACCOUNTING CHANGES

1. MBM has a patent on a copier design. The patent has been amortized on a straight-line basis since it was acquired at a cost of \$400,000 in 2015. During 2018, MBM decided that the benefits from the patent would be experienced over a total of 13 years rather than the 20-year legal life now being used to amortize its cost.
2. At the beginning of 2018, MBM changed its method of valuing inventory from the FIFO cost method to the average cost method. At December 31, 2017 and 2016, MBM's inventories were \$560 and \$540 million, respectively, on a FIFO cost basis but would have totaled \$500 and \$490 million, respectively, if determined on an average cost basis. MBM's income tax rate is 40%.

Required:

Prepare all journal entries needed in 2018 related to each change. Also, briefly describe any other measures MBM would take in connection with reporting the changes.

Solution:

1. Change in estimate

	(\$ in millions)
Patent amortization expense (determined below).....	34
Patent.....	34

Calculation of Annual Amortization after the Estimate Change

	\$400,000	Cost
\$20,000		Old annual amortization (\$400,000 ÷ 20 years)
× 3 years	(60,000)	Amortization to date (2015, 2016, 2017)
	<u>340,000</u>	Unamortized cost
	÷ 10	Estimated remaining life (13 years – 3 years)
	<u>\$ 34,000</u>	New annual amortization

A disclosure note should describe the effect of a change in estimate on income from continuing operations, net income, and related per share amounts for the current period.

2. Change in principle

MBM creates a journal entry to bring up to date all account balances affected.

	(\$ in millions)
Retained earnings (the difference in net income before 2018).....	36
Deferred tax asset (\$60 million × 40%).....	24
Inventory (\$560 million – 500 million).....	60

For financial reporting purposes, but not for tax, MBM is retrospectively *decreasing* accounting income, but not taxable income. This creates a temporary difference between the two that will reverse over time as the unsold inventory becomes cost of goods sold. When that happens, taxable income will be less than accounting income. When taxable income will be less than accounting income as a temporary difference reverses, we have a “future deductible amount” and record a deferred tax asset.

Also, MBM will revise all previous periods' financial statements (in this case 2017) as if the new method (average cost) were used in those periods. In other words, for each year in the comparative statements reported, the balance of each account affected will be revised to appear as if the average method had been applied all along.

Since retained earnings is one of the accounts whose balance requires adjustment (and it usually is), MBM makes an adjustment to the beginning balance of retained earnings for the

Prior years' financial statements are revised to reflect the use of the new accounting method.

Since it's the earliest year reported, 2017's beginning retained earnings is adjusted for the portion of the cumulative income effect of the change attributable to prior years.

earliest period (2017) reported in the comparative statements of shareholders' equity. Also, in the first set of financial statements after the change, a *disclosure note* describes the nature of the change, justifies management's decision to make the change, and indicates its effect on each item affected in the financial statements.



• LO20-7

International Financial Reporting Standards

The FASB and the International Accounting Standards Board have a continuing commitment to converge their accounting standards. As part of their short-term convergence effort, they identified how companies report accounting changes as an area in which the FASB could improve its guidance by converging it with the provisions of *IAS No. 8*, "Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors."¹² The product of this effort was new FASB guidance issued in 2005.¹³ Few differences remain, so it's unlikely we will see much change in this area.

PART B

Correction of Accounting Errors

Nobody's perfect. People make mistakes, even accountants. When errors are discovered, they should be corrected.¹⁴ Illustration 20-13 describes the steps to be taken to correct an error, if the effect of the error is material.¹⁵

• LO20-6

Illustration 20-13

Steps to Correct an Error

The retrospective approach is used for the correction of errors.

The correction of an error is treated as a prior period adjustment.

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Step 1 | A journal entry is made to correct any account balances that are incorrect as a result of the error. |
| Step 2 | Previous years' financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the error are retrospectively restated to reflect the correction (for all years reported for comparative purposes). |
| Step 3 | If retained earnings is one of the accounts incorrect as a result of the error, the correction is reported as a prior period adjustment to the beginning balance in a statement of shareholders' equity (or statement of retained earnings if that's presented instead). |
| Step 4 | A disclosure note should describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on net income. |

Prior Period Adjustments

Before we see these steps applied to the **correction of an error**, one of the steps requires elaboration. As discussed in Chapter 4, the correction of errors is the situation that creates prior period adjustments. A **prior period adjustment** refers to an addition to or reduction in the beginning retained earnings balance in a statement of shareholders' equity (or statement of retained earnings if that's presented instead).

In an earlier chapter we saw that a statement of shareholders' equity is the most commonly used way to report the events that cause components of shareholders' equity to

¹²"Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors," *International Accounting Standard No. 8* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2011.

¹³FASB ASC 250: Accounting Changes and Error Corrections (previously "Accounting Changes and Error Corrections—A Replacement of APB Opinion No. 20 and FASB Statement No. 3," *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 154* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2005)).

¹⁴Interestingly, it appears that not all accounting errors are unintentional. Research has shown that firms with errors that overstate income are more likely "to have diffuse ownership, lower growth in earnings and fewer income-increasing GAAP alternatives available, and are less likely to have audit committees," suggesting that "overstatement errors are the result of managers responding to economic incentives." M. L. DeFond and J. Jiambalvo, "Incidence and Circumstances of Accounting Errors," *The Accounting Review*, July 1991.

¹⁵In practice, the vast majority of errors are not material with respect to their effect on the financial statements and are, therefore, simply corrected in the year discovered (step 1 only).

change during a particular reporting period. Some companies, though, choose to report the changes that occur in the balance of retained earnings separately in a statement of retained earnings. When it's discovered that the ending balance of retained earnings in the period prior to the discovery of an error was incorrect as a result of that error, the balance must be corrected when it appears as the beginning balance the following year. However, simply reporting a corrected amount might cause misunderstanding for someone familiar with the previously reported amount. Explicitly reporting a prior period adjustment on the statement itself avoids this confusion. Assume, for example, the following comparative statements of retained earnings:

STATEMENTS OF RETAINED EARNINGS
For the Years Ended December 31, 2017 and 2016

	2017	2016
Balance at beginning of year	\$600,000	\$450,000
Net income	400,000	350,000
Less: Dividends	(200,000)	(200,000)
Balance at end of year	<u>\$800,000</u>	<u>\$600,000</u>

A statement of retained earnings reports the events that cause changes in retained earnings.

Now suppose that in 2018 it's discovered that an error in 2016 caused that year's net income to be overstated by **\$20,000** (it should have been \$330,000). This means retained earnings in both prior years were overstated. Because comparative financial statements are presented and the current year is the year in which the error was discovered, the prior year would include a prior period adjustment as shown below:

STATEMENTS OF RETAINED EARNINGS
For the Years Ended December 31, 2018 and 2017

	2018	2017
Balance at beginning of year	\$ 780,000	\$600,000
Prior period adjustment		(20,000)
Corrected balance		<u>\$580,000</u>
Net Income	500,000	400,000
Less: Dividends	(200,000)	(200,000)
Balance at end of year	<u>\$1,080,000</u>	<u>\$780,000</u>

The incorrect balance as previously reported is corrected by the prior period adjustment.

At least two years' (as in our example) and often three years' statements are reported in comparative financial statements. The prior period adjustment is applied to beginning retained earnings for the year following the error, or for the earliest year being reported in the comparative financial statements when the error occurs prior to the earliest year presented.¹⁶

Error Correction Illustrated

Now, let's discuss these procedures to correct errors in the context of a variety of the most common types of errors. Since there are literally thousands of possibilities, it's not practical to describe every error in every stage of its discovery. However, by applying the process to the situations described below, you should become sufficiently comfortable with the *process* that you could apply it to whatever situation you might encounter.

As you study these examples, be sure to notice that it's significantly more complicated to deal with an error if (a) it affected net income in the reporting period in which it occurred and (b) it is not discovered until a later period.

Error Discovered in the Same Reporting Period That It Occurred

If an accounting error is made and discovered in the same accounting period, the original erroneous entry should simply be reversed and the appropriate entry recorded. The possibilities are limitless. Let's look at the one in Illustration 20–14.

You shouldn't try to memorize how specific errors are corrected; you should learn the process needed to analyze whatever errors you might encounter.

¹⁶The retained earnings balances in years after the first year also are adjusted to what those balances would be if the error had not occurred, but a company may choose not to explicitly report those adjustments as separate line items.

Illustration 20-14

Error Discovered in the Same Reporting Period That It Occurred

G. H. Little, Inc., paid \$3 million for replacement computers and recorded the expenditure as maintenance expense. The error was discovered a week later.		
To Reverse Erroneous Entry		(\$ in millions)
Cash	3	
Maintenance expense		3
To Record Correct Entry		
Equipment	3	
Cash		3
Note: These entries can, of course, be combined.		

Error Affecting Previous Financial Statements, but Not Net Income

If an error did *not* affect net income in the year it occurred, it’s relatively easy to correct. Examples are incorrectly recording salaries payable as accounts payable, recording a loss as an expense, or classifying a cash flow as an investing activity rather than a financing activity on the statement of cash flows. The 2015 financial statements of **Barnes & Noble** reported that “the SEC’s New York Regional office notified the Company that it had commenced an investigation into the. . . Company’s restatement of earnings announced on July 29, 2013. The disclosure note reporting that restatement is reproduced in Illustration 20-15.

Illustration 20-15

Error Correction; Barnes & Noble

Real World Financials

2. Restatement of Prior Period Financial Statements (in part)
The Company has restated its previously reported consolidated financial statements for the years ended April 28, 2012 and April 30, 2011, including the opening stockholders’ equity balance, in order to correct certain previously reported amounts.
In fiscal 2013, management determined that the Company had incorrectly overstated certain accruals for the periods prior to April 27, 2013, as a result of inadequate controls over its Distribution Center accrual reconciliation process . . . the Company recorded an adjustment to decrease cost of sales by \$6,700 (\$4,027 after tax) and \$8,460 (\$5,084 after tax) to correctly present the statement of operations for fiscal 2012 and 2011, respectively. The Company also decreased accounts payable by \$89,500 and \$96,200 at April 30, 2011 and April 28, 2012, respectively; increased income taxes payable included in Accrued Liabilities in the consolidated Balance Sheets by \$14,939 and \$18,598 at April 30, 2011 and April 28, 2012, respectively; and increased retained earnings by \$74,561 and \$78,588, net of tax at April 30, 2011 and April 28, 2012, respectively.

Illustration 20-16 provides another example.

Illustration 20-16

Error Affecting Previous Financial Statements, but Not Net Income

- Step 1
- Step 2
- Step 3
- Step 4

MDS Transportation incorrectly recorded a \$2 million note receivable as accounts receivable. The error was discovered a year later.		
To Correct Incorrect Accounts		(\$ in millions)
Note receivable	2	
Accounts receivable		2
When reported for comparative purposes in the current year’s annual report, last year’s balance sheet would be restated to report the note as it should have been reported last year.		
Since last year’s net income was not affected by the error, the balance in retained earnings was not incorrect. So no prior period adjustment to that account is necessary.		
A disclosure note would describe the nature of the error, but there would be no impact on net income, income from continuing operations, and earnings per share to report.		

Error Affecting a Prior Year's Net Income

Most errors affect net income in some way. When they do, they affect the balance sheet as well. Both statements must be retrospectively restated; the statement of cash flows sometimes is affected, too. As with any error, all incorrect account balances must be corrected. Because these errors affect income, one of the balances that will require correction is retained earnings. Complicating matters, income taxes often are affected by income errors. In those cases, amended tax returns are prepared either to pay additional taxes or to claim a tax refund for taxes overpaid.

In Illustration 20–17, except as indicated, we ignore the tax effects of the errors and their correction to allow us to focus on the errors themselves rather than their tax aspects.

In 2018, internal auditors discovered that Seidman Distribution, Inc., had debited an expense account for the \$7 million cost of sorting equipment purchased at the beginning of 2016. The equipment's useful life was expected to be five years with no residual value. Straight-line depreciation is used by Seidman.

Analysis

Correct (Should have been recorded)		(\$ in millions)	Incorrect (As recorded)		(\$ in millions)
2016	Equipment	7.0	Expense	7.0	
	Cash	7.0	Cash		7.0
2016	Expense	1.4	Depreciation entry omitted		
	Accum. deprec.	1.4			
2017	Expense	1.4	Depreciation entry omitted		
	Accum. deprec.	1.4			

During the two-year period, depreciation expense was understated by \$2.8 million, but other expenses were overstated by \$7 million, so net income during the period was understated by **\$4.2 million**. This means retained earnings is currently understated by that amount.

Accumulated depreciation is understated by \$2.8 million.

To Correct Incorrect Accounts

	(\$ in millions)
Equipment	7.0
Accumulated depreciation	2.8
Retained earnings	4.2

The 2016 and 2017 financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the error are retrospectively restated to report the equipment acquired and to reflect the correct amount of depreciation expense and accumulated depreciation, assuming both statements are reported again for comparative purposes in the 2018 annual report.

Because retained earnings is one of the accounts that is incorrect as a result of the error, a correction to that account of **\$4.2 million** is reported as a prior period adjustment to the 2018 beginning retained earnings balance in Seidman's comparative statements of shareholders' equity. A correction would be made also to the 2017 beginning retained earnings balance. That prior period adjustment, though, would be for the pre-2017 difference: \$7 million – 1.4 million = \$5.6 million. If 2016 statements also are included in the comparative report, no adjustment would be necessary for that period because the error didn't occur until after the beginning of 2016.

Also, a disclosure note accompanying Seidman's 2018 financial statements should describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on each year's net income (understated by \$5.6 million in 2016 and overstated by \$1.4 million in 2017), income from continuing operations (same as net income), and earnings per share.

Illustration 20–17

Error Affecting Net Income:
Recording an Asset as an
Expense

Sometimes, the analysis is easier if you re-create the entries actually recorded incorrectly and those that would have been recorded if the error hadn't occurred and then compare them.

Step 1

Step 2

Step 3

Step 4

The effect of most errors is different, depending on *when* the error is discovered. For example, if the error in Illustration 20–17 is not discovered until 2019, rather than 2018, accumulated depreciation would be understated by another \$1.4 million, or a total of **\$4.2 million**. If not discovered until 2021 or after, no correcting entry at all would be needed. By then, the sum of the omitted depreciation amounts (\$1.4 million \times 5 years) would equal the expense incorrectly recorded in 2016 (\$7 million), so the retained earnings balance would be the same as if the error never had occurred. Also, the asset may have been disposed of—if the useful life estimate was correct—so neither the equipment nor accumulated depreciation would need to be recorded. Of course, any statements of prior years that were affected and are reported again in comparative statements still would be restated, and a disclosure note would describe the error.

Most errors, in fact, eventually self-correct. An example of an uncommon instance in which an error never self-corrects would be an expense account debited for the cost of land. Because land doesn't depreciate, the error would continue until the land is sold.

Additional Consideration

We ignored the tax impact of the error and its correction in Illustration 20–17. To consider taxes, we need to know whether depreciation was also omitted from the tax return and the depreciation methods used for tax reporting. Let's say that depreciation was omitted from the tax return also, and that straight-line depreciation is used by Seidman for both tax and financial reporting. The tax rate is 40%.

Total operating expenses (nontax) still would have been overstated by \$4.2 million over the two-year period. But that would have caused taxable income to be understated and the tax liability and income tax expense to be understated by 40% of **\$4.2 million**, or \$1.68 million. So net income and retained earnings would have been understated by only \$2.52 million.

Operating expenses <i>overstated</i>	\$4.20 million
Income tax expense <i>understated</i>	(1.68) million
Net income (and retained earnings) <i>understated</i>	\$ 2.52 million

To Correct Incorrect Accounts		(\$ in millions)
Equipment.....	7.00	
Accumulated depreciation.....		2.80
Income tax payable (40% \times \$4.2 million).....		1.68
Retained earnings		2.52

If depreciation had been omitted from the income statement but not from the tax return, or if accelerated depreciation was used for tax reporting but straight-line depreciation for financial reporting, the credit to income tax payable in the correcting entry would be replaced by a credit to deferred tax liability.

Even errors that eventually correct themselves cause financial statements to be misstated in the meantime.

Some errors correct themselves the following year. For instance, if a company's ending inventory is incorrectly counted or otherwise misstated, the income statement would be in error for the year of the error and the following year, but the balance sheet would be incorrect only for the year the error occurs. After that, all account balances will be correct. This is demonstrated in Illustration 20–18.

Other error corrections that benefit from a similar analysis are the overstatement of ending inventory, the overstatement or understatement of beginning inventory, and errors in recording merchandise purchases (or returns).

An error also would occur if a revenue or an expense is recorded in the wrong accounting period. Illustration 20–19 offers an example.

In early 2018, Overseas Wholesale Supply discovered that \$1 million of inventory had been inadvertently excluded from its 2016 ending inventory count.

Analysis:

U = Understated O = Overstated

2016		2017	
Beginning inventory		Beginning inventory	U
Plus: Net purchases		Plus: Net purchases	
Less: Ending inventory	U	Less: Ending inventory	
Cost of goods sold	O	Cost of goods sold	U
Revenues		Revenues	
Less: Cost of goods sold	O	Less: Cost of goods sold	U
Less: Other expenses		Less: Other expenses	
Net income	U	Net income	O
↓		↓	
Retained earnings	U	Retained earnings	<u>corrected</u>

If Error Is Discovered in 2017 (before closing)

		(\$ in millions)
Inventory.....		1
Retained earnings		1

If Error Discovered in 2018 or Later

No correcting entry needed.

If the error is discovered in 2017, the 2016 financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the error are retrospectively restated to reflect the correct inventory amounts, cost of goods sold, and retained earnings when those statements are reported again for comparative purposes in the 2017 annual report. If the error is discovered in 2018, the 2017 financial statements also are retrospectively restated to reflect the correct inventory amounts and cost of goods sold (retained earnings would not require adjustment), even though no correcting entry would be needed at that point.

Because retained earnings is one of the accounts incorrect if the error is discovered in 2017, the correction to that account is reported as a prior period adjustment to the 2017 beginning retained earnings balance in Overseas' statement of shareholders' equity. Of course, no prior period adjustment is needed if the error isn't discovered until 2019 or later.

Also, a disclosure note in Overseas' annual report should describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on each year's net income (understated by \$1 million in 2016, overstated by \$1 million in 2017), income from continuing operations (same as net income), and earnings per share.

Illustration 20-18

Error Affecting Net Income:
Inventory Misstated

When analyzing inventory errors or other errors that affect cost of goods sold, you may find it helpful to visualize the determination of cost of goods sold, net income, and retained earnings.

Step 1

Step 2

Step 3

Step 4

In 2018, General Paper Company discovered that \$3,000 of merchandise (credit) sales the last week of 2017 were not recorded until the first week of 2018. The merchandise sold was appropriately excluded from 2017 ending inventory.

Analysis

Correct (Should have been recorded) (\$ in thousands)			Incorrect (As recorded) (\$ in thousands)		
2017	Accounts receivable	3	No entry		
	Sales revenue	3			
2018	No entry		Accounts receivable.....	3	
			Sales revenue		3

(continued)

Illustration 20-19

Error Affecting Net Income:
Failure to Record Sales
Revenue

Illustration 20–19
(concluded)

Step 1

Step 2

Step 3

Step 4

To Correct Incorrect Accounts

	(\$ in thousands)
Sales revenue	3
Retained earnings	3

Note: If the sales revenue had not been recorded at all, the correcting entry would include a debit to accounts receivable rather than sales revenue.

The 2017 financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the error are retroactively restated to reflect the correct amount of sales revenue and accounts receivable when those statements are reported again for comparative purposes in the 2018 annual report.

Because retained earnings is one of the accounts incorrect as a result of the error, the correction to that account is reported as a prior period adjustment to the 2018 beginning retained earnings balance in General Paper’s comparative statements of shareholders’ equity.

Also, a disclosure note in General Paper’s 2018 annual report should describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on each year’s net income (\$3,000 in 2017), income from continuing operations (\$3,000 in 2017), and earnings per share.

Ethical Dilemma



As a second-year accountant for McCormack Chemical Company, you were excited to be named assistant manager of the Agricultural Chemicals Division. After two weeks in your new position, you were supervising the year-end inventory count when the senior manager mentioned that two carloads of herbicides were omitted from the count and should be added. Upon checking, you confirm your understanding that the inventory in question had been deemed to be unsalable. “Yes,” your manager agreed, “but we’ll write that off next year when our bottom line won’t be so critical to the continued existence of the Agricultural Chemicals Division. Jobs and families depend on our division showing well this year.”

Hertz Global Holding, Inc. operates car rental businesses through the Hertz, Dollar, Thrifty and Firefly brands. Illustration 20–20 reports information from a disclosure note in Hertz’s annual report issued July 16, 2015. It shows how Hertz corrected its financial statements primarily because of depreciation errors on the sale of vehicles at retail locations.

Illustration 20–20
Error Correction; Hertz
Real World Financials

Note 2—Restatement (in part)

During the fourth quarter of 2013, the Company identified certain out of period misstatements totaling \$46 million, of which \$35 million (\$21 million, net of tax) related to its previously issued consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2012 and prior. While these misstatements did not, individually or in the aggregate, result in a material misstatement of the Company’s previously issued consolidated financial statements, correcting these misstatements in the fourth quarter of 2013 would have been material to that quarter . . . this Note 2 to the consolidated financial statements discloses the nature of the restatement matters and adjustments and shows the impact of the restatement matters on revenues, expenses, income, assets, liabilities, equity, and cash flows from operating activities, investing activities, and financing activities, and the cumulative effects of these adjustments on the consolidated statement of operations, balance sheet, and cash flows for 2012 and 2013. In addition, this Note shows the effects of the adjustment to opening retained earnings as of January 1, 2012, which adjustment reflects the impact of the restatement on periods prior to 2012. The cumulative impact of the out of period misstatements for all previously reported periods through December 31, 2013, including amounts associated with the revision previously reported in the 2013 Form 10-K/A, was approximately a \$349 million reduction in pre-tax income and \$231 million reduction in net income.

As mentioned at the outset, we've made no attempt to demonstrate the correction process for every kind of error in every stage of its discovery. However, after seeing the process applied to the few situations described, you should feel comfortable that the process is the same regardless of the specific situation you might encounter.

International Financial Reporting Standards

Accounting Changes and Error Corrections. U.S. GAAP and International standards are largely converged regarding accounting changes and error corrections, but one difference concerns error corrections. When correcting errors in previously issued financial statements, IFRS (IAS No. 8) permits the effect of the error to be reported in the current period if it's not considered practicable to report it retrospectively, as is required by U.S. GAAP.¹⁷



● LO20-7

Concept Review Exercise

In 2018, the following errors were discovered by the internal auditors of Development Technologies, Inc.

CORRECTION OF ERRORS

1. 2017 accrued wages of \$2 million were not recognized until they were paid in 2018.
2. A \$3 million purchase of merchandise in 2018 was recorded in 2017 instead. The physical inventory count at the end of 2017 was correct.

Required:

Prepare the journal entries needed in 2018 to correct each error. Also, briefly describe any other measures Development Technologies would take in connection with correcting the errors. (Ignore income taxes.)

Solution:

Step 1:

1. To reduce 2018 wages expense and reduce retained earnings to what it would have been if the expense had reduced net income in 2017.

	(\$ in millions)
Retained earnings	2
Wages expense	2

2. To include the \$3 million in 2018 purchases and increase retained earnings to what it would have been if 2017 cost of goods sold had not included the \$3 million purchases.

Analysis

U = Understated O = Overstated

2017		2018
Beginning inventory		Beginning inventory
Purchases	O	Purchases
Less: Ending inventory		
Cost of goods sold	O	
Revenues		
Less: Cost of goods sold	O	
Less: Other expenses		
Net income	U	
↓		
Retained earnings	U	

¹⁷"Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors," *International Accounting Standard No. 8* (IASCF), as amended effective January 1, 2014.

	(\$ in millions)
Purchases.....	3
Retained earnings.....	3

Step 2:

The 2017 financial statements that were incorrect as a result of the errors would be *retrospectively restated* to reflect the correct wages expense, cost of goods sold (income tax expense if taxes are considered), net income, and retained earnings when those statements are reported again for comparative purposes in the 2018 annual report.

Step 3:

Because retained earnings is one of the accounts that is incorrect, the correction to that account is reported as a “*prior period adjustment*” to the 2018 beginning retained earnings balance in the comparative Statements of Shareholders’ Equity.

Step 4:

Also, a *disclosure note* should describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on each year’s net income, income from continuing operations, and earnings per share.

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© REUTERS/Alamy Stock Photo

- 1. How can an accounting change cause a company to increase a previously reported inventory amount?** (p. 1163) Smucker didn’t find any lost jelly. The company increased last year’s inventory number by \$2 million to reflect its change from *LIFO* to *FIFO* this year. If it had not revised the number, last year’s inventory would be based on *LIFO* and this year’s inventory on *FIFO*. Analysts would be comparing apples and oranges (or apple jelly and orange jelly). Retrospective application of an accounting change provides better comparability in accounting information.
- 2. Are all accounting changes reported this way?** (p. 1169) Not all accounting changes are reported retrospectively. Besides most changes in accounting principle, changes in reporting entity and the correction of errors are reported that way, but some changes are reported prospectively instead. Changes in depreciation method, changes in accounting estimate, and some changes for which retrospective application is either impracticable or prohibited are reported prospectively in current and future periods only. ●

The Bottom Line

- **LO20–1** Accounting changes are categorized as (a) changes in *principle*, (b) changes in *estimates*, or (c) changes in *reporting entity*. Accounting changes can be accounted for retrospectively (prior years revised) or prospectively (only year of change and future years affected), or by the modified retrospective approach (apply a new standard only to the adoption period). (p. 1160)
- **LO20–2** Most voluntary changes in accounting principles are reported retrospectively. This means for each year reported in the comparative statements, we make those statements appear as if the newly adopted accounting method had been applied all along. A journal entry is created to adjust all account balances affected as of the date of the change. In the first set of financial statements after the change, a disclosure note describes the change and justifies the new method as preferable. It also describes the effects of the change on all items affected, including the fact that the retained earnings balance was revised in the statement of shareholders’ equity. (p. 1162)

- **LO20-3** Some changes are reported prospectively. These include (a) changes in the method of depreciation, amortization, or depletion, (b) some changes in principle for which retrospective application is impracticable, and (c) a few changes for which an authoritative pronouncement requires prospective application. (*p. 1166*)
- **LO20-4** Changes in estimates are accounted for prospectively. When a company revises a previous estimate, prior financial statements are not revised. Instead, the company merely incorporates the new estimate in any related accounting determinations from then on. (*p. 1168*)
- **LO20-5** A change in reporting entity requires that financial statements of prior periods be retrospectively revised to report the financial information for the new reporting entity in all periods. (*p. 1171*)
- **LO20-6** When errors are discovered, they should be corrected and accounted for retrospectively. Previous years' financial statements that were incorrect as a result of an error are retrospectively restated, and any account balances that are incorrect are corrected by a journal entry. If retained earnings is one of the incorrect accounts, the correction is reported as a prior period adjustment to the beginning balance in a statement of shareholders' equity. And, a disclosure note should describe the nature of the error and the impact of its correction on operations. (*p. 1174*)
- **LO20-7** U.S. GAAP and International standards are largely converged with respect to accounting changes and error corrections. One remaining difference is that when correcting errors in previously issued financial statements, IFRS permits the effect of the error to be reported in the current period if it's not considered practicable to report it retrospectively, as is required by U.S. GAAP. (*pp. 1167, 1174, and 1181*) ●

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 20-1** For accounting purposes, we classify accounting changes into three categories. What are they? Provide a short description of each.
- Q 20-2** There are three basic accounting approaches to reporting accounting changes. What are they?
- Q 20-3** We report most changes in accounting principle retrospectively. Describe this general way of recording and reporting changes in accounting principle.
- Q 20-4** Lynch Corporation changes from the sum-of-the-years'-digits method of depreciation for existing assets to the straight-line method. How should the change be reported? Explain.
- Q 20-5** Sugarbaker Designs Inc. changed from the FIFO inventory costing method to the average cost method during 2018. Which items from the 2017 financial statements should be restated on the basis of the average cost method when reported in the 2018 comparative financial statements?
- Q 20-6** Most changes in accounting principles are recorded and reported retrospectively. In a few situations, though, the changes should be reported prospectively. When is prospective application appropriate? Provide examples.
- Q 20-7** Southeast Steel, Inc., changed from the FIFO inventory costing method to the LIFO method during 2017. How would this change likely be reported in the 2018 comparative financial statements?
- Q 20-8** Direct Assurance Company revised the estimates of the useful life of a trademark it had acquired three years earlier. How should Direct account for the change?
- Q 20-9** It's not easy sometimes to distinguish between a change in principle and a change in estimate. In these cases, how should the change be accounted for?
- Q 20-10** For financial reporting, a reporting entity can be a single company, or it can be a group of companies that reports a single set of financial statements. When changes occur that cause the financial statements to be those of a different reporting entity, we account for the situation as a change in reporting entity. What are the situations deemed to constitute a change in reporting entity?
- Q 20-11** The issuance of FASB guidance regarding consolidation of all majority-owned subsidiaries required **Ford Motors** to include a previously unconsolidated finance subsidiary as part of the reporting entity. How did Ford report the change?
- Q 20-12** Describe the process of correcting an error when it's discovered in a subsequent reporting period.
- Q 20-13** If merchandise inventory is understated at the end of 2017, and the error is not discovered, how will net income be affected in 2018?
- Q 20-14** If it is discovered that an extraordinary repair in the previous year was incorrectly debited to repair expense, how will retained earnings be reported in the current year's statement of shareholders' equity?
- Q 20-15** What action is required when it is discovered that a five-year insurance premium payment of \$50,000 two years ago was debited to insurance expense? (Ignore taxes.)

Q 20-16 Suppose the error described in the previous question is not discovered until six years later. What action will the discovery of this error require?



IFRS Q 20-17 With regard to the correction of accounting errors, what is the difference between U.S. GAAP and IFRS?

Brief Exercises



BE 20-1

Change in inventory methods; FIFO method to the average cost method

● LO20-2

In 2018, the Barton and Barton Company changed its method of valuing inventory from the FIFO method to the average cost method. At December 31, 2017, B & B's inventories were \$32 million (FIFO). B & B's records indicated that the inventories would have totaled \$23.8 million at December 31, 2017, if determined on an average cost basis. Ignoring income taxes, what journal entry will B & B use to record the adjustment in 2018? Briefly describe other steps B & B should take to report the change.

BE 20-2

Change in inventory methods; average cost method to the FIFO method

● LO20-2

In 2018, Adonis Industries changed its method of valuing inventory from the average cost method to the FIFO method. At December 31, 2017, Adonis's inventories were \$47.6 million (average cost). Adonis's records indicated that the inventories would have totaled \$64 million at December 31, 2017, if determined on a FIFO basis. Ignoring income taxes, what journal entry will Adonis use to record the adjustment in 2018?

BE 20-3

Change in inventory methods; FIFO method to the LIFO method

● LO20-3

In 2018, J J Dishes changed its method of valuing inventory from the FIFO method to the LIFO method. At December 31, 2017, J J's inventories were \$96 million (FIFO). J J's records were insufficient to determine what inventories would have totaled if determined on a LIFO cost basis. Briefly describe the steps J J should take to report the change.

BE 20-4

Change in depreciation methods

● LO20-3

Irwin, Inc., constructed a machine at a total cost of \$35 million. Construction was completed at the end of 2014 and the machine was placed in service at the beginning of 2015. The machine was being depreciated over a 10-year life using the sum-of-the-years'-digits method. The residual value is expected to be \$2 million. At the beginning of 2018, Irwin decided to change to the straight-line method. Ignoring income taxes, what journal entry(s) should Irwin record relating to the machine for 2018?

BE 20-5

Change in depreciation methods

● LO20-3

Refer to the situation described in BE 20-4. Suppose Irwin has been using the straight-line method and switches to the sum-of-the-years'-digits method. Ignoring income taxes, what journal entry(s) should Irwin record relating to the machine for 2018?

BE 20-6

Book royalties

● LO20-4

Three programmers at Feenix Computer Storage, Inc., write an operating systems control manual for Hill-McGraw Publishing, Inc., for which Feenix receives royalties equal to 12% of net sales. Royalties are payable annually on February 1 for sales the previous year. The editor indicated to Feenix on December 31, 2016, that book sales subject to royalties for the year just ended are expected to be \$300,000. Accordingly, Feenix accrued royalty revenue of \$36,000 at December 31 and received royalties of \$36,500 on February 1, 2019. What adjustments, if any, should be made to retained earnings or to the 2016 financial statements? Explain.

BE 20-7

Warranty expense

● LO20-4

In 2017, Quapau Products introduced a new line of hot water heaters that carry a one-year warranty against manufacturer's defects. Based on industry experience, warranty costs were expected to approximate 5% of sales revenue. First-year sales of the heaters were \$300,000. An evaluation of the company's claims experience in late 2018 indicated that actual claims were less than expected—4% of sales rather than 5%. Assuming sales of the heaters in 2018 were \$350,000 and warranty expenditures in 2018 totaled \$12,000, what is the 2018 warranty expense?

BE 20-8

Change in estimate; useful life of patent

● LO20-4

Van Frank Telecommunications has a patent on a cellular transmission process. The company has amortized the \$18 million cost of the patent on a straight-line basis since it was acquired at the beginning of 2014. Due to rapid

technological advances in the industry, management decided that the patent would benefit the company over a total of six years rather than the nine-year life being used to amortize its cost. The decision was made at the end of 2018 (before adjusting and closing entries). What is the appropriate adjusting entry for patent amortization in 2018 to reflect the revised estimate?

BE 20-9

Error correction

● LO20-6

When DeSoto Water Works purchased a machine at the end of 2017 at a cost of \$65,000, the company debited Buildings and credited Cash \$65,000. The error was discovered in 2018. What journal entry will DeSoto use to correct the error? What other step(s) would be taken in connection with the error?

BE 20-10

Error correction

● LO20-6

In 2018, internal auditors discovered that PKE Displays, Inc., had debited an expense account for the \$350,000 cost of a machine purchased on January 1, 2015. The machine's useful life was expected to be five years with no residual value. Straight-line depreciation is used by PKE. Ignoring income taxes, what journal entry will PKE use to correct the error?

BE 20-11

Error correction

● LO20-6

Refer to the situation described in BE 20-10. Assume the error was discovered in 2020, after the 2019 financial statements are issued. Ignoring income taxes, what journal entry will PKE use to correct the error?

BE 20-12

Error correction

● LO20-6

In 2018, the internal auditors of Development Technologies, Inc., discovered that (a) 2017 accrued wages of \$2 million were not recognized until they were paid in 2018, and (b) a \$3 million purchase of merchandise in 2018 was recorded in 2017 instead. The physical inventory count at the end of 2017 was correct. Ignoring income taxes, what journal entries are needed in 2018 to correct each error? Also, briefly describe any other measures Development Technologies would take in connection with correcting the errors.

Exercises

**E 20-1**

Change in principle; change in inventory methods

● LO20-2

During 2016 (its first year of operations) and 2017, Batali Foods used the FIFO inventory costing method for both financial reporting and tax purposes. At the beginning of 2018, Batali decided to change to the average method for both financial reporting and tax purposes.

Income components before income tax for 2018, 2017, and 2016 were as follows:

(\$ in millions)	2018	2017	2016
Revenues	\$ 420	\$ 390	\$ 380
Cost of goods sold (FIFO)	(46)	(40)	(38)
Cost of goods sold (average)	(62)	(56)	(52)
Operating expenses	(254)	(250)	(242)

Dividends of \$20 million were paid each year. Batali's fiscal year ends December 31.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry at the beginning of 2018 to record the change in accounting principle. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Prepare the 2018–2017 comparative income statements.
3. Determine the balance in retained earnings at January 1, 2017, as Batali reported previously using the FIFO method.
4. Determine the adjustment to the January 1, 2017, balance in retained earnings that Batali would include in the 2018–2017 comparative statements of retained earnings or retained earnings column of the statements of shareholders' equity to revise it to the amount it would have been if Batali had used the average method.

E 20-2

Change in principle; change in inventory methods

● LO20-2

Aquatic Equipment Corporation decided to switch from the LIFO method of costing inventories to the FIFO method at the beginning of 2018. The inventory as reported at the end of 2017 using LIFO would have been \$60,000 higher using FIFO. Retained earnings at the end of 2017 was reported as \$780,000 (reflecting the LIFO method). The tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Calculate the balance in retained earnings at the time of the change (beginning of 2018) as it would have been reported if FIFO had been used in prior years.
2. Prepare the journal entry at the beginning of 2018 to record the change in accounting principle.

E 20-3

Change from the treasury stock method to retired stock

• LO20-2

In keeping with a modernization of corporate statutes in its home state, UMC Corporation decided in 2018 to discontinue accounting for reacquired shares as treasury stock. Instead, shares repurchased will be viewed as having been retired, reassuming the status of unissued shares. As part of the change, treasury shares held were reclassified as retired stock. At December 31, 2017, UMC's balance sheet reported the following shareholders' equity:

	(\$ in millions)
Common stock, \$1 par	\$ 200
Paid-in capital—excess of par	800
Retained earnings	956
Treasury stock (4 million shares at cost)	(25)
Total shareholders' equity	<u>\$1,931</u>

Required:

Identify the type of accounting change this decision represents and prepare the journal entry to effect the reclassification of treasury shares as retired shares.

E 20-4

Change in principle; change to the equity method

• LO20-2

The Crump Companies, Inc., has ownership interests in several public companies. At the beginning of 2018, the company's ownership interest in the common stock of Silken Properties increased to the point that it became appropriate to begin using the equity method of accounting for the investment. The balance in the investment account was \$31 million at the time of the change. Accountants working with company records determined that the balance would have been \$48 million if the account had been adjusted to reflect the equity method.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the change in accounting principle. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Briefly describe other steps Crump should take to report the change.
3. Suppose Crump is changing *from* the equity method rather than *to* the equity method. How would your answers to requirements 1 and 2 differ?

E 20-5

FASB codification research; change in accounting for investments

• LO20-2



Companies often invest in the common stock of other corporations. The way we report these investments depends on the nature of the investment and the investor's motivation for the investment. The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on the disclosure of accounting policies using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org).
2. What is the specific citation that describes how to account for a change in the level of ownership to a percentage that will mandate use of the equity method for investments in common stock?
3. What are the specific requirements?

E 20-6

FASB codification research

• LO20-2



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

1. Reporting most changes in accounting principle.
2. Disclosure requirements for a change in accounting principle.
3. Illustration of the application of a retrospective change in the method of accounting for inventory.

E 20-7

Change in principle; change in inventory cost method

• LO20-2

Millington Materials is a leading supplier of building equipment, building products, materials and timber for sale, with over 200 branches across the Mid-South. On January 1, 2018, management decided to change from the average inventory costing method to the FIFO inventory costing method at each of its outlets.

The following table presents information concerning the change. The income tax rate for all years is 40%.

	Income before Income Tax		
	FIFO	Average Cost	Difference
Before 2017	\$15 million	\$8 million	\$7 million
2017	8 million	5 million	3 million
2018	10 million	9 million	1 million

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to record the change in accounting principle.
2. Determine the net income to be reported in the 2018–2017 comparative income statements.
3. Which other 2017 amounts would be reported differently in the 2018–2017 comparative income statements and 2018–2017 comparative balance sheets than they were reported the previous year?

4. How would the change be reflected in the 2018–2017 comparative statements of shareholders' equity? Cash dividends were \$1 million each year. Assume no dividends were paid prior to 2017.

E 20–8

Change in inventory methods; FIFO method to the LIFO method

● LO20–3

Flay Foods has always used the FIFO inventory costing method for both financial reporting and tax purposes. At the beginning of 2018, Flay decided to change to the LIFO method. As a result of the change, net income in 2018 was \$80 million. If the company had used LIFO in 2017, its cost of goods sold would have been higher by \$6 million that year. Flay's records of inventory purchases and sales are not available for 2016 and several previous years. Last year, Flay reported the following net income amounts in its comparative income statements:

(\$ in millions)	2017	2016	2015
Net income	\$84	\$82	\$80

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry at the beginning of 2018 to record the change in accounting principle. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Briefly describe other steps Flay will take to report the change.
3. What amounts will Flay report for net income in its 2018–2016 comparative income statements?

E 20–9

Change in inventory methods; FIFO method to the LIFO method

● LO20–3

Wolfgang Kitchens has always used the FIFO inventory costing method for both financial reporting and tax purposes. At the beginning of 2018, Wolfgang decided to change to the LIFO method. Net income in 2018 was correctly stated as \$90 million. If the company had used LIFO in 2017, its cost of goods sold would have been higher by \$7 million that year. Company accountants are able to determine that the cumulative net income for all years prior to 2017 would have been lower by \$23 million if LIFO had been used all along, but have insufficient information to determine specific effects of using LIFO in 2016. Last year, Wolfgang reported the following net income amounts in its comparative income statements:

(\$ in millions)	2017	2016	2015
Net income	\$94	\$92	\$90

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry at the beginning of 2018 to record the change in accounting principle. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Briefly describe other steps Wolfgang will take to report the change.
3. What amounts will Wolfgang report for net income in its 2018–2016 comparative income statements?

E 20–10

Change in depreciation methods

● LO20–3

For financial reporting, Clinton Poultry Farms has used the declining-balance method of depreciation for conveyor equipment acquired at the beginning of 2015 for \$2,560,000. Its useful life was estimated to be six years with a \$160,000 residual value. At the beginning of 2018, Clinton decides to change to the straight-line method. The effect of this change on depreciation for each year is as follows:

Year	(\$ in thousands)		
	Straight-Line	Declining Balance	Difference
2015	\$ 400	\$ 853	\$453
2016	400	569	169
2017	400	379	(21)
	\$1,200	\$1,801	\$601

Required:

1. Briefly describe the way Clinton should report this accounting change in the 2017–2018 comparative financial statements.
2. Prepare any 2018 journal entry related to the change.

E 20–11

Change in depreciation methods

● LO20–3

The Canliss Milling Company purchased machinery on January 2, 2016, for \$800,000. A five-year life was estimated and no residual value was anticipated. Canliss decided to use the straight-line depreciation method and recorded \$160,000 in depreciation in 2016 and 2017. Early in 2018, the company changed its depreciation method to the sum-of-the-years'-digits (SYD) method.

Required:

1. Briefly describe the way Canliss should report this accounting change in the 2017–2018 comparative financial statements.
2. Prepare any 2018 journal entry related to the change.

E 20-12

Book royalties

● LO20-4

Dreighton Engineering Group receives royalties on a technical manual written by two of its engineers and sold to William B. Irving Publishing, Inc. Royalties are 10% of net sales, receivable on October 1 for sales in January through June and on April 1 for sales in July through December of the prior year. Sales of the manual began in July 2017, and Dreighton accrued royalty revenue of \$31,000 at December 31, 2017, as follows:

Receivable—royalty revenue	31,000	
Royalty revenue		31,000

Dreighton received royalties of \$36,000 on April 1, 2018, and \$40,000 on October 1, 2018. Irving indicated to Dreighton on December 31 that book sales subject to royalties for the second half of 2018 are expected to be \$500,000.

Required:

1. Prepare any journal entries Dreighton should record during 2018 related to the royalty revenue.
2. What adjustments, if any, should be made to retained earnings or to the 2017 financial statements? Explain.

E 20-13

Loss contingency

● LO20-4

The Commonwealth of Virginia filed suit in October 2016, against Northern Timber Corporation seeking civil penalties and injunctive relief for violations of environmental laws regulating forest conservation. When the financial statements were issued in 2017, Northern had not reached a settlement with state authorities, but legal counsel advised Northern Timber that it was probable the ultimate settlement would be \$1,000,000 in penalties. The following entry was recorded:

Loss—litigation	1,000,000	
Liability—litigation.....		1,000,000

Late in 2018, a settlement was reached with state authorities to pay a total of \$600,000 to cover the cost of violations.

Required:

1. Prepare any journal entries related to the change.
2. Briefly describe other steps Northern should take to report the change.

E 20-14

Warranty expense

● LO20-4

Woodmier Lawn Products introduced a new line of commercial sprinklers in 2017 that carry a one-year warranty against manufacturer's defects. Because this was the first product for which the company offered a warranty, trade publications were consulted to determine the experience of others in the industry. Based on that experience, warranty costs were expected to approximate 2% of sales. Sales of the sprinklers in 2017 were \$2,500,000. Accordingly, the following entries relating to the contingency for warranty costs were recorded during the first year of selling the product:

Accrued liability and expense		
Warranty expense (2% × \$2,500,000).....	50,000	
Estimated warranty liability.....		50,000
Actual expenditures (summary entry)		
Estimated warranty liability.....	23,000	
Cash, wages payable, parts and supplies, etc		23,000

In late 2018, the company's claims experience was evaluated and it was determined that claims were far more than expected—3% of sales rather than 2%.

Required:

1. Assuming sales of the sprinklers in 2018 were \$3,600,000 and warranty expenditures in 2018 totaled \$88,000, prepare any journal entries related to the warranty.
2. Assuming sales of the sprinklers were discontinued after 2017, prepare any journal entries in 2018 related to the warranty.

E 20-15Deferred taxes;
change in tax
rates

● LO20-4

Bronson Industries reported a deferred tax liability of \$8 million for the year ended December 31, 2017, related to a temporary difference of \$20 million. The tax rate was 40%. The temporary difference is expected to reverse in 2019, at which time the deferred tax liability will become payable. There are no other temporary differences in 2017–2019. Assume a new tax law is enacted in 2018 that causes the tax rate to change from 40% to 30% beginning in 2019. (The rate remains 40% for 2018 taxes.) Taxable income in 2018 is \$30 million.

Required:

1. Determine the effect of the change and prepare the appropriate journal entry to record Bronson's income tax expense in 2018.
2. What adjustment, if any, is needed to revise retained earnings as a result of the change?

E 20-16

Accounting change

● LO20-4

The Peridot Company purchased machinery on January 2, 2016, for \$800,000. A five-year life was estimated and no residual value was anticipated. Peridot decided to use the straight-line depreciation method and recorded \$160,000 in depreciation in 2016 and 2017. Early in 2018, the company revised the total estimated life of the machinery to eight years.

Required:

1. What type of change is this?
2. Briefly describe the accounting treatment for this change.
3. Determine depreciation for 2018.

E 20-17

Change in estimate; useful life and residual value of equipment

● LO20-4

Wardell Company purchased a mini computer on January 1, 2016, at a cost of \$40,000. The computer has been depreciated using the straight-line method over an estimated five-year useful life with an estimated residual value of \$4,000. On January 1, 2018, the estimate of useful life was changed to a total of 10 years, and the estimate of residual value was changed to \$900.

Required:

1. Prepare the appropriate adjusting entry for depreciation in 2018 to reflect the revised estimate.
2. Repeat requirement 1, assuming that the company uses the sum-of-the-years'-digits method instead of the straight-line method.

E 20-18

Classifying accounting changes

● LO20-1 through LO20-5

Indicate with the appropriate letter the nature of each situation described below:

Type of Change

PR	Change in principle reported retrospectively
PP	Change in principle reported prospectively
E	Change in estimate
EP	Change in estimate resulting from a change in principle
R	Change in reporting entity
N	Not an accounting change

- _____ 1. Change from declining balance depreciation to straight-line
- _____ 2. Change in the estimated useful life of office equipment
- _____ 3. Technological advance that renders worthless a patent with an unamortized cost of \$45,000
- _____ 4. Change from determining lower of cost or net realizable value (LCNRV) for the inventories by the individual item approach to the aggregate approach
- _____ 5. Change from LIFO inventory costing to the weighted-average inventory costing
- _____ 6. Settling a lawsuit for less than the amount accrued previously as a loss contingency
- _____ 7. Including in the consolidated financial statements a subsidiary acquired several years earlier that was appropriately not included in previous years
- _____ 8. Change by a retail store from reporting warranty expense on a pay-as-you-go basis to estimating the expense in the period of sale
- _____ 9. A shift of certain manufacturing overhead costs to inventory that previously were expensed as incurred to more accurately measure cost of goods sold (Either method is generally acceptable)
- _____ 10. Pension plan assets for a defined benefit pension plan achieving a rate of return in excess of the amount anticipated

E 20-19

Error correction; inventory error

● LO20-6

During 2018, WMC Corporation discovered that its ending inventories reported on its financial statements were misstated by the following amounts:

2016	understated by	\$120,000
2017	overstated by	150,000

WMC uses the periodic inventory system and the FIFO cost method.

Required:

1. Determine the effect of these errors on retained earnings at January 1, 2018, before any adjustments. Explain your answer. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Prepare a journal entry to correct the error.
3. What other steps would be taken in connection with the error?

E 20-20

Error corrections; investment

● LO20-6

On December 12, 2018, an investment costing \$80,000 was sold for \$100,000. The total of the sale proceeds was credited to the investment account.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry to correct the error, assuming it is discovered before the books are adjusted or closed in 2018. (Ignore income taxes.)

2. Prepare the journal entry to correct the error assuming it is not discovered until early 2019. (Ignore income taxes.)

E 20-21

Error in
amortization
schedule

● LO20-6

Wilkins Food Products Inc. acquired a packaging machine from Lawrence Specialists Corporation. Lawrence completed construction of the machine on January 1, 2016. In payment for the machine Wilkins issued a three-year installment note to be paid in three equal payments at the end of each year. The payments include interest at the rate of 10%. Lawrence made a conceptual error in preparing the amortization schedule, which Wilkins failed to discover until 2018. As a result of the error, Wilkins understated interest expense by \$45,000 in 2016 and \$40,000 in 2017.

Required:

1. Determine which accounts are incorrect as a result of these errors at January 1, 2018, before any adjustments. Explain your answer. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Prepare a journal entry to correct the error.
3. What other steps would be taken in connection with the error?

E 20-22

Error correction;
accrued interest
on bonds

● LO20-6

At the end of 2017, Majors Furniture Company failed to accrue \$61,000 of interest expense that accrued during the last five months of 2017 on bonds payable. The bonds mature in 2029. The discount on the bonds is amortized by the straight-line method. The following entry was recorded on February 1, 2018, when the semiannual interest was paid:

Interest expense	73,200	
Discount on bonds payable		1,200
Cash		72,000

Required:

Prepare any journal entry necessary to correct the error, as well as any adjusting entry for 2018 related to the situation described. (Ignore income taxes.)

E 20-23

Error correction;
three errors

● LO20-6

Below are three independent and unrelated errors.

- a. On December 31, 2017, Wolfe-Bache Corporation failed to accrue office supplies expense of \$1,800. In January 2018, when it received the bill from its supplier, Wolfe-Bache made the following entry:

Office supplies expense	1,800	
Cash		1,800

- b. On the last day of 2017, Midwest Importers received a \$90,000 prepayment from a tenant for 2018 rent of a building. Midwest recorded the receipt as rent revenue.
- c. At the end of 2017, Dinkins-Lowery Corporation failed to accrue interest of \$8,000 on a note receivable. At the beginning of 2018, when the company received the cash, it was recorded as interest revenue.

Required:

For each error:

1. What would be the effect of each error on the income statement and the balance sheet in the 2017 financial statements?
2. Prepare any journal entries each company should record in 2018 to correct the errors.

E 20-24

Inventory errors

● LO20-6

For each of the following inventory errors occurring in 2018, determine the effect of the error on 2018's cost of goods sold, net income, and retained earnings. Assume that the error is not discovered until 2019 and that a periodic inventory system is used. Ignore income taxes.

U = Understated O = Overstated NE = No effect

	Cost of Goods Sold	Net Income	Retained Earnings
1. Overstatement of ending inventory	U	O	O
2. Overstatement of purchases			
3. Understatement of beginning inventory			
4. Freight-in charges are understated			
5. Understatement of ending inventory			
6. Understatement of purchases			
7. Overstatement of beginning inventory			
8. Understatement of purchases and understatement of ending inventory, by the same amount			

E 20-25

Classifying
accounting
changes and
errors

- LO20-1 through
LO20-6

Indicate with the appropriate letter the nature of each adjustment described below:

Type of Adjustment

- A. Change in accounting principle (reported retrospectively)
- B. Change in accounting principle (exception reported prospectively)
- C. Change in estimate
- D. Change in estimate resulting from a change in principle
- E. Change in reporting entity
- F. Correction of an error

- _____ 1. Change from expensing extraordinary repairs to capitalizing the expenditures
- _____ 2. Change in the residual value of machinery
- _____ 3. Change from FIFO inventory costing to LIFO inventory costing
- _____ 4. Change in the percentage used to determine warranty expense
- _____ 5. Change from LIFO inventory costing to FIFO inventory costing
- _____ 6. Change from reporting an investment by the equity method due to a reduction in the percentage of shares owned
- _____ 7. Change in the composition of a group of firms reporting on a consolidated basis
- _____ 8. Change from sum-of-the-years'-digits depreciation to straight-line
- _____ 9. Change from FIFO inventory costing to average inventory costing
- _____ 10. Change in actuarial assumptions for a defined benefit pension plan

Problems

**P 20-1**

Change in
inventory
costing methods;
comparative
income
statements

- LO20-2



The Cecil-Booker Vending Company changed its method of valuing inventory from the average cost method to the FIFO cost method at the beginning of 2018. At December 31, 2017, inventories were \$120,000 (average cost basis) and were \$124,000 a year earlier. Cecil-Booker's accountants determined that the inventories would have totaled \$155,000 at December 31, 2017, and \$160,000 at December 31, 2016, if determined on a FIFO basis. A tax rate of 40% is in effect for all years.

One hundred thousand common shares were outstanding each year. Income from continuing operations was \$400,000 in 2017 and \$525,000 in 2018. There were no discontinued operations either year.

Required:

- Prepare the journal entry to record the change in accounting principle. (All tax effects should be reflected in the deferred tax liability account.)
- Prepare the 2018–2017 comparative income statements beginning with income from continuing operations. Include per share amounts.

P 20-2

Change in
principle; change
in method of
accounting
for long-term
construction

- LO20-2



The Pyramid Company has used the LIFO method of accounting for inventory during its first two years of operation, 2016 and 2017. At the beginning of 2018, Pyramid decided to change to the average cost method for both tax and financial reporting purposes. The following table presents information concerning the change for 2016–2018. The income tax rate for all years is 40%.

	Income before Income Tax			Income Tax Effect	Difference after Tax
	Average Cost Method	LIFO Method	Difference		
2016	\$ 90,000	\$60,000	\$30,000	\$12,000	\$18,000
2017	45,000	36,000	9,000	3,600	5,400
Total	\$135,000	\$96,000	\$39,000	\$15,600	\$23,400
2018	\$ 51,000	\$46,000	\$ 5,000	\$ 2,000	\$ 3,000



Pyramid issued 50,000 \$1 par, common shares for \$230,000 when the business began, and there have been no changes in paid-in capital since then. Dividends were not paid the first year, but \$10,000 cash dividends were paid in both 2017 and 2018.

Required:

- Prepare the journal entry to record the change in accounting principle.
- Prepare the 2018–2017 comparative income statements beginning with income before income taxes.
- Prepare the 2018–2017 comparative statements of shareholders' equity. [Hint: The 2016 statements reported retained earnings of \$36,000. This is $\$60,000 - (\$60,000 \times 40\%)$.]

P 20-3

Change in
inventory
costing methods;
comparative
income
statements

• LO20-2, LO20-3

Shown below are net income amounts as they would be determined by Weihrich Steel Company by each of three different inventory costing methods (\$ in thousands).

	FIFO	Average Cost	LIFO
Pre-2017	\$2,800	\$2,540	\$2,280
2017	750	600	540
	<u>\$3,550</u>	<u>\$3,140</u>	<u>\$2,820</u>

Required:

1. Assume that Weihrich used FIFO before 2018, and then in 2018 decided to switch to average cost. Prepare the journal entry to record the change in accounting principle and briefly describe any other steps Weihrich should take to appropriately report the situation. (Ignore income tax effects.)
2. Assume that Weihrich used FIFO before 2018, and then in 2018 decided to switch to LIFO. Assume accounting records are inadequate to determine LIFO information prior to 2018. Therefore, the 2017 (\$540) and pre-2017 (\$2,280) data are not available. Prepare the journal entry to record the change in accounting principle and briefly describe any other steps Weihrich should take to appropriately report the situation. (Ignore income tax effects.)
3. Assume that Weihrich used FIFO before 2018, and then in 2018 decided to switch to LIFO cost. Weihrich's records of inventory purchases and sales are not available for several previous years. Therefore, the pre-2017 LIFO information (\$2,280) is not available. However, Weihrich does have the information needed to apply LIFO on a prospective basis beginning in 2017. Prepare the journal entry to record the change in accounting principle, and briefly describe any other steps Weihrich should take to appropriately report the situation. (Ignore income tax effects.)

P 20-4

Change in
inventory
methods

• LO20-2

The Rockwell Corporation uses a periodic inventory system and has used the FIFO cost method since inception of the company in 1979. In 2018, the company decided to change to the average cost method. Data for 2018 are as follows:

Beginning inventory, FIFO (5,000 units @ \$30.00)		\$150,000
Purchases:		
5,000 units @ \$36.00	\$180,000	
5,000 units @ \$40.00	<u>200,000</u>	<u>380,000</u>
Cost of goods available for sale		<u>\$530,000</u>
Sales for 2018 (8,000 units @ \$70.00)		<u>\$560,000</u>

Additional Information:

1. The company's effective income tax rate is 40% for all years.
2. If the company had used the average cost method prior to 2018, ending inventory for 2017 would have been \$130,000.
3. 7,000 units remained in inventory at the end of 2018.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry at the beginning of 2018 to record the change in principle.
2. In the 2018–2016 comparative financial statements, what will be the amounts of cost of goods sold and inventory reported for 2018?

P 20-5

Change in
inventory
methods

• LO20-2



Fantasy Fashions had used the LIFO method of costing inventories, but at the beginning of 2018 decided to change to the FIFO method. The inventory as reported at the end of 2017 using LIFO would have been \$20 million higher using FIFO.

Retained earnings reported at the end of 2016 and 2017 was \$240 million and \$260 million, respectively (reflecting the LIFO method). Those amounts reflecting the FIFO method would have been \$250 million and \$272 million, respectively. 2017 net income reported at the end of 2017 was \$28 million (LIFO method) but would have been \$30 million using FIFO. After changing to FIFO, 2018 net income was \$36 million. Dividends of \$8 million were paid each year. The tax rate is 40%.

Required:

1. Prepare the journal entry at the beginning of 2018 to record the change in accounting principle.
2. In the 2018–2017 comparative income statements, what will be the amounts of net income reported for 2017 and 2018?
3. Prepare the 2018–2017 retained earnings column of the comparative statements of shareholders' equity.

P 20-6

Change in principle; change in depreciation methods

• LO20-3

During 2016 and 2017, Faulkner Manufacturing used the sum-of-the-years'-digits (SYD) method of depreciation for its depreciable assets, for both financial reporting and tax purposes. At the beginning of 2018, Faulkner decided to change to the straight-line method for both financial reporting and tax purposes. A tax rate of 40% is in effect for all years.

For an asset that cost \$21,000 with an estimated residual value of \$1,000 and an estimated useful life of 10 years, the depreciation under different methods is as follows:

Year	Straight Line	SYD	Difference
2016	\$2,000	\$3,636	\$1,636
2017	2,000	3,273	1,273
	<u>\$4,000</u>	<u>\$6,909</u>	<u>\$2,909</u>

Required:

1. Describe the way Faulkner should account for the change described. Include in your answer any journal entry Faulkner will record in 2018 related to the change and any required footnote disclosures.
2. Suppose instead that Faulkner previously used straight-line depreciation and changed to sum-of-the-years'-digits in 2018. Describe the way Faulkner should account for the change. Include in your answer any journal entry Faulkner will record in 2018 related to the change and any required note disclosures.

P 20-7

Depletion; change in estimate

• LO20-4



In 2018, the Marion Company purchased land containing a mineral mine for \$1,600,000. Additional costs of \$600,000 were incurred to develop the mine. Geologists estimated that 400,000 tons of ore would be extracted. After the ore is removed, the land will have a resale value of \$100,000.

To aid in the extraction, Marion built various structures and small storage buildings on the site at a cost of \$150,000. These structures have a useful life of 10 years. The structures cannot be moved after the ore has been removed and will be left at the site. In addition, new equipment costing \$80,000 was purchased and installed at the site. Marion does not plan to move the equipment to another site, but estimates that it can be sold at auction for \$4,000 after the mining project is completed.

In 2018, 50,000 tons of ore were extracted and sold. In 2019, the estimate of total tons of ore in the mine was revised from 400,000 to 487,500. During 2019, 80,000 tons were extracted.

Required:

1. Compute depletion and depreciation of the mine and the mining facilities and equipment for 2018 and 2019. Marion uses the units-of-production method to determine depreciation on mining facilities and equipment.
2. Compute the book value of the mineral mine, structures, and equipment as of December 31, 2019.

P 20-8

Accounting changes; six situations

• LO20-1, LO20-3, LO20-4

Described below are six independent and unrelated situations involving accounting changes. Each change occurs during 2018 before any adjusting entries or closing entries were prepared. Assume the tax rate for each company is 40% in all years. Any tax effects should be adjusted through the deferred tax liability account.

- a. Fleming Home Products introduced a new line of commercial awnings in 2017 that carry a one-year warranty against manufacturer's defects. Based on industry experience, warranty costs were expected to approximate 3% of sales. Sales of the awnings in 2017 were \$3,500,000. Accordingly, warranty expense and a warranty liability of \$105,000 were recorded in 2017. In late 2018, the company's claims experience was evaluated, and it was determined that claims were far fewer than expected: 2% of sales rather than 3%. Sales of the awnings in 2018 were \$4,000,000, and warranty expenditures in 2018 totaled \$91,000.
- b. On December 30, 2014, Rival Industries acquired its office building at a cost of \$1,000,000. It was depreciated on a straight-line basis assuming a useful life of 40 years and no salvage value. However, plans were finalized in 2018 to relocate the company headquarters at the end of 2022. The vacated office building will have a salvage value at that time of \$700,000.
- c. Hobbs-Barto Merchandising, Inc., changed inventory cost methods to LIFO from FIFO at the end of 2018 for both financial statement and income tax purposes. Under FIFO, the inventory at January 1, 2018, is \$690,000.
- d. At the beginning of 2015, the Hoffman Group purchased office equipment at a cost of \$330,000. Its useful life was estimated to be 10 years with no salvage value. The equipment was depreciated by the sum-of-the-years'-digits method. On January 1, 2018, the company changed to the straight-line method.
- e. In November 2016, the State of Minnesota filed suit against Huggins Manufacturing Company, seeking penalties for violations of clean air laws. When the financial statements were issued in 2017, Huggins had not reached a settlement with state authorities, but legal counsel advised Huggins that it was probable the company would have to pay \$200,000 in penalties. Accordingly, the following entry was recorded:

Loss—litigation	200,000	
Liability—litigation.....		200,000

Late in 2018, a settlement was reached with state authorities to pay a total of \$350,000 in penalties.

- f. At the beginning of 2018, Jantzen Specialties, which uses the sum-of-the-years'-digits method, changed to the straight-line method for newly acquired buildings and equipment. The change increased current year net earnings by \$445,000.

Required:

For each situation:

1. Identify the type of change.
2. Prepare any journal entry necessary as a direct result of the change, as well as any adjusting entry for 2018 related to the situation described.
3. Briefly describe any other steps that should be taken to appropriately report the situation.

P 20–9

Accounting changes; identify type and reporting approach

- LO20–1 through LO20–4

At the beginning of 2018, Wagner Implements undertook a variety of changes in accounting methods, corrected several errors, and instituted new accounting policies.

Required:

Indicate for each item 1 to 10 below the type of change and the reporting approach Wagner would use.

Type of Change (choose one)	Reporting Approach (choose one)
P. Change in accounting principle	R. Retrospective approach
E. Change in accounting estimate	P. Prospective approach
EP. Change in estimate resulting from a change in principle	
X. Correction of an error	
N. Neither an accounting change nor an accounting error	

Change:

1. By acquiring additional stock, Wagner increased its investment in Wise, Inc., from a 12% interest to 25% and changed its method of accounting for the investment to the equity method.
2. Wagner instituted a postretirement benefit plan for its employees in 2018. Wagner did not previously have such a plan.
3. Wagner changed its method of depreciating computer equipment from the SYD method to the straight-line method.
4. Wagner determined that a liability insurance premium it both paid and expensed in 2017 covered the 2017–2019 period.
5. By selling shares in Launch Corp, Wagner decreased its investment in the company from a 23% interest to 15% and changed its method of accounting for the investment from the equity method to the fair value through net income method.
6. Due to an unexpected relocation, Wagner determined that its office building, previously depreciated using a 45-year life, should be depreciated using an 18-year life.
7. Wagner offers a three-year warranty on the farming equipment it sells. Manufacturing efficiencies caused Wagner to reduce its expectation of warranty costs from 2% of sales to 1% of sales.
8. Wagner changed from LIFO to FIFO to account for its materials and work-in-process inventories.
9. Wagner changed from FIFO to average cost to account for its equipment inventory.
10. Wagner sells extended service contracts on some of its equipment sold. Wagner performs services related to these contracts over several years, so in 2018, Wagner changed from recognizing revenue from these service contracts on a cash basis to the accrual basis.

P 20–10

Inventory errors

- LO20–6

You have been hired as the new controller for the Ralston Company. Shortly after joining the company in 2018, you discover the following errors related to the 2016 and 2017 financial statements:

- a. Inventory at 12/31/2016 was understated by \$6,000.
- b. Inventory at 12/31/2017 was overstated by \$9,000.
- c. On 12/31/2017, inventory was purchased for \$3,000. The company did not record the purchase until the inventory was paid for early in 2018. At that time, the purchase was recorded by a debit to purchases and a credit to cash.

The company uses a periodic inventory system.

Required:

1. Assuming that the errors were discovered after the 2017 financial statements were issued, analyze the effect of the errors on 2017 and 2016 cost of goods sold, net income, and retained earnings. (Ignore income taxes.)
2. Prepare a journal entry to correct the errors.
3. What other step(s) would be taken in connection with the error?

P 20-11

Error correction;
change in
depreciation
method

• LO20-6

The Collins Corporation purchased office equipment at the beginning of 2016 and capitalized a cost of \$2,000,000. This cost included the following expenditures:

Purchase price	\$1,850,000
Freight charges	30,000
Installation charges	20,000
Annual maintenance charge	100,000
Total	<u>\$2,000,000</u>

The company estimated an eight-year useful life for the equipment. No residual value is anticipated. The double-declining-balance method was used to determine depreciation expense for 2016 and 2017.

In 2018, after the 2017 financial statements were issued, the company decided to switch to the straight-line depreciation method for this equipment. At that time, the company's controller discovered that the original cost of the equipment incorrectly included one year of annual maintenance charges for the equipment.

Required:

1. Ignoring income taxes, prepare the appropriate correcting entry for the equipment capitalization error discovered in 2018.
2. Ignoring income taxes, prepare any 2018 journal entries related to the change in depreciation methods.

P 20-12

Accounting
changes and error
correction; seven
situations; tax
effects ignored

• LO20-1 through
LO20-4, LO20-6

Williams-Santana Inc. is a manufacturer of high-tech industrial parts that was started in 2006 by two talented engineers with little business training. In 2018, the company was acquired by one of its major customers. As part of an internal audit, the following facts were discovered. The audit occurred during 2018 before any adjusting entries or closing entries were prepared.

- a. A five-year casualty insurance policy was purchased at the beginning of 2016 for \$35,000. The full amount was debited to insurance expense at the time.
- b. Effective January 1, 2018, the company changed the salvage value used in calculating depreciation for its office building. The building cost \$600,000 on December 29, 2007, and has been depreciated on a straight-line basis assuming a useful life of 40 years and a salvage value of \$100,000. Declining real estate values in the area indicate that the salvage value will be no more than \$25,000.
- c. On December 31, 2017, merchandise inventory was overstated by \$25,000 due to a mistake in the physical inventory count using the periodic inventory system.
- d. The company changed inventory cost methods to FIFO from LIFO at the end of 2018 for both financial statement and income tax purposes. The change will cause a \$960,000 increase in the beginning inventory at January 1, 2019.
- e. At the end of 2017, the company failed to accrue \$15,500 of sales commissions earned by employees during 2017. The expense was recorded when the commissions were paid in early 2018.
- f. At the beginning of 2016, the company purchased a machine at a cost of \$720,000. Its useful life was estimated to be 10 years with no salvage value. The machine has been depreciated by the double-declining balance method. Its book value on December 31, 2017, was \$460,800. On January 1, 2018, the company changed to the straight-line method.
- g. Warranty expense is determined each year as 1% of sales. Actual payment experience of recent years indicates that 0.75% is a better indication of the actual cost. Management effects the change in 2018. Credit sales for 2018 are \$4,000,000; in 2017 they were \$3,700,000.

Required:

For each situation

1. Identify whether it represents an accounting change or an error. If an accounting change, identify the type of change.
2. Prepare any journal entry necessary as a direct result of the change or error correction, as well as any adjusting entry for 2018 related to the situation described. (Ignore tax effects.)
3. Briefly describe any other steps that should be taken to appropriately report the situation.

P 20-13

Accounting
changes and
error correction;
seven situations;
tax effects
considered

• LO20-1 through
LO20-4, LO20-6

(Note: This problem is a variation of P 20-12, modified to consider income tax effects.) Williams-Santana Inc. is a manufacturer of high-tech industrial parts that was started in 2006 by two talented engineers with little business training. In 2018, the company was acquired by one of its major customers. As part of an internal audit, the following facts were discovered. The audit occurred during 2018 before any adjusting entries or closing entries were prepared. The income tax rate is 40% for all years.

- a. A five-year casualty insurance policy was purchased at the beginning of 2016 for \$35,000. The full amount was debited to insurance expense at the time.
- b. Effective January 1, 2018, the company changed the salvage values used in calculating depreciation for its office building. The building cost \$600,000 on December 29, 2007, and has been depreciated on a



straight-line basis assuming a useful life of 40 years and a salvage value of \$100,000. Declining real estate values in the area indicate that the salvage value will be no more than \$25,000.

- c. On December 31, 2017, merchandise inventory was overstated by \$25,000 due to a mistake in the physical inventory count using the periodic inventory system.
- d. The company changed inventory cost methods to FIFO from LIFO at the end of 2018 for both financial statement and income tax purposes. The change will cause a \$960,000 increase in the beginning inventory at January 1, 2019.
- e. At the end of 2017, the company failed to accrue \$15,500 of sales commissions earned by employees during 2017. The expense was recorded when the commissions were paid in early 2018.
- f. At the beginning of 2016, the company purchased a machine at a cost of \$720,000. Its useful life was estimated to be ten years with no salvage value. The machine has been depreciated by the double-declining balance method. Its book value on December 31, 2017, was \$460,800. On January 1, 2018, the company changed to the straight-line method.
- g. Warranty expense is determined each year as 1% of sales. Actual payment experience of recent years indicates that 0.75% is a better indication of the actual cost. Management effects the change in 2018. Credit sales for 2018 are \$4,000,000; in 2017 they were \$3,700,000.

Required:

For each situation

1. Identify whether it represents an accounting change or an error. If an accounting change, identify the type of change.
2. Prepare any journal entry necessary as a direct result of the change or error correction, as well as any adjusting entry for 2018 related to the situation described. Any tax effects should be adjusted for through Income tax payable or Refund income tax.
3. Briefly describe any other steps that should be taken to appropriately report the situation.

P 20-14

Errors; change in estimate; change in principle; restatement of previous financial statements

- LO20-1, LO20-3, LO20-4, LO20-6



Whaley Distributors is a wholesale distributor of electronic components. Financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2017, reported the following amounts and subtotals (\$ in millions):

	Assets	Liabilities	Shareholders' Equity	Net Income	Expenses
2016	\$740	\$330	\$410	\$210	\$150
2017	820	400	420	230	175

In 2018, the following situations occurred or came to light:

- a. Internal auditors discovered that ending inventories reported on the financial statements the two previous years were misstated due to faulty internal controls. The errors were in the following amounts:

2016 inventory	Overstated by \$12 million
2017 inventory	Understated by \$10 million
- b. A liability was accrued in 2016 for a probable payment of \$7 million in connection with a lawsuit ultimately settled in December 2018 for \$4 million.
- c. A patent costing \$18 million at the beginning of 2016, expected to benefit operations for a total of six years, has not been amortized since acquired.
- d. Whaley's conveyor equipment was depreciated by the sum-of-the-years'-digits (SYD) basis since it was acquired at the beginning of 2016 at a cost of \$30 million. It has an expected useful life of five years and no expected residual value. At the beginning of 2018, Whaley decided to switch to straight-line depreciation.

Required:

For each situation

1. Prepare any journal entry necessary as a direct result of the change or error correction, as well as any adjusting entry for 2018 related to the situation described. (Ignore tax effects.)
2. Determine the amounts to be reported for each of the five items shown above from the 2016 and 2017 financial statements when those amounts are reported again in the 2016–2018 comparative financial statements.

P 20-15

Correction of errors; six errors

- LO20-6

Conrad Playground Supply underwent a restructuring in 2018. The company conducted a thorough internal audit, during which the following facts were discovered. The audit occurred during 2018 before any adjusting entries or closing entries are prepared.

- a. Additional computers were acquired at the beginning of 2016 and added to the company's office network. The \$45,000 cost of the computers was inadvertently recorded as maintenance expense. Computers have five-year useful lives and no material salvage value. This class of equipment is depreciated by the straight-line method.

- b. Two weeks prior to the audit, the company paid \$17,000 for assembly tools and recorded the expenditure as office supplies. The error was discovered a week later.
- c. On December 31, 2017, merchandise inventory was understated by \$78,000 due to a mistake in the physical inventory count. The company uses the periodic inventory system.
- d. Two years earlier, the company recorded a 4% stock dividend (2,000 common shares, \$1 par) as follows:

Retained earnings.....	2,000	
Common stock		2,000

The shares had a market price at the time of \$12 per share.

- e. At the end of 2017, the company failed to accrue \$104,000 of interest expense that accrued during the last four months of 2017 on bonds payable. The bonds, which were issued at face value, mature in 2022. The following entry was recorded on March 1, 2018, when the semiannual interest was paid, as well as on September 1 of each year:

Interest expense	156,000	
Cash		156,000

- f. A three-year liability insurance policy was purchased at the beginning of 2017 for \$72,000. The full premium was debited to insurance expense at the time.

Required:

For each error, prepare any journal entry necessary to correct the error, as well as any year-end adjusting entry for 2018 related to the situation described. (Ignore income taxes.)

P 20-16

Integrating
problem; errors;
deferred taxes;
contingency;
change in tax
rates

• LO20-6



You are internal auditor for Shannon Supplies, Inc., and are reviewing the company's preliminary financial statements. The statements, prepared after making the adjusting entries, but before closing entries for the year ended December 31, 2018, are as follows:

SHANNON SUPPLIES, INC.

**Balance Sheet
December 31, 2018**

Assets	(\$ in thousands)
Cash	\$2,400
Investments	250
Accounts receivable, net	810
Inventory	1,060
Property, plant, and equipment	1,240
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(560)
Total assets	<u>\$5,200</u>
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity	
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	\$3,320
Income tax payable	220
Common stock, \$1 par	200
Additional paid-in capital	750
Retained earnings	710
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	<u>\$5,200</u>

SHANNON SUPPLIES, INC.

**Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018**

Sales revenue		\$3,400
Operating expenses:		
Cost of goods sold	\$1,140	
Selling and administrative	896	
Depreciation	84	2,120
Income before income tax		1,280
Income tax expense		(512)
Net income		<u>\$ 768</u>

Shannon's income tax rate was 40% in 2018 and previous years. During the course of the audit, the following additional information (not considered when the above statements were prepared) was obtained:

- a. Shannon's investment portfolio consists of blue chip stocks held for long-term appreciation. To raise working capital, some of the shares with an original cost of \$180,000 were sold in May 2018. Shannon accountants debited cash and credited investments for the \$220,000 proceeds of the sale.

- b. At December 31, 2018, the fair value of the remaining securities in the portfolio was \$274,000.
- c. The state of Alabama filed suit against Shannon in October 2016, seeking civil penalties and injunctive relief for violations of environmental regulations regulating emissions. Shannon's legal counsel previously believed that an unfavorable outcome was not probable, but based on negotiations with state attorneys in 2018, now believe eventual payment to the state of \$130,000 is probable, most likely to be paid in 2021.
- d. The \$1,060,000 inventory total, which was based on a physical count at December 31, 2018, was priced at cost. Based on your conversations with company accountants, you determined that the inventory cost was overstated by \$132,000.
- e. Electronic counters costing \$80,000 were added to the equipment on December 29, 2017. The cost was charged to repairs.
- f. Shannon's equipment, on which the counters were installed, had a remaining useful life of four years on December 29, 2017, and is being depreciated by the straight-line method for both financial and tax reporting.
- g. A new tax law was enacted in 2018 which will cause Shannon's income tax rate to change from 40% to 35% beginning in 2019.

Required:

Prepare journal entries to record the effects on Shannon's accounting records at December 31, 2018, for each of the items described above. Show all calculations.

P 20-17

Integrating
problem; error;
depreciation;
deferred taxes

● LO20-6

George Young Industries (GYI) acquired industrial robots at the beginning of 2015 and added them to the company's assembly process. During 2018, management became aware that the \$1 million cost of the machinery was inadvertently recorded as repair expense on GYI's books and on its income tax return. The industrial robots have 10-year useful lives and no material salvage value. This class of equipment is depreciated by the straight-line method for financial reporting purposes and for tax purposes it is considered to be MACRS 7-year property. Cost deducted over 7 years by the modified accelerated recovery system as follows:

Year	MACRS Deductions
2015	\$ 142,900
2016	244,900
2017	174,900
2018	124,900
2019	89,300
2020	89,200
2021	89,300
2022	44,600
Totals	<u>\$1,000,000</u>

The tax rate is 40% for all years involved.

Required:

1. Prepare any journal entry necessary as a direct result of the error described.
2. Briefly describe any other steps GYI would take to appropriately report the situation.
3. Prepare the adjusting entry for 2018 depreciation.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

**Integrating
Case 20-1**

Change to dollar-
value LIFO

● LO20-3

Webster Products, Inc., adopted the dollar-value LIFO method of determining inventory costs for financial and income tax reporting on January 1, 2018. Webster continues to use the FIFO method for internal decision-making purposes. Webster's FIFO inventories at December 31, 2018, 2019, and 2020, were \$300,000, \$412,500, and \$585,000, respectively. Internally generated cost indexes are used to convert FIFO inventory amounts to dollar-value LIFO amounts. Webster estimated these indexes as follows:

2018	1.00
2019	1.25
2020	1.50

Required:

1. Determine Webster's dollar-value LIFO inventory at December 31, 2019 and 2020.
2. Describe how the change should have been reported in Webster's 2018 financial statements.

Communication**Case 20–2**

Change in inventory method; disclosure note

• LO20–2

Mayfair Department Stores operates over 30 retail stores in the Pacific Northwest. Prior to 2018, the company used the FIFO method to value its inventory. In 2018, Mayfair decided to switch to the dollar-value LIFO retail inventory method. One of your responsibilities as assistant controller is to prepare the disclosure note describing the change in method that will be included in the company's 2018 financial statements. Kenneth Meier, the controller, provided the following information:

- Internally developed retail price indexes are used to adjust for the effects of changing prices.
- If the change had not been made, cost of goods sold for the year would have been \$22 million lower. The company's income tax rate is 40% and there were 100 million shares of common stock outstanding during 2018.
- The cumulative effect of the change on prior years' income is not determinable.
- The reasons for the change were (a) to provide a more consistent matching of merchandise costs with sales revenue, and (b) the new method provides a more comparable basis of accounting with competitors that also use the LIFO method.

Required:

1. Prepare for Kenneth Meier the disclosure note that will be included in the 2018 financial statements.
2. Explain why the "cumulative effect of the change on prior years' income is not determinable."

Ethics Case 20–3

Softening the blow

• LO20–1, LO20–2, LO20–3

Late one Thursday afternoon, Joy Martin, a veteran audit manager with a regional CPA firm, was reviewing documents for a long-time client of the firm, AMT Transport. The year-end audit was scheduled to begin Monday.

For three months, the economy had been in a down cycle and the transportation industry was particularly hard hit. As a result, Joy expected AMT's financial results would not be pleasant news to shareholders. However, what Joy saw in the preliminary statements made her sigh aloud. Results were much worse than she feared.

"Larry (the company president) already is in the doghouse with shareholders," Joy thought to herself. "When they see these numbers, they'll hang him out to dry."

"I wonder if he's considered some strategic accounting changes," she thought, after reflecting on the situation. "The bad news could be softened quite a bit by changing inventory methods from LIFO to FIFO or reconsidering some of the estimates used in other areas."

Required:

1. How would the actions contemplated contribute toward "softening" the bad news?
2. Do you perceive an ethical dilemma? What would be the likely impact of following up on Joy's thoughts? Who would benefit? Who would be injured?

Analysis**Case 20–4**

Change in inventory methods; concepts

• LO20–2, LO20–3

Generally accepted accounting principles should be applied consistently from period to period. However, changes within a company, as well as changes in the external economic environment, may force a company to change an accounting method. The specific reporting requirements when a company changes from one generally accepted inventory method to another depend on the methods involved.

Required:

Explain the accounting treatment for a change in inventory method (a) not involving LIFO, (b) from the LIFO method, and (c) to the LIFO method. Explain the logic underlying those treatments. Also, describe how disclosure requirements are designed to address the departure from consistency and comparability of changes in accounting principle.

Communication**Case 20–5**

Change in loss contingency; write a memo

• LO20–4

Late in 2018, you and two other officers of Curbo Fabrications Corporation just returned from a meeting with officials of the City of Jackson. The meeting was unexpectedly favorable even though it culminated in a settlement with city authorities that your company pay a total of \$475,000 to cover the cost of violations of city construction codes. Jackson filed suit in November 2016 against Curbo Fabrications Corporation, seeking civil penalties and injunctive relief for violations of city construction codes regulating earthquake damage standards. Alleged violations involved several construction projects completed during the previous three years. When the financial statements were issued in 2017, Curbo had not reached a settlement with state authorities, but legal counsel had advised the company that it was probable the ultimate settlement would be \$750,000 in penalties. The following entry was recorded:

Loss—litigation	750,000	
Liability—litigation.....		750,000

The final settlement, therefore, was a pleasant surprise. While returning from the meeting, conversation turned to reporting the settlement in the 2018 financial statements. You drew the short straw and were selected to write a memo to Janet Zeno, the financial vice president, advising the proper course of action.

Required:

Write the memo. Include descriptions of any journal entries related to the change in amounts. Briefly describe other steps Curbo should take to report the settlement.

Analysis**Case 20–6**

Two wrongs make a right?

• LO20–4

Early one Wednesday afternoon, Ken and Larry studied in the dormitory room they shared at Fogelman College. Ken, an accounting major, was advising Larry, a management major, regarding a project for Larry's Business Policy class. One aspect of the project involved analyzing the 2018 annual report of Craft Paper Company. Though not central to his business policy case, a footnote had caught Larry's attention.

Depreciation and Cost of Timber Harvested (in part)

(\$ in millions)	2018	2017	2016
Depreciation of buildings, machinery and equipment	\$260.9	\$329.8	\$322.5
Cost of timber harvested and amortization of logging roads	4.9	4.9	4.9
	<u>\$265.8</u>	<u>\$334.7</u>	<u>\$327.4</u>

Beginning in 2018, the Company revised the estimated average useful lives used to compute depreciation for most of its pulp and paper mill equipment from 16 years to 20 years and for most of its finishing and converting equipment from 12 years to 15 years. These revisions were made to more properly reflect the true economic lives of the assets and to better align the Company's depreciable lives with the predominant practice in the industry. The change had the effect of increasing net income by approximately \$55 million.

"If I understand this right, Ken, the company is not going back and recalculating a lower depreciation for earlier years. Instead they seem to be leaving depreciation overstated in earlier years and making up for that by understating it in current and future years," Larry mused. "Is that the way it is in accounting? Two wrongs make a right?"

Required:

What are the two wrongs to which Larry refers? Is he right?

Research**Case 20–7**

FASB codification; researching the way changes in postretirement benefit estimates are reported; retrieving disclosures from the Internet

• LO20–4

It's financial statements preparation time at Center Industries, where you have been assistant controller for two months. Ben Huddler, the controller, seems to be pleasant but unpredictable. Today, although your schedule is filled with meetings with internal and outside auditors and two members of the board of directors, Ben made a request. "As you know, we're decreasing the rate at which we assume health care costs will rise when measuring our postretirement benefit obligation. I'd like to know how others have reported similar changes. Can you find me an example?" he asked. "I'd bet you could get one off the Internet." As a matter of fact, you often use EDGAR, the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system (www.sec.gov), to access financial statements filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC).

Required:

1. Access EDGAR on the Internet. Access a recent 10-K filing of a firm you think might have a postretirement health care plan. You may need to look up several companies before you find what you're looking for. Older, established companies are most likely to have such benefit plans.

(Note: You may be able to focus your search by searching with key words and phrases in Google on the Internet.)

2. Find the portion of the disclosures that reports the effect of a change in health care cost trends.
3. What information is provided about the effect of the change on the company's estimated benefit obligation?
4. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on the disclosure of accounting policies using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). What authoritative literature do companies rely on when disclosing the effect of a change in health care cost trends?

**Analysis****Case 20–8**

Various changes

• LO20–1 through LO20–4

DRS Corporation changed the way it depreciates its computers from the sum-of-the-year's-digits method to the straight-line method beginning January 1, 2018. DRS also changed its estimated residual value used in computing depreciation for its office building. At the end of 2018, DRS changed the specific subsidiaries constituting the group of companies for which its consolidated financial statements are prepared.

Required:

1. For each accounting change DRS undertook, indicate the type of change and how DRS should report the change. Be specific.
2. Why should companies disclose changes in accounting principles?

Analysis**Case 20–9**

Various changes

- LO20–1 through LO20–4

Ray Solutions decided to make the following changes in its accounting policies on January 1, 2018:

- Changed from the cash to the accrual basis of accounting for recognizing revenue on its service contracts.
- Adopted straight-line depreciation for all future equipment purchases, but continued to use accelerated depreciation for all equipment acquired before 2018.
- Changed from the LIFO inventory method to the FIFO inventory method.

Required:

For each accounting change Ray undertook, indicate the type of change and how Ray should report the change. Be specific.

Judgment**Case 20–10**

Accounting changes; independent situations

- LO20–1 through LO20–5

Sometimes a business entity will change its method of accounting for certain items. The change may be classified as a change in accounting principle, a change in accounting estimate, or a change in reporting entity. Listed below are three independent, unrelated sets of facts relating to accounting changes.

Situation I: A company determined that the depreciable lives of its fixed assets are presently too long to fairly match the cost of the fixed assets with the revenue produced. The company decided at the beginning of the current year to reduce the depreciable lives of all of its existing fixed assets by five years.

Situation II: On December 31, 2017, Gary Company owned 51% of Allen Company, at which time Gary reported its investment on a nonconsolidated basis due to political uncertainties in the country in which Allen was located. On January 2, 2018, the management of Gary Company was satisfied that the political uncertainties were resolved and the assets of the company were in no danger of nationalization. Accordingly, Gary will prepare consolidated financial statements for Gary and Allen for the year ended December 31, 2018.

Situation III: A company decides in January 2018 to adopt the straight-line method of depreciation for plant equipment. The straight-line method will be used for new acquisitions as well as for previously acquired plant equipment, for which depreciation had been provided on an accelerated basis.

Required:

For each of the situations described above, provide the information indicated below. Complete your discussion of each situation before going on to the next situation.

- Type of accounting change
- Manner of reporting the change under current generally accepted accounting principles, including a discussion, where applicable, of how amounts are computed
- Effect of the change on the balance sheet and income statement
- Footnote disclosures that would be necessary

Judgment**Case 20–11**

Inventory errors

- LO20–6

Some inventory errors are said to be “self-correcting,” in that the error has the opposite financial statement effect in the period following the error, thereby “correcting,” the original account balance errors.

Required:

Despite this self-correcting feature, discuss why these errors should not be ignored and describe the steps required to account for the error correction.

Ethics**Case 20–12**

Overstatement of ending inventory

- LO20–6

Danville Bottlers is a wholesale beverage company. Danville uses the FIFO inventory method to determine the cost of its ending inventory. Ending inventory quantities are determined by a physical count. For the fiscal year-end June 30, 2018, ending inventory was originally determined to be \$3,265,000. However, on July 17, 2018, John Howard, the company’s controller, discovered an error in the ending inventory count. He determined that the correct ending inventory amount should be \$2,600,000.

Danville is a privately owned corporation with significant financing provided by a local bank. The bank requires annual audited financial statements as a condition of the loan. By July 17, the auditors had completed their review of the financial statements which are scheduled to be issued on July 25. They did not discover the inventory error.

John’s first reaction was to communicate his finding to the auditors and to revise the financial statements before they are issued. However, he knows that his and his fellow workers’ profit-sharing plans are based on annual pretax earnings and that if he revises the statements, everyone’s profit sharing bonus will be significantly reduced.

Required:

- Why will bonuses be negatively affected? What is the effect on pretax earnings?
- If the error is not corrected in the current year and is discovered by the auditors during the following year’s audit, how will the error be reported in the company’s financial statements?
- Discuss the ethical dilemma Howard faces.

Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO20–2, LO20–4

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company's website (www.target.com). Target's share-based compensation includes several long-term incentive plans.

Required:

1. Refer to Target's financial statements for the year ended January 30, 2016. Note 12 provides information on Target's inventories. What method does Target use to report most of its inventories? If Target changed that method to another method, what are the steps Target would take to account for and report the change?
2. Suppose that Target uses FIFO costing method but decided to change to the LIFO method. What are the steps Target would take to account for and report the change?

Air France–KLM Case



- LO20–2

Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are available in Connect. This material also is available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm-finance.com).

Required:

1. Refer to AF's disclosure notes, in particular Note 2: Restatement of Accounts 2014. For the three changes in accounting principle reported in the note, does AF account for the changes prospectively or retrospectively? Is this the same approach AF would follow if using U.S. GAAP?
2. For the change described in 2.1, which if any account balances required adjustment?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.

21

The Statement of Cash Flows Revisited

OVERVIEW

The objective of financial reporting is to provide investors and creditors with useful information, primarily in the form of financial statements. The balance sheet and the income statement—the focus of your study in earlier chapters—do not provide all the information needed by these decision makers. Here you will learn how the statement of cash flows fills the information gap left by the other financial statements.

The statement lists all cash inflows and cash outflows, and classifies them as cash flows from (a) operating, (b) investing, or (c) financing activities. Investing and financing activities that do not directly affect cash also are reported.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- **LO21-1** Explain the usefulness of the statement of cash flows. (*p.* 1205)
- **LO21-2** Define cash equivalents. (*p.* 1209)
- **LO21-3** Determine cash flows from operating activities by the direct method. (*p.* 1210)
- **LO21-4** Determine cash flows from operating activities by the indirect method. (*p.* 1211)
- **LO21-5** Identify transactions that are classified as investing activities. (*p.* 1212)
- **LO21-6** Identify transactions that are classified as financing activities. (*p.* 1213)
- **LO21-7** Identify transactions that represent noncash investing and financing activities. (*p.* 1215)
- **LO21-8** Prepare a statement of cash flows with the aid of a spreadsheet or T-accounts. (*p.* 1215)
- **LO21-9** Discuss the primary differences between U.S. GAAP and IFRS with respect to the statement of cash flows. (*p.* 1235)



© Jose Luis Pelaez Inc./Blend Images LLC

FINANCIAL REPORTING CASE

Where's the Cash?

"What do you mean you can't afford a wage increase?" union negotiator Vince Barr insisted. "We've all seen your income statement. You had record earnings this year."

This is the first day of company negotiations with union representatives. As company controller, you know it's going to be up to you to explain the company's position on the financial aspects of the negotiations. In fact, you've known for some time that a critical point of contention would be the moderate increase in this year's profits after three years of level or slightly declining earnings. Not helping the situation is that the

company has always used accelerated depreciation on its equipment, which it began replacing this year at considerably higher prices than it cost several years back.

By the time you finish this chapter, you should be able to respond appropriately to the questions posed in this case. Compare your response to the solution provided at the end of the chapter.

1. What are the cash flow aspects of the situation that Mr. Barr may be overlooking in making his case for a wage increase? How can a company's operations generate a healthy profit and yet produce meager or even negative cash flows? (p. 1210)
2. What information can a statement of cash flows provide about a company's investing activities that can be useful in decisions such as this? (p. 1212)
3. What information can a statement of cash flows provide about a company's financing activities that can be useful in decisions such as this? (p. 1213)

QUESTIONS

The Content and Value of the Statement of Cash Flows

PART A

Decision Makers' Perspective—Usefulness of Cash Flow Information

A fund manager of a major insurance company, considering investing \$8,000,000 in the common stock of **The Coca-Cola Company**, asks herself, "What are the prospects of future dividends and market-price appreciation? Will we get a return commensurate with the cost and risk of our investment?" A bank officer, examining an application for a business loan, asks himself, "If I approve this loan, what is the likelihood of the borrower making interest payments on time and repaying the loan when due?" Investors and creditors continually face these and similar decisions that require projections of the relative ability of a business to generate future cash flows and of the risk associated with those forecasts.

To make these projections, decision makers rely heavily on the information reported in periodic financial statements. In the final analysis, cash flows into and out of a business enterprise are the most fundamental events on which investors and creditors base their decisions. Naturally, these decisions focus on the prospects of the decision makers receiving cash returns from their dealings with the firm. However, it is the ability of the firm to

● LO21-1

Investors and creditors
require cash flows from
the corporation.

Cash flows to investors and creditors depend on the corporation generating cash flows to itself.

generate cash flows to itself that ultimately determines the potential for cash flows from the firm to investors and creditors.

The financial statements that have been the focus of your study in earlier chapters—the income statement and the balance sheet—offer information helpful in forecasting future cash-generating ability. Some important questions, however, are not easily answered from the information these statements provide. For example, meaningful projections of a company's future profitability and risk depend on answers to such questions as:

- In what types of activities is the company investing?
- Are these activities being financed with debt? With equity? By cash generated from operations?
- Are facilities being acquired to accommodate future expansion?
- How does the amount of cash generated from operations compare with net income over time?
- Why isn't the increase in retained earnings reflected as an increase in dividends?
- What happens to the cash received from the sale of assets?
- By what means is debt being retired?

The information needed to answer these and similar questions is found in the continuous series of cash flows that the income statement and the balance sheet describe only indirectly. This underlying cash flow process is considered next. ●

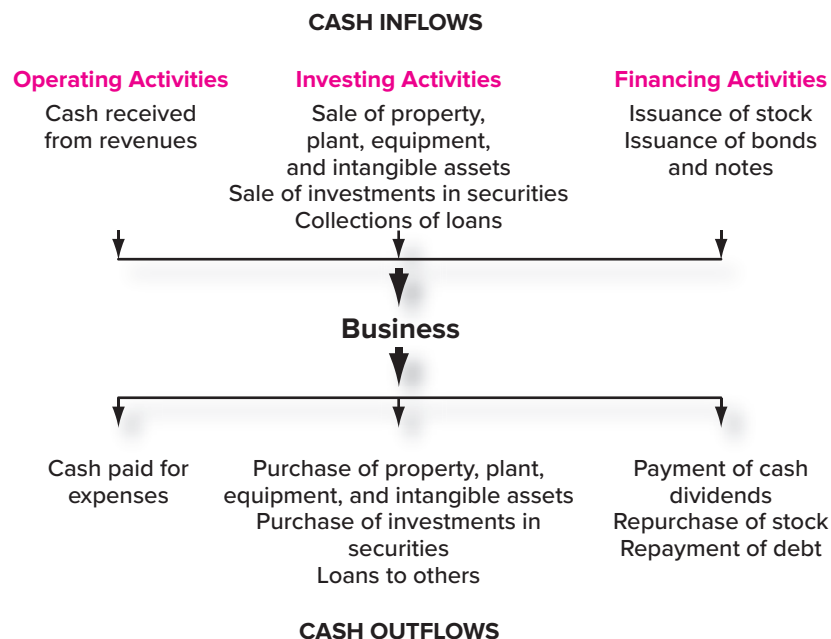
Many decisions benefit from information about the company's underlying cash flow process.

Cash Inflows and Outflows

Cash continually flows in and out of an active business. Businesses disburse cash to acquire property and equipment to maintain or expand productive capacity. When no longer needed, these assets may be sold for cash. Cash is paid to produce or purchase inventory for resale, as well as to pay for the expenses of selling these goods. The ultimate outcome of these selling activities is an inflow of cash. Cash might be invested in securities of other firms. These investments provide cash inflows during the investment period in the form of dividends or interest and at the end of the investment period when the securities are sold. To raise cash to finance their operations, firms sell stock and/or acquire debt. Cash payments are made as dividends to shareholders and interest to creditors. When debt is repaid or stock repurchased, cash flows out of the firm. To help you visualize the continual process of cash receipts and cash payments, that process is diagrammed in Illustration 21–1. The diagram also previews the way we will later classify the cash flows in a statement of cash flows.

Illustration 21–1

Cash Inflows and Cash Outflows



Embodied in this assortment of cash flows is a wealth of information that investors and creditors require to make educated decisions. Much of the value of the underlying information provided by the cash flows is lost when reported only indirectly by the balance sheet and the income statement. Each cash flow eventually impacts decision makers by affecting the balances of various accounts in the balance sheet. Also, many of the cash flows—those related to income-producing activities—are represented in the income statement. However, they are not necessarily reported in the period the cash flows occur because the income statement measures activities on an accrual basis. The statement of cash flows fills the information gap by reporting the cash flows directly.

The statement of cash flows provides information about cash flows that is lost when reported only indirectly by the balance sheet and the income statement.

Structure of the Statement of Cash Flows

A statement of cash flows is shown in Illustration 21–2. The statement lists all cash inflows and cash outflows during the reporting period. To enhance the informational value of the presentation, the cash flows are classified according to the nature of the activities that bring about the cash flows. The three primary categories of cash flows are (1) cash flows from operating activities, (2) cash flows from investing activities, and (3) cash flows from financing activities. Classifying each cash flow by source (operating, investing, or financing activities) is more informative than simply listing the various cash flows. Notice, too, that the noncash investing and financing activities—investing and financing activities that do not directly increase or decrease cash—also are reported. The GAAP requirement for the statement of cash flows was issued in direct response to *FASB Concept Statement 1*, which stated that the primary objective of financial reporting is to “provide information to help investors and creditors, and others assess the amounts, timing, and uncertainty of prospective net cash inflows to the related enterprise.”¹

Many companies suffered bankruptcy because they were unable to generate sufficient cash to satisfy their obligations. Doubtless, many investors in the stock of these firms would have been spared substantial losses if the financial statements had been designed to foresee the cash flow problems the companies were experiencing. A noted illustration is the demise of **W. T. Grant** during the 1970s. Grant, a general retailer in the days before malls, was a blue chip stock of its time. Grant’s statement of changes in financial position (the predecessor of the statement of cash flows) reported working capital from operations of \$46 million in 1972. Yet, if presented, a statement of cash flows would have reported cash flows from operating activities of negative \$10 million. In fact, the unreported cash flow deficiency grew to \$114 million in 1973, while working capital from operations was reported as having increased by \$1 million. That year, without the benefit of cash flow information, investors were buying Grant’s stock at prices that represented up to 20 times its earnings.²

More recently, even with cash flow information available, cash flow problems can go unnoticed. An example is the rapid growth and subsequent bankruptcy of the **Wicks ‘N’ Sticks** franchise. The company’s drive for rapid growth led to a dependence on the sale of new franchises in order to generate cash flow instead of doing so in a more healthy way internally through its operations. As we see shortly, a statement of cash flows can indicate not just the amount of cash flows, but also whether those cash flows are coming from internal operations or from outside sources. Wicks ‘N’ Sticks was able to emerge from bankruptcy through restructuring and a new perspective on cash flow management.

Realize, too, that an unprofitable company with good cash flow can survive. **Amazon.com** provides an excellent example. Founded as an online seller of books in 1995, Amazon didn’t actually make a profit for a decade, but it did raise huge amounts of cash by selling stock, so much so that it was able to weather 10 years of sizable losses. The financing cash inflows funded expansion into many new lines of business and made up for the continual losses. Amazon now has positive operating cash flows and is profitable.

¹FASB Concepts Statement No. 8, Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting—Chapter 1, *The Objective of General Purpose Financial Reporting*, and Chapter 3, *Qualitative Characteristics of Useful Financial Information* (a replacement of FASB Concepts Statements No. 1 and No. 2), September 2010.

²Cheryl A. Zega, “The New Statement of Cash Flows,” *Management Accounting*, September 1988.

Illustration 21-2

Statement of Cash Flows

UNITED BRANDS CORPORATION	
Statement of Cash Flows	
For Year Ended December 31, 2018	
Cash Flows from Operating Activities	(\$ in millions)
Cash inflows:	
From customers	\$ 98
From investment revenue	3
Cash outflows:	
To suppliers of goods	(50)
To employees	(11)
For interest	(3)
For insurance	(4)
For income taxes	(11)
<i>Net cash flows from operating activities</i>	<u>\$ 22</u>
Cash Flows from Investing Activities	
Purchase of land	(30)
Purchase of short-term investment	(12)
Sale of land	18
Sale of equipment	5
<i>Net cash flows from investing activities</i>	<u>(19)</u>
Cash Flows from Financing Activities	
Sale of common shares	26
Retirement of bonds payable	(15)
Payment of cash dividends	(5)
<i>Net cash flows from financing activities</i>	<u>6</u>
<i>Net increase in cash</i>	<u>9</u>
Cash balance, January 1	<u>20</u>
Cash balance, December 31	<u><u>\$ 29</u></u>

Note X:	
Noncash Investing and Financing Activities	
Acquired \$20 million of equipment by issuing a 12%, 5-year note	<u>\$ 20</u>
Reconciliation of Net Income to Cash Flows from Operating Activities:	
Net income	\$ 12
<i>Adjustments for noncash effects:</i>	
Gain on sale of land	(8)
Depreciation expense	3
Loss on sale of equipment	2
<i>Changes in operating assets and liabilities:</i>	
Increase in accounts receivable	(2)
Decrease in inventory	4
Increase in accounts payable	6
Increase in salaries payable	2
Discount on bonds payable	2
Decrease in prepaid insurance	3
Decrease in income tax payable	(2)
<i>Net cash flows from operating activities</i>	<u><u>\$ 22</u></u>

The Importance of Cash Flows in an Economic Decline

The near-collapse of **Bear Stearns** in the Spring of 2008 likely will be remembered as the single most dramatic event in exposing the fragility of Wall Street and precipitating the most severe financial crisis since the Great Depression. At the heart of Bear's calamity and the subsequent worldwide economic decline was a shortage of cash flows. First Bear

Stearns; then **Lehman Brothers**; then **AIG**, **Citigroup**, **Fannie Mae**, and **Freddie Mac**. As we know, it didn't stop there. Each of these meltdowns involved a lack of measuring and monitoring the ebb and flow of cash.

When the financial industry is burdened with enormous amounts of uncollectible debt, as during the recent credit crisis, banks and others are reluctant to lend money. Cash becomes scarce. It's critical for companies to monitor their cash flows.

Let's say Lucky Strike Lures, Inc. manufactures fishing lures and sells them to a distributor. The distributor warehouses them before selling them to Bubba's Bait Shop, where they are put on display awaiting customers to buy them. During an economic downturn, the customers may delay buying the lures or not buy them at all. So, the lures stay in the store gathering dust, and Bubba's Bait can't pay for the lures that haven't sold. The distributor is then slow to pay Lucky Strike. Lucky Strike has bills to pay but no cash. In normal times, the company would go to the bank and borrow money. But in hard times, the bank is reluctant to lend. There is no quick fix as normal financing options are closed. Lucky Strike has cash flowing out but not flowing in.

The survival and success of every business depends on its ability to create or otherwise attain cash. You can be profitable and still go broke. Companies must closely plan and monitor their cash flows to stay in business. During the recent economic decline, even some of the most well-known companies suffered the consequences of not following this principle.

Cash is king! Especially during an economic downturn.

The statement of cash flows for United Brands Corporation (UBC), shown in Illustration 21–2, is intended at this point in the discussion to illustrate the basic structure and composition of the statement. Later, we will see how the statement of cash flows for UBC is prepared from the information typically available for this purpose. We will refer to UBC's statement of cash flows frequently throughout the chapter as the discussion becomes more specific regarding the criteria for classifying cash flows in the three primary categories and as we identify the specific cash flows to be reported on the statement. We will examine the content of the statement in more detail following a look at how this relatively recent financial statement has evolved to its present form over the course of the last several decades.

Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Restricted Cash

Skilled cash managers will invest temporarily idle cash in short-term investments to earn interest on those funds, rather than maintain an unnecessarily large balance in a checking account. The FASB views short-term, highly liquid investments that can be readily converted to cash, with little risk of loss, as **cash equivalents**. Amounts held as investments of this type are essentially equivalent to cash because they are quickly available for use as cash. Therefore, on the statement of cash flows there is no differentiation between amounts held as cash (e.g., currency and checking accounts) and amounts held in cash equivalent investments. Similarly, sometimes companies might have contractual agreements that require specific amounts to be set aside for designated purposes, like debt repayment or workers' compensation claims. Those restricted cash amounts also are part of reported cash balances. So, when we refer in this chapter to cash, we are referring to the total of cash, cash equivalents, and restricted cash.

Examples of cash equivalents are money market funds, Treasury bills, and commercial paper. To be classified as cash equivalents, these investments must have a maturity date not longer than three months from the date of purchase. Flexibility is permitted in designating cash equivalents. Each company must establish a policy regarding which short-term, highly liquid investments it classifies as cash equivalents. The policy should be consistent with the company's customary motivation for acquiring various investments and should be disclosed in the notes to the statement.³ A recent annual report of **ExxonMobil Corporation** provides this description of its cash equivalents (Illustration 21–3):

Note 4: Cash Flow Information (in part)

The consolidated statement of cash flows provides information about changes in cash and cash equivalents. Highly liquid investments with maturities of three months or less when acquired are classified as cash equivalents.

³A change in that policy is treated as a change in accounting principle.

LO21–2

There is no differentiation between amounts held as cash and amounts held in cash equivalent investments or as restricted cash.

Each firm's policy regarding which short-term, highly liquid investments it classifies as cash equivalents should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.

Illustration 21–3

Disclosure of Cash Equivalents—ExxonMobil Corporation

Real World Financials

Transactions that involve merely transfers from cash to cash equivalents (such as the purchase of a three-month Treasury bill), or from cash equivalents to cash (such as the sale of a Treasury bill), should not be reported on the statement of cash flows. The total of cash and cash equivalents is not altered by such transactions.⁴ The cash balance reported in the balance sheet also represents the total of cash and cash equivalents, which allows us to compare the change in that balance with the net increase or decrease in the cash flows reported on the statement of cash flows.

● LO21-3 Primary Elements of the Statement of Cash Flows

This section describes the three primary activity classifications: (1) operating activities, (2) investing activities, and (3) financing activities. It also describes two other requirements of the statement of cash flows: (4) the reconciliation of the net increase or decrease in cash with the change in the balance of the cash account and (5) noncash investing and financing activities.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q1, p. 1205

The cash effects of the elements of net income are reported as cash flows from operating activities.

CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES. The income statement reports the success of a business in generating a profit from its operations. Net income (or loss) is the result of netting together the revenues recognized during the reporting period, regardless of when cash is received, and the expenses incurred in generating those revenues, regardless of when cash is paid. This is the accrual concept of accounting that has been emphasized throughout your study of accounting. Information about net income and its components, measured by the accrual concept, generally provides a better indication of current operating performance than does information about current cash receipts and payments.⁵ Nevertheless, as indicated earlier, the cash effects of earning activities also provide useful information that is not directly accessible from the income statement. The first cash flow classification in the statement of cash flows reports that information.

Cash flows from operating activities are both inflows and outflows of cash that result from activities reported in the income statement. In other words, this classification of cash flows includes the elements of net income, but reported on a cash basis. The components of this section of the statement of cash flows, and their relationship with the elements of the income statement, are illustrated in Illustration 21-4.

Illustration 21-4

Relationship between the Income Statement and Cash Flows from Operating Activities (Direct Method)

Income Statement	Cash Flows from Operating Activities
Revenues:	Cash inflows:
Sales and service revenue	Cash received from customers
Investment revenue	Cash revenue received (e.g., dividends, interest)
Noncash revenues and gains (e.g., gain on sale of assets)	(Not reported)
Less: Expenses:	Less: Cash outflows:
Cost of goods sold	Cash paid to suppliers of inventory
Salaries expense	Cash paid to employees
Noncash expenses and losses (e.g., depreciation, amortization, loss on sale of assets)	(Not reported)
Interest expense	Cash paid to creditors
Other operating expenses	Cash paid to insurance companies and others
Income tax expense	Cash paid to the government
Net income	Net cash flows from operating activities

⁴An exception is the sale of a cash equivalent at a gain or loss. This exception is described in more detail later in the chapter.

⁵FASB Concepts Statement No. 8, *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*—Chapter 1, “The Objective of General Purpose Financial Reporting,” and Chapter 3, “Qualitative Characteristics of Useful Financial Information” (a replacement of FASB Concepts Statements No. 1 and No. 2), September 2010.

To see the concept applied, let's look again at the cash flows from operating activities reported by United Brands Corporation. That section of the statement of cash flows is extracted from Illustration 21–2 and reproduced in Illustration 21–5.

Cash Flows from Operating Activities:

Cash inflows:		
From customers	\$ 98	
From investment revenue	3	
Cash outflows:		
To suppliers of goods	(50)	
To employees	(11)	
For interest	(3)	
For insurance	(4)	
For income taxes	(11)	
<i>Net cash flows from operating activities</i>		\$22

Illustration 21–5

Cash Flows from Operating Activities; Direct Method

Cash flows from operating activities are the elements of net income, but reported on a cash basis.

Cash inflows from operating activities exceeded cash outflows for expenses by \$22 million. We'll see later (in Illustration 21–9) that UBC's net income from the same operating activities was only \$12 million. Why did operating activities produce net cash inflows greater than net income? The reason will become apparent when we determine, in a later section, the specific amounts of these cash flows.

You also should be aware that the generalization stated earlier that cash flows from operating activities include the elements of net income reported on a cash basis is not strictly true for all elements of the income statement. Notice in Illustration 21–5 that no cash effects are reported for depreciation and amortization of property, plant, and equipment, and intangibles, nor for gains and losses from the sale of those assets. Cash outflows occur when these assets are acquired, and cash inflows occur when the assets are sold. However, as described later, the acquisition and subsequent resale of these assets are classified as investing activities rather than as operating activities.

Quite the opposite, the purchase and the sale of inventory are considered operating activities. The cash effects of these transactions—namely, (1) cash payments to suppliers and (2) cash receipts from customers—are included in the determination of cash flows from operating activities. Why are inventories treated differently from property, plant, equipment, and intangible assets when classifying their cash effects if they all are acquired for the purpose of producing revenues? The essential difference is that inventory typically is purchased for the purpose of being sold as part of the firm's current operations, while the other assets are purchased as investments to benefit the business over a relatively long period of time.

DIRECT METHOD OR INDIRECT METHOD OF REPORTING CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES. The presentation by UBC of cash flows from operating activities illustrated in Illustration 21–2 and reproduced in Illustration 21–5 is referred to as the **direct method**. The method is named for the fact that the cash effect of each operating activity (i.e., income statement item) is reported *directly* in the statement of cash flows. For instance, UBC reports “cash received from customers” as the cash effect of sales activities, “cash paid to suppliers” as the cash effect of cost of goods sold, and so on. Then, UBC simply omits from the presentation any income statement items that do not affect cash at all, such as depreciation expense.

Another way UBC might have reported cash flows from operating activities is by the **indirect method**. By this approach, the net cash increase or decrease from operating activities (\$22 million in our example) would be derived *indirectly* by starting with reported net income and working backwards to convert that amount to a cash basis. As we see later in the chapter, UBC's net income is **\$12 million**. Using the indirect method, UBC would replace the previous presentation of net cash flows from operating activities with the one shown in Illustration 21–6.

● LO21–4

Illustration 21-6

Cash Flows from
Operating Activities;
Indirect Method

By the indirect method, UBC derives the net cash increase or decrease from operating activities indirectly, by starting with reported net income and working backwards to convert that amount to a cash basis.

Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Net income	\$12	
<i>Adjustments for noncash effects:</i>		
Gain on sale of land	(8)	
Depreciation expense	3	
Loss on sale of equipment	2	
<i>Changes in operating assets and liabilities:</i>		
Increase in accounts receivable	(2)	
Decrease in inventory	4	
Increase in accounts payable	6	
Increase in salaries payable	2	
Decrease in discount on bonds payable	2	
Decrease in prepaid insurance	3	
Decrease in income tax payable	(2)	
Net cash flows from operating activities		\$22

Be sure to note that the indirect method generates the same \$22 million net cash flows from operating activities as the direct method. Rather than directly reporting only the components of the income statement that *do* represent increases or decreases in cash, by the indirect method we begin with net income—which includes both cash and noncash components—and back out all amounts that *don't* reflect increases or decreases in cash. Later in the chapter, we explore the specific adjustments made to net income to achieve this result. At this point, it is sufficient to realize that two alternative methods are permitted for reporting net cash flows from operating activities. Either way, we convert accrual-based income to cash flows produced by those same operating activities.

Notice also that the indirect method presentation is identical to what UBC reported earlier as the “Reconciliation of Net Income to Cash Flows from Operating Activities” in Note X of Illustration 21-2. Whether cash flows from operating activities are reported by the direct method or by the indirect method, the financial statements must reconcile the difference between net income and cash flows from operating activities. When a company uses the *direct method*, the company presents the reconciliation in a separate schedule, as UBC does. That presentation is precisely the same as the presentation of net cash flows from operating activities by the indirect method. On the other hand, a company choosing to use the indirect method is not required to provide a separate reconciliation schedule because the “cash flows from operating activities” section of the statement of cash flows serves that purpose. Most companies use the indirect method.⁶

It's important to understand, too, that regardless of which method a company chooses to report *operating* activities, that choice has no effect on the way it identifies and reports cash flows from *investing* and *financing* activities. We turn our attention now to those two sections of the statement of cash flows. Later, in Part C, we'll return for a more thorough discussion of the alternative methods of reporting the operating activities section.

**FINANCIAL
Reporting Case**

Q2, p. 1205

● LO21-5

CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES. Companies periodically invest cash to replace or expand productive facilities such as property, plant, and equipment. Investments might also be made in other assets, such as securities of other firms, with the expectation of a return on those investments. Information concerning these investing activities can provide valuable insight to decision makers regarding the nature and magnitude of assets being acquired for future use, as well as provide clues concerning the company's ambitions for the future.

Cash flows from investing activities are both outflows and inflows of cash caused by the acquisition and disposition of assets. Included in this classification are cash payments to acquire (1) property, plant, and equipment and other productive assets (except inventories);

⁶According to the AICPA, *U.S. GAAP Financial Statements—Best Practices in Presentation and Disclosure—2013*, a survey of 500 companies showed that 495 companies chose to use the indirect method, only 5 the direct method.

(2) investments in securities (except cash equivalents and trading securities); and (3) non-trade receivables.^{7,8} When these assets later are liquidated, any cash receipts from their disposition also are classified as investing activities. For instance, cash received from the sale of the assets or from the collection of a note receivable (principal amount only) represents cash inflows from investing activities. Be sure to realize that, unlike what the label might imply, any investment revenue like interest, dividends, or other cash return from these investments is not an investing activity. The reason, remember, is that investment revenue is an income statement item and therefore is an operating activity.

For illustration, notice the cash flows reported as investing activities by UBC. That section of the statement of cash flows is extracted from the complete statement in Illustration 21–2 and reproduced in Illustration 21–7.

Cash Flows from Investing Activities:

Purchase of land	\$(30)	
Purchase of short-term investment	(12)	
Sale of land	18	
Sale of equipment	5	
<i>Net cash flows from investing activities</i>		\$(19)

UBC reports as investing activities the cash paid to purchase both land and a short-term investment. The other two investing activities reported are cash receipts for the sale of assets—equipment and land—that were acquired in earlier years. The specific transactions creating these cash flows are described in a later section of this chapter.

The purchase and sale of inventories are not considered investing activities. Inventories are purchased for the purpose of being sold as part of the firm's primary operations, so their purchase and sale are classified as operating activities.

Also, the purchase and sale of assets classified as cash equivalents are not reported as investing activities. In fact, these activities usually are not reported on the statement of cash flows. For example, when temporarily idle cash is invested in a money market fund considered to be a cash equivalent, the total of cash and cash equivalents does not change. Likewise, when the cash is later withdrawn from the money market fund, the total remains unchanged. The exception is when cash equivalents are sold at a gain or a loss. In that case, the total of cash and cash equivalents actually increases or decreases in the process of transferring from one cash equivalent account to another cash equivalent account. As a result, the change in cash would be reported as a cash flow from operating activities. This is illustrated later in the chapter.

CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES. Not only is it important for investors and creditors to be informed about how a company is investing its funds, but also how its investing activities are being financed. Hopefully, the primary operations of the firm provide a source of internal financing. Information revealed in the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows lets statement users know the extent of available internal financing. However, a major portion of financing for many companies is provided by external sources, specifically by shareholders and creditors.

Cash flows from financing activities are both inflows and outflows of cash resulting from the external financing of a business. We include in this classification cash inflows from (a) the sale of common and preferred stock and (b) the issuance of bonds and other debt securities. Subsequent transactions related to these financing transactions, such as a buyback of stock (to retire the stock or as treasury stock), the repayment of debt, and the payment of cash dividends to shareholders, also are classified as financing activities.

Cash outflows and cash inflows due to the acquisition and disposition of assets (other than inventory and assets classified as cash equivalents) are reported as cash flows from investing activities.

Illustration 21–7

Cash Flows from Investing Activities

Cash flows from investing activities include investments in assets and their subsequent sale.

FINANCIAL Reporting Case

Q3, p. 1205

• LO21–6

Cash inflows and cash outflows due to the external financing of a business are reported as cash flows from financing activities.

⁷Inflows and outflows of cash from buying and selling trading securities typically are considered operating activities because financial institutions that routinely transact in trading securities consider them an appropriate part of their normal operations.

⁸A nontrade receivable differs from a trade receivable in that it is not one associated with the company's normal trade; that is, it's not received from a customer. A trade receivable, or accounts receivable, is an *operating asset*. A nontrade receivable, on the other hand, might be a loan to an affiliate company or to an officer of the firm. To understand how the creation of a nontrade receivable is an *investing* activity, you might view such a loan as an investment in the receivable.

For illustration, refer to Illustration 21–8 excerpted from the complete statement of cash flows of UBC in Illustration 21–2.

Illustration 21–8

Cash Flows from Financing Activities

Cash flows from financing activities include the sale or repurchase of shares, the issuance or repayment of debt securities, and the payment of cash dividends.

Interest, unlike dividends, is a determinant of net income and therefore an operating activity.

Cash Flows from Financing Activities:

Sale of common shares	\$ 26	
Retirement of bonds payable	(15)	
Payment of cash dividends	(5)	
<i>Net cash flows from financing activities</i>		\$6

The cash received from the sale of common stock is reported as a financing activity. Since the sale of common stock is a financing activity, providing a cash return (dividend) to common shareholders also is a financing activity. Similarly, when the bonds being retired were issued in a prior year, that cash inflow was reported as a financing activity. In the current year, when the bonds are retired, that same amount of the resulting cash outflow is likewise classified as a financing activity.

At first glance, it may appear inconsistent to classify the payment of cash dividends to shareholders as a financing activity when, as stated earlier, paying interest to creditors is classified as an operating activity. But remember, cash flows from operating activities should reflect the cash effects of items that enter into the determination of net income. Interest expense is a determinant of net income. A dividend, on the other hand, is a distribution of net income and not an expense.

Additional Consideration

Sometimes a cash receipt or a cash payment relates to more than one type of activity. For instance, proceeds from an insurance policy might be for a fire loss for a building that contained both equipment in use and inventory for sale. In that case, the cash proceeds pertaining to the building and the equipment is an investing activity and the part pertaining to inventory is an operating activity. It's not always clear how a cash flow should be allocated. When the "nature of the cash flows" cannot be determined using reasonable judgment, the classification should be based on the "predominance principle"—that is, the activity that is likely to be the predominant source or use of cash flows.

RECONCILIATION WITH CHANGE IN CASH BALANCE. One of the first items you may have noticed about UBC's statement of cash flows is that there is a net change in cash of \$9 million. Is this a significant item of information provided by the statement? The primary objective of the statement of cash flows is not to tell us that cash increased by \$9 million. We can readily see the increase or decrease in cash by comparing the beginning and ending balances in the cash account in comparative balance sheets. Instead, the purpose of the statement of cash flows is to explain *why* cash increased by \$9 million.

To reinforce the fact that the net amount of cash inflows and outflows explains the change in the cash balance, the statement of cash flows includes a reconciliation of the net increase (or decrease) in cash with the company's beginning and ending cash balances. Notice, for instance, that on UBC's statement of cash flows, the reconciliation appears as:

Net increase in cash	\$ 9
Cash balance, January 1	20
Cash balance, December 31	<u>\$29</u>

NONCASH INVESTING AND FINANCING ACTIVITIES. Suppose UBC were to borrow \$20 million cash from a bank, issuing a long-term note payable for that amount. This transaction would be reported on a statement of cash flows as a financing activity. Now suppose UBC used that \$20 million cash to purchase new equipment. This second transaction would be reported as an investing activity.

The net amount of cash inflows and outflows reconciles the change in the company's beginning and ending cash balances.

Instead of two separate transactions, as indicated by Illustration 21–2, UBC acquired \$20 million of new equipment by issuing a \$20 million long-term note payable in a single transaction. Undertaking a significant investing activity and a significant financing activity as two parts of a single transaction does not diminish the value of reporting these activities. For that reason, transactions that do not increase or decrease cash, but which result in significant investing and financing activities, must be reported in related disclosures.

These **noncash investing and financing activities**, such as UBC's acquiring equipment (an investing activity) by issuing a long-term note payable (a financing activity), are reported in a separate disclosure schedule or note. UBC reported this transaction in the following manner:

Noncash Investing and Financing Activities:

Acquired \$20 million of equipment by issuing a 12%, 5-year note.

● LO21–7

Significant noncash investing and financing activities are reported also.

It's convenient to report noncash investing and financing activities on the same page as the statement of cash flows, as did UBC, only if there are few such transactions. Otherwise, precisely the same information would be reported in disclosure notes to the financial statements.⁹

Examples of noncash transactions that would be reported in this manner are as follows:

1. Acquiring an asset by incurring a debt payable to the seller
2. Acquiring use of an asset by entering into a lease agreement
3. Converting debt into common stock or other equity securities
4. Exchanging noncash assets or liabilities for other noncash assets or liabilities

Noncash transactions that do not affect a company's assets or liabilities, such as the distribution of stock dividends, are not considered investing or financing activities and are not reported. Recall from Chapter 18 that stock dividends merely increase the number of shares of stock owned by existing shareholders. From an accounting standpoint, the stock dividend causes a dollar amount to be transferred from one part of shareholders' equity (retained earnings) to another part of shareholders' equity (paid-in capital). Neither assets nor liabilities are affected; therefore, no investing or financing activity has occurred.

Preparation of the Statement of Cash Flows

The objective in preparing the statement of cash flows is to identify all transactions and events that represent operating, investing, or financing activities and to list and classify those activities in proper statement format. A difficulty in preparing a statement of cash flows is that typical accounting systems are not designed to produce the specific information we need for the statement. At the end of a reporting cycle, balances exist in accounts reported in the income statement (sales revenue, cost of goods sold, etc.) and the balance sheet (accounts receivable, common stock, etc.). However, the ledger contains no balances for cash paid to acquire equipment, or cash received from sale of land, or any other cash flow needed for the statement. As a result, it's necessary to find a way of using available information to reconstruct the various cash flows that occurred during the reporting period. Typically, the information available to assist the statement preparer includes an income statement for the year and balance sheets for both the current and preceding years (comparative statements). The accounting records also can provide additional information about transactions that caused changes in account balances during the year.

● LO21–8

Additional Consideration

A transaction involving an investing and financing activity may be part cash and part noncash. For example, a company might pay cash for a part of the purchase price of new equipment and issue a long-term note for the remaining amount. In our previous illustration, UBC issued a note payable for the \$20 million cost of the equipment it acquired.

(continued)

⁹FASB ASC 230–10–50–6: Statement of Cash Flows—Overall—Disclosure—Noncash Investing and Financing Activities (previously “Statement of Cash Flows,” *Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 95* (Stamford, Conn.: FASB, 1987), par. 74).

(concluded)

Suppose the equipment were purchased in the following manner:

Equipment	20	
Cash		6
Note payable		14

In that case, **\$6 million** would be reported under the caption “Cash flows from investing activities,” and the noncash portion of the transaction—issuing a **\$14 million** note payable for **\$14 million** of equipment—would be reported as a “noncash investing and financing activity.” UBC’s statement of cash flows, if modified by the assumption of a part cash/part noncash transaction, would report these two elements of the transaction as follows:

Cash Flows from Investing Activities:

Purchase of land	\$(30)	
Purchase of short-term investments	(12)	
Sale of land	18	
Sale of equipment	5	
Purchase of equipment	(6)	
<i>Net cash flows from investing activities</i>		\$(25)

Noncash Investing and Financing Activities:

Acquired \$20 million of equipment by paying cash and issuing a 12%, 5-year note as follows:

Cost of equipment	\$20 million
Cash paid	(6 million)
Note issued	\$14 million

The typical year-end data is provided for UBC in Illustration 21–9. We have referred frequently to the statement of cash flows of UBC to illustrate the nature of the activities the statement reports. Now we’ll see how that statement is developed from the data provided in that illustration.

In situations involving relatively few transactions, it’s possible to prepare the statement of cash flows by merely inspecting the available data and logically determining the reportable activities. Few real-life situations are sufficiently simple to be solved this way. Usually, it is more practical to use some systematic method of analyzing the available data to ensure that all operating, investing, and financing activities are detected. A common approach is to use either a manual or electronic spreadsheet to organize and analyze the information used to prepare the statement.¹⁰

Whether the statement of cash flows is prepared by an unaided inspection and analysis or with the aid of a systematic technique such as spreadsheet analysis, the analytical process is the same. To identify the activities to be reported in the statement, we use available data to reconstruct the events and transactions that involved operating, investing, and financing activities during the year. It is helpful to reproduce the journal entries that were recorded at the time of the transaction. Examining reconstructed journal entries makes it easier to visualize whether a reportable activity is involved and how that activity is to be classified.

Next, in Part B, we see how a spreadsheet simplifies the process of preparing a statement of cash flows. Even if you choose not to use a spreadsheet, the summary entries described can be used to help you find the cash inflows and outflows you need to prepare a statement of cash flows. For this demonstration, we assume the direct method is used to determine and report cash flows from operating activities. Appreciation of the direct method provides the backdrop for a thorough understanding of the indirect method that we explore in Part C.

Reconstructing the events and transactions that occurred during the period helps identify the operating, investing, and financing activities to be reported.

¹⁰The T-account method is a second systematic approach to the preparation of the statement of cash flows. This method is identical in concept and similar in application to the spreadsheet method. The T-account method is used to prepare the statement of cash flows for UBC in Appendix 21B.

Illustration 21-9

Comparative Balance
Sheets and Income
Statement

UNITED BRANDS CORPORATION Comparative Balance Sheets December 31, 2018 and 2017 (\$ in millions)

Assets	2018	2017
Cash	\$ 29	\$ 20
Accounts receivable	32	30
Short-term investments	12	0
Inventory	46	50
Prepaid insurance	3	6
Land	80	60
Buildings and equipment	81	75
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(16)	(20)
	<u>\$267</u>	<u>\$221</u>
Liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 26	\$ 20
Salaries payable	3	1
Income tax payable	6	8
Notes payable	20	0
Bonds payable	35	50
Less: Discount on bonds	(1)	(3)
Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock	130	100
Paid-in capital—excess of par	29	20
Retained earnings	19	25
	<u>\$267</u>	<u>\$221</u>

Income Statement

Revenues		
Sales revenue	\$100	
Investment revenue	3	
Gain on sale of land	8	\$111
	<u>8</u>	
Expenses		
Cost of goods sold	60	
Salaries expense	13	
Depreciation expense	3	
Bond interest expense	5	
Insurance expense	7	
Loss on sale of equipment	2	
Income tax expense	9	99
	<u>9</u>	
Net income		<u>\$ 12</u>

Additional information from the accounting records:

- Company land, purchased in a previous year for \$10 million, was sold for \$18 million.
- Equipment that originally cost \$14 million, and which was one-half depreciated, was sold for \$5 million cash.
- The common shares of Mazuma Corporation were purchased for \$12 million as a short-term investment.
- Property was purchased for \$30 million cash for use as a parking lot.
- On December 30, 2018, new equipment was acquired by issuing a 12%, five-year, \$20 million note payable to the seller.
- On January 1, 2018, \$15 million of bonds (issued 20 years ago at their face amount) were retired at maturity.
- The increase in the common stock account is attributable to the issuance of a 10% stock dividend (1 million shares) and the subsequent sale of 2 million shares of common stock. The market price of the \$10 par value common stock was \$13 per share on the dates of both transactions.
- Cash dividends of \$5 million were paid to shareholders.

PART B

Preparing the SCF: Direct Method of Reporting Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Using a Spreadsheet

There can be no cash inflow or cash outflow without a corresponding change in a noncash account.

Recording spreadsheet entries that explain account balance changes simultaneously identifies and classifies the activities to be reported on the statement of cash flows.

Spreadsheet entries duplicate the actual journal entries used to record the transactions as they occurred during the year.

An important advantage gained by using a spreadsheet is that it ensures that no reportable activities are inadvertently overlooked. Spreadsheet analysis relies on the fact that, in order for cash to increase or decrease, there must be a corresponding change in an account other than cash. Therefore, if we can identify the events and transactions that caused the change in each noncash account during the year, we will have identified all the operating, investing, and financing activities that are to be included in the statement of cash flows.

The beginning and ending balances of each account are entered on the spreadsheet. Then, as journal entries are reconstructed in our analysis of the data, those entries are recorded on the spreadsheet so that the debits and credits of the spreadsheet entries explain the changes in the account balances. Only after spreadsheet entries have explained the changes in all account balances can we feel confident that all operating, investing, and financing activities have been identified. The spreadsheet is designed in such a way that, as we record spreadsheet entries that explain account balance changes, we are simultaneously identifying and classifying the activities to be reported on the statement of cash flows.

We begin by transferring the comparative balance sheets and income statement to a blank spreadsheet. For illustration, refer to the 2018 and 2017 balances in the completed spreadsheet for UBC, shown in Illustration 21–9A. Notice that the amounts for elements of the income statement are ending balances resulting from accumulations during the year. Beginning balances in each of these accounts are always zero.

Following the balance sheets and income statement, we allocate space on the spreadsheet for the statement of cash flows. Although at this point we have not yet identified the specific cash flow activities shown in the completed spreadsheet, we can include headings for the major categories of activities: cash flows from operating activities, cash flows from investing activities, and cash flows from financing activities. Leaving several lines between headings allows adequate space to include the specific cash flows identified in subsequent analysis.

The spreadsheet entries shown in the two changes columns, which separate the beginning and ending balances, explain the increase or decrease in each account balance. You will see in the next section how these entries were reconstructed. Although spreadsheet entries are in the form of debits and credits like journal entries, they are entered on the spreadsheet only. They are not recorded in the formal accounting records. In effect, these entries duplicate, frequently in summary form, the actual journal entries used to record the transactions as they occurred during the year.

To reconstruct the journal entries, we analyze each account, one at a time, deciding at each step what transaction or event caused the change in that account. Often, the reason for the change in an account balance is readily apparent from viewing the change in conjunction with that of a related account elsewhere in the financial statements. Sometimes it is necessary to consult the accounting records for additional information to help explain the transaction that resulted in the change.

You may find it helpful to diagram in T-account format the relationship between accounts to better visualize certain changes, particularly in your initial study of the chapter. The analysis that follows is occasionally supplemented with such diagrams to emphasize *why*, rather than merely *how*, specific cash flow amounts emerge from the analysis.

Although there is no mandatory order in which to analyze the accounts, it is convenient to begin with the income statement accounts, followed by the balance sheet accounts. We analyze the accounts of UBC in that order below. Although our analysis of each account culminates in a spreadsheet entry, keep in mind that the analysis described also is appropriate to identify reportable activities when a spreadsheet is not used.¹¹

¹¹The spreadsheet entries also are used to record the same transactions when the T-account method is used. We refer again to these entries when that method is described in Appendix 21B.

UNITED BRANDS CORPORATION
Spreadsheet for the Statement of Cash Flows

Illustration 21-9A

Spreadsheet—Direct
Method

	Dec. 31, 2017	Changes				Dec. 31, 2018
		Debits		Credits		
Balance Sheet						
Assets:						
Cash	20	(19)	9			29
Accounts receivable	30	(1)	2			32
Short-term investments	0	(12)	12			12
Inventory	50			(4)	4	46
Prepaid insurance	6			(8)	3	3
Land	60	(13)	30	(3)	10	80
Buildings and equipment	75	(14)	20 ^X	(9)	14	81
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(20)	(9)	7	(6)	3	(16)
	<u>221</u>					<u>267</u>
Liabilities:						
Accounts payable	20			(4)	6	26
Salaries payable	1			(5)	2	3
Income tax payable	8	(10)	2			6
Notes payable	0			(14)	20 ^X	20
Bonds payable	50	(15)	15			35
Less: Discount on bonds	(3)			(7)	2	(1)
Shareholders' Equity:						
Common stock	100			(16)	10	
				(17)	20	130
Paid-in capital—excess of par	20			(16)	3	
				(17)	6	29
Retained earnings	25	(16)	13			
		(18)	5	(11)	12	19
	<u>221</u>					<u>267</u>
Income Statement						
Revenues:						
Sales revenue				(1)	100	100
Investment revenue				(2)	3	3
Gain on sale of land				(3)	8	8
Expenses:						
Cost of goods sold		(4)	60			(60)
Salaries expense		(5)	13			(13)
Depreciation expense		(6)	3			(3)
Bond interest expense		(7)	5			(5)
Insurance expense		(8)	7			(7)
Loss on sale of equipment		(9)	2			(2)
Income tax expense		(10)	9			(9)
Net income		(11)	12			<u>12</u>
Statement of Cash Flows						
Operating Activities:						
Cash inflows:						
From customers		(1)	98			
From investment revenue		(2)	3			
Cash outflows:						
To suppliers of goods				(4)	50	
To employees				(5)	11	
To bondholders				(7)	3	
For insurance expense				(8)	4	
For income taxes				(10)	11	
Net cash flows						22

(continued)

Illustration 21-9A

(concluded)

	Dec. 31, 2017	Changes		Dec. 31, 2018
		Debits	Credits	
Investing Activities:				
Sale of land		(3)	18	
Sale of equipment		(9)	5	
Purchase of S-T investment			(12)	12
Purchase of land			(13)	30
<i>Net cash flows</i>				(19)
Financing Activities:				
Retirement of bonds payable			(15)	15
Sale of common shares	(17)	26		
Payment of cash dividends			(18)	5
<i>Net cash flows</i>				6
<i>Net increase in cash</i>			(19)	9
Totals		376	376	

X: As explained later, the Xs serve as a reminder to report this noncash transaction.

Amounts reported in the income statement usually are not the same as the cash effects of the items reported.

Income Statement Accounts

As described in an earlier section, cash flows from operating activities are inflows and outflows of cash that result from activities reported in the income statement. Thus, to identify those cash inflows and outflows, we begin by analyzing the components of the income statement. It is important to keep in mind that the amounts reported in the income statement usually do not represent the cash effects of the items reported. For example, UBC reports sales revenue of \$100 million. This does not mean, however, that it collected \$100 million cash from customers during the year. In fact, by referring to the beginning and ending balances in accounts receivable, we see that cash received from customers could not have been \$100 million. Since accounts receivable increased during the year, some of the sales revenue recognized must not yet have been collected. This is explained further in the next section.

The cash effects of other income statement elements can be similarly discerned by referring to changes in the balances of the balance sheet accounts that are directly related to those elements. So, to identify cash flows from operating activities, we examine, one at a time, the elements of the income statement in conjunction with any balance sheet accounts affected by each element.

1. SALES REVENUE. Accounts receivable is the balance sheet account that is affected by sales revenue. Specifically, accounts receivable is increased by credit sales and is decreased as cash is received from customers. We can compare sales and the change in accounts receivable during the year to determine the amount of cash received from customers. This relationship can be viewed in T-account format as follows:

Accounts Receivable			
Beginning balance	30		
Credit sales	100	?	Cash received
(increases A/R)			(decreases A/R)
Ending balance	32		

We see from this analysis that cash received from customers must have been \$98 million. Note that even if some of the year's sales were cash sales, say \$40 million cash sales and \$60 million credit sales, the result is the same:

Accounts Receivable				
Beginning balance	30		Cash sales	\$40
Credit sales	60	58 →	Received on account	58
Ending balance	32		Cash received	\$98

Thus, cash flows from operating activities should include cash received from customers of **\$98 million**. The net effect of sales revenue activity during the year can be summarized in the following entry:

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (1) Cash (received from customers).....	98
Accounts receivable (given).....	2
Sales revenue (\$100 – 0).....	100

Relating sales and the change in accounts receivable during the period helps determine the amount of cash received from customers.

The entry above appears as entry (1) in the completed spreadsheet for UBC, shown in Illustration 21–9A. The entry explains the changes in two account balances—accounts receivable and sales revenue. Since the entry affects cash, it also identifies a cash flow to be reported on the statement of cash flows. The **\$98 million** debit to cash is therefore entered in the statement of cash flows section of the spreadsheet under the heading of cash flows from operating activities.

Additional Consideration

The preceding discussion describes the most common situation—companies recognize revenue by selling goods and services, increase accounts receivable, and then collect the cash and decrease accounts receivable later. Some companies, though, often collect the cash in advance of satisfying performance obligations and thus record revenue and decrease deferred revenue. In those cases, we need to analyze any changes in the deferred revenue account for differences between revenue reported and cash collected. For instance, if UBC also had a \$1 million increase in deferred revenue, the summary entry would be modified as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (1) Cash (received from customers).....	99
Accounts receivable (given).....	2
Deferred revenue (given).....	1
Sales revenue (\$100 – 0).....	100

Notice that we enter the cash portion of entry (1) as one of several cash flows on the statement of cash flows rather than as a debit to the cash account. Only after all cash inflows and outflows have been identified will the net change in cash be entered as a debit to the cash account. In fact, the entry to reconcile the \$9 million increase in the cash account and the \$9 million net increase in cash on the statement of cash flows will serve as a final check of the accuracy of our spreadsheet analysis.

Additional Consideration

Notice that bad debt expense does not appear in the income statement and allowance for uncollectible accounts does not appear in the balance sheet. We have assumed that bad debts are immaterial for UBC. When this is not the case, it's necessary to consider the write-off of bad debts as we determine cash received from customers. Here's why.

When using the allowance method to account for bad debts, a company estimates the dollar amount of customer accounts that will ultimately prove uncollectible and records both bad debt expense and allowance for uncollectible accounts for that estimate.

Bad debt expense.....	xxx	
Allowance for uncollectible accounts.....		xxx

(continued)

(concluded)

Then, when accounts actually prove uncollectible, accounts receivable and the allowance are reduced.

Allowance for uncollectible accounts	xxx	
Accounts receivable		xxx

In our illustration, we concluded that UBC received \$2 million less cash (\$98 million) than sales for the year (\$100 million) because accounts receivable increased by that amount. However, if a portion of the change in accounts receivable had been due to write-offs of bad debts, that conclusion would be incorrect. Let's say, for instance, that UBC had bad debt expense of \$2 million and its allowance for uncollectible accounts had increased by \$1 million. Because the allowance for uncollectible accounts would be credited by \$2 million in the adjusting entry for bad debts expense, necessarily there also would have been a \$1 million debit to the account in order for there to have been a net increase (credit) in its balance of only \$1 million. That debit would occur due to write-offs of bad debts totaling \$1 million.

		(\$ in millions)	
Allowance for uncollectible accounts	1		
Accounts receivable			1

This would indicate that a portion (\$1 million credit) of the total change in accounts receivable (\$2 million debit) would have been due to write-offs of bad debts, and the remaining change (\$3 million debit) would have been due to cash collections being less than sales revenue. Cash received from customers would have been only \$97 million in that case. We can view this in the framework of our T-account analysis as follows:

Accounts Receivable			
Beginning balance	30		
Credit sales	100	97	Cash received
		1	Bad debt write-offs
Ending balance	32		

The effect of write-offs of bad debts can be explicitly considered by combining all the accounts related to sales and collection activities into a single summary spreadsheet entry:

	(\$ in millions)	
Cash (received from customers)	97	
Accounts receivable (\$32 - 30)	2	
Bad debt expense (from income statement)	2	
Allowance for uncollectible accounts (\$3 - 2)		1
Sales revenue (\$100 - 0)		100

This single entry summarizes all transactions related to sales, bad debt expense, write-offs of accounts receivable, and cash collections from sales.

The remaining summary entries are described in subsections 2 through 19. When including the entries on the spreadsheet, it is helpful to number the entries sequentially to provide a means of retracing the steps taken in the analysis if the need arises. You also may find it helpful to put a check mark (✓) to the right of the ending balance when the change in that balance has been explained. Then, once you have check marks next to every noncash account, you will know you are finished.

2. INVESTMENT REVENUE. The income statement reports investment revenue of \$3 million. Before concluding that this amount was received in cash, we first refer to the balance sheets to see whether a change in an account there indicates otherwise. A change

in either of two balance sheet accounts, (a) investment revenue receivable or (b) long-term investments, might indicate that cash received from investment revenue differs from the amount reported in the income statement.

- a. If we observe either an increase or a decrease in an *investment revenue receivable* account (e.g., interest receivable, dividends receivable), we would conclude that the amount of cash received during the year was less than (if an increase) or more than (if a decrease) the amount of revenue reported. The analysis would be identical to that of sales revenue and accounts receivable.
- b. Also, an unexplained increase in a *long-term investment* account might indicate that a portion of investment revenue has not yet been received in cash. Recall from Chapter 12 that when using the equity method to account for investments in the stock of another corporation, investment revenue is recognized as the investor's percentage share of the investee's income, whether or not the revenue is received currently as cash dividends. For example, assume the investor owns 25% of the common stock of a corporation that reports net income of \$12 million and pays dividends of \$4 million. This situation would have produced a \$2 million increase in long-term investments, which can be demonstrated by reconstructing the journal entries for the recognition of investment and the receipt of cash dividends:

	(\$ in millions)	
Long-term investments	3	
Investment revenue ($\$12 \times 25\%$).....		3
Cash ($\$4 \times 25\%$)	1	
Long-term investments.....		1

A combined entry would produce the same results:

Long-term investments	2	
Cash ($\$4 \times 25\%$)	1	
Investment revenue ($\$12 \times 25\%$).....		3

The \$2 million net increase in long-term investments would represent the investment revenue not received in cash. This would also explain why there is a \$3 million increase (credit) in investment revenue. If these events had occurred, we would prepare a spreadsheet entry identical to the combined entry above. The spreadsheet entry would (a) explain the \$2 million increase in long-term investments, (b) explain the \$3 million increase in investment revenue, and (c) identify a \$1 million cash inflow from operating activities.

However, because neither an investment revenue receivable account nor a long-term investment account appears on the comparative balance sheets, we can conclude that \$3 million of investment revenue was collected in cash. Entry (2) on the spreadsheet is as follows:

	(\$ in millions)	
Entry (2) Cash (received from investment revenue).....	3	
Investment revenue ($\$3 - 0$).....		3

3. GAIN ON SALE OF LAND. The third item reported in the income statement is an \$8 million gain on the sale of land. Recall that our objective in analyzing each element of the statement is to determine the cash effect of that element. To do so, we need additional information about the transaction that caused this gain. The accounting records—item (a) in Illustration 21–9—indicate that land that originally cost \$10 million was sold for \$18 million. The entry recorded in the journal when the land was sold also serves as our summary entry:

	(\$ in millions)	
Entry (3) Cash (received from sale of land).....	18	
Land (given).....		10
Gain on sale of land ($\$8 - 0$).....		8

Changes in related accounts might indicate that investment revenue reported in the income statement is a different amount from cash received from the investment.

Because no other transactions are apparent that would have caused a change in investment revenue, we can conclude that \$3 million of investment revenue was collected in cash.

A gain (or loss) is simply the difference between cash received in the sale of an asset and the book value of the asset—not a cash flow.

The cash effect of this transaction is a cash increase of \$18 million. We therefore include the debit as a cash inflow in the statement of cash flows section of the spreadsheet. However, unlike the cash effect of the previous two spreadsheet entries, it is not reported as an operating activity. The sale of land is an *investing* activity, so this cash inflow is listed under that heading of the spreadsheet. The entry also accounts for the \$8 million gain on sale of land. The \$10 million credit to land does not, by itself, explain the \$20 million increase in that account. As we will later discover, another transaction also affected the land account.

It is important to understand that the gain is simply the difference between cash received in the sale of land (reported as an investing activity) and the book value of the land. To report the \$8 million gain as a cash flow from operating activities, in addition to reporting \$18 million as a cash flow from investing activities, would be to report the \$8 million twice.

4. COST OF GOODS SOLD. During the year, UBC sold goods that had cost \$60 million. This does not necessarily indicate that \$60 million cash was paid to suppliers of those goods. To determine the amount of cash paid to suppliers, we look to the two current accounts affected by merchandise purchases—inventory and accounts payable. The analysis can be viewed as a two-step process.

First, we compare cost of goods sold with the change in inventory to determine the cost of goods *purchased* (not necessarily cash paid) during the year. To facilitate our analysis, we can examine the relationship in T-account format:

Inventory			
Beginning balance	50		
Cost of goods purchased (<i>increases inventory</i>)	?	60	Cost of goods sold (<i>decreases inventory</i>)
Ending balance	46		

Determining the amount of cash paid to suppliers means looking at not only the cost of goods sold, but also the changes in both inventory and accounts payable.

From this analysis, we see that **\$56 million** of goods were *purchased* during the year. It is not necessarily true, though, that **\$56 million** cash was paid to suppliers of these goods. By looking in accounts payable, we can determine the cash paid to suppliers:

Accounts Payable			
Cash paid to suppliers (<i>decreases A/P</i>)	?	20	Beginning balance
		56	Cost of goods purchased (<i>increases A/P</i>)
		26	Ending Balance

We now see that cash paid to suppliers was **\$50 million**. The entry that summarizes merchandise acquisitions is as follows:

Although \$60 million of goods were sold during the year, only \$50 million cash was paid to suppliers of these goods.

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (4) Cost of goods sold (\$60 – 0).....	60
Inventory (\$46 – 50).....	4
Accounts payable (\$26 – 20).....	6
Cash (paid to suppliers of goods).....	50

5. SALARIES EXPENSE. The balance sheet account affected by salaries expense is salaries payable. By analyzing salaries expense in relation to the change in salaries payable, we can determine the amount of cash paid to employees:

Salaries Payable			
Cash paid to employees (<i>decreases salaries payable</i>)	?	1	Beginning balance
		13	Salaries expense (<i>increases salaries payable</i>)
		3	Ending Balance

This analysis indicates that only **\$11 million** cash was paid to employees; the remaining \$2 million of salaries expense is reflected as an increase in salaries payable.

Viewing the relationship in journal entry format provides the same conclusion and also gives us the entry in our spreadsheet analysis:

	(\$ in millions)	
Entry (5) Salaries expense (\$13 – 0)	13	
Salaries payable (\$3 – 1)		2
Cash (paid to employees)		11

Although salaries expense was \$13 million, only **\$11 million** cash was paid to employees.

6. DEPRECIATION EXPENSE. The income statement reports depreciation expense of \$3 million. The entry used to record depreciation, which also serves as our summary entry, is:

	(\$ in millions)	
Entry (6) Depreciation expense (\$3 – 0)	3	
Accumulated depreciation		3

Depreciation expense does not require a current cash expenditure.

Depreciation is a noncash expense. It is merely an allocation in the current period of a prior cash expenditure (for the depreciable asset). Therefore, unlike the other entries to this point, the depreciation entry has no effect on the statement of cash flows. However, it does explain the change in the depreciation expense account and a portion of the change in accumulated depreciation.

7. INTEREST EXPENSE. Recall from Chapter 14 that bond interest expense differs from the amount of cash paid to bondholders when bonds are issued at either a premium or a discount. The difference between the two amounts is the reduction of the premium or discount. By referring to the balance sheet, we see that UBC's bonds were issued at a discount. Since we know that bond interest expense is \$5 million and that \$2 million of the discount was reduced in 2018, we can determine that **\$3 million** cash was paid to bondholders by recreating the entry that summarizes the recording of bond interest expense.

	(\$ in millions)	
Entry (7) Interest expense (\$5 – 0)	5	
Discount on bonds payable (\$1 – 3)		2
Cash (paid to bondholders)		3

Bond interest expense is not the same as the amount of cash paid to bondholders when bonds are issued at either a premium or a discount.

Recording this entry on the spreadsheet explains the change in both the bond interest expense and discount on bonds payable accounts. It also provides us with another cash outflow from operating activities. Of course, if a premium were being reduced, rather than a discount, the cash outflow would be *greater* than the expense.

8. INSURANCE EXPENSE. A decrease of \$3 million in the prepaid insurance account indicates that cash paid for insurance coverage was \$3 million less than the \$7 million insurance expense for the year. Viewing prepaid insurance in T-account format clarifies this point.

Additional Consideration

If the balance sheet had revealed an increase or decrease in an accrued bond interest payable account, the entry calculating cash paid to bondholders would require modification. For example, if UBC had a bond interest payable account, and that account had increased (a credit) by \$1 million, the entry would have been as follows:

	(\$ in millions)	
Entry (7) Interest expense	5	
(revised) Discount on bonds payable		2
Interest payable		1
Cash (paid to bondholders)		2

(continued)

(concluded)

If the amount owed to bondholders increased by \$1 million, they obviously were paid \$1 million less cash than if there had been no change in the amount owed them. Similarly, if bond interest payable decreased by \$1 million, the opposite would be true; that is, cash paid to them would have been \$1 million more.

Prepaid Insurance			
Beginning balance	6		
Cash paid for insurance (increases prepaid insurance)	?	7	Insurance expense (decreases prepaid insurance)
Ending balance	3		

From this analysis, we can conclude that **\$4 million** was paid for insurance. We reach the same conclusion by preparing the following spreadsheet entry:

Since \$3 million of prepaid insurance was allocated to insurance expense, only **\$4 million** of the expense was paid in cash during the period.

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (8) Insurance expense (\$7 – 0).....	7
Prepaid insurance (\$3 – 6).....	3
Cash (paid for insurance).....	4

The entry accounts for the change in both the insurance expense and prepaid insurance accounts and also identifies a cash outflow from operating activities.

9. LOSS ON SALE OF EQUIPMENT. A \$2 million loss on the sale of equipment is the next item reported in the income statement. To determine the cash effect of the sale of equipment, we need additional information about the transaction. The information we need is provided in item (b) of Illustration 21–9. Recreating the journal entry for the transaction described gives us the following entry:

Recreating the journal entry for the sale of equipment reveals a **\$5 million** cash inflow from investing activities.

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (9) Cash (from the sale of equipment).....	5
Loss on sale of equipment (\$2 – 0).....	2
Accumulated depreciation (\$14 × 50%).....	7
Buildings and equipment (given).....	14

The **\$5 million** cash inflow is entered in the statement of cash flows section of the spreadsheet as an investing activity. The \$2 million debit to the loss on sale of equipment explains the change in that account balance. Referring to the spreadsheet, we see that a portion of the change in accumulated depreciation was accounted for in entry (6). The debit to accumulated depreciation in the entry above completes the explanation for the change in that account. However, the credit to buildings and equipment only partially justifies the change in that account. We must assume that the analysis of a subsequent transaction will account for the unexplained portion of the change.

Recognize too that the loss, like the gain in entry (3), has no cash effect in the current period. Therefore, it is not reported in the statement of cash flows when using the direct method.

10. INCOME TAX EXPENSE. The final expense reported in the income statement is income tax expense. Since income taxes payable is the balance sheet account affected by

this expense, we look to the change in that account to help determine the cash paid for income taxes. A T-account analysis can be used to find the cash effect as follows:

Income Tax Payable		
	8	Beginning balance
Cash paid for income tax (decreases the liability)	9	Income tax expense
	6	Ending Balance

This analysis reveals that **\$11 million** cash was paid for income taxes, \$2 million more than the year's expense. The overpayment explains why the liability for income taxes decreased by \$2 million.

The same conclusion can be reached from the following summary entry, which represents the net effect of income taxes on UBC's accounts.

	(\$ in millions)	
Entry (10) Income tax expense (\$9 – 0)	9	
Income tax payable (\$6 – 8)	2	
Cash (paid for income taxes)		11

Additional Consideration

Entry (10) would require modification in the situation described below.

Note that UBC does not have a deferred income tax account. Recall from Chapter 16 that temporary differences between taxable income and pretax accounting income give rise to deferred taxes. If temporary differences had been present, which would be evidenced by a change in a deferred income taxes account, the calculation of cash paid for income taxes would require modification. Assume, for example, that a deferred income tax liability account had experienced a credit change of \$1 million for the year. In that case, the previous spreadsheet entry would be revised as follows:

	(\$ in millions)	
Entry (10) Interest tax expense	9	
(revised) Income tax payable	2	
Deferred income tax liability		1
Cash (paid for income taxes)		10

As the revised entry indicates, only \$10 million cash would have been paid in this situation, rather than \$11 million. The \$1 million difference represents the portion of the income tax expense whose payment is deferred to a later year.

11. NET INCOME. The balance in the retained earnings account at the end of the year includes an increase due to net income. If we are to account for all changes in each of the accounts, we must include the following entry on the spreadsheet, which represents the closing of net income to retained earnings.

	(\$ in millions)	
Entry (11) Net income	12	
Retained earnings		12

This entry partially explains the change in the retained earnings account.

This entry does not affect amounts reported on the statement of cash flows. We include the entry on the spreadsheet analysis only to help explain account balance changes.

Balance Sheet Accounts

To identify all the operating, investing, and financing activities when using a spreadsheet, we must account for the changes in each account for both the income statement and the balance sheet. Thus far, we have explained the change in each income statement account. Since the transactions that gave rise to some of those changes involved balance sheet accounts as well, some changes in balance sheet accounts have already been explained. We now reconstruct the transactions that caused changes in the remaining balances.

With the exception of the cash account, the accounts are analyzed in the order of their presentation in the balance sheet. As noted earlier, we save the entry that reconciles the change in the cash account with the net change in cash from the statement of cash flows as a final check on the accuracy of the spreadsheet.

12. SHORT-TERM INVESTMENTS. Since the change in accounts receivable was explained previously [in entry (1)], we proceed to the next asset in the balance sheet. The balance in short-term investments increased from zero to \$12 million. In the absence of evidence to the contrary, we could assume that the increase is due to the purchase of short-term investments during the year. This assumption is confirmed by item (c) of Illustration 21–9.

The entry to record the investment and our summary entry is as follows:

	(\$ in millions)	
Entry (12) Short-term investment (\$12 – 0).....	12	
Cash (purchase of short-term investment)		12

The \$12 million increase in the short-term investments account is due to the purchase of short-term investments during the year.

The \$12 million cash outflow is entered in the statement of cash flows section of the spreadsheet as an investing activity. An exception is when an investment is classified as a “trading security,” in which case the cash outflow is reported as an operating activity.

Additional Consideration

Recall that some highly liquid, short-term investments such as money market funds, Treasury bills, or commercial paper might be classified as cash equivalents. If the short-term investment above were classified as a cash equivalent, its purchase would have no effect on the total of cash and cash equivalents. In other words, since cash would include this investment, its purchase would constitute both a debit and a credit to cash. We would neither prepare a spreadsheet entry nor report the transaction on the statement of cash flows.

Likewise, a sale of a cash equivalent would not affect the total of cash and cash equivalents and would not be reported.

An exception would be if the cash equivalent investment were sold for either more or less than its acquisition cost. For example, assume a Treasury bill classified as a cash equivalent was sold for \$1 million more than its \$2 million cost. The sale would constitute both a \$3 million increase and a \$2 million decrease in cash. We see the effect more clearly if we reconstruct the transaction in journal entry format:

	(\$ in millions)	
Cash.....	3	
Gain on sale of cash equivalent		1
Cash (cash equivalent investment)		2

The spreadsheet entry to reflect the net increase in cash would be:

Entry (X) Cash (from sale of cash equivalents)	1	
Gain on sale of cash equivalent		1

The \$1 million net increase in cash and cash equivalents would be reported as a cash inflow from *operating* activities.

When we discuss the “indirect method” of reporting operating activities later in the chapter, we will be adding noncash losses and subtracting noncash gains when adjusting net income for noncash income items. Unlike most losses and gains, though, we would not add a loss or deduct a gain on cash equivalents because they *do* affect “cash” as defined.

13. LAND. The changes in the balances of both inventory and prepaid insurance were accounted for in previous summary entries (4) and (8). Land is the next account whose change has yet to be fully explained. We discovered in a previous transaction that a sale of land caused a \$10 million reduction in the account. Yet, the account shows a net *increase* of \$20 million. It would be logical to assume that the unexplained increase of \$30 million was due to a purchase of land. The transaction described in item (d) of Illustration 21–9 supports that assumption and is portrayed in the following summary entry:

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (13) Land (given)	30
Cash (purchase of land)	30

A \$30 million purchase of land accounts for the portion of the \$20 million increase in the account that was not previously explained by the sale of land.

The \$30 million payment is reported as a cash outflow from investing activities.

14. BUILDINGS AND EQUIPMENT. When examining a previous transaction [entry (9)], we determined that the buildings and equipment account was reduced by \$14 million from the sale of used equipment. And yet the account shows a net *increase* of \$6 million for the year. The accounting records [item (e) of Illustration 21–9] reveal the remaining unexplained cause of the net increase. New equipment costing \$20 million was purchased by issuing a \$20 million note payable. Recall from the discussion in a previous section of this chapter that, although this is a noncash transaction, it represents both a significant investing activity (investing in new equipment) and a significant financing activity (financing the acquisition with long-term debt).

The journal entry used to record the transaction when the equipment was acquired also serves as our summary entry:

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (14) Buildings and equipment (given)	20
Note payable (given)	20

Investing in new equipment is a significant investing activity and financing the acquisition with long-term debt is a significant financing activity.

Remember that the statement of cash flows section of the spreadsheet will serve as the basis for our preparation of the formal statement. But the noncash entry above will not affect the cash flows section of the spreadsheet. Because we want to report this non-cash investing and financing activity when we prepare the statement of cash flows, it is helpful to “mark” the spreadsheet entry as a reminder not to overlook this transaction when the statement is prepared. Crosses (X) serve this purpose on the spreadsheet in Illustration 21–9A.

Additional Consideration

Leases

When a lessee acquires an asset and related liability as a result of a lease agreement, there is no inflow or outflow of cash. However, because a primary purpose of the statement of cash flows is to report significant operating, investing, and financing activities, the initial transaction is reported in the disclosure notes as a significant noncash investing activity (investing in the asset) and financing activity (financing it with debt). Then, the lessee's cash payments for leases are classified as financing activities in its statement of cash flows and presented separately from other financing cash flows. The lessor classifies its cash receipts from lease payments as operating activities in its statement of cash flows, after initially reporting its acquisition of a lease receivable and derecognition of the asset under lease as a significant noncash investing and financing activity in its cash flow disclosure note.

15. BONDS PAYABLE. The balance in the bonds payable account decreased during the year by \$15 million. Illustration 21–9, item (f), reveals the cause. Cash was paid to retire \$15 million face value of bonds. The spreadsheet entry that duplicates the journal entry that was recorded when the bonds were retired is:

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (15) Bonds payable (\$35 – 50).....	15
Cash (retirement of bonds payable).....	15

The cash outflow is reported as a financing activity.

Additional Consideration

Statement of Cash Flows: Reporting a Bond Discount or Premium

Conceptually, the way we report cash flows for bonds depends on whether the bonds were issued at face amount, at a discount, or at a premium.¹² As we look at these three possibilities, note that in each case:

- The same total amount that is borrowed (lent) and reported as a financing (investing) activity is the amount that should be reported later as a *financing (investing)* activity as the loan is repaid.
- All other amounts paid during or at the end of the term to maturity represent interest and should be reported among *operating* activities.

Though not codified in the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*, this treatment is a preference of the SEC, though anecdotal evidence suggests that many firms do not follow this procedure in practice.

Bonds Issued at Face Amount

If bonds are issued at their face amount, the cash inflow at issuance (\$15 million in the illustration) is a financing activity, as is the cash outflow at maturity to repay the amount borrowed (\$15 million in the illustration). The periodic cash interest payments in the meantime are operating activities.

Bonds Issued at a Discount

If bonds are issued at a discount, the cash inflow at issuance is a financing activity, but that discounted price is less than the cash outflow for the face amount at maturity. The portion of the face amount paid at maturity to be reported as a financing activity, then, is limited to the amount borrowed (discounted price at issuance). The remaining portion of the payment (equal to the discount) represents interest and thus should be reported as an operating activity. This “extra” amount paid at maturity, together with the periodic cash interest payments during the term to maturity, comprise the total interest paid to borrow the cash received at issuance. This total amount of interest reported among operating activities is equal to the total interest expense reported during the term to maturity.

In Chapter 14’s Illustration 14–3, for instance, \$700,000 of bonds were issued at \$666,633. That discounted price is the amount the issuer borrowed and the amount reported as a financing activity. When the \$700,000 face amount is paid at maturity, \$666,633 of that amount represents repayment of the borrowing and also is reported as a financing activity. The remaining \$33,367 (the discount) represents interest (as do the periodic cash payments) and is reported among operating activities.

(continued)

¹²Lisa Koonce, “SCF Insights,” Financial Accounting Standards Research Initiative, October 6, 2011.

(concluded)

We can better visualize this if we look again at the amortization schedule we saw earlier for the bonds issued at a discount:

Date	Cash Interest (6% × Face amount)	Effective Interest (7% × Outstanding balance)	Increase in Balance (Discount reduction)	Outstanding Balance
1/1/18				666,633
6/30/18	42,000	.07 (666,633) = 46,664	4,664	671,297
12/31/18	42,000	.07 (671,297) = 46,991	4,991	676,288
6/30/19	42,000	.07 (676,288) = 47,340	5,340	681,628
12/31/19	42,000	.07 (681,628) = 47,714	5,714	687,342
6/30/20	42,000	.07 (687,342) = 48,114	6,114	693,456
12/31/20	42,000	.07 (693,456) = 48,544	6,544	700,000
	252,000	285,367	33,367	

Operating

\$700,000	Payment
– 33,367	Operating
\$666,633	Financing

You may remember from Chapter 14 that the *total* interest, \$285,367, is the \$252,000 *cash* interest paid during the term to maturity plus the “extra” amount paid at maturity. The \$33,367 extra amount is necessary for the bonds to pay an effective interest rate equal to what the market demanded when the bonds were purchased (which was higher than the rate at which the bonds made periodic interest payments).

To summarize, bonds issued at a discount are treated as follows on a statement of cash flows:

	Financing Activities	Operating Activities
INFLOWS:		
At issuance	Face Amount minus Discount	
OUTFLOWS:		
During term to maturity		Cash Interest Payments
At maturity	Face Amount minus Discount	Discount

Bonds Issued at a Premium

If the bonds are issued at a premium, the cash repaid at maturity is less than the cash received at issuance. So, when does the rest of the amount received at issuance get repaid? To see the answer, remember that when bonds are issued at a premium, it's because the stated interest rate at issuance is higher than the market interest rate. That means that the cash interest payments each period are higher than the interest expense amounts reported each period. The remainder of each payment is a repayment of the extra amount received at issuance. Similar to installment payments that include both (a) an amount for interest and (b) an amount that reduces the debt, we can think of these bond interest payments the same way. The cash payments cover the interest expense, and the remainder of each payment (the premium amortization) goes toward paying a portion of the amount borrowed. The interest expense portions of the cash payments are operating activities and the repayment portions are reported as financing activities each period. That means that the total amount of financing *outflows*, including payment of the face amount at maturity and the premium amortization over the life of the bonds, equals the total amount of financing *inflow* received when the bonds are issued.

(continued)

(concluded)

To see this more clearly, let's look again at the amortization schedule we saw in Chapter 14 for bonds issued at a premium:

Date	Cash Interest (6% × Face amount)	Effective Interest (5% × Outstanding balance)	Decrease in Balance (Premium reduction)	Outstanding Balance
1/1/18				735,533
6/30/18	42,000	0.05 (735,533) = 36,777	5,223	730,310
12/31/18	42,000	0.05 (730,310) = 36,516	5,484	724,826
6/30/19	42,000	0.05 (724,826) = 36,241	5,759	719,067
12/31/19	42,000	0.05 (719,067) = 35,953	6,047	713,020
6/30/20	42,000	0.05 (713,020) = 35,651	6,349	706,671
12/31/20	42,000	0.05 (706,671) = 35,329	6,671	700,000
	252,000	216,467	35,533	

\$700,000	Payment
+ 35,533	Financing
\$735,633	Financing

Operating ←

To summarize, bonds issued at a premium are treated as follows on a statement of cash flows:

	Financing Activities	Operating Activities
INFLOWS: <i>At issuance</i>	Face Amount plus Premium	
OUTFLOWS: <i>During term to maturity</i>	Premium Amortization	Interest Expense
<i>At maturity</i>	Face Amount	

Remember that when using the **indirect method**, we add any discount amortization back to net income each period. That's in order to adjust the interest expense that's subtracted within net income to cash interest paid, which is the amount we want to report as an operating activity. When we have a premium, though, the amount we want to report as an operating activity is interest expense, as we just saw. As a result, we do *not* adjust net income for premium amortization as we do for discount amortization.

Early Extinguishment of Debt

The description of the transaction stipulated that \$15 million of bonds were retired at their maturity on the first day of the year. Thus, any discount or premium on the bonds would have been completely amortized before the start of the year. If bonds are retired prior to their scheduled maturity, any unamortized discount or premium would be removed from the accounts at that time. For instance, assume that the bonds above were callable at \$16 million and that \$1 million of unamortized discount remained when they were retired by a call at that price. The summary entry would be revised as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (15) Bonds payable.....	15
(revised) Loss on early extinguishment of bonds	2
Discount on bonds payable.....	1
Cash (retirement of bonds payable).....	16

The loss would not be reported in the statement of cash flows (direct method). The amortization of the discount, however, would affect a previous summary entry. In entry (7), we concluded that the decrease in discount on bonds payable was due to the amortization of \$2 million of the discount when recording bond interest expense. However, if the early

(continued)

(concluded)

retirement assumed above had occurred, that transaction would have accounted for \$1 million of the \$2 million decrease in the discount. Entry (7) would be modified as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (7) Interest expense	5
(revised) Discount on bonds payable	1
Cash (paid to bondholders)	4

16–17. COMMON STOCK. The comparative balance sheets indicate that the common stock account balance increased by \$30 million. We look to the accounting records—Illustration 21–9, item (g)—for an explanation. Two transactions, a stock dividend and a sale of new shares of common stock, combined to cause the increase. To create the summary entries for our analysis, we replicate the journal entries for the two transactions as described below.

Remember from Chapter 18 that to record a small stock dividend, we capitalize retained earnings for the market value of the shares distributed—in this case, 1 million shares times \$13 per share, or \$13 million. The entry is as follows:

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (16) Retained earnings (1 million shares × \$13)	13
Common stock (1 million shares × \$10 par)	10
Paid-in capital—excess of par (difference)	3

Although this transaction does not identify a cash flow, nor does it represent an investing or financing activity, we include the summary entry to help explain changes in the three account balances affected.

Also recall from the discussion of noncash investing and financing activities earlier in the chapter that stock dividends do not represent a significant investing or financing activity. Therefore, this transaction is not reported in the statement of cash flows. We include the entry in our spreadsheet analysis only to help explain changes in the account balances affected.

The sale of 2 million shares of common stock at \$13 per share is represented by the following spreadsheet entry:

	(\$ in millions)
Entry (17) Cash (from sale of common stock)	26
Common stock $[(\$130 - 100) - 10]$	20
Paid-in capital—excess of par $[(\$29 - 20) - 3]$	6

The sale of common shares explains the remaining increase in the common stock account and the remaining increase in paid-in capital—excess of par.

The cash inflow is reported in the statement of cash flows as a financing activity.

Additional Consideration

If cash is paid to retire outstanding shares of stock or to purchase those shares as treasury stock, the cash outflow would be reported in a statement of cash flows as a financing activity.

Together, the two entries above account for both the \$30 million increase in the common stock account and the \$9 million increase in paid-in capital—excess of par.

18. RETAINED EARNINGS. The stock dividend in entry (16) above includes a \$13 million reduction of retained earnings. Previously, we saw in entry (11) that net income increased retained earnings by \$12 million. The net reduction of \$1 million accounted for by these two entries leaves **\$5 million** of the \$6 million net decrease in the account unexplained.

Retained Earnings			
		25	Beginning balance
(16) Stock dividend	13	12	Net income (11)
(18) ?	?		
		19	Ending balance

Without additional information about the \$5 million decrease in retained earnings, we might assume it was due to a \$5 million cash dividend. This assumption is unnecessary, though, because the cash dividend is described in Illustration 21–9, item (h).

Retained Earnings			
		25	Beginning balance
(16) Stock dividend	13	12	Net income (11)
(18) Cash dividend	5		
		19	Ending balance

The summary entry for the spreadsheet is as follows:

The cash dividend accounts for the previously unexplained change in retained earnings.

		(\$ in millions)
Entry (18) Retained earnings.....		5
Cash (payment of cash dividends).....		5

19. COMPLETING THE SPREADSHEET. In preparing the spreadsheet to this point, we have analyzed each noncash account on both the income statement and the balance sheet. Our purpose was to identify the transactions that, during the year, had affected each account. By recreating each transaction in the form of a summary entry—in effect, duplicating the journal entry that had been used to record the transaction—we were able to explain the change in the balance of each account. That is, the debits and credits in the changes columns of the spreadsheet account for the increase or decrease in each noncash account. When a transaction being entered on the spreadsheet included an operating, investing, or financing activity, we entered that portion of the entry under the corresponding heading of the statement of cash flows section of the spreadsheet. Since, as noted earlier, there can be no operating, investing, or financing activity without a corresponding change in one or more of the noncash accounts, we should feel confident at this point that we have identified all of the activities that should be reported on the statement of cash flows.

The cash flows section of the spreadsheet provides the information to be reported in the statement of cash flows.

To check the accuracy of the analysis, we compare the change in the balance of the cash account with the net change in cash flows produced by the activities listed in the statement of cash flows section of the spreadsheet. The net increase or decrease in cash flows from each of the statement of cash flows categories is extended to the extreme right column of the spreadsheet. By reference to Illustration 21–9A, we see that net cash flows from operating, investing, and financing activities are: \$22 million, (\$19 million), and \$6 million, respectively. Together these activities provide a net increase in cash of \$9 million. This amount corresponds to the increase in the balance of the cash account from \$20 million to \$29 million. To complete the spreadsheet, we include the final summary entry:

		(\$ in millions)
Entry (19) Cash		9
Net increase in cash		
(from statement of cash flows activities)		9

As a final check of accuracy, we can confirm that the total of the debits is equal to the total of the credits in the changes columns of the spreadsheet.¹³

¹³The mechanical and computational aspects of the spreadsheet analysis are simplified greatly when performed on an electronic spreadsheet such as Microsoft Excel.

Ethical Dilemma



"We must get it," Courtney Lowell, president of Industrial Fasteners, roared. "Without it, we're in big trouble." The "it" Mr. Lowell referred to is the renewal of a \$14 million loan with Community First Bank. The big trouble he fears is the lack of funds necessary to repay the existing debt and few, if any, prospects for raising the funds elsewhere.

Mr. Lowell had just hung up the phone after a conversation with a bank vice-president in which it was made clear that this year's statement of cash flows must look better than last year's. Mr. Lowell knows that improvements are not on course to happen. In fact, cash flow projections were dismal.

Later that day, Tim Cratchet, assistant controller, was summoned to Mr. Lowell's office. "Cratchet," Lowell barked, "I've looked at our accounts receivable. I think we can generate quite a bit of cash by selling or factoring most of those receivables. I know it will cost us more than if we collect them ourselves, but it sure will make our cash flow picture look better."

Is there an ethical question facing Cratchet?

International Financial Reporting Standards



● LO21-9

Classification of Cash Flows. Like U.S. GAAP, international standards also require a statement of cash flows. Consistent with U.S. GAAP, cash flows are classified as operating, investing, or financing. However, the U.S. standard designates cash outflows for interest payments and cash inflows from interest and dividends received as operating cash flows. Dividends paid to shareholders are classified as financing cash flows.

IAS No. 7, on the other hand, allows more flexibility. Companies can report interest and dividends paid as either operating or financing cash flows and interest and dividends received as either operating or investing cash flows. Interest and dividend payments usually are reported as financing activities. Interest and dividends received normally are classified as investing activities.

Typical Classification of Cash Flows from Interest and Dividend

U.S. GAAP	IFRS
Operating Activities	Operating Activities
Dividends received	
Interest received	
Interest paid	
Investing Activities	Investing Activities
	Dividends received
	Interest received
Financing Activities	Financing Activities
Dividends paid	Dividends paid
	Interest paid

The spreadsheet is now complete. The statement of cash flows can now be prepared directly from the spreadsheet simply by presenting the items included in the statement of cash flows section of the spreadsheet in the appropriate format of the statement.

The statements of cash flows from an annual report of **CVS Health Corp.** are shown in Illustration 21-10. Notice that the reconciliation schedule was reported by CVS in the statement of cash flows itself. Many companies report the schedule separately in the disclosure notes.

Illustration 21-10 Statement of Cash Flows—CVS Health Corp.

Real World Financials

CVS HEALTH CORP.
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows

(\$ in millions)	Year Ended December 31,		
	2015	2014	2013
Cash flows from operating activities:			
Cash receipts from customers	\$148,954	\$ 132,406	\$ 114,993
Cash paid for inventory and prescriptions dispensed by retail network pharmacies	(122,498)	(105,362)	(91,178)
Cash paid to other suppliers and employees	(14,162)	(15,344)	(14,295)
Interest received	21	15	8
Interest paid	(629)	(647)	(534)
Income taxes paid	(3,274)	(2,931)	(3,211)
Net cash provided by operating activities	8,412	8,137	5,783
Cash flows from investing activities:			
Purchases of property and equipment	(2,367)	(2,136)	(1,984)
Proceeds from sale-leaseback transactions	411	515	600
Proceeds from sale of property and equipment and other assets	35	11	54
Acquisitions (net of cash acquired) and other investments	(11,475)	(2,439)	(415)
Purchase of available-for-sale investments	(267)	(157)	(226)
Maturity of available-for-sale investments	243	161	136
Net cash used in investing activities	\$ (13,420)	(4,045)	(1,835)
Cash flows from financing activities:			
Increase (decrease) in short-term debt	(685)	685	(690)
Proceeds from issuance of long-term debt	14,805	1,483	3,964
Repayments of long-term debt	(2,902)	(3,100)	—
Payment of contingent consideration	(58)	—	—
Dividends paid	(1,576)	(1,288)	(1,097)
Proceeds from exercise of stock options	299	421	500
Excess tax benefits from stock-based compensation	127	106	62
Repurchase of common stock	(5,001)	(4,001)	(3,976)
Other	(3)	—	—
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	5,006	(5,694)	(1,237)
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	\$ (20)	(6)	3
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents:	(22)	(1,608)	2,714
Cash and cash equivalents at the beginning of the year	2,481	4,089	1,375
Cash and cash equivalents at the end of the year	\$ 2,459	\$ 2,481	\$ 4,089
Reconciliation of net income to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Net income	5,239	\$ 4,644	\$ 4,592
Adjustments required to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Depreciation and amortization	2,092	1,931	1,870
Stock-based compensation	230	165	141
Loss on early extinguishment of debt	—	521	—
Deferred income taxes and other noncash items	(266)	(58)	(86)
Change in operating assets and liabilities, net of effects from acquisitions:			
Accounts receivable, net	(1,594)	(737)	(2,210)
Inventories	(1,141)	(770)	12
Other current assets	355	(383)	105
Other assets	2	9	(135)
Accounts payable and claims and discounts payable	2,834	1,742	1,024
Accrued expenses	765	1,060	471
Other long-term liabilities	(104)	13	(1)
Net cash provided by operating activities	\$ 8,412	\$ 8,137	\$ 5,783

Concept Review Exercise

The comparative balance sheets for 2018 and 2017 and the income statement for 2018 are given below for Beneficial Drill Company. Additional information from Beneficial Drill's accounting records is provided also.

COMPREHENSIVE REVIEW

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows of Beneficial Drill Company for the year ended December 31, 2018. Present cash flows from operating activities by the direct method and use a spreadsheet to assist in your analysis.

BENEFICIAL DRILL COMPANY Comparative Balance Sheets December 31, 2018 and 2017 (\$ in millions)

Assets	2018	2017
Cash	\$ 24	\$ 41
Accounts receivable	94	96
Investment revenue receivable	3	2
Inventory	115	110
Prepaid insurance	2	3
Long-term investments	77	60
Land	110	80
Buildings and equipment	220	240
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(35)	(60)
Patent	15	16
	<u>\$625</u>	<u>\$588</u>
Liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 23	\$ 30
Salaries payable	2	5
Bond interest payable	4	2
Income tax payable	6	8
Deferred income tax liability	5	4
Notes payable	15	0
Bonds payable	150	130
Less: Discount on bonds	(9)	(10)
Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock	210	200
Paid-in capital—excess of par	44	40
Retained earnings	182	179
Less: Treasury stock (at cost)	(7)	0
	<u>\$625</u>	<u>\$588</u>

BENEFICIAL DRILL COMPANY Income Statement For Year Ended December 31, 2018 (\$ in millions)

Revenues		
Sales revenue	\$200	
Investment revenue	6	
Investment revenue—sale of treasury bills	<u>1</u>	\$207

(continued)

(concluded)

Expenses and losses			
Cost of goods sold		110	
Salaries expense		30	
Depreciation expense		5	
Patent amortization expense		1	
Insurance expense		3	
Bond interest expense		14	
Loss on destruction of equipment		10	
Income tax expense		7	(180)
Net income			\$ 27

Additional information from the accounting records:

- Investment revenue includes Beneficial Drill Company's \$3 million share of the net income of Hammer Company, an equity method investee.
- Treasury bills were sold during 2018 at a gain of \$1 million. Beneficial Drill Company classifies its investments in Treasury bills as cash equivalents.
- Equipment that originally cost \$60 million and was one-half depreciated was rendered unusable by a bolt of lightning. Most major components of the machine were unharmed and were sold for \$20 million.
- Temporary differences between pretax accounting income and taxable income caused the deferred income tax liability to increase by \$1 million.
- The common stock of Wrench Corporation was purchased for \$14 million as a long-term investment.
- Land costing \$30 million was acquired by paying \$15 million cash and issuing a 13%, seven-year, \$15 million note payable to the seller.
- New equipment was purchased for \$40 million cash.
- \$20 million of bonds were sold at face value.
- On January 19, Beneficial issued a 5% stock dividend (1 million shares). The market price of the \$10 par value common stock was \$14 per share at that time.
- Cash dividends of \$10 million were paid to shareholders.
- In November, 500,000 common shares were repurchased as treasury stock at a cost of \$7 million.

Solution:

BENEFICIAL DRILL COMPANY
Spreadsheet for the Statement of Cash Flows

	Dec. 31 2017	Changes		Dec. 31 2018
		Debits	Credits	
Balance Sheet				
Assets				
Cash	41		(20)	24
Accounts receivable	96		(1)	94
Investment revenue receivable	2	(2)	1	3
Inventory	110	(4)	5	115
Prepaid insurance	3		(8)	2
Long-term investments	60	(2)	3	
		(13)	14	77
Land	80	(14)	30X	110
Buildings and equipment	240	(15)	40	220
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(60)	(10)	30	(35)
Patent	16		(7)	15
	<u>588</u>			<u>625</u>

(continued)

(concluded)

BENEFICIAL DRILL COMPANY
Spreadsheet for the Statement of Cash Flows

	Dec. 31 2017	Changes		Dec. 31 2018
		Debits	Credits	
Liabilities				
Accounts payable	30	(4)	7	23
Salaries payable	5	(5)	3	2
Bond interest payable	2		(9) 2	4
Income tax payable	8	(11)	2	6
Deferred income tax liability	4		(11) 1	5
Notes payable	0		(14) 15X	15
Bonds payable	130		(16) 20	150
Less: Discount on bonds	(10)		(9) 1	(9)
Shareholders' Equity				
Common stock	200		(17) 10	210
Paid-in capital—excess of par	40		(17) 4	44
Retained earnings	179	(17)	14	182
		(18)	10	
Less: Treasury stock	0	(19)	7	(7)
	<u>588</u>			<u>625</u>
Income Statement				
Revenues:				
Sales revenue			(1) 200	200
Investment revenue			(2) 6	6
Investment revenue—sale of Treasury bills			(3) 1	1
Expenses:				
Cost of goods sold		(4) 110		(110)
Salaries expense		(5) 30		(30)
Depreciation expense		(6) 5		(5)
Patent amortization expense		(7) 1		(1)
Insurance expense		(8) 3		(3)
Bond interest expense		(9) 14		(14)
Loss on destruction of equipment		(10) 10		(10)
Income tax expense		(11) 7		(7)
Net income		(12) 27		<u>27</u>
Statement of Cash Flows				
Operating Activities:				
Cash inflows:				
From customers		(1) 202		
From investment revenue		(2) 2		
From sale of Treasury bills		(3) 1		
Cash outflows:				
To suppliers of goods			(4) 122	
To employees			(5) 33	
For insurance expense			(8) 2	
For bond interest expense			(9) 11	
For income taxes			(11) 8	
Net cash flows				29
Investing Activities:				
Sale of equipment		(10) 20		
Purchase of LT investments			(13) 14	
Purchase of land			(14) 15	
Purchase of equipment			(15) 40	
Net cash flows				(49)
Financing Activities:				
Sale of bonds payable		(16) 20		
Payment of cash dividends			(18) 10	
Purchase of treasury stock			(19) 7	
Net cash flows				<u>3</u>
Net decrease in cash		(20) 17		<u>(17)</u>
Totals		<u>635</u>	<u>635</u>	

BENEFICIAL DRILL COMPANY
Statement of Cash Flows
For Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in millions)

Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Cash inflows:		
From customers	\$ 202	
From investment revenue	2	
From sale of Treasury bills	1	
Cash outflows:		
To suppliers of goods	(122)	
To employees	(33)	
For insurance expense	(2)	
For bond interest expense	(11)	
For income taxes	(8)	
<i>Net cash flows from operating activities</i>		\$ 29

Cash Flows from Investing Activities

Sale of equipment	\$ 20	
Purchase of long-term investments	(14)	
Purchase of land	(15)	
Purchase of equipment	(40)	
<i>Net cash flows from investing activities</i>		(49)

Cash Flows from Financing Activities

Sale of bonds payable	\$ 20	
Payment of cash dividends	(10)	
Purchase of treasury stock	(7)	
<i>Net cash flows from financing activities</i>		3
<i>Net decrease in cash</i>		\$(17)
Cash balance, January 1		41
Cash balance, December 31		\$ 24

Noncash Investing and Financing Activities

Acquired \$30 million of land by paying cash and issuing a 13%, 7-year note as follows:	
Cost of land	\$ 30
Cash paid	15
Note issued	\$ 15

PART C

Preparing the SCF: Indirect Method of Reporting Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Getting There through the Back Door

The presentation of cash flows from operating activities illustrated in Part B is referred to as the *direct method*. By this method, the cash effect of each operating activity (i.e., income statement item) is reported directly on the statement of cash flows. For instance, cash received from customers is reported as the cash effect of sales activities, and cash paid to suppliers is reported as the cash effect of cost of goods sold. Income statement items that have *no* cash effect, such as depreciation expense, gains, and losses, are simply not reported.

As we discussed previously, a permissible alternative is the *indirect method*, by which the net cash increase or decrease from operating activities is derived indirectly by starting with reported net income and working backwards to convert that amount to a cash basis. The derivation by the indirect method of net cash flows from operating activities for UBC is shown in Illustration 21–9B. For the adjustment amounts, you may wish to refer back to UBC's balance sheets and income statement presented in Illustration 21–9.

**Cash Flows from Operating Activities—Indirect Method
and
Reconciliation of Net Income to
Net Cash Flows from Operating Activities**

Net Income	\$12
<i>Adjustments for noncash effects:</i>	
Gain on sale of land	(8)
Depreciation expense	3
Loss on sale of equipment	2
<i>Changes in operating assets and liabilities:</i>	
Increase in accounts receivable	(2)
Decrease in inventory	4
Increase in accounts payable	6
Increase in salaries payable	2
Decrease in discount on bonds payable	2
Decrease in prepaid insurance	3
Decrease in income tax payable	(2)
Net cash flows from operating activities	\$22

Illustration 21-9B

Indirect Method

The indirect method derives the net cash increase or decrease from operating activities indirectly, by starting with reported net income and “working backwards” to convert that amount to a cash basis.

Notice that the indirect method yields the same \$22 million net cash flows from operating activities as does the direct method. This is understandable when you consider that the indirect method simply reverses the differences between the accrual-based income statement and cash flows from operating activities. We accomplish this as described in the next two sections.

Components of Net Income That Do Not Increase or Decrease Cash

Amounts that were subtracted in determining net income but did not reduce cash are *added back* to net income to reverse the effect of their having been subtracted. For example, depreciation expense and the loss on sale of equipment are added back to net income. Other things being equal, this restores net income to what it would have been had depreciation and the loss not been subtracted at all.

Similarly, amounts that were added in determining net income but did not increase cash are subtracted from net income to reverse the effect of their having been added. For example, UBC’s gain on sale of land is deducted from net income. Here’s why. UBC sold for \$18 million land that originally cost \$10 million. Recording the sale produced a gain of \$8 million, which UBC appropriately included in its income statement. But did this gain increase UBC’s cash? No. Certainly selling the land increased cash—by \$18 million. We therefore include the \$18 million as a cash inflow in the statement of cash flows. However, the sale of land is an investing activity. The gain itself, though, is simply the difference between cash received in the sale of land (reported as an investing activity) and the original cost of the land. If UBC also reported the \$8 million gain as a cash flow from operating activities, in addition to reporting \$18 million as a cash flow from investing activities, UBC would report the \$8 million twice. So, because UBC added the gain in determining its net income but the gain had no effect on cash, the gain must now be subtracted from net income to reverse the effect of its having been added.

Components of Net Income That Do Increase or Decrease Cash

For components of net income that increase or decrease cash, but by an amount different from that reported in the income statement, net income is adjusted for changes in the balances of related balance sheet accounts to *convert the effects of those items to a cash basis*.

For example, sales of \$100 million are included in the income statement as a component of net income, and yet, since accounts receivable increased by \$2 million, only \$98 million cash was collected from customers during the reporting period. Sales are converted to a cash basis by subtracting the \$2 million increase in accounts receivable.

Here's another example. The income statement reports salaries expense as \$13 million. Just because employees earned \$13 million during the reporting period, though, doesn't necessarily mean UBC paid those employees \$13 million in cash during the same period. In fact, we see in the comparative balance sheets that salaries payable increased from \$1 million to \$3 million; UBC owes its employees \$2 million more than before the year started. The company must not have paid the entire \$13 million expense. By analyzing salaries expense in relation to the change in salaries payable, we can determine the amount of cash paid to employees, as shown next:

Salaries Payable		
		1 Beginning balance
Cash paid to employees (decreases salaries payable)	?	13 Salaries expense (increases salaries payable)
		3 Ending balance

This inspection indicates that UBC paid only \$11 million cash to its employees; the remaining \$2 million of salaries expense is reflected as an increase in salaries payable. From a cash perspective, then, by subtracting \$13 million for salaries in the income statement, UBC has subtracted \$2 million more than the reduction in cash. Adding back the \$2 million leaves UBC in the same position as if it had deducted only the \$11 million cash paid to employees.

Following a similar analysis of the cash effects of the remaining components of net income, those items are likewise converted to a cash basis by adjusting net income for increases and decreases in related accounts.

For components of net income that increase or decrease cash by an amount exactly the same as that reported in the income statement, no adjustment of net income is required. For example, investment revenue of \$3 million is included in UBC's \$12 million net income amount. Because \$3 million also is the amount of cash received from that activity, this element of net income already represents its cash effect and needs no adjustment.¹⁴

Comparison with the Direct Method

The indirect method is compared with the direct method in Illustration 21–11, using the data of UBC. To better illustrate the relationship between the two methods, the adjustments to net income using the indirect method are presented parallel to the related cash inflows and cash outflows of the direct method. The income statement is included in the graphic to demonstrate that the indirect method also serves to reconcile differences between the elements of that statement and the cash flows reported by the direct method.

As a practical consideration, you might notice that the adjustments to net income using the indirect method follow a convenient pattern. *Increases* in related assets are deducted from net income (i.e., the increase in accounts receivable) when converting to cash from operating activities. Conversely, *decreases* in assets are added (inventory and prepaid insurance in this case). Changes in related liabilities are handled in just the opposite way. Increases in related liabilities are *added* to net income (i.e., the increases in accounts payable and salaries payable) while decreases in liabilities are subtracted (i.e., decrease in income tax payable).¹⁵

Of course, these are adjustments to net income that effectively convert components of income from reported accrual amounts to a cash basis. The other adjustments to net income (gain, depreciation, loss), as pointed out earlier, are to remove the three income statement components that have no effect at all on cash. This pattern is summarized in Illustration 21–12.

¹⁴We determined in Part B (subsection 2) that there is no evidence that cash received from investments differs from investment revenue.

¹⁵The adjustment for the decrease in bond discount is logically consistent with this pattern as well. Bond discount is a contra liability. It's logical, then, that an adjustment for a decrease in this account be added—the opposite of the way a decrease in a liability is treated.

Illustration 21-11

Comparison of the Indirect Method and the Direct Method of Determining Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Income Statement		Cash Flows from Operating Activities			
		Indirect Method		Direct Method	
		Net income	\$12		
		Adjustments:			
Sales	\$100	Increase in accounts receivable	(2)	Cash received from customers	\$ 98
Investment revenue	3	(No adjustment—no investment revenue receivable or long-term investments)		Cash received from investments	3
Gain on sale of land	8	Gain on sale of land	(8)	(Not reported—no cash effect)	
Cost of goods sold	(60)	Decrease in inventory	4		
		Increase in accounts payable	6	Cash paid to suppliers	(50)
Salaries expense	(13)	Increase in salaries payable	2	Cash paid to employees	(11)
Depreciation expense	(3)	Depreciation expense	3	(Not reported—no cash effect)	
Interest expense	(5)	Decrease in bond discount	2	Cash paid for interest	(3)
Insurance expense	(7)	Decrease in prepaid insurance	3	Cash paid for insurance	(4)
Loss on sale of equipment	(2)	Loss on sale of equipment	2	(Not reported—no cash effect)	
Income tax expense	(9)	Decrease in income tax payable	(2)	Cash paid for income taxes	(11)
Net Income	\$ 12	Net cash flows from operating activities	\$22	Net cash flows from operating activities	\$ 22

Type of Adjustment

To Adjust for Noncash Effect

Adjustments for Noncash Effects:

Income statement components that have *no effect* at all on cash but are additions to income

Deduct from net income

Income statement components that have *no effect* at all on cash but are deductions from income

Add to net income

Changes in Operating Assets and Liabilities:

Increases in assets related to an income statement component

Deduct from net income

Decreases in assets related to an income statement component

Add to net income

Increases in liabilities related to an income statement component

Add to net income

Decreases in liabilities related to an income statement component

Deduct from net income

Illustration 21-12

Adjustments to Convert Net Income to a Cash Basis—Indirect Method

Although either the direct method or the indirect method is permitted, the FASB strongly encourages companies to report cash flows from operating activities by the direct method. The obvious appeal of this approach is that it reports specific operating cash receipts and operating cash payments, which is consistent with the primary objective of the statement of cash flows. Investors and creditors gain additional insight into the specific sources of cash receipts and payments from operating activities revealed by this reporting method. Also, statement users can more readily interpret and understand the information presented because the direct method avoids the confusion caused by reporting noncash items and other reconciling adjustments under the caption *cash flows from operating activities*. Nonetheless, the vast majority of companies choose to use the indirect method. Reasons for this choice range from longstanding tradition to the desire to withhold as much information as possible from competitors.¹⁶

¹⁶As indicated earlier, a recent Staff Draft of an Exposure Draft from the IASB and FASB advocates requiring the direct method and disallowing the indirect method for the proposed new Financial Statement Presentation format.

Reconciliation of Net Income to Cash Flows from Operating Activities

As we discussed earlier, whether cash flows from operating activities are reported by the direct method or by the indirect method, the financial statements must report a reconciliation of net income to net cash flows from operating activities. When the direct method is used, the reconciliation is presented in a separate schedule and is identical to the presentation of net cash flows from operating activities by the indirect method. In other words, Illustration 21–9B also serves as the reconciliation schedule to accompany a statement of cash flows using the direct method. Obviously, a separate reconciliation schedule is not required when using the indirect method because the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows is a reconciliation of net income to net cash flows from operating activities.¹⁷

Remember that the direct and indirect methods are alternative approaches to deriving net cash flows from *operating* activities only. The choice of which method is used for that purpose does not affect the way cash flows from *investing* and *financing* activities are identified and reported.

The statements of cash flows from the annual report of **Toys “R” Us, Inc.**, which uses the indirect method, are shown in Illustration 21–13.

Illustration 21–13 Statement of Cash Flows—Indirect Method; Toys “R” Us, Inc.

Real World Financials

TOYS “R” US, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows			
(\$ in millions)	Fiscal Years Ended		
	January 30, 2016	January 31, 2015	February 1, 2014
Cash flows from operating activities:			
Net loss	\$ (124)	\$ (288)	\$ (1,036)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Depreciation and amortization	343	377	388
Amortization and write-off of debt issuance costs and debt discount	28	59	73
Net gains on sales of properties	(20)	(5)	(8)
Deferred income taxes	17	(1)	133
Non-cash portion of asset impairments and other charges	20	20	49
Goodwill impairment	—	—	378
Proceeds from settlement of derivatives	—	9	—
Unrealized losses (gains) on foreign exchange	10	15	(1)
Other	(1)	23	16
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Accounts and other receivables	(2)	(6)	(1)
Merchandise inventories	(256)	(16)	13
Prepaid expenses and other operating assets	18	14	21
Accounts payable, accrued expenses and other liabilities	190	283	160
Income taxes payable, net	15	(8)	(41)
<i>Net cash provided by operating activities</i>	<u>238</u>	<u>476</u>	<u>144</u>
Cash flows from investing activities:			
Capital expenditures	(219)	(207)	(238)
Increase in restricted cash	(2)	(5)	(34)
Proceeds from sales of fixed assets	13	18	35
Acquisitions	(2)	(1)	—
Property insurance recovery	—	2	—
Purchases of debt securities	—	—	(20)
Proceeds from redemption of debt securities	—	—	52
<i>Net cash used in investing activities</i>	<u>(210)</u>	<u>(193)</u>	<u>(205)</u>

(continued)

¹⁷It is permissible to present the reconciliation in a separate schedule and to report the net cash flows from operating activities as a single line item on the statement of cash flows.

Illustration 21-13 (concluded)

(\$ in millions)	Fiscal Years Ended		
	January 30, 2016	January 31, 2015	February 1, 2014
Cash Flows from financing activities:			
Long-term debt borrowings	1,451	2,866	3,159
Long-term debt repayments	(1,472)	(3,010)	(3,491)
Short-term debt borrowings, net	—	(12)	(2)
Capitalized debt issuance costs	(6)	(35)	(47)
Other	—	—	(7)
<i>Net cash used in financing activities</i>	<u>(27)</u>	<u>(191)</u>	<u>(388)</u>
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	<u>(19)</u>	<u>(38)</u>	<u>(25)</u>
Cash and cash equivalents:			
Net (decrease) increase during period	(18)	54	(474)
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period	698	644	1,118
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period	<u>\$ 680</u>	<u>\$ 698</u>	<u>\$ 644</u>
Supplemental disclosures of cash flow information:			
Interest paid	\$ 393	\$ 380	\$ 458
Net income tax payments	\$ 39	\$ 43	\$ 71
Non-cash operating information:			
Purchases of property and equipment included in accounts payable,			
Accrued expenses and other current liabilities	\$ 56	\$ 42	\$ 24

For most companies, expenditures for interest and for taxes are significant. Cash payments for interest and for taxes usually are specifically indicated when the direct method is employed, as is the case for **CVS Health Corp.** reported earlier in Illustration 21-10. When the indirect method is used, those amounts aren't readily apparent and must be *separately reported*, either on the face of the statement or in an accompanying disclosure note as Toys "R" Us does.

We use a spreadsheet to help prepare a statement of cash flows by the indirect method in Appendix 21A.

Decision Makers' Perspective—Cash Flow Ratios

We have emphasized the analysis of financial statements from a decision maker's perspective throughout this text. Often that analysis included the development and comparison of financial ratios. Ratios based on income statement and balance sheet amounts enjoy a long tradition of acceptance, from which several standard ratios, including those described in earlier chapters, have evolved. To gain another viewpoint, some analysts supplement their investigation with cash flow ratios. Some cash flow ratios are derived by simply substituting cash flow from operations (CFFO) from the statement of cash flows in place of net income in many ratios, not to replace those ratios, but to complement them. For example, the times interest earned ratio can be modified to reflect the number of times the cash outflow for interest is provided by cash inflow from operations, and any of the profitability ratios can be modified to determine the cash generated from assets, shareholders' equity, sales, etc. Illustration 21-14 summarizes the calculation and usefulness of several representative cash flow ratios.

Cash flow ratios have received limited acceptance to date, due in large part to the long tradition of accrual-based ratios coupled with the relatively brief time that all companies have published statements of cash flows. A lack of consensus on cash flow ratios by which to make comparisons also has slowed their acceptance. In fact, companies are prohibited from

Illustration 21-14

Cash Flow Ratios

	Calculation	Measures
Performance Ratios		
Cash flow to sales	$\frac{\text{CFFO}}{\text{Net sales}}$	Cash generated by each sales dollar
Cash return on assets	$\frac{\text{CFFO}}{\text{Average total assets}}$	Cash generated from all resources
Cash return on shareholders' equity	$\frac{\text{CFFO}}{\text{Average shareholders' equity}}$	Cash generated from owner-provided resources
Cash to income	$\frac{\text{CFFO}}{\text{Income from continuing operations}}$	Cash-generating ability of continuing operations
Cash flow per share	$\frac{\text{CFFO} - \text{preferred dividends}}{\text{Weighted-average shares}}$	Operating cash flow on a per share basis
Sufficiency Ratios		
Debt coverage	$\frac{\text{Total liabilities}}{\text{CFFO}}$	Financial risk and financial leverage
Interest coverage	$\frac{\text{CFFO} + \text{interest} + \text{taxes}}{\text{Interest}}$	Ability to satisfy fixed obligations
Reinvestment	$\frac{\text{CFFO}}{\text{Cash outflow for noncurrent assets}}$	Ability to acquire assets with operating cash flows
Debt payment	$\frac{\text{CFFO}}{\text{Cash outflow for LT debt repayment}}$	Ability to pay debts with operating cash flows
Dividend payment	$\frac{\text{CFFO}}{\text{Cash outflow for dividends}}$	Ability to pay dividends with operating cash flows
Investing and financing activity	$\frac{\text{CFFO}}{\text{Cash outflows for investing and financing activities}}$	Ability to acquire assets, pay debts, and make distributions to owners

reporting cash flow per share in the statement of cash flows. Nevertheless, cash flow ratios offer insight in the evaluation of a company's profitability and financial strength.¹⁸ ●

Financial Reporting Case Solution



© Jose Luis Pelaez Inc./
Blend Images LLC

1. **What are the cash flow aspects of the situation that Mr. Barr may be overlooking in making his case for a wage increase? How can a company's operations generate a healthy profit and yet produce meager or even negative cash flows?** (p. 1210) Positive net income does not necessarily indicate a healthy cash position. A statement of cash flows provides information about cash flows not seen when looking only at the balance sheet and the income statement. Although cash flows from operating activities result from the same activities that are reported in the income statement, the income statement reports the activities on an accrual basis. That is, revenues reported are those earned during the reporting period, regardless of when cash is received, and the expenses incurred in generating those revenues, regardless of when cash is paid. Thus, the very same operations can generate a healthy profit and yet produce meager or even negative cash flows.
2. **What information can a statement of cash flows provide about a company's investing activities that can be useful in decisions such as this?** (p. 1212) Cash flows from investing activities result from the acquisition and disposition of assets. Information about investing activities is useful to decision makers regarding the nature and magnitude of

¹⁸Proposals for informative sets of cash flow ratios are offered by Charles Carslaw and John Mills, "Developing Ratios for Effective Cash Flow Analysis," *Journal of Accountancy*, November 1991; Don Giacomino and David Mielke, "Cash Flows: Another Approach to Ratio Analysis," *Journal of Accountancy*, March 1993; and John Mills and Jeanne Yamamura, "The Power of Cash Flows Ratios," *Journal of Accountancy*, October 1998.

productive assets being acquired for future use. In the union negotiations, for instance, Mr. Barr may not be aware of the substantial investments under way to replace and update equipment and the cash requirements of those investments. Relatedly, the relatively low depreciation charges accelerated depreciation provides in the later years of assets' lives may cause profits to seem artificially high given the necessity to replace those assets at higher prices.

- 3. What information can a statement of cash flows provide about a company's financing activities that can be useful in decisions such as this?** (p. 1213) Information about financing activities provides insights into sources of a company's external financing. Recent debt issues, for instance, might indicate a need for higher cash flows to maintain higher interest charges. Similarly, recent external financing activity may suggest that a company might be near its practical limits from external sources and, therefore, may need a greater reliance on internal financing through operations. ●

The Bottom Line

- **LO21-1** Decision makers focus on the prospects of receiving a cash return from their dealings with a firm. But it is the ability of the firm to generate cash flows to itself that ultimately determines the potential for cash flows to investors and creditors. The statement of cash flows fills an information gap left by the balance sheet and the income statement by presenting information about cash flows that the other statements either do not provide or provide only indirectly. (p. 1205)
- **LO21-2** Cash includes cash equivalents. These are short-term, highly liquid investments that can readily be converted to cash with little risk of loss. (p. 1209)
- **LO21-3** Cash flows from operating activities are both inflows and outflows of cash that result from activities reported in the income statement. (p. 1210)
- **LO21-4** Unlike the direct method, which directly lists cash inflows and outflows, the indirect method derives cash flows indirectly, by starting with reported net income and working backwards to convert that amount to a cash basis. (p. 1211)
- **LO21-5** Cash flows from investing activities are related to the acquisition and disposition of assets, other than inventory and assets classified as cash equivalents. (p. 1212)
- **LO21-6** Cash flows from financing activities result from the external financing of a business. (p. 1213)
- **LO21-7** Noncash investing and financing activities, such as acquiring equipment (an investing activity) by issuing a long-term note payable (a financing activity), are reported in a related disclosure schedule or note. (p. 1215)
- **LO21-8** A spreadsheet provides a systematic method of preparing a statement of cash flows by analyzing available data to ensure that all operating, investing, and financing activities are detected. Recording spreadsheet entries that explain account balance changes simultaneously identifies and classifies the activities to be reported on the statement of cash flows. (p. 1215)
- **LO21-9** IFRS allows more flexibility than U.S. GAAP in the classification of cash flows. Companies can report interest and dividends paid as either operating or financing cash flows and interest and dividends received as either operating or investing cash flows. (p. 1235) ●

Spreadsheet for the Indirect Method

A spreadsheet is equally useful in preparing a statement of cash flows whether we use the direct or the indirect method of determining cash flows from operating activities. The format of the spreadsheet differs only with respect to operating activities. The analysis of transactions for the purpose of identifying cash flows to be reported is the same. To illustrate, Illustration 21A-1 provides a spreadsheet analysis of the data for UBC.

Two differences should be noted between the spreadsheet in Illustration 21A-1 and the spreadsheet we used earlier for the direct method. First, in the statement of cash flows section of the spreadsheet, under the heading of "cash flows from operating activities," specific

APPENDIX 21A

UNITED BRANDS CORPORATION
Spreadsheet for the Statement of Cash Flows

	Dec. 31, 2017	Changes		Dec. 31, 2018
		Debits	Credits	
Balance Sheet				
Assets				
Cash	20	(19)	9	29
Accounts receivable	30	(5)	2	32
Short-term investments	0	(12)	12	12
Inventory	50		(6)	46
Prepaid insurance	6		(8)	3
Land	60	(13)	30	80
Buildings and equipment	75	(14)	20X	81
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(20)	(3)	(4)	(16)
	<u>221</u>			<u>267</u>
Liabilities				
Accounts payable	20		(7)	26
Salaries payable	1		(9)	3
Income tax payable	8	(11)	2	6
Notes payable	0		(14)	20X
Bonds payable	50	(15)	15	35
Less: Discount on bonds	(3)		(10)	(1)
Shareholders' Equity				
Common stock	100		(16)	10
			(17)	20
Paid-in capital—excess of par	20		(16)	3
			(17)	6
Retained earnings	25	(16)	13	19
	<u>221</u>	(18)	(1)	<u>267</u>
Statement of Cash Flows				
Operating activities:				
Net income		(1)	12	
<i>Adjustments for noncash effects:</i>				
Gain on sale of land			(2)	8
Depreciation expense		(4)	3	
Loss on sale of equipment		(3)	2	
Increase in accounts receivable			(5)	2
Decrease in inventory		(6)	4	
Decrease in prepaid insurance		(8)	3	
Increase in accounts payable		(7)	6	
Increase in salaries payable		(9)	2	
Decrease in income tax payable			(11)	2
Amortization of discount		(10)	2	
<i>Net cash flows</i>				22
Investing activities:				
Purchase of land			(13)	30
Purchase of S-T investment			(12)	12
Sale of land		(2)	18	
Sale of equipment		(3)	5	
<i>Net cash flows</i>				(19)
Financing activities:				
Sale of common shares		(17)	26	
Retirement of bonds payable			(15)	15
Payment of cash dividends			(18)	5
<i>Net cash flows</i>				6
<i>Net increase in cash</i>			(19)	9
Totals		<u>198</u>	<u>198</u>	<u>9</u>

cash inflows and cash outflows are replaced by net income and the required adjustments for noncash effects. Second, we do not include an income statement section. This section is unnecessary because, using the indirect method, we are not interested in identifying specific operating activities that cause increases and decreases in cash. Instead, we need from the income statement only the amount of net income, which is converted to a cash basis by adjusting for any noncash amounts included in net income. The spreadsheet entries in journal entry form for the indirect method are illustrated in Illustration 21A-2.

Remember that there is no mandatory order in which the account changes must be analyzed. However, since we determine net cash flows from operating activities by working backwards from net income when using the indirect method, it is convenient to start with the spreadsheet entry that represents the credit to retained earnings due to net income. This entry corresponds to summary entry (11) using the direct method. By entering the debit portion of the entry as the first item under the cash flows from operating activities (CFOA), we establish net income as the initial amount of cash flows from operating activities, which is then adjusted to a cash basis by subsequent entries. Entries (2)–(4) duplicate the transactions that involve noncash components of net income. Changes in current assets and current liabilities that represent differences between revenues and expenses and the cash effects of those revenues and expenses are accounted for by entries (5)–(11). Summary entries (12)–(19) explain the changes in the balance sheet not already accounted for by previous entries, and are identical to entries (12)–(19) recorded using the direct method.

Entry (1)	Net income—CFOA	12	
	Retained earnings		12
	<i>Establishes net income as the initial amount of cash flows from operating activities, to be adjusted to a cash basis by subsequent entries.</i>		
Entry (2)	Cash (received from sale of land)	18	
	Land		10
	Gain on sale of land—CFOA		8
	<i>Deducts the noncash gain added in determining net income, explains a portion of the change in land, and identifies a cash inflow from investing activities.</i>		
Entry (3)	Cash (received from sale of equipment)	5	
	Loss on sale of equipment—CFOA	2	
	Accumulated depreciation	7	
	Buildings and equipment		14
	<i>Adds back the noncash loss subtracted in determining net income, explains portions of the changes in accumulated depreciation and buildings and equipment, and identifies a cash inflow from investing activities.</i>		
Entry (4)	Depreciation expense—CFOA	3	
	Accumulated depreciation		3
	<i>Adds back the noncash expense subtracted in determining net income.</i>		
Entry (5)	Accounts receivable	2	
	Increase in accounts receivable—CFOA		2
	<i>Reduces net income to reflect \$98 million cash received from customers rather than \$100 million sales.</i>		
Entry (6)	Decrease in inventory—CFOA	4	
	Inventory		4
	<i>Increases net income to reflect a deduction of \$56 million cost of goods purchased rather than \$60 million cost of goods sold.</i>		
Entry (7)	Increase in accounts payable—CFOA	6	
	Accounts payable		6
	<i>Increases net income to reflect a deduction of \$50 million cash paid to suppliers rather than \$56 million cost of goods purchased.</i>		

(continued)

Illustration 21A-2

Spreadsheet Entries for the Indirect Method

Illustration 21A-2

(concluded)

Entry (8)	Decrease in prepaid insurance—CFOA	3	
	Prepaid insurance		3
	<i>Increases net income to reflect a deduction of \$4 million cash paid for insurance rather than \$7 million insurance expense.</i>		
Entry (9)	Increase in salaries payable—CFOA	2	
	Salaries payable		2
	<i>Increases net income to reflect a deduction of \$11 million cash paid to employees rather than \$13 million salaries expense.</i>		
Entry (10)	Amortization of discount on bonds—CFOA	2	
	Discount on bonds		2
	<i>Increases net income to reflect a deduction of \$3 million cash paid for bond interest rather than \$5 million bond interest expense.</i>		
Entry (11)	Income taxes payable	2	
	Decrease in income taxes payable—CFOA		2
	<i>Reduces net income to reflect a deduction of \$11 million cash paid for income taxes rather than \$9 million income tax expense.</i>		
Entry (12)	Short-term investment	12	
	Cash (purchase of short-term investment)		12
	<i>Explains the increase in the short-term investment account and identifies a cash outflow from investing activities.</i>		
Entry (13)	Land	30	
	Cash (purchase of land)		30
	<i>Explains a portion of the change in the land account and identifies a cash outflow from investing activities.</i>		
Entry (14)	Buildings and equipment	20	
	Note payable		20
	<i>Partially explains the changes in the buildings, equipment, and notes payable accounts and identifies a significant noncash investing and financing activity.</i>		
Entry (15)	Bonds payable	15	
	Cash (retirement of bonds payable)		15
	<i>Explains the decrease in the bonds payable account and identifies a cash outflow from financing activities.</i>		
Entry (16)	Retained earnings	13	
	Common stock		10
	Paid-in capital—excess of par		3
	<i>Partially explains the changes in the retained earnings, common stock, and paid-in capital—excess of par accounts.</i>		
Entry (17)	Cash (from sale of common stock)	26	
	Common stock		20
	Paid-in capital—excess of par		6
	<i>Partially explains the changes in the common stock and paid-in capital—excess of par accounts and identifies a cash inflow from financing activities.</i>		
Entry (18)	Retained earnings	5	
	Cash (payment of cash dividends)		5
	<i>Partially explains the change in the retained earnings account and identifies a cash outflow from financing activities.</i>		
Entry (19)	Cash	9	
	Net increase in cash (from statement of cash flows activities)		9
	<i>Reconciles the net increase in cash from operating, investing, and financing activities to the increase in the cash balance.</i>		

The statement of cash flows presenting net cash flows from operating activities by the indirect method is illustrated in Illustration 21A-3.

UNITED BRANDS CORPORATION
Statement of Cash Flows
For Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in millions)

Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Net income	\$ 12	
<i>Adjustments for noncash effects:</i>		
Gain on sale of land	(8)	
Depreciation expense	3	
Loss on sale of equipment	2	
<i>Changes in operating assets and liabilities:</i>		
Increase in accounts receivable	(2)	
Decrease in inventory	4	
Decrease in prepaid insurance	3	
Increase in accounts payable	6	
Increase in salaries payable	2	
Decrease in income tax payable	(2)	
Decrease in discount on bonds payable	2	
	<u> </u>	
<i>Net cash flows from operating activities</i>		\$ 22

Cash Flows from Investing Activities

Purchase of land	(30)	
Purchase of short-term investment	(12)	
Sale of land	18	
Sale of equipment	5	
	<u> </u>	
<i>Net cash from investing activities</i>		(19)

Cash Flows from Financing Activities

Sale of common shares	26	
Retirement of bonds payable	(15)	
Payment of cash dividends	(5)	
	<u> </u>	
<i>Net cash flows from financing activities</i>		6
		<u> </u>
<i>Net increase in cash</i>		9
Cash balance, January 1		20
		<u> </u>
Cash balance, December 31		\$ 29
		<u> </u>

Note X:

Noncash Investing and Financing Activities

Acquired \$20 million of equipment by issuing a 12%, 5-year note	<u>\$ 20</u> ●
---	----------------

Illustration 21A-3

Statement of Cash
flows—Indirect Method

All parts of the statement of cash flows except operating activities are precisely the same as in the direct method.

The T-Account Method of Preparing the Statement of Cash Flows

APPENDIX 21B

This appendix demonstrates the use of a spreadsheet to prepare the statement of cash flows. A second systematic approach to the preparation of the statement is referred to as the T-account method. The two methods are identical in concept. Both approaches reconstruct the transactions that caused changes in each account balance during the year, simultaneously identifying the operating, investing, and financing activities to be reported on the statement of cash flows. The form of the two methods differs only by whether the entries for those transactions are recorded on a spreadsheet or in T-accounts. In both cases, entries are recorded until the net change in each account balance has been explained.

Some accountants feel that the T-account method is less time-consuming than preparing a spreadsheet but accomplishes precisely the same goal. Since both methods are simply

The T-account method serves the same purpose as a spreadsheet in assisting in the preparation of a statement of cash flows.

analytical techniques to assist in statement preparation, the choice is a matter of personal preference. The following five steps outline the T-account method:

1. Draw T-accounts for each income statement and balance sheet account.
2. The T-account for cash should be drawn considerably larger than other T-accounts because more space is required to accommodate the numerous debits and credits to cash. Also, the cash T-account will serve the same purpose as the statement of cash flows section of the spreadsheet in that the formal statement of cash flows is developed from the cash flows reported there. Therefore, it is convenient to partition the cash T-account with headings for "Operating Activities," "Investing Activities," and "Financing Activities" before entries are recorded.
3. Enter each account's net change on the appropriate side (debit or credit) of the uppermost portion of each T-account. These changes will serve as individual check figures for determining whether the increase or decrease in each account balance has been explained. These first three steps establish the basic work form for the T-account method.
4. Reconstruct the transactions that caused changes in each account balance during the year and record the entries for those transactions directly in the T-accounts. Again using UBC as an example, the entries we record in the T-accounts are exactly the same as the spreadsheet entries we created in the chapter when using the spreadsheet method. The analysis we used in creating those spreadsheet entries is equally applicable to the T-account method. For that reason, that analysis is not repeated here. The complete T-account work form for UBC is presented below. Account balance changes are provided from balances given in Illustration 21–9.
5. After all account balances have been explained by T-account entries, prepare the statement of cash flows from the cash T-account, being careful also to report noncash investing and financing activities. The statement of cash flows for UBC appears in Illustration 21–2.

BALANCE SHEET ACCOUNTS					
Cash (statement of cash flows)					
		9			
Operating Activities:					
From customers	(1)	98	50	(4)	To suppliers of goods
From investment revenue	(2)	3	11	(5)	To employees
			3	(7)	For interest
			4	(8)	For insurance
			11	(10)	For income taxes
Investing Activities:					
Sale of land	(3)	18	12	(12)	Purchase of short-term investment
Sale of equipment	(9)	5	30	(13)	Purchase of land
Financing Activities:					
Sale of common stock	(17)	26	15	(15)	Retirement of bonds payable
			5	(18)	Payment of cash dividends

Accounts Receivable		Short-Term Investments	
	2		12
(1)	2	(12)	12

Inventory		Prepaid Insurance		Land	
	4		3		20
	4	(4)	3	(8) (13)	30 10 (3)

(continued)

(concluded)

Buildings and Equipment			Accumulated Depreciation			Accounts Payable		
	6			4			6	
X(14)	20	14	(9)	(9)	7	3	6	(4)
Salaries Payable			Income Tax Payable			Notes Payable		
	2			2			20	
	2	(5)	(10)	2			20	(14)X
Bonds Payable			Discount on Bonds			Common Stock		
	15			2			30	
(15)	15			2	(7)		10	(16)
							20	(17)
Paid-in Capital— excess of par			Retained Earnings					
	9			6				
	3	(16)	(16)	13				
	6	(17)	(18)	5	12	(11)		



X Noncash Investing and Financing Activity

INCOME STATEMENT ACCOUNTS

Sales Revenue			Investment Revenue			Gain on Sale of Land		
	100			3			8	
	100	(1)		3	(2)		8	(3)
Cost of Goods Sold			Salaries Expense			Depreciation Expense		
	60			13			3	
(4)	60		(5)	13		(6)	3	
Interest Expense			Insurance Expense			Loss on Sale of Equipment		
	5			7			2	
(7)	5		(8)	7		(9)	2	
Income Tax Expense			Net Income (Income Summary)					
	9			12				
(10)	9		(11)	12				

Questions For Review of Key Topics

- Q 21-1** Effects of all cash flows affect the balances of various accounts reported in the balance sheet. Also, the activities that cause some of these cash flows are reported in the income statement. What, then, is the need for an additional financial statement that reports cash flows?
- Q 21-2** The statement of cash flows provides a list of all the cash inflows and cash outflows during the reporting period. To make the list more informative, the cash flows are classified according to the nature of the activities that create the cash flows. What are the three primary classifications?

- Q 21-3** Is an investment in Treasury bills always classified as a cash equivalent? Explain.
- Q 21-4** Transactions that involve merely purchases or sales of cash equivalents generally are not reported in a statement of cash flows. Describe an exception to this generalization. What is the essential characteristic of the transaction that qualifies as an exception?
- Q 21-5** What are the differences between cash flows from operating activities and the elements of an income statement?
- Q 21-6** Do cash flows from operating activities report all the elements of the income statement on a cash basis? Explain.
- Q 21-7** Investing activities include the acquisition and disposition of assets. Provide three specific examples. Identify two exceptions.
- Q 21-8** The sale of stock and the sale of bonds are reported as financing activities. Are payments of dividends to shareholders and payments of interest to bondholders also reported as financing activities? Explain.
- Q 21-9** Does the statement of cash flows report only transactions that cause an increase or a decrease in cash? Explain.
- Q 21-10** How would the acquisition of a building be reported on a statement of cash flows if purchased by issuing a mortgage note payable in addition to a significant cash down payment?
- Q 21-11** Perhaps the most noteworthy item reported on an income statement is net income—the amount by which revenues exceed expenses. The most noteworthy item reported on a statement of cash flows is *not* the amount of net cash flows. Explain.
- Q 21-12** What is the purpose of the “changes” columns of a spreadsheet to prepare a statement of cash flows?
- Q 21-13** Given sales revenue of \$200,000, how can it be determined whether or not \$200,000 cash was received from customers?
- Q 21-14** When an asset is sold at a gain, why is the gain not reported as a cash inflow from operating activities?
- Q 21-15** When determining the amount of cash paid for income taxes, what would be indicated by an increase in the deferred income tax liability account?
- Q 21-16** When using the indirect method of determining net cash flows from operating activities, how is warranty expense reported? Why? What other expenses are reported in a like manner?
- Q 21-17** When using the indirect method of determining net cash flows from operating activities, how are revenues and expenses reported on the statement of cash flows if their cash effects are identical to the amounts reported in the income statement?
- Q 21-18** Why does the FASB recommend the direct method over the indirect method?
- Q 21-19** Compare the manner in which investing activities are reported on a statement of cash flows prepared by the direct method and by the indirect method.
-  **IFRS Q 21-20** Where can we find authoritative guidance for the statement of cash flows under IFRS?
-  **IFRS Q 21-21** U.S. GAAP designates cash outflows for interest payments and cash inflows from interest and dividends received as operating cash flows. Dividends paid to shareholders are classified as financing cash flows. How are these cash flows reported under IFRS?

Brief Exercises



- BE 21-1**
Determine cash received from customers
● LO21-3
Horton Housewares' accounts receivable decreased during the year by \$5 million. What is the amount of cash Horton received from customers during the reporting period if its sales were \$33 million? Prepare a summary entry that represents the net effect of the selling and collection activities during the reporting period.
- BE 21-2**
Determine cash received from customers
● LO21-3
April Wood Products' accounts receivable increased during the year by \$4 million. What is the amount of cash April Wood Products received from customers during the reporting period if its sales were \$44 million? Prepare a summary entry that represents the net effect of the selling and collection activities during the reporting period.
- BE 21-3**
Determine cash paid to suppliers
● LO21-3
LaRoe Lawns' inventory increased during the year by \$6 million. Its accounts payable increased by \$5 million during the same period. What is the amount of cash LaRoe paid to suppliers of merchandise during the reporting period if its cost of goods sold was \$25 million? Prepare a summary entry that represents the net effect of merchandise purchases during the reporting period.
- BE 21-4**
Determine cash paid to employees
● LO21-3
Sherriane Baby Products' salaries expense was \$17 million. What is the amount of cash Sherriane paid to employees during the reporting period if its salaries payable increased by \$3 million? Prepare a summary entry that represents the net effect of salaries expense incurred and paid during the reporting period.

BE 21-5

Bond interest
and discount

- LO21-3, LO21-6

Agee Technology, Inc., issued 9% bonds, dated January 1, with a face amount of \$400 million on July 1, 2018, at a price of \$380 million. For bonds of similar risk and maturity, the market yield is 10%. Interest is paid semi-annually on June 30 and December 31. Prepare the journal entry to record interest at the effective interest rate at December 31. What would be the amount(s) related to the bonds that Agee would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018, if it uses the direct method?

BE 21-6

Bond interest
and discount

- LO21-4, LO21-6

Refer to the situation described in BE 21-5. What would be the amount(s) related to the bonds that Agee would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018, if it uses the indirect method?

BE 21-7

Installment note

- LO21-3, LO21-6

On January 1, 2018, the Merit Group issued to its bank a \$41 million, five-year installment note to be paid in five equal payments at the end of each year. Installment payments of \$10 million annually include interest at the rate of 7%. What would be the amount(s) related to the note that Merit would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?

BE 21-8

Sale of land

- LO21-3,
LO21-4, LO21-5

On July 15, 2018, M.W. Morgan Distribution sold land for \$35 million that it had purchased in 2013 for \$22 million. What would be the amount(s) related to the sale that Morgan would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018, using the direct method? The indirect method?

BE 21-9

Investing activities

- LO21-5

Carter Containers sold marketable securities, land, and common stock for \$30 million, \$15 million, and \$40 million, respectively. Carter also purchased treasury stock, equipment, and a patent for \$21 million, \$25 million, and \$12 million, respectively. What amount should Carter report as net cash from investing activities?

BE 21-10

Financing
activities

- LO21-6

Refer to the situation described in BE 21-9. What amount should Carter report as net cash from financing activities?

BE 21-11

Indirect method

- LO21-4

Sheen Awnings reported net income of \$90 million. Included in that number were depreciation expense of \$3 million and a loss on the sale of equipment of \$2 million. Records reveal increases in accounts receivable, accounts payable, and inventory of \$1 million, \$4 million, and \$3 million, respectively. What were Sheen's cash flows from operating activities?

BE 21-12

Indirect method

- LO21-4

Sunset Acres reported net income of \$60 million. Included in that number were trademark amortization expense of \$2 million and a gain on the sale of land of \$1 million. Records reveal decreases in accounts receivable, accounts payable, and inventory of \$2 million, \$5 million, and \$4 million, respectively. What were Sunset's cash flows from operating activities?

Exercises

**E 21-1**

Classification of
cash flows

- LO21-3 through
LO21-6

Listed below are several transactions that typically produce either an increase or a decrease in cash. Indicate by letter whether the cash effect of each transaction is reported on a statement of cash flows as an operating (O), investing (I), or financing (F) activity.

Transactions	
<u> </u> F	1. Sale of common stock
<u> </u>	2. Sale of land
<u> </u>	3. Purchase of treasury stock
<u> </u>	4. Merchandise sales
<u> </u>	5. Issuance of a long-term note payable
<u> </u>	6. Purchase of merchandise
<u> </u>	7. Repayment of note payable

(continued)

(concluded)

- _____ 8. Employee salaries
- _____ 9. Sale of equipment at a gain
- _____ 10. Issuance of bonds
- _____ 11. Acquisition of bonds of another corporation
- _____ 12. Payment of semiannual interest on bonds payable
- _____ 13. Payment of a cash dividend
- _____ 14. Purchase of a building
- _____ 15. Collection of nontrade note receivable (principal amount)
- _____ 16. Loan to another firm
- _____ 17. Retirement of common stock
- _____ 18. Income taxes
- _____ 19. Issuance of a short-term note payable
- _____ 20. Sale of a copyright

E 21-2

Determine cash paid to suppliers of merchandise

• LO21-3, LO21-6

Shown below in T-account format are the beginning and ending balances (\$ in millions) of both inventory and accounts payable.

Inventory		
Beginning balance	90	
Ending balance	93	

Accounts Payable		
	14	Beginning balance
	16	Ending balance

Required:

- Use a T-account analysis to determine the amount of cash paid to suppliers of merchandise during the reporting period if cost of goods sold was \$300 million.
- Prepare a summary entry that represents the net effect of merchandise purchases during the reporting period.

E 21-3

Determine cash received from customers

• LO21-3

Determine the amount of cash received from customers for each of the three independent situations below. All dollars are in millions.

Situation	Sales Revenue	Accounts Receivable Increase (Decrease)	Cash Received from Customers
1	100	-0-	?
2	100	5	?
3	100	(5)	?

E 21-4

Summary entries for cash received from customers

• LO21-3

For each of the three independent situations below, prepare journal entries that summarize the selling and collection activities for the reporting period in order to determine the amount of cash received from customers and to explain the change in each account shown. All dollars are in millions.

Situation	Sales Revenue	Accounts Receivable Increase (Decrease)	Cash Received from Customers
1	200	-0-	?
2	200	10	?
3	200	(10)	?

E 21-5

Determine cash paid to suppliers of merchandise

• LO21-3

Determine the amount of cash paid to suppliers of merchandise for each of the nine independent situations below. All dollars are in millions.

Situation	Cost of Goods Sold	Inventory Increase (Decrease)	Accounts Payable Increase (Decrease)	Cash Paid to Suppliers
1	100	0	0	?
2	100	3	0	?
3	100	(3)	0	?
4	100	0	7	?
5	100	0	(7)	?
6	100	3	7	?
7	100	3	(7)	?
8	100	(3)	(7)	?
9	100	(3)	7	?

E 21-6

Summary entries for cash paid to suppliers of merchandise

• LO21-3

For each of the five independent situations below, prepare a journal entry that summarizes the purchases, sales, and payments related to inventories in order to determine the amount of cash paid to suppliers and explain the change in each account shown. All dollars are in millions.

Situation	Cost of Goods Sold	Inventory Increase (Decrease)	Accounts Payable Increase (Decrease)	Cash Paid to Suppliers
1	200	0	0	?
2	200	6	0	?
3	200	0	14	?
4	200	6	14	?
5	200	(6)	(14)	?

E 21-7

Determine cash paid for bond interest

• LO21-3

Determine the amount of cash paid to bondholders for bond interest for each of the six independent situations below. All dollars are in millions.

Situation	Bond Interest Expense	Bond Interest Payable Increase (Decrease)	Unamortized Discount Increase (Decrease)	Cash Paid for Interest
1	10	0	0	?
2	10	2	0	?
3	10	(2)	0	?
4	10	0	(3)	?
5	10	2	(3)	?
6	10	(2)	(3)	?

E 21-8

Determine cash paid for bond interest

• LO21-3

For each of the four independent situations below, prepare a single journal entry that summarizes the recording and payment of interest in order to determine the amount of cash paid for bond interest and explain the change (if any) in each of the accounts shown. All dollars are in millions.

Situation	Bond Interest Expense	Bond Interest Payable Increase (Decrease)	Unamortized Discount Increase (Decrease)	Cash Paid for Interest
1	20	0	0	?
2	20	4	0	?
3	20	0	(6)	?
4	20	(4)	(6)	?

E 21-9

Determine cash paid for income taxes

• LO21-3

Determine the amount of cash paid for income taxes in each of the nine independent situations below. All dollars are in millions.

Situation	Income Tax Expense	Income Tax Payable Increase (Decrease)	Deferred Tax Liability Increase (Decrease)	Cash Paid for Taxes
1	10	0	0	?
2	10	3	0	?
3	10	(3)	0	?
4	10	0	2	?
5	10	0	(2)	?
6	10	3	2	?
7	10	3	(2)	?
8	10	(3)	(2)	?
9	10	(3)	2	?

E 21-10

Summary entries for cash paid for income taxes

• LO21-3

For each of the five independent situations below, prepare a single journal entry that summarizes the recording and payment of income taxes in order to determine the amount of cash paid for income taxes and explain the change (if any) in each of the accounts shown. All dollars are in millions.

Situation	Income Tax Expense	Income Tax Payable Increase (Decrease)	Deferred Tax Liability Increase (Decrease)	Cash Paid for Taxes
1	10	0	0	?
2	10	3	0	?
3	10	0	(2)	?
4	10	3	2	?
5	10	(3)	(2)	?

E 21-11

Bonds; statement of cash flow effects

• LO21-3

Most Solutions, Inc., issued 10% bonds, dated January 1, with a face amount of \$640 million on January 1, 2018. The bonds mature in 2028 (10 years). For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield is 12%. Interest expense is recorded at the effective interest rate. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Most recorded the sale as follows:

January 1, 2018

Cash (price)	566,589,440	
Discount on bonds (difference)	73,410,560	
Bonds payable (face amount)		640,000,000

Required:

What would be the amount(s) related to the bonds that Most would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?

E 21-12

Installment note; statement of cash flow effects

• LO21-3, LO21-6

National Food Services, Inc., borrowed \$4 million from its local bank on January 1, 2018, and issued a 4-year installment note to be paid in four equal payments at the end of each year. The payments include interest at the rate of 10%. Installment payments are \$1,261,881 annually.

Required:

What would be the amount(s) related to the note that National would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?

E 21-13

Identifying cash flows from investing activities and financing activities

• LO21-5, LO21-6

In preparation for developing its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018, Rapid Pac, Inc., collected the following information:

	(\$ in millions)
Fair value of shares issued in a stock dividend	\$ 65
Payment for the early extinguishment of long-term bonds (book value: \$97 million)	102
Proceeds from the sale of treasury stock (cost: \$17 million)	22
Gain on sale of land	4
Proceeds from sale of land	12
Purchase of Microsoft common stock	160
Declaration of cash dividends	44
Distribution of cash dividends declared in 2017	40

Required:

1. In Rapid Pac's statement of cash flows, what were net cash inflows (or outflows) from investing activities for 2018?
2. In Rapid Pac's statement of cash flows, what were net cash inflows (or outflows) from financing activities for 2018?

E 21-14

Identifying cash flows from investing activities and financing activities

• LO21-5, LO21-6

In preparation for developing its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018, Millennium Solutions, Inc. collected the following information:

	(\$ in millions)
Payment for the early extinguishments of long-term notes (book value: \$50 million)	\$ 54
Sale of common shares	176
Retirement of common shares	122
Loss on sale of equipment	2
Proceeds from sale of equipment	8
Issuance of short-term note payable for cash	10
Acquisition of building for cash	7
Purchase of marketable securities (not a cash equivalent)	5
Purchase of marketable securities (considered a cash equivalent)	1
Cash payment for 3-year insurance policy	3
Collection of note receivable with interest (principal amount, \$11)	13
Declaration of cash dividends	33
Distribution of cash dividends declared in 2017	30

Required:

1. In Millennium's statement of cash flows, what were net cash inflows (or outflows) from investing activities for 2018?
2. In Millennium's statement of cash flows, what were net cash inflows (or outflows) from financing activities for 2018?

E 21-15

Lease; lessee;
statement of cash
flows effects

- LO21-3, LO21-5,
LO21-6

Wilson Foods Corporation leased a commercial food processor on September 30, 2018. The five-year finance lease agreement calls for Wilson to make quarterly lease payments of \$195,774, payable each September 30, December 31, March 31, June 30, with the first payment at September 30, 2018. Wilson's incremental borrowing rate is 12%. Wilson records amortization on a straight-line basis at the end of each fiscal year. Wilson recorded the lease as follows:

September 30, 2018			
Right-of-use asset (calculated below)	3,000,000		
Lease payable (calculated below)		3,000,000	
Lease payable	195,774		
Cash (first payment)			195,774

Calculation of the present value of lease payments

$$\$195,774 \times 15.32380^* = \$3,000,000$$

(rounded)

*Present value of an annuity due of \$1: $n = 20$, $i = 3\%$ (from Table 6).

Required:

What would be the pretax amounts related to the lease that Wilson would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?

E 21-16

Equity method
investment;
statement of cash
flow effects

- LO21-3, LO21-5

On January 1, 2018, Beilich Enterprises bought 20% of the outstanding common stock of Wolfe Construction Company for \$600 million cash. Wolfe's net income for the year ended December 31, 2018, was \$300 million. During 2018, Wolfe declared and paid cash dividends of \$60 million. Beilich recorded the investment as follows:

Purchase		(\$ in millions)
Investment in Wolfe Construction shares	600	
Cash.....		600
Net income		
Investment in Wolfe Construction shares (20% × \$300 million)	60	
Investment revenue.....		60
Dividends		
Cash (20% × \$60 million)	12	
Investment in Wolfe Construction shares		12

Required:

What would be the pretax amounts related to the investment that Beilich would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?

E 21-17

Indirect method;
reconciliation of
net income to
net cash flows
from operating
activities

- LO21-4

The accounting records of EZ Company provided the data below. Prepare a reconciliation of net income to net cash flows from operating activities.

Net income	\$50,000
Depreciation expense	7,000
Increase in inventory	1,500
Decrease in salaries payable	800
Decrease in accounts receivable	2,000
Amortization of patent	500
Amortization of premium on bonds	1,000
Increase in accounts payable	4,000
Cash dividends	12,000

E 21-18

Spreadsheet
entries from
statement of
retained earnings

- LO21-3 through LO21-8

The statement of retained earnings of Gary Larson Publishers is presented below.

GARY LARSON PUBLISHERS
Statement of Retained Earnings
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in millions)

Retained earnings, January 1	\$200
Add: Net income	75
Deduct: Cash dividend	(25)
Stock dividend (1 million shares of \$1 par common stock)	(16)
Property dividend (Garfield Company preferred stock held as a short-term investment)	(12)
Sale of treasury stock (cost \$53 million)	(10)
Retained earnings, December 31	<u>\$212</u>

Required:

For the transactions that affected Larson's retained earnings, reconstruct the journal entries that can be used to determine cash flows to be reported in a statement of cash flows. Also indicate any investing and financing activities you identify from this analysis that should be reported on the statement of cash flows.

E 21-19

Relationship
between the
income statement
and cash flows
from operating
activities (direct
method and
indirect method)

- LO21-3, LO21-4

The following schedule relates the income statement with cash flows from operating activities, derived by both the direct and indirect methods, in the format illustrated by Illustration 21-11 in the chapter. The amounts for income statement elements are missing.

Income Statement		Cash Flows from Operating Activities			
		Indirect Method		Direct Method	
		Net income	\$?		
		Adjustments:			
Sales	\$?	Decrease in accounts receivable	12	Cash received from customers	\$ 612
Cost of goods sold	?	Increase in inventory	(24)		
		Decrease in accounts payable	(36)	Cash paid to suppliers	(420)
Salaries expense	?	Increase in salaries payable	12	Cash paid to employees	(66)
Depreciation expense	?	Depreciation expense	18	(Not reported—no cash effect)	
Insurance expense	?	Decrease in prepaid insurance	18	Cash paid for insurance	(24)
Loss on sale of land	?	Loss on sale of land	12	(Not reported—no cash effect)	
Income tax expense	?	Increase in income tax payable	12	Cash paid for income taxes	(42)
Net income	\$?	Net cash flows from operating activities	\$ 60	Net cash flows from operating activities	\$ 60

Required:

Deduce the missing amounts and prepare the income statement.

E 21-20

Reconciliation of
net cash flows
from operating
activities to net
income

- LO21-3, LO21-4

The income statement and the cash flows from the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows are provided on the next page for Syntic Company. The merchandise inventory account balance neither increased nor decreased during the reporting period. Syntic had no liability for insurance, deferred income taxes, or interest at any time during the period.

SYNTRIC COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in thousands)

Sales		\$ 312
Cost of goods sold		(188)
Gross margin		124
Salaries expense	\$41	
Insurance expense	22	
Depreciation expense	11	
Depletion expense	5	
Bond interest expense	10	(89)
Gains and losses:		
Gain on sale of equipment		25
Loss on sale of land		(8)
Income before tax		52
Income tax expense		(26)
Net income		<u>\$ 26</u>
Cash Flows from Operating Activities:		
Cash received from customers		\$ 258
Cash paid to suppliers		(175)
Cash paid to employees		(37)
Cash paid for interest		(9)
Cash paid for insurance		(16)
Cash paid for income taxes		(14)
Net cash flows from operating activities		<u>\$ 7</u>

Required:

Prepare a schedule to reconcile net income to net cash flows from operating activities.

E 21-21

Cash flows from operating activities (direct method) derived from an income statement; cash flows from operating activities (indirect method)

● LO21-3, LO21-4

The income statement and a schedule reconciling cash flows from operating activities to net income are provided below (\$ in thousands) for Peach Computers.

PEACH COMPUTERS			Reconciliation of Net Income	
Income Statement			To Net Cash Flows from Operating Activities	
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018				
Sales		\$305	Net income	\$ 22
Cost of goods sold		185	Adjustments for Noncash Effects	
Gross margin		120	Depreciation expense	11
Salaries expense	\$41		Loss on sale of land	5
Insurance expense	19		Changes in operating assets and liabilities:	
Depreciation expense	11		Decrease in accounts receivable	6
Loss on sale of land	5	76	Increase in inventory	(13)
Income before tax		44	Decrease in accounts payable	(8)
Income tax expense		22	Increase in salaries payable	5
Net income		<u>\$ 22</u>	Decrease in prepaid insurance	9
			Increase in income tax payable	20
			Net cash flows from operating activities	<u>\$ 57</u>

Required:

- Calculate each of the following amounts for Peach Computers:
 - Cash received from customers during the reporting period
 - Cash paid to suppliers of goods during the reporting period
 - Cash paid to employees during the reporting period
 - Cash paid for insurance during the reporting period
 - Cash paid for income taxes during the reporting period
- Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows (direct method).

E 21-22

Indirect method;
reconciliation of
net income to
net cash flows
from operating
activities

• LO21-4

The accounting records of Baddour Company provided the data below. Prepare a reconciliation of net income to net cash flows from operating activities.

Net loss	\$5,000
Depreciation expense	6,000
Increase in salaries payable	500
Decrease in accounts receivable	2,000
Increase in inventory	2,300
Amortization of patent	300
Reduction in discount on bonds	200

E 21-23

Cash flows
from operating
activities (direct
method)

• LO21-3

Portions of the financial statements for Myriad Products are provided below.

MYRIAD PRODUCTS COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in millions)

Sales		\$660
Cost of goods sold		<u>250</u>
Gross margin		410
Salaries expense	\$110	
Depreciation expense	90	
Patent amortization expense	5	
Interest expense	20	
Loss on sale of land	<u>3</u>	<u>228</u>
Income before taxes		182
Income tax expense		<u>91</u>
Net Income		<u><u>\$ 91</u></u>

MYRIAD PRODUCTS COMPANY
Selected Accounts from Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31, 2018 and 2017
(\$ in millions)

	Year		Change
	2018	2017	
Cash	\$102	\$100	\$ 2
Accounts receivable	220	232	(12)
Inventory	440	450	(10)
Accounts payable	140	134	6
Salaries payable	80	86	(6)
Interest payable	25	20	5
Income taxes payable	15	10	5

Required:

Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows for Myriad Products Company using the *direct method*.

E 21-24

Cash flows
from operating
activities (indirect
method)

• LO21-4

Refer to the data provided in E 21-23 for Myriad Products Company.

Required:

Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows for Myriad Products Company using the *indirect method*.

E 21-25

Cash flows
from operating
activities (direct
method)—
includes sale of
cash equivalent

• LO21-3

Portions of the financial statements for Clear Transmissions Company are provided on the following page.

CLEAR TRANSMISSIONS COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018 (\$ in thousands)

Sales		\$1,320
Cost of goods sold		500
		<hr/>
Gross margin		820
Salaries expense	\$220	
Depreciation expense	180	
Patent amortization expense	10	
Interest expense	40	
Loss on sale of cash equivalents	6	
		<hr/>
Income before taxes		364
Income tax expense		182
		<hr/>
Net Income		\$ 182

CLEAR TRANSMISSIONS COMPANY
Selected Accounts from Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31, 2018 and 2017 (\$ in thousands)

	Year		Change
	2018	2017	
Cash	\$102	\$100	\$ 2
Accounts receivable	220	232	(12)
Inventory	440	450	(10)
Accounts payable	140	134	6
Salaries payable	80	86	(6)
Interest payable	25	20	5
Income taxes payable	15	10	5

Required:

Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows for Clear Transmissions Company using the *direct method*.

E 21-26

Cash flows from operating activities (indirect method)—includes sale of cash equivalent

● LO21-4

Refer to the data provided in E 21-25 for Clear Transmissions Company.

Required:

Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows for Clear Transmissions Company using the *indirect method*.

E 21-27

Statement of cash flows; direct method

● LO21-3, LO21-5, LO21-6, LO21-8

Comparative balance sheets for 2018 and 2017, a statement of income for 2018, and additional information from the accounting records of Red, Inc., are provided below.

RED, INC.
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31, 2018 and 2017 (\$ in millions)

	2018	2017
Assets		
Cash	\$ 24	\$ 110
Accounts receivable	178	132
Prepaid insurance	7	3
Inventory	285	175
Buildings and equipment	400	350
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(119)	(240)
	<hr/>	<hr/>
	\$ 775	\$ 530
Liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 87	\$ 100
Accrued expenses payable	6	11
Notes payable	50	0
Bonds payable	160	0
Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock	400	400
Retained earnings	72	19
	<hr/>	<hr/>
	\$ 775	\$ 530

RED, INC.
Statement of Income
For Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in millions)

Revenues		
Sales revenue		\$2,000
Expenses		
Cost of goods sold	\$1,400	
Depreciation expense	50	
Operating expenses	447	1,897
Net income		\$ 103

Additional information from the accounting records:

- During 2018, \$230 million of equipment was purchased to replace \$180 million of equipment (95% depreciated) sold at book value.
- In order to maintain the usual policy of paying cash dividends of \$50 million, it was necessary for Red to borrow \$50 million from its bank.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows of Red, Inc., for the year ended December 31, 2018. Present cash flows from operating activities by the direct method. (You may omit the schedule to reconcile net income with cash flows from operating activities.)

E 21-28

Pension plan
funding

LO21-3

Mayer Corporation has a defined benefit pension plan. Mayer's policy is to fund the plan annually, cash payments being made at the end of each year. Data relating to the pension plan for 2018 are as follows:

	December 31 (\$ in millions)	
	2018	2017
Plan assets	\$1,080	\$900
Net pension expense for 2018:		
Service cost	\$ 112	
Interest cost (6% × \$850)	51	
Actual return on the plan assets (11% × \$900 = \$99)		
Adjusted for: \$9 gain on the plan assets*	(90)	
Amortization of prior service cost	8	
Amortization of net loss	1	
	\$ 82	

*(11% × \$900) – (10% – \$900)

Required:

Recreate the journal entries used to record Mayer's 2018 pension expense, gain on plan assets, and funding of plan assets in order to determine the cash paid to the pension trustee as reported in the statement of cash flows.

E 21-29

FASB codification
research

LO21-2



The statement of cash flows (as well as the balance sheet) includes within cash the notion of cash equivalents. The *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* represents the single source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Required:

- Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on cash equivalents using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). What is the specific citation that describes the guidelines for determining what items should be deemed cash equivalents?
- List the guidelines.

E 21-30

FASB codification
research

LO21-1,
LO21-4,
LO21-7



Access the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification* at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). Determine the specific citation for accounting for each of the following items:

- Disclosure of interest and income taxes paid if the indirect method is used
- Primary objectives of a statement of cash flows
- Disclosure of noncash investing and financing activities

E 21-31

Statement of cash flows; indirect method

- LO21-4, LO21-5, LO21-6, LO21-8, Appendix A

Refer to the data provided in E 21-27 for Red, Inc.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows for Red, Inc., using the indirect method to report operating activities.

E 21-32

Statement of cash flows; T-account method

- LO21-8, Appendix B

Refer to the data provided in E 21-27 for Red, Inc.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows (direct method) for Red, Inc. Use the T-account method to assist in your analysis.

Problems

**P 21-1**

Classification of cash flows from investing and financing activities

- LO21-2, LO21-5 through LO21-7

Listed below are transactions that might be reported as investing and/or financing activities on a statement of cash flows. Possible reporting classifications of those transactions are provided also.

Required:

Indicate the reporting classification of each transaction by entering the appropriate classification code.

Classifications	
+I	Investing activity (cash inflow)
−I	Investing activity (cash outflow)
+F	Financing activity (cash inflow)
−F	Financing activity (cash outflow)
N	Noncash investing and financing activity
X	Not reported as an investing and/or a financing activity

Transactions

+I	1. Sale of land
_____	2. Issuance of common stock for cash
_____	3. Purchase of treasury stock
_____	4. Conversion of bonds payable to common stock
_____	5. Lease of equipment
_____	6. Sale of patent
_____	7. Acquisition of building for cash
_____	8. Issuance of common stock for land
_____	9. Collection of note receivable (principal amount)
_____	10. Issuance of bonds
_____	11. Issuance of stock dividend
_____	12. Payment of property dividend
_____	13. Payment of cash dividends
_____	14. Issuance of short-term note payable for cash
_____	15. Issuance of long-term note payable for cash
_____	16. Purchase of marketable securities ("available for sale")
_____	17. Payment of note payable
_____	18. Cash payment for five-year insurance policy
_____	19. Sale of equipment
_____	20. Issuance of note payable for equipment
_____	21. Acquisition of common stock of another corporation
_____	22. Repayment of long-term debt by issuing common stock
_____	23. Payment of semiannual interest on bonds payable
_____	24. Retirement of preferred stock
_____	25. Loan to another firm
_____	26. Sale of inventory to customers
_____	27. Purchase of marketable securities (cash equivalents)

P 21-2

Statement of
cash flows;
direct method

- LO21-3,
LO21-8



The comparative balance sheets for 2018 and 2017 and the statement of income for 2018 are given below for Wright Company. Additional information from Wright's accounting records is provided also.

WRIGHT COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31, 2018 and 2017
(\$ in thousands)

	2018	2017
Assets		
Cash	\$ 42	\$ 30
Accounts receivable	73	75
Short-term investment	40	15
Inventory	75	70
Land	50	60
Buildings and equipment	550	400
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(115)	(75)
	<u>\$ 715</u>	<u>\$575</u>
Liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 28	\$ 35
Salaries payable	2	5
Interest payable	5	3
Income tax payable	9	12
Notes payable	0	30
Bonds payable	160	100
Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock	250	200
Paid-in capital—excess of par	126	100
Retained earnings	135	90
	<u>\$ 715</u>	<u>\$575</u>

WRIGHT COMPANY
Income Statement
For Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in thousands)

Revenues:		
Sales revenue		\$380
Expenses:		
Cost of goods sold	\$130	
Salaries expense	45	
Depreciation expense	40	
Interest expense	12	
Loss on sale of land	3	
Income tax expense	70	300
		<u>300</u>
Net income		<u><u>\$ 80</u></u>

Additional information from the accounting records:

- Land that originally cost \$10,000 was sold for \$7,000.
- The common stock of Microsoft Corporation was purchased for \$25,000 as a short-term investment not classified as a cash equivalent.
- New equipment was purchased for \$150,000 cash.
- A \$30,000 note was paid at maturity on January 1.
- On January 1, 2018, bonds were sold at their \$60,000 face value.
- Common stock (\$50,000 par) was sold for \$76,000.
- Net income was \$80,000 and cash dividends of \$35,000 were paid to shareholders.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows of Wright Company for the year ended December 31, 2018. Present cash flows from operating activities by the direct method. (You may omit the schedule to reconcile net income with cash flows from operating activities.)

P 21-3

Statement of cash flows;
direct method

- LO21-3,
LO21-8

The comparative balance sheets for 2018 and 2017 and the statement of income for 2018 are given below for National Intercable Company. Additional information from NIC's accounting records is provided also.

NATIONAL INTERCABLE COMPANY**Comparative Balance Sheets****December 31, 2018 and 2017**

(\$ in millions)

	2018	2017
Assets		
Cash	\$ 57	\$ 55
Accounts receivable	181	170
Less: Allowance for uncollectible accounts	(8)	(6)
Prepaid insurance	7	12
Inventory	170	165
Long-term investment	66	90
Land	150	150
Buildings and equipment	290	270
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(85)	(75)
Trademark	24	25
	<u>\$852</u>	<u>\$856</u>
Liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 30	\$ 45
Salaries payable	3	8
Deferred income tax liability	18	15
Lease liability	68	0
Bonds payable	145	275
Less: Discount on bonds	(22)	(25)
Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock	310	290
Paid-in capital—excess of par	95	85
Preferred stock	50	0
Retained earnings	155	163
	<u>\$852</u>	<u>\$856</u>

NATIONAL INTERCABLE COMPANY**Income Statement****For Year Ended December 31, 2018**

(\$ in millions)

Revenues		
Sales revenue	\$320	
Investment revenue	15	
Gain on sale of investments	5	\$340
Expenses		
Cost of goods sold	125	
Salaries expense	55	
Depreciation expense	25	
Trademark amortization expense	1	
Bad debt expense	7	
Insurance expense	13	
Bond interest expense	30	
Loss on building fire	42	298
		<u>42</u>
Income before tax		42
Income tax expense		20
Net income		<u>\$ 22</u>

Additional information from the accounting records:

- Investment revenue includes National Intercable Company's \$6 million share of the net income of Central Fiber Optics Corporation, an equity method investee.
- A long-term investment in bonds, originally purchased for \$30 million, was sold for \$35 million.
- Pretax accounting income exceeded taxable income, causing the deferred income tax liability to increase by \$3 million.

- d. A building that originally cost \$60 million, and which was one-fourth depreciated, was destroyed by fire. Some undamaged parts were sold for \$3 million.
- e. The right to use a building was acquired with a seven-year lease agreement; present value of lease payments, \$80 million. Annual lease payments of \$12 million are paid at Jan. 1 of each year starting in 2018.
- f. \$130 million of bonds were retired at maturity.
- g. \$20 million par value of common stock was sold for \$30 million, and \$50 million of preferred stock was sold at par.
- h. Shareholders were paid cash dividends of \$30 million.

Required:

1. Prepare a spreadsheet for preparation of the statement of cash flows (direct method) of National Intercable Company for the year ended December 31, 2018.
2. Prepare the statement of cash flows. (A reconciliation schedule is not required.)

P 21-4

Statement of cash flows;
direct method

- LO21-3,
LO21-8



The comparative balance sheets for 2018 and 2017 and the statement of income for 2018 are given below for Dux Company. Additional information from Dux's accounting records is provided also.

DUX COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31, 2018 and 2017
(\$ in thousands)

	2018	2017
Assets		
Cash	\$ 33	\$ 20
Accounts receivable	48	50
Less: Allowance for uncollectible accounts	(4)	(3)
Dividends receivable	3	2
Inventory	55	50
Long-term investment	15	10
Land	70	40
Buildings and equipment	225	250
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(25)	(50)
	<u>\$420</u>	<u>\$369</u>
Liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 13	\$ 20
Salaries payable	2	5
Interest payable	4	2
Income tax payable	7	8
Notes payable	30	0
Bonds payable	95	70
Less: Discount on bonds	(2)	(3)
Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock	210	200
Paid-in capital—excess of par	24	20
Retained earnings	45	47
Less: Treasury stock	(8)	0
	<u>\$420</u>	<u>\$369</u>

DUX COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in thousands)

Revenues		
Sales revenue	\$200	
Dividend revenue	3	\$203
Expenses		
Cost of goods sold	120	
Salaries expense	25	
Depreciation expense	5	
Bad debt expense	1	
Interest expense	8	
Loss on sale of building	3	
Income tax expense	16	178
Net income		<u>\$ 25</u>

Additional information from the accounting records:

- A building that originally cost \$40,000, and which was three-fourths depreciated, was sold for \$7,000.
- The common stock of Byrd Corporation was purchased for \$5,000 as a long-term investment.
- Property was acquired by issuing a 13%, seven-year, \$30,000 note payable to the seller.
- New equipment was purchased for \$15,000 cash.
- On January 1, 2018, bonds were sold at their \$25,000 face value.
- On January 19, Dux issued a 5% stock dividend (1,000 shares). The market price of the \$10 par value common stock was \$14 per share at that time.
- Cash dividends of \$13,000 were paid to shareholders.
- On November 12, 500 shares of common stock were repurchased as treasury stock at a cost of \$8,000.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows of Dux Company for the year ended December 31, 2018. Present cash flows from operating activities by the direct method. (You may omit the schedule to reconcile net income to cash flows from operating activities.)

P 21-5

Statement of cash flows;
direct method

- LO21-3,
LO21-8



Comparative balance sheets for 2018 and 2017 and a statement of income for 2018 are given below for Metagrobolize Industries. Additional information from the accounting records of Metagrobolize also is provided.

METAGROBOLIZE INDUSTRIES
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31, 2018 and 2017
(\$ in thousands)

	2018	2017
Assets		
Cash	\$ 580	\$ 375
Accounts receivable	600	450
Inventory	900	525
Land	675	600
Building	900	900
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(300)	(270)
Equipment	2,850	2,250
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(525)	(480)
Patent	1,200	1,500
	<u>\$6,880</u>	<u>\$5,850</u>
Liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 750	\$ 450
Accrued expenses payable	300	225
Lease liability—land	130	0
Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock	3,150	3,000
Paid-in capital—excess of par	750	675
Retained earnings	1,800	1,500
	<u>\$6,880</u>	<u>\$5,850</u>

METAGROBOLIZE INDUSTRIES
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in thousands)

Revenues		
Sales revenue	\$2,645	
Gain on sale of land	90	\$2,735
Expenses		
Cost of goods sold	600	
Depreciation expense—building	30	
Depreciation expense—equipment	315	
Loss on sale of equipment	15	
Amortization of patent	300	
Operating expenses	500	1,760
Net income		<u>\$ 975</u>

Additional information from the accounting records:

- Annual payments of \$20,000 on the finance lease liability are paid each January 1, beginning in 2018.
- During 2018, equipment with a cost of \$300,000 (90% depreciated) was sold.
- The statement of shareholders' equity reveals reductions of \$225,000 and \$450,000 for stock dividends and cash dividends, respectively.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows of Metagrobolize for the year ended December 31, 2018. Present cash flows from operating activities by the direct method. (You may omit the schedule to reconcile net income to cash flows from operating activities.)

P 21-6

Cash flows from operating activities (direct method) derived from an income statement and cash flows from operating activities (indirect method)

- LO21-3, LO21-4

The income statement and a schedule reconciling cash flows from operating activities to net income are provided below for Mike Roe Computers.

MIKE ROE COMPUTERS Income Statement For the Year Ended December 31, 2018 (\$ in millions)			Reconciliation of Net Income to Net Cash Flows from Operating Activities	
Sales		\$150	Net income	\$ 13
Cost of goods sold		90	<i>Adjustments for noncash effects:</i>	
Gross margin		60	Decrease in accounts receivable	5
Salaries expense	\$20		Gain on sale of equipment	(12)
Insurance expense	12		Increase in inventory	(6)
Depreciation expense	5		Increase in accounts payable	9
Interest expense	6	(43)	Increase in salaries payable	3
Gains and losses:			Depreciation expense	5
Gain on sale of equipment		12	Decrease in bond discount	3
Loss on sale of land		(3)	Decrease in prepaid insurance	2
Income before tax		26	Loss on sale of land	3
Income tax expense		(13)	Increase in income tax payable	6
Net income		\$ 13	Net cash flows from operating activities	\$ 31

Required:

- Calculate each of the following amounts for Mike Roe Computers:
 - Cash received from customers during the reporting period
 - Cash paid to suppliers of goods during the reporting period
 - Cash paid to employees during the reporting period
 - Cash paid for interest during the reporting period
 - Cash paid for insurance during the reporting period
 - Cash paid for income taxes during the reporting period
- Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows (direct method).

P 21-7

Cash flows from operating activities (direct method) derived from an income statement and cash flows from operating activities (indirect method)

- LO21-3, LO21-4



The income statement and a schedule reconciling cash flows from operating activities to net income are provided below for Macrosoft Corporation.

MACROSOFT CORPORATION Income Statement For the Year Ended December 31, 2018 (\$ in millions)			Reconciliation of Net Income to Net Cash Flows from Operating Activities	
Revenues and gains:			Net income	\$ 62
Sales	\$310		<i>Adjustments for noncash effects:</i>	
Gain on sale of cash equivalents	2		Depreciation expense	10
Gain on sale of investments	24	\$336	Patent amortization expense	4
Expenses and loss:			Loss on sale of land	6
Cost of goods sold	120		Gain on sale of investment	(24)
Salaries	40		Decrease in accounts receivable	6
Interest expense	12		Increase in inventory	(12)
Insurance	20		Increase in accounts payable	18
Depreciation	10		Decrease in bond discount	1
Patent amortization	4		Increase in salaries payable	6
Loss on sale of land	6	212	Decrease in prepaid insurance	4
Income before tax		124	Increase in income tax payable	10
Income tax expense		62	Net cash flows from operating activities	\$ 91
Net income		\$ 62		

Required:

Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows (direct method).

P 21-8

Cash flows from operating activities (direct method and indirect method)—deferred income tax liability and amortization of bond discount

• LO21-3, LO21-4

Portions of the financial statements for Parnell Company are provided below.

PARNELL COMPANY			
Income Statement			
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018			
(\$ in thousands)			
Revenues and gains:			
Sales	\$800		
Gain on sale of buildings	11		\$811
Expenses and loss:			
Cost of goods sold	300		
Salaries	120		
Insurance	40		
Depreciation	123		
Interest expense	50		
Loss on sale of machinery	12		645
Income before tax			166
Income tax expense			78
Net income			\$ 88

PARNELL COMPANY			
Selected Accounts from Comparative Balance Sheets			
December 31, 2018 and 2017			
(\$ in thousands)			
	Year		
	2018	2017	Change
Cash	\$134	\$100	\$ 34
Accounts receivable	324	216	108
Inventory	321	425	(104)
Prepaid insurance	66	88	(22)
Accounts payable	210	117	93
Salaries payable	102	93	9
Deferred income tax liability	60	52	8
Bond discount	190	200	(10)

Required:

1. Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows for Parnell Company using the direct method.
2. Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows for Parnell Company using the indirect method.

P 21-9

Cash flows from operating activities (direct method and indirect method)—cash equivalent

• LO21-3, LO21-4

Portions of the financial statements for Hawkeye Company are provided below.

HAWKEYE COMPANY			
Income Statement			
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018			
(\$ in millions)			
Sales			\$900
Cost of goods sold			350
Gross margin			550
Operating expenses:			
Salaries	\$232		
Depreciation	190		
Loss on sale of land	12		
Total operating expenses			434
Operating income			116
Other income (expense):			
Gain on sale of cash equivalents			4
Interest expense			(40)
Income before tax			80
Income tax expense			40
Net income			\$ 40

HAWKEYE COMPANY
Selected Accounts from Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31, 2018 and 2017

	Year		Change
	2018	2017	
Cash	\$212	\$200	\$ 12
Accounts receivable	395	421	(26)
Inventory	860	850	10
Accounts payable	210	234	(24)
Salaries payable	180	188	(8)
Interest payable	55	50	5
Income taxes payable	90	104	(14)

Required:

1. Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows for Hawkeye Company using the direct method.
2. Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section of the statement of cash flows for Hawkeye Company using the indirect method.

P 21–10

Relationship between the income statement and cash flows from operating activities (direct method and indirect method)

- LO21–3, LO21–4

The following schedule relates the income statement with cash flows from operating activities, derived by both the direct and indirect methods, in the format illustrated by Illustration 21–11 in the chapter. Some elements necessary to complete the schedule are missing.

Income Statement		Cash Flows from Operating Activities			
		Indirect Method		Direct Method	
		Net income	\$?		
		Adjustments:			
Sales	\$300	Decrease in accounts receivable	6	Cash received from customers	\$?
Gain on sale of equipment	24	Gain on sale of equipment	(24)	(Not reported—no cash effect)	
Cost of goods sold	(?)	Increase in inventory	(12)		
Salaries expense	(42)	Increase in accounts payable	18	Cash paid to suppliers	(174)
Depreciation expense	(9)	? in salaries payable	6	Cash paid to employees	(36)
Interest expense	(?)	Depreciation expense	9	Cash paid for depreciation	?
Insurance expense	(21)	Decrease in bond discount	3	Cash paid for interest	(9)
Loss on sale of land	(6)	Decrease in prepaid insurance	9	Cash paid for insurance	(?)
Income tax expense	(27)	Loss on sale of land	6	(Not reported—no cash effect)	
		Increase in income tax payable	?	Cash paid for income taxes	(21)
Net Income	\$?	Net cash flows from operating activities	\$ 54	Net cash flows from operating activities	\$ 54

Required:

Complete the schedule by determining each of the following missing elements:

1. Cash received from customers
2. Cost of goods sold
3. ? in salaries payable (Increase? Or decrease?)
4. Cash paid for depreciation
5. Interest expense
6. Cash paid for insurance
7. Increase in income tax payable
8. Net income

P 21-11

Prepare a statement of cash flows; direct method

- LO21-3, LO21-8



The comparative balance sheets for 2018 and 2017 and the income statement for 2018 are given below for Arduous Company. Additional information from Arduous's accounting records is provided also.

ARDUOUS COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31, 2018 and 2017
(\$ in millions)

	2018	2017
Assets		
Cash	\$ 109	\$ 81
Accounts receivable	190	194
Investment revenue receivable	6	4
Inventory	205	200
Prepaid insurance	4	8
Long-term investment	156	125
Land	196	150
Buildings and equipment	412	400
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(97)	(120)
Patent	30	32
	<u>\$1,211</u>	<u>\$1,074</u>
Liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 50	\$ 65
Salaries payable	6	11
Bond interest payable	8	4
Income tax payable	12	14
Deferred income tax liability	11	8
Notes payable	23	0
Lease liability	75	0
Bonds payable	215	275
Less: Discount on bonds	(22)	(25)
Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock	430	410
Paid-in capital—excess of par	95	85
Preferred stock	75	0
Retained earnings	242	227
Less: Treasury stock	(9)	0
	<u>\$1,211</u>	<u>\$1,074</u>

ARDUOUS COMPANY
Income Statement
For Year Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in millions)

Revenues and gain:		
Sales revenue	\$410	
Investment revenue	11	
Gain on sale of Treasury bills	2	\$423
	<u> </u>	
Expenses and loss:		
Cost of goods sold	180	
Salaries expense	73	
Depreciation expense	12	
Patent amortization expense	2	
Insurance expense	7	
Bond interest expense	28	
Loss on machine damage	18	
Income tax expense	36	356
	<u> </u>	
Net income		<u><u>\$ 67</u></u>

Additional information from the accounting records:

- Investment revenue includes Arduous Company's \$6 million share of the net income of Demur Company, an equity method investee.
- Treasury bills were sold during 2018 at a gain of \$2 million. Arduous Company classifies its investments in Treasury bills as cash equivalents.

- c. A machine originally costing \$70 million that was one-half depreciated was rendered unusable by a flood. Most major components of the machine were unharmed and were sold for \$17 million.
- d. Temporary differences between pretax accounting income and taxable income caused the deferred income tax liability to increase by \$3 million.
- e. The preferred stock of Tory Corporation was purchased for \$25 million as a long-term investment.
- f. Land costing \$46 million was acquired by issuing \$23 million cash and a 15%, four-year, \$23 million note payable to the seller.
- g. The right to use a building was acquired with a 15-year lease agreement; present value of lease payments, \$82 million. Annual lease payments of \$7 million are paid at the beginning of each year starting January 1, 2018.
- h. \$60 million of bonds were retired at maturity.
- i. In February, Arduous issued a 4% stock dividend (4 million shares). The market price of the \$5 par value common stock was \$7.50 per share at that time.
- j. In April, 1 million shares of common stock were repurchased as treasury stock at a cost of \$9 million.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows of Arduous Company for the year ended December 31, 2018. Present cash flows from operating activities by the direct method. (A reconciliation schedule is not required.)

P 21-12

Transactions affecting retained earnings

- LO21-5, LO21-6, LO21-8

Shown below in T-account format are the changes affecting the retained earnings of Brenner-Jude Corporation during 2018. At January 1, 2018, the corporation had outstanding 105 million common shares, \$1 par per share.

Retained Earnings (\$ in millions)			
		90	Beginning balance
Retirement of 5 million common shares for \$22 million	2	88	Net income for the year
Declaration and payment of a \$0.33 per share cash dividend	33		
Declaration and distribution of a 4% stock dividend	20		
		123	Ending balance

Required:

- From the information provided by the account changes you should be able to re-create the transactions that affected Brenner-Jude's retained earnings during 2018. Reconstruct the journal entries which can be used as spreadsheet entries in the preparation of a statement of cash flows. Also indicate any investing and financing activities you identify from this analysis that should be reported on the statement of cash flows.
- Prepare a statement of retained earnings for Brenner-Jude for the year ended 2018. (You may wish to compare your solution to this problem with the parallel situation described in Exercise 18-18.)

P 21-13

Various cash flows

- LO21-3 through LO21-8

Following are selected balance sheet accounts of Del Conte Corp. at December 31, 2018 and 2017, and the increases or decreases in each account from 2017 to 2018. Also presented is selected income statement information for the year ended December 31, 2018, and additional information.

Selected Balance Sheet Accounts	2018	2017	Increase (Decrease)
Assets			
Accounts receivable	\$ 34,000	\$ 24,000	\$10,000
Property, plant, and equipment	277,000	247,000	30,000
Accumulated depreciation	(178,000)	(167,000)	11,000
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity			
Bonds payable	49,000	46,000	3,000
Dividends payable	8,000	5,000	3,000
Common stock, \$1 par	22,000	19,000	3,000
Additional paid-in capital	9,000	3,000	6,000
Retained earnings	104,000	91,000	13,000
Selected Income Statement Information for the Year Ended December 31, 2018			
Sales revenue	\$ 155,000		
Depreciation	33,000		
Gain on sale of equipment	13,000		
Net income	28,000		

Additional Information:

- Accounts receivable relate to sales of merchandise.
- During 2018, equipment costing \$40,000 was sold for cash.
- During 2018, bonds payable with a face value of \$20,000 were issued in exchange for property, plant, and equipment. There was no amortization of bond discount or premium.

Required:

Items 1 through 5 represent activities that will be reported in Del Conte's statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018. The following two responses are required for each item:

- Determine the amount that should be reported in Del Conte's 2018 statement of cash flows.
- Using the list below, determine the category in which the amount should be reported in the statement of cash flows.
 - Operating activity
 - Investing activity
 - Financing activity

	Amount	Category
1. Cash collections from customers (direct method).	_____	_____
2. Payments for purchase of property, plant, and equipment.	_____	_____
3. Proceeds from sale of equipment.	_____	_____
4. Cash dividends paid.	_____	_____
5. Redemption of bonds payable.	_____	_____

(AICPA adapted)

P 21-14

Statement of cash flows; indirect method; limited information

- LO21-4, LO21-8



The comparative balance sheets for 2018 and 2017 are given below for Surmise Company. Net income for 2018 was \$50 million.

SURMISE COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31, 2018 and 2017
 (\$ in millions)

	2018	2017
Assets		
Cash	\$ 36	\$ 40
Accounts receivable	92	96
Less: Allowance for uncollectible accounts	(12)	(4)
Prepaid expenses	8	5
Inventory	145	130
Long-term investment	80	40
Land	100	100
Buildings and equipment	420	300
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(142)	(120)
Patent	16	17
	<u>\$ 743</u>	<u>\$ 604</u>
Liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 13	\$ 32
Accrued liabilities	2	10
Notes payable	35	0
Lease liability	111	0
Bonds payable	65	125
Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock	60	50
Paid-in capital—excess of par	245	205
Retained earnings	212	182
	<u>\$ 743</u>	<u>\$ 604</u>

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows of Surmise Company for the year ended December 31, 2018. Use the indirect method to present cash flows from operating activities because you do not have sufficient information to use the direct method. You will need to make reasonable assumptions concerning the reasons for changes in some account balances. A spreadsheet or T-account analysis will be helpful. (Hint: The right to use a building was acquired with a seven-year lease agreement. Annual lease payments of \$9 million are paid at January 1 of each year starting in 2018.)

P 21-15

Integrating problem; bonds; lease transactions; lessee and lessor; statement of cash flow effects

- LO21-3, LO21-5, LO21-6



Digital Telephony issued 10% bonds, dated January 1, with a face amount of \$32 million on January 1, 2018. The bonds mature in 2028 (10 years). For bonds of similar risk and maturity the market yield is 12%. Interest is paid semiannually on June 30 and December 31. Digital recorded the issue as follows:

Cash	28,329,472	
Discount on bonds	3,670,528	
Bonds payable		32,000,000

Digital also leased switching equipment to Midsouth Communications, Inc., on September 30, 2018. Digital purchased the equipment from MDS Corp. at a cost of \$6 million. The five-year lease agreement calls for Midsouth to make quarterly lease payments of \$391,548, payable each September 30, December 31, March 31, and June 30, with the first payment on September 30, 2018. Digital's implicit interest rate is 12%.

Required:

1. What would be the amount(s) related to the bonds that Digital would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018, if Digital uses the direct method? The indirect method?
2. What would be the amounts related to the lease that *Midsouth* would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?
3. What would be the amounts related to the lease that *Digital* would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?
4. Assume MDS manufactured the equipment at a cost of \$5 million and that Midsouth leased the equipment directly from MDS. What would be the amounts related to the lease that *MDS* would report in its statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2018?

P 21-16

Statement of cash flows; indirect method

- LO21-4, LO21-8

Refer to the data provided in the P 21-4 for Dux Company.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows for Dux Company using the *indirect method*.

P 21-17

Statement of cash flows; indirect method

- LO21-4, LO21-8



Refer to the data provided in the P 21-5 for Metagrobolize Industries.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows for Metagrobolize Industries using the *indirect method*.

P 21-18

Statement of cash flows; indirect method

- LO21-4, LO21-8



Refer to the data provided in the P 21-11 for Arduous Company.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows for Arduous Company using the *indirect method*.

(Note: The following problems use the technique learned in Appendix 21B.)

P 21-19

Statement of cash flows; T-account method

- LO21-3, LO21-8



Refer to the data provided in the P 21-4 for Dux Company.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows for Dux Company. Use the T-account method to assist in your analysis.

P 21-20

Statement of cash flows; T-account method

- LO21-3, LO21-8



Refer to the data provided in the P 21-5 for Metagrobolize Industries.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows for Metagrobolize Industries. Use the T-account method to assist in your analysis.

P 21-21

Statement of cash flows; T-account method

- LO21-3, LO21-8



Refer to the data provided in the P 21-11 for Arduous Company.

Required:

Prepare the statement of cash flows for Arduous Company. Use the T-account method to assist in your analysis.

Broaden Your Perspective



Apply your critical-thinking ability to the knowledge you've gained. These cases will provide you an opportunity to develop your research, analysis, judgment, and communication skills. You also will work with other students, integrate what you've learned, apply it in real-world situations, and consider its global and ethical ramifications. This practice will broaden your knowledge and further develop your decision-making abilities.

Communication Case 21-1

Distinguish income and cash flows

- LO21-1, LO21-3, LO21-4

"Why can't we pay our shareholders a dividend?" shouted your new boss. "This income statement you prepared for me says we earned \$5 million in our first half-year!"

You were hired last month as the chief accountant for Enigma Corporation, which was organized on July 1 of the year just ended. You recently prepared the financial statements below.

ENIGMA CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Six Months Ended December 31, 2018
(\$ in millions)

Sales revenue	\$ 75
Cost of goods sold	(30)
Depreciation expense	(5)
Remaining expenses	(35)
Net income	<u>\$ 5</u>

ENIGMA CORPORATION
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2018
(\$ in millions)

Cash	\$ 1
Accounts receivable (net)	20
Merchandise inventory	15
Machinery (net)	44
Total	<u>\$80</u>
Accounts payable	\$ 2
Accrued expenses payable	7
Notes payable	36
Common stock	30
Retained earnings	5
Total	<u>\$80</u>

You have just explained to your boss, Robert James, that although net income was \$5 million, operating activities produced a net decrease in cash. Unable to understand your verbal explanation, he has asked you to prepare a written report.

Required:

Prepare a report explaining the apparent discrepancy between Enigma's profitability and its cash flows. To increase the chances of your boss's understanding the situation, include in your report a determination of net cash flows from operating activities by both the direct and indirect methods. Your report should also include a narrative explanation of how it is possible for operating activities to simultaneously produce a positive net income and negative net cash flows.

Judgment Case 21-2

Distinguish income and cash flows

- LO21-3, LO21-8

You are a loan officer for First Benevolent Bank. You have an uneasy feeling as you examine a loan application from Daring Corporation. The application included the following financial statements.

DARING CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018

Sales revenue	\$100,000
Cost of goods sold	(50,000)
Depreciation expense	(5,000)
Remaining expenses	(25,000)
Net income	<u>\$ 20,000</u>

DARING CORPORATION
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2018

Cash	\$ 5,000
Accounts receivable	25,000
Inventory	20,000
Operational assets	55,000
Accumulated depreciation	(5,000)
Total	<u>\$100,000</u>
Accounts payable	\$ 10,000
Interest payable	5,000
Note payable	45,000
Common stock	20,000
Retained earnings	20,000
Total	<u>\$100,000</u>

It is not Daring's profitability that worries you. The income statement submitted with the application shows net income of \$20,000 in Daring's first year of operations. By referring to the balance sheet, you see that this net income represents a 20% rate of return on assets of \$100,000. Your concern stems from the recollection that the note payable reported on Daring's balance sheet is a two-year loan you approved earlier in the year.

You also recall another promising new company that, just last year, defaulted on another of your bank's loans when it failed due to its inability to generate sufficient cash flows to meet its obligations. Before requesting additional information from Daring, you decide to test your memory of the intermediate accounting class you took in night school by attempting to prepare a statement of cash flows from the information available in the loan application.

Research Case 21-3

Information from cash flow activities; FedEx

- LO21-3 through LO21-8

Real World Financials

Locate the 2015 financial statements and related disclosure notes of **FedEx Corporation**. You can locate the report online at www.fedex.com.

Required:

- From the information provided in the statement of cash flows, explain what allows FedEx Corporation to expand its business, as evidenced by the investing activities, while at the same time not raising as much cash through financing activities.
- Describe the activities listed under financing activities for the most recent fiscal year. [Hint: FedEx's Statement of Changes in Common Stockholders' Investment (statement of shareholders' equity) will help you determine the nature of the stock activity.] What is the most notable financing activity reported?
- What are the cash payments FedEx made for interest and for income taxes in the three years reported? (Hint: See the disclosure notes.)
- Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on disclosure of interest and income taxes using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*. You might gain access at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). What is the specific citation that specifies the way FedEx reports interest and income taxes separately that enabled you to answer requirement 3?



**Trueblood
Accounting
Case 21-4**

Presentation
issues

- LO21-5,
LO21-6

**Analysis
Case 21-5**

Smudged ink; find
missing amounts

- LO21-3,
LO21-4

The following Trueblood case is recommended for use with this chapter. The case provides an excellent opportunity for class discussion, group projects, and writing assignments. The case, along with Professor's Discussion Material, can be obtained from the Deloitte Foundation at its website: www.deloitte.com/us/truebloodcases.

Case 13-2: Buck's Dilemma: Gross or Net

This case gives students the opportunity to consider when borrowings and payments under a revolving line of credit may be presented on a net (versus gross) basis within the statement of cash flows.

"Be careful with that coffee!" Your roommate is staring in disbelief at the papers in front of her. "This was my contribution to our team project," she moaned. "When you spilled your coffee, it splashed on this page. Now I can't recognize some of these numbers, and Craig has my source documents."

Knowing how important this afternoon's presentation is to your roommate, you're eager to see what can be done. "Let me see that," you offer. "I think we can figure this out." The statement of cash flows and income statement are intact. The reconciliation schedule and the comparative balance sheets are coffee casualties.

DISTINCTIVE INDUSTRIES		
Statement of Cash Flows		
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018		
(\$ in millions)		
Cash Flows from Operating Activities:		
Collections from customers	\$213	
Payment to suppliers	(90)	
Payment of general & administrative expenses	(54)	
Payment of income taxes	(27)	
Net cash flows from operating activities		\$ 42
Cash Flows from Investing Activities:		
Sale of equipment		120
Cash Flows from Financing Activities:		
Issuance of common stock	30	
Payment of dividends	(9)	
Net cash flows from financing activities		21
Net increase in cash		\$183
Reconciliation of net income to cash flows from operating activities:		
Net income	\$ 84	
<i>Adjustments for noncash items:</i>		
Depreciation expense		<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>
Net cash flows from operating activities		<input type="checkbox"/>

DISTINCTIVE INDUSTRIES		
Income Statement		
For the Year Ended December 31, 2018		
(\$ in millions)		
Sales revenue	\$240	
Cost of goods sold	96	
Gross profit		144
Operating expenses:		
General and administrative	\$54	
Depreciation	30	
Total operating expenses		84
Operating income		60
Other income:		
Gain on sale of equipment		45
Income before income taxes		105
Income tax expense		21
Net income		\$ 84

DISTINCTIVE INDUSTRIES
Comparative Balance Sheets
At December 31
(\$ in millions)

	2018	2017
Assets:		
Cash	\$ 360	□
Accounts receivable (net)	□	252
Inventory	180	□
Property, plant, and equipment	450	600
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(120)	□
Total assets	□	□
Liabilities and shareholders' equity:		
Accounts payable	\$ 120	\$ 90
General and administrative expenses payable	27	27
Income taxes payable	66	□
Common stock	720	690
Retained earnings	□	141
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	□	□

Required:

1. Determine the missing amounts.
2. Reconstruct the reconciliation of net income to cash flows from operating activities (operating cash flows using the indirect method).

Real World
Case 21-6

Analyze cash flow activities; Staples, Inc.

- LO21-1 through LO21-8

Real World Financials

Staples, Inc., is the world's leading office products company. Locate the statement of cash flows of Staples for the fiscal year ended January 30, 2016, on the Internet.

Required:

1. In the three years reported, what was Staples' primary investing activity? How was this activity financed? Be specific.
2. During the most recent fiscal year, Staples purchased certificates of deposit. How were these purchases reported in the statement of cash flows? (Note: This is not an investing activity.)
3. How are issuances of debt securities and issuances of equity securities classified in a statement of cash flows?
4. How are payments to investors in debt securities (interest) and payments to investors in equity securities (dividends) classified in a statement of cash flows? Is this a conceptual inconsistency? Explain.
5. Staples' statement of cash flows reports expenditures for acquisition of businesses. It also reports additions to long-term debt. Suppose the businesses had been acquired not with cash, but by exchange for debt securities. Would such a transaction be reported? Explain.

Ethics Case 21-7

Where's the cash?

- LO21-1, LO21-3

After graduating near the top of his class, Ben Naegle was hired by the local office of a Big 4 CPA firm in his hometown. Two years later, impressed with his technical skills and experience, Park Electronics, a large regional consumer electronics chain, hired Ben as assistant controller. This was last week. Now Ben's initial excitement has turned to distress.

The cause of Ben's distress is the set of financial statements he's stared at for the last four hours. For some time prior to his recruitment, he had been aware of the long trend of moderate profitability of his new employer. The reports on his desk confirm the slight, but steady, improvements in net income in recent years. The trend he was just now becoming aware of, though, was the decline in cash flows from operations.

Ben had sketched out the following comparison (\$ in millions):

	2018	2017	2016	2015
Income from operations	\$140.0	\$132.0	\$127.5	\$127.0
Net income	38.5	35.0	34.5	29.5
Cash flow from operations	1.6	17.0	12.0	15.5

Profits? Yes. Increasing profits? Yes. The cause of his distress? The ominous trend in cash flow which is consistently lower than net income.

Upon closer review, Ben noticed three events in the last two years that, unfortunately, seemed related:

- a. Park's credit policy had been loosened; credit terms were relaxed and payment periods were lengthened.
- b. Accounts receivable balances had increased dramatically.
- c. Several of the company's compensation arrangements, including that of the controller and the company president, were based on reported net income.

Required:

1. What is so ominous about the combination of events Ben sees?
2. What course of action, if any, should Ben take?

Analysis**Case 21–8**

Information from cash flow activities; Kroger

- LO21–3 through LO21–8

Real World Financials

Refer to the financial statements and related disclosure notes of **The Kroger Company** for the fiscal year ending January 30, 2016. You can locate the report online from “investor relations” at www.kroger.com.

Notice that Kroger’s net income has increased over the three years reported. To supplement their analysis of profitability, many analysts like to look at “free cash flow.” A popular way to measure this metric is “structural free cash flow” (or as Warren Buffett calls it, “owner’s earnings”), which is calculated as net income from operations, plus depreciation and amortization, minus capital expenditures.

Required:

Determine free cash flows for Kroger in each of the three years reported. Compare that amount with net income each year. What pattern do you detect?

Research**Case 21–9**

FASB codification; locate and extract relevant information and cite authoritative support for a financial reporting issue; cash flow classification

- LO21–4 through LO21–6



“This one’s got me stumped,” you say to no one in particular. “First day on the job; I’d better get it right.” It’s the classification of notes payable in the statement of cash flows that has you in doubt. Having received an “A” in Intermediate Accounting, you know that a note payable representing a bank loan is a financing activity, but this one is a note payable to your employer’s primary merchandise supplier. “I wonder if the accounting is the same.”

Required:

1. Obtain the relevant authoritative literature on cash flow classification using the *FASB Accounting Standards Codification*. You might gain access at the FASB website (www.fasb.org). What is the specific citation that specifies the classification of notes payable to suppliers?
2. Is accounting the same as for notes payable to banks? Explain.
3. Is accounting the same for both short-term and long-term notes payable to suppliers?

IFRS Case 21–10

Statement of cash flows presentation, British Telecommunications

- LO21–3 through LO21–6, LO21–9

**Real World Financials**

British Telecommunications Plc (BT), a U.K. company, is the world’s oldest communications company. The company prepares its financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards. Locate BT’s statement of cash flows from its website at www.btplc.com.

Required:

1. What are the primary classifications into which BT’s cash inflows and cash outflows are separated? Is this classification the same as or different from cash flow statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP?
2. How are cash inflows from dividends and interest and cash outflows for dividends and interest classified in BT’s cash flow statements? Is this classification the same as or different from cash flow statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP?

Continuing Cases

Target Case

- LO21–2, LO21–3, LO21–4, LO21–5, LO21–6, LO21–7

Target Corporation prepares its financial statements according to U.S. GAAP. Target’s financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended January 30, 2016, are available in Connect. This material is also available under the Investor Relations link at the company’s website (www.target.com).

Required:

1. Target’s cash flows from its operations over the previous three years has significantly exceeded its net income. Without regard to Target specifically, explain the difference between net income and the cash flows from operating activities.
2. Why did Target add \$2,213 million in the determination of cash flows from operating activities for depreciation and amortization for the year ended January 30, 2016?
3. A contributor to the difference in Target’s net income and cash flows from operating activities and net income in each of the three years presented is a sizable increase in the amount Target owes its suppliers. If Target had used the direct rather than the indirect method of reporting operating activities, how would this reduction in accounts payable have affected cash from operating activities?

4. Cash outflows for financing activities during each of the three years presented exceeded cash inflows from financing activities. In fact, investing activities also produced net cash outflows in two of the three years. How is that possible? What is the major contributor from year to year in the amount of cash used in financing activities? What are the next two highest contributors to that difference?
5. Some transactions that don't increase or decrease cash must be reported in conjunction with a statement of cash flows. What activity of this type did Target report during each of the three years presented? What are two other such activities that some companies might report?

**Air France–KLM
Case**

● LO21–9

**IFRS**

Air France–KLM (AF), a Franco-Dutch company, prepares its financial statements according to International Financial Reporting Standards. AF's financial statements and disclosure notes for the year ended December 31, 2015, are provided in Connect. This material is also available under the Finance link at the company's website (www.airfranceklm-finance.com).

Required:

1. What are the primary classifications into which AF's cash inflows and cash outflows are separated? Is this classification the same as or different from cash flow statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP?
2. How are cash inflows from dividends and interest and cash outflows for dividends and interest classified in AF's cash flow statements? Is this classification the same as or different from cash flow statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP?

CPA Exam Questions and Simulations



Sample CPA Exam questions from Roger CPA Review are available in Connect as support for the topics in this chapter. These Multiple Choice Questions and Task-Based Simulations include expert-written explanations and solutions, and provide a starting point for students to become familiar with the content and functionality of the actual CPA Exam.